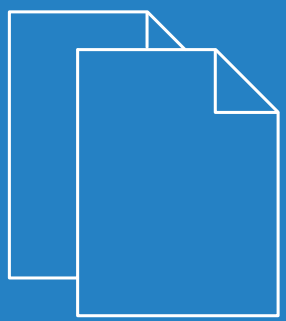
SECURE. NETWORKS.

LCOS 10.20

Reference Manual



01/2019

LANCOM Systems

Contents

Copyright

LANCOM Systems GmbH

Adenauerstr. 20/B2

52146 Wuerselen

Germany

www.lancom-systems.com

1 LCOS – the LANCOM Operating System

1.1 Free operating system

The free operating system LCOS (LANCOM Operating System) is the in-house closed-source firmware for the entire core portfolio of products from LANCOM Systems GmbH. LCOS software updates are released several times a year and contain a variety of new features and enhancements for current LANCOM routers, access points and gateways.

1.2 Security from our own closed-source operating system

LCOS is developed at our headquarters in a maximum security zone that is certified by the BSI (the German Federal Office for Information Security). Several times a year LCOS benefits from software updates with new features and enhancements. LCOS is a completely in-house development by LANCOM, the source code for which is not open source. Moreover, the quality seal "IT Security Made in Germany" (ITSMG) from an independent authority guarantees that LCOS is free from backdoors.

1.3 Future-proof

LCOS constantly undergoes quality testing so that it offers the highest degree of reliability for professional network infrastructures. Thanks to hardware that is dimensioned for the future, LANCOM products are designed for a long product life and support of the latest versions of LCOS. Even older devices that no longer support current versions of LCOS are, when necessary, provided with bug fixes that are based on the latest available firmware. LANCOM offers unbeatable safeguarding of your investment.

1.4 The LCOS promise

The free operating system LCOS (LANCOM Operating System) is the in-house closed-source firmware for the entire core portfolio of products from LANCOM Systems GmbH. LCOS is developed at our headquarters in a maximum security zone that is certified by the BSI (the German Federal Office for Information Security). Several times a year LCOS benefits from software updates with new features and enhancements. Moreover, the quality seal “IT Security Made in Germany” (ITSMG) from an independent authority guarantees that LCOS is free from backdoors. LCOS constantly undergoes quality testing so that it offers the highest degree of reliability for professional network infrastructures. Thanks to hardware that is dimensioned for the future, LANCOM products are designed for a long service life and support of the latest versions of LCOS. Even our older devices that no longer support current versions of LCOS are, when necessary, provided with bug fixes that are based on the latest available firmware. LANCOM offers unbeatable safeguarding of your investment.

2 Configuration

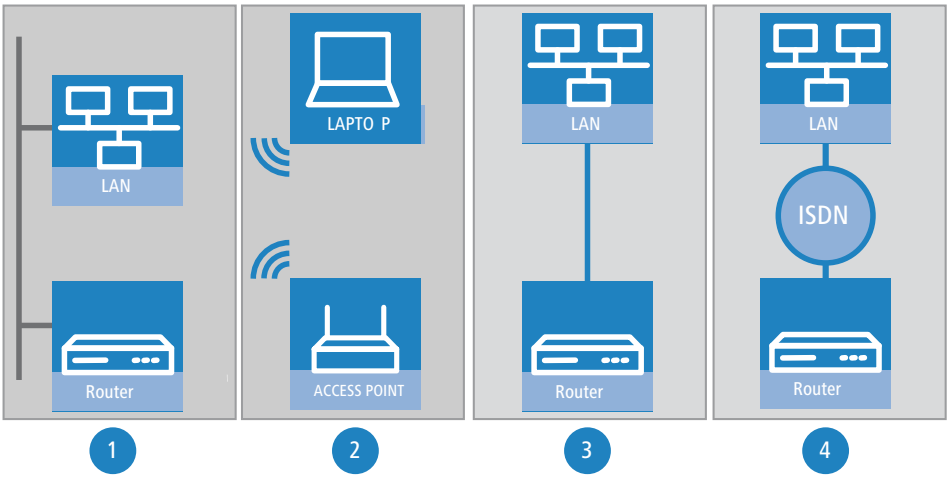
This chapter gives you an overview of the ways and means by which you can access the device and adjust its settings. It contains descriptions for the following topics:

- Configuration tools
- Control and diagnostic functions of the device and software
- Backing up and restoring complete configurations
- Installing new firmware on the device

2.1 Ways and means of configuration

The device supports different ways (i.e. interfaces) and means (i.e. software) of configuration. Depending on the available connections, the device can be accessed in different ways:

- Via the connected network ([W]LAN and [W]WAN; also named "inband") [1, 2];
- Via the serial configuration interface (config interface; also named "outband") [3];
- Via the ISDN connection or—in combination with the *LANCOM Modem Adapter Kit*—a modem (analog or GSM) [4].



How do these paths differ?

The access paths listed above differ in how they are accessed and in their hardware and software requirements:

- Inband configuration requires a suitable computer in the LAN, WAN or WLAN along with the appropriate software, such as LANconfig or a web browser when configuring with WEBconfig (cf. *Configuration software* on page 27). However, inband configuration will not work if the network is malfunctioning.
- Outband configuration is always available because it is a physical connection. Along with the configuration software, it also requires a computer with a serial interface.

- The most extensive requirements come with the configuration via ISDN: Apart from an ISDN connection to the LANCOM device itself, the configuration PC needs either an ISDN adapter or access to another LANCOM device with an ISDN interface by means of LANCAPI. Remote configuration by ISDN also depends on a fault-free ISDN connection.

2.2 Configuration software

There is no end of different situations in which configurations have to be carried out, or ways in which operators prefer to work. This is why the device offers a wide range of ways to set up the configuration:

- **LANconfig** – the menu-driven, clearly structured and easy way to set almost all parameters for a device. LANconfig requires a configuration PC with a current Windows operating system. Please refer to section *LANconfig – configuring devices* on page 149 for further information.
- **WEBconfig** – this software is an integral part of the device LCOS. This makes WEBconfig operating-system agnostic; all you need is a web browser on the configuration PC. Please refer to section *WEBconfig* on page 28 for further information.
- **Terminal program** – as an alternative to LANconfig, you can also use terminal programs (such as HyperTerminal or PuTTY) to configure a device from the command line. Depending on the program's range of functions, either via the serial interface or an IP network can be used for communications. The protocols available within IP networks are Telnet, SSH and TFTP.
- **SNMP management program** – as an alternative to LANconfig, you can also use device-independent IP network management programs based on the SNMP protocol.

The following table shows the various ways that you can access the configuration:

Table 1: Overview of the configuration means in relation to the configuration paths

Used software	[W]LAN, [W]WAN (inband)	Config interface (outband)	ISDN	Analog dial-in*
LANconfig	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
WEBconfig	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Serial client	No	Yes	No	No
Telnet client	Yes	No	No	No
SSH client	Yes	No	No	No
TFTP client	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
SNMP management program	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

*in conjunction with the *LANCOM Modem Adapter Kit*

Please note that all methods access the same configuration data. For example, any changes you make to the settings in LANconfig also directly effect the values under WEBconfig and Telnet.

2.2.1 LANconfig

Information on configuring the devices with LANconfig is available separately in the LANtools chapter *LANconfig – configuring devices* on page 149,

2.2.2 WEBconfig

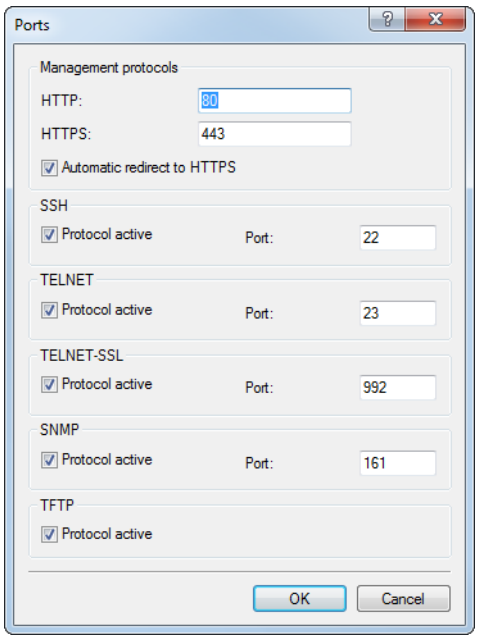
WEBconfig is the graphical user interface that offers direct access to the LCOS integrated into the device. This allows you to configure the devices remotely and irrespective of the operating system used on your computer. All you need to work with WEBconfig is a web browser.

Accessing the device with WEBconfig

To carry out a configuration with WEBconfig, you need to know how to contact the device. Device behavior and accessibility for configuration via a Web browser depend on whether the DHCP server and DNS server are active in the LAN already, and whether these two server processes share the assignment in the LAN of IP addresses to symbolic names. WEBconfig accesses the device either via its IP address, the device name (if configured), or by means of any name if the device has not yet been configured.

The browser uses the IP address or name to make an unencrypted connection request to the LANCOM device. This then automatically switches to an encrypted HTTPS connection. As a result, confidential data such as the login password or the configuration itself are secured with the encrypted connection.

If this feature has not been activated, you can enable it under **Management** > **Admin** > **Management protocols** > **Ports** > **Automatic redirect to HTTPS**.



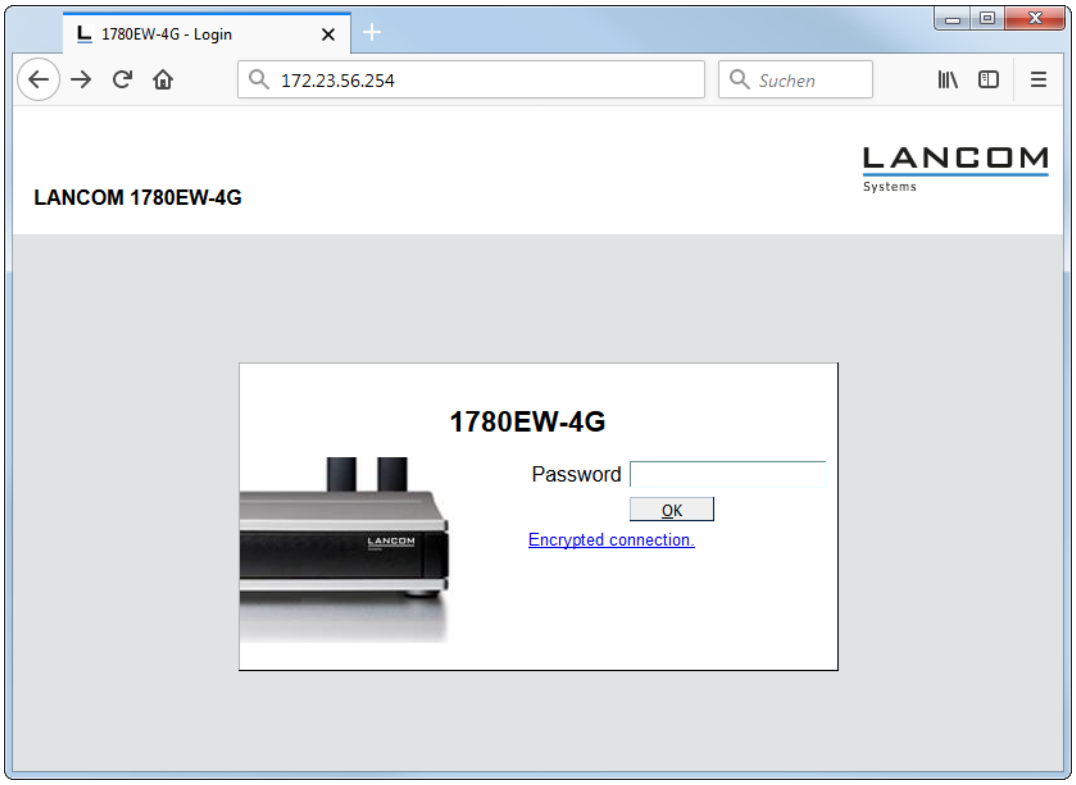
Following power-on, unconfigured devices first check whether a DHCP server is already active in the LAN. Depending on the situation, the device can either enable its own DHCP server or enable DHCP client mode. In the second operating mode, the device can retrieve an IP address for itself from a DHCP server in the LAN.

If a WLAN device is centrally managed by a WLAN controller, the device switches the DHCP mode from auto to client mode when it is provisioned with the WLAN configuration.

Network without a DHCP server

In a network without a DHCP server, unconfigured devices enable their own DHCP server service when switched on and assign IP addresses, information on gateways, etc. to other computers in the LAN (provided they are set to automatic retrieval of IP addresses – auto DHCP). In this constellation, the device can be accessed by every computer with the auto DHCP function enabled with a web browser under IP address **172.23.56.254**.

With the factory settings and an activated DHCP server, the device forwards all incoming DNS requests to the internal web server. This means that a connection can easily be made to set up an unconfigured device by entering any name into the address bar of a web browser.



If the configuration computer does not retrieve its IP address from the DHCP server, determine the current IP address of the computer (with **Start** > **Run** > **cmd** and command **ipconfig** at the prompt under Windows 7 or higher, or with command **ifconfig** in the CLI under Linux). In this case, the device can be accessed with address **x.x.x.254** (the "x"s stand for the first three blocks in the IP address of the configuration computer).

Network with DHCP server

If a DHCP server for the assignment of IP addresses is active in the LAN, an unconfigured device disables its own DHCP server, switches to DHCP client mode and retrieves an IP address from the DHCP server in the LAN. However, this IP address is initially unknown and accessing the device depends on the name resolution:

- If the LAN also has a DNS server for name resolution and this communicates the IP address/name assignment to the DHCP server, the device can be reached by entering its MAC address, e.g. `00a057xxxxxx`.

  The MAC address on a sticker on the base of the device.

- If there is no DNS server in the LAN, or if it is not linked to the DHCP server, the device cannot be reached via the name. In this case you have the following options to determine the IP address of the device:
  - From another accessible device, use the WEBconfig function **Show/search other devices**, or alternatively the LANconfig function **Find devices**.
  - Find the IP address assigned by DHCP to the device with the aid of suitable tools, and try to access the device directly using this IP address.
  - Connect a computer to the device by means of the serial configuration interface and run a terminal program.

Logging in to the device

Call WEBconfig by using the IP address assigned by the DHCP server or the name assigned by the DNS server. When prompted for user name and password when accessing the device, enter your personal data in the appropriate fields. Observe the use of upper and lower case.

If you used the general configuration access (“root”), you only need to enter the corresponding **password**. The **login** box for the user name remains blank in this case.

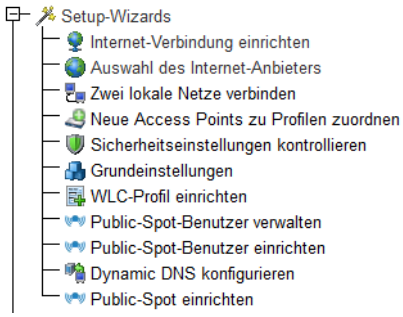
If you are logging in to the device for the first time, or if no other administrators have been configured yet, the input mask automatically hides the login field.

As an alternative, the login dialog provides a link for an encrypted connection over HTTPS. If possible, always use the HTTPS connection with increased security, especially if you are accessing the device from external networks. You can access the device over an encrypted connection directly by entering `https://<IP address or device name>`. As of LCOS10.20, encrypted connections are used automatically.

Always use the latest version of your browser to ensure maximum security. Also check that your browser is still in the current development branch, as some browsers only perform automatic updates in certain version ranges. Also, updates may be stopped when support for specific operating systems has expired. In this case, we strongly recommend that you switch to an alternative web browser.

Setup wizards

The setup wizards help you to make frequently used settings on a device quickly and easily. Select the wizard and enter the appropriate data on the following screens. The individual setup steps are identical to those in LANconfig.



The device does not save any settings until you confirm the entries on the final page of a wizard. Which wizards are available depends on the individual device type (access point, WLAN controller, etc.).

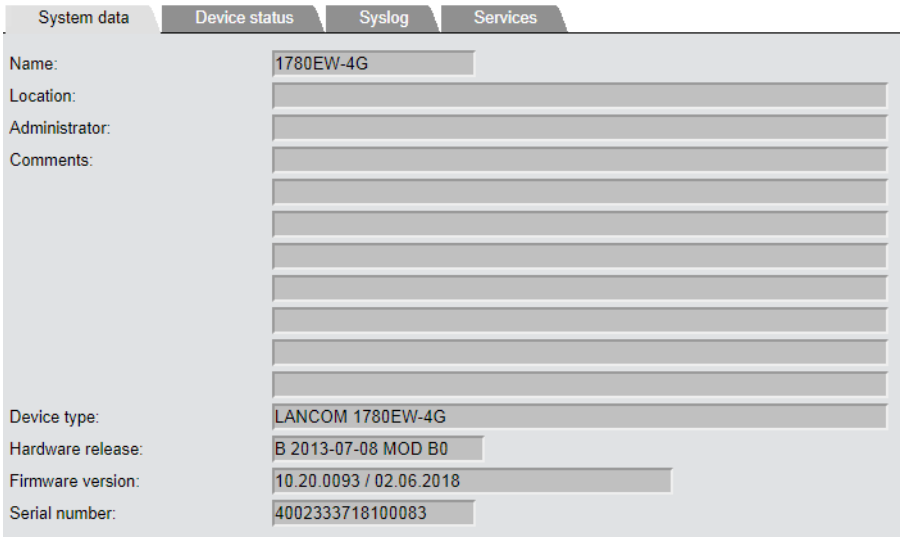
On devices featuring VPN, VPN client dial-in access accounts for the Advanced VPN Client or myVPN can also be created with WEBconfig. The 1-Click VPN configuration is not available in WEBconfig due to restrictions on browser access.

System information

Your device features the menu area **System information**, which displays various important facts about the software and hardware of your device, physical connections, the syslog table, and the services.

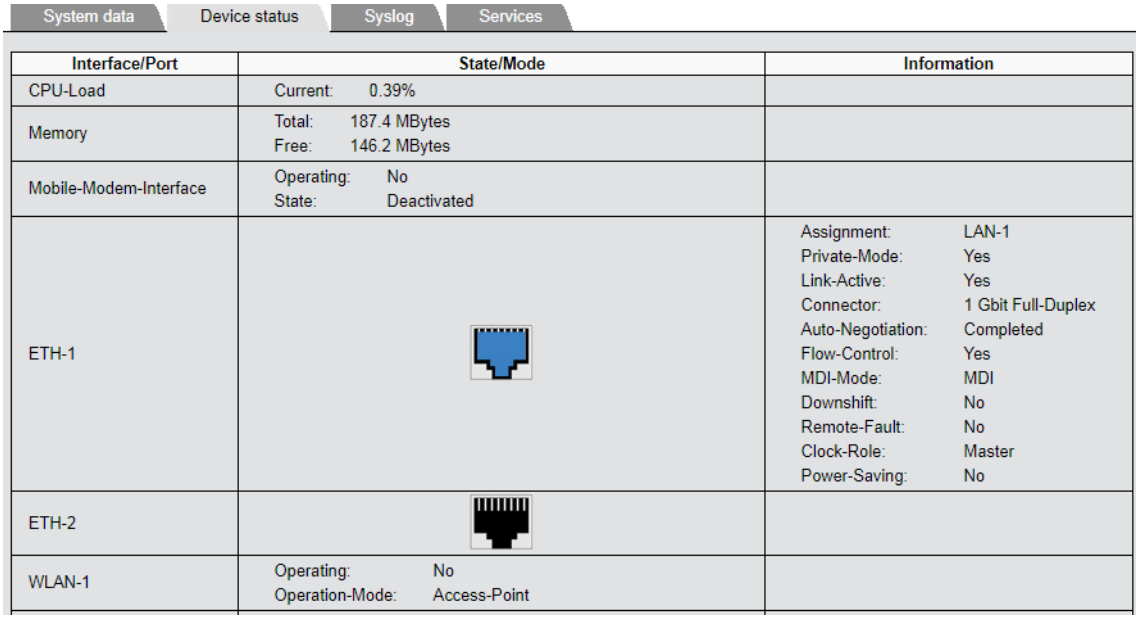
System data

The **System data** tab on the system information screen displays general information on the device including its location, the firmware version, the serial number, etc.



Device status

The **Device status** tab contains comprehensive information on the current operating state of the device. This includes, for example, a visual representation of the interfaces with information on the networks active on them. Appropriate links can be used to call up further relevant statistics (such as DHCP table). For significant configuration deficiencies (such as invalid time setting), a direct link to the appropriate configuration parameters is provided.



The amount of information shown on this screen can be defined under **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **HTTP** > **Show-device-information**. An index number is also used to specify the display sequence.

Show-device-information

Device-Information	Position
CPU	1
Memory	2
Mobile-Modem-Interface	6
Ethernet-Ports	7
WLAN	8
P2P-Connections	9
Troughput(Ethernet)	10
Router	11
Firewall	12
DHCP	13
DNS	14
VPN	15
Connections	16

Syslog

The device stores syslog information in its main memory (see *The SYSLOG module* on page 295). For diagnosis, you can also view the latest events in WEBconfig on the **Device status** tab.

System data | Device status | Syslog | Services

Idx.	Time	Source	Level	Message
1	2018-06-12 09:25:08	AUTHPRIV	Notice	Webconfig: login via HTTPS from 192.168.1.50.
2	2018-06-12 09:23:12	AUTHPRIV	Notice	Webconfig: login via HTTP from 192.168.1.50.
3	2018-06-12 09:21:08	KERN	Warning	last message repeated 62 times
4	2018-06-11 17:35:38	KERN	Warning	SNTP: Request failed, restart poll timer.
5	2018-06-11 17:24:01	AUTHPRIV	Notice	Webconfig: session expired for user from 192.168.1.50
6	2018-06-11 17:22:31	AUTHPRIV	Notice	Webconfig: session expired for user from 192.168.1.50
7	2018-06-11 17:20:23	KERN	Warning	last message repeated 6 times

Timestamps starting with '1900- ...' indicate that the time has not been set or is set incorrectly.

Services

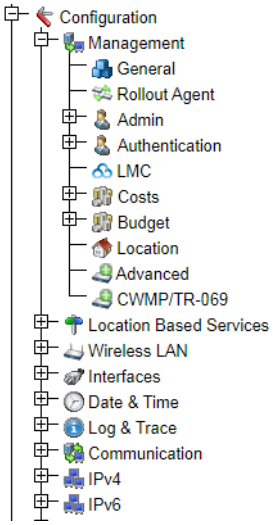
The **Services** tab gives you an overview of the internal LCOS services, their ports and protocols, whether they are active, and how they can be reached.

System data | Device status | Syslog | Services

Service	Port	Protocol	Active	Accessible from			
				LAN	WAN	VPN	WLAN
BGP	179	TCP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
CWMP/TR-069	7547	TCP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
ComPort-Server	0	TCP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
DNS-Server	53	UDP	☑	✓	⊘	✓	✓
Dynamic-VPN	87	UDP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
HTTP	80	TCP	☑	✓	⊘	✓	✓
HTTPS	443	TCP	☑	✓	⊘	✓	✓
IAPP	2313	UDP	☑	✓	⊘	⊘	✓
IPerf	5001	TCP, UDP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
IPsec-over-HTTPS	443	TCP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
L2TP-Server	1701	UDP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
LCOSCap	41047	UDP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
LISP-Control	4342	UDP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘
LISP-Data	4341	UDP	☐	⊘	⊘	⊘	⊘

Configuration

The **Configuration** menu section provides the configuration parameters in the same structure as seen in LANconfig.



LCOS menu tree

The **LCOS menu tree** sections presents the configuration and status parameters in the same structure as Telnet. Each branch of the menu tree is divided into menu items, tables, parameters and actions. Tables contain sets of parameters, while menu items contain tables, individual parameters and actions.

Furthermore, the menu tree has a context-sensitive help system: Clicking on the question mark next to an entry calls up a separate help page for each menu item, table and parameter. You will find information about the individual entries in the Menu Reference Guide.

Status

The **Status** menu contains all of the status values stored by the device. Status values are stored in the corresponding status parameters and are for information purposes only. Values can be read out but not adjusted.

Some of the status values are directly or indirectly influenced by the parameter settings in the Setup menu and only actually contain values under certain setups. For example, the DHCP table only contains any values if the DHCP server in the device is enabled and in use. Other parts are not influenced by setup parameters, such as the hardware information, for example. Some menu items include actions or analysis functions that you need to perform manually before the device displays any results.

Setup

The **Setup** menu is used to modify and save all of the adjustable parameters in the device. The setup parameters are the most basic aspect of a device configuration: Any settings you make in LANconfig or WEBconfig are ultimately saved in the parameters of the Setup menu.

A large number of parameters are required for the proper operation of the device, but many of them never need to be adjusted: for example, standards and regulations require fixed upper and lower limits. For this reason, this menu also contains parameters which cannot be adjusted in LANconfig. Under most circumstances there is no need to change these parameters. However, in some cases it may be useful or even necessary to adjust certain default values to meet individual needs.

These “expert settings” often require deep background knowledge about the functionality and interrelationships of the different modules in the LCOS, and also of the technical standards. It is not unusual to have to change parameters in several places in the setup menu to reach a specific configuration. We therefore recommend that

you only make changes in the Setup menu if the documentation or our Support explicitly requests this or if you are familiar with the technical standards and regulations behind a feature.

Firmware

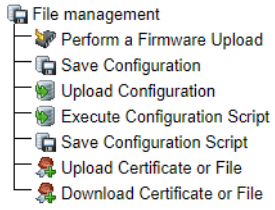
The **Firmware** menu provides information about the current firmware version, configures the Firmsafe feature and switches to an alternative firmware version if necessary (also read *FirmSafe* on page 69), and it allows new firmware to be uploaded to the device. Alternatively, you can use *File management* to load a different firmware into the device.

Other

Using this menu, you can manually set up or terminate the connection to a remote site, restart the device, and (from the CLI) upload a new firmware version.

File management

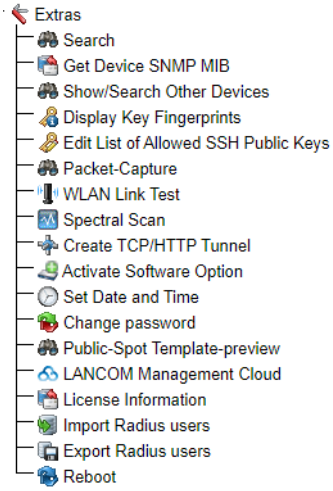
The **File management** section contains the various actions for uploading files to or downloading files from the device (i.e. configuration files and scripts, certificates, templates and logos). Furthermore, you can import firmware versions into the device.



Certificates or files that were uploaded to the device can be viewed in the Status menu under **File system**.

Extras

The **Extras** section contains various features that help to configure the device and, depending on the device at hand, it also provides some features and analysis modules that do not logically fit to the other menu items.



The scope of functions of this menu area varies depending on the device type.

Search

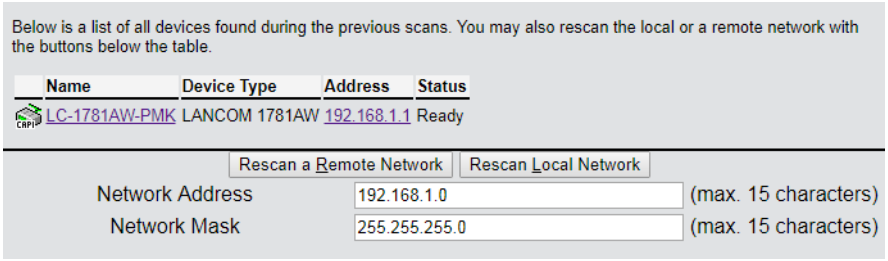
Using this function starts a search through the LCOS menu tree and the names of all the parameters it contains. If you know the name for a particular status- or configuration parameter, but do not know which menu it is to be found in, you can quickly locate it in this way.

Retrieving the SNMP device MIB

This menu item allows you to download the device-specific *.mib file (management information base), which is required by alternative SNMP management software to monitor and manage the device. More information is available under *SNMP management program* on page 59.

Show/search other devices

Using the Show/Search function, you can search for other devices in your network and switch directly to the configuration page of the found devices via a corresponding link. This function is similar to the **Find devices** option in LANconfig.



Show key fingerprints

This page provides an overview of the fingerprints of all of the cryptographic keys in the device. Learn more about under *Device-internal SSH/SSL keys* on page 92.

Allowed SSH public keys

This page gives you an overview of the SSH public keys for public-key authentication that are accepted by the device. WEBconfig outputs the overview as a text field, which at any time can also be used to add additional keys and edit existing ones as an alternative to uploading a file in the File management section.

More about this topic and key syntax can be found in and around the chapter *Syntax and modifying public-key users* on page 97.

Enter new keys on a separate line; line breaks are not permitted in key strings.

Packet capturing

Opens the configuration page for packet capturing.

Packet capturing

In order to capture packets for the analysis of errors or problems, the command line tool **lcoscap** has been made available as of LCOS version 8.60. This command enables the capture of packets and writes the results to a file that you can open and analyze using a tool like Wireshark.

With LCOS version 8.80 an additional and more convenient method has been introduced: A new menu in WEBconfig allows you to set various parameters and capture data packets from selected interfaces, which can then be analyzed in a results file.

This method offers you several advantages:

- You do not need any special software, because you can run WEBconfig on any Web browser.

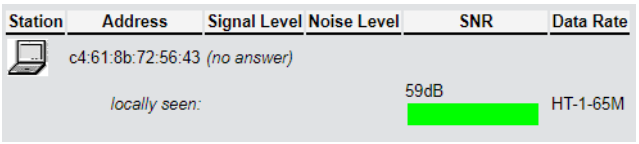
- There is no need to input any CLI commands. Instead, you work with a convenient menu.
- If you use WEBconfig over HTTPS, the confidentiality and security of captured traffic is guaranteed.

The new feature is to be found under **Extras** > **Packet capture**. After you set the parameters and click on **Go!** you create a file that you can save anywhere and open with Wireshark, for example.

WLAN link test

This menu item is only available on devices with a WLAN module.

This page displays the results of the WLAN link test. The WLAN link test verifies the connection to connected WLAN clients.



Spectral Scan

This menu item is only available on certain devices.

Opens the configuration page for the Spectral Scan. Learn more about this feature under *Spectral scan* on page 854.

Create TCP/HTTP tunnel

Opens the configuration page for HTTP tunneling via TCP/IP. Learn more about this feature under *TCP port tunnel* on page 129.

Uploading firmware to managed access points

This menu item is only available on WLAN controllers (WLCs).

On this page, you have the option of using remote access to manually update the firmware on an access point managed by the WLC. For example, this can be useful for testing firmware on selected access points before using it productively. Select an access point based on its MAC address and select the appropriate firmware file. Next click on **Start upload** to load the firmware in the access point.

Please note that this process disables the firmware management in the access point table for the selected access point. This prevents the WLC from automatically uploading a different firmware version. Firmware management can be re-enabled at any time in the setup menu under **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Configuration** > **Manage-firmware**.

In order for the access point to use the loaded firmware, you must subsequently perform a restart. By enabling the setting **Restart AP after updating the firmware** you trigger an automatic restart as soon as the firmware upload is completed.

Activate software option

Additional software option(s) available for your device are unlocked on this page after you have purchased the corresponding activation or registration key.

Registry keys are always device-specific and are not transferable to other devices. Be sure to keep a record of your key(s) in case you have to enable the option again (e.g. after a repair).

Set date and time

This page allows you to manually set the current date and time. Alternatively, you can use a time server to keep the time updated automatically.

A correct date and time setting is essential for some of the modules to function properly (e.g. syslog or the Public Spot module).

Change password

Use this page to change the password for your user account.

Reboot

From this page, you can restart the device after clicking on the Reboot button. This command is identical to **LCOS menu tree** > **Other** > **Cold boot**.

HTTP session

Menu area **HTTP session** allows you to customize the WEBconfig interface for improved readability on your output device, e.g. by reducing the resolution or increasing the contrast.

Logout from the device

With a click on the menu item **Log out** you end your current WEBconfig session and return to the login screen of the device.

2.2.3 Terminal program

Your device supports access via the command line of a terminal program via different interfaces (e.g. [W]LAN, [W]WAN or serial) and protocols (such as Telnet, SSH, or TFTP). A suitable client allows you to access the LCOS CLI to read-out device data, to change and analyze it, and to use your own scripts to automate these operations for multiple devices in one go, such as for the remote servicing of multiple devices—and all without the need of a graphical user interface.

In Windows, there is no Telnet client as part of the operating system. You can of course use alternative software such as the free, multi-protocol client PuTTY. PuTTY is available for Windows and Linux operating systems.

Start terminal session

On many operating systems, you start a terminal session from the command line with a combination of the protocol to be used and the IP address to connect to. There may be deviations depending on the protocol or client. For the precise syntax, refer to the relevant system or program documentation.

The following contains some of the common commands for various protocols and systems:

Telnet

From the Windows command line or the Linux terminal, start a Telnet session with the command `telnet <host>`. Telnet establishes an (unencrypted) connection to the device with the IP address entered. After entering the password (assuming one has been set to protect the configuration) all of the configuration commands are available to you.

Linux also support Telnet sessions via SSL-encrypted connections. Depending on the distribution it may be necessary to replace the standard Telnet application with an SSL-capable version (e.g. telnet-ssl). For distributions that support Telnet-over-SSL, start an encrypted Telnet connection with the command `telnet -z ssl <host> <port>`.

SSH

Windows does not feature an SSH client by default. On Linux systems, use the command `ssh <login-name>@<host>` to set up an encrypted connection to the device and thus prevent the data being transferred during configuration from being intercepted within the network.

Change the language of the CLI

The command-line interface of your device works in different languages. The factory setting for the console language is "English". . To change the language of the CLI temporarily, i.e. for the duration of the session only, use the CLI command `lang` followed by the language or its initial letter(s), e.g. `lang Deutsch` or `long de`.

The following languages are currently supported by the CLI:

- `Deutsch`
- `English`

To change the default language **permanently**, select the desired language in the setup menu under **Config** > **Language**. The languages presented in the drop-down menu represent all of the possible input languages that your device currently supports.

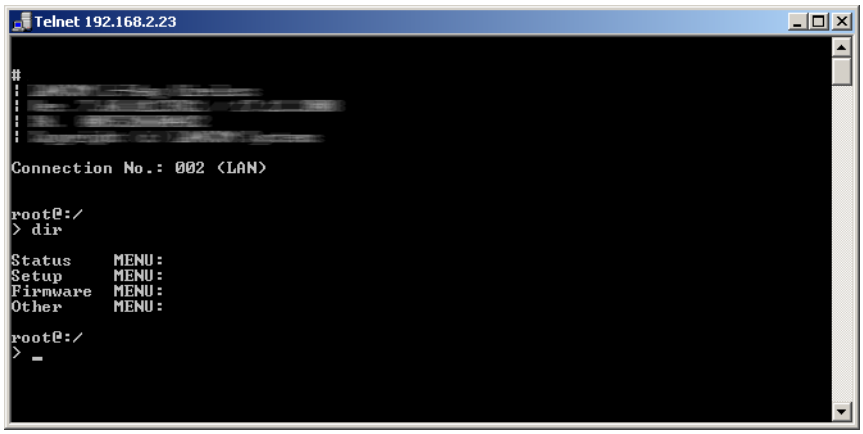
Terminate or cancel terminal session

To close a Telnet session, enter the command `exit` at the command prompt:

If it is not possible to terminate a session by entering `exit`, for example during the login process with password entry, then Linux systems and some clients (such as PuTTY) allow terminal sessions to be canceled using the keyboard shortcut `Ctrl+c`.

Structure of the command-line interface

The LCOS command-line interface is structured as follows:



Status

Contains the states and statistics of all internal modules in the device and the direct access to the file system

Setup

Contains all adjustable parameters of all internal modules in the device

Firmware

Contains the firmware management

Other

Contains actions for establishing and terminating connections, reset, reboot and upload

Commands for the CLI

The LCOS command-line interface is operated with the following commands. Some of the available menu commands can be displayed using the HELP command.

Which commands are available depends upon the equipment of the device.

Some commands require special privileges in order to run, and these are listed along with the respective command. Commands that do not specify any rights have no restrictions.

Table 2: Overview of all commands available at the command line

Command	Description
`add|set [<Path>] <Value(s)>`	Sets a configuration parameter to a particular value. If the configuration parameter is a table value, a value must be specified for each column. Entering the `*` character leaves any existing table entry unchanged. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write
`add|set [<Path>] ?`	Lists all possible input values for a configuration parameter. If no specific path is entered, the possible input values for all configuration parameters in the current directory are listed. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write
`beginscript [-u] [-C d]`	Resets the CLI session to script mode. In this state, commands entered are not transferred directly to the device's configuration RAM but initially to its script memory. Possible arguments are: › `-u`: Forces the **u**nconditional execution of a script or a configuration. › `-C d`: Skips the default **"C**heck for **d**ifference. Also applies when the `-u` option is used. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`bootconfig [-s (1|2|all)] [-r (1|2|all)]`	Enables you to save and delete boot configurations. Options: › `-s`: Stores the current configuration of a device either as a custom default setting (1), rollout configuration (2), or both (all). › `-r`: Optionally deletes the current custom default setting (1), the rollout configuration (2), or both (all). **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write For further information on boot configurations refer to the chapter *Alternative boot config* on page 65
`ccset`	Sets the device configuration to standards-compliant default values with respect to CC-EAL4+ (such as ISDN=off). Prerequisite for this is that the feature bit (CC-EAL) is set on the device.
`cctest [-s]`	Checks the conformity of the device to CC-EAL4+. Prerequisite for this is that the feature bit (CC-EAL) is set on the device. By adding the parameter s, the results or outputs are displayed in the syslog table.
`cd <Path>`	Switch to the current directory. Various abbreviations can be used, such as replacing `cd ../..` with `cd ...`, etc.
`default [-r] [<Path>]`	Resets individual parameters, tables or entire menu trees back to their default configuration. If `<PATH>` indicates a branch of the menu tree, then the option `-r` (recursive) must be entered. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`del|delete|rm [<Path>] <Row>|*`	Deletes the table row `<Row>` in the current table or the table referenced in the branch of the menu tree with `<Path>`. Enter the line number for the `<Row>`. The wildcard symbol `*` deletes a table, for example, `del Config/Cron-Table *`.

Command	Description
	Access rights: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write
`deletebootlog`	Clears the contents of the persistent boot log memory.
`dir|list|ls|llong|l [-a] [-r] [-s] [<Path>] [<Filter>]`	Displays the current directory content. Possible arguments are: › `-a`: In addition to the content of the query, this also lists the SNMP IDs. The output begins with the SNMP ID of the device followed by the SNMP ID of the current menu. The SNMP IDs of the subordinate items can be read from the individual entries. › `-r`: Also lists all subdirectories as well as the tables they contain. › `-s`: Sorts the display of the current directory; grouped by sub directories, tables, values, and actions; in ascending alphabetical order.
`do <Path> [<Parameter>]`	Executes the action in the current or the referenced directory, for example, do `Other/Coldstart`. If the action has additional parameters, they can be added at the end.
`echo <Argument>`	Displays the commands on the CLI.
`enable <Parameter>`	Extends the rights of authenticated TACACS+ users. Possible parameters are: › `0`: No rights › `1`: Read-only › `3`: Read-write › `5`: Read-only-limited Admin › `7`: Read-write-limited Admin › `9`: Read-only Admin › `11`: Read-write Admin › `15`: Supervisor (root)
`exit|quit|x`	Ends the terminal session.
`feature <Code>`	Activates the software option with the specified activation code. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`find <term>`	Looks for the search <term> and outputs all menu items containing it.
`flash yes|no`	Regulates the storing of configuration changes using the command line. By default, changes to the configuration using commands in the command line are written directly to the boot-resistant Flash memory of the devices (`yes`). If updating the configuration is suppressed in the Flash memory (`no`), changes are only stored in RAM (deleted on booting). **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`getenv <Name>`	Lists the respective environmental variables (without line feed). Please also note the command "printenv".
`history`	Displays a list of recently executed commands. Command `! #` can be used to directly call the list commands using their number (#): For example, `! 3` executes the third command in the list.
`iperf [-s|-c <Host>] [-u] [-p <Port>] [-B <Interface>] [-c] [-b [<Bandw>/]<Bandw>[kKmM]] [-l <Length>] [-t <Time>] [-d] [-r] [-L <Port>] [-h]`	Starts iPerf on the device in order to perform a bandwidth measurement with an iPerf2 remote station. Possible arguments are: › **Client/server** › `-u, --udp`: Uses UDP instead of TCP. › `-p, --port <Port>`: Connects with or expects data packets on this port (default: 5001). › `-B, --bind <Interface>`: Permits the connection only via the specified interface (IP address or interface name).

Command	Description
	› **Server specific** › `-s, --server`: Starts iPerf in server mode and waits for an iPerf client to contact it. › **Client specific** › `-c, --client <Host>`: Starts iPerf in client mode and connects with the iPerf server <Host> (IP address or DNS name). › `-b, --bandwidth [<Bandw>/]<Bandw>{kKmM}`: Limit the [down]/up-stream bandwidth when analyzing a UDP connection. This Is specified as kilobytes (kK) or megabytes (mM) per second (default: 1 Mbps). › `-l, --len <Length>`: Sets the length of the UDP data packets. › `-t, --time <Time>`: Sets the duration of the connection in seconds (default: 10 seconds). › `-d, --dualtest`: The test is bidirectional: the iPerf server and client send and receive at the same time. › `-r, --tradeoff`: The test is sequential: the iPerf server and client send and receive one after the other. › `-L, --listenport <Port>`: Specifies the port where the device in bidirectional mode expects to receive data packets from the remote iPerf server (default: 5001). › **Miscellaneous** › `-h, --help`: Outputs the help text.
`killscript <Name>`	Deletes the remaining unprocessed content of a script session Select the script session using its name. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`language`	Selects a language for the CLI display. The command `language ?` lists the available languages.
`lig [[-i <instance>] | [-m <server>]] [-id <num>] destination-eid [-retries <num>] [-rtg-tag <num>] [-source-eid <num>]`	LIG (Locator/ID Separation Protocol Internet Groper) is a command-line tool specified in RFC 6835 to query LISP mappings on a map resolver. Possible arguments are: › `-i <instance>`: Name of the LISP instance used for the destination query › `-m <server>`: LISP map server used for the destination query › `-id <num>`: LISP Instance ID [0-16777215] used for the destination query › `destination-eid`: Requested destination EID › `-retries <num>`: LISP retries to the map server [0-10] › `-rtg-tag <num>`: Routing tag used › `-source-eid <num>`: Source EID used Example: `lig -i LISP-INST 172.16.200.1`
`linktest`	Only available on WLAN devices. It displays the results of the WLAN link test. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write **Execution right**: WLAN link test
`ll2mdetect`	Searches for devices via LL2M in the LAN. For further information on this command refer to the section *Commands for the LL2M client* on page 60. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write

Command	Description
`ll2mexec`	Sends one command per LL2M to a device in the LAN. For further information on this command refer to the section *Commands for the LL2M client* on page 60. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`loadconfig (-s <server IP address> -f <filename>)|<URL>`	Uploads a configuration file to the device via TFTP. You can optionally enter the server address and the file name, or the entire URL. For further information on this command refer to the section *File download from a TFTP or HTTP(S) server* on page 79. The cron table works with the user configured for it, meaning that if "loadconfig" is executed via the cron table, it will only be able to read the configuration completely if it is run with the root administrator. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`loadfile [-a <Address>] [-s <Server-IP-address>] [-n] [-f <File-name>] [-o <File-name>] [-c <File-name>] [-p <File-name>] [-d <Passphrase>] [-C n|d] [-m <Version>] [-u] [-x <File-name>] [-i]`	Uploads a certificate file to the device. Possible arguments are: › `-a`: Specifies the source address of the file: › `a.b.c.d`: Source IP address › `INT`: Use the address of the first intranet interface as the source address › `DMZ`: Use the address of the first DMZ interface as the source address › `LBx`: Use the loopback address x (0..f) as the source address › `<Interface>`: Use the address of the LAN interface <interface> as the source address › `-s`: Address of the TFTP server › `-n`: Ignore server name on SSL/TLS connections › `-f`: <File name> of the configuration file on the TFTP server › `-o`: Destination file <file name>for file download › `-c`: File <file name> with the root certificate for HTTPS › `-p`: File <file name> with unencrypted PKCS#12 container for HTTPS CA certificates and / or client-side authentication › `-d`: <Passphrase> to decrypt downloaded encrypted PKCS#12 containers › `-C`: Checks whether firmware is newer than (n) or different from (d) the current firmware › `-m`: Set a minimum <version> of the firmware › `-u`: Download firmware file unconditionally; skip the version check. › `-x`: File <file name> with additional CA certificates for HTTPS checks; the value ' none' prevents the default certificates from being downloaded › `-i`: Send Sysinfo as a POST request (for HTTP(S) only) The options [-f] and [-s] and the URL cannot be used simultaneously. For HTTP(S) downloads, you must specify the source by means of a URL. The maximum length of the URL is 252 characters. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`loadfirmware (-s <server IP address> -f <filename>)|<URL>`	Uploads firmware to the device via TFTP. You can optionally enter the server address and the file name, or the entire URL. For further information on this command refer to the section *File download from a TFTP or HTTP(S) server* on page 79. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`loadscript (-s <server IP address> -f <filename>)|<URL>`	Uploads a configuration script to the device via TFTP. You can optionally enter the server address and the file name, or the entire URL. For further information on this command refer to the section *File download from a TFTP or HTTP(S) server* on page 79.

Command	Description
	The cron table works with the user configured for it, meaning that if "loadscript" is executed via the cron table, it will only be able to read the configuration completely if it is run with the root administrator. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`lspci`	Output of information via PCI devices **Access rights**: Supervisor-Read
`ping <IPv4 address|hostname>` `ping -6 <IPv6 address>%<scope>`	Sends an ICMP echo request to the IP address specified. For more information about the command and the specifics of pinging IPv6 addresses, see the section *Parameter overview for the ping command* on page 48.
`printenv`	Shows an overview of all environmental variables and their values.
`readconfig [-h] [-s <password>]`	Shows the complete configuration in the format of the device syntax. › `-h`: Adds a checksum to the configuration file. › `-s <password>`: Encrypts the configuration file with the use of the specified password. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Read
`readmib`	Display of the SNMP Management Information Base. Available only on devices without a unified MIB. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Read,Local-Admin-Read
`readscript [-n] [-d] [-i] [-c] [-m] [-h] [-s <password>] [-o]`	The readscript command generates a text dump of all commands and parameters required to configure the device in its current state. You can use the following option switches for this: › `-n`: The text output is only numerical without identifiers. The output only contains the current status values of the configuration as well as the associated SNMP IDs. › `-d`: The default values are included in the text output. › `-i`: The table designations are included in the text output. › `-c`: Includes any comments contained in the script file. › `-m`: The text is output to the screen in a compact but difficult to read format (no indentations). › `-h`: Adds a checksum to the script file. › `-s <password>`: Encrypts the script file with the use of the specified password. › `-o`: Replaces the passwords with a "*" to obfuscate them in the text output. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Read
`readstatus`	Outputs the status of all SNMP IDs for the device.
`release [-x] *|<Interface_1…Interface_n>`	The DHCPv6 client returns its IPv6 address and / or its prefix to the DHCPv6 server. It then submits a new request for an address or prefix to the DHCPv6 server. Depending on the provider, the server assigns a new address to the client, or reassigns the previous one. Whether the client receives a different address or prefix is determined solely by the server. The option switch `-x` suppresses the confirmation message. The * wildcard applies the command on all of the interfaces and prefix delegations. Alternatively, you can specify one or more specific interfaces.
`repeat <Interval> <Command>`	Release IPv6 address: Repeats the specified command every `<Interval>` seconds until the process is ended with new input.

Command	Description
`rollout (-r|-remove) <RelatedFile>`	Deletes the files of the user-specific rollout wizard from the file system of the device. Possible files are: › `wizard`: Deletes the wizard › `template`: Deletes the template › `logo`: Deletes the logo › `all`: Deletes the wizard, the template and the logo **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`setenv <Name> <Value>`	Sets an environmental variable to the specified value. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write, Local-Admin-Write, Limited-Admin-Write
`setpass|passwd [-u <User>][-n <new> <old>]`	Changes the password of the current user account. In order to change the password without a subsequent input prompt, use the option switch `-n` while entering the new and old password. In order to change the password of the local user account when authentication by TACACS+ is enabled, use the option switch `-u` with the name of the corresponding user. If the local user does not exist or the user name is missing, the command aborts. The user must also have supervisor rights, or authorization by TACACS must be enabled.
`show <Options> <Filter>`	Shows selected internal data, such as › `admin-distance` – shows the administrative (routing) distance of all internal applications or routing protocols › `bootlog` – the last boot processes › `filter` – firewall filtering rules › `ip-addresses` – displays all IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for the device for the LAN and WAN interfaces, along with advanced status information › `ipv4-addresses` – displays all IPv4 addresses for the device for the LAN and WAN interfaces, along with advanced status information › `lisp instance` – displays status information about all configured LISP instances › `lisp instance [instance]` – displays status information about the LISP instance named [instance] › `lisp map-cache` – displays status information about the map cache entries available for all instances › `lisp map-cache [instance]` – displays status information about the map cache entries for the instance named [instance] › `lisp registrations` – displays status information about the EIDs/RLOCs of all instances registered with the map server › `lisp registrations [instance]` – displays status information about the EIDs/RLOCs of the instance named [instance] registered with the map server › `mem`, `heap` – memory usage › `VLAN` – dynamically added VLANs and VLAN memberships, e.g. added to the static configuration at runtime by CAPWAP or WLAN/802.1X › `VPN` – VPN rules With additional filter arguments you can further limit the output. For an overview of all possible options, enter `show ?`. The filters available with an option are displayed by `show <option>?`, For example, `show VPN?` shows the filters available for the VPN rules. For information on displaying IPv6-specific data, read the section *Overview of IPv6-specific show commands* on page 53.

Command	Description
	Access rights: Supervisor-Read, Local-Admin-Read
`sleep [-u] <Value><Suffix>`	Delays the processing of configuration commands by a particular time or terminates them at a particular time. Applicable values for `<SUFFIX>` are `s`, `m` and `h` for seconds, minutes and hours. If no suffix is defined, the command uses milliseconds. With option switch `-u`, the `sleep` command accepts times in format `MM/DD/YYYY hh:mm:ss` (English) or in format `TT.MM.JJJJ hh:mm:ss` (German). Times will only be accepted if the system time has been set.
`smssend [-s <SMSC-Number>] (-d <Destination>) (-t <Text>)`	Available only on devices with 3G/4G WWAN module: Sends a text message to the destination number entered. › `-s <SMSC-Number>`: Alternative SMSC phone number (optional). If you omit this part of the command, the device uses the phone number stored on the USIM card or that configured under SNMP ID 2.83. › `-d <Destination>`: Destination phone number › `-t <Text>`: Contents of the message with <=160 characters. For an overview of available characters, see the section *Character set for sending SMS*. Special characters must be in UTF8 encoded form.
`ssh [-?|h] [-<a|b> Loopback-Address] [-p Port] [-C] [-j Keepalive-Interval] <Host>`	Establishes an SSH connection to the <Host>. Possible arguments are: › `-?|h`: Outputs the help text. › `-a|b`: Allows a route or loopback address to be specified for the device to use if the destination can be reached via multiple routes. The function of `-a` and `-b` is identical. `-b` is the usual option used by an OpenSSH client on UNIX systems, whereas some other commands integrated into LCOS use `-a` to specify a loopback address. › `-p`: Sets the <Port> of the host › `-C`: Enforces compressed data transfer › `-j`: Specifies how frequently the client sends a keepalive.
`sshcopyid`	To store your SSH public key using SSH **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write

`sshkeygen [-h] [-q] [-t dsa|rsa|ecdsa] [-b <bits>] [-f <file-name>] [-R <host-name>]`	Creates or deletes the SSH key in the device. Possible arguments are:
	
	› `-h`: Displays a brief help text about the available parameters
	› `-q`: The device overrides existing keys without a prompt (quiet mode)
	› `-t`: This parameter specifies what type of key is generated. SSH supports the following types of keys:
	  › RSA
	  › DSA
	  › ECDSA
	› `-b`: This parameter sets the length of the RSA key in bits. If you do not specify a length, the command produces a key with a length of 1024 bits by default.
	› `-f`: These parameters specify the mounting point of the generated key file in the device file system. The choice of mounting point depends on the type key you are generating. The choices available to you are:
	  › **ssh_rsakey** for RSA keys
	  › **ssh_dsakey** for DSA keys
	  › **ssh_ecdsakey** for ECDSA keys
	
	For further information on SSH / SSL keys used in the device refer to the chapter *Device-internal SSH/SSL keys* on page 92

Command	Description
`ssldefaults [-y]`	This command resets the SSL / TLS settings in all submenus of the current configuration to the default values after a security prompt. In LCOS, each module comes with its own submenu for SSL / TLS settings. This provides a way to reset all settings in these various submenus to the current secure default settings. The parameter `-y` ensures that the security prompt is automatically answered so that the command can be used non-interactively in scripts.
`stop`	Ends the PING command
`sysinfo`	Shows the system information (e.g., hardware release, software version, MAC address, serial number, etc.).
`tab`	For use in script files: For the command that follows, this sets the order of the columns for the arguments in the case that the columns in the table differ from the default (e.g. a column was added). **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write
`telnet <Address>`	Establishes a Telnet connection to the given <address>.
`testmail <From> <To_1...To_n> [<Realname> <Subject> <Body>]`	Sends a test e-mail. A sender address and receiver address are necessary; real name, subject line and message content are optional. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write
`time <DateTime>`	Sets a time in format `MM/DD/YYYY hh:mm:ss`. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write **Execution right**: Time Wizard
`trace <Parameter> <Filter>`	Starts a trace command for output of diagnosis data. With additional filter arguments you can further limit the output. For further information on this command refer to the section *Parameter overview for the trace command* on page 50. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Read,Limited-Admin-Read,Limited-Admin-Write
`unmount [-?][-f] <Volume>`	Outputs the current volume table. › `-f`: Releases the specified volume. <Volume> may be the volume ID or any mount point. › `-?`: Outputs the help text.
`unsetenv <Name>`	Deletes the specified environmental variable. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write
`wakeup [MAC]`	Performs a Wake On LAN for the device with the MAC address [MAC]. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write,Local-Admin-Write,Limited-Admin-Write
`who`	Lists active configuration sessions.
`writeconfig [-u] [-C d]`	Writes a new configuration on the device in the syntax format for the device. The system interprets all of the following lines as configuration values until two empty lines are read. Possible arguments are: › `-u`: Forces the **u**nconditional execution of a script or a configuration. › `-C d`: Skips the default **"C**heck for **d**ifference. Also applies when the `-u` option is used. **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`writeflash`	Load a new firmware file (only via TFTP). **Access rights**: Supervisor-Write
`!!`	Repeat last command

Command	Description
!<num>	Repeat command <num> times
!<prefix>	Repeat last command beginning with <prefix>
#<blank>	Comment

Legend

- Characters and brackets:
  - Objects, in this case dynamic or situation-dependent, are in angle brackets.
  - Round brackets group command components, for a better overview.
  - Vertical lines (pipes) separate alternative inputs.
  - Square brackets describe optional switches.

  It follows that all command components that are not in square brackets are necessary information.
- <Path>:
  - Describes the path name for a menu or parameter, separated by "/" or "\".
  - .. means: one level higher
  - . means: the current level
- <Value>:
  - Describes a possible input value.
  - "" is a blank input value
- <Name>:
  - Describes a character sequence of [0…9] [A…Z] [a…z] [_].
  - The first character cannot be a digit.
  - There is no difference between small letters and capital letters.
- <Filter>:
  - The output of some commands can be restricted by entering a filter expression. Filtering does not occur line by line, but in blocks, depending on the command.
  - A filter expression starts with the "@" symbol by itself and ends either at the end of the line or at a ";" (semicolon) to end the current command.
  - A filter expression also consists of one or more search patterns, which are separated by blank spaces and preceded either by no operator (OR pattern), a "+" operator (AND pattern) or a "-" operator (NOT pattern).
  - For the execution of the command, an information block is output exactly when at least one of the "OR" patterns, all "AND" patterns or none of the "NOT" patterns matches. Capitalization is ignored.
  - For a search pattern to contain characters for structuring in the filter syntax (e.g., blank characters), then the entire search pattern can be enclosed in "". Alternatively, the symbol "\" can be placed before the special characters. If you want to search for a quotation mark (") or "\", another "\" symbol has to be placed in front of it.

    Entering the start of the word, if it is unique, is sufficient.
  - For examples of the usage of the output filter, see the section *Filtering trace output* on page 269.

Explanations for addressing, syntax and command input

- All commands and directory/parameter names can be entered using their short-forms as long as they are unambiguous. For example, the command sysinfo can be shortened to sys and cd Management to c ma. The input cd /s is not valid, however, since it corresponds to both cd /Setup and cd /Status.

- Directories can be addressed with the corresponding SNMP ID. For example, the command `cd /2/8/10/2` has the same effect as `cd /Setup/IP-router/Firewall/Rules`.
- Multiple values in a table row can be changed with **one** command, for example in the rules table of the IPv4 firewall:
  - `set WINS UDP` sets the protocol of the WINS rule to UDP
  - `set WINS UDP ANYHOST` sets the protocol of the WINS rule to UDP and the destination to ANY-HOST
  - `set WINS * ANYHOST` also sets the destination of the WINS rule to ANYHOST; the asterisk means that the protocol remains unchanged
- The values in a table row can alternatively be addressed via the column name or the position number in curly brackets. The command `set ?` in the table shows the name, the possible input values and the position number for each column. For example, in the rules table of the firewall, the destination has the number 4:
  - `set WINS {4} ANYHOST` sets the destination of the WINS rule to ANYHOST
  - `set WINS {destination} ANYHOST` also sets the destination of the WINS rule to ANYHOST
  - `set WINS {dest} ANYHOST` sets the destination of the WINS rule to ANYHOST, because specifying `dest` here is sufficient to uniquely identify the column name.
- Names that contain spaces must be enclosed within quotation marks ("").

Command-specific help

- A command-specific help function is available for actions and commands (call the function with a question mark as the argument). For example, `ping ?` shows the options of the integrated ping command.
- Enter `help` or `?` on the command line for a complete listing of the available shell commands.

Parameter overview for the ping command

The ping command entered at the command prompt of a terminal connection sends an "ICMP echo-request" packet to the destination address of the host to be checked. If the receiver supports the protocol and it is not filtered out in the firewall, the destination host will respond with an "ICMP echo reply". If the target computer is not reachable, the last device before the host responds with a "network unreachable" or "host unreachable" message.

The syntax of the ping command is as follows:

```
ping [-fnqr] [-s n] [-i n] [-c n] [-a a.b.c.d] destination
```

The meaning of the optional parameters is explained in the following table:

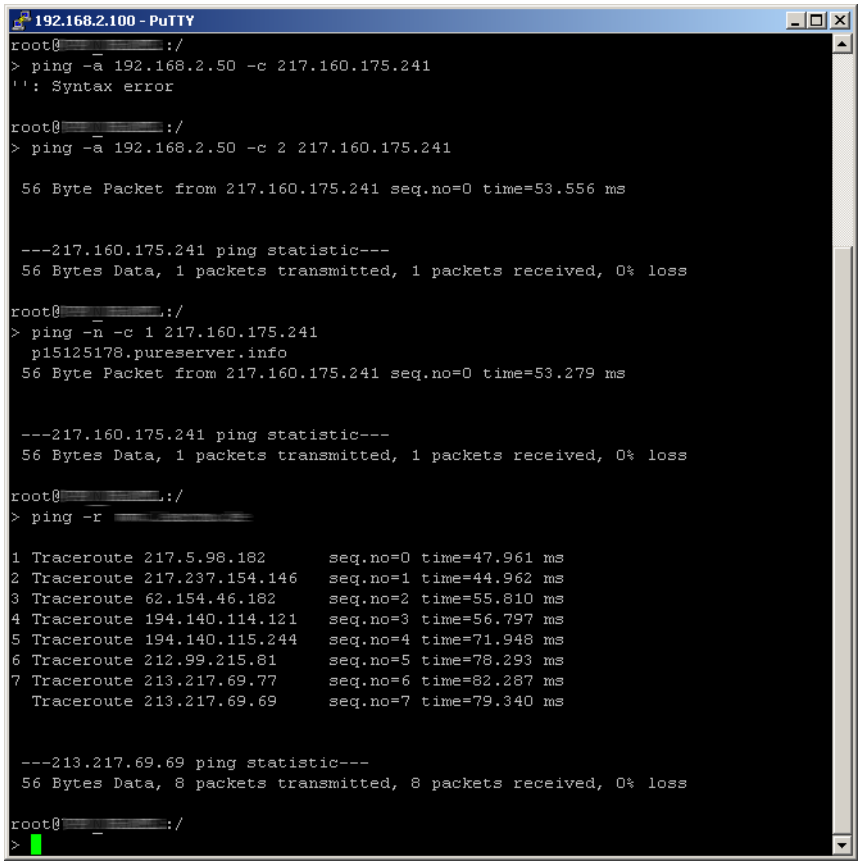
Table 3: Overview of optional parameters for the ping command

Parameter	Meaning
`-a a.b.c.d`	Sets the ping's sender address (default: IP address of the device.
`-a INT`	Sets the intranet address of the device as the sender address
`-a DMZ`	Sets the DMZ address of the device as the sender address
`-a LBx`	Sets one of the 16 loopback addresses in the device as the sender address. Valid values for x are the hexadecimal values 0 – f
`-6 <IPv6-Address>%<Scope>`	Performs a ping command to the link-local address via the interface specified by <scope>. For IPv6, the scope of parameters is of central importance: IPv6 requires a link-local address (fe80::/10) to be assigned to every network interface (logical or physical) on which the IPv6 protocol is enabled, so you must specify the scope when pinging a link-local address. This is the only way that the ping command knows which interface it should send the packet to. A percent sign (%) separates the name of the interface from the IPv6 address. **Examples:**

Parameter	Meaning

	`> ping -6 fe80::1%INTRANET`
	Ping the link-local address "fe80::1", which is accessible via the interface and/or the network "INTRANET".
	`> ping -6 2001:db8::1`
	Pings the global IPv6 address '2001:db8::1".

`-6 <Loopback-Interface>`	Sets an IPv6 loopback interface as the sender address.
`-f`	flood ping: Sends a large number of pings in a short time. Can be used to test network bandwidth, for example. WARNING: flood ping can easily be misinterpreted as a DoS attack.
`-n`	Returns the computer name of a specified IP address
`-o`	Immediately sends another request after a response
`-q`	Ping command returns no output to the console (quiet)
`-r`	Changes to traceroute mode: The route taken by the data packets underway to the target computer is shown with all of the intermediate stations
`-s n`	Sets the packet size to n bytes (max. 65500)
`-i n`	Time between packets in seconds
`-c n`	Send n ping signals
`Destination`	Address or host name of the target computer
`stop /<RETURN>`	Entering "stop" or pressing the RETURN button terminates the ping command



Parameter overview for the trace command

The traces available for a particular model can be displayed by entering `trace` without any arguments.

Table 4: Overview of some executable traces

This parameter ...	...causes the following message in the trace:
`Status`	Connection status messages
`Error`	Connection error messages
`ADSL`	ADSL connection status
`ARP`	Address resolution protocol
`ATM cell`	ATM packet layer
`ATM error`	ATM error
`Bridge`	Information on the wireless LAN bridge
`Connact`	Messages from the activity protocol
`Cron`	Activities of the scheduler (cron table)
`D-channel dump`	Traces the D channel of the ISDN bus connected
`DFS`	Trace on dynamic frequency selection, automatic channel selection in the 5 GHz wireless LAN band
`DHCP`	Dynamic host configuration protocol
`DNS`	Domain name service protocol
`EAP`	Trace on EAP, the key negotiation protocol used with WPA/802.11i and 802.1X
`Ethernet`	Information on the Ethernet interfaces
`Firewall`	Displays firewall events
`GRE`	Messages to GRE tunnels
`hnat`	Information on hardware NAT
`IAPP`	Trace on inter access point protocol giving information on wireless LAN roaming.
`ICMP`	Internet control message protocol
`IGMP`	Information on the Internet group management protocol
`IP masquerading`	Events in the masquerading module
`IPv6 config`	Information about the IPv6 configuration
`IPv6 firewall`	IPv6 firewall events
`IPv6-Interfaces`	Information about the IPv6 interfaces
`IPv6-LAN-Packet`	Data packets over the IPv6 LAN connection
`IPv6 router`	Information about the IPv6 routing
`IPv6-WAN-Packet`	Data packets over the IPv6 WAN connection
`L2TP`	L2TPv2 / v3 protocol
`LANAUTH`	LAN authentication (e.g. Public Spot)
`LCR`	Least cost router

This parameter ...	...causes the following message in the trace:
`Load balancer`	Information on load balancing
`Mail client`	E-mail processing by the internal mail client
`NetBIOS`	NetBIOS management
`NTP`	Timeserver trace
`Packet dump`	Displays the first 64 bytes of a packet in hexadecimal
`PPP`	PPP protocol negotiation
`RADIUS`	RADIUS trace
`RIP`	IP routing information protocol
`Script`	Script negotiation
`Serial`	Information on the state of the serial interface
`SIP packet`	SIP information that is exchanged between a VoIP router and a SIP provider or an upstream SIP telephone system
`SMTP client`	E-mail processing by the internal mail client
`SNTP`	Simple network time protocol
`Spgtree`	Information on spanning tree protocol
`USB`	Information on the state of the USB interface
`VLAN`	Information on virtual networks
`VPN packet`	IPSec and IKE packets
`VPN status`	IPSec and IKE negotiations
`VRRP`	Information on the virtual router redundancy protocol
`WLAN`	Information on activity in the wireless networks
`WLAN-ACL`	Status messages about MAC filtering rules. The display depends on how the WLAN data trace is configured. If a MAC address is specified there, the trace shows only the filter results relating to that specific MAC address.
`XML-Interface-PbSpot`	Messages from the Public Spot XML interface

Overview of CAPWAP parameters with the show command

The following information about the CAPWAP service can be viewed using the command line:

Table 5: Overview of all CAPWAP parameters with the show command

Parameters	Meaning
`-addresses [<IfcNum>]`	Shows the address tables of an individual or all WLC tunnels. In the case of an individual WLC tunnel, enter for the `<IfcNum>` the number of logical WLC tunnel interface, for example `10`.
`-groups`	Shows the information for an individual or all available assignment/tag groups.

You can supplement the command `show capwap groups` with the parameters listed below, which control the scope of the displayed information:

Table 6: Overview of all CAPWAP group parameters with the show command

Parameters	Meaning
`all`	Shows the names configured in the setup menu and the device's internal names for all assignment/tag groups as well as the default groups that were set up. The default group represents an internal group which contains all APs.
`<group1> <group2> <...>`	Shows all APs of the respective assignment/tag groups.
`-l <location>`	Shows all APs of the respective location.
`-c <country>`	Shows all APs of the respective country.
`-i <city>`	Shows all APs of the respective city.
`-s <street>`	Shows all APs of the respective street.
`-b <building>`	Shows all APs of the respective building.
`-f <floor>`	Shows all APs of the respective floor.
`-r <room>`	Shows all APs of the respective room description.
`-d <device>`	Shows all APs that have the specified device name.
`-v <firmware>`	Shows all APs which have the specified firmware. To do this, enter the version number for `<firmware>` followed by the build number, e.g., `9.00.0001`.
`-x <firmware>`	Shows all APs with a firmware version lower than the one installed on the current device.
`-y <firmware>`	Shows all APs with a firmware version the same or lower than the one installed on the current device.
`-z <firmware>`	Shows all APs with a firmware version higher than the one installed on the current device.
`-t <firmware>`	Shows all APs with a firmware version the same or higher than the one installed on the current device.
`-n <intranet>`	Shows all APs with an IP belonging to the specified Intranet address.
`-p <profile>`	Shows all APs that have been assigned with the specified WLAN profile.
`rmgrp <group1 intern_name> <group2 intern_name> ...`	Deletes the group(s) with the specified internal names from the memory of the device. Use this command to free up the main memory if too large a number of groups is degrading the performance of the device. The entry in the setup menu is unaffected by this action.
`resetgrps`	Deletes all groups except the default group.

For location information the device evaluates the information entered under **Location** in the access point table. The following field names are available:

- co=Country
- ci=City
- st=Street
- bu=Building
- fl=Floor
- ro=Room

For instance, the location entry `co=Germany, ci=Aachen` allows you to list all of the managed APs in Aachen from the console of the WLC with the command `+show capwap group -i Aachen`.

Example commands

```
show capwap group all
show capwap group group1
show capwap group -l yourlocation
show capwap group -s yourstreetname
show capwap group -d yourdevicename
show capwap group -p yourprofilename
show capwap group -d yourdevicename -p yourprofile -v yourfirmversion …
```

Overview of IPv6-specific show commands

Various IPv6 functions can be queried at the command line. The following command-line functions are available:

- *IPv6 addresses*: `show ipv6-addresses`
- *IPv6 prefixes*: `show ipv6-prefixes`
- *IPv6 interfaces*: `show ipv6-interfaces`
- *IPv6 neighbor cache*: `show ipv6-neighbour-cache`
- *IPv6 DHCP server* `show dhcp6-server`
- *IPv6 DHCP client* `show dhcpv6-client`
- *IPv6 route*: `show ipv6-route`

Additionally, IPv6 communications can be followed with the `trace` command.

IPv6 addresses

The command `show ipv6-addresses` shows a list of IPv6 addresses that are currently being used. This is sorted by interface. Note that an interface can have multiple IPv6 addresses. One of these addresses is always the link-local address, which starts with `fe80:`.

The output is formatted as follows:

```
<Interface> :
<IPv6 address>, <status>, <attribute>, (<type>)
```

Table 7: Components of the command-line output `show ipv6-addresses`

Output	Comment
Interface	The name of the interface
IPv6 address	The IPv6 address
Status	The status field can contain the following values: › TENTATIVE Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) is currently checking the address. It is not yet available for unicast. › PREFERRED The address is valid › DEPRECATED The address is still valid, but it is being discontinued. The optimal status for communication is PREFERRED. › INVALID The address is invalid and cannot be used for communication. An address given this status after its lifetime has expired.
Attribute	Shows an attribute of the IPv6 address. Possible attributes are: › None

Output	Comment
	No special attributes › (ANYCAST) This is an anycast address › (AUTO CONFIG) The address was retrieved by auto-configuration › (NO DAD PERFORMED) No DAD is performed
Type	The type of IP address

IPv6 prefixes

The command `show ipv6-prefixes` displays all known prefixes. These are sorted according to the following criteria:

Delegated prefixes

All prefixes that the router has obtained by delegation.

Advertised prefixes

All prefixes that the router announces in its router advertisements.

Deprecated prefixes

All prefixes that are being discontinued. These may still be functional, but they will be deleted after a certain time.

IPv6-Interfaces

The command `show ipv6-interfaces` displays a list of IPv6 interfaces and their status.

The output is formatted as follows:

<Interface> : <Status>, <Forwarding>, <Firewall>

Table 8: Components of the command-line output `show ipv6-interfaces`

Output	Comment
Interface	The name of the interface
Status	The status of the interface Possible entries are: › oper status is up › oper status is down
Forwarding	The forwarding status of the interface. Possible entries are: › forwarding is enabled › forwarding is disabled
Firewall	The status of the firewall. Possible entries are: › forwarding is enabled › firewall is disabled

IPv6 neighbor cache

The command `show ipv6-neighbor-cache` displays the current neighbor cache.

The output is formatted as follows:

```
<IPv6 address> iface <interface> lladdr <MAC address> (<switch port>) <device type> <status>
 src <source>
```

Table 9: Components of the command-line output `show ipv6-neighbor-cache`

Output	Comment
IPv6 address	The IPv6 address of the neighboring device
Interface	The interface where the neighbor is accessed
MAC address	The MAC address of the neighbor
Switch port	The switch port on which the neighbor was found
Device type	Neighbor's device type (host or router)
Status	The status of the connection to neighboring devices. Possible entries are: › INCOMPLETE Resolution of the address was still in progress and the link-layer address of the neighbor was not yet determined. › REACHABLE The neighbor was reached in the last ten seconds. › STALE The neighbor is no longer qualified as REACHABLE, but an update will only be performed when an attempt is made to reach it. › DELAY The neighbor is no longer qualified as REACHABLE, but data was recently sent to it; waiting for verification by other protocols. › PROBE The neighbor is no longer qualified as REACHABLE. Neighbor solicitation probes are sent to it to confirm availability.
Source	The IPv6 address at which the neighbor was detected.

IPv6 DHCP server

The command `show dhcpv6-server` displays the current status of the DHCP server. The display includes information about the interface on which the server is active, which DNS server and prefixes it has, and what client preferences it has.

IPv6 DHCP client

The command `show dhcpv6-client` displays the current status of the DHCP client. The display includes information about the interface being used by the client and which prefixes and DNS server it is using.

IPv6 route

The command `show ipv6-route` displays the complete IPv6 routing table. Routers with fixed entered routes are displayed with the suffix [static] and the dynamically obtained routes have the suffix [connected]. The loopback address is marked [loopback]. Other automatically generated addresses have the suffix [local].

Environment variables

Environment variables are device-specific global variables with predefined values that you can insert anywhere on the command line as dynamic placeholders. An overview of the environment variables and their values can be output using the appropriate CLI commands (see below).

All predefined environment variables begin with two underscores: When entering commands on the command line, the variables are preceded by a dollar sign.

Table 10: Overview of all environment variables

Variable name	Contents
`__BLDDEVICE`	The sub-project of the device. The sub-project generally consists of a string without spaces and it stands for the hardware model of the current device.
`__DEVICE`	The type of the device, for example as displayed in LANconfig or on the device type label.
`__FWBUILD`	The build number of the firmware currently used in the device. The build number is a four-digit number
`__FWVERSION`	The version number of the firmware currently used in the device, in the form 'x.yy'. The firmware version consists of the major release before the dot and the minor release after it.
`__LDRBUILD`	The build number of the firmware currently operating in the device. The build number is a four-digit number
`__LDRVERSION`	The version number of the loader currently installed in the device, in the form 'x.yy'. The loader version consists of the major release before the dot and the minor release after it.
`__MACADDRESS`	The type of the device, given as a 12-digit string of hexadecimal values with lowercase letters and no separators.
`__SERIALNO`	The device serial number.
`__SYSNAME`	The system name of the device.

Use the following commands in the CLI to display or modify environment variables:

- `printenv`: Displays all environment variables and their current values. If you have set one or more environment variables with the command `setenv`, the output of the command `printenv` shows the user-defined value at the top and the default value below it.
- `echo $__device`: Displays the current values of a single environment variable, in this example the value for the variable '__DEVICE'.
- `setenv __device MeinWert`: Sets the value of an environment variable to the desired value.
- `unsetenv __device`: Sets the value of an environment variable to the default value.

Keyboard shortcuts for the command line

The following shortcuts can be used to edit the commands on the command line. The “ESC key sequences” show (for comparison) the shortcuts used on typical VT100/ANSI terminals:

Table 11: Overview of CLI keyboard shortcuts

Shortcut	Esc key sequences	Description
Up arrow	ESC [A	In the list of commands last run, jumps one position up (in the direction of older commands).
Down arrow	ESC [B	In the list of commands last run, jumps one position down (in the direction of newer commands).
Right arrow	Ctrl-F ESC [C	Moves the insert cursor one position to the right.
Left arrow	Ctrl-B ESC [D	Moves the insert cursor one position to the left.

Shortcut	Esc key sequences	Description
Home or Pos1	Ctrl-A ESC [A ESC [1~ (	Moves the insert cursor to the first character in the line.
Close	Ctrl-E ESC [F ESC OF ESC [4~	Moves the insert cursor to the last character in the line.
Ins	ESC [ESC [2~	Switches between input and overwrite modes.
Del	Ctrl-D ESC <BS> ESC [3~	Deletes the character at the current position of the insert cursor or ends the Telnet session if the line is blank.
erase	<BS><DEL>	Deletes the next character to the left of the insert cursor.
erase-bol	Ctrl-U	Deletes all characters to the left of the insert cursor.
erase-eol	Ctrl-K	Deletes all characters to the right of the insert cursor.
Tabulator		Completes the input from the current position of the insert cursor for a command or path of the LCOS menu structure: **1.** If there is only one possibility of completing the command/path, this is accepted by the line. **2.** If there is more than one possibility of completing the command/path, this is indicated by an audible sound when pressing the Tab key. Pressing the Tab key again displays a list of all possibilities to complete the entry. Then enter e.g. another letter, to allow unambiguous completion of the input. **3.** If there is no possibility of completing the command/path, this is indicated by an audible sound when pressing the Tab key. No further actions are run. Further information on the special features of the Tab key for scripts can be found separately in the section *Tab command when scripting* on page 57,

Tab command when scripting

When working with scripts, the `tab` command enables the desired columns for the subsequent `set` command.

When you perform the configuration with a command line tool, you generally supplement the set command with the values for the columns of the table.

For example, you set the values for the performance settings of a WLAN interface as follows:

```
> cd /Setup/Interfaces/WLAN/Performance
> set ?

Possible Entries for columns in Performance:
[1][Ifc]                : WLAN-1 (1)
[5][QoS]                : No (0), Yes (1)
[2][Tx-Bursting]        : 5 Chars from: 1234567890

> set WLAN-1 Yes *
```

In this example the Performance table has three columns:

- Ifc, the desired interface
- Enable or disable QoS
- The desired value for TX bursting

With the command `set WLAN-1 Yes *` you enable the QoS function for WLAN-1, and you leave the value for TX bursting unchanged with the asterisk (*).

Working with the `set` command in this way is adequate for tables with only a few columns. However, tables with many columns can pose a major challenge. For example, the table under **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Transmission** contains 22 entries:

```
> cd /Setup/Interfaces/WLAN/Transmission
> set ?

Possible Entries for columns in Transmission:
[1][Ifc]              : WLAN-1 (1), WLAN-1-2 (16), WLAN-1-3 (17), WLAN-1-4 (18), WLAN-1-5
 (19), WLAN-1-6 (20), WLAN-1-7 (21), WLAN-1-8 (22)
[2][Packet-Size]        : 5 Chars from: 1234567890
[3][Min-Tx-Rate]        : Auto (0), 1M (1), 2M (2), 5.5M (4), 11M (6), 6M (8), 9M (9), 12M
 (10), 18M (11), 24M (12), 36M (13), 48M (14), 54M (15)
[9][Max-Tx-Rate]        : Auto (0), 1M (1), 2M (2), 5.5M (4), 11M (6), 6M (8), 9M (9), 12M
 (10), 18M (11), 24M (12), 36M (13), 48M (14), 54M (15)
[4][Basic-Rate]         : 1M (1), 2M (2), 5.5M (4), 11M (6), 6M (8), 9M (9), 12M (10), 18M
 (11), 24M (12), 36M (13), 48M (14), 54M (15)
[19][EAPOL-Rate]         : Like-Data (0), 1M (1), 2M (2), 5.5M (4), 11M (6), 6M (8), 9M
(9), 12M (10), 18M (11), 24M (12), 36M (13), 48M (14), 54M (15), HT-1-6.5M (28), HT-1-13M
 (29), HT-1-19.5M (30),
HT-1-26M (31), HT-1-39M (32), HT-1-52M (33), HT-1-58.5M (34), HT-1-65M (35), HT-2-13M (36),
 HT-2-26M (37), HT-2-39M (38), HT-2-52M (39), HT-2-78M (40), HT-2-104M (41), HT-2-117M
(42), HT-2-130M (43)
[12][Hard-Retries]      : 3 Chars from: 1234567890
[11][Soft-Retries]      : 3 Chars from: 1234567890
[7][11b-Preamble]       : Auto (0), Long (1)
[16][Min-HT-MCS]        : Auto (0), MCS-0/8 (1), MCS-1/9 (2), MCS-2/10 (3), MCS-3/11 (4),
 MCS-4/12 (5), MCS-5/13 (6), MCS-6/14 (7), MCS-7/15 (8)
[17][Max-HT-MCS]        : Auto (0), MCS-0/8 (1), MCS-1/9 (2), MCS-2/10 (3), MCS-3/11 (4),
 MCS-4/12 (5), MCS-5/13 (6), MCS-6/14 (7), MCS-7/15 (8)
[23][Use-STBC]          : No (0), Yes (1)
[24][Use-LDPC]          : No (0), Yes (1)
[13][Short-Guard-Interval]  : Auto (0), No (1)
[18][Min-Spatial-Streams] : Auto (0), One (1), Two (2), Three (3)
[14][Max-Spatial-Streams] : Auto (0), One (1), Two (2), Three (3)
[15][Send-Aggregates]   : No (0), Yes (1)
[22][Receive-Aggregates]: No (0), Yes (1)
[20][Max-Aggr.-Packet-Count]    : 2 Chars from: 1234567890
[6][RTS-Threshold]      : 5 Chars from: 1234567890
[10][Min-Frag-Len]      : 5 Chars from: 1234567890
[21][ProbeRsp-Retries]  : 3 Chars from: 1234567890
```

Use the following command to set the short guard interval in the transmission table for the WLAN-1-3 interface to No:

```
> set WLAN-1-3 * * * * * * * * * * * * No
```

The asterisks for the values after the column for the short guard interval are unnecessary in this example, as the columns will be ignored when setting the new values.

As an alternative to this rather confusing and error-prone notation, you can use the `tab` command as the first step to determine which columns are changed with the subsequent `set` command:

```
> tab Ifc short guard-Interval
> set WLAN-1-3 No
```

The `tab` command also makes it possible to change the order of the columns. The following example for the WLAN-1-3 interface sets the value for the short guard interval to `No` and the value for Use-LDPC to `Yes`, although the corresponding columns in the table are displayed in a different order:

```
> tab Ifc short guard-Interval Use-LDPC
> set WLAN-1-3 No Yes
```

The tables may only contain only a selection of the columns, depending on the hardware model. The `tab` command ignores columns which do not exist for that device. This gives you the option to develop unified scripts

for different hardware models. The `tab` instructions in the scripts reference the maximum number of required columns. Depending on the model, the script only performs the `set` instructions for the existing columns.

You can also abbreviate the `tab`command with curly brackets. Use the following command to set the short guard interval in the transmission table for the WLAN-1-3 interface to No:

```
> set WLAN-1-3 {short-guard} No
```

The curly brackets also enable you to change the order of the columns. The following example for the WLAN-1-3 interface sets the value for the short guard interval to `No` and the value for Use-LDPC to `Yes`, although the corresponding columns in the table are displayed in a different order:

```
> set WLAN-1-3 {Short-Guard-Interval} No {Use-LDPC} Yes
```

Function keys for the command line

The function keys (the F keys on the keyboard) allow users to save frequently used command sequences and to call them easily from the command line.

This function is configured in the Setup menu under **Config** > **Function-Keys**. Use thedrop-down menu under **Key** to select one of the function keys F1 to F12 and, under **Mapping**, enter the command sequence just as you would on the command line. You can enter any of the commands/shortcuts possible on the LCOS command line.

Special features of the caret character

When using the caret character (^) in your commands, be aware that this is also used to map special control commands with ASCII values below 32:

- ^A stands for Ctrl-A (ASCII 1)
- ^Z stands for Ctrl-Z (ASCII 26)
- ^[stands for Escape (ASCII 27)
- ^^ A double caret symbol stands for the caret symbol itself.

If a caret symbol is entered in a dialog field or editor followed directly by another character, the operating system may possibly interpret this sequence as another special character. By entering `caret + A`, the Windows operating system outputs an Â. To enter the caret character itself, enter a space in front of the subsequent characters. The sequence ^A is thus formed from `caret character + space + A`.

2.2.4 SNMP management program

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) enables devices on a network to be monitored and configured from a central instance. Since its initial release in 1988, it has continued to evolve to meet the needs of increasingly complex network infrastructures and the demands for user-friendliness, security and flexibility.

LCOS supports the following SNMP versions:

- SNMPv1
- SNMPv2c
- SNMPv3

Along with the LCMS tools (LANCOM Management System), there are a range of configuration and management programs that you can use to monitor or control network components that are equipped with an SNMP agent, including routers, switches, printers, firewalls, and others. These programs include commercial products, but also numerous applications available on an open-source, freeware or shareware basis.

The MIB (Management Information Base) file of the device, which is required by SNMP programs, can be conveniently generated with WEBconfig (see *Retrieving the SNMP device MIB* on page 35) or on the command-line console using the command `readmib`.

2.3 LANCOM Layer 2 Management protocol (LL2M)

2.3.1 Introduction

A basic pre-requisite for all methods device configuration is for an IP connection to exist between the configuration computer and the device. No matter whether LANconfig, WEBconfig or Telnet is used; no configuration commands can be sent to the device without an IP connection. In the event of erroneous configuration of the TCP/IP settings or VLAN parameters, this IP connection may be impossible to establish. The only option in this case is to access the device via the serial configuration interface, which however is not available on all devices, or to reset the device to its factory settings. However, both options require physical access to the device—this may not always be the case for the concealed installation of access points and can represent considerable overhead for larger-scale installations.

The **LANCOM Layer 2 Management Protocol (LL2M)** is used to also enable configuration access to a device even without an IP connection. All this protocol requires is a connection on layer 2 (i.e. via Ethernet directly or via layer-2 switches) to establish a configuration session. LL2M connections are supported on LAN or WLAN connections, but not via WAN. Connections via LL2M are password protected and are resistant to replay attacks.

LL2M establishes a client-server structure for this purpose: The LL2M client sends requests or commands to the LL2M server, which then responds to the requests or runs the commands. The LL2M client is integrated into LCOS and is run from the command line. The LL2M server is also integrated into LCOS and is usually only enabled for a brief period after device power-on. In this time frame, an administrator can use the LL2M client to perform changes to the configuration of the device running the LL2M server.

2.3.2 Configuring the LL2M server

Activation and configuration of the LL2M server is done exclusively via the setup menu of a device. The following steps show you which settings are required:

1. In WEBconfig or in a terminal program, switch to the menu item `Setup/Config/LL2M`.
2. Set the parameter **Operating** to **Yes**.
3. Set the **Time limit** in seconds for an LL2M client to reach the LL2M server after booting/powering up the device. The LL2M server is disabled automatically after expiry of the time limit. The value '0' disables the time limit. The LL2M server stays permanently enabled in this state.

2.3.3 Commands for the LL2M client

An encrypted tunnel is set up for every LL2M command to protect the transmitted log-in information. To use the integrated LL2M client, start a terminal session on a device that has local access to the LL2M server via the available physical medium (LAN, WLAN). The following commands can be used to contact the LL2M server in this console session:

You must have root rights on the LL2M server to run commands on the LL2M client.

`LL2Mdetect`

The LL2M client uses this command to send a SYSINFO request to the LL2M server. The server then sends its system information, such as hardware and serial number, back to the client for display. The LL2Mdetect command can be restricted with the following parameters:

`-a <MAC-address>`

Restricts the command to those devices with the specified MAC address only. Enter the MAC address in the format `00a057010203`, `00-a0-57-01-02-03` or `00:a0:57:01:02:03`.

If no MAC limitations are set, the "detect" is sent as a multicast (or alternatively using `-b` as a broadcast) to all LL2M-compatible devices. To contact groups of MAC addresses, `*` and `x` can be used as wildcards in individual MAC address positions, e.g., `00-a0-57-xx-xx-xx` for all devices' MAC addresses.

In a command line with multiple parameters, the final parameter **must** be `-a`. A different order is not allowed.

`-b`

Explicitly sends the LL2Mdetect request as a broadcast and not as a multicast.

`-f <Version>`

Restricts the command to those devices with the corresponding firmware version only.

`-r <Hardware-Release>`

Restricts the command to those devices with the corresponding hardware release only.

`-s <Serial number>`

Restricts the command to those devices with the corresponding serial number only.

`-t <Hardware-Type>`

Restricts the command to those devices of the corresponding hardware type only.

`-v <VLAN-ID>`

Only sends the LL2Mdetect request on the VLAN specified. If no VLAN ID is specified, the VLAN ID of the first defined IP network is used.

The command `ll2mdetect -r A` sends a SYSINFO request to all devices of the hardware release "A". The response from the LL2M server then contains the following information:

- Device name
- Device type
- Serial number
- MAC address
- Hardware release
- Firmware version with date

LL2Mexec

The LL2M client uses this command to send a single-line command to run on the LL2M server. Multiple commands can be combined in one LL2M command by using semicolons as separators. Depending on the command, the actions are run on the remote device and the responses from the remote device are sent to the LL2M client for display. The LL2Mexec command conforms to the following syntax:

```
ll2mexec <User>[:<Password>]@<MAC address>
```

The LL2Mexec command can be restricted with the following parameters:

`-i <WLAN-Interface>`

Only sends the LL2Mexec command only on the specified WLAN interface.

`-v <VLAN-ID>`

Only sends the LL2Mexec command on the VLAN specified. If no VLAN ID is specified, the VLAN ID of the first defined IP network is used.

For example, the command line `ll2mexec root@00a057010203 set /setup/name MyDevice` logs in the LL2M client as "root" on the LL2M server with the MAC address "00a057010203". Since the password was not included, the device first looks for the corresponding username in the local database and automatically uses the

password for this user. If the username is also not included, the login data of the currently registered user for the CLI session is used. Then the LL2M client sets the name of the remote device to the value 'MyDevice'.

2.4 Saving and loading device-configuration and script files

A device configuration file contains all of its settings. Script files are useful for managing the settings of a device automatically. To protect of these files against unauthorized access or transmission errors, it is possible to export them from or upload them to the device in an encrypted state and with a checksum.

There are three different file types:

- No checksum, no encryption: A text file with content readable by a text editor.
- Checksum: The text file contains information about the checksum and the hash algorithm for calculating this checksum. The contents of this text file is readable with a simple text editor.

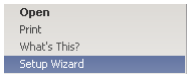
  LANconfig prior to version 9.10 recognizes files with checksums.

- Encryption: Before the file is exported it is encrypted by the device using a password chosen by the administrator. The text file contains information about the encryption algorithm used, as well as a checksum. The contents of the text file is no longer decipherable by a text editor, with the exception of the file header.

  LANconfig prior to version 9.10 cannot read encrypted files.

The file extensions of these files are `.lcf` for configuration files or `.lcs` for script files. The detection of a file that is encrypted and/or contains a checksum relies exclusively on the file header.

The following functions are available from the Windows Explorer context menu:



Open

This menu item opens the configuration in LANconfig.

This item only appears for configuration files with the extension `.lcf`.

What's this

This menu item opens a help text which gives users information about dealing with this file.

Print

This menu item enables you to print the file.

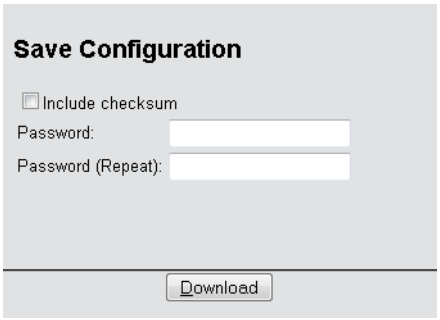
Setup Wizard

This menu item starts the LANconfig Setup Wizard.

This item only appears for configuration files with the extension `.lcf`.

2.4.1 Configuration management with WEBconfig and the console

To export a configuration file from WEBconfig, navigate to the view **File management** > **Save configuration**.



The following options are available:

No entries

By default, all options are disabled. A click on **Download** invokes the dialog for downloading an unencrypted configuration file without a checksum.

Include checksum

A click on **Download** invokes the dialog for downloading an unencrypted configuration file with a checksum.

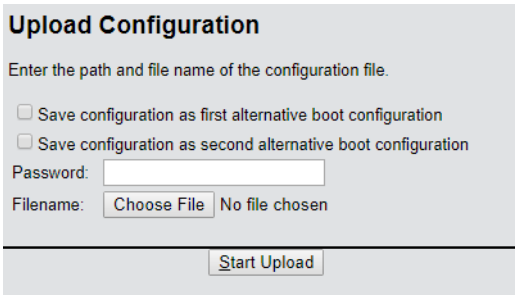
Password

Specify a password if you want to encrypt the configuration file before downloading it.

To save the configuration from the console, use the following parameters:

- `readconfig`: Backs up the configuration without checksum and encryption.
- `readconfig -h`: Adds a checksum to the configuration file.
- `readconfig -s <password>`: Encrypts the configuration file with the use of the specified password.

To upload a configuration file with WEBconfig, navigate to the view **File management** > **Upload configuration**.

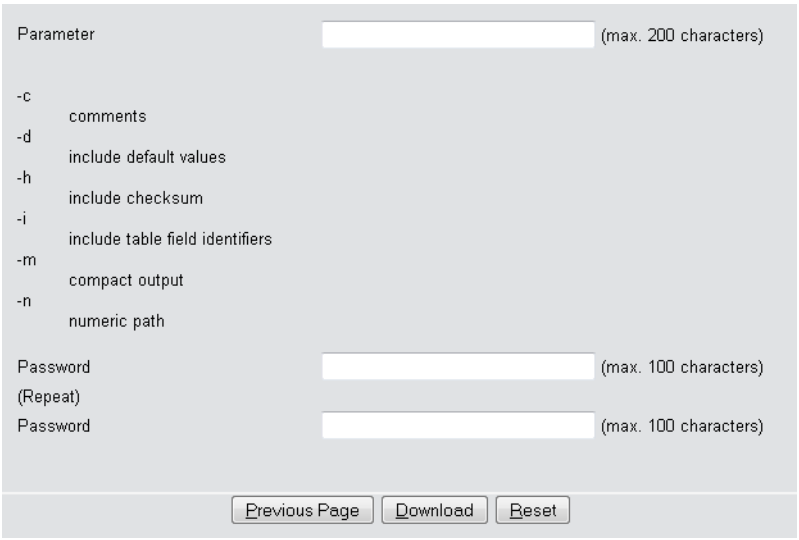


If the configuration file is encrypted, enter the appropriate password and click on **Start upload**.

For more information about alternate boot configurations, see the chapter *Alternative boot config*.

2.4.2 Script management with WEBconfig and the console

To export a script file from WEBconfig, navigate to the view **File management** > **Save configuration script**.



The following options are available:

Parameters

By default, all options are disabled. A click on **Download** invokes the dialog for downloading an unencrypted script file without a checksum.

Password

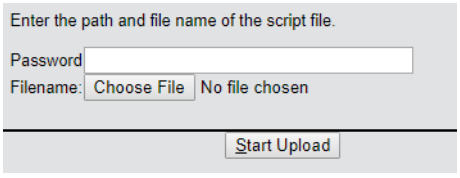
Specify a password if you want to encrypt the script file before downloading it.

To save the script file from the console, the following parameters are available:

- `readscript`: Backs up the configuration without checksum and encryption.
- `readscript -h`: Adds a checksum to the configuration file.
- `readscript -s <password>`: Encrypts the configuration file with the use of the specified password.
- `readscript -o`: Replaces the passwords with a "*" to obfuscate them in the text output.

More information about the parameters, see the chapter *Commands for the console* in the section about `readscript`.

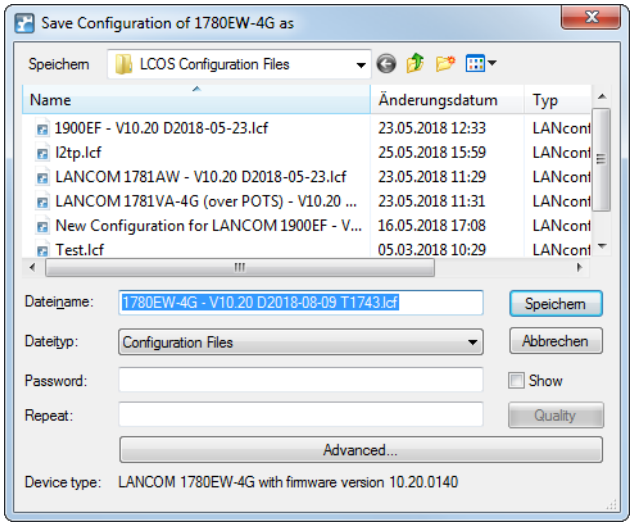
To upload a script file with WEBconfig, navigate to the view **File management** > **Execute configuration script**.



If the script file is encrypted, enter the appropriate password and click on **Start upload**.

2.4.3 Configuration management with LANconfig

You can use LANconfig to save a configuration file by right-clicking on the corresponding device in the list of devices. From the context dialog, open the save dialog under **Configuration management** > **Save as file**.



The following entries are available:

File name

LANconfig composes the file name from various pieces of information (including version number, date and time). Change the name to suit your needs.

File type

Choose whether this is a configuration file or something else.

Password

Specify a password if you want to encrypt the configuration file before downloading it.

Under **Advanced** you can set optional parameters that are processed by the device when a configuration file is loaded automatically (auto-load). Use this to customize the configuration.

You can use LANconfig to upload a configuration file to the device by right-clicking on the device where the configuration is to be uploaded. From the context dialog, open the restore dialog under **Configuration management** > **Restore from file**.

Select the required configuration file, enter the password (if applicable) and click **Open** to upload the configuration to the device.

2.5 Alternative boot config

2.5.1 Introduction

The way that a device operates is determined by its configuration. The configuration is defined by the user and stored to a special portion of the flash memory that remains intact even when the device is restarted (configuration memory).

When shipped, the configuration memory is empty because it does not yet have a user-defined configuration. Once in operation, the configuration memory can be deleted again by carrying out a configuration reset. If a device with an

empty configuration memory is restarted or rebooted, the parameter values are taken from a boot configuration containing default values for the respective model.

A configuration is only written to the configuration memory if at least one parameter has been changed. The full configuration is written to the configuration memory. Even if only the device name is changed, current values for all of the parameters available to the device are stored to the user-defined configuration. Values for unchanged parameters are taken from a boot configuration.

The devices can work with three different boot configurations:

Factory settings

These are the default values for the model as shipped. The standard boot configuration is contained in the device's firmware.

Customer-specific standard settings

These are the customer's own default settings for the model in question. These are used when the configuration memory is empty but the factory settings should not be used. This function provides the devices with persistent settings (i.e. remaining available however many times the device is rebooted or reset) that contain customer-specific standard settings for the boot procedure. Customer-specific standard settings are **not** deleted by a configuration reset. Customer-specific standard settings are stored to the first boot memory space.

Rollout configuration

This configuration is useful for large-scale rollout scenarios where multiple devices need a boot configuration that differs from the factory settings. The rollout configuration is activated by pressing the reset key for a particular length of time. The specialized rollout configuration is stored to the second boot memory space.

2.5.2 Using the boot configuration

When started normally, the devices try to use the available configurations in a set order:

1. User-defined configuration (in the configuration memory)
2. Customer-specific standard settings (in the first boot memory space)
3. Factory settings (in firmware)

The customer-specific standard settings are taken automatically and in preference to the factory settings, assuming that the configuration memory is empty.

Special features of the rollout configuration

The rollout configuration is activated with the reset button. The reset button fulfills various functions depending upon how long the button is pressed:

- **Less than 5 seconds**:

  Boot (restart), whereby the user-defined configuration is loaded from the configuration memory. If the user-defined configuration is empty, then the customer-specific standard settings (first memory space) are loaded instead. The loading of the customer-specific standard settings is visible when all LEDs on the device light up briefly in red. Similarly, the factory settings are loaded if the first memory space is empty.

- **Longer than 5 seconds** until the **first time** that all device LEDs light up:

  Configuration reset (deletes the configuration memory) followed by a restart. In this case the customer-specific standard settings (first memory space) are loaded instead. The loading of the customer-specific standard settings is visible when all LEDs on the device light up briefly in red. The factory settings are loaded if the first memory space is empty.

- **Longer than 15 seconds** until the **second time** that all device LEDs light up:

Activating the rollout configuration and deleting the user-defined configuration After restarting, the rollout configuration is started from memory space 2. The loading of the rollout configuration is visible when all LEDs on the device light up twice briefly in red. The factory settings are loaded if the second memory space is empty.

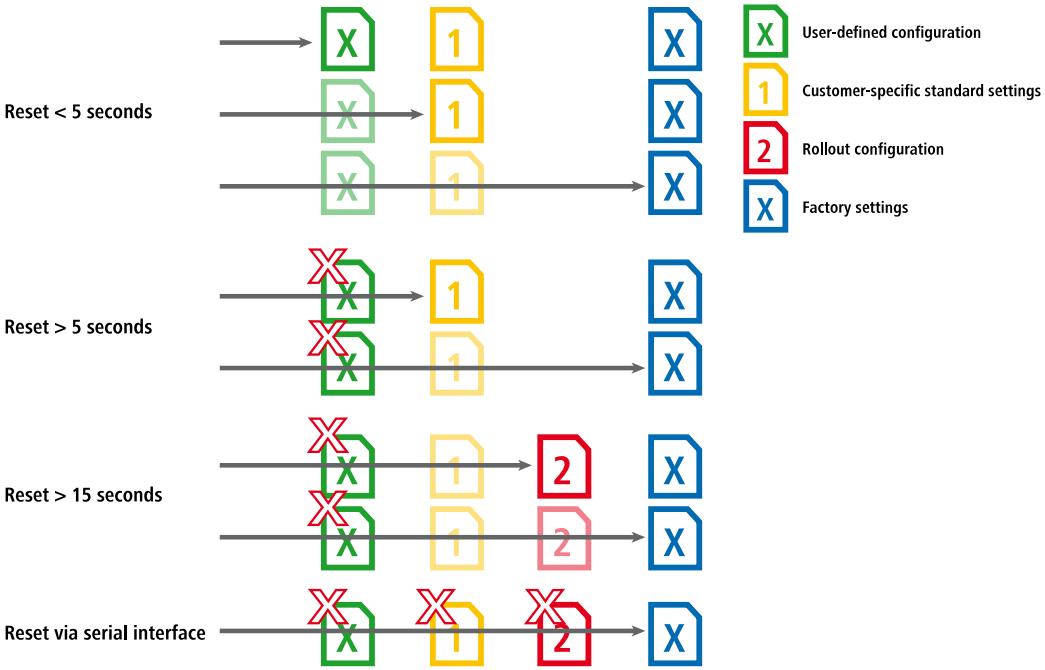
The rollout configuration is activated directly after restarting if the reset button is pressed for more than 15 seconds. The next time the device is restarted, the normal boot sequence applies again automatically, as listed above.

If the reset button has been deactivated in the configuration (set to **Ignore** or **Boot only**), it is impossible to load the rollout configuration.

Examples

The following diagram illustrates which configuration is loaded by the different reset procedures, depending on the status of the device.

- Pressing the reset button for **less than 5 seconds** loads the user-defined configuration. If no user-defined configuration exists, the device returns to the customer-specific standard settings. If these are not available either, the factory settings are loaded.
- Pressing the reset button for **longer than 15 seconds** deletes the custom configuration and loads the rollout configuration. If no rollout configuration exists, the factory settings are loaded.



2.5.3 Storing and uploading the boot configurations

Save

The customer-specific standard settings and the rollout configuration are saved in a compressed format. Using the command line, you can optionally save the current device configuration as your customer-specific standard settings or as a rollout configuration. Use one of the following commands for this:

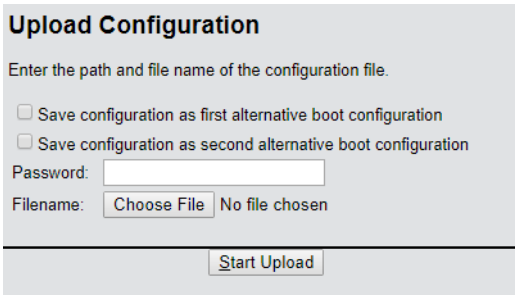
```
bootconfig --savecurrent [1,2,all]
```

```
bootconfig -s [1,2,all]
```

Entering the appropriate number ensures that either the first boot memory space for the customer-specific standard settings is selected, or the second boot memory space for the rollout configuration. The parameter `all` writes the current configuration to both memory spaces at the same time.

Upload

The customer-specific standard settings or the rollout configuration can be uploaded to the device with WEBconfig under **File management** > **Upload configuration**: Here you select the configuration file to be used and you activate the purpose as either customer-specific standard settings (first memory space) and/or rollout configuration. Alternative boot configurations must be available as *.lcf files.



If both memory spaces of the boot configuration are occupied (i.e. with customer-specific standard settings **and** a rollout configuration), then the device cannot be reset to the factory settings by using the reset button. Instead, reset a device as described under *Firmware upload via outband with reset of the configuration* on page 72.

For devices that only allow one boot configuration, the restriction described above does not apply. The reset button always resets these devices to their factory settings.

If the configuration file is encrypted, enter the appropriate password.

2.5.4 Deleting the boot configuration

The alternative and the special boot configurations cannot be deleted with the normal file functions. Instead you use one of the following CLI commands for this:

```
bootconfig --remove [1,2,all]
```

```
bootconfig -r [1,2,all]
```

Selecting the appropriate number ensures that the corresponding boot memory space is selected. The parameter `all` causes both memory spaces to be deleted at once.

2.5.5 Working with certificates

In order for VPN and SSL/TLS to function after a configuration reset, a **standard certificate** can be stored to the device as a **PKCS#12 container**. This standard certificate is only used by the customer-specific standard settings and the rollout configuration.

- If the customer-specific standard settings are loaded, the standard certificate is copied to the normal certificate storage location for VPN and SSL/TLS. This ensures that it remains available even after rebooting.
- If the rollout configuration is loaded, the standard certificate for VPN is used, but it is not copied. This means that in case of a restart (even without a configuration reset) the device has no access to the certificate.

You can upload the standard certificate into the device using either LANconfig or WEBconfig.

2.6 FirmSafe

2.6.1 Introduction

FirmSafe makes it safer to import new software: The firmware on the device is not simply overwritten, but a second firmware is stored in the device in addition (symmetric FirmSafe). This protects your device in case of events such as a power failure or an interrupted connection during the firmware upload.

Only one of the two firmware versions stored in the device can be active at any time. When new firmware is uploaded, the currently inactive firmware version will be overwritten. By selecting the FirmSafe mode you decide which firmware version should be activated after the upload.

2.6.2 Configuration

The firmware-upload mode is set in the Setup menu under **Firmware** > **Mode-Firmsafe**. Three different modes are available. LANconfig provides the options for uploading firmware upload either as an 'immediate' process by 'manual' means (cf. *Firmware upload via LANconfig* on page 70).

- **Immediate**: This option loads the new firmware and activates it immediately. The following situations can result:
  - The startup with the new firmware is successful and the device then operates as intended.
  - After uploading the firmware the device no longer responds. If the device does not automatically fall back to a previous firmware or if it starts with a minimal firmware, you can repeat the upload, for example via LL2M. If an error occurs during the upload, the device automatically activates the previous firmware and restarts.
- **Login**: In this mode, the device only activates the uploaded firmware temporarily in order to prevent problems from a failed upload. After activation, the device waits for a successful login via a terminal program or WEBconfig for the time (in seconds) set in the Setup menu under **Firmware** > **Timeout-Firmsafe**. Only after this login is the firmware activated.

  If the device no longer responds or it is impossible to log in, it automatically loads the previous firmware version and reboots the device with it.
- **Manual**: In this mode, the device only activates the uploaded firmware temporarily in order to prevent problems from a failed upload. The device starts with the new firmware and waits for the time period set under **Firmware** > **Timeout-Firmsafe** until the loaded firmware is manually activated and therefore becomes permanently effective.

  Using LANconfig, activate the new firmware with the menu item **Device** > **Firmware management** > **Activate firmware running in test mode**. In the Setup menu, you activate the firmware under **Firmware** > **Table-Firmsafe**. Using the CLI, enter the command line `set # active`, where '#' stands for the position of the firmware in the FirmSafe table.

  In this case, too, after the timeout has elapsed the device automatically switches back to the previous firmware and restarts.

It is only possible to upload a second firmware if the device has sufficient memory available for two complete firmware versions. Up-to-date firmware versions (with additional software options, if applicable) may take up more than half of the available memory in older hardware models. In this case these device uses the *asymmetric Firmsafe*.

2.6.3 Toggling the active firmware via console command

As of LCOS version 10.12, the current firmware can be switched over to the alternative firmware with a CLI command. The previously inactive firmware is set to "active" and the previously active firmware is set to "inactive". After entering the command, the device automatically executes a restart without further confirmation.

Under **/ Firmware**, enter the command `do switch-firmware`.

The restart is performed automatically.

2.6.4 Asymmetric FirmSafe

The large and growing range of functions in the firmware means that some models are unable to store two complete versions of the firmware at once. These devices benefit from the asymmetric FirmSafe feature.

With asymmetric FirmSafe, the device always contains a "complete version" along with a bare-bones version known as "minimal firmware". The minimal version normally remains unused, but it provides local access to the device after a failed upload of the complete firmware version (e.g. as a result of a power cut during the upload process) in order to load an executable version of the firmware onto the device (via LAN, WLAN, or the config interface).

The minimum firmware **cannot** be configured! Changes to the configuration via LANconfig, WEBconfig or Telnet are not stored to the device. Advanced functions, in particular the remote management via WAN or ISDN, are **not** available as long as the minimal firmware is active. However, the LL2M server is also active in a minimal firmware version and offers access to the device provided it is reachable from an LL2M client over layer 2 (Ethernet).

Switching over to asymmetric FirmSafe

To switch devices to asymmetric FirmSafe, you first load the converter firmware onto the device. This converts the firmware currently **not activated** in the device into a minimal firmware version, creating room for new and more comprehensive firmware. This process only has to be performed once.

You can then load a new, complete firmware version onto the device, which becomes active after a successful upload. The minimal firmware remains in the device to ensure that the device can be accessed.

Firmware upgrade with asymmetric FirmSafe

The subsequent firmware upload automatically overwrites the **active** firmware with new firmware.

2.7 Uploading firmware to the device via a client

Firmware can be uploaded to the device in different ways, for example via LANconfig, WEBconfig or a terminal program. A number of different protocols are available here.

In most cases, uploading or updating the firmware does not change any of the settings in your device (exception: *Upload with reset*). Nevertheless, as a precaution you should create a complete backup of your configuration. You should also have a backup of the previous firmware version in case the update process fails and, for example, the device falls back to a minimum firmware that does not allow Internet access. If you no longer have the corresponding firmware file, look for it under *www.lancom-systems.com*.

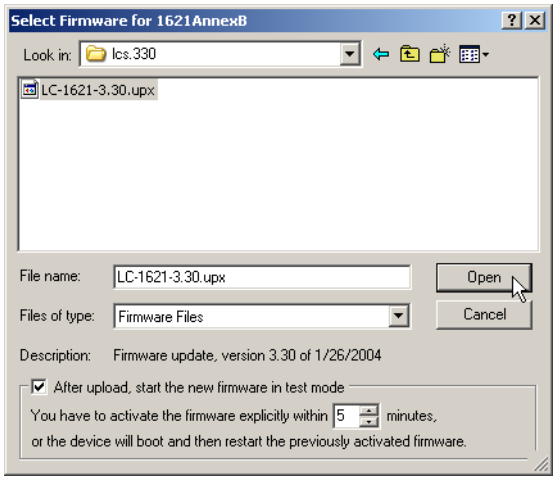
If the newly installed firmware contains parameters that are not available in the current firmware of the device, the missing values are supplemented with the default settings.

2.7.1 Firmware upload via LANconfig

This section describes how to load another firmware version into the device via LANconfig.

1. Select the device in the selection list and click on **Device** > **Firmware management** > **Upload new firmware**.
2. In the dialog box that opens, select the directory where the new version is located and mark the corresponding *.upx file.

LANconfig then displays the type, version and release date of the firmware.



3. Optional: Select whether the device should activate the firmware permanently after loading or initially operate it in a test mode. If you decide to use the test mode, specify a time period after which the device switches back to the previous firmware version if you do not activate the new firmware using the ***Configuration management***.

   This option is not available for devices that use *asymmetric FirmSafe*.

4. Click on **Open** to replace the existing firmware with the selected version.

LANconfig now starts with the firmware upload. You can track the process with the progress bar and log. After a successful upload, LANconfig restarts the device automatically.

2.7.2 Firmware upload via WEBconfig

In WEBconfig, you upload a new firmware version using the *File management* menu. Select the required firmware file and click on **Upload**. Just as with LANconfig, you have the option of uploading the firmware in test mode (see *Firmware upload via LANconfig* on page 70).

2.7.3 Firmware upload by terminal program

This section describes how to load another firmware version into the device with a terminal program. Two alternatives are available here:

- Upload via the serial configuration interface
- Upload via TFTP or SCP

Uploading via the serial connection requires a program that supports the XModem protocol, e.g. Windows HyperTerminal, Telix or the free software Tera Term. Uploading via TFTP or SCP works on a local or external network.

The following section describes a firmware upload via the serial configuration interface using HyperTerminal. Uploading firmware via TFTP or SCP is broadly very similar to any normal file upload. For more information, please see *Loading files directly from/to the device via TFTP, HTTP(S) or SCP* on page 75.

1. Use the serial configuration cable to connect the device to a computer.
2. On the computer, start a serial terminal program such as Hyperterminal.
3. Establish a connection using the following settings and login to the device with your login credentials:
   - Speed in bps: `115200`
   - Data bits: `8`
   - Stopbits: `1`
   - Parity: `None`
   - Flow control: `RTS/CTS` or `RFR/CTS`

4. Change to the **Firmware** menu and use the command `set mode-firmsafe <value>` to set the desired FirmSafe mode, where `<value>` stands for one of the possible modes. If necessary, you can additionally set the time period for the firmware test under `set Timeout-firmsafe`.
   An explanation of the possible modes and the related configuration steps is available in the FirmSafe section *Configuration* on page 69.
5. The device is set to the ready-to-receive state by entering the action command `do firmware-upload`.
6. Start the upload process from your terminal program.
   - In Telix, click the button **Upload**, set **XModem** for the transfer and select the firmware file for upload.
   - In HyperTerminal, click **Transfer** > **Send file**, select the firmware file, set **XModem** as the protocol and start with **OK**.
   - In Tera Term, click **File** > **Transfer** > **XMODEM** > **Send** and select the firmware file for upload.

The firmware upload is now carried out. After a successful firmware upload, the device restarts.

2.7.4 Firmware upload via outband with reset of the configuration

If both memory spaces of the boot configuration are occupied (i.e. with customer-specific standard settings **and** a rollout configuration), then the device cannot be reset to the factory settings by using the reset button. The same applies if the function of the reset button is restricted to **Ignore** or **Boot only** and the configuration password is no longer available. In this case, you can only reset to the factory settings by means of the serial interface (outband).

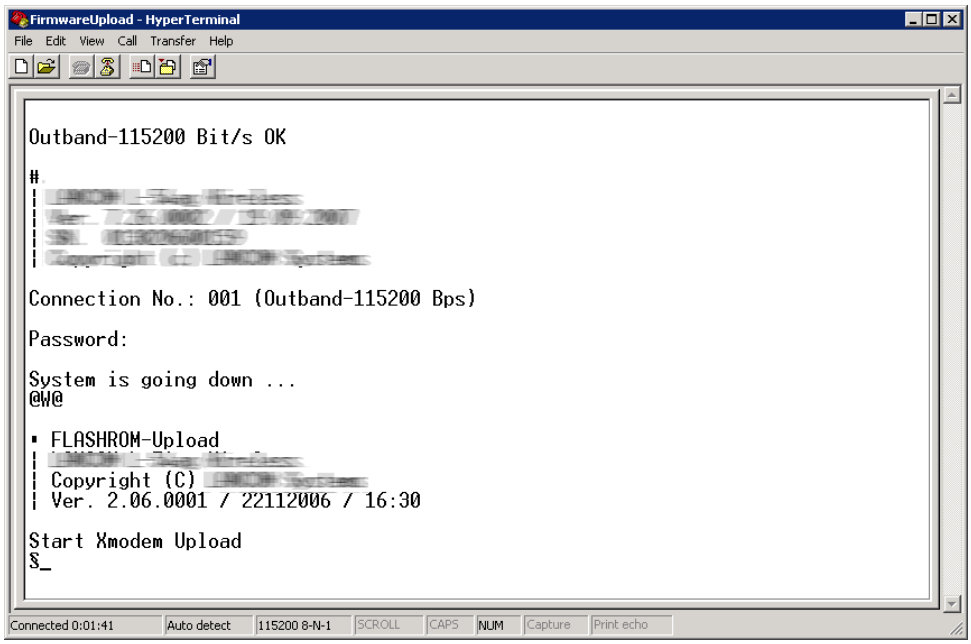
The serial interface is an optional way to upload firmware into the device. Entering the serial number of the device instead of the configuration password results in the device configuration being reset to its factory settings. In this way you can always regain access to the device if it becomes impossible to restore the factory settings in any other way.

This procedure completely deletes the configuration and the *boot configurations* stored on the device! The same applies to files stored in the device, such as any available rollout certificates. For this reason you should only use this option if you have no other way of accessing the device. The configuration and boot configuration are deleted even if the firmware upload is interrupted.

The following example application describes how to use HyperTerminal to upload firmware via the serial interface while resetting the configuration.

1. Use the serial configuration cable to connect the device to a computer.
2. On the computer, start a serial terminal program such as Hyperterminal: Windows HyperTerminal.
3. Set up a connection with the following settings:
   - Speed in bps: `115200`
   - Data bits: `8`
   - Stopbits: `1`
   - Parity: `None`
   - Flow control: `RTS/CTS` or `RFR/CTS`
4. In the terminal program's welcome screen, press the Return key until the request to enter the password appears.

5. Enter the serial number that is displayed under the firmware version and press the Return key again. The system then shuts down and is ready to receive the firmware upload.



6. In HyperTerminal, click **Transfer** > **Send file**, select the firmware file, set **XModem** as the protocol and start with **OK**.

The firmware upload is now carried out. After a successful firmware upload, the device restarts.

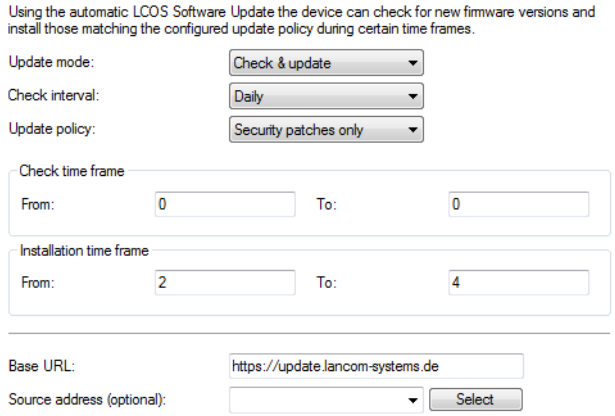
2.8 LANCOM Auto Updater

The LANCOM Auto Updater allows the automatic updating of on-site LANCOM devices without further user intervention. LANCOM devices can search for new software updates, and download and install them without any user interaction. You can choose whether to install security updates, release updates, or all updates automatically. If you choose not to use automatic updates, the feature can still be used to check for the availability of new updates.

The LANCOM Auto Updater contacts the LANCOM update server to check for updates and firmware downloads. Communication is based on HTTPS. When contacting the server, the LANCOM device uses previously installed TLS certificates for validation. Furthermore, the firmware files for current LANCOM devices are signed. The LANCOM Auto Updater validates this signature before uploading any firmware.

2.8.1 Configuring the Auto Updater

The configuration for the LANCOM Auto Updater in LANconfig is located under **Management** > **Software update**.



Update mode

Set the operating mode here. The following modes are supported:

Check & update

- The Auto Updater regularly checks the update server for new updates.
- The update server uses the **update policy** to find the most suitable update, it sets the time to download and install the update within a time frame configured by the user, and it sends the update to the Auto Updater.
- The firmware is installed in test mode. After installation, the Auto Updater performs a connection check. Here, the device checks whether a connection can be established to the update server to ensure that Internet access is still available. These attempts continue for several minutes to allow for VDSL synchronization or WWAN connection setup. If the update server is contacted successfully, the test mode terminates and the firmware goes into regular operation. If the update server cannot be contacted, then Internet access is assumed to be impossible and the second (i.e. the previously active) firmware will be started again.

Check

- The Auto Updater regularly checks the update server for new updates.
- The availability of a new update is signaled to the user in the LCOS menu tree and via syslog.
- Users can manually use the Auto Updater to initiate the latest available update.

A manual update is started with the following entry on the command line:

```
do /setup/Automatic-Firmware-Update/Update-Firmware-Now
```

Manual

- The Auto Updater only checks for new updates when prompted by the user.
- Users can manually use the Auto Updater to initiate the latest available update.

A manual update is started with the following entry on the command line:

```
do /setup/Automatic-Firmware-Update/Update-Firmware-Now
```

Check interval

This decides whether checks for an available update are performed daily or weekly.

Update policy

Latest version

Always the newest version, irrespective of the release version. Example: 10.20 Rel is installed; an update to 10.20 RU1 is performed, but also to 10.30 Rel. Updates always go to the latest version, but not back to a previous release.

Current version

The latest RU/SU/PR within a release. Example: 10.20 Rel is installed; an update to 10.20 RU1 is performed, but not to 10.30 Rel.

Security patches only

The latest SU within a release. Example: 10.20 Rel is installed; an update to 10.20 SU1 is performed, but not to 10.20 RU2.

Latest version w/o release

The newest RU/SU/PR, irrespective of the release version. Updates are only performed if a RU is available. Example: Any version of 10.20 is installed; an update to 10.30 RU1 is performed, but not to 10.30 Rel.

Check time frame

Set the time frame for checking and downloading new updates here. The daily start and end time for this time frame can be set to the hour. The default value for both of these is 0, so checks for updates and downloads can be started at any time of day. The Auto Updater schedules a random time for update checks and downloads within the configured time frame.

Installation time frame

Set the time frame for update installations here. The daily start and end time for this time frame can be set to the hour. The default setting specifies a time frame between 2:00 AM and 4:00 AM. If an update is found, it will be installed during this time and the device will be restarted to activate the update. The Auto Updater schedules a random time for the installation within the configured time frame.

Base URL

Specifies the URL of the server that provides the latest firmware versions.

Source address

A routing tag can be set automatically by specifying a loopback address.

2.9 Loading files directly from/to the device via TFTP, HTTP(S) or SCP

Various applications, such as loading configurations, firmware versions, scripts, and verifying server identity with certificates, require the relevant files to be stored to the device. You can to upload these files to the device with LANconfig or WEBconfig.

As an alternative you can use the command line to load the corresponding files directly into the device using TFTP, HTTP(S) or SCP. This process mainly simplifies device administration in larger installations that rely on regular updates to the firmware and/or configurations. You can choose whether to transfer a file from a computer to the device by means of a client, or to use the command line to instruct the device itself to load the file from a server.

2.9.1 Loading a file via a TFTP client

TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) is a very simple file transfer protocol for reading or writing files. It enables the easy transfer of files to other devices over the network. Other features such as those of the much more powerful FTP (e.g. rights assignment via chmod, display of existing files, user authentication) are not implemented.

LANconfig gives you the option to communicate with the device via TFTP. However, operating it is no different from using the other communication protocols. This chapter addresses alternative TFTP programs available for device communication.

Many Windows and Linux operating systems feature a command-line based TFTP client by default. In Windows 7 and later, however, the TFTP client needs to be activated first. Other clients are available, such as the free TFTP client-server application Tftpd32. Set the port to the default value `69`. The block size for data packets can be found in the parameter **Bytes-per-hashmark** in the setup menu of the device (normally `8192`).

Syntax

The syntax of the TFTP call is dependent on the operating system and program used. For the Windows-native TFTP client, for example, the syntax is as follows:

```
tftp [-i] <Host> get|put <LocalFile|Command> <RemoteFile|Command>
```

The ASCII format is preconfigured on many TFTP clients. Binary transmission therefore usually needs to be selected explicitly for the transfer of binary data (e.g. a firmware file). Under Windows this is done with the parameter `-i`.

If the device is password-protected, user name and password must be included in the TFTP command. In TFTP, the user name and password are coded in the source (TFTP read request) or target file names (TFTP write request). The file name is then composed either of the root password and the command to be executed (for supervisors), or of the combination of user name, password and then the command (for local administrators). A command sent by TFTP therefore resembles the following:

- `<Root-Password> <Command>`
- `<Username>:<Password>@<Command>`

Commands can appear as follows:

- `readmib`: Command for importing a device MIB file (SNMP management information base).
- `readconfig`: Command for reading a configuration file.
- `writeconfig`: Command for importing a configuration file.
- `writeflash`: Command for importing a firmware file.

The rights to use TFTP can be restricted for different types of administrators, see *Managing rights for different administrators* on page 88.

Example applications

- The command `writeflash` loads a firmware file into the device, and in the following example `10.0.0.1` stands for the IP address of the device and `LC-L451-8.82.0083.upx` for the file to be uploaded:

  ```
  tftp -i 10.0.0.1 put LC-L451-8.82.0083.upx writeflash
  ```

  ```
  tftp -i 10.0.0.1 put LC-L451-8.82.0083.upx MyAdmin:MyPasswd@writeflash
  ```

- Use the command `readmib` to read our the device MIB:

  ```
  tftp 10.0.0.1 get readmib device.mib
  ```

- Use the command `readconfig` to read the configuration from the device using access credentials:

  ```
  tftp 10.0.0.1 get root:MyPasswd@readconfig device.lcf
  ```

- Use the command `writeconfig` to write the configuration to the device using access credentials:

  ```
  tftp 10.0.0.1 put device.lcf root:MyPasswd@writeconfig
  ```

The *settings made for FirmSafe* also apply to firmware uploads via TFTP.

Troubleshooting

If you are unable to connect to the device, your operating system's firewall may be blocking TFTP connections. If you have changed the firewall settings in the device, check here, too, that connections via TFTP are allowed. You can also check to see whether you have allowed access to the device from the network type that is being used for the upload (LANconfig settings are located under **Management** > **Admin** > **Access rights**).

2.9.2 Loading a file via an SCP client

SCP (Secure Copy Protocol) is a protocol for the secure transfer of data between two computers in a network. Administrators often use SCP to exchange data between servers or between servers and workstations. Data can be exchanged between a machine and the device by means of the SCP protocol and a suitable tool such as PSCP (the PuTTY Secure Copy client) under Windows, or Konqueror and Midnight Commander under Linux.

Syntax

The syntax of the SCP call depends on the program being used. For PSCP, the syntax on the Windows CLI is:

- **Sending files**

```
pscp.exe -scp [-pw <Password>] <LocalFile> <User>@<IP-Address>:target
```

- **Receiving files**

```
pscp.exe -scp [-pw <Password>] <User>@<IP-Address>:target <LocalFile>
```

The `target` on the remote device is inserted after a colon following the IP address. The target is either the name of a mount point (see *Mount points for SCP file transfer* on page 77) in the internal file system of the device, or it is `config` or `firmware`. The target `firmware` is reserved exclusively for importing firmware updates, while `config` is used for importing and exporting configuration files and scripts.

Mount points for SCP file transfer

The following table shows which files you can read via the mount points using SCP from the device and which ones you can write to it:

Table 12: Overview of mount points for SCP file transfer

Mount point	Read	Write	Description
ssl_cert	Yes	Yes	SSL – certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
ssl_privkey	No	Yes	SSL – private key (*.key [BASE64 unencrypted])
ssl_rootcert	Yes	Yes	SSL – root CA certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
ssl_pkcs12	No	Yes	SSL – container as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
ssh_rsakey	No	Yes	SSL – RSA key (*.key [BASE64 unencrypted])
ssh_dsakey	No	Yes	SSL – DSA key (*.key [BASE64 unencrypted])
ssh_authkeys	No	Yes	SSH – accepted public key
vpn_rootcert	Yes	Yes	VPN – root CA certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
vpn_devcert	Yes	Yes	VPN – device certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
vpn_devprivkey	No	Yes	VPN – private device key (*.key [BASE64 unencrypted])
vpn_pkcs12	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN1) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_pkcs12_2	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN2) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_pkcs12_3	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN3) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_pkcs12_4	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN4) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)

Mount point	Read	Write	Description
vpn_pkcs12_5	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN5) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_pkcs12_6	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN6) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_pkcs12_7	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN7) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_pkcs12_8	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN8) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_pkcs12_9	No	Yes	VPN – container (VPN9) as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
vpn_add_cas	No	Yes	VPN – add additional CA certificates (*.pfx, *.p12, *.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
eaptls_rootcert	Yes	Yes	EAP/TLS – root CA certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
eaptls_devcert	Yes	Yes	EAP/TLS – device certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
eaptls_privkey	No	Yes	EAP/TLS – private device key (*.key [BASE64 unencrypted])
eaptls_pkcs12	No	Yes	EAP/TLS – container as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
radsec_rootcert	Yes	Yes	RADSEC – root CA certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
radsec_devcert	Yes	Yes	RADSEC – device certificate (*.pem, *.crt. *.cer [BASE64])
radsec_privkey	No	Yes	RADSEC – private device key (*.key [BASE64 unencrypted])
radsec_pkcs12	No	Yes	RADSEC – container as PKCS#12 file (*.pfx, *.p12)
radiuss_accnt_total	Yes	Yes	RADIUS server – summary accounting (*.csv)
scep_cert_list	Yes	Yes	SCEP-CA – certificate list
scep_cert_serial	Yes	Yes	SCEP-CA – serial number
scep_ca_backup	Yes	No	Backup for SCEP-CA – PKCS12 container
scep_ra_backup	Yes	No	Backup for SCEP-RA – PKCS12 container
scep_ca_pkcs12	No	Yes	SCEP-CA – PKCS12 container
scep_ra_pkcs12	No	Yes	SCEP-RA – PKCS12 container
pbspot_template_welcome	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – welcome page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_login	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – login page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_error	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – error page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_start	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – home page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_status	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – status page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_logoff	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – logoff page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_help	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – help page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_noproxy	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – no proxy page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_voucher	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – voucher page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_template_agb	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – GTC page (*.html, *.htm)
pbspot_formhdrimg	Yes	Yes	Public Spot – header image pages (*.gif, *.png, *.jpeg)
WLC_Script_1.lcs	Yes	Yes	CAPWAP – WLC_Script_1.lcs
WLC_Script_2.lcs	Yes	Yes	CAPWAP – WLC_Script_2.lcs
WLC_Script_3.lcs	Yes	Yes	CAPWAP – WLC_Script_3.lcs
default_pkcs12	No	Yes	
rollout_wizard	No	Yes	
rollout_template	No	Yes	

Mount point	Read	Write	Description
rollout_logo	No	Yes	
hip_cert_0	No	Yes	
issue	Yes	Yes	Text for display after command-line login (e.g.ASCII logos)

Example applications

- For example, to transfer a file from your computer to the device, use a command as follows:

  ```
  C:\>pscp.exe -scp -pw MyPwd c:\path\myfile.ext root@10.0.0.1:target
  ```

  For example, to transfer a file from the device to your computer, change the order of source and destination:

  ```
  C:\>pscp.exe -scp -pw MyPwd root@10.0.0.1:target c:\path\myfile.ext
  ```

  Set the `target` as the name of a mount point.

- For example, to save the configuration from the device on your machine under the name `config.lcs`, use a command as follows:

  ```
  C:\>pscp.exe -scp -pw MyPwd root@10.0.0.1:config c:\config.lcs
  ```

- For example, to upload new firmware from your computer to the device, use a command as follows:

  ```
  C:\>pscp.exe -scp -pw MyPwd  c:\firmware.upx root@10.0.0.1:firmware
  ```

2.9.3 File download from a TFTP or HTTP(S) server

In addition to being able to use another machine to upload firmware, a configuration file, or a configuration script to the device, the device itself can also upload/download files itself from an HTTPS(S) or TFTP server in the local network or the Internet. For this purpose, the corresponding files are stored on an HTTPS(S) or TFTP server and, after a user has logged-in to the device, they are accessed by using the LCOS commands listed below.

A TFTP server is identical to an FTP server in terms of functionality, but uses a different protocol for data transmission. When using an HTTPS server, a certificate can be stored on the device which can be used to check the identity of the server later. In practice it is far simpler to provide a central HTTP(S) server with a unique Internet address (URI) than a comparable TFTP server, and, for example, an existing Web server can be modified to offer this function.

The different file types can then be called from this type of server with the following commands:

- `LoadConfig`: Uploads a configuration file (with file extension *.lcf) into the device.
- `LoadFirmware`: Uploads a firmware file (with file extension *.upx) into the device.
- `LoadScript`: Uploads a script file (file extension *.lcs) to the device, e.g., with partial configurations.
- `LoadFile`: Uploads various types of file to the device.

The `LoadFile` command only supports the protocols HTTP and HTTPS.

Syntax

The precise syntax of the load commands depends on which protocol is used (HTTP[S] or TFTP). Generally speaking, a call always consists of the command, applicable parameters, and the URL which references the file to be loaded. You can save this URL in the setup menu under **Autoload** > **Network** > **...** > **URL**. This allows you to upload firmware, configurations or script files simply by entering the command.

Connections to an HTTP(S) server

When using HTTP(S), the command can be specified in the usual URL notation. Set the protocol to either `http` or `https`:

```
<Command> <Parameter> <Protocol>://<Host>/<Directory>/<File>
```

To access a password-protected area, you authenticate using the standard username/password notation:

```
<Command> <Parameter> <Protocol>://<Username>:<Password>@<Host>/<Directory>/<File>
```

Connections to a TFTP server

TFTP also functions with standard URL notation. Set the protocol in this case to `tftp`:

```
<Command> <Parameter> <Protocol>://<Host>/<Directory>/<File>
```

Alternatively, you can replace the URL with appropriate parameters:

```
<Command> <Parameter> -s <Host> -f <Directory>/<File>
```

Parameters

The commands to connect to an HTTP(S) or TFTP server can be modified by specifying additional parameters. Not all parameters are available for all protocols. If certain default values can be configured from the Setup menu, the device uses these values as long as you do not explicitly overwrite the values with the associated parameters. For example, this applies for the parameters of the version check.

Parameters for the connection

The following parameters allow you to change the way the device connects to the server.

-a <Address>

Available for protocol: HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP

Available for command: all

Use this parameter to specify an optional loopback address. By entering an optional loopback address you change the source address and route used by the device to connect to the server. This can be useful, for example, when the server is available over different paths and it should use a specific path for its reply message. Possible values are:

- Name of the IP network whose address should be inserted
- `INT` for the address of the first Intranet
- `DMZ` for the address of the first DMZ
- `LB0` to `LBF` for the 16 loopback addresses
- Any valid IP address

By default, the server sends its replies back to the IP address of your device without you having to enter it here.

-f <Directory>/<File>

Available for protocol: TFTP

Available for command: all

Use this parameter to specify the path and name of the file on the server. Using this parameter in combination with `-s` means that no URL has to be specified.

-s <Host>

Available for protocol: TFTP

Available for command: all

Use this parameter to specify the DNS name or IP address of the server. Using this parameter in combination with `-f` means that no URL has to be specified.

Parameters for the version check

In the default settings, the conditions for firmware, configuration and script in the Setup menu (under **Autoload** > **Network** > **…**) are set to **unconditionally**. As a result, the commands LoadFirmware, LoadConfig, or LoadScript load or start the corresponding firmware, configuration, or script file **without** carrying out a version check. However, by specifying the appropriate parameter, you can override this setting when uploading any particular file.

-Cd

Available for protocol: HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP

Available for command: LoadFirmware, LoadConfig, LoadScript

This parameter checks if the file is **different** to the firmware or configuration on the device, or newer than the last executed script. When the LoadScript command is used, this parameter updates the checksum stored in the device for the most recently executed script.

-Cn

Available for protocol: HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP

Available for command: LoadFirmware

This parameter checks if the file is **newer** than the firmware on the device.

-m

Available for protocol: HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP

Available for command: LoadFirmware

This value defines the minimum version of the firmware. The firmware referenced by the command must be at least of this version in order for the command to execute.

-u

Available for protocol: HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP

Available for command: LoadFirmware, LoadConfig, LoadScript

This parameter disables the version checking. The file referenced by the command is uploaded and executed unconditionally. When the LoadScript command is used, this parameter does not change the checksum stored in the device for the most recently executed script.

The parameter -u always has priority over other parameters entered in a command.

Parameters for the certificate check

When transferring files from an HTTPS server to a client device, the network components check the identity of the remote site by using certificates. For the automatic loading from HTTPS servers, additional parameters are available for downloading and subsequently checking the certificates. You download the certificate in question to the device as **SSL – root CA certificate (*.pem, *.crt *.cer [BASE64])**, for example using the file management features of LANconfig or WEBconfig.

-c <MainDir>/<File>

Available for protocol: HTTPS

Available for command: all

Use this parameter to specify the name of the certificate that the device uses to verify the identity of the server before loading the requested file.

-d <Passphrase>

Available for protocol: HTTPS

Available for command: LoadFile

The device uses this passphrase to encrypt an unencrypted PKCS#12 container.

-p <MainDir>/<File>

Available for protocol: HTTPS

Available for command: LoadFile

Use this parameter to specify the name of the PKCS#12 container when downloading a file. The PKCS#12 container can contain multiple CA certificates, and thus supports the identity checking of HTTPS servers with certificate chains. A PKCS#12 container can additionally contain a device certificate and the corresponding private key, so that it can confirm the identity of the device to the HTTPS server if this server requires authentication by certificate.

-n

Available for protocol: HTTPS

Available for command: LoadFile

Use this parameter to deactivate the server name check when loading a file. If you specify the server in the URL as a DNS name (and not as an IP address), then the device checks the certificate for the corresponding server name. If the HTTPS server is a virtual server, then this server can respond with the appropriate certificates for the reported DNS name. Without this parameter, the device checks whether the DNS name in the relevant URL agrees with the 'common name' of the submitted certificates. The device downloads the file only if this check is successful.

-o <MainDir>/<File>

Available for protocol: HTTPS

Available for command: LoadFile

Use this parameter to specify the destination for downloading a file. For example, you can use this option to save a certificate on your device for future identity verification when accessing an HTTPS server.

Use one of the two following main directories as `<MainDir>`:

- If the destination is a file in the device's internal file system, use the main directory `/minifs/`. When combined with a parameter, an example would be `-c /minifs/sslroot.crt`. You can view the available mount points under **File-System** > **Contents**. Alternatively, a general overview is also available in the section *Mount points for SCP file transfer* on page 77.
- If the destination is a file on an external USB data medium, use the main directory `/mountpoint/`. When combined with a parameter, an example would be `-o /mountpoint/Device-9.00.0244.upx`.

If the storage path you specify includes subdirectories, these must exist already. The device does not create new directories.

It is also possible to use variables in file names and paths to enable dynamic directory structures (see *Variables* on page 82.

Variables

You have the option of using dynamic paths in the load commands whenever you reference a file within a parameter or URL. The content of the individual variables are specified by the device and cannot be changed manually.

The following variables are available for your directory and file names:

%m

MAC address of the device in hexadecimal notation, with lowercase letters and without separators

%s

Serial number of the device

%n

Device name

%l

Location of the device as specified in the configuration

%d

Device type

In addition to these general variables, you can also use the following *environment variables* that relate to the device for more flexibility when executing the load commands.

Example applications

After logging in to the command line on the device, the following command loads...

- a firmware file named 'Device-8.80.0103.upx' from the directory 'LCOS/ 880' of the TFTP server with the IP address '192.168.2.200' into the device:

```
LoadFirmware -s 192.168.2.200 -f LCOS/880/Device-8.80.0103.upx
```

- a script intended for a certain MAC-address (named, for example, '00a0571735da.lcs') from the TFTP server with IP address '192.168.2.200' into the device:

```
LoadScript -s 192.168.2.200 -f %m.lcs
```

- a firmware file named 'Device-8.80.0103.upx' from the directory 'download' of the HTTPS server with the address 'www.myserver.com' into the device. This verifies the identity of the server with the certificate 'sslroot.crt' stored in the device's internal file system:

```
LoadFirmware -c /minifs/sslroot.crt https://www.myserver.com/download/Device-8.80.0103.upx
```

- a script matching the serial number and the current firmware version into the device. The device reads the values for serial number and firmware from the corresponding environment variables:

```
LoadScript $__SERIALNO-$__FWVERSION.lcs
```

This command works without specifiying a URL so long as one is entered under **Setup** > **Autoload** > **Network** > **Script** as the parameter **URL**. Without an entry here, a URL must be specified in the command:

```
LoadScript -s 192.168.2.200 $__SERIALNO-$__FWVERSION.lcs
```

Regularly updating configuration and firmware

This scenario describes how to use the CLI to configure the device to update the firmware and/or configuration at a specific time. The firmware and configuration are downloaded from an external server (see *File download from a TFTP or HTTP(S) server* on page 79) using the 'LoadFirmware' and 'LoadConfig' commands in combination with fixed file names. The scheduling is organized with cron jobs.

1. Specify the URL that the 'LoadFirmware' command uses to source the upload if no other parameters are available. For example, to upload the firmware from an HTTP server, the command would resemble the following:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Firmware/URL http://www.mycompany.de/firmware/LCOS.upx
```

2. Set the conditions for loading the firmware such that only firmware that is newer than that in the device is loaded:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Firmware/Condition if-newer
```

3. Specify the path that the 'LoadConfig' command uses to source the upload if no other parameters are available. For example, to upload the configuration from an HTTP server, the command would look similar to the following:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Firmware/URL http://www.mycompany.de/configuration/LCOS.lcf
```

4. Set the conditions for loading the configuration such that only a configuration that is different from that in the device is loaded:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Config/Condition if-different
```

5. Create a cron job that regularly runs the command 'LoadFirmware' at 23:55h:

```
cd /Setup/Config/Cron-Tabelle
set 1 * * * 55 23 * * * LoadFirmware
```

6. Create a cron job that regularly runs the command 'LoadConfig' at 23:59h:

```
set 2 * * * 59 23 * * * LoadConfig
```

That's it! The firmware and configuration will now be updated automatically.

The sequence (first the firmware, then the configuration) ensures that the configuration also contains any menu items that first appeared in the new firmware.

Update configuration after first updating firmware

This scenario describes how to use the CLI to configure the device to update the firmware and configuration at a specified interval. The firmware is updated **before** the configuration. The firmware and configuration are downloaded from an external server (see *File download from a TFTP or HTTP(S) server* on page 79) using the 'LoadFirmware' and 'LoadConfig' commands in combination with dynamic file names. The scheduling is organized with cron jobs.

1. Specify the URL that the 'LoadFirmware' command uses to source the upload if no other parameters are available. For example, to upload the firmware from an HTTP server, the command would resemble the following:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Firmware/URL http://www.mycompany.de/firmware/
```

   The file name is specified later by the cron job.

2. Set the conditions for loading the firmware such that only firmware that is newer than that in the device is loaded:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Firmware/Condition if-newer
```

3. Specify the path that the 'LoadConfig' command uses to source the upload if no other parameters are available. For example, to upload the configuration from an HTTP server, the command would look similar to the following:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Firmware/URL http://www.mycompany.de/configuration
```

   The file name is specified later by the cron job.

4. Set the conditions for loading the configuration such that only a configuration that is different from that in the device is loaded:

```
set /Setup/Autoload/Network/Config/Condition if-different
```

5. Create a cron job that regularly runs the command 'LoadFIRMWARE' every 10 minutes:

```
cd /Setup/Config/Cron-Tabelle
set 1 * * * 10 * * * * LoadFirmware\ $__SERIALNO-Device.upx
```

   In the example above, the firmware on the HTTP server must be in the form `<SerialNumber>-Device.upx`, for example `000018100060-Device.upx`.

   In the cron command `LoadFirmware \ $__SERIALNO-Device.upx`, the space between the load command and the environment variables is protected with a backslash. Trying to use the alternative notation of enclosing the entire command in quotation marks will result in an error. LCOS treats environment variables in quotation marks as normal text, so that any variables would be ignored.

6. Create a cron job that regularly runs the command 'LoadConfig' every 10 minutes:

```
set 2 * * * 10 * * * * LoadScript\ $__SERIALNO-$__FWVERSION.lcs
```

   In the example above, the configuration script on the HTTP server must be in the form `<SerialNumber>-<FirmwareVersion>.lcs`, for example `000018100060-8.84.lcs`.

That's it! With this configuration, the device always initially loads the latest firmware.

If the device executes the command 'LoadScript' after initially uploading the latest firmware and the latest configuration script (e.g. for version 8.84) from the HTTP server, then the environment variable '__FWVERSION' is, at this time, set with the value of the previous firmware, e.g. '8.80 '. The command `LoadScript\ $__SERIALNO-$__FWVERSION.lcs` does not find a suitable configuration script at this time. The device then executes the command `LoadFirmware 000018100060-Device.upx` and after rebooting, the environment variable '__FWVERSION' is set to the value '8.84 '. The command `LoadScript\ $__SERIALNO-$__FWVERSION.lcs` then finds a suitable script to update the configuration.

2.10 Automatic upload of firmware or configuration from USB

Devices with a USB connector can be commissioned very easily with the aid of an external data medium. Loaders, firmware files, and even full configurations or scripts can be uploaded into the device from a USB medium.

2.10.1 Automatic upload of loader and/or firmware files

With this function activated and a USB medium mounted, the device searches for a loader and/or firmware files in the directory 'Firmware'. All files in the directory with the file extension '*.upx' will be considered for automatic loading if they are for the correct device type. The device does this by reading the file headers and then using the files according to the following rules:

- If at least one *.upx file with a loader is found, then the loader with the highest version number is loaded, unless the device already contains a loader with a higher version number.
- If at least one firmware file is found, then the firmware with the highest version number is loaded into the device, assuming that its version number is not equal to that of active or inactive firmware versions already in the device.

During the automatic load procedure, the device's power LED and online LED blink alternately. If a loader is uploaded first, the device will restart after this and it will commence a second automatic upload if new firmware is found. During this second load procedure, too, the device's power LED and online LED blink alternately.

The automatic uploading of loaders and/or firmware may, if applicable, be followed by further uploads of configuration files and/or script files, see *Automatic upload of configuration and/or script files* on page 85.

Once the automatic upload procedure is complete, all LEDs on the device light up in green for 30 seconds. You can then remove the USB medium.

2.10.2 Automatic upload of configuration and/or script files

With this function activated and a USB medium mounted, the device searches for a loader and/or firmware files in the directory 'Config'. All files in the directory with the file extension '*.lcf' (configurations) and '*.lcs' (scripts) will be considered for automatic loading if they are for the correct device type. The device does this by reading the file headers and then using the files according to the following rules:

- A full configuration is always loaded before a script. Full configurations will only be loaded if the device type matches the device doing the loading, and if the firmware version entered into the header is the same as the active firmware in the device. If several suitable full configurations are found, then selection follows these criteria:
  - The configuration header contains a device serial number that matches that of the device doing the upload.
  - The configuration header contains a MAC address that matches that of the device doing the upload.
  - If multiple configuration files are left over after applying these selection criteria, then the device takes the configuration with the most recent date.
- If no full configuration is available, the device will select a script file, if available. If several suitable scripts are found, then selection follows these criteria:
  - The script header contains a device serial number that matches that of the device doing the upload.

- The script header contains a MAC address that matches that of the device doing the upload.
- The script header contains a firmware version that matches that of the device doing the upload.

If multiple scripts are left over after applying these selection criteria, then the device takes the script with the most recent version number or date.

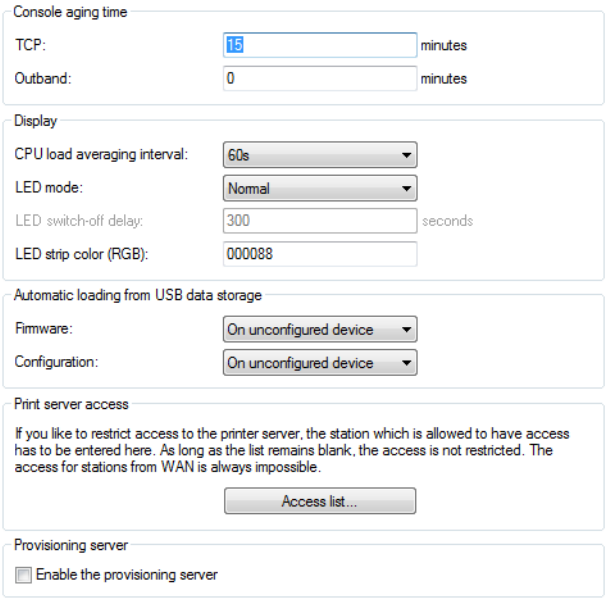
The meta data for the firmware version and the creation date are generated automatically when a configuration file or script file is saved. A MAC address and/or device serial number can be stored optionally. Learn more about under *Advanced meta data for configuration files* on page 169.

Once the automatic upload procedure is complete, all LEDs on the device light up in green for 30 seconds. You can then remove the USB medium.

2.10.3 Configuring automatic uploads via USB

The steps below will show you how to configure automatic uploading from a USB storage medium.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.
2. Navigate to the dialog **Management** > **Advanced**.



3. (De-)activate the automatic loading of loader and/or firmware files via the selection list **Firmware**. Select the appropriate option.
   - **Off**: Automatic loading of loader and/or firmware files is deactivated.
   - **On unconfigured device Device**: Automatic loading of loader and/or firmware files is only activated when the device has its factory settings. After successfully using the Wizards to configure the security settings and basic settings, set this option to **Off**.
   - **On**: Automatic loading of loader and/or firmware files is activated. When a USB medium is mounted, a suitable loader and/or firmware file is uploaded to the device. The USB medium is mounted when it is plugged into the USB port on the device, or when it is restarted.
4. (De-)activate the automatic loading of configuration and/or script files via the selection list **Configuration**. Select the appropriate option.
   - **Off**: Automatic loading of configuration and/or script files is deactivated.
   - **On unconfigured device Device**: Automatic loading of configuration and/or script files is only activated when the device has its factory settings. After successfully using the Wizards to configure the security settings and basic settings, set this option to **Off**.

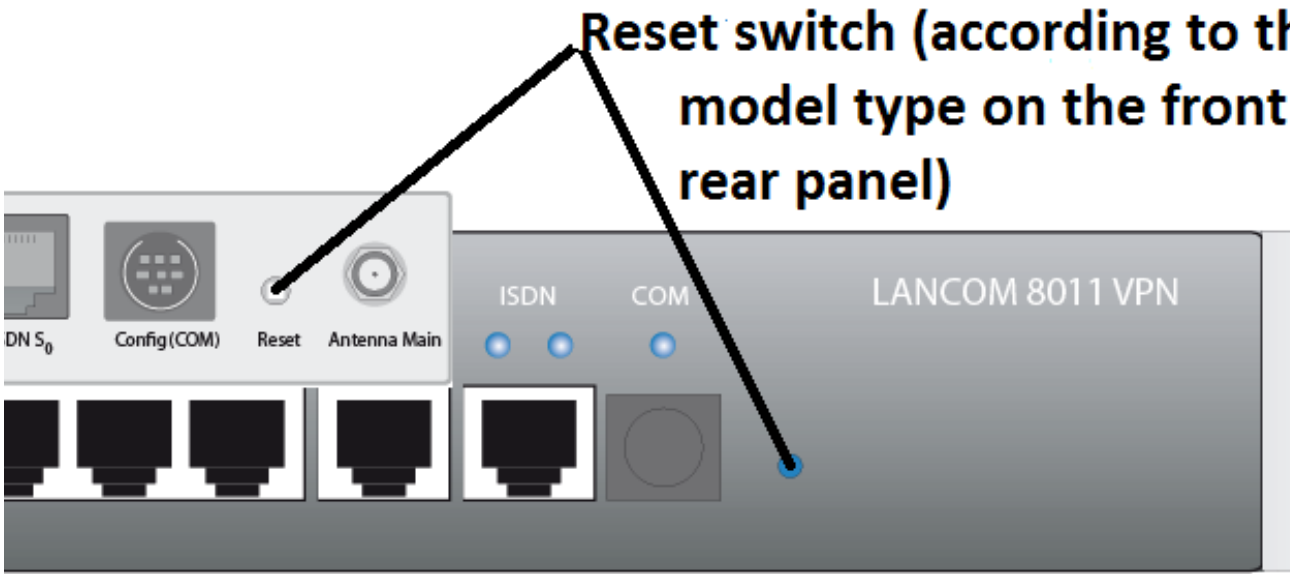
- **On**: Automatic loading of configuration and/or script files is activated. When a USB medium is mounted, a suitable configuration and/or script file is uploaded to the device. The USB medium is mounted when it is plugged into the USB port on the device, or when it is restarted.

That's it! This completes the configuration of automatic uploads from a USB medium.

A device can be fed with an undesirable configuration by resetting it to its factory settings and inserting a prepared USB data media. To prevent this you have to deactivated the reset switch.

2.11 Resetting the device

It is possible to reset the device to its factory settings if you need to reconfigure the device or if it is impossible to connect to the device even after restarting it. To do so, press the reset button **until all of the device LEDs light up** (after about 5 seconds).



After resetting, the device starts completely unconfigured and **all** settings are lost. If possible, backup the current device configuration **before** resetting.

After being reset, access points start in managed mode. In this mode, access to the device configuration is not possible via WLAN.

After a reset, the WLAN encryption settings in the device are reset to the default WPA key. The default WPA key consists of the MAC address of the physical WLAN interface preceded by an "L". Wireless configuration with the WLAN device only works after a reset if you have entered the standard WPA key under **Wireless LAN** > **Encryption** > **WLAN encryption settings**.

For outdoor access points, the way you reset the device depends on its design. The exact procedure for any specific device is explained in the corresponding Quick Reference Guide.

2.11.1 Configuring the reset button

The reset button offers two basic functions—boot (restart) and reset (to the factory settings)—which are called by pressing the button for different lengths of time.

Some devices simply cannot be installed under lock and key. There is consequently a risk that the configuration will be deleted by mistake if a co-worker presses the reset button too long. The behavior of the reset button is controlled with this setting.

For devices without serial interface, you cannot reconfigure the reset button, as otherwise it would no longer be possible to reset the configuration for these devices.

1. In the LCOS menu tree, navigate to the branch **/Setup/Config**.
2. Use the parameter **Reset button** to determine the behavior of the device when the reset button is pressed. The available settings are:
   - **Ignore**: Pressing the button does not trigger any action.
   - **Boot only**: Pressing the button triggers a reboot, regardless of how long it is pressed.
   - **Reset or boot**: With this setting, the reset button fulfills different functions depending upon how long the key remains pressed: Find more about the different key-press durations in the section *Special features of the rollout configuration* on page 66.

   The settings **Ignore** or **Boot only** makes it impossible to reset the configuration to the factory settings or to load the rollout configuration with a reset. If the password is lost for a device with this setting, there is no way to access the configuration! In this case the serial communications interface can be used to upload a new firmware version to the device—this resets the device to its factory settings, which results in the deletion of the former configuration.
3. Click the **Send** button to write the configuration back to the device.

2.12 Managing rights for different administrators

You have the option to configure your device with several administrators, each with different access rights and function rights.

Besides these administrators set up in the configuration, there is also the "root" administrator with the main password for the device. This administrator always has full rights and cannot be deleted, restricted or renamed. To log in as root administrator, use the user name `root` when logging in via LANconfig, WEBconfig or your terminal program, or leave the input field blank.

As soon as a main device password has been set in the device configuration, the login screen of WEBconfig is displayed in a web browser offering HTTP(S) access to the device. If other administrators are set up in addition to the root administrator, the mask contains the input fields **Login** and **Password**; otherwise it displays **Password** only. After entering the correct access credentials, users reach the main menu. This menu only displays the options corresponding to the access and function rights of the administrator who is currently logged in.

2.12.1 Rights for the administrators

The rights for administrators are divided into two areas:

- *Access rights*: Each administrator belongs to a certain group that has globally defined rights assigned to it.
- *Function rights*: Each administrator also has so-called "function rights" that determine personal access to certain functions such as the Setup Wizards.

Access rights

The following table is an overview of all of the rights that you can configure for administrator accounts. The following access rights and groups of administrator accounts are available:

Table 13: Access rights overview

Description under LANconfig	Description in the Setup menu	Rights description
All	Supervisor	Supervisor. Is a member of all groups and has full access to the configuration except for setting up and editing other administrators.
Restr. and trace	Admin-RW	Local administrator with read/write rights. Has full access to the configuration, although the following options are blocked: › Upload firmware onto the device › Upload configuration onto the device › Configuration by LANconfig › Cannot create or edit other administrators
Limited	Admin-RW-Limit	Local administrator with read and write access but without trace rights Has full access to the configuration, although the following options are blocked: › Upload firmware onto the device › Upload configuration onto the device › Configuration by LANconfig › Cannot create or edit other administrators › Trace output via the command line or LANmonitor
Read and trace	Admin-RO	Local administrator with read access but no write access. Can read the configuration from the command line, but cannot change any values.
Read only	Admin-RO-Limit	Local administrator with read access but no write access and no trace rights. Can read the configuration from the command line, but cannot change any values or request trace output.
None	None	Has no access to the configuration.

Local administrators cannot edit or view the Admin table. This is reserved for the root administrator.

Function rights

The following table is an overview of all function rights that are configurable for administrator accounts. The availability of individual function rights may vary, depending on the features of the device. If you wish to set the function rights at the CLI or with a script, you can optionally use the hexadecimal notation of the respective right instead of the plain text name. Learn more about this in section *Hexadecimal combination of privileges on the CLI* on page 91.

Table 14: Overview of function rights

Description: [1]LANconfig, [2]Setup menu	Hex notation on the CLI	Rights description
1. AP Assignment Wizard **2.** WTP Assignment Wizard	0x00000400	Wizard for assigning WLAN profiles
1. Content Filter Wizard **2.** CF Profile Wizard	0x00040000	Wizard for setting up the content filter
1. Dynamic DNS Wizard **2.** Dynamic DNS Wizard	0x00004000	Wizard for configuring dynamic DNS
1. Setting date and time **2.** Time setting	0x00000040	Setting the date and time (also applies for Telnet and TFTP)
1. Basic Wizard **2.** Basic Settings Wizard	0x00000001	Wizard for the Basic Settings

Description: [1]LANconfig, [2]Setup menu	Hex notation on the CLI	Rights description
1. Internet Connection Wizard **2.** Internet Connection Wizard	0x00000004	Wizard for setting up the Internet connection
1. LAN-LAN Wizard **2.** LANLAN Wizard	0x00000020	Wizard for connecting two local area networks (VPN)
1. Public Spot Wizard (create account) **2.** Public Spot Wizard	0x00000800	Wizard for creating Public Spot user accounts*
1. Public Spot Wizard (manage user) **2.** Public Spot user management Wizard	0x00100000	Wizard for managing Public Spot user accounts*
1. – **2.** Public Spot Configuration Wizard	0x00200000	Wizard for setting up a Public Spot
1. Public-Spot-XML-Interface **2.** Public Spot XML interface	0x00080000	Access to the XML interface of the Public Spot module A "normal" Public Spot administrator does not require this right. This right is intended for the implementation of complex authentication scenarios, such as when an external gateway (e.g. a machine or a program such as a Web server, script, etc.) needs to communicate with the module.
1. RAS Wizard **2.** RAS Wizard	0x00000010	Wizard for setting up dial-in access (RAS, VPN)
1. Rollout Wizard **2.** Rollout Wizard	0x00002000	Wizard for rollout scenarios*
1. Security Wizard **2.** Security Wizard	0x00000002	Wizard for adjusting the security settings
1. SMS-Transmit **2.** SMS transmission	0x400000	Sends SMS text messages via the 3G/4G WWAN module in the device.
1. SSH client **2.** SSH command	0x00020000	Establishes an SSH/Telnet connection from your device to other LCOS devices or SSH/Telnet servers
1. Search for other devices in the LAN **2.** Device search	0x00000080	Search for other devices in local and remote networks*
1. VoIP Provider Wizard **2.** Prepare VoIP provider access	0x800000	Wizard for setting up access to your VoIP provider
1. VoIP CallManager Wizard **2.** VoIP CallManager Wizard	0x8000	Assistant for setting up your VoIP CallManager
1. WLAN Wizard **2.** WLAN Wizard	0x00001000	Wizard for configuring the WLAN interface
1. WLAN link test **2.** WLAN link test	0x00000100	Runs the WLAN link tests* (also applies to Telnet)
1. WLC-Profile-Wizard **2.** WLC-Profile-Wizard	0x00010000	Wizard for setting up a WLC profile
1. CA-Web-Interface Wizard **2.** CA-Web-Interface	0x1000000	Creates profiles for the CA web interface

*) The permissions for and/or the execution of these Wizards or features relates exclusively to WEBconfig—unless otherwise stated. The Wizard or feature is either only available there (e.g. setting up and managing Public Spot users) or can only be constrained there (e.g. searching for devices).

Hexadecimal combination of privileges on the CLI

It can be a highly laborious process to configure multiple privileges by using plain text names in scripts. An alternative is to use the hex values instead of the names, to combine these values into a total, and to incorporate them into your script command.

The sum of several hex values results from the hexadecimal addition of the 1st, 2nd, 3rd ... nth position from the right. If, for example, the user should be able to execute features such as the **Security Wizard**, **Provider Selection**, **RAS Wizard**, **Time Setting** and the **WLAN link test,**, the sum of the individual hex values is calculated as follows:

- 1st position from the right: `2` (Security-Wizard) + `8` (Provider-Selection) = `a`
- 2nd position from the right: `1` (RAS-Wizard) + `4` (Time-Setting) = `5`
- 3rd position from the right: `1` (WLAN-Linktest) = `1`

For this example, the privileges have the value `0x0000015a`. Put differently, this is an OR operator with the following hexadecimal values:

Name on the CLI	Value
Security Wizard	`0x00000002`
Provider-Selection	`0x00000008`
RAS Wizard	`0x00000010`
Time setting	`0x00000040`
WLAN link test	`0x00000100`
OR operated	`0x0000015a`

As an alternative to the notation `0x0000015a` you can use the abbreviations `0000015a`, `0x15a` and `15a`.

Configuration example on the CLI

The following command (in the abbreviated form) sets up a new user in the Admins table (in the Setup menu under **Config** > **Admins**) who, as local administrator `NetAdmin` with the password `BW46zG29`, is able to select the Internet provider. The user will be activated immediately:

```
set NetAdmin BW46zG29 yes Admin-RW 8
```

Only the root administrator is allowed to execute this command because other administrators do not have access to the admin table.

The following command extends the privileges so that the user `NetAdmin` is able to execute the WLAN link test. The asterisks in the command stand for the values that remain unchanged:

```
set NetAdmin * * * 108
```

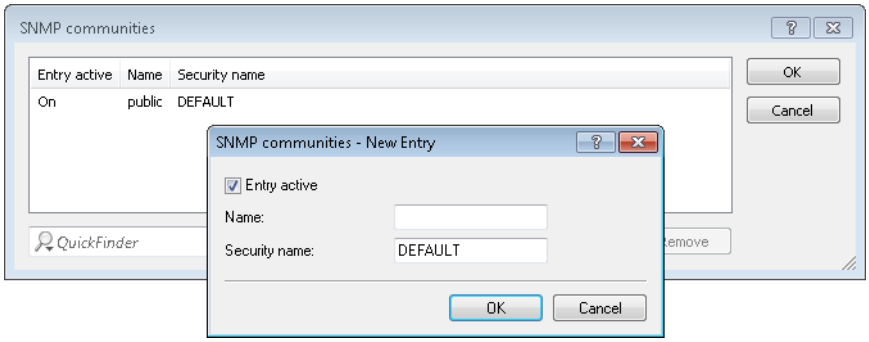
Only the root administrator is allowed to execute this command because other administrators do not have access to the admin table.

2.12.2 Configuring SNMP read-only access

Administrators of networks with SNMP management systems can precisely control the access rights to various access levels. SNMP of the versions v1 and v2 do this by encoding the access credentials as part of a "community". Authentication is optionally handled

- by the `public` community (unlimited SNMP read access),
- by a master password (limited SNMP read access), or
- a combination of user name and password, separated by a colon (limited SNMP read access)

. By default, your device answers all SNMP requests that it receives from LANmonitor or another SNMP management system with the community `public`. Because this represents a potential security risk, especially with external access, LANconfig gives you the option define your own communities under **Management** > **Admin** and clicking **SNMP settings** and **SNMP communities**.



For SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c, you force the entry of login data for SNMP read-only access by disabling the `public` community in the list of the SNMP communities. This setting only allows information about the state of the device, current connections, reports, etc., to be read out via SNMP after the user authenticates at the device. Authorization can be conducted either with the administrator-account access credentials or an access account created for the individual SNMP community.

Disabling the community `public` has no effect on accessing for other communities created here. An individual SNMP read-only community always provides an alternative access path that is not tied to an administrator account.

SNMP write access is reserved exclusively for administrators with the appropriate permissions.

For more information about SNMP, see the chapter *Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*

2.13 Device-internal SSH/SSL keys

All devices that are delivered with a LCOS version older than 8.84 are factory-equipped with a set of pre-defined cryptographic keys of 1024 bits in length, which represent the following fingerprints:

```
SSH
    ssh-dss 27:c5:1d:9f:be:27:3d:50:d7:bf:c1:68:0b:18:97:d7
    ssh-rsa 03:56:e6:52:ee:d2:da:f0:73:b5:df:3d:09:08:54:b7
SSL
    SHA-1: f9:14:7f:7c:e0:15:20:b6:71:94:46:3f:0e:00:93:9c:ad:ff:d9:fb
    MD5:   ac:5b:45:2d:f9:20:3e:0b:b0:45:35:44:b8:3a:de:c6
```

The device transmits these fingerprints when establishing secure connections (e.g. via SSH or SSL) to the requesting remote site. On the basis of the fingerprint, the remote site can 1) uniquely identify the device and 2) verify that it has connected to the correct device, which is classified as trustworthy.

For example, if you use LANconfig to select the communication protocol SSH and you connect to a device for the first time, LANconfig produces a security query asking you whether the ssh-rsa key is known to you and whether you want LANconfig to accept this device as 'known' in future.

Because these keys are the same for all devices, you should replace these keys with individual keys for productive operations (see *Automatic generation of device-specific SSH/SSL keys* on page 93). Models with certain firmware versions and sufficient entropy also automatically attempt to create device-specific keys (see *Automatic generation of device-specific SSH/SSL keys* on page 93).

2.13.1 Automatic generation of device-specific SSH/SSL keys

If you have a device with LCOS 8.84 or higher and you have not loaded an individual key into the device, then resetting the configuration will prompt the internal SSH server to try and compile its own device-specific SSH keys directly at the system startup. These include:

- an SSH-2-RSA key with 2048 bit length;
- an SSH-2-DSS key with 1024 bit length (as per FIPS 186-2);
- an SSH-2-ECDSA key with 256, 384 or 521 bit length;
- an SSL-RSA key with 2048 bit length;

which the device stores in its internal file system as `ssh_rsakey`, `ssh_dsakey`, `ssl_privkey` or `ssh_ecdsakey`.

If key generation is successful, the entry `SSH ... host key generated` is entered into the SYSLOG as a "notice"; If it fails, the entry `SSH: host key generation failed, try later again with '...'` is entered as an "alert". The failure to generate a key, for example if there is too little entropy, causes the system to revert to the factory implemented cryptographic key.

When you an update from an older LCOS version to 8.84 or higher without subsequently doing a configuration reset, the device does not generate a device-specific SSH/SSL key. This maintains compatibility with existing installations. However, you can trigger the key generation manually. Enter the following commands in the console:

```
sshkeygen -t rsa -b 2048 -f ssh_rsakey
sshkeygen -t dsa -b 1024 -f ssh_dsakey
sshkeygen -t ecdsa -b 256 -f ssh_ecdsakey
sshkeygen -t rsa -b 2048 -f  ssl_privkey
```

2.13.2 Manually create custom SSH keys

You have the option to replace the factory installed and automatically generated SSH/SSL keys with your own RSA, DSA or DSS keys, in order to achieve stronger encryption. A number of alternatives are available here:

- You can generate the individual keys on the console using LCOS.
- Using an external program, you can create an OpenSSH private key and then upload this key to the device as `SSH-DSA-key [...]` or `SSH-RSA key (*.key [BASE64 unencrypted])`.

The use of an external program is an option if your device has insufficient entropy, so causing key creation with LCOS to fail.

SSH key generation with LCOS

To generate a key pair consisting of a public and a private key, you enter the following command at the console:

```
sshkeygen [-?|-h] [-t (dsa|rsa|ecdsa)] [-b <Bits>] -f <OutputFile> [-q]
```

-?, -h

Displays a brief help text about the available parameters

-t (dsa|rsa|ecdsa)

This parameter specifies what type of key is generated. SSH supports the following types of keys:

- RSA keys are most widely used and have a length between 512 and 16384 bits. If possible you should work with keys of 1024 to 2048 bits in length.
- DSA keys follow the Digital Signature Standard (DSS) set down by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) and are typically used in environments which are required to comply with the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS). DSA or DSS keys are always 1024 bits long, but they are slower to process than a corresponding RSA key.
- ECDSA keys are a variant of DSA keys, whereby the device uses elliptic curves for key generation (elliptic curve cryptography, ECC). ECC is an alternative to the conventional signature and key exchange techniques such as RSA and Diffie-Hellman. The main advantage of elliptic curves is that their mathematical properties offer the same key strength as RSA or Diffie-Hellman but with a significantly shorter key length. This provides for better hardware performance. ECC and its integration in SSL and TLS are described in RFCs 5656 and 4492.

If no type is specified, the command generates an RSA key by default.

-b <bits>

This parameter sets the length of the RSA key in bits. If you do not specify a length, the command produces a key with a length of 1024 bits by default.

-f <OutputFile>

These parameters specify the mounting point of the generated key file in the device file system. The choice of mounting point depends on what type key you are generating. The choices available to you are:

- `ssh_rsakey` for RSA keys
- `ssh_dsakey` for DSA keys
- `ssh_ecdsakey` for ECDSA keys
- `ssl_privkey` for SSL-RSA keys

-q

This parameter enables the 'quiet' mode for the key generation. If you set this parameter, LCOS overwrites any existing RSA or DSA keys without asking; there is no information about the progress of the operation. You can, for example, use this parameter in a script to suppress any security prompts for the users.

SSH key generation with Linux systems

Many Linux distributions already feature the OpenSSH package. All you have to do to generate the key file is to enter a simple command into the shell. The syntax corresponds to the LCOS command `sshkeygen`:

```
ssh-keygen [-t (dsa|rsa)] [-b <Bits>] [-f <OutputFile>]
```

The command `ssh-keygen -t rsa -b 4096 -f hostkey` creates an RSA key of 4096 bits in length, which consists of the private component 'hostkey' and the public component 'hostkey.pub'.

SSH key generation with Windows systems

Windows systems not are inherently capable of compiling SSH keys. You should instead use a suitable utility program such as the free software PuTTYgen.

A guide on how to create an individual key with PuTTYgen is available in the section *Generating an SSH keypair with PuTTY* on page 95. After following the various steps to generate the key, do **not** use the buttons **Save public key** and **Save private key**, but instead choose **Conversions** > **Export OpenSSH key**. The resulting OpenSSH private key can then be uploaded into the device without further processing.

2.14 SSH authentication using a public key

The SSH protocol and the LCOS-internal SSH server support two different authentication mechanisms:

1. Interactive by entering a user name and password at the keyboard;
2. Automated by submitting a public key

In the public key method, a key pair is used that is made up of a private and public key – a digital certificate. The private part of the key pair is saved on the client or with the user (frequently protected with a password, also known as a passphrase); the public part is loaded into the device. By definition, private keys cannot have predefined default values. For this reason, your device in its factory settings only supports interactive authentication by means of access credentials.

The following sections describe how to generate your own SSH key and implement authentication using a public key. For this example we are using LANconfig and the free SSH client PuTTY along with its associated utility PuTTYgen, which is used to generate the necessary key pair. Although PuTTY is available for the Windows and Linux operating systems the following description, like LANconfig, is limited to Windows.

Your device supports RSA, DSA, and DSS keys. RSA keys are somewhat smaller, thereby allowing somewhat faster operation. Further information about the keys mentioned here is available from VPN chapter of the Reference Manual in section *Working with digital certificates*.

2.14.1 Certificate check on SSH access

When establishing the SSH connection, the client first asks the device which authentication methods are permitted for this connection. If the public key method is allowed, the client searches for private keys that have been installed and transfers these with the user name to the device.

When the device finds an entry in the list that includes the user name that corresponds to its public SSH key, the SSH connection is permitted. If the client does not have a suitable private key installed or if the device does not have a corresponding entry with the user name or public key, the SSH client requests authentication by user name/password—as long as this authentication method is permitted—or it aborts the authentication process.

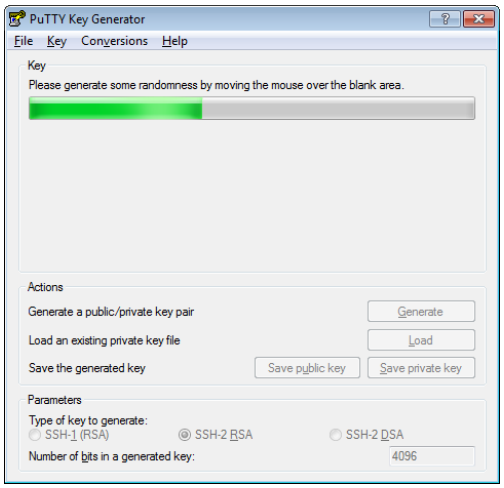
2.14.2 Generating an SSH keypair with PuTTY

The first thing you need for SSH authentication using a public key is a personal key pair. This tutorial describes how to use PuTTYgen to create an RSA key pair consisting of a public key and a private key.

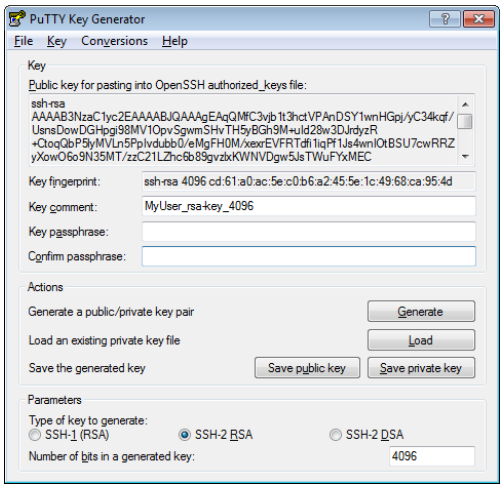
On Linux operating systems, the shell command `ssh-keygen` creates an RSA key pair consisting of the public part 'id_rsa.pub' and the private part 'id_rsa'.

1. Start the PuTTY utility **PuTTYgen**. The main window of the **PuTTY Key Generator** opens.

2. Select the type of key to be generated (in this case: **SSH-2-RSA**) and its bit-strength (e.g. `4096`). Then click on **Generate** to start the key generation.
3. Move the mouse around in the program window until the progress bar has reached the end. PuTTYgen uses the movements of the mouse cursor within the program window to generate the random numbers necessary for key generation. After generating the keys, the program displays the key data in the main window.



4. PuTTYgen uses the movements of the mouse cursor within the program window to generate the random numbers necessary for key generation. Move the mouse around in the program window until the progress bar has reached the end.



5. Optional: If you wish to additionally protect your private key with a passphrase, enter this in the **Key passphrase** field and confirm in the box below it.
   Please note that some SSH clients either do not store passphrases or they do it for the current session only (e.g. with PuTTY via Pageant only). For this reason you might want to avoid having to enter a passphrase where this is required manually during the process of connection establishment. LANconfig supports the persistent store of a passphrase.
6. You save your keys by clicking the buttons **Save public key** and **Save private key**.
   The public key is stored in the device, and the private key is used in combination with PuTTY for authentication.
7. At the same time you can save the key as an OpenSSH private key by clicking on **Conversions** > **Export OpenSSH key**.
   You can use the private key created in this way for authentication in combination with LANconfig.
8. Exit PuTTYgen. Now move to the next chapter of the installation.

2.14.3 Syntax and modifying public-key users

After creating a key pair, the public key has to be input to the device in a form that it understands. A LCOS device expects the public keys in the following syntax:

```
<EncryptionAlgorithm> <PublicKey> <Admin1> [<Admin2> … <AdminN>]
```

This makes it possible to assign multiple user accounts to a single public key. It is also possible to load several keys for different users into the device. Starting with a public-key file created with PuTTYgen, the following steps describe how you modify a public key.

1. Open the public-key file in a text editor. It shows you the following or similar content:

```
---- BEGIN SSH2 PUBLIC KEY ----
Comment: "rsa-key_myuser"
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABJQAAAgEAqQMfC3vjb1t3hctVPAnDSY1wnHGpj/yC34kq
f/UsnsDowDGHpgi98MV1OpvSgwmSHvTH5yBGh9M+uId28w3DJrdyzR+CtoqQbP5l
…
0N8V3ydp+qbx+8FNbBQCVhxxiKZwXxmMh70pTWHxixOFte4HBxGHxcRaiSoMyNdv
wCkWlx8=
---- END SSH2 PUBLIC KEY ----
```

2. Delete the header and footer and the comment line so that all that remains is the actual key. Then remove any line breaks so that the public key is on a single line.

```
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABJQAAAgEAqQMfC3vjb1t3hctVPAnDSY1…wCkWlx8=
```

3. In front of the key, specify the encryption algorithm `ssh-rsa` and, after the key, add the name of the user account for which this key is valid (for example, `root`), separated with a space.
   You can assign multiple users to a key or place multiple keys in a single public-key file. **Examples**:

```
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABJQAAAgEAqQMfC3vjb1t3hctVPAnDSY1j…wCkWlx8= root
```

```
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABJQAAAgEAqQMfC3vjb1t3hctVPAnDSY1…wCkWlx8= root admin user
ssh-rsa VLn5PpIvdubb0/eMgFH0M/xexrEVFRTdfi1iqPf1Js4wnIOtBSU…xKWNVDg/ backup
```

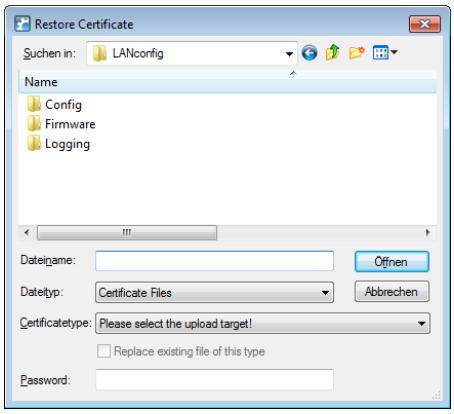
   Make sure that each each key (including the encryption algorithm and user [s]) is on a separate line. Line breaks invalidate the file and lead to an error in the subsequent authentication!

4. Save the file and close the text editor.

2.14.4 Setting up a device for public-key authentication

This tutorial describes how to load the key file into the device and prepare the device for SSH authentication.

1. Start LANconfig and select the device on which you wish to set up SSH authentication.
2. Select **Device** > **Configuration management** > **Upload certificate or file**. In the window that opens, change the **File type** selection list to **All files** and the **Certificate type** selection list to **SSH – accepted public keys**.



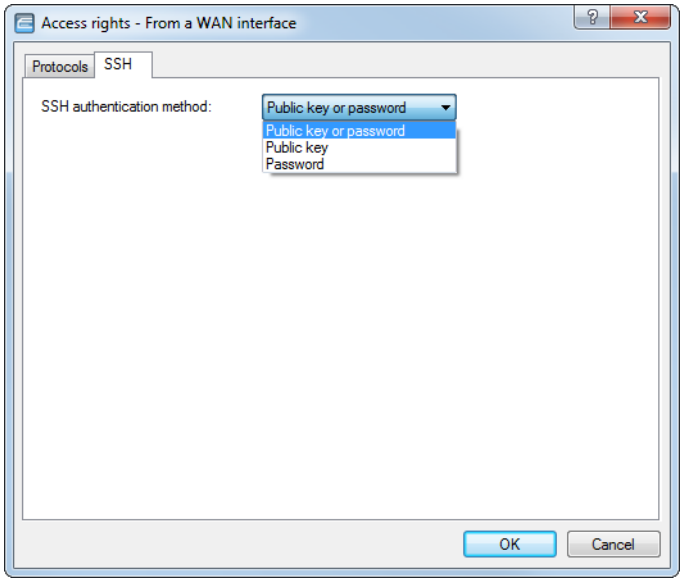
3. Select the public-key file you created previously and click **Open**. LANconfig then starts uploading the public key to the device.

   The uploaded file replaces the list of previously accepted keys. Alternatively, you can edit the keys directly in WEBconfig and attach individual keys to the existing list (see *Allowed SSH public keys* on page 35).

4. Open the configuration dialog for the device and navigate to **Management** > **Admin** > **Access settings**.
5. In the section **Configuration access ways**, click on **Access rights** > **…** > **SSH** and configure the **SSH authentication method** for each network.
   The authentication methods permitted for SSH access can be set separately for LAN, WAN and WLAN. The following options are available:

   - **Public key or password**: With this option, public-key authentication is attempted first. If this should fail, then a password query is issued.
   - **Public-Key**: With this option, only public-key authentication is attempted.

› **Password**: Public-key authentication is switched off and a password query is issued.

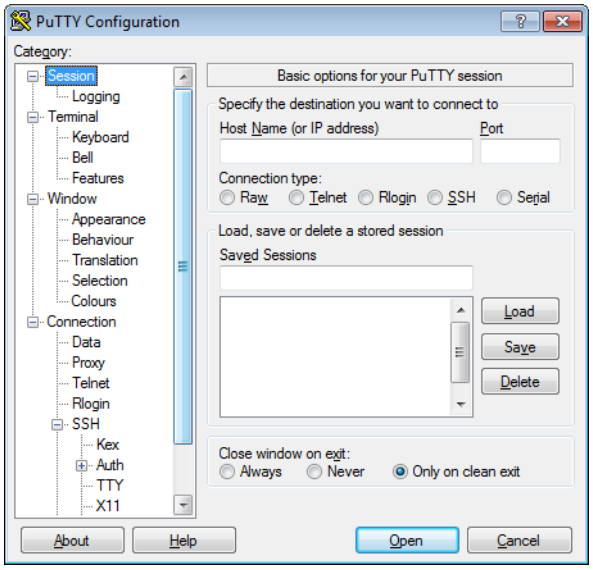


6. Close all of the configuration dialogs and write the configuration back to the device.

2.14.5 Public-key authentication with PuTTY

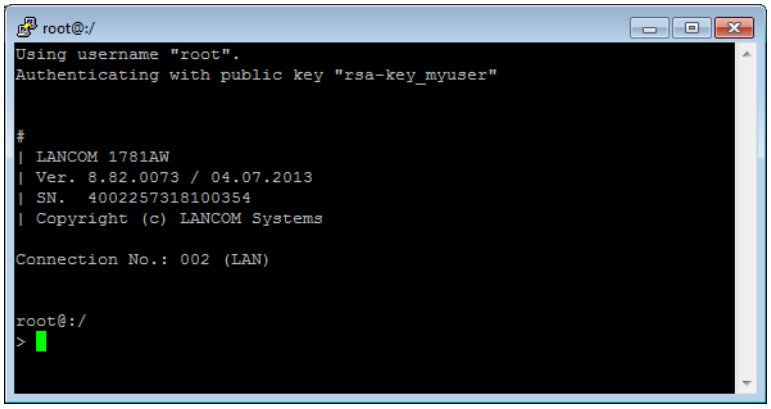
This tutorial describes how to use PuTTY to configure SSH authentication based on a public key and how to authenticate at the device.

1. Start PuTTY.
2. In the window that opens, enter the host name or the IP address of the device and set the **Connection type** to the option **SSH**. The default port for SSH connections is `22`.



3. Switch to the **Connection** > **Data** dialog and, in the input field **Auto-login username**, enter the user name for the public key you created previously (e.g. `root`).
4. Switch to the **Connection** > **SSH** > **Auth** dialog and, in the input field **Private key file for authentication**, enter the path and file name of the private-key file you created especially for PuTTY.

5. Then click on **Open**. PuTTY then attempts to establish a connection while using SSH authentication by public key.



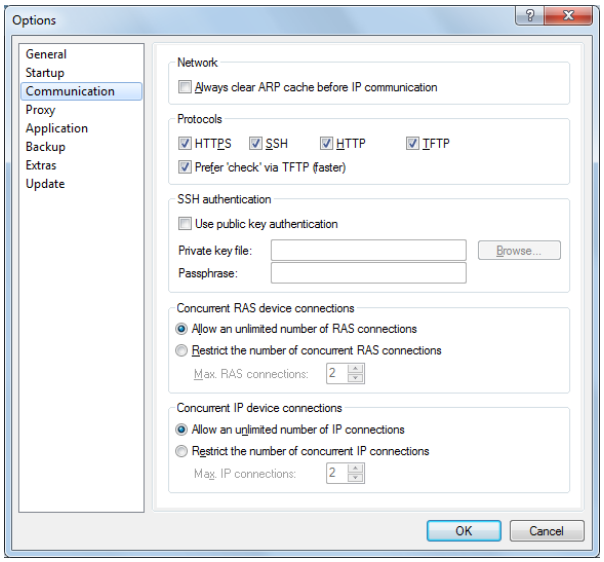
If you have protected your private key file with an optional passphrase, PuTTY will ask you for this as part of the authentication process.

That's it!

2.14.6 Public-key authentication with LANconfig

This tutorial describes how to use LANconfig to configure public-key based SSH authentication.

1. Start LANconfig.
2. From the toolbar, open the dialog **Tools** > **Options** > **Communication**.



3. Under **Protocols**, disable all of the options except for **SSH** and **Prefer 'check' via TFTP**.
   This prevents LANconfig from favoring a different protocol for device communication (e.g. HTTPS) and falling back to another, possibly unencrypted protocol (such as HTTP) if authentication fails.
4. Activate the option **Use public-key authentication**.
5. Specify the path and file name of the OpenSSH private-key file as appropriate and, if required, enter the passphrase that secures your key.
6. Close the settings dialog with a click on **OK**.

That's it! Now if you open the configuration dialog or start the Setup Wizard for a device, LANconfig communicates using the SSH protocol and attempts to authenticate with the specified private key.

2.15 SSH and Telnet client in LCOS

2.15.1 Introduction

Along with an SSL server that provides secure and authenticated access to the device (see *SSH authentication using a public key* on page 95), the operating system of your device also features an SSH client. This SSH client enables SSH connections to be established from your device to a remote server, such as a further device or a Linux server. This function is also useful if it is not possible to connect directly to a remote device, but if there is an indirect connection via a further device that is accessible from both subnets.

The SSH client included with LCOS can be started with simple commands on the CLI, similar to the OpenSSH client on a Linux system.

2.15.2 Syntax of SSH clients

The SSH connection to a remote system using LCOS's own SSH client is initiated from the CLI with the following command:

```
ssh [-(?|h)] [-(b|a) <Loopback-Address>] [-p <Port>] [-C] [-j <Interval>] [<User>@]<Host>
 <Command>
```

The individual parameters have the following meaning:

-?, -h

Displays a brief help text about the available parameters

-b, -a <Loopback-Address>

Allows a sender address (loopback address) to be specified. This option is especially important in connection with ARF: By entering an optional loopback address you change the source address and route used by the device to connect to the remote system. This can be useful, for example, when the system is available over different paths and it should use a specific path for its reply message.

-p <Port>

Specifies the port to be used. If you do not specify a port, the device reverts to the SSH standard TCP port 22.

-C

If you set this parameter, the SSH client uses the zlib algorithm to attempt to negotiate a method for data compression with the remote system. If the remote system does not support compression, then the data is transmitted uncompressed.

The use of compression is generally worthwhile only for very slow connections. With fast connections, the performance loss from the additional overhead due to compression tends to be greater than the gain from reduced data amounts.

-j <Interval>

If the connection to the remote system is routed via a NAT router or a firewall, it may be worthwhile to leave the connection running permanently. With an interactive SSH session, data is not transferred at all at certain phases, which can lead to disconnection because of timeouts. In such cases the SSH client can regularly transmit keep-alive packets, which are irrelevant to the remote system but which inform the gateway that the connection is still being used.

Use this parameter to specify the interval in seconds in which your device sends the keep-alive packets. The keep-alive packets are only transmitted when the SSH client is not sending other data to the remote system.

<User>

User name for logging in to the remote system. If you do not specify an explicit user name, LCOS uses your current username that you used to log in to the CLI.

<Host>

DNS name or IP address of the remote system.

<Command>

The LCOS SSH client either starts an interactive shell on the remote system or it executes a single command. If no command is entered, the interactive shell starts.

2.15.3 Syntax of the Telnet client

As an alternative to SSH you can use the internal LCOS Telnet client to connect to a remote system. Start the Telnet client in the terminal program with the following command:

```
telnet [-(?|h)] [-b <Loopback-Address>] <Host> [<Port>]
```

-?, -h

Displays a brief help text about the available parameters

-b <Loopback-Address>

Allows a sender address (loopback address) to be specified. This option is especially important in connection with ARF: By entering an optional loopback address you change the source address and route used by the device to connect to the remote system. This can be useful, for example, when the system is available over different paths and it should use a specific path for its reply message.

<Host>

DNS name or IP address of the remote system.

<Port>

Specifies the port to be used. If you do not specify a port, the device reverts to the SSH standard TCP port 23.

2.15.4 Public keys for authentication

Authentication with SSH works with public keys sent from the remote system. If an SSH client needs to connect to an SSH server, the server sends the public key to the client, which then looks for that key in its files. The following situations can occur here:

- The SSH client finds the key in its list of known server keys, and the key is allocated to the corresponding host name or IP address. The SSH connection can be established without further activity from the user.
- The SSH client does **not** find the key in its list of known server keys, and also no other key of the same type (RSA or DSA/DSS) for the corresponding host name or IP address. The SSH client assumes that this is the first connection to the server. It shows its public key and the associated fingerprint. The user can verify the key using a copy from another source, and can then decide whether the server should be stored in the list of known SSH servers. If the user declines this verification, the SSH connection is broken immediately.
- The SSH client finds a key for the corresponding host name or IP address, but this is different from the key currently in use. Both keys are displayed, but the SSH connection will be terminated because the SSH client suspects a man-in-the-middle attack. If the public key on the remote system was recently changed, then the administrator has to delete the outdated entry from the list of known servers (see *Manually deleting known SSH server keys* on page 103.

After successfully verifying the server key, the administrator can enter the password for accessing the remote system. The password cannot be entered directly at the command line.

SSH connections are usually closed at the server, e.g. by entering `exit` in the shell. Sometimes it may be necessary to close the SSH connection with the client, e.g. if the application on the server has problems. The SSH client in LCOS uses the same character string as OpenSSH to close the connection, i.e. 'tilde - dot'.

If the LCOS CLI session itself was opened with an OpenSSH client, you must use the string 'tilde – tilde – dot'; otherwise the wrong connection will be closed.

List of known SSH servers

The ssh client in LCOS automatically stores the known SSH keys of remote systems to its own key file. This key file is stored in the internal file system and named **ssh_known_hosts**. The contents of this file change each time you connect to an SSH server that is unknown to your device and you accept the remote-system key displayed to you as a security prompt.

Each key is stored to a line in this file and contains three fields:

- The name or IP address of the remote system as entered into the SSH command when establishing the connection.
- The key type, i.e. ssh-rsa or ssh-dss.
- The binary output of the key itself, coded as Base64.

Once an administrator has accepted the public key of an SSH server, this key applies to all of the administrators; there is no differentiation at user level.

The file(s) named here on the device are exclusively available to the root administrator via SCP (see *Loading a file via an SCP client* on page 77). Uploading and downloading via LANconfig or WEBconfig is not an option.

Manually deleting known SSH server keys

You have the option of specifically deleting SSH keys for external systems from your device. This may be required if, for example, if the SSH key of the external server has changed and your device refuses to connect to this system because of an outdated SSH key. To do this, use the `sshkeygen` command in combination with the parameter `-R`:

```
sshkeygen [-?|-h] [-t (dsa|rsa|ecdsa)] -R <Host>
```

-?, -h

Displays a brief help text about the available parameters

-t (dsa|rsa|ecdsa)

This optional parameter specifies the type of key that the device deletes. If no type is specified, the command deletes all SSH keys for the specified host.

-R <Host>

Use this parameter to specify the IP address or DNS name of the external system for which the outdated SSH key should be deleted from your device.

To delete the complete list of all known SSH server keys at once, delete the file **ssh_known_hosts** from the file system of your device.

2.15.5 Creating SSH keys in LCOS

To generate a key pair consisting of a public and a private key, you enter the following command at the CLI of the device with the LCOS SSH client to be used:

```
sshkeygen [-(?|h)] [-t (dsa|rsa|ecdsa)] [-b <Bits>]
```

A detailed description of the parameters in the `sshkeygen` command can be found in the section *SSH key generation with LCOS* on page 93. The device automatically creates the keys and saves them to its internal file system in the PEM format under the file name **ssh_rsakey** (for RSA keys), **ssh_dsakey** (for DSA or DSS keys) or **ssh_ecdsakey** (for ECDSA keys). The ID files have the following structure, which defines the use of a key for a certain LCOS administrator:

```
*** User <MyAdmin>
<SSH-Key>
*** End
```

Retrieving the public key

After the device has generated the key pair, you need to transfer the public part to the remote system. The public part of the key is retrieved with the following command:

```
show ssh idkeys
```

This command generates output similar to the following:

```
Configured Client-Side SSH Host Keys For User 'root':
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABEQAAAQEA28BtnFFInAi8I5B1aOwq5g2Y…0nkuNQ== root@
```

- The first part shows the key type (ssh-rsa or ssh-dss).
- The second part is the binary output of the key itself, coded as Base64.
- The third part contains the host name and is intended for entering comments.

Transferring the public key to a remote system

Assuming that the remote system is a device equipped with LCOS, you load the relevant DSA or RSA key using either the device file management or by adding to the list of public keys in WEBconfig directly under **Extras** > **Edit list of allowed SSH public keys**. To do this, copy the first and second parts and replace the third part with a list of users to limit the use of this key to a selection of LCOS administrators.

For more information about the syntax required for public keys, how to use different keys, and how to link them to different administrators, see the section *Syntax and modifying public-key users* on page 97.

2.15.6 Priorities for SSH authentication

SSH authentication at a remote system follows a strict order of priorities:

1. Using the first method, the device always attempts to authenticate by means of a public key, unless the remote system does not support this method or the current administrator does not possess a public key.
2. With the second method, if public-key authentication is unavailable or if the remote system has rejected the public key of the authenticating administrator, the device offers interactive authentication by keyboard. Depending on the application, interactive authentication may consist of exchanging a number of messages between the SSH client and SSH server. In the simplest case, entering a valid password is sufficient.

2.15.7 Rights for operating the SSH/Telnet client

You have the option of explicitly assigning the right to use the SSH/Telnet client for each individual administrator. This is done by adding or modifying administrator accounts (in LANconfig under **Management** > **Admin** > **Further administrators**) and adding the right to use the **SSH client**. Without the right to use this feature, an administrator cannot connect to another SSH/Telnet device.

2.16 Importing files by copy & paste on the CLI

Your device supports the loading of files into file slots from the console and also by means of a script.

This offers the convenience of using a script to roll-out files together with the configuration or, for example, to import SSH keys and VPN certificates.

- The file format must be of type text or ASCII; binary formats are not supported.
- In the case of certificates, the file format must be PEM-encoded (ASCII/Base64). DER-encoded certificates are not supported.

Syntax of the CLI command **importfile**:

importfile -a <application> [-p <passphrase>] [-n] [-h <hash> -f <fingerprint>] [-c] [-r]

Required parameters:

-a <application>

<application> specifies the storage location and thus the usage for the entered data. For a complete list of the storage locations on your device, enter **importfile -?**.

Optional parameters:

-n

-n starts the non-interactive mode. There are no prompts or other outputs on the CLI. The non-interactive mode is intended for use with scripts.

-p <passphrase>

<passphrase> is the password required to decrypt an entered private key.

-h <hash>

The hash algorithm used to determine the fingerprint of the root CA certificate.

-f <fingerprint>

The fingerprint of the root CA certificate, created with **–h**. The fingerprint can be entered either with or without colons.

-c

Only CA certificates are uploaded.

-r

Uploaded CA certificates replace any existing ones.

CTRL+Z cancels any active input.

Example:

In this example, user input is shown in **bold** and prompts for the user are shown in *italic*. Certificates and other long, multi-line outputs are abbreviated with **[...]** for legibility. At the end of the example you will find explanations for the individual steps.

```
root@test:/
    importfile -a VPN2 -p lancom -h SHA512 -f
4F:A7:5E:C9:D4:77:CE:D3:06:4C:79:93:D8:FA:3A:8E:7B:FE:19:61:B2:0C:37:4F:BB:7A:E6:46:36:04:46:EE:F6:DA:97:15:6B:BB:
2D:8F:B6:66:E6:7C:54:1E:B4:02:79:54:D6:DF:1E:9B:27:7C:9C:EA:B8:CB:1B:6D:90:1C

The input can be aborted by pressing CTRL+Z.
Please enter the PEM-encoded (Base64) device certificate, the end of the input will be
detected automatically:
importfile>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
importfile>MIID9DCCAtwCCQDgaoWRCmWaLjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQ0FADAkMQswCQYDVQQG[…]
importfile>[…]s7pM5l0L0d0=
importfile>-----END CERTIFICATE-----
Importing device certificate:
        Version: 1 (0x0)
        Serial Number:
            e0:6a:85:91:0a:65:9a:2e
    Signature Algorithm: sha512WithRSAEncryption
        Issuer: CN=OCSP-TEST-CA,C=DE
        Validity
            Not Before: Jul  4 12:34:07 2017 GMT
            Not After : Oct  5 12:34:07 2024 GMT
        Subject: CN=TEST,O=Internet Widgits Pty Ltd,ST=Some-State,C=DE
        Subject Public Key Info:
            Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
```

```
                Public-Key: (4096 bit)
                Modulus:
                    00:bb:93:f6:b9:9a:41:b2:3e:30:2b:09:7f:d1:f9:
                    49:54:5a:82:c9:17:10:1f:79:6d:ab:55:df:b8[…]
                   […]2f:0c:8a:69:7b:a9:82:32:f3:ca:9c:02:20:14:
                    bd:8b:0d
                Exponent: 65537 (0x10001)
    Signature Algorithm: sha512WithRSAEncryption
         06:5b:a4:1a:a2:69:c1:bf:6f:b1:d2:6c:b0:21:e1:10:43:[…]
         […]50:e6:a3:1d:f3:15:b7:87:8c:65:2f:25:f6:b3:ba:4c:e6:
         5d:0b:d1:dd

The input can be aborted by pressing CTRL+Z.
Please enter the PEM-encoded (Base64) device private key, the end the input will be detected
 automatically:
importfile>-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
importfile>Proc-Type: 4,ENCRYPTED
importfile>DEK-Info: AES-128-CBC,8FB95ED0568DA9AE17D7573BC294ACD8
importfile>[…]5Cuf2p798Obhw3isAe04XRwmdLno8ZcPDyB33ZKPjmhUzB0WsdzGdSSq5iYjD
importfile>-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
The private key was read successfully.
The private key matches the device certificate.
The input can be aborted by pressing CTRL+Z.
Please enter the chain of PEM-encoded (Base64) CA certificates.
The input is closed with "endcachain":
importfile>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
importfile>MIIDGzCCAgOgAwIBAgIJAMlNxBFGQqpoMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBDQUAMCQxCzAJB[…]
importfile>[…]EUDI9giYt9tnAT8hJfLkkyN/PHSiP+e+vopjSpKuyg==
importfile>-----END CERTIFICATE-----
importfile>endcachain
Importing CA certificate:
        Version: 3 (0x2)
        Serial Number:
            c9:4d:c4:11:46:42:aa:68
    Signature Algorithm: sha512WithRSAEncryption
        Issuer: CN=OCSP-TEST-CA,C=DE
        Validity
            Not Before: Jun  6 13:56:49 2017 GMT
            Not After : Jun 19 13:56:49 2045 GMT
        Subject: CN=OCSP-TEST-CA,C=DE
        Subject Public Key Info:
            Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
                Public-Key: (2048 bit)
                Modulus:
                    00:e9:ba:04:74:7d:78:5a:84:b3:63:cc:ad:4d:[…]
                    […]14:0e:27:c8:8c:5a:00:a3:4c:ed:4f:02:e8:0b:
                    fb:07
                Exponent: 65537 (0x10001)
        X509v3 extensions:
            X509v3 Subject Key Identifier:
                57:13:BB:94:3B:89:C5:3B:B7:A0:0E:BB:BF:39:05:67:8B:FB:84:30
            X509v3 Authority Key Identifier:
                keyid:57:13:BB:94:3B:89:C5:3B:B7:A0:0E:BB:BF:39:05:67:8B:FB:84:30

            X509v3 Basic Constraints:
                CA:TRUE
    Signature Algorithm: sha512WithRSAEncryption
         c8:cf:3b:97:1a:56:61:13:9c:61:ed:21:23:7a:37:b4:a8:[…]
        […]3f:21:25:f2:e4:93:23:7f:3c:74:a2:3f:e7:be:be:8a:63:
         4a:92:ae:ca

Content of the PKCS12 file: private key: 1, device certificate: 1, CA certificates: 1
root@test:/
```

1. The importfile command is called for the storage location VPN2, so we are dealing with a certificate for use in the VPN. The password for the private key is lancom and the root CA certificate can be checked with SHA512 and the specified fingerprint.
2. In the following, the user is prompted to enter the certificate.
3. After entering the certificate, it is then imported.
4. In the following, the user is prompted to enter the private key.
5. Following the input, the key is checked.
6. In the following, the user is prompted to enter the CA certificate chain. The end of the input is not detected automatically. After the last certificate, the end is determined by entering endcachain. Type this command on a new line, because all of the input on a line containing the string **endcachain** is discarded.
7. Following these entries, the CA certificates are imported and the process is completed.

2.17 Basic HTTP file server for external storage media

2.17.1 Introduction

The HTTP server integrated into the LCOS uses the HTTP protocol to connect to an external storage medium, so providing a basic data server.

This function is only supported by devices with a USB connector.

2.17.2 Preparing the USB storage medium

Accessing an external storage medium from your device requires some preparation. The following describes how to set up a USB medium to operate with the device.

1. Format the USB medium with a FAT16 or FAT32 file system.
2. Create the directory `public_html` on the USB medium.
   The LCOS HTTP server only accesses the files and subdirectories in this directory. All other files on the USB medium are ignored.

   You can also change the directory name in the Setup menu under **HTTP** > **File-Server** > **Public-Subdir**.

This concludes the configuration on the USB medium.

2.17.3 Determine the mount point of the USB medium in the LCOS

When a USB medium is connected to your device, a mount point is created automatically and used by LCOS to manage the medium internally. This mount point always remains the same for a certain USB medium, even after restarting. Different media are each allocated their own unique mount point.

The mount point must be known in order to access the files on the USB medium. The mount points for USB media are shown in the Status menu under **File system** > **Volumes**.

Volumes

ID	Mountpoints	Filesystem	Unmountable?	Free	Size
BlkDev-1	/PKBACK#.001, /usb	FAT32	1	53382 KB	122 MB
MiniFs	/minifs	MiniFs	0	209 KB	256 KB

The Status table displays all of the volumes discovered by the device:

- `MiniFs` is the flash file system integrated into most devices.
- `BlkDev-n` are identifiers for the known USB media. If there is just one USB mass storage device connected, it is named `BlkDev-1` and is mounted under `/usb`.

2.17.4 Accessing the files on a USB medium

Use the following URL to access the files on the USB medium by using the HTTP server in the LCOS:

`http://<Device-IP-Address>/filesrv/<Mounting-Point>/<File>`

If, for example, the file is named `coupon.jpeg` and it is stored in the base directory `\public_html` of the only USB medium, then you can access it with the following link:

`http://<Device-IP-Address>/filesrv/usb/coupon.jpeg`

Files can be accessed with HTTPS as well as HTTP.

2.17.5 Rules for directory access

The directory `public_html` can contain sub-directories. You can access these directories without specifying any particular file. If a directory contains a file named `index.html` or `index.htm`, this file is transferred to the HTTP client. If not, the file server displays a list of all files and directories that exist in the requested directory.

2.17.6 Supported content type

The HTTP server in the LCOS uses the file extension to determine the MIME content type required to display the content correctly in a browser. The following extensions are currently recognized and will be translated into the correct MIME content type:

- .htm and .html for HTML files
- .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .png, .bmp, .pcx for images in the corresponding format
- .ico for icon files
- .pdf for Adobe Acrobat PDF files
- .css for cascading style sheet files

2.18 Rollout Wizard

In large-scale networking projects, administrators often have to install many devices of the same or similar type at different locations. Administrators often perform rollouts to reduce or avoid the need to be personally present at the various locations. In the field of networking, a "rollout" refers to a largely automated process for the coordinated preconfiguration of devices for a specific application. There are two basic ways for administrators to do this:

1. The administrators prepare the devices at the central office for rollout. On location, an employee or a customer then runs a specifically customized Rollout Wizard that sets the site-related parts of the configuration and puts the device into operation.
2. The administrators located at their central office use the *Large Scale Rollout & Management (LSR)*. All configuration settings for a specific device are performed and managed through the management system. On location, an employee or a customer then runs the default Rollout Wizard on the device, which loads the configuration from the LSR server and brings the device into its desired operating state.

Unlike the custom Rollout Wizard, using the default Rollout Wizard in combination with the LSR means it is not necessary to configure a device in several stages; a current and complete configuration is uploaded directly after the device connects to the LSR.

However, where the LSR is not available for use, you as an administrator can still use the custom Rollout Wizard to conduct complex deployments that fulfill specialized applications.

It is not possible to operate both Wizards in parallel. The custom Rollout Wizard replaces the default Rollout Wizard, so excluding the use of remote configuration by an LSR system. To return to the default Rollout Wizard, you must delete the custom Rollout Wizard from the device's file system.

2.18.1 Default Rollout Wizard

Your device is supplied with a preconfigured Rollout Wizard, which allows you to retrieve a configuration from a *LANCOM Large Scale Rollout & Management (LSR)* server with just a few clicks. The **Default Rollout Wizard** runs if you have enabled the Rollout Wizard in LCOS but have not set up a customized Rollout Wizard.

The Default Rollout Wizard asks you for all the information that it needs to connect to the LSR. This includes:

- The protocol used for the connection (HTTP or HTTPS);
- The IP address or the DNS name of the LSR server;
- The user name and password for authentication against the LSR;
- The name or number of the rollout project;
- The device ID (optional); and
- The rollout TAN for the device.

This process can be partially or even fully automated if you enter the relevant information into the device permanently. The table for this is located in the Setup menu under **HTTP** > **Rollout-Wizard** > **Presets**. Standard presets are the port and the loopback address used by the Wizard.

If your device has a USB port, its automatic upload feature allows a USB stick to supply an unconfigured device with the basic information required by the Rollout Wizard. For more information about this function, see *Automatic upload of firmware or configuration from USB* on page 85.

Before the device starts processing the rollout, the wizard displays a summary of the connection data used. Also, the device uses an ICMP echo request (ping) to determine whether the specified server is available. If this test fails, you have the option to re-configure the wizard or to continue the rollout process anyway. The host is available, the device begins with the retrieval of a configuration from the LSR.

If the LSR server can be accessed via the Internet, but you are running the Rollout Wizard on a device without an Internet connection, you must first execute the Internet Setup Wizard.

2.18.2 Custom Rollout Wizard

The custom Rollout Wizard is a programmable setup wizard in WEBconfig, which allows administrators performing a rollout to implement a configuration wizard that customers or other (restricted) administrators can operate. To do this, you use a special description language that can be used to define very complex wizards.

Custom wizards support the following features:

- Definition of any internal variables
- Conditional branches
- Conditional goto instructions to any URL
- Conditional display of notices
- Runs all (non-interactive) actions that are available with the LCOS command line interface
- Read-out current values from the configuration in the device
- Write new values to the configuration in the device
- Status checks such as checking the time in the device
- Connection checks, e.g. the successful VPN connection to a specific remote site

Observing the rules of the description language, you create the new wizard in the form of a text file, which you then load into the device. The user on-site can run the custom wizard from WEBconfig by using the appropriate name.

You can restrict certain administrator accounts to be available specifically under the Rollout Wizard only, allowing even inexperienced users to configure certain functions without allowing access to the complete configuration.

Structure of the custom wizard

The instructions that describe a custom wizard consist of the following sections:

- String tables with the necessary texts in English and German.
- A definition of the wizard.
- Any number of sections describing the HTML pages that the wizard is to display.
- An initialization section, which defines the actions when you start the wizard.
- A concluding section, which defines the actions when you stop the wizard.

Note the following conventions for the instructions that describe the wizard:

- The elements of the instructions exactly follow the structure given above.
- The text file with the instructions is encoded in ISO 8859-1.
- Comments start with a semicolon and serve only to improve the readability of the instructions.
- Internal variables begin with the key word `wizard.` (Including the dot) and store information for the internal processing of the wizard.
- Configuration variables begin with the keyword `config.` (including the dot) and read out information from the current device configuration, or they write them to the current configuration. Enter the configuration variables in one of the following forms:
  - Dedicated parameters in the configuration are referenced via `config.1.<SNMP-ID>`, for example `config.1.2.1` to access the device name (to be found in the menu under **Setup** > **Name**).

    One way to find the SNMP-ID for a parameter in the configuration is to enter the command `ls -a` at the command line in the corresponding submenu.
  - You can reference the values in a table with:

    ```
    config.^.<SNMP-ID>.<Line>.ID:<Column>
    ```

    Example for finding the value in the first line and the column with ID '2' in the routing table '1.2.8.2':

    ```
    config.1.2.8.2.1.ID:2
    ```
  - If you do not know the ID of the column, an alternative for you to reference the values in a table is to enter:

    ```
    config.1.<SNMP-ID>.<Line>.<Column>
    ```

    Example for finding the value in the first line and second column:

    ```
    config.1.2.8.2.1.2
    ```
  - If you do not know which line in the table you need, you can reference the values in a table via a known value in the first column:

    ```
    config.<SNMP-ID>."<Known-Value>".ID:<Column>
    ```

    Example for finding the value in the column with ID '2' on the line with the value of the default route in its first column:

    ```
    config.1.2.8.2."255.255.255.0".ID:2
    ```

    If the table contains multiple rows with the same value in the first column, then the configuration variable references the first of these lines.
  - If the required line in the table is only defined after the user has entered input into the wizard, you can reference the value in the table by using a variable with:

    ```
    config.<SNMP-ID>.\"<Internal-Variable>\".ID:<Column>
    ```

Example for finding the line whose first column contains a value that agrees with the current value of the internal variable wizard.target_network:

```
config.1.2.8.2."\wizard.target_network"\.ID:2
```

- Device-property variables begin with the key word `device.` (including the dot) and are used to read-out specific properties from the device. For more information about the device variables, see the section *Using device properties as variables* on page 116.

String tables

The instructions for the custom wizard basically define the texts that are to be displayed in German and English.

The line `stringtable "English"` delivers the English text, the line `stringtable "Deutsch"` delivers the German texts. Each string definition consists of the keyword `string`, followed by the name of the string and the value enclosed by double inverted commas.

The following example shows the string tables with just one entry:

```
; -String tables start-----------------------------------------------
   stringtable "English"
   string title_test, "Test wizard"
   stringtable "Deutsch"
   string title_test, "Test-Assistent"
; -String tables end-------------------------------------------------
```

The interpreter of the instructions that describe the custom wizard in LCOS requires all texts to contain a German and an English definition. LCOS will not execute the wizard if an entry in the English string table is not accompanied by an entry of the same name in the German string table (or vice versa).

Definition of the wizard

The definition specifies the name of the wizard. The keyword `wizard` precedes the internal name in double inverted commas followed by the reference to an entry in the string table (*String tables*). The wizard displays the external name defined by this string when the HTML page is executed:

```
; -Wizard Definition Start---------------------------
   wizard "My_Test-Wizard", title_test
   ; -Wizard Definition End----------------------------
```

Sections

The sections represent the actual HTML pages that are displayed when the wizard is executed in the user's browser.

Each section begins with the keyword `section` and ends with the beginning of the next section. The last section ends at the beginning of the 'on-init' area, i.e. there is no explicit keyword for the end.

The sections include the following elements in any order and quantity:

- Conditions
- Optional freely definable name of the section, starting with the keyword `label`, followed by a string of upper- and lowercase letters and underscores '_':

  ```
  Label My_RolloutAssistent
  ```

  The instruction set for the wizard can use the freely definable name as a goto target.

- Static text starting with the keyword `static_text` followed by a reference to an entry in the string table *(String tables)*:

  ```
  static_text str.conf_general
  ```

- Fields for different data types such as text or IP address, check boxes, radio buttons, selection lists, etc.

Information on the various fields can be found in the *Fields and attributes* on page 113 section.

- Actions performed by the wizard in different situations depending on the keyword at the beginning of the block:
  - `on_show`: The wizard performs the actions in this block before a section (HTML page) is displayed.
  - `on_skip`: The wizard performs the actions in this block if a section (HTML page) is not to be displayed due to conditions contained within it.
  - `on_next`: The wizard performs the actions in this block if the user clicks on 'Next' in the section (HTML page).
  - `on_back`: The wizard performs the actions in this block if the user clicks on 'Back' in the section (HTML page).

Notes on the structure of the blocks with the actions and the elements in them are to be found in the *Actions* on page 117 section.

Conditions

The instructions for the wizard can add conditions to any element in a section. A condition can be used to change the output HTML page depending on the context by showing or hiding certain configuration options depending on the previous settings.

Conditions always refer to the previous element. They consist of a class specifier and one or more condition patterns. A pattern consists of two operands and one operator. The following applies here:

- If a condition contains multiple condition patterns in one line, the wizard evaluates this expression as an OR operator.
- If the instructions contains multiple conditions relating to a parent element on separate lines, the wizard assesses the expression to be an AND operation.

A class can contain any number of condition patterns and an element can contain any number of conditions. For example, the following conditions only display the section if the internal variable `wizard.test_select1` is equal to `1`, and `wizard.test_select4` or `wizard.test_select5` is equal to `0`:

```
section
only_if wizard.test_select1, "1", equal
only_if wizard.test_select4, "0", equal, wizard.test_select5, "0", equal
```

Classes

The instructions can include the following classes:

- `only-if`: The preceding element is only executed or displayed when at least one of the following condition patterns is fulfilled.
- `skip-if`: The preceding element is not executed or displayed when all of the following condition patterns are fulfilled.

Operands

The condition pattern can contain the following operands:

- Static text
- Internal variables of the wizard
- Variables for referencing values from the current configuration of the device (configuration variables)
- The character '*' as a wildcard

Operators

The condition pattern can contain the following operators:

- `equal`: Checks if the two operands are equal.
- `exists`: Checks if the specified configuration variable is set, i.e. that the value of the parameter in the configuration is not empty.

- `empty`: Checks if the first operand is empty. The second operand is specified as a wildcard '*'.
- `contains`: Checks if the first operand contains the second operand.
- `!`: Negates the condition.

Examples

The following condition only displays the section if the internal variable 'wizard.test_select' is equal to '0'.

```
section
only_if wizard.test_select, "0", equal
```

The following condition sets the internal variable 'wizard.intranet_name' to the value 'INTRANET' if this variable is empty.

```
set wizard.intranet_name, "INTRANET" only_if wizard.intranet_name, *, empty
```

The following condition sets the internal variable 'wizard.target_1' to the value 'TARGET_1' if the internal variable 'wizard.select_target' is set either to '1' or '5'.

```
set   wizard.target_1,   "TARGET_1"   only_if   wizard.select_target,   "1",   equal,
wizard.select_target, "5", equal
```

Fields and attributes

The wizard uses fields in order to display information to the user and to give the user the option to enter information. Each field corresponds to an internal variable.

The wizard defines a field by specifying the appropriate key word, followed by an internal variable on the same line. Additional lines that follow can optionally contain the attributes for the field.

An example of a field definition in the wizard:

```
selection_buttons select_inet
 description   str.inet_Selection
 button_text   str.inet_PPPoE, str.inet_IPoE
```

This field generates a group of radio buttons, only one of which can be activated by the user. The wizard places the text defined in the string table `str.inet_Selection` as a description next to the field. For the radio buttons themselves, the wizard displays the text under `str.inet_PPPoE` and `str.inet_IPoE`. After an option was selected by the user, the wizard writes the selected value to the internal variable `wizard.select_inet`.

You can use the following fields in the wizard:

`check_local_ip`

This field checks if the wizard previously changed the device's IP address and redirects the user to the corresponding HTML page. Possible attributes:

- `destination`: Target for forwarding as a FQDN or IPv4 address.
- `timeout`: Wait time before forwarding.

`check_time`

This field verifies if the device has valid time information. Possible attributes:

- `success_jump`: Label of the page that the wizard opens if the check is successful.
- `fail_jump`: Label of the page that the wizard opens if the check fails.
- `limit`: Maximum number of checks before the wizard considers the test to have failed. Set the limit to the value '0' to continue the checks without limit.
- `timeout`: Wait time between two checks.

`entryfield_hex`

This field is used for entering hexadecimal values, such as MAC addresses. Possible attributes:

- `description`: Field description in the HTML display
- `max_len`: Maximum number of characters that the user can enter into this field

- never_empty: A value of '1' for this attribute denotes a field that the user must fill out.
- add_to_charset: Adds extra characters to the default input character set.
- default_value: Default value

entryfield_ipaddress

This field is used to enter IPv4 addresses. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- never_empty: A value of '1' for this attribute denotes a field that the user must fill out.
- never_zero: A value of '1' for this attribute denotes a field that may not contain the value '0'.
- add_to_charset: Adds extra characters to the default input character set.
- default_value: Default value

entryfield_numbers

This field is used to enter telephone numbers. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- max_len: Maximum number of characters that the user can enter into this field
- never_empty: A value of '1' for this attribute denotes a field that the user must fill out.
- add_to_charset: Adds extra characters to the default input character set.
- default_value: Default value

entryfield_numeric

This field is used to enter numbers. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- range_min: Minimum value that the user can enter in this field
- range_max: Maximum value that the user can enter in this field
- signed_value: Allows you to specify a numerical value with a sign
- never_empty: A value of '1' for this attribute denotes a field that the user must fill out.
- add_to_charset: Adds extra characters to the default input character set.
- default_value: Default value
- unit: The unit of value shown after the input field in the wizard's HTML display.

entryfield_text

This field is used to enter text. The attribute hidden is for fields used to enter passwords. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- hidden: Identifies a field used by the user to enter a password.
- add_to_charset: Adds extra characters to the default input character set.
- convert_to_upper: Converts user input into uppercase letters
- max_len: Maximum number of characters that the user can enter into this field
- min_len: Minimum number of characters that the user can enter into this field
- never_empty: A value of '1' for this attribute denotes a field that the user must fill out.
- unit: The unit of value shown after the input field in the wizard's HTML display.

entryfield_textwithlist

This field is used to enter text. The user also has the option of selecting from a set of predefined values. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- default_value: Default value
- max_len: Maximum number of characters that the user can enter into this field
- item_value: List of predefined values that the user can select for this field

onoff_switch

This field creates a simple check box. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- value_list: List of the two values that the check box may take on
- default_selection: Default value

page_switch

This field creates a link with which the user can switch to one of the wizard's several other HTML pages. Possible attributes:

- page_description: Comma-separated list of text strings or references to strings that describe the possible link targets.
- page_label: Comma-separated list or page labels of the possible link targets.
- description: Field description in the HTML display

ping_barrier

This field stops the wizard from being executed until a ping to the target was answered successfully. Possible attributes:

- destination: Target address for the ping.
- loopback: Loopback address used by the ping instead of the default reply address
- success_jump: Label of the page that the wizard opens if the ping is successful.
- fail_jump: Label of the page that the wizard opens if the ping fails.
- limit: Maximum number of pings before the wizard considers the test to have failed. Set the limit to the value '0' to continue sending pings without limit.
- timeout: Wait time between two pings.

popup

This field opens the entered target address in a popup window. Possible attributes:

The target address can contain variables (see *Variables* on page 116).

readonly_text

This field creates a read-only field. The wizard can use these fields to display text. The wizard can use hidden attributes to define internal variables. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- unit: The unit of value shown after the input field in the wizard's HTML display
- hidden: Identifies a hidden field.

selection_buttons

This field generates a group of radio buttons, only one of which can be activated by the user. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- button_text: Comma-separated list of text strings or references to strings that describe the individual radio buttons.
- button_value: Comma-separated list of text strings with the values of the individual radio buttons.

selection_list

This field generates a drop-down selection list for the user to select a value. Possible attributes:

- description: Field description in the HTML display
- item_text: Comma-separated list of text strings or references to strings that describe the individual list entries.

- `item_value`: Comma-separated list of text strings with the values of the individual list entries.
- `default_selection`: Default value

`static_text`

This field creates static text on the HTML page following the field name as a reference to a text string.

Variables

In some attributes of the fields you can use variables to replace the value of the attribute with another string or supplement it with an additional string. You have a choice between the internal variables of the custom Wizard and the predefined environment variables of the CLI, which you insert using special placeholders.

Inserting Wizard variables

To insert an internal variable into the value of an attribute, use the syntax `$(VariableName)`. To insert the user name from the internal variable `wizard.username` into a URL, add the following attribute: `http://host/directory?param=$(username)`.

Inserting environment variables

To insert an environment variable into the value of an attribute, use the syntax `%VariableName`. The following environment variables can be used in the attributes:

- `%` inserts a percent sign.
- `f` inserts the version and the date of the firmware currently active in the device.
- `r` inserts the hardware release of the device.
- `v` inserts the version of the loader currently active in the device.
- `m` inserts the MAC address of the device.
- `s` inserts the serial number of the device.
- `n` inserts the name of the device.
- `l` inserts the location of the device.
- `d` inserts the type of the device.

Using device properties as variables

In some situations, a wizard has to make decisions based on the device properties. For instance, the wizard should only write certain values to the configuration if the device has a particular type of WAN interface. The wizard has access to certain variables of the device properties. These variables begin with the key word `device.` (including the dot), followed by the name of the relevant property. The wizard can use the following variables for read-access to the device properties:

`device.flags.dhcp_addr`

This variable indicates whether a DHCP server has assigned an IP address to the device (in which case the variable is set to '128 ') or not ('0').

`device.hasADSL`

This variable indicates whether the device has an ADSL interface ('1') or not ('0').

`device.hasISDN`

This variable indicates whether the device has an ISDN interface ('1') or not ('0').

`device.hasUMTS`

This variable indicates whether the device has an UMTS interface ('1') or not ('0').

`device.hasDSL`

This variable indicates whether the device has an DSL interface ('1') or not ('0').

`device.FirmwareVersion`

This variable indicates the current firmware version of the device.

`device.HardwareRelease`

This variable indicates the hardware release of the device.

`device.LoaderVersion`

This variable indicates the loader version of the device.

`device.MacAddress`

This variable indicates the MAC address of the device in hexadecimal notation without any separators.

`device.SerialNumber`

This variable indicates the serial number of the device.

`device.Location`

This variable indicates the location of the device as specified under **Setup** > **SNMP** > **Location**.

`device.DeviceString`

This variable indicates the type of the device.

`device.Name`

This variable indicates the name of the device as specified under **Setup** > **Name**.

Actions

The wizard uses actions to change values in the device configuration. One or more conditions can be defined for any action. If these conditions are met, the wizard performs the action.

set

This action replaces the content of the target variable with the specified source. The source contains a comma-separated list of variables or text strings.

```
set $target, $sourcelist
```

If the target variable is a single configuration parameter, specify only one value as the source. Other values are ignored.

If the target variable is a table, you should first specify the value in the source from the line that the wizard should change. The wizard searches the first index column for this value and it changes the first line in which it finds this value. If the wizard does not find a line with the matching value, it adds a new line to the table.

If the target variable is a numeric value, you can use the `add` or `sub` action to add or subtract the amount defined as `$number`.

```
set $target, $number, add
```

```
set $target, $number, sub
```

Examples

The following action sets the default route to the desired values:

```
set config.1.2.8.2, "255.255.255.255", "0.0.0.0", "0", "INTERNET", "0", "on", "Yes", ""
```

The following action increases the value of the ARP aging minutes to '5':

```
set config.1.2.7.11, "5", add
```

The following action reduces the value of the ARP aging minutes by '5':

```
set config.1.2.7.11, "5", sub
```

del

This action clears the contents of the target variable. If this variable is a table, enter the value from the first index column in the line that is to be deleted.

Example

The following action deletes the default route from the routing table:

```
del config.1.2.8.2, "255.255.255.0"
```

cat

This action lists the content of the source variables after the target variable.

Example

The following action adds the content of the variables `wizard.user` and the variable `wizard.name`:

```
cat wizard.name, wizard.user
```

cut

This action removes a certain number of characters from the target variables. Enter as a parameter the position of the character to be deleted counting from the left and, optionally, the number of characters to be deleted.

Examples

The following action will delete all characters in the variable `wizard.name` after the 2nd character.

```
cut wizard.name, 2
```

The following action will delete all characters in the variable `wizard.name` exactly 4 characters after the 2nd character.

```
cut wizard.name, 2, 4
```

trigger_config_change

Depending on the part of the firmware that is affected, changes by the wizard to the configuration do not take immediate effect, as some modules use internal structures for the configuration.

The action `trigger_config_change` triggers an update to these internal structures. You should insert this action into a section if you want to make sure that the configuration has been updated when you change a page in the Rollout Wizard.

When you exit, the wizard automatically executes this action.

exec

The string that follows this is executed as a command on the console. In this case variables can be used in the string, for example to start a `LoadScript`.

Trace for rollout wizards

The HTML pages of the wizard only display the results of internal processing. While the wizard is being built, the trace can provide additional information to the administrator which could be used for further optimization, for example about the analysis of the various conditions.

Start trace from the command line using the command `trace + Rollout-Wizard`.

Using user-defined HTML templates

As an option, the appearance of the wizard can be adapted to your company's design guidelines by uploading a customized HTML template into the device. The template can specify the basic structure of HTML pages and the design of colors, fonts, etc. by means of CSS rules.

Two fixed tags in the HTML template are used to insert the contents from the wizard into the respective HTML pages:

- `<WIZARD_LOGO>`: The wizard inserts the logo (GIF, JPEG or PNG format) as saved to the device.
- `<WIZARD_CONTENT>`: This tag marks the point where the wizard inserts the contents of the sections in the form of a two-column table with the corresponding buttons.

A very simple example of an HTML template looks like this:

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/strict.dtd">
<html>
    <head>
        <title>Title of the wizard</title>
        <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1">
    </head>
    <body>
        <div>
            <WIZARD_LOGO>
        </div>
        <WIZARD_CONTENT>
    </body>
</html>
```

The wizard uses a selection of predefined CSS classes that you can easily customize by specifying appropriate values in your HTML template, including:

- `class="header"`: The CSS class for the header with the logo.
- `class="wizardName"`: The CSS class paragraph with the name of the wizard at the head of the page.
- `class="headerLogo"`: The CSS class for the area for the logo in the header.
- `class="wizardTable"`: The CSS class for tables with the displayed fields.
- `class="footer"`: The CSS class for the footer with the buttons.

Uploading files for the wizard

To make the wizard available, upload the following files to the device:

- **Rollout-Wizard (simple Text)**: The instructions for compiling the wizard (required). This ISO-8859-1 encoded text file is required for operating the wizard. There is no limit on its size.
- **Rollout-Wizard – Template (*.html, *.htm)**: An HTML template for the wizard (optional). This template controls the way that the sections appear in the HTML pages when the user's browser displays the wizard. The template allows you to use your own CSS information to define the layout. If you do not load a custom HTML template into the device, the wizard uses a predefined template. The template must not exceed a size of 64KB.
- **Rollout-Wizard – Logo (*.gif, *.png, *.jpeg)**: Your company logo (optional). The wizard places this image file at the location of the `<WIZARD_LOGO>` marker in the template. If you do not load a logo into the device, the wizard uses a predefined logo.

Deleting wizard files from the device

There are various ways to delete wizard files from the device: You either delete the relevant files from the file system of your device, or you use the `rollout` command with the appropriate parameters from the CLI.

Deletion via the rollout command

The delete function of the `rollout` command has the following syntax:

```
rollout (-r|-remove) <RelatedFile>
```

Possible files are:

- `wizard`: Deletes the wizard
- `template`: Deletes the template
- `logo`: Deletes the logo
- `all`: Deletes the wizard, the template and the logo

Deletion via the file system

In the file system, delete the Wizard's files via the correspondingly named mount points:

- **rollout_wizard**
- **rollout_template**
- **rollout_logo**

Example of a Rollout Wizard:

This section presents an example of a Rollout Wizard. The wizard is used for setting up an Internet connection.

In the first section, the wizard defines the text that the device provides for display on the various HTML pages.

```
stringtable "German"
 string title_MyCompany, "MyCompany Rollout"
 string txt_Welcome, "Welcome to the MyCompany Rollout Wizard"
 string dev_serial_number, "Serial number"
 string dev_type, "Device type"
 ;---Page: What type of connection string inet_Selection, "Internet connection type" string
 inet_PPPoE, "PPPoE" string inet_IPoE, "IPoE" ;---Page: IPoE
 string inet_ipoe, "Please enter the details for the connection."
 string con_ipaddress,     "IP address"
 string con_subnet,        "Net mask"
 string con_gateway,       "Gateway"
 string con_dns,           "DNS"
 ;---Page: PPPoE
 string inet_pppoe, "Please enter your username and password."
 con_username string,      "username"
 string con_password,      "password"
 --- Page: End
 string end,              "The configuration is now complete."
```

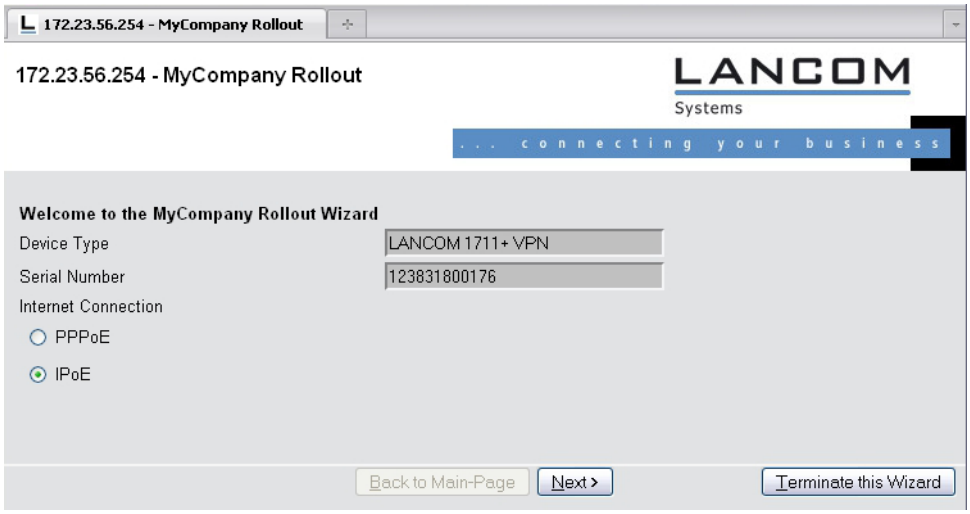
The wizard starts the first line of the next section with the name 'MyCompany Rollout'. The device displays the text string `str.title_MyCompany` as the title of the HTML page.

The wizard then defines the sections, which correspond to the required HTML pages.

The 'Start' section first shows a static greeting text. Below that, the Wizard has two read-only fields that display the device type and serial number. The wizard reads out these two values from the device using the field `on_show` when it opens the page. The wizard offers the user a selection of options for the Internet connection, either 'PPPoE' or 'IPoE'. Since no values are defined for the option fields, the wizard sets the variable `select_inet` according to the user's selection, e.g. PPPoE to '0' and IPoE to '1'.

```
wizard "MyCompany Rollout", str.title_MyCompany

section ;---Start---
 static_text    str.txt_Welcome

 readonly_text device_string
  description   str.dev_type
 readonly_text device_serial_number
```

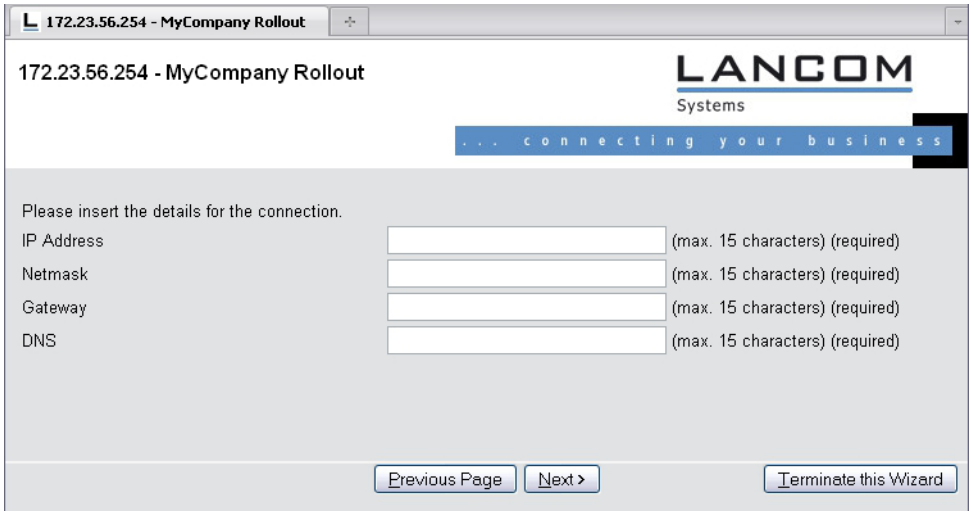
```
 description   str.dev_serial_number

selection_buttons select_inet
 description   str.inet_Selection
 button_text   str.inet_PPPoE, str.inet_IPoE

on_show
 set wizard.device_string, device.DeviceString
 set wizard.device_serial_number, device.SerialNumber

on_next
```



The wizard only displays the IPoE section if the variable select_inet is set to the value '1'.

On this page, the wizard asks the user to provide values for the IP address, netmask, gateway and DNS server. All fields are required to run the wizard.

```
section ;---IPoE---
 only_if wizard.select_inet, "1", equal

 static_text   str.inet_ipoe

 entryfield_ipaddress inet_ipaddress
  description  str.con_ipaddress
  never_empty  1
 entryfield_ipaddress inet_subnet
  description  str.con_subnet
  never_empty  1
 entryfield_ipaddress inet_gateway
  description  str.con_gateway
  never_empty  1
 entryfield_ipaddress inet_dns
  description  str.con_dns
  never_empty  1
```



The wizard only displays the PPPoE section if the variable select_inet is set to the value '0'.

On this page of the wizard prompts the user for the user name and password, each with a maximum length of 30 characters.

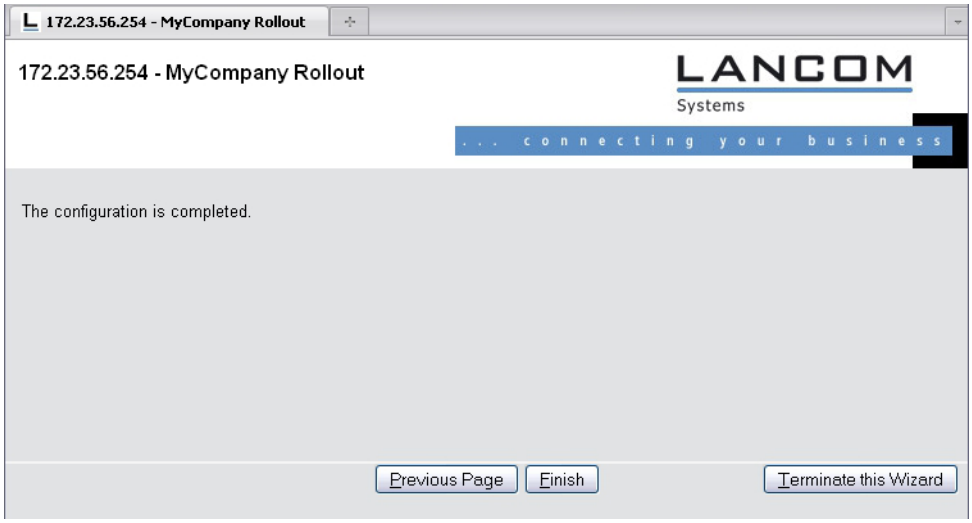
```
section ;---PPPoE---
 only_if wizard.select_inet, "0", equal

 static_text   str.inet_pppoe

 entryfield_text inet_username
  description  str.con_username
  max_len   30
 entryfield_text inet_password
  description  str.con_password
  max_len   30
```

The last page of the wizard initially displays a summary in static text. Follow-up actions are carried out when the wizard is finished:

- If the user has selected IPoE, the wizard creates a corresponding remote site and an entry in the list of IP parameters.
- If the user has selected PPPoE, the wizard creates a corresponding remote site and an entry in the PPP list.

› Whichever option is selected, the Wizard creates a default route 'INTERNET in the router.

```
section ;---ende---
 static_text   str.ende

on_init  ;---Befehle, die bei der Initialisierung des Wizards durchgeführt werden.---

on_apply ;---Befehle, die bei der Fertigstellung des Wizards durchgeführt werden.---

 ;---Wenn IPoE ausgewählt wurde, werden die entsprechenden Daten nun eingetragen.
 ;---Remote site
 set config.1.2.2.19, "INTERNET", "9999", "", "", "IPOE", "0", "000000000000"
 only_if wizard.select_inet, "1", equal
 ;---IP-Parameter
 set config.1.2.2.20, "INTERNET", wizard.inet_ipaddress, wizard.inet_subnet, "0.0.0.0",
wizard.inet_gateway, wizard.inet_dns, "0.0.0.0", "0.0.0.0", "0.0.0.0"
 only_if wizard.select_inet, "1", equal

 ;---If PPPoE was selected, the corresponding data is entered.
 ;---Remote site
 set config.1.2.2.19, "INTERNET", "9999", "", "", "PPPOE", "0", "000000000000"
 only_if wizard.select_inet, "0", equal
 ;---PPP list
 set config.1.2.2.5, "INTERNET", "none", "60", wizard.inet_password, "5", "5", "10", "5",
 "2", wizard.inet_username, "1"
  only_if wizard.select_inet, "0", equal

 ;---Set the default route.
 set config.1.2.8.2, "255.255.255.255", "0.0.0.0", "0", "INTERNET", "0", "on", "Yes", ""
```



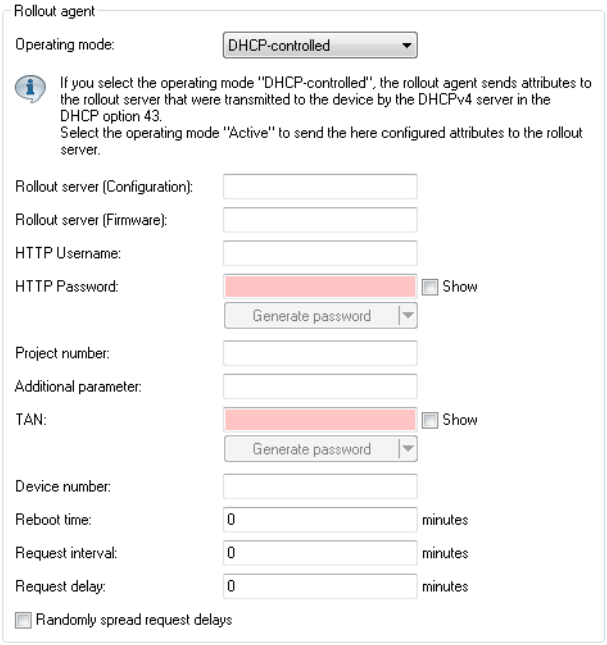
2.18.3 Activating the Rollout Wizard in WEBconfig

The Rollout Wizard is activated from the Setup menu by setting the parameter **HTTP** > **Rollout-Wizard** > **Operating** to **yes**. This initially activates the default Rollout Wizard. In WEBconfig, a new Wizard appears under **Setup-Wizards** with the name assigned under **HTTP** > **Rollout-Wizard** > **Title**.

You replace this with a custom Rollout Wizard by loading the description of the Wizard into the device (see *Uploading files for the wizard* on page 119).

2.18.4 Configuration with LANconfig

The rollout agent is configured in LANconfig under **Management** > **Rollout Agent**.



Operating mode

If you select the operating mode “DHCP-controlled”, the rollout agent sends the rollout server the attributes that the device received from the DHCP server by means of the vendor-specific DHCP option 43. In the “Active” setting, the device transfers the attributes configured in this dialog (for example, if no DHCP is available on the network). Setting the mode to “Off” disables the rollout agent.

The “DHCP-controlled” operating mode does not overwrite manually configured attributes. This makes it possible to perform a comprehensive pre-configuration based on the latest contact information for the rollout server (address, login data) as communicated by the DHCP server.

Rollout server (configuration)

Use this entry to specify the address of the rollout server that is responsible for rolling out the configuration.

An entry can take the following forms:

- IP address (HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP)
- FQDN

Rollout server (firmware)

Use this entry to specify the address of the rollout server that is responsible for rolling out the firmware.

An entry can take the following forms:

- IP address (HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP)
- FQDN

HTTP username

Set the user name used by the rollout agent to log on to the rollout server.

HTTP password

Set the user password used by the rollout agent to log on to the rollout server.

Project number

This entry specifies the rollout project number for the rollout agent.

Additional parameter

Use this entry to specify any additional parameters that the rollout agent should transfer to the rollout server.

TAN

Use this entry to specify the rollout TAN.

Device number

Contains the device number of the device that is running the rollout agent.

Reboot time

Here you set the time after which the device reboots after a rollout.

Request interval

If a configuration fails, the time in seconds you set here is the delay before a request for a configuration rollout is repeated.

If the value is "0", the renewed attempt starts in 1 minute.

Request delay

This entry contains the delay time in seconds for a rollout request.

Randomly spread request delays

With this entry, you specify that the request for a rollout takes place after a random delay. This setting prevents all of the devices involved in the rollout from requesting a configuration from the LSR server all at the same time.

2.18.5 Receiving LSR information via DHCP server (zero-touch rollout)

An unconfigured LANCOM device boots with an activated DHCP client and uses this to retrieve an IP address, netmask, DNS address, and gateway address from the network's DHCP server.

By means of the vendor-specific DHCP option 43, a suitably configured DHCP server sends information about how to reach an LSR (Large Scale Rollout) server, among other things. The rollout agent of the LANCOM device processes this information, contacts the LSR server and, according to the rollout strategy, it retrieves its configuration or updates its firmware.

This function simplifies the rollout process as the devices no longer have to be preconfigured.

The LSR server connects via HTTP, HTTPS or TFTP, in which case an SSL certificate needs to be stored on the LANCOM device to secure the connection.

It is also possible to configure (also partially) a rollout agent in advance. For example, the rollout server URL sent from the DHCP server can be adopted, although a project number in the device must be configured in advance.

Configuring the zero-touch rollout

Initial situation

In the case of a rollout to a number of branch sites, the large number of devices means that pre-configuring the LANCOM devices is not a viable option. Instead they should be commissioned after they have retrieved a configuration from a central LSR server, in a similar manner to the "zero-touch management" with a WLC.

Prerequisites

In order for the "zero-touch rollout" by means of the rollout agent in the device to work properly, a number of prerequisites need to be met first:

- A central rollout server must be available and the zero-touch devices must be able to contact it via HTTP/HTTPS.
- DHCP must be active in the network at the branch. That is,
  - a DHCP server is available on the branch network, or
  - a DHCP relay server on the branch network exchanges the DHCP data packets between the devices on the branch network and a DHCP server at the main office.
- The DHCP server has to be able to deliver the DHCP option 43.

The DHCP server transmits sensitive data such as the rollout password unsecured as a DHCP message. So take care to transport the data only over appropriately secured connections.

Process

The rollout of the configuration proceeds as follows:

1. The unconfigured device is connected to the branch network.
2. The device retrieves connection data (such as IP address, gateway, netmask, DNS address, and DHCP option 43) from the DHCP server.
3. The device uses the DHCP option 43 to decode various pieces of information including the URL of the rollout server and uses this to configure the rollout agent on the device.
4. The rollout agent then contacts the rollout server and performs the rollout in two steps:
   - Firmware-Update
   - Configuration update

The rollout agent contacts the rollout server at the configured firmware server URL and retrieves a firmware file in the `.upx` format, which it is then uses to update the device.

After the firmware update, the device restarts and contacts the rollout server again. The rollout agent checks whether the firmware provided by the rollout server is already installed. This test succeeds if the latest firmware was received by the device in the first step. The rollout agent continues with the configuration update and it downloads script files. It contacts the rollout server at the configured config-server URL and retrieves a script in the `.lcs` format, which it is then uploaded to the device.

DHCP option 43

DHCP option 43 is vendor-specific, i.e. each vendor is free to decide how to structure this option and what information is coded into it. The option can contain several sub-types, which are used for the detailed structuring of the data.

The following sub-types are specified for the device rollout agent:

Sub-type 1: Config-Server-URL

Server addresses are entered in the following available formats:

- HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP

- IP address, FQDN

Examples:

- https://rollout:443/
- tftp://10.1.1.1
- http://10.1.1.2/test

It is also possible to specify LCOS variables

The rollout agent expects that the rollout server available at this address will respond to its request by sending a configuration script with the extension `.lcs`.

If the rollout server is an LSR, the address requires the prefix `lsr:`, e.g. `lsr:https://rollout:443/`. The rollout agent then assembles the correct LSR-rollout URL from the sub-type 5 and the following. Accordingly, the sub-types 5 and up are only of importance when using this prefix.

If the rollout server is not an LSR, then specifying the URLs for the config-server and firmware server have to be done by hand with the use of variables.

Sub-type 2: Firmware-Server-URL

As with sub-type 1, the rollout agent expects the rollout server at this address to respond by sending a firmware file with the extension `.upx`.

Sub-type 3: HTTP-Username

Contains the user name for HTTP authentication in the URL (in the form `http://username:password@server`)

Sub-type 4: HTTP-Password

Contains the password for HTTP authentication in the URL (in the form `http://username:password@server`)

Sub-type 5: LSR project number

Contains the project number for the rollout project stored in the rollout server.

Sub-type 6: Additional URL parameters for LSR keyword

The rollout agent appends this content to the constructed LSR URL (e.g. `?approval=yes`).

Sub-type 7: Reboot-Time

Specifies the wait time in minutes before the device restarts after the update by the rollout server.

Sub-type 8: Request-Interval

Specifies the interval in minutes in which the rollout agent sends its requests to the rollout server.

Sub-type 9: TAN

This entry contains the rollout TAN.

Sub-type 10: Device number

Contains the device number of the device being updated.

Sub-type 11: Request-Delay

Contains the time in minutes that the rollout agent waits between request 1 and request 2.

Sub-type 12: Request-Random

This setting prevents all of the devices involved in the rollout from requesting a configuration from the LSR server all at the same time. The following entries are allowed:

0

Requests take place after set time delays.

1

With this entry, you specify that the request for a rollout takes place after a random delay.

Sub-type 13: Omit-Certificate-Check

This value determines whether the rollout agent skips the verification of rollout-server certificate.

If this subtype is missing or its content is empty, the rollout agent assumes the value is "0" and carries out a check of the server certificate.

Please note that the configuration received from the rollout server needs to switch off the rollout agent on completion **(`Operating: no`)**, otherwise the device will reboot after the specified reboot time.

Variables

URLs can contain any of the variables that are available at the LCOS console. These variables can be output by the console by using the command `printenv`.

The variables are specified in the URL with a leading "$" character (e.g. `$__SERIALNO`).

Generating DHCP option 43

The DHCP option 43 is generated on the basis of *RFC 2132, section 8.4*.

The following configuration section can be used to generate the option 43 with the use of an ISC DHCPd DHCP server:

Within the general configuration

```
option space Rollout;
option Rollout.config-server code 1 = text;
option Rollout.firmware-server code 2 = text;
option Rollout.HTTP-Username code 3 = text;
option Rollout.HTTP-Password code 4 = text;
option Rollout.Projectnumber code 5 = text;
option Rollout.AdditionalParams code 6 = text;
option Rollout.RebootTime code 7 = text;
option Rollout.RequestInterval code 8 = text;
option Rollout.Tan code 9 = text;
option Rollout.Devicenumber code 10 = text;
option Rollout.RequestDelay code 11 = text;
option Rollout.RequestRandom code 12 = text;
option Rollout.OmitCertCheck code 13 = text;
```

Within the subnet-specific configuration

```
vendor-option-space Rollout;
 option Rollout.config-server "LSR:https://10.200.50.1:443";
 option Rollout.firmware-server "LSR:https:// 10.200.50.1:443";
 option Rollout.HTTP-Username "RolloutUser";
 option Rollout.HTTP-Password "Secret";
 option Rollout.Projectnumber "1";
 option Rollout.RebootTime "300";
 option Rollout.RequestDelay "20";
 option Rollout.RequestRandom "0";
 option Rollout.OmitCertCheck "2";
```

Other DHCP servers (such as the Microsoft DHCP server) do not permit the definition of option 43 in the configuration. In this case, the byte sequence that the server is to deliver as option 43 needs to be prefabricated and inserted into the configuration.

To avoid having to generate this byte sequence manually, the Python script linked in the following can be used to do this: *wiki.snom.com/Category:HowTo:Option_43*.

2.19 TCP port tunnel

In some cases it can be useful to enable temporary HTTP access to a station within a network, e.g. via HTTP (TCP port 80) or TELNET (TCP port 23). For example, if questions come up concerning network devices, the Support department is best able to assist when they have direct access to the device in the customer's network. The standard method for accessing networked devices via inverse masquerading (port forwarding) sometimes requires a special configuration of the firewall—changes are made which, if they are not deleted again afterwards, can represent a security risk.

As an alternative to permanent access which is based on port forwarding, a temporary remote-maintenance access can be set up that automatically closes again after certain periods of inactivity. This is done by creating a **TCP/HTTP tunnel** for the Support staff, which gives them temporary access to the relevant device.

This access only applies to the IP address that was the source of the tunnel. Network access to devices released in this way is not transferable!

2.19.1 Configuring the TCP/HTTP tunnel

A TCP/HTTP tunnel is configured from the Setup menu.

1. In the Setup menu of the device, go to the directory **HTTP**.
2. Set the parameter **Max Tunnel Connections** to the maximum number of simultaneously active TCP/HTTP tunnels you wish to allow.
3. Set the parameter **Tunnel Idle Timeout** to the lifetime for an inactive tunnel (in seconds). After expiry of this time period the tunnel closes automatically unless data transfer is actively taking place.

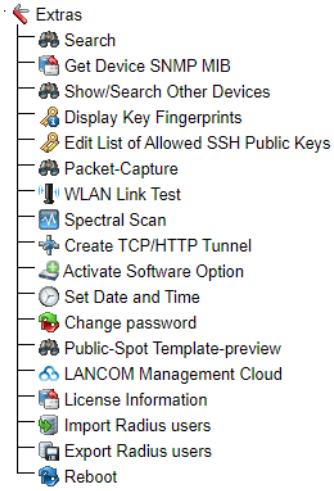
That's it! You have now completed the configuration of the TCP/HTTP tunnel.

2.19.2 Create the TCP/HTTP tunnel

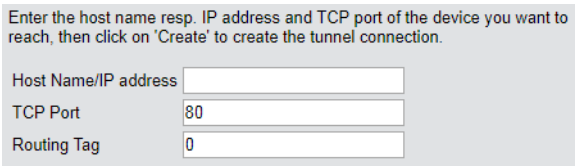
Use the WEBconfig interface of your device to set up a TCP/HTTP tunnel.

1. In WEBconfig, log on to the device which is to provide access to the device behind it.

2. In the area **Extras**, select the entry **Create TCP/HTTP tunnel**.



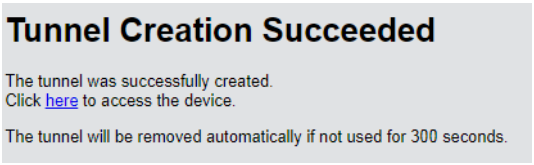
3. Enter the DNS name or IP address of the device to be accessed temporarily via HTTP and select the port to be used for the HTTP tunnel.



Apart from HTTP or HTTPS-based access, remote maintenance can also be based on any other TCP service such as telnet connections (TCP port 23) or SSH (TCP port 22).

4. If applicable, specify the routing tag of the IP network that contains the device to be accessed.
5. Accept your entries with **Create**.

The dialog that follows displays a confirmation of the newly created tunnel and provides a link to the device.



2.19.3 Deleting the TCP/HTTP tunnel before it expires

The newly created HTTP tunnel is deleted automatically if the tunnel remains inactive for the duration of the tunnel idle timeout (see *Configuring the TCP/HTTP tunnel* on page 129. To delete the tunnel earlier, click on the Status menu under **TCP-IP** > **HTTP** > **Active-Tunnels** to access the list of active tunnels and delete the one you no longer require.

Although active TCP connections in this tunnel are **not** terminated immediately, no new connections can be established.

2.20 The LANCOM Clustering option

The LANCOM Clustering XL option offers you greatly simplified administration and significant time savings. You only have to configure one device in a set group of devices (cluster). The changes are automatically transferred to the other devices in the cluster.

If a device should fail or undergo maintenance (e.g. a firmware update), the APs automatically connect to another WLC or the established VPNs automatically connect to the backup central-site VPN gateway, as applicable. The automatic configuration synchronization mean that these devices already share an identical configuration. The result is a convenient way to high availability.

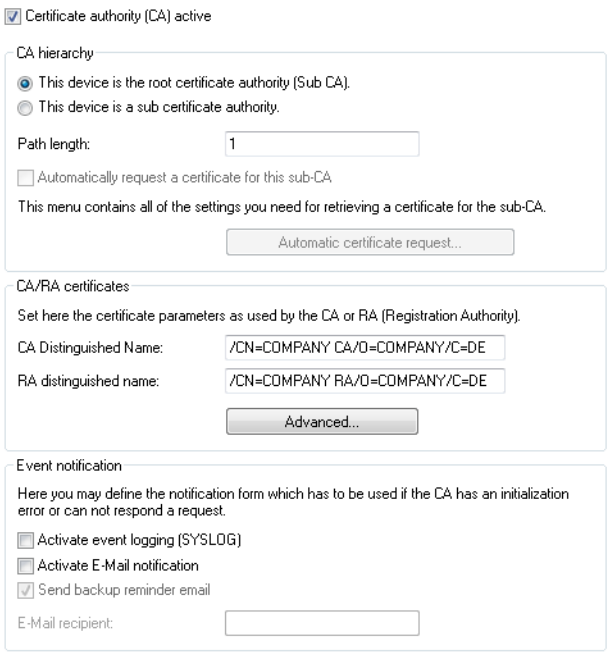
The prerequisites for a device to be a valid member of a cluster are:

- The WLC Clustering XL option (as of LCOS version 9.10).
- All cluster members must be able to establish IP communications via LAN, WAN or VPN.
- It must be in the list of group members that is stored in each device.
- It must have a valid certificate.
- It must be able to authenticate itself as a member of the cluster by certificate.

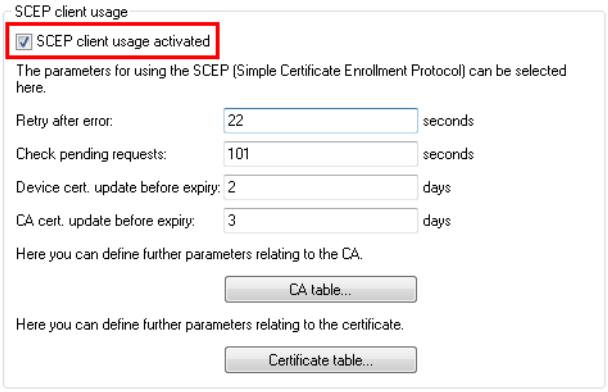
2.20.1 Setting up configuration synchronization

In order for configuration synchronization to function, all of the devices to be configured need to have valid certificates. In the interests of easy certificate distribution, you first need to configure a SCEP-CA on one of the devices.

1. To do this it is necessary to enable the SCEP server under **Certificates** > **SCEP CA**. If you set up the configuration synchronization on a WLC, it is most likely that the SCEP server is already active.



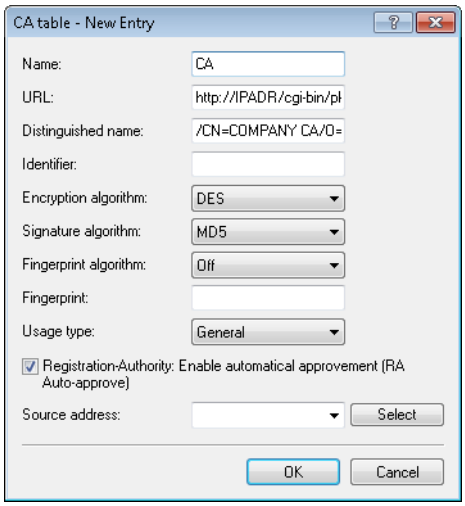
2. Then you enable the SCEP client on any device that is to work with configuration synchronization (including the SCEP CA device) under **Certificates** > **SCEP client**. If you set up the configuration synchronization on a WLC, it is most likely that the SCEP client is already active.



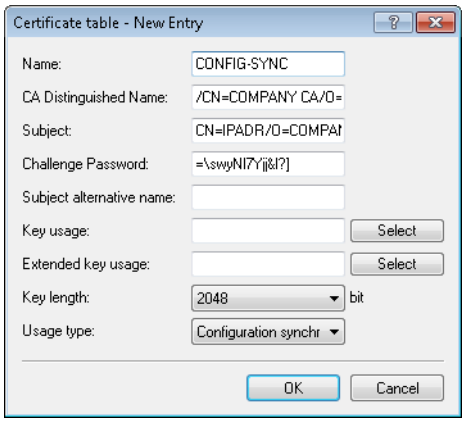
3. Add a new entry for the SCEP server to the **CA table**.

   The values for the CA table match the settings of the SCEP server from step 1 and are thus the same for all stations. For the URL you enter `http://IPADR/cgi-bin/pkiclient.exe`, replacing `IPADR` with the IP address of the device configured as SCEP-CA.

   If you set up the configuration synchronization on a WLC, a corresponding entry for the WLC operation will already be available. This entry can also be used to obtain a certificate for configuration synchronization, and in this case there is no need to make any changes to the CA table.



4. The **Certificate table** in the SCEP client needs a new entry for the retrieval of a configuration synchronization certificate. The **CA distinguished name** is the one you used when you created the CA table entry.

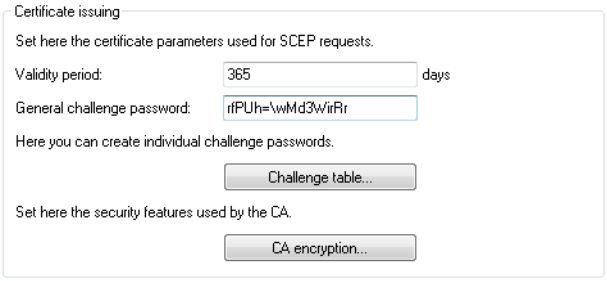


As the subject, enter each device's own IP address (e.g. `/CN=IPADR /O=COMPANY/C=DE`), replacing `IPADR` with the IP address of the device configured as SCEP-CA.

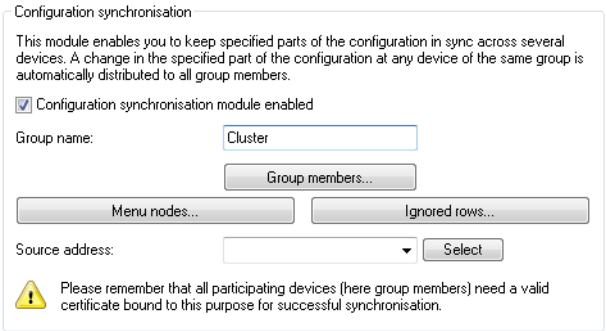
In order for the configuration synchronization to function, it is absolutely necessary for the IP address of the device to be included in the certificate's subject.

Set the **Usage type** to "Configuration synchronization". Also, adjust the **Key length** to "2048 bits". Set a **Name** of your choice for the table entry.

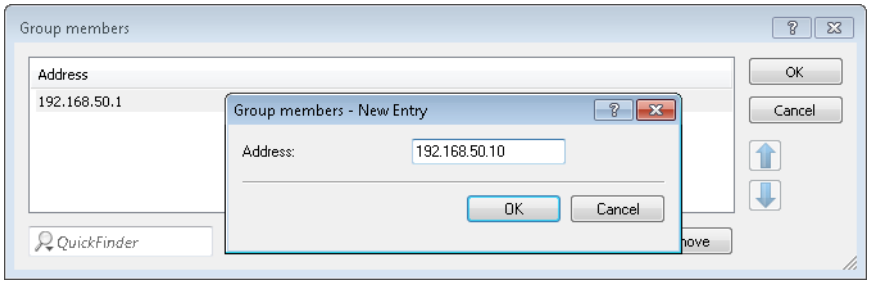
The challenge password of the device configured as SCEP CA is located in its configuration under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** > **General challenge password**.



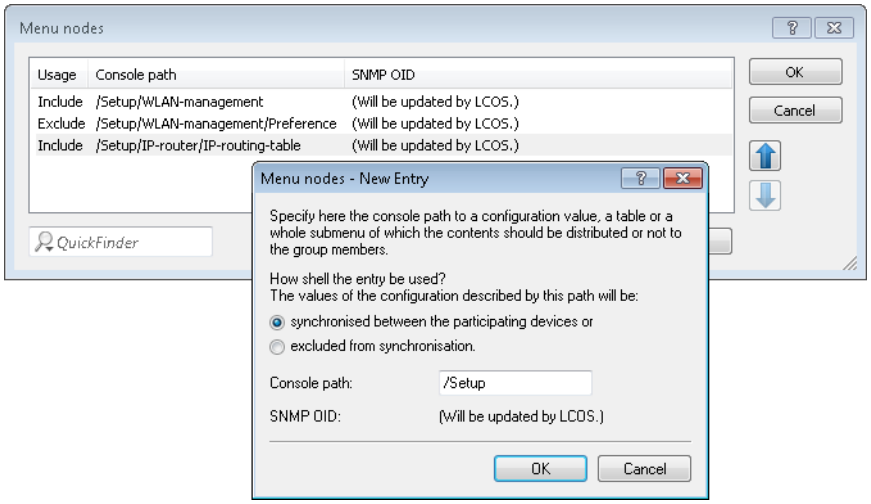
5. This concludes the set up of the SCEP CA and the SCEP client for the retrieval of configuration synchronization certificates. At this time you can write the configuration back to the device in order to retrieve the certificates.
6. Now activate the configuration synchronization under **Management** > **Synchronization** with the option **Configuration synchronization module enabled**. Under **Cluster name** you can also set a name that appears in the LANconfig device list.



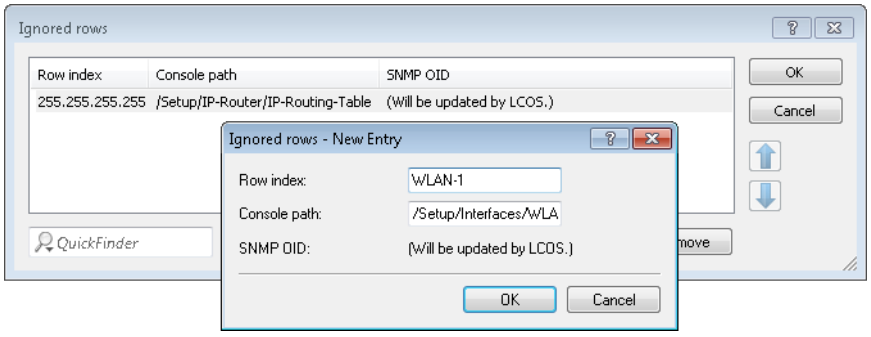
7. Under **Cluster members**, enter the IP addresses of **all** of the devices that are to be members of the cluster.



8. Under **Menu nodes** you specify the menus you want to synchronize. If you wish to explicitly exclude menu nodes from the synchronization, set the **Usage** to "excluded from synchronization".



Under "Ignored rows" you can optionally specify the rows of a table that should be excluded from synchronization. Example: The default route on VPN gateways, which should be different for each gateway. The rest of the routing table can be synchronized by making an entry in the **Menu nodes**.



9. The set up of configuration synchronization is now concluded for this device. You can write the configuration back to the device.
10. Perform steps 2 through 9 on the other devices that belong to the cluster. When configuring each SCEP client, point to the SCEP CA of the first device, as indicated above.
11. Now start the cluster on the device that should initially distribute its configuration to the other cluster members. To do this in LANconfig, select the appropriate entry from the device list and, in the context menu, click **[Start cluster...]**.
12. The cluster is now in operation. You can check the state of the cluster in WEBconfig under **Status** > **Config** > **Sync** > **Status**. Now, configuration changes made on any cluster member are synchronized to the other members.

Please note the following requirements:

- The correct time must be set on all of the involved devices (certificate checks).
- The IP address of each device must appear in the subject of its own certificate.
- To menu trees for synchronization must be the same on both devices (which is not always the case with different firmware versions or device options).
- If any changes are made to the configuration of the configuration synchronization (menu nodes, etc.) after the cluster was started already, then the cluster must be restarted.

2.20.2 1-Click WLC High Availability Clustering Wizard

With the 1-Click WLC High Availability Clustering Wizard, you can use LANconfig to simultaneously configure multiple WLCs under the following conditions:

- All of the WLCs have the WLC High Availability Clustering XL option enabled.
- At least one WLC is fully configured. This is the case if it is already managing APs.
- At least one WLC has a basic configuration (at least the name and IP address are set).

In case of doubt, you should start the Basic Settings Wizard on the corresponding WLC.

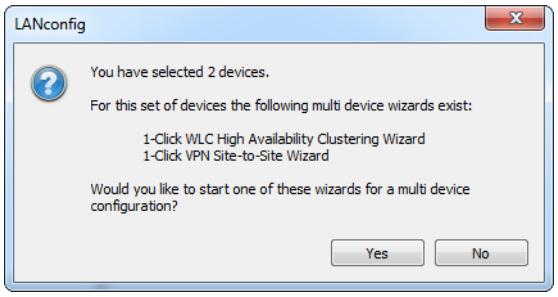
All WLCs in the cluster have the same rights.

1. In the device list, select the two WLCs that you want to configure together.

   There are two ways to start the WLC Clustering Wizard:

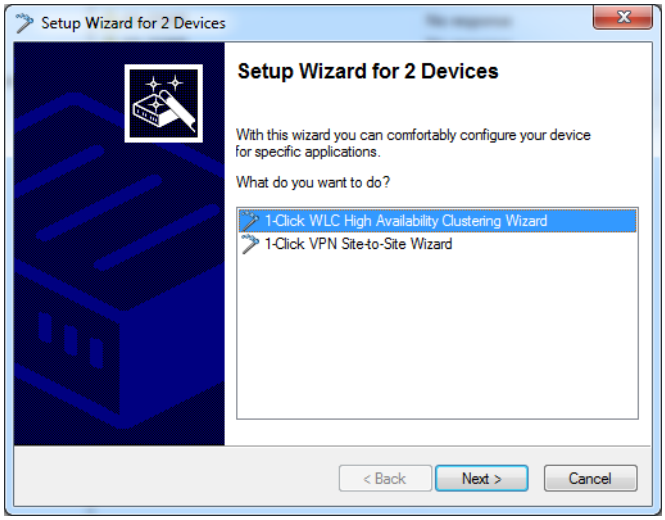
   - In the device list, drag & drop the unconfigured WLC onto the configured WLC.
   - Select the two WLCs in the device list and, after a right-click, select the item **Setup Wizard** from the context menu.

   LANconfig then displays the following message:

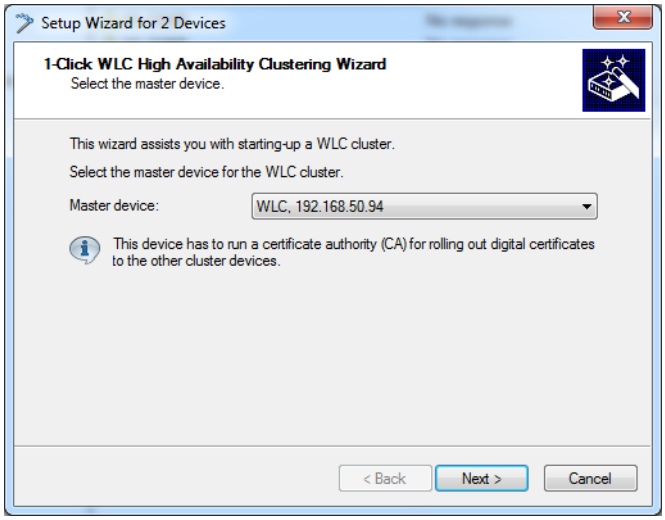


   Start the Setup Wizard by clicking on **Yes** The Setup Wizard starts with the selection dialog for the multiple-devices Wizard.

2. Select the "1-Click WLC High Availability Clustering Wizard" and then click **Next**.



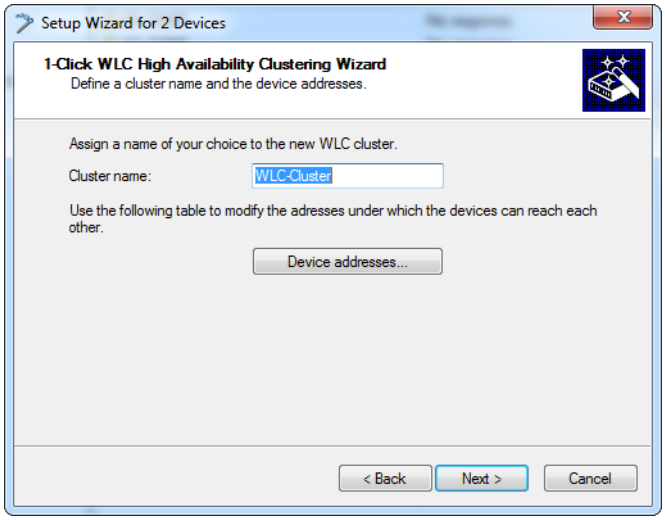
3. Select the master device, and then click **Next**



The master device is the preconfigured WLC. After you finish, the Setup Wizard transfers its configuration to all of the other selected WLCs.

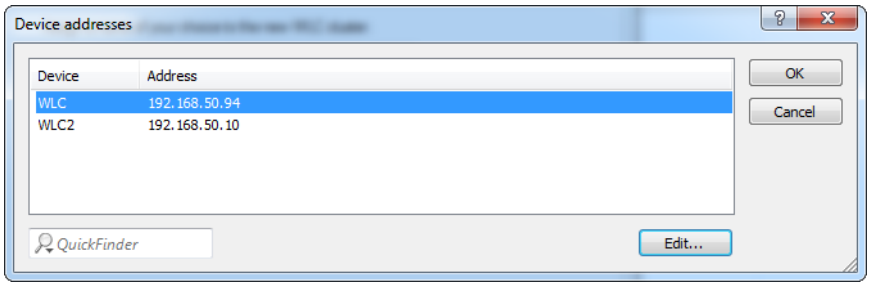
This query does not appear if you transfer the configuration to another WLC via drag & drop. In this case, the Setup Wizard automatically takes the "dragged" WLC to be the master device.

4. Assign a cluster name and click **Device addresses**.



The Setup Wizard suggests a cluster name, although you can change this if you so wish.

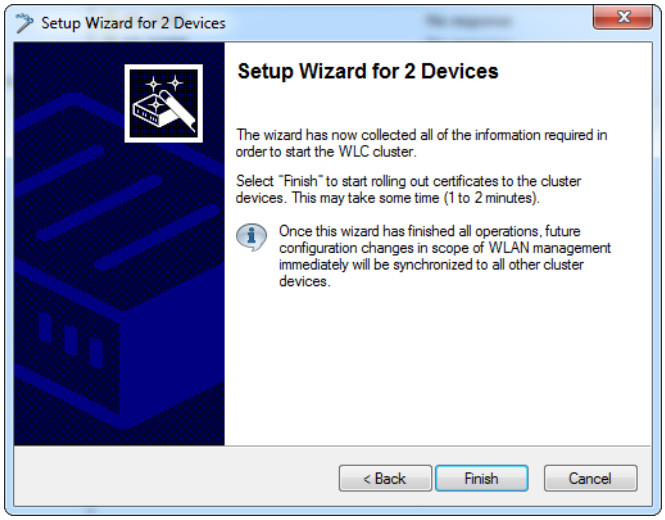
5. Enter the device addresses of all of the WLCs in the cluster.



By default, the Setup Wizard enters the devices that LANconfig is able to reach. Make any necessary changes, for example by entering devices that are accessible via VPN.

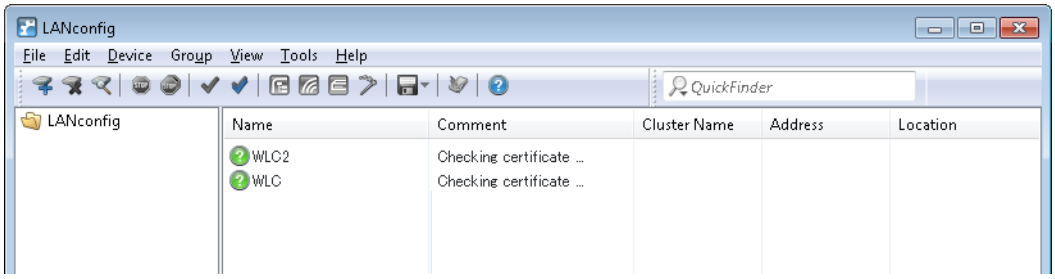
Click **OK**, and then click **Next**.

6. Click **Finish** to complete the Setup Wizard.



The Setup Wizard now loads the configuration of the master device to the selected WLCs.

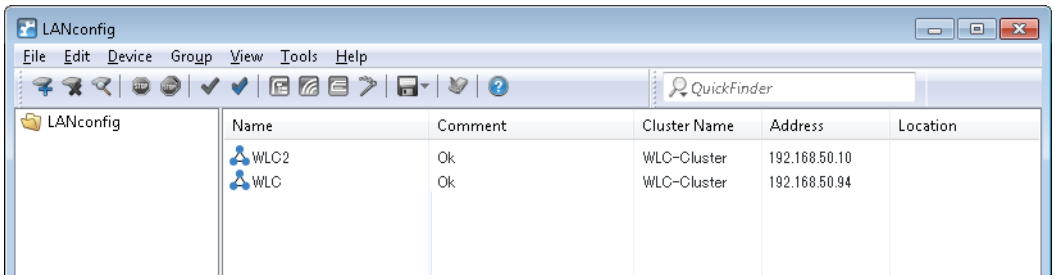
7. The device list displays the WLCs as follows:



The Setup Wizard has configured the SCEP client on all WLCs so that they can fetch a Config Sync. LANconfig now waits until the certificates are available for all of the WLCs.

Creation of the certificates may take up to one minute.

8. Once the certificates are available for all of the WLCs, LANconfig displays the status "OK" for these WLCs along with the cluster icon and the configured name of the cluster.



From now on, Config Sync configures the complete path **Setup** > **WLAN management** between all of the participating cluster members. Config Sync immediately synchronizes any configuration changes on any of the WLCs to all of the other WLCs in the cluster.

The master unit operates a master-CA, while all of the other WLCs operate a sub-CA of this master-CA. APs which connect to a WLC other than the master WLC will receive a valid certificate from it, if required.

2.21 CPE WAN Management Protocol (CWMP)

The CPE WAN Management Protocol (CWMP) enables devices to be remotely configured via a WAN link. Communication between the device (customer premises equipment, CPE) and the configuration server (auto configuration server, ACS) is conducted via SOAP/HTTP(S) in the form of remote procedure calls (RPC). A large number of RPCs are specified for the CWMP, the following of which are implemented in LCOS:

- GetRPCMethods
- SetParameterValues
- GetParameterValues
- GetParameterNames
- FactoryReset
- Reboot
- Download
  - Firmware-Update
  - Script download (*.lcs files)

LCOS additionally supports the manufacturer-specific RPCs:

- X_LANCOM_DE_Command
- X_LANCOM_DE_CommandResponse

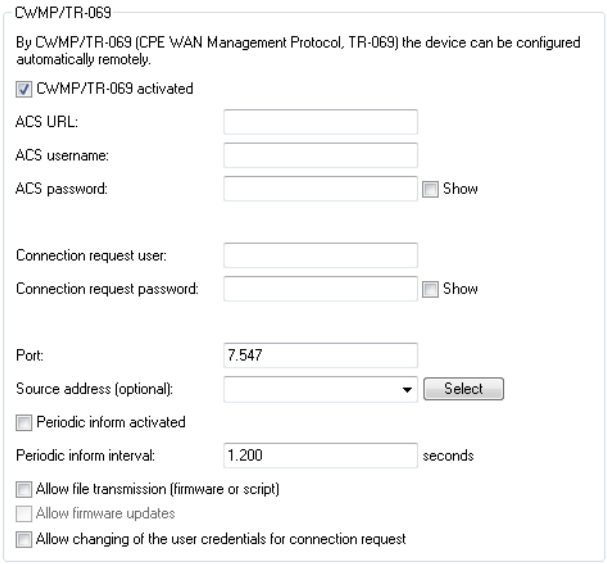
To find more information about the parameters of the RPC, visit the *Broadband Forum*.

The CPE supports the following types of authentication at an ACS:

- HTTP Basic
- HTTP Digest
- HTTPS by client certificate

2.21.1 Setting up CWMP with LANconfig

In LANconfig, the CPE WAN Management Protocol is configured under **Management** > **CWMP/TR-069**.



CWMP activated

Enables or disables CWMP.

ACS URL

Here you enter the address of the ACS (auto configuration server) which the CPE (customer premises equipment) connects to. The address is entered in the IPv4, IPv6, or FQDN format.

HTTP and HTTPS are permitted, although the use of HTTPS is preferred. Otherwise the devices transmit device-specific parameters, such as passwords or access data, unencrypted. Before you can use HTTPS, the trusted root certificate for verifying the server identity needs to be uploaded to the device.

ACS username

Enter a user name for the device to use when connecting with the ACS (auto configuration server).

ACS password

Enter a password for the device to use when connecting with the ACS (auto configuration server).

Connection request user

Select a user to be used by the ACS (auto configuration server) when connecting to this device.

Connection request password

Assign a password that the ACS (auto configuration server) uses for connection requests.

Port

Specify the local port used by the ACS (auto configuration server) when connecting to this device.

If you use IPv6, you additionally need to set the IPv6 firewall to allow access to the corresponding port under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** > **IPv6 inbound rules**.

Source address

Here you have the option to configure a sender address for the device to use in place of the one that would otherwise be used automatically for this target address. If you have configured loopback addresses, you can specify them here as source address.

If the source address set here is a loopback address, then the device will use this unmasked even for remote stations that are masked.

The device accepts addresses in various input formats:

- Name of the IP network (ARF network), whose address should be used.
- "INT" for the address of the first intranet.
- "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ (caution: If there is an interface called "DMZ", then the device takes its address).
- LB0 ... LBF for one of the 16 loopback addresses or its name
- Any IP address in the form x.x.x.x.

Periodic inform activated

Enables or disables the sending of periodic inform messages from the device to the ACS (auto configuration server).

Periodic inform interval

This is the interval in seconds between two periodic inform messages sent by the device to the ACS (auto configuration server). The ACS then requests further information from the device.

The default value is 1200 seconds (20 minutes). Do not set a value that is too small, as inform messages increase network load. The interval does not commence before the device and server have exchanged all of the necessary information.

Allow file transmission (firmware or script)

This switch allows you to transfer a firmware or a script file from the ACS (auto configuration server) to this device.

Allow firmware updates

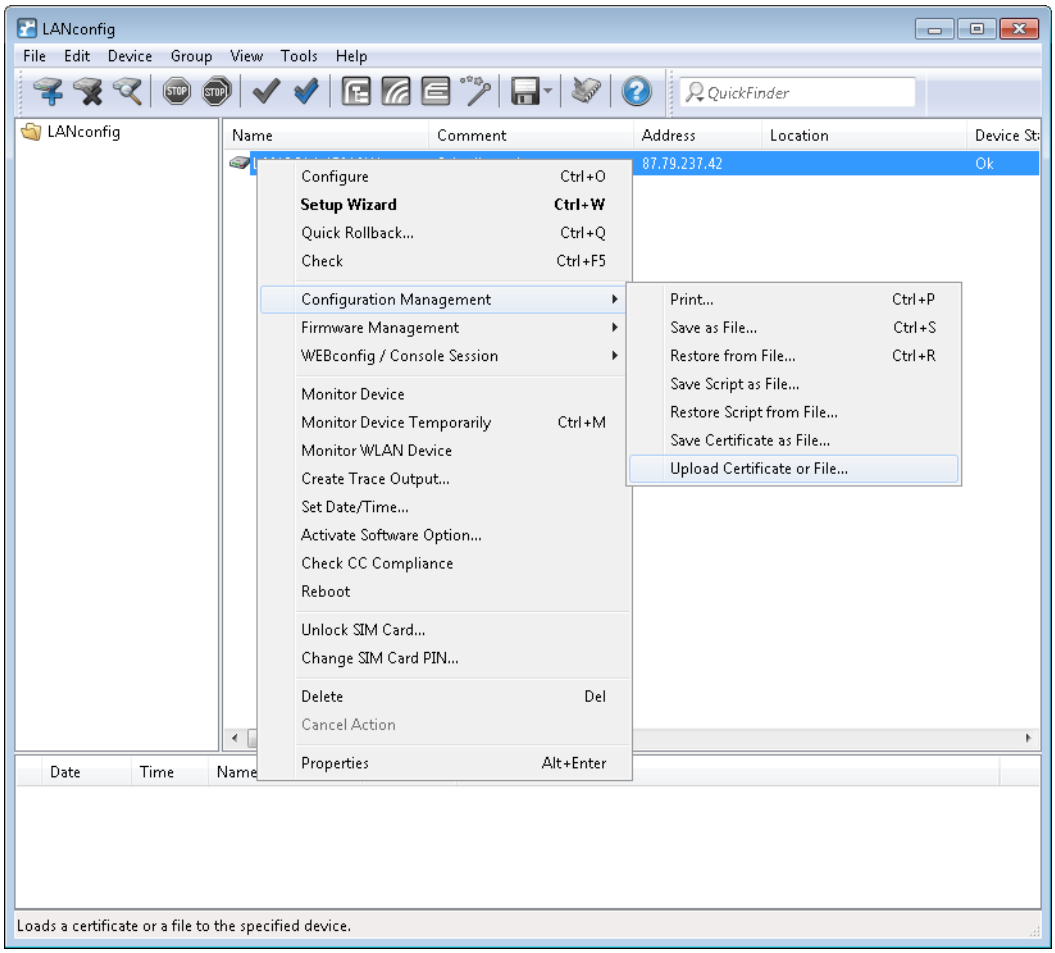
This switch allows the ACS (auto configuration server) to make firmware modifications to the device.

Allow changing of the user credentials for connection request

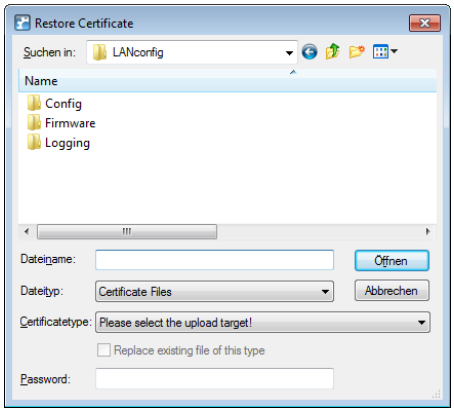
This switch allows the ACS (auto configuration server) to change the device administrator or to change the name and password of the device administrator used to connect to the device.

If HTTPS is used in the ACS URL, the CPE validates the ACS certificate. To this end, you first have to save the CWMP root CA certificate on the CPE. If the CPE is unable to validate the server certificate against the existing root CA certificate, it rejects the connection. The certificate is uploaded either by LANconfig or WEBconfig. In LANconfig you do this as follows:

1. In the device view section, right-click on the corresponding device and, under **Configuration management**, select the item **Upload certificate or file**.



2. In the dialog that follows, set the certificate type to “CWMP root CA certificate” and click **Open**.



When using SSL/TLS for authentication at the CPE, you upload the client certificate and the private key by means of PKCS#12 file (CWMP container as PKCS#12 file) onto the CPE.

2.21.2 Device configuration via CWMP

All CWMP parameters are configured on the command line either by a script file or by the manufacturer-specific RPC `X_LANCOM_DE_Command`.

Configuration via script

The CWMP download command `<cwmp:download>` is used to configure the device by means of a script file (`*.lcs`). The file type is `3 Vendor Configuration File`. The URL is the address of the server where the configuration script is stored.

LANconfig files of the *.lcf format are not supported.

Configuration by means of manufacturer-specific RPC `X_LANCOM_DE_Command`

The `X_LANCOM_DE_Command` function is defined as follows:

Request

```
<cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command>
<Command> CLI-Kommando </Command>
</cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command>
```

Response

```
<cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_CommandResponse>
<Status>1</Status>
<Result>1</Result>
</cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_CommandResponse>
```

The following example sets the IPv4 address of the device to the “INTRANET”:

```
<cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command>
<Command>set /Setup/TCP-IP/Network-list/INTRANET {IP-address} 192.168.80.1</Command>
</cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command>
```

Due to the asynchronous execution of the console commands, the `X_LANCOM_DE_Command` always reports a successful execution of the command, regardless of whether the command was executed correctly or not. A successful execution requires the config status to be read out under **Status** > **Config**.

To check the configuration status, you can read out the following CWMP parameters before or after using the script or `X_LANCOM_DE_Command`:

- InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.X_LANCOM_DE_ConfigVersion
- InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.X_LANCOM_DE_LastScriptComment
- InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.X_LANCOM_DE_LastScriptErrorLine
- InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.X_LANCOM_DE_LastScriptSuccessful

The values correspond to the status values under **Status** > **Config**.

Configuration by means of manufacturer-specific RPC `X_LANCOM_DE_CommandResponse`

The function `X_LANCOM_DE_CommandResponse` is executed synchronous and has a return value. The function is defined as follows:

Request

```
<cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command_Response>
  <Command>ls /Status/Current-Time</Command>
</cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command_Response>
```

Response

```
<cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command_ResponseResponse>
  <Status xsi:type="xsi:unsignedInt">1</Status>
  <Result xsi:type="xsi:string">Current-Time  INFO:    11/30/2017 09:54:49</Result>
</cwmp:X_LANCOM_DE_Command_ResponseResponse>
```

The function returns the following return values:

1. Parameter: `<Status type="xsd:unsignedInt">[1/0]</Status>`

   1 = no errors, 0 = Error during execution

2. Parameter: `<Result type="xsd:string">[Output]</Result>`

   Output = Output according to console (max. 2048 characters, more characters are cut off)

2.22 LANCOM Battery Pack

The LANCOM Battery Pack is an emergency power supply for the continued operation of up to two LANCOM devices. It serves as an efficient emergency power supply for business-critical network components from LANCOM.

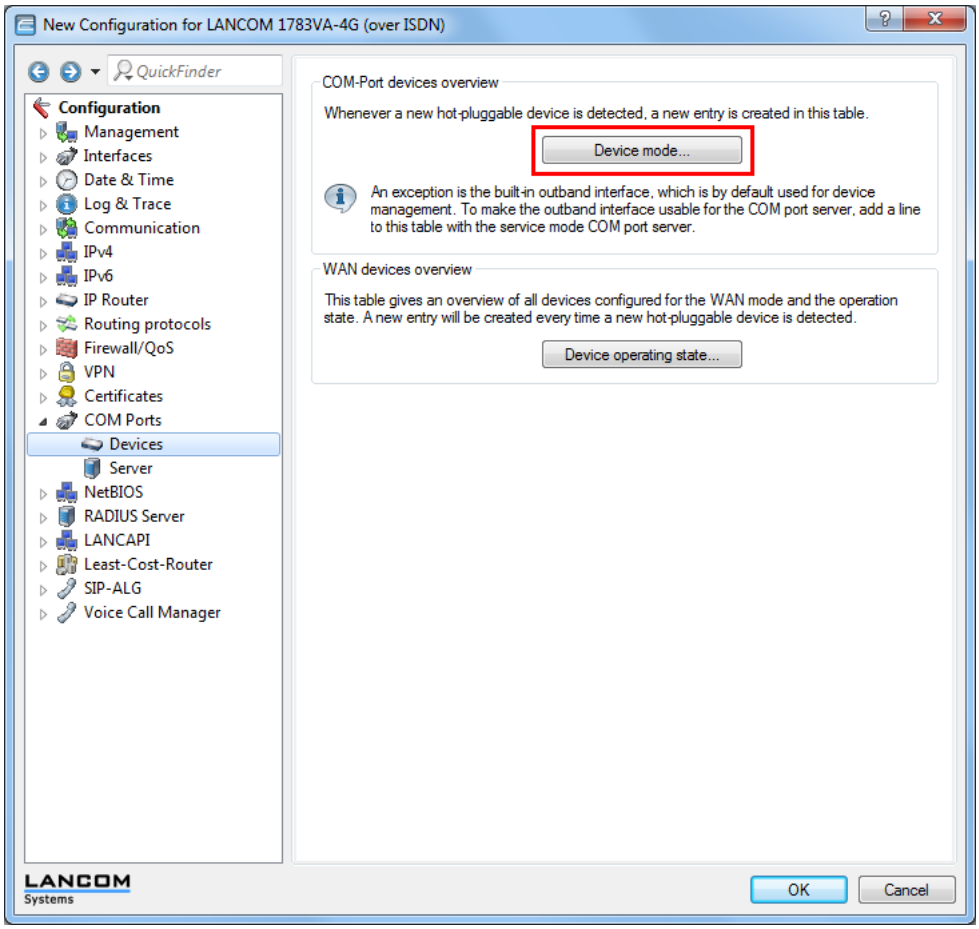
In case of power-supply failure, up to two connected LANCOM routers or APs remain powered up for at least two hours. This means that LANCOM routers at IP-based exchange lines, along with any analog phones or alarm systems connected to them, remain functional even in emergencies.

2.22.1 Configuration with LANconfig

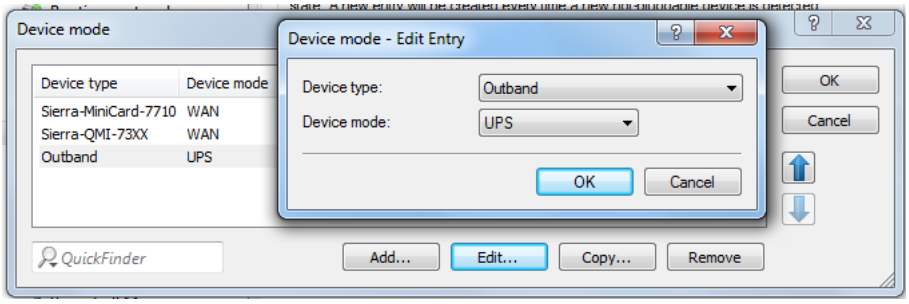
The monitoring of the Battery Pack is conducted via the serial interface (COM port) of your LANCOM product. To check the status of your Battery Pack, proceed as follows:

COM-port configuration

The device operating mode is configured under **COM ports** > **Devices**. Click the button **Device mode** and add a new entry to the table or edit an existing one.

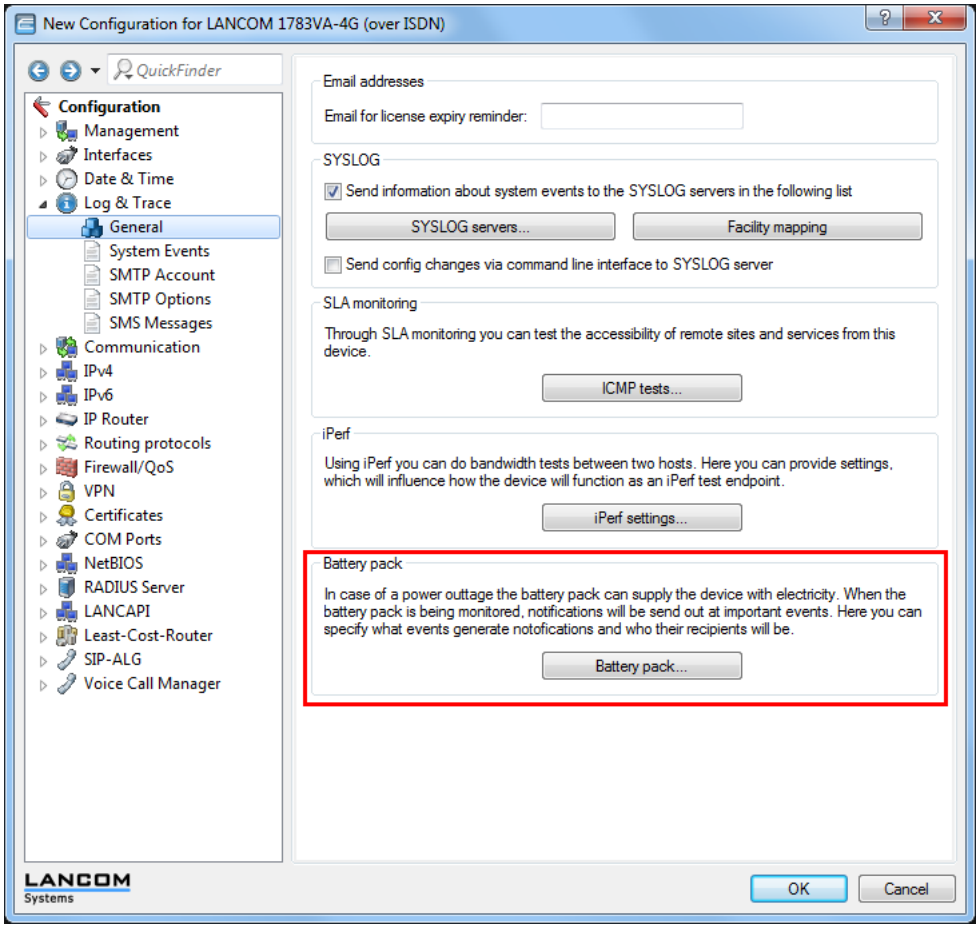


Set the device type to "Outband" and the device mode to "UPS" (**U**ninterruptable **P**ower **S**upply). This mode ensures that the status of the Battery Pack can be queried.

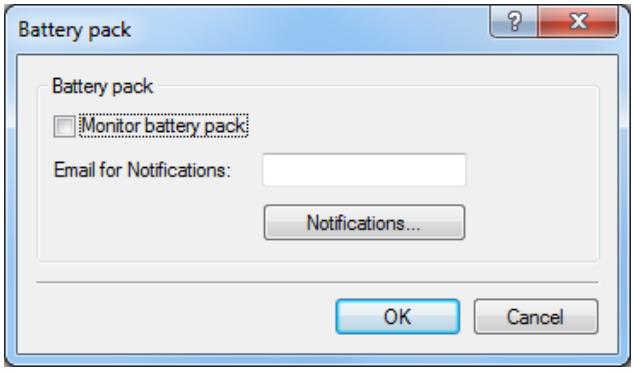


Configuring the Battery Pack monitoring

Configure the monitoring of the Battery Pack using **Log & trace** > **General** and the section "Battery Pack".



Click the button **Battery Pack** and enable the checkbox **Monitor Battery Pack**. Set a valid e-mail address as the recipient of the status notifications.



Monitor Battery Pack

This is where you enable the status monitoring of the serially connected Battery Pack.

Please note that in order for the device operating mode to be monitored, the device must be connected to the Battery Pack via an outband cable and the device operating mode of the outband interface needs to be set to "UPS" under **COM ports** > **Devices** > **Device mode**.

E-mail for notifications

In the case of critical events, a message is sent to the e-mail address configured here so that the device administrator can respond in a timely manner.

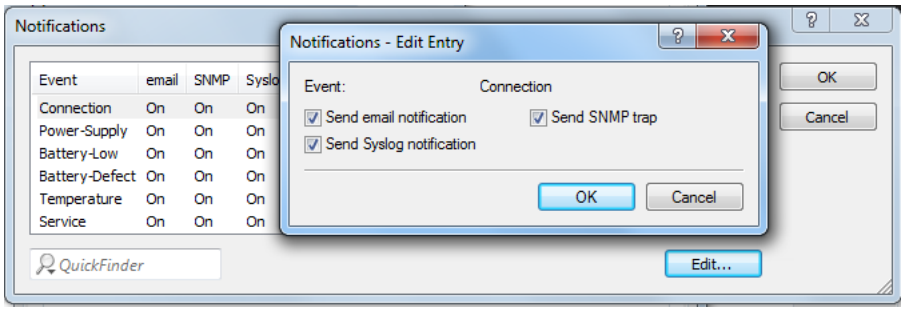
Please note that successful e-mail transmission requires the settings to be configured under **Log & trace** > **SMTP account**.

Notifications

Adjust the settings for the notifications here.

Configuring notifications

Specify the notification settings that apply for critical events.



Send e-mail notification

If this event occurs, the administrator is notified via e-mail. The e-mail is sent to the address configured under **Log & trace** > **General** > **Battery Pack**.

Send SNMP trap

If this event occurs, the administrator is notified via SNMP. The SNMP message is sent to the SNMP server configured under **Management** > **Admin** > **SNMP settings** > **Target addresses**.

Send SYSLOG notification

If this event occurs, the administrator is notified via SYSLOG. The SYSLOG message is sent to the SYSLOG server configured under **Log & trace** > **General** > **SYSLOG servers**.

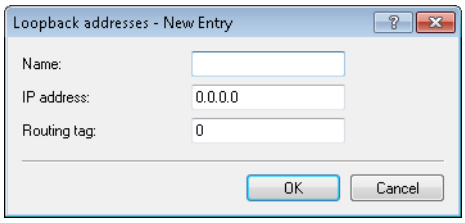
2.23 Setting known loopback addresses

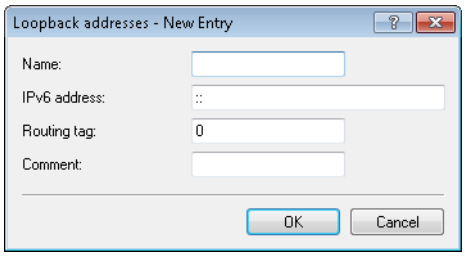
Your device can be assigned up to 16 IPv4 and 8 IPv6 loopback addresses where the device can be reached (e.g. for managing larger network structures). To use the loopback addresses for particular networks (e.g. in the context of Advanced Routing and Forwarding), you can assign routing tags to these addresses. To simplify the identification in other configuration units, the loopback addresses can be given freely definable names.

The following steps show you how to set a loopback address.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.

2. Navigate to the dialog **IPv4** > **General** > **Loopback addresses** or **IPv6** > **General** > **Loopback addresses** and click on **Add**.





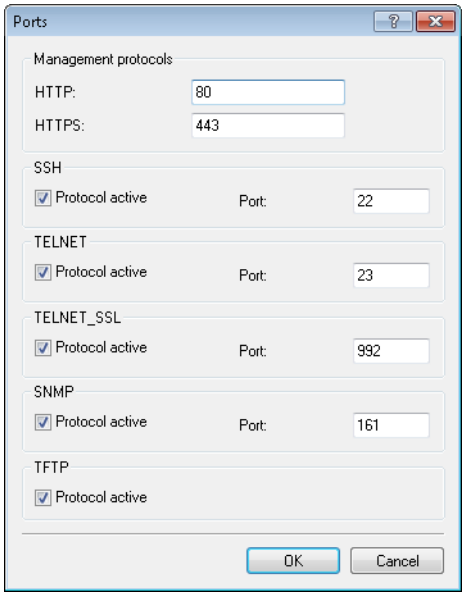
3. Use the input field **Name** for a name of your choice for the loopback address, e.g. `LOOPBACK_1`.
4. Enter the loopback address for this device into the input field **IP address** or **IPv6 address**, e.g. `10.0.0.99` for an IPv4 address or `::1` for an IPv6 address.
   The device considers each of these addresses to be its own address and behaves as if it has received the packet from the (W)LAN. This applies in particular to masked connections. Responses to packets sent to a loopback address are **not** masked.
5. Use the input field **Routing tag** to enter an optional routing tag for the loopback address.
   Loopback addresses with the routing tag '0' (untagged) are visible to all networks. Loopback addresses with a different routing tag are only visible to networks with the same routing tag.
6. For IPv6 loopback addresses, the **Comment** field allows you to enter an additional comment.

2.24 Customize the management ports for device access

LANconfig features the option to change the port numbers for the management protocols.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.
2. Switch to the dialog **Management** > **Admin** and click **Ports**.

3. Enter the port numbers for the required management protocols.



4. Close all open dialog windows by clicking on **OK**.

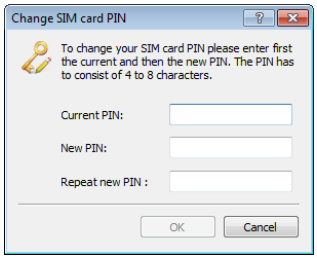
LANconfig writes the configuration back to the device.

2.25 Changing the SIM card PIN

For devices with a cellular modem, LANconfig gives you the option to change the PIN of the SIM card. You make the change simply by entering the old PIN and then the new PIN. In the interests of security, LANconfig requires an additional confirmation of the new PIN. Alternatively you can make the change from the command line by executing the action **PIN-change**.

The following steps describe the procedure in LANconfig.

1. In the LANconfig device overview, select the device requiring the PIN change.
2. From the menu bar, choose **Device** > **Change SIM card PIN**. A new dialog box opens.



3. Enter the old PIN and then your new PIN. Confirm the new PIN by entering it again.
4. Click **OK** to accept the change.

3 LANtools

The device supports different ways (i.e. interfaces) and means (i.e. software) of configuration. There is no end of different situations in which configurations have to be carried out, or ways in which operators prefer to work. This is why the device offers a wide range of ways to set up the configuration.

One option is to carry out the configuration with **LANconfig**, the menu-based, clearly structured software that allows you to adjust almost all of the relevant parameters.

The program **LANmonitor** provides an overview of the status of the device, its connections, and status values. With WLAN devices, further information about the wireless networks and the clients connected to them are available from the **WLANmonitor**.

LANtracer allows you to perform advanced trace functions for specific information (e.g. status values and function messages), either once only or for monitoring over a longer period. The trace data it produces can be used for logging or diagnostics.

The following sections discuss in detail the operation of the applications mentioned above.

To work with the various LANtools applications you will need a configuration computer with a Windows operating system.

3.1 LANconfig – configuring devices

From the easy commissioning of a single workplace device with convenient Installation Wizards to the overall management of large scale installations—the spectrum of applications for LANconfig is wide:

Basic functions

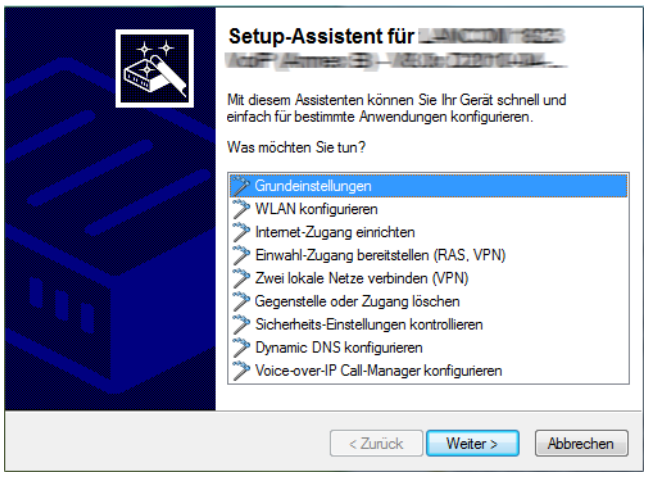
- Automatic detection of new, unconfigured devices
- (Remote) configuration of devices via ISDN for Dial-Up Networking, IP address, URL, or via the serial interface
- Integration of Telnet, SSH, HTTPS and TFTP configuration
- Context-based help on the configuration parameters
- The Wizards provide customized input masks at every stage of installation
- Backup connection setup

Management of large installations

- Grouping
- Central firmware distribution (multitasking, also in parallel with multiple dial-in connections)
- Simultaneous configuration of multiple devices
- Configuration script distribution
- WLAN group configuration
- Logging of all actions
- Creation of new "offline" configurations for all devices and versions of LCOS

3.1.1 Start LANconfig

Start LANconfig, for example with a double click on the desktop icon. LANconfig now automatically searches the local network for devices. If LANconfig detects a device in the LAN which is not yet configured, then the program automatically starts the Setup Wizard.



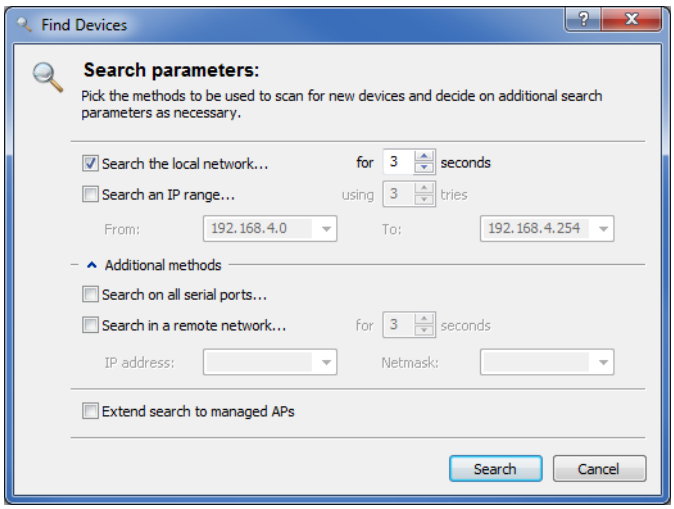
LANconfig may be unable to detect devices in the LAN if the "Internet connection firewall" or any other personal firewall is activated on the configuration computer. If your unconfigured device cannot be found, deactivate the firewall for the time during which you carry out the configuration.

Your device is equipped with a powerful integrated firewall. This provides protection for your computer even if no other firewall, such as the "Internet connection firewall", is activated.

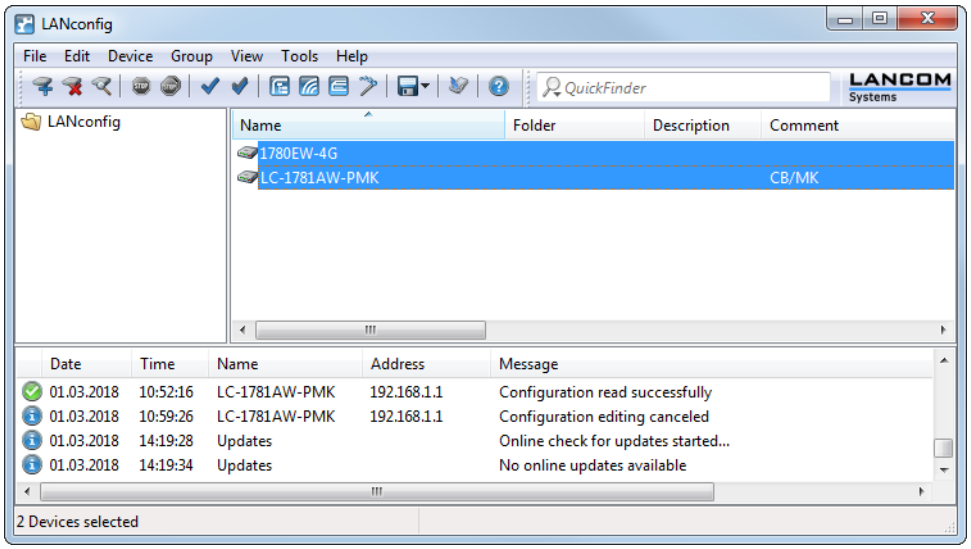
LANconfig can be automatically started when the operating system starts. Learn more about this in chapter *Application* on page 210.

Finding new devices

You can manually initiate the search for a new device by clicking on the **Find devices** ( ) button or by calling the menu command **File** > **Find devices**. LANconfig then asks where it should search. To make further adjustments to the search, click on **Tools** > **Options** and then select the menu item **Startup**.



As soon as LANconfig has completed its search, it presents a list of all the devices it found, if possible with a brief description, the IP address and the status.



A click on the **Configure** button or the menu item **Device** > **Configure** reads the current settings from the device and displays general information on the device. Double-clicking on the device entry optionally opens the Configuration Wizard or the device's configuration directly.

The integrated Help function

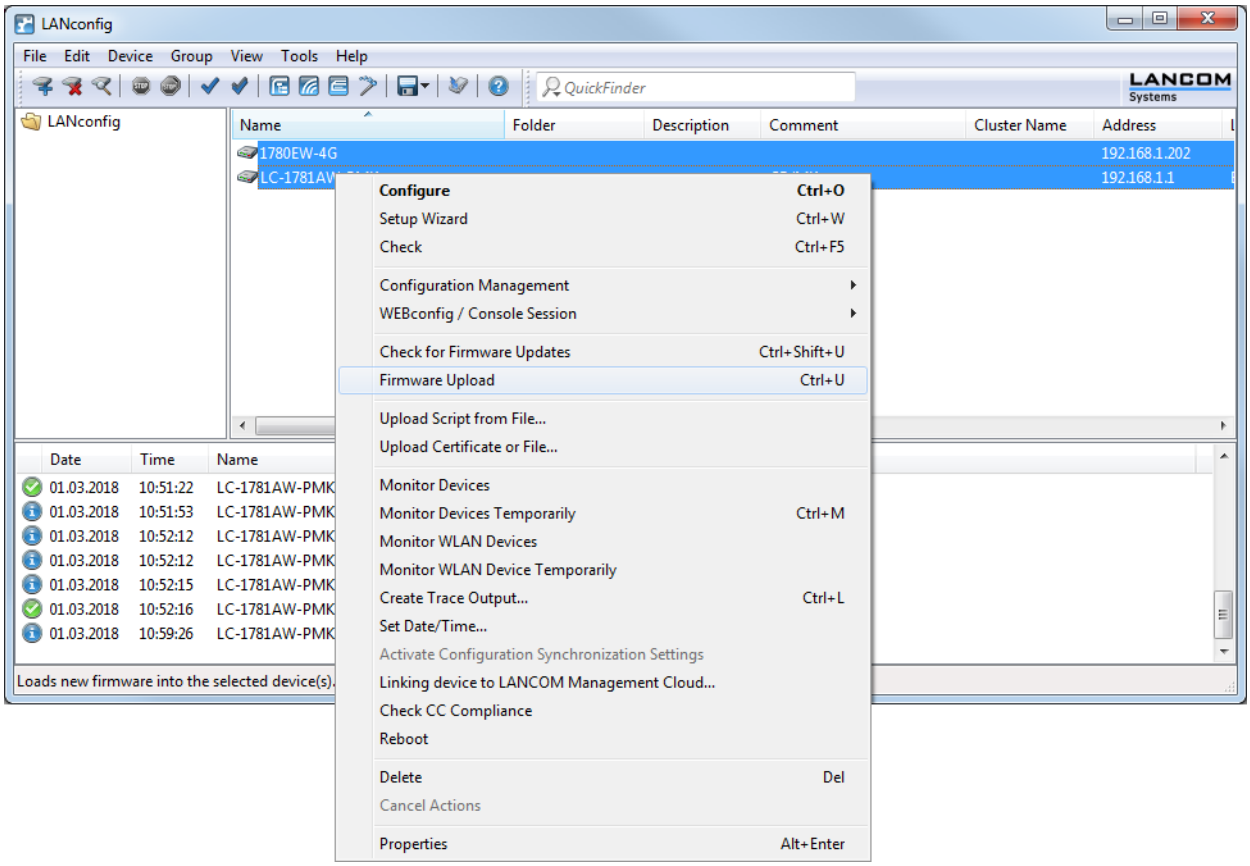
Operating the program is mostly self-explanatory or explained with the aid of the Online Help. If you click the question mark icon in the top right-hand corner of a dialog box ( ) and then click a section of the dialog, the context sensitive Help is invoked with more information about the setting. Alternatively you can also right-click on the section of the dialog to be clarified.

Selecting multiple devices

LANconfig offers a convenient way of (remote) servicing multiple devices simultaneously. There are various ways of selecting multiple devices at once:

- Press the mouse key and drag a selection frame over multiple devices.
- You can select multiple devices which are listed in sequence by pressing the Shift key and clicking on the first and the last device.
- Select any device while holding down the Ctrl key and clicking on the desired devices.
- Select the option **View** > **Display check boxes** and select the devices by activating their check boxes.

LANconfig will then carry out the actions for all of the selected devices, one after the other. For example, you can upload new firmware simultaneously for multiple devices in this way.



Administration is made easier by collecting devices into groups. The **Folder tree** view must be activated for this. The folder tree allows new directories to be created with the context menu, or by selecting **File** > **New folder**. You then group the devices simply by dragging and dropping them into the appropriate folder.

When carrying out a multiple-device configuration, LANconfig only displays the entry fields that are relevant to multiple-device configuration, e.g. for access points this includes the MAC access control list.

3.1.2 Working with LANconfig

LANconfig offers many features for you to customize your working environment to suit your needs. The QuickFinder takes you to the setting you are looking for in an instant, and the LANtools software update will keep your application up to date automatically, if you so wish.

User-specific settings for LANconfig

The program settings for LANconfig are saved to the file 'lanconf.ini' located in the program directory when the program is ended. This includes, among others, the displayed devices, directory structure, selected language, etc. When the program is started, LANconfig reads this ini file and restores the previous state of the software. To save the ini file, the user needs a write authorization to the program directory.

As an alternative to the program directory, LANconfig can load the ini file with its program settings from another directory. This can be, for example, the current user's user directory, or any other storage location:

- By selecting the user directory, users can save their personal settings even if they don't have a write authorization for the program directory.

- Selecting an alternative storage location allows you, for example, to transfer program settings to any other LANconfig installation, or to save the settings to a central location in the network for use by multiple users.

You configure the location of the program settings in the dialog **Tools** > **Options** > **Application**. Also see the chapter *Application* on page 210.

Switching the language of the graphical user interface

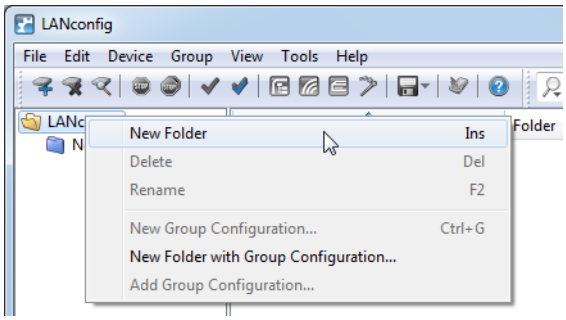
The language of the graphical user interface can be set to **German**, **English** or **Spanish** under **Tools** > **Options** > **Application**.

Using directory trees to get organized

LANconfig uses a directory structure for a clear overview when managing multiple devices. You can create a separate folder for each project or each customer and organize the corresponding devices here:

- Create a new folder by clicking on the parent directory with the right mouse key and selecting **New Folder** from the context menu. Alternatively you can also click **File** > **New Folder** in the application menu.
- Just 'drag and drop' with the mouse to move the individual devices from the list and into the corresponding folder. Devices can also be moved from one folder to another in this way.

The arrangement of devices in folders effects only the display of the devices within LANconfig. The organization of the folders has no influence on the configuration of the devices.

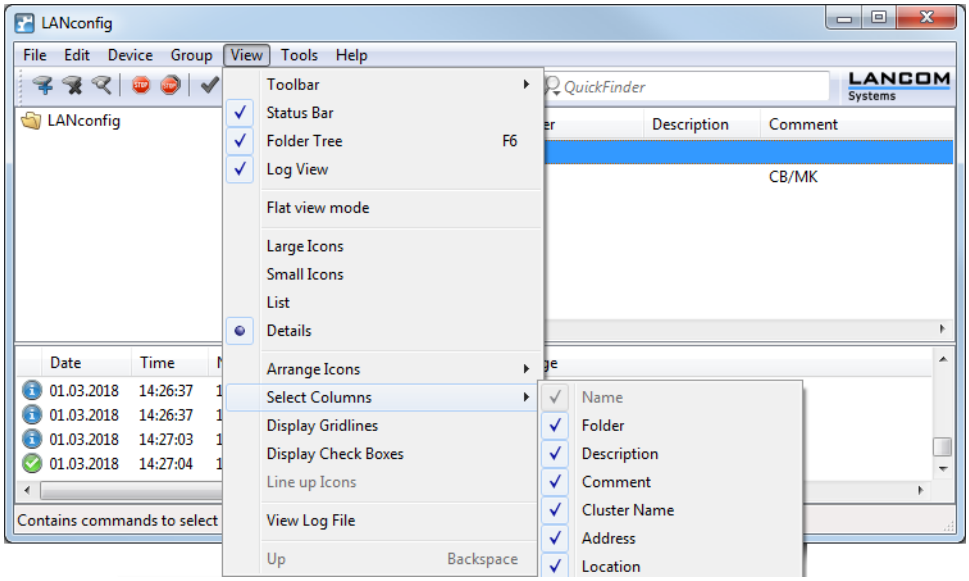


The directory structure in the left margin of the window can be switched on and off with the function key F6 or by using the menu **View** > **Folder Tree**.

Better overview in LANconfig with more columns

As a help for large-scale projects, LANconfig provides a better overview and quicker orientation with its columns featuring device-related details that can be shown or hidden according to your needs. Choose the columns to be displayed from **View** > **Select columns**. The menu item **View** > **Arrange icons** allows you to sort the items as you prefer.

Sort the view by clicking with the left mouse button in the appropriate column heading. Each new click reverses the sorting.

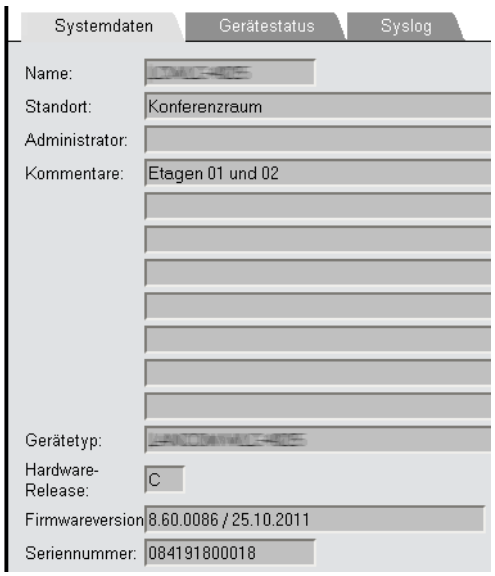


The following details can be displayed in the various columns:

- Name
- Folder
- Description
- Comment
- Address
- Location
- Device status
- Progress
- Device type
- Product code
- Hardware release
- Serial number
- MAC address
- Firmware-Version
- Firmsafe
- 1st Image version
- 2nd Image version

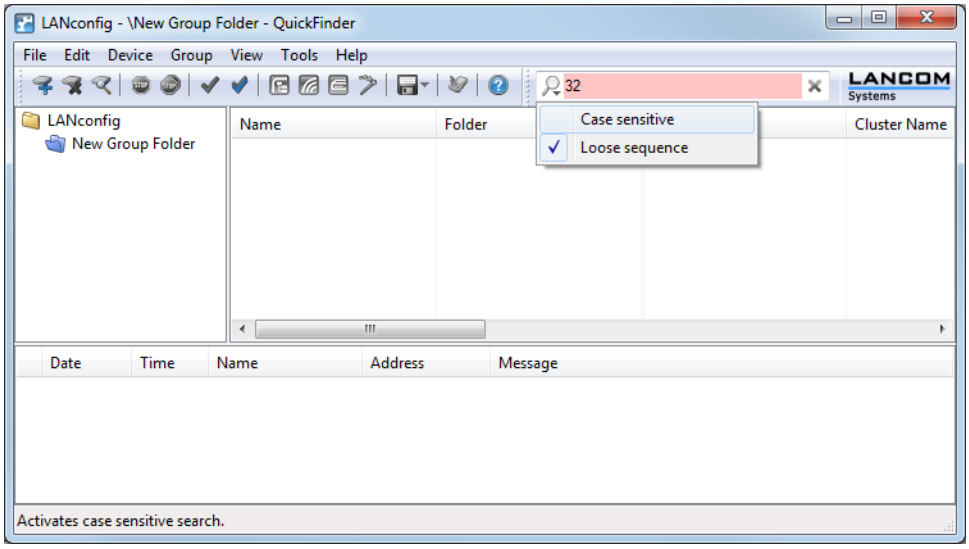
With **Select all** or **Hide all** you can show or hide all columns with just one click.

The column **Comment** contains the information in comment field 1 for the device.



QuickFinder in LANconfig

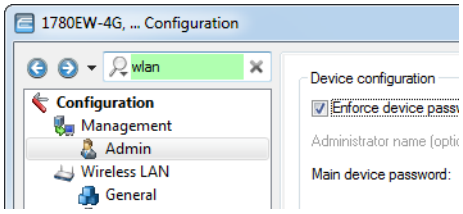
In the main view of LANconfig, the QuickFinder is located in the toolbar. Entering a search term in the search window reduces the number of available devices in the list. LANconfig searches through all the values available in the columns in the device list, including any hidden columns. Click on the icon next to the magnifying glass to make the search case sensitive.



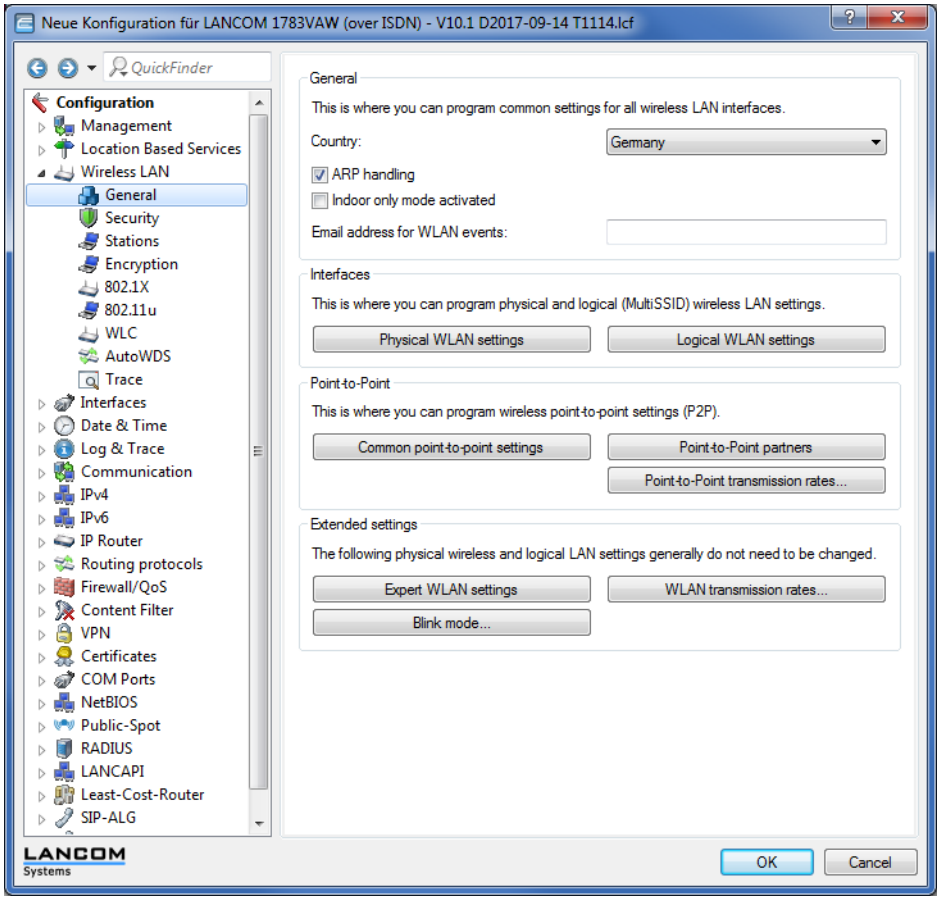
If you are looking for a particular value or term in LANconfig or in the configuration, QuickFinder quickly displays all of the locations where the string occurs in the LANconfig dialogs.

1. Start LANconfig.
2. Open the device configuration that you want to search through.
3. In the search box, type the phrase that you are looking for e.g. `wlan`. Searching is not case-sensitive. You can enter parts of words or numbers, as well as complete strings. If there are spaces in the search string, then only strings containing the matching spaces will be searched for. The search function does not support wildcards.

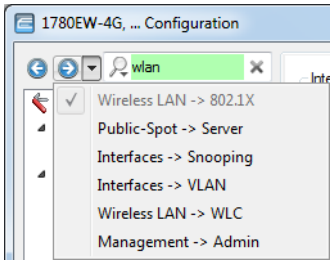
The configuration tree in the left pane of LANconfig is now reduced to just those sections that feature the search string:



Select an area in the configuration (e.g. **Wireless LAN** > **General**) to view the relevant search results framed in color in the configuration dialog:



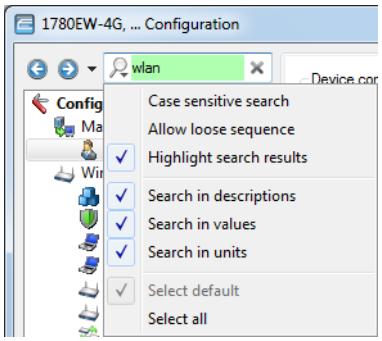
Use the navigation buttons 'back' and 'forwards' to move between the most recently visited dialogs: For quick access to the last 10 visited dialogs, click on the arrow to the right of the 'forwards' button:



Click on the 'x' to the right of the search box to clear the search and display all entries in the configuration again.

An option to reduce the number of search results is to select the sections where LANconfig should limit the search to. Click on the magnifying glass to the left of the search box and select or deselect the required categories. Here you can

also specify whether the search should highlight the results in color, or whether the configuration tree is to be reduced to the relevant dialogs only:



LANconfig resets the search settings and the list of recent dialogs when the configuration is closed.

For example, your configuration may contain settings for your Internet provider. To find these you just have to enter the name to find all of the places in the configuration that refer to this provider.

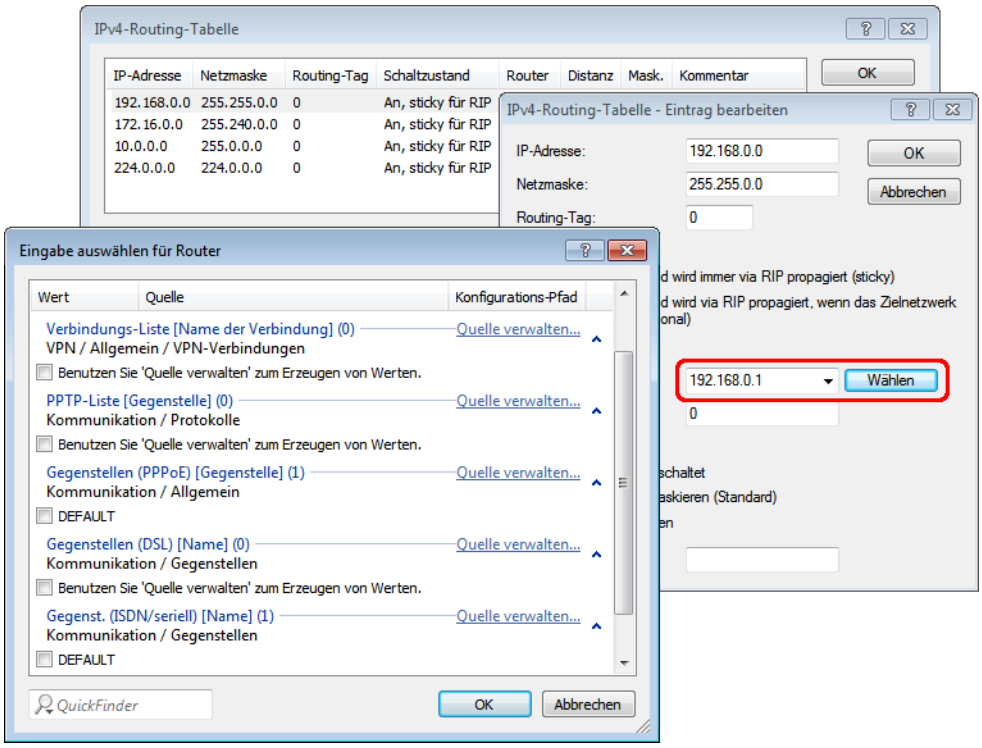
You can search for text from the following areas:

- Entries in the configuration tree
- Names of the sections in each configuration dialog
- Parameter
- Values of the parameters
- Explanatory texts in the dialogs
- Table names
- Column names in tables

Quick links for managing source tables

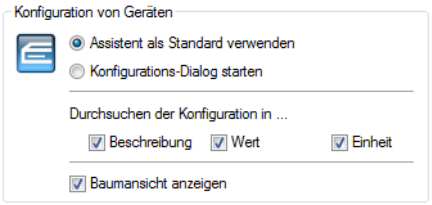
Values can be selected from an input field after they have previously been specified in one or more tables. So-called Quicklinks offer you a direct way to manage these source tables. This allows you to bypass the default configuration order. Instead of creating new elements after first exiting the current selection, you can create these items directly if necessary. These new elements are immediately available for selection.

To clarify the structure of the configuration, LANconfig shows the configuration path apart along with the individual sources. If the configuration parameters can be chosen from multiple source tables, LANconfig groups the entries accordingly. For each group, LANconfig additionally specifies the number of entries contained.



Choice of Wizard or configuration dialog

You can define how LANconfig reacts when an entry in the list of devices is double-clicked, i.e. whether a Setup Wizard or the dialog for manually editing the configuration appears. The default behavior of LANconfig can be set in the dialog **Tools** > **Options** on the **General** page.

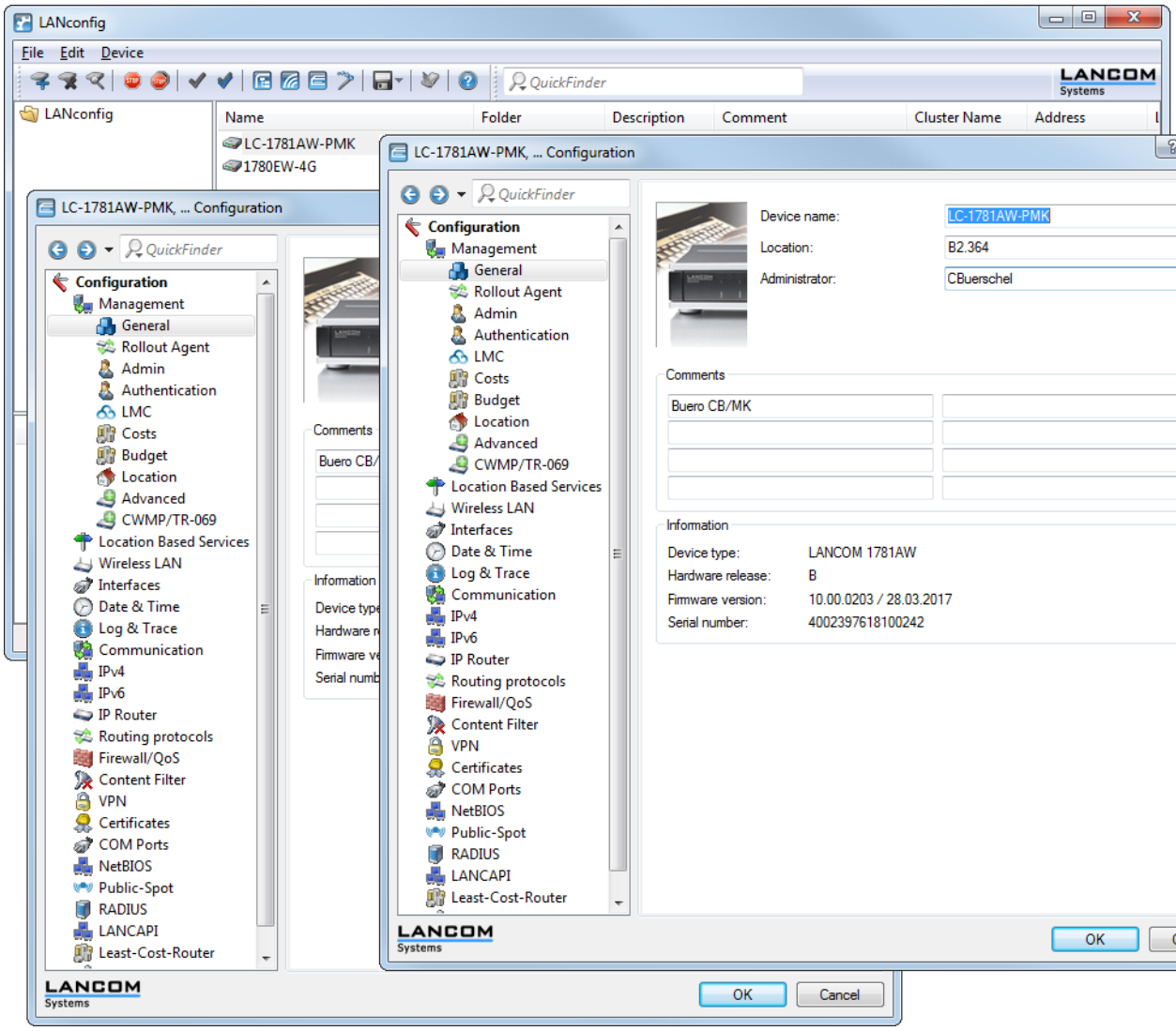


- **Use Wizard as standard:** Double-clicking on a device entry in LANconfig will open up a dialog offering a choice of Wizards.
- **Start the configuration dialog:** Double-clicking on a device entry in LANconfig will open up the Configuration dialog.

Multithreading

The management of projects can be aided by simultaneously opening up configuration windows for multiple devices to compare similarities and differences. LANconfig allows multiple configuration dialogs to be opened at the same time

("multithreading"). After opening the configuration for a device, simply open up further configurations from the device list in LANconfig. All of the configurations can be processed in parallel.

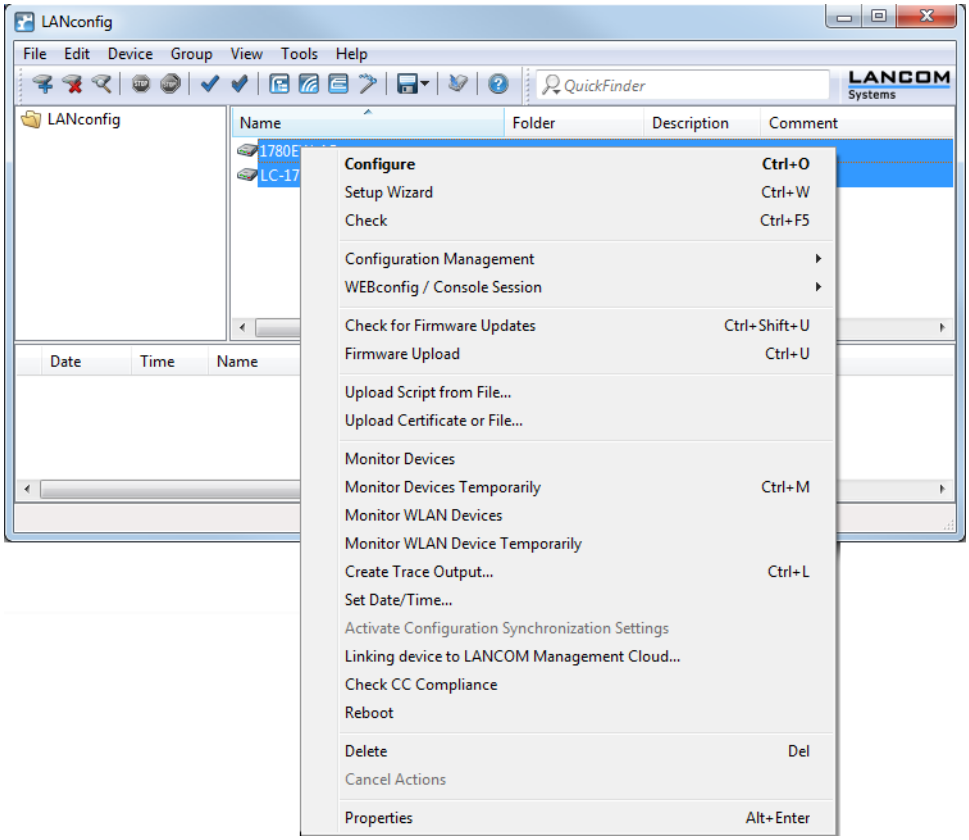


"Copy and paste" can be used to transfer content between the configuration windows via the Windows clipboard.

Multithreading allows changes to both the internal configurations of the available devices and to the configuration files. Each configuration is written separately to the file and to the device when the dialog is closed.

Project management with LANconfig

LANconfig facilitates the configuration of various devices within a project with a range of functions that can be run on several devices at once. If the list in LANconfig contains multiple devices, just click on the device of your choice with the right mouse key to open a context menu offering the following actions:



- **Configure**

  Opens up the LANconfig configuration dialog for the selected device.

- **Check**

  Checks if the selected device can be contacted.

- **Configuration management**

  Back up the current device configuration as a configuration script or as an *.lcf file.

- **Check for firmware updates**

  Searches for available firmware updates in the **Firmware archive** folder specified under **Tools** > **Options** > **Update**.

- **Upload new firmware**

  Uploads firmware simultaneously to all selected devices.

- **Restore configuration script from file**

  Executes a configuration script for all selected devices.

- **Open Telnet sessions**, **Open SSH sessions**

  Opens up multiple command-line consoles and sets up a Telnet or SSH connection to each device. LANconfig uses the external client programs configured in the settings. If no client programs are installed and specified, LANconfig cancels this action with an error message.

- **Upload certificate or file**

Opens the upload dialog for the internal file management of the device.

- **Monitor devices**, **Monitor devices temporarily**

  Starts LANmonitor for monitoring of the selected devices.

- **Monitor WLAN devices**

  Starts WLANmonitor and monitors the selected devices.

- **Create trace output**

  Opens up multiple LANtracer windows and creates a separate trace output for each device.

- **Set date/time**

  Sets the same time on all selected devices.

  When setting the time, please observe the functions of the device as NTP client and NTP server.

- **Check CC compliance**

  Checks whether the configuration of the selected devices is CC compliant. This action is useful only for CC devices.

- **Reboot**

  Restarts the selected devices.

- **Delete**

  Deletes the selected devices from the LANconfig list.

- **Cancel action**

  Forces the cancellation of any running LANconfig action (such as a file upload).

- **Properties**

  Opens a dialog of shared properties. Here you can adjust any identical general and backup-related settings for multiple devices at the same time. Please be aware that this collective dialog does not present you all of the settings available with the device-specific properties dialog.

Flexible group configuration with LANconfig

Flexible group configuration helps you to manage multiple devices: You apply a carefully selected range of configuration parameters to a group of devices, in one go. This is far more convenient than manually setting the parameters in each individual device, e.g. identical SSID settings in WLAN access points. This helps you to avoid transferring complete configuration files from other devices, in which case device-specific parameters such as the IP address are also included. Group configuration with LANconfig enables the simultaneous setting of shared group-configuration parameters, thus facilitating the simultaneous administration of multiple devices.

By collecting multiple devices into a group configuration, these devices can be a co-managed as a group. The group configuration files with the common parameters for a group of devices are, just like the full configuration files, stored on hard disk or on a server. To aid the configuration of entire groups of devices, links to the group configuration files are created under LANconfig. These links provide a convenient connection between these group-configuration files and the device entries in LANconfig.

LANconfig provides generalized group templates as an aid to creating group configurations. You define which parameters are to be used for a group according to your individual needs. Use this feature to add additional configuration parameters to the group parameters, or to remove the suggested group parameters. You can store the configurations you created either as group configurations or as a customized template for the generation of further group configurations.

Subsequently you can edit your own group configuration templates, but not the LANconfig basic templates.

The following templates for group configurations are available in LANconfig:

- **Group Template WLAN:** Includes the parameters that are co-managed on WLAN devices.

- **Group Template WLC:** Useful when operating WLCs in a cluster, this template includes the full range of parameters that minimize the need for individual device configuration.
- **Group Template Empty:** Contains no pre-selected group parameters, and so serves as a basis for creating your own group templates which exceed the scope of the WLAN and WLC group templates. Here, the total amount of all available configuration parameters in all device types is available for you to choose those which you want to use for your group configuration.

If you enable the option **Use alternative basic settings** instead, LANconfig offers a list of group templates for devices of a specific type. The Group Templates give you the option of including the common parameters for different device types into the group template. However, some parameters overlap between different device types (e.g. DSL and DSLoL). Thus the group templates are always a compromise in which some parameters may be missing. For homogeneous groups containing just one type of device, it makes sense to select a specific device configuration with a specific firmware version as a template for the group. These basic settings thus allow you to chose from precisely those configuration parameters that are required for this type of device.

Creating a new group configuration file

To work with group configurations, the devices are collected into folders. These LANconfig folders contain the devices that benefit from the co-management of shared group-configuration parameters as well as a link to the group configuration. The following steps describe how you create a new group configuration.

A group configuration allows you to manage all device parameters that are shared by the devices in the group. An individual device configuration refers to the parameters that are specific to a single device.

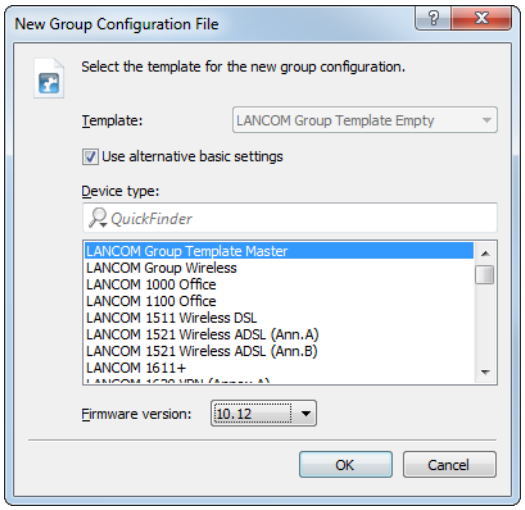
1. Create a new folder for the devices to be grouped.

   You have two ways to create this folder:

   - Click the right mouse button on an existing folder in the folder view. Select **New folder with group configuration**. The configuration dialog initially creates a new folder as a sub-directory and then continues with the selection of the template to be used for creating a new group configuration.
   - In the folder view, click the right mouse button to the directory where you wish to create the new folder. Select the context dialog **New folder** and enter a name. Use the mouse to move the devices for grouping into the new folder. Then click on the folder with the right-hand mouse key and select the context-menu entry **New group configuration**. This opens the template selection for the creation of a new group configuration.

2. Select a **template** and the appropriate **firmware version**. If you have saved your own group templates previously, these will be also displayed in the list of templates.

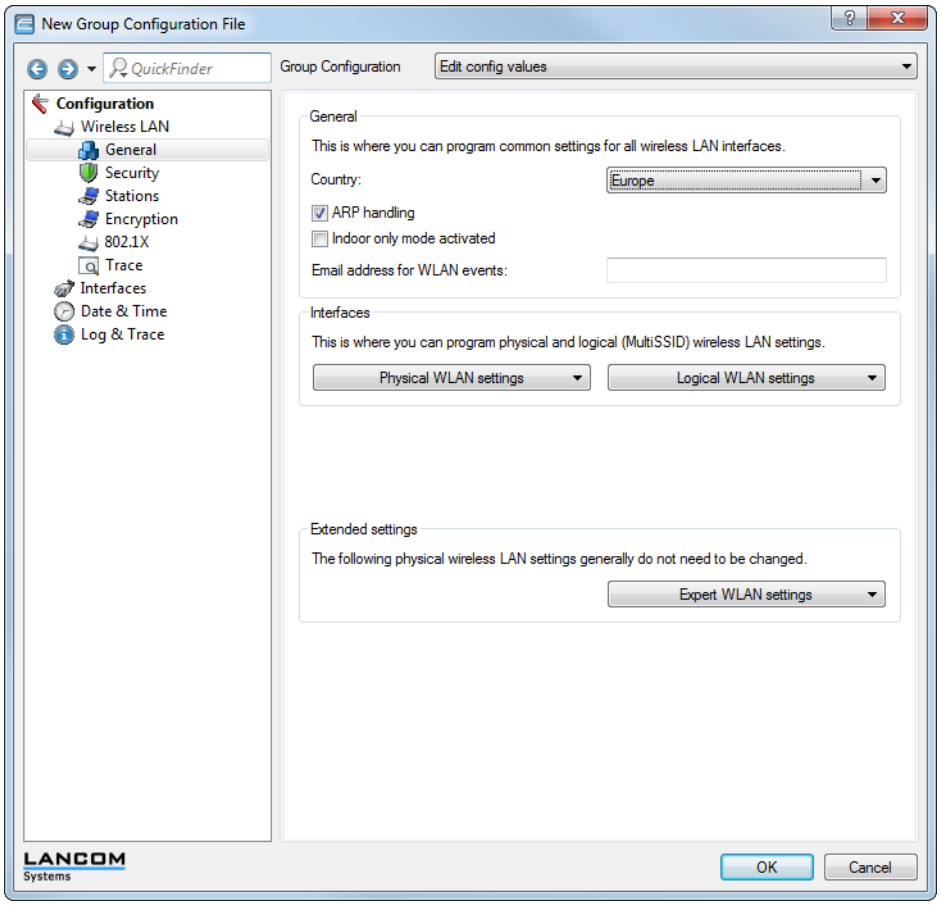
An alternative option is available by enabling the item **Use alternative basic settings**, which takes the basic settings for a particular type of device as the basis for the new group configuration. In this case, the new group configuration is created with the default values for the selected device type.



In order to avoid inconsistent sets of configuration parameters, the alternative basic settings are based on a blank template corresponding to the **Group Template Empty**.

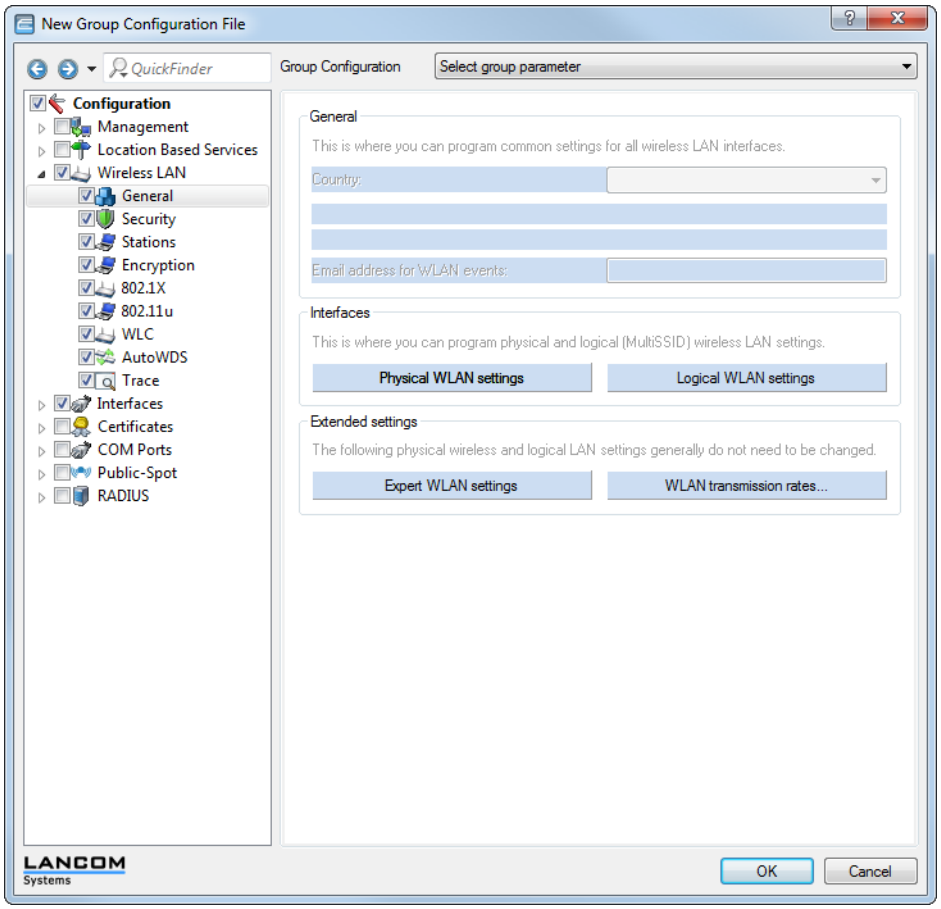
3. Click on **OK**. This opens the configuration dialog for the device parameters.
   At the top of the **Groups configuration** selection list you see two editing modes:
   - **Edit config. values** mode.
   - **Select group parameters** mode.

The configuration dialog opens in the **Edit config. values** mode. In this view, you see only the common parameters which are to be co-managed for the group. You can define the required values and content here. Parameters that apply to individual devices are hidden.



If you have selected an empty group template, the displayed dialog is empty. The first step is to select the group parameters for editing in the mode chosen above.

In the **Select group parameters** mode you can select or de-select all of the parameters that you require for a customized group configuration.



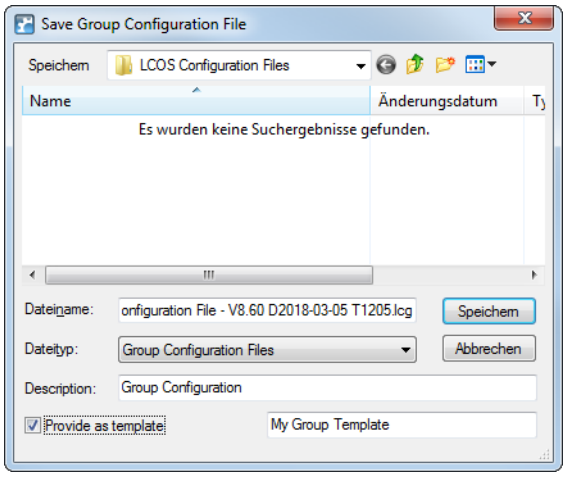
Light-blue colored items are selected for use in the group configuration. Click once with the left mouse button on an item to change its selection status.

Please note the following:

- For tables with statically specified rows (such as interface-related tables and **Logical WLAN settings**) you additionally have the option of transferring individual parameters into the group configuration. In LANconfig you can often recognize these tables in that a pull down menu appears when you click on the corresponding button.
- For tables with dynamically generated rows (such as the **Routing table**, for example) you can only select or de-select the entire table for the group configuration.
- Similarly, it is only possible to select or de-select the entire firewall for the group configuration.

4. Now modify the configuration values according to the explanations given for the previous step, and if necessary add additional groups parameters to the configuration. Then click on **OK**.
5. Enter a descriptive **file name** for the new group configuration and set the path for it to be saved.

You also have the option to include this group configuration into the list of templates for creating further group configurations in future. Enable the option **Provide as template** and give the file a descriptive name.



It is also possible to use an existing group configuration to create a template at a later time. Do this by right-clicking on the group configuration in the appropriate group folder. Then select the context-menu option **Provide as template** and give the file a descriptive name.

6. Click **Save** to conclude.

That's it! The associated configuration file now appears in the device list with the specified name. To customize these names, click on the group configuration with the right-hand mouse button and under **Properties** > **General**, change the text for the **Description.**

The group configuration saves all parameters in a group configuration file, including parameters with preset default values. Use the scripting function to read out only the non-default settings from a device and, if applicable, transfer them to other devices.

Using an existing group configuration file

In some cases it may be useful to use a different structure of devices managed with LANconfig than required by the group configuration. For example, devices in different site-specific folders may belong to the same groups. In order to avoid redundant group configuration files for every folder, you may want to create links to a shared file in multiple folders.

To use an existing group configuration file for a group of devices, use the mouse and right-click on the appropriate folder. In the context menu select **Add group configuration**.

In the subsequent dialog, select the existing group configuration file to create a link to this file in the folder.

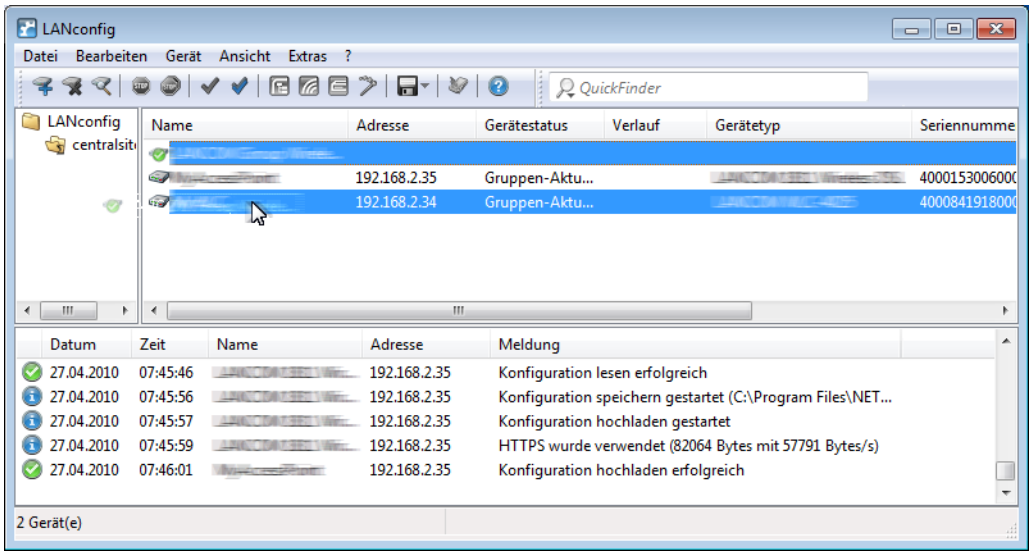
Please note that changes to the group configuration file will lead to changes in that group configuration in various folders.

If you create additional devices in a group folder, or if you modify an existing group configuration, LANconfig informs you that an update to the appropriate devices is available. This update can be carried out either directly afterwards or at any later time by using the context menu.

Updating device configurations with group configurations

By selecting or updating a folder, LANconfig checks the configuration of the devices in this folder for agreement with the settings in the active group configuration. In case of discrepancy from the group configuration, the device status informs that **Group update recommended**.

To load the group configuration into the WLAN device, drag the group configuration entry onto the appropriate device entry. After successfully transferring the parameters, the device status will change to **OK**.



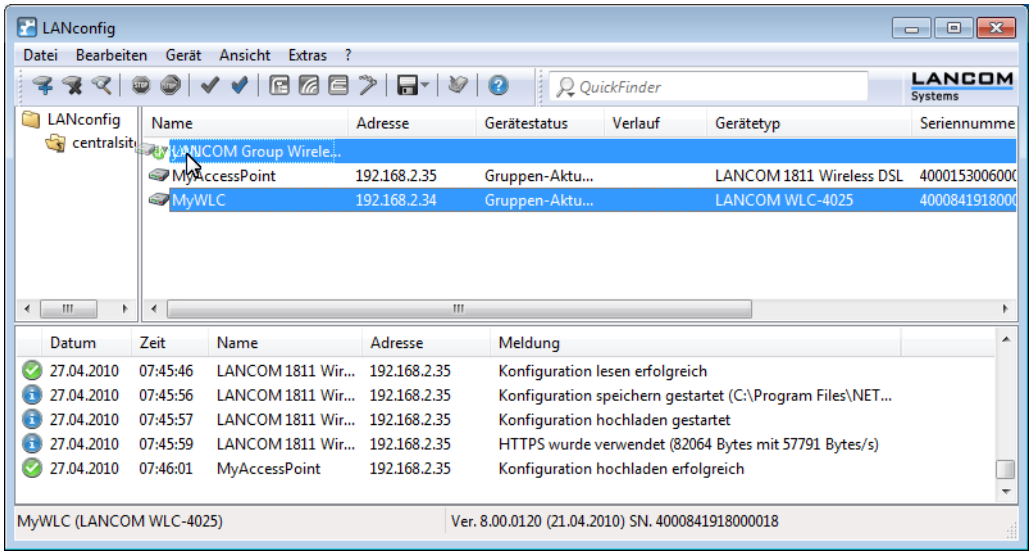
It is also possible to use the partial configuration for a WLAN device as a group configuration. Simply drag the device entry onto the group configuration entry.

Updating group configurations by means of a master device

Apart from manually changing the parameters in a group configuration (see chapter *Updating device configurations with group configurations* on page 166), the current configuration of a device can be used as the basis for a group configuration. One device is thus declared as "Master" for all other devices in the same folder.

To take over the values from a current device configuration for a group configuration, simply drag the entry for this device onto the desired group configuration. All of the parameters defined in the group configuration are then overwritten by the values in the device configuration.

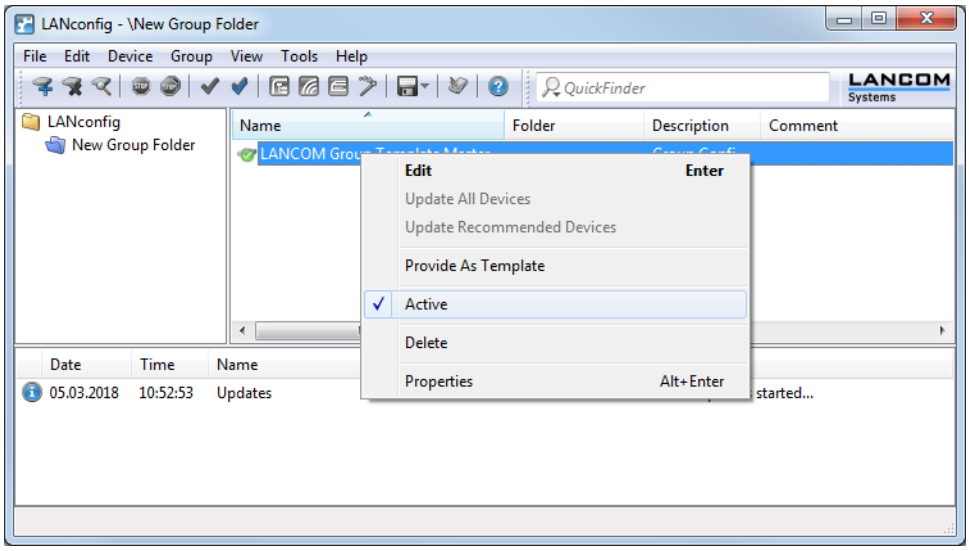
The next time that LANconfig checks the devices, it will find that the configurations in the other devices no longer agree with the new group configuration; this will be indicated by the device status.



Using multiple group configurations

Multiple group configurations can be created within a single folder. Only one of these group configurations may be active at a time since the device status can only relate to one single group configuration. Active group configurations are marked with a blue tick, inactive group configurations with a red cross. To activate a group configuration, click on the entry with the right-hand mouse key and select 'Active' from the context menu. All other group configurations are then deactivated automatically.

Different group configurations in one folder may not be linked to the same partial configuration file.



Transferring device configurations to similar models

When changing to a different device type, it is often necessary to adopt aspects of the configuration of the previous model. To do this, LANconfig enables you to load the configuration file (*.lcf) of a source device onto a similar target device. All of the configuration parameters available on both source and target devices assume the previously used values where possible:

- If the target device has the appropriate parameter, and the value lies within the possible range, the value of the source device is taken.
- If the value of a parameter available on the target device is not supported, the default value is used. Example:
  - The source device has four Ethernet interfaces.
  - The target device only has two Ethernet interfaces.
  - The interface for an IP network is set to LAN-4 on the source device.
  - This value is not supported on the target device. The value is therefore set to default value 'LAN-1' on loading the configuration file.
- All destination-device parameters that were not available on the source device retain their respective values.

Necessary steps

Proceed as follows to transfer the configuration onto a new device:

1. The firmware levels of the source and target devices should be matched as closely as possible. Every new LCOS firmware version features new parameters. Using the same firmware on the two devices allows the greatest possible matching of available parameters.
2. Save the configuration of the source device with LANconfig, e.g. via **Device** > **Configuration Management** > **Save as File**.
3. Disconnect the source device from the network to avoid address conflicts.

4. Upload the configuration onto the target device using **Device** > **Configuration Management** > **Restore from File**. Messages on the conversion of the configuration are displayed in an information window.

Please note that this function is intended primarily for replacement devices and not for the configuration of new devices to be operated in parallel with the source device in the same network. Because key communication settings, such as the IP address of the device and DHCP settings, are transferred to the target device, parallel operation of the source and target devices in one network may result in conflicts. The configuration of several devices in one network is facilitated by group configuration and configuration via scripts.

Automatic backup of the device configuration

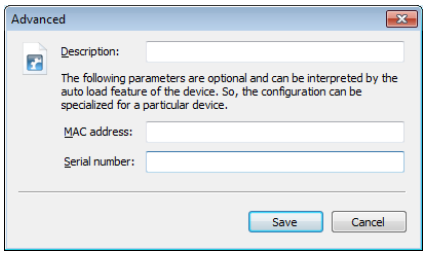
LANconfig can automatically save backups of the current configuration prior to changes in firmware or configuration. Global settings to be used for all of the devices are available under **Tools** > **Options** on the page **Backup** (see *Backup* on page 211).

Additionally, special backup settings can be defined for individual devices. To access them, right-click the appropriate device and select entry **Properties** > **Backup** from the context menu (see *Backup* on page 185).

Advanced meta data for configuration files

If a device configuration is stored manually, LANconfig provides the option to save extra meta data in addition to the usual MAC address and/or device serial number in the configuration file (*.lcf). This extended meta-data can be taken into account, for example when performing a quick config rollback or when loading a device configuration via USB.

To include the additional meta data into a configuration file, click the **Advanced** button in the LANconfig save-file dialog and enter the data—if not entered already—into the respective fields.



Alternatively you can open a lcf/lcs file in a text editor and enter the advanced meta data by hand. Add to the line `(<Firmware>) (<Feature-Mask>;<Feature-IDs>;<Hardware-Mask>)` the following text with the brackets `(MAC:<MAC-Address>;SERIAL:<Serialnumber>)`.

Example:

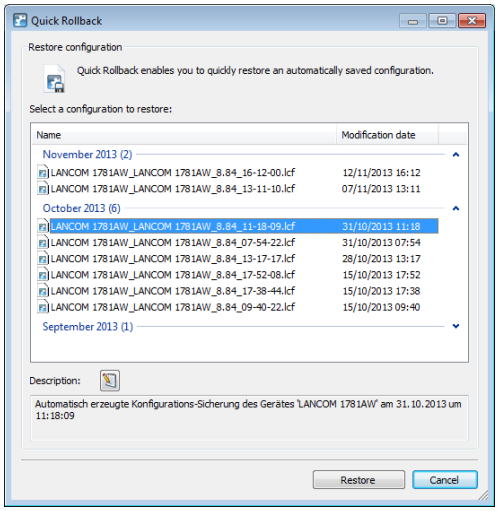
```
(Configuration of 'DEVICE-01' from 8/12/2014)
(9.00.0212) (0x0000c010,IDs:4,e,f,2b;0x0c000002) (MAC:00a0571d12fc;SERIAL:4002578718100036)
```

Quick Rollback

As the counterpart to the automatic backup of device configurations, you can restore configuration backups with a single click. Just highlight the device and select **Device** > **Quick rollback**. LANconfig lists all of the device configurations that have been saved under the path for the automatic device-configuration backups. If LANconfig cannot find a backup file for the selected device, it cancels this action with a warning message.

LANconfig allocates the configuration backup to the device by using the serial number stored in the meta data of the backup. As of LCOS8.84 the serial number is automatically written to the backup; for older configuration backups without the serial number, you need to add these manually in order for Quick Rollback to recognize the files. Please also refer to *Advanced meta data for configuration files* on page 169.

To restore a configuration backup, select an entry and click on **Restore**.



You also have the option to add comments to the configuration backups, or edit existing comments: The **Edit description** button ( ) enables you to edit the field below it containing the comment text. Click on **Save description** ( ) to write the text in the comment box back to the backup file.

Quick Rollback is not available for switches.

CSV export

You can export the list of devices found on the network and later import them into LANconfig in one go. LANconfig stores the list of managed devices in a CSV file.

To export the data, proceed as follows:

1. Select the menu item **File** > **Export device list**.
2. Set the location to save the file.
3. Enter a file name.
4. Specify the column separator, which separates the various device parameters.
5. Start saving by clicking on **Save.**
6. A dialog confirms the number of data sets stored.
7. Close the dialog by clicking **OK**.

The resulting CSV file contains the following data (one record per line):

```
DEVICE_PATH;DEVICE_INTERFACE;DEVICE_TIMEOUT;DEVICE_ADDRESS;
DEVICE_ADMIN;DEVICE_PASSWORD;DEVICE_SNMPCOMMUNITY;DEVICE_NAME;
DEVICE_STARTUP;DEVICE_PROTOCOLS;DEVICE_PORTS;DEVICE_DESCRIPTION;
DEVICE_COMMENT;DEVICE_LOCATION;DEVICE_TYPE;DEVICE_EXTENDED_NAME;
DEVICE_PRODUCTCODE;DEVICE_SERNO;DEVICE_HWADDR;DEVICE_HWREL;
DEVICE_BACKUP;DEVICE_VPN;DEVICE_SSH_FINGERPRINT;DEVICE_CREDENTIALS
MyGroup;IP;3;192.168.2.101;;;;LANCOM WLC-4025;1;263;;;;;
LANCOM WLC-4025;LANCOM WLC-4025;;4000841918000018;00a0571218bb;C;"31;
C:\Users\MyUser\AppData\Roaming\LANCOM\LANconfig\Config\;
\%y_%mn_%dn\%N_%G_%F[1-4]_%hh-%mm-%s;12|";;
02:5a:e5:42:ea:d2:da:f0:93:b5:d0:3d:0c:08:70:b8;
```

The first line contains the name of the device parameters. The following lines itemizes the various devices line by line, and their parameters are separated by semicolons. If 2 semicolons appear in direct succession, then the enclosed parameter value is blank.

The variable names in the first row correspond to the following LANconfig entries:

- **DEVICE_PATH**: Path name in the folder view
- **DEVICE_INTERFACE**: Connection type
- **DEVICE_TIMEOUT**: Maximum response time of the device
- **DEVICE_ADDRESS**: IP address or domain name and COM port or telephone number respectively
- **DEVICE_ADMIN**: Administrator name
- **DEVICE_PASSWORD**: Administrator password
- **DEVICE_SNMPCOMMUNITY**: The SNMP community of the device
- **DEVICE_NAME**: Device name
- **DEVICE_STARTUP**: Checking of the device at startup
- **DEVICE_PROTOCOLS**: Communication protocols
- **DEVICE_PORTS**: Ports
- **DEVICE_DESCRIPTION**: Description
- **DEVICE_COMMENT**: Comment
- **DEVICE_LOCATION**: Location of device
- **DEVICE_TYPE**: Device type
- **DEVICE_EXTENDED_NAME**: Device name with any supplements
- **DEVICE_PRODUCTCODE**: Product code
- **DEVICE_SERNO**: Serial number
- **DEVICE_HWADDR**: MAC address
- **DEVICE_HWREL**: Hardware release
- **DEVICE_BACKUP**: Storage location for the configuration backup created by LANconfig
- **DEVICE_VPN**: Parameter set for 1-Click-VPN
- **DEVICE_SSH_FINGERPRINT**: Cached fingerprint of the imported SSH key, also see *Exporting key fingerprints when commissioning CC devices* on page 182
- **DEVICE_CREDENTIALS**: Cached fingerprint of the device's internal ssh-rsa key

Use a text editor or spreadsheet to manage the list of exported devices.

If a device password is stored in LANconfig, the password is saved in cleartext in the CSV file. Remember to delete these access credentials before you pass this file on or save it to a freely accessible server.

Importing from a data source (CSV)

In LANconfig you can import a large number of devices from a script file in one go by processing the device files with an Import Wizard. You also have the option of using this device file together with a configuration template file to create a custom configuration file for each device. The template file contains variables for the values in the device file.

The device file is saved in CSV format.

Example application: Importing from a single data source

The scenario which is the subject of the following sections describes how to use a script file and a simple CSV-format device file to generate your own data source for importing data.

Content of the CSV file

The CSV file contains device-related data records, which LANconfig can import. This provides you with a convenient method of managing this data on the network.

The following is an example of a simple CSV file:

```
CONFIG_FILENAME;DEVICE_PATH;DEVICE_INTERFACE;DEVICE_ADDRESS;DEVICE_LOCATION;DEVICE_NAME;KEY;USER
Fil52146.lcs;Filialen/NRW;IP;192.168.1.1;Wuerselen;Fil52146;secret1;user1@internet
Fil80637.lcs;Filialen/BAY;IP;192.168.2.1;Muenchen;Fil80637;secret2;user2@internet
```

The first line contains the name of the device parameters. The following lines itemizes the various devices line by line, and their parameters are separated by semicolons. If 2 semicolons appear in direct succession, then the enclosed parameter value is blank.

The parameter names on the first line can be freely defined. If you decide to use the default variable names, LANconfig automatically allocates the device parameters during the import. Information about the default variables is available in the chapter *CSV export* on page 170.

If you choose not to use the default variable names, you may need to manually assign the values to the appropriate device properties in LANconfig during the import.

Content of the configuration template file

The template file contains Telnet commands that Telnet executes sequentially. This is why this template file is also referred to as a script file.

For an overview of available telnet commands, see the Reference Manual section *Telnet*.

A configuration template file can appear as follows:

```
lang English
flash No
set /Setup/Name "$DEVICE_NAME$"
set /Setup/SNMP/Location "$DEVICE_LOCATION$"
cd /Setup/TCP-IP/Network-list
tab Network-name IP-Address IP-Netmask VLAN-ID Interface Src-check Type Rtg-tag Comment

add "INTRANET" $DEVICE_ADDRESS$ 255.255.255.0 0 any loose Intranet 0 "local intranet"
cd /
cd /Setup/WAN/PPP
tab Peer Authent.request Authent-response Key Time Try Conf Fail Term Username Rights
add "INTERNET" none PAP "$KEY$" 6 5 10 5 2 "$USER$" IP
cd /
cd /Setup/WAN/DSL-Broadband-Peers
del *
tab Peer SH-Time AC-name Servicename WAN-layer ATM-VPI ATM-VCI MAC-Type user-def.-MAC
DSL-ifc(s) VLAN-ID
add "INTERNET" 9999 "" "" "PPPOEOA" 1 32 local 000000000000 "" 0
cd /
cd /Setup/IP-Router/IP-Routing-Table
tab IP-Address IP-Netmask Rtg-tag Peer-or-IP Distance Masquerade Active Comment

add 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 0 "INTERNET" 0 on Yes "default route"
cd /
flash Yes

# done
exit
```

The variables begin and end with a character or a string (here: '$').

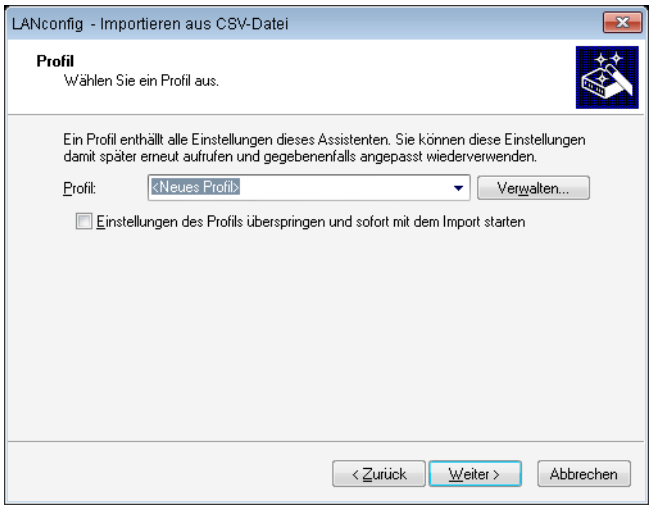
In this template file, the variables represent certain device parameters. During the import process, you associate these variables with the corresponding entries in the device file. The Configuration Wizard then replaces the variables with the associated device data from the CSV file.

Creating the configuration files

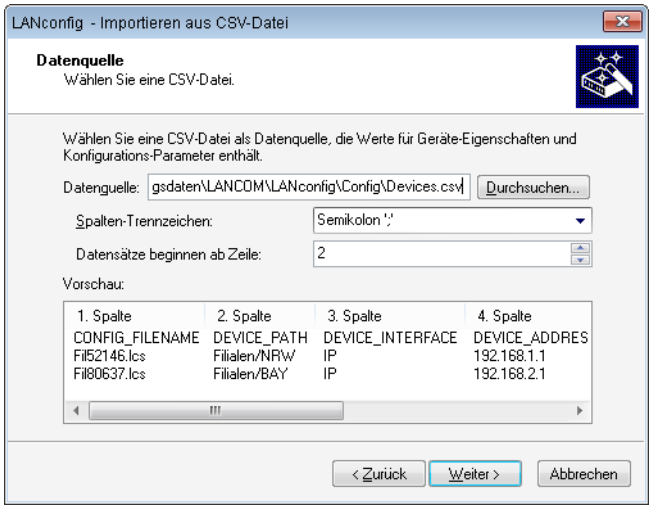
Proceed as follows to create device-specific configuration files:

1. Open the Import Wizard in the menu **File** > **Devices/Configurations from CSV file...**.
2. If necessary, confirm the Welcome dialog with **Next**. The option to **Skip this page on next call** will suppress the appearance of the welcome screen when the Wizard is run in future.

3. If applicable, select the profile used for a previous data import. The option **Skip profile settings and start the import immediately** uses the settings in the selected profile without modification. Select **<New profile>** to use a new profile instead of an existing one. Click on **Next**.

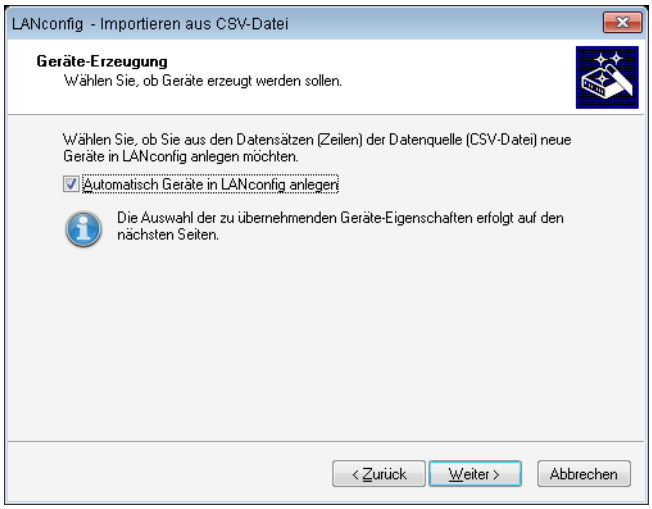


4. In the **Data source** field enter the path to the CSV file. With **Browse ...** you select the file from your local file system.



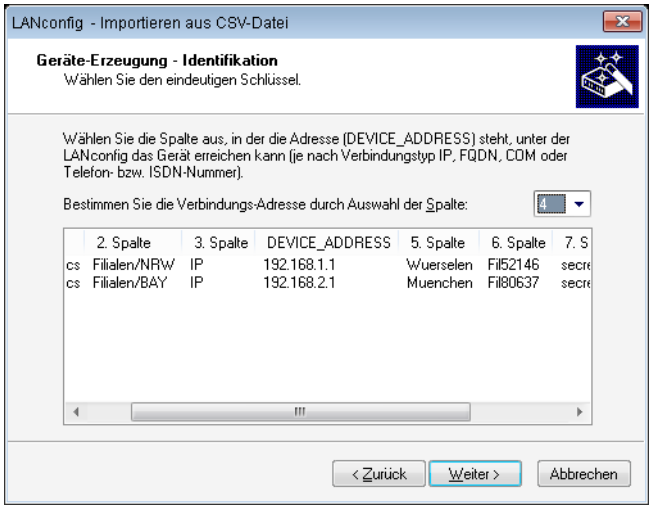
5. You can select the column separator for the CSV file. The default is the semicolon.
6. Set the row number where the data records start. This allows you to avoid importing any existing column headings and additional information. If a line in the CSV file contains only default variable names (see section *Exporting CSV data sets*), then this line is used to assign the variables automatically. This ensures that exporting and importing the same file will function without any manual assignment. However, if a configuration is generated with additional variables, the auto-detect will not function.
7. The **Preview** field instantly shows the parameters you have selected for import. Confirm your entries with **Next**.

8. To use the data records to create new devices in LANconfig, select the option **Automatically create devices in LANconfig.** After clicking **Next**, the following pages are used to select the device properties to be carried over to LANconfig.

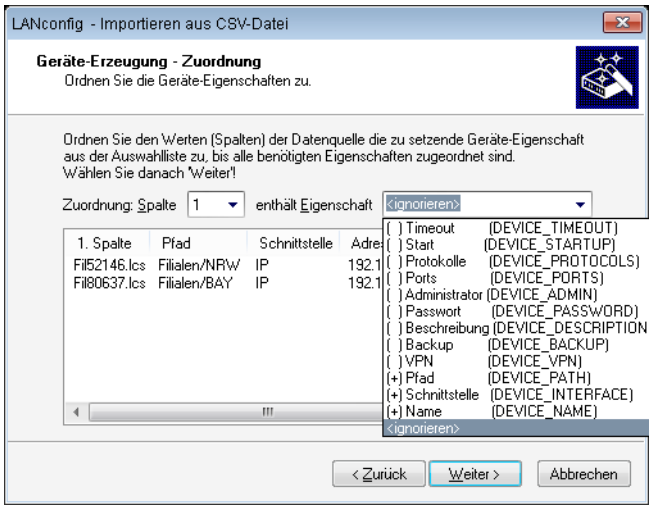


If this option is disabled, the Wizard will skip the subsequent 2 steps.

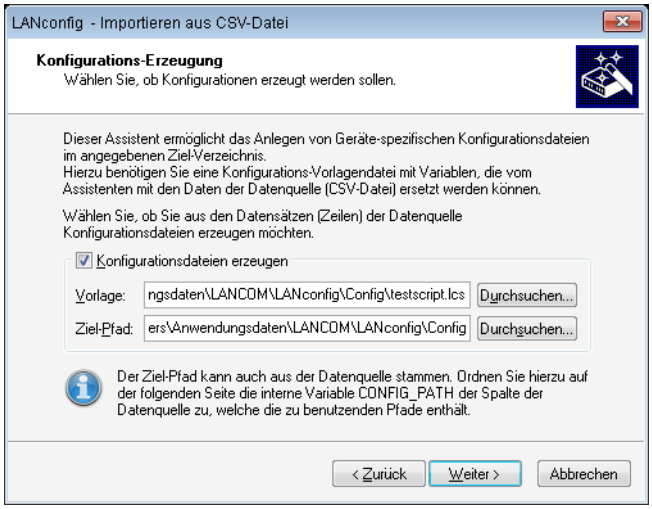
9. The devices are identified using their connection address. Use the drop-down list to select the column in the data set that contains the connection address and click on **Next.** If you use default variable names, assignment takes place automatically.



10. Align the columns according to the relevant device properties. Properties that have been aligned are marked in the list with a preceding "+". Then click on **Next**. If you use default variable names, assignment takes place automatically.

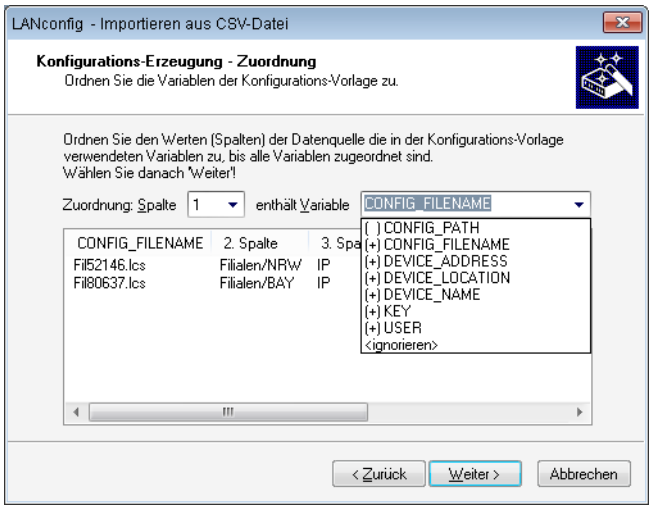


11. You have the option to create individual configuration files from the data sets. Simply activate the option **Generate configuration files**.



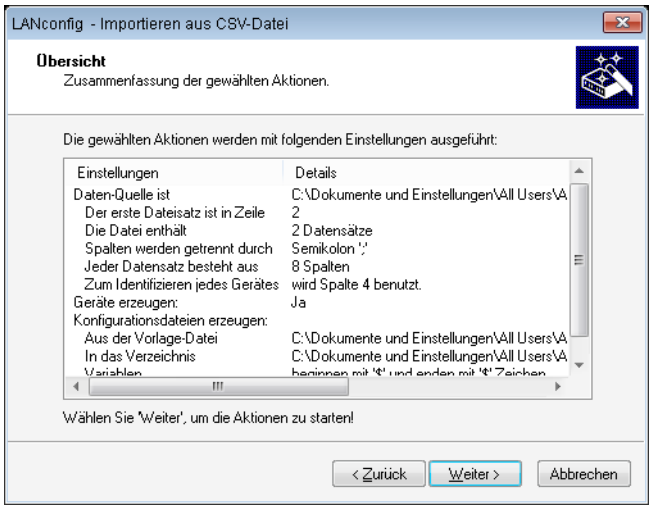
12. Use the **Template** field to set the path to the template file to be used as the basis for these configuration files. By clicking on **Browse** you open the dialog for loading a configuration script template. In the fields **Variable start** and **Variable end** you define which characters (or strings) are to mark the start and end of the variables in the template file. This enables the Wizard to identify the variables in the template file.
13. You specify the storage path in the field **Target path**. This is where LANconfig stores the new configuration files. Click on **Browse** to specify a target path on your local file system. Click on **Next**.
14. Assign the columns in the data source to the variables used in the template file. Do this by selecting the column number from the list of columns and assigning this number to a variable from the properties list. Variables are also assigned automatically if the column headings contain the same variable names as those between the start and end

characters in the script file. The column headings in the view below updates immediately with every change. To continue, click on **Next**.



If your entries are incomplete, the Wizard alerts you about potential import problems and suggests corrections.

15. The summary informs you about the actions that are executed in the next step. If you need to make any changes, click on **Back**. This returns you to the appropriate input mask. By clicking on **Next** you start the data import.



If the data import would overwrite a device that already exists in LANconfig, the Wizard gives you the following options:

- Overwrite the device.
- Create a configuration file, nevertheless.
- Use this decision for all other existing devices.

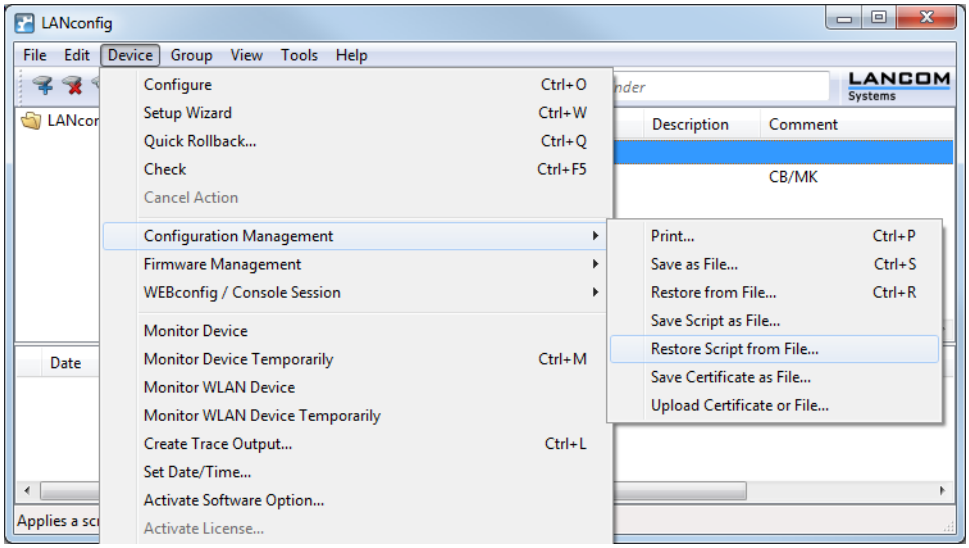
16. The status dialog that follows indicates the actions performed. Click on **Copy to clipboard** to save the status message to the clipboard. Click on **Next**.
17. Finally, you have the option to save the current import settings to a profile for future actions.
18. Complete the import by clicking on **Finish**.

If you have opted to generate a custom configuration file, the Wizard saves a separate configuration file for each device in the specified folder. These configuration files are named according to the file name "<CONFIG_FILENAME>.lcs", which defines the CSV file:

```
lang English
flash No
set /Setup/Name "Fil52146"
set /Setup/SNMP/Location "Wuerselen"
cd /Setup/TCP-IP/Network-list
tab Network-name IP-Address IP-Netmask VLAN-ID Interface Src-check Type Rtg-tag Comment

add "INTRANET" 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0 0 any loose Intranet 0 "local intranet"
cd /
cd /Setup/WAN/PPP
tab Peer Authent.request Authent-response Key Time Try Conf Fail Term Username Rights
add "INTERNET" none PAP "secret1" 6 5 10 5 2 "user1@internet" IP
cd /
cd /Setup/WAN/DSL-Broadband-Peers
del *
tab Peer SH-Time AC-name Servicename WAN-layer ATM-VPI ATM-VCI MAC-Type user-def.-MAC
DSL-ifc(s) VLAN-ID
add "INTERNET" 9999 "" "" "PPPOEOA" 1 32 local 000000000000 "" 0
cd /
cd /Setup/IP-Router/IP-Routing-Table
tab IP-Address IP-Netmask Rtg-tag Peer-or-IP Distance Masquerade Active Comment

add 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 0 "INTERNET" 0 on Yes "default route"
cd /
flash Yes

# done
exit
```

The Wizard has replaced all variables with the appropriate device parameters.

This configuration file gives you the option to use LANconfig to transfer the device settings as defined in the template file to other devices. Highlight the appropriate device and click on **Device** > **Configuration management** > **Restore script from script file**.



LANCOM Software Update for LANtools

The software update for the LANtools allows you to automatically download new versions of the LANtools and your device firmware.

New versions for the LANtools (LANconfig, LANmonitor and WLANmonitor) are downloaded directly from the freely accessible download section of the LANCOM web server.

Manually starting LANCOM Software Update

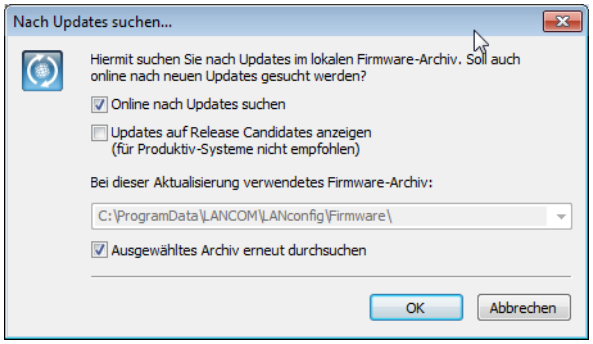
To start the software update manually in LANconfig proceed as follows:

1. Start LANconfig.
2. Click on the **Tools** menu and select **Check for updates...**.

LANconfig searches the local firmware archive for updates. Optionally, you can extend the search with the following items:

- Find more updates online in the download area of the LANCOM web server.
- Include Release Candidates in the search. If you enable this option, the Software Update will not only offer to download the released software versions for use in productive environments, but also any available release candidates.

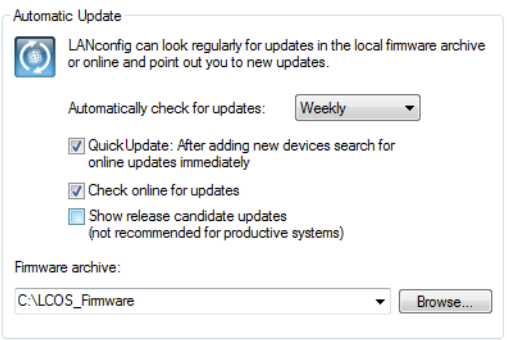
Release candidates include the new features of upcoming software versions and have been thoroughly tested. Until the final release of version, the software may be further optimized—partly due to user feedback.



Settings for the automatic search for new updates

Proceed as follows to start the software update automatically in LANconfig each time the application starts:

1. Start LANconfig.
2. Click on the **Tools** menu and select **Options**.
3. Go to the **Update** page.



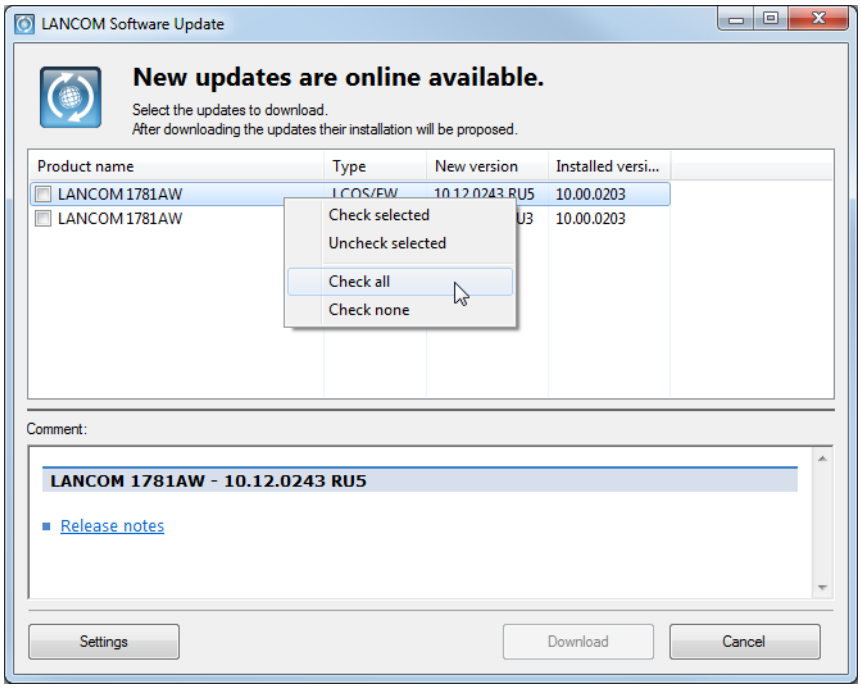
4. Select the time interval for the automatic check for updates (**Daily**, **Weekly** or **Monthly**).

For the remaining settings for software updates, refer to the chapter *Update* on page 214.

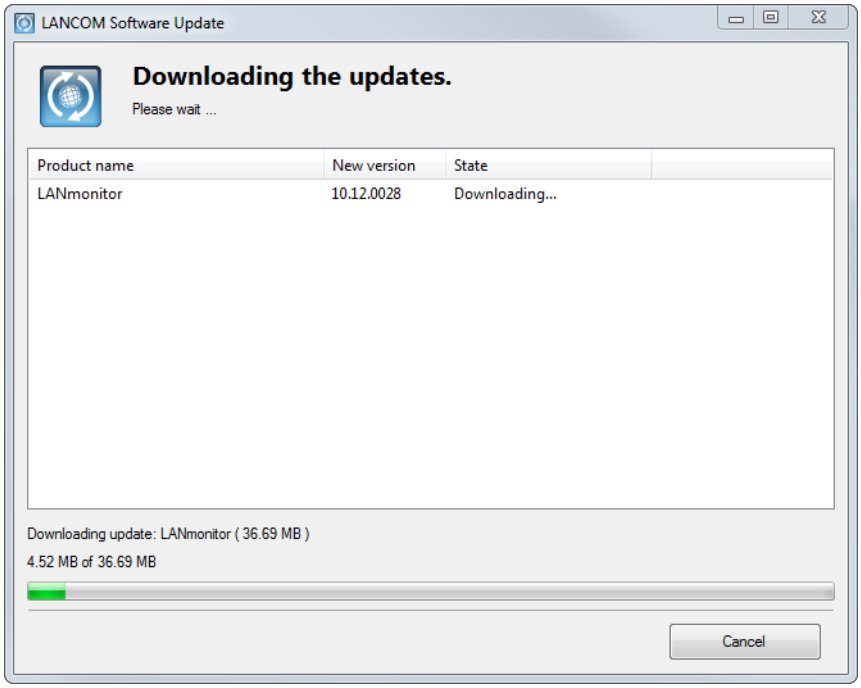
Selecting and installing the available updates

After successful connection to the update server, LANconfig displays the available updates.

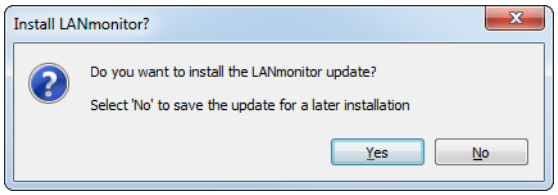
Select the appropriate versions and click **Download**. As an alternative, you can click on the entries with the right-hand mouse key and select the entry **Select all** or **Select none** from the context menu.



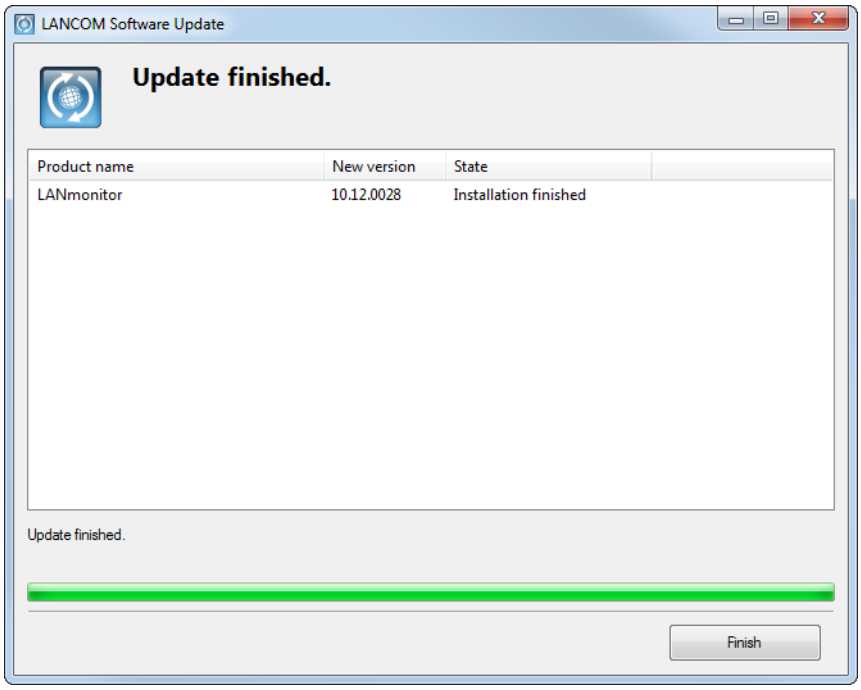
Software Update now downloads the selected software one after other and stores the files in the firmware archive.



After successfully downloading the software, Software Update offers to install the downloaded software (LANconfig and LANmonitor only):



After installation, the Software Update displays the results of the update procedure:

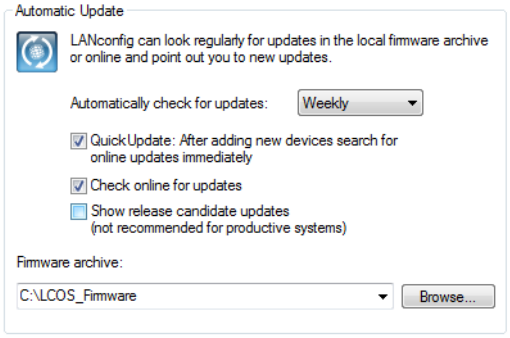


Searching for firmware updates in the archive

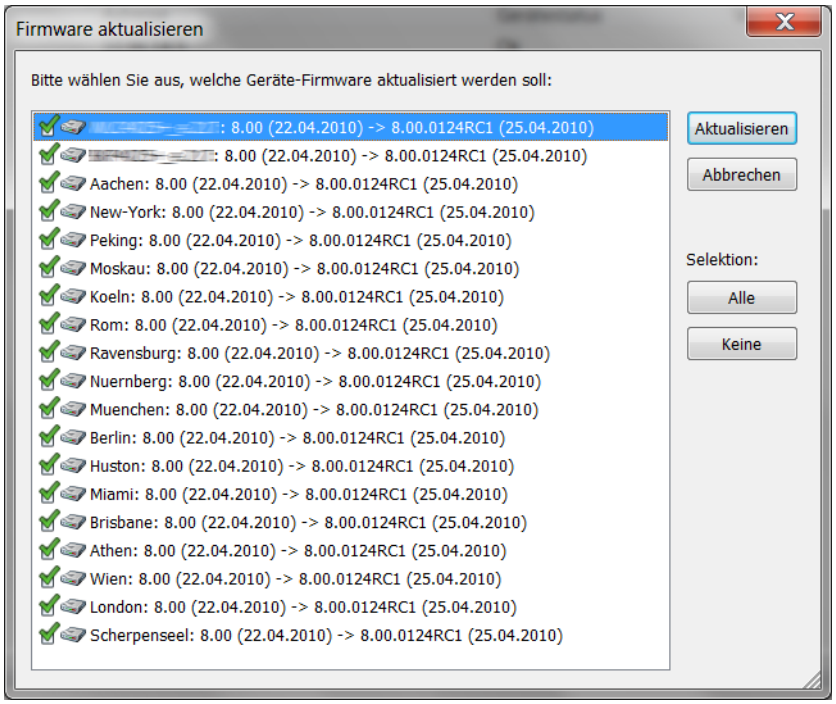
To make the update of devices with new firmware as convenient as possible, the firmware files for the various models and LCOS versions are, ideally, saved to a central archive directory. The search for new firmware versions in this directory can either be initiated manually or automatically after starting LANconfig.

Automatic search for firmware updates

The directory where LANconfig looks for updates is configured under **Tools** > **Options** > **Update** > **Firmware archive**.

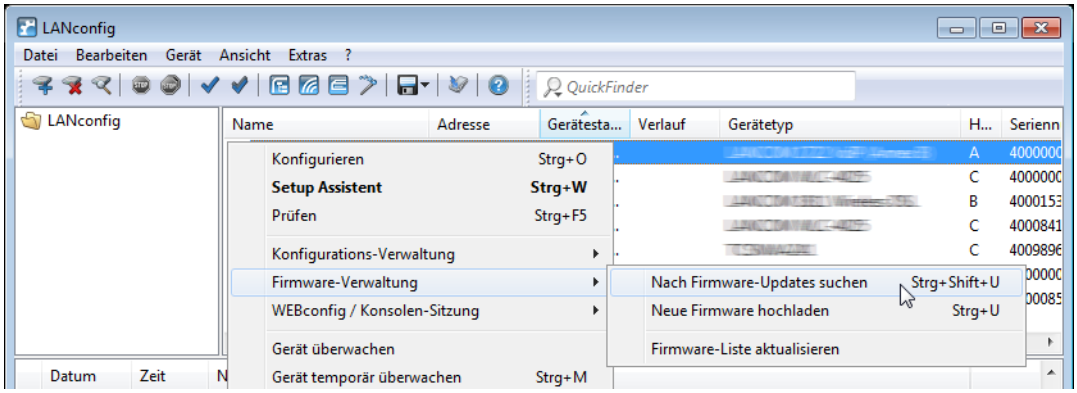


If you set an interval for the automatic search, starting LANconfig automatically displays all of the devices for which new updates are available.



Manual search for firmware updates

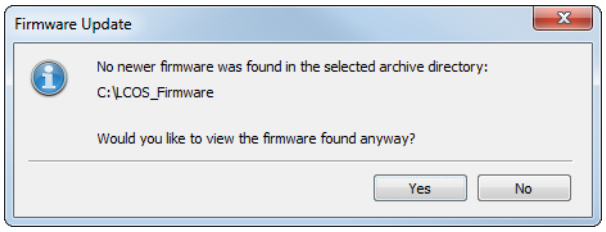
To seach manually for firmware updates, click with the right-hand mouse key on a device marked in the list and select the following point from the context menu: **Firmware management** > **Check for firmware updates**. If you highlight several devices, the item **Check for firmware updates** is displayed directly in the context menu.

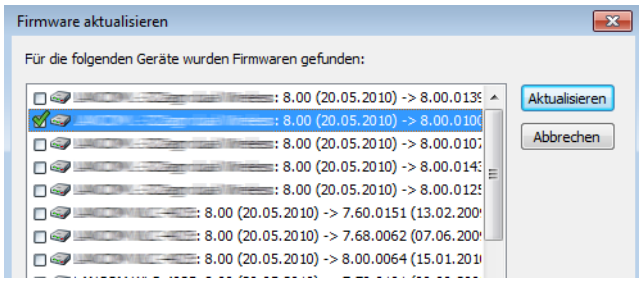


View a full list of all firmware versions

If your search in the archive did not reveal a new firmware version, you can alternatively view a full list of all of the firmware files that have been found. You can, for example, switch back to an older version. LANconfig displays all versions

found for the marked devices, including the version currently active in each device. For each device, you can select precisely one firmware version that will then be uploaded onto the device.





Exporting key fingerprints when commissioning CC devices

As of LCOS8.84, LANconfig offers a convenient way to export the SSH key fingerprints when you commission CC devices. While running the CC Start-up Wizard, LANconfig creates the file **CCWizSummary.csv**, which contains the IP address of the device, the device name, and its (SSH) key fingerprint. This generates a list which is useful, for example, for a system administrator who needs to be certain of connecting to the correct device when conducting remote maintenance or when logging in after a rollout.

By default, LANconfig saves the CSV file under `C:\Program Files (x86)\LANCOM\LANconfig\Logging\`. You have also the option to change this path in the input field under **Tools** > **Start CC Start-up Wizard** > **Settings** > **Path**.

3.1.3 LANconfig menu structure

Using the menu bar, you can manage devices and their configurations, and you can customize the appearance and functioning of LANconfig.

File

This menu item is used to manage devices in general, and to exit LANconfig if required.

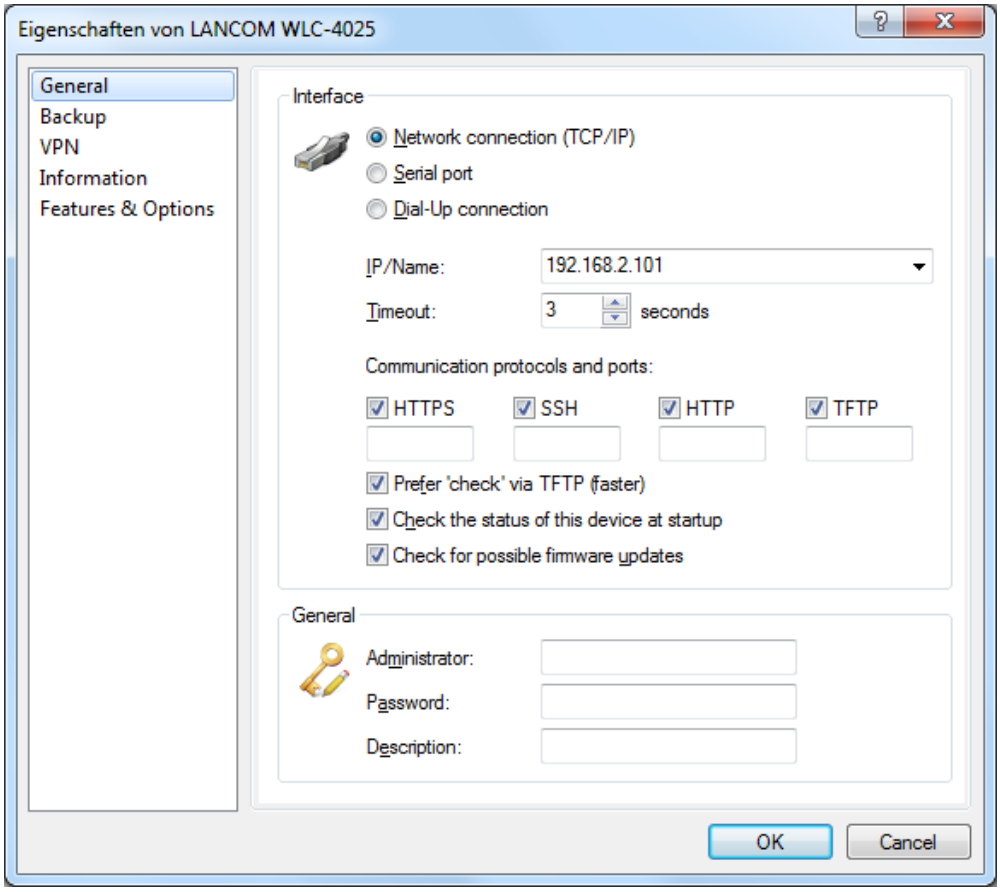
Add device

A new device is added under **File** > **Add device**. It opens a dialog where you can make the settings for the connection to the device and for the backup.

General

On this page, you can define how LANconfig connects to a device. It is also possible to permanently store the access credentials in the program, saving you from having to manually enter them when you connect to the device for the first time after restarting LANconfig.

If you save the username and password permanently, any user who is permitted to run LANmonitor also has access to the device.



Interface

In the **Interface** section you can configure the connection settings for a device.

Please select how the device is to be reached:

- **Network connection (TCP/IP)**: Select this option if the device can be reached over an IP network.
- **Serial port**: Select this option if the device is connected directly via your computer's serial port.
- **Dial-up connection**: Select this option if the device can be reached via Dial-Up Networking.

  Please note that some devices do not support remote configuration via a dial-up connection.

- **IP/Name**: Enter the IP address of the device. You can also enter a domain name (DN or FQDN) or a NetBIOS name. This name is checked at every access. LANconfig stores and uses the resolved IP address. If this check is not possible, then LANconfig takes the last IP address that was last used successfully.
- **Timeout**: Here you enter how many seconds the program should wait for a response from this device.
- **HTTPS**, **SSH**, **HTTP**, **TFTP**: When this is selected, you enable the individual protocols for the operations firmware upload, configuration up/download, and script up/download. In these operations, LANconfig attempts to use these protocols in the order HTTPS, SSH, HTTP and TFTP. If the transfer fails when using one of the selected protocols, LANconfig automatically tries the next protocol.
- **Prefer 'check' via TFTP**: This option causes LANconfig to perform checks with TFTP, irrespective of other protocols that are selected. This is advantageous for devices located in the LAN. The checks are faster and place less load on the computer, which makes an appreciable difference when processing a large number of devices. The fact that HTTPS is not used should not be a problem in the LAN.

- **Check the status of this device at startup**: Check this box if LANconfig should check the status of the device every time it is started.
- **Check for possible firmware updates**: Select this option if LANconfig should check for possible firmware updates.

As described in the section *Communication protocols and ports* on page 184, LANconfig tests other protocols and executes them if TFTP is not available. Here, too, global settings take priority over the device-specific settings.

After you have made the settings, the program tries to access the device and retrieve its name and version. If this fails, LANconfig shows a short error message in the **Device status** column.

General

In this section you can enter a description of the device.

- **Administrator**: Enter the username for an administrator.
- **Password** Enter the associated password here.
- **Description**: Enter the description of the device that you want LANconfig to display in the main window.

Communication protocols and ports

LANconfig uses the communication protocols selected here to check the availability of the device, and to execute firmware uploads as well as the uploading and downloading of scripts/configurations.

LANconfig attempts to carry out the device actions outlined above in the order HTTPS, SSH, HTTP, and TFTP and SSH. If an action fails because of the protocol, then LANconfig repeats them with the next selected protocol.

At least one protocol must be selected in order for the action to function.

When using HTTP(S) and a proxy server, it may be necessary to circumvent this proxy server so that LANconfig can reach the device. You can bypass the proxy server for local addresses by using a setting in the Window's Control Panel, Internet options. In the Internet options' advanced settings, you can also define further addresses which should not be contacted via the proxy server.

Protocols can be set globally or by means of device-specific settings. The global settings in the options menu take priority over the device-specific settings. A benefit of this is that a single global switch can be used to disable a protocol for all devices.

Tips

- When shipped, the device does not yet have an IP address. In this case, enter the IP address of your computer and replace the last part of the number sequence by 254: If your computer's IP address is 192.168.1.1, then assign the IP address 192.168.1.254 to the device.
- Also, if you do not know the device's IP address, you additionally have the option of searching for it with **File** > **Devices**.

Potential problems when connecting with a new device

If LANconfig cannot reach a device at all, then one of the following error messages is displayed under status. To check a device again, mark it in the list and click on **Device** > **Check** in the menu bar.

- **Serial error**: LANconfig could not open the serial interface. Close any program that may be accessing the port.
- **IP error**: Check that the IP address of the device is correct and that your computer is properly connected to the network. You can also check that the TCP/IP protocol is installed properly and correctly configured.
- **No response**: Check if the IP address of the device is correct. Another possibility is that the network connection between your computer and the device is too slow or unreliable.
- **Status unknown**: LANconfig reached the device via the specified IP address, but was unable to request any additional information. LANconfig may not support this device.

- **Access denied:** Access to this device from your computer is blocked.

Backup

On this page you enable and configure the device-specific backup settings. The setting options are identical to the global settings (see *Backup* on page 211).

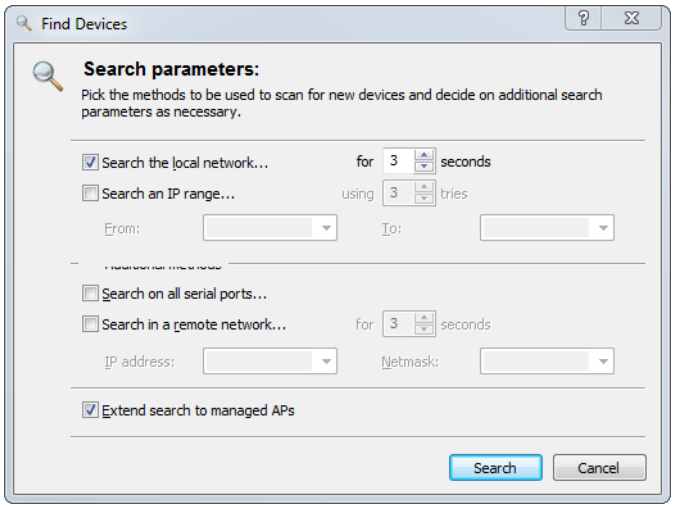
Delete device

You can delete a device that has been marked under **File** > **Delete device**. You can also use the 'Del' key to delete a device.

Deleting a device only removes it from the current view. You can add it to the display again using **File** > **Add device** or **File** > **Find devices**.

Find devices

This menu item triggers an automatic search for new devices for adding to the device view section.



Select where you wish to search for devices:

- Search on all serial ports
- Search in the local network
- Search in a remote network

  If you wish to search in a remote network you must specify its address and the relevant network mask.

- If necessary, you can extend the search to managed access points (APs).

Click on **Search** to start the search. Any devices found will be added to the list automatically.

If a device is found that is already in the list, it will not be included in the list a second time. For this reason fewer devices may be added to the list than were reported during the search operation.

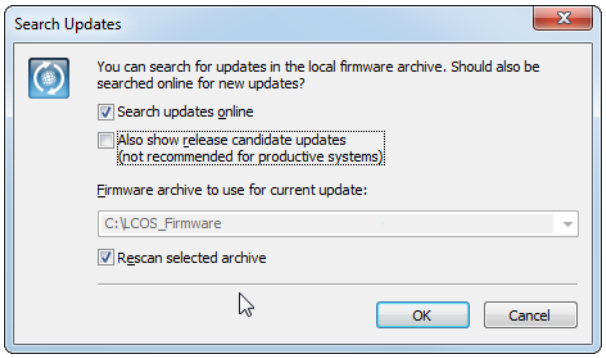
Check devices in this view

You can check the status of all devices under **File** > **Check devices in this view**. The device status indicates, for example, that new firmware is being uploaded or that a device cannot be reached.

A device can only be configured if the status of the device is **OK**.

Check all devices for firmware updates

Manually starts the automatic search for firmware updates. Here, the online LANCOM database and your local firmware archives are searched for firmware versions that are more recent than those currently installed on the devices. Also see the chapter *Searching for firmware updates in the archive* on page 180.



Cancel all actions

Use this menu item to cancel all ongoing actions for all devices shown in the view. You can use this function to cancel the upload of a script or firmware, for example. This function is particularly suited to canceling processes that were initiated through multiple selection or the execution of actions.

Devices/configurations from CSV file

In LANconfig you can import a large number of devices from a script file in one go by processing the device files with an Import Wizard. You also have the option of using this device file together with a configuration template file to create a custom configuration file for each device. The template file contains variables for the values in the device file.

Please refer to section *Importing from a data source (CSV)* on page 171 for further information.

Export device list

You can export the list of devices found on the network and later import them into LANconfig in one go. LANconfig stores the list of managed devices as a CSV file.

Please refer to section *Importing from a data source (CSV)* on page 171 for further information.

New folder

This menu item creates a new folder in the directory tree. Also see *Using directory trees to get organized* on page 153.

Exit

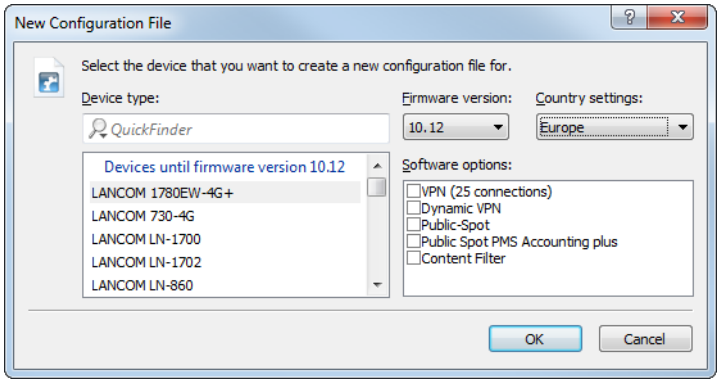
This menu item terminates and closes LANconfig.

Edit

This menu item allows you to organize the configuration files for all of the devices in a device list.

New configuration file

This function allows a configuration and a device entry to be created without a connection to an actual device.



Device type

If you wish to create a configuration file you must specify the type of device this configuration is intended for so that the program can display the correct parameters for it. Choose the desired device from the list.

Use the QuickFinder to filter the list of available devices. Simply enter a part of the name of the required device type into the QuickFinder field and the dialog automatically reduces the selection to the appropriate devices.

Firmware-Version

Since different firmware versions often provide options that differ from each other, the program needs to know the version that this configuration is intended for. Please specify the firmware version number in the desired device. The program will inform you if the version number is incorrect or not supported.

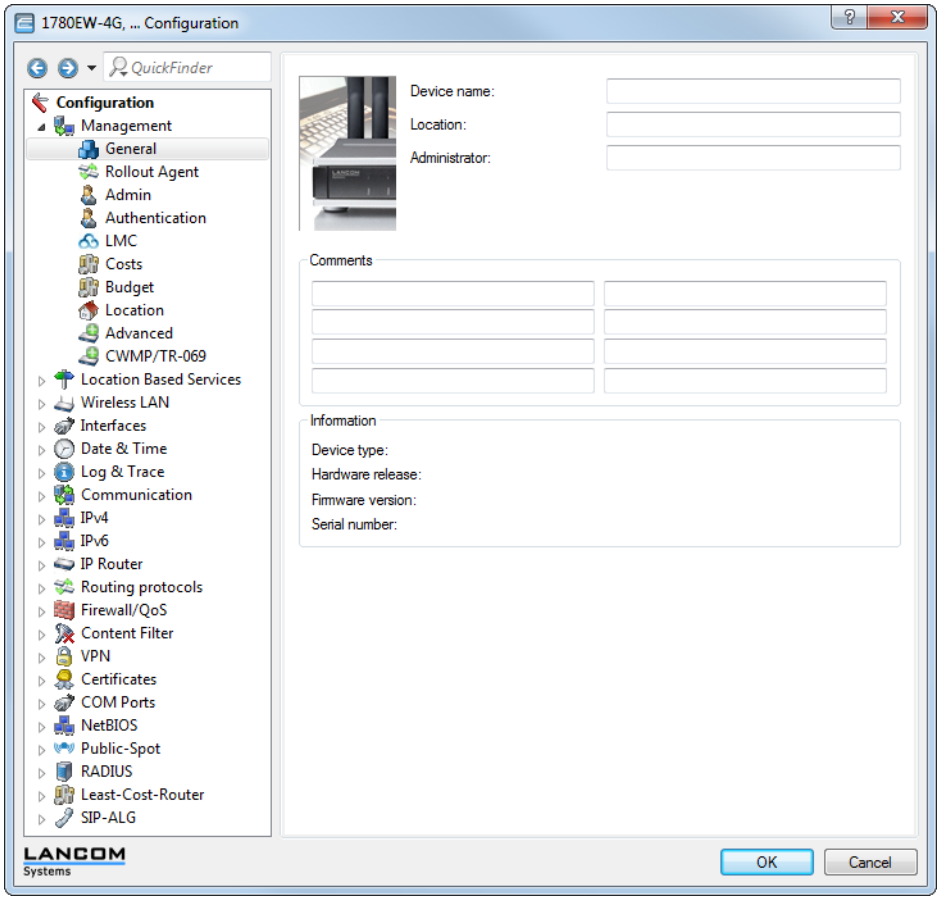
Country setting

Choose the country/region where the configuration file is to apply. In this case the configuration file only offers those parameters, which are permitted in the selected country or region.

Software options

Choose the relevant software option that should be displayed.

Clicking on **OK** opens the configuration dialog.

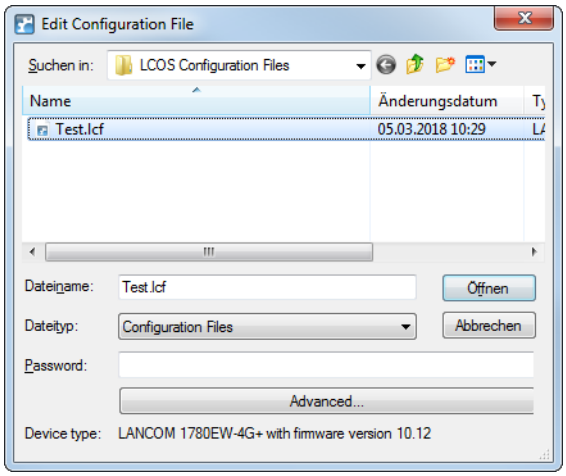


You can also create a new configuration file by right-clicking on your desktop to open the context menu and clicking on **New** > **LANconfig configuration**.

You will find information on the individual configuration parameters in the LCOS documentation.

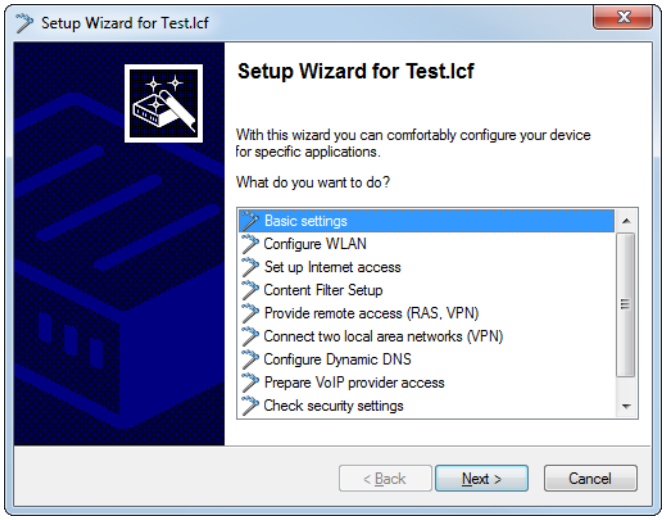
Edit configuration file

This menu item is used to open a stored configuration file for editing in the configuration dialog.



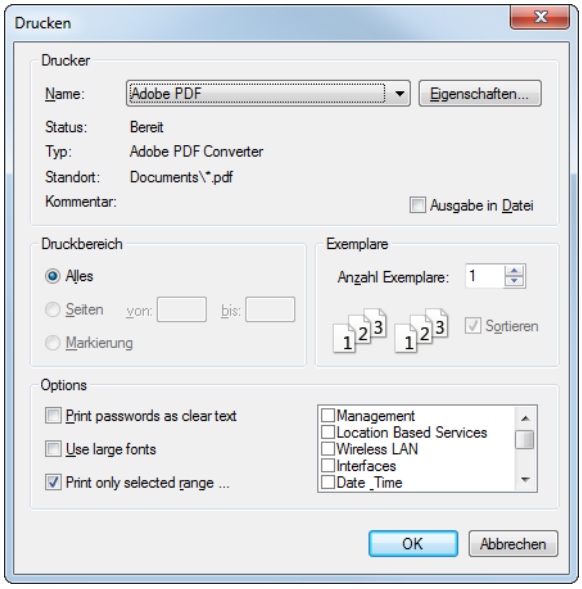
Wizard configuration file

This menu item is used to open a stored configuration file for modification in the Setup Wizard.



Print configuration file

This menu option allows you to print out a stored configuration file.



The normal print dialog features an additional **Options** section, with options as follows:

Print passwords as cleartext

Activating this option will print your passwords in cleartext. The main device password is printed on the first page.

Use large fonts

A large font will be used for printing.

Print only selected range

Only specific areas of the configuration are printed, e.g. only WLAN controllers.

Select all devices in this view

This menu item allows you to highlight all of the devices in the current view.

Invert selection

This menu item inverts the current selection of highlighted devices. The result is that all entries that were previously marked become unmarked, and all entries that were previously unmarked become marked.

Device

Under this menu item you can edit the configurations of devices connected to the network, organize firmware updates and monitor device connections.

These functions are only offered for selection if at least one device has been chosen from the list of devices. The menu can also be called by clicking on a device with the right mouse button when it is marked.

Configure

Loads the configuration of the selected device using the connection settings as defined in the properties, assuming that a connection can be established in this way. The configuration is then displayed in the configuration-settings window, and changes can be made.

Setup Wizard

Loads the configuration of the selected device using the connection settings as defined in the properties, assuming that a connection can be established in this way. The configuration is opened in the Setup Wizard, and this supports you with the configuration of various application scenarios.

With WLCs equipped with the "WLC High Availability Clustering XL option" you are able to select all of the listed WLCs and configure them all in one go using the WLC Clustering Wizard (see *1-Click WLC High Availability Clustering Wizard*).

Quick Rollback

This menu item provides the option to restore automatically created configuration backups for the selected device with just one click. This returns the device to a previous configuration state. Learn more about this feature under *Quick Rollback* on page 169.

Check

Checks the devices or the selected devices by reading out device information via the chosen connection. The status is generated on the basis of this operation. The device status indicates, for example, that new firmware is being uploaded or that a device cannot be reached.

A device can only be configured if the status of the device is **OK**.

Cancel action

This menu item cancels any action running on the selected device. You can use this function to cancel the upload of a script or firmware, for example. However, actions for other devices that have not yet completed will continue to run.

Configuration management

The functions provided by configuration management enable you, among other things, to backup and restore configurations and to transfer a configuration from one device to another. If the firmware versions of the two devices are different the program will display the difference in the configurations, warning you that parameters will be lost. This menu item is also used for file management, as used to upload special files such as templates or certificates directly into the device.

The following configuration-specific actions are available:

Print

Loads the configuration of the selected device using the connection settings as defined in the properties, assuming that a connection can be established in this way. In the subsequent print dialog you can select the same output options as you can under **Edit** > **Print configuration file**. The configuration is printed out after confirmation.

Save as file

Saves the configuration of the chosen device as a configuration file to a location that you select. Enter a name for the configuration file in the file selection dialog. Then click on **Save**.

Restore from file

Loads a configuration file into the specified device (e.g. from an automatic backup). In the file-selection dialog, select the configuration file that you wish to upload, and click on **OK**.

Save script as file

Saves the configuration of the chosen device as a script file to a location that you select. When doing this you can select the same options as you can when saving a file.

Restore script from file

Loads a script file into the specified device (e.g. from an automatic backup).

Save certificate as file

In the file dialog that opens, you specify which certificate should be saved to a file from the chosen device. The file type depends on the certificate selected.

Upload certificate or file

This menu item is used to upload certificates and special files to the device. Certificates are required, for example, when using VPN encryption or for operating a WLAN controller. Special files, on the other hand, are files with which you can replace device-specific templates (e.g. custom templates for the Rollout Wizard) or which are required for certain features by the device (e.g. the Terms and Conditions for the Public Spot module).

You can enter a description for any configuration that you save. This is a convenient way of maintaining various configurations for different devices.

Firmware management

This menu item is used to update the device firmware or switch the device to a different firmware version. The following firmware-specific actions are available:

Check for firmware updates

Manually starts the automatic search for firmware updates. Here, the online LANCOM database and your local firmware archives are searched for firmware versions that are more recent than those currently installed on the selected device. Also see the chapter *Searching for firmware updates in the archive* on page 180.

Upload new firmware

Opens a file selection dialog with which you can upload a specific firmware file to the selected device.

The firmware already on a device is overwritten when the new firmware is uploaded. For this reason, the upload should not be interrupted under any circumstances as the device may no longer function properly.

Activate firmware running in test mode ([memory space number])

If you have performed a firmware update for a device and this is running in the (time-limited) test mode, you can use this menu item to permanently activate this firmware. Learn more about this in section *New firmware with FirmSafe*.

1, 2 [firmware version] of [date]

Devices with FirmSafe are able to manage two firmware versions. This allows the system to return to the previous firmware in the event of a failed update or in case of problems, for example. The memory space numbers 1 and 2 enable you to select another firmware version and restart the device.

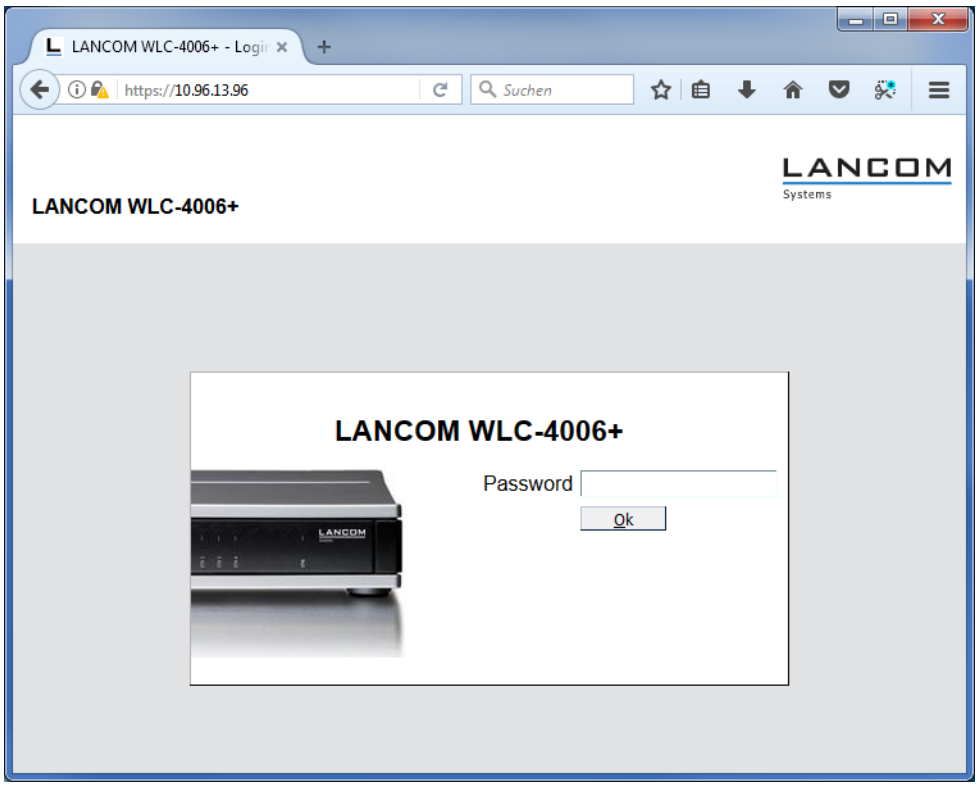
Note that switching the firmware terminates any existing connections and deletes all statistics and charging information.

WEBconfig / console session

This menu item allows you to open a new configuration session by means of an alternative configuration path. The following configuration paths are available:

Start the web browser

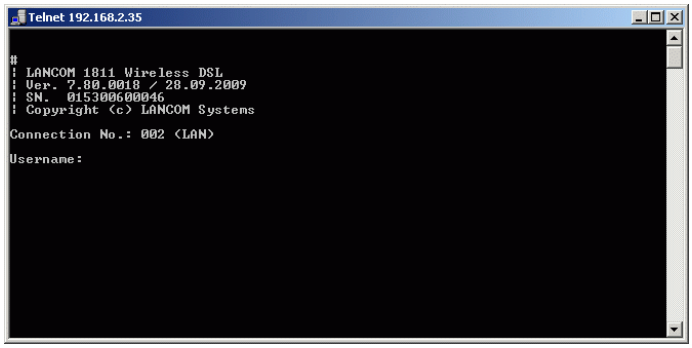
Opens the WEBconfig user interface for the highlighted device.



Under **Tools** > **Options** > **Extras** > **Browser used to display WEBconfig**, you choose whether LANconfig should use the system default browser or its own internal browser.

Open Telnet session

Opens a connection to the device with the Telnet client that is configured in the settings.



Open SSH session

Opens a connection to the device with the SSH client that is configured in the settings.

Monitor device

This menu item enables the basic monitoring of the device in LANmonitor.

The device is then added to LANmonitor's list of monitored devices, and will remain in the list even after exiting and starting LANmonitor.

Monitor device temporarily

This menu item enables the temporary monitoring of the device in LANmonitor.

Information for the device is contained in a separate window from LANmonitor. The setting is not stored, meaning that LANmonitor will not automatically display the device the next time that the program is started. Please also refer to *LANmonitor – monitoring devices on the LAN* on page 223.

Monitor WLAN device

This menu item enables the monitoring of a WLAN device in WLANmonitor. Please also refer to *WLANmonitor – monitoring wireless devices* on page 249

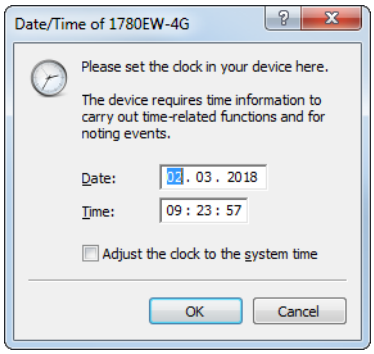
Create trace output

This option starts the trace output in LANtracer.

Please also refer to *LANtracer – tracing with LANconfig and LANmonitor* on page 265.

Set date/time

This menu item is used to set the date and the time for the device. This action is vital for a number of functions (e.g. accounting) and steps in the Setup Wizard (e.g. setting up a Public Spot).



If you check the option **Adjust the clock to the system time**, the time is taken from your computer's operating system.

Activate software option

If you have purchased additional software options, you activate these under **Device** > **Activate software options** by entering the activation key.

You can test an option on any device by activating a demo license that is valid for 30 days. To do so click on the link below the license key input fields. You will automatically be connected to the website for the LANCOM registration server. Simply select the required demo license and you can register your device.

Previously activated options are displayed in the dialog **Device** > **Properties** > **Features & options**. Please also refer to *Features & options* on page 198.

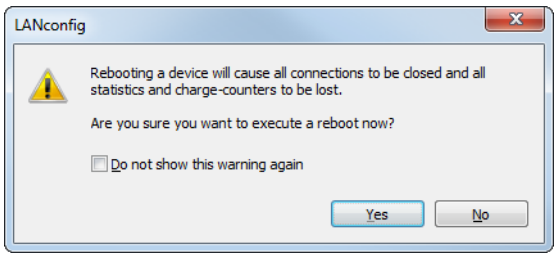
Check CC compliance

This menu item starts a test of whether the configuration of the selected device is CC compliant.

This action is useful only for CC devices. With non-CC devices, this action produces an error message.

Reboot

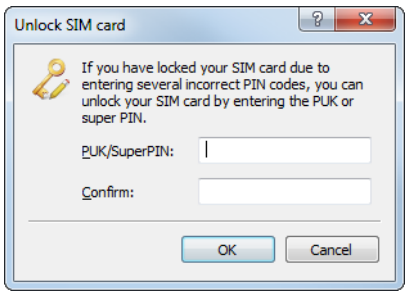
This menu item reboots the device.



After restarting the credentials for the admin account are requested, assuming that these where not already stored on the device.

Unlocking the SIM card

Your SIM card will be locked if you enter an incorrect PIN three times. You can unlock your SIM card again by entering the PUK or super PIN under this menu item.



Does not apply to devices with UMTS modem/card.

Properties

This menu item opens the Properties dialog for the selected device. A number of pages here allow you to inspect or adjust various device-specific settings.

General

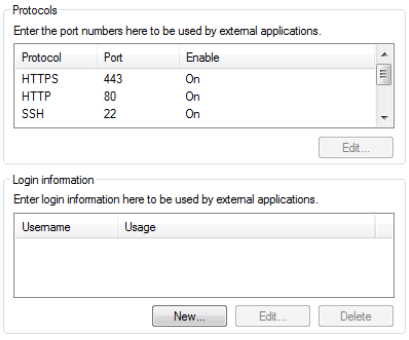
On this page you can adjust the device-specific connection settings. The corresponding setting options are identical to those under **File** > **Add device** > **General** (see *General* on page 182).

Protocols & logins

On this page, you can configure and manage the protocols, ports, and access credentials used by the other components of the LANtools when they call programs from within LANconfig. Configurable programs include:

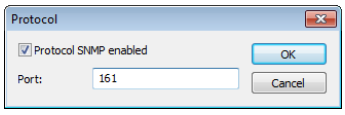
- LANmonitor
- LANtracer
- LANtools-internal and also external Web browsers

If program is invoked with certain protocols already deactivated or configured differently, for example, only the matches are applied.



Protocols

Select a Protocol and click **Edit** to enable/disable the selected protocol for use in external programs, and to change the default port if necessary.



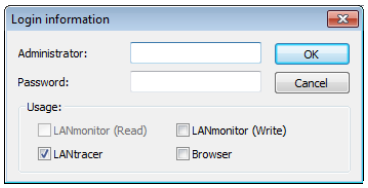
Login information

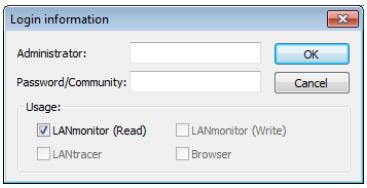
Enter the access credentials for the external programs in this field. Click **New** to select one or more application(s) and enter the corresponding access credentials. Depending on your selection, the dialog window requests different access credentials. If you invoke the program from LANconfig, you have the option of authenticating yourself with the username and password of your administrator login.

In the case of LANmonitor, you have the option to specify an individual SNMP community for read-only access. By default, when LANconfig opens a device configuration it checks whether and to what extent you have stored access credentials for external programs. If you do not have access credentials or if these credentials have been configured in the form of an SNMP community only, then invoking LANmonitor prompts LANconfig to take the SNMP community from the loaded device configuration. If you edit a configuration in LANconfig and you have set an SNMP community here, LANconfig automatically saves the SNMP community for the corresponding device. This convenient behavior reduces the scope of authentication for LANmonitor, so no separate configuration of the read-only access is required.

LANconfig evaluates the setup parameter *2.9.15 Read-Only-Community* for the convenient behavior described above. Any additional read-only SNMP communities configured in the device are ignored.

For more information about the SNMP access through single or multiple SNMP communities, see the section *Configuring SNMP read-only access* on page 92.





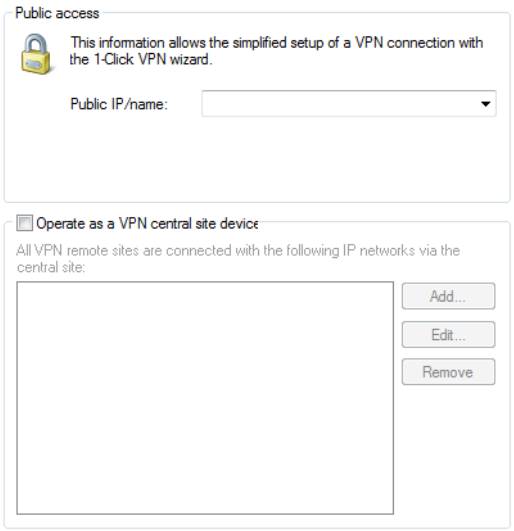
Backup

On this page you enable and configure the device-specific backup settings. The setting options are identical to the global settings (see *Backup* on page 211).

VPN

This page contains the settings for VPN access.

This dialog page is only displayed if the device supports VPN.



Public access

An easy way to set up VPN connections is to enter a public IP number or a name and telephone number here. You can decide whether the telephone number is to be used as the preferred way of establishing a VPN connection.

A telephone number can only be used if both devices are connected to the public telephone network and both have their own unique telephone number (MSN). Devices can simultaneously be configured to connect via IP number or telephone number. Connecting via telephone number is the more reliable method, but this is not always possible and the connection may be subject to a charge.

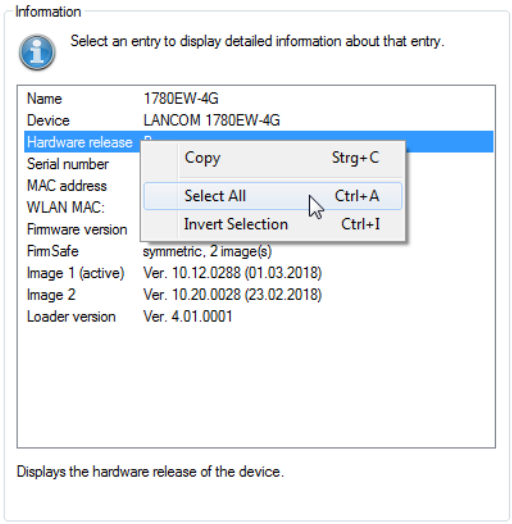
Use as VPN central-site device:

Here you set the IP networks that the VPN remotes are to connect to.

Information

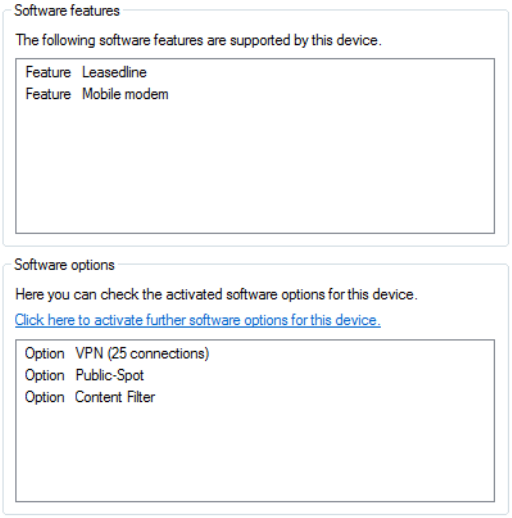
This page provides hardware- and system-specific information about the device.

By using the mouse to right-click on the name of the entry in the left-hand column, a context menu will be displayed. You can use this to copy the values into the Windows clipboard.



Features & options

This page contains details about the features supported by the device and options activated on it.



Group

This menu item is used to manage the Group configurations.

Please refer to section *Flexible group configuration with LANconfig* on page 161 for further information.

New group configuration

Under **Group** > **New group configuration** you create a new group configuration in the current folder.

New folder with group configuration

Under **Group** > **New folder with group configuration** you create a new sub-folder with a new group configuration in the current folder.

Add group configuration

Under **Group** > **Add group configuration** you can save an existing group configuration to the active folder. Select the relevant file to do this.

Edit group configuration

Under **Group** > **Edit group configuration** you have the option to edit the highlighted group configuration.

The parameters set here must be valid for the entire group. When the configuration dialog is closed, LANconfig will request that you save the group configuration file to a location of your choice.

Refresh all devices

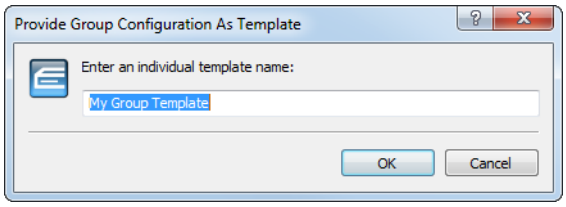
Under **Group** > **Update all devices** you have the option to use the selected and activated group to update all of the devices in the current folder.

Update recommended devices

Under **Group** > **Update recommended devices** you have the option to use the selected and activated group to update the recommended devices in the current folder.

Provide as template

Under **Group** > **Provide as template** you have the option to set the highlighted group configuration as a template for future group configurations.



Active

Enable or disable the selected group configuration with the menu item **Group** > **Active**.

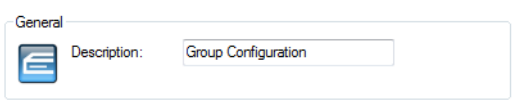
Delete

With **Group** > **Delete** you can delete the highlighted group configuration.

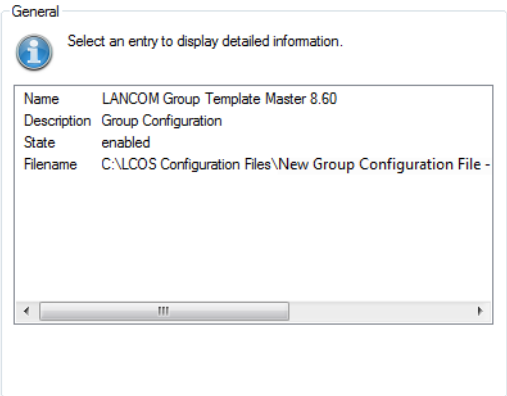
Properties

Under **Group** > **Properties** you can view information about an existing group configuration. Select the relevant file to do this.

The **General** page displays the description of the group configuration.



The **Information** page shows the name, status, and the file name of the group configuration.



View

This menu item is used to customize the behavior of the LANconfig graphical user interface.

Toolbar

To customize the toolbar, select the following options in LANconfig:

Standard buttons

Shows/hides the buttons.

QuickFinder

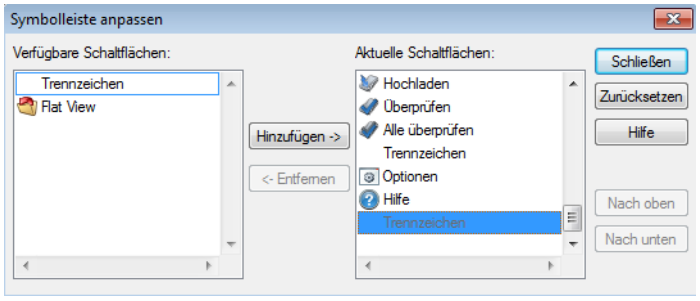
Shows/hides the QuickFinder.

Large icons

Shows a larger view of the icons.

Customize

Opens up a dialog enabling the displayed icons to be selected. A separator can be inserted between groups of icons. The order of the icons can also be changed.



Reset

Resets the settings for the toolbar to the default values.

Information about the icons is available in the chapter *Toolbar icons* on page 215.

Status bar

This menu item allows you to show or hide the status bar.

Folder tree

The directory structure in the left margin of the LANconfig window can be shown or hidden with this menu item (or alternatively with the function key F6). Also see the chapter *Using directory trees to get organized* on page 153.

Log view

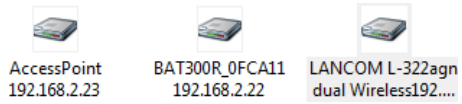
This menu option is used to show or hide the log view (including the date, time, name, address, and message) in the lower part of the LANconfig window.

Flat view mode

Here you can activate the flat view mode in LANconfig.

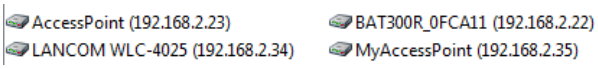
Large icons

In the display mode 'Large icons', the device icons are displayed in an enlarged view; useful for high-resolution displays.



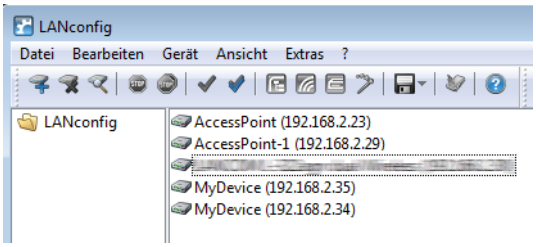
Small icons

The display mode 'Small Icons' reduces the size of the device icons.



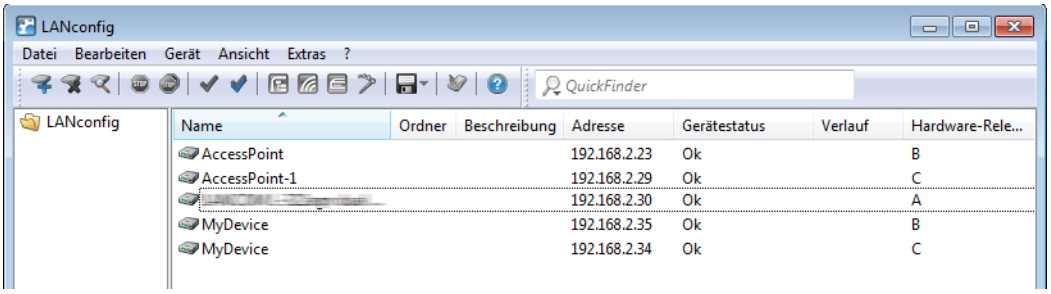
List

In display mode 'list', the devices are shown in a list.



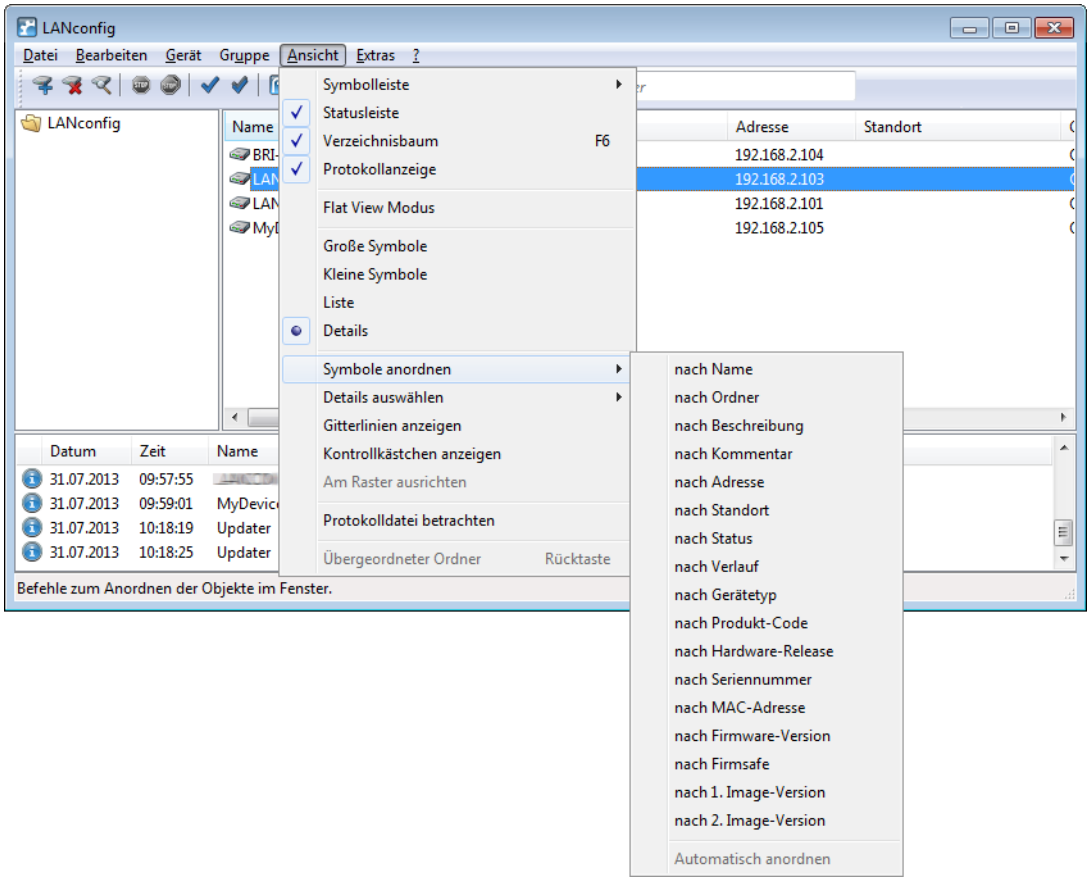
Details

The 'Details' display mode shows details for each device.



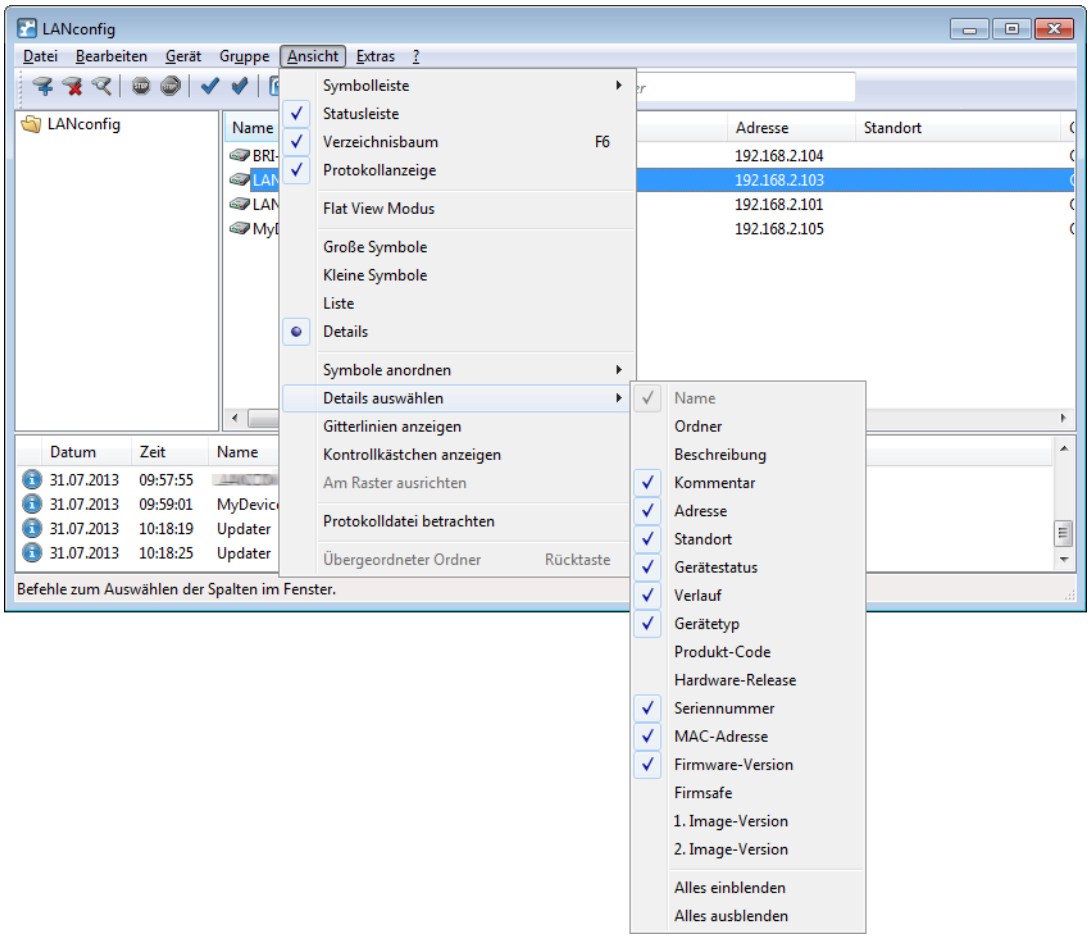
Arrange icons

Even for large-scale projects, a better overview and quicker orientation are facilitated in LANconfig by the columns which feature device-related details that can be displayed or concealed according to your needs. Simply click on the column header with the right-hand mouse button and use **View** > **Details** to select the columns to be displayed. The menu item **Arrange icons** allows you to sort the items as you prefer. If you select the option **Auto arrange** the icons in the configuration area are sorted automatically.



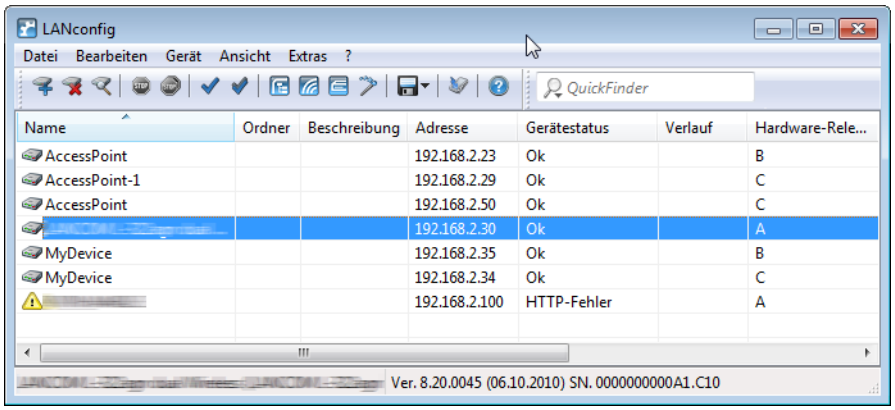
Select columns

Even for large-scale projects, a better overview and quicker orientation are facilitated in LANconfig by the columns which feature device-related details that can be displayed or concealed according to your needs. Alternatively, you can right-click the column headings and, in the context menu that opens, select the menu item **View** > **Details**.



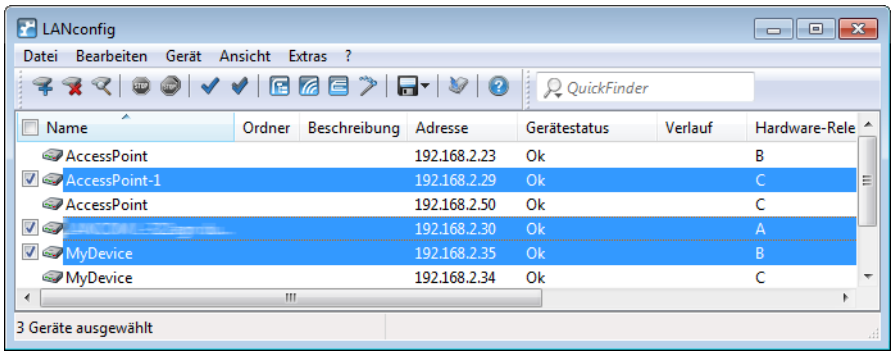
Display gridlines

This menu item allows you to show or hide gridlines in the devices view.



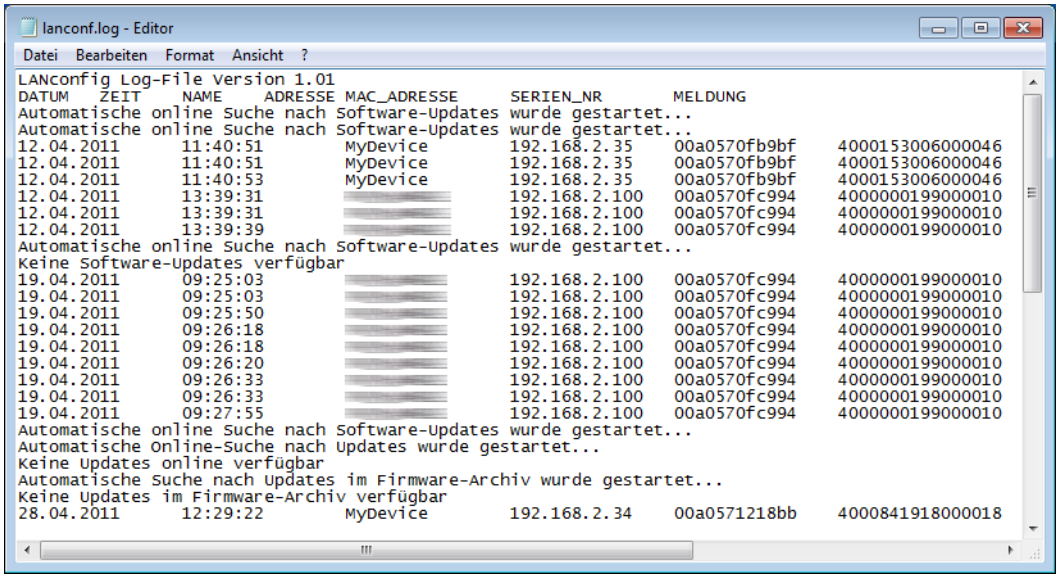
Display check boxes

This menu item is used to enable the display of check boxes. A check box is then displayed next to each device entry, which enables you to select the device. This gives you the option of selecting multiple devices for carrying out targeted actions (e.g. uploading new firmware) without the need of keyboard shortcuts.



View log file

This menu item enables you to view and edit the LANconfig log file.



Up

Use this menu item to switch to the parent folder.

Tools

See this menu item for further options in LANconfig. You can also reach this dialog box by pressing F7.

Options

Under the menu item **Options** you can invoke additional functions, for example to communicate with connected devices, invoke external applications, or carry out automatic searches for firmware updates.

General

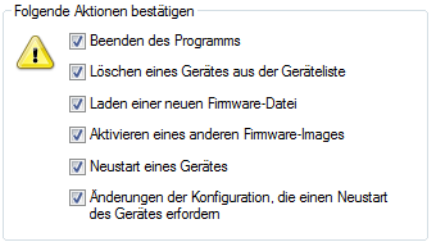
This dialog box is used to set the General program settings.

Configuration of devices

You can decide that the Setup Wizard should be used by default when carrying out a configuration or that the manual configuration dialog should be opened when you double-click on a device. In the default setting the Setup Wizard starts when a device is double-clicked.

- **Search the configuration in...**
  - **Description**: Searches through the description in the configuration
  - **Value:** Searches through the values in the configuration
  - **Unit**: Searches through the units in the configuration

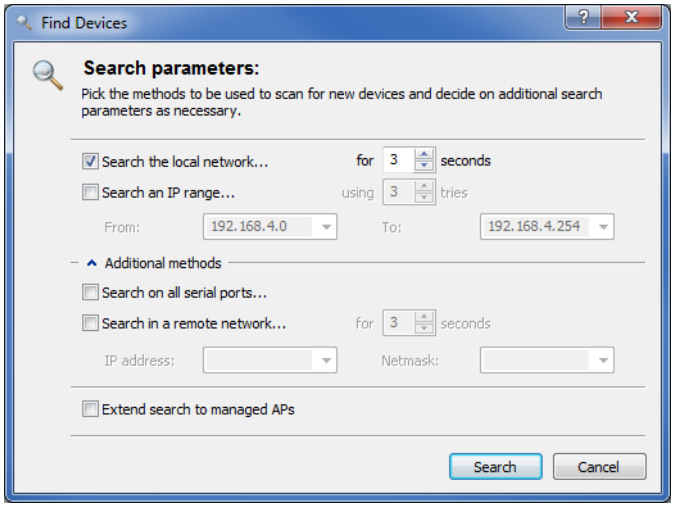
Confirm the following actions



- **Closing the program**: Activates or deactivates the message of confirmation when you exit the program.
- **Deleting a device from the list:** Deactivate this option if you do not wish to be warned when you delete a device from the list.
- **Loading new firmware onto the device:** If you activate this option, you will see a warning when you try to upload new firmware to the device.
- **Activating a new firmware image** If you activate this option, you will be warned each time you try to activate another firmware image.
- **Device reboot:** With this option activated, you will receive a warning before the device is rebooted.
- **Making changes to the configuration which cause the device to reboot:** If you activate this option, you will be warned each time you try to edit the device configuration.

Home

In this dialog box, you specify how LANconfig behaves and acts when started.



- Search for new devices at startup: With this option activated, the program searches predefined networks for new devices each time the program is started.

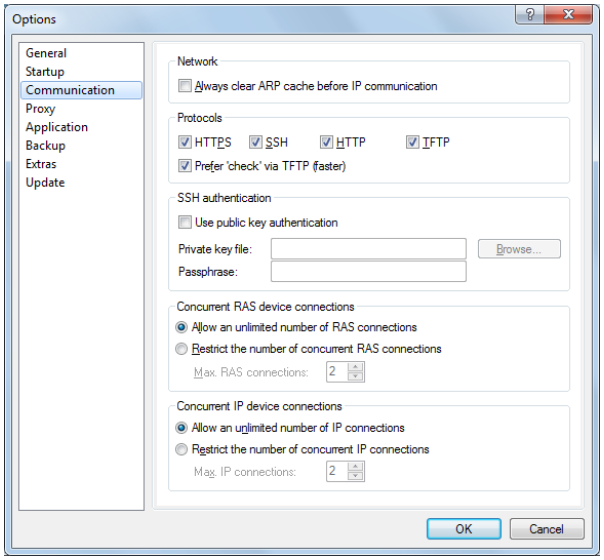
This procedure may take some time in major installations with a large number of devices, or it may undesirable for the program to try to establish contact to the devices.

- **In the local network:** If this option is activated, the program searches the local network for devices each time it is started. It waits for a response for the time set here.
- **In the following remote networks:** With this option activated, the program searches the remote networks for devices each time the program is started. The networks to be searched through are defined in the list that follows.
- **Extend search to managed APs:** Fully managed access points (APs) are normally excluded from the search as their configurations are completely managed by a WLAN controller. Select this option if you wish to find fully managed APs regardless of this.

This option is meaningless if your network does not contain WLAN controllers or managed APs.

Communication

This dialog sets the global settings for the connections between LANconfig and the devices:



Network

If a number of frequently changing devices share the same IP address in your network, then you should activate the option **Always clear ARP cache before IP communication** to ensure that your computer can communicate with these devices.

Protocols

The transfer of configuration data when working with LANconfig can be handled by various protocols: HTTPS, SSH, HTTP or TFTP.

Widely available protocols are defined globally. In addition, it is possible to disable protocols for specific devices. However, it is not possible to re-enable a globally disabled protocol for individual devices as the global communication settings take precedence over the device-specific settings.

The configuration of the communication protocols differentiates between the protocol strictly for testing the device and the protocols for other operations, such as firmware uploads, etc.:

- **HTTPS**, **SSH**, **HTTP**, **TFTP**

  When this is selected, you enable the individual protocols for the operations firmware upload, configuration up/download, and script up/download. In these operations, LANconfig attempts to use these protocols in the order HTTPS, SSH, HTTP and TFTP. If the transfer fails when using one of the selected protocols, LANconfig automatically tries the next protocol.

- **Prefer checks via TFTP**

  The device evaluation only transfers small amounts of data with the system information. As such, it makes sense to perform device checks in the LAN by TFTP protocol. When this option is activated, LANconfig first uses the TFTP protocol to check the device, regardless of the communication protocols set previously. If the check via TFTP fails, then LANconfig attempts the protocols HTTPS, SSH, and HTTP.

SSH authentication

If you have selected the SSH protocol, you can alternatively perform the authentication via a private key. In this case, the authentication dialog for password entry is not invoked. If you select **Use public key authentication**, enter the path to your private key file into the field, and, if necessary, the passphrase that you used to encrypt the file. Load the corresponding public key with LANconfig or WEBconfig onto each device.

For detailed instructions about configuring the public-key authentication for your devices, see chapter *SSH authentication*.

Concurrent RAS device connections

The number of concurrent RAS connections can be restricted. This makes sense where a limited number of physical RAS channels is available, or where extreme loads on the system or network should be avoided.

If an action causes the number of RAS connections to exceed this limit, then the surplus actions are placed in a queue and are only started when a RAS channel becomes available.

If you do not place a limit on the number, or you allow a higher number of connections than those physically available, then the surplus actions are placed in a queue as mentioned above.

This option can minimize the effects that a large number of concurrent actions can have on the system or network load.

If you do not limit the number and sufficient resources are available, then there is no limit on the system load or network load generated!

Concurrent IP device connections

The number of concurrent IP connections can be restricted. This makes sense where a limited number of physical channels is available, or where extreme loads on the system or network should be avoided.

If an action causes the number of IP connections to exceed this limit, then the surplus actions are place in a queue and are only started when a logical IP channel becomes available.

If you do not place a limit on the number, or you allow a higher number of connections than those physically available, then the surplus actions are interrupted with an error

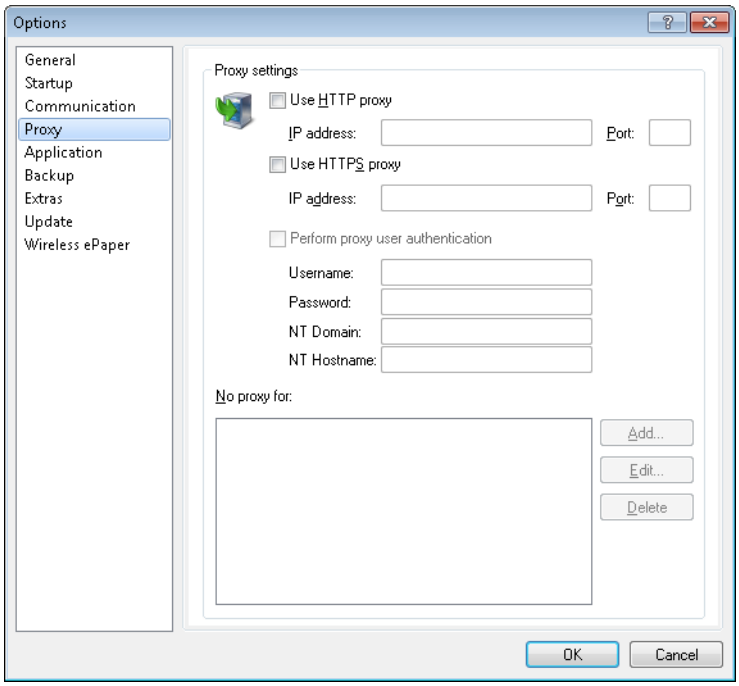
This option can minimize the effects that a large number of concurrent actions can have on the system or network load.

If you do not limit the number and sufficient resources are available, then there is no limit on the system load or network load generated!

Proxy

If you wish to use a proxy server for access to your device, you can configure this here. Activate the required protocol and enter the address and port for accessing the proxy server.

Depending on the protocol, it may be possible to specify a list of networks or individual hosts for which the proxy settings do not apply.



Use HTTP proxy

Enables the use of an HTTP proxy.

- **Address**: Enter the IP address of the the HTTP proxy server.
- **Port**: Enter the port used by the HTTP proxy server.

Use HTTPS proxy

Enables the use of an HTTPS proxy.

- **Address**: Enter the IP address of the the HTTPS proxy server.
- **Port**: Enter the port used by the HTTPS proxy server.

Perform proxy user authentication

If the proxy server requires authentication, enter the user name and password here. If the NT LAN Manager (NTLM) is to carry out the authentication, you additionally enter the NT domain and computer name.

This option is available only if the proxy setting is enabled.

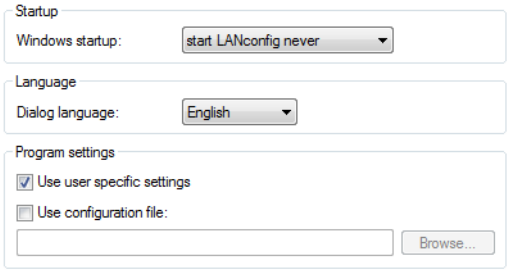
No proxy for

Enter the IP addresses and the corresponding netmask to which the proxy settings do not apply.

This option is available only if the proxy setting is enabled.

Application

This dialog contains the settings for the user interface.



Startup behavior

LANconfig can be automatically started when the operating system starts. The following **Windows startup** types are available:

- **Start LANconfig never**

  The application does not start automatically with the operating system, and it has to be started manually.

- **Start LANconfig always**

  The application always starts automatically after Windows starts successfully.

- **Start LANconfig like last time**

  The application starts in the same status as when Windows was shut down the last time. If the application was active then it will be started again; if inactive, it will not be automatically restarted.

When changing to a setting that enables the application to be started automatically, a change is made to the operating system's registry. Firewalls applications on the computer or the operating system itself (Windows XP, Windows Vista or Windows 7) may interpret this change as an attack and may issue a warning or even prevent the entry from being made. In order to allow the desired startup behavior, you can ignore these warnings and allow the changes to be made.

Language

This item changes the language of the user interface (GUI). The language is usually selected based on the language of the operating system.

The application must be restarted in order for the language setting to take effect.

Program settings

Here it is possible to define that user-specific LANconfig settings are to be used. Also see the chapter *User-specific settings for LANconfig* on page 152.

- **Use user-specific settings**

  Activates the use of the lanconf.ini file in the current user's directory `...\Application Files\LANCOM\LANconfig`.

  With this option activated, changes to the program settings are saved to this ini file.

- **Use configuration file**

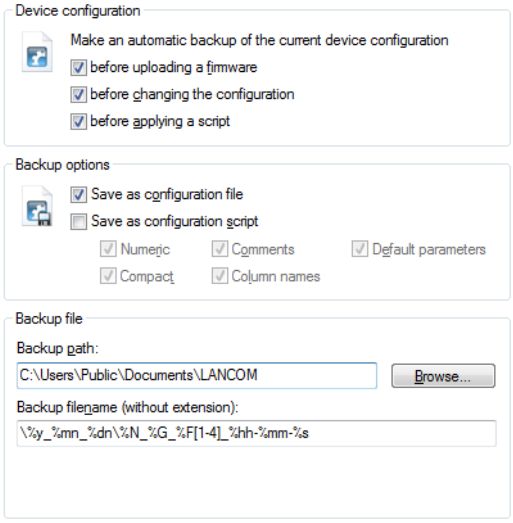
  The activates the usage of the lanconf.ini from the given directory. With this option activated, changes to the program settings are saved to the ini file selected in the input field.

The file you select must be a valid LANconfig settings file.

If neither of the two options is activated, the ini file from the program directory will be used instead.

Backup

This page contains the global backup settings.



Device configuration

You can select what type of action is to be preceded by an automatic backup of the current device configuration. To activate the automatic backup, you have to have selected at least one of the following settings:

- **Before uploading the firmware** The device configuration is automatically backed up before new firmware is uploaded to the device.
- **Before changing the configuration:** The device configuration is automatically backed up before uploading or when editing the device configuration.
- **Before applying a script:** The device configuration is automatically backed up before before a script is applied to the device.

Backup options

This section allows you to select the type of backup. At least one of the following options must be selected for the automatic backup of the current device configuration:

- **Save as configuration file:** The automatic backup saves the current device configuration to a configuration file.
- **Save as configuration script:** The automatic backup saves the current device configuration to a configuration script.
  - **Numeric**: This option means that the sections in the script are shown numerically.
  - **Comments**: This option adds additional comments.
  - **Default parameters**: Normally the only settings to be stored are those that deviate from the default values. This option causes the default values to be stored as well.
  - **Compact**: This option produces output in a compact format. This suppresses spaces and tabs.
  - **Column names**: Normally tables are filled first by describing the columns with the TAB command and then by filling out each line with a SET command containing only those values which are to be set. If this option is activated, the columns of the table are not described by the TAB command, but instead each table SET command contains the column descriptors.

Backup file

- **Backup path:** Here you can set the path to the storage folder on your computer or in the network. The **Browse** option lets you navigate to the folder of your choice. In the default setting, backups are saved to the 'Config' folder in the program directory on the local computer.
- **Backup filename (without extension):** Here you can set the filename (without the file extension). The file extension is set according to the backup type. The file name can contain the variables outlined in the following table. These variables are used to produce the filename when an action is carried out. It is also possible to suffix the backup filename with folders, which are created at the time of backup.

Table 15: Device information

Name	%N
MAC address	%M
Device type	%G
Hardware release	%W
Firmware-Version	%F
IP address	%I
Firmware date	%D
Address	%H
Serial number	%S

The following regular expressions can be used to display information about the device itself. Numbers in square brackets following the variables generate partial information, such as %N[5]. The n-th character in the variable will be expanded. A hyphen defines a character string, e.g. %H[2-5].

Table 16: Examples of the variables

[]	Expands all characters
[1]	Expands the first character only
[12], [12-12]	Expands the twelfth character only
[1-5]	Expands from the beginning to the fifth character
[2-5]	Expands from the second to the fifth character
[6-]	Expands everything as of the sixth character

Table 17: Date and time

%y	Year
%hh	Hour
%mn	Month of the year (1-12)
%mm	Minute
%ma	Month of the year (January - December)
%s	Second
%dn	Day of the month (1-31)
%ms	Milliseconds
%da	Day of the week (Sunday - Saturday)

%dw	Weekday (Sunday is 0, 0-6)
%%	% (single percent sign)

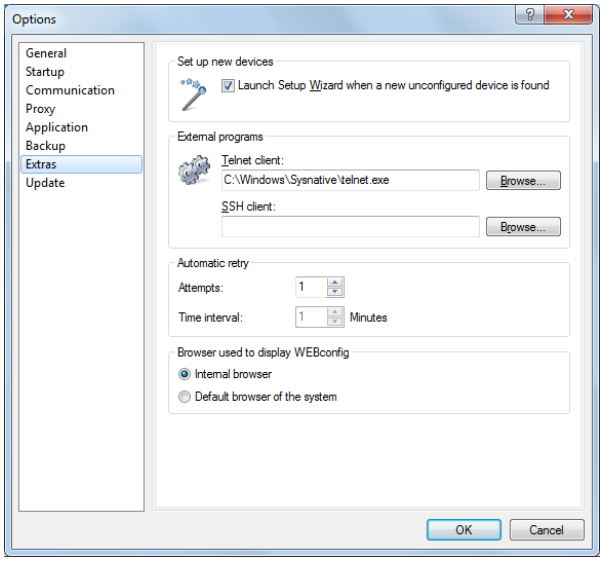
If a file of the same name already exists in the target directory, then the name of the backup file is automatically suffixed with an ascending number.

Table 18: Examples

Backup filename: MyBackup_%N_%S_%I	Result: MyBackup_MyDevice_12481632_10.10.1.1
Backup filename: %d_%mn_%y\Folder_2\%N	Result: 25_08_2008\Folder_2\MyDevice

Extras

This dialog window allows you to make additional settings.



Set up new devices

If this option is checked, LANconfig launches the Setup Wizard whenever it finds an unconfigured device.

External programs

This item specifies the executable files for the Telnet client and the SSH client to be used by LANconfig for connections to the devices.

Automatic retry

Attempts

Specify the number of attempts for a firmware or configuration upload. You can set a number between 1 and 9999. LANconfig always attempts to make a connection. If this fails a retry is attempted after the defined interval. The operation is retried until LANconfig reaches the number of defined attempts or until the operation succeeds. LANconfig may terminate the retries if a situation arises in which completion is unlikely without external intervention. This may be when the device cannot open a file, for example.

Time interval

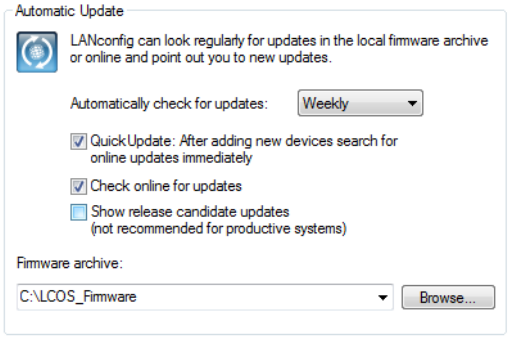
Enter the time interval in minutes between two attempts to upload the firmware or configuration. You can set an interval between 1 and 9999.

Browser used to display WEBconfig

This item sets the default browser used by LANconfig to display WEBconfig. You can choose between your operating system's default browser and LANconfig's internal browser, LCCEF (LANCOM Chromium Embedded Framework).

Update

This dialog contains the settings for the automatic updating.



To make the update of devices with new firmware as convenient as possible, the firmware files for the various models and LCOS versions are, ideally, saved to a central archive directory. The search for new firmware versions in this directory can either be initiated manually or automatically after starting LANconfig.

- **Automatically check for updates:**

  Select the time interval for the automatic check for updates (**Daily**, **Weekly** or **Monthly**). Alternatively, disable the automatic search with the setting **Never**.

- **Check online for updates**

  Enable this option and LANconfig will check online for updates in the download area of the LANCOM web server.

- **Show release-candidate updates**

  If you enable this option, the Software Update will not only offer to download the released software versions for use in productive environments, but also any available release candidates.

  Release candidates include the new features of upcoming software versions and have been thoroughly tested. Until the final release of version, the software may be further optimized—partly due to user feedback.

- Select a suitable local folder for the **Firmware archive**. When carrying out the automatic search for updates, LANconfig searches this location for new versions of the LANtools and the firmware. This is the location where LANCOM Software Update stores the updates from the download section of the LANCOM web server.

Start LANmonitor

This starts LANmonitor. Refer to chapter *LANmonitor – monitoring devices on the LAN* on page 223 for more information on this.

Start WLANmonitor

This starts WLANmonitor. Refer to chapter *WLANmonitor – monitoring wireless devices* on page 249 for more information on this.

Analyze trace output

This starts LANtracer. Refer to chapter *LANtracer – tracing with LANconfig and LANmonitor* on page 265 for more information on this.

Start CC Startup Wizard

This menu item invokes the CC Start-up Wizard, which helps you to configure your LANCOM CC products to run in the certified CC operating mode as per CC EAL 4+.

Further information about using the Wizard and the configuration of CC devices is available separately in the "LANCOM CC Installation Guide". You can find this together with the "LANCOM CC Start-up Kit" on *www.lancom-systems.com*.

This Wizard is irrelevant for non-CC devices.

Check for updates

Manually starts the automatic search for online updates. Also see the chapter *LANCOM Software Update for LANtools* on page 177.

Help

This menu item offers help about the program and displays information about the software.

Help topics

This menu item gives you access to the help topics. Alternatively you can press F1.

Support

This menu item invokes the Support web page.

Info

This menu item shows you which software version you are operating and its build date.

3.1.4 Toolbar icons

Table 19: Icon meanings

	Add		Upload
	Delete		Check
	Find		Check all
	Cancel action		Help
	Cancel all actions		Upwards
	Check		Flat view
	Check all		Restore
	Monitor		Folder
	Monitor WLAN		Log view

	Configure		Options
	Setup Wizard		View
	Backup		Properties

For information about the toolbar setup options, see the chapter *Toolbar* on page 200.

3.1.5 LANconfig context menu

The context menu in the device view contains the same functions as the **Device** menu.

3.1.6 LANconfig keyboard shortcuts

Ins	Add device
Del	Delete device
F3	Find devices
F5	Check all devices
Alt+F4	Exit
Ctrl+N	New configuration file
Ctrl+E	Edit configuration file
Ctrl+Shift+W	Wizard configuration file
Ctrl+Shift+P	Print configuration file
Ctrl+A	Select all
Ctrl+O	Device > Configure
Ctrl+W	Device > Setup Wizard
Ctrl+F5	Device > Check
Ctrl+P	Print
Ctrl+S	Save as file
Ctrl+R	Restore from file
Ctrl+Shift+U	Check for firmware update
Ctrl+U	Upload new firmware
Ctrl+B	Open secure web browser
Ctrl+T	Open Telnet session
Ctrl+Shift+S	Open SSH session
Ctrl+M	Monitor device temporarily
Alt+Enter	Properties
F6	Folder tree
Backspace	Parent directory
Spacebar, ENTER	Edit the selected table entry
+	Jump one table entry upwards (dynamic tables only)
-	Jump one table entry downwards (dynamic tables only)

Ins	Add new table entry (dynamic tables only)
Del	Delete highlighted table entry (dynamic tables only)
F7	Tools > Options
F1	Help topics

3.1.7 LANconfig command line parameters

With the help of the Windows command line, you can optionally launch LANconfig with specialized options and commands. The input is carried out according to the syntax outlined below. Forward slash and hyphen are supported as parameter prefixes. The use of upper or lower case is irrelevant when entering parameters.

The syntax is as follows:

```
lanconf.exe [(-|/)<Option>[:<Value>]] [(-|/)<Command>[:<Value>]]
```

- Square brackets indicate optional parameters.
- Parentheses indicate mandatory parameters.
- A vertical bar is used to indicate alternatives.
- Angle brackets indicate objects that are described under *Options* on page 217 and *Commands* on page 217.

For example, to start LANconfig with an English user interface, enter `lanconf.exe /language:English`. To additionally open the Configuration Wizard with a specific configuration file, you add the Wizard command to the entry like so: `lanconf.exe / language:English /wizard:MyConfig.lcf`.

Options

This section describes the options available when using the command-line interface:

Restart

Checks the LANconfig start options in the .ini file. Use this parameter to influence the behavior of LANconfig when starting Windows. LANconfig will only start automatically if under **Tools** > **Options** > **Application** the startup type is set to **start LANconfig always** or **start LANconfig as before** (i.e. the program was running when Windows was shut down).

WizStyle

Influences the appearance of the Configuration Wizard. Possible values for `<Value>` are:

- `0`: Old Wizard style: The headers (title and subtitle) on the dialog pages are separated from the other contents of the dialog by a horizontal line.
- `1`: Current Wizard style (since Windows 98). The headers (title and subtitle) on the dialog pages are separated from the other contents of the dialog by a horizontal line and a different color background.

Language

Changes the language for the user interface temporarily. By default LANconfig uses the system language, if available. Otherwise the language is English. Possible values for `<Value>` are:

- `English`
- `German`
- `Spanish`

Commands

This section describes the options available when using the command-line interface: Commands that relate to specific configuration files require a file name to be specified as `<Value>`, e.g. `lanconf.exe / printto:MyConfig.lcf`.

Close

Closes the program after executing any pending commands. After executing the commands, LANconfig starts normally unless another setting was made.

Owner

Handle to the owner of the window [hwndParent] . This can optionally be used with the commands `Print`, `PrintTo` and `AutoUpdate`.

Edit

Used for editing a configuration file if it is not being edited already. If a configuration file is being edited, it will be brought into focus.

Wizard

Starts the Wizard for the configuration file. If this has been opened already, it appears in the foreground.

Print

Prints the configuration file, unless a print job has already been dispatched.

PrintTo

Prints out the configuration file on a specified printer.

ShellNew

Creates a new configuration file.

AutoUpdate

This is how you start a firmware auto-update:

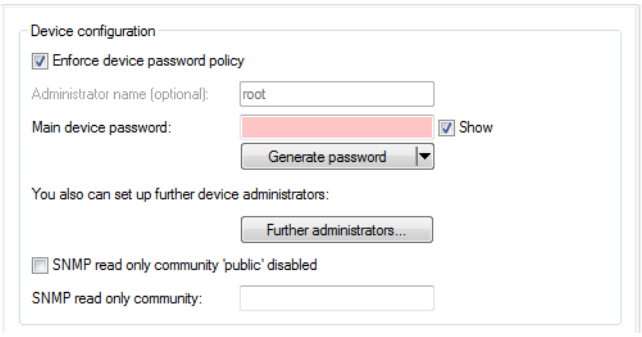
1. Search for the devices.
2. Search for the firmware files.
3. Select the new firmware.
4. Set which device the firmware update is intended for.

3.1.8 LANconfig application concepts

This section describes various applications of LANconfig.

Creating a password in LANconfig

At all points in the configuration that require the input of a password or a passphrase, LANconfig provides the option to generate a password automatically.



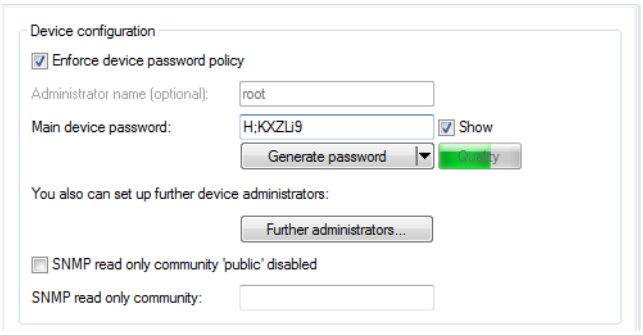
The switch **Enforce device password policy**determines the following policies for the main device password and the administrator passwords:

› The length of the password is at least 8 characters.

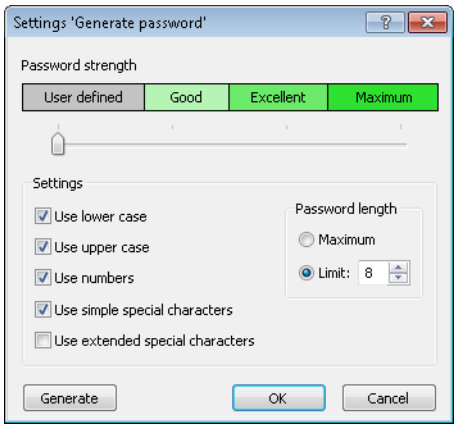
- The password contains at least 3 of the 4 character classes, i.e. lowercase letters, uppercase letters, numbers, and special characters.

Please note that this feature has no effect on existing passwords. Only when passwords are changed are they checked for their policy compliance.

Enable the option **Show** next to the box for entering the password. Then click on the button **Generate password** to create a password suggestion.



Optionally click the arrow next to the **Generate password** button to open the dialog box for the password policy settings.



Use the slider to set the desired password strength. With the **User defined** setting, you can define the maximum password length and the required character types. The settings **Good**, **Very good**and **Maximum** are predefined settings with reasonable, non-modifiable values.

After making your changes, click on the **Generate password** button again to create a new password proposal in line with your password guidelines.

LANconfig stores the current settings in this dialog box for the current user.

Different notations for MAC addresses

To make it easier to enter MAC addresses by using copy and paste from other applications into LANconfig, the following formats can be used when entering MAC addresses:

- 000000000000
- 00:00:00:00:00:00
- 00-00-00-00-00-00
- 000000-000000

The input is then automatically converted into the form `00:00:00:00:00:00`.

3.1.9 Pairing devices with the LANCOM Management Cloud

Basics of the LANCOM Management Cloud

The LANCOM Management Cloud (LMC) is capable of managing any size of "software-defined" networks. The LMC handles the configuration of all of the network components to minimize the amount of work involved in monitoring and configuration.

Further information about the LANCOM Management Cloud is available from *https://www.lancom-systems.com/cloud*.

If you wish to use the LANCOM Management Cloud for the configuration and monitoring of your device, the device needs to be paired with the LMC.

Pairing devices with the LANCOM Management Cloud

This chapter describes the different ways of pairing LANCOM devices with the LMC. Existing devices are paired in a different way than Cloud-ready devices.

Cloud-ready devices are LANCOM devices that the manufacturer has already equipped with LCOS version 10.0 or higher (LANCOM switches: Switch OS 3.30) and that have a PIN for pairing with the LMC. You will find the PIN on the enclosed product information.

Existing devices are LANCOM devices that have been updated from an older LCOS version to version 10.0 (LANCOM switches: Switch OS 3.30) or higher, which readies them for management by the LMC.

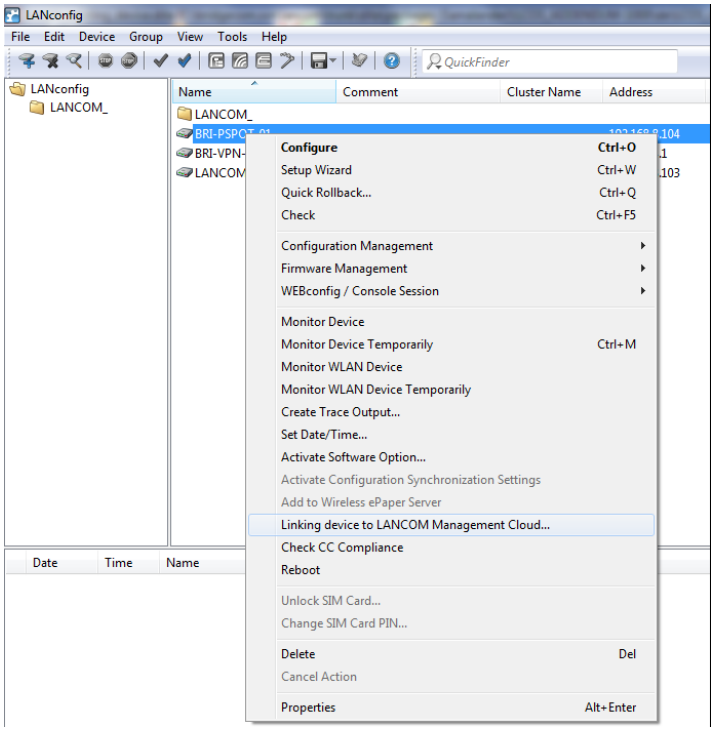
If you have a Cloud-ready device, no pairing is required. All you have to do in this case is to add your device to your account in the LANCOM Management Cloud and enter the serial number and PIN. If you wish, you can alternatively perform a pairing for Cloud-ready devices as well.

If you wish to link an existing device with the LANCOM Management Cloud, you need to conduct the pairing separately, as described below.

Pairing existing devices via LANconfig

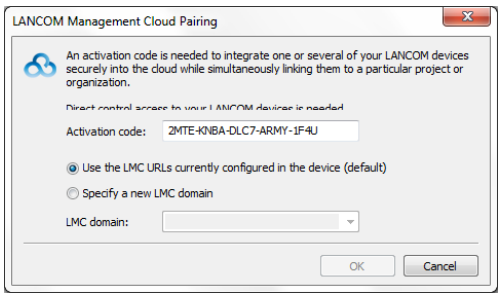
1. In the first step, you need to generate an activation code in the LANCOM Management Cloud.
2. Click on the corresponding LANCOM device with the right-hand mouse button.

3. In the context menu, select the entry **Link device to the LANCOM Management Cloud**.



4. Follow the Wizard's instructions to enter the activation code.
   Three options are available:

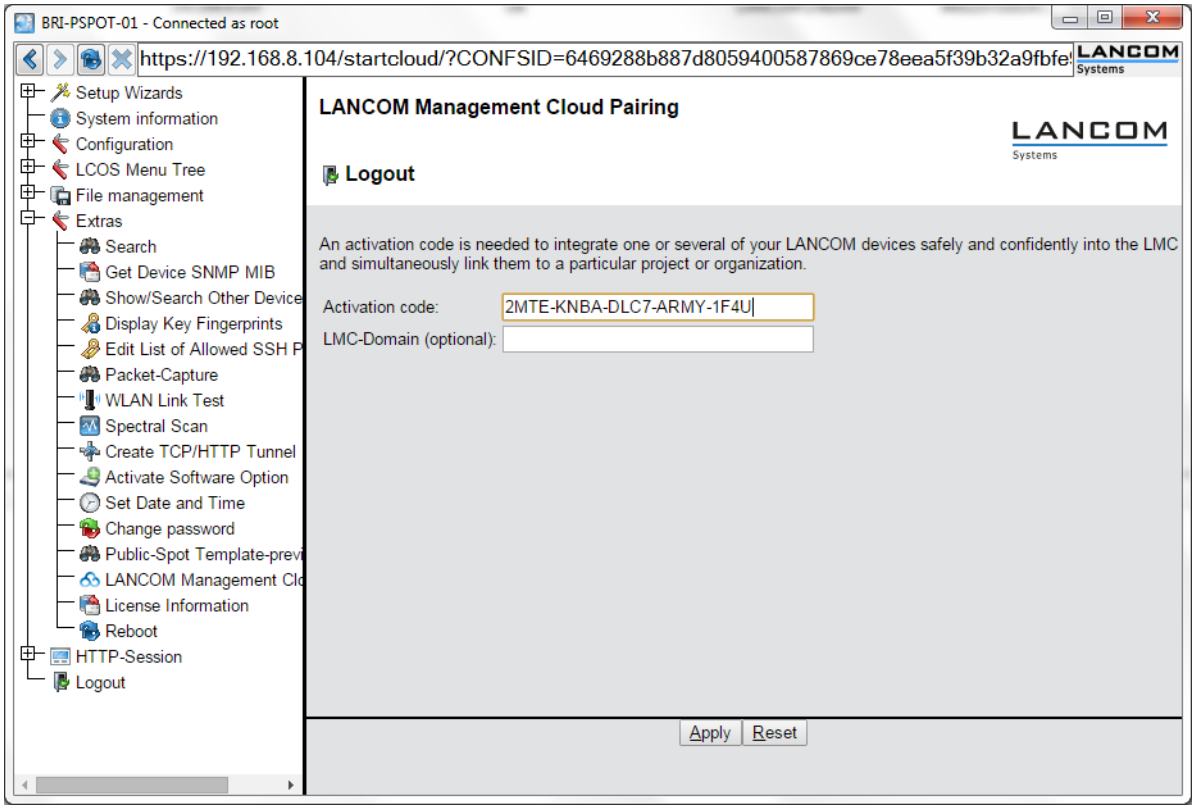
   - Public Cloud (default): You use the LANCOM Cloud.
   - Private Cloud: You use your own Cloud.
   - Use the settings currently stored in the device: A public or private cloud is used depending on the existing configuration in the device.



Pairing existing devices via WEBconfig

1. Start WEBconfig.

2. Under **Extras** > **LANCOM Management Cloud Pairing** you enter your activation code.



3. Click on the **Send** button.

Pairing existing devices via the command line

To conduct pairing from the command line, enter the command `startlmc`.

1. Launch a command line utility.
2. Enter the pairing command using the activation code as a parameter, e.g. `startlmc 2MTE-KNBA-DLC7-LPIZ-ARMY-1F4U`.

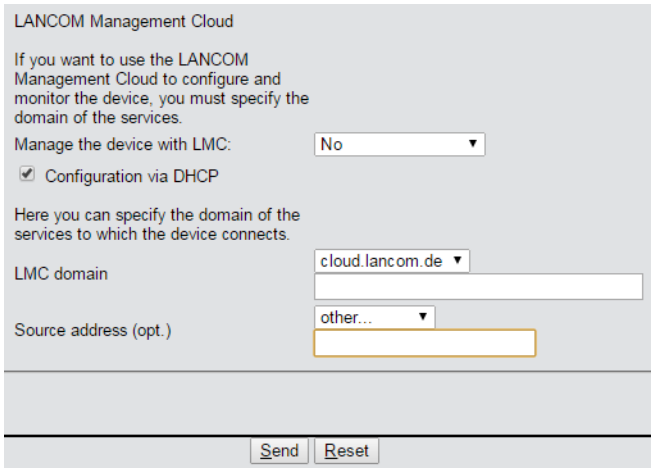
An on-screen message will inform you if the pairing process has started successfully, or you will see an error message.

Manual upfront configuration of your device for management by the LANCOM Management Cloud

You specify:

- Whether your device is to be managed by the LMC.
- Whether the LMC domain is to be retrieved from a DHCP server.
- Which domain your device connects to.
- The source address (optional).

1. Navigate to **Management** > **LMC**.



2. Select one of the three options under **Manage the device with LMC:**
   - **No**: The device does not connect to the LMC.
   - **Yes:** The LMC manages the device. (Default for devices without a WLAN interface)
   - **Only without WLC**: Devices within a network managed by a WLC do not connect to the LANCOM Management Cloud. (Default for devices with a WLAN interface)
3. To obtain the LMC domain from a DHCP server, place a check mark in **Configuration via DHCP**.

   In order for the DHCP server to provide the LMC domain, the DHCP server requires sub-option 18 of the DHCP option 43 to be set to the LMC domain. For more information about the configuration of LMC parameters, see the section *Delivery of the LMC domain by the LCOS DHCP server*.
4. Under **LMC domain** you set the domain of the LANCOM Management Cloud that the device should connect to.
5. Enter an optional **Source address (opt.)** to be used instead of the one otherwise automatically selected for the source address. If you have configured a loopback address, you can specify it here as the source address.

3.2 LANmonitor – monitoring devices on the LAN

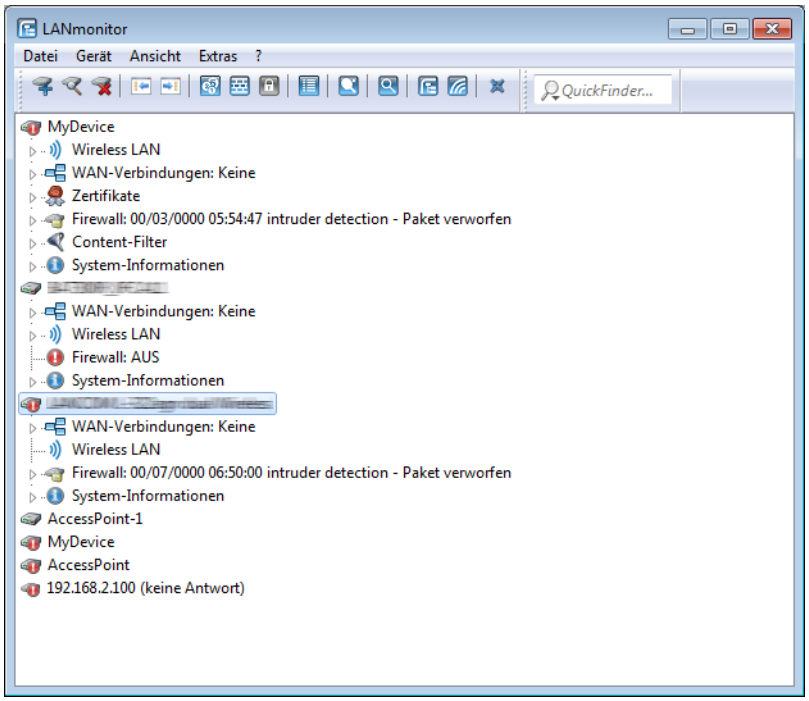
LANmonitor is a monitoring tool for Windows that provides a convenient and structured on-screen display of key information about the LANCOM devices.

- Display of connections and interface activities
- Interface states
- Transfer rates, protocols and IP addresses
- Error statuses
- Display of device information, SW version, CPU load and memory usage
- Display of accounting information (online times, charges and transfer volume)
- Display and logging of device activities
- Establishment and termination of WAN, VPN and WLAN connections
- LANCAPI connections
- Firewall action log(s)

Many of the internal messages from the devices are translated into cleartext to display the current state of the device and to help you with troubleshooting.

You can also use LANmonitor to observe the data traffic at the various router interfaces, which can be a significant help in optimizing the settings for data traffic.

In addition to reading-out device statistics which are also available from telnet or terminal sessions or by using WEBconfig, LANmonitor provides useful functions such as increasing a charge limit.



LANmonitor can only be used to monitor devices that can be access by IP (local or remote). This program does not communicate with devices via serial interface.

If you are unable to find a device in LANmonitor, it may be that the readout of device information via the access path you have chosen (e.g. remotely via VPN) is not permitted. LANmonitor uses the SNMP protocol to read-out device information, and this can be individually configured and restricted by the administrator.

3.2.1 Start LANmonitor

Start LANmonitor, for example with a double click on the desktop icon.

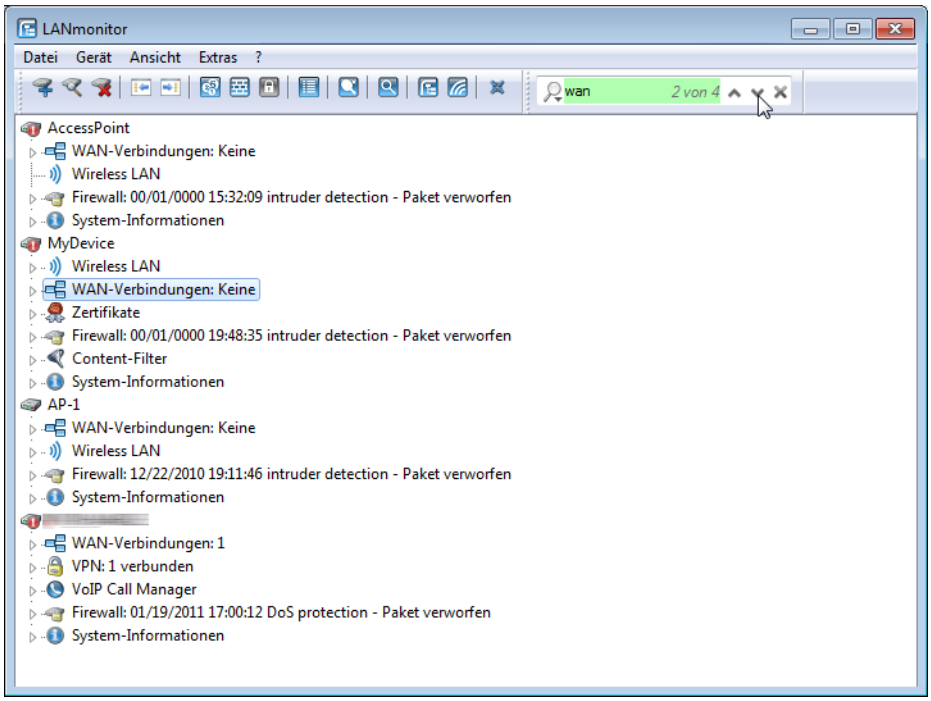
You can influence the startup behavior of LANmonitor under **Tools** > **Options**. Please also refer to *Options* on page 244.

You can also launch LANmonitor for a specific device via the context menu in LANconfig or with the keyboard shortcut 'Ctrl+M'.

3.2.2 QuickFinder in LANmonitor

Depending on the application, LANmonitor can display multiple devices with entries containing the searched term. After starting the search LANmonitor initially highlights the first finding. You can move between the search results either by

using the arrow keys to the right of the search window, or by pressing 'Ctrl+F3' for the next occurrence and 'Ctrl+Shift+F3' to the previous occurrence.



3.2.3 Display functions in LANmonitor

LANmonitor supports the administration of the applications by offering a range of functions that simplify the surveillance of devices at widely dispersed locations. The overview of devices monitored by LANmonitor already shows the most important information about the status of the devices: The information that can be taken from the overview includes, among others, details about active WAN connections, the five most recent firewall messages, the current VPN connections and system information about charges and online times.

Right-clicking with the mouse on a device in LANmonitor opens up a context menu with further information, including among others:

- *Activity log*
- *DHCP assignments*
- *VPN connections*
- Firewall event logs for *IPv4* and *IPv6*
- *Syslog*
- *Accounting information*

3.2.4 The menu structure in LANmonitor

LANmonitor supports the administration of the applications by offering a range of functions that simplify the surveillance of devices at widely dispersed locations. From the menu bar you can retrieve status information from the devices, reset them, or carry out further analyses (e.g. spectral scan, trace output). Numerous menu items are also available in the context menus in the device overview for each of the devices.

The overview of devices monitored by LANmonitor already shows the most important information about the status of the devices: The information that can be taken from the overview includes, among others, details about active WAN connections, the five most recent firewall messages, the current VPN connections and system information about charges and online times.

File

This menu item is used to manage devices in general, and to exit LANmonitor if required.

Add device

A new device is added under **File** > **Add device**. It opens a dialog where you can make the settings for the connection to the device and for the protocol.

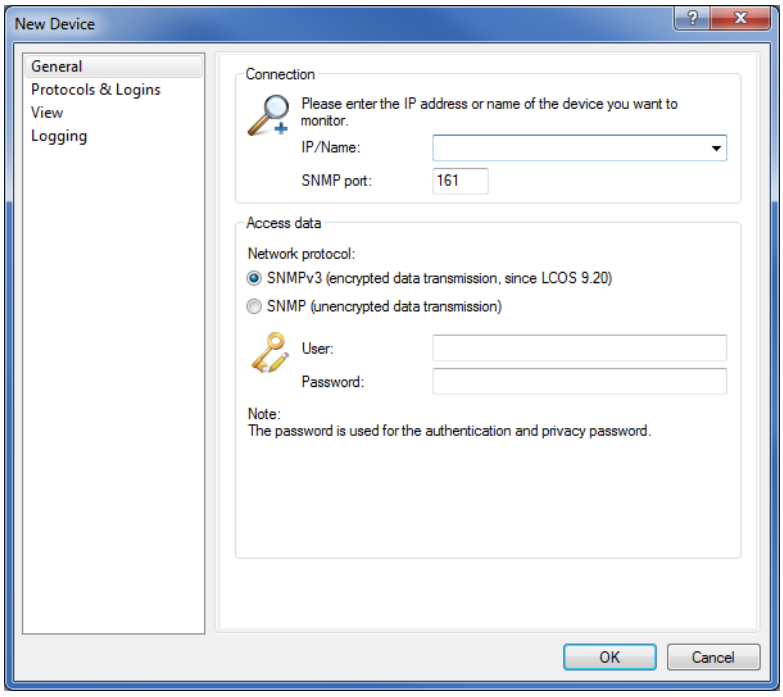
You also have the option of configuring new devices by entering IP addresses and the SNMP port when executing the program. To do this, start the LANmonitor with the syntax `lanmon /add:[<IPv6-Address>]:<Port>`, for example, `lanmon /add:[fe80::2a0:57ff:fe1b:3302]:161`.

General

On this page you specify the IP address and the SNMP port of the new device for monitoring by LANmonitor. If authentication is required to read-out the device data or perform actions on the device, these access credentials must also be stored in LANmonitor.

You must permanently store the credentials for read-only access as a minimum; otherwise the program cannot connect to the device. Permanently storing write-access credentials is optional. This saves you having to enter the credentials manually each time you send an action to LANmonitor for the first time.

If you save the username and password permanently, any user who is permitted to run LANmonitor also has access to the device.



Interface

- **IP/Name**: Enter the IP address of the device. You can also enter a domain name (DN or FQDN) or a NetBIOS name. This name is checked at every access. LANmonitor stores and uses the resolved IP address. If this check is not possible, then LANmonitor takes the last IP address that was last used successfully.
- **SNMP port:** Specify the port under which the SNMP service on the device is accessed. The default is this `161`. Depending on the setting in the device (see Setup parameter 2.9.21) or ARF context, a different port may be required.

Authentication

In this section, choose how and with what credentials you authenticate yourself to the device. The setting you need depends on whether you have restricted the SNMP read-access to the device and have defined a community of your own. Learn more about this in the Section *Configuring SNMP read-only access* on page 92.

Network protocol

Select whether the LANmonitor accesses the device via SNMPv3 (encrypted), or via SNMPv2 (unencrypted, not recommended). Access via SNMPv3 is supported as of LCOS 9.20.

SNMPv3

- **User**: Specify the user for SNMPv3 access.
- **Password**: Specify the password for SNMPv3 access. This is usually the master device password.

SNMPv2

- **SNMP read-only community**: Use this setting if authentication at the device is handled by
  - the public community `public` or
  - your own community in the form of a master password or username:password pair

  . You then enter these into the **Community** field.
- **Administrator/Password**: Use this setting if authentication at the device is handled by
  - your own community in the form of a username:password pair or
  - the credentials of an administrator account

  . You then specify the user name in the **Administrator** field and the password in the **Password** field.

Pay attention to the correct spelling/capitalization, because SNMP access to the device is blocked if the wrong data is entered.

You also have the option of saving the **access credentials for device actions (SNMP write community)** either for the current session or permanently in LANmonitor. This data is required for all device actions (such as deleting or resetting status values). If you do not store any credentials, the program prompts you for them the next time you attempt to execute an action.

For read-only access, you should preferably specify a read-only community instead of an administrator account, as SNMP packets are transmitted in cleartext with SNMPv2.

Protocols & logins

On this page, you can configure and manage the protocols, ports, and access credentials used by the other components of the LANtools when they call programs from within LANmonitor. Configurable programs include:

- LANconfig
- LANtracer
- LANtools-internal and also external Web browsers

If program is invoked with certain protocols already deactivated or configured differently, for example, only the matches are applied.

The setting options are equivalent to those of LANconfig. Please refer to the section *Protocols & logins* on page 195 for more on the configuration.

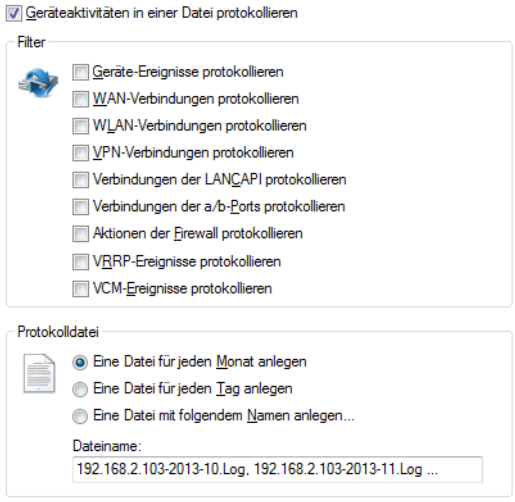
View

On this page you can adjust the display-related connection settings.

If you select the option **Disable tooltips in systray for this device**, LANmonitor displays no tooltips for this device in the system tray.

Logging

This page gives you control over how LANmonitor logs the device activities. Your selections under **Filter** determine which activities LANmonitor records and which log file to write.



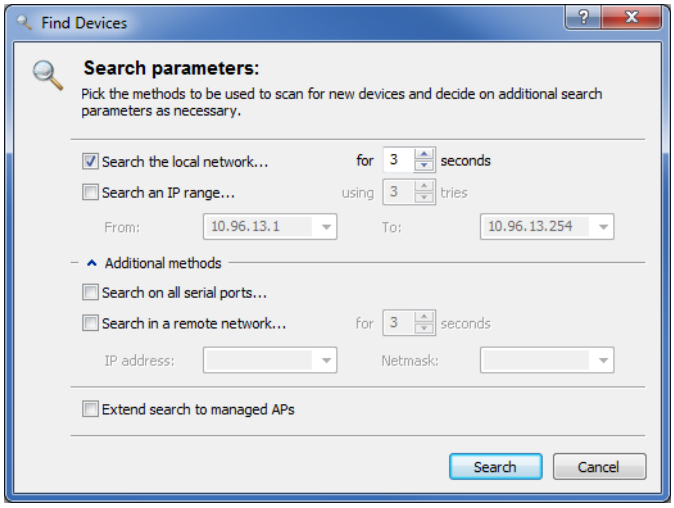
Delete device

You can delete a device that has been marked under **File** > **Delete device**. You can also use the 'Del' key to delete a device.

Deleting a device only removes it from the current view. You can add it to the display again using **File** > **Add device** or **File** > **Find devices**.

Find devices

This menu item triggers an automatic search for new devices for adding to the device view section.



Select where you wish to search for devices:

- Search in the local network
- Search in a remote network

  If you wish to search in a remote network you must specify its address and the relevant network mask.

- If necessary, you can extend the search to managed access points (APs).

Click on **Search** to start the search. Any devices found will be added to the list automatically.

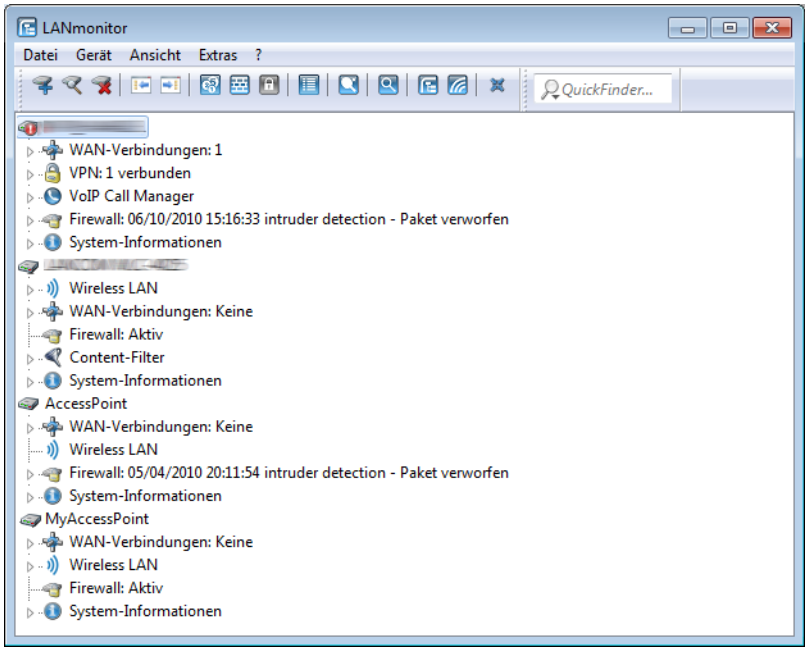
If a device is found that is already in the list, it will not be included in the list a second time. For this reason fewer devices may be added to the list than were reported during the search operation.

Refresh all devices

Refreshes the connection to all devices.

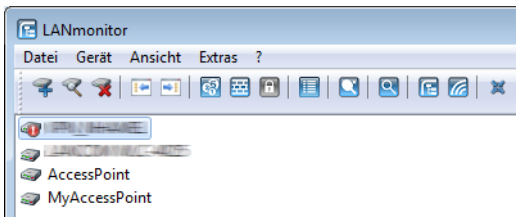
Expand devices

Expands the display of devices in the list. The opposite is the *Collapse devices* view. The expanded display look as follows:



Collapse devices

Reduces the display of devices in the list. The opposite is the *Expand devices* view. The reduced view appears as follows:



Exit

Closes and terminates LANmonitor.

Device

This menu item is used to manage and monitor a selected device in the network.

Refresh display

Updates the information displayed for the selected device.

View VPN connections

You can view the VPN connections for a certain device. The list of VPN connections is a log of the 100 most recent VPN connections. Detailed information is recorded:

Name

Name of the remote station

Status

Status of the connection (for example, **Connected** or **Not connected**)

Last error

Last error to occur

Short hold time

The short hold time set for this connection. The short hold time specifies the number of seconds that pass before the device disconnects from the remote site if no data is transferred. Special values are:

- '0': The device does not disconnect by itself. In the case of a disconnect, the connection must be manually established by the user.
- '9999': The device does not disconnect by itself. In the event of a disconnect from the remote station, the router automatically attempts to reconnect immediately.

Connection

Name of the network used for the physical connection to the remote site

Gateway

IP address of the remote VPN gateway or remote site

Nat detection

Indicates whether NAT is active

Encryption algorithm

The encryption algorithm used

Hash algorithm

The hash algorithm being used and the length of the hash code (in bits)

Hmac algorithm

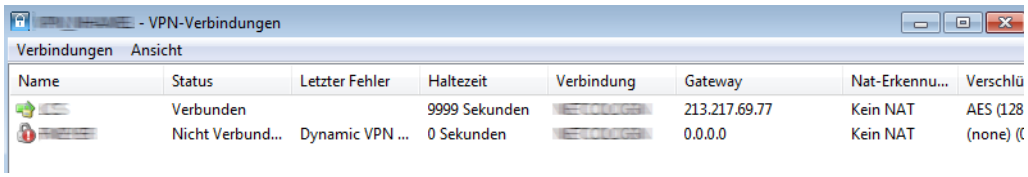
The HMAC algorithm being used and the length of the HMAC code (in bits)

Compression algorithm

IPCOMP algorithm used

SSL encapsulation

Indicates whether SSL encapsulation is used



You will find the following functions in the **Connections** menu:

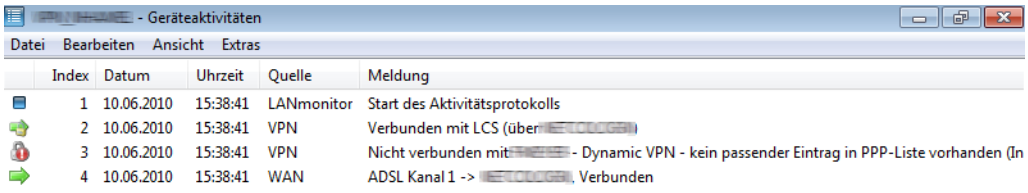
- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.

View device activities

You can view the device activities for a certain device. The activity log is a detailed list of the connections via WAN, WLAN, VPN, LANCAPI and a/b port, and a list of firewall activities. Detailed information is recorded: **Index**, **Date**, **Time**, **Source** and **Message**. The activity log is continually being updated.



You will find the following functions in the **Connections** menu:

- **Save device activities**: Stores the displayed device activities to a location of your choice in a suitable file format (*.log).
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **Edit** menu:

- **Save selection**: Stores the highlighted entries to a location of your choice in a suitable file format (*.log).
- **Delete buffer**: Deletes the marked entries.

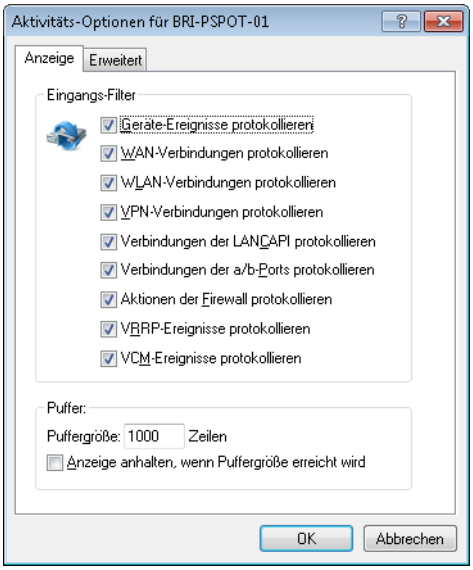
You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.

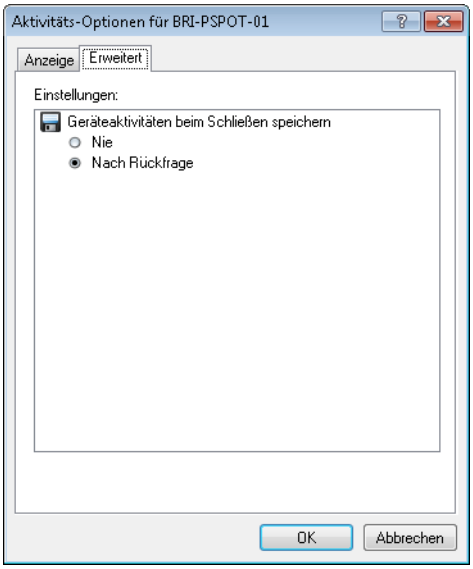
You will find the following functions in the **Tools** menu:

- **Options**:

  This menu item gives you control over how LANmonitor logs device-specific activities. For this purpose, select the **Inbound filter** on the tab **Display** to specify which activities and to what extent (**buffer**) LANmonitor records the activities.



On the **Advanced** tab, you specify whether LANmonitor saves the recorded data to a file.



To specify the file, go to **Device** > **Properties** > **Logging**.

View syslog

You can view the syslog for a certain device. Detailed information is recorded:

Time

Date, time of the syslog entry

Source

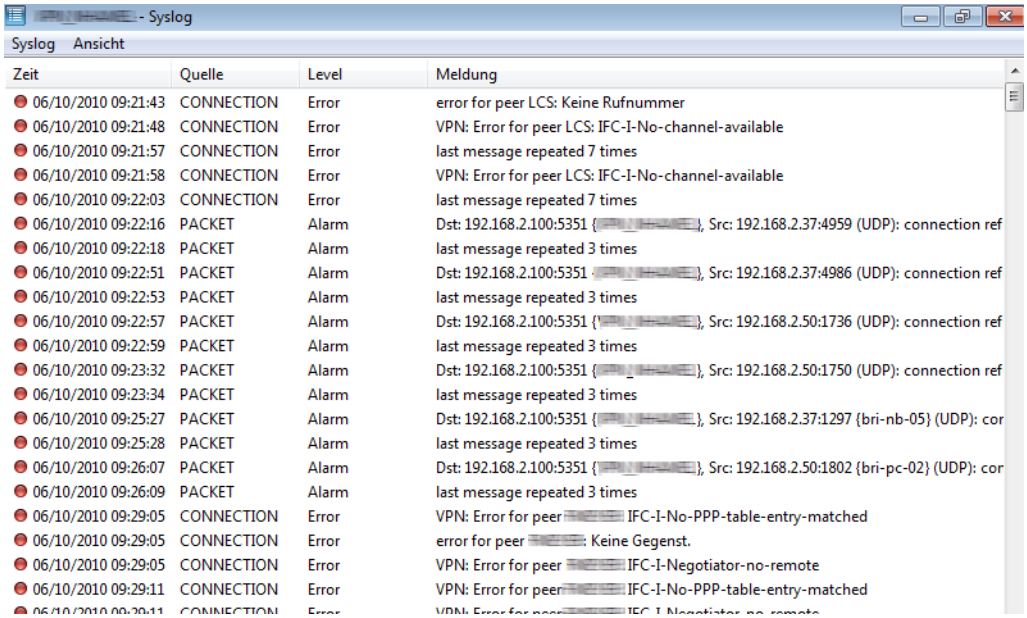
Source of the syslog message

Level

Level of the syslog message, e.g. alarm or error

Message

Details of the syslog message



You will find the following functions in the **Syslog** menu:

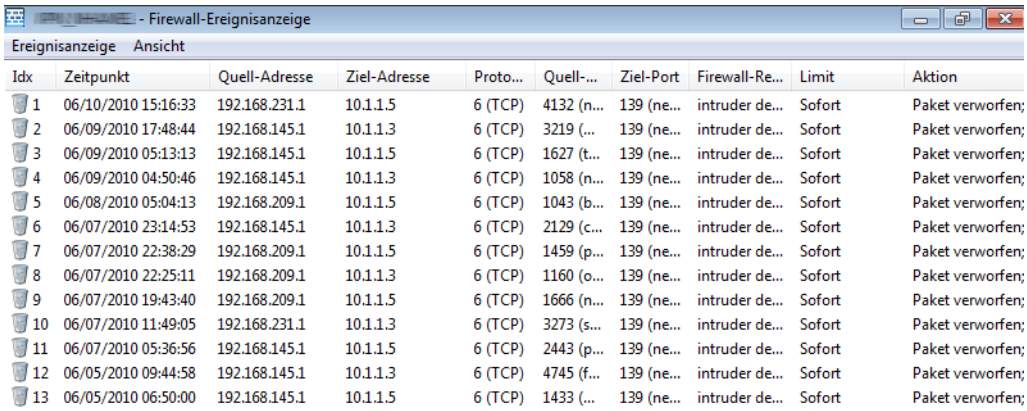
- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Save syslog**: Stores the displayed syslog output to a location of your choice in a suitable file format (*.lsl).
- **Load syslog**: Loads a saved syslog file.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.

View IPv6 firewall event log

In LANmonitor you can view the firewall events for a selected device under **Device** > **View firewall event log**. The firewall events show the last 100 actions of the firewall. The information displayed and the explanations are identical to those of the *IPv4 firewall*.



You will find the following functions in the **Event log** menu:

- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.

View IPv4 firewall event log

You can view the firewall events for a certain device. The firewall event log lists the last 100 actions taken by the firewall. Detailed information is recorded:

Idx

Sequential index entry of events

System time

Time when the event was logged

Source address

Source address of the filtered packet

Destination address

Destination address of the filtered packet

Protocol

Protocol (TCP, UDP, etc.) of the filtered packet

Source port

Source port of the filtered packet (only for port related protocols).

Destination port

Destination port of the filtered packet (only for port related protocols)

Firewall rule

Name of the rule that created the entry

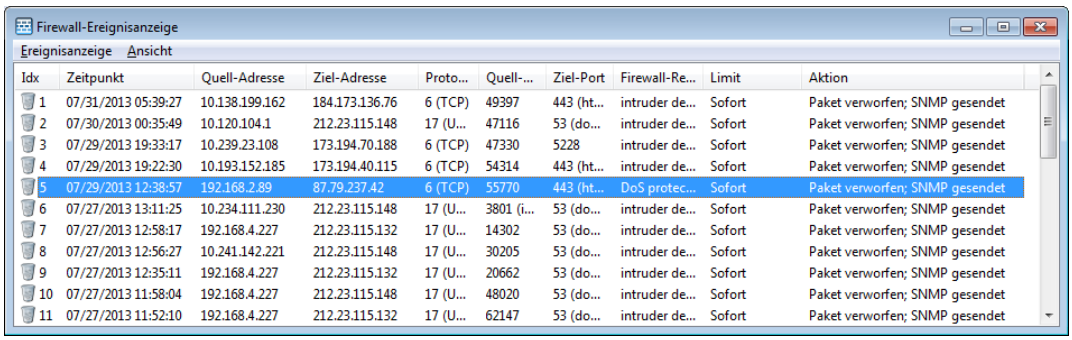
Limit

Limit associated with the relevant firewall action. If a firewall action is not associated with a limit, this implies a packet limit that is immediately exceeded with the first packet. In this case, the column shows the value **immediate**.

For more information on limits, see the Menu Reference Guide under "2.8.10.4 Action table" in the section "Limits".

Action

Short description of the performed action



Idx	Zeitpunkt	Quell-Adresse	Ziel-Adresse	Proto...	Quell-...	Ziel-Port	Firewall-Re...	Limit	Aktion
1	07/31/2013 05:39:27	10.138.199.162	184.173.136.76	6 (TCP)	49397	443 (ht...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
2	07/30/2013 00:35:49	10.120.104.1	212.23.115.148	17 (U...	47116	53 (do...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
3	07/29/2013 19:33:17	10.239.23.108	173.194.70.188	6 (TCP)	47330	5228	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
4	07/29/2013 19:22:30	10.193.152.185	173.194.40.115	6 (TCP)	54314	443 (ht...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
5	07/29/2013 12:38:57	192.168.2.89	87.79.237.42	6 (TCP)	55770	443 (ht...	DoS protec...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
6	07/27/2013 13:11:25	10.234.111.230	212.23.115.148	17 (U...	3801 (i...	53 (do...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
7	07/27/2013 12:58:17	192.168.4.227	212.23.115.132	17 (U...	14302	53 (do...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
8	07/27/2013 12:56:27	10.241.142.221	212.23.115.148	17 (U...	30205	53 (do...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
9	07/27/2013 12:35:11	192.168.4.227	212.23.115.132	17 (U...	20662	53 (do...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
10	07/27/2013 11:58:04	192.168.4.227	212.23.115.148	17 (U...	48020	53 (do...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet
11	07/27/2013 11:52:10	192.168.4.227	212.23.115.132	17 (U...	62147	53 (do...	intruder de...	Sofort	Paket verworfen; SNMP gesendet

You will find the following functions in the **Event log** menu:

- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.

View DHCP table

You can view the DHCP table for a certain device. Detailed information is recorded:

IP address

IP address of the local network device

MAC address

MAC address of the local network device

Timeout

Lease for the address assignment in minutes.

Host name

Names of the local devices on your network (if known)

Type

Type of assignment

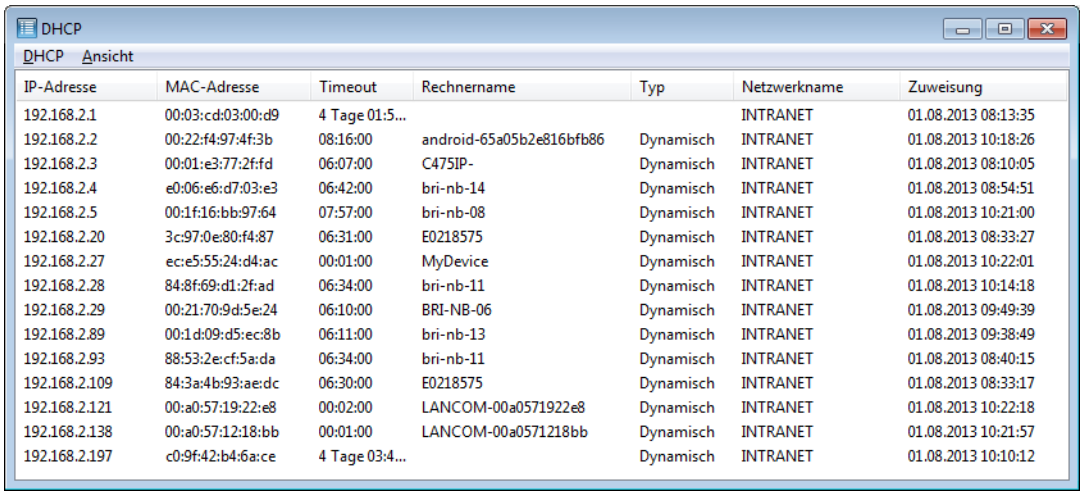
- **New**: The client made the request for the first time. The DHCP checks that the address to be assigned to the client is unique.
- **Unknown:** When the server checked if the address was unique, it was found that the address had already been assigned to another client. Unfortunately, the DHCP server does not have any way of obtaining further information about this client.
- **Static**: A client has informed the DHCP server that it has a fixed IP address. This address may not be used for any other clients in the network.
- **Dynamic**: The DHCP server has assigned an address to the client.

Network name

Displays the name of the network that the local network device is connected to

Assignment

Date and time of the address assignment.



IP-Adresse	MAC-Adresse	Timeout	Rechnername	Typ	Netzwerkname	Zuweisung
192.168.2.1	00:03:cd:03:00:d9	4 Tage 01:5...			INTRANET	01.08.2013 08:13:35
192.168.2.2	00:22:f4:97:4f:3b	08:16:00	android-65a05b2e816bfb86	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 10:18:26
192.168.2.3	00:01:e3:77:2f:fd	06:07:00	C475IP-	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 08:10:05
192.168.2.4	e0:06:e6:d7:03:e3	06:42:00	bri-nb-14	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 08:54:51
192.168.2.5	00:1f:16:bb:97:64	07:57:00	bri-nb-08	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 10:21:00
192.168.2.20	3c:97:0e:80:f4:87	06:31:00	E0218575	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 08:33:27
192.168.2.27	ec:e5:55:24:d4:ac	00:01:00	MyDevice	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 10:22:01
192.168.2.28	84:8f:69:d1:2f:ad	06:34:00	bri-nb-11	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 10:14:18
192.168.2.29	00:21:70:9d:5e:24	06:10:00	BRI-NB-06	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 09:49:39
192.168.2.89	00:1d:09:d5:ec:8b	06:11:00	bri-nb-13	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 09:38:49
192.168.2.93	88:53:2e:cf:5a:da	06:34:00	bri-nb-11	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 08:40:15
192.168.2.109	84:3a:4b:93:ae:dc	06:30:00	E0218575	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 08:33:17
192.168.2.121	00:a0:57:19:22:e8	00:02:00	LANCOM-00a0571922e8	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 10:22:18
192.168.2.138	00:a0:57:12:18:bb	00:01:00	LANCOM-00a0571218bb	Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 10:21:57
192.168.2.197	c0:9f:42:b4:6a:ce	4 Tage 03:4...		Dynamisch	INTRANET	01.08.2013 10:10:12

You will find the following functions in the **Accounting** menu:

- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.

Show accounting information

You can view the accounting information for a certain device. The accounting information is a protocol of the connections from each station in the LAN to remote sites in the WAN. Detailed information is recorded:

User

The connection name, usually the name of the network device that has established a connection via the selected device.

Remote site

Name of the remote site to which the selected device has established a connection.

Type

Type of connection

Connections

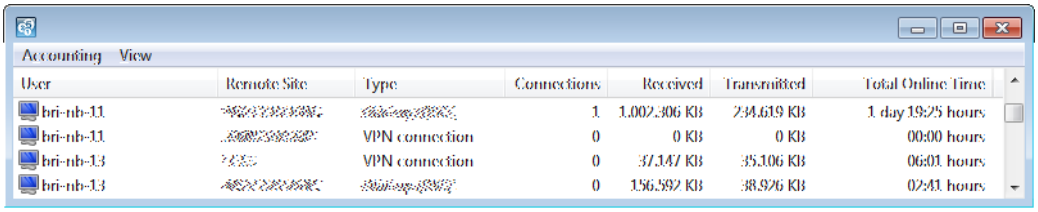
Number of connections of a certain type that are currently open to the listed remote site.

Received, transmitted

The amount of data that the user has received/transmitted within the connection time.

Total online time

Total online time in hours, minutes, and seconds.



You will find the following functions in the **Accounting** menu:

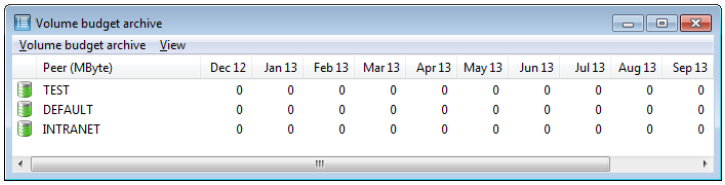
- **Reset**: Clears all accounting information and resets all counters to '0'.
- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Save accounting information**: Stores the displayed accounting information to a location of your choice in a suitable file format (*.acc).
- **Load accounting information**: Loads a saved file with accounting information.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.
- **Accounting list (current)**: Displays the current accounting list.
- **Accounting list (last billing period)**: Shows the accounting list for the last accounting period.

View volume budget archive

Displays the volume budget archive of all WAN interfaces.



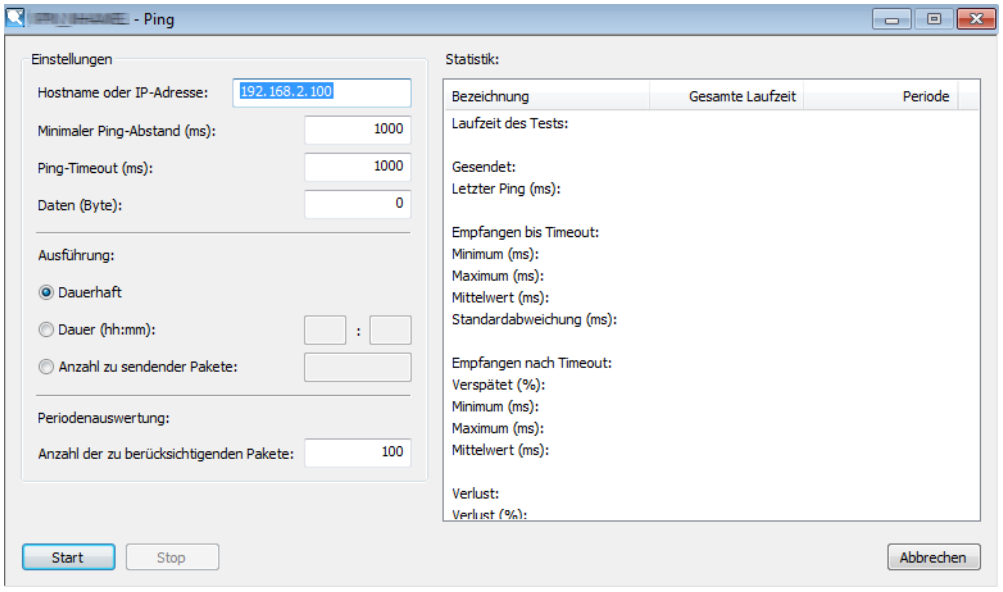
Reset time and charge limit

This is where you can reset the time and charge limit of the marked device to zero. The time and charge counter restart from zero even if the period for the limit has not been reached.

Ping

You can use LANmonitor to check the connection quality between stations in the LAN, WAN or WLAN. LANmonitor sends ping command from the computer on which it is installed to the remote site at regular intervals. The responses it receives are the basis for a compiled report.

To enter the parameters and display the results of the ping test, LANmonitor has a dedicated dialog.



Configuring ping

- **Host name or IP address**: The remote site which is to be queried by Ping is entered here. The following information can be entered for all of the different network devices (servers, clients, routers, printers, etc.) which can be reached via LAN, WAN or WLAN.

If a device is selected when the Ping dialog is opened with Device > Ping or via the context menu in LANmonitor, then the IP address of this device is assumed to be the remote site.

- **Minimum ping interval**: The time interval between two consecutive pings in [ms].

The interval between two pings cannot be less than the packet transmission time, i.e. before sending a ping, the previous ping must have been answered or the ping timeout must have expired.

- **Ping timeout**: The time waited for the response to a ping to arrive [ms]. If this time expires and no response was received then the ping is assumed to be lost.
- **Data**: The size of a ping packet [bytes]. A "ping" is an ICMP packet which is generally transmitted without any content, i.e. it is just a header. To increase the load of the packets used for testing a connection, a payload can be created artificially. The overall packet size then consists of an IP header (20 bytes), an ICMP header (8 bytes) and the payload.

The packets will be fragmented if the payload of the ICMP packets exceeds the maximum IP packet size.

- **Execution**: Repeat mode for the ping command. You have the option to stop the ping transmission manually, after a certain period, or after a specified number of sent data packets.
- **Period evaluation**: The right-hand portion of the Ping dialog displays the results of the ping test. The first column shows the sum values over the entire test; the second column shows only the values collected over the evaluation period, i.e. the sum of the most recent packets. Unanswered pings are not included in the evaluation.

The period evaluation considers only the pings sent during the defined period.

Statistics

The following information is displayed for evaluation:

- Test run time: The total run time [hr./ min./ sec.]
- Transmitted: Total number of pings sent
- Run time of the last ping [ms]
- Received until timeout: The number of pings answered in the timeout period
- Minimum runtime
- Maximum runtime
- Average
- Standard deviation from the mean run time
- Received after timeout: The number of pings answered after the timeout period
- Late packets as a proportion of the total number
- Minimum runtime
- Maximum runtime
- Average
- Lost
- Last error

Create trace output

This option starts the trace output in LANtracer.

Please also refer to *LANtracer – tracing with LANconfig and LANmonitor* on page 265.

Show spectral scan

This menu item starts the spectral scanning module in the selected device. The results are displayed by LANmonitor's internal Web browser. More information about its configuration is available under *Functions of the software module* on page 855.

Setting up point-to-point WLAN antennas

If the selected device is equipped for WLAN, you can align the point-to-point WLAN antennas.

This menu item is only visible in LANmonitor if the monitored device has at least one base station defined as a remote station for a P2P connection (in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Point-to-Point**).

Antenna alignment for P2P operations

The precise alignment of the antennas is of critical importance for establishing P2P connections. The more central the receiving antenna is located in the "ideal line" of the transmitting antenna, the better is the actual power and the effective bandwidth. If the receiving antenna is outside of this ideal area, however, significant losses in performance will be the result.

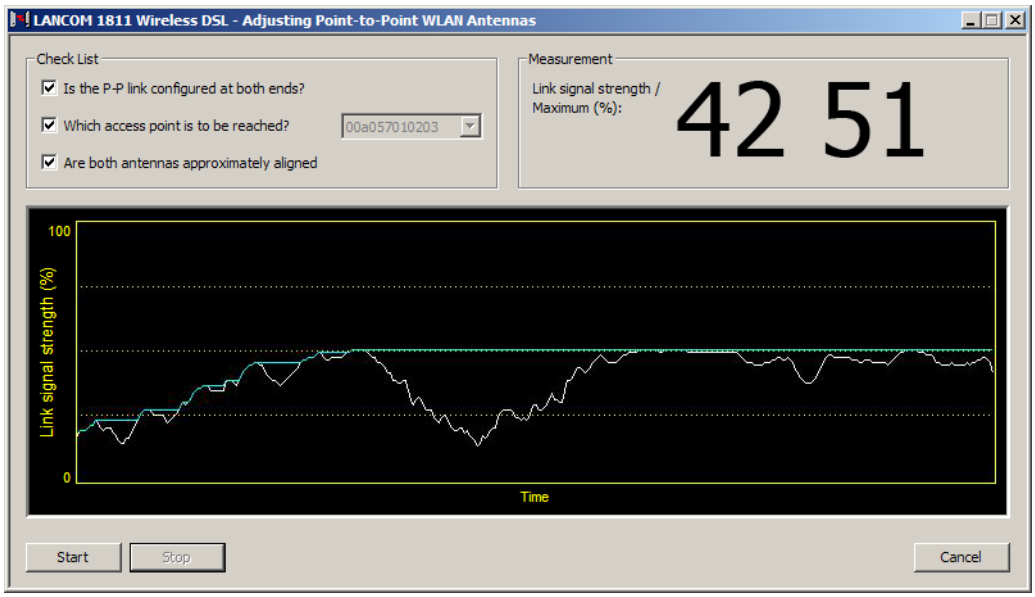
The current signal quality over a P2P connection can be displayed on the device's LEDs or in LANmonitor in order to help find the best possible alignment for the antennas.

The display of signal quality with the LEDs must be activated for the physical wireless LAN interface. The faster the LED blinks the better the connection (a blinking frequency of 1 Hz represents a signal quality of 10 dB, double the frequency indicates that the signal strength is twice as high).

In the dialog for setting up point-to-point connections, LANmonitor prompts for the information required to establish the P2P connection:

- Is the P2P connection configured at both ends (remote base station defined with MAC address or station name)?
- Which access point is to be monitored? All of the base stations defined as P2P remote sites in the device concerned can be selected here.
- Are both antennas approximately aligned? The basic P2P connection has to be working before fine-tuning can be performed with the aid of LANmonitor.

Once signal monitoring has commenced, the P2P dialog displays the absolute values for the current signal strength and the maximum value since starting the measurement. The trend of the signal strength over time and the maximum value are also displayed in a diagram.



Initially only one of the two antennas should be adjusted until a maximum value is achieved. This first antenna is then fixed and the second antenna is then adjusted to attain the best signal quality.

Configure

Start LANconfig to configure the selected device.

Start the web browser

Starts the default web browser to configure the selected device via WEBconfig.

Show content filter categories

If your device is equipped with an activated content filter module, you use this menu item to access the content filter categories.

You will find the following functions in the **Content filter categories** menu:

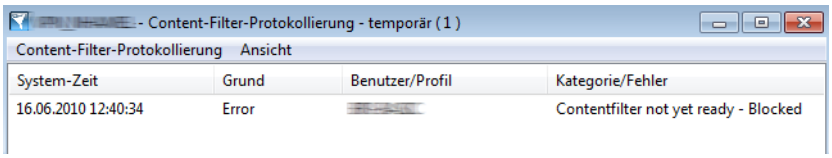
- **Reset**: Clears all displayed information and resets all counters to '0'.
- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Save category information**: Stores the displayed category information to a location of your choice in a suitable file format (*.acc).
- **Load category information**: Loads saved categories information from a file.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.
- **Show content filter categories (current)**: Displays the current status of the content filter categories.
- **Show content filter categories (last snapshot)**: Displays the status of the content filter categories at the last snapshot.

Show content filter log

If your device is equipped with an activated content filter module, you use this menu item to view the content filter log.



You will find the following functions in the **Content filter logging** menu:

- **Reset**: Deletes the displayed information.
- **Refresh**: Updates the displayed information.
- **Close**: Close the information window.

You will find the following functions in the **View** menu:

- **Always on top**: The window always stays in the foreground.

Properties

This menu item opens the Properties dialog for the selected device. A number of pages here allow you to inspect or adjust various global and device-specific settings.

The dialogs are largely identical to those under **File** > **Add device**. For this reason, this section covers only those pages that appear in the Properties dialog. For all other pages, see

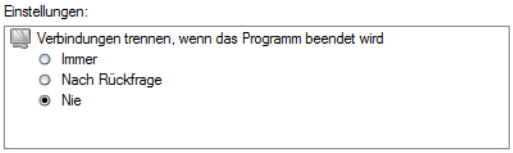
- *General* on page 226
- *Protocols & logins* on page 227
- *View* on page 228
- *Logging* on page 228

Information

This page contains more information about the manufacturer and device.

Advanced

On this page you will find advanced settings.



Under **Disconnect all lines when the program shuts down**, you set whether LANmonitor disconnects active connections between the device and remote sites when you exit the program.

- **Always**: LANmonitor always disconnects without asking.
- **Prompt**: LANmonitor disconnects only after prior confirmation by the user.
- **Never**: LANmonitor does not disconnect. The connections remain active.

View

This menu item is used to customize the behavior of the LANmonitor graphical user interface.

Always on top

If you enable this setting, the window always appears in the foreground.

Show status in systray

If you enable this option, LANmonitor displays the device status (error) in the systray.

Minimize LANmonitor to systray

If you enable this setting, LANmonitor is moved to the systray instead of the taskbar when minimized.

Toolbar

Hides or displays the toolbar. Please also refer to *The toolbar in LANmonitor* on page 244.

Show

This menu item is used to enable or disable the display of the following information:

- Error messages
- Diagnostic messages
- System information

Many important details on the status of a device are only shown if the display of system information is activated. This includes, among others, the interfaces and charge management. For this reason we recommend that interested users should activate the display of system information.

Tools

This menu item is used to open the information stored by selected information windows (e.g. syslog or accounting logs) and to start the other program components of the LANtools.

Start LANmonitor (temporary)

Opens a new LANmonitor window to temporarily monitor devces. When LANmonitor is closed the settings of the temporary LANmonitor window will be lost.

Start WLANmonitor

This starts WLANmonitor. Refer to chapter *WLANmonitor – monitoring wireless devices* on page 249 for more information on this.

Start LANconfig

This starts LANconfig. Refer to chapter *LANconfig – configuring devices* on page 149 for more information on this.

Open device logging file

Opens the backup of an activity log log file for viewing. Please also refer to *View device activities* on page 232.

Open accounting file

This is where you can load an accounting file. Please also refer to *Show accounting information* on page 237.

Open SYSLOG file

This is where you can load a system log file. Please also refer to *View syslog* on page 233.

Analyze trace output

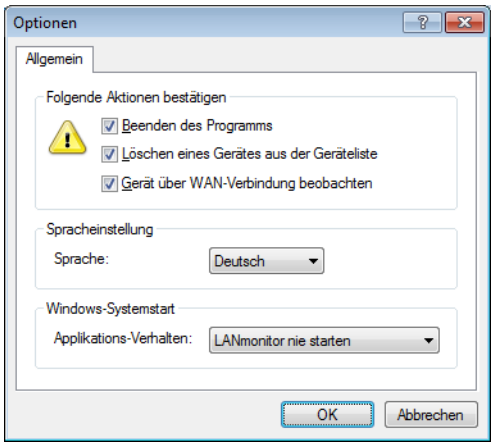
This starts LANtracer. Refer to chapter *LANtracer – tracing with LANconfig and LANmonitor* on page 265 for more information on this.

Ping

Click on this item to start a ping test. Please also refer to *Ping* on page 238.

Options

This item is for editing the settings for the confirmation of actions, the language setting and the behavior of the application at Windows startup.



- **Confirm the following actions**: Specify which actions need to be confirmed by the user.
- **Application language**: Select the language for the graphical user interface (English, German or Spanish).
- **Windows system startup**: Choose how LANmonitor should behave when you start Windows.

Help

This menu item offers help about the program and displays information about the software.

Help topics

This menu item gives you access to the help topics. Alternatively you can press F1.

Info

This menu item shows you which software version you are operating and its build date.

3.2.5 The toolbar in LANmonitor

The toolbar in WLANmonitor provides the following functions:

- Add device
- Find devices
- Delete device
- Collapse devices
- Expand devices
- Show accounting information
- View IPv4 firewall event log
- View VPN connections
- View device activities
- Ping
- Create trace output
- Show spectral scan
- Start LANmonitor (temporary)

- Start WLANmonitor
- Minimize all windows to systray
- QuickFinder

You can show or hide the toolbar with the menu item **View** > **Toolbar**.

3.2.6 LANmonitor context menu

The context menu for each device added to the LANmonitor contains the same functions as the **Device** menu in the menu bar. It also contains the **Delete** function allowing a device to be removed from the LANmonitor view.

3.2.7 LANmonitor keyboard shortcuts

Ins	Add device
Del	Delete device
F3	Find devices
F5	Refresh all devices
Alt+F4	Exit
Arrow up	Move up one entry in the list of devices
Arrow down	Move down one entry in the list of devices
Arrow left, ENTER	Collapse menu tree in the device list
Arrow right, ENTER	Expand menu tree in the device list
Ctrl+F5	Refresh display
Space	Device > Options
F7	Tools > Options
F1	Help topics

3.2.8 LANmonitor application concepts

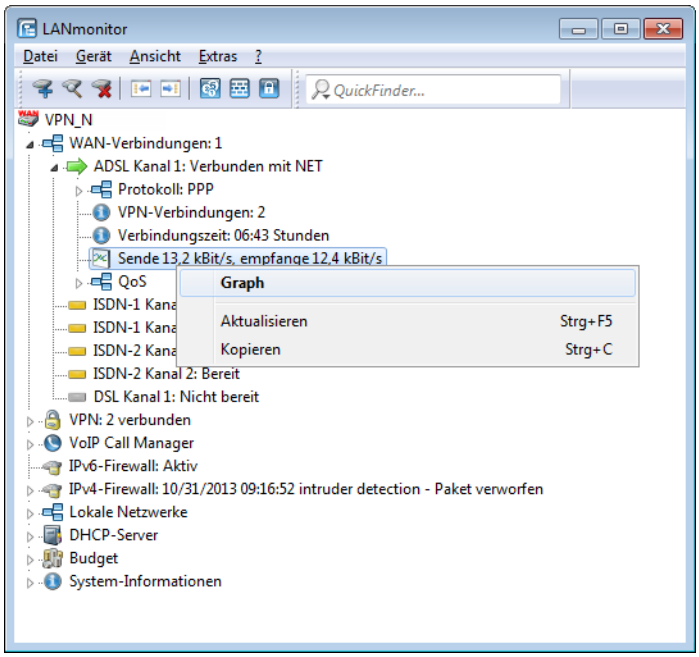
This section describes various applications of LANmonitor.

Performance monitoring with LANmonitor

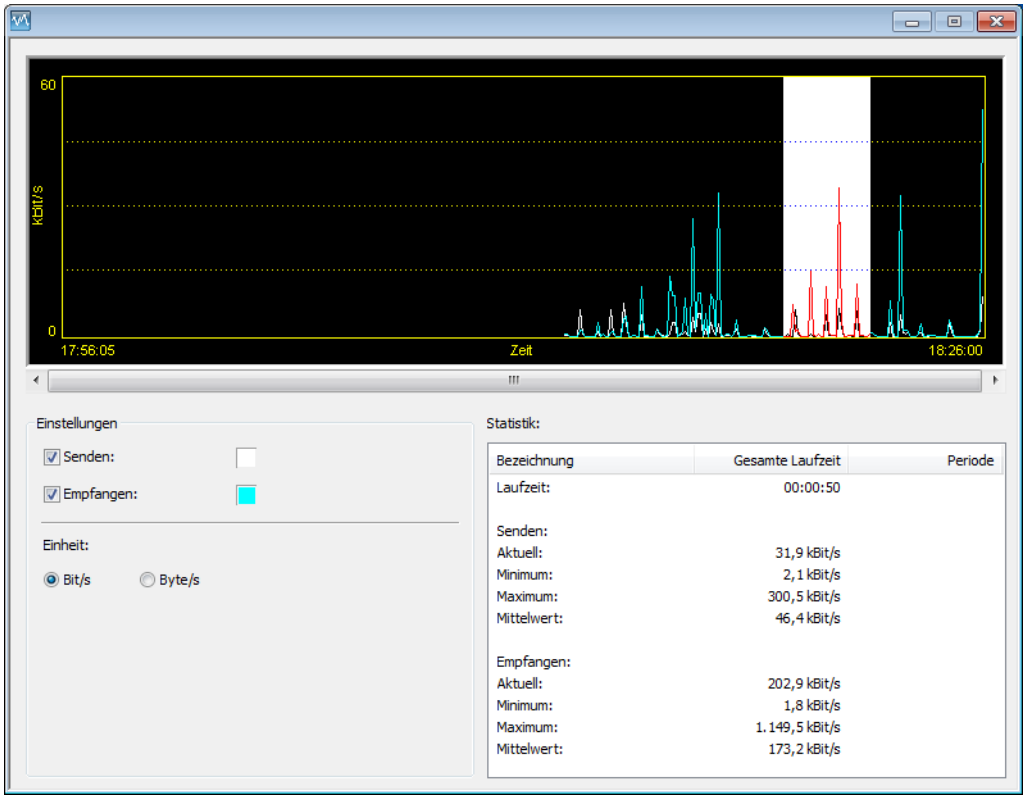
LANmonitor is able to record various parameters of a device and to represent them graphically in the form of a curve. These include among others:

- Transmit and receive rates for WAN connections
- Transmit and receive rates for point-to-point connections
- Signal reception strength for point-to-point connections
- Link signal strength for point-to-point connections
- Throughput for point-to-point connections
- CPU load
- Free memory
- Temperature (not available on all models)

LANmonitor displays the current values of a parameter in the device overview directly in the corresponding group branch. To start the graphical display, open the context menu for a parameter and select **Graph**.



An additional window is opened, which shows variation of of the parameter over time.



By using the left mouse button to mark a time period on the current graph, the statistics for these values are displayed separately.

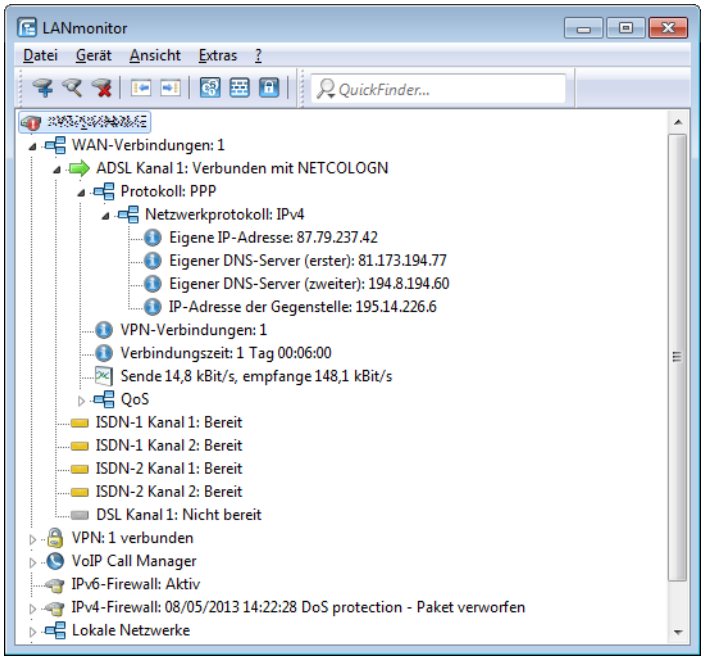
Please note that the values on display are deleted when the dialog is closed. For monitoring over a longer period, leave the window open. The dialog displays at most the values over the last 24 hours.

Check Internet connection

This section provides an example of how LANmonitor works by demonstrating the kind of information that it can supply about your Internet provider.

1. Start LANmonitor, for example with a double click on the desktop icon.
2. Add a new device with **File** > **Add device** and, in the window that opens, enter the IP address for the device that is to be monitored. If the configuration of the device is password protected, you can enter the password here. LANmonitor automatically creates a new entry in its list of devices and it initially shows the status of the connection channels.
3. Start your web browser and enter any web address.
4. Return to LANmonitor and open the branch **WAN connections** for the device. Under **ADSL channel x:** Under **Connected with...**, LANmonitor shows you which channel is used to make the connection and also the remote site that is contacted.

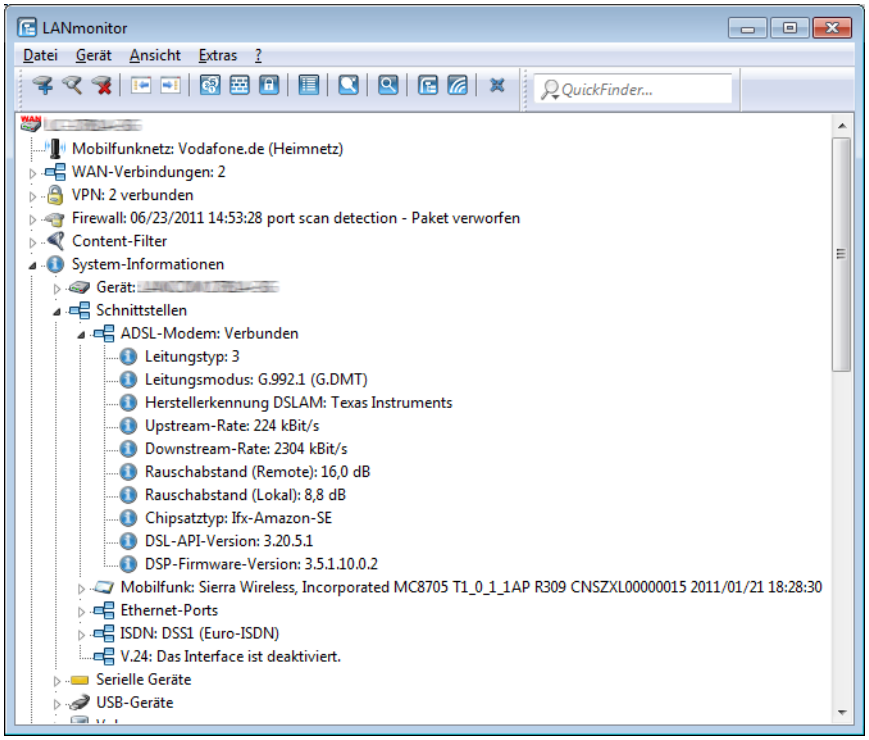
As soon as the connection is established, the communication channel is displayed with a plus sign in front of it, indicating that information is available for this channel. By clicking on the plus sign or double-clicking on an entry, you open a tree-like structure that displays various information.



- This example illustrates how the protocol information on PPP shows the IP address the provider has allocated to your router and the addresses of the DNS and NBNS servers.
- Under the general information you can observe the data transfer rates of the current Internet connection.
- Right-click with the mouse on the active channel and you can manually terminate the connection. You may require the configuration password for this.
- If you wish to log the LANmonitor output to a file, you can start the activity log (also see *View device activities* on page 232).

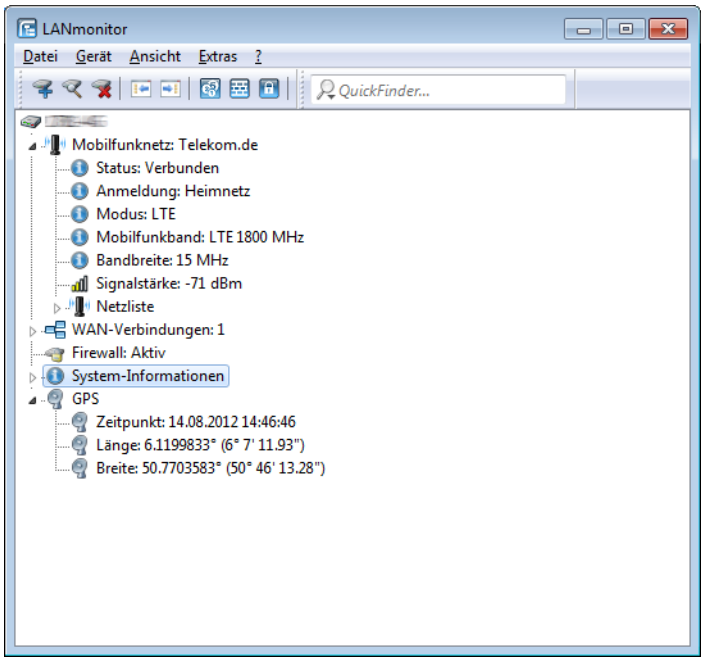
Show the current protocol for the ADSL/VDSL interface

For devices with an integrated ADSL/VDSL modem, LANmonitor's **System information** displays the ADSL standard currently being used. Switch to the **Interfaces** branch and select **ADSL/VDSL modem**.



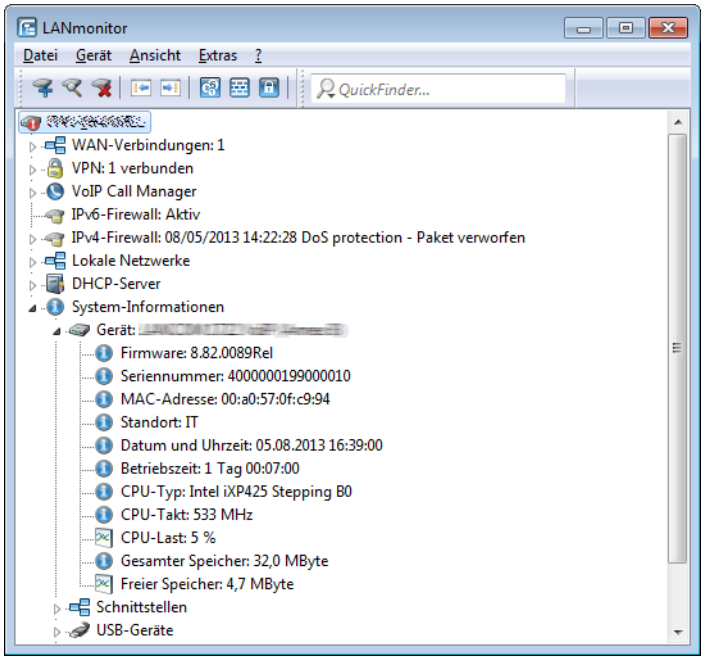
Display of the GPS time

As of LCOS version 8.80, LANmonitor gives you the option to display the time received from the GPS network. Navigate to the **GPS** section for the device in LANmonitor. The current GPS time is displayed under **Timestamp**.



Querying CPU and memory utilization via SNMP

LANmonitor uses SNMP to query and display CPU load and memory utilization of a device. Open the menu tree of a device, switch to **System information** and open the branch **Device: …**.



Password protection for SNMP read-only access.

Read-only access to a device via SNMP – for example with LANmonitor – can be password protected. This uses the same user data as that used to access LANconfig. Password protection of SNMP access means that the user data must be entered before information about the device status, etc. can be accessed over SNMP.

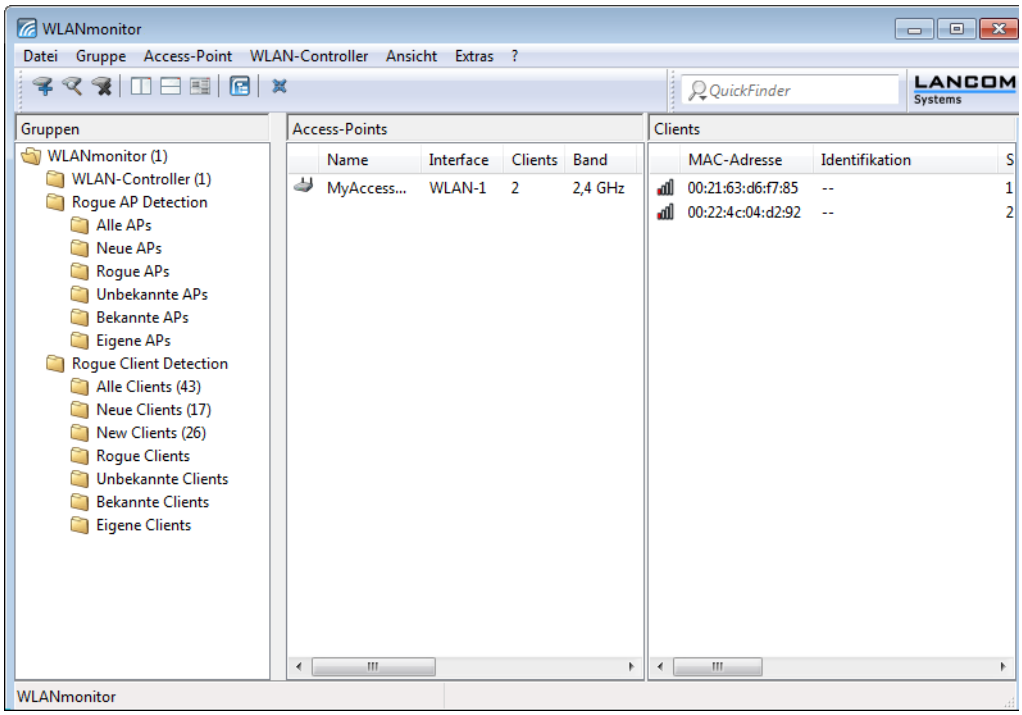
User information can be entered in LANmonitor separately for each device. To do this, click with the right-hand mouse key on the required device, select the **Options** item from the context menu and enter your user data.

Access rights in LANmonitor depend on the rights possessed by the user.

3.3 WLANmonitor – monitoring wireless devices

WLANmonitor is a separate component of LANmonitor. This program is for the central monitoring of the status of a wireless network (WLAN). It provides access to information about the entire network in general and detailed information about individual WLAN controllers, access points, and associated clients. This program also helps you to detect third-party access points (*Rogue AP detection*).

WLANmonitor also provides the option to collect access points into groups. These groups may consist of access points gathered in buildings, departments, or at particular locations. In particular with large WLAN infrastructures, this helps to keep an overview of the entire network.



The program interface of WLANmonitor is divided into three columns:

The left column (**Groups**) contains a number of predefined group folders, which WLANmonitor uses to automatically categorize the different types of devices. You can rename these groups as you like, or create additional groups.

The middle column (**Access points**) lists the access points found by the WLANmonitor. Also display is key information about each access point.

- Name of the access point
- Active physical interface(s)

  Devices with multiple WLAN modules appear multiple times in the list. Each WLAN module has its own separate entry.
- Number of clients associated with it
- The frequency band used
- The channel in use
- The transmission power measured by the device
- The noise level measured by the device
- The current channel load
- IP address of the access point
- The activation status of the *Background scan*

The right-hand column (**Clients**) lists the clients that are logged in to the selected access point. The following information is shown for each client:

- Connection quality as a bar chart
- MAC address of the WLAN client
- Identification or name of the logged-in clients, if these are entered into the access list or a RADIUS server.
- Connection signal strength
- Name of the access point that the client is logged on to

- Name of the WLAN network (SSID)
- Encryption method used for radio communication
- WPA version (WPA-1 or WPA-2)
- Transmit rate (TX)
- Receive rate (RX)
- Last error that occurred with the client
- IP address of the WLAN client

If no access point has been selected or if the respective access point has no clients, LANmonitor instead displays all existing clients.

3.3.1 Start WLANmonitor

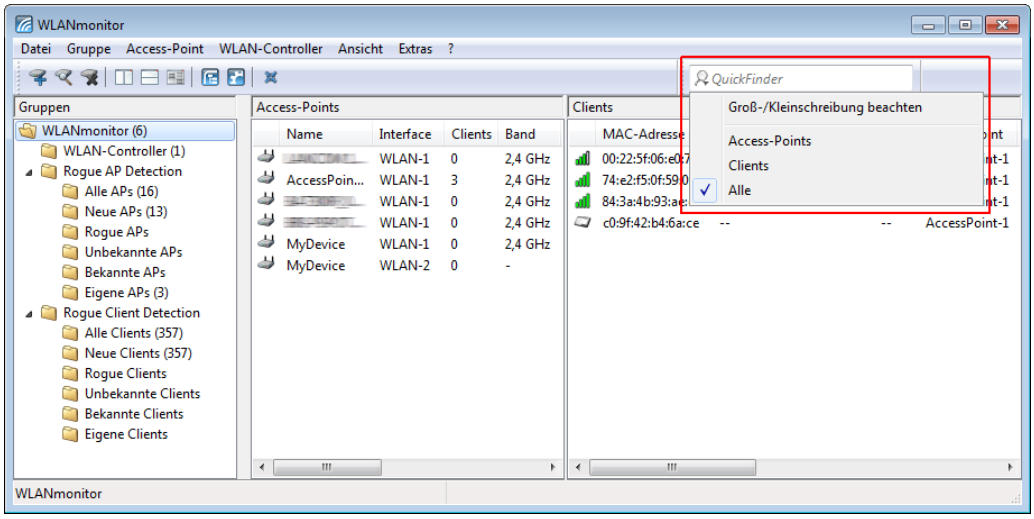
WLANmonitor is a component of LANmonitor. Start the WLANmonitor from LANmonitor using the **Tools** > **Start WLANmonitor** menu item; you can do this via the corresponding button in the LANmonitor toolbar or directly from the desktop icon.

Alternatively, WLANmonitor can be started from the console with the following command: `[installation path]lanmon -wlan`

If you are running LANconfig, you can also start WLANmonitor by right-clicking with the mouse on a WLAN device and selecting **Monitor WLAN device**.

3.3.2 QuickFinder in WLANmonitor

WLANmonitor includes access points and WLAN clients. Clicking on the magnifying glass on the left side of the search window opens a context menu to select the type of search. Depending on the application you can search for access points only, clients only, or all entries.



3.3.3 Rogue detection

WLANmonitor enables you to detect so-called "rogue access points (APs)" and "rogue clients" in your network. WLAN devices that make unauthorized attempts at accessing a WLAN by posing as an access point or client are called rogues.

- **Rogue clients** are computers equipped with WLAN adapters that are located within the range of a WLAN and attempt to log on to one of the access points in order, for example, to use the Internet connection or gain access to secured areas on the network.
- **Rogue APs** are access points that, for example, a company's employees connect to the network without the knowledge or permission of the system administrators, thereby consciously or unconsciously making the network vulnerable to

potential attackers via unsecured WLAN access. Not quite as dangerous, but disruptive all the same are access points that belong to third-party networks yet are within the range of the local WLAN. If such devices also use the same SSID and channel as the local AP (default settings), then local clients could attempt to log on to external networks.

Unidentified access points within the range of the local network frequently pose a possible threat and security gap. At the very least they are a disturbance, and so they need to be identified to decide whether further measures in securing the local network need to be introduced. Information about the clients within range of your network is automatically stored to an internal table in the access point. Once activated, **background scans** record neighboring access points and list them to the scan table. Also see the chapter *Enabling background scans for access points* on page 264.

WLANmonitor conveniently processes this information by dividing the access points and clients into categories such as 'Known', 'Unknown' or 'Rogue'.

The group "Rogue AP detection"

WLANmonitor organizes any rogue access points into the following pre-defined (sub) groups:

- **All APs**: Contains the overview of the APs in all of the scanned WLANs and thus represents the superset of all subsequent groups. The APs are colored according to their grouping.
- **New APs**: Contains new unknown and unconfigured WLANs. The relevant APs are yellow in color.
- **Rogue APs**: Contains WLANs that are identified as rogue and require immediate observation. The relevant APs are red in color.
- **Unknown APs**: Contains WLANs that require further investigation. The relevant APs are gray in color.
- **Known APs**: Contains WLANs that pose no risk. The relevant APs are gray in color.
- **Own APs**: Contains new affiliated WLANs from APs monitored by WLAN monitor. The relevant APs are green in color.

If a parameter is changed on an AP, e.g. the security settings, then it is displayed again as a newly discovered AP.

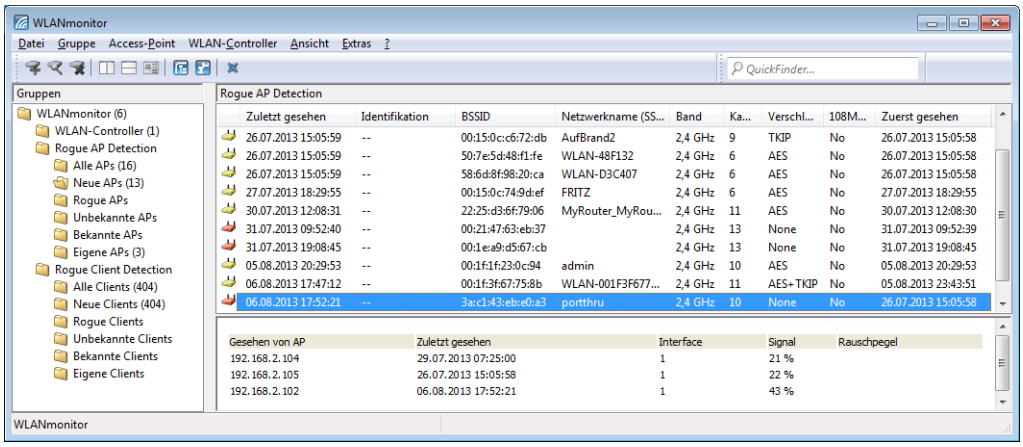
Within each group, WLANmonitor displays the following information about the rogue APs:

- Time of first and last detection
- Name of the AP (identification)
- MAC address of the AP for this WLAN (BSSID)
- Name of the WLAN (SSID)
- The frequency band used
- The channel in use
- Encryption method used for radio communication
- Use of the 108 Mbps mode

When you click a list entry, WLANmonitor displays the following details:

- IP addresses of the APs scanned by the WLAN in question
- The time when last seen or of the last scan
- WLAN interface used to perform the scan
- Signal strength of WLAN reception by the APs
- Noise level

You have the option to move the found WLANs into an appropriate group depending on their status. You can set up your own network groups within the individual groups by using the context menu (right mouse button), with the exception of the group **All APs**.



The group "Rogue client detection"

WLANmonitor organizes any rogue clients into the following pre-defined (sub) groups:

- **All clients**: Contains the overview of all discovered clients and thus represents the superset of all subsequent groups. The clients are colored according to their grouping.
- **New clients**: Contains new unknown clients. The relevant clients are yellow in color.
- **Rogue clients**: Contains clients that are identified as rogue and require immediate observation. The relevant clients are red in color.
- **Unknown clients**: Contains clients that require further investigation. The relevant clients are gray in color.
- **Known clients**: Contains clients that pose no risk. The relevant clients are gray in color.
- **Own clients**: Contains new own clients associated with access points being observed by the WLANmonitor. The relevant clients are green in color.

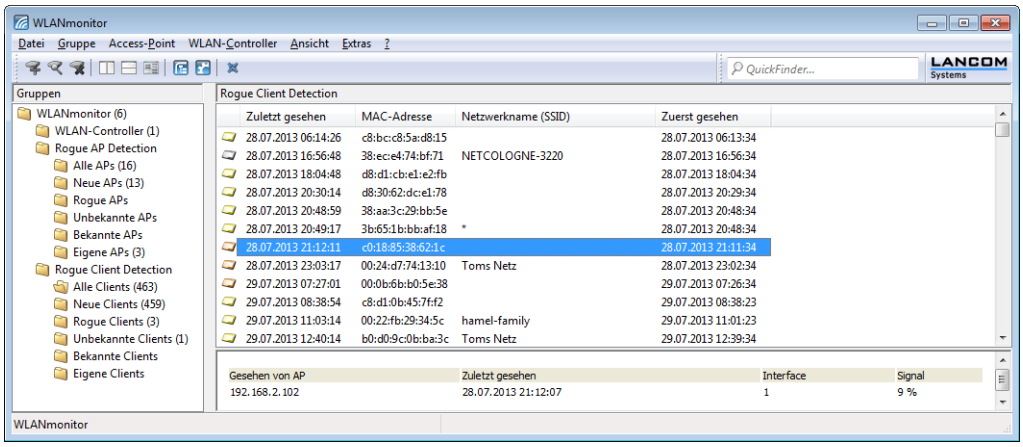
Within each group, WLANmonitor displays the following information about the rogue clients:

- Time of first and last detection
- MAC address of the client
- Name of the WLAN network (SSID)

When you click a list entry, WLANmonitor displays the following details:

- IP address of the access point that saw the client
- Time when last seen
- WLAN interface used to discover the client
- Signal strength with which the APs received the WLAN network

You have the option to move the found clients into an appropriate group depending on their status. You can set up your own network groups within the individual groups by using the context menu (right mouse button), with the exception of the group **All clients**.



3.3.4 The menu structure in WLANmonitor

The menu bar helps you to manage WLAN devices and their configurations, and you can customize the appearance and functioning of LANconfig.

File

This menu item stops LANmonitor.

Exit

Closes and terminates WLANmonitor.

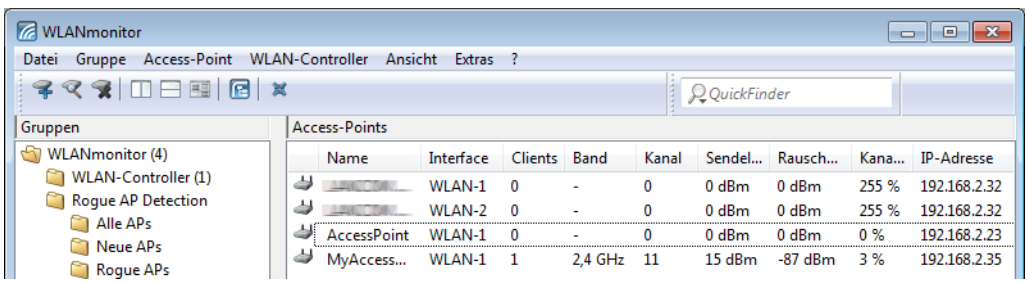
Group

Groups are edited with the following functions:

- Add group
- Delete group
- Rename group

WLANmonitor lets you organize all of the available access points in a manner that is independent of their physical location. This helps to maintain an overview of the network and is particularly useful when localizing problems. Further, WLAN information can be called up according to the groups. You can group your access points according to their departments, locations or applications (e.g. public hotspot), for example.

The groups are shown in the left column in WLANmonitor. Starting from the top group 'WLANmonitor', you can use the menu item **File** > **Add group** to create new sub-groups and so build up a structure. Access points found during a search are assigned to the currently selected group in the group tree.



Access points that have been recognized already can be moved to the another group with drag and drop.

The allocation of access points and clients is made easier by marking a device with the mouse. The counterpart(s) will then be marked in the linked list as well:

- If an access point is marked in the access point list, all of the clients logged in to this device will also be marked in the client list.
- If a client is marked in the client list, the access point that it is registered with will be marked in the access point list.

Add group

Adds a group.

Delete group

Deletes a group.

Rename group

This option allows you to change the name of a group.

Access point

This menu item is used to manage the access points.

Add access point

Use this menu item to add an access point to the list if WLANmonitor does not automatically detect it. The corresponding setting options are identical to those under LANmonitor, i.e. **File** > **Add device** > **General** (see *General* on page 182).

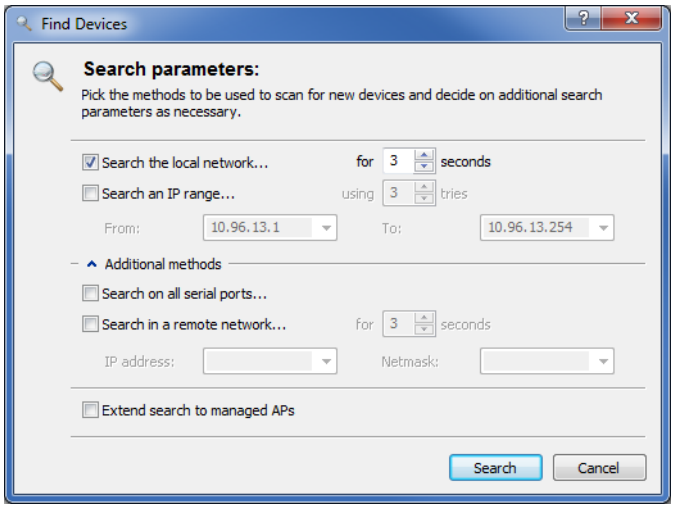
If you save the username and password permanently, any user who is permitted to run WLANmonitor also has access to the device.

Delete access point

Removes the selected access point from the list.

Find access points

This menu item triggers an automatic search for available access points in the network.



Select where you wish to search for devices:

- Search in the local network
- Search in a remote network

  If you wish to search in a remote network you must specify its address and the relevant network mask.
- If necessary, you can extend the search to managed access points (APs).

Click on **Search** to start the search. Any devices found will be added to the list automatically.

If a device is found that is already in the list, it will not be included in the list a second time. For this reason fewer devices may be added to the list than were reported during the search operation.

Refresh all access points

Refreshes the list of all access points.

Refresh display

Updates the information displayed for the selected access point.

Properties

Use this item to display the properties of the selected access point. The corresponding setting options are identical to those under LANmonitor, i.e. **File** > **Add device** > **General** (see *General* on page 182). This page also contains further information about the manufacturer and device.

If you save the username and password permanently, any user who is permitted to run WLANmonitor also has access to the device.

WLAN controller

This menu item is used to manage the WLAN controllers in your network.

Add WLAN controller

Under **Groups**, click the **WLAN controller** folder and then select the menu item in the menu bar **Add WLAN controller** in order to add a WLAN controller that WLANmonitor did not automatically detect. The corresponding setting options are identical to those under LANmonitor, i.e. **File** > **Add device** > **General** (see *General* on page 182).

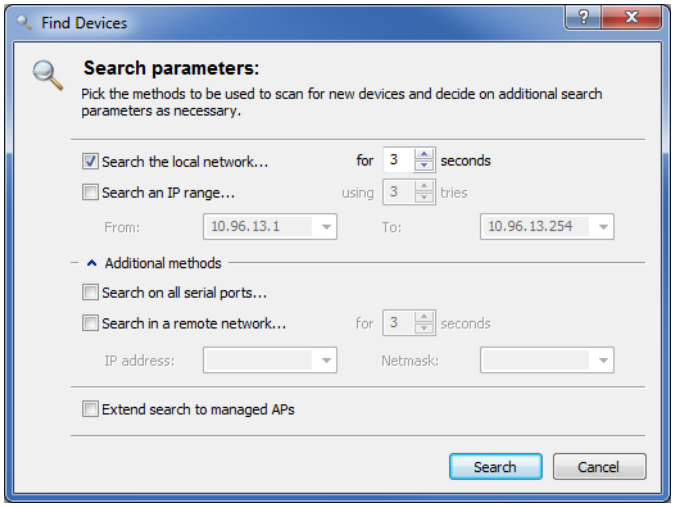
If you save the username and password permanently, any user who is permitted to run WLANmonitor also has access to the device.

Delete WLAN controller

Deletes the selected WLAN controller.

Find WLAN controller

This menu item triggers an automatic search for available WLAN controllers in the network.



Select where you wish to search for devices:

- Search in the local network
- Search in a remote network

  If you wish to search in a remote network you must specify its address and the relevant network mask.
- If necessary, you can extend the search to managed access points (APs).

Click on **Search** to start the search. Any devices found will be added to the list automatically.

If a device is found that is already in the list, it will not be included in the list a second time. For this reason fewer devices may be added to the list than were reported during the search operation.

Refresh all WLAN controllers

Refreshes the list of all WLAN controllers.

Refresh display

Updates the information displayed for the selected WLAN controller.

Properties

Use this item to display the properties of the selected WLAN controller. The corresponding setting options are identical to those under LANmonitor, i.e. **File** > **Add device** > **General** (see *General* on page 182). This page also contains further information about the manufacturer and device.

If you save the username and password permanently, any user who is permitted to run WLANmonitor also has access to the device.

View

This menu item is used to customize the behavior of the WLANmonitor graphical user interface.

Show status in systray

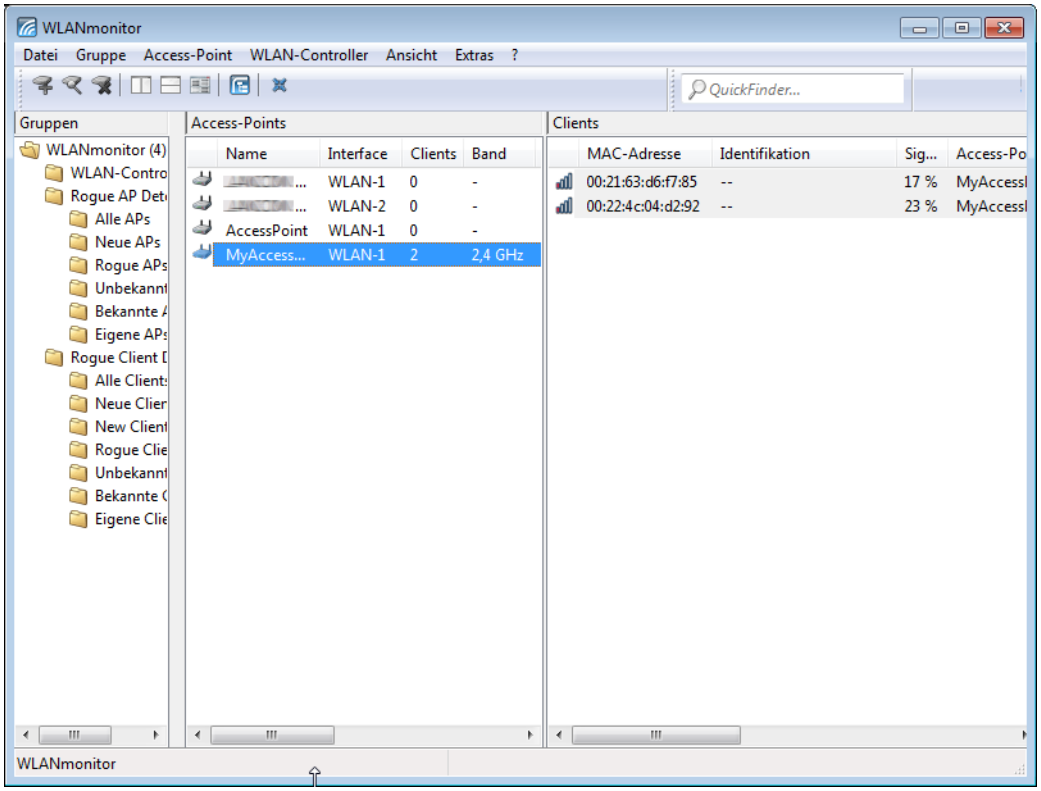
Shows the icon in the system tray.

Minimize WLANmonitor to systray

If you enable this setting, WLANmonitor is moved to the systray instead of the taskbar when minimized.

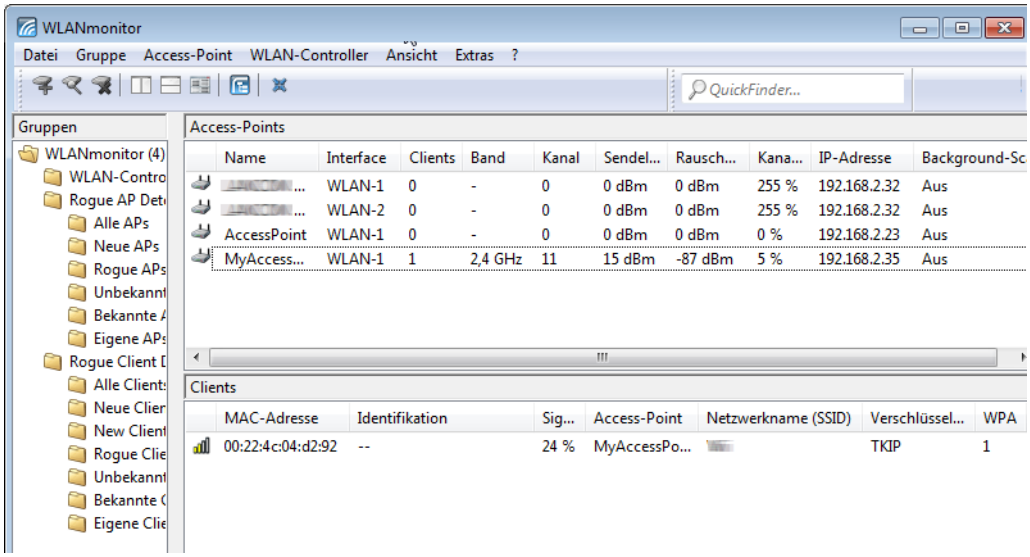
Windows adjust vertical

Adjusts the windows vertically, i.e. so that the lists for access points and clients are displayed next to each other.



Windows adjust horizontal

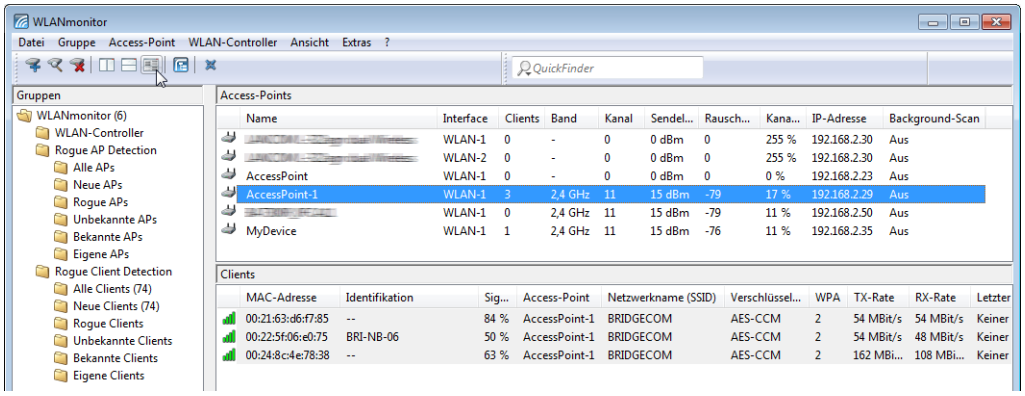
Aligns the windows horizontally, i.e. so that the lists for access points and clients are displayed one above the other.



Mark or filter rows

Use this option to filter the list of access points or clients for display.

- Select an access point and go to the option **View** > **Mark or filter rows**. The list of clients now contains only those clients associated with the selected access point.
- Mark one of the clients and click on the option **View** > **Mark or filter rows**. The list of access points now shows only the access point with which the selected client is associated.



Toolbar

Hides or displays the toolbar. Please also refer to *The toolbar in LANmonitor* on page 244.

Status bar

Hides or displays the toolbar.

Tools

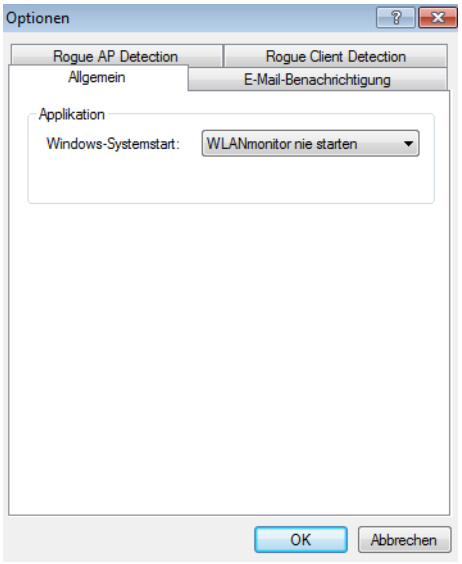
This menu item is used to start the other program components of LANtools and to configure the behavior of WLANmonitor, for example when it discovers unknown or unconfigured access points.

Options

With this menu item, you perform the program-related settings for WLANmonitor.

General

This dialog contains the general settings for the program.



Windows system startup

WLANconfig can be automatically started when the operating system starts. The following **Windows startup** types are available:

- **Start WLANmonitor never**

  The application does not start automatically with the operating system, and it has to be started manually.

- **Start WLANmonitor always**

  The application always starts automatically after Windows starts successfully.

- **Start WLANmonitor like last time**

  The application starts in the same status as when Windows was shut down the last time. If the application was active then it will be started again; if inactive, it will not be automatically restarted.

When changing to a setting that enables the application to be started automatically, a change is made to the operating system's registry. Firewalls applications on the computer or the operating system itself (Windows XP, Windows Vista or Windows 7) may interpret this change as an attack and may issue a warning or even prevent the entry from being made. In order to allow the desired startup behavior, you can ignore these warnings and allow the changes to be made.

Dialog language

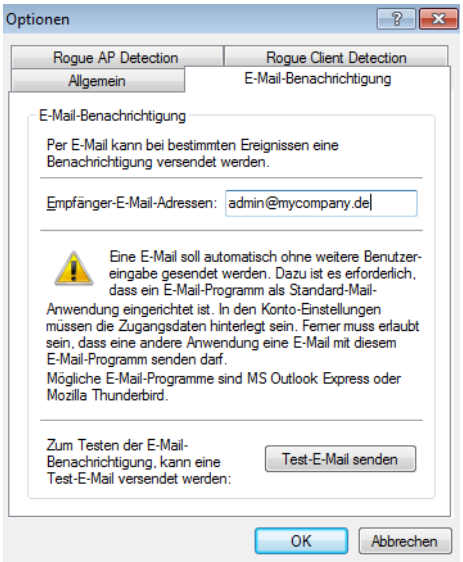
This item changes the language of the user interface (GUI). The language is usually selected based on the language of the operating system.

The application must be restarted in order for the language setting to take effect.

This setting is available only in Windows versions up to XP. As of Vista, WLANmonitor uses the language setting in LANconfig.

E-mail notification

This dialog contains the settings for the alert function in WLANmonitor.



WLANmonitor can inform the administrator automatically via e-mail whenever an unknown or unconfigured access point is discovered. Activate this option if you would like WLANmonitor to report unknown or unconfigured access points via e-mail.

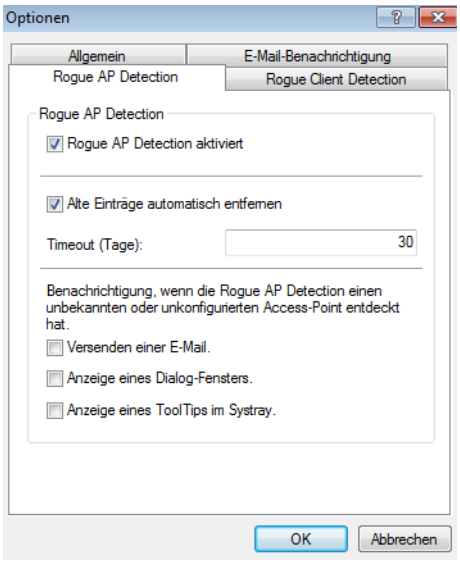
- **Recipient's e-mail address** Enter the e-mail address(es) of the administrators here that should be informed in the event of rogue AP detection. Multiple e-mail addresses should be separated by commas.

In order to send e-mail alerts, the computer on which WLANmonitor is running requires a standard e-mail client (MS Outlook Express or Mozilla Thunderbird) that allows automatic mail transmission to be configured and running.

- **Send test e-mail**: Some mail clients require a confirmation from the user before sending via third-party applications. Test the alert function with this button.

Rogue AP detection

This dialog contains the settings for the "Rogue AP detection". For further information on this feature refer to the section *Rogue detection* on page 251.



The dialog gives you the following options:

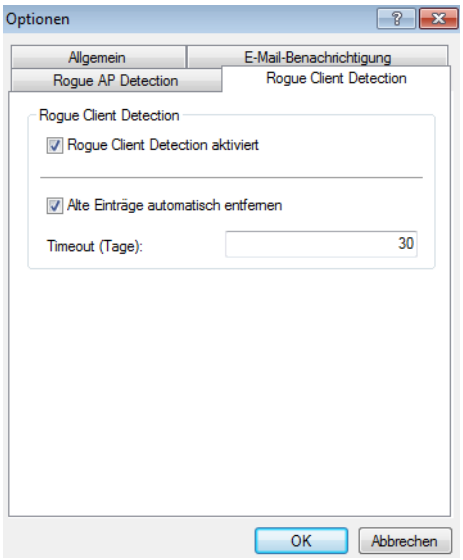
- **Rogue AP detection activated** Activates the automatic search for rogue access points.
- **Remove old entries automatically**: If enabled, WLANmonitor automatically removes entries for access points from the groups that were last seen longer ago than the number of days specified as **Timeout**.

You also have the option to specify how WLANmonitor notifies you of the discovery of an unknown or unconfigured access point.

- **Send notification per e-mail**: Sends a message to the recipient address(es) entered under **E-mail notification**.
- **Display a dialog box**: Opens a pop-up window
- **Display a tooltip in the systray**: Shows a tooltip in the system tray.

Rogue client detection

This dialog contains the settings for the "Rogue client detection". For further information on this feature refer to the section *Rogue detection* on page 251.



The dialog gives you the following options:

- **Rogue client detection activated**: Activates the automatic search for rogue clients.
- **Remove old entries automatically**: If enabled, WLANmonitor automatically removes entries for access points from the groups that were last seen longer ago than the number of days specified as **Timeout**.

Start LANmonitor

This starts LANmonitor. Refer to chapter *LANmonitor – monitoring devices on the LAN* on page 223 for more information on this.

Start LANconfig

This starts LANconfig. Refer to chapter *LANconfig – configuring devices* on page 149 for more information on this.

Help

This menu item offers help about the program and displays information about the software.

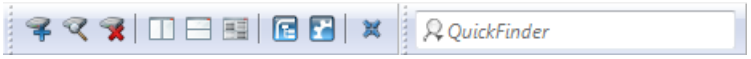
Help topics

This menu item gives you access to the help topics. Alternatively you can press F1.

Info

This menu item shows you which software version you are operating and its build date.

3.3.5 The toolbar in WLANmonitor



The toolbar in LANmonitor provides the following functions:

- Add device
- Find devices

- Delete device
- Windows adjust vertical
- Windows adjust horizontal
- Mark or filter rows
- Start LANmonitor
- Minimize window to systray
- QuickFinder

You can show or hide the toolbar with the menu item **View** > **Toolbar**.

3.3.6 WLANmonitor context menu

Clicking on a device in WLANmonitor with the right-hand mouse key opens a context menu.

The contents of the context menu depends on the type of the selected device: If an access point is marked, the context menu will resemble the **Access point** menu; if a controller is marked, the context menu will resemble the **WLAN controller** menu.

3.3.7 WLANmonitor keyboard shortcuts

Alt+F4	Exit
Ins	Add group
Del	Delete group
F2	Rename group
Ins	Add access point
Del	Delete access point
F3	Find access points
F5	Refresh all access points
Ctrl+F5	Refresh display
Space	Access point > Options
Ins	Add WLAN controller
Del	Delete WLAN controller
F3	Find WLAN controller
Space	WLAN Controller > Options
F7	Tools > Options
F1	Help topics

3.3.8 WLANmonitor application concepts

This section describes various applications of WLANmonitor.

Enabling background scans for access points

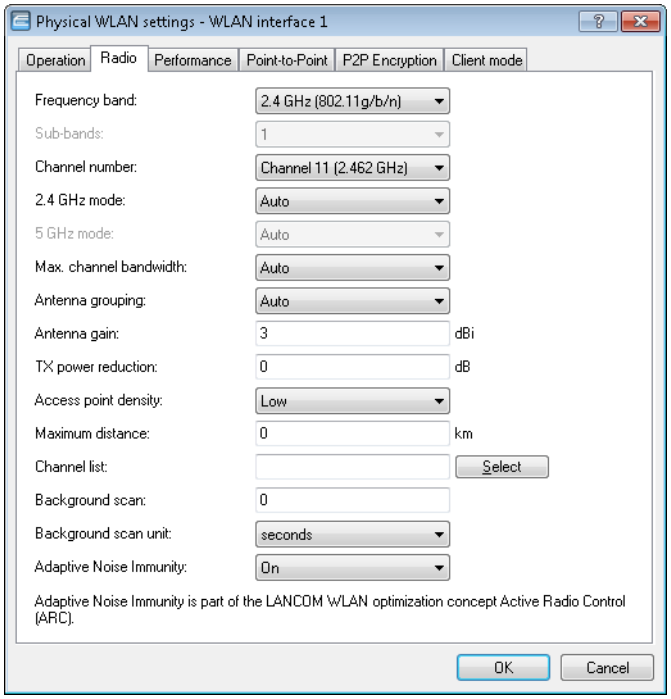
In order to identify other access points within the device's local radio range, access points and wireless routers can record the beacons received (management frames) and store them in the scan table. Since this recording occurs in the background in addition to the access points' 'normal' radio activity, it is called a "background scan". Wireless routers in access-point

mode normally use the background scan function for rogue AP detection. Without the background scan activated, the rogue detection in WLANmonitor is limited to the detection of rogue clients.

When configuring the background scan, you specify a time period in which all available WLAN channels are scanned once for the receiving beacons. The following tutorial describes how to set this time.

1. Start LANconfig and open the manual configuration dialog for your device.
2. In the dialog **Wireless LAN** > **General**, click **Physical WLAN settings.** and select the WLAN interface for which the background scanning is to be enabled.
3. In the dialog window that opens, navigate to the **Radio** tab.
4. Select a time unit in the selection list **Background scan unit** and enter a corresponding duration in the input field **Background scan interval**.

   This scan interval should correspond to the time span within which rogue access points should be recognized, e.g. `3600 seconds`. The minimum meaningful value in both the 2.4-GHz and the 5-GHz bands is `260 seconds`. In the case of 13 possible channels, this value prompts another channel to be scanned each 20 seconds (interval/number of channels).



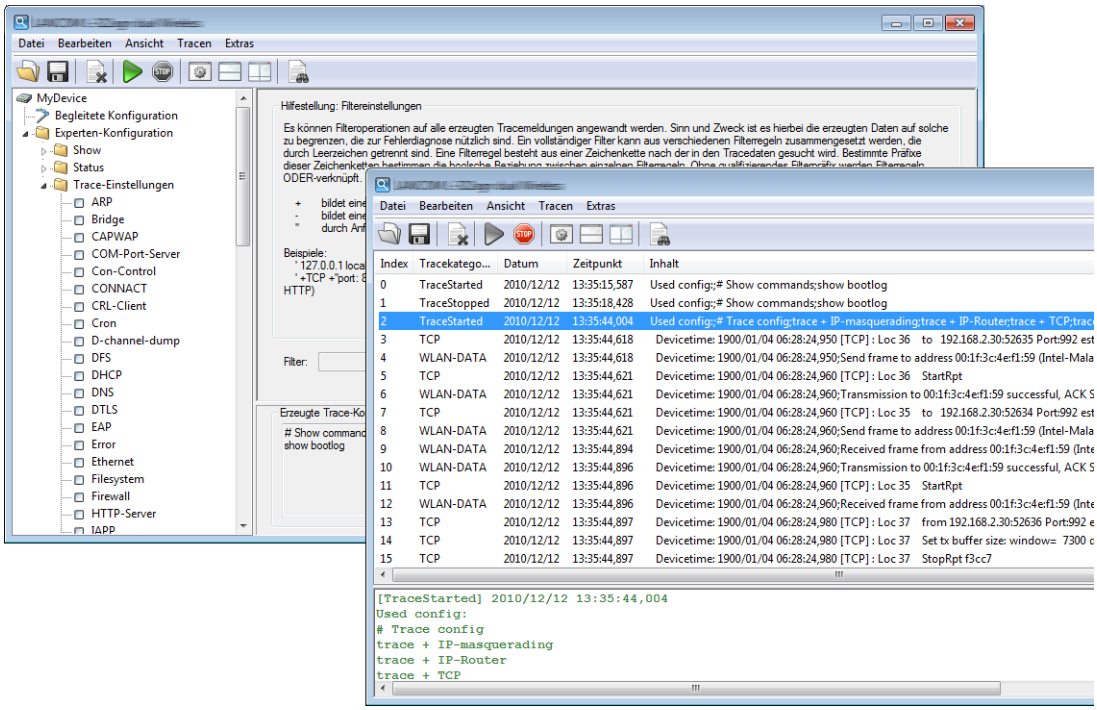
5. Close all of the dialogs and write the configuration back to the device.

That's it! From now on, at the specified scan interval your WLAN device cyclically searches the currently unused frequencies of the active band for available access points.

3.4 LANtracer – tracing with LANconfig and LANmonitor

The trace function in LANconfig and LANmonitor goes beyond the standard trace functions available at the command-line interface and offers greater convenience in the generation and analysis of traces. For example, a trace configuration that activates the relevant trace commands can be stored to a configuration file. An experienced service technician can

set up a trace configuration and provide it to a less experienced user for executing specialized trace requests for a device. Also, the trace results can be saved conveniently to a file for return to the technician for evaluation.



3.4.1 Starting LANtracer

Traces can be executed very easily with LANconfig or LANmonitor. To open the trace window for a device, right-click the device entry and select **Create trace output** from the context menu.

Telnet-access to the device (preferably SSL-secured) needs to be enabled to carry out trace requests with LANconfig or LANmonitor. When starting the trace dialog, LANconfig or LANmonitor first attempts to establish an SSL-encrypted Telnet connection to the device. If the device does not support SSL connections, LANconfig or LANmonitor automatically switches to unencrypted Telnet. If access to the device configuration is password-protected, the access data for an administrator with trace rights is also required.

The **Guided configuration** wizard facilitates the analysis of detailed trace data. The wizard guides you through a number of dialogs, where you simply select the trace parameters for the analysis of certain problems. Once these entries have been completed, the wizard automatic enables the corresponding trace configuration.

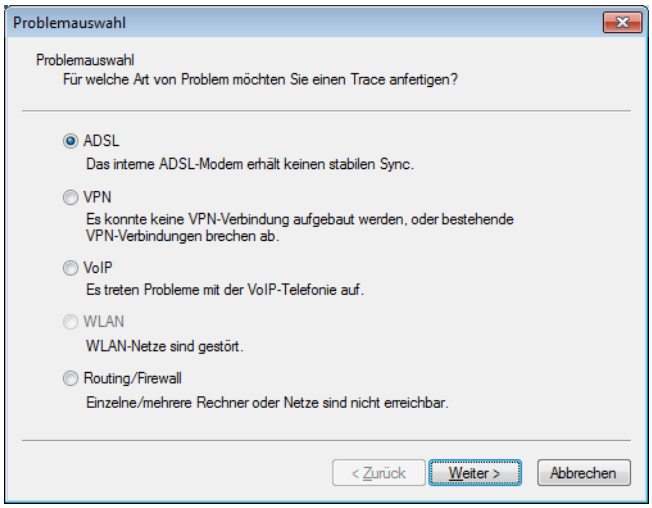
3.4.2 Working with LANtracer

The following chapter describes how to use certain functionalities of LANtracer for outputting and storing traces.

Guided configuration of trace output

As an alternative to the expert configuration of the trace output, LANtracer also features an optional guided configuration. This Wizard simplifies the setup of trace output by displaying a selection of potential problems for which you need diagnostic information. The Wizard then sets the necessary parameters and settings for you in the expert configuration.

The Wizard is started from the left-hand part of the LANtracer window by clicking **Guided configuration** > **Start wizard**. Navigate further by using the **Problem selection**.



Expert configuration of trace output

Going beyond the settings of the **Guided configuration**, traces and other displays can be set up precisely using the Expert configuration. The Expert Configuration is divided into three areas: ***Show***, ***Status*** and ***Trace properties***.

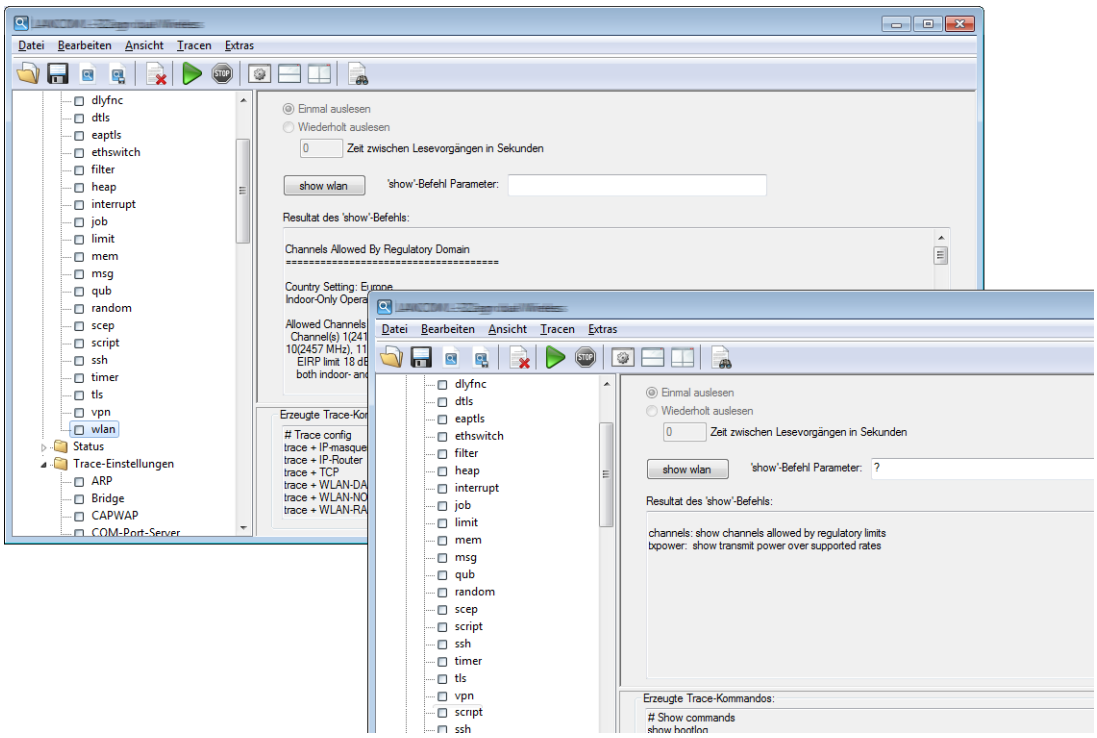
Show

Relevant information can be retrieved from any device type using Show commands, which are usually applied at the command line (Telnet). In the Expert configuration of the trace, this Show command can be invoked very conveniently from the Windows user interface.

- To access the current dump of the Show command (e.g. **show** > **wlan**), click the name of a Show command in the left-hand area of the trace dialog and then the Show button (e.g. **show wlan**).
- Depending on the entry selected you can, or may be required to, specify additional parameters. For an overview of the available parameters, type a question mark ('?') in the input box and click the Show button.

To include the dump of a Show command in the trace data, click the appropriate checkbox to the left of the entry name. Any Show command can be activated to run just once when the trace is started or at regular intervals (set in seconds).

The settings of the Show commands are stored in the trace configuration together with the actual trace settings.



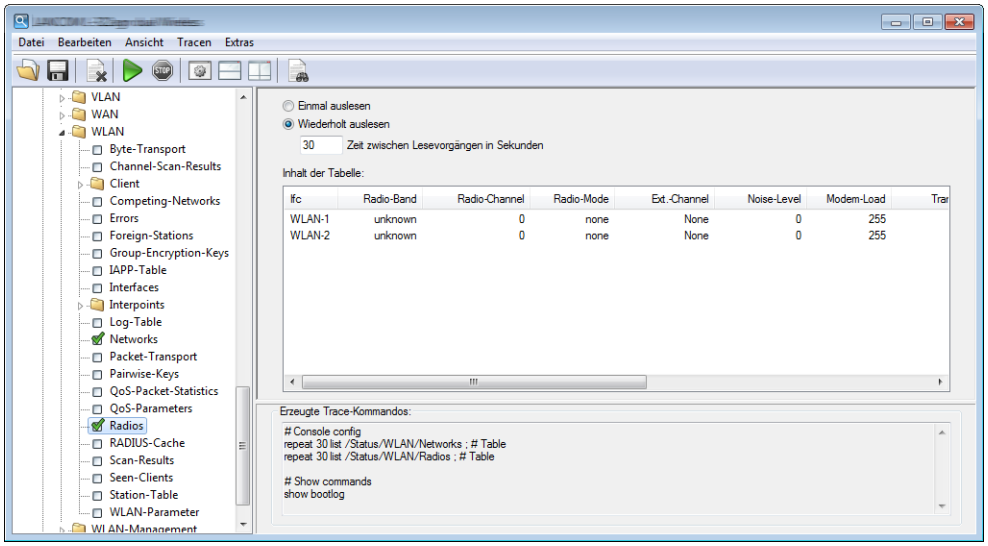
Status

You can access detailed status information and statistics about a device from the command line (Telnet) or via WEBconfig. All of the available status information can also be shown via the trace dialog.

› To display the current contents of the table or value, click the name of a status entry in the left-hand area of the trace dialogue.

To include the dump of a status entry into the trace data, click the appropriate checkbox to the left of the entry name. Any activated status entry can be read-out just once when the trace is started or at regular intervals (set in seconds).

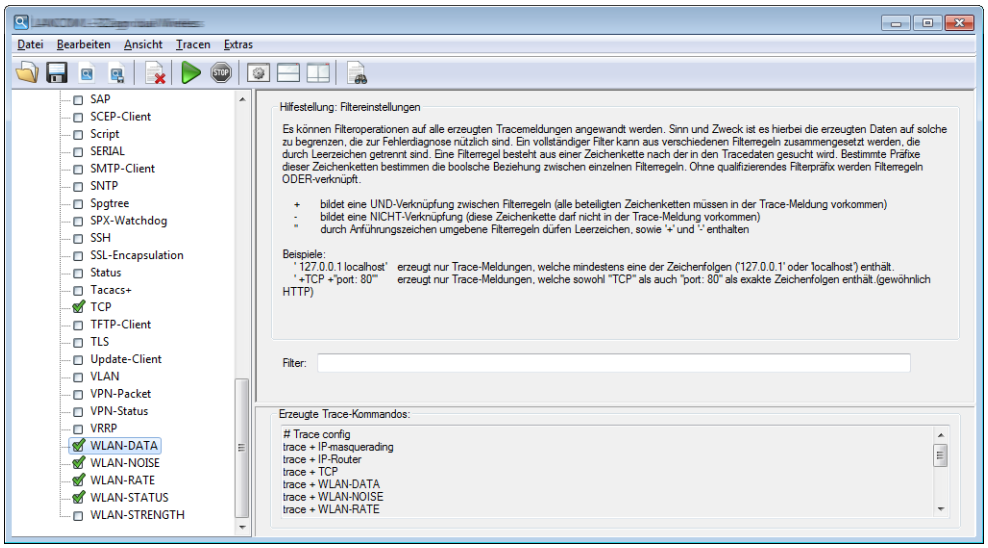
The settings of the Status information are stored in the trace configuration together with the actual trace settings. Similarly, the output of the status information is stored along with the actual trace data.



Trace settings

The traces to be dumped for the current device are enabled in the Trace settings area. To include the trace commands into the trace results, click the appropriate checkbox to the left of its name.

A filter can also be entered for any trace. For example, to display only the IP address of a particular workstation, enter the appropriate IP address as a filter of the IP router trace. To find out more about the filter function, read the section *Filtering trace output* on page 269.



Filtering trace output

Trace output from the command line or the LANtools trace dialog can often be very long, because the trace receives information from the device at a very high frequency. To make the trace output easier to understand, you can apply appropriate filters. The filters use a search function to analyze the trace output and present the desired information only.

In the following example, the administrator activates a simple IP router trace on a device with three Internet connections and sends pings to different destinations. The unfiltered trace output shows all packets processed by the IP router in the device:

```
root@MyDevice:/
> trace # ip-router
IP-Router ON

root@MyDevice:/

>[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:06,430
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET3, RtgTag: 3):
DstIP: 4.4.4.1, SrcIP: 192.168.3.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0015, seq: 0x1cde
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET3)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:06,430
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 11.11.11.1, SrcIP: 192.168.1.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1ccf
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET1)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:06,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 192.168.1.100, SrcIP: 11.11.11.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1ccf
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET1):

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:06,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET3, RtgTag: 3):
DstIP: 192.168.3.100, SrcIP: 4.4.4.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0015, seq: 0x1cde
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET3):

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:06,600
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET2, RtgTag: 2):
DstIP: 3.3.3.1, SrcIP: 192.168.2.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0014, seq: 0x1cea
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET2)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:06,600
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET2, RtgTag: 2):
DstIP: 192.168.2.100, SrcIP: 3.3.3.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0014, seq: 0x1cea
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET2):

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:07,430
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 11.11.11.1, SrcIP: 192.168.1.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1cd0
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET1)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:07,430
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET3, RtgTag: 3):
DstIP: 4.4.4.1, SrcIP: 192.168.3.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0015, seq: 0x1cdf
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET3)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:07,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 192.168.1.100, SrcIP: 11.11.11.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1cd0
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET1):
```

```
[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:07,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET3, RtgTag: 3):
DstIP: 192.168.3.100, SrcIP: 4.4.4.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0015, seq: 0x1cdf
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET3):

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:07,600
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET2, RtgTag: 2):
DstIP: 3.3.3.1, SrcIP: 192.168.2.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0014, seq: 0x1ceb
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET2)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:07,600
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET2, RtgTag: 2):
DstIP: 192.168.2.100, SrcIP: 3.3.3.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0014, seq: 0x1ceb
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET2):
```

The output in just 2 seconds is enough to produce a large amount of data. For a better overview of the output, add a filter to the trace command. The filters start with the @ symbol and enter a search criterion. In this example, the filter reduces the output to that containing the search criterion "Internet1", in order to output only the packets from this remote site.

The filter is not case-sensitive.

```
root@MyDevice:/
> trace # ip-router @ INTERNET1

IP-Router ON @ INTERNET1

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:50,430
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 11.11.11.1, SrcIP: 192.168.1.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1cfb
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET1)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:50,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 192.168.1.100, SrcIP: 11.11.11.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1cfb
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET1):

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:51,430
IP-Router Rx (LAN-1, INTRANET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 11.11.11.1, SrcIP: 192.168.1.100, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo request, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1cfc
Route: WAN Tx (INTERNET1)

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:11:51,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 192.168.1.100, SrcIP: 11.11.11.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1cfc
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET1):
```

Again, the time frame of the trace is about two seconds, but the amount of data has already been reduced significantly. The only data to be displayed is that relating to remote site "INTERNET1". However, further filter criteria can also be specified simply by placing a space between the first and second criteria. As well as a space symbol, the symbols "+" and "-" can also be used as operators. With a "+" both criteria must be met; with a "-" the criterion must not be fulfilled; a space means that one or the other of the associated criteria must be fulfilled. The option to use strings containing operators as a filter is implemented by quotation marks:

If you want to apply multiple search terms, you can separate the terms with the following operators:

- Space: A space before a search term is a logical OR operation. The trace output is only displayed if it contains one of the strings marked in this way.
- +: A plus sign before a search term is a logical AND operation. The trace output is only displayed if it contains all of the strings marked in this way.
- -: A minus sign before a search term is a logical NOT operation. The trace output is only displayed if it contains none of the strings marked in this way.

```
root@MyDevice:/
> trace # ip-router @ INTERNET1 -"echo request"

IP-Router ON @ INTERNET1 -"echo request"

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:12:06,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 192.168.1.100, SrcIP: 11.11.11.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1d0b
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET1):

[IP-Router] 2010/12/20 17:12:07,430
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 192.168.1.100, SrcIP: 11.11.11.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0016, seq: 0x1d0c
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET1):
```

The trace now shows only the entries that contain the remote site 'INTERNET1', but **not** the string 'echo request'. This displays only the responses to a ping as they return from the remote site.

You can use multiple traces simultaneously and filter by different criteria. In the following example, an Ethernet trace is run in addition to the IP router trace to see the packet associated with the ping on the Ethernet:

```
root@MyDevice:/
> trace # ip-router @ INTERNET1 +"echo reply"
IP-Router ON @ INTERNET1 +"echo reply"

root@MyDevice:/
> trace # eth @ ICMP +"echo reply"
Ethernet ON @ icmp +"echo reply"

[IP-Router] 2010/12/21 14:17:21,000
IP-Router Rx (INTERNET1, RtgTag: 1):
DstIP: 192.168.1.100, SrcIP: 11.11.11.1, Len: 84, DSCP/TOS: 0x00
Prot.: ICMP (1), echo reply, id: 0x0002, seq: 0x2654
Route: LAN-1 Tx (INTRANET1):

[Ethernet] 2010/12/21 14:17:21,000
Sent 98 byte Ethernet packet via LAN-1:
HW Switch Port : ETH-1
-->IEEE 802.3 Header
Dest : 00:a0:57:12:a9:21 (LANCOM 12:a9:21)
Source : 00:a0:57:12:f7:81 (LANCOM 12:f7:81)
Type : IPv4
-->IPv4 Header
Version : 4
Header Length : 20
Type of service : (0x00) Precedence 0
Total length : 84
ID : 18080
Fragment : Offset 0
TTL : 59
Protocol : ICMP
Checksum : 24817 (OK)
Src Address : 11.11.11.1
Dest Address : 192.168.1.100
-->ICMP Header
```

```
Msg : echo reply
Checksum : 18796 (OK)
Body : 00 00 00 02 00 00 26 54 ......
 7e c9 6d 8c 00 00 00 00 ~.m.....
 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 ........
 08 09 0a 0b 0c 0d 0e 0f ........
 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 ........
 18 19 1a 1b 1c 1d 1e 1f ........
 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 !"#$%
```

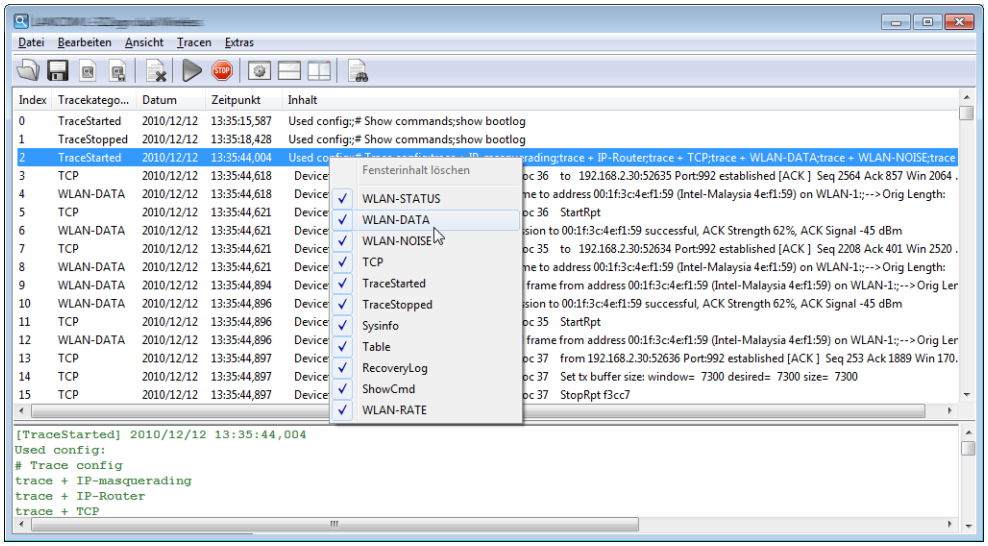
Display of the trace results

To commence the trace data, click the Start button ( ) and switch from the configuration view to the results view in LANtracer. The ongoing trace dumps are displayed in this view:

- The upper section lists the results for the executed trace commands chronologically line by line.
- The lower pane presents the results of the trace command selected in the upper pane. All of the active Trace, Status and Show entries are listed here with their respective filters and parameters. The output contains multiple lines because the results for a single trace command can be extensive.

A right-hand mouse click on a trace event opens a context menu, which you can use to display or hide the individual trace categories by filtering.

Trace data is collected as long as the trace dump is enabled. To prevent overloading the main workstation memory using LANconfig or LANmonitor, trace data is automatically written to a backup file. You set the time intervals and the maximum size of a backup file for LANtracer under **Extras** > **Miscellaneous settings** > **Trace preferences**.

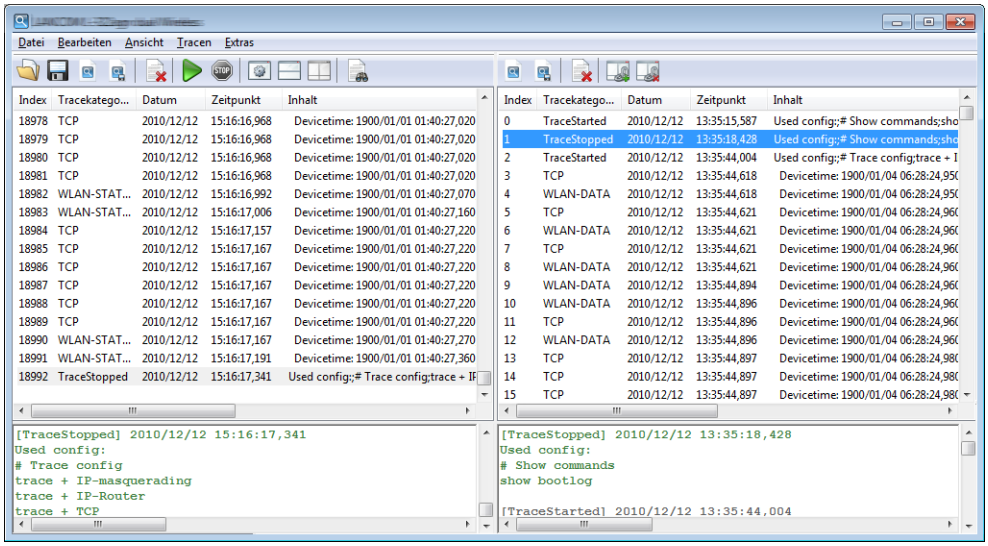


Comparing trace data

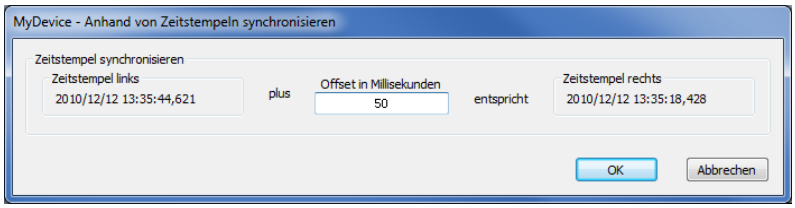
In order to compare the results of two traces with one another, you can display two traces side by side in the split-screen mode.

1. Stop the currently running trace and select from the menu **View** > **Result twin view**.

2. Load your current or previously saved trace data into the empty pane.



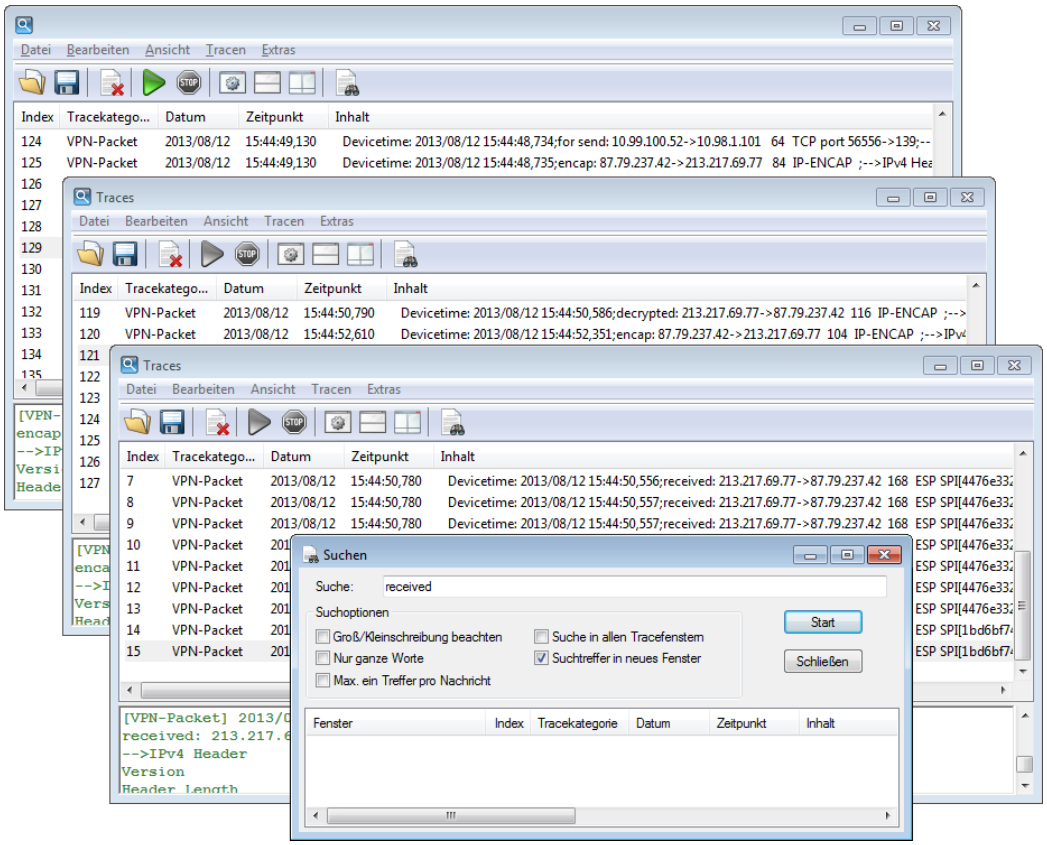
3. Start the time-stamp based synchronization of the two traces with the button. In the following window, enter a suitable value for the offset in milliseconds and start the synchronization.



Cascaded find

You have the option of intelligently nesting your Find queries to perform a cascaded (multi-level) search of the trace results. Do this *before* starting the first Find by activating the option **Search results in new window** and leave the

option for all other searches enabled. You then search successively for the various terms in the each of the recently opened windows, which further refines your hit list.



In order to generalize a query again, or to go back a step, simply close the most recent results window and return to the previous results window.

For more about the **Find** setup options, see the chapter *Find* on page 277.

Backup settings for traces

When starting a trace with LANconfig or LANmonitor, a backup file with the current trace data is saved automatically. Find more about the corresponding setting options in the section *Trace preferences* on page 278.

Backing up and restoring the trace data

For later editing, or for transfer to another user, the actual trace data can be written to a storage medium with **File** > **Save trace data/support configuration** and later re-opened with **File** > **Load trace data**.

Alternatively, you can also use the buttons to load and to save the trace data.

Backing up and restoring the trace configuration

The entire configuration of the trace dump can be written to a storage medium for later re-use or for transfer to another user. Click on **File** > **Save trace config** and re-open it later with **File** > **Load trace config**.

Trace configurations themselves are non-device-specific, so they can be used in combination with any device. Any options, status values, or show commands that are not supported by the target device are skipped during the process of loading. LANtracer emits a warning message with a list of the components of the trace configuration that are not supported by the target device.

Exporting a configuration file for Support

LANtracer optionally creates a special configuration file that you can pass on for support with troubleshooting or other assistance. This file contains the current configuration and further information about the device, which facilitates troubleshooting by employees in Support.

If you do not wish to share certain information, LANtracer has an option to hide sensitive information when saving the file. Find more about the corresponding setting options in the section *Support configuration file* on page 279.

3.4.3 The menu structure in LANtracer

The menu bar enables you to load and save trace configurations and data, start and stop traces, and to customize the appearance of LANtracer and the way it works.

File

This menu item allows you to save and load trace configurations/data, and to exit LANtracer.

Load trace data

This menu item loads the trace data stored in an *.lct file into the results view.

Save trace data/support configuration

This menu item allows you to save the recorded trace data to an *.lct file after a trace. In parallel, a support configuration file is stored to the same directory. This file is identical to that described in the section *Save support configuration* on page 276.

Load trace configuration

This menu item loads the trace configuration stored in an *.lcg file into the configuration view.

Trace configurations themselves are non-device-specific, so they can be used in combination with any device. Any options, status values, or show commands that are not supported by the target device are skipped during the process of loading. LANtracer emits a warning message with a list of the components of the trace configuration that are not supported by the target device.

Save trace configuration

This menu item allows you to save the settings you made in the configuration view to a non-device-specific *.lcg file.

Import trace data

This menu item imports the trace data stored in an *.lct file into the results view. This allows you to graphically process the trace data created from the command line (e.g. with Telnet or PuTTy).

Save support configuration

This menu item allows you to save the settings you made in the configuration view to a device-specific *.spf file.

A support configuration file contains the current configuration and additional information about the device. Because this file is used for technical support purposes and will leave your hands, you can use the *settings for the support configuration file* to hide sensitive areas of the configuration, if you prefer.

Close

Closes and terminates LANtracer.

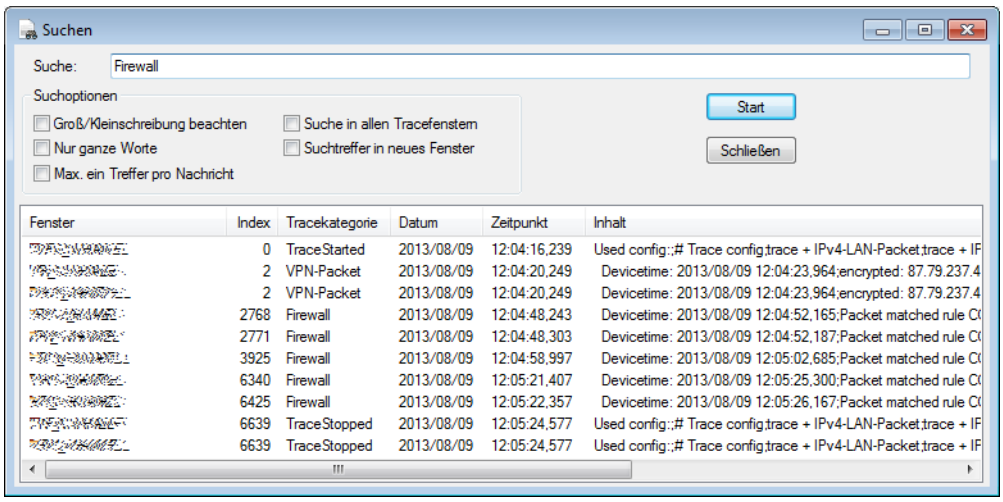
Edit

This menu item allows you to search through the displayed traces or delete them.

Find

This menu item opens the Find dialog, which allows you to search for specific terms in the recorded or restored trace data. As long as no other search options have been selected, this feature performs a wildcard search for the entered search term in all of the available columns. The results window lists all hits containing the entered search term.

In order to specifically search for trace entries of a certain category or with a specific date, enter for example `firewall` or `2013/08/09` and click **Start**.



You also have the following search options:

- **Match case**: Enables a case-sensitive search.
- **Match whole word**: Enables the search for whole words or disables the search for substrings. In this case a search, for example, for `VPN` only returns entries where the term as such is present. Terms such as `VPN-Packet` fall outside of the search pattern.
- **Max. one hit per message**: Collects multiple hits for a term within a trace entry into a single search hit.
- **Find in all trace windows**: Extends the search to all open result windows. Otherwise the search is limited to the results of your last search. Also see the chapter *Cascaded find* on page 274.
- **Show results in new window**: The results are displayed in a new window.

Delete trace data

Using this menu item, you delete the trace data currently displayed in the results section.

View

This menu item is used to customize the behavior of the LANtracer graphical user interface.

Trace results

Switches to the mode for displaying the trace output

Result twin view

Switches to the split-screen mode to display the trace results in two parallel windows (twin view).

Configuration

Switches to the mode for configuring the trace output.

Traces

This menu item is used to start and stop the trace output.

Start tracing

This menu item starts the trace output.

Start tracing

This menu item stops the trace output.

Extras

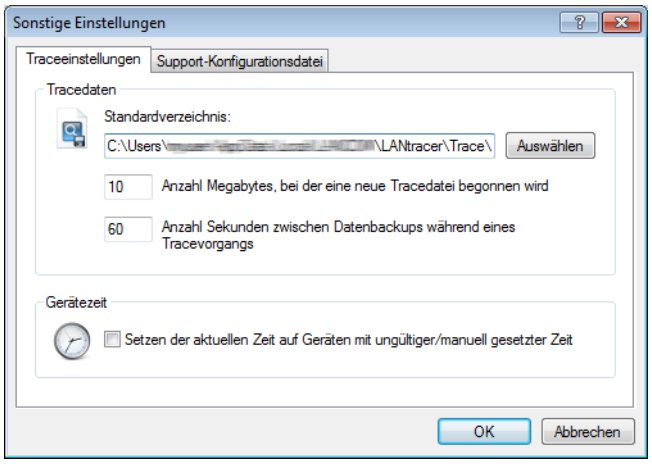
This menu item contains the program-related optional settings for LANtracer, e.g. for automatic logging of trace output or to define the support configuration file.

Miscellaneous settings

With this menu item, you perform the program-related settings for LANtracer.

Trace preferences

This menu item enables you to adjust the settings for the trace data and the device time.



Trace data

When starting a trace with LANconfig or LANmonitor, a backup file with the current trace data is saved automatically. The settings for the trace backup are located in the **Trace data** section. Enter

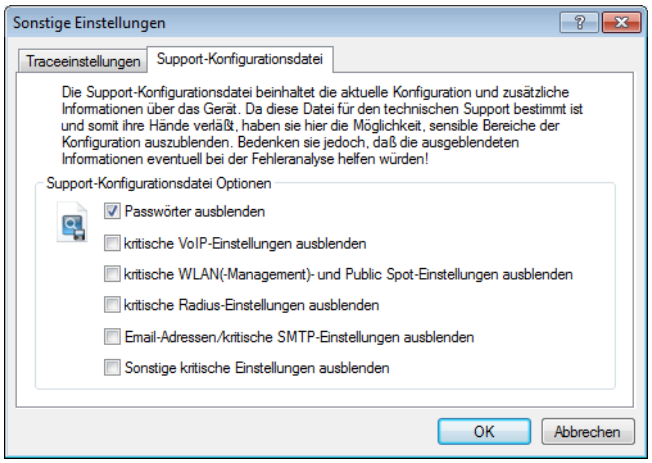
- ... the maximum size of a trace-backup file in megabytes. When this size is reached with an ongoing trace, a new trace backup file is created automatically.
- ... an interval (in seconds) after which the LANtracer stores the trace output to the file.
- ... a directory where LANtracer stores the trace files by default.

Device time

To obtain trace output containing the correct time, enabling this option allows LANtracer to check the device time before running a trace: If the time of the device is wrong or was set manually, it is corrected automatically.

Support configuration file

This menu item allows you to set which content is automatically removed when a support configuration file is saved. The support file created in this way contains all information in cleartext. The file can be opened using an editor and checked for any critical entries.



The following content and settings can be hidden by selecting the individual options. In LANconfig, use the QuickFinder to access the individual identifiers:

› Hide passwords

Dialog or table	Identifier	SNMP-ID
Communication > **RADIUS**	**CLIP password**	2.2.22.7
VPN > … > **IKE keys & identities**	**Preshared key**	2.19.5.3.3
VPN > … > **IKE keys & identities**	–	2.19.5.3.4
Public Spot > ... > **User list**	**Password**	2.24.2.2
Public Spot > … > **Authentication servers**	**Auth. server secret**	2.24.3.4
Public Spot > … > **Authentication servers**	**Acc server secret**	2.24.3.7
RADIUS Server > … > **User accounts**	**Password**	2.25.10.7.2
Log & Trace > **SMTP account**	**Password**	2.27.6
WLAN Controller > … > **Stations**	**WPA passphrase**	2.37.20.4
Certificates > ... > **Challenge table**	**Challenge**	2.39.2.5.3.4

› Hide sensitive VoIP settings

Dialog or table	Identifier	SNMP-ID
VoIP Call Manager > ... > **SIP users**	**Password**	2.33.3.1.1.3
VoIP Call Manager > ... > **ISDN users**	**Password**	2.33.3.2.2.6
VoIP Call Manager > ... > **Analog users**	**Password**	2.33.3.3.2.5
VoIP Call Manager > ... > **SIP lines**	**Password**	2.33.4.1.1.6
VoIP Call Manager > ... > **SIP PBX lines**	**Password**	2.33.4.2.1.4

› Hide sensitive WLAN (management)/Public Spot settings

Dialog or table	Identifier	SNMP-ID
Wireless LAN > ... > **WLAN encryption settings**	**Key 1/passphrase**	2.23.20.3.6

Dialog or table	Identifier	SNMP-ID
Wireless LAN > **...** > **WEP group keys**	**Key 2**	2.23.20.4.3
Wireless LAN > **...** > **WEP group keys**	**Key 3**	2.23.20.4.4
Wireless LAN > **...** > **WEP group keys**	**Key 4**	2.23.20.4.5
Public Spot > **...** > **User list**	**Password**	2.24.2.2
Public Spot > **…** > **Authentication servers**	**Auth. server secret**	2.24.3.4
Public Spot > **…** > **Authentication servers**	**Acc server secret**	2.24.3.7
Wireless LAN > **...** > **RADIUS servers**	**Secret**	2.30.3.4
WLAN Controller > **Options**	**E-mail recipient**	2.37.10.3
WLAN Controller > **…** > **Stations**	**WPA passphrase**	2.37.20.4

› Hide sensitive RADIUS settings

Dialog or table	Identifier	SNMP-ID
Communication > **RADIUS**	**Secret**	2.2.22.4
Communication > **RADIUS**	**CLIP password**	2.2.22.7
RADIUS server > **...** > **Forwarding server**	Authentication server: **Secret**	2.25.10.3.4
RADIUS server > **...** > **Forwarding server**	Accounting server: **Secret**	2.25.10.3.10
RADIUS Server > **…** > **User accounts**	**Password**	2.25.10.7.2
Wireless LAN > **...** > **RADIUS servers**	**Secret**	2.30.3.4

› Hide e-mail addresses/sensitive SMTP settings

Dialog or table	Identifier	SNMP-ID
Firewall/QoS > **General**	**Administrator e-mail**	2.8.10.10
Log & Trace > **SMTP account**	**Password**	2.27.6
WLAN Controller > **Options**	**E-mail recipient**	2.37.10.3

› Hide miscellaneous settings that might be critical

Dialog or table	Identifier	SNMP-ID
Communication > **…** > **PPP list**	**Password**	2.2.5.3
Communication > **...** > **Action table**	**Remote site**	2.2.25.3
Communication > **...** > **Action table**	**Action**	2.2.25.6
Management > **…** > **Further administrators**	**Password**	2.11.21.2

Please consider that hiding sensitive areas of the configuration can possibly complicate the fault analysis by our Support department.

3.4.4 The toolbar in LANtracer

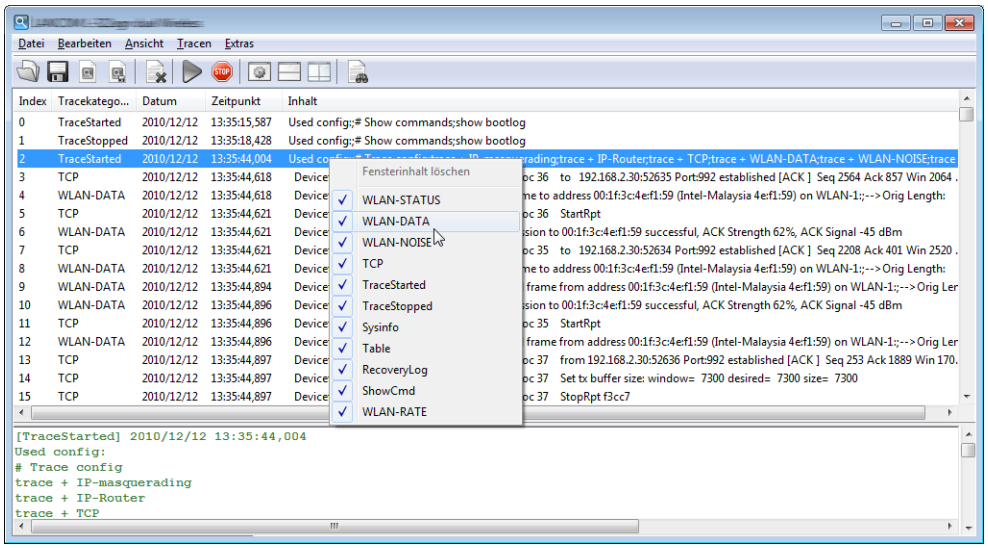
The Trace module provides the following buttons:

Table 20: Icon meanings

	Loads a file containing trace data
	Stores the current trace data for passing on to a user.
	Clears the current display of trace results
	Starts outputting the trace results as produced by the current configuration and automatically switches to the trace-result display mode. As soon as the trace results are returned, the other buttons are deactivated.
	Stops the output of trace results
	Switches to the mode for configuring the trace output
	Switches to the mode for displaying the trace output
	Switches to the split-screen mode to display the trace results in two parallel windows (twin view)
	Starts the time-stamp based synchronization of the two traces in the split-screen display
	Stops the synchronization of the two traces in the split-screen display
	Opens the window to search through the trace results.

3.4.5 LANtracer context menu

The context menu is only available in the results view. Here you can hide individual trace categories as a rough filtering of the displayed results, or you can completely empty the window of its contents.



3.4.6 LANtracer keyboard commands

Alt+L	Load trace data
Alt+I	Import trace data
Alt+S	Save trace data/support configuration

Ctrl+L	Load trace configuration
Ctrl+S	Save trace configuration
Ctrl+F	Opens the window to search through the trace results.
Alt+D	Clears the current display of trace results
Ctrl+R	Switches to the mode for displaying the trace output
Ctrl+T	Switches to the split-screen mode to display the trace results in two parallel windows (twin view)
Ctrl+K	Switches to the mode for configuring the trace output
Spacebar, Enter	Marks the selection box in the Expert configuration
Alt+C	Closes LANtracer

4 Diagnosis

4.1 Trace information—for advanced users

Trace outputs may be used to monitor the internal processes in the router during or after configuration. One such trace can be used to display the individual steps involved in negotiating the PPP. Experienced users may interpret these outputs to trace any errors occurring in the establishment of a connection. A particular advantage of this is: The errors being tracked may stem from the configuration of your own router or that of the remote site.

The trace outputs are slightly delayed after the actual event, but are always in the correct sequence. This will not usually hamper interpretation of the displays but should be taken into consideration if making precise analyses.

4.1.1 How to start a trace

Trace output can be started in a Telnet session. Set up a Telnet connection to your device. The command to call up a trace follows this syntax:

```
> trace [code] [parameters]
```

The trace command, the code, the parameters and the combination commands are all separated from each other by spaces.

4.1.2 Overview of the keys

This code…	… in combination with the trace causes the following:
?	displays a help text
+	switches on a trace output
-	switches off a trace output
#	switches between different trace outputs (toggle)
no code	displays the current status of the trace

4.1.3 Parameter overview for the trace command

The traces available for a particular model can be displayed by entering `trace` without any arguments.

Table 21: Overview of some executable traces

This parameter ...	...causes the following message in the trace:
`Status`	Connection status messages
`Error`	Connection error messages
`ADSL`	ADSL connection status
`ARP`	Address resolution protocol
`ATM cell`	ATM packet layer

This parameter ...	...causes the following message in the trace:
ATM error	ATM error
Bridge	Information on the wireless LAN bridge
Connact	Messages from the activity protocol
Cron	Activities of the scheduler (cron table)
D-channel dump	Traces the D channel of the ISDN bus connected
DFS	Trace on dynamic frequency selection, automatic channel selection in the 5 GHz wireless LAN band
DHCP	Dynamic host configuration protocol
DNS	Domain name service protocol
EAP	Trace on EAP, the key negotiation protocol used with WPA/802.11i and 802.1X
Ethernet	Information on the Ethernet interfaces
Firewall	Displays firewall events
GRE	Messages to GRE tunnels
hnat	Information on hardware NAT
IAPP	Trace on inter access point protocol giving information on wireless LAN roaming.
ICMP	Internet control message protocol
IGMP	Information on the Internet group management protocol
IP masquerading	Events in the masquerading module
IPv6 config	Information about the IPv6 configuration
IPv6 firewall	IPv6 firewall events
IPv6-Interfaces	Information about the IPv6 interfaces
IPv6-LAN-Packet	Data packets over the IPv6 LAN connection
IPv6 router	Information about the IPv6 routing
IPv6-WAN-Packet	Data packets over the IPv6 WAN connection
L2TP	L2TPv2 / v3 protocol
LANAUTH	LAN authentication (e.g. Public Spot)
LCR	Least cost router
Load balancer	Information on load balancing
Mail client	E-mail processing by the internal mail client
NetBIOS	NetBIOS management
NTP	Timeserver trace
Packet dump	Displays the first 64 bytes of a packet in hexadecimal
PPP	PPP protocol negotiation
RADIUS	RADIUS trace
RIP	IP routing information protocol
Script	Script negotiation

This parameter ...	...causes the following message in the trace:
`Serial`	Information on the state of the serial interface
`SIP packet`	SIP information that is exchanged between a VoIP router and a SIP provider or an upstream SIP telephone system
`SMTP client`	E-mail processing by the internal mail client
`SNTP`	Simple network time protocol
`Spgtree`	Information on spanning tree protocol
`USB`	Information on the state of the USB interface
`VLAN`	Information on virtual networks
`VPN packet`	IPSec and IKE packets
`VPN status`	IPSec and IKE negotiations
`VRRP`	Information on the virtual router redundancy protocol
`WLAN`	Information on activity in the wireless networks
`WLAN-ACL`	Status messages about MAC filtering rules. The display depends on how the WLAN data trace is configured. If a MAC address is specified there, the trace shows only the filter results relating to that specific MAC address.
`XML-Interface-PbSpot`	Messages from the Public Spot XML interface

Advanced wireless LAN traces

To support better diagnostics in the WLAN, a number of trace parameters can be specifically adjusted under **Setup** > **WLAN**.

Trace-Data-Packets

The output of the trace messages can be restricted to certain data packets.

Possible values:

Normal

ZERO

Other

Default:

Normal

ZERO

Other

Trace MAC

For the WLAN data trace, the output of the trace messages can be restricted to the particular client with the MAC address entered here.

Possible values:

Max. 12 hexadecimal characters from

0123456789abcdef

Default:

000000000000

Special values:

000000000000: Deactivates this function and outputs trace messages for all clients.

This filter is effective for the traces WLAN-DATA, WLAN-STRENGTH and WLAN-AGGREGATION, but not for WLAN-STATUS.

Trace-Mgmt-Packets

With this selection it is possible to set which type of management frames should automatically appear in the WLAN-DATA trace

Possible values:

Association: (Re)Association Request/Response, Disassociate

Authentication: Authentication, Deauthentication

Probes: Probe Request, Probe Response

Action

Beacon

Other: all other management frame types

Default:

Association

Authentication

Probes

Action

Other

Trace packets

Similar to Trace MAC and Trace level, the output from WLAN DATA traces can be restricted by the type of packet sent or received, e.g. management (authenticate, association, action, probe-request/response), control (e.g. powersave poll), EAPOL (802.1x negotiation, WPA key handshake).

Possible values:

Management

Control

Data

EAPOL

All

Default:

All

Trace level

The output of trace messages for the WLAN data trace can be restricted to contain certain content only. The value entered here restricts the packets in the WLAN-DATA trace to the specified level.

Possible values:

0 to 255

Special values:

0: Reports that a packet has been received/sent

1: Adds the physical parameters for the packets (data rate, signal strength, etc.)

2: Adds the MAC header

3: Adds the Layer-3 header (e.g. IP/IPX)

4: Adds the Layer-4 header (TCP, UDP...)

5: Adds the TCP/UDP payload

255: No restrictions on content. The trace includes the entire packets.

Default:

255

4.1.4 Combination commands

This combination command…	… brings up the following display for the trace:
Display	status and error outputs
Protocol	LANCOM and PPP outputs
TCP-IP	IP-Routing, IP-RIP, ICMP and ARP outputs

Any appended parameters are processed from left to right. This means that it is possible to call a parameter and then restrict it.

4.1.5 Trace filterss

Some traces, such as the IP router trace or the VPN trace, produce a large number of outputs. The amount of output can become unmanageable. The trace filters allow you to sift out the information that is important to you.

A trace filter is activated by adding the parameter "@" that induces the following filter description. In filter description uses of the following perators:

Operator	Description
(space)	OR: The filter applies if one of the operators occurs in the trace output
+	AND: The filter applies if the operator occurs in the trace output
-	Not: The filter applies if the operator does not occur in the trace output
"	the output must match the search string exactly

An operator can be entered as any string of characters, such as the name of a remote station, protocols or ports. The trace filter then processes the output according to the operator rules, much like an Internet search engine.

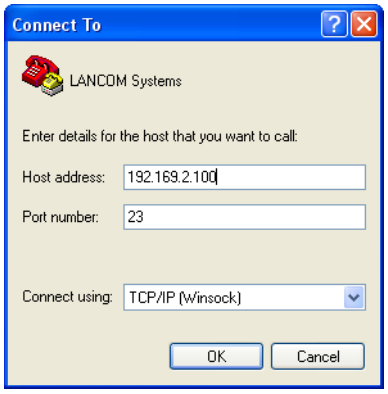
4.1.6 Examples of traces

This code…	… in combination with the trace causes the following:
trace	displays all protocols that can generate outputs during the configuration, and the status of each output (ON or OFF)
trace + protocol display	switches on the output for all connection protocols together with the status and error messages
trace - icmp	switches on all trace outputs with the exception of the ICMP protocol
trace ppp	displays the status of the PPP
trace + ip-router @ GEGENSTELLE-A GEGENSTELLE-B	switches on all trace outputs for IP routers related to remote site A or B
trace + ip-router @ GEGENSTELLE-A GEGENSTELLE-B -ICMP	switches on all trace outputs for IP routers related to remote site A or B that do not use ICMP
trace + ip-router @ GEGENSTELLE-A GEGENSTELLE-B +ICMP	switches on all trace outputs for IP routers related to remote site A or B that use ICMP
trace + ip-router @+TCP +"port: 80"	switches on all trace outputs from the IP router wiht TCP/IP and port 80. “port: 80” is in quotes so that the space is recognised as a part of the string.

4.1.7 Recording traces

Traces can be conveniently recorded under Windows (e.g. as an aid to Support), and we recommend you do this as follows:

Start a terminal program, e.g. HyperTerminal. Enter a name of your choice when prompted to do so.



In the window 'Connect to' use the pulldown menu 'Connect using' and select the entry 'TCP/IP'. As 'Host address' enter the local/official IP address or the FQDN of the device. After confirmation, HyperTerminal dipslays a request to log in. Enter the configuration password.

You record the traces by clicking on **Transmit** / **Capture text**. Enter the path of the directory where the text file is to be saved. Now change back to the dialog window and enter the required trace command.

To stop the trace, click on the HyperTerminal menus **Transmit** / **Stop text capture**.

4.2 Tracing with LANmonitor

You find information about this topic in the chapter *LANtracer – tracing with LANconfig and LANmonitor* on page 265.

4.3 Recording and analyzing data packets

LCOS offers you two ways of recording data packets for the purpose of troubleshooting.

One way is to execute the console command **lcoscap**. This command enables the capture of packets and writes the results to a file that you can open and analyze with a tool like “Wireshark”.

Another way is to use the much more convenient method with WEBconfig. This allows you to specify different parameters and record the data packets of selected interfaces, which you subsequently write to a results file for analysis.

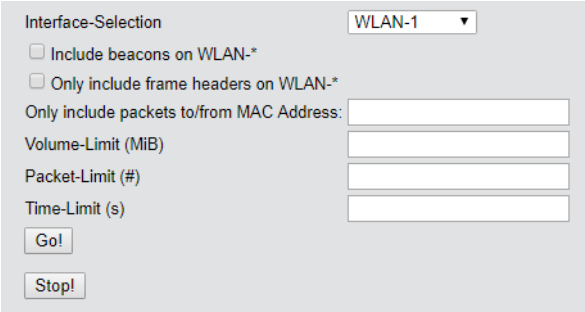
This method offers you several advantages:

- You do not need any special software, because you can run WEBconfig on any Web browser.
- There is no need to input any CLI commands. Instead, you work with a convenient menu.
- If you use WEBconfig over HTTPS, the confidentiality and security of captured traffic is guaranteed.

The LCOScap client is able to connect to the device via IPv4 or IPv6.

4.3.1 Data capture with packet capturing

The **Extras** > **Packet capture** function offers you a simple way to capture data packets from different interfaces and then analyze them with a program such as Wireshark.



To specify the output file the following general menu items are available:

Interface selection

Use this drop-down menu to choose the interface that you want to capture data packets for.

Include beacons on WLAN-*

Enable this option to capture beacon information in addition to the data packets if the selected interface is a WLAN interface.

Include packet headers only on WLAN-*

Enable this option to limit the capture of data packets to the packet header if the selected interface is a WLAN interface.

Only include packets to/from MAC address

If you only want to record data packets for a particular physical address within the selected interface, you can specify it here.

Volume limit (MiB)

Enter the maximum volume of the recorded packets in Mebibytes.

Packet limit (#)

Here you can set the maximum number of packets to be recorded.

Time limit (s)

Enter the maximum time in seconds, after which the recording ends.

After you set the parameters and click on **Go!** you create a file that you can save anywhere and open with Wireshark, for example. After a certain period of time (depending on the connection speed), a window opens for you to save the generated files. You can now save the file locally with the suffix *.cap. By default, the file name is composed of the description and interface associated with the device for which the data packets were recorded (e.g. MyDevice-LAN-2.cap). You can change the name when saving or later.

You can stop a recording at any time by clicking on **Stop!**. This is useful for correcting or adjusting parameters before the data capture.

If you start recording without setting any limits, the device keeps recording the packets until you manually halt the process by clicking on **Stop**.

Flexible WLAN capture format

A variety of different formats are available to you for storing WLAN packet-capture data. **Setup** > **WLAN** > **Packet-Capture**).

4.3.2 Data capture with LCOSCAP

With “LCOSCAP” you have the option to capture and store data traffic in a format compatible with Wireshark. You operate “LCOSCAP” from the command line interface by appending the appropriate parameters.

The following parameters control LCOSCAP:

-o

Target file containing the captured data.

-p

Password of the device for which LCOSCAP captures the data.

-i

Interface of the device for which LCOSCAP captures the data.

If you omit the -i parameter, LCOSCAP outputs the device's interface list.

-b

Switch to include the beacons in the data traffic (WLAN only).

-h

Switch to include the 802.11 headers, although without payload (WLAN only).

-l

Specifies the maximum size of the capture file. If the specified value is reached, LCOSCAP creates a new file. The files are given sequential numbers.

-n

Specifies the number of files produced by LCOSCAP. If the maximum number of files is reached, LCOSCAP overwrites the first file.

--h

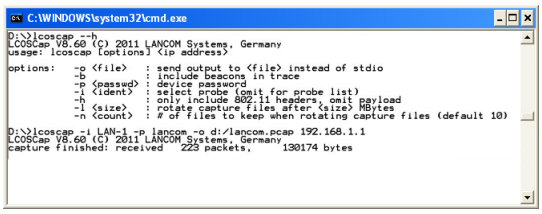
With `LCOSCAP --h` you invoke LCOSCAP's Help function.

Enter the following command to record the data traffic for a device:

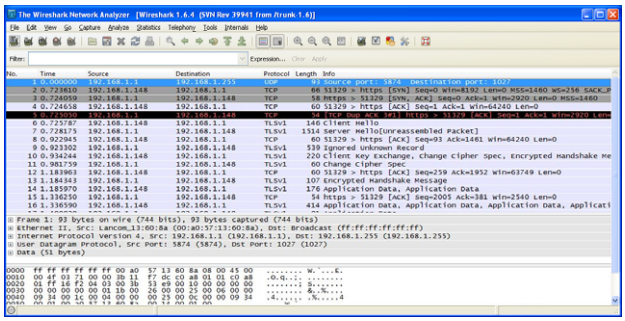
```
LCOSCAP -i LAN-1 -p lancom -o d:\lancom.pcap 192.168.1.1
```

- The device in this example has the IP address "192.168.1.1".
- The password is "lancom".
- You are recording the data traffic on the interface "LAN-1".
- File name and location are `d:/lancom.pcap`.

  Use the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl + C** to stop the recording.



For the analysis, open the file generated by LCOSCAP with "Wireshark".



4.3.3 Data capture with RPCap

The RPCap interface integrated in LCOS allows you to use the packet analysis tool “Wireshark” to capture data packets from any interface of a LANCOM router.

In contrast to data capture with LCOSCap, using RPCap allows the captured data to be analyzed in real time and you can create capture filters.

Please note that a running Wireshark instance consumes significantly more resources on the PC than an LCOSCap instance. For long-term data capture, we therefore recommended the use of LCOSCap.

Packet capture with RPCap has the following prerequisites:

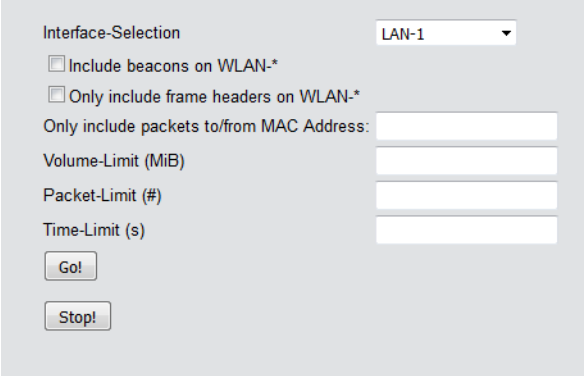
- Current versions of Wireshark and WinPcap under Microsoft Windows
- LCOS version 8.80 or later
- IP connectivity between the PC running Wireshark and the router being analyzed

Activating packet capture with WEBconfig

Proceed as follows to use WEBconfig to capture data packets:

1. Open the router configuration in WEBconfig and switch to the menu item **Extras** > **Packet-Capture**.
2. Select the interface for packet capture (e.g. LAN-1).

3. Click on the button **Go!** to start the data capture.

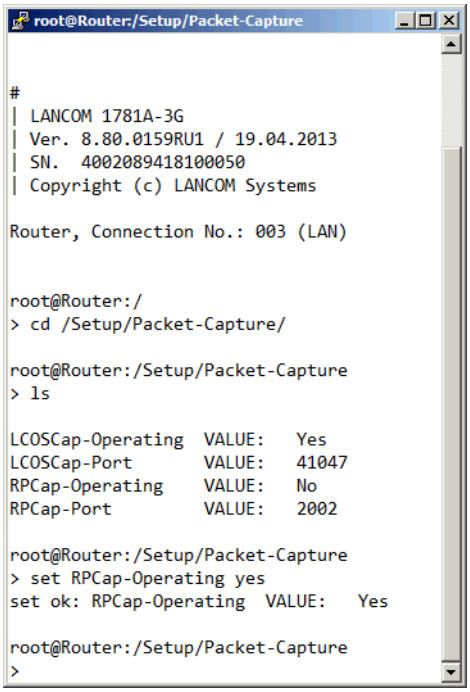


The data packets on the selected interface are now captured. Click the **Stop!** button to halt the data capture.

Activating packet capture from the command line

Proceed as follows to capture data packets from the command line:

1. Start a CLI session on the router from which packets are to be captured.
2. Change to the path `/Setup/Packet-Capture`.
3. Activate the RPCap interface with the command `set RPCap-Operating yes`.



The data packets on the selected interface are now captured. Deactivate packet capture with the command `set RPCap-Operating no`.

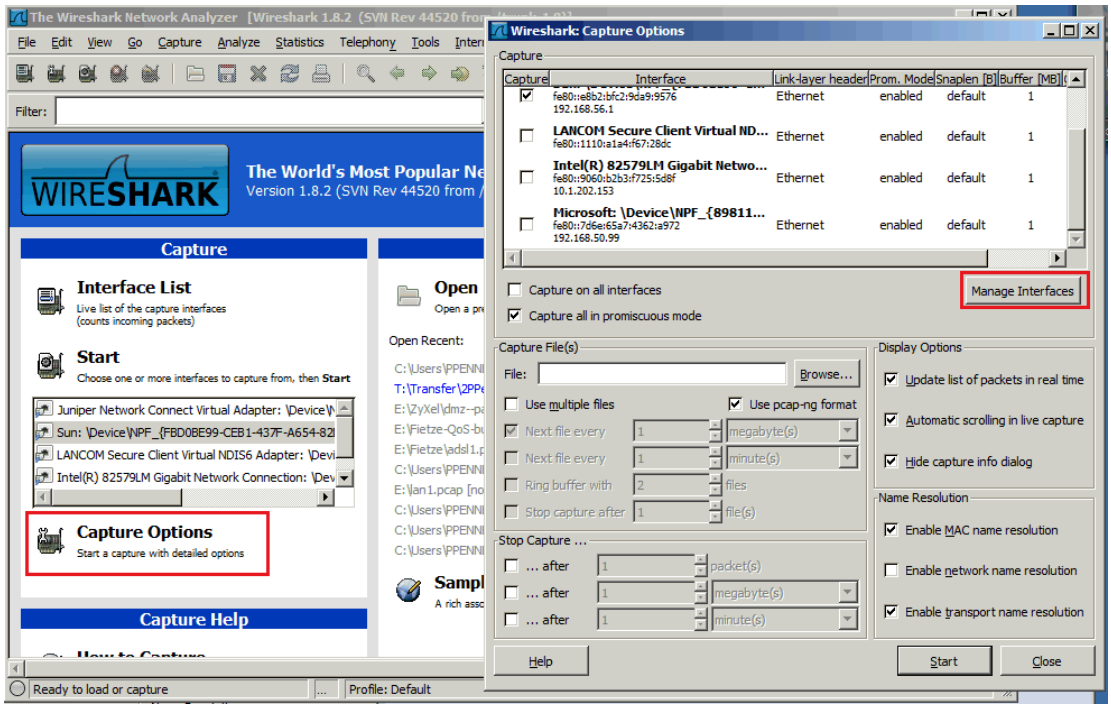
Analyzing captured packets with Wireshark

To analyze the captured packets with the packet analysis tool “Wireshark”, proceed as follows:

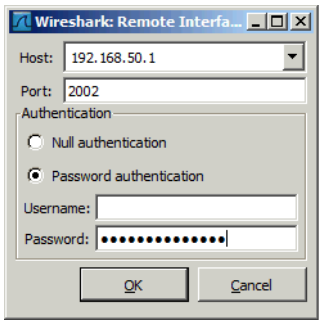
1. Start Wireshark.

   Please note that using the RPCap interface only works properly in combination with the Windows version of Wireshark. This is because PRCap is only supported by the WinPcap driver available for Windows and included in Wireshark.

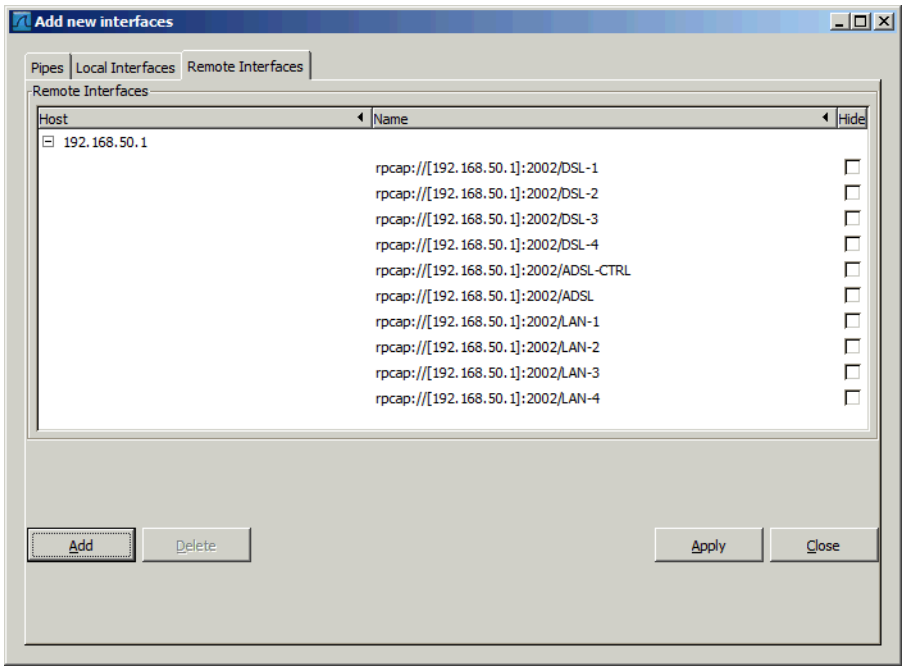
2. After starting the program, select **Capture Options**. In the window that appears, click on the button **Manage Interfaces**.



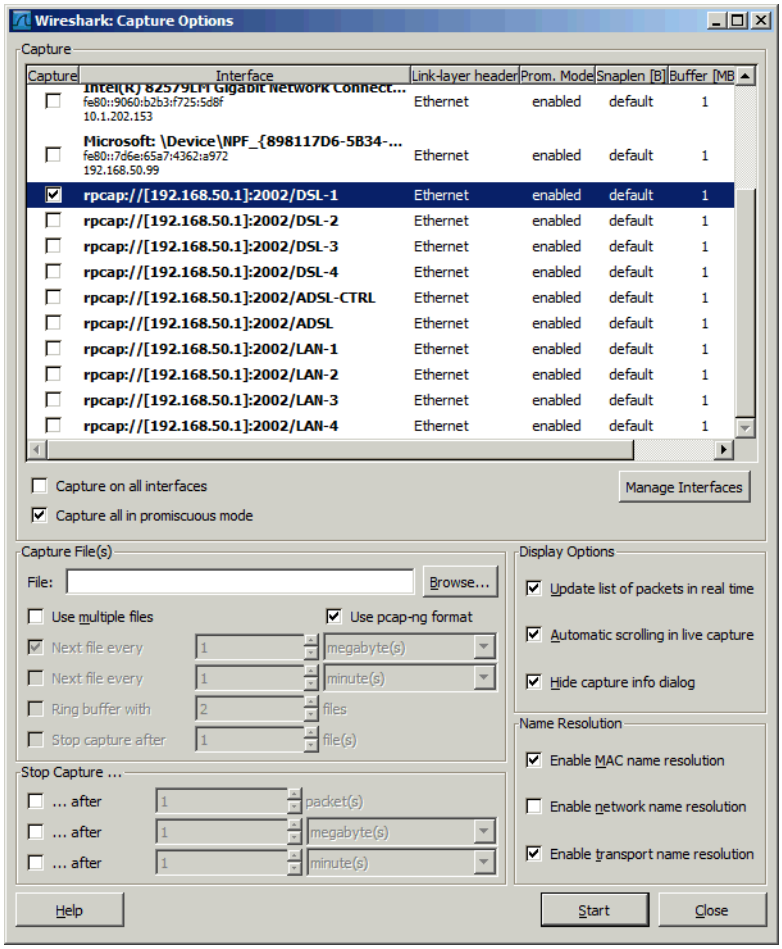
3. In the following window, select the tab **Remote Interfaces** and add your router. The field **Username** can be left blank. Set the password as the **main device password for the router**.



4. A list of all of the interfaces on the router available for data capture is displayed. Confirm the dialog by clicking on **Apply** and **Close**.



5. In the **Capture Options**, select which of the interfaces are to be captured. Now click on the **Start** button.



The packets passing through the selected interfaces are now captured.

4.4 The SYSLOG module

The SYSLOG module allows accessing of the device to be logged. This function is especially interesting for system administrators as it optionally records a complete history of all activities in the device.

A corresponding SYSLOG client or daemon is required to receive the SYSLOG messages. Logging under UNIX/Linux is generally performed by the SYSLOG daemon that is set up as standard in these operating systems. The daemon either establishes contact with the console or writes its log to an appropriate SYSLOG file.

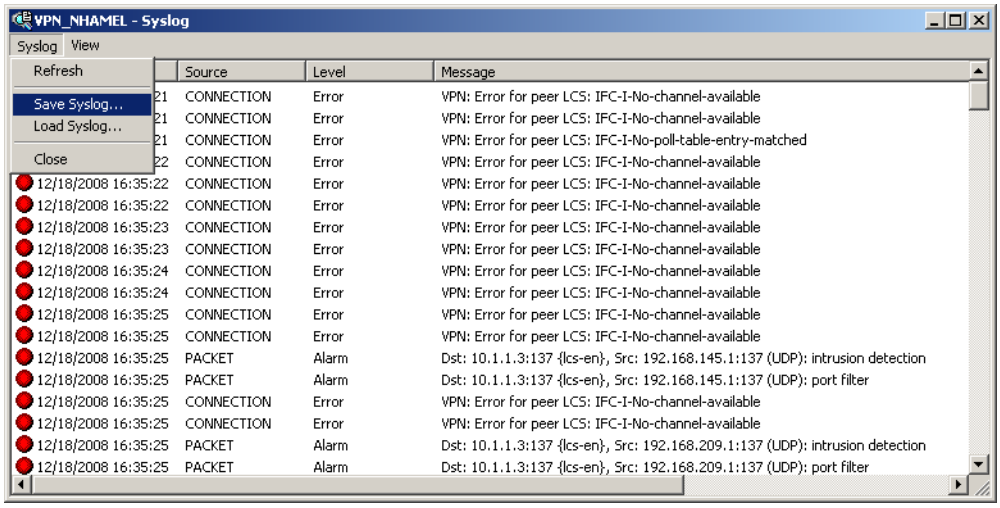
Under Linux, the file `/etc/syslog.conf` contains a definition of which facilities (service or component that triggered the message) should be written to which log file. Please check your daemon's configuration to see if it explicitly listens to network connections.

Windows does not provide a corresponding system function. You require special software to provide the functionality of a SYSLOG daemon.

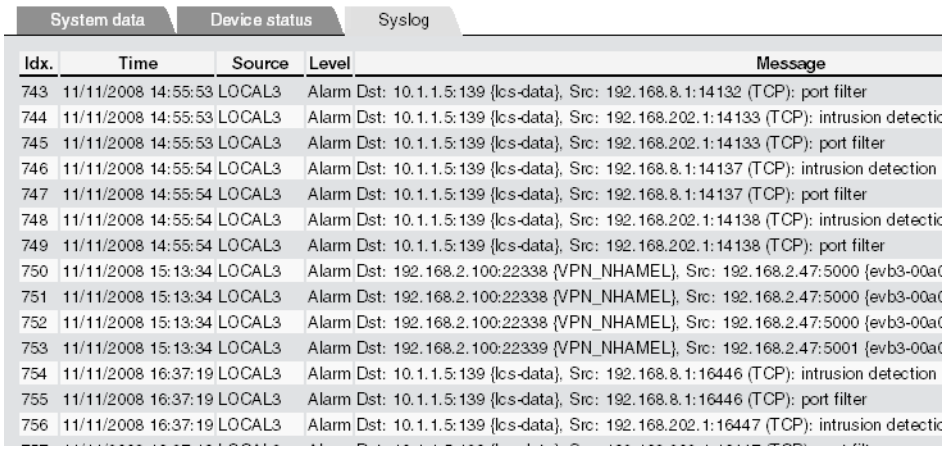
To extend the output of the SYSLOG information over an appropriate SYSLOG client, the most recent SYSLOG messages are stored in the device's RAM. Depending on the memory fitted, this can vary from 100 to 23,000 syslog messages. These internal syslogs can be viewed in various ways:

- In the device statistics via the command line
- In WEBconfig under /System information/Syslog
- LANmonitor additionally lets you export the syslog from the device and save it to a file. Simply click on the entry for the device with the right mouse button and select **View Syslog** from the context menu. A snapshot of the current status is displayed. Clicking on **Refresh** exports a copy of the current syslog and this is displayed in the window. **Save syslog** stores the current display to a file. The content of syslog files can be viewed with **Load syslog**.

SYSLOG messages will only be written to the device's internal memory if the device was entered as a SYSLOG client with the loopback address 127.0.0.1.



Alternatively you can view the current SYSLOG messages on the first page of WEBconfig on the **SYSLOG** tab:



Idx.	Time	Source	Level	Message
743	11/11/2008 14:55:53	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.8.1:14132 (TCP): port filter
744	11/11/2008 14:55:53	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.202.1:14133 (TCP): intrusion detectic
745	11/11/2008 14:55:53	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.202.1:14133 (TCP): port filter
746	11/11/2008 14:55:54	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.8.1:14137 (TCP): intrusion detection
747	11/11/2008 14:55:54	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.8.1:14137 (TCP): port filter
748	11/11/2008 14:55:54	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.202.1:14138 (TCP): intrusion detectic
749	11/11/2008 14:55:54	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.202.1:14138 (TCP): port filter
750	11/11/2008 15:13:34	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 192.168.2.100:22338 {VPN_NHAMEL}, Src: 192.168.2.47:5000 {evb3-00a(
751	11/11/2008 15:13:34	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 192.168.2.100:22338 {VPN_NHAMEL}, Src: 192.168.2.47:5000 {evb3-00a(
752	11/11/2008 15:13:34	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 192.168.2.100:22338 {VPN_NHAMEL}, Src: 192.168.2.47:5000 {evb3-00a(
753	11/11/2008 15:13:34	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 192.168.2.100:22339 {VPN_NHAMEL}, Src: 192.168.2.47:5001 {evb3-00a(
754	11/11/2008 16:37:19	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.8.1:16446 (TCP): intrusion detection
755	11/11/2008 16:37:19	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.8.1:16446 (TCP): port filter
756	11/11/2008 16:37:19	LOCAL3	Alarm	Dst: 10.1.1.5:139 {lcs-data}, Src: 192.168.202.1:16447 (TCP): intrusion detectic

4.4.1 Structure of SYSLOG messages

SYSLOG messages consist of three parts:

- Priority
- Header
- Contents

Priority

The priority in a SYSLOG message contains information about the the message severity and the facility (service or component that triggered the message).

The eight severity levels originally defined in SYSLOG have been reduced to five levels in the device. The table below shows the correlation between the alert level, the meaning and the SYSLOG severities.

Priority	Meaning	SYSLOG severity
Alert	This category includes all messages requiring the system administrator's close attention.	PANIC, ALERT, CRIT
Error	All error messages which can occur under normal conditions are communicated at this level; no special attention is required by the administrator (e.g. connection errors).	ERROR
Warning	This level communicates messages which do not compromise normal operating conditions.	WARNING
Information	At this level, all messages are sent that have a purely informational character (e.g. accounting information).	NOTICE, INFORM
Debug	Communication of all debug messages. Debug messages generate large data volumes and can compromise the device's operation. For this reason they should be disabled for normal operations and only used for troubleshooting.	DEBUG

The table below provides an overview of the meaning of all internal message sources that you can set in the device. The final column in the table also provides the default correlation between the internal sources of the device and the SYSLOG facilities. This mapping can be changed, if necessary.

Source	Meaning	Facility
System	System messages (boot events, timer system, etc.)	KERNEL

Source	Meaning	Facility
Logins	Messages concerning the user's login or logout during the PPP negotiation, and any errors that occur during this.	AUTH
System time	Messages about changes to the system time	CRON
Console login	Messages about console logins (Telnet, Outband, etc.), logouts and any errors that occurred during this.	AUTHPRIV
Connections	Messages about establishment and termination of connections and any errors that occurred (display trace)	LOCAL0
Accounting	Accounting information stored after termination of a connection (user, online time, transfer volumes)	LOCAL1
Administration	Messages on changes to the configuration, remotely executed commands, etc.	LOCAL2
Router	Regular statistics about the most frequently used services (breakdown per port number) and messages about filtered packets, routing errors, etc.	LOCAL3

Header

The header contains the name or the IP address of the device which sent the SYSLOG message. The chronological sequence is also very important for evaluating the messages. Time information is only added to the messages at the SYSLOG client in order not to disturb their chronological consistency due to different device times.

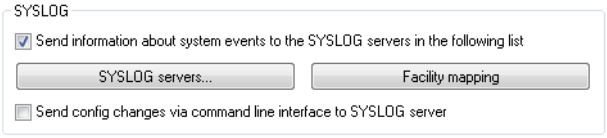
The devices must have a valid time stamp for the evaluation of the SYSLOG messages in internal memory.

Contents

The actual contents of the SYSLOG messages describe the event, for example a login occurrence, the establishment of a WAN connection, or firewall activities.

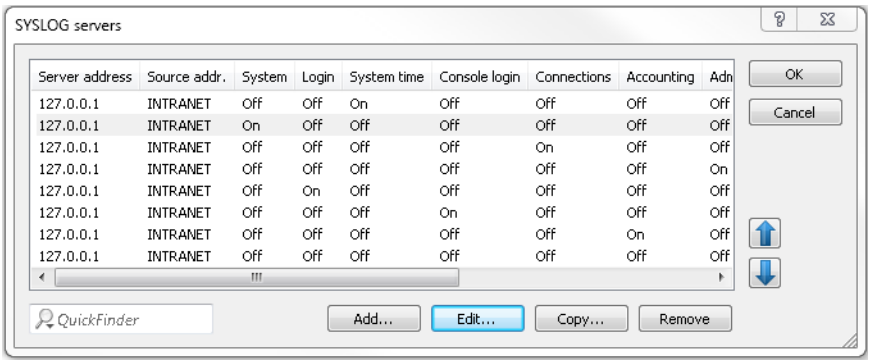
4.4.2 Configuring SYSLOG using LANconfig

For configuration with LANconfig, the SYSLOG module is located under the configuration section **Log & Trace** > **General** on the **SYSLOG** pane.

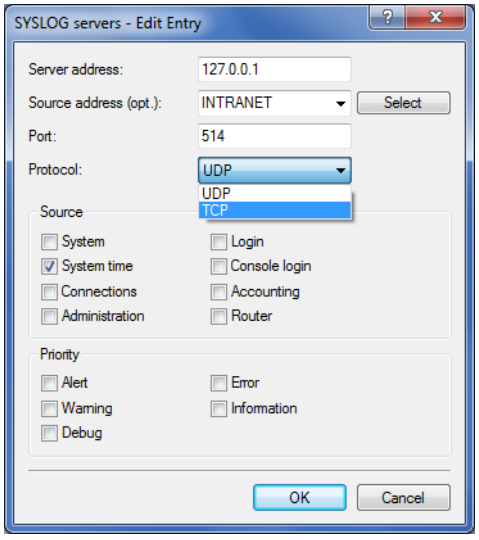


Click on **SYSLOG servers** to see the entries available for SYSLOG.

With the factory settings, the table of SYSLOG entries is set up to display important events which are relevant to diagnostics, and to save these to the internal SYSLOG memory. These settings correspond to the specifications in the UNIX world, where SYSLOG originates from. The following screenshot shows these pre-defined SYSLOG entries under LANconfig:



Click on **Add**, or select an entry and click **Edit**.



Server address

Used to set the IP address of the SYSLOG server. This can be specified as an IPv4 or IPv6 address, or as a host name.

Source address (optional)

You can optionally specify a source address that the SYSLOG client uses as the target address, instead of the one that would normally be selected automatically. If you have configured loopback addresses, you can specify them here as sender address.

Port

Specifies the port number (e.g. 514 for TCP/UDP).

Protocol

Defines the protocol used. Possible values:

UDP

User Datagram Protocol

TCP

Transmission Control Protocol

Source

The table below provides an overview of the meaning of all message sources that you can set in the device. The final column in the table also provides the correlation between the internal sources of the device and the SYSLOG facilities.

Source	Meaning	Facility
System	System messages (boot events, timer system, etc.)	KERNEL
Logins	Messages concerning the user's login or logout during the PPP negotiation, and any errors that occur during this.	AUTH
System time	Messages about changes to the system time	CRON
Console login	Messages about console logins (Telnet, Outband, etc.), logouts and any errors that occurred during this.	AUTHPRIV
Connections	Messages about establishment and termination of connections and any errors that occurred (display trace)	LOCAL0
Accounting	Accounting information stored after termination of a connection (user, online time, transfer volumes)	LOCAL1
Administration	Messages on changes to the configuration, remotely executed commands, etc.	LOCAL2
Router	Regular statistics about the most frequently used services (breakdown per port number) and messages about filtered packets, routing errors, etc.	LOCAL3

Priority

The eight priority levels originally defined in SYSLOG have been reduced to five levels in the device. The table below shows the correlation between the alert level, the meaning and the SYSLOG priorities.

Priority	Meaning	SYSLOG priority
Alert	This category includes all messages requiring the system administrator's close attention.	PANIC, ALERT, CRIT
Error	All error messages which can occur under normal conditions are communicated at this level; no special attention is required by the administrator (e.g. connection errors).	ERROR
Warning	This level communicates messages which do not compromise normal operating conditions.	WARNING
Information	At this level, all messages are sent that have a purely informational character (e.g. accounting information).	NOTICE, INFORM
Debug	Communication of all debug messages. Debug messages generate large data volumes and can compromise the device's operation. For this reason they should be disabled for normal operations and only used for troubleshooting.	DEBUG

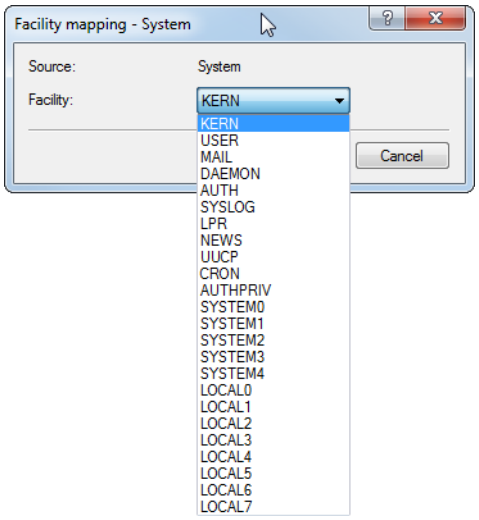
Once you have set all of the parameters, confirm your entries with **OK**. The SYSLOG table shows the SYSLOG client with its parameters.

Assigning device-internal sources to SYSLOG facilities

The SYSLOG protocol uses certain designations for message sources, the so-called facilities. Each internal source in the devices that can generate a SYSLOG message must therefore be assigned to a SYSLOG facility.

The standard mapping can be changed, if necessary. In this way you can, for example, send all SYSLOG messages from a device with a specific facility (Local7). It is thus possible to collect all messages in a common log file by configuring the SYSLOG client appropriately.

Under **Log & Trace** > **General** in the section **SYSLOG** under **Facility mapping**, the internal sources can be assigned to the corresponding SYSLOG facilities.



Facilities

The button **Facility mapping** enables the assignment of all of the device messages, so that the SYSLOG client can write them to a special log file without any additional effort.

All facilities are set to 'local7'. Under Linux, the file `/etc/syslog.conf` with the entry

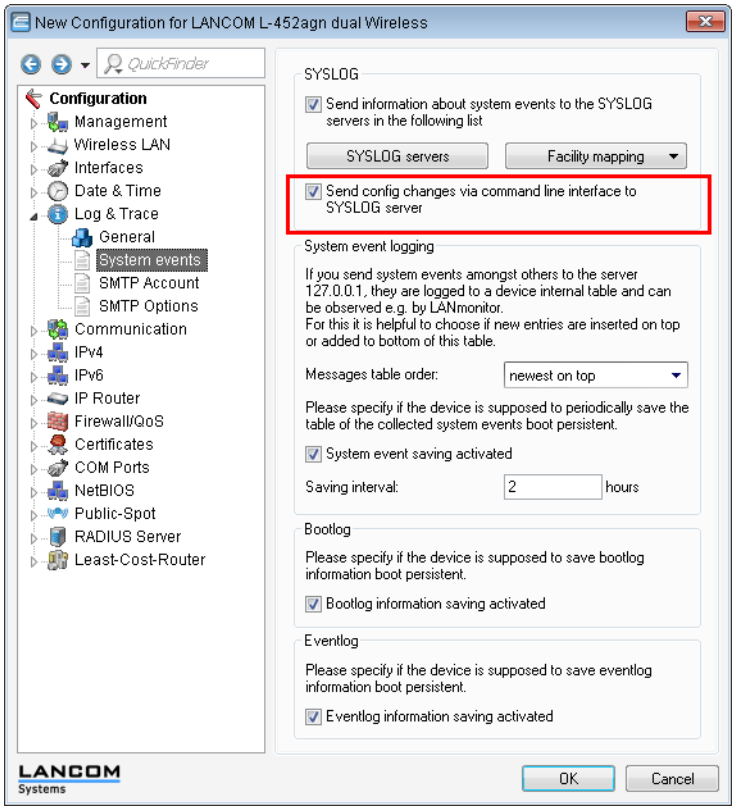
```
local7.* /var/log/lancom.log
```

writes all of the device output to the file `/var/log/lancom.log`.

Sending configuration changes made with the command line to the SYSLOG server

In LANconfig, the settings for logging configuration changes made via the CLI console are to be found under **Log & Trace** > **System events**.

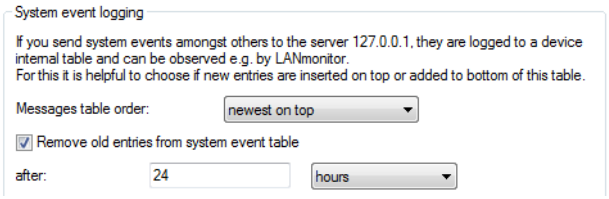
This protocol logs commands entered on the command line only. Configuration changes and actions made using LANconfig and WEBconfig are not logged.



Define for how long system events are saved

Under **Log & Trace** > **System events** in the section **System event logging**, you specify for how long the device saves system events. To do so, select the option **Remove old entries from the system event table** and specify a time (0-9999) in hours, days or months.

In this case, a month is 30 days.

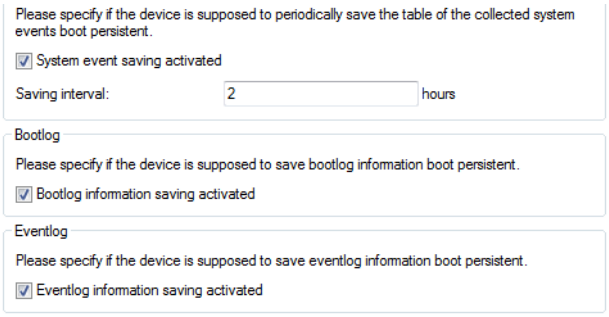


SYSLOG, Eventlog und Bootlog bootpersistent

In LANconfig, the settings for the boot-persistent SYSLOG, event log and boot-log messages are to be found under **Log & Trace** > **System events**. Activate the following options:

- SYSLOG: **System event saving activated**
- BOOTLOG: **Bootlog information saving activated**

> EVENTLOG: **Eventlog information saving activated**

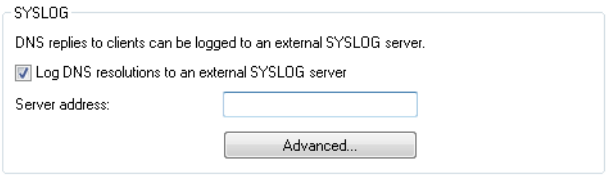


Logging DNS requests and responses to external SYSLOG servers

The DNS server in LANCOM devices resolves the DNS queries from clients. SYSLOG provides an overview of the clients, the names they requested, and the responses they received.

It is not possible to use the router/AP's own internal SYSLOG. For this reason it is necessary to employ an external SYSLOG server.

DNS logging is configured in LANconfig under **IPv4** > **DNS** in the section **SYSLOG**.



Log the DNS resolutions on an external SYSLOG server

Select this option to enable the DNS logging.

This option is independent of the setting in the SYSLOG module. Even if the SYSLOG module is disabled (setting under **Log & Trace** > **General** in the section **SYSLOG**), DNS logging is carried out nevertheless.

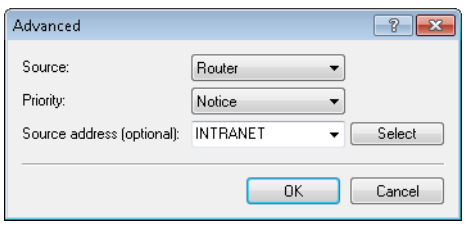
The corresponding SYSLOG message is structured as follows:

```
PACKET_INFO: DNS for <IP address>, TID {Hostname}: Resource-Record
```

Server address

Contains the IP address or the DNS name of the SYSLOG server.

The settings behind the button **Advanced** influence the content of SYSLOG messages.



Source

Contains the log source as displayed in the SYSLOG messages.

Priority

Contains the log level as displayed in the SYSLOG messages.

Source address (optional)

Contains the source address that is shown in the SYSLOG messages.

4.4.3 Meaning of SYSLOG messages

Extended status display of the login to the cellular network

In order to more quickly analyze connection problems in a cellular network, WWAN-capable routers report all logon procedures to the SYSLOG. In this manner, the user can recognize if and why the cellular service provider rejected the connection, for example.

The device generates a SYSLOG entry for each of the following events:

Status	Meaning	SYSLOG severity
WWAN: Currently not searching for network	The modem is not registered and is not searching for a cellular network.	INFORM
WWAN: Searching for network	The modem is not registered and is not searching for a cellular network.	INFORM
WWAN: Registered to home network	The modem has registered on its service provider's cellular network.	INFORM
WWAN: Registered to foreign network	The modem has successfully registered on the cellular network of the service provider's roaming partner.	INFORM
WWAN: Unknown registration	Initial value. The modem has not yet received a response from the radio module regarding the registration status.	INFORM
WWAN: Network registration denied	The cellular service provider has rejected the login on the cellular network.	ERROR
WWAN: Lost network registration	The modem lost the connection to the registered cellular network.	NOTICE
WWAN: Failed to set network	The modem has replied to the command to assign the network with an error message. This error occurs if, for example, the network cannot be reached or does not exist, or an error has occurred on the device.	ERROR
WWAN: Failed to set network mode	The modem has replied to the command to assign the network mode with an error message. This error occurs if, for example, the network cannot be reached or does not exist, or an error has occurred on the device.	ERROR
WWAN: Using modem '...'.	Displays the modem in use.	INFORM
WWAN: Modem is gone.	Modem no longer available.	INFORM
WWAN: Resetting modem.	Re-init by modem reset	WARNING
WWAN: Local disconnect.	D-channel disconnect	INFORM
WWAN: Local disconnect (Release).	D-channel release	INFORM

Status	Meaning	SYSLOG severity
WWAN: Force 2G mode at ... dB.	Modem starts the 2G fallback	NOTICE
WWAN: Ending forced 2G mode.	Modem ends the 2G fallback	INFO
WWAN: Forced 2G mode disabled.	The 2G fallback mode is disabled.	INFO
WWAN: PIN missing in profile.	PIN is missing from the profile.	ERROR
WWAN: PUK required.	Modem requires the PUK.	ERROR
WWAN: Invalid PIN.	Incorrect PIN	ERROR
WWAN: Failed to set APN	Error when setting the APN The modem has replied to the command to assign the APNs with an error message. This error occurs if, for example, the network cannot be reached or does not exist, or an error has occurred on the device.	ERROR
WWAN: Using profile '...'.	Name of the profile in use.	NOTICE
WWAN: Cannot find profile '...'.	Profile not available.	ERROR
WWAN: Disconnected.	Physical connection is terminated.	INFORM
WWAN: Connected: '...'.	The modem has established a data connection and can now transmit data over the cellular network.	INFORM
WWAN: Cell-ID is ..., Local Area Code is	Cell ID and country code.	INFORM
WWAN: Current Network is '...'.	Network (text)	INFORM
WWAN: Current Network is	Network (number)	INFORM
WWAN: Mode ..., Band '...'.	Display of network mode and band	INFORM
WWAN: Mode ..., Band '...', Bandwidth in MHz: ..., Channel (Rx/Tx): .../....	Display of network mode, band, bandwidth and channel (transmit and receive direction).	INFORM
WWAN: Mode ..., Band '...', Channel (Rx/Tx): .../....	Display of network mode, band and channel (transmit and receive direction).	INFORM
WWAN: Max. Datarate (Ds/Us): .../....	Current QoS data rate (down/upstream)	INFORM
WWAN: Network mode is '...'.	Current mode. Possible values are: › GPRS › EDGE › UMTS › HSPA › LTE/4G	INFORM
WWAN: Signal strength is ... dBm.	Current signal strength	INFORM
WWAN: Using stored APN. APN: '...', PDP type:	Access point currently being used in the network.	INFORM
WWAN: Setting new APN. APN: '...', PDP type:	Change of network access point	INFORM
WWAN: Temperature is ...°C.	Current temperature of the module	INFORM
WWAN: Temperature status: '...'.	Current temperature status of the module. Possible values are: › Normal › High warning › High critical	INFORM (normal), WARNING (high warning), CRITICAL (high critical, low critical)

Status	Meaning	SYSLOG severity
	› Low critical	
WWAN: Closing device: '...'.	The device running the connection to the WAN is shutting down.	INFORM
WWAN: Hangup: '...'.	The modem terminates the network connection.	INFORM
WWAN: Error in modem init: '___'.	An error has occurred when initializing the modem.	ERROR

Documenting events on the xDSL interface

The device generates a SYSLOG entry for each of the following xDSL interface events:

Status	Meaning	SYSLOG severity
xDSL: Booting modem: ...	The modem is restarting.	NOTICE
xDSL: Set up line to <line mode>/<line type>	The xDSL module establishes the connection with the mode and type specified. The following values are possible: › Line mode: Disabled, auto and all modes configured in **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **ADSL or VDSL interface**. › Line type: POTS, ISDN	INFORM
xDSL: Line is up. DS-Rate: ..., US-Rate: ..., DS-Margin: ..., US-Margin: ..., DS-Attn: ..., US-Attn: ..., Mode: ..., Profile:	The modem connected successfully with the specified values.	NOTICE
xDSL: Line data update. DS-Rate: ..., US-Rate: ..., DS-Margin: ..., US-Margin: ..., DS-Attn: ..., US-Attn: ..., Mode: ..., Profile: ...	After a synchronization, the modem and the DSLAM perform an optimization of the xDSL connection. This can lead to a change in the line values. After one minute, the modem transmits the current line values.	NOTICE
xDSL: Line data update.	After a synchronization, the modem and the DSLAM perform an optimization of the xDSL connection. After one minute, the modem transmits this message if the line values do not change after the synchronization.	NOTICE
xDSL: Line disconnected due to	The connection was disconnected for the specified reason. The following values are possible: › modem reboot › retrain › silence › high line error rate › protocol setting › line type setting › automode line type switch › modem timeout › VC parameter change	NOTICE

Status	Meaning	SYSLOG severity
xDSL: SNR margin (dB, Down/Up): .../...	The value between the required and measured signal-noise ratio (SNR) has changed by more than 1dB.	INFORM

4.5 Parameter overview for the ping command

The ping command entered at the command prompt of a terminal connection sends an "ICMP echo-request" packet to the destination address of the host to be checked. If the receiver supports the protocol and it is not filtered out in the firewall, the destination host will respond with an "ICMP echo reply". If the target computer is not reachable, the last device before the host responds with a "network unreachable" or "host unreachable" message.

The syntax of the ping command is as follows:

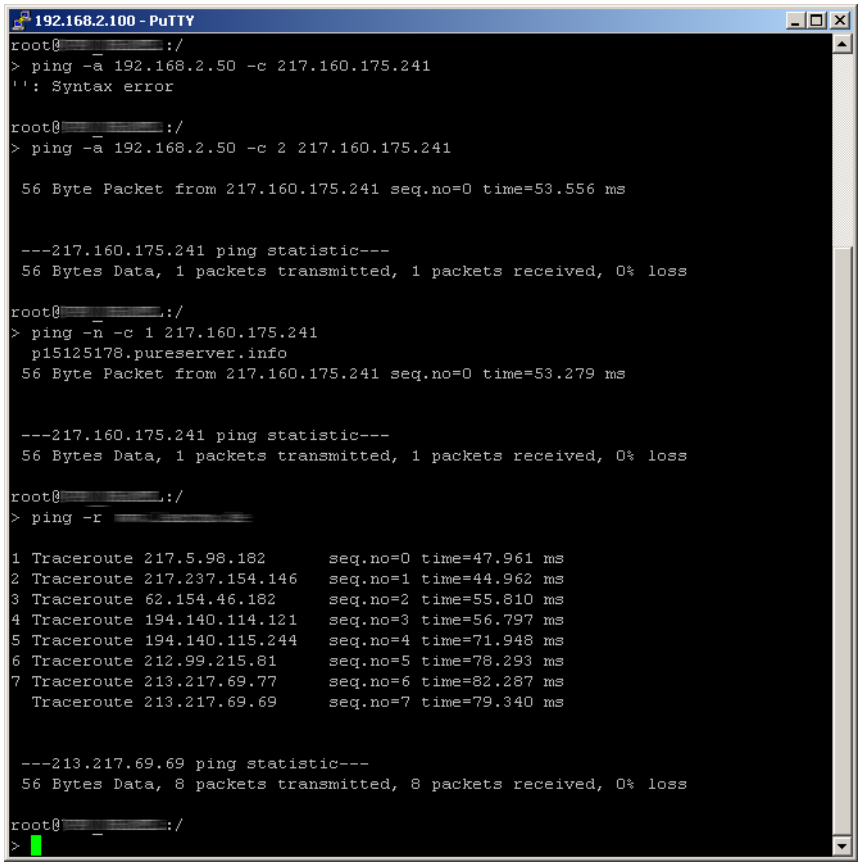
```
ping [-fnqr] [-s n] [-i n] [-c n] [-a a.b.c.d] destination
```

The meaning of the optional parameters is explained in the following table:

Table 22: Overview of optional parameters for the ping command

Parameter	Meaning
`-a a.b.c.d`	Sets the ping's sender address (default: IP address of the device.
`-a INT`	Sets the intranet address of the device as the sender address
`-a DMZ`	Sets the DMZ address of the device as the sender address
`-a LBx`	Sets one of the 16 loopback addresses in the device as the sender address. Valid values for x are the hexadecimal values 0 – f
`-6 <IPv6-Address>%<Scope>`	Performs a ping command to the link-local address via the interface specified by <scope>. For IPv6, the scope of parameters is of central importance: IPv6 requires a link-local address (fe80::/10) to be assigned to every network interface (logical or physical) on which the IPv6 protocol is enabled, so you must specify the scope when pinging a link-local address. This is the only way that the ping command knows which interface it should send the packet to. A percent sign (%) separates the name of the interface from the IPv6 address. **Examples:** › `ping -6 fe80::1%INTRANET` Ping the link-local address "fe80::1", which is accessible via the interface and/or the network "INTRANET". › `ping -6 2001:db8::1` Pings the global IPv6 address '2001:db8::1".
`-6 <Loopback-Interface>`	Sets an IPv6 loopback interface as the sender address.
`-f`	flood ping: Sends a large number of pings in a short time. Can be used to test network bandwidth, for example. WARNING: flood ping can easily be misinterpreted as a DoS attack.
`-n`	Returns the computer name of a specified IP address
`-o`	Immediately sends another request after a response
`-q`	Ping command returns no output to the console (quiet)

Parameter	Meaning
`-r`	Changes to traceroute mode: The route taken by the data packets underway to the target computer is shown with all of the intermediate stations
`-s n`	Sets the packet size to n bytes (max. 65500)
`-i n`	Time between packets in seconds
`-c n`	Send n ping signals
`Destination`	Address or host name of the target computer
`stop /<RETURN>`	Entering "stop" or pressing the RETURN button terminates the ping command

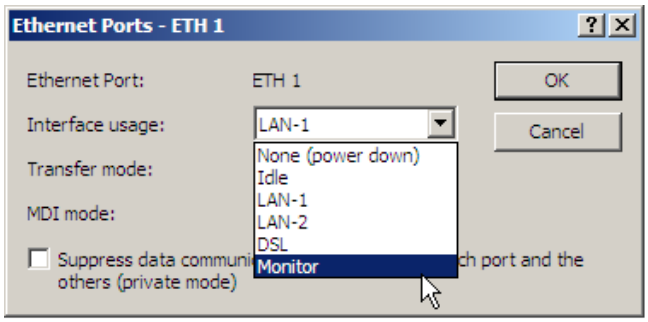


4.6 Monitoring the switch

The data transmission over the switch of LANCOM devices only takes place on the port the target computer is attached to. Therefore the connections on the other ports are not visible.

For monitoring data traffic between ports, the ports must be set to monitor mode. In this state all data is issued, that is transmitted over the switch of the devices between stations of the LAN and WAN.

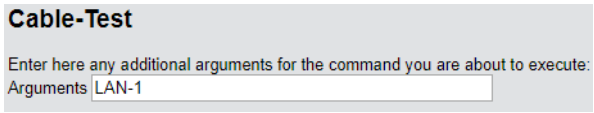
For the configuration with LANconfig open the Ethernet switch settings under **Interfaces** > **LAN** with the button **Ethernet ports**.



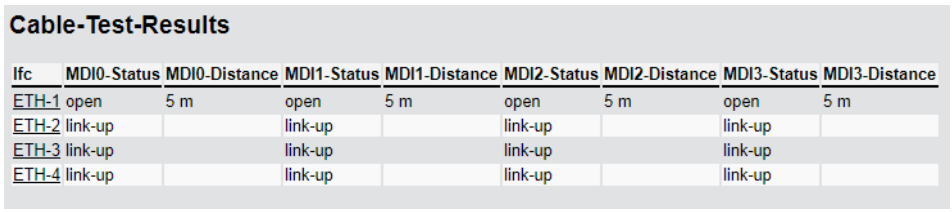
4.7 Cable testing

A cabling defect might have occurred, if no data is transmitted over LAN or WAN connection, although the configuration of the devices does not show any discernible errors.

You can test the cabling with the built-in cable tester of your LANCOM. Change under WEBconfig to menu item **LCOS menu tree** > **Status** > **Ethernet-Ports** > **Cable test**. Enter here the name of the interface to be tested (e.g. "DSL1" or "LAN-1"). Pay attention to the correct spelling of the interfaces. Start the test for the specified interface by clicking on **Execute**.



Change then to menu item **LCOS menu tree** > **Status** > **Ethernet-Ports** > **Cable test results**. The results of the cable test for the individual interfaces are show up in a list.

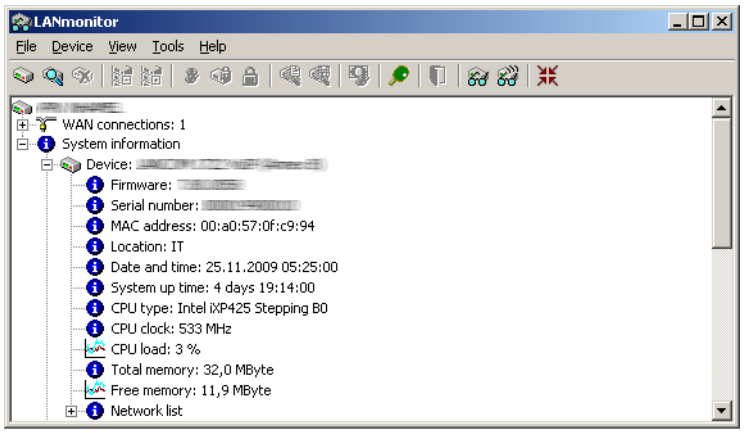


Ifc	MDI0-Status	MDI0-Distance	MDI1-Status	MDI1-Distance	MDI2-Status	MDI2-Distance	MDI3-Status	MDI3-Distance
ETH-1	open	5 m	open	5 m	open	5 m	open	5 m
ETH-2	link-up		link-up		link-up		link-up	
ETH-3	link-up		link-up		link-up		link-up	
ETH-4	link-up		link-up		link-up		link-up	

4.8 Average value of the CPU load display

4.8.1 Introduction

The current CPU load of the devices is displayed via various output options (LANmonitor, via WEBconfig or CLI in the status area, on some models in the display).



4.8.2 Configuration

You can set the time period over which the displayed CPU load is to be averaged as required.

Command line: **Setup** > **Config**

CPU-Load-Interval

Here you can select the time period for averaging the CPU load display. The display of CPU load in LANmonitor, status area, display (if available) as well as in any SNMP tools used is based on the averaging time frame. In the status area under WEBconfig or CLI, the CPU load values for all four possible averaging time frames are displayed.

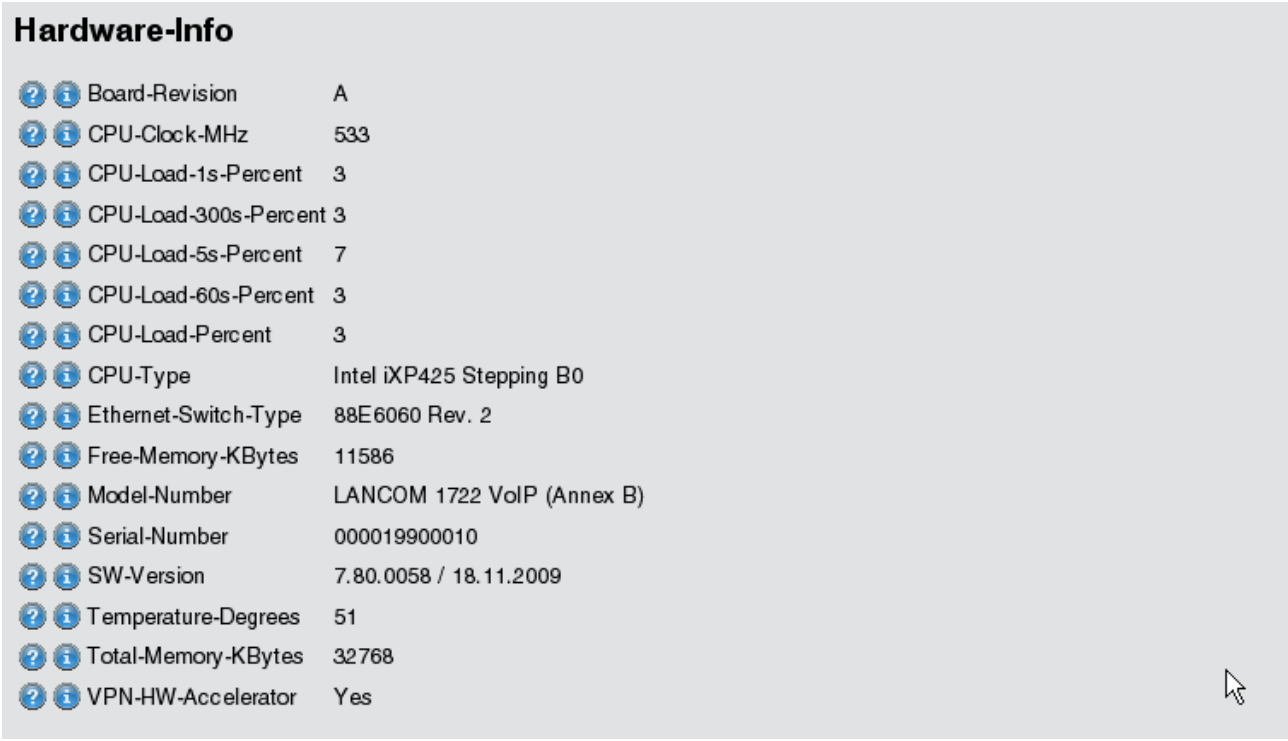
Possible values:

- 1, 5, 60 or 300 seconds.

Default:

- 60 seconds.

The default averaging over 60 seconds is prescribed in the HOST-RESOURCES-MIB, which is used by common SNMP tools to display the CPU load in a tachometer display. Please note this when adjusting the CPU load interval.



4.9 Sending attachments with the mailto command

E-mails with information on device status can be sent automatically if certain events occur. To do this, just include the mailto command into entries in the action table or cron table.

Attachments can be sent with the e-mails. This allows the results of console commands executed on the device before sending the mail to be sent as an attachment. In this way, the content of tables or menus (e.g. detailed status messages) can be sent by e-mail.

› Action (action table) or command (cron table) (max. 250 characters)

Here you describe the action that is be executed at a certain time or when a change in the status of the WAN connection occurs. Only one action can be triggered per entry.

Possible values for the actions (max. 250 characters):

› mailto: – This prefix causes an e-mail to be sent.

Optional variables for the actions:

› attach=`console command`

Any console command can be entered which outputs useful information. The console command is enclosed in "backquotes" also known as backticks. This character is produced with the aid of the ”accent grave” key.

The output of the console command is written to a text file for attachment to the mail. This text file is headed by the command and a time/date stamp, followed by the output.

Default:

- Blank

Examples:

The following action enables you to sent the ADSL status by e-mail:

```
mailto:admin@mycompany.de?subject=ADSL_status?attach=`dir /status/adsl`
```

An action can be used to send mutliple console commands:

```
mailto:admin@mycompany.de?subject=Status_reports?attach=`dir /status/adsl`?attach=`dir
 /status/config`
```

The attached files are named 'cmd1.txt', 'cmd2.txt', etc.

4.10 Enhanced Sysinfo

To determine whether changes have been made to the configuration, and to find the time/date when a change was made, Sysinfo contains additional entries in the field CONFIG_STATUS.

The devices store the value CONFIG_STATUS each time a change is made to the configuration (via the command line, via SNMP or by loading a script or complete configurations). The value CONFIG_STATUS consists of the following components:

- Hash value of the device configuration as a unique identifier of configuration status.
- Timestamp of the last change to the configuration in the format HHMMSSddmmyyyy based on Coordinated Universal Time UTC. The reference to UTC guarantees unique values without being influenced by time zone or daylight-saving settings.
- Counter of configuration changes, sequential.

The field CONFIG_STATUS contains, along with a value for the configuration status switches and a value for the configuration flash status, the additional components in the form <Hash>.<Date>.<Counter>.

Changes to the configuration can be implemented in the appropriate files or scripts (e.g. with LANtools) or on the devices directly (by command line or WEBconfig). The content of CONFIG_STATUS is influenced by the method by which configuration changes are made.

The device configuration hash value

Hash values are calculated solely by LCOS, the operating system used by the devices. The hash value differs for every state of configuration, and a modified hash value indicates that a device configuration has been changed.

LCOS stores the calculated hash value to the device during the flash process.

Timestamp of the last configuration change

Both LCOS and LANtools can set the timestamp, assuming that they have a valid time.

If the chosen method of configuration does not have a valid time, the device sets the timestamp to the value '00: 00:00 0000-00-00'.

Configuration changes counter

When the devices are shipped, the counter of configuration changes is set to '0'. Every configuration change after this increases the value by 1. The configuration-changes counter allows changes to the current version of the configuration to be determined, even if no valid time of configuration was available and the timestamp is therefore set to '00: 00:00 0000-00-00'.

A configuration counter that shows '0' after changes have been made to the configuration indicates an error while reading or writing the counter during flashing.

Displaying CONFIG_STATUS

To display the value for CONFIG_STATUS, enter the command `sysinfo` on the command line for the device.

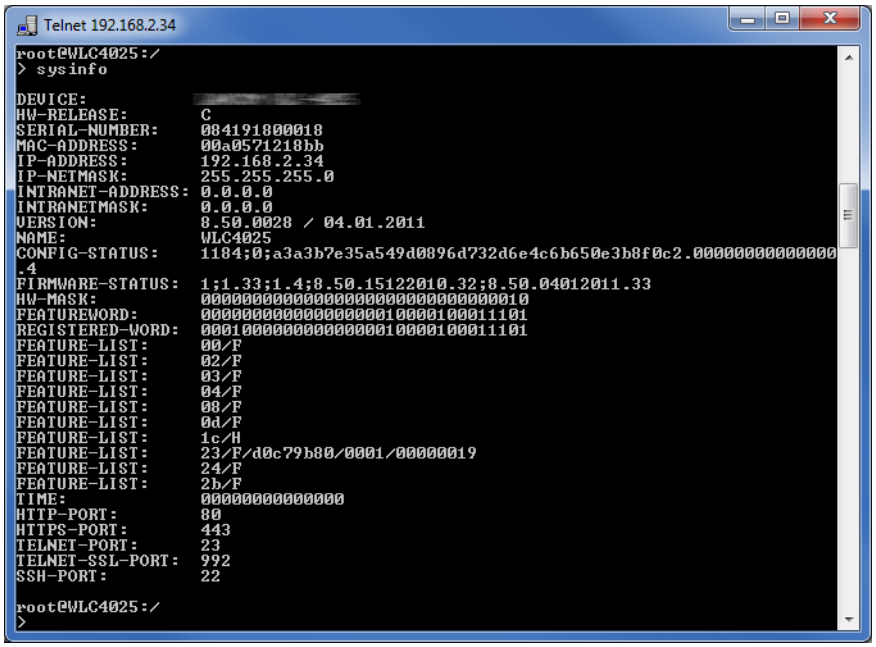


Figure 1: Displaying system information on the command line

4.10.1 Output additional ports in SYSINFO at the console

As of LCOS version 9.00, the `sysinfo` command also outputs the numbers of the following ports:

- HTTP
- HTTPS
- TELNET
- TELNET-SSL
- SSH
- SNMP
- TFTP

4.10.2 Output the configuration date

As of LCOS version 9.10, you have the option to read out the date and time of the device configuration via `status/config/config-date`.

SNMP ID: 1.11.20

```
root@LANCOM_1781AW:/Status/Config
> ls

LAN-Active-Connections      INFO:    1
LAN-Total-Connections       INFO:    7
WAN-Active-Connections      INFO:    0
WAN-Total-Connections       INFO:    0
Outband-Active-Connections  INFO:    0
Outband-total-Connections   INFO:    0
Outband-Bitrate             INFO:    115200
Login-Errors                INFO:    0
Login-Locks                 INFO:    0
Login-Rejects               INFO:    0
Start-Scan                  ACTION:
Scan-Results                TABINFO: 0 x [IP-Address,Rtg-tag,Name,..]
Features                    TABINFO: 7 x [Feature,Expires,State,Index,Count]
Anti-Theft-Protection       MENU:
Delete-Values               ACTION:
Event-Log                   TABINFO: 64 x [Idx.,System-time,Event,Access,..]
Config-Date                 INFO:    03/25/2014 06:47:12
Config-Hash                 INFO:    cbba4fc366a8ae2b71d35e1ce58ee8f496588cf9
Config-Version              INFO:    126
Script-Log                  TABINFO: 8+ x [Index,Time,Comment,Successful,..]
```

The values are displayed in UTC format.

4.10.3 Output the configuration hashes

As of LCOS version 9.10, you have the option to read out the hash value of the device configuration via `status/config/config-hash`.

SNMP ID: 1.11.21

```
root@LANCOM_1781AW:/Status/Config
> ls

LAN-Active-Connections      INFO:    1
LAN-Total-Connections       INFO:    7
WAN-Active-Connections      INFO:    0
WAN-Total-Connections       INFO:    0
Outband-Active-Connections  INFO:    0
Outband-total-Connections   INFO:    0
Outband-Bitrate             INFO:    115200
Login-Errors                INFO:    0
Login-Locks                 INFO:    0
Login-Rejects               INFO:    0
Start-Scan                  ACTION:
Scan-Results                TABINFO: 0 x [IP-Address,Rtg-tag,Name,..]
Features                    TABINFO: 7 x [Feature,Expires,State,Index,Count]
Anti-Theft-Protection       MENU:
Delete-Values               ACTION:
Event-Log                   TABINFO: 64 x [Idx.,System-time,Event,Access,..]
Config-Date                 INFO:    03/25/2014 06:47:12
Config-Hash                 INFO:    cbba4fc366a8ae2b71d35e1ce58ee8f496588cf9
Config-Version              INFO:    126
Script-Log                  TABINFO: 8+ x [Index,Time,Comment,Successful,..]
```

The displayed value is a SHA1 hash.

4.10.4 Output the configuration version

As of LCOS version 9.10, you have the option to read out the version number of the device configuration via `status/config/config-version`.

SNMP ID: 1.11.22

```
root@LANCOM_1781AW:/Status/Config
> ls

LAN-Active-Connections      INFO:    1
LAN-Total-Connections       INFO:    7
WAN-Active-Connections      INFO:    0
WAN-Total-Connections       INFO:    0
Outband-Active-Connections  INFO:    0
Outband-total-Connections   INFO:    0
Outband-Bitrate             INFO:    115200
Login-Errors                INFO:    0
Login-Locks                 INFO:    0
Login-Rejects               INFO:    0
Start-Scan                  ACTION:
Scan-Results                TABINFO: 0 x [IP-Address,Rtg-tag,Name,..]
Features                    TABINFO: 7 x [Feature,Expires,State,Index,Count]
Anti-Theft-Protection       MENU:
Delete-Values               ACTION:
Event-Log                   TABINFO: 64 x [Idx.,System-time,Event,Access,..]
Config-Date                 INFO:    03/25/2014 06:47:12
Config-Hash                 INFO:    cbba4fc366a8ae2b71d35e1ce58ee8f496588cf9
Config-Version              INFO:    126
Script-Log                  TABINFO: 8+ x [Index,Time,Comment,Successful,..]
```

4.11 Bandwidth measurements with iPerf

Measurements of network performance determine values such as the throughput, latency, jitter and error rates over a network connection. The measured values are used, among other things, for network optimization, error detection and troubleshooting, and for assessing the performance of network infrastructures.

iPerf has become established as a free program for generating and evaluating data streams over data connections. An iPerf server daemon receives TCP and UDP streams and measures the throughput for the corresponding applications along with the latency, jitter, packet loss and packet reordering over UDP connections.

To conduct a bandwidth measurement between two hosts, you start the iPerf server on one device and the iPerf client on the other one. The iPerf client then connects to the iPerf server. The server and client exchange data packets for a certain time or a certain amount of data and generate statistics about this. These statistics provide information about the quality of the connection between the two devices.

When measuring the quality of the TCP connection, the iPerf client transmits completely filled TCP data packets at the fastest speed possible. The average data rate of successful data transfer ("goodput") is the result of what the iPerf server received correctly.

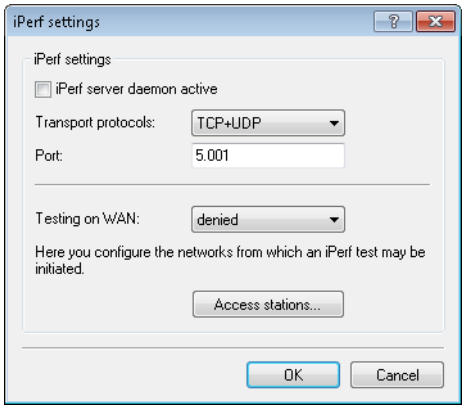
When measuring UDP connection quality, the iPerf client transmits data over a specified bandwidth (1 Mbps by default), although this is without flow or performance control. The "goodput" relates to the maximum bandwidth with which the client's transmission buffer remains permanently filled without data packets being lost.

LANCOM devices include an Iperf2-compatible feature that directly measures the network performance between network nodes such as routers, VPN gateways, and APs. This makes it easier to measure the data throughput over WAN connections or WLAN point-to-point links, for example.

Measurements can be carried out between two LANCOM devices or between a LANCOM device and another iPerf2 instance.

4.11.1 Setting up iPerf with LANconfig

In LANconfig, you configure iPerf under **Log & Trace** > **General** and clicking on **iPerf settings**.



iPerf server daemon active

Activates or deactivates the iPerf server daemon.

Rather than setting up the iPerf server to run permanently at this point, you can optionally start a one-off test by accessing the command-line console via SSH and starting a temporary iPerf server.

Transport protocols

Here you set which transport protocols are to be measured for bandwidth.

Port

This port is used for communications between the iPerf client and server (“5001” by default).

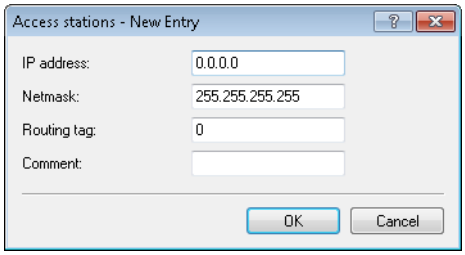
Testing on WAN

Here you determine whether measurements are also permitted over a WAN connection.

Depending on the provider contract, additional connection charges may arise from measurements over WAN connections.

Access stations

In order restrict iPerf access to certain stations only, enter the connection data into this table.



IP address

Enter the IPv4 address of the remote station.

Netmask

Enter the netmask of the remote station.

Routing tag

Enter the routing tag that specifies the connection to the remote station.

Comment

Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

4.11.2 Temporary iPerf server and client

If you configure iPerf with LANconfig, the iPerf function remains permanently active. You can optionally start a temporary iPerf daemon, which remains active for just one test, by using SSH to connect to the command-line console.

To do this, start a terminal program (e.g. PuTTY) and open a connection to the device where you want to perform the iPerf test. Use the console command `iperf` and the appropriate option switches to start the temporary iPerf daemon. The following examples illustrate some standard commands.

More information about the option switches for `iperf` is available in the section *Commands for the console*.

Running the iPerf server in TCP mode

```
root@device:/Setup/Iperf/Server-Daemon
> iperf -s
[Iperf-TCP-Server|1526] Now listening on port 5001
```

Press the Enter button again or close the console window to stop the iPerf server.

Running the iPerf server in UDP mode

```
root@device:/Setup/Iperf/Server-Daemon
> iperf -s -u
[Iperf-UDP-Server|1524] Now listening on port 5001
```

Press the Enter button again or close the console window to stop the iPerf server.

Running the iPerf client in UDP mode

```
root@device:/Setup/Iperf/Server-Daemon
> iperf -u -c 172.16.30.23
WARN: Using default UPD bandwidth limitation of 1 MBit/s
WARN: Using default UDP payload length of 1472 bytes (for matching Ethernet MTU
via IPv4)
[Iperf-UDP-Client|2100] Connecting to server...
[Iperf-UDP-Client|2100] Connection established to 172.16.30.23:5001

root@device:/
>
```

Press the Enter key to exit the test.

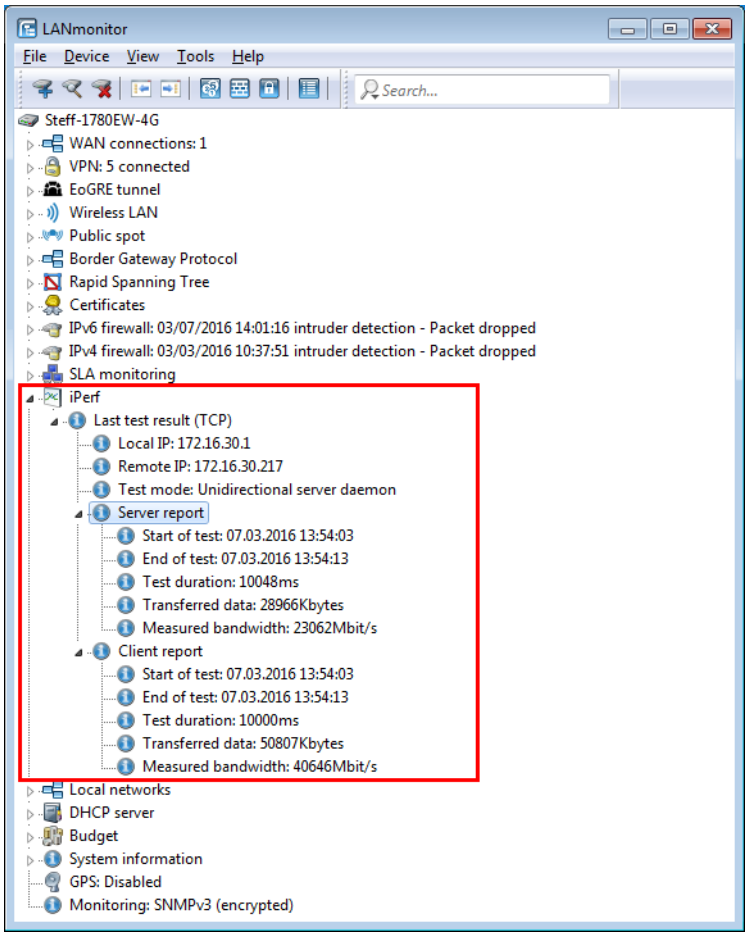
```
[Iperf-UDP-Client|2100] Connection closed actively
[Iperf-UDP-Client|2100] Sent 1249728 bytes within 10s (10000ms) -> 0 Mbit/s (999
 Kbit/s)
[Iperf-UDP-Client|2100] Server reports 1249728 bytes received within 9s (9985ms)
 -> 1 Mbit/s (1001 Kbit/s)
[Iperf-UDP-Client|2100] Server received 849 packets (0 lost / 0 out-of-order) with
 62us jitter

root@device:/
>
```

4.11.3 Analyzing iPerf results with LANmonitor

LANCOM devices include an Iperf2-compatible feature that directly measures the network performance between network nodes such as routers, VPN gateways, and APs. This makes it easier to measure the data throughput over WAN connections or WLAN point-to-point links, for example.

For more information on iPerf, see the section *Bandwidth measurements with iPerf*.

The last iPerf test result can also be viewed in LANmonitor under "iPerf". In this case it is unimportant whether the device initiated a connection or was contacted externally. The connection type "Test mode" displays the mode accordingly:



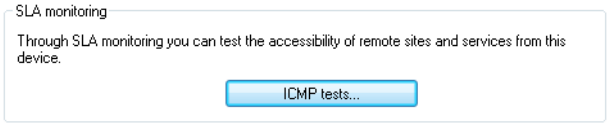
LANmonitor displays the test results stored in the device under **Status** > **Iperf** > **Last results**.

4.12 SLA monitoring

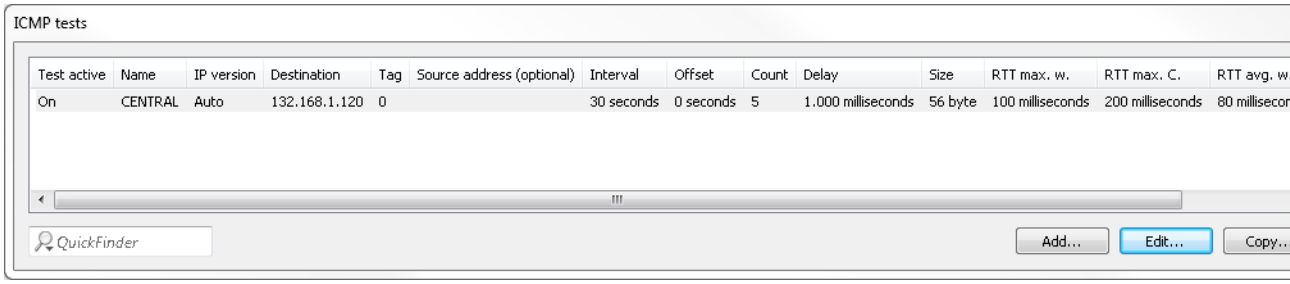
SLA monitoring is used to monitor the connections to remote stations within a network infrastructure. Ping tests to specified targets provide information about peer availability, packet transmission times and the number of lost packets. You can optionally define alerts that are issued when certain threshold values are exceeded, and to output these with LANmonitor. The history of past checks is also stored, so helping administrators to stay up to date about the quality of the connections.

4.12.1 Configuring SLA monitoring with LANconfig

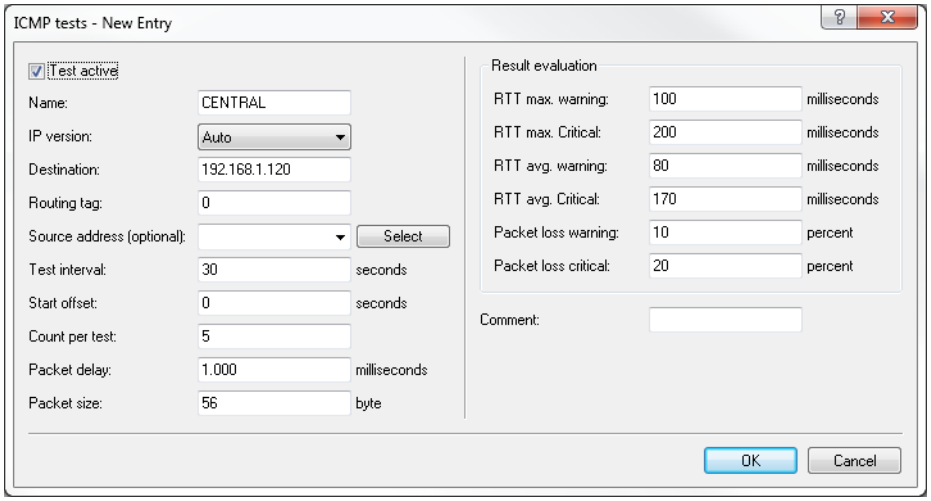
For configuration with LANconfig, the SLA monitor is located under **Log & Trace** > **General** on the **SLA monitoring** pane.



Click the button **ICMP tests**, add new queries and set guideline values for the connection tests.



Click the **Add** button, or select an existing entry and click **Edit**.



Test active

With this check box enabled, the device uses the specified settings for the connectivity test.

Name

Name of connection

IP version

Specifies the use of IPv4 or IPv6.

The setting "Auto" is selected by default.

Destination

Specifies the destination for testing (ICMP/PING destination).

Routing tag

Specify a routing tag if a particular route is to be used.

Source address (optional)

You can optionally configure a source address if you want to use a specific network as the source interface.

Test Interval:

Specifies the time interval in which the device sends ICMP packets (**default: 30 seconds**).

Start offset

Set a delay time before ICMP packets are sent.

Count per test

Specifies how many ICMP packets are sent per test (**default: 5**).

Packet delay

Set a delay before packets are sent.

Packet size

Sets the packet size for the ICMP message.

Result evaluation

In this section, you specify the threshold limits for packet handling.

RTT max. warning

Specify a maximum packet transmission time (**R**ound **T**rip **T**ime). A warning message is generated if an ICMP packet takes longer than the transmission time specified here.

RTT max. critical

An error message is generated if an ICMP packet takes longer than the transmission time specified here.

RTT avg. warning

Specify an average packet transmission time here. A warning message is generated if the average number of ICMP packets takes longer than the transmission time specified here.

RTT avg. critical

Specify an average packet transmission time here. An error message is generated if the average number of ICMP packets takes longer than the transmission time specified here.

Packet loss warning

A warning message is generated if the percentage of lost packets reaches the value specified here.

Packet loss critical

An error message is generated if the percentage of lost packets reaches the value specified here.

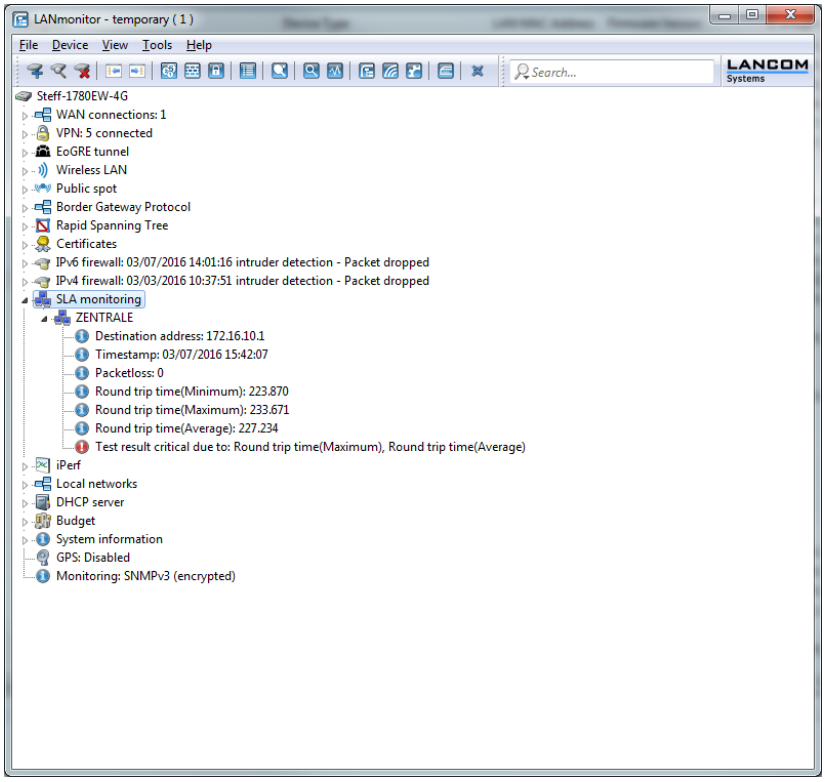
Comment

Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

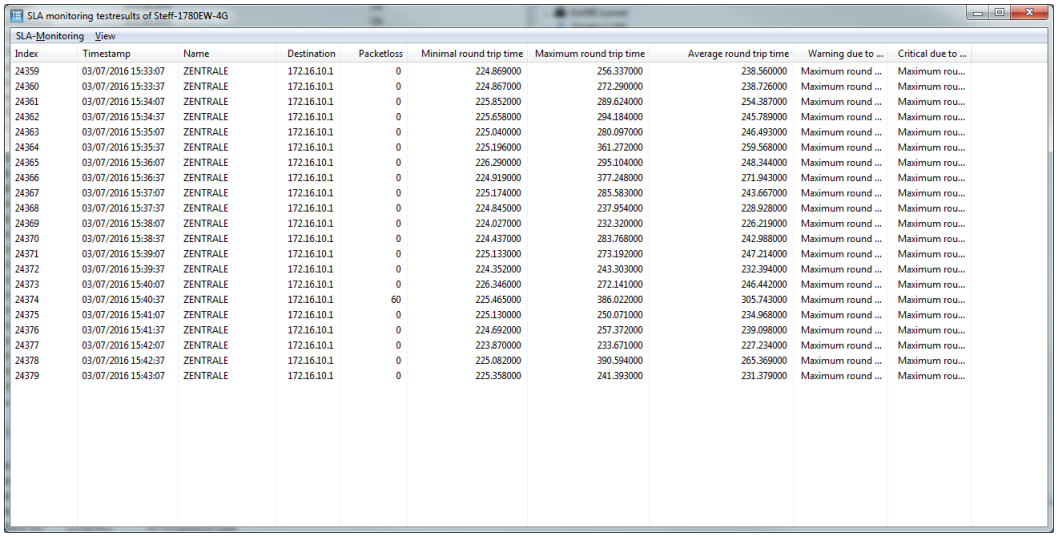
4.12.2 Displaying the SLA monitoring results in LANmonitor

LANmonitor displays the configured tests under **SLA monitoring**.

It shows the results of the most recently collected information from the connection test.



You also have the option to display the history of the connection tests. Click with the right mouse button on the entry **SLA monitoring**. In the following dialog, select **SLA monitoring history**.



Index	Timestamp	Name	Destination	Packetloss	Minimal round trip time	Maximum round trip time	Average round trip time	Warning due to ...	Critical due to ...
24359	03/07/2016 15:33:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.869000	256.337000	238.560000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24360	03/07/2016 15:33:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.867000	272.290000	238.726000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24361	03/07/2016 15:34:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.852000	289.624000	254.387000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24362	03/07/2016 15:34:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.658000	294.184000	245.789000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24363	03/07/2016 15:35:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.040000	280.097000	246.493000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24364	03/07/2016 15:35:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.196000	361.272000	259.568000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24365	03/07/2016 15:36:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	226.290000	295.104000	248.344000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24366	03/07/2016 15:36:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.919000	377.248000	271.943000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24367	03/07/2016 15:37:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.174000	285.583000	243.667000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24368	03/07/2016 15:37:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.845000	237.954000	228.928000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24369	03/07/2016 15:38:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.027000	232.320000	226.219000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24370	03/07/2016 15:38:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.437000	283.768000	242.988000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24371	03/07/2016 15:39:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.133000	273.192000	247.214000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24372	03/07/2016 15:39:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.352000	243.303000	232.394000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24373	03/07/2016 15:40:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	226.346000	272.141000	246.442000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24374	03/07/2016 15:40:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	60	225.465000	386.022000	305.743000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24375	03/07/2016 15:41:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.130000	250.071000	234.968000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24376	03/07/2016 15:41:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	224.692000	257.372000	239.098000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24377	03/07/2016 15:42:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	223.870000	233.671000	227.234000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24378	03/07/2016 15:42:37	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.082000	390.594000	265.369000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...
24379	03/07/2016 15:43:07	ZENTRALE	172.16.10.1	0	225.358000	241.393000	231.379000	Maximum round ...	Maximum rou...

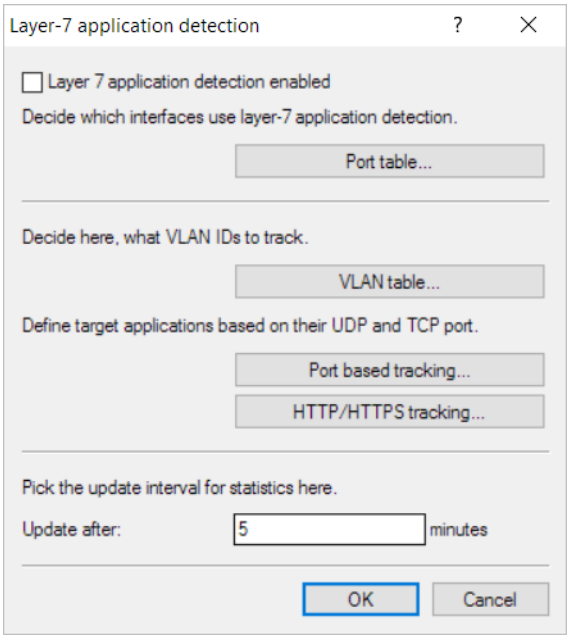
4.13 Layer-7 application detection

Layer-7 application detection helps you to identify services on your network that consume high levels of bandwidth. This feature also allows you to isolate the clients that use these services most intensively and to inspect their traffic.

To use this function, you need to activate the layer-7 application detection. It is not enabled by default.

Application detection analyzes the inbound and outbound connections at each tracked interface, and it stores the statistics of the specified applications.

In LANconfig, you enable and configure layer-7 application detection under **Firewall/QoS** > **General** > **Layer-7 application detection**.



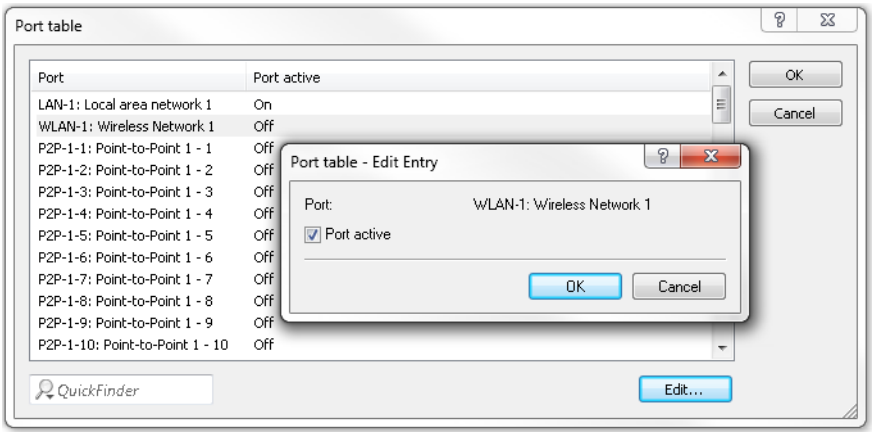
Use this dialog to specify the following parameters:

Layer-7 application detection enabled

This entry is used to enable or disable layer-7 application detection.

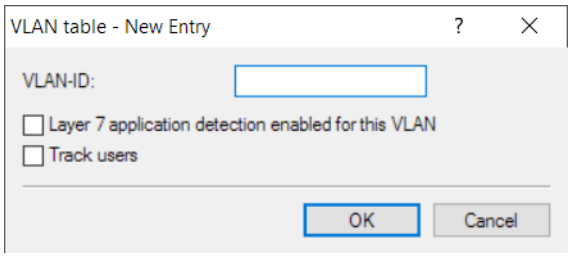
Port table

Here you specify the ports that are to be tracked by layer-7 application detection. Enable or disable the available ports correspondingly.



VLAN table

Here you specify the VLAN IDs to be monitored and you determine the extent to which the layer-7 application detection collects traffic information.

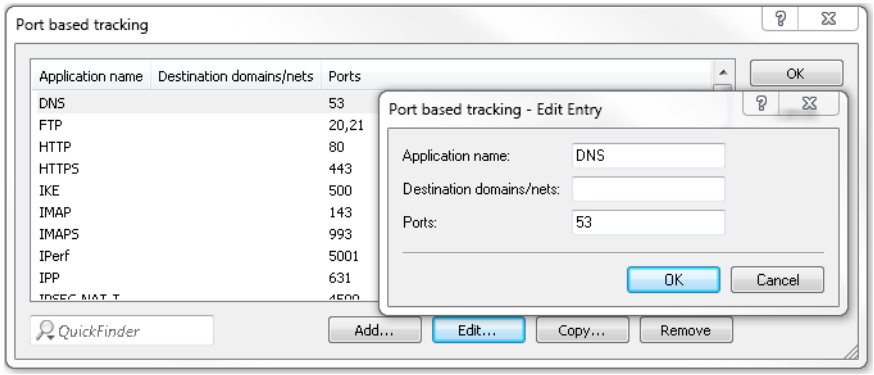


- **Layer-7 application detection enabled for this VLAN**: The device tracks general and application-specific data.
- **Track users:** The device tracks user-specific data (user or client name and MAC address) in the specified VLAN.

In order for layer-7 application discovery to be active in the VLAN, the data must collect application-specific data at the least.

Port-based tracking

Here you select the applications to be tracked. Optionally you can chose default applications or you can specify your own applications. You also specify the destination domains or the destination networks of the application. Extend the list according to your needs.

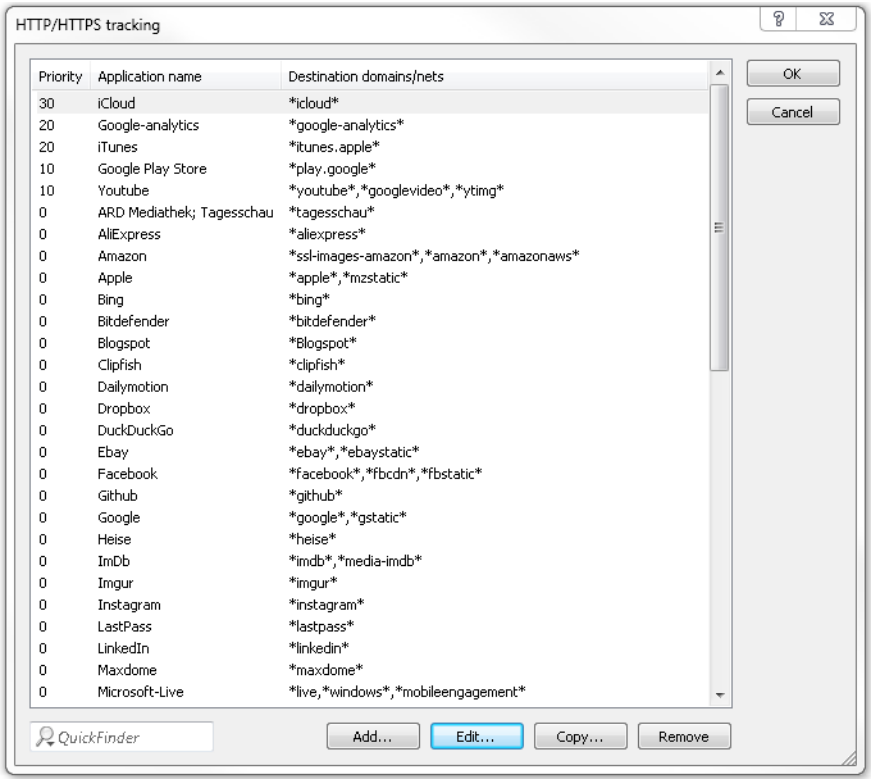


You can specify several destination domains, destination networks or ports by using a comma-separated list in CIDR notation (classless inter-domain routing). You have the option of using IPv4 or IPv6 destination networks.

HTTP/HTTPS tracking

Use this table to specify which HTTP/HTTPS services are tracked. You should additionally specify parts of the application's host name.

Use wildcards ("*" for multiple characters or "?" for exactly one character) to define the parts of the host name.



Multiple host-name parts can be specified in a comma-separated list.

By specifying the priority you have the additional option of setting the order in which services are evaluated if certain host-name parts appear in multiple entries (e.g. *google).

Update after

Specify an interval in minutes for updating the usage statistics.

When a client establishes a connection over a tracked interface, layer-7 application detection begins analyzing and recording the traffic volumes.

The results of the recording and the usage statistics depend on the configuration that was specified for this connection.

Layer-7 application detection monitors the destination port of an application. If a connection Is detected arriving at port 80 or 443 (HTTP or HTTPS), the connection establishment is further analyzed. If a different destination port is used, the application is identified according to the applications entered into the "Port-based tracking" list.

If the establishment of an HTTP/HTTPS connection is detected, this connection is subjected to deeper analysis. For HTTP connections, the application detection additionally extracts the destination host from the destination URL in the HTTP GET request.

The only part to be used is the host; additional parts of the URL are truncated

If an HTTPS connection is detected, the layer-7 application detection attempts to identify the destination host in the following sequence:

› Server name indication from the TLS "Client Hello"

- Common name from the transmitted TLS server certificate
- Reverse DNS request to the server IP address

For HTTP and HTTPS connections, the destination host name found is compared with the "HTTP/HTTPS tracking" list. This list contains the most widely used Web services/applications, including the components of their host names.

If neither the service nor the connection appear in the list, i.e. the application cannot be identified, then it is classified as a general HTTP or HTTPS service on the port.

Allocation in this way requires the "Port-based tracking" list to include the entries HTTP and HTTPS.

If the destination service is known for every connection on a tracked interface, the combination with the connecting client makes is possible to track the connection and to determine which client caused what amount of traffic to / from a service.

The values found are available from the corresponding tables in the LCOS menu tree under **Status** > **Layer-7-App-Detection**.

Layer-7 application detection can be operated either centrally or decentrally on your network. Both options prevent traffic being listed multiple times:

Central

Layer-7 application detection is enabled on a central router in the LAN, and it is disabled on all other LANCOM devices.

Decentral

Layer-7 application detection is enabled only on the final bridges in the LAN, e.g. on access points or LANCOM routers with the clients connected directly to their LAN interfaces.

To avoid distorted results, the traffic should pass through just one single device or bridge running the layer-7 application detection.

4.13.1 IPv4/IPv6 traffic accounting

Layer-7 application detection captures IPv4 and IPv6 traffic separately.

There is no need to switch on this feature separately. With layer-7 application detection is active, both IPv4 and IPv6 applications are automatically resolved separately.

Layer-7 application detection logs details about the traffic transmitted over the relevant interface.

This is presented in the following status table:

```
root@LN-1700Esc:/Status/Layer-7-App-Detection/Total-Traffic-per-Protocol
> ls -a

[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][1.95.8]
Protocol-Name  Tx-KBytes  Rx-KBytes  Tx-KBytes-Curr.-Day  Rx-KBytes-Curr.-Day
[1]            [2]        [3]        [4]                  [5]
===============-------------------------------------------------------------
IPv4            522        259        522                  259
IPv6            2696       18         2696                 18
```

The inbound (RX) and the outbound (TX) traffic are listed separately for IPv4 and IPv6 in kBytes.

5 Security

You probably would not be happy about strangers viewing or modifying the data on your computers. Furthermore, the configuration settings of your devices need to be protected against unauthorized changes. This chapter is therefore dedicated to a very important topic: Security. The security settings are described in the following sections:

- Protecting the configuration
  - Password protection
  - Login barring
  - Access control
- Securing the ISDN dial-in access

The most important security settings are summarized in a checklist at the end of the chapter. This list will help you to secure your device properly.

Further functions of the LCOS contribute to the security of your data, and some of these are described in separate chapters:

- *Firewall*
- *Router functions*
- *VLAN*

5.1 Protecting the configuration

By configuring the device, you specifiy a range of important parameters for data communication: This includes the security of your own network, cost controls, and the authorization of individual network users.

Obviously, the parameters you have set should not be changed by unauthorized persons. For this reason, the device offers various means of protecting the configuration.

5.1.1 Password protection

The simplest way of protecting the configuration is to agree upon a password.

If no password has been agreed for the device, the configuration is open to be changed by anybody. For example, your Internet access credentials could be exposed or the router reconfigured to disable the security mechanisms.

Among other things, the power LED flashes on devices that have no password set, assuming that the configuration can be accessed via WAN or WLAN.

Handling passwords properly

At this point we would like to make a few recommendations for handling passwords:

- **Keep your password as secret as possible.**

  Never write down a password. Popular but completely unsuitable are, for example: Notebooks, wallets and text files on the computer. It sounds trivial, but it cannot be repeated often enough: Do not share your password with anybody else. Even the securest systems are defenseless against talkativeness.

- **Communicate passwords securely.**

Once set, a password must be communicated to the remote site. Choose the most secure method possible. Avoid using: Unencrypted e-mail, letter, fax. It is better to communicate personally and face to face. The highest level of security is achieved when you enter the password personally at both ends.

- **Choose a secure password.**

  Use random sequences of letters and numbers. Passwords that are normal words are not secure. Special characters such as '&"?-*_:;,!°' make it even more difficult for attackers to guess your password, which is a plus for your security.

  The password for the configuration is case sensitive.

- **Never use a password twice.**

  Using the same password for multiple purposes makes it less secure. If a remote site is compromised, the other connections that use this password are endangered all at once.

- **If you suspect anything, change the password immediately.**

  When an employee with access to a password leaves the company, then it is high time to change that password. If you have even the slightest suspicion of a leak, change the password.

If you follow these simple rules, you will achieve a high level of security.

Entering the password

In LANconfig, the field for entering the password is to be found in the 'Management' configuration area on the 'Admin' tab. In an SSH session, set or change the password with the command `passwd`.

LANconfig: Management / Admin / Password

WEBconfig: Extras / Change password

As soon as a password is set for the “root” administrator in the device's configuration, WEBconfig will display the button Login that starts the login window. After entering the correct user name and password, the WEBconfig main menu will appear.

Protecting the SNMP access

At the same time you should also protect the SNMP read access with a password. SNMP uses the general configuration password.

LANconfig: Management / Admin / Password required for SNMP read permission access only

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / SNMP / Password-Required-for-SNMP-Read-Access

5.1.2 Further administrators with restricted rights

There is no need for every administrator to have full rights and access to all parts of the configuration. As root administrator, you can add further administrators with restricted rights under **Configuration** > **Management** > **Admin** > **Further administrators**. Consequently, there is no need for every administrator to know the main device password. Further details are available under *Managing rights for different administrators* on page 88.

5.1.3 Login barring

The configuration in the device is protected against “brute-force attacks” by barring logins. A brute-force attack is the attempt by an unauthorized person to crack a password to gain access to a network, a computer or another device. To achieve this, a computer, for example, can go through all the possible combinations of letters and numbers until the right password is found.

As a measure of protection against such attacks, the maximum allowed number of unsuccessful login attempts can be set. If this limit is reached, access will be barred for a certain time.

The login lock only applies to the access path being used. The other access paths are still available.

For technical reasons, SSH and Telnet can only be locked and unlocked together.

To configure the login lock, the following entries are available in the configuration tools:

- Activate lock after (`number of login errors`)
- Duration of the lock (`lockout in minutes`).

LANconfig: Management / Admin

If you fill out the field **Lock configuration after** with the value "0", the login lock is deactivated.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Config

The login lock has no function if RADIUS or TACACS are being used for authentication.

5.1.4 Restricting access to the configuration

Access to the internal functions can be configured for each interface separately:

- ISDN administration access
- LAN
- Wireless LAN (WLAN)
- WAN (e.g. ISDN, DSL or ADSL)

Access to the network configuration can be further restricted so that, for example, configurations can only be edited from certain IP addresses. Furthermore, the following internal functions can be switched on/off separately:

- LANconfig (TFTP)
- WEBconfig (HTTP/HTTPS)
- SNMP
- Terminal/Telnet

For devices supporting VPN, it is also possible for internal functions that operate over WAN interfaces to be restricted to VPN connections only.

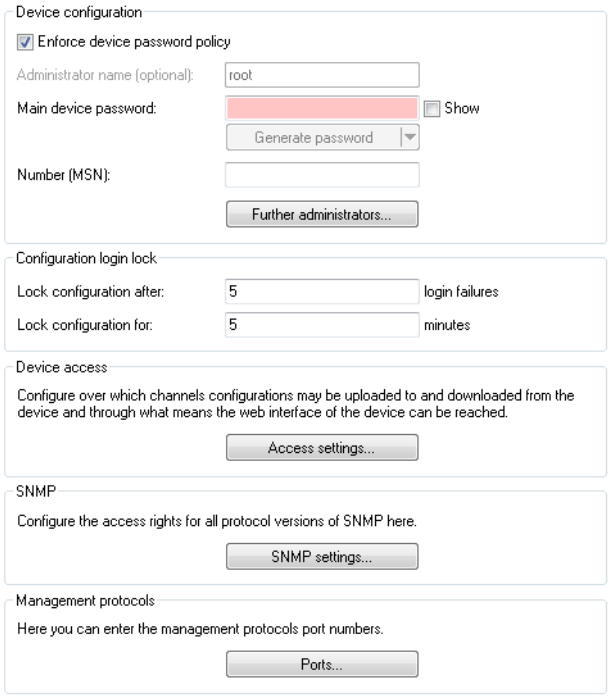
Restricting access to the ISDN administrator account

Applies only for models with an ISDN interface.

As long as no MSN-configuration has been entered, a **non-configured** device accepts calls on all MSNs. As soon as the first change in the configuration is saved, the device only accepts calls on the configured MSN.

If the initial configuration has no configured MSN, the remote configuration feature is disabled to protect the device against access via the ISDN line.

1. Switch to the ‘Admin’ tab in the ‘Management’ configuration area.



2. In the 'Device configuration' section, enter one of your connection’s phone numbers that is not required for other purposes.

   Alternatively, enter the following command in Telnet:

   ```
   set /setup/config/Admin-(EAZ-MSN)123456
   ```

   The ISDN administrator account is the only configuration method excluded from the network access restrictions that are described below. That is, all incoming connections on the ADMIN-MSN are not restricted by the access controls on remote networks.

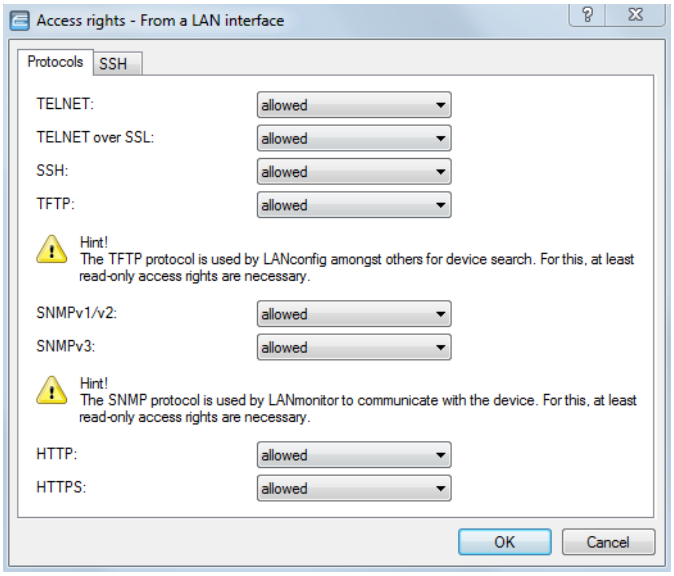
   If you want to completely switch off the ISDN remote management, leave the field with Admin MSN empty.

Restricting network configuration access

Access to the internal functions can be controlled for each of the configuration services individually according to whether they are accessed from the local network, from remote networks, or from wireless LANs.

Access to the configuration can be allowed or denied in general, as purely read-only access or, if your model is so equipped, via VPN only.

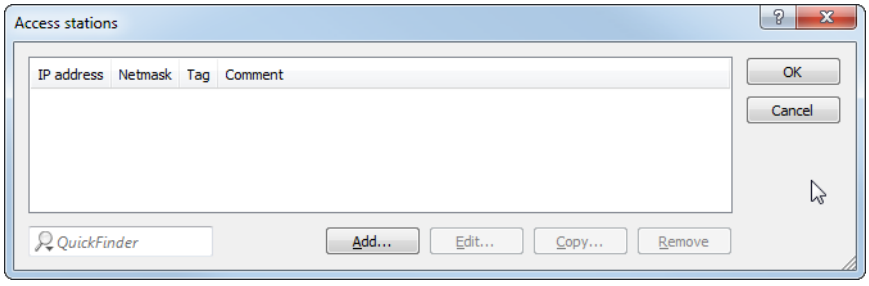
To open the LANconfig configuration dialogs containing the access rights from the local network (LAN), from the WLAN or via remote networks (WAN), go to **Management** > **Admin** in the section **Device access** and use the **Access settings** button. You then click on **Configurations access ways** > **Access rights** and select the appropriate interface:



To completely block access to the router from the WAN, set the configuration access rights from remote networks to “denied” for all protocols.

Restricting access to the network configuration to specific IP addresses

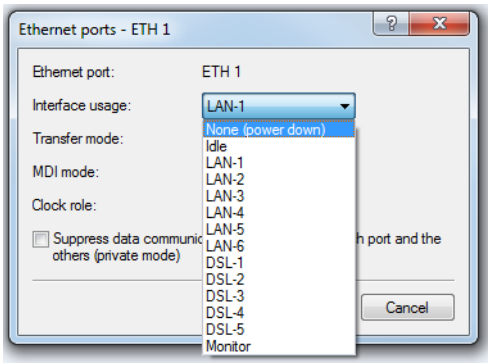
By means of a special filter list, you can restrict access to the internal functions of a device to specific IP addresses only. In LANconfig, the configuration dialog for entering the addresses that are permitted to access the stations is located in the **Access stations** table to be found under **Management** > **Admin** > **Device access** > **Access settings** > **Configuring access ways**.



By default, this table contains no entries. This means that you can access your device from any IP address. You activate the filter by entering an IP address and the corresponding subnet mask. After that, only the IP addresses entered are entitled to use the internal device functions. Further entries will expand the selection of users with the associated rights. The filter entries can include individual computers or even entire networks.

5.1.5 Deactivating Ethernet interfaces

The Ethernet interfaces on any publicly accessible device can potentially be used by unauthorized persons to gain physical access to a network. The Ethernet interfaces on the device can be disabled to prevent this.



LANconfig: Interfaces / LAN / Interface settings

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Interfaces

- **Interface usage**

  Here you select how this interface is to be used.

  Possible values:

  - None (power down): The interface is deactivated.
  - Idle: The interface is not allocated to any particular task, but it remains physically active.
  - LAN-1 to LAN-n: The interface is allocated to a logical LAN.
  - DSL-1 to DSL-n: The interface is allocated to a DSL interface.
  - Monitor: The port is a monitor port, i.e. everything received at the other ports is output via this port. A packet sniffer such as Wireshark/Ethereal can be connected to this port, for example.

  Default:

  - Depends on the particular interface or the hardware model.

5.2 Securing ISDN dial-in access

For a device with an ISDN connection basically any ISDN subscriber can dial-in to your device. You therefore have to pay special attention to securing the ISDN access in order to avoid unwanted intruders.

The security functions of the ISDN access can be divided into two groups:

- Identification control
  - Authentication by name and password
  - Authentication by caller ID
- Call-back to predefined phone numbers

5.2.1 Identification control

Identification control makes use either of the name of the remote site or the caller ID. The caller ID is the telephone number of the caller, which with ISDN is usually transmitted to the remote site with the call.

The “Identifier” to be used to identify the caller is set in the following ways:

LANconfig: Communication / Call management

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WAN / Protect

The following options are available:

- All: Calls are accepted from any remote station.
- By number: Calls are only accepted from Calling Line Identification numbers (CLIP) that are entered in the number list.
- By approved number: Only calls from those remote stations whose Calling Line Identification number (CLIP) is entered in the peer list and whose number is found to be correct by the exchange.

Obviously, identification assumes that the caller transmits the corresponding information.

Verification of user name and password

In the case of PPP, a user name (and in conjunction with PAP, CHAP or MS-CHAP, a password) is sent to the remote station when the connection is established. When a computer dials into the device, the communications software, for example Windows Dial-Up Network, prompts the user for the user name and password.

If the router establishes the connection itself, for instance, to an ISP, it uses the user name and password from the PPP list. If no user name is entered there, the device name is used instead.

LANconfig: Communication / Protocols / PPP list

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WAN / PPP

In addition, the PPP protocol also permits the caller to require an authentication from the remote station. The caller then requests a user or device name and password from the remote station.

Of course, you do not use PAP, CHAP or MS-CHAP security procedures if you are using the device yourself to dial into, for example, an Internet service provider.

Number verification

When a call is placed over an ISDN line, the caller's number is usually sent over the D channel before a connection is even made (CLI – **C**alling **L**ine **I**dentifier).

Access to your own network is granted if the call number appears in the number list, or the caller is called back if the callback option is activated. If the device is set to provide security using the telephone number, any calls from remote stations with unknown numbers are denied access.

You can use call numbers as a security measure with any B-channel protocol (layers).

5.2.2 Callback

The callback function offers a special form of access security: This requires the 'Callback' option to be activated in the peer list for the desired caller and the call number to be specified.

LANconfig: Communication / Remote sites / Remote sites (ISDN/serial)

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WAN / Dialup-peers

Using the settings in the name and number list, you can control the callback behavior of your router:

- The router can refuse to callback.
- It can call back using a preset call number.
- It can first check the name and then call back a preset telephone number.
- The caller can opt to specify the call number to be used for callback.

With this feature, the cost of the connection is largely carried by the company. If call back 'With name' is set in the peer list, the router accepts all unit charges, except for the unit required to send the name. The caller also accepts a unit if

the caller is not identified via CLIP (**C**alling **L**ine **I**dentifier **P**rotocol). On the other hand, the caller incurs no costs if identification of the caller's number is possible and is accepted (callback via the D channel).

An especially effective callback method is the fast-callback procedure. This speeds up the callback procedure considerably. The procedure only works if it is supported by both stations. All current LANCOM routers with an ISDN interface support fast callback.

5.3 Location verification by ISDN or GPS

After being stolen, the device can theoretically be operated at another location by unauthorized persons. Password-protected device configurations do not stop third parties from operating RAS access, LAN connectivity or VPN connections that are set up in the device: A thief could gain access to a protected network.

The device's operation can be protected by various means; for example, it will cease to function if there is an interruption to the power supply, or if the device is switched on in another location.

5.3.1 GPS location verification

GPS location verification enables a geographical position to be defined within the device. After being switched on the device automatically activates the GPS module and checks if it is located at the "correct" position. The router module only switches on if the check is positive. After location verification has been carried out the GPS module is switched off again, unless it was activated manually.

5.3.2 ISDN location verification

ISDN location verification can prevent the misuse of a router. Each time it is switched on, the router carries out a check by making an ISDN telephone call to itself to ensure that it is installed at the intended location. Only after successful location verification is the router module activated.

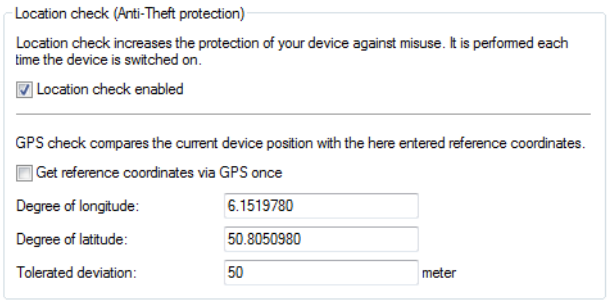
Prerequisites for successful ISDN location verification:

- The device must be reachable from the public ISDN telephone network.
- The device needs two free B channels for the duration of the check. If just one channel is free, e.g. one channel at a point-to-multipoint connection with two B channels is being used for a telephone call, then the device cannot make a call to itself via ISDN.

5.3.3 Configuring location verification

Parameters for location verification are to be found in LANconfig under **Management** > **Location**.

Under **Management** > **Dvanced** > **GPS module** you can switch on the GPS module so that it operates independently of the location check, for example to monitor the coordinates of the current location with LANmonitor.



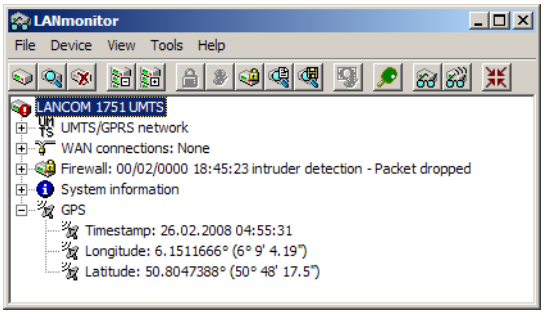
- Activate location verification with the option **Location check enabled**.
- Select the method for the location check:
  - 'Self call' for a check via ISDN by means of a return call.
  - 'Call forwarding check' via ISDN by requesting the call number from the exchange. No call-back is necessary in this case.
  - 'GPS verification' for a check on the geographical coordinates.

For a location check by GPS an appropriate GPS antenna must be connected to the AUX connector on the device. Additionally, a SIM card for mobile telephone operation has to be inserted and the device must be logged on to a mobile phone network.

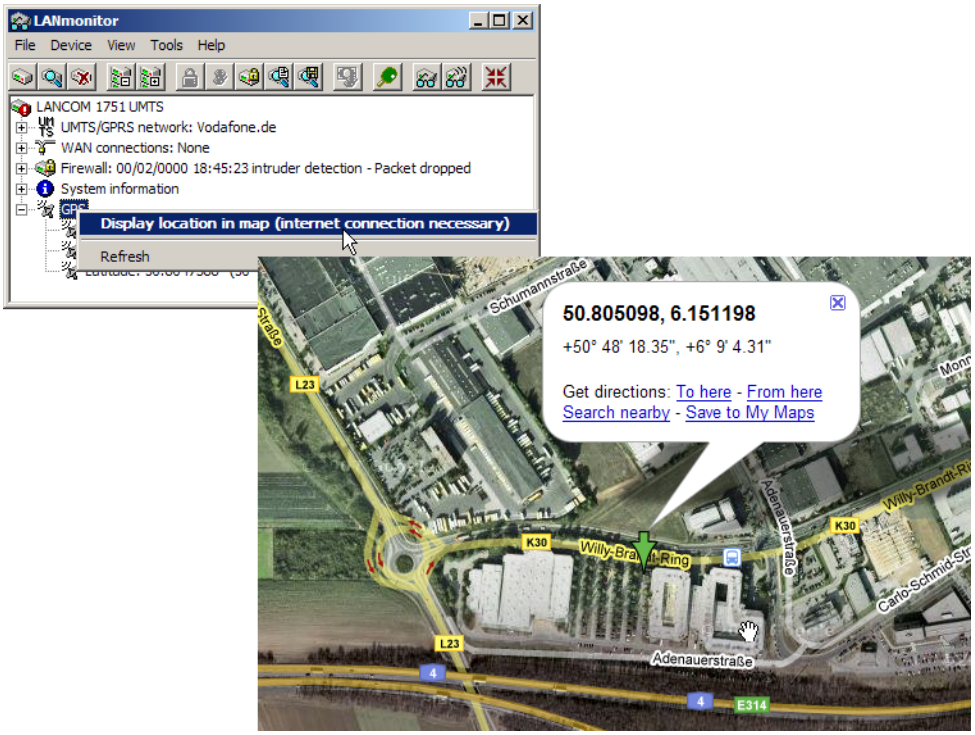
- For the location check enter 'Self call' or 'Call forwarding check' and enter the destination number as the telephone number to be used for the check.
- For location verification by GPS enter the necessary parameters:
  - Degrees latitude and longitude
  - Deviation from the intended position in meters

The device is itself able to determine the geographical coordinates for its current position by activating the **Once get reference coordinates via GPS** checkbox. Once the configuration is written back to the device, the current longitude and latitude are entered automatically, assuming that location verification is activated and a valid GPS position is available. Subsequently this option is automatically deactivated again.

As an alternative you can determine the geographical coordinates from tools such as Google Maps.

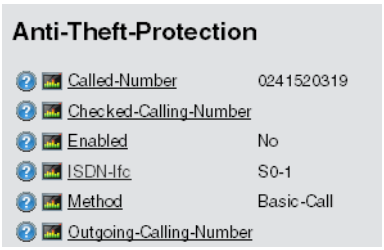


When the current geographical coordinates are displayed in LANmonitor, you can right-click with the mouse on the entry 'GPS' to call up that location in Google maps.



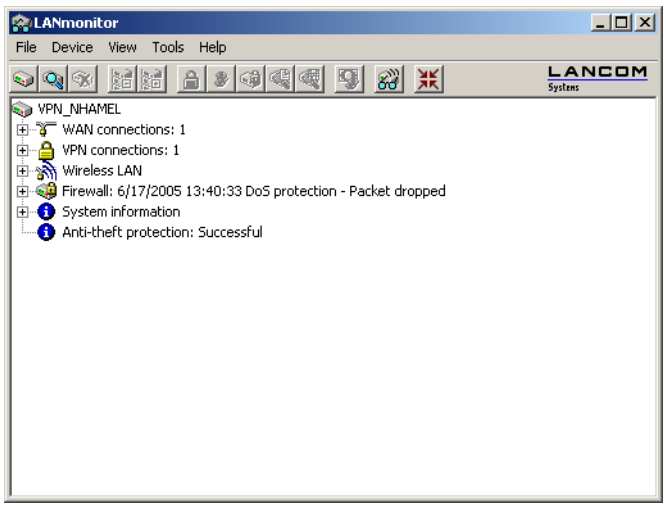
LANconfig: Communication / Remote sites / Remote sites (ISDN/serial)

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Config / Anti-Theft-Protection



Status request, location verification

The status of location verification can be viewed with LANmonitor:



With WEBconfig (**LCOS menu tree / Status / Config / Location verification**) or Telnet (`Status/Config/Location-verification`) you can view the status of the location verification:

Only when the location verification has the status 'Successful' will the router data be transferred over the WAN interfaces.

- Location verification via ISDN is successful when the number 'Expect call from' agrees with the number 'Last call from'. This call is not picked up by the router. The status also displays whether a call was accepted at all.
- Location verification via GPS is successful when the GPS position is valid and within the tolerated range deviation from the known position.

5.4 Preventing password form fields in the browser from storing passwords

Input dialogs on web pages allow web browsers to store any passwords that are entered. This makes things easier for a user accessing the page again in future. This web browser feature is a vulnerability that malicious software can exploit to read out the confidential form data.

To force the manual input of login passwords each time a page is accessed, open WEBconfig and navigate to **Setup** > **HTTP** > **Disable-Password-Autocompletion** and prevent the storage of passwords with the setting “Yes”.

5.5 The security checklist

The following checklists provide an overview of all of the important security settings. Most of the points in this checklist are uncritical for simple configurations. In these cases, the security settings in the basic configuration or that were set with the Security Wizard are sufficient.

Have you secured your wireless network with encryption and access control lists?

With the help of 802.11i, WPA or WEP, you can encrypt the data in your wireless network with different encryption methods such as AES, TKIP or WEP. LANCOM recommends the strongest possible encryption with 802.11i and AES. If the WLAN client adapters do not support these, then you should use TKIP or at least WEP. Make sure that the encryption function in your device is activated, and that at least one passphrase or WEP key has been entered and selected for application.

For security reasons, LANCOM strongly advises you not to use WEP! You should only ever use WEP under exceptional circumstances. When using WEP encryption, use additional security mechanisms additionally.

To check encryption settings in LANconfig, go to **Wireless LAN** > **Encryption** > **WLAN encryption settings** and select the settings for the logical WLAN interfaces.

With the access control list (ACL) you can permit or prevent individual clients accessing your wireless LAN. The decision is based on the MAC address that is permanently programmed into wireless network adapters. To configure the access-control list in LANconfig, go to **Station rules** under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC**.

The LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security (LEPS) uses an additional column in the ACL to assign an individual passphrase consisting of any 8 to 64 ASCII characters to each MAC address. The connection to the access point and the subsequent encryption with IEEE 802.11i or WPA2 is only possible with the right combination of passphrase and MAC address. See also *Configuration* on page 838.

Access control is takes place in phases. First, a search is made for a LEPS-MAC entry. If no such entry exists, a search is made for a LEPS-U entry. Finally, a search is made for a passphrase set for the WLAN under **Wireless LAN** > **Encryption** > **WLAN encryption settings**.

When operating LEPS-U and/or LEPS-MAC, this passphrase should be kept secret and preferably not used at all. Users or MAC addresses removed from the system should not be able to gain access by means of the WLAN passphrase instead.

Have you protected the configuration with a password?

The simplest way of protecting the configuration is to agree upon a password. If no password has been agreed for the device, the configuration is open to be changed by anybody. In LANconfig, the field for entering the password is located under **Management** > **Admin**. It is absolutely imperative to assign a password to the configuration if you want to enable remote configuration!

Have you permitted remote configuration?

If you do not require remote configuration, please ensure to switch it off. If you need to make use of remote configuration, ensure that you do not fail to password-protect the configuration. In LANconfig, the field for disabling remote configuration is located under **Management** > **Admin** > **Device access** > **Access settings**. In the section **Configuration access ways Access rights** > **From a WAN interface** set all protocols to **denied**. You also have the option of blocking the HTTP port for web-server services. To do this, go to the section **Access to web server services** and under **Access rights** > **From a WAN interface** select the option **disabled**.

Have you allowed configuration from the wireless LAN?

If you do not need to configure the device from the wireless LAN, switch this function off. In LANconfig, the field for disabling configuration from a wireless LAN is also located under **Management** > **Admin** > **Device access** > **Access settings**. In the section **Configuration access ways Access rights** > **From a WLAN interface** set all protocols to denied. You also have the option of blocking the HTTP port for web-server services. To do this, go to the section **Access to web server services** and under **Access rights** > **From a WAN interface** select the option **disabled**.

Have your password-protected the SNMP configuration?

Protect the SNMP configuration with a password too. The field for password-protecting the SNMP configuration is also to be found in LANconfig under **Management** > **Admin**.

Have you activated the firewall?

The stateful inspection firewall of devices ensures that you local network cannot be attacked from the outside while your WLAN controller is operating as a Public Spot. Activate the firewall in LANconfig under **Firewall/QoS** > **General**.

Note that firewall security mechanisms (incl. IP masquerading, port filters, access lists) are active only for data connections that are transmitted via the IP router. Direct data connections via the bridge are not protected by the firewall!

Are you using a "deny all" firewall strategy?

Maximum security and control is initially achieved by denying all data traffic from passing the firewall. The only connections to be accepted by the firewall are those that are to be explicitly permitted. This ensures that "Trojan horses" and certain types of e-mail virus are denied communication to the outside. The firewall rules in LANconfig are located under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 rules** > **Rules** and **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** > **IPv6 inbound rules** or **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** > **IPv6 forwarding rules**.

The stateful inspection firewall of devices ensures that you local network cannot be attacked from the outside while your WLAN controller is operating as a Public Spot. Activate the firewall in LANconfig under **Firewall/QoS** > **General**.

Note that firewall security mechanisms (incl. IP masquerading, port filters, access lists) are active only for data connections that are transmitted via the IP router. Direct data connections via the bridge are not protected by the firewall!

Have you activated IP masquerading?

With "IP masquerading", local computers remain invisible to the outside while they access the Internet. All that is revealed to the Internet is the IP number of the router module of the device. The IP address can be fixed or dynamically assigned by the provider. The computers in the LAN use the router as a gateway and are not visible individually. The router separates the Internet from the intranet like a wall. The application of IP masquerading is set in the routing table for every route individually. The routing tables for IPv4 and IPv6 in LANconfig are located under **IP router** > **Routing**. Here you also have the option of configuring a time control for the default route.

Have you used filters to close critical ports?

The firewall filters in the device offer filter functions for individual computers or entire networks. It is possible to set up source and destination filters for individual ports or port ranges. Furthermore, filters can be set for individual protocols or any combination of protocols (ICMP). It is especially convenient to set up the filters with the aid of LANconfig. You can create and modify filter rules under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 rules** > **Rules** and **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** > **IPv6 inbound rules** or **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** > **IPv6 forwarding rules**.

Have you excluded certain stations from accessing the device?

A special filter list can be used to limit access to the device's internal functions via TCP/IP. The phrase "internal functions" refers to configuration sessions via LANconfig, WEBconfig, Telnet or TFTP. As standard this table contains no entries, meaning that computers with any IP address can use TCP/IP and TFTP to commence accessing the device. The first time an IP address is entered with its associated netmask, the filter is activated and only the IP addresses contained in this entry are entitled to make use of internal functions. Further entries can be used to extend the circle of authorized parties. The filter entries can describe individual computers or even entire networks. The access lists in LANconfig are located under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 rules** and **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules**.

Do you store your saved configuration to a safe location?

Protect your saved configurations in a location that is safe from unauthorized access. Otherwise, byway of example, an unauthorized person may load your stored configuration file into another device and they can access the Internet at your expense.

Concerning the exchange of your particularly sensitive data via wireless LAN; have you set up the functions offered by IEEE 802.1X?

If you move especially sensitive data via wireless LAN you can provide even stronger security by using the IEEE 802.1X technology. In LANconfig, the IEEE 802.1X settings are configured under **Wireless LAN** > **802.1X**.

Have you activated the protection of your WAN access in case the device is stolen?

After being stolen, the device can theoretically be operated at another location by unauthorized persons. Password-protected device configurations do not stop third parties from operating RAS access, LAN connectivity or VPN connections that are set up in the device: A thief could gain access to a protected network.

The device's operation can be protected by various means; for example, it will cease to function if there is an interruption to the power supply, or if the device is switched on in another location.

GPS location verification enables a geographical position to be defined within the device. After being switched on the device automatically checks if it is located at the "correct" position. Only after a positive check is the router module activated.

The scripting function can store the entire configuration in RAM only so that restarting the device will cause the configuration to be deleted. The configuration is not written to the non-volatile flash memory. A loss of power because the device has been relocated will cause the entire configuration to be deleted.

Is the storage of configuration files adapted to your security requirements?

For "standalone operation", the configuration for a WLAN interface being managed by a WLAN controller is stored in flash memory for a certain time only, or even in the RAM only. This device configuration is deleted if contact to the WLAN controller is lost or if the power supply is interrupted for longer than the set time period.

Have you ensured that the reset button is safe from accidental configuration resets?

Some devices simply cannot be installed under lock and key. There is consequently a risk that the configuration will be deleted by mistake if a co-worker presses the reset button too long. The behavior of the reset button can be set so that a press is either ignored or it causes a re-start, depending on the time for which it is held pressed.

6 Routing and WAN connections

This chapter describes the most important protocols and configuration entries that relate to WAN connections. It also describes how WAN connections can be optimized.

6.1 General information about WAN connections

WAN connections are used for the following applications.

- Internet access
- LAN-LAN links
- Remote access

6.1.1 Bridges for standard protocols

WAN connections differ from direct connections (for example, via the LANCAPI) in that the data in the WAN are transmitted via standardized network protocols that are also used in the LAN. Direct connections, on the other hand, use proprietary methods that are specifically designed for point-to-point connections.

WAN connections act to extend a LAN, while direct connections merely connect one individual PC to another PC. WAN connections form bridges for the communication between networks (or for connecting individual computers to the LAN).

Which protocols are used on WAN connections?

WAN connections over high-speed connections (e.g. DSL) use the IP standard for transmitting packets.

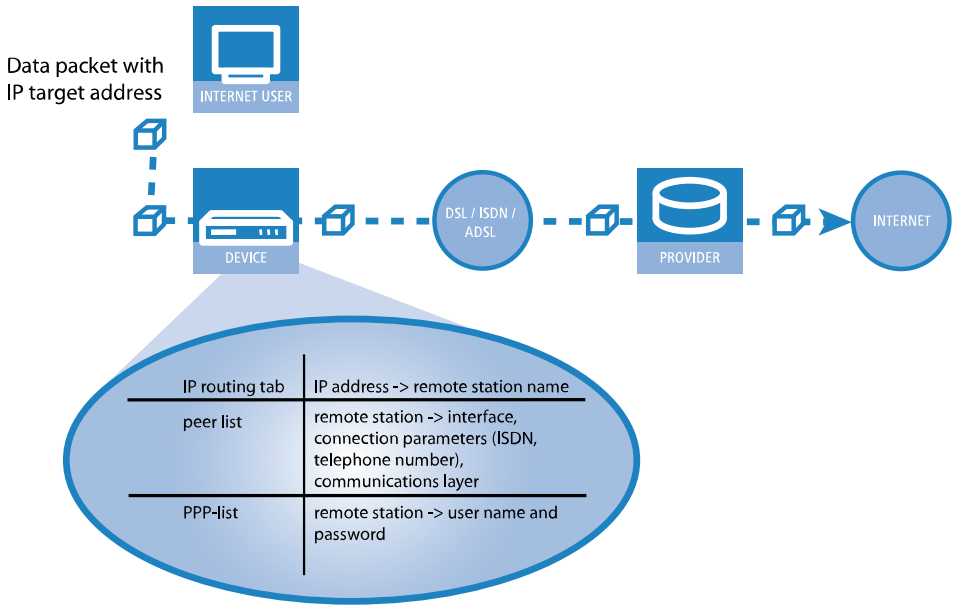
Close cooperation with the router modules

Characteristic of WAN connections is the close cooperation with the router modules in the device. The router modules (IP) provide the connection between LAN and WAN. They use the WAN modules to respond to requests from LAN-based PCs for external resources.

6.1.2 What happens with a request from the LAN?

Initially, the router modules only determine which remote site a data packet should be sent to. In order for the required connection to be selected and/or established, various parameters need to be agreed for all of the necessary connections. These parameters are stored in different lists, which interact to allow the correct connections.

A simplified example will illustrate this process. Here we assume that you know the Internet IP address of the computer you are looking for.



1. **Selecting the right route**

   A data packet from a computer initially finds its way to the Internet by means of the IP address of the recipient. The computer sends the packet with this address through the LAN to the router. The router refers to its IP routing table to determine which remote site is used to reach the IP address in question, e.g. 'Provider'.

2. **Connection data for the remote site**

   The router uses this name to check the list of remote sites and find the connection data required for the provider. This connection data includes, for example, the WAN interface (DSL, ISDN) used to reach the provider, protocol information, or the number required for an ISDN dial-in connection. The router also refers to the PPP list to obtain the corresponding user name and password.

3. **Establishing the WAN connection**

   The router then establishes a connection to the provider via a WAN interface. It authenticates itself by user name and password.

4. **Transmission of data packets**

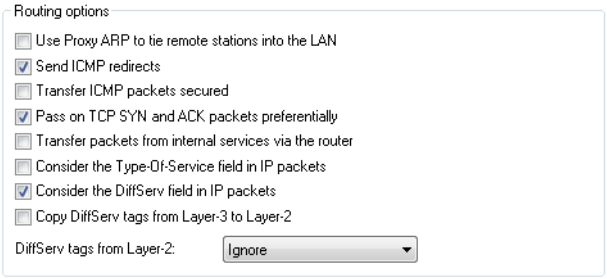
   Once the connection is established, the router sends the data packet to the Internet.

6.2 IP routing

An IP router works between networks that use TCP/IP as the network protocol. In order for data to be transmitted, the destination addresses must be available in the routing table. This section explains the structure of the IP routing table of a LANCOM router, as well as the additional functions available to support IP routing.

6.2.1 Routing options

In LANconfig, you configure the general routing options under **IP router** > **General**.



Use Proxy ARP to tie remote sites into the LAN

Use this option to enable or disable the proxy ARP mechanism. The use of proxy ARP integrates remote computers into your local network as if they were physically located within it.

Send ICMP redirects

You know how workstations behave in a local network: If the computer wants to send a packet to an IP address that does not exist in the local LAN, it looks for a router for further help. The computer's operating system generally points to this router by means of an entry for the default router or standard gateway. If a network has several routers, it is generally only possible to specify one default router that is theoretically able to reach all of the IP addresses that are unknown to the workstation. Occasionally this default router may be unable to reach the target network, but it knows of another router that is able to find this target.

By default, the router sends the computer a response containing the address of that router which knows the route to the target network (this response is called the "ICMP redirect"). The workstation then uses this address to send the packet straight to the other router.

However, some computers are unable to process ICMP redirects. In order for the data packets to be delivered despite this, you make use of the local routing. You instruct the router in your device to send the packet to the other responsible router. Also, it is no longer able to send ICMP redirects to the clients.

Local routing can be very helpful in individual cases, but it should be used only in situations of this type. This is because local routing leads to a doubling of all network packets to the target network. The packets are first sent to the default router, which then sends them to the appropriate router in the local network.

You use this option to determine whether the device sends ICMP redirects.

Transfer ICMP packets secured

Here you determine whether the device sends secured ICMP redirects.

Pass on TCP-SYN and ACK packets preferentially

The SYN/ACK-speedup method is used to accelerate IP traffic. With SYN/ACK-speedup, IP control characters (`SYN` for synchronization and `ACK` for acknowledge) in the transmit buffer are given priority over standard data packets. This avoids the situation where control characters are caught up in the transmit queue, so causing the remote site to stop sending data.

SYN/ACK-speedup is most effective with high-speed connections like ADSL, where data are transferred at high speed in both directions at the same time.

In the factory settings, SYN/ACK-speedup is activated by default.

The preferential treatment of individual packets leads to a change from the original packet order. Although TCP/IP provides no guarantee of a specific packet order, this can lead to problems with some applications.

This only affects applications which, in divergence from the standard protocol, require a certain packet order. In this case, disable the SYN/ACK-speedup.

Transfer packets from internal services via the router

By default, local services always bypass the router. Acknowledgments are always returned directly to the MAC address where the request originated. Select this option if you wish packets from internal services to be sent via the router. Packets will then be sent not directly to the MAC address of the sender but via the router (provided an appropriate route has been configured).

Consider the Type-of-Service field in IP packets

If you have selected "Type-Of-Service", the router searches the IP packets for options that indicate whether the packets should be transmitted particularly quickly or secured.

Consider the DiffServ field in IP packets

If the router considers the DiffServ field in IP packets, it applies preferential transmission according to the standardized DSCP (DiffServ code point) `AFxx` (Assured Forwarding) for secured transmission and `EF` (Expedited Forwarding). All other IP packets will be transmitted normally. This option is enabled by default.

This option cannot be used in combination with ToS since the DiffServ field replaces the ToS field within the IP packet.

For more information about DiffServ, see the chapter *Quality-of-Service*.

Copy DiffServ tags from layer 3 to layer 2

The setting for Layer3-Layer2 tagging regulates the behavior when a data packet is transmitted. With this option enabled, VLAN tags with priority bits originating from the DSCP precedence are generated if the recipient has sent at least one tagged packet.

DiffServ tags from Layer 2

The setting for Layer2-Layer3 tagging regulates the behavior when a data packet is received.

- **Ignore**: VLAN tags are ignored.
- **Copy to layer 3**: Priority bits in the VLAN tag are always copied to the precedence of the DSCP.
- **Copy automatically**: Priority bits in the VLAN tag are only copied to the DSCP precedence if this is "000".

6.2.2 The IP routing table

The IP routing table informs the router which remote site (i.e. to which other router or computer) is to be used for any given IP addresses or IP address ranges. This type of entry is called a "route" since it is used to describe the path that the data packet should take. This procedure is also known as "static routing" since these entries are made manually and remain unchanged until you edit or delete them. In contrast to this, there is also "dynamic routing". Here, the various routers independently exchange information about the routes and keep this information up to date. When IP RIP is enabled, the IP router refers to both the static and the dynamic routing tables.

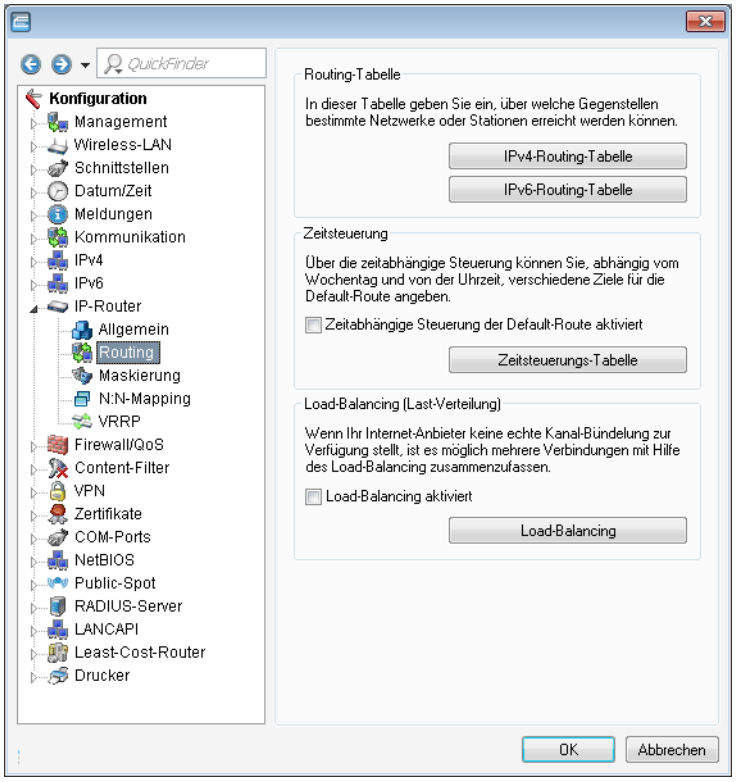
With the help of the IP routing table you also inform the router about the length of the route so that, in conjunction with IP RIP, the most effective route is selected where multiple routes exist to the same destination. The default setting for the distance to another router is 0, i.e. the router is directly accessible. All locally accessible devices, i.e. other routers in the same LAN or workstations that are connected via proxy ARP, are entered with the distance 0. Setting a higher distance (up to 14) reduces the "quality" of a route. These "unfavorable" routes will only be used if no other route to the corresponding remote site is available.

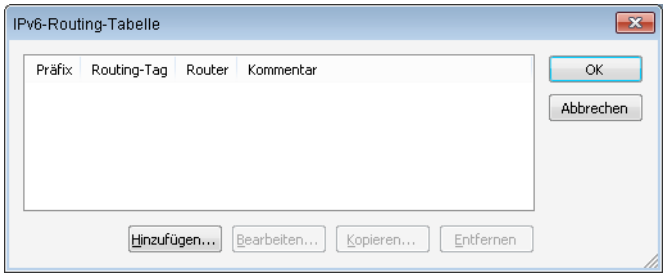
IP routing tables for IPv4/IPv6

Unlike previous versions where the configuration menu contained just a single IP routing table, this item now offers the configuration of separate routing tables for IPv4 and IPv6 connections.

You will find the new table under **IP router** > **Routing** > **IPv6 routing table**

The IPv4 settings that were previously in the table **IP routing table** are now located in the **IPv4 routing table** .





The table contains the entries to be used for routing packets with IPv6 addresses.

Prefix

Specify the prefix of the network area for which the data is to be routed to the given remote site.

Routing tag

Specify the routing tag for this route. This route is active only for packets with the same tag. The data packets receive the routing tag either from the firewall or depending on the LAN or WAN interface used.

Router

This is where you specify the remote site for this route.

Comment

Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

Entering a comment is optional.

Configuring the routing table

LANconfig: IP-Router / Routing / Routing-Table

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / IP-Router / IP-Routing-Table

An IP routing table might look like this:

IP address	Netmask	Routing tag	Router	Distance	Masking	Active
192.168.120.0	255.255.255.0	0	MAIN	2	Off	Yes
192.168.125.0	255.255.255.0	0	NODE1	3	Off	Yes
192.168.130.0	255.255.255.0	0	191,168,140,123	0	Off	Yes

What do the various entries in the list mean?

- IP address and netmask

  This is the address of the destination network, to which data packets may be sent, together with its associated network mask. The router uses the network mask and the destination IP address of the incoming data packets to check whether the packet belongs to the destination network.

  The default route has the IP address '255.255.255.255' and the network mask '0.0.0.0'. All data packets that cannot be routed by other routing entries are sent over this route.

- Routing tag

  The routing tag allows the selection of the destination route to be controlled more precisely. In this case, route selection relies not only on the target IP address, but also on further information added to the data packets by the firewall (*Policy-based routing* on page 345). With the routing tag “0” the routing entry applies to all packets.

- Router

  The router transmits the data packets to the remote site with the matching IP address and netmask.

  - If the remote site is a router in another network or an individual workstation computer, then the name of the remote site is entered here.
  - If a router is unable to reach the remote site, the IP address entered here is that of another router in the LAN that knows the route to the destination network.

  The name of the remote site indicates how data packets with the corresponding IP address and network mask should be handled.

  - Routes with the entry '0.0.0.0' identify exclusion routes. Data packets for this “zero route” are discarded and not forwarded. This means that routes prohibited on the Internet (private address spaces, e.g. '10.0.0.0') are excluded from transmission.
  - If the remote site is entered as an IP address, then this is a locally accessible router that is responsible for transmitting the corresponding data packets.

- Distance

  Number of routers between your own and the destination router. This value is often equated with the cost of transmission and used to distinguish between inexpensive and expensive call paths for wide-area connections. The distance values entered here are propagated as follows:

  - While a connection is established to a destination network, all networks reachable via this connection are propagated with a distance of 1.
  - All non-connected networks are propagated with the distance entered in the routing table (at least with a distance of 2), as long as a free transmission channel is still available.
  - If no channels are available, the remaining networks are propagated with a distance 16 (= unreachable).
  - Exceptions are the remote sites that are connected via proxy ARP. These “proxy hosts” are not propagated at all.

- Masquerading

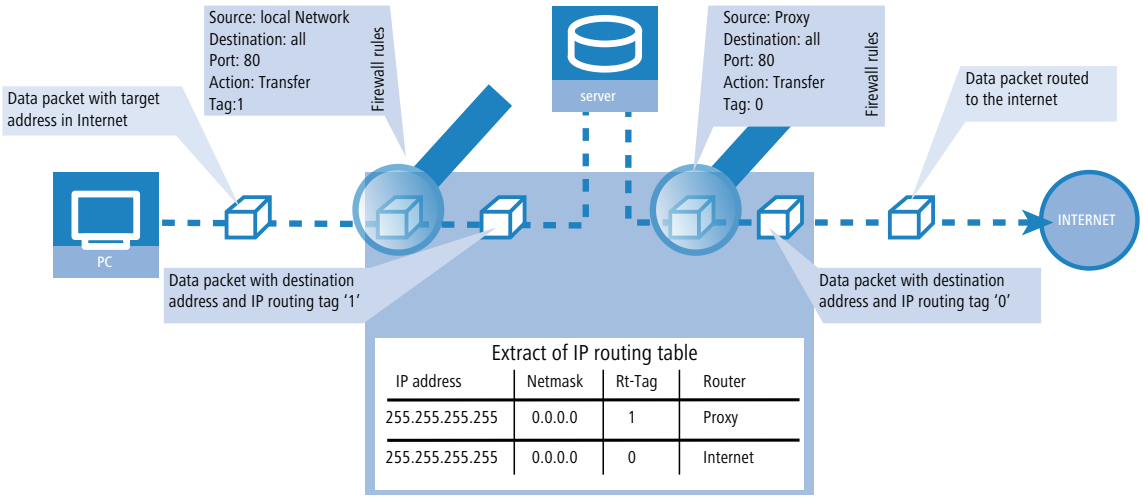
The 'Masquerade' option in the routing table tells the router which IP address to use when forwarding packets.

Please refer to section *IP masquerading* on page 371 for further information.

6.2.3 Policy-based routing

Policy-based routing does not rely exclusively upon the destination IP address to define the destination route (i.e. the remote device to be used for transferring the data). Further information can be used—such as the service or the protocol used, sender addresses, or the destination for the data packets—to select the destination route. Policy-based routing can be used to achieve a significantly finer-grained routing behavior, such as in the following application scenarios:

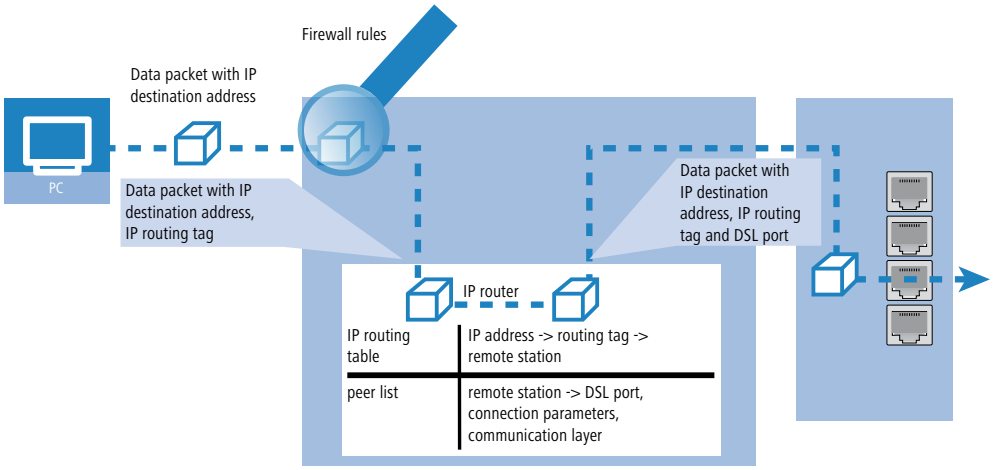
- The LAN's entire Internet traffic is diverted to a proxy without entering the proxy address into the browsers. As the users do not notice the proxy routing, the scenario is named "transparent" proxy.



- With load balancing, the data traffic for selected protocols is diverted over a certain DSL port that uses an additional external ADSL modem.
- A server in the local network is routed via a specific WAN interface as it needs to be accessible from the WAN at a fixed IP address.
- VPN traffic is forwarded to a VPN tunnel with dynamic end points by using the routing tag '0'; the company's remaining Internet traffic is diverted to another firewall by means of another suitable routing tag.

In order for channel selection to be decided according to information other than just the destination IP address, suitable entries can be made in the firewall. These entries are supplemented with a special "routing tag" that is used to control the channel selection with the routing table. For example, a rule adds the routing tag '2' to the entire data traffic for a local group of computers (defined by an IP address range). Alternatively, certain protocols receive a different supplementary routing tag.

The diagram demonstrates the application of policy-routing with load balancing:



- When establishing a connection, the firewall initially checks if the packets for transmission fit to a rule which contains a routing tag. The routing tag is entered into the data packet.
- The IP routing table combines the routing tag and destination IP address to determine the appropriate remote site. The IP routing table is processed from top down in the usual fashion.
- If an entry is found corresponding to the network, then the second step is to check the routing tag. The required remote site can be found with the help of the appropriate routing tag. During load balancing, the device can use the remote site from the list of remote sites/peers to determine the correct DSL port.

  If the routing tag has a value of “0” (default) then the routing entry applies to all packets.

- Internal services implicitly use the default tag. If the user wishes to direct the default route through a VPN tunnel with a dynamic tunnel endpoint, for example, then the VPN module uses the default route with the routing tag “0” as standard.

  To direct the default route through the VPN tunnel anyway, create a second default route with routing tag "1" and the VPN remote site as router names. With the appropriate firewall rule you can transfer all services from all source stations to all destination stations with routing tag “1”.

- Routing tags and RIP: The routing tag is also sent in RIP packets and evaluated upon receipt, so you can, for example, change the distances in the correct routes.

Routing tags for VPN and PPTP connections

Routing tags are used on the device in order to evaluate criteria relevant to the selection of the target route in addition to the IP address. In general, routing tags are added to the data packets using special firewall rules. However, in some cases, it is desirable to assign the tags directly.

- Routing tags for VPN connections

The VPN name list can be used to enter the routing tag for every VPN connection. The routing tag is used in order to determine the route to the remote gateway (default '0').

In addition, every gateway can be assigned a specific routing tag in the gateway table. The tag 0 has a special function in this table: If the tag is set at 0 on a gateway, then the tag from the VPN name list table is used.

The VPN routing tag parameters can be found under Setup/VPN/VPN Peers or Setup/VPN/Additional Gateways and under LANconfig in the configuration section 'VPN' on the 'General' tab by clicking on 'Connection List' and 'Further remote gateways' in the list.

- Routing tags for PPTP connections

In the PPTP table, a routing tag can be entered in addition to the IP address of the PPTP server. Using this routing tag, two or more DSL modems that use a single IP address can be operated on different DSL ports.

Peer	IP address	Rtg tag	Port	SH-Time
PEER01	10.0.0.138	1	1723	9999
PEER02	10.0.0.138	2	1723	9999

In the IP routing table, two appropriately tagged routes are required:

IP address	IP-Netmask	Rtg tag	Peer-or-IP	Distance	Masking
10.0.0.138	255,255,255,255	2	PEER02-PPTP	0	No
10.0.0.138	255,255,255,255	1	PEER01-PPTP	0	No
192.168.0.0	255.255.0.0	0	0.0.0.0	0	No
172.16.0.0	255.240.0.0	0	0.0.0.0	0	No
10.0.0.0	255.0.0.0	0	0.0.0.0	0	No
224.0.0.0	224.0.0.0	0	0.0.0.0	0	No
255,255,255,255	0.0.0.0	0	PEER-LB	0	Yes

Using these settings and the corresponding entry in the load balancing table, load balancing can be performed that would also work in Austria.

Peer	Bundle-Peer-1	Bundle-Peer-2	Bundle-Peer-3
PEER-LB	PEER01	PEER02	

6.2.4 Dynamic routing with IP RIP

In addition to the static routing table, routers from LANCOM also have a dynamic routing table. Unlike the static table, you do not fill out this table manually as this is handled by the router itself. It does this by means of the routing information protocol (RIP). All devices that support RIP use this protocol to exchange information about the available routes.

What information is propagated via IP RIP?

A router uses the IP RIP information to inform the other routers in the network of the routes it finds in its own static table. The following entries are ignored:

- Rejected routes with the '0.0.0.0' router setting.
- Routes referring to other routers in the local area network.
- Routes that link individual computers to the LAN via proxy ARP.

Although the entries in the static routing table are set manually, this information nevertheless changes depending on the connection situation of the routers, which in turn influences the RIP packets transmitted.

- If the router has established a connection to a remote site, it uses RIPs to propagate all of the networks that can be reached over this route and gives them the distance '1'. This informs other routers in the LAN that a connection to this remote site is available using this router. This saves other routers from accessing their dial-up connections, which in turn reduces connection costs.
- Furthermore, if this router is unable to connect to any other remote sites, all of its other routes are propagated by RIP with the distance '16'. The '16' stands for “This route is not available at the moment”. The following causes may prevent a router from establishing a further connection in addition to its current one:
  - All other channels are busy with another connection (including via LANCAPI).
  - Y-connections for the S0 port are explicitly excluded in the interface table.
  - The existing connection is using all B-channels (channel bundling).
  - The existing connection is a leased line. Only a few ISDN providers allow a dial-in connection to be established on the second B-channel in parallel with a permanent connection on the first B-channel.

What information does the router extract from received IP RIP packets?

When the router receives IP RIP packets, it incorporates them into its dynamic IP routing table, which looks something like this:

IP address	IP-Netmask	Time	Distance	Router
192.168.120.0	255.255.255.0	1	2	192.168.110.1
192.168.130.0	255.255.255.0	5	3	192.168.110.2
192.168.140.0	255.255.255.0	1	5	192.168.110.3

What do the entries mean?

IP address and network mask identify the destination network, the distance shows the number of routers between the transmitter and receiver, and the last column shows which router advertised this route. With the 'Time', the dynamic table shows how old the route is. The value in this column acts as a multiplier for the interval at which the RIP packets arrive, so a '1' stands for about 30 seconds, a '5' for about 2.5 minutes, and so on. When new information about a route arrives, this route is considered to be directly accessible and receives the time '1'. The value in this column is automatically incremented when the corresponding amount of time has elapsed. After 3.5 minutes, the distance is set to '16' (route unavailable), and after 5.5 minutes the route is deleted.

If the router now receives an IP RIP packet, it must decide whether or not to include the routes it contains in its dynamic table. This is done as follows:

- The route is included if it is not yet listed in the table (if there is enough space in the table).
- The route is present in the table with the time from '5' or '6'. The new route will be used if it has the same or a better distance.
- The route is present in the table with the time from '7' to '10', so it has the distance '16'. The new route will always be used.
- The route is present in the table. The new route comes from the same router that also communicated this route, but has a worse distance than the previous entry. If a device communicates the degradation of its own static routing table in this way (e.g. a disconnect increases the distance from 1 to 2, see below), the router accepts this and includes the poorer entry in its dynamic table.

RIP packets from the WAN are ignored and immediately discarded. RIP packets from the LAN will be evaluated and are not propagated in the LAN.

Interaction of static and dynamic tables

The router combines the static and dynamic tables to assemble the actual IP routing table used to determine the path for data packets. In doing so, it combines the routes from its own static table with the routes from the dynamic table which it does not know itself or which indicate a shorter distance than its own (static) route.

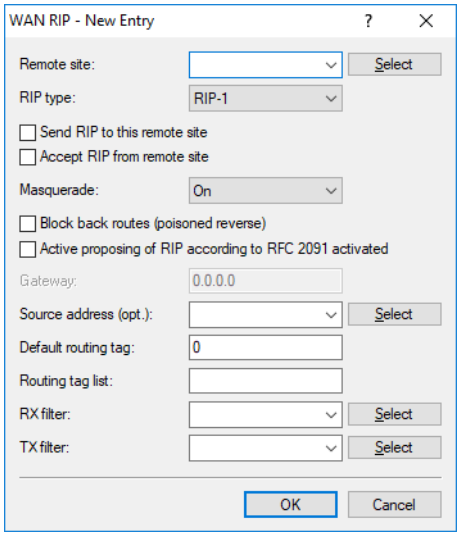
Scaling with IP RIP

If you use several routers in a local network with IP RIP, you can represent the routers outwardly as one large router. This procedure is also called “scaling”. Due to the constant exchange of information between the routers, this type of router theoretically has no limits to the transmission options available to it.

Configuring the IP RIP function

In order for statically defined routes and routes learned from RIP to be broadcast across the WAN, or for routes to be learned from the WAN, the respective remote sites can be entered into the WAN RIP table.

LANconfig: **Routing protocols** > **RIP** > **WAN RIP**



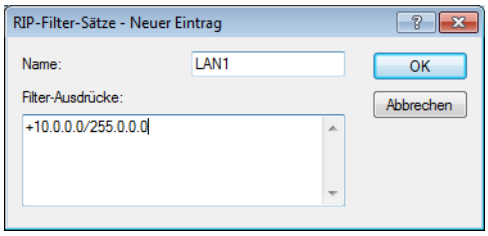
Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **RIP** > **WAN-Sites**

RIP-capable routers send the RIP packets approximately every 30 seconds. The router will only send and receive RIPs if it has a unique IP address. In the default setting with the IP address xxx.xxx.xxx.254 the IP RIP module is switched off.

RIP filter

Routes learned from RIP can be filtered by their routing tag according to the settings for LAN and WAN RIP. Routes can additionally be filtered by specifying network addresses (e.g. "Only learn routes in the network 192.168.0.0/255.255.0.0"). First of all a central table is used to define the filters that can then be used by entries in the LAN and WAN RIP table.

LANconfig: **Routing protocols** > **RIP** > **RIP filter sets**

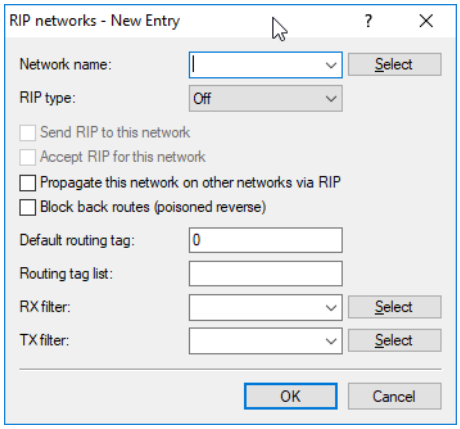


Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **RIP** > **Filter**

Setting up RIP for separate networks

Similar to the NetBIOS proxy, the local network structure should generally not be propagated by RIP in the DMZ. Furthermore it is sometimes desirable to propagate routes to a network, but not to learn routes from that network (e.g. in the WAN). For this reason, the RIP function can be configured separately for each network.

LANconfig: **Routing protocols** > **RIP** > **RIP networks**



Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **RIP** > **LAN-Sites**

Timer settings

The Routing Information Protocol (RIP) regularly provides neighboring routers with updates on the available networks and the associated metrics (hops). RIP uses various timers to control the exchange of routing information.

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **RIP** > **Parameter**

Triggered update in the LAN

With a triggered update, changes to the metrics are immediately reported to the neighboring router. The system does not wait until the next regular update. An update delay stops faulty configurations from causing excessive update messages.

- Update delay

  The update delay starts as soon as the routing table, or parts of it, are propagated. As long as this delay is running, new routing information is accepted and entered into the table but it is not reported any further. The router actively reports its current entries only after expiry of this delay.

  The value set here sets the upper limit for the delay – the actual delay is a random value between one second and the value set here.

Triggered update in the WAN

Other than in the LAN, WAN bandwidth limitations may make regular updates every 30 seconds undesirable. For this reason, RFC 2091 requires that routes are transmitted to the WAN once only when the connection is established. After this, updates only are transmitted.

Because updates are explicitly requested here, broadcasts or multicasts are not to be used for delivering RIP messages. Instead, the subsidiary device must be statically configured with the IP address of the next available router at the central location. Due to these requests, the central router knows which subsidiary routers it has received update requests from; it then sends any messages on route changes directly to the subsidiary device.

The WAN-RIP table has been extended for configuring the triggered update in the WAN.

Poisoned reverse

Poisoned reverse prevents the formation of routing loops. An update is sent back to the router that propagated the route to inform it that the network is unreachable at the associated interface.

However, this has a significant disadvantage over WAN connections: The central location transmits a high number of routes which would then suffer from route poisoning, so leading to a heavy load on the available bandwidth. For this reason, poisoned reverse can be manually activated for every LAN/WAN interface.

The LAN and WAN RIP tables have been extended for the configuration of poisoned reverse.

Static routes for constant propagation

Routers use RIP to propagate not only dynamic routes but statically configured routes as well. Some of these static routes may not be constantly available, for example when an Internet connection or dial-up access is temporarily unavailable.

For a static route, the setting for "Active" in the routing table defines whether it should be propagated constantly or only when it is actually reachable.

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **IP-Routing-Table**

6.2.5 Bonjour proxy

Apple Bonjour allows devices to discover and operate certain approved services automatically and without prior configuration. This procedure is also known as "Zero Configuration Networking" (ZeroConf).

The most popular services include, among others:

- Printer services (with or without Apple Airprint support)
- File services (folder or file shares)
- Apple Airplay
- iTunes

Bonjour basics

Bonjour exchanges information by means of individual multicast DNS packets (mDNS) according to *RFC 6762* and DNS-based service discovery (DNS-SD) according to *RFC 6763*. The clients exchange Bonjour information via the multicast address `224.0.0.251` (IPv4) or `ff02::fb` (IPv6) on port 5353. Bonjour packets are not routed (multicast packet, TTL = 1), which limits their use to the current local area network.

Please note that the Bonjour proxy only serves to aid the discovery of Bonjour services. The actual routing between the communicating parties requires a separate configuration or restriction by means of, for example, routing or firewall entries.

It is often impractical to provide all services on a single network. This is why larger networks are often divided into several subnets. However, Bonjour is unable to operate in this situation.

Example application with two networks

At a school, students use a dedicated IP network to access the WLAN. In parallel to this, the local printer is made available on a second internal IP network. In principal, the appropriate routing and restrictions would make it possible for students to use their smartphones to access the local internal printer. However, because mDNS is only defined as link-local, Bonjour is unable to help students to discover the printer with their smartphones. The LANCOM Bonjour proxy mediates between two networks, which enables students to discover printers in other networks.

Basically, there are two ways of realizing such a scenario:

Multicast routing

A router forwards the search queries and service advertisements between the two networks.

This option causes unnecessary traffic, which makes it rather inefficient.

Caching of services

The router stores discovered mDNS service advertisements in its local cache. A router that receives an mDNS query then responds on behalf of the original service. Before processing the advertisement and before

transmitting anything from the cache, the router checks its policies to see whether the service is approved or blocked. The policies are used to control which services are approved for discovery and between which networks.

Please note that reading out the mDNS cache content with the SNMP protocol is not supported.

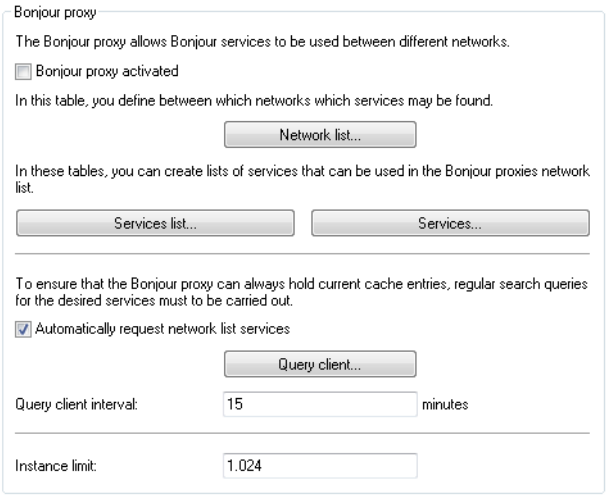
The Bonjour proxy supports an mDNS query client, which at set time intervals queries an interface about the services of interest. This query keeps the cache entries for approved services up to date. In order for the cache to be up-to-date at all times, it is useful to enable automatic searches for services that are permanently available (e.g. print services).

If no automatic queries about frequently used services are configured, the Bonjour proxy may be unable to respond to the corresponding queries even though the services are approved.

Bonjour proxies only operate on logical LAN / WLAN interfaces or on logical networks with an IP address. WAN interfaces / remote sites or tunnels (except for WLC L3 tunnels) and VLANs without address binding are not supported.

Configuration with LANconfig

The Bonjour proxy is configured with LANconfig under **IP router** > **Bonjour**.



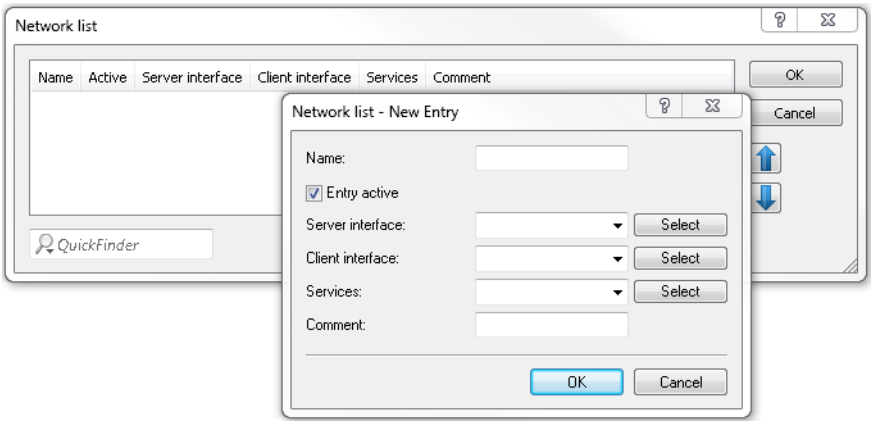
The following settings are available:

Bonjour proxy activated

Use this checkbox to enable or disable the Bonjour proxy.

Network list

Use this table to specify the networks between which Bonjour services may be discovered. To function properly, the networks or interfaces need to be configured with an IPv4 or IPv6 address. This table offers you the following options:



Name

Specify a unique name for this table entry.

Entry active

Enable or disable this table entry.

Server interface

Set the name of the IPv4 network or IPv6 interface that is used to provide the Bonjour services (e.g. print services).

Client interface

IPv4 network name or IPv6 interface name to be used for Bonjour clients to discover services on the server network

Services

This references an entry in the list of services. Clients are only able to find services contained in this list. Non-listed services are rejected.

If this box is left empty, all services are allowed.

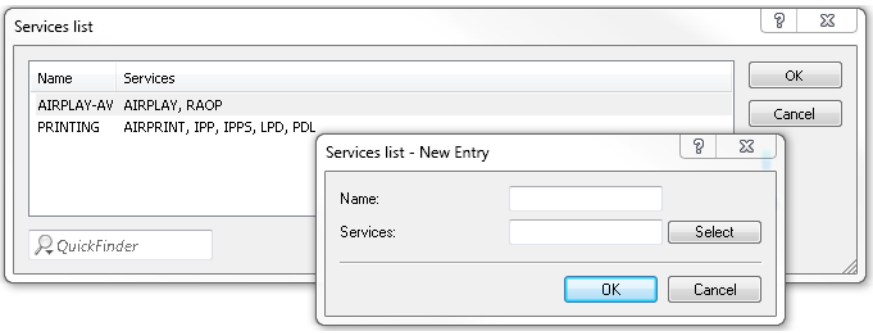
Comment

Enter a comment about this table entry.

Services list

In this table, create a list of Bonjour service types that are available for use in the Bonjour network list.

The following settings are available:



Name

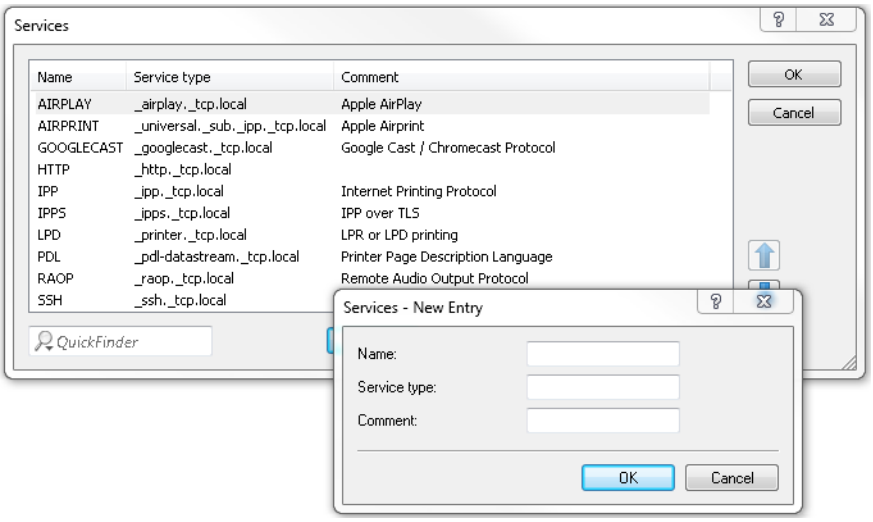
Specify a unique name for this table entry.

Services

Enter a comma-separated list of services that are to be available for use in the **Services** table.

Services

This table is used to specify the Bonjour service types that can be used in the services list. Additional settings are available as follows:



Name

Specify a unique name for this table entry.

Service type

Specify the Bonjour service type as a DNS SRV record, e.g. with `_http._tcp.local`.

Comment

Enter a comment about this table entry.

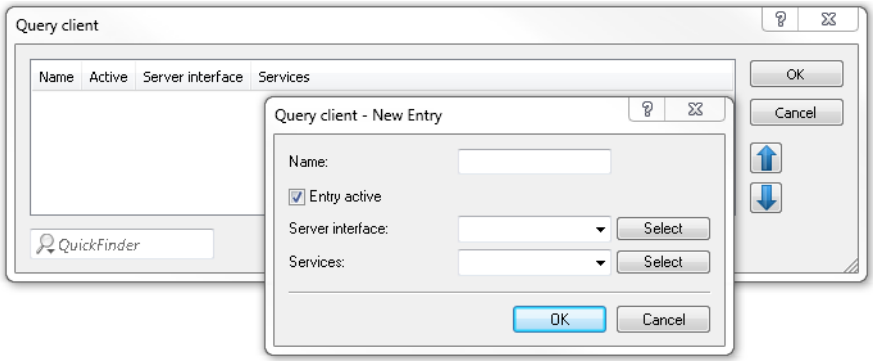
Automatically request network list services

With this item enabled, the device sends regular queries about which services (as specified in the network list) are available from the corresponding server interface. This option is enabled by default. This setting is also recommended.

If this setting is disabled, you need to manually enter the services to be queried into the **Query client** table.

Query client

To keep the Bonjour proxy services cache up-to-date all times, you need to configure regular queries about the desired services. The query client regularly contacts the configured service types for information about their availability.



Name

Specify a unique name for the corresponding entry.

Entry active

Activates or deactivates this table entry.

Server interface

Set an IPv4 network name or an IPv6 interface name that is to offer the Bonjour services (e.g. print services) and which will regularly be used by the router to make the queries.

Services

This references an entry in the list of services. These services are regularly queried by the router at the server interface. This entry may not be empty.

Query client interval

Set the interval in minutes in which the query client updates the Bonjour services configured in the **Query client** table. 15 minutes are defined by default.

Instance limit

Specify the maximum number of service instances that the Bonjour proxy stores at the same time.

6.3 Advanced Routing and Forwarding (ARF)

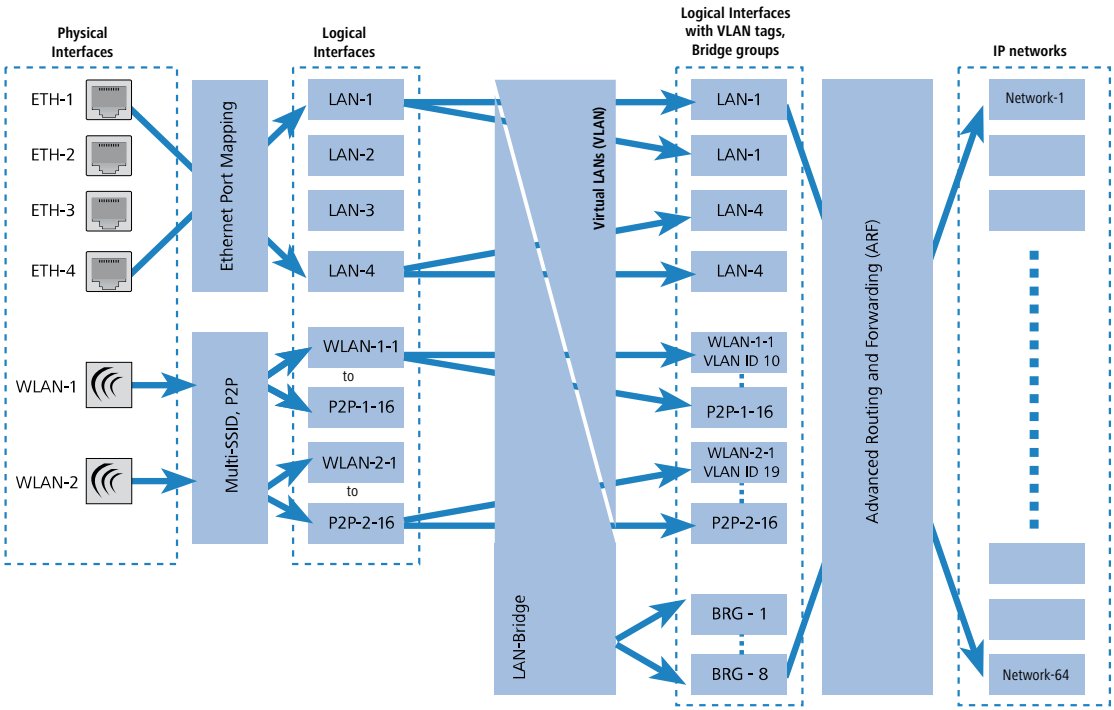
6.3.1 Introduction

In simple use cases, a device manages two local networks only: The intranet and the DMZ. In more complex environments, however, it is often desirable to realize more than one intranet and one DMZ with a device, for example to provide Internet access to multiple IP networks by means of a central device. Depending on the model, current devices support up to 64 different IP networks.

Various scenarios are possible when realizing multiple IP networks:

- One network per interface.
- Multiple networks per interface.
- Multiple VLANs per interface; one or more networks per VLAN (which corresponds with a combination of the first two scenarios).

The realization of these scenarios is facilitated by advanced routing and forwarding (ARF), which provides very flexible options in the definition of IP networks and the assignment of these networks to the interfaces. The diagram below illustrates the network/interface assignment at various levels. The configuration options applied here are described in the following chapters.



The assignment of IP networks to interfaces proceeds as follows:

- The various models have different numbers of physical interfaces, i.e. Ethernet ports or WLAN modules. The logical interface(s) is/are assigned to the physical interface:
  - For the Ethernet ports, assignment is handled by Ethernet port mapping.

    For some but not all models, the number of logical LAN interfaces corresponds to the number of physically available Ethernet ports.
  - In the case of the WLAN modules, the establishment of point-to-point connections (P2P) and/or the use of Multi-SSID can mean that multiple WLAN interfaces are assigned to each physical WLAN module: Up to 16 wireless networks and up to 16 P2P connections per module
- These logical interfaces are further specified and grouped in the next stage:
  - For devices supporting VLAN, multiple VLANs can be defined for each logical interface simply by using VLAN-IDs. Although the data traffic for the various VLANs flows via a common logical interface, the VLAN-ID ensures that the different VLANs remain strictly separated. From the perspective of the device, the VLANs are completely separate interfaces, meaning that a single logical interface becomes multiple logical interfaces for the device, and each of which can be addressed individually.
  - For devices with WLAN modules, the individual logical interfaces can be grouped together. This is handled by the LAN bridge which regulates data transfer between the LAN and WLAN interfaces. The formation of bridge groups (BRG) allows multiple logical interfaces to be addresses at once and they appear as a single interface to the device—in effect achieving the opposite of the VLAN method.

- In the final stage, the ARF forms a connection between the logical interfaces with VLAN tags and the bridge groups on the one side, and the IP networks on the other. For this reason, an IP network is configured with a reference to a logical network (with VLAN-ID, if applicable) or to a bridge group. Furthermore, for each IP network an interface tag can be set, with which the IP network can be separated from other networks without having to use firewall rules.

The definition of routing tags for IP networks as described above is one of the main advantages of Advanced Routing and Forwarding. This option allows “virtual routers” to be realized. By using the interface tag, a virtual router uses only a part of the routing table for an IP network, and in this way controls the routing specifically for that one IP network. This method allows, for example, several default routes to be defined in the routing table, each of which is given a routing tag. Virtual routers in the IP networks use the tags to select the default route which applies to the IP network with the appropriate interface tag. The separation of IP networks via virtual routers even permits multiple IP networks with one and the same address range to be operated in parallel on a single device.

An example: Within an office building, a number of companies have to be connected to the Internet via a central device, even though each of these companies has its own Internet provider. All of the companies want to use the popular IP network '10.0.0.0' with the netmask '255.255.255.0'. To implement these requirements, each company is given an IP network '10.0.0.0/255.255.255.0' with a unique name and a unique interface tag. In the routing table, a default route with the corresponding routing tag is created for each Internet provider. This allows the clients in the different company networks, all of which use the same IP addresses, to access the Internet via their own provider. Employing VLANs enables logical networks to be separated from one another even though they use the same physical medium (Ethernet).

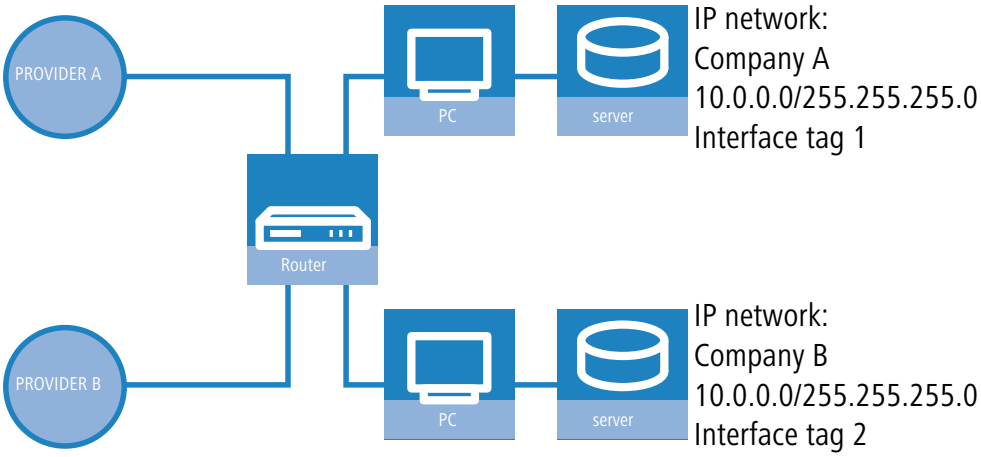
The differences between routing tags and interface tags

Routing tags as assigned by the firewall and interface tags as defined by the IP networks have a great deal in common, but also some important differences:

- The router interprets both tags in the same way. Packets with the interface tag '2' are valid for routes with the routing tag set to '2' in the routing table (and all routes with the default route tag '0'). The same routes apply for packets which the firewall has assigned with the routing tag '2'.

  Thus the interface tag is used in the same way as a routing tag.

- Interface tags have the additional ability to delimit the visibility (or accessibility) between different networks:
  - In principle, only networks with the same interface tag are “visible” to one another and thus able to interconnect.
  - Networks with the interface tag '0' have a special significance; they are in effect supervisor networks. The networks can see all of the other networks and can connect to them. Networks with an interface tag not equal to '0' cannot make connections to supervisor networks, however.
  - Networks of the type 'DMZ' are visible to all other networks, independent of any interface tags—this is useful as the DMZ often hosts public servers such as web servers, etc. The DMZ networks themselves can only see networks with the same interface tag (and any other DMZ networks, of course).
  - A special case involves networks of the type ’DMZ’ with the interface tag '0': As “supervisor networks” they can see all other networks and they are visible to all other networks.

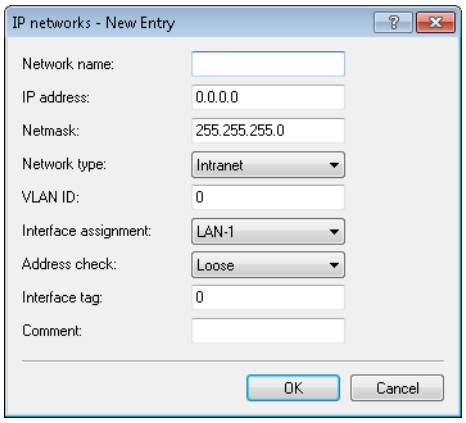


For cases which do not allow IP addresses to be uniquely assigned by interface tag, the Advanced Routing and Forwarding can be supported by firewall rules. In the above example, this would be the case if each of the networks were to support a public web or mail server, all of which use the same IP address.

6.3.2 Defining networks and assigning interfaces

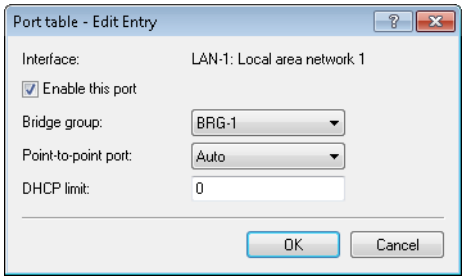
When defining a network, the first setting is for the IP address range which is to be valid for a certain local interface on the router. "Local interfaces" are logical interfaces that are assigned either to a physical Ethernet port (LAN) or a wireless port (WLAN). To realize the scenarios outlined above, it is possible for several networks to be active on one interface: Conversely, a network can also be active on multiple interfaces.

The networks are defined in a table under **IPv4** > **General** > **IP networks**. A unique name for the networks is set along with definitions for the address range and interface assignment. The network name allows the identification of networks in other modules (DHCP server, RIP, NetBIOS, etc.) and to enable control over which services are available in which networks.



6.3.3 Assigning logical interfaces to bridge groups

Located under **Interfaces** > **LAN**, the **Port table** is used to specify the properties of the logical interfaces.



Enable this port

This option activates or deactivates the logical interface.

Bridge group

Assigns the logical interface to a bridge group to enable bridging from/to this logical interface via the LAN bridge. If assigned to a common bridge group, several logical interfaces can be addressed at once and they appear to the router to be a single interface. This can then be used for Advanced Routing and Forwarding, for example.

If the interface is removed from all bridge groups by setting **none**, then there is no communication between the LAN and WLAN via the LAN bridge (isolated mode). With this setting, LAN/WLAN data transfers over this interface are only possible via the router.

A requirement for data transfer from/to a logical interface via the LAN bridge is the deactivation of the global "isolated mode" which applies to the whole of the LAN bridge. Furthermore, the logical interface must be assigned to a bridge group. With the setting **none**, no transfers can be made via the LAN bridge.

Point-to-point port

This item corresponds to the "adminPointToPointMAC" setting as defined in IEEE 802.1D. By default, the point-to-point setting for the LAN interface is derived from the technology and the concurrent status: However, this automatic specification can be revised if this is unsuitable for the required configuration.

Interfaces in point-to-point mode have various specialized capabilities, such as the accelerated port status change for working with the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol.

DHCP limit

Number of clients which can be handled by DHCP. If the limit is exceeded, the oldest entry is dropped. This feature can be used in combination with the protocol filer table to limit access to just one logical interface.

6.3.4 Interfaces tags for remote sites

The definition of interface tags in Advanced Routing and Forwarding (ARF) facilitates the use of virtual routers, which only use a part of the overall routing table. For inbound data packets from the WAN, the assignment of interfaces tags can be regulated in different ways:

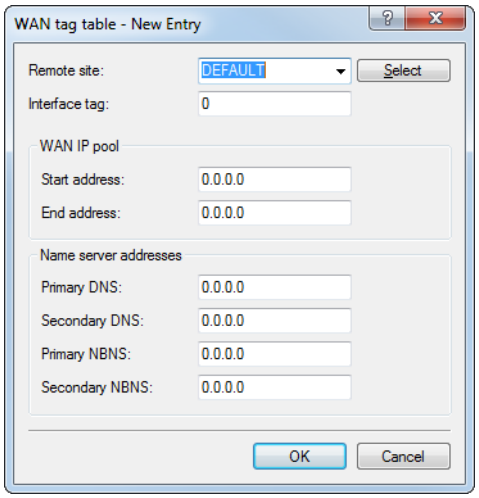
- By using appropriate firewall rules that only capture data packets from particular remote sites, IP addresses or ports
- Via an explicit assignment of tags to remote sites.

This assignment of tags to the remote sites to separate ARF networks can also be conveniently used for packets received at the WAN-side (which by default contain Tag 0). Without controlling the assignment of tags explicitly with the firewall, the virtual router can be determined directly from the remote site or source route from the form of the interface tag. Inbound and outbound communication can thus be easily divided between virtual routers bidirectionally.

The interface tags determined via the tag table can be overwritten with an appropriate entry in the firewall.

Assigning interface tags via the tag table

LANconfig: **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **WAN tag table**



Interface tags assign remote sites to a unique ARF network or tag. This assignment must be done manually for each ARF network.

From LCOS 10.20, automatic WAN-tag generation is no longer supported. All remote sites have to be assigned manually.

6.3.5 Setting the routing tag for local routes

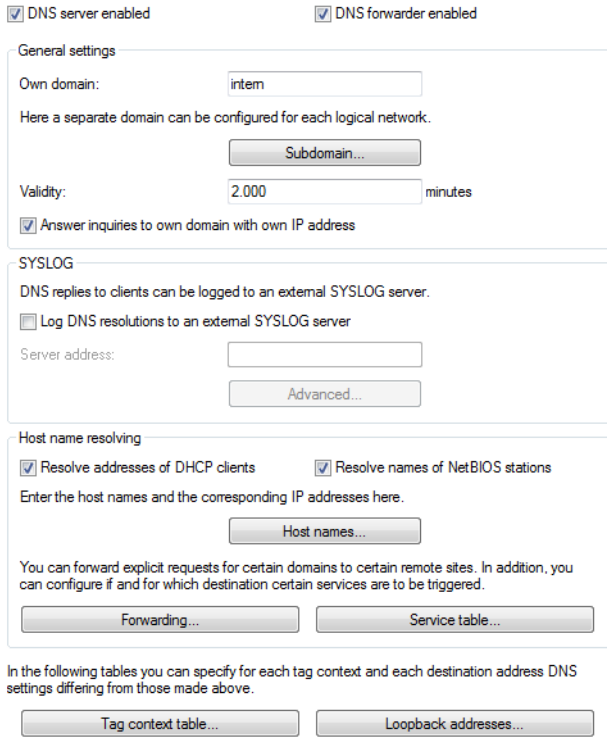
The definition of interface tags in Advanced Routing and Forwarding (ARF) facilitates the use of virtual routers, which only use a part of the overall routing table. The interface tag for a packet received from another local router is set according to the following procedure:

1. If there is only one ARF network on a LAN interface/VLAN pair, this is selected automatically.
2. If there are multiple ARF networks on a LAN descriptor / VLAN pair, then a check is made to see if the source address of the packet is local to one of the ARF networks. If so, this network is then selected.
3. If not, a reverse ARP lookup is performed for the source MAC address, which determines the address of the next hop to the source address. If the address can be resolved, then a check is made to see whether it is local to one of the ARF networks. If so, this network is then selected.
4. If the address cannot be resolved, then the first ARF network of the LAN interface / VLAN pair is selected.
5. The selected ARF network determines the interface tag to be used.

6.3.6 Routing tags for DNS forwarding

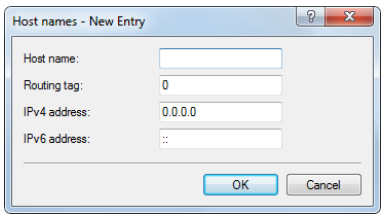
With DNS forwarding, it is possible to set up multiple forwarding definitions (especially general wildcard definitions with "*") that are independent of one another by marking them with unique routing tags. Depending on the routing context

of the requesting client, the router considers only those forwarding entries that are correspondingly tagged and any general entries that are marked with “0”.



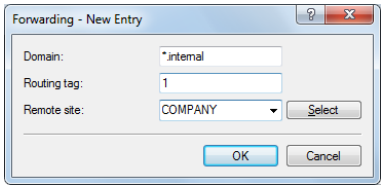
Station name

The item **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Host names** is used to define the tag context and IP number used by the device to resolve the station names.



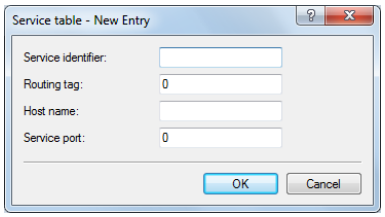
DNS destinations

The item **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Forwarding** is used to set the routing tags for the forwarding rules, so ensuring they only apply when the correct routing tags are used.



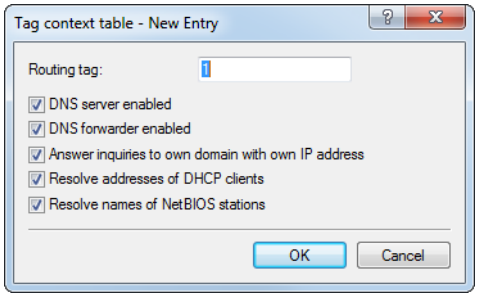
Service table

The item **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Service table** is used to assign routing tags to the services, so ensuring that they are only available when the correct routing tags are used.



Tag context table

In LANconfig under **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Tag context table**, tag contexts can be defined which override the global settings of the DNS server for specific interface and routing tags (routing context):



If an entry for a tag context exists, then only the DNS settings in this table apply for this context. However, if there is no entry in this table, then the global settings of the DNS server apply.

The following options are possible for each tag context:

Routing tag

Unique interface or routing tag in the range of 1 to 65535, the subsequent settings will override the global settings of the DNS server.

DNS server enabled

Enables the DNS server of the device.

DNS forwarder enabled

Enables DNS forwarders for this device.

Answer inquiries to own domain with own IP address

If enabled, DNS requests relating to the router's own domain will be answered with the router's IP address.

Resolve addresses of DHCP clients

Enables resolution of station names that have requested an IP address through DHCP.

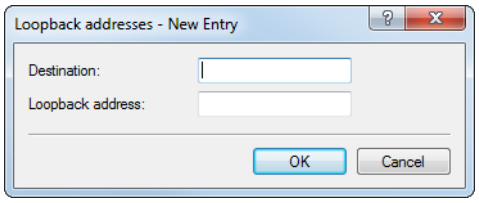
Resolve names of NetBIOS stations

Enables resolution of station names that are known to the NetBIOS router.

Loopback addresses

LANconfig allows loopback addresses to be specified for every remote site under **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Loopback addresses**. Consequently, there is an adjustable sender address for DNS forwarding. Each loopback address consists of exactly one

remote site and loopback address. Since only one remote site can be entered per loopback address, two entries are required here if the DNS Destinations have been configured with two remote sites for one domain.



The following options are possible for each loopback address:

Destination

The remote site for a loopback address. This is either an interface name, an IPv4 or IPv6 address. A routing tag can be added after an "@". The remote site must also be in the DNS Destinations table.

Source address

The loopback address for a specific remote site. This is either an interface name, an IPv4 or IPv6 address or a known loopback address.

6.3.7 Virtual routers

Interface-dependent filtering—in combination with policy-based routing—allows virtual routers to be defined for every interface:

Example:

Two separate IP networks are used by the Development and Sales departments. Both networks are connected to different switch ports although they use the same network '10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0'. Sales should be able to enter the Internet only, whereas Development should also have access to a partner company's network ('192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0').

The result is the following routing table (where the Development dept. has tag 2, Sales has tag 1):

IP address	IP-Netmask	Rtg tag	Peer-or-IP	Distance	Masking	Active
192.168.1.0	255.255.255.0	2	PARTNER	0	No	Yes
192.168.0.0	255.255.0.0	0	0.0.0.0	0	No	Yes
255,255,255,255	0.0.0.0	2	INTERNET	2	Yes	Yes
255,255,255,255	0.0.0.0	1	INTERNET	2	Yes	Yes

If Development and Sales were in IP networks with different address ranges, then it would be no problem to assign the routing tags with firewall rules. Since both departments are in the same IP network, the only available method of assignment is with network names.

Tag assignment can be carried out directly in the network definition:

Network name	IP address	Netmask	VLAN ID	Interface	Source check	Type	Rtg-Tag
DEVELOPMENT	10.1.1.1	255.255.255.0	0	LAN-1	Strict	Intranet	2
SALES	10.1.1.1	255.255.255.0	0	LAN-2	Strict	Intranet	1

Alternatively the assignment of tags can be carried out with a combination of network definitions and firewall rules. The networks are defined as follows:

Network name	IP address	Netmask	VLAN ID	Interface	Source check	Type	Rtg-Tag
DEVELOPMENT	10.1.1.1	255.255.255.0	0	LAN-1	Strict	Intranet	0
SALES	10.1.1.1	255.255.255.0	0	LAN-2	Strict	Intranet	0

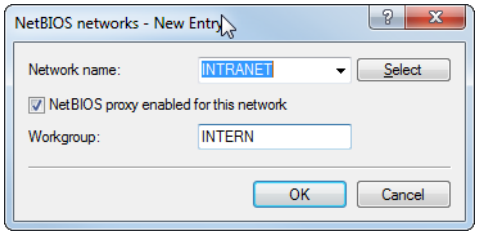
Routing tags can be used to define the following firewall rules:

Name	Protocol	Source	Destination	Action	Linked	Prio	(...)	Rtg tag
DEVELOPMENT	ANY	%Ldevelopment	ANYHOST	%a	Yes	255		2
SALES	ANY	%Lsales	ANYHOST	%a	Yes	255		1

Important for these rules is the maximum priority (255) so that these rules are always checked first. Since filtering is still possible by services, the option "Linked" has to be set in the firewall rule.

6.3.8 NetBIOS proxy

For security reasons, the behavior of the NetBIOS proxy has to be adjusted to the relevant networks, for example because it normally is not to be active within the DMZ. For this reason, the NetBIOS proxy can be configured separately for each network.



LANconfig: **NetBIOS** > **General** > **NetBIOS networks**

Console: **Setup** > **NetBIOS** > **Networks**

- Network name

  Name of the network that the NetBIOS proxy is to be activated for.

- NetBIOS proxy operating for the network

  This option defines if the NetBIOS proxy is active for the selected network or not.

- Workgroup

  The workgroup or domain used by the network clients. With multiple workgroups, mentioning one workgroup suffices.

> In the default setting 'Intranet' and 'DMZ' are entered into this table; the NetBIOS proxy is activated for the intranet and deactivated for the DMZ.

As soon as a network has an interface tag, then the only names (hosts and groups) visible from this network are those in a network with the same tag, or which are accessible via a suitably tagged (with the same tag) WAN route. An untagged network sees all names. Similarly, all names learned from untagged networks are visible to all networks.

The DNS server considers the interface tags when resolving names, i.e. the only names resolved by DNS are those learned from a network with the same tag. The special role played by untagged networks applies here too.

The workgroup/domain enables networks to be scanned for NetBIOS names when a device is started. The workgroup is different for every network and has to be defined everywhere. In networks without domains, the name of the largest workgroup should be defined here.

6.4 Configuring remote sites

Remote sites are configured in two tables:

- The Remote site list (or lists) contain(s) all the information that applies individually to only one remote site.

> Parameters for the lower protocol levels (under IP) are specified in the Communication layers table.

This section does not include how to configure the authentication (protocol, user name, password). Refer to section *Connection establishment with PPP* on page 394 for information on authentication.

6.4.1 Remote sites

The available remote sites are specified in this list, along with a suitable name and additional parameters. Each WAN interface has its own separate list of remote sites. The remote site lists are accessed in the following ways:

LANconfig: Communication / Remote sites / Remote sites (DSL)

The following parameters are required for a remote site:

Remote site list	Parameter	Meaning
DSL-Broadband-Peers	Name	This name is used to identify the remote site in the router modules. As soon as the router modules have used the IP address to determine where the remote site can be reached, the corresponding connection parameters are taken from the remote site list.
	Short hold time	This time defines how long a connection is kept active even if no more data is being transferred. If a zero is entered as hold time, the connection will not be interrupted automatically. If the short hold time is set to 9999, interrupted connections will be reestablished automatically (see *Permanent connection for flat rates – keep-alive* on page 401).
	VPI	Virtual path identifier.
	VCI	Virtual channel identifier. The values for VCI and VPI are communicated by the ADSL network operator. Common values for the combination of VPI and VCI are: 0/35, 0/38, 1/32, 8/35, 8/48.
	Access concentrator	The access concentrator (AC) is the server that can be reached at this remote site. If multiple providers can be accessed via your ADSL connection, use the name of the AC to select the provider responsible for the IP-address range of this remote site. Your provider will inform you of the values to be entered for the AC. If no value is entered for the AC, all ACs will be accepted that offer the requested service.
	Service	Enter the provider's service that you wish to use. This can be, for example, simple Internet surfing or even video downstreaming. Your provider will inform you of the values to be entered for the service. If no value is entered for the service, all services will be accepted that are offered by the requested AC.
	Layer name	Select the communication layer to be used for this connection. How to configure this layer is described in the following section.
	MAC address type	Here you select the MAC address to be used. If you need to specify an explicit MAC address for the remote gateway (user-defined), then enter it under **MAC address**. With **Local** selected, additional virtual addresses based on the MAC address of the device are generated for each WAN connection. **Global** uses the MAC address of the device for all connections.
	DSL ports	Select the DSL ports to use if your device has more than one DSL port. Activate channel bundling in the relevant layer to bundle the DSL lines.
	VLAN ID	See *VLAN IDs for DSL interfaces* on page 817
	IPv6	This entry specifies the name of the IPv6 WAN interface. Leaving this entry blank causes IPv6 to be disabled for this interface. The IPv6 remote sites are configured under **IPv6** > **General** > **WAN interfaces**.
Remote sites (Mobile or ISDN)	Name	The name from the list of DSL broadband peers.

Remote site list	Parameter	Meaning
	Phone number	A telephone number is only required if the remote is to be called. The field can be left empty if calls are to be received only. Several numbers for the same remote can be entered in the round-robin list.
	Short hold time	The name from the list of DSL broadband peers.
	Short hold time (bundle)	When channels are bundled, the second B channel will be terminated if it is not used for the time entered here.
	Layer name	The name from the list of DSL broadband peers.
	Automatic callback	Automatic callback enables a secure connection and reduces costs for the caller. Please refer to section *Callback functions* on page 404 for further information.
	IPv6	This entry specifies the IPv6 remote site. Leaving this entry blank causes IPv6 to be disabled for this interface. The IPv6 remote sites are configured under **IPv6** > **General** > **WAN interfaces**.

Please observe the following advice when editing the remote-sites lists:

- If two remote-site lists contain identical names for remote sites (e.g. DSL broadband peers and Dialup peers), the device automatically takes the “fastest” interface when establishing the connection. The other interface is available for backup purposes.
- If the list does not specify DSL broadband remote sites, access concentrators or services, then the router connects to the first access concentrator that responds to the request over the exchange line.
- For an existing DSLoL interface, the same entries apply as for a DSL interface. This information is entered into the list of DSL broadband remote sites.

6.4.2 Layers list

A layer is used to specify a collection of protocol settings for use when connecting to specific remote sites. The communication layers lists are located under:

LANconfig: **Communication** > **General** > **Communication layers**

Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **Layer**

The most common protocol combinations are already predefined in the communication layers list. You should only make changes or additions if remote sites are incompatible with the existing layers. The possible options are contained in the following overview.

Please note that the actual parameters for a device depend on how it is equipped. Your device possibly does not offer all of the options described here.

Parameter	Meaning	
Layer name	This name is used for selecting the layer in the list of remote sites/peers.	
Encapsulation	Additional types of encapsulation can be set for the data packets.	
	'Transparent'	No additional encapsulation
	'Ethernet'	Encapsulation as Ethernet frames.
	'LLC-ETH'	Ethernet via ATM with LLC encapsulation as per RFC 2684.
	'LLC-MUX'	Multiplexing via ATM with LLC/SNAP encapsulation as per RFC 2684. Several protocols can be transmitted over the same VC (virtual channel).
	'VC-MUX'	Multiplexing via ATM by establishing additional VCs as per RFC 2684.
Layer-3	The following options are available for the network layer:	
	'Transparent'	No additional header is inserted.

Parameter	Meaning	
	'PPP'	The connection is established according to the PPP protocol (in synchronous mode, i.e. bit oriented). The configuration data are taken from the PPP table.
	'AsyncPPP'	Like 'PPP', but here the asynchronous mode is used instead. PPP works with characters.
	'... with script'	All options can be executed with their own script. The script is specified in the script list.
	'DHCP'	Assignment of network parameters by DHCP.
Layer-2	This field configures the upper sublayer of the data link layer. The following options are available:	
	'Transparent'	No additional header is inserted.
	'X.75LAPB'	Connections are established with X.75 and LAPM (Link Access Procedure Balanced).
	'PPPoE'	PPP information is encapsulated in Ethernet frames
Options	Here you can activate the compression of transmitted data and channel bundling. These options are only come into effect if they are supported by the interfaces used and by the selected Layer 2 and Layer 3 protocols. Please refer to section *ISDN channel bundling with MLPPP* on page 407 for further information.	
Layer-1	This field configures the lower sublayer of the data link layer. Further information is available in the documentation of the setup parameters *2.2.4.6 Lay-1*.	

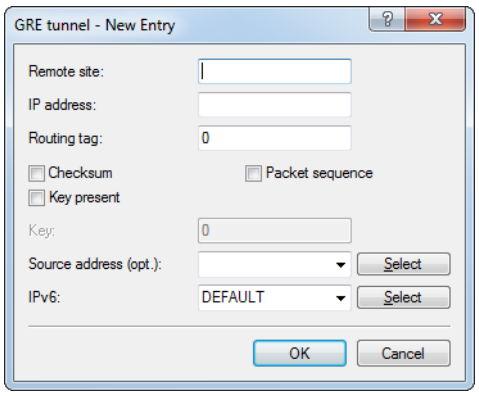
6.5 Generic routing encapsulation (GRE)

6.5.1 Understanding the generic routing encapsulation (GRE) protocol

GRE is a tunneling protocol that encapsulates any layer-3 data packets (including IP, IPSec, ICMP, etc.) into virtual point-to-point network connections. This is very useful, among other things, when the two communication partners wish to use a particular transport protocol (for example, IPSec) that is unavailable on the transmission path. Since GRE itself does not encrypt the tunneled data, the two communication partners themselves must ensure that the data is protected.

Configuring a GRE tunnel

To configure a GRE tunnel with LANconfig, navigate to **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **GRE tunnel** and click **GRE tunnel**.



Remote site

The name of the remote site for this GRE tunnel. Use this name in the routing table in order to send data through this GRE tunnel.

IP address

Address of the GRE tunnel endpoint (valid IPv4 or IPv6 address or FQDN).

Routing tag

Routing tag for the connection to the GRE tunnel endpoint. The device maps data packets to this GRE tunnel by means of the routing tag.

Checksum

Here you specify whether the GRE header should contain a check sum.

With the check sum function enabled, the device calculates a checksum for the transmitted data and attaches this to the GRE tunnel header. If the GRE header of incoming data contains a checksum, the device checks this against the transmitted data. The device discards any data received with an erroneous or missing check sum.

With the checksum function disabled, the device sends all tunnel data without a checksum and it expected data packets without a checksum. Incoming data packets with a checksum in the GRE header are discarded.

Key present

Here you specify whether the GRE header should contain a key for data-flow control.

If you enable this feature, the device inserts the value set in the **key** field into the GRE header for this GRE tunnel. The device only maps incoming data packets to this GRE tunnel if their GRE header contains an identical key value.

With this feature disabled, the GRE header of outgoing data packets does not contain a key value. The device only maps incoming data packets to this GRE tunnel if their GRE header similarly does not contain a key value.

Key

The key that assures data-flow control in this GRE tunnel. Two devices connected via several GRE tunnels use this key to map the data packets to the appropriate GRE tunnel.

Sequencing

Here you specify whether the GRE header contains information about the sequence of the data packets.

With this feature enabled, the device includes a counter in the GRE header of outgoing data packets in order to communicate the sequence of the data packets to the GRE tunnel endpoint. The device analyses the sequence of incoming data packets and drops packets with an incorrect or missing packet sequence.

Source address

Here you can optionally specify a source address for the device to use as the target address instead of the one that would normally be selected automatically. Possible values are:

- Name of the IP networks whose addresses are to be used.
- "INT" for the address of the first intranet
- "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ
- LB0 to LBF for the 16 loopback addresses
- Any valid IP address

If the list of IP networks or loopback addresses contains an entry named “DMZ”, then the associated IP address will be used.

IPv6

This entry specifies the name of the IPv6 WAN interface. Leaving this entry blank causes IPv6 to be disabled for this interface. The IPv6 remote sites are configured under **IPv6** > **General** > **WAN interfaces**.

If you need to specify an IP address for the tunnel interface, proceed as follows:

IPv4

Create a new entry under **Communication** > **Protocols** > **IP parameters** and set the name of the remote site as the name of the GRE tunnel remote site. Finally, enter the necessary values for the **IP address** and **Netmask**.

IPv6

Create a new entry under **IPv6** > **General** > **IP addresses** and set the interface name as the name of the GRE tunnel remote site. Finally, enter the necessary values for the **Address/Prefix length**.

6.5.2 Ethernet-over-GRE (EoGRE)

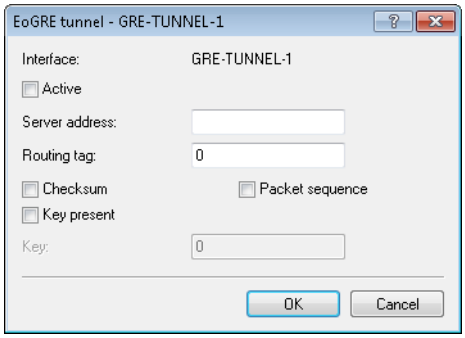
For more information about the GRE protocol, see *Understanding the generic routing encapsulation protocol (GRE)*.

The current version of LCOS provides a number of "Ethernet over GRE" tunnels (EoGRE) to transmit Ethernet packets via GRE. Since these Ethernet packets move on OSI layer 2 only, the EoGRE tunnel only functions as a bridge.

This can be used to implement L2VPN (VPN as a simple level-2 bridge) or a transparent Ethernet bridge over WAN.

Configuring an EoGRE tunnel

To configure an EoGRE tunnel with LANconfig, navigate to **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **GRE tunnel**, click **EoGRE tunnel** and select the appropriate tunnel.



Interface

Name of the selected EoGRE tunnel.

Active

Activates or deactivates the EoGRE tunnel. Deactivated EoGRE tunnels do not send or receive any data.

Server address

Address of the EoGRE tunnel endpoint (valid IPv4 or IPv6 address or FQDN).

Routing tag

Routing tag for the connection to the EoGRE tunnel endpoint. The device maps data packets to this EoGRE tunnel by means of the routing tag.

Checksum

Here you specify whether the GRE header should contain a check sum.

With the check sum function enabled, the device calculates a checksum for the transmitted data and attaches this to the GRE tunnel header. If the GRE header of incoming data contains a checksum, the device checks this against the transmitted data. The device discards any data received with an erroneous or missing check sum.

With the checksum function disabled, the device sends all tunnel data without a checksum and it expected data packets without a checksum. Incoming data packets with a checksum in the GRE header are discarded.

Key present

Here you specify whether the GRE header should contain a key for data-flow control.

If you enable this feature, the device inserts the value set in the **key** field into the GRE header for this EoGRE tunnel. The device only maps incoming data packets to this EoGRE tunnel if their GRE header contains an identical key value.

With this feature disabled, the GRE header of outgoing data packets does not contain a key value. The device only maps incoming data packets to this EoGRE tunnel if their GRE header similarly does not contain a key value.

Key

The key that assures data-flow control in this EoGRE tunnel. Two devices connected via several EoGRE tunnels use this key to map the data packets to the appropriate EoGRE tunnel.

Sequencing

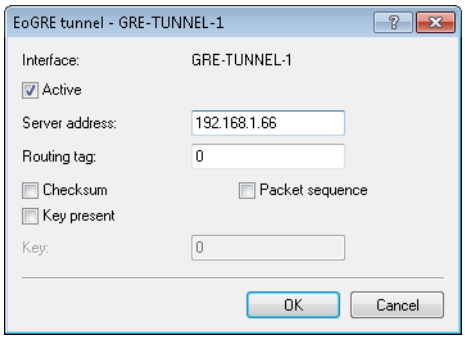
Here you specify whether the GRE header contains information about the sequence of the data packets.

With this feature enabled, the device includes a counter in the GRE header of outgoing data packets in order to communicate the sequence of the data packets to the EoGRE tunnel endpoint. The device analyses the sequence of incoming data packets and drops packets with an incorrect or missing packet sequence.

Connecting a local interface to an EoGRE tunnel

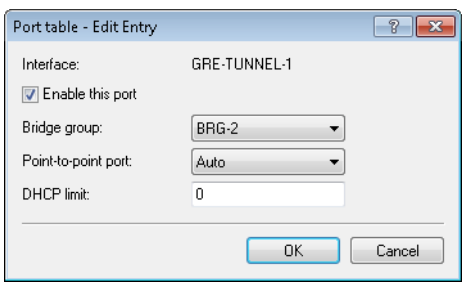
Connecting a local interface to an EoGRE tunnel involves the following steps:

1. Create a new entry under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **GRE tunnel** > **EoGRE tunnel**.



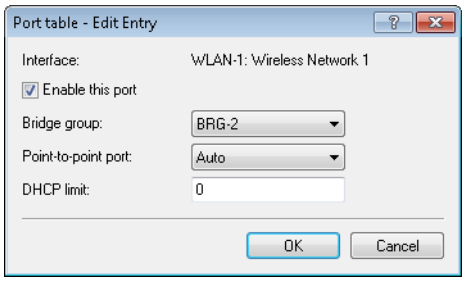
Activate the tunnel and, under **Server address**, enter the address of the remote device to which the EoGRE tunnel is to connect (IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or FQDN).

2. Add a bridge group for the activated EoGRE tunnel under **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**.



Enable the port and select the required bridge group.

3. Again under **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**, supplement the same bridge group with the local interface that you want to connect through the EoGRE tunnel (e.g. WLAN-1).



Enable the port and select from the list the bridge group that contains the EoGRE tunnel.

6.6 IP masquerading

One of the most common tasks for a router nowadays is connecting many workstations in a LAN to the mother of all networks, the Internet. Everyone should, if possible, have direct access to the Internet for the latest work-related information.

"IP masquerading" is used as a means of concealing intranet clients so that individual computers and their IP addresses are not visible from the Internet. IP masquerading places two conflicting demands on the router: Whereas each computer needs a valid intranet IP address in order to be reachable from the LAN, it also needs a valid, public IP address (either fixed or assigned dynamically by the provider).

As a matter of principle these two addresses cannot co-exist in a single logical network, so the router must have two IP addresses:

- The intranet IP address for communication with the clients in the LAN
- The public IP address for communication with remote devices in the Internet

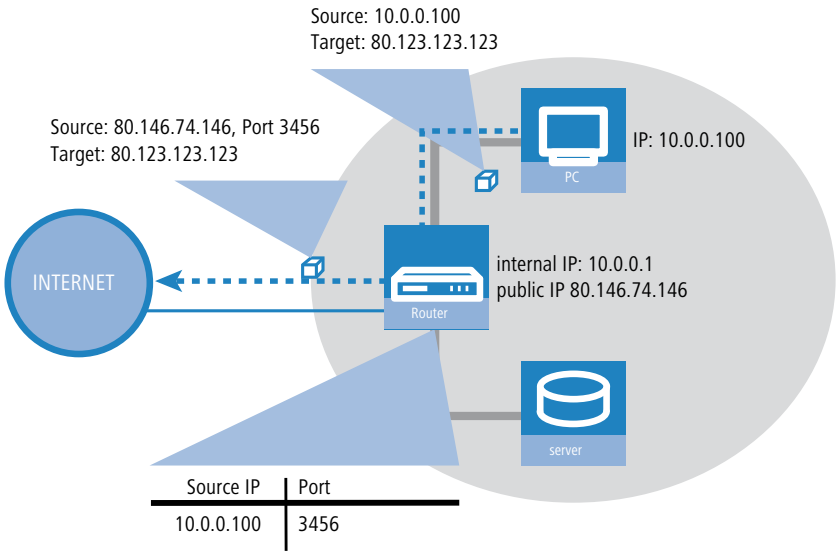
The computers in the LAN use the router as a gateway and are not visible individually. The router separates the Internet from the intranet.

In addition to the options "simple masquerading" and "port forwarding" listed below, LCOS also supports *WAN policy-based NAT* on page 611, which allows masquerading via firewall rules.

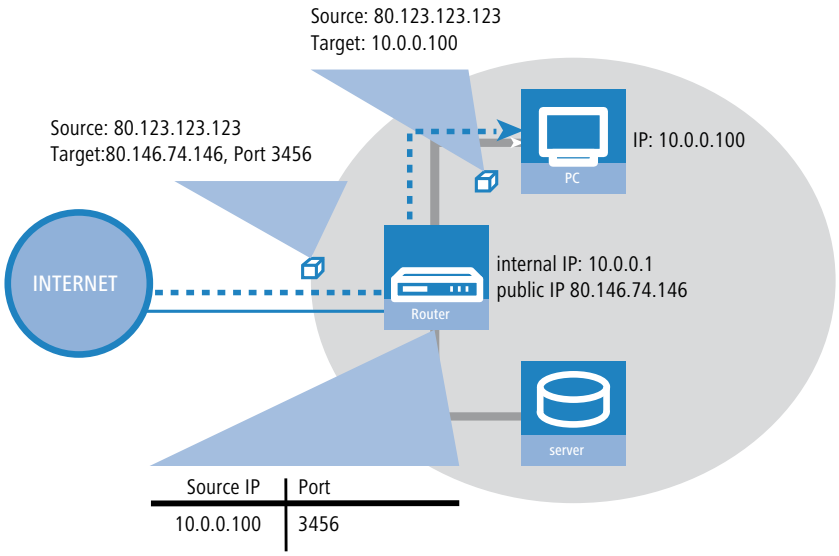
6.6.1 Simple masquerading

How IP masquerading works

Masquerading exploits a characteristic of TCP/IP data transmission, in that source and destination port numbers are used in addition to the source and destination addresses. When a router receives a data packet for transmission, it notes the IP address and the port of the sender in an internal table. The packet is then given the IP address of the router and an arbitrary new port number. This new port number is also entered in the table, and the packet is forwarded with its new IP address and port number.



The response to this packet is now returned to the router's IP address together with the sender port number. The router can now forward the response to the original sender by using the entry in the internal table.



Which protocols can be transmitted with IP masquerading?

IP masquerading works well for all IP protocols that are based on TCP, UDP, or ICMP, and that communicate exclusively over ports. These uncomplicated protocols include, among others, the basic protocol of the World Wide Web: HTTP.

Although some IP protocols do use TCP or UDP, they do not communicate exclusively through ports. Protocols of this type require special treatment during IP masquerading. Protocols supported by IP masquerading in the device and requiring special treatment include:

- FTP (using the standard ports)
- H.323 (to the same extent as used by Microsoft Netmeeting)
- PPTP
- IPSec
- IRC

Configuring IP Masquerading

The application of IP masquerading is set in the routing table for every route individually. The routing table can be accessed as follows:

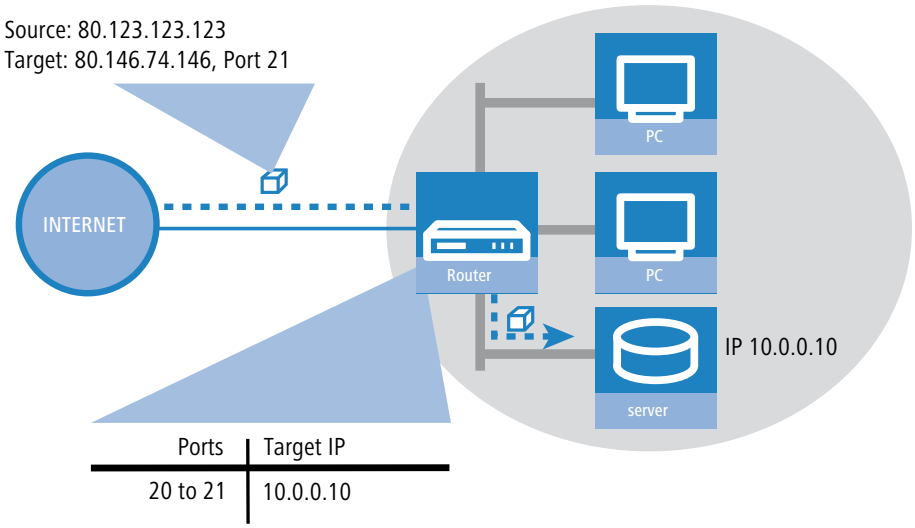
LANconfig: **IP-Router** > **Routing** > **Routing-Table**

Console: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **IP-Routing tab**

6.6.2 Port forwarding (inverse masquerading)

With simple masquerading, all of the IP addresses on the local network are masked behind the router's IP address. If now a certain computer on the LAN, such as an FTP server, needs to be accessible from the Internet, simple masquerading means that the IP address of the FTP server remains hidden from the Internet. This makes it impossible to connect to this FTP server from the Internet.

To enable access to this type of server ("exposed host "), the IP address of the FTP server is entered in a table (the port-forwarding table) along with the services (ports) that it should also present outside the LAN. For a computer sending a packet from the Internet to the FTP server on the LAN, the router itself appears to be the FTP server. Using the protocol used, the router reads the IP address of the FTP server in the LAN from the entry in the port forwarding table and forwards the packet to the local IP address entered there. Packets sent by the FTP server in the LAN (responses from the server) are masked behind the IP address of the router.



The general difference between simple and inverse masquerading:

- For inverse masquerading, external access to a service (port) on the intranet must be defined in advance by specifying a port number. This is done in the port forwarding table, where the destination port is specified along with the intranet address of the FTP server, for example.
- When accessing the Internet from the LAN, on the other hand, the router itself automatically enters the port and IP address information into the table.

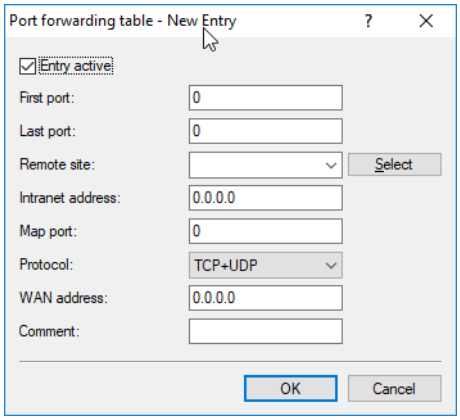
The table concerned can hold up to 2048 entries, thus enabling 2048 simultaneous transmissions between the masked and the unmasked network.

After an adjustable time period, however, the router assumes that the entry is no longer necessary and deletes it from the table automatically.

Stateful inspection and inverse masquerading: If a port is exposed in the masquerading module (i.e. all packets received on this port are forwarded to a computer in the local network), a deny-all firewall strategy requires an **additional** entry in the stateful-inspection firewall to allow computers to access that server.

On occasion it is desirable for the "exposed host" not to be contacted over this standard port, e.g. when security reasons demand the use of another port. In this case it is not only necessary to map the ports to an IP address, but to translate between ports as well (port mapping). Another use of port mapping would be to translate multiple WAN ports to one common port in the LAN, although to different IP addresses (N-IP mapping).

The configuration of port mapping involves the assignment of a port or port range (start port to end port) to an IP address from the LAN as the target and the port (map port) to be used in the LAN.



LANconfig: **IP router** > **Masquerading** > **Port forwarding table**

Console: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **1-N-NAT** > **Service-Table**

- First port

  D-port from (start port)

- Last port

  D-port to (end port)

- Peer

  Remote site which applies for this entry. The use of virtual routers (*Advanced Routing and Forwarding (ARF)* on page 355) when using port forwarding demands an exact selection of the remote site. If no peer is entered then the entry applies to all peers.

- Intranet-Address

  Internet address that a packet within the port range is forwarded to.

- Map-Port

  Port used for forwarding the packet.

  If "0" is entered for the map port, the ports used in the LAN will be the same as those used in the WAN. If a port range is to be mapped, then the map port identifies the first LAN port to be used. For example, mapping the port range '1200' to '1205' to the internal map port '1000' means that the ports 1000 to 1005 will be used for data transfer in the LAN.

  Port mapping is static, meaning that two ports or port ranges cannot be mapped to the same map port of a target computer in the LAN. The same port mapping can be used for different target computers.

- Protocol

  Protocol which applies for this entry.

- WAN address

  WAN address which applies for this entry. If the device has more than one static IP address, then this allows port forwarding to be limited to certain connections.

- Entry active

Switches the entry on or off.

- Comment

  Comment on the defined entry (64 characters)

6.7 Demilitarized Zone (DMZ)

A demilitarized zone (DMZ) makes certain routers in a network accessible from the Internet. These computers in the DMZ are generally used to offer Internet services such as e-mail or similar services. The rest of the network should of course be inaccessible for attackers on the Internet.

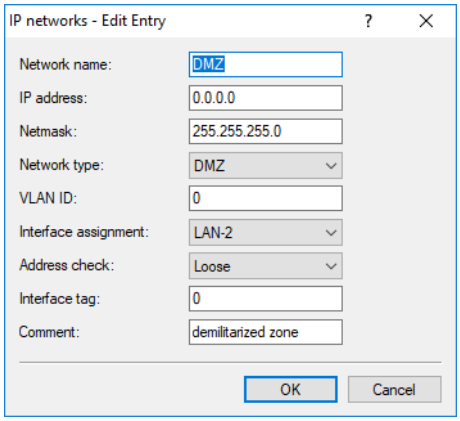
In order to allow this architecture, data traffic between the three zones Internet, DMZ and LAN must be analyzed by a firewall. The firewall's tasks can also be consolidated in a single device (router). For this, the router needs three interfaces that can be monitored separately from each other by the firewall:

- LAN interface
- WAN interface
- DMZ interface

The table lists the devices supporting this feature.

6.7.1 Assigning network zones to the DMZ

Various network zones (address ranges) are assigned to the DMZ, the LAN and the ARF using the address settings. Depending on availability, WLAN interfaces can also be selected.



LANconfig: **IPv4** > **General** > **IP networks**

Console: **Setup** > **TCP-IP**

6.7.2 Address check with DMZ and intranet interfaces

To shield the DMZ (demilitarized zone) and the Intranet from unauthorized attacks, you can activate an additional address check for each interface using the firewall's Intrusion Detection System (IDS).

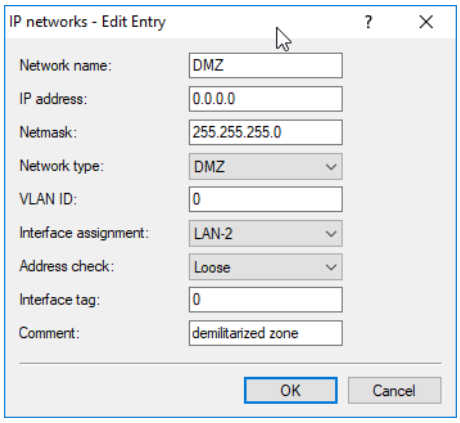
The relevant buttons are called 'DMZ check' or 'Intranet check' and can have the values 'loose' or 'strict':

- If the button is set to 'loose', then every source address is accepted if the device is addressed directly.
- If the switch is set to 'strict', then a return route has to be explicitly available so that no IDS alert is triggered. This is usually the case if the data packet contains a sender address to which the relevant interface can also route data.

Sender addresses from other networks to which the interface cannot route, or sender addresses from its own address range therefore lead to an IDS alert.

For all devices, the default is 'loose'.

You will find the button for activating the DMZ and Intranet address check in LANconfig:



LANconfig: **IPv4** > **General** > **IP networks**

Console: **Setup** > **TCP-IP**

6.7.3 Unmasked Internet access for servers in the DMZ

While the inverse masquerading described in the previous section allows at least one service of each type (e.g. one web, mail and FTP server) to be exposed, the method is subject to some restrictions.

- The service of the exposed host must be supported and 'understood' by the masking module. For example, some VoIP servers use non-standard, proprietary ports for advanced signaling. As a result, these server services can only be operated on connections without masking.
- From the security standpoint, it must be noted that the exposed host is in the local network. If the computer is hijacked by an attacker, it would be open to abuse for attacks against other machines in the local network.

To prevent attacks from a 'cracked' server on the local network, some devices feature a dedicated DMZ interface (e.g. the LANCOM 7011 VPN). Other models with a 4-port switch are able to separate their LAN ports (either individually or "en bloc") by hardware on the Ethernet level (LANCOM 821 ADSL / ISDN, LANCOM 1511 DSL, LANCOM 1521 ADSL, LANCOM 1621 ADSL / ISDN, LANCOM 1711 VPN, LANCOM 1811 DSL and LANCOM 1821 ADSL).

Two local networks – operating servers in the DMZ

This feature requires Internet access with multiple static IP addresses. Please contact your ISP for a quote.

An example: Your provider assigns you the Internet IP network address 123.45.67.0 with the netmask 255.255.255.248. Then you can assign the IP addresses as follows:

Public DMZ IP address	Meaning/use
123.45.67.0	Network address
123.45.67.1	Intranet gateway
123.45.67.2	Any device in the local network that should have unmasked access to the Internet, e.g. a web server on the DMZ port
123.45.67.7	Broadcast address

Computers and devices in the intranet have no public IP address and appear on the Internet with the IP address of the device (123.45.67.1).

Separation of intranet and DMZ

Even though the intranet and DMZ may already be separated from one another at the Ethernet level by dedicated interfaces, separating them at IP level requires the use of a firewall rule.

The server service should be accessible from the Internet and the intranet, but IP traffic should be prohibited from the DMZ to the intranet. For the example above, the following would result:

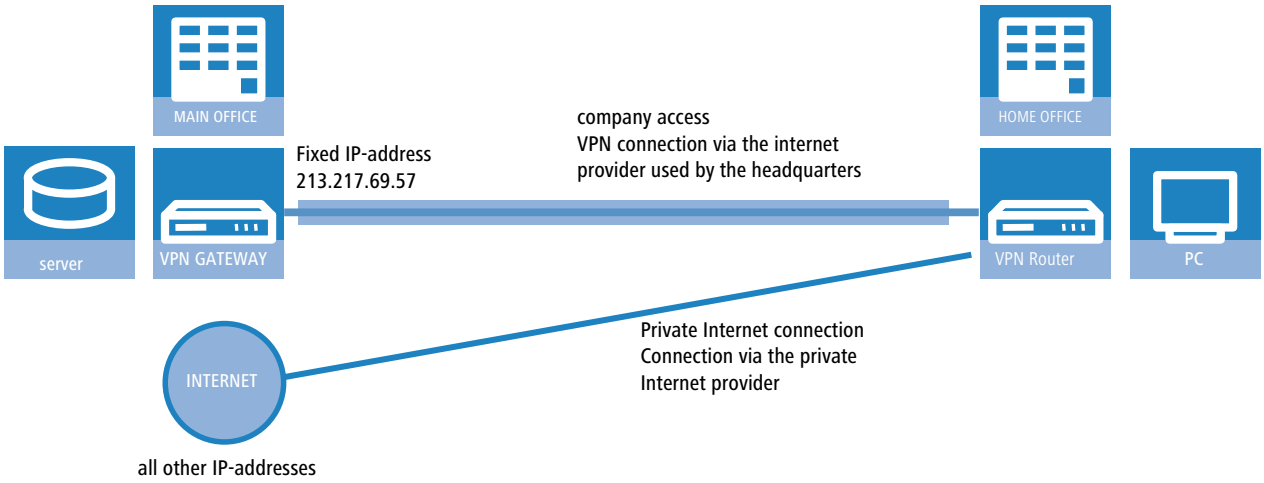
- For an "allow-all" strategy (default): Block access from "123.45.67.2" to "All stations on the local network"
- For a "deny-all" strategy: Allow access from "All stations on the local network" to "123.45.67.2"

6.8 Multi PPPoE

In most cases just one connection at a time is established over a DSL or ADSL WAN interface. However, there are applications where it makes sense to use multiple parallel connections on the WAN interface. Devices with a DSL or ADSL interface can establish up to eight different channels in parallel in the WAN using the same physical interface.

6.8.1 Example application: Home office with private Internet access

One possible application is the home office used by sales personnel who need access to the network at the headquarters via a VPN connection. The company pays for the VPN connection, the employee in the home office pays for Internet access privately.



To ensure a clean separation of the data links, two Internet connections are established, one to each provider. In the IP routing table, the default route is assigned to the private provider; the network with the headquarters via the VPN connection is routed over the headquarters' provider.

6.8.2 Configuration

The configuration of this scenario involves the following steps with the home-office router:

- Configuration of the private Internet access, for example with the LANconfig Wizard or with WEBconfig.
- Configuration of the Internet access that is invoiced to the headquarters.
- Selection of the private provider for the default route in the IP routing table (e.g. manually with LANconfig or with the Wizard for selecting Internet providers in WEBconfig.
- Configuration of the VPN connection to the network at the headquarters.
- Assignment of the VPN connection to the headquarters' provider.

  To ensure that the data traffic for the headquarters is routed via the desired Internet provider, one more entry in the IP routing table is required. Here, the VPN gateway at the headquarters is entered along with its fixed IP address and appropriate netmask, and is forwarded to the remote site used by the headquarters' provider.

  It is important that the route to the Internet provider used at the headquarters is masked; otherwise the device would apply the LAN address and not the WAN address, and the connection would never be established.

Further information about these steps in the configuration are to be found in the documentation for your device.

Administrator rights for the employee in the home office: To avoid the employee making accidental changes to the settings for the Internet provider or VPN access, he should be assigned the WEBconfig function rights for the “Internet connection” and “Selection of Internet provider” Wizards only.

Use the necessary filter rules in the area 'Firewall/QoS' to ensure that the Internet traffic is not accidentally directed via the network at the headquarters.

6.9 Load balancing

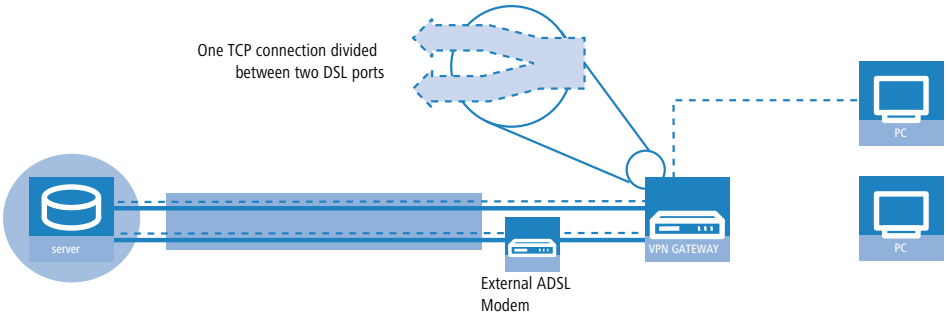
Despite the ever increasing bandwidth of DSL connections, these remain the communications bottle-neck. In some cases it can be advisable to combine multiple DSL connections. There are a number of possibilities to realize this, some of which need active support from the Internet provider:

- DSL channel bundling (Multilink-PPPoE – MLPPPoE)

  The availability of direct bundling depends on whether or not the carrier supports it. If available, the user has access to the sum of the bandwidths of all of the bundled channels. Multilink-PPPoE can only be used to bundle PPP connections.

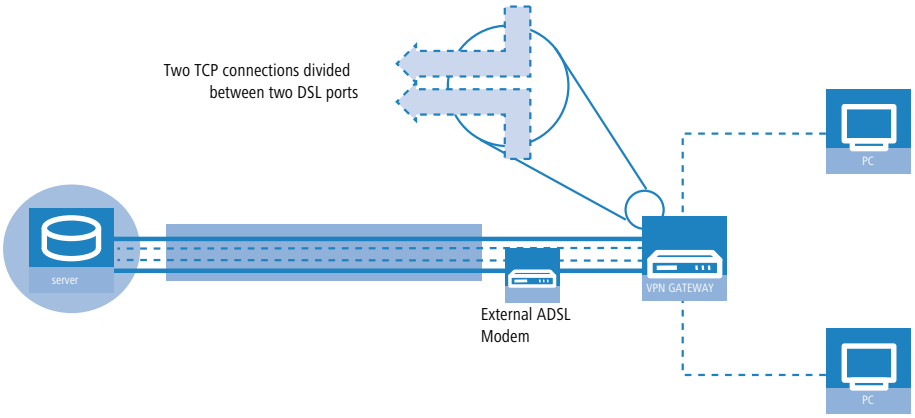
  This version of channel bundling provides bandwidths that are a multiple of the smallest bundled channel. This means that it is especially efficient when channels are all of the same bandwidth. The direct bundling of different bandwidths means that the channels with the higher data rates suffer from a loss in effective bandwidth.

  MLPPPoE bundles DSL channels just like MLPPP bundles ISDN channels *ISDN channel bundling with MLPPP* on page 407.



- Load balancing

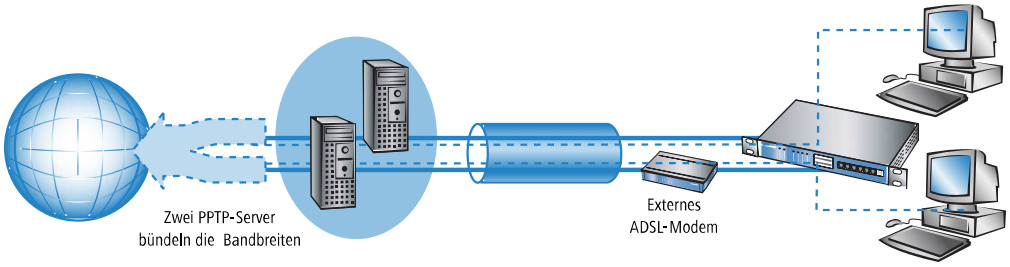
Load balancing dynamically divides TCP connections between independent DSL connections. The user has access to the sum of the bandwidths of the bundled channels, although each individual TCP connection is limited to the bandwidth of the DSL connection assigned to it.



Unlike direct channel bundling, load balancing offers the true sum of all bundled bandwidths. This version is thus highly effective for combining different bandwidths.

› Indirect bundling for LAN-LAN links

With indirect bundling, a PPTP connection is established on each of the two or more independent DSL connections. These PPTP connections are then bundled. For LAN-LAN links at least, genuine channel bundling is possible over the Internet even if the Internet provider itself does not offer channel bundling.



6.9.1 DSL port mapping

A basic requirement for DSL channel bundling is the support of more than one DSL interface per device. This means that one or more external DSL modems are connected to the switch of a router.

Please refer to the Quick Reference Guide for your device to see if it supports the connection of external DSL modems.

Assignment of switch ports to the DSL ports

Depending on the mode, devices with an integrated switch can enable some of the LAN ports to be used as additional WAN ports for connecting to external DSL modems. These ports are listed in the interface table as separate DSL interfaces (DSL-1, DSL-2, etc.). Each DSL port is enabled as a DSL interface in the list of WAN interfaces, where it is configured with the correct upstream and downstream data rates. It is assigned to the switch ports in the list of LAN interfaces.

Example LANCOM Wireless 1811 DSL:

Port	Assignment	Connector	MDI-Mode	Private mode
LAN-1	LAN-1	Auto	Auto	No
LAN-2	LAN-1	Auto	Auto	No
LAN-3	LAN-1	Auto	Auto	No
LAN-4	LAN-1	Auto	Auto	No
WAN	DSL-1	Auto	Auto	No

- The column 'Port' contains the description of the associated port as marked on the back cover of the device.
- The utilization of the port is listed in the column 'Assignment':
  - None: The port is deactivated
  - LAN-1: The port is assigned to the LAN
  - DSL-1, DSL-2, ... : The port is assigned to one of the DSL interfaces
  - Monitor: The port is a monitor port, i.e. everything received at the other ports is output via this port. A packet sniffer such as Ethereal can be connected to this port, for example.

The assignment of DSL ports to the Ethernet ports can be chosen freely. An effective solution is to assign the DSL ports in the reverse order to the ports at the switch:

Example LANCOM Wireless 1811 DSL:

1. LAN4 / DSL-2
2. LAN3 / DSL-3
3. LAN2 / DSL-4
4. LAN1 / LAN-1: This port remains reserved for the LAN.
5. WAN / DSL-1: (dedicated WAN port for the device)

If the device is equipped with more than one DSL port, the DSL port to be used is entered in the list of DSL broadband peers:

- If no port is defined (or port “0”), the device selects the port after the one chosen for the connection's communication layer.
  - If Layer-1 is set with 'AAL-5', then the ADSL interface is chosen.
  - If Layer-1 is set with 'ETH', then the first DSL port (i.e. DSL-1) is chosen.
- If a particular port is defined (not “0”), then it will be used for the connection.

  Observe that the communication layer set for the connection over this port in Layer 1 is set to 'ETH'.
- To enable channel bundling via multiple DSL interfaces, the appropriate ports are entered into the peer list for the remote site (as a comma-separated port list '1,2,3' or as a port range '1-3'). With a port list, the bundled channels will be established in the given order; only in case of error will the channels be tested in ascending order. With a port range, the channels are always established in ascending order.
  - In the list of Ethernet ports, the ports must be switched to DSL port.
  - The DSL ports have to be activated as DSL interfaces in the list of the WAN interfaces and need to be configured with the correct up- and downstream rates.

- In the layer used for the connection, a bundling method has to be activated that is also supported at the remote site.
- To configure channel bundling for an internal ADSL interface, the ADSL port '0' is entered into the list of ports **at the top** of the list (e.g. '0,1,2,3' as port list or '0-3' as port range). In the remote device, the communications layer must be set to Layer 1 'AAL-5'.

  An entry in the peer list can contain various ports (e.g. ADSL and Ethernet), but it can only reference **one** communications layer in which just **one** layer-1 protocol can be defined. For bundled communications over ADSL and Ethernet ports, however, **two** different layer-1 protocols are required. For this reason, layer 1 is set to 'AAL-5' in these cases. As only one ADSL interface can exist in the devices, all of the interfaces bundled into this are automatically changed to layer 1 with 'ETH' for Ethernet DSL ports. This automatic change of the layer can only succeed if the ADSL interface is the first one to be selected for bundled connections.
- For devices with a built-in ADSL modem and an additional Ethernet interface (DSL or DSLoL), it is clear which ports are used for bundling. In this case it is not necessary to enter the ports into the remote site list. These devices always internally assume a port list '0,1' so that the internal ADSL interface is the first one to be used for bundling.

For Multi-PPPoE (*Multi PPPoE* on page 377), multiple PPPoE connections share one physical DSL connection. With Multi-DSL, several PPPoE connection are divided between the available DSL interfaces. The maximum possible number of parallel connections is limited to 8 channels.

Assigning MAC addresses to the DSL ports

If a device uses switch ports to gain access to multiple DSL (WAN) interfaces, a corresponding number of MAC addresses is required to differentiate the DSL ports. As there are cases where the required MAC address depends upon the remote site which, for example, uses the MAC address to determine the DSL access charge, the MAC addresses are defined for the logical DSL remote sites and not for the physical DSL ports.

The following options are available for setting the MAC address:

- Global: Global system MAC address
- The unique, locally managed MAC address is calculated from the global address
- User defined: A MAC address that can be freely defined by the user

Every DSL connection contains its own MAC address. If two remote sites are configured with the same MAC address, this address is used for the first connection to be established. For the second connection, a “locally managed MAC address” is calculated from the user-defined MAC address, which is thus unambiguous. Similarly, for channel bundling the configured MAC address is used for the first connection; for the other bundle connections, a “locally managed” MAC address is calculated from the user-defined MAC address. If one of your connections is charged via the MAC address, configure this MAC address for the separately charged connection only. For all other connections you should use another address.

6.9.2 DSL channel bundling (MLPPPoE)

For the bundling of DSL connections, the DSL ports to be used are entered into the lists of DSL broadband remote sites. Only the number of DSL ports is entered, separated by commas if multiple ports are used (1,2,4) or as a range (1-4).

Two further cases have to be distinguished with regard to DSL channel bundling. These depend on the access type used on the DSL connection. In Germany, most access types use PPPoE. Other countries like Austria and France have access types based on PPTP instead.

- Bundling with PPPoE

  All that is required for PPPoE bundling is to activate bundling in the relevant layer and to use the port list to assign the relevant ports.
- Bundling with PPTP

When bundling PPTP connections, the DSL modems usually have a fixed, often non-editable IP address (e.g. 10.0.0.138) and may also require that the router also has a fixed IP address (e.g. 10.0.0.140).

In cases such as this, channel bundling is implemented via load balancing. For this purpose, multiple separate DSL connections are set up on different ports. All of these connections are given the same entries in the IP parameter list. Bundling takes place if additional remote sites are defined in the load balancing list for the physical connection to the PPTP remote site. The PPTP then requests the next physical connection from the load balancer and establishes it there. This corresponds to indirect bundling for LAN-LAN links (*Indirect bundling for LAN-LAN links via PPTP* on page 385).

6.9.3 Dynamic load balancing

If the Internet provider does not directly support bundling, then multiple normal DSL connections can be coupled with a load balancer. First of all, the DSL accesses are set up for the necessary DSL ports. These are then coupled with a load-balancing table. This list assigns a virtual balancing connection (the connection that is entered into the routing table) to the other real DSL connections (bundle connections). Depending on the number of available DSL ports, several bundle connections can be assigned to one balancing connection.

The balancing connection is entered as a “virtual” connection. No access information or similar has to be entered for this connection. The entry merely serves as a “distributor” which uses the load-balancing table to assign several “real” bundled connections to an entry in the routing table.

DSL bundling is a static bundling. Any additional channels are **not** opened or closed according to the demand from data transfer volumes.

With load balancing, decisions about the routing of data packets can no longer be made simply based on the IP addresses because the individual bundled DSL connections all have different IP addresses. Thus load balancing also considers the information in the firewall connection list. This list has an entry for every established TCP connection, and for load balancing the list is supplemented with information about the DSL port used.

Connecting

A request for data transmission to a balancing remote site initially prompts the **first** bundle connection from the load balancing table to be established. Further progress depends upon the success of this connection establishment:

- If the connection is successfully established, the first step is the assignment of all pending TCP connections to this channel. Subsequently, all of the configured bundle connections will successively be established. As soon as at least two bundle connections are active, new TCP connections will be divided among the active bundle connections.
- Should establishment of the bundling connection fail, then attempts will be made to establish other bundle connections one after the other. As soon as one of the bundle connections is established, all of the pending TCP connections will be directed to this channel.

Spreading the data load

Two basic methods are available for balancing the data load:

- If the channel's bandwidth is known, then the connections will be assigned to the channel with the lowest workload (in percent).
- If the bandwidth is not known, then a differentiation is made according to the type of connection required; a TCP connection; or VPN or PPTP connections from the device.
  - If a TCP connection requests a channel, then the one with the lowest absolute workload will be chosen.
  - If a VPN or PPTP connection requests a channel, then the connections will be equally spread between all available channels.

For the most effective use of load balancing, the bandwidth should be entered into the list of WAN interfaces under LANconfig in the configuration section 'Interfaces' on the 'WAN' tab under the button Interface settings (Console: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **DSL**).

Client binding

The use of load balancing leads to problems for servers that use an IP address to identify a logged-on user. If a user is logged in to a web site, for example, and the load balancer then takes a different Internet connection, then the server interprets this as a connection attempt by a user who is not logged on. In the best case the user sees a new login dialog, but not the desired web page.

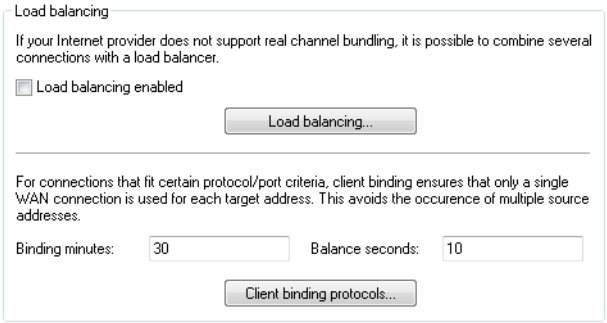
One possible workaround would be to use a firewall rule (policy based routing) to direct the traffic to this server over a specific Internet connection. However, the full volume of the traffic to that particular server would then be limited to the bandwidth of a single connection. What's more, there is no way to establish a backup if the first connection should fail.

In contrast to this, client binding does not monitor the individual TCP/IP sessions but the client that opened an Internet connection in the initial session. It directs all subsequent sessions through this Internet connection, which corresponds in principle to the policy-based routing mentioned above. How this is done depends on the protocol, i.e. it transports only data of the same protocol type (e.g. HTTPS) over this Internet connection. If the client loads additional data via an HTTP connection, it probably does this with a different connection.

To prevent data from being bottle-necked into this one Internet connection when it could easily be transferred via parallel connections, a timer ensures that the load balancer distributes additional sessions between the available Internet connections for a specified period. After the timer expires, the client binding forces a new session over the original Internet connection and the timer is restarted. The server thus continues to recognize the login status for the user due to the current IP address.

Load balancing with client binding

In LANconfig, client binding is configured under **IP router** > **Routing** in the section **Load balancing**.



Binding minutes

Here you specify the time in minutes for the binding entries to be valid for a client.

Balance seconds

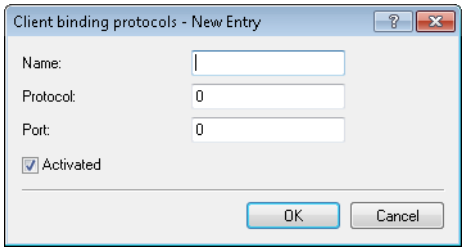
To prevent data from flowing via the main-session Internet connection when it could easily be transferred via parallel connections, a timer ensures that the load balancer distributes additional sessions between the available Internet connections for a specified period. After the timer expires, the client binding forces a new session over the original Internet connection and the timer is restarted. The server thus continues to recognize the login status for the user due to the current IP address.

Here you specify the time in seconds, following the start of the main session, during which the load balancer is free to distribute new sessions to other Internet connections.

Client binding is protocol-oriented. You set the corresponding protocols under **Client binding protocols**. The table already contains the default entries

- HTTPS
- HTTP

› ANY



Name

Contains a descriptive name for this entry.

Protocol

Contains the IP protocol number.

Learn more about IP protocol numbers in the IANA *Online database*.

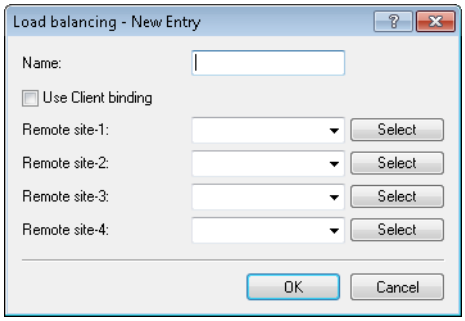
Port

Contains the port of the IP protocol.

Activated

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Client binding can be activated or deactivated for each of the entries under **Load balancing**.



6.9.4 Dynamic load balancing

Apart from the dynamic choice of connection outlined in the previous section, there are possible scenarios where certain TCP connections should always make use of the same DSL connection. Two cases are to be considered here:

› A server with a fixed IP address can only be contacted via a dedicated connection. All that is required for the selection here is the destination IP address.

› A server uses a protocol that requires a control channel and other channels for data transfer (e.g. FTP, H.323, PPTP). In establishing the data channels, servers accept only the same IP address as that used by the control channel.

Destination-based channel selection

Destination-based channel selection is handled by an entry in the routing table that directly uses one of the bundle connections to reach the destination instead of using the "virtual" balancing connection.

Policy-based routing

Suitable entries can be made in the firewall to select channels according to the destination port or the source address. These entries are supplemented with a special "routing tag" that is used to control the channel selection with the routing table. Please refer to *Policy-based routing* on page 345 for further information.

6.9.5 Indirect bundling for LAN-LAN links via PPTP

Indirect bundling is performed over bundled PPTP connections, which means that the full bandwidth of the bundled channels can be used over the LAN-LAN link. When considering PPTP bundling, there are three different scenarios:

- The client bundles the DSL channels, the server is behind a connection with sufficient bandwidth
- The client is behind a broadband connection, and the server handles the bundling
- The server and the client bundle the DSL channels

All the configuration involves is including the other PPTP addresses into the balancing table.

6.9.6 Configuring load balancing

For the following configurations we assume that the remote devices are already set up with all necessary access information.

Direct channel bundling via PPPoE

The following method is for the configuration of channel bundling via PPPoE:

1. Assign the DSL ports to the required Ethernet ports in LANconfig under **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Ethernet ports**.

   Console: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **Ethernet-ports**

2. Activate the additional DSL interfaces in LANconfig under **Interfaces** > **WAN** > **Interface settings**. Enter the data rates for up- and downstream.

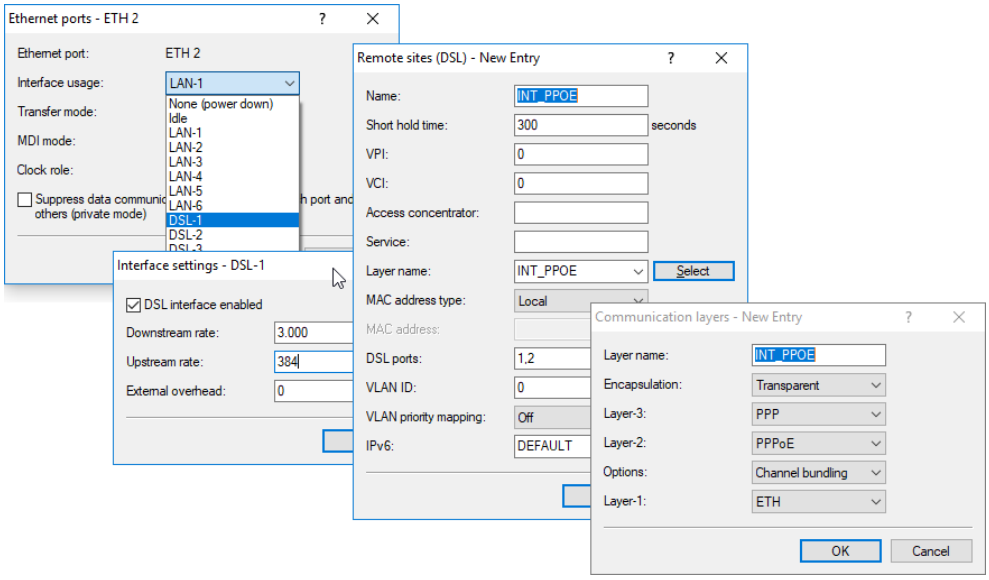
   Console: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **DSL**

3. For the required remote site, enter the DSL ports that are to be used in LANconfig under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **Remote sites (DSL)**.

   Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **DSL-Broadband-Peers**

4. Activate channel bundling for the relevant layers in LANconfig under **Communication** > **General** > **Communication layers**.

Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **Layer**

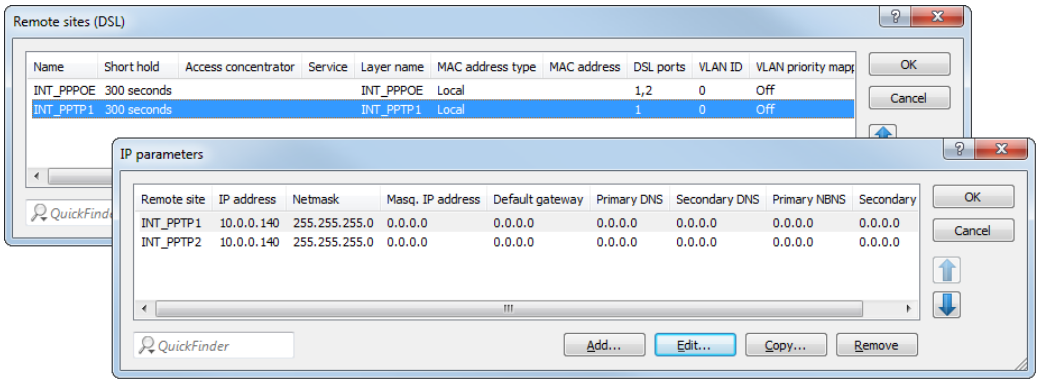


Direct channel bundling via PPTP

The following method is for the configuration of channel bundling via PPPoE:

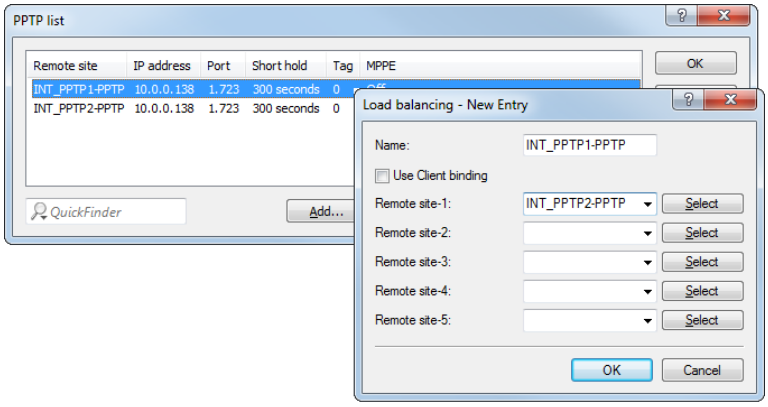
1. Configure several separate PPTP connections (e.g. using the LANconfig Wizard), each using a different DSL port. The connections are entered with the same values for the IP parameters as those that can be seen in LANconfig under **Communication** > **Protocols** > **IP parameters**.

   Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **IP-List**



2. Bundling takes place if additional remote sites are defined in the load balancing list for the physical connection to the PPTP remote site. The PPTP connection then requests the next physical connection from the load balancer and establishes it there. Enter the bundled connections in LANconfig under **IP router** > **Routing** > **Load balancing**.

Console: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Load-Balancer**

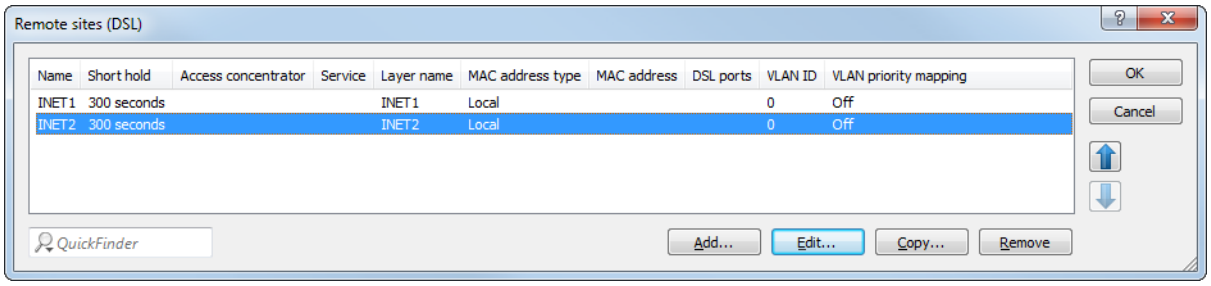


Dynamic load balancing with multiple DSL connections

The first step in setting up dynamic load balancing is to define the Internet accesses, e.g. 'INET1' and 'INET2', with the aid of the LANconfig Wizard.

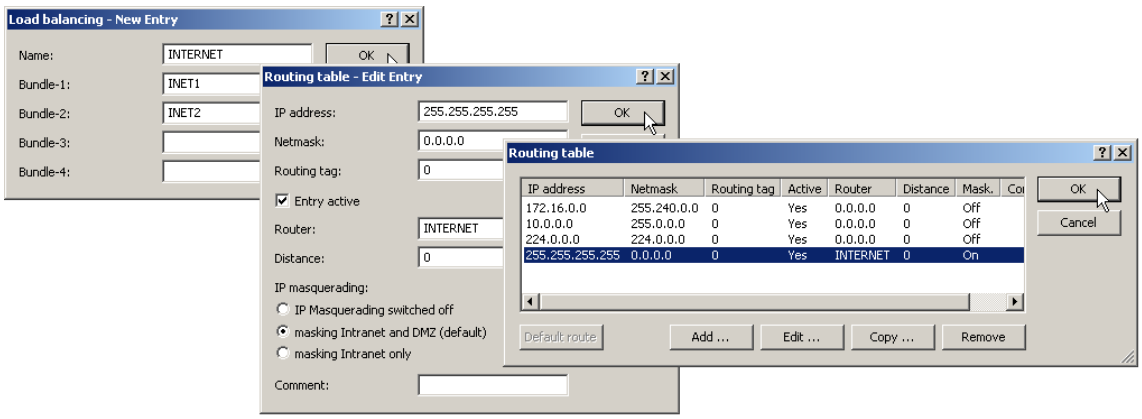
1. To distribute Internet traffic across different DSL interfaces, the individual remote sites are assigned to different DSL ports in LANconfig under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **Remote sites (DSL)**.

   Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **DSL-Broadband-Peers**



2. The two DSL remotes are then assigned to a new virtual remote site 'INTERNET' in the load balancing list in LANconfig under **IP router** > **Routing** > **Load balancing**.

   Console: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Load-Balancer**



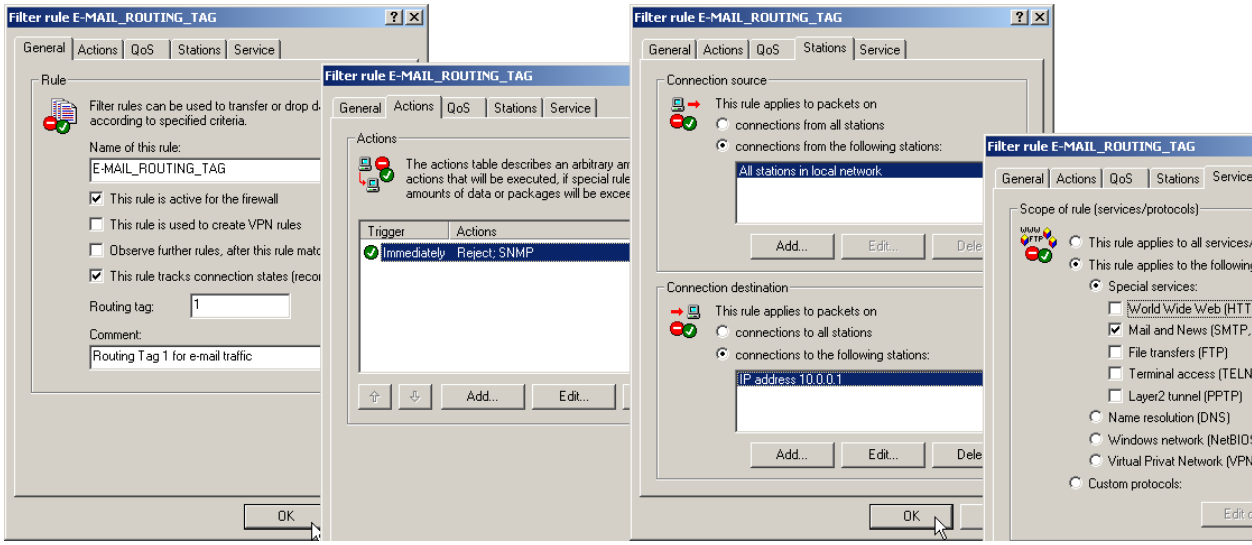
3. The virtual remote site is entered into the routing table as the router for the default route in LANconfig under **IP router** > **Routing** > **Routing table** / / .

   Console: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **IP-Routing-Table**

The virtual remote site 'INTERNET' is now to be used for Internet access. When data are routed over this connection, the load balancing table will cause the "real" DSL connections to be established and the data will be transmitted over the selected DSL ports.

4. Routing tags can be used for the application-dependent direction of data traffic to specific DSL ports. If, for example, outgoing e-mail traffic is to be routed over a certain DSL interface with a certain IP address, then the appropriate firewall rule must be created that transmits e-mail data traffic from all local stations to the mail server and sets the routing tag to '1'; do this with LANconfig under **Firewall/QoS** > **Rules**.

   Console: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Rules**



6.10 N:N mapping

Network Address Translation (NAT) can be used for a number of purposes:

- To make better use of the increasingly scarce IPv4 addresses
- To couple networks that use the same (private) address ranges
- To create unique addresses for network management

The first application uses N:1 NAT, also known as IP masquerading (*IP masquerading* on page 371). In this case, all addresses ("N") on the local network are mapped to a single ("1") public address. The unambiguous assignment of the data streams to the correct internal computers is generally handled by the ports used by the TCP and UDP protocols. This is why this technique is also known as NAT/PAT (Network Address Translation/Port Address Translation).

Since N:1 masquerading uses dynamic port translation, it can only be used for connections that originate inside the internal network. Exception: An internal IP address is statically exposed on a specific port, e.g. to make a server in the LAN accessible from the outside. This procedure is called "inverse masquerading" (*Port forwarding (inverse masquerading)* on page 373).

An N:N mapping is used to connect networks with the same address ranges. This translates several IP addresses ("N") from the local network explicitly into several ("N") IP addresses of any other network. This translation prevents address conflicts.

The rules for address translation are defined in a static table in the device. This involves specifying new IP addresses for individual LAN devices, for subnets or for the whole LAN, which are then used by the devices to communicate with other networks.

Some protocols (FTP, H.323) exchange parameters during the protocol negotiation, which influence the address translation undertaken by the N:N mapping. For these protocols, the relevant connection information is stored by the firewall in a dynamic table. These entries are used in combination with those in the static table to implement address translation correctly.

The address translation takes place "outbound", i.e. outgoing data packets are given a translated source address and incoming data packets are given the translated destination address, as long as the addresses are within the specified range. An “inbound” address mapping, whereby the source address is translated (instead of the destination address), needs to be implemented with an appropriate “outbound” address translation on the remote side.

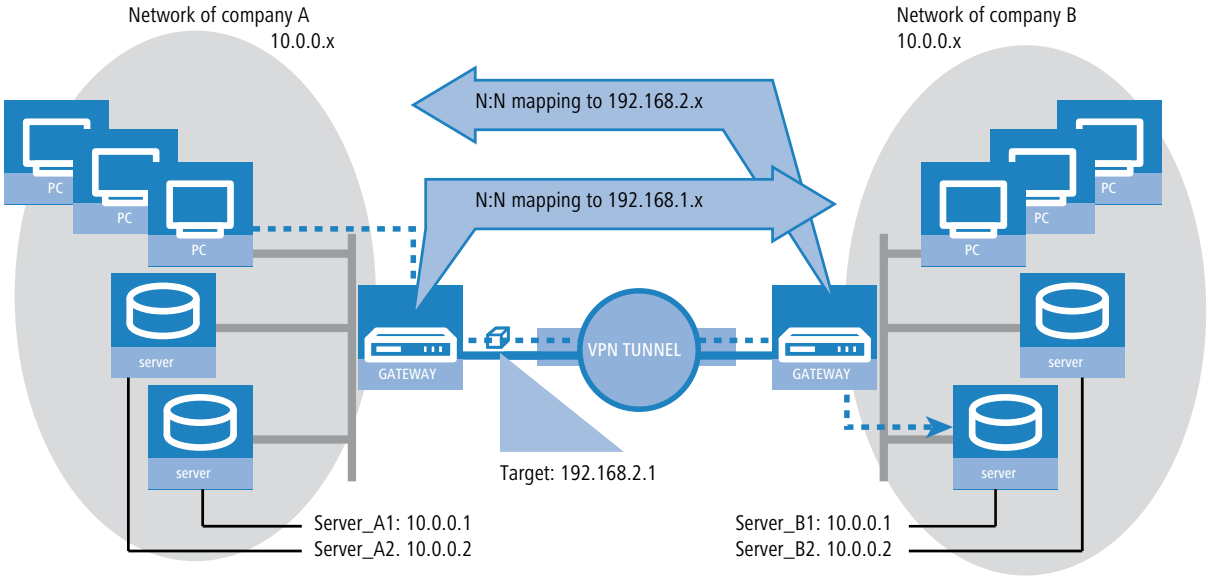
6.10.1 Example applications

This section describes the following typical applications:

- Connection of private networks that use the same address range
- Remote monitoring by service providers

Network coupling

A common scenario is the coupling of two company networks that internally use the same address range (e.g. 10.0.0.x). This usually happens when a company needs access to one (or more) server(s) at the other site:

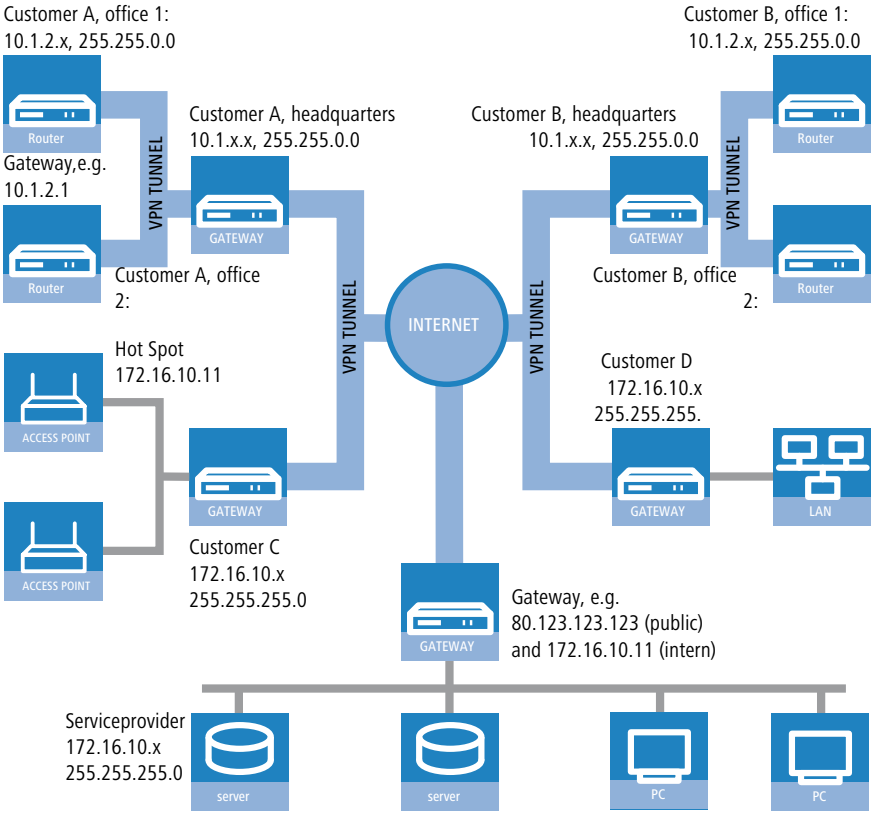


In this example, the networks of the companies A and B contain servers that want to access the other network via a VPN tunnel. All stations in the LAN should have access to the servers in the remote network. Because both networks use the same address range, it is initially not possible to access the other network with this configuration. If a station in the network of company A wants to access server 1 of company B, the addressee (with an address on the 10.0.0.x network) is searched for on its own local network. The request does not even reach the gateway.

The N:N mapping translates all addresses within the LAN into a new range of addresses for communication with the remote network. Company A's network is translated, for example, to the range 192.168.1.x, while company B's network is translated to 192.168.2.x. Each LAN is now accessible by the other at these new addresses. The station from the network of company A addresses the server 1 of company B under the address 192.168.2.1. The device being addressed is not located in the local network, so the request is forwarded to the gateway and routed to the remote network, as desired.

Remote maintenance and monitoring of networks

The remote maintenance and monitoring of networks is becoming increasingly important because of the possibilities of VPN. With the use of almost ubiquitous broadband Internet connections, administrators in these management scenarios no longer have to rely upon different data communication technologies or expensive leased lines.



In this example, a service provider monitors the networks of various customers from a central location. For this purpose, the SNMP-capable devices should automatically send the corresponding traps of important events to the SNMP trap receivers (e.g. LANmonitor) in the network of the service provider. The administrator in the service provider's LAN thus has an up-to-date overview of the status of the devices at all times.

The individual networks can be structured very differently: Customers A and B integrate their branch offices and their networks into the central LAN by means of VPN connections, customer C operates a network with several public Wi-Fi base stations as hotspots, and customer D has another router for ISDN dial-in access into their LAN.

The networks of customers A and B use different address ranges to their affiliated branch offices. These networks can thus be coupled by means of VPN.

In order to avoid operating a separate VPN tunnel to each of the customers' (A and B) subnets, the service provider establishes a VPN connection solely to the main office and uses the existing VPN lines to communicate with the branch offices.

Traps from the networks report to the service provider whether, for example, a VPN tunnel has been established or terminated, a user tried to log in three times with a wrong password, a user logged into a hotspot, or a LAN cable has been pulled out of a switch somewhere.

See the appendix to this reference manual for a complete list of all SNMP traps supported by the device.

The routing of these different networks quickly reaches its limits when two or more customers use the same address range. The problem can be compounded if customers use the same address range as the service provider themselves,

which causes further address conflicts. In this example, a hotspot operated by customer C has the same address as the gateway of the service provider.

There are two different variants for resolving these address conflicts:

- In the decentralized variant, alternative IP addresses for communicating with the SNMP addressee are assigned to each of the monitored devices by means of 1:1 mapping. The technical term for this address is a "loopback address", the method is correspondingly referred to as the "loopback method".

  The loopback addresses are only valid for communication with certain remote sites on the relevant connections. Consequently, a device is not generally accessible under this IP address.
- A more appealing solution is central mapping: Instead of configuring each individual gateway at the branch networks, the administrator sets the address translation in the gateway of the central office. In doing so, all subnetworks "behind" the main office are automatically supplied with the necessary new IP addresses.

In this example, the service-provider administrator for customer B's network sets the central address translation to 10.2.x.x., so that the two networks using the same address pools appear to the service provider's gateway to be two different networks.

For customers C and D the administrator selects the address pools 192.168.2.x and 192.168.3.x, so that these networks have different addresses from the service provider's own network.

In order for the gateway of the service provider to communicate with the networks of customers C and D, the administrator additionally sets up an address translation to 192.168.1.x for his own network.

6.10.2 Configuration

Setting up address translation

Configuring N:N mapping requires actually very little information. Since a LAN can be coupled with numerous other networks via N:N, a source IP range can be translated in different ways depending on the destination. The NAT table contains a maximum of 64 entries containing the following information:

- **Index**: Unique index for the entry
- **Source address**: IP address of the computer or network that is to receive an alternative IP address.
- **Source mask**: Netmask of the source range.
- **Destination station**: Name of the remote device that can be used to access the remote network.
- **Mapped network**: IP address or address range that should be used for the translation.

For the new network address, the same netmask is taken as used by the source address. The following applies with the assignment of source and mapping addresses:

- When translating individual addresses, source and mapping can be assigned in any way. For example, the server in the LAN with the IP address 10.1.1.99 can be assigned the mapping address 192.168.1.88.
- When entire address ranges are translated, the computer-related part of the IP address is used directly and only the network-related part of the mapping address is appended. When assigning 10.0.0.0/255.255.255.0 to 192.168.1.0, the server in the LAN with the IP address 10.1.1.99 is necessarily assigned with the mapping address 192.168.1.99.

The address range for translation must be at least as large as the source address range.

Please note that the N:N mapping function is only effective when the firewall is activated.

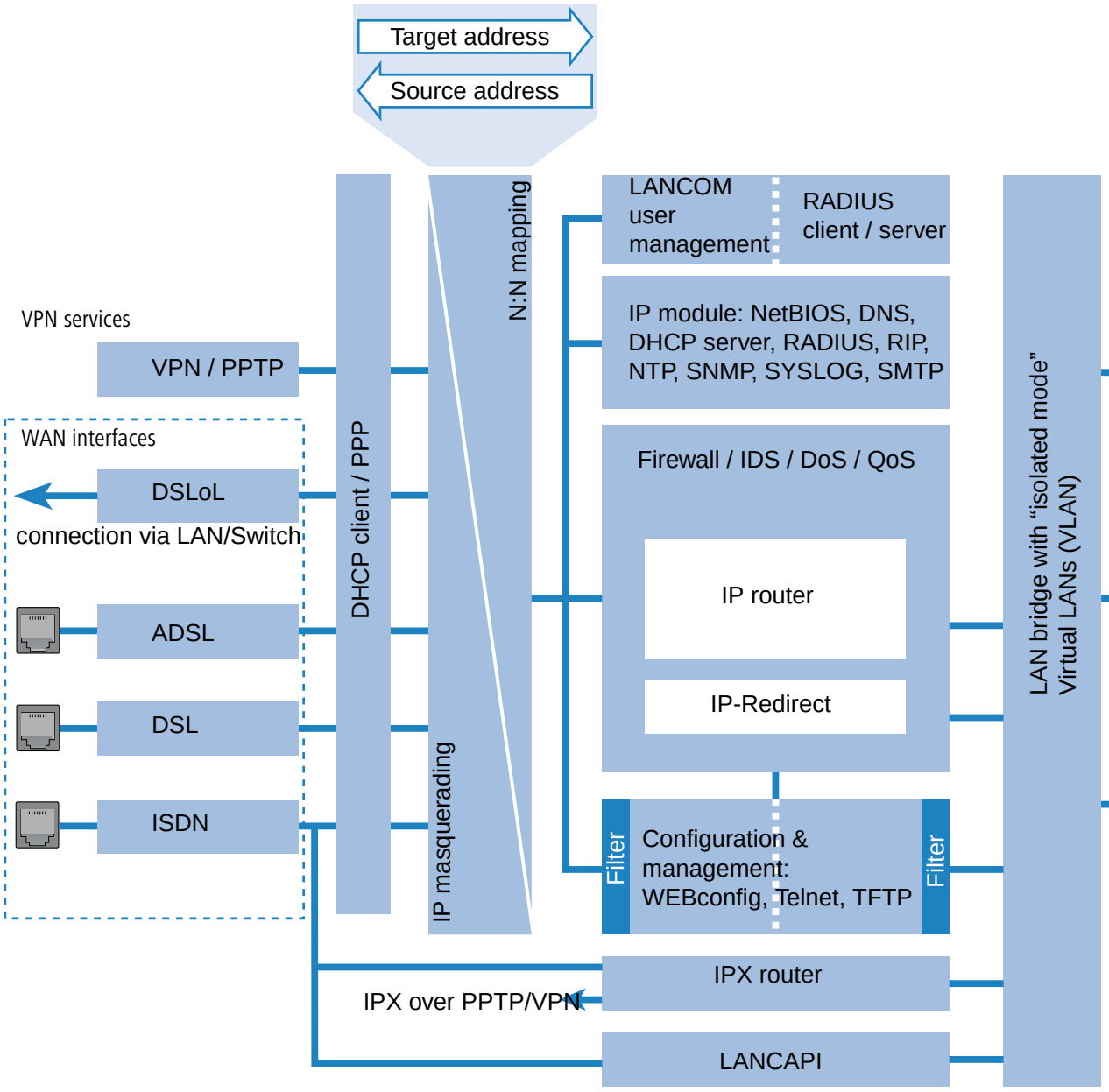
Additional configuration hints

When the address translation is set up in the NAT table, the networks and computers are initially only visible under a different address in the higher-level network. For the seamless routing of data between the networks, further settings are required:

- Entries in the routing tables, so that packets with their new addresses can find their way to the destination.

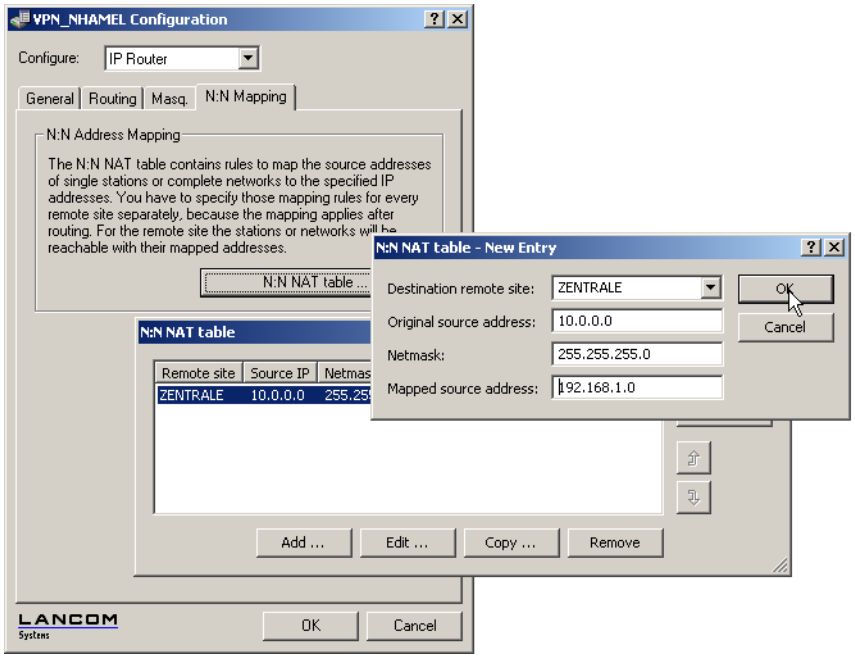
- DNS forwarding entries so that requests for specific devices in the other networks can be resolved to the mapped IP addresses.
- The firewall rules in the gateways must be adapted in such a way that, if necessary, it is also possible to connect to the accessible stations or networks from the outside.
- VPN rules for loopback addresses so that the newly assigned IP addresses can also be transmitted through the corresponding VPN tunnels.

The device performs IP address translation between the firewall and IP router on the one hand and the VPN module on the other. Rules that relate to their own local network therefore use the "unmapped" original addresses. Entries for the remote network therefore use the "mapped" addresses of the remote site, which are valid on the VPN connection.



Configuration with different tools

In LANconfig, address translation is set up in **IP router** > **N:N mapping**:

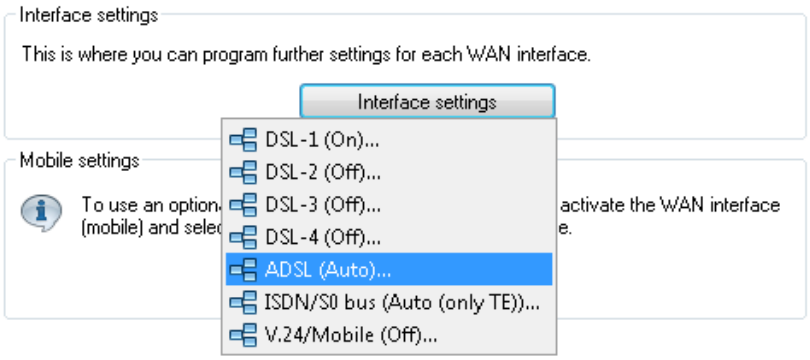


Console: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **NAT-Table**

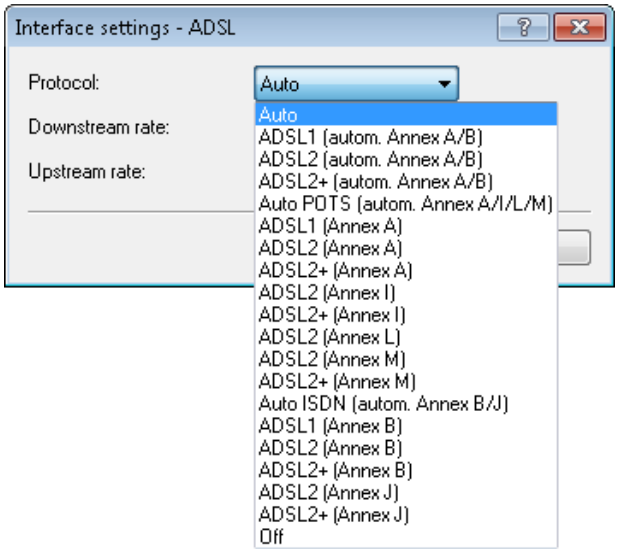
6.11 Select the protocol for the ADSL interface

The ADSL modem supports multiple ADSL protocols, making the device suitable for several types of connection. Ex-factory, the automated protocol selection is enabled and the device can be set up according to the country where it is operated.

You can set the ADSL protocol in the 'Interfaces' section of the device configuration under WAN. Click on Interface settings and select the item 'ADSL'.



Select the desired protocol in the dialog **Interface settings - ADSL**.



LANmonitor displays the current ADSL protocol in the System information section.

6.12 Connection establishment with PPP

Devices from LANCOM support the point-to-point protocol (PPP). PPP is a collective term for a whole series of WAN protocols. It is widely supported and allows routers from different manufacturers to interact.

Because PPP is independent of any specific router operating mode and is of increasing significance now and for the future, we are dedicating this section to the device functions that are related to PPP.

6.12.1 The protocol

What is PPP?

The point-to-point protocol (PPP) was specifically developed for network connections on serial channels (e.g. ISDN, DSL, etc.) and has become the standard for connections between routers. It implements the following features:

- Password protection according to PAP, CHAP or MS-CHAP
- Callback functions
- Negotiating the network protocol to be used over the established connection (e.g. IP). These include parameters necessary for these protocols, such as IP addresses. This negotiation is conducted using the IPCP protocol (IP Control Protocol).
- Negotiation of connection parameters such as the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit*Manual definition of the MTU* on page 414).
- Verification of the connection by LCP (Link Control Protocol)
- Bundling of multiple ISDN or DSL channels (Multilink-PPP or Multilink-PPPoE)

PPP is the standard used for communication between routers and WAN-connection software from different manufacturers. To ensure successful data transmission wherever possible, the connection parameters are negotiated with standardized control protocols (e.g. LCP, IPCP, CCP), which are included in PPP.

What is PPP used for?

The point-to-point protocol is used in the following applications:

- For compatibility reasons, e.g. communicating with third-party routers
- Remote access from remote workstations with ISDN adapters
- Internet access (with the transmission of addresses)

The PPP implemented in the device can be used synchronously or asynchronously via either a transparent HDLC connection or an X.75 connection.

The phases of PPP negotiation

When establishing a connection using PPP, the initial stage is to negotiate the parameters to be used for the connection. This negotiation has four phases, and you need to be aware of these for configuration and troubleshooting.

- Establish phase

  Once a connection has been made at the data communication level, the first stage is to negotiate the connection parameters using LCP.

  This ascertains whether the remote site is also ready to use PPP, as well as the packet sizes and the authentication protocol (PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP, or none). With this phase complete, LCP switches to the opened state.

- Authenticate phase

  If required, the passwords are exchanged. When authenticating to PAP, the password is transmitted only once. When using CHAP or MS-CHAP, an encrypted password is sent periodically at configurable intervals.

  One possibility is that this phase also negotiates a callback via CBCP (Callback Control Protocol).

- Network phase

  The IPCP protocol is implemented in the device.

  After the password was transmitted successfully, the network layer IPCP can be established.

  If the parameters were negotiated successfully, the router module can transmit IP packets on the opened (logical) line.

- Terminate phase

  In the final phase, the line is closed when the logical connections for all protocols are terminated.

PPP negotiation in the device

The PPP negotiation process is logged to the PPP statistics of the devices and, in the event of an error, you can check the protocol packets listed in detail there.

The PPP trace outputs offer a further method of analysis. The command

```
trace + ppp
```

starts the output of the PPP protocol frames exchanged during a terminal session. If this terminal session is stored to a log file, a detailed analysis can be performed once the connection has been terminated.

6.12.2 Everything OK? Checking the line with LCP

When establishing a connection via PPP, the participating devices negotiate a common behavior for the data transfer. For example, they first decide whether they should connect at all using the security method, names and passwords specified.

Once the connection is established, the reliability of the line can be constantly monitored using the LCP. This is achieved within the protocol by the LCP echo request and its associated LCP echo reply. The LCP echo request is a query in the form of a data packet which is transferred to the remote site along with the data. A valid response (LCP echo reply) to

this request shows that the connection is reliable and stable. This request is repeated at specified intervals so that the connection can be continually monitored.

What happens when there is no reply? First a few retries will be initiated in case the disturbance is temporary. If all the retries remain unanswered, the line will be dropped and an alternative route sought. If, for example, the high-speed connection refuses to work, an available ISDN port can open the way to the Internet as a backup.

When remotely accessing individual workstations with Windows operating systems, we recommend switching off the regular LCP requests because these operating systems do not reply to LCP echo requests and the connection would be terminated.

The LCP request behavior is configured in the PPP list for each individual connection. The intervals at which LCP requests should be made are set by the entries in the 'Time' and 'Retr.' fields, along with the number of retries that go unanswered before the line is considered faulty. LCP requests are switched off entirely by setting the time to '0' and the retries to '0'.

6.12.3 Assigning IP addresses via PPP

In order to connect computers using TCP/IP as the network protocol, all participating computers require a valid and unique IP address. If a remote site does not have its own IP address (such as the individual workstation of a telecommuter), the device assigns it an IP address for the duration of the connection, so enabling communications to take place.

This type of address assignment is performed during PPP negotiation and is used only for connections via WAN. In contrast, the assignment of addresses using DHCP is (usually) used within a local area network.

Assignment of an IP address is only possible if the device can identify the remote site by its call number or name when the call arrives, i.e. authentication was successful.

Examples

- Remote access

  Address assignment is made possible by a special entry in the IP routing table. Along with the entry for the IP address to be assigned to the remote site from the 'Router name' field, the net mask is entered as 255.255.255.255. In this case, the router name is the name required for the remote site to authenticate with the device.

  This configuration involves the transmission of entries from the TCP/IP module, including the IP address and the addresses of the DNS and NBNS servers (Domain Name Server and NetBIOS Name Server), including the backup server.

  In order for everything to function properly, the remote site must also be set up to obtain the IP address and the name server from the device. In Dial-Up Networking under Windows, for example, this is done with the entries in the 'TCP settings' under 'IP address' and 'DNS configuration'. The options 'IP address assigned by server' and 'Specify name server addresses' are activated here.

- Internet access

  If the device is used to provide a local area network with Internet access, the assignment of IP addresses can take place the other way around. In some configurations the device itself does not have a valid IP address on the Internet, and instead it receives one from the Internet provider for the duration of the connection. During the PPP negotiation the devices receives the IP address and information about the DNS server at the provider.

  In the local network, the device is only known by its internal intranet address. This allows all of the workstations in the local network to access the same Internet account and, for example, reach the DNS server.

Windows users are able to view the assigned addresses via LANmonitor. This also lists the name of the connected remote site, the current IP address, and the addresses of DNS and NBNS servers. Options such as channel bundling or the duration of the connection are also displayed.

6.12.4 Settings in the PPP list

In the PPP list, you are able to specify you own definition of PPP negotiation for every remote site contacting your network.

You can also specify whether communications should use an IPv4 or an IPv6 connection.

The authentication of point-to-point connections in the WAN commonly relies on one of the protocols PAP, CHAP, MSCHAP or MSCHAPv2. The protocols here have a "hierarchy" amongst themselves, i.e. MSCHAPv2 is a "higher-level" protocol than MSCHAP, CHAP and PAP (higher protocols provide higher security). Many dial-in routers at Internet providers allow up-front authentication using a higher-level protocol such as CHAP, but only support the use of PAP further down the line. If the setting for the authentication protocol used by the device is fixed, the connection may fail because no common authentication protocol can be negotiated.

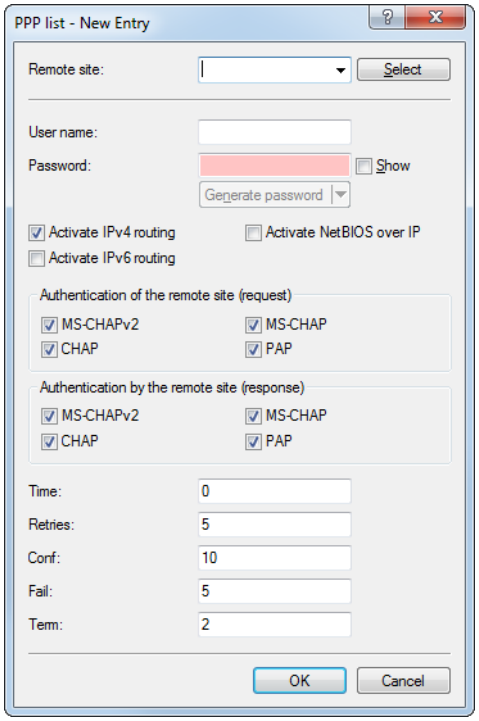
In principle authentication can be repeated while the connection is being negotiated. Another protocol can be selected if, for example, it can only be recognized from the username at the earliest. However, this repeat negotiation is not supported in all scenarios. In particular when dialing in over UMTS, the device must explicitly refuse the provider's request for CHAP to be able to provide PAP user data for requests to be forwarded by the provider.

A flexible setting for the authentication protocols in the device ensures that the PPP connection is established as required. In addition, one or more protocols can be defined that are accepted for authentication of remote sites in the device (inbound connections) and on login of the device into other remote sites (outbound connections).

- When establishing inbound connections, the device requires the lowest of the permitted protocols, but where possible it also permits the remote site to use one of the higher-level protocols (enabled in the device).
- When establishing outbound connections, the device offers all enabled protocols, but only permits a selection from precisely these protocols. It is not possible to negotiate one of the disabled, possibly higher-level, protocols.

The PPP authentication protocols are set in the PPP list.

LANconfig: **Communication** > **Protocols** > **PPP list**



6.12.5 The meaning of the DEFAULT remote site

During PPP negotiations, a remote site dialing-in to the device logs on with its name. The device can use the name to retrieve the permitted values for authentication from the PPP table. At the start of the negotiation, the remote site occasionally cannot be identified by call number (ISDN dial-in), IP address (PPTP dial-in) or MAC address (PPPoE dial-in). It is thus not possible to determine the permitted protocols in this first step. In these cases, authentication is performed first with those protocols enabled for the remote site with name DEFAULT. If the remote site is authenticated successfully with these settings, the protocols permitted for the remote site can also be determined.

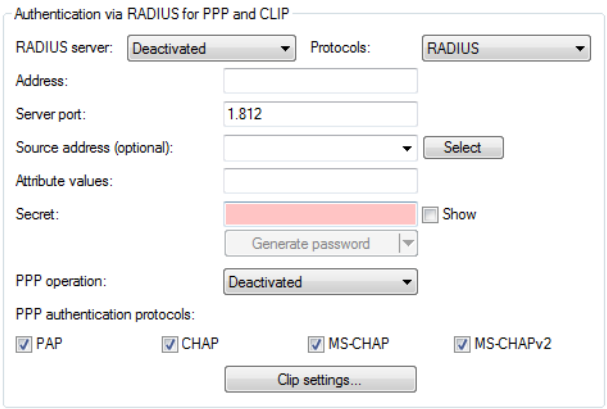
If authentication uses a protocol entered under DEFAULT, but which is not permitted for the remote site, then authentication is repeated with the permitted protocols.

6.12.6 RADIUS authentication of PPP connections

PPP connections can also be authenticated by an external RADIUS server. However, these external RADIUS servers do not necessarily support all available protocols. For this reason, the permitted protocols can also be selected in the configuration of the RADIUS authentication. LCP negotiation is restarted with the permitted protocols if the RADIUS server does not support the negotiated protocol.

WAN RADIUS table

LANconfig: **Communication** > **RADIUS**



Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **RADIUS**

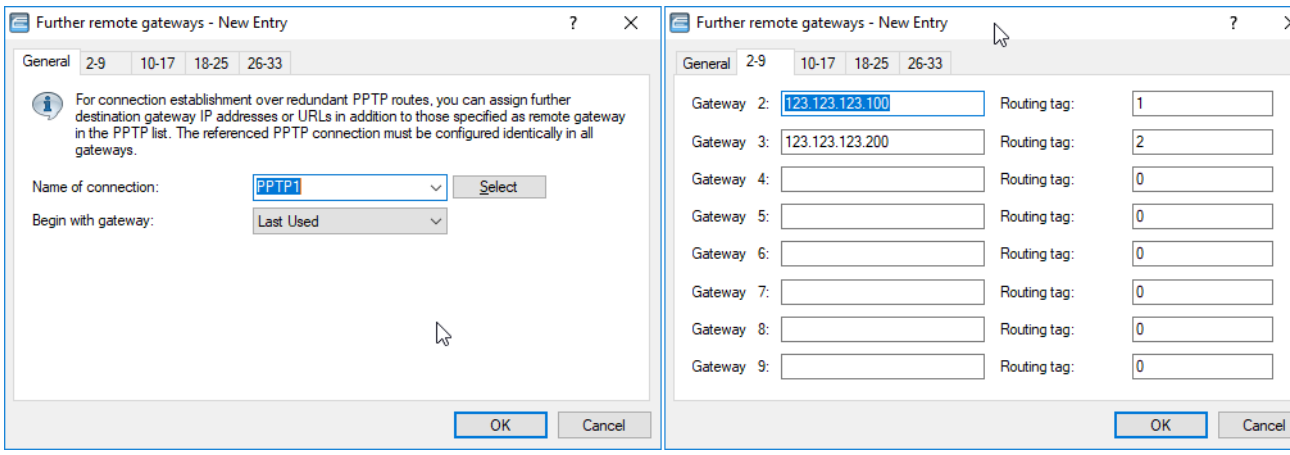
6.12.7 32 additional gateways for PPTP connections

Introduction

Up to 32 additional gateways can be configured to assure the availability of any PPTP remote site. Consequently, each PPTP remote site can use a total of up to 33 gateways.

Configuration

The additional PPTP gateways are defined in a separate list.



LANconfig: **Communication** > **Remote Sites** > **PPTP** > **Further remote gateways**

Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **Additional PPTP gateways**

> **Name of connection**

Here you select the PPTP remote site that this entry applies to.

Possible values:

> Select from the list of defined PPTP remote sites.

Default:

> Empty.

> **Begin with**

Here you select the order in which the entries are to be tried.

Possible values:

> Last used: Selects the entry for the connection which was successfully used most recently.
> First: Selects the first of the configured remote sites.
> Random: Selects one of the configured remote sites at random. This setting provides an effective measure for load balancing between the gateways at the headquarters.

Default:

> Last used

> **Gateway 2 to 33**

Enter the IP addresses of the additional gateways to be used for this PPTP remote site.

Possible values:

> IP address or 63 alphanumerical characters.

Default:

> Empty.

> **Routing tag**

Enter the routing tag for setting the route to the relevant remote gateway.

Possible values:

> Maximum 5 characters.

Default:

> 0.

If you do not specify a routing tag here (i.e. routing tag is 0), then the routing tag configured for this remote site in the PPTP connection list will be taken for the associated gateway.

6.13 DSL connection establishment using PPTP

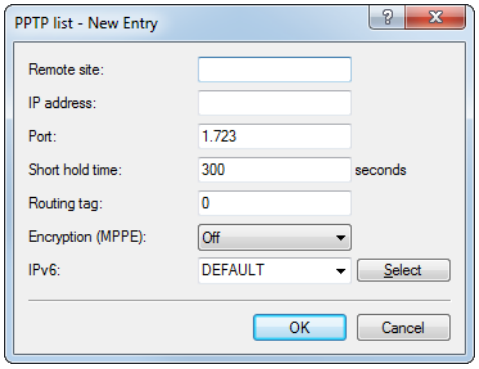
Instead of using PPPoE for dialing-in, some DSL providers instead PPTP (**P**oint-to-**P**oint **T**unneling **P**rotocol). PPTP is a protocol extension of PPP and was primarily developed by Microsoft.

PPTP allows you to establish "tunnels" to a remote site via IP networks. A tunnel is a logically shielded connection that protects the transmitted data from unauthorized access by third parties. The RC4 encryption algorithm is used for this.

6.13.1 Configuring PPTP

The PPTP parameters required by the device are requested as soon as the Set up Internet Access wizard is started and you select Internet access via PPTP. Along with the usual inputs required for PPPoE access, the IP address of the PPTP gateway must also be specified. The PPTP gateway is usually the DSL modem. Precise information can be supplied to you by your DSL provider.

Any changes to the configuration are made in the PPTP list:



LANconfig: **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **PPTP** > **PPTP list**

The PPTP configuration consists of the following parameters:

Remote site

This name from the list of DSL broadband peers.

IP address

IP address of PPTP gateway, usually the address of the DSL modem.

Port

IP port used for running the PPTP protocol. According to the protocol standard, port '1,723' should always be specified.

Short hold time

This value specifies the number of seconds that pass before a connection to this remote site is terminated if no data is being transferred. Applicable values range from 0 to 3600 seconds.

With the value 9999, connections are established immediately and without a time limit.

Routing tag

Routing tag for this entry.

Encryption (MPPE)

Key length of the encryption. Also see *MPPE for PPTP tunnels*

IPv6

This entry specifies the name of the IPv6 WAN interface. Leaving this entry blank causes IPv6 to be disabled for this interface. The IPv6 remote sites are configured under **IPv6** > **General** > **WAN interfaces**.

6.14 Permanent connection for flat rates – keep-alive

The term flat rate refers to all-inclusive connection rates that are not billed according to connection times, but instead as a flat fee for fixed periods. With flat rates, there is no longer any reason to disconnect. On the contrary: New e-mails should be delivered immediately to the PC, the home office should be continuously connected to the company network, and you want to be accessible to friends and colleagues over Internet messenger services non-stop. This means it is desirable for connections to be continuously maintained.

The keep-alive function ensures that the device re-establishes the connection whenever the remote site cuts it off.

6.14.1 Configuring the keep-alive function

The keep-alive function is configured in the Remote sites list.

If the short hold time is set to 0 seconds, the connection is not actively terminated by the device. This setting thus prevents disconnection if no data is transferred over a longer period. With this setting, however, a disconnect at the remote site is not automatically re-established.

With a holding time of 9,999 seconds the connection is always re-established after any disconnection. Additionally, the connection is re-established after booting the device ('auto reconnect').

6.15 Data volumes on the WAN interface

Depending on your tariff plan, mobile or landline operators may activate bandwidth throttling if a certain data volume is exceeded, also for flatrate plans. The device captures the amount of data sent over each WAN interface, archives the values for up to 12 months, and can perform actions when a specified threshold is reached. The budgets also apply to VPN, PPTP, or all other kinds of connection.

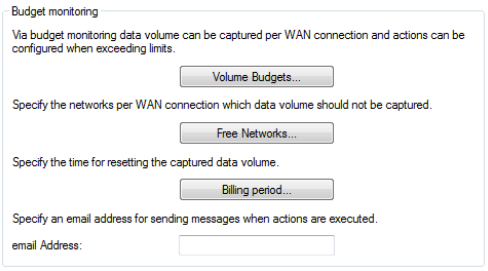
At the change of the month, the device archives the data for the previous month and resets the counter to zero for the current month. You can view the current data volume and the archived information in LANmonitor or in the WEBconfig status menu. The archive contains data from the last 12 months. In the 13th month, the device automatically overwrites the archive data of the 1st month.

6.15.1 Configuring data volume budgets

The following section describes how you can use LANconfig to manage the data volumes exchanged with remote sites.

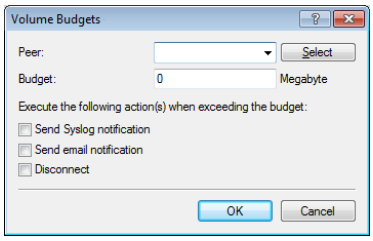
1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration of the device for which you want track the data volumes.

2. In the configuration dialog, navigate to the item **Management** > **Budget**.



If the device should send an e-mail when your data volume is exceeded, you can enter the required address into the field **E-mail address**.

3. Click on **Volume budgets** and then on **Add**.



The item **Peer** lets you select the remote site which requires a volume budget. With **Select** you can choose from the available remote sites or manage new ones.

Specify the data volume in the **Budget** field. In most cases this value is the permitted data volume specified by the provider before the data rate is throttled.

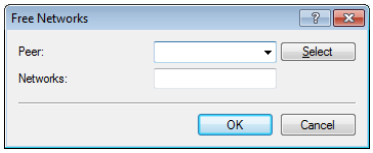
Further, you can specify actions that the device should perform when the budget is reached:

- **Send SYSLOG notification**: The device stores a SYSLOG message (with the flag "Critical") that you can analyze with LANmonitor or a special SYSLOG client.
- **Send e-mail notification**: The device sends a message to the e-mail address that you specified above.
- **Disconnect**: The device disconnects from the remote site.

The **disconnect** action activates the charge limiter. The device can no longer connect to this remote until the end of the month unless you increase the volume budget for this remote site.

You can also specify that the device should perform multiple actions. If they include the action **disconnect**, the device performs this action as the last one.

4. Click **OK** to add this entry to the table, and then click **OK** to add the entries to the configuration of the device.
5. If data transfer to certain networks does not affect the volume budget for a remote site, you can exclude these networks from the budgeting. To do this, click on **Free networks** and then on **Add**.



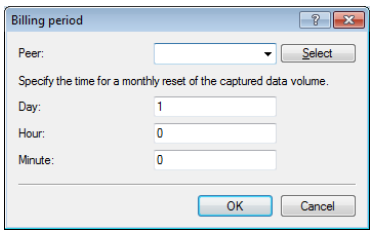
The item **Peer** lets you select the remote site which is to be excluded. With **Select** you can choose from the available remote sites or manage new ones.

You can make multiple entries for each remote by suffixing the name of the remote site with the # character and adding a number (e.g. "INTERNET", "INTERNET#1", "INTERNET#2", etc.). This is useful if you explicitly

wish to define an exception that is only temporarily active. When this exception is no longer valid, you delete only the entry with the correspondingly numbered remote site.

In the **Networks** field you can specify IPv4 and IPv6 addresses and also whole networks in prefix notation (for example "192.168.1.0/24"). Separate each entry with a comma. Here too you can add the # character and a digit to the remote site name.

6. Click **OK** to add this entry to the table, and then click **OK** to add the entries to the configuration of the device.
7. You can set the day and time when the device should start each monthly billing period under **Billing period**.
8. If you want to change the preset values, select the line containing the peer named "*" and click on **Edit**; otherwise click on **Add**.



The item **Peer** lets you select the remote site for which you want to set the time when the period starts. With **Select** you can choose from the available remote sites or manage new ones.

You can use wildcards for the names of the remote sites. The wild card "*" in this case applies for all remote sites.

In the fields **Day**, **Hour** and **Minute** you set the day of the month and the time at which the device resets the budget for this peer.

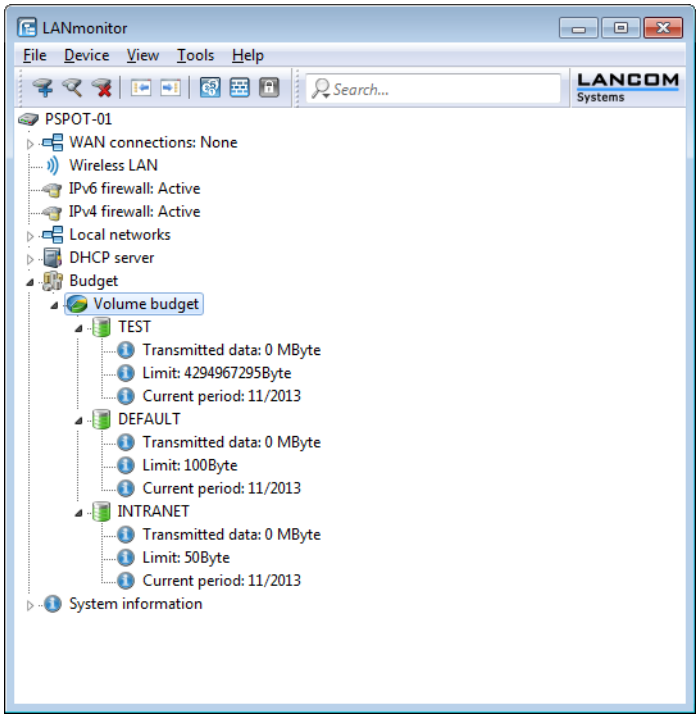
By default the device resets the budget for all peers on the first day of the month at 00:00h.

If you enter the value "31" in the field **Day**, the device does not reset the budget in months with fewer days (e.g. February or November).

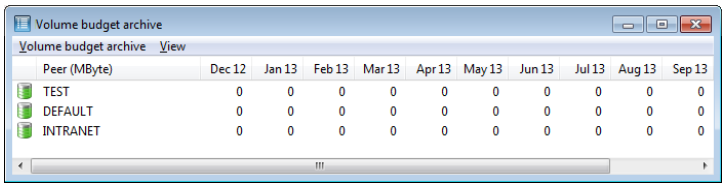
9. Click **OK** to add this entry to the table, and then click **OK** to add the entries to the configuration of the device.
10. Finally click on **OK** to load the configuration into the device.

6.15.2 Budget analysis

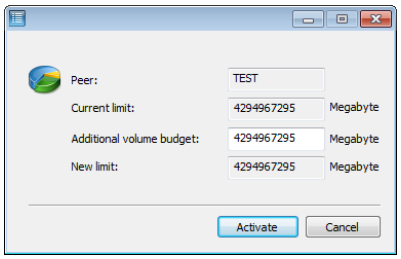
The convenient analysis and management of your configured volume budgets is available in LANmonitor under the **Budget** branch.



By clicking with the right mouse button on **Volume budget** you can reset all of the displayed volume budgets or display the volume budget archive.



By clicking with the right mouse button on a WAN interface, you can reset the budget for the corresponding interface or assign an additional volume budget.



6.16 Callback functions

LANCOM models with an ISDN interface support automatic callback.

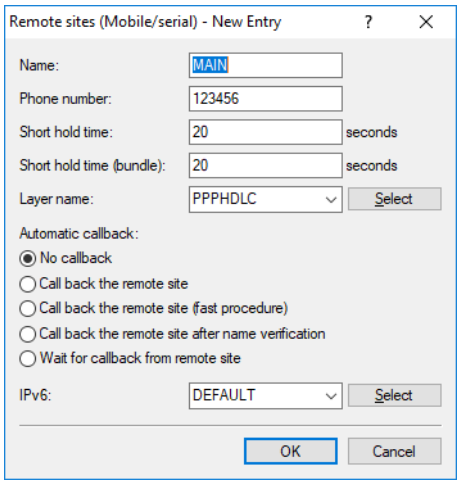
In addition to the callback via the D-channel, the devices also support the Microsoft CBCP (**C**allback **C**ontrol **P**rotocol) and the callback via PPP as per RFC 1570 (PPP LCP extensions). There is also the option of a fast callback using a process developed by LANCOM Systems. PCs with the Windows operating system can only be called back using the CBCP.

6.16.1 Callback as per Microsoft CBCP

The Microsoft CBCP allows a number of ways to determine the callback number:

- The party called does not call back.
- The called party allows the caller to specify the callback number itself.
- The called party knows the callback number and calls this number **only**.

CBCP enables a Windows computer to connect to the device and to be called back by it. The three possible settings are selected in the Remote sites list via the entries for automatic callback and the phone number.



No callback

For this setting, the callback entry must be set to 'off' when configuring with WEBconfig or the CLI.

Callback number specified by caller

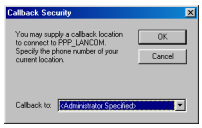
For this setting the callback entry must be set to 'Call back the remote site after name verification' (or must have the value 'Name' in WEBconfig or with the CLI). In the peer list **no** telephone number may be specified.

After authentication, Windows displays an input dialog on the caller's screen requesting the ISDN telephone number of the PC.

Callback number set in the device

For this setting the callback entry must be set to 'Call back the remote site after name verification' (or must be set to the value 'Name' in WEBconfig or with the CLI). In the list of Remote sites, **one** telephone number must be specified.

Some Windows versions (especially Windows 98) prompt the user to confirm the callback to the telephone number stored in the LANCOM ('Administrator Specified') with an input window. Other versions of Windows inform the user that the PC is waiting for the device to call back.



The callback to a Windows computer takes about 15 seconds after the first connection was dropped. This time cannot be shortened because it is a Windows default setting.

6.16.2 Callback, fast procedure

The fast callback procedure is ideal if two LANCOM devices are to communicate with one another via callback.

- The caller wishing to be called back sets 'Wait for callback from remote site' in the remote sites list (or 'Looser' when configuring via WEBconfig, terminal program or Telnet).
- The party performing the callback sets 'Call back the remote site (fast procedure)' in the remote sites list and enters the phone number ('fast' when configuring via WEBconfig, CLI or Telnet).

For fast callback using the device-specific procedure, the number list for answering calls must be kept up to date at both ends.

6.16.3 Callback as per RFC 1570 (PPP LCP extensions)

Callback as per 1570 is the default method for calling back routers from other manufacturers. This protocol extension describes five ways to request a callback. The device accepts all of these versions. However, all of the versions are processed in the same way:

After the remote site is authenticated, the device disconnects and calls it back a few seconds later.

Configuration

To call back using PPP, select the option 'Call back the remote site' in LANconfig or 'Auto' when configuring by WEBconfig, terminal program or Telnet.

For callbacks as per PPP, the number list for answering calls must be kept up to date in the LANCOM.

6.16.4 Overview of the callback function configuration

The following options are available for the Callback entry in the list of Dial-up peers under WEBconfig and a terminal program/Telnet:

With this entry ...	... you set the callback as follows:
'Off'	There is no return call.
'Auto' (not for Windows operating systems, see below)	If the remote site is found in the numbers list, this number is called back. Initially the call is rejected and, as soon as the channel is free again, a return call is made (after approx. 8 seconds). If the remote site is not found in the numbers list, the DEFAULT remote site is initially taken and the return call is negotiated during the protocol negotiation. The call is charged with one unit.
'Name'	Before a return call is made, the protocol is always negotiated even if the remote site is found in the numbers list (e.g. for Windows computers that dial-in to the device). Small call charges are incurred for this.
'Fast'	If the remote site is found in the numbers list, the return call is made quickly, i.e. the device sends a special signal to the remote site and it calls back as soon as the channel is free again. The connection is established within about 2 seconds. If the remote site does not cancel the call immediately after the signal, then two seconds later it reverts to the normal return call procedure (lasts about 8 seconds). This procedure is available with DSS1 connections only.
'Looser'	Use the "looser" option if a return call from the remote site is expected. This setting fulfills two jobs in one. Firstly it ensures that a connection it established itself terminates if a call arrives from the remote site that was just called, and secondly this setting activates the function that reacts to the procedure for fast return calls. This means that to use fast return calls, the caller must be in 'Looser' mode and, at the called party, the return call must be set to 'LANCOM'.

The setting 'Name' offers the highest security if there is an entry in the numbers list and in the PPP list.

The setting 'LANCOM' enables the fastest method of call-back between two devices from LANCOM.

For Windows remote sites, you **must** select the setting 'Name'.

6.17 ISDN channel bundling with MLPPP

When establishing an ISDN connection to a remote site with PPP capability, you can transmit data more quickly: Data can be compressed and/or multiple B channels can be used for data transmission (channel bundling).

Connecting with channel bundling differs from “normal” connections in that not only one, but rather several B channels are used parallel for data transmission.

Channel bundling makes use of MLPPP (**M**ultilink **PPP**). Of course, this procedure is only available if PPP is used as a B-channel protocol. MLPPP is useful for, for example, Internet access via providers who also operate MLPPP-enabled remote sites for their dial-in nodes.

DSL channels can also be bundled by using MLPPPoE.

6.17.1 Two methods of channel bundling

- Static channel bundling

  If a connection is established with static channel bundling, the LANCOM tries to establish the second B channel immediately after setting up the first B channel. If this fails, for example because this channel is already occupied by another device or by another connection in the LANCOM, the connection attempt is automatically and regularly repeated until the second channel is available.

- Dynamic channel bundling

  In the case of a connection with dynamic channel bundling, the LANCOM initially establishes just one B channel and begins the data transfer. If it then determines that the connection throughput rate continually exceeds a certain threshold value, it tries to add the second channel.

  If the second channel is established and the data throughput rate drops below the threshold value, the LANCOM waits for the short hold time set for B2 and then automatically closes the channel again. This ensures that the charges units are used to the full, assuming that the charge information is transmitted during the connection. The LANCOM only uses the second B-channel if and as long as it really needs it.

6.17.2 How to configure channel bundling

Configuring channel bundling for a connection involves three settings:

1. For the remote site, select a communication layer from the layer list that has bundling enabled in the layer-2 options. Choose from the following layer-2 options:
   - **compr.** according to the LZS data compression procedure (stac) reduces the amount of data if the data hasn't been compressed already. This method is also supported by routers from other manufacturers and by ISDN adapters on Windows operating systems.
   - **bundle** uses two B channels per connection.
   - **bnd+cmpr** uses both compression and channel bundling and provides the maximum possible data transmission performance.

2. Now create a new entry in the Remote sites list. Pay attention to the short hold times for the connection. Please observe the following rules:

   - The B1 short hold time should be set at a value large enough to prevent the connection being dropped prematurely if no packets were transmitted for a brief period. Experience has shown that values between 60 and 180 seconds are a good basis which can be adapted as required during operation.
   - The B2 hold time decides whether channel bundling is static or dynamic (see above). With a B2 hold time of '0' or '9999' bundling is static, whereas values in between permit dynamic channel bundling. The B2 hold time specifies how long data throughput can be below the threshold for dynamic channel bundling without the second B channel being disconnected automatically.

3. In the router interface list, the entry for the Y connection determines what happens when channel bundling is in operation and a request for a second connection arrives.

   Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **Router-Interface-List**

   - Y connection **on**: The router interrupts channel bundling to establish the second connection to the other remote device. If the second channel becomes free again, it is automatically used for channel bundling again (always for static bundling, when required for dynamic bundling).
   - Y connection **off**: The router maintains the existing bundled connection; the second connection must wait.

   Please note that channel bundling incurs costs for two connections. No further connections can be made over LANCAPI! Only use channel bundling when the full transfer speed is required and used.

6.18 Operating a modem over the serial interface

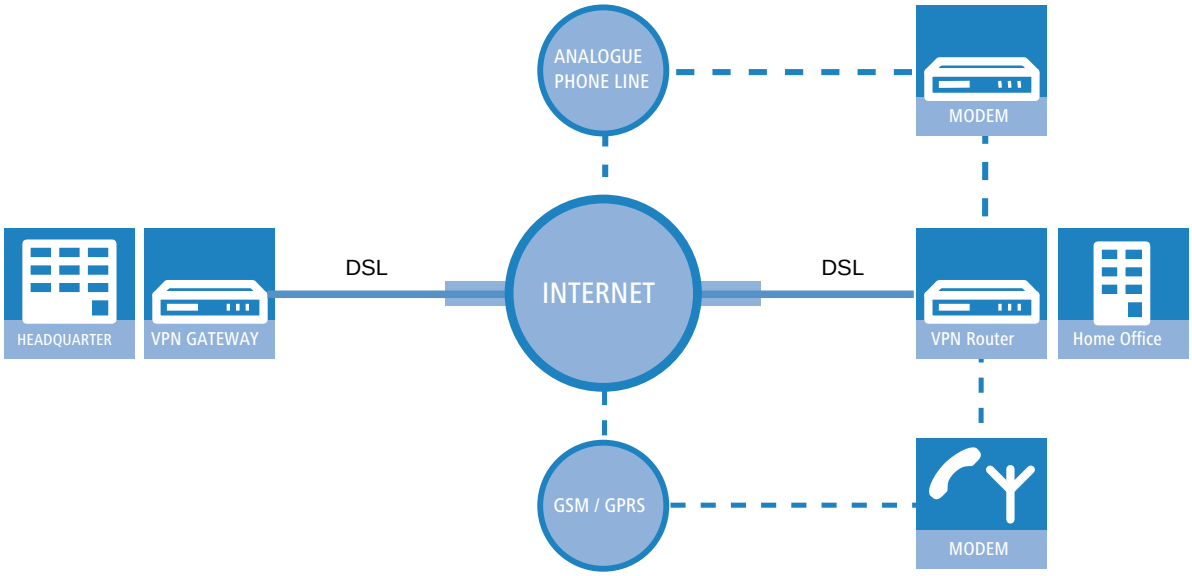
This section refers only to devices with a serial configuration interface.

6.18.1 Introduction

Internationally, analog telephone connections are just as common in the business world as the predominant ISDN connections in Germany. The operation of international networks thus places particular demands on remote maintenance options and for high-availability of the gateways and thus requires different interfaces than the ISDN common in Germany. Apart from conventional analog telephone lines, mobile telephone networks such as GSM or GPRS may, in certain cases, represent the only way of providing remote maintenance without broadband or other cabled access.

In response to these requirements, most LANCOM models with a serial interface can be extended with an additional WAN interface with the use of analog modems, GSM or GPRS. The following functions are available with a suitable modem in combination with the LANCOM Modem Adapter Kit:

- Internet access via modem with all of the router functions such as firewall, automatic connection establishment and termination, etc.
- Remote maintenance (e.g. dial-in to international sites)
- Backup connection (e.g. high-availability through GSM/GPRS modem connection)



6.18.2 System requirements

The following are required to set up a backup connection over the serial interface:

- LANCOM with a serial configuration interface and support for the LANCOM Modem Adapter Kit. For devices with a serial configuration interface, please refer to the table to see if your model supports modem operation on the serial interface.
- LANconfig or alternatively a web browser or Telnet for the configuration
- Serial configuration cable (supplied with the device)
- External modem with the standard AT command set (Hayes compatible) and D-Sub9 or D-Sub25 connection
- LANCOM Modem Adapter Kit for connecting the modem via the serial configuration cable

6.18.3 Installation

For the installation, the modem is connected to the serial configuration interface of the LANCOM with the help of the LANCOM .

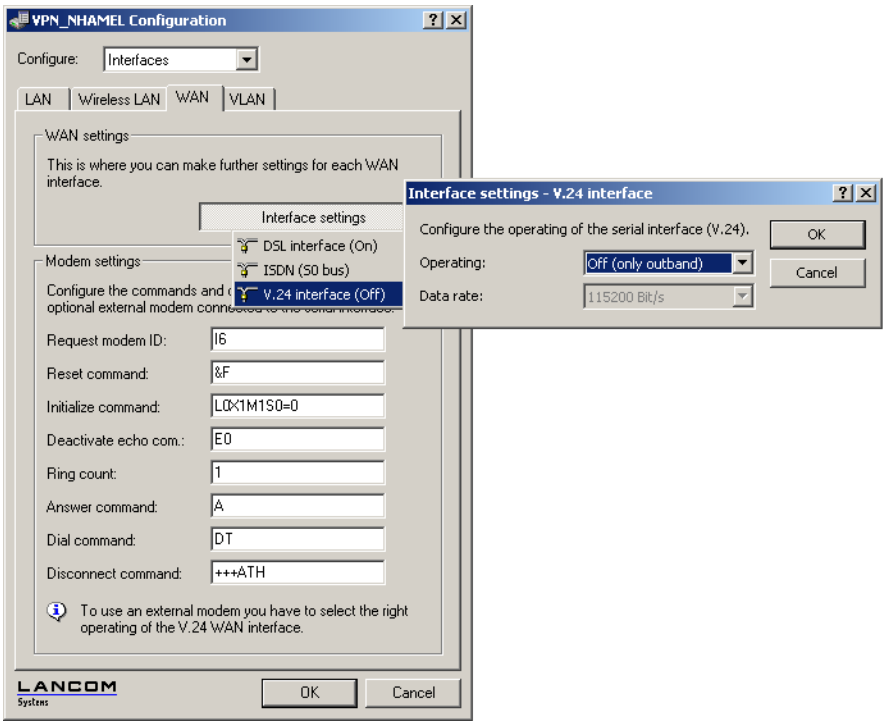
Please use only the original LANCOM Modem Adapter Kit. The contact assignment of the LANCOM Modem Adapter Kit differs from other commercial adapters, such as “null modem cables” and the like. The use of non-compliant accessories will cause serious damage on the LANCOM and/or the modem.

6.18.4 Set the serial interface to modem operation

The operation of the serial interface requires the operating mode and bitrate to be set.

- Operating mode [default: outband]
  - Outband: In this mode, the serial interface is only used for configuration with a terminal program.
  - Modem: In the 'Modem' setting, the device attempts to find a modem connected to the serial interface. If this is successful then the modem can be used as an additional WAN interface. If a computer running a terminal program is detected, then the device automatically switches the interface into outband mode.
- Bitrate [default: 115,200 bps.]

Set the maximum bitrate supported by your modem. The serial interfaces of LANCOM devices support data-rate values of 19,200 bps, 38,400 bps, 57,600 bps up to a maximum of 115,200 bps.



LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **WAN** > **V.24 interface**

Console: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **V.24-Interface**

As long as the LANCOM is set to modem mode, a terminal program operating over the serial interface will display the AT commands that the LANCOM device transmits while attempting to identify a connected modem. In the terminal program, press the return key repeatedly until the modem identification is interrupted and start the configuration session.

6.18.5 Configuring the modem parameters

The operation of a modem at the serial interface requires the following settings:

- Modem ID command [Default: `ATI6`]
- Reset string [Default: `AT&F`]
- Initialize string [Default: `ATL0M1X1S0=0`]
  - `L0`: Loudspeaker quiet
  - `M1`: Loudspeaker on while connecting
  - `X1`: Operation at an extension
  - `S0=0`: Disable auto answering
- Deactivate modem echo [default: `ATE0`]
- AT polling cycle time [Default: `1` in seconds]
- AT polling count [Default: `5`]
- Ring count [Default: `1`]
- Initialize answer command
- Answer command [Default: `ATA`]
- Initialize dial command

- Dial command [Default: `ATDT`]
- Escape sequence to terminate data phase resp. to return to command phase [Default: `+++`]
- Hold time after escape sequence [Default: `1000` in milliseconds]
- Disconnect: Command to hang up during data phase. [Default: `ATH`]

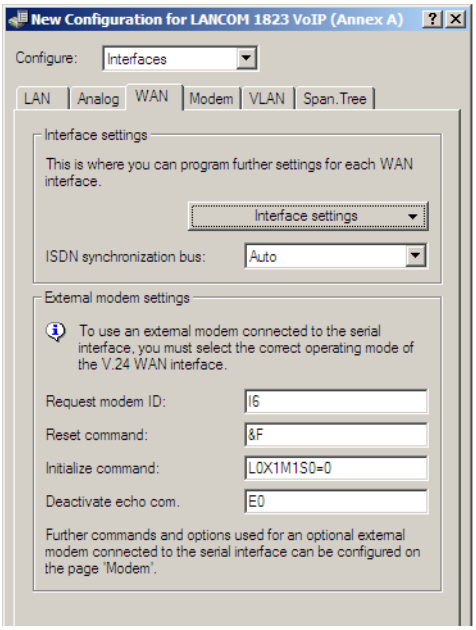
The modem parameters are set with values that should suit most modems. Thus changes are generally not necessary. Refer to the documentation for your modem for settings that vary from these.

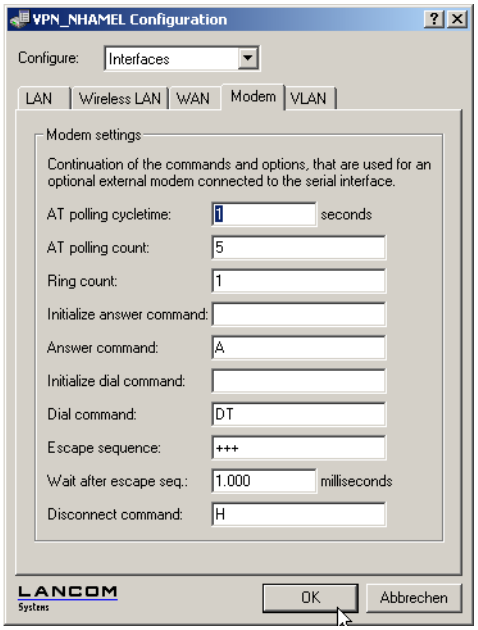
Setting up a GPRS backup connection

If the connection is to use a GPRS-capable modem at the serial interface, you will need the APN name and the dial-up telephone number. The following init-strings for the configuration apply to T-Mobile and Vodafone:

- T-Mobile
  - Init-string: `L0X1M1S0=0+CGDCONT=1, "IP", "internet.t-d1.de"`
  - Dial-up number: `*99#`
- Vodafone
  - Init-string: `L0X1M1S0=0+CGDCONT=1, "IP", "web.vodafone.de"`
  - Dial-up number: `*99#` or `*99***1#`

LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **WAN** or **Interfaces** > **Modem**





Console: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **Modem-Parameters**

Entering special characters in the CLI

For a GPRS dial-up, the initialization strings require the entry of inverted commas and equal signs. Certain special characters can be correspondingly marked with a leading backslash:

- *
- "
- =

- space

Example: `+cgdcont\=1,\”IP\”,\”internet.t-d1.de\”`

As an alternative, the entire command sequence can be enclosed within inverted commas. In this case, those inverted commas which are inside the surrounding inverted commas must be preceded by a backslash.

Example: `”+cgdcont=1,\”IP\”,\”internet.t-d1.de\””`

6.18.6 Direct entry of AT commands

The command

```
sendserial "AT..."
```

allows you to use Telnet to send a character string directly to a modem that is connected to the LANCOM. This function allows you to send any AT commands to the modem.

Sending AT commands is possible in the internal modem state 'idle' or 'Modem ready' only. The responses can be found in the serial trace (*Trace output* on page 412).

6.18.7 Statistics

Statistics about activities of the serial interface can be accessed with a terminal program or Telnet under:

```
Status/Modem-Status
```

The statistics show the type of modem identified and the status of its last connection, e.g. the transfer rate, the transfer protocol used or the error-detection method used.

The statistics show the following states:

- The type of modem identified
- The status of its last connection, e.g. the transfer rate, the transfer protocol used or the error-detection method used
- Internal state of modem management, e.g.
  - Device detection
  - Interface deactivated
  - Modem initialization
  - Modem ready
  - Connecting
  - Modem in data mode

  These messages can be very helpful for debugging.

6.18.8 Trace output

The command

```
trace + serial
```

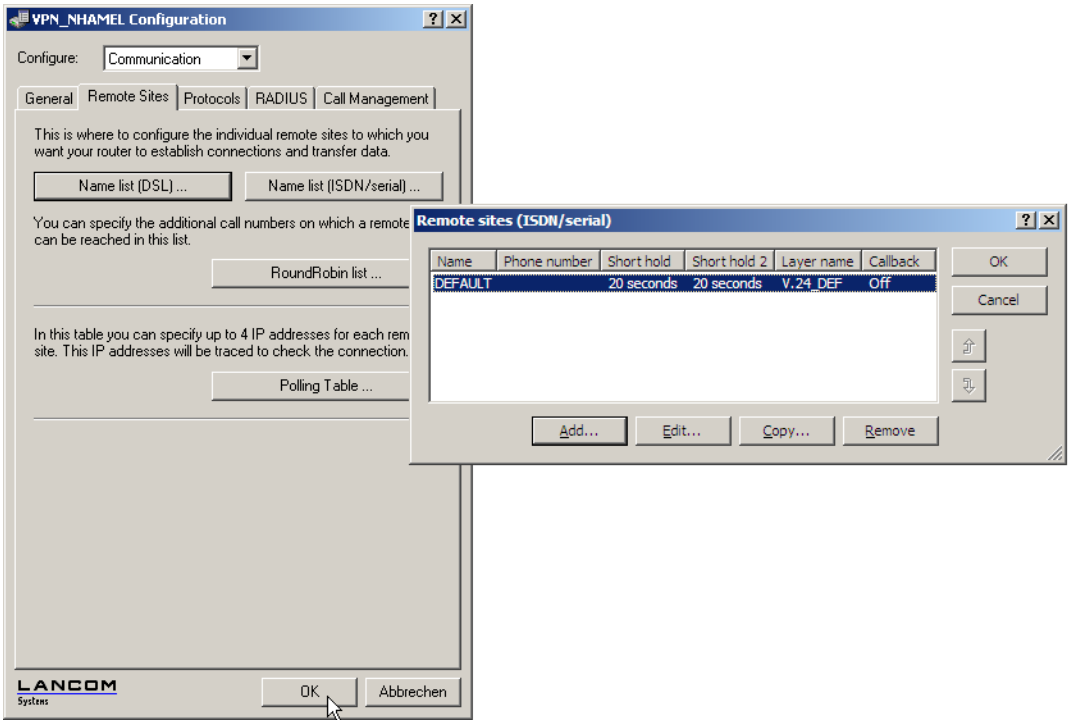
allows you to start the trace output for the serial interface in a Telnet session when a LANCOM has a modem connected. The output shows all messages exchanged up until the establishment of data transfer between the modem and the LANCOM.

6.18.9 Configuring remote sites for V.24 WAN interfaces

To establish a connection to a remote site via the modem connected to the serial interface, a corresponding entry is required in the list of Remote sites (ISDN/serial). The Remote sites (ISDN/serial) list contains the following information:

- Name: Name of the remote site

- Telephone number: Telephone number that reaches the remote site. The field can be left empty if calls are to be received only.
- Short hold time: This time defines how long a connection is kept active even if no more data is being transferred. If a zero is entered, the connection will not be interrupted automatically. A hold time of “9999” means that the connection is permanently held open. If it is interrupted, then the connection will be actively opened up again. This behavior is known as **keep alive**.
- 2nd Short hold time: Will be ignored.
- Layer name: The layer 'V.24_DEF' is selected for the connection over the serial WAN interface. The layer is preset and does not need further configuration. The layer 'V.24_DEF' uses the following settings:
  - Encapsulation: Transparent
  - Layer-3: APPP (asynchronous PPP)
  - Layer-2: Transparent
  - Options: None
  - Layer-1: SERIAL (shows that the serial interface is being used for connections via the layer 'V.24_DEF')



The Remote sites list with the peers for the modem at the serial interface can be found under the following paths:

LANconfig: **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **Remote sites (ISDN/serial)**

Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **Dialup-peers**

Once an entry in the remote sites list has been generated for the WAN interface, this remote site can be used just like any other for routing and WAN connections.

6.18.10 Configuring a backup connection on the serial interface

The configuration of a backup connection via a modem at the serial interface requires first of all an entry in the Dialup-Peers list so that the required remote site can be reached. The following entries will also be required for the configuration of the LANCOM:

- Entry in the backup table

  In the backup table, generate an entry for the remote site that is to be used for the backup connection. This remote site is to be assigned to the remote site that is to be called by the modem at the serial interface.

The backup table is to be found under the following paths:

LANconfig: **Communication** > **Call management** > **Backup table**

Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **Backup-Peers**

- Entry in the polling table

  If the link to the remote site that is to be backed up cannot be checked by LCP polling (with PPP only) then an additional entry in the polling table is required. This involves assigning the remote site with an IP address that can be regularly tested with a ping command. The IP address should typically be a computer directly at the opposite end of the connection being tested, e.g. a DNS server in your provider's network.

  The polling table is to be found under the following paths:

LANconfig: **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **Polling table**

Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **Polling-Table**

6.18.11 Contact assignment of the LANCOM modem adapter kit

LANCOM signal	D-Sub9 connector	LANCOM or modem signal	D-Sub9 connector
TxD	3	RxD	2
RxD	2	TxD	3
RTS	7	CTS	8
CTS	8	RTS	7
DTR	4	DCD	1
DCD	1	DTR	4
GND	5	GND	5

6.19 Manual definition of the MTU

Many Internet providers operate their own backbone; however, their customers dial in to the network over the access nodes provided by third-party telecommunications providers. The “two-stage” dial-in procedure can lead to problems with the realized data rate:

- When dialing into the nodes of Deutsche Telekom, for example, a device conducting a PPP negotiation agrees a permissible maximum transmission unit (MTU), which defines the greatest possible size of unfragmented data packet. This MTU is then observed by the device.
- When the data packets are forwarded to the actual provider, an additional header is added which increases the size of the data packets again. For the data packets to meet with the permitted size, they must now be fragmented into smaller units. This additional fragmentation can cause losses in the data-transfer speeds.

This problem can be avoided by entering a fixed MTU for each remote site.

6.19.1 Configuration

Console: **Setup** > **WAN** > **MTU-List**

The table contains the following entries:

- Device name: Name of the remote device. It can be a physical or a virtual (PPTP/VPN) remote site
- MTU: MTU to be used for the connection

6.19.2 Statistics

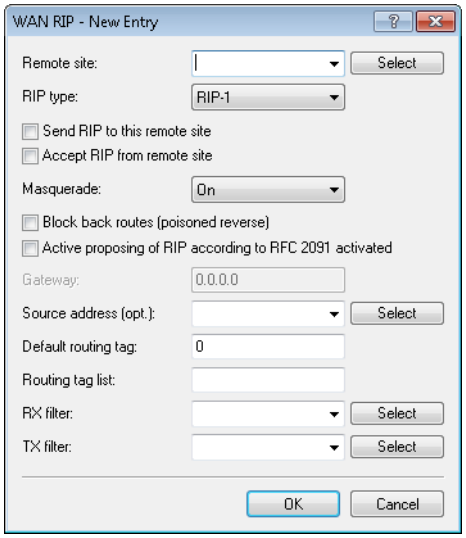
Under **Status** / **WAN-statistics** you will find the MTU statistics recorded for all current connections. The table is partially dynamic and begins with 16 entries. Like the MTU list under **Setup** / **WAN** it contains two columns with the remote name and the MTU.

Peer	MTU	Comment
INET	1200	The INET remote site is the Internet connection and a forced MTU of 1200 bytes.
MULTI	1492	MULTI is a PPPoE connection, for which the MTU was negotiated (and is consequently 1492 bytes).
TESTVPN	1100	TESTVPN is a VPN connection established via the Internet. An assumed overhead of 100 bytes is taken for VPN connections, and consequently the MTU here is 1100 bytes.
TESTVPN-PPTP	1060	TESTVPN-PPTP is a PPTP connection established over the VPN connection TESTVPN. The overhead for PPTP connections is 40 bytes, and consequently the MTU here is 1060 bytes.

MTU lists and MTU statistics are only available for devices with a DSL or ADSL interface.

6.20 WAN RIP

In order for routes learned from RIP to be broadcast across the WAN, the respective remote sites can be entered into the WAN RIP table under **IP Router** > **General** > **WAN RIP**.



The WAN RIP table contains the following values:

Remote site

Contains the name of the remote site.

RIP type

Specifies the RIP version used to propagate the local routes.

Send RIP to this remote site.

Specify whether RIP is to be propagated on the WAN routes. The RIP type must be set for this.

Accept RIP from this remote site

Specify whether RIP is to be accepted from the WAN. The RIP type must be set for this.

Please bear in mind that WAN-side RIP represents a potential security risk.

Masquerading

Specify whether and how the device is masked on the route. This entry makes it possible to start WAN RIP even in an empty routing table. The following values are possible:

- **Auto**: The masquerade type is taken from the routing table (value: 0). If there is no routing entry for the remote site, then masquerading is not performed.
- **On**: All connections are masqueraded (value: 1).
- **Intranet**: IP masquerading is used for connections from the intranet, connections from the DMZ pass through transparently (value: 2).

Block back routes (poisoned reverse)

When blocking the return route (poisoned reverse), all routes learned/received on this interface are marked and returned as "unavailable "by directly setting the number of hops to 16 (or the maximum).

Active proposing of RIP according to RFC 2091 activated

The device supports RIP according to RFC 2091.

The setting "propose RFC 2091" is only relevant for active connection establishment. Passive connections accept the RIP version proposed by the remote site, regardless of how this switch is set.

For active connections that propose RIP as per RFC 2091, there is an optional fallback to "normal" RIP as per RFC 2453: A fallback occurs if the remote site does not respond to 10 retries of the first packet (10 retries take about 30 seconds).

The entry for the gateway is taken to be the IP address of the RIP partner at the other end of the WAN route. 0.0.0.0 can be entered here if a PPP negotiation is conducted over the WAN route and the IP address of the remote site is transmitted.

In a central gateway, the setting "RFC 2091" can always be off and the "Gateway" entry always set to 0.0.0.0 because the central gateway always considers the gateway as specified at the subsidiary.

Gateway

Enter the IP address of the RIP partner.

Source address (optional)

Here you have the option to configure a sender address for the device to use in place of the one that would otherwise be used automatically for this target address.

If you have configured loopback addresses, you can specify them here as source address. You can enter an address in various forms:

- Name of the IP network (ARF network), whose address should be used.
- "INT" for the address of the first intranet.
- "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ (Note: If there is an interface named "DMZ", its address will be taken).
- LB0…LBF for one of the 16 loopback addresses or its name.
- Furthermore, any IP address can be entered in the form x.x.x.x.

If the source address set here is a loopback address, these will be used unmasked on the remote client.

Default routing tag

This indicates the “default routing tag” applicable for the WAN link. When the device transmits over the WAN, it gives this tag to all untagged routes.

Routing tag list

This is a comma-separated list of the tags that the device accepts on the interface. If this list is empty, the device accepts all tags. If at least one tag is in the list, then the device only accepts the tags in this list. When sending tagged routes on the WAN, the device only propagates routes with valid tags.

The device internally treats all routes learned from the WAN as untagged routes and propagates them on the LAN with the default tag (0). Over the WAN, however, it propagates routes with the tag that it learned.

RX filter

Specify here the filter to be applied when receiving (RX) RIP packets.

You must first define the filter in the RIP filter list in order to use it here.

TX filter

Specify here the filter to be applied when sending (TX) RIP packets.

You must first define the filter in the RIP filter list in order to use it here.

6.21 The Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

In networks with many switches and bridges, numerous physical connections can exist between any two stations that are connected to the network. These redundant data paths are desirable because they offer alternative paths to the desired destination in case individual network paths fail. On the other hand, these multiple connections can also lead to loops or cause network stations to receive multiple frames. Both occurrences negatively impact frictionless data traffic performance in the network.

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) enables an analysis of the network at the layer-2 level and, as such, offers solutions for intelligent path selection between two network stations below the routing layer. By discovering redundant paths between network stations, STP builds a unique structure in which loops and double packets can be avoided. To this end, so-called Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) are sent as a multicast to a specific MAC address. The BPDUs allow redundant paths to be discovered as well as the distance and the data rate available on this connection. Using these values, the Spanning Tree Protocol calculates a priority (also called route or path costs) with which the various connections are to be treated. The low-priority connections are disabled and are therefore no longer available for clients. Through the reduction of non-redundant connections between the clients, the protocol builds a tree which unambiguously defines all of the connections that arise from a central switch (root bridge).

The BPDUs are sent regularly in the network in order to check the availability of the connections. If a connection fails, then the network analysis is triggered again; the possible paths and the corresponding priorities are redefined.

After initialization all ports are initially in the “blocking” state, in which only BPDUs are exchanged. The ports subsequently switch to the states of "listening" and then "learning" before reaching “forwarding” which allows payload data to be exchanged via the ports.

6.21.1 Classic and rapid spanning tree

The early version of the spanning-tree protocol compliant with IEEE 802.1D, here referred to as classic spanning tree, had the problem that changes to topology after a connection failure were implemented very slowly: Depending on the

complexity of the network, the classic spanning tree takes between 20 seconds and a minute to establish new routes. For many network services a failure of this length of time is unacceptable.

The spanning tree protocol was improved and published as the “Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol” (RSTP), initially as the IEE 802.1t/w standard and later as a part of the newly published IEEE 802.1D. Even though the classic spanning tree protocol was thus withdrawn, it continues to be supported by LCOS.

6.21.2 Improvements from rapid spanning tree

As mentioned above, the primary aim of RSTP is to accelerate the activation of network paths once an active connection has failed. RSTP achieves this by dispensing with the states "blocking" and "listening" to reduce the time required to update the network paths to just a few seconds. In case of a network path failure, not all of the links are blocked until the new topology has been calculated; instead, only the failed connections are unavailable for use.

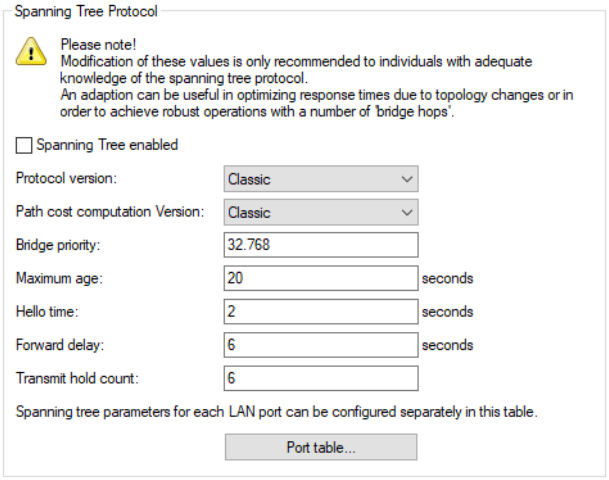
RSTP also enables the administrator to configure information on network topology.

- A bridge port can be defined as an “edge port”. An edge port is the only bridge port leading to the connected LAN segment, i.e. no other bridges are connected to the LAN segment, but workstations or servers only, for example. As these ports cannot lead to loops, they change immediately into the forwarding state without waiting for the network topology to be determined. However, RSTP continues to monitor these ports. Should BPDUs be unexpectedly received at an edge port due to another bridge being connected to the LAN, the port automatically returns to its normal state.
- A bridge port can also operate as a point-to-point link. In this case the port is directly connected with an additional bridge. Since no additional stations can occur between the two bridges, the switch into the forwarding state can take place faster.

In the ideal case, RSTP immediately resorts to familiar alternative network paths in case of connection failure.

6.21.3 Configuring the Spanning Tree Protocol

The following parameters are available for configuring RSTP or STP functionality in the device:



LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **Spanning Tree**

Console: **Setup** > **LAN-Bridge** > **Spanning-Tree**

General parameters

- Spanning tree operating

  When Spanning Tree is turned off, a device does not send any Spanning Tree packets and passes received packets along instead of processing them itself.

- Protocol version

- Classic: Uses the classical STP to determine network topology.
- Rapid: Uses the RSTP method to determine network topology.

RSTP is compatible with STP. Network components which only support classical STP continue to be supported where RSTP is operational.

- Path cost computation
  - Classic: Uses the classical STP method to compute path costs.
  - Rapid: Uses the RSTP method to compute path costs.
- Bridge priority

  Defines the priority of the bridge in the LAN. This can influence which bridge should preferably be made root bridge by the Spanning Tree Protocol.

  So as to maintain compatibility with RSTP, this value should only be adjusted in steps of 4096 owing to the fact that RSTP uses the lower 12-bits of this 16-bit value for other purposes.
- Maximum Age

  This value defines the time (in seconds) after which a bridge drops messages received through Spanning Tree as 'aged'. This parameter defines how quickly the Spanning Tree algorithm reacts to changes, for example due to failed bridges.
- Hello Time

  This parameter defines (in seconds) in which intervals a device selected to be the root bridge sends Spanning Tree information into the LAN.
- Forward delay

  This time (in seconds) determines how much time must pass at a minimum before a Spanning Tree port can change the status (listening, learning, forwarding).

  When using RSTP the forwarding delay often has no effect because RSTP has suitable mechanisms of its own to prompt a rapid switching into the forwarding state.

  Modifying any of these three time values is only recommended for those with exact knowledge of the Spanning Tree protocol. An adjustment can be useful in order to optimize reaction times after topology changes or to achieve stable performance in networks with many 'bridge hops'.
- Transmit-hold count

  Number of BPDUs which can be transmitted by RSTP before a one second pause commences.

  When using classical STP the transmit-hold count has no effect.

Port table

The port table can be used to set the following values separately for all available ports (LAN, wireless LAN, point-to-point connections).

- Mark as edge port

  Marks the port as an edge port which is not connected to any further bridges but to workstations or servers only. Edge ports switch immediately into the forwarding state.

  Edge ports continue to be monitored by RSTP. If a port of this type receives BPDUs, then its status as an edge port is removed.
- Priority

  Defines the priority of the port. In the case of multiple network paths with identical path costs, the priority value decides which port is used. If priority values are identical then the port to be taken is the first in the list.

So as to maintain compatibility with RSTP, this value may only be adjusted in steps of 16 owing to the fact that RSTP uses only the upper 4-bits of this 16-bit value.

- Path cost override

  This parameter controls the priority of paths with equal value. The value set here is used to make the selection instead of the computed path costs.

  - Special values: 0 switches path-cost override off.
  - Default: 0

6.21.4 Status reports via the Spanning Tree Protocol

The current STP values can be viewed via Telnet in the LAN Bridge Status.

Console: **Status** > **LAN-Bridge** > **Spanning-Tree**

General status information

- Bridge ID

  This is the ID for the device that is being used by the Spanning Tree algorithm. It is composed of the user-defined priority (upper 16 bits) and the device MAC address (lower 48 bits).

- Root bridge

  The ID for the device that is currently elected root bridge.

- Root port

  The port that can be used to reach the root bridge from this device. If the device itself is the root bridge, it is displayed with the special value '255'.

- Root path cost

  The path costs of all hops added together in order to reach the root bridge from this device.

- Protocol version

  The protocol version currently set for determining network topology.

- Path cost computation

  The protocol version currently set for computing path cost.

- Bridge priority

  Current setting for bridge priority.

Information in the port table

The port table can be used to inspect the following values for all available ports (LAN, wireless LAN, point-to-point connections).

- Priority

  The priority of this port taken from the port configuration

- **Status**

  The current state of the port:

  - Disabled: No packets can be sent or received through this port. This occurs when the port has either been disabled manually or when it has a negative link status.
  - Listening: Intermediate state on the way to enabling. Only Spanning Tree packets are listened to, data packets are ignored and are also not forwarded to this port.

- Learning: Another intermediate state. As opposed to 'listening' additional MAC addresses from data packets entering this port are learned but data packets are still not forwarded.
- Forwarding: The port is completely active, data packets are received and forwarded in both directions
- Blocking: Spanning Tree has identified this port to be redundant and disabled it for data traffic.

- **Root**

  The ID for the root bridge that can be reached through this port.

- **Bridge**

  This is the ID for the bridge through which the root bridge can be reached.

- **Costs**

  This value defines the 'costs' for this port. The value is determined by the port technology (Ethernet, WLAN, etc.) and the bandwidth. Examples of values used are:

Transfer technology	Costs of Classic Spanning Tree	Costs of Rapid Spanning Tree
Ethernet 10 MBit	100	2000000
Ethernet 100 MBit	19	200000
Ethernet 1000 MBit	4	200000
WLAN 2 MBit	500	12500000
WLAN 11 MBit	140	4000000
WLAN 54 MBit	35	900000
WLAN 108 MBit	25	450000

If path costs for a port were manually entered, then the configured value appears in this column.

Information in the RSTP port statistics

The RSTP port table can be used to inspect the following values for all available ports (LAN, wireless LAN, point-to-point connections).

- **Role**

  Root or Non-root bridge

- Learning

  Port in learning state.

- Forwarding

  Port in forwarding state.

- Edge port

  Port defined as an edge port.

- Protocol version

  Classic or Rapid

- **Costs**

  Setting for this port's cost

6.22 The Action table

6.22.1 Introduction

The action table controls actions triggered when there is a change in status of WAN connections. WAN connections include direct connections to an Internet provider, and also VPN connections based on this, such as those used to connect a branch office to a main office. Every action is linked with a condition that describes the change in status of the WAN connection (establishment, termination, failure or establish failure). Actions can be any of the commands available at the Telnet terminal. Furthermore, actions can transmit messages by e-mail or SYSLOG, send an HTTP request, or transmit a DNS request. Different variables allow information such as the current IP address, the name of the device, or an error message to be integrated into the action.

6.22.2 Actions for Dynamic DNS

Systems with dynamic IP addresses can be made available for access via the WAN, for example via the Internet, by using the services of commercially available dynamic DNS servers. Servers offering these services can assign the current IP address of a device to its FQDN name (Fully Qualified Domain Name, e.g. “http://MyDevice.dynDNS.org”).

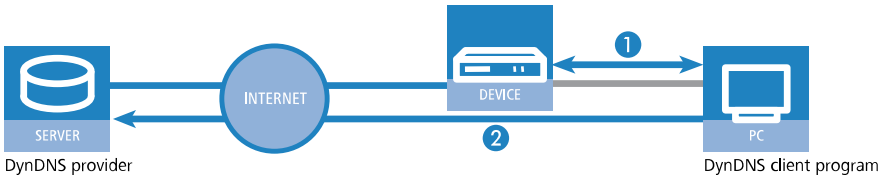
The advantage is obvious: If you wish to carry out remote maintenance via WEBconfig/HTTP, the only information you need is the dynamic DNS name. Also, a DynDNS name can be used to establish VPN connections between remote sites that have changing IP addresses.

In order for the current IP address to match with the DynDNS name at all times, the IP address recorded on the DynDNS server must be constantly updated. This change is triggered by a dynamic DNS client.

- The DynDNS server, maintained by a DynDNS service provider on the Internet, is in contact with the Internet DNS servers.
- The Dynamic DNS client can run on a workstation as a separate client program. As an alternative, a dynamic DNS client is integrated into the device. It can make contact to any one of a number of dynamic-DNS service providers and, assuming that a user account has been set up, automatically update its current IP address for the DNS name translation.

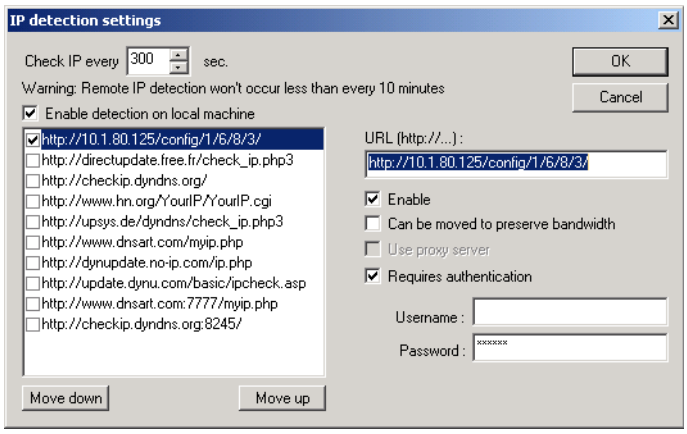
Dynamic DNS client on the workstation

Dynamic DNS providers support a range of PC client programs that use various methods to determine the IP address currently assigned to a device **1**. A change in IP address is communicated to the appropriate dynamic DNS server **2**.



The current WAN-side IP address of a device can be read from the following address and entered into a client program:

```
http://<Address of the device>/config/1/6/8/3/
```



Dynamic-DNS client in the device via HTTP

Alternatively the device can transmit the current WAN IP to the DynDNS provider directly:

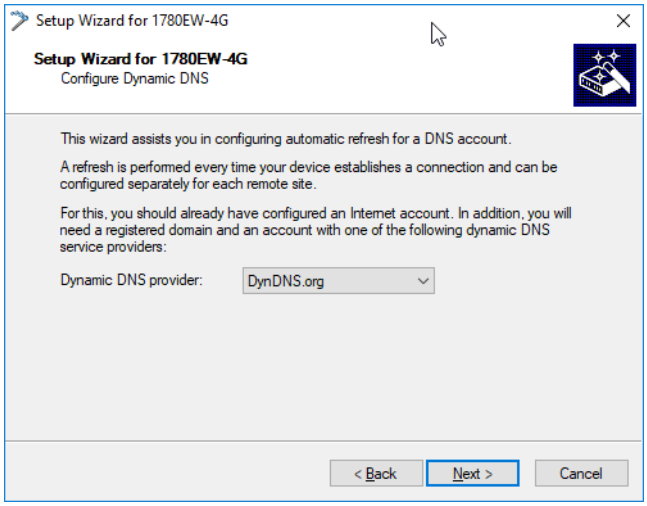
DynDNS provider

You do this by defining an action for this which, for example, automatically sends an HTTP request to the DynDNS server each time a connection is established. The necessary information is transferred via the DynDNS account, so triggering an update of the registration. An HTTP request of this type from DynDNS.org appears as follows:

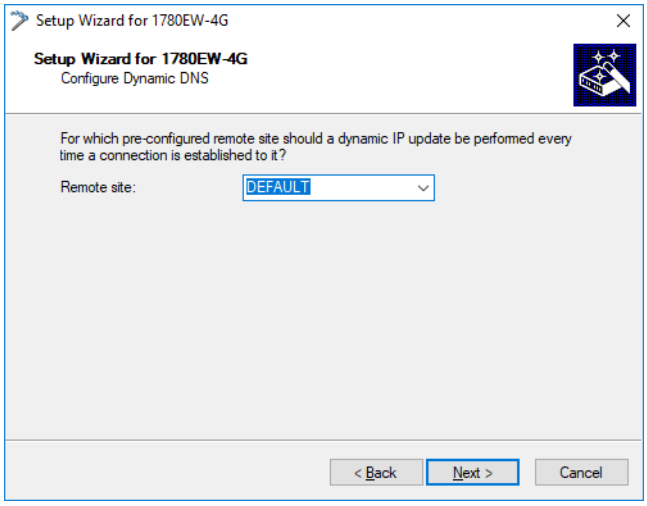
```
http://Username:Password@members.dyndns.org/nic/update?system=dyndns&hostname=%h&myip=%a
```

The device sends the host name of the action along with the IP address to an account at DynDNS.org as specified by a username and password, and this updates the corresponding entry. The settings necessary for this are adjusted using the Setup Wizards in LANconfig:

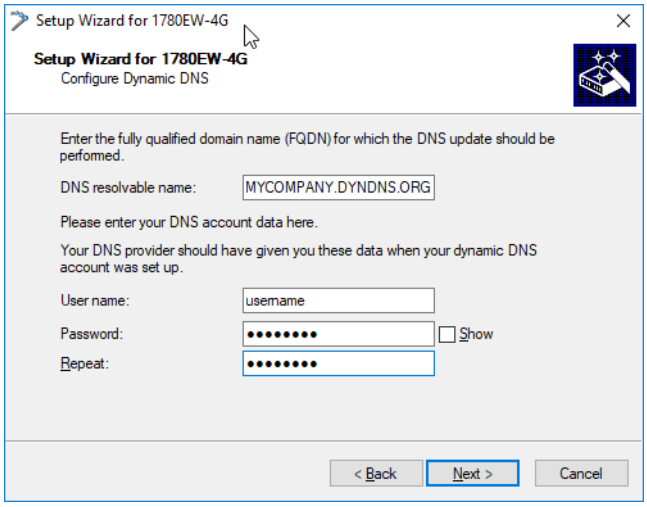
First, select the service provider you want to use from the list.



Now set the WAN remote site to which the action applies.



Then enter your login data.



The Setup Wizard supplements the basic action with further provider-specific parameters, which are not described here. Apart from that, the Setup Wizard creates additional actions that control the device in case the DynDNS provider was unable to successfully perform the update the first time.

Dynamic-DNS client in the device via GnuDIP

As an alternative to using a simple HTTP request to update DynDNS information, some services make use of the GnuDIP protocol. The GnuDIP protocol is based on a challenge-response mechanism:

1. The client opens the connection to the GnuDIP server.
2. The server responds with a random value calculated for the session.
3. The client uses the random value and the password to create a hash value, which is returned to the server.
4. The server checks this hash value and reports its result by sending a number back to the client.

The GnuDIP protocol can exchange the messages between the client and server either via a simple TCP connection (standard port 3495) or as a CGI script running on an Internet server. The version using an HTTP request from a CGI script has the advantage that no additional ports have to be opened on the GnuDIP, and also that HTTP offers protection from passive interception and offline dictionary attacks.

Requests to a GnuDIP server are triggered by the device with an action in the following form:

- gnudip://<srv>[:port][/path]?<parameter>
  - <srv> – The GnuDIP server address.
  - [:port] – Specifying the port is optional. If it is not defined, default values are taken instead (3495 for TCP, 80 or 443 for HTTP/HTTPS).
  - [/path] – Path information is only required by HTTP/HTTPS to define the location where the CGI script is stored.

  The following parameters are extensions to the request:

  - method=<tcp|http|https> – Selects the protocol to be used for the transmission between the GnuDIP server and client. Only one protocol can be selected here.
  - user=<username> – Specifies the user name for the account on the GnuDIP server.
  - pass=<password> – Specifies the password for the account on the GnuDIP server.
  - domn=<domain> – Specifies the DNS domain containing the DynDNS entry.
  - reqc=<0|1|2> – Defines the action that is triggered by the request. Action <0> sends the server a dedicated IP address that is to be used for the update. Action <1> deletes a DynDNS entry. Action <2> triggers an update, although no IP address is transmitted to the server. Instead, the server carries out the update with the IP address of the GnuDIP client.
  - addr=<address> – Specifies the IP address that an action with the parameter <0> is to use for updating the DynDNS entry. If this is unspecified in a <0> action, the request is treated as a <2> action.

  With the GnuDIP protocol, the host name that is to be registered corresponds to the user name sent to the server. If, for example, the username is "myserver" and the DNS domain is "mydomain.org", then the DNS name "myserver.mydomain.org" is registered.

  For example, the following action executed via the GnuDIP protocol updates the DynDNS entry at a DynDNS provider with the current IP address of the device (%a) as soon as a connection is established:

  - gnudip://gnudipsrv?method=tcp&user=myserver&domn=mydomain.org &pass=password&reqc=0&addr=%a

  Use the following action to delete a DynDNS entry, for example once the connection has been terminated:

  - gnudip://gnudipsrv?method=tcp&user=myserver&domn=mydomain.org &pass=password&reqc=1

  The line-break is for legibility only and is not to be entered into the action.

In response to the request, the GnuDIP server returns one of the following values to the GnuDIP client (assuming that the connection between server and client was established):

- 0 – The DynDNS entry was updated successfully.
- 0:address – The DynDNS entry was successfully updated with the specified address.
- 1 – Authentication at the GnuDIP server failed.
- 2 – The DynDNS entry was deleted successfully.

These responses can be processed by the device's actions to trigger further actions if necessary.

6.22.3 Further example actions

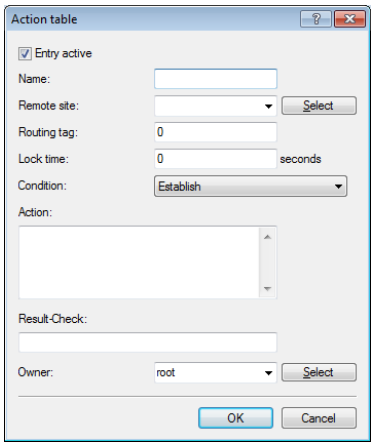
Broken connection alert as an SMS to a mobile telephone

The placeholder %t allows the current time of an event to be incorporated into a message. For example, an alert about the interruption of an important VPN connection can be sent by e-mail or as an SMS to a system administrator's mobile telephone.

The following requirements have to be met for messaging:

- The status of the VPN connection must be monitored, for example by means of “dead-peer-detection” (DPD).
- The device has to be configured as an NTP client in order to have the current system time.
- An SMTP account must be set up for transmitting e-mails.

Once these requirements are fulfilled, messaging can be set up. This is done with a new entry in the action table; e.g. with LANconfig under **Communication** > **General** > **Action table**.



Select the remote site for the relevant connection. As Condition select 'Broken' and enter the action as the transmission of an e-mail.

```
mailto:admin@mycompany.com?subject=VPN connection broken at %t?body=VPN connection to Subsidiary 1 was broken.
```

If the connection is broken, this action sends an e-mail to the administrator with the time of the event in the subject line.

If the mail is sent to an appropriate Mail2SMS gateway the alert can be sent directly to a mobile telephone.

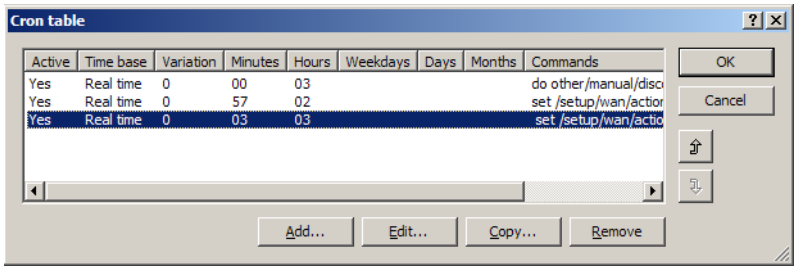
For complex scenarios with several subsidiaries, each of the remote sites is given a corresponding entry in the device at the central device. For monitoring the central device itself, an action is entered into a device at one of the subsidiaries. In this way the administrator receives an alert even if the VPN gateway at the central location fails, which could potentially prevent any messages from being transmitted.

Example: Suppress messaging in case of re-connects with a DSL connection

Some providers interrupt the DSL connection used for the VPN connections once every 24 hours. To avoid informing the administrator of these regular interruptions, messaging can be disabled at the time when the re-connect occurs.

First of all an action is required to force the re-connect to occur at a fixed time; generally at night when the Internet connection is not in use. The entry defines, for example, 03:00h and the Internet connection is broken with the command `do other/manual/disconnect internet`.

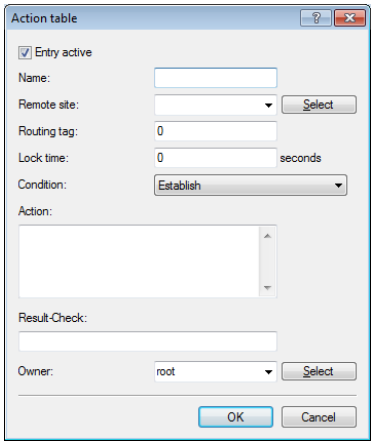
With two more cron commands `set /setup/wan/action-table/1 yes/no` the corresponding entry in the action table is switched off three minutes before 03:00h and switched on again three minutes after 03:00h. The number 1 following the path to the action table is an index that stands for the first entry in the table.



6.22.4 Configuration

With the Action table you can define actions that the device executes when the status of a WAN connection changes.

In LANconfig, the Action table is located under **Communication** > **General** > **Action table**



- **Entry active**: Activates or deactivates this entry.
- **Name**: Action name. This name can be referenced with the wildcard `%h` (hostname) in the fields **Action** and **Result check**.
- **Remote site**: A change in status of this remote site triggers the action defined in this entry.
- **Routing tag**: You can use the routing tag to specify which remote site the device uses when the action is applied. Of course, this site must be equipped with the appropriate routing tag.
- **Lock time**: Prevents this action from being repeated within the period defined here in seconds (max. 10 characters).
- **Condition**: Various changes in WAN-connection status can be set here, and the action is triggered when this condition occurs. Possible values are:
  - Establish – the action triggers if the device has successfully established the connection.
  - Disconnect without failure – the action triggers if the device itself terminates the connection (e.g. through manual disconnection or expiry of a holding time).
  - End (disconnect or broken) – the action triggers as soon as the connection terminates (regardless of the reason).
  - Broken with failure – this action is triggered on disconnects that were not initiated or expected by the device.
  - Establish failure – the action triggers if connection establishment was unsuccessful.
  - Volume budget exhausted – this action executes when the specified volume is reached.
  - Volume budget released – this action occurs after a state change from 'Volume exceeded' to 'Volume no longer exceeded', e.g. when you reset an exceeded volume or when the device enters a new billing period. If the volume has not been exceeded at the time of the reset, no action takes place.
- **Action**: This item describes the action to be executed by the device when there is a change in the status of the WAN connection. You can specify only one action per entry (max. 250 characters). For each of the following values, the colon (:) is part of the action value. Possible values are:
  - `exec:` – This prefix initiates any command as you would enter it at the Telnet CLI. For example, the action `exec:do /o/m/d` terminates all current connections.
  - `dnscheck:` – This prefix initiates an IPv4 DSN name resolution. For example, the action `dnscheck:myserver.dyndns.org` requests the IPv4 address of the indicated server.
  - `dnscheck6:` – This prefix initiates an IPv6 DSN name resolution. For example, the action `dnscheck6:myserver.dyndns.org` requests the IPv6 address of the indicated server.
  - `http:` – This prefix initiates an HTTP-get request. For example, you can use the following action to execute a DynDNS update at dyndns.org:

    ```
    http://username:password@members.dyndns.org/nic/update?system=dyndns&hostname=%h&myip=%a
    ```

The meaning of the place holders `%h` and `%a` is described below.

- `https:` – Like `http:`, except that the connection is encrypted.
- `gnudip:` – This prefix initiates a request to the corresponding DynDNS server via the GnuDIP protocol. For example, you can use the following action to use the GnuDIP protocol to execute a DynDNS update at a DynDNS provider:

  ```
  gnudip://gnudipsrv?method=tcp&user=myserver&domn=mydomain.org&pass=password&reqc=0&addr=%a
  ```

  The meaning of the place holder `%a` is described below.

- `repeat:` – This prefix together with a time in seconds repeats all actions with the condition "Establish" as soon as the connection has been established. For example, the action `repeat 300` causes all of the establish actions to be repeated every 5 minutes.
- `mailto:` – This prefix causes an e-mail to be sent. For example, you can use the following action to send an e-mail to the system administrator as soon as a connection is terminated: `mailto:admin@mycompany.com?subject=VPN connection broken at %t?body=VPN connection to branch office 1 was broken.`

  Optional variables for the actions:

  - `%a` – WAN IPv4 address of the WAN connection relating to the action.
  - `%x` – The current IPv6 LAN prefix as a string in the format "fd00:0:0:1::/64"
  - `%y` – The current IPv6 LAN address of the device as a string in the format "fd00::1:2a0:57ff:fa1b:9d7b"
  - `%z` – WAN IPv6 address of the WAN connection relating to the action.
  - `%H` – Host name of the WAN connection relating to the action.
  - `%h` – Like `%H`, except the hostname is in small letters.
  - `%c` – Connection name of the WAN connection relating to the action.
  - `%n` – Device name
  - `%s` – Device serial number
  - `%m` – Device MAC address (as in Sysinfo)
  - `%t` – Time and date in the format `YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss`
  - `%e` – Description of the error that was reported when connection establishment failed.

  Using the variable `%z` requires that you specify the IPv6 address. If you do not supply an address, the device will not execute the script.

  The variable `%z` is available only for native IPv6 WAN connections and not for tunnel connections (6to4, 6in4, 6rd).

  You can inspect the outcome of the actions in the field **Result check**.

- **Result check**: You can evaluate the result of the action here to determine the number of lines to be skipped in the processing of the action table. Possible values for the actions (max. 50 characters):

  - `contains=` – This prefix checks if the result of the action contains the defined string.
  - `isequal=` – This prefix checks if the result of the action is exactly equal to the defined string.
  - `?skipiftrue=` – This suffix skips the defined number of lines in the list of actions if the result of the "contains" or "isequal" query is TRUE.
  - `?skipiffalse=` – This suffix skips the defined number of lines in the list of actions if the result of the "contains" or "isequal" query is FALSE.

  The optional variables for the actions are the same as for the actions above.

  Example: A DNS check queries the IP address of an address in the form "myserver.dyndns.org". The check `contains=%a?skipiftrue=2` allows you to skip the two following entries in the action table if the IP address found by the DNS check agrees with the current IP address (%a) of the device.

- **Owner**: Owner of the action. The exec actions are executed with the rights of the owner. If the owner does not have the necessary rights (e.g. administrators with write access) then the device cannot execute the action.

6.23 Using the serial interface in the LAN

6.23.1 Introduction

In the IT field, COM-port servers (also known as serial-port servers) are devices that transport data between TCP and serial connections. There are many applications.

- Networking of devices with a serial interface but without a network interface.
- Remote maintenance of devices that can only be configured via a serial interface.
- Virtual extension of a connection between two devices with serial interfaces over a network.

Most devices feature a serial interface that can be used to carry out configurations or to connect to a modem. In some cases the interface is used for neither of these scenarios, and yet a COM port server is required somewhere in the vicinity of the device. In such cases the device can use its serial interface as a COM-port server, thus saving the investment in an external COM-port server. Where an application is to support the configuration of these devices via their serial interfaces, then some models are able to provide additional serial interfaces with the use of CardBus or USB adapters. This enables multiple instances of the COM-port server to be operated in one device.

6.23.2 Operating modes

A COM port server has two operating modes:

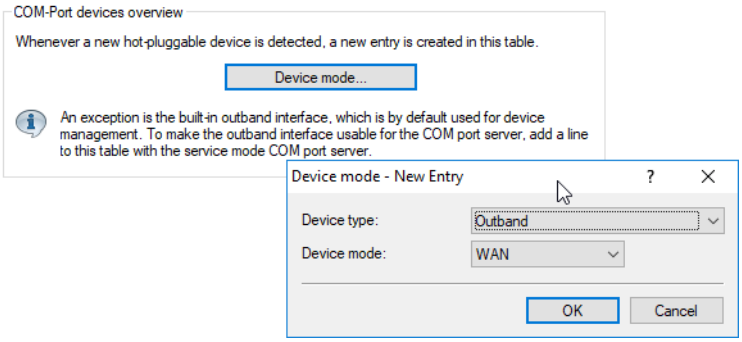
- Server mode: The COM port server waits for requests from a defined TCP port to establish TCP connections. The mode is used for remote maintenance, for example.
- Client mode: As soon as a device connected to the serial interface becomes active, the COM port client opens a TCP connection to a preset remote site. This operating mode is used, for example, for devices that have just one serial interface but requiring network access.

In both of these cases a transparent connection is set up between the serial interface and the TCP connection. Data packets received at the serial interface are forwarded to the TCP connection, and vice versa. A common server-mode application is to install a virtual COM port driver at the remote site which connects to the COM port server. Drivers of this type allow applications running at the remote site to use the TCP connection as if it were an additional COM port. The IETF RFC 2217 standard sets down the Telnet WILL/DO protocol extensions, which transmit the negotiations for the serial connection (bitrate, data and stop bits, handshake) to the COM port server. The use of this protocol is optional, so practical default values can be set in the COM port server.

6.23.3 Serial interface configuration

The serial interfaces in the device can be used for various applications, for example for the COM port server or as a WAN interface. The Devices table allows individual serial devices to be assigned to certain applications. As soon as a HotPlug-capable USB adapter is detected, a new entry for the serial interface provided by this USB adapter is created automatically in this table. This automation simplifies the configuration of the serial devices. An exception is the built-in serial interface, which is used for configuration purposes as standard. Entries can be added to the Devices table manually to use this interface for the COM port server or WAN applications.

LANconfig: **COM ports** > **Devices** > **Device mode**



Console: **Setup** > **COM-Ports** > **Devices**

> Device type

  Selects a serial interface from the list of those available in the device.

> Service

  Activation of the port in the COM port server.

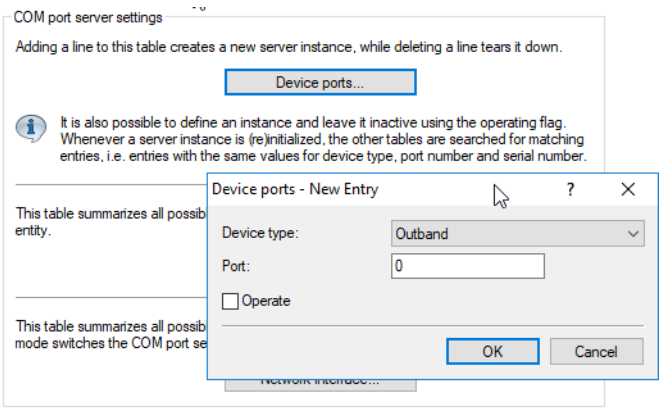
6.23.4 Configuring the COM port server

Configuring the COM port server involves three tables. What all three tables have in common is that a certain port at a serial interface is identified by the values for device type and port number. Because some serial devices such as a CardBus card have multiple ports, the port to be used must be specified explicitly. For a device with just one port, such as with the serial configuration interface, the port number is set to zero.

Operational

This table activates the COM port server at a port of a certain serial interface. Add an entry to this table to start a new instance of the COM port server. Delete an entry to stop the corresponding server instance. The switch Operating can be used to deactivate a server instance in the table.

When a server instance is created or activated, the other tables in the COM port configuration are searched for matching device type and port number values. If no suitable entry is found, the server instance takes workable default values.



LANconfig: **COM ports** > **Server** > **Device ports**

Console: **Setup** > **COM-Ports** > **COM-Port-Server** > **Devices**

> Device type

  Selects a serial interface from the list of those available in the device.

- Port number

  Some serial devices such as the CardBus have more than one serial port. Enter the port number that is to be used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

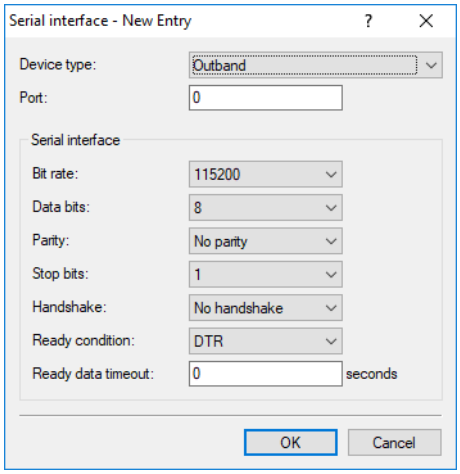
- Operating

  Activates the COM port server on the selected port of the selected interface.

COM-Port-Settings

This table contains the settings for data transmission over the serial interface.

Please note that all of these parameters can be overwritten by the remote site if the RFC2217 negotiation is active. Current settings can be viewed in the status menu.



LANconfig: **COM ports** > **Server** > **Serial interface**

Console: **Setup** > **COM-Ports** > **COM-Port-Server** > **COM-Port-Settings**

- Device type

  Selects a serial interface from the list of those available in the device.

- Port number

  Some serial devices such as the CardBus have more than one serial port. Enter the port number that is to be used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

- Bit-Rate

  Bitrate used on the COM port

- Data bits

  Number of data bits.

- Parity

  The checking method used on the COM port.

- Stop bits

  Number of stop bits.

- Handshake

  The data-flow control used on the COM port.

- Ready condition

The ready condition is an important property of any serial port. The COM port server transmits no data between the serial port and the network if the status is not "ready". Apart from that, in the client mode the act of switching between the "ready" and "not-ready" states is used to establish and terminate TCP connections. The readiness of the port can be checked in two different ways. In DTR mode (default) only the DTR handshake is monitored. The serial interface is considered to be ready for as long as the DTR line is active. In data mode, the serial interface is considered to be active for as long as it receives data. If no data is received during the timeout period, the port reverts to its "not ready" status.

- Ready-Data-Timeout

  The timeout switches the port back to the not-ready status if no data is received. This function is deactivated when timeout is set to zero. In this case the port is always ready if the data mode is selected.

Serial COM-port enhancements

Introduction

The COM-port configuration has been enhanced with a number of parameters.

Configuration

The additional parameters are located in the network settings for the COM port.

Console: **Setup** > **COM-Ports** > **COM-Port-Server** > **Network-Settings**

- **Assume binary mode**

  Some network devices connected to a serial COM port transmit data structures which may be interpreted as control characters (CR/LF – carriage return / line feed). In the default setting, the device COM ports process this information to control the data flow. "Binary mode" instructs a COM port to forward the data in binary format and ignore any control characters.

  Possible values:

  - Yes, No.

  Default:

  - No.

- **Newline conversion**

  Here you select the character to be output by the serial port when binary mode is activated.

  This setting is independent of the application communicating via the serial port. If the port is connected to another device, you can either enter CRLF here or just CR. This is because the outband interface of these devices expects a "carriage return" for the automatic determination of data-transfer speed. However, some Unix applications interpret CRLF as a prohibited double line feed character. In these cases enter either CR or LF.

  Possible values:

  - CRLF, CR, LF

  Default:

  - CRLF

  This setting is only relevant if binary mode is **deactivated** for this port.

- **TCP-Keepalive**

  The RFC 1122 sets down a method of checking the availability of TCP connections, called TCP keepalive. An inactive transmitter queries the receive status from the remote site. If the TCP session to the remote site is available, then the remote responds with its receive status. If the TCP session to the remote site is not available, then the query is repeated

for as long as it takes for the remote to respond with its receive status (after which a longer interval comes into play). As long as the basic connection functions, but the TCP session to the remote site is not available, then the remote site sends an RST packet which triggers the establishment of the TCP session by the requesting application.

Possible values:

- Inactive: TCP keepalive is not used.
- Active: TCP keepalive is active; only RST packets cause the disconnection of TCP sessions.
- Proactive: TCP keepalive is active, but the request for the receive status from the remote site is only repeated for the number of times defined under "TCP retry count". If this number of requests expires without a response with the receive status, then the TCP sessions is classified as "not available" and the application is informed. If an RST packet is received during the wait time, the TCP session will be disconnected prematurely.

Default:

- Down

The setting "active" is recommended for server applications.

- **TCP-Keepalive-Interval**

This value defines the interval between sending requests for receive status if the first request is not affirmed. The associated timeout is defined as being interval/3 (max. 75 sec.).

Possible values:

- Maximum 10 characters.

Default:

- 0

Special values:

- 0: Activates the RFC 1122 default values (interval 7200 seconds, timeout 75 seconds).

- **TCP-Retry-Timeout**

Maximum time for the retransmission timeout. This timeout defines the interval between checking TCP-connection status and reporting the result to the application using the TCP connection.

Possible values:

- 0 to 99 seconds.

Special values:

- 0 activates the RFC 1122 default value (60 seconds).

Default:

- 0

The maximum duration of the TCP-connection check is the product of TCP-retransmit-count and TCP-retry-count. The TCP application is only informed after the timeout for all attempts has expired. With the default values of 60 seconds timeout and max. 5 attempts, it can take up to 300 seconds before the application is informed about an inactive TCP connection.

- **TCP-Retry-Count**

The maximum number of attempts for checking TCP-connection status and reporting the result to the application using the TCP connection.

Possible values:

- 0 to 9

Special values:

- 0 activates the RFC 1122 default value (5 attempts).

Default:

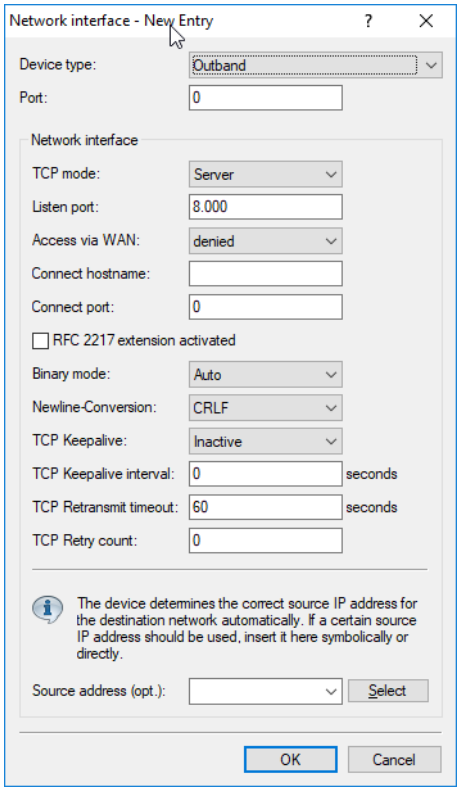
- 0

The maximum duration of the TCP-connection check is the product of TCP-retransmit-count and TCP-retry-count. The TCP application is only informed after the timeout for all attempts has expired. With the default values of 60 seconds timeout and max. 5 attempts, it can take up to 300 seconds before the application is informed about an inactive TCP connection.

Network settings

This table contains all settings that define the behavior of the COM port in the network.

Please note that all of these parameters can be overwritten by the remote site if the RFC2217 negotiation is active. Current settings can be viewed in the status menu.



LANconfig: **COM ports** > **Server** > **Network interface**

Console: **Setup** > **COM-Ports** > **COM-Port-Server** > **Network-Settings**

- Device type

  Selects a serial interface from the list of those available in the device.

- Port number

  Some serial devices such as the CardBus have more than one serial port. Enter the port number that is to be used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

- TCP-Mode

Each instance of the COM port server in server mode monitors the specified listen port for incoming TCP connections. Just one active connection is permitted per instance. All other connection requests are refused. In client mode, the instance attempts to establish a TCP connection via a defined port to the specified remote site, as soon as the port is ready. The TCP connection is closed again as soon as the port becomes unavailable. In both cases a device closes any open connections when the device is restarted.

- Listen port

  The TCP port where the COM port in TCP server mode expects incoming connections.

- Connect-Hostname

  The COM port in TCP client mode establishes a connection to this host as soon as the port is in the "Ready" state.

- Connect port

  The COM port in TCP client mode uses this TCP port to establish a connection as soon as the port is in the "Ready" state.

- Loopback address

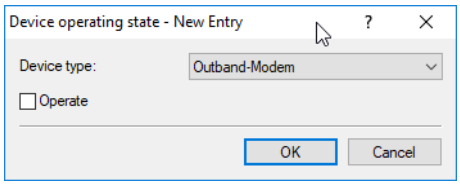
  The COM port can be reached at this address. This is its own IP address that is taken as the source address when establishing connections. This is used to define the IP route to be used for the connection.

- RFC2217-Extensions

  The RFC2217 extensions can be activated for both TCP modes. With these extensions activated, the device uses the IAC DO COM-PORT-OPTION sequence to signal that it will accept Telnet control sequences. The COM port subsequently works with the corresponding options; the configured default values are overwritten. The port also attempts to negotiate the local echo and line mode for Telnet. Using the RFC2217 extensions with incompatible remote sites is not critical. Unexpected characters may be displayed at the remote site. A side effect of using the FRC2217 extensions may be that the port regularly carries out an alive check as Telnet NOPs are transmitted to the remote site.

6.23.5 WAN device configuration

The table with WAN devices is a status table only. All Hotplug devices (connected via USB or CardBus) are automatically entered into this table.



LANconfig: **COM Ports** > **Devices** > **Device operating state**

Console: **Setup** > **COM-Ports** > **WAN** > **Devices**

- Device type

  List of serial interfaces available in the device.

- Active

  Status of connected device:

6.23.6 Serial connection status information

Various statistics and status values are recorded for every instance of the COM-port server. The serial port using the instance is indicated in the first two columns of the table—the values for device type and port number as entered during the configuration are displayed here.

Network status

Console: **Status** > **COM-Ports** > **COM-Port-Server** > **Network-Status**

This table contains information on current and recent TCP connections.

- Device type

  List of serial interfaces available in the device.

- Port number

  The port number used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

- Connection status

  Possible values:

  - Connected: An active connection exists (server or client mode).
  - Listening: This instance is working in server mode; no TCP connection is currently active.
  - Non-listening: In server mode, the specified TCP port could not be reserved for inbound connections, e.g. because it is already occupied by another application.
  - Blank: This instance is working in client mode and the port is not ready. No TCP connection will be established now.
  - Transfer: The port has reached the "ready" state; a connection is being established.

- Last error

  In client mode this displays the reason for the last connection error. In server mode this value has no significance.

- Remote address

  Displays the IP address of the remote site for a successful TCP connection.

- Local port

  Displays the local TCP port used for a successful TCP connection.

- Remote port

  Displays the remote TCP port used for a successful TCP connection.

COM-port settings

This table displays the serial port status and the settings currently used by this port.

- Device type

  List of serial interfaces available in the device.

- Port number

  The port number used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

- Port status

  Possible values:

  - Not available: The serial port is currently not available to the COM port server, for example because the USB or CardBus adapter has been removed or because it is being used by other functions in the device.
  - Not ready: The serial port is available to the COM port server but is currently not ready for data transfer, for example because the DTR line is inactive. In the client state, no attempt is made to establish a connection as long as the port is in this state.
  - Ready: The serial port is available and ready for data transfer. In the client state, an attempt is made to establish a TCP connection as soon as the port is in this state.

Please note that the port status is relevant in server mode, too. All TCP connection requests are accepted, although the COM port instance will only transfer data between the serial port and the network when the serial port has reached the "ready" state. The following columns display the settings that are currently in use on the serial port. These are either the values as configured or as set by the negotiations via the RFC2217 extensions.

- Bit-Rate

  Bitrate used on the COM port

- Data bits

  Number of data bits.

- Parity

  The checking method used on the COM port.

- Stop bits

  Number of stop bits.

- Handshake

  The data-flow control used on the COM port.

Byte counters

This table displays the inbound and outbound data packets at the serial port and on the network side.

These values are not reset when the connection is opened or closed.

- Device type

  List of serial interfaces available in the device.

- Port number

  The port number used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

- Serial-Tx

  Number of bytes sent over the serial interface.

- Serial-Rx

  Number of bytes received over the serial interface.

- Network Tx

  Number of bytes sent to the network.

- Network Rx

  Number of bytes received from the network.

Port errors

This table displays the serial port errors. These errors may indicate a faulty cable or errors in the configuration.

- Device type

  List of serial interfaces available in the device.

- Port number

  The port number used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

- Parity errors

Number of errors due to a checksum mismatch.

- Framing errors

  Number of erroneous data packets.

Connections

This table displays successful and failed TCP connections in both server mode and client mode.

- Device type

  List of serial interfaces available in the device.

- Port number

  The port number used for the COM port server on the serial interface.

- Server granted

  Number of connections granted by the COM port server.

- Server rejected

  Number of connections rejected by the COM port server.

- Client succeeded

  Number of connections successfully established by the COM port client.

- Client DNS error

  Number of connections that the COM port client could not establish due to DNS errors.

- Client TCP error

  Number of connections that the COM port client could not establish due to TCP errors.

- Client remote disconnects

  Number of connections where the COM port was disconnected from the remote site.

Delete values

This action deletes all values in the status tables.

6.23.7 COM-port adapters

Devices with serial interfaces can be connected to a device in the following ways:

Adapters	Devices
COM-port adapters	All those with a serial configuration interface
USB serial adapter	All those with a USB interface
CardBus serial adapter	All those with a CardBus slot
LANCOM modem adapter kit	All those with a serial configuration interface

The COM port adapter must be a two-way D-sub plug with the following PIN assignment:

Pin	Signal	Signal	Pin
2	RxD	TxD	3
3	TxD	RxD	2
4	DTR	DSR	6
5	GND	GND	5

Pin	Signal	Signal	Pin
6	DSR	DTR	4
7	RTS	CTS	8
8	CTS	RTS	7

6.24 Forwarding data packets from LAN via X.25 (ISDN)

The TCP-X.25 bridge integrated in LCOS allows you to forward (and receive) data from a TCP/IP network via ISDN to an X.25 network. This gives you the option of setting up a backup connection in an X.25 network in case of disruption of the WAN connection.

The following steps show you how you configure the TCP-X.25 bridge on your device for these scenarios. This example is based on modern debit/credit card terminals which now commonly use only TCP/IP to communicate with a centralized server or network and in which at least two different IP addresses can be configured. On your terminal, enter your destination network or the destination server in the usual manner as the primary IP address and port. As the second IP address and port, enter the LANCOM where the terminal sends its data packets in the case that the primary destination is not available.

The LANCOM uses the settings stored in LCOS to check whether the respective data should be forwarded. If so, the device establishes a connection to the configured destination address via the ISDN interface and transparently forwards the TCP/IP data packets via X.25. The respective remote site must also be available via ISDN and support X.25.

The number of logical connections via the TCP-X.25 bridge is currently limited to one. If the device receives another connection request while it already has an established connection, it will be ignored. In this case, the respective terminal must repeat its TCP connection requests until the other X.25 connection is disconnected.

1. Go to the console or open the table **WAN** > **X.25-Bridge** > **Outgoing calls** in the setup menu in WEBconfig.
2. Add a new data record and add the following basic information to the default settings. Please find further information about the parameters in the CLI guide or Menu Reference Guide.

   - **Name**
   - **Terminal-Port**
   - **Local-Port**
   - **Remote-ISDN**
   - **Local-ISDN**
   - **X.25-Remote**
   - **X.25-Local**

   The **Terminal IP** and **Loopback address** are optional, but highly recommended for configurations with multiple local networks.

   For connections to some providers (e.g., **TeleCash**), it is also necessary to enter the **Protocol ID** and the **User data**.

That's it! This concludes the basic configuration of the TCP-X.25 bridge.

6.25 IGMP snooping

6.25.1 Introduction

All devices with wireless LAN interfaces feature a "LAN bridge", a software entity for transferring data between the Ethernet ports and the WLAN interface(s). In many ways the LAN bridge works like a switch. The core task of a switch, as opposed to a hub, is to forward packets precisely to the port which the relevant user is connected to. Based on the incoming data packets, the switch automatically creates a table listing the senders' MAC addresses and their ports.

If the table contains the destination address for an incoming packet, the switch forwards the packet to the corresponding port. If the destination address is not in the table, the switch forwards the packet to all ports. This means that a switch can only deliver a packet precisely if the destination address appeared earlier in a packet arriving at a certain port from the sender's address. However, broadcast or multicast packets can never be entered as a sender address into a packet, and so these packets end up being "flooded" to all ports.

This may be the correct action for broadcasts which are supposed to reach all available receivers, but this may not be the case for multicasts. Multicasts are generally aimed at a certain group of receivers within a network, but not all of them:

- For example, video streams are frequently transmitted as multicasts, but not all of the network stations are intended to receive that stream.
- Various applications in the medical field rely on multicasts to send data to certain terminal devices, but this data should not be available to all stations.

A LAN bridge in the device will have ports to which no multicast recipients are connected. This "unnecessary" transmission of multicasts to ports without any receivers is not an error, but it can compromise overall performance.

- Many stations are unable to reject the unwanted multicasts in their hardware. Instead, the packets are forwarded to higher protocol layers, which leads to an increase in CPU load.
- WLANs are particularly susceptible to bandwidth restrictions due to multicasts if none of the associated WLAN clients want to receive the multicast.

The TCP/IP protocol suite defines a protocol called IGMP that allows network stations to register their desire to receive certain IP multicasts to their router. Stations carry out a multicast registration with their router to subscribe to certain multicast groups which deliver the relevant packets. IGMP makes use of Join messages and Leave messages to register and de-register respectively.

Information about which multicast groups a station can or should join are available from other protocols than IGMP.

As a layer-3 protocol, IGMP only performs multicast guiding/routing for whole IP subnets. However, network devices such as bridges, switches or WLAN access points only forward the packets on layer 2, meaning that IGMP itself does not help in any way to further guide multicast traffic through this substructure. For this reason, the bridges use the multicast registrations between stations and routers to receive additional information for targeting the distribution of multicasts. IP multicasts only need to be forwarded to an interface where a router is located that is capable of multicast routing and therefore of forwarding multicasts to other IP subnets. This method is called IGMP snooping. The bridges, which normally use the MAC on layer 2 for packet forwarding, thus additionally use the layer 3 information in the IP multicast packets.

For more detailed description of the functions of IGMP snooping in LCOS, we have to differentiate between two important terms:

- A port is "member" of a multicast group if at least one station connected to it wishes to receive the packets for a certain multicast address. Multicast registration can be dynamic via IGMP snooping or configured manually.
- A port is a "router port" if it is connected to a router that is capable of multicast routing and therefore of forwarding multicasts to other IP subnets.

- A multicast group is "unregistered" if none of the interfaces attached to the bridge is a member of this multicast group.

6.25.2 IGMP snooping operation

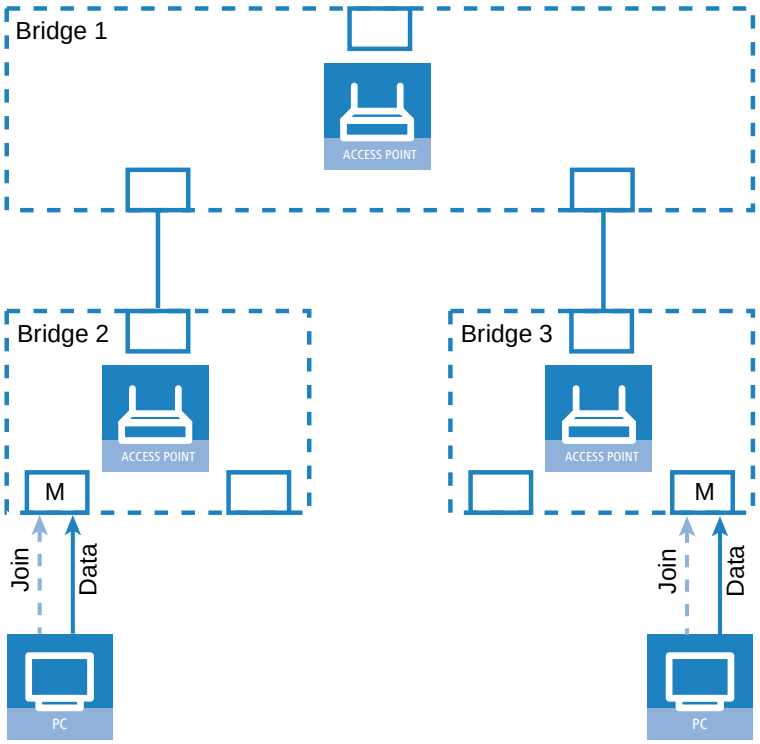
Whenever a packet is received, the bridge initially determines whether it is a unicast, broadcast, or multicast packet. For broadcast and unicast packets, the bridge operates in the usual way, i.e. it floods to all ports or sends to a specific port based on the MAC table entry for the receiver.

Two types of IP multicast packet are differentiated (whereby packets which are truncated or contain an invalid checksum are dropped entirely):

- IGMP messages are handled in different ways depending on their content:
  - A Join message results in the incoming port becoming member of the respective multicast group. This message is forwarded to router ports only.
  - Similarly, a Leave message results in the incoming port being removed from the multicast group's member list. This message is also forwarded to router ports only.
  - An incoming IGMP query results in the port being marked as a router port. These messages are flooded to all interfaces.
  - All other messages are flooded to all interfaces—no ports experience a change of state.
- If an IP multicast packet does not contain an IGMP message, the IP destination address is examined. Packets for the destination address "224.0.0.x" are flooded to all ports because this is a "reserved" range. For all other packets the destination address is looked up in the IGMP membership table:
  - If the address is found, the packet is forwarded according to the membership stored in the table.
  - If the address is not found, the packet may either be dropped, flooded to all ports, or forwarded exclusively to all router ports (depending on the configuration).

6.25.3 IGMP snooping through multiple bridges

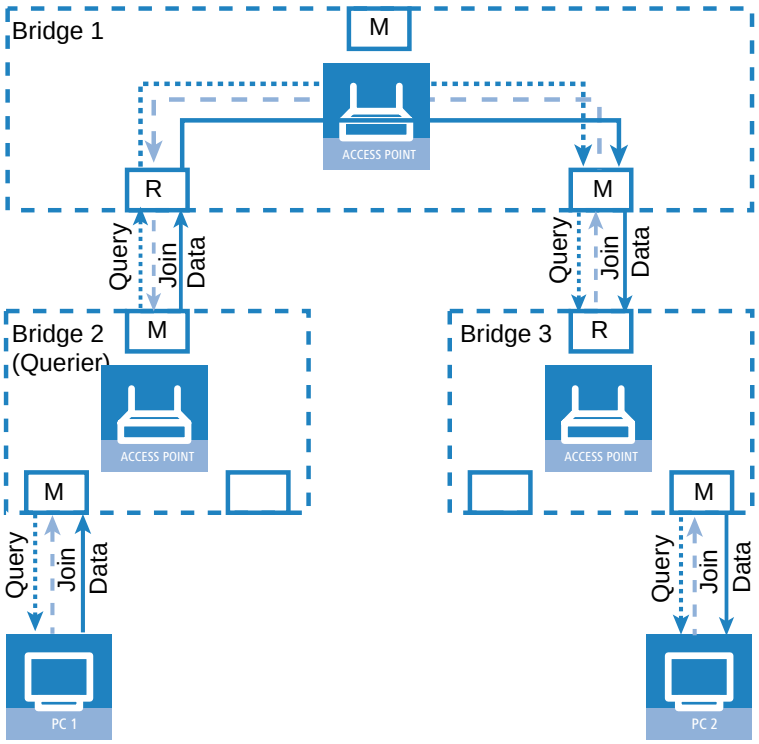
As described, IGMP snooping only forwards incoming Join or Leave messages via router ports. In a structure with multiple bridges, initially none of the ports are router ports or members of a multicast group. If a station connected to the bridge registers with a multicast group, the port automatically becomes a member of this group. However, none of the ports are router ports at this phase, so the Join messages are not forwarded anywhere. Other bridges thus receive no information about the port's membership with the multicast group.



Consequently, bridges must have router ports in order for membership information to be propagated. Since the ports of a bridge only become router ports in the case of IGMP queries, one of the multicast-capable routers in the network must take over the task of distributing the necessary IGMP queries throughout the network. This router is referred to as the IGMP querier. If the network does not contain a multicast router, the access points are capable of simulating a querier. To avoid parallel queries arriving from various queriers, a querier will deactivate itself if it discovers another querier with a lower IP number. The distribution of IGMP information by the querier can be explained with the following example:

1. The querier (Bridge 2 in this example) regularly sends out IGMP queries on all ports of bridge 2 (dotted lines). The next bridge (Bridge 1) receives the query on a port which is then marked as a router port (R). PC 1 responds to this query with a Join message for all multicast groups (light dashed lines) that it wishes to join. The port connecting PC 1 to Bridge 2 then becomes a member of the multicasting group(s).
2. In addition to this, Bridge 1 sends the queries on all other ports to the bridges and stations lower down in the structure. In Bridge 3 the port receiving the query becomes a router port (R).
3. The station (PC2) connected to Bridge 3 responds to this query with a Join message for all registered multicast groups. The port connecting PC 2 to Bridge 3 then becomes a member of the multicasting group(s).
4. Bridge 3 forwards this Join message to Bridge 1 over the router port. The receiving port on Bridge 1 thus also takes on membership of the multicast groups that PC 2 has registered for.

5. In the final step, Bridge1 forwards the Join message from PC 2 via the router port to Bridge 2, where the receiving port also takes on membership of PC 2's multicast groups.

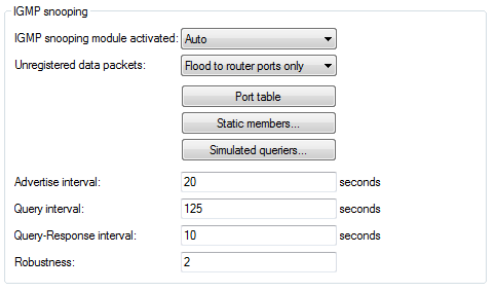


If PC 1 now transmits a multicast for which PC 2 has registered, all of the bridges (2, 1 and then 3) forward the packets to PC 2 via the member port.

6.25.4 Configuration

General settings

IGMP snooping is configured in LANconfig under **Interfaces** > **IGMP snooping**.



IGMP snooping module activated

Activates or deactivates IGMP snooping in the device and all of the defined querier instances. Without IGMP snooping the bridge functions like a simple switch and forwards all multicasts to all ports.

Possible values:

- On
- Off
- Automatic

Default:

- Automatic

In the setting **automatic** the bridge enables IGMP snooping only if queriers are present in the network.

If this function is deactivated, the bridge sends all IP multicast packets on all ports. With a change of the operating mode, the bridge completely resets the IGMP snooping function, i.e. it deletes all dynamically learned values (memberships, router-port properties).

Unregistered data packets

This setting defines the handling of multicast data packets with a destination address outside the `224.0.0.x` range and for which neither static memberships were defined nor were dynamic memberships learned.

Possible values:

- Flood to router ports only: Sends these packets to all router ports.
- Flood to all ports: Sends these packets to all ports.
- Discard: Discards these packets.

Default:

- Router-Ports-only

Advertise interval

The interval in seconds in which devices send packets advertising themselves as multicast routers. This information makes it quicker for other IGMP-snooping devices to find which of their ports are to operate as router ports. When activating its ports, a switch (for example) can query for multicast routers, and the router can respond to this query with an advertisement of this type. Under some circumstances this method can be much quicker than the alternative IGMP queries.

Possible values:

- 4 to 180 seconds

Default:

- 20

Request interval

Interval in seconds in which a multicast-capable router (or a simulated querier) sends IGMP queries to the multicast address `224.0.0.1`, so prompting the stations to transmit return messages about multicast group memberships. These regular queries influence the time in which memberships "age", expire, and are deleted.

- After the startup phase, the querier sends IGMP queries in this interval.
- A querier returns to the querier status after a time equal to "Robustness*Query-Interval+(Query-Response-Interval/2)".
- A port loses its router-port status after a time equal to "Robustness*Query-Interval+(Query-Response-Interval/2)".

Possible values:

- 10-figure number greater than 0.

Default:

- 125

The query interval must be greater than the query response interval.

Query-Response-Interval

Interval in seconds influencing the timing between IGMP queries and router-port aging and/or memberships.

Interval in seconds in which a multicast-capable router (or a simulated querier) expects to receive responses to its IGMP queries. These regular queries influence the time in which memberships "age", expire, and are then deleted.

Possible values:

- 10-figure number greater than 0.

Default:

- 10

The query response interval must be less than the query interval.

Robustness

This value defined the robustness of the IGMP protocol. This option tolerates packet losses of IGMP queries with respect to Join messages.

Possible values:

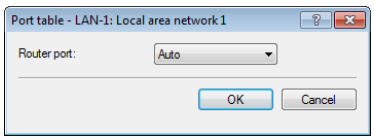
- 10-figure number greater than 0.

Default:

- 2

Port settings

This table is used to define the port-related settings for IGMP snooping.



Port

The port for which the settings apply.

Possible values:

- Selects a port from the list of those available in the device.

Default:

- N/A

Router port

This option defines the port's behavior.

Possible values:

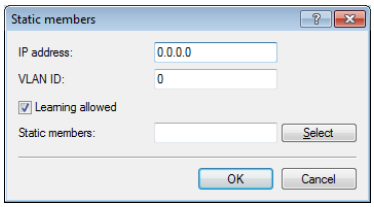
- Yes: This port will always work as a router port, irrespective of IGMP queries or router messages that the bridge receives at this port.
- No: This port will never work as a router port, irrespective of IGMP queries or router messages that the bridge receives at this port.
- Automatic: This port will work as a router port if IGMP queries or router messages are received. The port loses this status if the bridge receives no packets at this port for the duration of "Robustness*Query-Interval+(Query-Response-Interval/2)".

Default:

- Automatic

Static members

This table enables members to be defined manually, for example if they cannot or should not be learned automatically.



IP address

The IP address of the manually defined multicast group.

Possible values:

- Valid IP multicast address.

Default:

- 0.0.0.0

VLAN ID

The VLAN ID used by the bridge to apply this static membership. For each IP multicast address you can make multiple entries with different VLAN IDs.

Possible values:

- 0 to 4096.

Default:

- 0

Special values:

- If "0" is selected as VLAN, the IGMP queries are sent without a VLAN tag. For this reason, this value only makes sense when VLAN is deactivated in general.

Allow learning

This option activates the automatic learning of memberships in this multicast group. If automatic learning is deactivated, packets can only be sent via the ports which have been manually defined for the multicast group.

Possible values:

- Activated
- Disabled

Default:

- Activated

Static members

The bridge always delivers the packets with the corresponding IP multicast address to these ports, irrespective of any Join messages received.

Possible values:

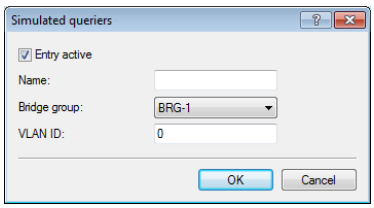
- Comma-separated list of the desired ports, max. 215 alphanumerical characters.

Default:

- Blank

Simulated queriers

This table contains all of the simulated queriers defined in the device. These units are employed if IGMP snooping functions are required but there is no multicast router in the network. The querier can be restricted to certain bridge groups or VLANs if you define multiple independent queriers which support the corresponding VLAN IDs.



Operating

Activates or deactivates the querier instance

Possible values:

- Activated

- Deactivated

Default:

- Activated

Name

Name of the querier instance

Possible values:

- 8 alphanumerical characters.

Default:

- Blank

Bridge group

Limits the querier instance to a certain bridge group.

Possible values:

- Select from the list of available bridge groups.
- None

Default:

- BRG-1

Special values:

- If the bridge group is set to "none", the bridge outputs the IGMP queries to all bridge groups.

VLAN ID

Limits the querier instance to a certain VLAN.

Possible values:

- 0 to 4096

Default:

- 0

Special values:

- If "0" is selected as the VLAN-ID, the bridge outputs IGMP queries without a VLAN tag. For this reason, this value only makes sense when VLAN is deactivated in general.

6.25.5 IGMP status

General statistics

Status messages for IGMP snooping are to be found under the following paths:

Console: **Status** > **LAN-Bridge** > **IGMP-Snooping**

- Operating

  Indicates whether IGMP snooping is activated or deactivated.

- IPv4 packets

  Shows the number of IPv4 multicast packets received at all ports, whether they were IGMP packets or not.

- Data packets

Shows the number of intact IPv4 multicast packets received at all ports and which were not IGMP packets.

- Control packets

  Shows the number of intact IGMP packets received at all ports.

- Bad packets

  Shows the number of damaged data or IGMP packets received at all ports. Possible causes for damage to packets may be IP checksum errors or truncated packets.

  For performance reasons, IP checksums are evaluated for IGMP packets only and not for the data portion of multicast packets. This is why packets with a faulty checksum in the TCP/UDP or IP header are not detected. These packets are counted as data packets.

- Delete values

  This action deletes all statistical entries.

Port status

This table shows all port-related statistics.

Console: **Status** > **LAN-Bridge** > **IGMP-Snooping** > **Port-Status**

- Router port

  Shows whether the port is currently in use as a router port or not, irrespective of whether this status was configured statically or learned dynamically.

- IPv4 packets

  Shows the number of IPv4 multicast packets received at this port, whether they were IGMP packets or not.

- Data packets

  Shows the number of intact IPv4 multicast packets received at this port and which were not IGMP packets.

- Control packets

  Shows the number of intact IGMP packets received at this port.

- Bad packets

  Shows the number of damaged data or IGMP packets received at this port. Possible causes for damage to packets may be IP checksum errors or truncated packets.

  For performance reasons, IP checksums are evaluated for IGMP packets only and not for the data portion of multicast packets. This is why packets with a faulty checksum in the TCP/UDP or IP header are not detected. These packets are counted as data packets.

Groups

This table displays all the multicast group memberships known to the device, irrespective of whether they were configured statically or learned dynamically. If both static and dynamic memberships exist for a multicast group, these are shown in separate entries.

Console: **Status** > **LAN-Bridge** > **IGMP-Snooping** > **Groups**

- Address

  Shows the group's IP multicast address.

- VLAN-ID

  Shows the VLAN ID that this entry applies to.

- Allow-Learning

  Shows whether new memberships for this group can be learned dynamically or not.

- Static members

  Shows the list of statically defined members for this group.

- Dynamic members

  Shows the list of dynamically learned members for this group.

Simulated queriers

This table shows the status of all defined and active IGMP querier instances.

- Name

  Shows the name of the multicast group.

- Bridge group

  Shows the bridge group that this entry applies to.

- VLAN-ID

  Shows the VLAN that this entry applies to.

- Status

  Shows the current status of the entry.

  - Initial: The querier instance has just started and is sending IGMP queries in short intervals (four-times faster than the query interval defined).
  - Querier: The querier instance considers itself to be the active querier and is sending IGMP queries in the defined query interval.
  - Non-querier: Another querier instance with a lower IP address has been detected, and the instance listed here is not sending any IGMP queries.

6.26 Configuring WWAN access

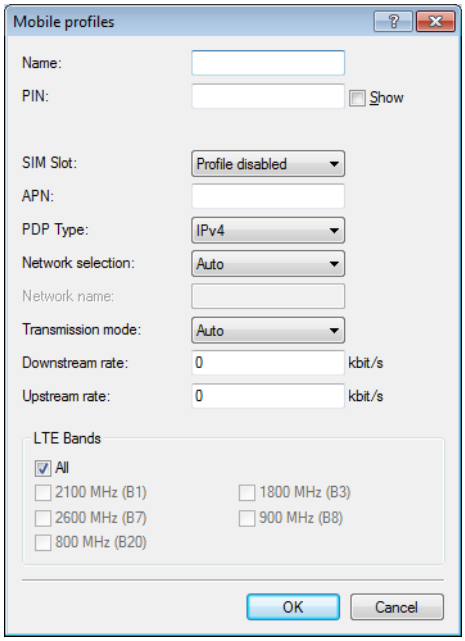
The following tutorial shows how you manually configure devices with an internal cellular modem to use access via mobile networks (WWAN). First you either create a mobile profile for your provider or edit an existing profile, and then you assign this profile to the WAN interface of the device.

Alternatively, a simpler and faster way of configuration is available with a Setup Wizard (**Set up Internet access**).

This also provides the option for you to specify the generation descriptions for the cellular standards, and have them displayed.

1. In LANconfig, open the configuration dialog for your device and navigate to the section **Interfaces** > **WAN**.
2. Select an existing profile to be edited or add a new profile for your provider in the **Mobile profiles** table.

In the interests of completeness this tutorial explains the creation of a new profile.



3. Under **Name** type in a unique label for the mobile profile.
4. Under **PIN** enter the 4-digit PIN of the mobile phone SIM card. The device needs this information to operate the mobile modem.

   The SIM card logs every failed attempt with an incorrect PIN. The number of failed attempts remains stored even when the device is temporarily disconnected from the mains. After 3 failed attempts, the SIM card is locked from further access attempts. If this occurs, you usually need the 8-digit PUK or SuperPIN to unlock it.

5. If your device accommodates several SIM cards, use **SIM slot** to select the SIM card that you want to associate with this profile.

   The item **Profile disabled** switches this mobile profile off. This option is useful if you wish to create a profile template only and complete the mobile setup at a later time.

   Only enabled profiles are visible for selection in LANmonitor.

6. Under **APN**, enter the name of the access server for the data services of your mobile provider.
   The APN (access point name) is specific to each mobile phone provider. You will usually find this information in the documentation provided with your mobile phone contract.
7. Under **PDP type** you specify the type of the PDP context for the mobile profile.
   The PDP context describes the support of the address spaces which the backbone of the corresponding cellular network provider offers for connections from the cellular network to the Internet. This can be either IPv4 or IPv6 alone, or can include support for both address spaces (dual stack). Clients that want to use the corresponding cellular network provider must support at least one of the specified address spaces.
8. Set the preferred **Network selection** mode:

   Automatic

   The mobile modem automatically connects to one of the available and permitted mobile phone networks.

   Manual

   The mobile modem connects to the specified mobile phone network only.

Manual mobile network selection is especially suitable when the device is in stationary operation and you wish to prevent it from connecting to another undesirable or more expensive mobile phone network.

9. If you have selected manual network selection, enter the exact name of your desired network under **Network name**.
10. Specify the preferred transfer mode within the mobile network under **Transmission mode**:

Automatic

Automatic selection of transmission mode

LTE(4G)+UMTS(3G)

Combined LTE-UMTS operation

LTE(4G)+GPRS(2G)

Combined LTE-GPRS operation

LTE(4G)

LTE operation only

UMTS(3G)+GPRS(2G)

Combined UMTS-GPRS operation

UMTS(3G)

UMTS operation only

GPRS(2G)

GPRS operation only

11. Under **Downstream rate** and **Upstream rate** you specify the transfer rates for the mobile phone connection. This is important for the QoS (quality-of-service) feature and the functioning of the firewall.
If the value is set to `0`, the mobile interface in the corresponding direction is considered to be unlimited and the QoS mechanisms will not take effect.
12. If unfavorable environmental conditions cause the router to constantly switch between two frequency bands, instabilities in the transmission may be the result. The selection under **LTE bands** allows you to control which frequency bands are used by the mobile modem.

All

All frequency bands are enabled.

2100 MHz (B1)

2.1GHz band is enabled.

1800 MHz (B3)

1.8GHz band is enabled.

2600 MHz (B7)

2.6GHz band is enabled.

900 MHz (B8)

900MHz band is enabled.

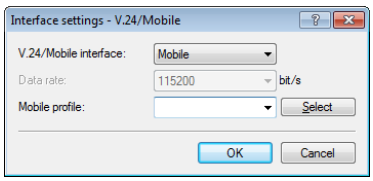
800 MHz (B20)

800MHz band is enabled.

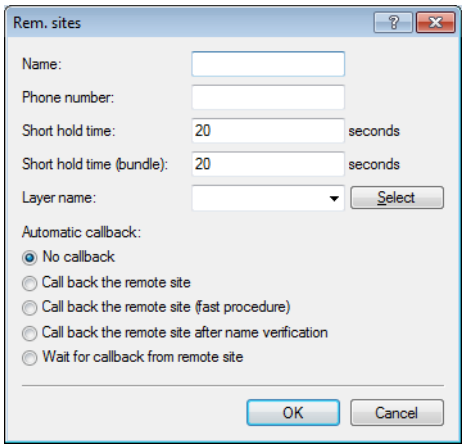
This option applies only to the LTE standard frequency bands. All bands can be used for UMTS and GPRS.

13. Click **OK** to save the settings.

14. In the dialog **Interfaces** > **WAN**, click **Interface settings** and select **V.24/Mobile**.
15. Set the **V.24/Mobile interface** to **Mobile**.
16. Under **Mobile profiles**, select the profile you created earlier for your mobile phone provider.



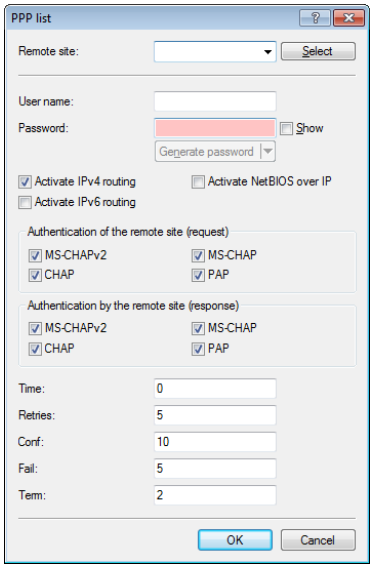
17. Click **OK** to save the settings.
18. In the view **Communication** > **Remote sites**, click **Rem. (Mobile /...)** and add a new profile.



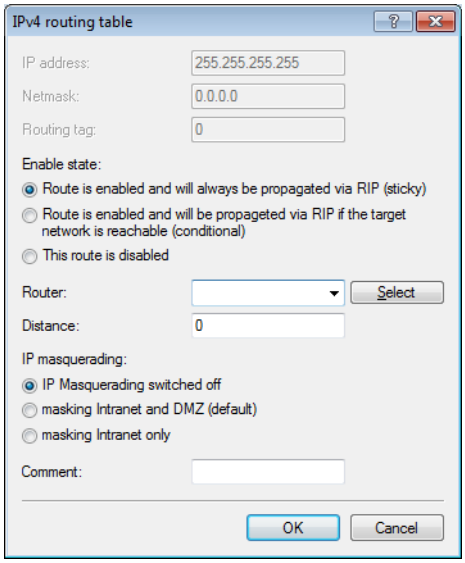
19. Enter a unique name for the profile under **Name**, e.g. `WWAN`.
20. Under **Phone number**, enter the dial-in number of your mobile phone provider. If your provider has not given you a dial-in phone number, enter `*99#`.
21. Under **Short hold time**, enter the time after which the device disconnects from the remote site if no packets are transmitted

    Enter a value in seconds to find a balance between the costs arising from idle time those of connection establishment, for example `300`. A value of `0` causes the device to stay connected until it is broken and terminated. With a value of `9999` the device automatically reconnects every time.
22. For **Layer name** select the presetting `UMTS`.
23. Click **OK** to save the settings.

24. In the view **Communication** > **Protocols**, open the **PPP list** and add a new remote site.



25. Under **Remote site**, select the profile that you created previously, e.g. `WWAN`.
26. Deselect any settings under **Authentication of the remote site (request)**.
27. Click **OK** to save the settings.
28. In the view **IP Router** > **Routing**, click **IPv4 routing table** and add the **Default route** (`255.255.255.255`).



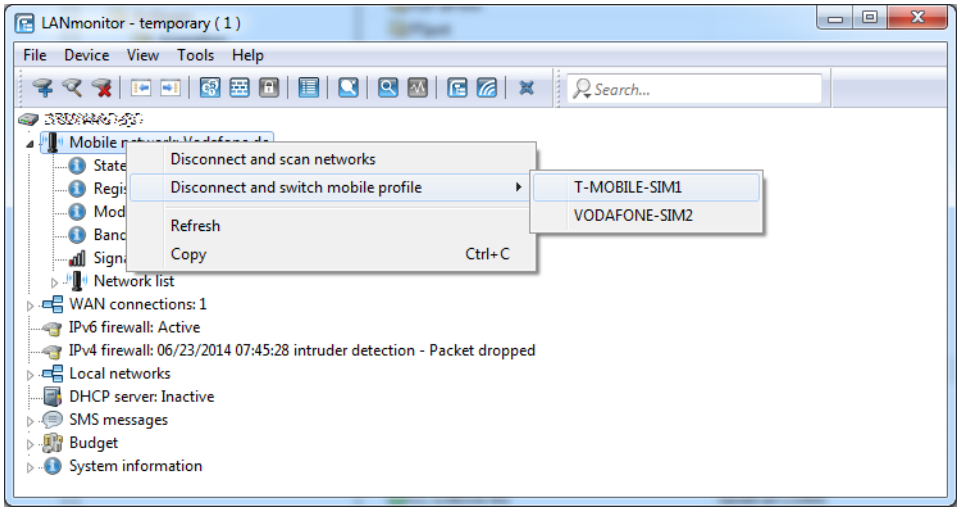
29. Under **Router**, select the profile created earlier under **Rem. sites (Mobile /...)**.
30. Set the **IP masquerading** to **Masking intranet and DMZ (default)**.
31. Click **OK** to save the settings.
32. Write the changes back to the device.

This concludes the configuration of the WWLAN access.

6.27 Switching between mobile profiles or SIM cards

If you have created different mobile profiles for a SIM card or one mobile profile for several SIM cards, LANmonitor allows you to toggle between these profiles or SIM cards. The following steps show you how to select an alternate profile or an alternate SIM card.

1. Select your device in LANmonitor.
2. On the entry **Mobile network**, open the context menu and select the option **Disconnect and switch mobile profile**.



3. Select the mobile profile that you want to switch to.

The device then disconnects from the mobile network and reconnects using the selected mobile profile.

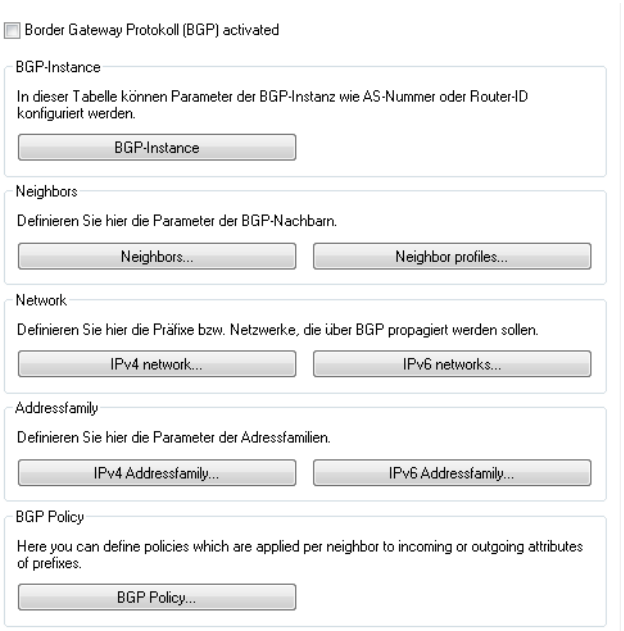
6.28 BGPv4

6.28.1 Border Gateway Protocol version 4 (BGPv4)

The network of a network provider is also referred to as an “autonomous system” (AS). The Border Gateway Protocol version 4 (BGPv4) is used to exchange routing information between autonomous systems (eBGP: external BGP) and to re-distribute this information to the routers of your own AS (iBGP: internal BGP).

Configuring BGPv4 with LANconfig

In order to configure BGPv4 with LANconfig, navigate to the **Routing protocols** > **BGP** menu.



Enabling BGP

To activate the BGP function, set a check mark for **Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) active**.

BGP instance

LCOS associates the BGP configuration of the BGP router with what is known as a **BGP instance**. This BGP instance contains the AS number and the router ID, among other things.

Currently LCOS supports only one BGP instance at a time.

Neighbors

The term **Neighbors** refers to the BGP gateways of other autonomous systems. These autonomous systems do not have to be immediate neighbors, although they must be known to at least one neighboring BGP gateway.

Neighbor profiles offer a convenient way to configure the BGP neighbors.

Networks

The BGP router propagates its managed networks to the BGP neighbors.

Address families

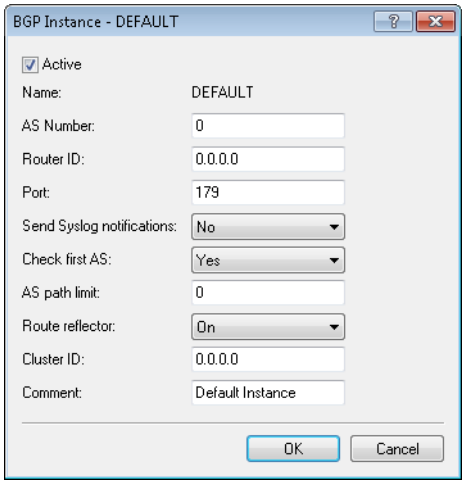
The BGP router organizes the BGP neighbors into address families as a convenient way to manage the communications with these neighbors.

BGP policy

Filter policies allow the BGP router to decide how to handle the inbound and outbound BGP messages.

BGP instance

You configure the BGP instance of the device under **BGP instance**.



Active

Activates or deactivates this BGP instance

This setting only takes effect if BGP is activated on the device.

Name

Contains the name of the BGP instance.

Since the device only supports one BGP instance at a time, this table contains one entry only, “DEFAULT”.

AS number

The AS number assigned to this BGP instance.

It is only possible to connect to a BGP router that does not support 32-bit AS numbers if you enter a 16-bit AS number here (less than 65536).

Router ID

The router ID (IPv4 address) of this particular BGP instance.

The router ID must be unique among the neighbors of a BGP router.

When using IPv6 connections, you enter a fictional IPv4 address or any IPv4 address for the router here.

Port

Contains the port used by the BGP instance to listen to inbound connections from neighbors.

Send SYSLOG message

The device is able to store events, such as disconnects of neighbors associated with this BGP instance, to the SYSLOG. Use this option to enable or disable this feature.

Check-First-AS

Checks whether the first AS number in the AS path of received Update messages corresponds to the AS number of the neighbor. If this is not the case, this route is discarded.

This check must be disabled if the router is connected with a BGP route server which, although it distributes routes, is not itself in the routing path and/or inserts its own AS into the AS path.

AS-Path-Limit

Maximum number of permitted AS numbers in the AS path of received Update messages. If the limit is exceeded, the device discards the route. An AS-Path-Limit provides protection against messages from incorrectly configured routers that advertise AS paths that are too long.

Route-Reflector

This specifies whether the router assumes the function of a route reflector.

When operating iBGP, all of the BGP routers usually need to be fully meshed, i.e. each BGP router must have established a BGP connection to every other BGP router. A route reflector negates this requirement and enables iBGP routers to form, for example, a star-shaped topology. A route reflector forwards the iBGP routes to all of the route-reflector clients.

A route reflector is able to serve route-reflector clients as well as normal BGP clients. In both cases no special configuration of the client is necessary.

Cluster-ID

Cluster-ID of the router in case it is configured as a route reflector. This is entered as an IPv4 address.

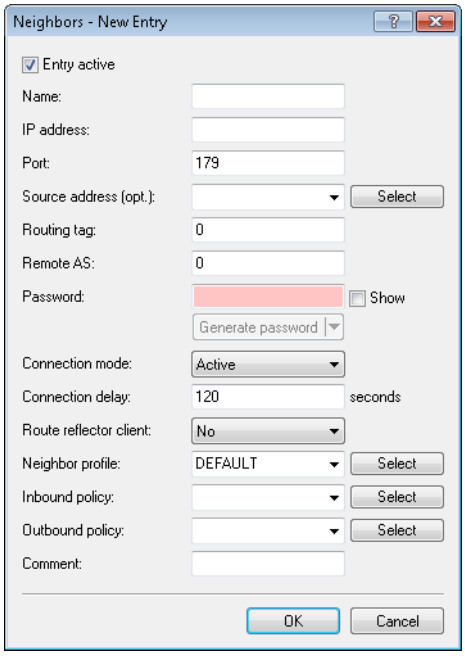
Comment

Comment about this BGP instance.

Neighbors

BGP neighbors

You configure the BGP neighbors of the device under **Neighbors**.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates the entry for this BGP neighbor.

The activation of the BGP neighbor triggers the establishment of a BGP connection, if applicable.

It is not possible to connect to disabled BGP neighbors.

Name

Contains the name of the BGP neighbor.

IP address

Specifies this BGP neighbor's IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) as used by the device to establish a BGP connection in the “active” or “delayed” connection mode.

Alternatively, you have the option to configure an entire IPv4 subnet, e.g. 192.168.1.0/24. In this case, the router accepts BGP connections from other routers on the subnet 192.168.1.0 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0. For this it is necessary to define the connection mode as "Passive".

IPv6 subnets are not supported.

This entry must match the IP address (e.g. physical interface address, loopback address) reported by this neighbor in an incoming connection.

Port

Shows the port on which the BGP neighbor expects inbound BGP messages and, correspondingly, the port used by the device for outbound connections of the connection type “active” or “delayed”.

The device accepts incoming connections from any source port used by the sender.

Source address (optional)

Contains the sender address (IPv4 or IPv6) that the device communicated to the BGP neighbor when connecting.

Entry is optional and is only relevant for the connection modes “active” and “delayed”.

Routing tag

Contains the routing tag. The device denies the connection if the routing tag does not match with the incoming connection.

Remote AS

Contains the AS number of the BGP neighbor.

If the AS number of the BGP neighbor is identical to the AS number of the device's own BGP instance, then this neighbor is an iBGP peer (internal BGP) in its own AS.

Password

The device and the BGP neighbor authenticate themselves by exchanging this password in the form of an MD5 signature in the TCP packets.

Authentication is not used if no password is set.

Connection mode

Sets the mode in which the connection is established from the device to this BGP neighbor. The following modes are available:

- **Active**: In this mode the device attempts to connect to the BGP neighbor as soon as, among other things, one of the following conditions is met:

- The BGP neighbor is configured completely.
- Using WEBconfig or via the CLI, you execute the action **Manual start**.
- You start the device.
- The BGP instance is enabled under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP instance**.
- You enable this BGP neighbor under **Entry active**.

- **Passive**: In this mode the device does not actively connect to the BGP neighbor; instead, it waits for a connection request from the BGP neighbor.
- **Delayed**: In this mode the device waits for a timeout before it tries to connect to the BGP neighbor. The conditions for establishing a connection are the same as for the "Active" mode.

Connection delay

Specifies the wait time in seconds before the device in the "Delayed" connection mode establishes a connection to this BGP neighbor.

Route reflector client

Specifies whether this neighbor is treated as a route-reflector client, in which case the device reflects iBGP routes to it.

This switch is valid only if

- The device has been configured as a route reflector in the BGP instance, i.e. it is a route reflector itself, and
- The remote AS number matches its own AS number (iBGP).

Neighbor profile

Contains the name of the BGP neighbor profile from **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Neighbor profiles**.

If an entry is missing or incorrect, the BGP neighbor configuration is considered to be incomplete, and it is not possible to connect to it.

Inbound policy

Specifies the policy used by the device to filter the inbound connections from this BGP neighbor.

The policy is configured under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Filters**.

If you leave this field empty, the device filters the inbound connections according to the default policy under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Standard**.

Outbound policy

Specifies the policy used by the device to filter the outbound connections from this BGP neighbor.

The policy is configured under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Filters**.

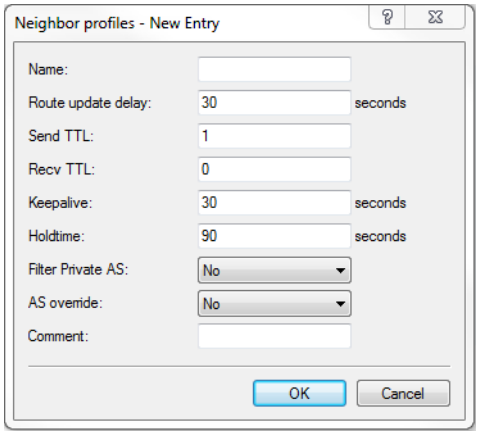
If you leave this field empty, the device filters the inbound connections according to the default policy under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Standard**.

Comment

Contains a comment about this BGP neighbor.

BGP neighbor profiles

You configure the profiles of the BGP neighbors of the device under **BGP instance**.



Name

Contains the name of the profile.

This name is used in the following tables, among other things:

- **Neighbor profile** under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Neighbors**
- **Neighbor profile** under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **IPv4 address family**
- **Neighbor profile** under **Setup** > **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **IPv6 address family**

Route update delay

This is the minimum delay in seconds between BGP advertisements sent by the device to neighbors using this profile.

Send TTL

Specifies the TTL (time to live) that the device adds to TCP packets sent to the BGP neighbors that use this profile.

For directly connected neighbors, this value is set to "1". For eBGP environments, you can increase this value by 1 per hop.

For iBGP sessions, the device ignores this value and defaults to the maximum TTL value.

This value must be "0" if **Recv TTL** is set to a value other than "0". The device automatically uses the value "1" if both **Send TTL** and **Recv TTL** are set to "0".

Recv TTL

Specifies the minimum TTL (time to live) required of inbound TCP packets from BGP neighbors that use this profile. Inbound TCP packets must have a TTL greater than or equal to this value in order to be accepted.

The device ignores this value in iBGP sessions.

If this value is not equal to "0", the device sets the internal value for **Send TTL** to "255".

This value must be "0" if **Send TTL** is set to a value other than "0".

Keepalive

Specifies the time in seconds for the keepalive timer. After this time has elapsed, the device sends a keepalive message to the neighbors using this profile in order to keep the BGP connection intact.

The device must send at least three keepalive messages per unit of holdtime. For this reason the value should be max. one third of the holdtime. If the value is set higher than this or equal to "0", the LCOS automatically sets an internal value that is one-third of the holdtime.

Short hold time

Specifies the time in seconds for which the device considers a BGP connection without traffic to still be valid.

The device negotiates this value with the BGP neighbors during connection establishment. The lower of the two values is considered to be valid.

If negotiation results in a value of "0", the device considers the connection to be valid until it receives a connection error or the connection breaks. No keepalive messages are sent to the BGP neighbors during this period, even if the keepalive timer is set with a value.

In accordance with the RFC, the values "1" and "2" are not permitted.

Filter private AS

Controls the removal/replacement of private AS entries (64512 – 65535, 4200000000 – 4294967294) from the `AS_PATH` list of outbound Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) messages of BGP neighbors that use this profile.

This option has no function for iBGP connections.

AS override

Enables or disables the overriding of AS numbers in the `AS_PATH` outbound Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI).

With this option enabled, the device replaces all of the AS numbers of the BGP neighbors with its own AS number.

Comment

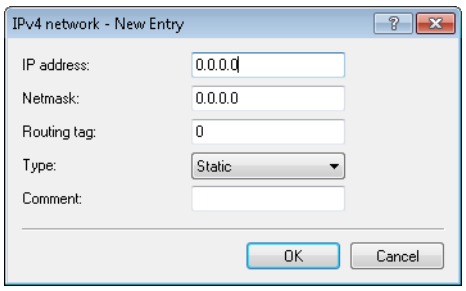
Comment on this entry.

IPv4 networks

Use this table to configure the IPv4 networks that the device shares with the BGP neighbors.

Whether these networks are distributed depends upon the restrictions under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **IPv4 address family**.

The minimum specification for a valid new entry is one **IP address**.



IP address

Contains the IPv4 address or the prefix of the network.

Netmask

Includes the IPv4 netmask of the network.

The route is the default route for this address family if this entry contains the default setting `0.0.0.0`.

Routing tag

Contains the routing tag for this network.

The table under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **IPv4 address family** uses this entry to filter the communication with BGP neighbors.

Type

This item specifies whether the device always advertises this network, or only when the network appears in the active routing table.

- In the "Static" setting the network is always selected for advertisement.
- In the "Dynamic" setting, the network is only selected for advertisement if it appears in the active routing table.

Comment

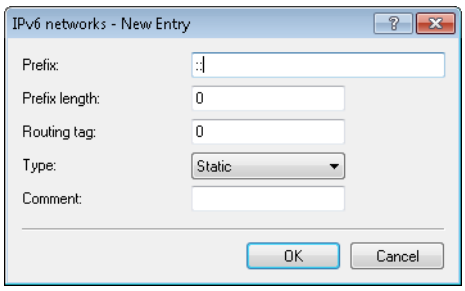
Comment on this entry.

IPv6 networks

Use this table to configure the IPv6 networks that the device shares with the BGP neighbors.

Whether these networks are distributed depends upon the restrictions under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **IPv6 address family**.

The minimum specification for a valid new entry is one **Prefix**.



Prefix

Contains the prefix (IPv6 address portion) of the network.

Prefix length

Contains the prefix length of the IPv6 network.

The route is the default route for this address family if this entry contains the default setting `0`.

Routing tag

Contains the routing tag for this network.

The table under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **IPv6 address family** uses this entry to filter the communication with BGP neighbors.

Type

This item specifies whether the device always advertises this network, or only when the network appears in the active routing table.

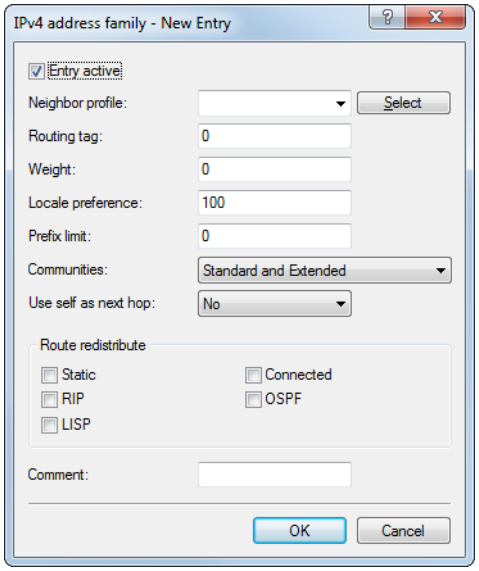
- In the "Static" setting the network is always selected for advertisement.
- In the "Dynamic" setting, the network is only selected for advertisement if it appears in the active routing table.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

IPv4 address family

Use this table to configure the settings for the IPv4 parameters that apply to all of the devices of a BGP neighbor profile.



Entry active

Enables or disables the distribution of IPv4 NLRI of this address family to the BGP neighbors that use this neighbor profile.

Neighbor profile

Contains the name of the corresponding neighbor profile as saved under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Neighbor profiles**.

Routing tag

Specifies that the device only re-distributes routes if they use the routing tag as configured in the routing table. The routes received from the neighbors for this routing tag are stored by the device in the routing table.

Weight

Specifies the default weight for the NLRI.

This information influences the preference of identical prefix advertisements that the device receives from different BGP neighbors. The prefix with the higher weight is given preference.

"Weight" is a proprietary attribute that the device does not propagate to other eBGP neighbors in BGP update messages. This attribute is valid on the local router only.

Local preference

Similar to the **Weight** attribute, this information influences the preference of identical prefix advertisements that the device receives from different BGP neighbors. The prefix with the higher weight is given preference. This value does not override the local preference for prefixes that already have a LOCAL_PREF attribute (for example, with iBGP). The preference of these prefixes has to be modified by a corresponding rule in the BGP policy.

"Local preference" is a BGP standard attribute (`LOCAL_PREF`) that the device propagates to neighbors via iBGP. All paths have a "local preference" of 100 by default.

Prefix limit

Determines the number of prefixes accepted for each BGP neighbor of the specified neighbor profile.

The device rejects all prefixes received beyond this limit.

Communities

Controls which community attributes are sent in the NLRI of this address family to eBGP neighbors that use the referenced neighbor profile.

If the options “Standard” and “Extended” are both disabled, the device transmits no community attributes in the NLRI to the eBGP neighbors.

This option is of no relevance for communications with iBGP neighbors.

Use own IP address as next hop

Enables or disables the replacement in the NLRI of the next hop attribute by the device's own IP address.

Possible values:

Yes

In the NLRI, the IP address of the next hop is replaced with the device's own IP address.

No

Leaves the IP address of the next hop in the NLRI unchanged.

Always

Always exchanges the IP address of the next hop in the NLRI with its own IP address, even if the device is configured as a route reflector.

Route redistribute

Specifies whether the device forwards certain routes to BGP neighbors of this profile.

- Static: The device distributes static routes from the routing table to the BGP neighbors.
- Connected: The device redistributes routes from the networks that it is directly connected to the BGP neighbors.
- OSPF: The device distributes OSPF routes from the routing table to the BGP neighbors.
- RIP: The device distributes RIP routes from the routing table to the BGP neighbors.
- LISP: The device distributes LISP routes from the routing table to the BGP neighbors.

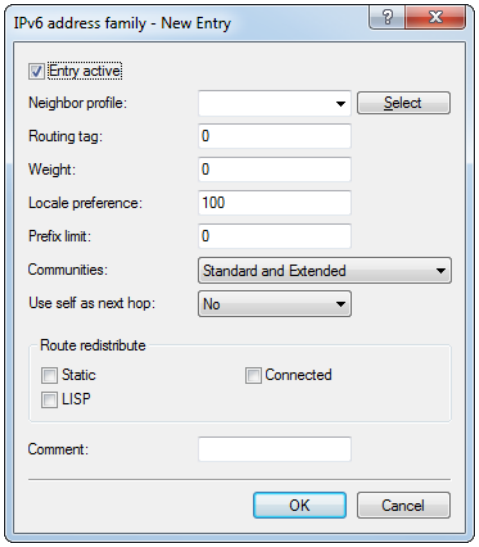
If no option is selected, the device does not redistribute any routes to the BGP neighbors of this neighbor profile (default setting).

Comment

Comment on this entry.

IPv6 address family

Use this table to configure the settings for the IPv6 parameters that apply to all of the devices of a BGP neighbor profile.



Entry active

Enables or disables the distribution of IPv6 NLRI of this address family to the BGP neighbors that use this neighbor profile.

Neighbor profile

Contains the name of the corresponding neighbor profile as saved under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Neighbor profiles**.

Routing tag

Specifies that the device only re-distributes routes if they use the routing tag as configured in the routing table. The routes received from the neighbors for this routing tag are stored by the device in the routing table.

Weight

Specifies the default weight for the NLRI.

This information influences the preference of identical prefix advertisements that the device receives from different BGP neighbors. The prefix with the higher weight is given preference.

"Weight" is a proprietary attribute that the device does not propagate to other eBGP neighbors in BGP update messages. This attribute is valid on the local router only.

Local preference

Similar to the **Weight** attribute, this information influences the preference of identical prefix advertisements that the device receives from different BGP neighbors. The prefix with the higher weight is given preference. This value does not override the local preference for prefixes that already have a LOCAL_PREF attribute (for example, with iBGP). The preference of these prefixes has to be modified by a corresponding rule in the BGP policy.

"Local preference" is a BGP standard attribute (`LOCAL_PREF`) that the device propagates to neighbors via iBGP. All paths have a "local preference" of 100 by default.

Prefix limit

Determines the number of prefixes accepted for each BGP neighbor of the specified neighbor profile.

The device rejects all prefixes received beyond this limit.

Communities

Controls which community attributes are sent in the NLRI of this address family to eBGP neighbors that use the referenced neighbor profile.

If the options “Standard” and “Extended” are both disabled, the device transmits no community attributes in the NLRI to the eBGP neighbors.

This option is of no relevance for communications with iBGP neighbors.

Use own IP address as next hop

Enables or disables the replacement in the NLRI of the next hop attribute by the device's own IP address.

Possible values:

Yes

In the NLRI, the IP address of the next hop is replaced with the device's own IP address.

No

Leaves the IP address of the next hop in the NLRI unchanged.

Always

Always exchanges the IP address of the next hop in the NLRI with its own IP address, even if the device is configured as a route reflector.

Route redistribute

Specifies whether the device forwards certain routes to BGP neighbors of this profile.

- Static: The device distributes static routes from the routing table to the BGP neighbors.
- Connected: The device redistributes routes from the networks that it is directly connected to the BGP neighbors.
- LISP: The device distributes LISP routes from the routing table to the BGP neighbors.

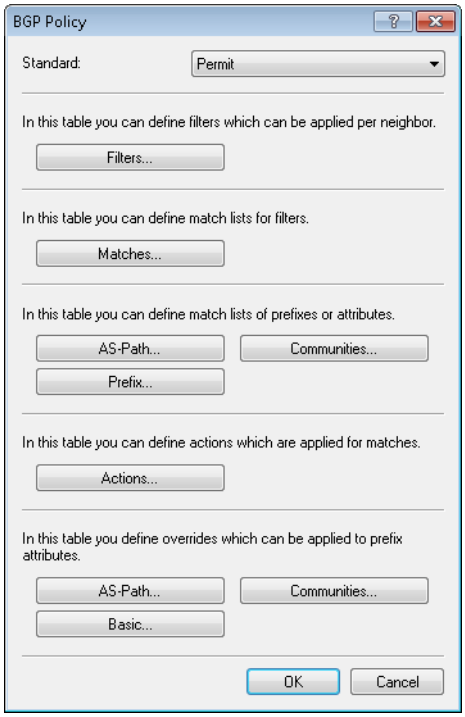
If no option is selected, the device does not redistribute any routes to the BGP neighbors of this neighbor profile (default setting).

Comment

Comment on this entry.

BGP policy

Use this section to configure the filter settings for outbound and inbound NLRIs.



Default

The device applies this default policy for a BGP neighbor if it is unclear whether it should accept its prefix or not. The cause for this may be:

- There is no policy configured for this BGP neighbor.
- The specified filter does not exist.
- None of the filters under **Filters** match.

Filters

Here you specify the filters, which should be available for each neighbor.

Matches

Specify the match lists for the filters here.

Prefix and attribute lists

Here you specify the lists of prefixes and attributes for the device to recognize as a match.

Actions

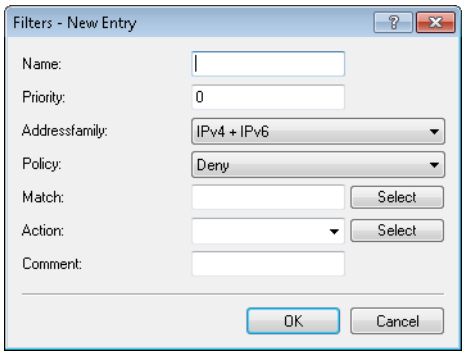
Here you specify the actions that are executed by the device in case of a match.

Overrides

Here you specify the overrides used by the device to modify prefix attributes.

Filter

This table contains filters that an NLRI to or from a BGP neighbor must pass through if the neighbor is configured with a corresponding policy.



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

For multiple filter entries with the same name, the device processes the filters according to the configured priority, until a filter matches the NLRI. The device then stops the filter pass.

Priority

Sets the priority of this entry.

Entries sharing the same name all belong to the same filter chain. The device processes the entries in this filter chain according to their priority value. A higher value means a higher priority.

Address families

Specifies the address family for which this filter applies.

If no option is selected, the entry is disabled.

Policy

Specifies whether the device should further process the filtered NLRI in the case that the filter is valid for the NLRI.

- Deny: No further processing.
- Permit: The device processes the NLRI further.

Matches

Specifies the name of an entry from the table **Matches**.

The device applies this filter if the NLRI matches the criteria.

If this field indicates an invalid name, the device denies the NLRI and performs no further filters in the current filter chain.

Action

Specifies which of the actions from the **Actions** table is applied by the device to the NLRI.

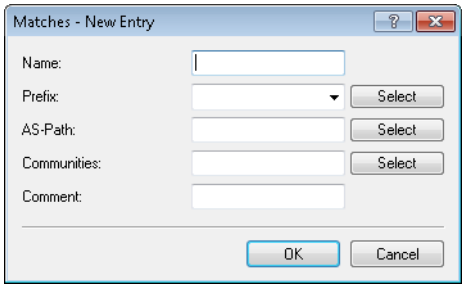
If this field is empty or refers to an invalid name, the device performs no action.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

Matches

This table combines lists of prefixes and attributes in order to compare multiple list entries for matches with the NLRI.



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

Prefix

Contains the corresponding item in the list under **Prefix**.

AS-Path

Contains the corresponding item in the list under **AS path** in the section "Prefix and attribute lists".

Communities

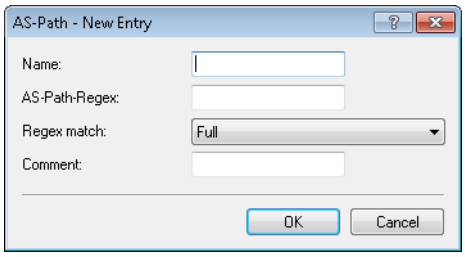
Contains the corresponding item in the list under **Communities** in the section "Prefix and attribute lists".

Comment

Comment on this entry.

AS Path (attribute list)

This table contains AS-path lists in order to identify NLRIs by their `AS_PATH` attributes.



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

AS Path Regex

Contains a regular expression that checks the `AS_PATH` of the NLRI. Examples:

- `.*_100`: filters all NLRIs originating from "AS100".
- `.*_(100|200)`: filters all NLRIs originating from "AS100" or "AS200".
- `100_(.*_)?(500|400)_.*`: filters all NLRIs from the BGP neighbor with the AS number "AS100" and which were also previously routed via networks with the AS numbers "AS500" or "AS400" (or both).
- `100_(500|400|123)_.*`: filters all NLRIs from the BGP neighbor with the AS number "AS100" and which received this number beforehand directly from BGP neighbors with the AS numbers "AS500", "AS400" or "AS123".

- `100_(100_)*(300_)*300`: filters all NLRIs from the BGP neighbor with the AS number “AS100” and which received this number beforehand from the BGP neighbor with the AS number “AS300”. This expression also allows for AS prepend paths.
- `100_ 200`: filters all NLRIs from the BGP neighbor with the AS number “AS100” and which originated from the network with the AS number “AS200”. The route taken by the NLRIs from “AS200” to “AS100” is unimportant.

Regex-Match

Determines how closely the regular expression under **AS-Path-Regex** needs to match the `AS_PATH` attribute of the NLRI in order for the list entry to apply.

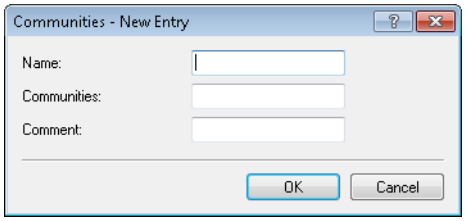
- Full: The regular expression fully describes the `AS_PATH` attribute of the NLRI.
- Partial: The regular expression only describes parts of the `AS_PATH` attribute.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

Communities (attribute list)

This table contains community lists in order to identify NLRIs by their community attributes.



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

Communities

Contains communities that the community attribute of the NLRI must match with.

Communities are specified by means of a comma-separated list (`<AS-number1>:<Value1>,<AS-number2>:<Value2>,<AS-number3>:<Value3>`).

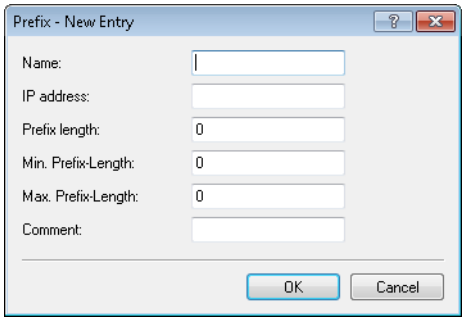
Comment

Comment on this entry.

Prefix (attribute list)

This table contains prefix lists that are used to identify NLRIs based on their network (prefix) and netmask (prefix length).

An entry can contain several prefixes.



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

IP address

Contains the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the network.

Prefix length

Contains the netmask or prefix length of the network.

This entry specifies how many most-significant bits (MSB) of the prefix must match to the IP address.

The prefix length of the NLRI must exactly match this value unless “Min. prefix length” and “Max. prefix length” are set to values not equal to zero.

If the value is “0”, the network of the NLRI matches when it comes from same IP address family as that specified under “IP address”.

Min. prefix length

Specifies the minimum prefix length value that the network of the NLRI needs in order to match.

Max. prefix length

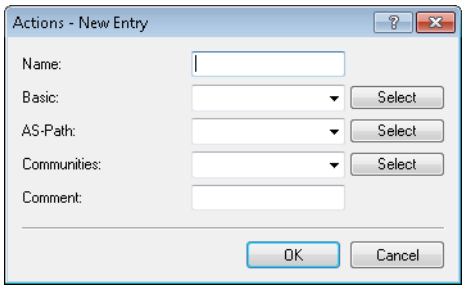
Specifies the maximum prefix length value that the network of the NLRI needs in order to match.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

Action

This table combines override lists in order to perform multiple modifications of an NLRI by means of a single action.



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

Basic

Contains the name of an override of basic entries in the NLRI.

This entry refers to the entries in the override table under **Basic**.

AS-Path

Contains the name of an override of `AS_PATH` attributes in the NLRI.

This entry refers to the entries in the override table under **AS Path**.

Communities

Contains the name of an override of Community entries in the NLRI.

This entry refers to the entries in the override table under **Communities**.

Comment

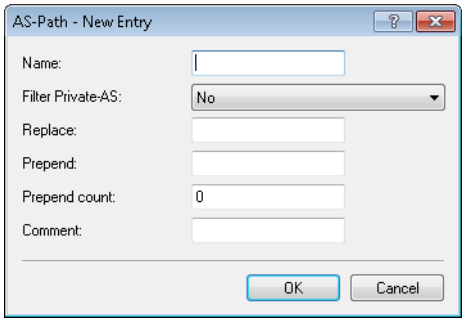
Comment on this entry.

AS Path (override list)

This table contains overrides that manipulate the `AS_PATH` attributes of NLRI.

If an action applies a row of this table, all of the manipulations that this row implements are processed in the following sequence:

1. "Filter private AS"
2. "Replace"
3. Together "Prepend count" and "Prepend"



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

Filter private AS

If configured, this entry causes the device to modify the specification of the private AS numbers in the `AS_PATH` attribute of an NLRI in accordance with this setting.

- No: The device retains the existing private AS numbers of the NLRI.
- Remove: The device removes all private AS numbers.
- Replace: The device replaces the existing private AS numbers with the AS number of the current BGP instance.

Replace

If configured, this entry causes the device to change the `AS_PATH` attribute of the NLRI to the value specified here.

Prepend

If configured, this entry causes the device to prepend the `AS_PATH` attribute of the NLRI with the value entered here as often as is specified under "Prepend count". Special values:

- `self`: The device prepends the `AS_PATH` attribute of the NLRI with its own AS number.
- `last`: The device prepends the `AS_PATH` attribute of the NLRI with the most recently used AS number.

Prepend count

Determines how often the device prepends the `AS_PATH` attribute of the NLRI with an AS number.

Comment

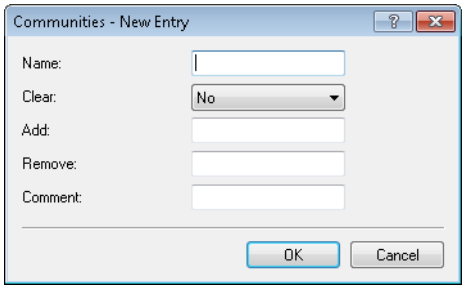
Comment on this entry.

Communities (override list)

This table contains overrides that manipulate the Communities attributes of NLRI.

If an action applies a row of this table, all of the manipulations that this row implements are processed in the following sequence:

1. "Clear"
2. "Add"
3. "Remove"



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

Clear

Determines whether the device deletes unknown communities from the NLRI.

Known communities remain in place even if this option to set to "Yes".

Known communities are:

- `no-peer`
- `no-export`
- `no-advertise`
- `no-export-subconfed`

For more information, see *RFC 1997* and *RFC 3765*.

Add

Specifies which communities the device adds to an NLRI.

Communities are specified by means of a comma-separated list (`<AS-number1>:<Value1>,<AS-number2>:<Value2>,<AS-number3>:<Value3>`).

Remove

Specifies which communities the device removes from an NLRI.

Communities are specified by means of a comma-separated list (`<AS-number1>:<Value1>,<AS-number2>:<Value2>,<AS-number3>:<Value3>`).

Known communities are not removed from NLRI. Known communities are:

- `no-peer`
- `no-export`
- `no-advertise`
- `no-export-subconfed`

The following input formats are available for communities:

Input format	Community
1:2	Standard community
1.2.3.4:1	IPv4-specific extended community
roc:1.2.3.4:1	IPv4-specific route origin extended community (Site-of-Origin (SoO))
rtc:1.2.3.4:1	IPv4-specific route target extended community
ext2:1:2	Two-byte AS extended community
ext4:1:2	Four-byte AS extended community
roc:1:2	Two-byte AS route origin extended community (Site-of-Origin (SoO))
rtc:1:2	Two-byte AS route origin extended community
roc:ext4:1:2	Four-byte AS route origin extended community (Site-of-Origin (SoO))

Comment

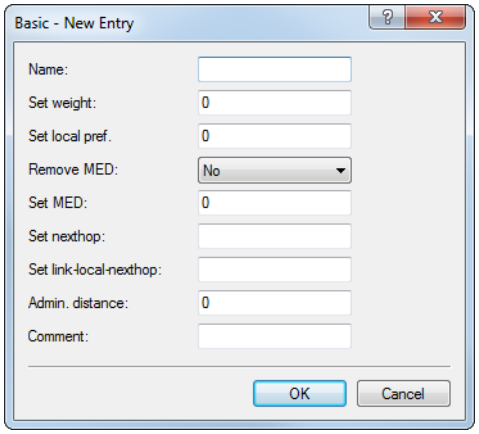
Comment on this entry.

Basic (override list)

This table contains overrides that manipulate the basic attributes of NLRIs.

If an action applies a row of this table, all of the manipulations that this row implements are processed.

The specification of basic attributes is optional. If you want the action to change just one basic attribute, enter the desired value at the appropriate place and leave the remaining attributes in their default setting.



Name

Contains the name of this entry.

Set weight

The device modifies the weighting of an NLRI to the value specified here.

Local preference

The device modifies the local preference value of an NLRI to the value specified here.

Remove MED

If set to "Yes", the device deletes the multi-exit discriminator (MED) of an NLRI before it processes the setting under "Set MED".

Set MED

The device modifies the multi-exit discriminator (MED) of an NLRI to the value specified here. If the NLRI contains no MED, the device creates this attribute.

Set nexthop

The device modifies the next-hop IP of an NLRI to the value specified here. Possible values are an IPv4 address or a global IPv6 address.

Set link-local-nexthop

The device modifies the IPv6 link-local-nexthop of an NLRI to the value specified here. This only effects IPv6 prefixes.

Administrative distance

Specifies the "administrative distance" given to prefixes received in the BGP when they are entered into the routing table. The list of fixed "administrative distances" for the various system services and routing protocols can be displayed on the command line by `show admin-distance`.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

6.28.2 Best-path selection algorithm

The following algorithm is applied for the selection of the best path:

1. The next hop in the BGP update message is available.

2. The device's own AS is not in the `AS-Path`.
3. The next hop is not the device's own address.
4. Highest weight
5. Highest local preference
6. Shortest `AS_PATH` (`AS_SET` counts as length 1)
7. Lowest origin (IGP < EGP < Incomplete)
8. Lowest MED

   This applies only if the compared routes are from the same neighbor AS.

9. eBGP is preferred before iBGP.
10. Lowest router ID
11. Neighbor with lowest IP address
12. Neighbor with lowest RTG tag
13. The oldest path is preferred over a newly learned path.

Influencing the routing algorithm with attributes

You have the option to influence the selection of the best path to a destination by means of the following attributes:

Weight

Weight is a proprietary attribute, which is not propagated to neighbors by means of BGP update messages. "Weight" is valid on the local router only. You can set the attribute locally either by means of the address family or with filter policies.

Local preference

Local preference is a BGP standard attribute (`LOCAL_PREF`) and is propagated to neighbors via iBGP. All paths have a local preference of 100 by default. This attribute can be used to favor certain prefixes. The attribute can be set by address family or by filter policies.

AS_PATH

The AS-Path contains details of the path taken by a route. Filter policies can be used to manipulate the AS path, for example by prepending the device's own AS number multiple times. This makes the AS path appear longer to a neighbor.

Origin

Origin is a default BGP attribute, which is propagated to all neighbors. This attribute indicates where a route originated. This could be an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP), the Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP, RFC 904), or "Incomplete". Here, "Incomplete" indicates a redistribution by a different routing protocol. The **origin** attribute is set automatically by the router. The origin of a route is set to IGP if it was added to BGP by means of an entry in the IPv4 / IPv6 network table. The origin for a route is set to "Incomplete" if it was configured for re-distribution in the address families.

MED

MED (`MULTI_EXIT_DISC`) is an optional BGP attribute used to distinguish between multiple inputs or outputs to the same neighbor AS. The attribute can be set by filter policies.

Router ID

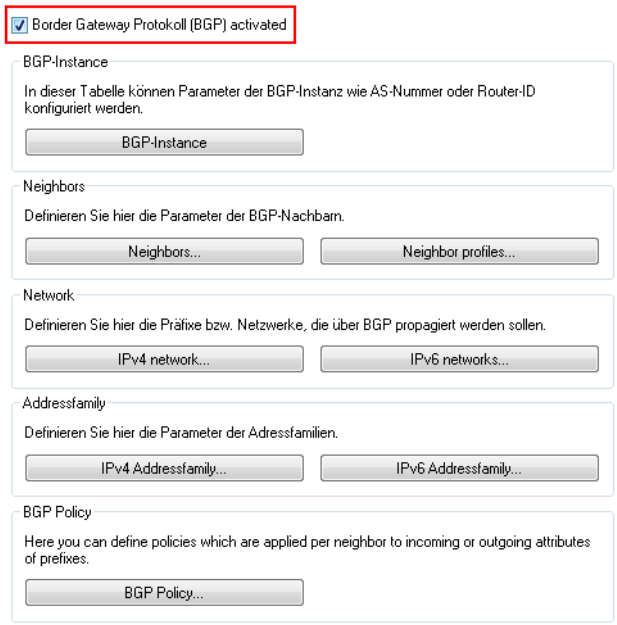
The router ID, also known as the BGP identifier, is the unique identifier of a router. It consists of the IPv4 address of the router. You can manually configure the router ID under **BGP instance** > **Router ID**.

6.28.3 Tutorial: Setting up BGPv4 under LANconfig

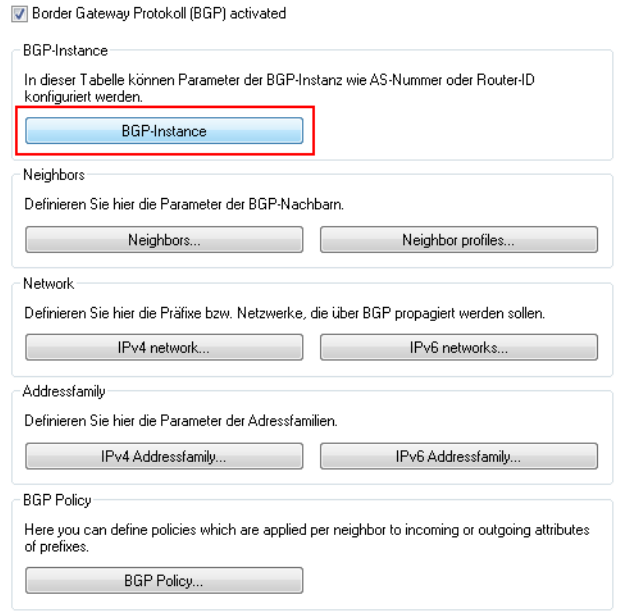
Two LANCOM routers are inter-connected over a WAN link and they are to be configured to use BGP to propagate certain IPv4 networks. The routers are a LANCOM 1781AW at the main office and a LANCOM 1781VA-4G at the branch office.

We assume that a WAN connection exists between the two devices.

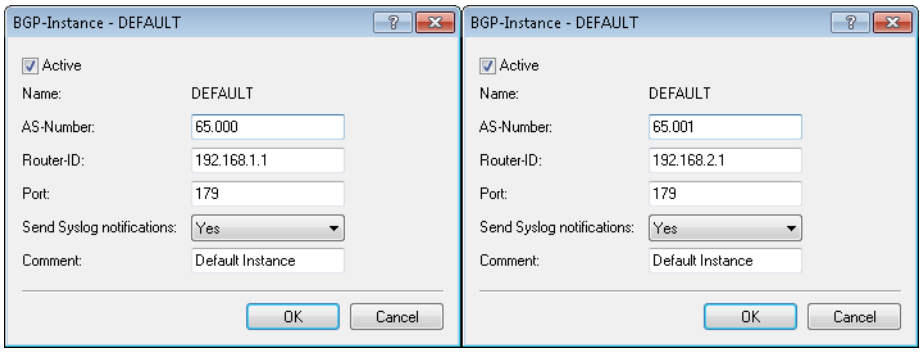
1. **Enabling BGP**: Open the menu item **Routing protocols** > **BGP** in the configuration of both routers and activate the **Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) active** check box. This enables BGP on that specific device. In the next steps you configure each BGP instance, the associated neighbors, and the networks that are to be propagated.



2. **Configuring individual BGP instances**: To configure the BGP instance of each router, click the **BGP instance** button.



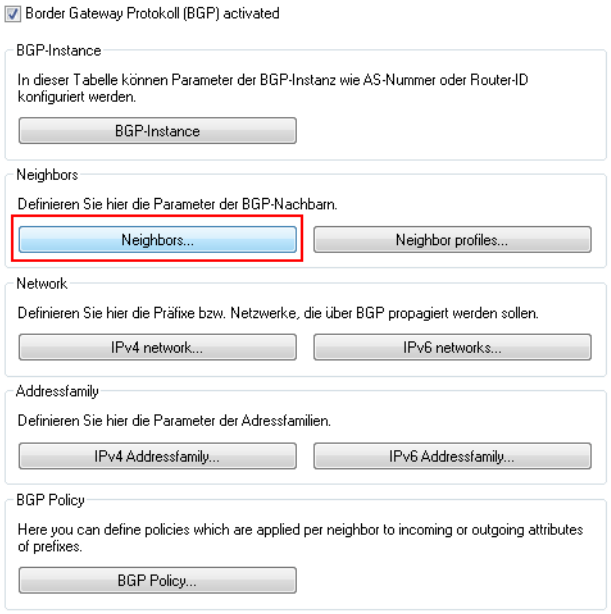
3. Use the configuration window to specify the general information about the BGP instance for each router. The screenshots below show the configurations for both devices for direct comparison side by side.



The left half of the images shows the LANCOM 1781AW, and the right half shows the parameters of the LANCOM 1781VA-4G.

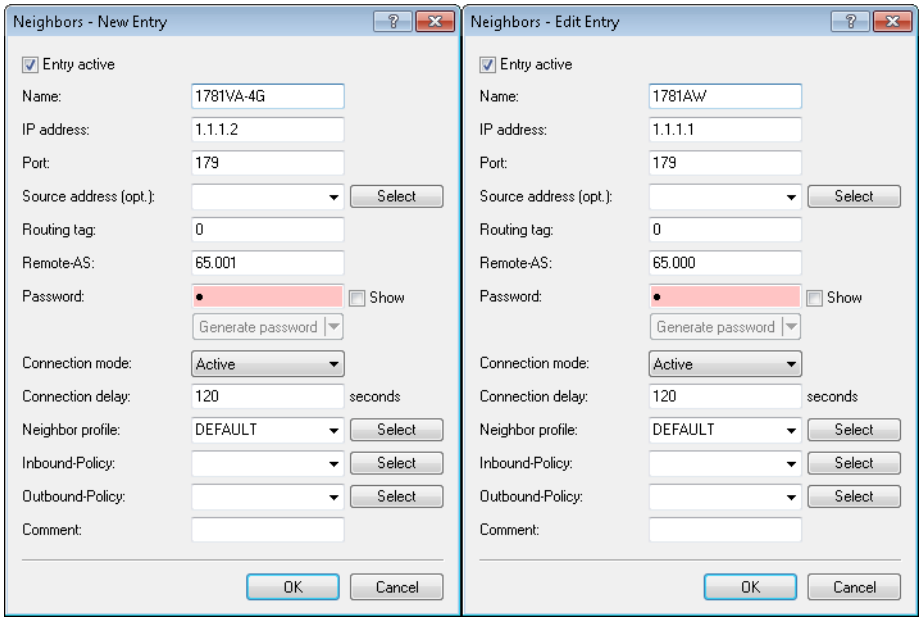
Parameter	Description
Checkbox **Active**	Enable the BGP instance of the router. This is necessary to enable communication between the two routers.
AS number	The AS number (**A**utonomous **S**ystem number) collects routers into the same administration unit. Entering different numbers here specifies the eBGP peers. Identical numbers indicate peers that share the same AS (iBGP). Learn which entries are valid by visiting *http://www.iana.org/assignments/as-numbers/as-numbers.xhtml*.
Router ID	Specify an IP address for the router. Enter `0.0.0.0` if you want the IP address to be set automatically. The router ID must be unique among the neighbors of a BGP router. Different entries are required here.
Port	Configure the TCP-IP port that the router uses for inbound BGP connections. The default value is 179.
Send Syslog notifications	Specify whether the device is to generate SYSLOG messages. Use WEBconfig to view these.
Comment	Enter a comment to make it easier to understand the configuration later.

4. **Configuring the BGP neighbors**: Once the configuration of the BGP instance is complete, the next step is to define the associated neighbors for exchanging information about the propagated networks. Click on the **Neighbors** button.



5. Click on the **Add** button to configure a new BGP neighbor. Use the configuration window to specify the information about the BGP neighbors for each router.

The screenshots below show the configurations for both devices for direct comparison side by side. Here we only describe the configuration parameters that differ from the default values.

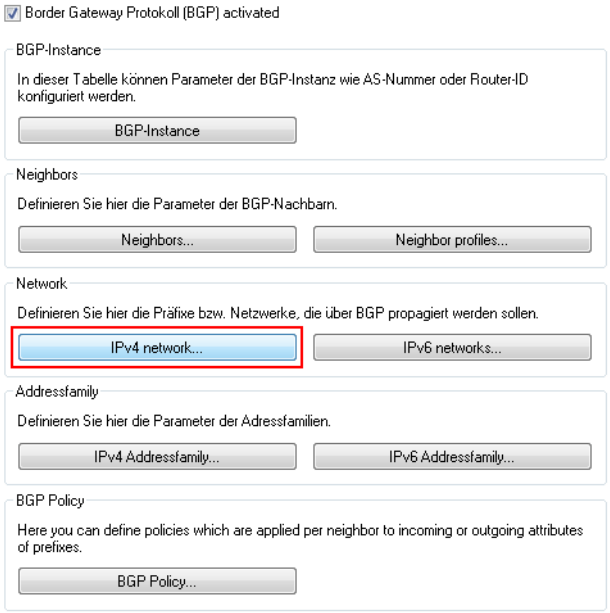


The left half of the images shows the LANCOM 1781AW, and the right half shows the parameters of the LANCOM 1781VA-4G.

Parameter	Description
Entry active	Activate the entry for the corresponding neighbor.

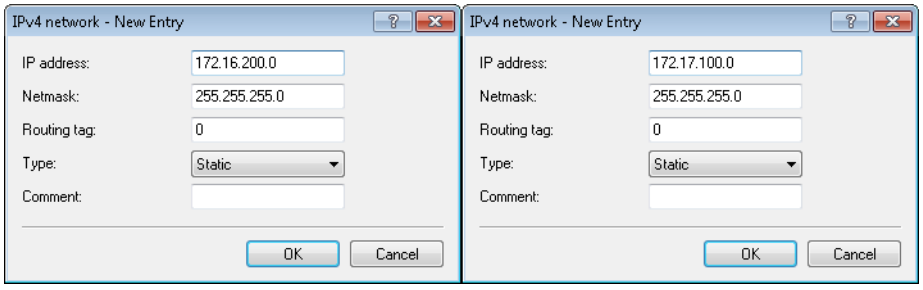
Parameter	Description
Name	Set the name for the neighbor. This example uses an abbreviated version of the device name for easy identification in the configuration.
IP address	Enter the IP address where the neighbor is to be reached. In this example, the WAN address of 1781AW is `1.1.1.1` and that of 1781VA-4G is `1.1.1.2`.
Remote AS	Enter the AS numbers of the corresponding neighbors as specified in **step 2**.
Password	Enter a password, which is used to obscure communications between the two BGP neighbors by means of an MD5 hash. The password must be identical at both ends.

6. **Configuring the IPv4 networks to be propagated**: Configure the networks that are to be propagated by the individual BGP instances. Click on the **IPv4 networks** button.



7. Click the **Add** button to define a new IPv4 network, which is to be propagated.

The screenshots below show the configurations for both devices for direct comparison side by side. Here we only describe the configuration parameters that differ from the default values.



The left half of the images shows the LANCOM 1781AW, and the right half shows the parameters of the LANCOM 1781VA-4G.

Parameter	Description
IP address	The IPv4 address range of the network to be propagated.

Parameter	Description
Netmask	The netmask corresponding to the defined network.
Type	The type of propagation to be used. This example is static for ease of configuration.

8. Write the respective configurations back to the two devices.
9. The BGP connection is easily checked via the command line. The command `show bgp-neighbor` displays all active neighbors and their status.

```
> show bgp-neighbor
BGP-Neighbors:

1.1.1.2, Rtg-Tag 0
 BGP-State: ESTABLISHED, up for 00:09:23
 remote AS 65001, remote router id 192.168.1.161, eBGP
 Neighbor capabilities:
  Four-octets ASN capability: advertised and received
  Address family IPv4 NLRI used for unicast forwarding: advertised and received
> _
```

6.28.4 Tutorial: Setting preferences for prefixes

"Preference" is an optional BGP attribute used to set preferred paths to certain prefixes. The device prefers a path with a higher preference over a path with a lower preference.

Within an AS, the iBGP neighbors exchange the BGP attribute `LOCAL_PREFERENCE`. The eBGP neighbors in neighboring ASs do not transmit this attribute.

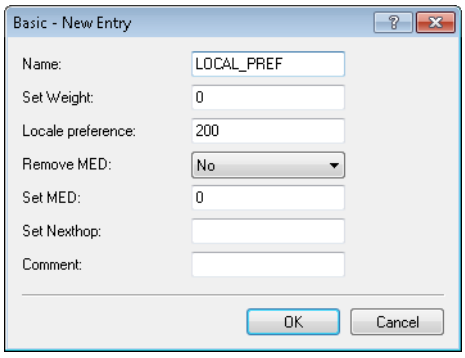
There are two ways to configure preferences:

- By address family
- By policy

This example explains how to configure the prioritization of the prefix from a BGP neighbor with the preference "200" over the prefix from another BGP neighbor with the preference "100".

The default setting for preferences is "100". In this case all you have to do is configure the neighbor that requires preferential treatment with the preference "200".

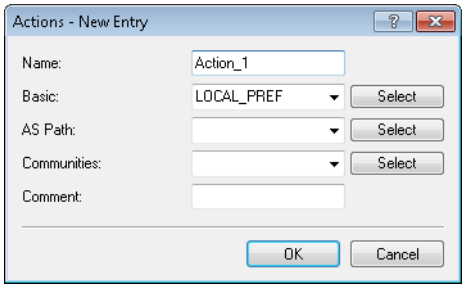
1. Navigate to **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Basic** and add a new entry to the manipulation of basic attributes of the NLRI (in this case the basic attribute `LOCAL_PREFERENCE`).



Give the entry a descriptive name.

Under **Set local preference** enter the value "200" for the new local preference.

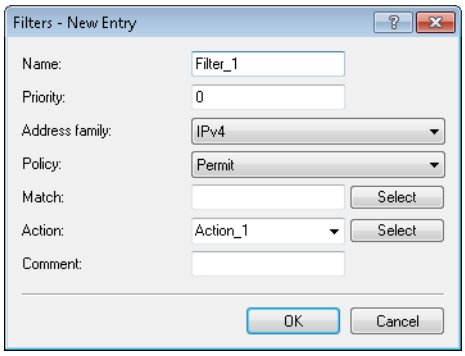
2. Under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Actions** add a new action.



Give the action a descriptive name.

Under **Basic** you select the basic entry you created previously.

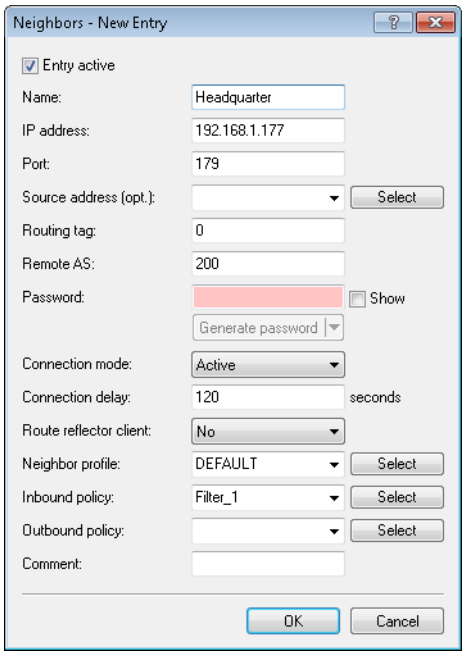
3. Add a new filter under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Filters**.



Give the filter a descriptive name.

Under **Address family** you select the protocol used for connections to the BGP neighbors. With the setting "Permit" in the field **Policy** you specify that the device should modify the outbound NLRI. Under **Action** you select the action you created previously.

4. Under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Neighbors** you add a new entry for a BGP neighbor.



Give the neighbor a descriptive name and configure its IP address along with the number of the remote AS where it is located.

If you have not created a dedicated neighbor profile for this BGP neighbor, use the "Default" profile.

Under **Inbound policy** you select the filter you created previously.

5. To check the configuration, open a terminal connection to the device.

   The command `show bgp-policy Filter_1` displays the current setting for the policy "Filter_1".

```
> show bgp-policy Filter_1
Traverse chain "Filter_1"
   Inspect filter of priority 0
      Match IPv4 routes
      Execute action "Action_1"
         No AS-path override configured
         Apply basic override "LOCAL_PREF"
            Set local preference to 200
         No community override configured
      Permit route
> _
```

   The command `show bgp-v4-adj-rib-in` displays the routing information base (RIB).

```
> show bgp-v4-adj-rib-in
IPv4 Unicast Adj-RIB-In

 192.168.1.177, Rtg-Tag 0

  Prefix            Next Hop       Local-Pref  Weight  MED AS Path
  ------------------------------------------------------------------
  192.168.210.0/24  192.168.1.177         200       0    0 AS sequence: 200
  192.168.211.0/24  192.168.1.177         200       0    0 AS sequence: 200

> _
```

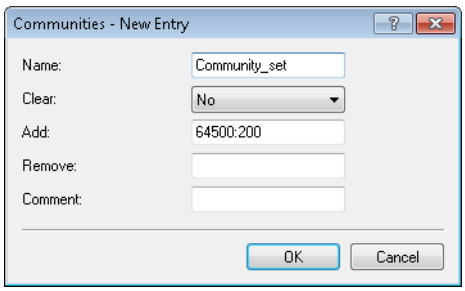
6.28.5 Tutorial: Setting the Community attribute

"Community" is an optional BGP attribute that can be used to identify prefixes and collect them into logical groups. Inbound and outbound policies can be applied to these groups. It is possible to specify multiple communities for a single prefix.

In addition to the well-known communities `NO-ADVERTISE` or `NO-EXPORT`, the meaning of a community can be freely defined by the provider. So for example, the provider of AS "64500" specifies that customer routes with the community "64500:200" are to be treated with preference "200", and routes with the community "64500:90" are to be treated with the preference "90".

The following example shows how the community "64500:200" is added to all outbound routes.

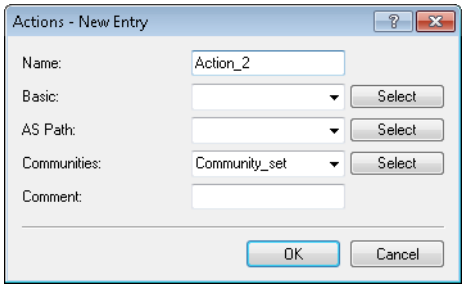
1. Add a new community under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Communities (overrides)**.



   Give the community a descriptive name.

Under **Add** enter the value "64500:200" for the community attribute. This value adds the device to the community attribute of the outbound NLRI.

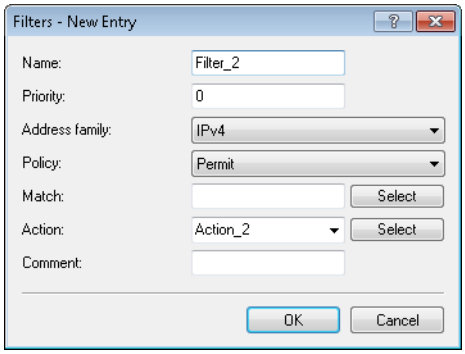
2. Under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Actions** add a new action.



Give the action a descriptive name.

Under **Communities** you select the community you created previously.

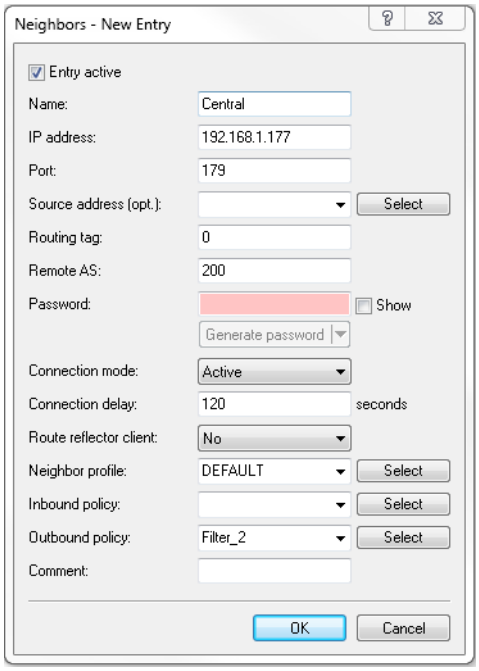
3. Add a new filter under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Filters**.



Give the filter a descriptive name.

Under **Address family** you select the protocol used for connections to the BGP neighbors. With the setting "Permit" in the field **Policy** you specify that the device should modify the outbound NLRI. Under **Action** you select the action you created previously.

4. Under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **Neighbors** you add a new entry for a BGP neighbor.



Give the neighbor a descriptive name and configure its IP address along with the number of the remote AS where it is located.

If you have not created a dedicated neighbor profile for this BGP neighbor, use the "Default" profile.

Under **Outbound policy** you select the filter you created previously.

5. To check the configuration, open a terminal connection to the device.

The command `show bgp-policy Filter_2` displays the current setting for the policy "Filter_2".

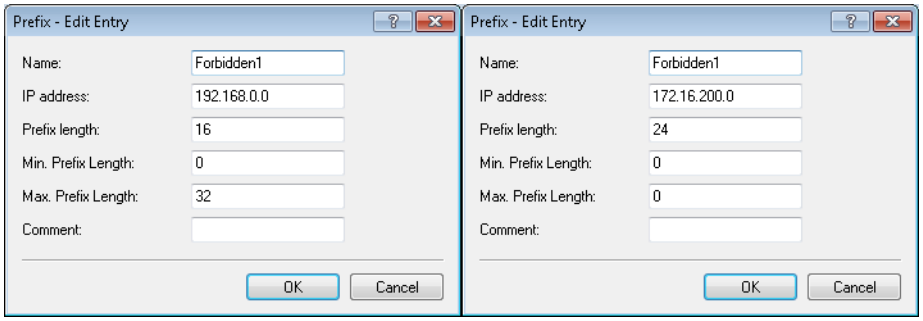
```
> show bgp-policy Filter_2
Traverse chain "Filter_2"
   Inspect filter of priority 0
      Match IPv4 routes
      Execute action "Action_2"
         No AS-path override configured
         No basic override configured
         Apply community override "Community_set"
            Add community 64500:200
      Permit route
> _
```

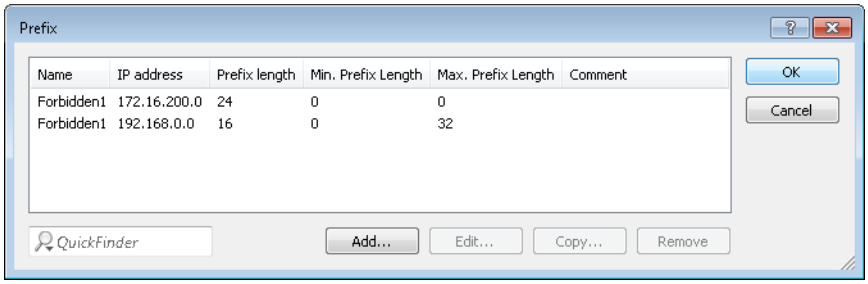
6.28.6 Tutorial: Filtering received prefixes

This example explains the configuration steps required to filter out the following inbound prefixes from a BGP neighbor:

- All prefixes in the range "192.168.0.0/16"
- The individual prefix "172.16.200.0/24"

1. Create two new entries for the prefixes to be filtered under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Prefix**.



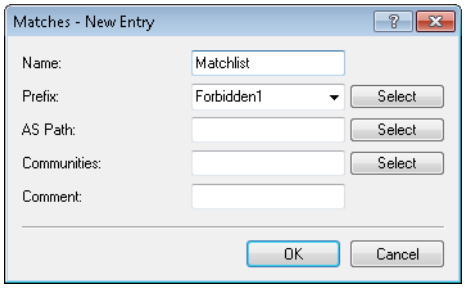


Give each entry a descriptive name.

Add an entry for each prefix to be filtered, but give each entry the same name.

For each entry specify the IP address and the prefix length.

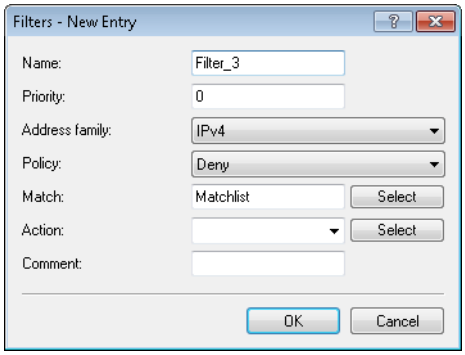
2. Specify a match for the previously created prefix entries under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Matches**.



Give the entry a descriptive name.

Under **Prefix** you select the name of the prefix you added previously.

3. Add a new filter under **Routing protocols** > **BGP** > **BGP policy** > **Filters**.



Give the filter a descriptive name.

Under **Address family** you select the protocol used for connections to the BGP neighbors. With the setting “Deny” in the field **Policy** you instruct the device to filter out the inbound prefixes. Under **Match** you select the match you created previously.

4. To check the configuration, open a terminal connection to the device.

   The command `show bgp-policy Filter_3` displays the current setting for the policy “Filter_3”.

```
> show bgp-policy Filter_3
Traverse chain "Filter_3"
   Inspect filter of priority 0
      Match IPv4 routes
      Assess match "Matchlist"
         Evaluate prefix list "Prohibited1"
            Analyze prefix 172.16.200.0
               Match IPv4 routes
               Match route's 24 MSB
               Match route prefix length in [24, 24]
            Analyze prefix 172.168.0.0
               Match IPv4 routes
               Match route's 16 MSB
               Match route prefix length in [16, 32]
         No AS-path list configured
         No community list configured
      Deny route
> _
```

6.29 OSPF

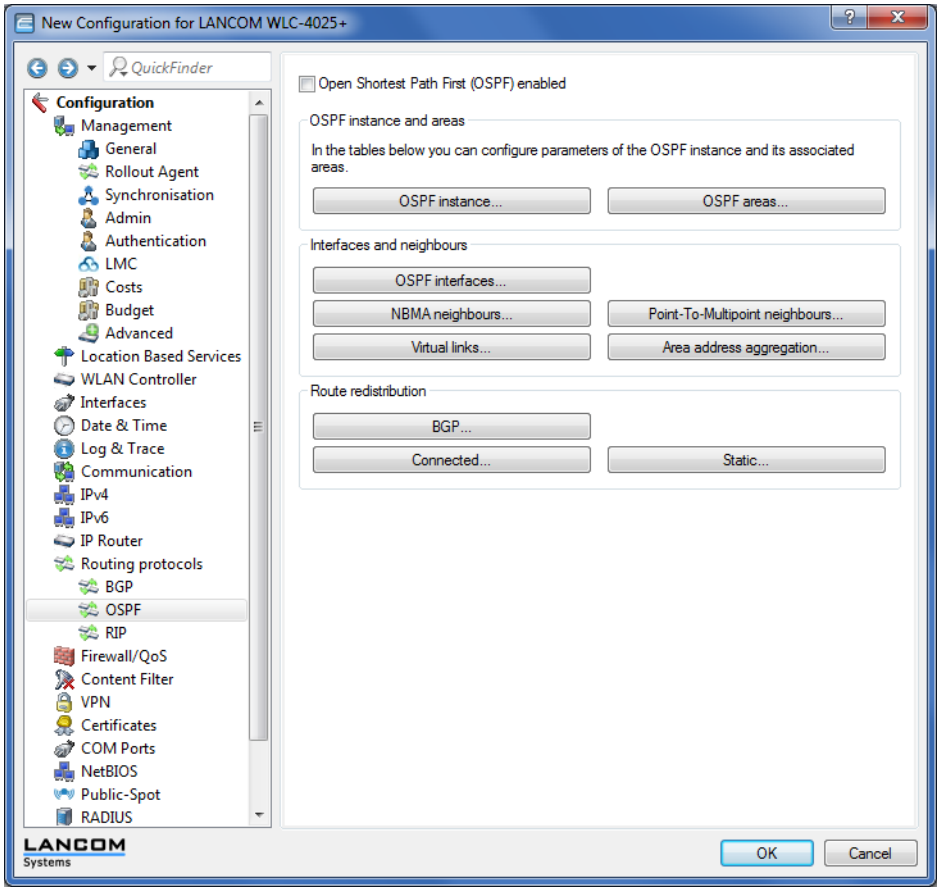
Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) is a link-state routing protocol as per RFC 2328. It belongs to the category **Interior Gateway Protocols** (IGP). This involves routers regularly exchanging link-status information via link-state advertisements (LSA). The routers use multicast to automatically discover one another on the local network. OSPF is generally used for the exchange of internal routing information in large networks (LANs).

Each router has an identical copy of the database (link state database, LSDB), which routers use to determine the best routes (Shortest Path First, SPF) using the Dijkstra algorithm.

In contrast, BGP is one of the **Exterior Gateway Protocols** (EGP) and is typically used to route between autonomous systems or within VPNs.

6.29.1 Setting up OSPF with LANconfig

In order to configure OSPF with LANconfig, navigate to the **Routing protocols** > **OSPF** menu.



Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) enabled

To activate the OSPF function, set a check mark for **Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) enabled**.

OSPF instance

The table **OSPF instance** defines the OSPF instances on this device. It is possible for a device to operate multiple OSPF instances in parallel. Each instance corresponds to an autonomous system or an OSPF domain.

OSPF areas

The table **OSPF areas** is used to define the parameters of the OSPF areas.

OSPF interfaces

This table specifies the interfaces on which OSPF is to operate.

NBMA neighbors

Non-broadcast multi-access networks are networks containing multiple routers, but where broadcast is not supported. In this type of network, OSPF emulates operations in a broadcast network. A default router is selected for this network type.

The communication takes place not by multicast, but by unicast. Neighborhood connections must be configured manually, as the routers are unable to discover one another automatically by multicast.

Point-to-multipoint neighbors

In a point-to-multipoint network, all neighbors are treated as if point-to-point neighbors were directly connected via a non-broadcast network. If no default router is selected, multicast is used for communications instead.

Virtual links

This table is used to define virtual links (also referred to as transit area). In principle, OSPF requires all areas to be directly connected to the backbone area. Virtual links can be used in cases where this is not possible. A virtual link uses a non-backbone area to connect a router to the backbone area.

Area address aggregation

In order to reduce the number of entries in the routing tables, IP addresses can be grouped by address aggregation at the borders transitioning from the backbone area to non-backbone areas. The corresponding subnet is advertised as a summary LSA.

BGP

Routes learned dynamically from BGP sources or protocols can be distributed by OSPF.

Connected

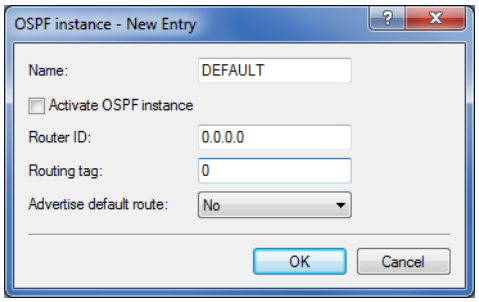
Connected routes, i.e. routes that the operating system automatically enters into the routing table, can be redistributed by OSPF.

Static

Static routes, i.e. routes that the user manually enters into the routing table, can be redistributed by OSPF.

OSPF instance

You configure the OSPF instance of the device under **OSPF instance**.



Name

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

Activate OSPF instance

Activates or deactivates this OSPF instance

Router ID

Contains the 32-bit router ID (represented as an IPv4 address) of this particular OSPF instance. The router ID uniquely identifies this router within an OSPF domain.

Routing tag

Contains the routing tag assigned to this instance.

Advertise default route

Specifies whether this router should advertise or propagate the default route in this instance.

Possible values:

No (Default)

The router does not advertise a default route.

Yes

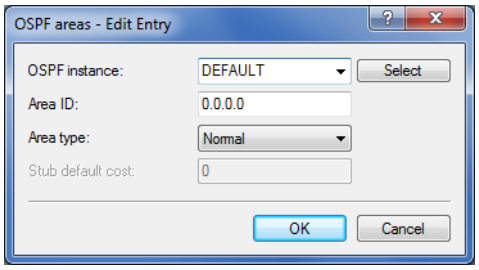
The router always advertises the default route, regardless of whether the default route exists in its routing table.

Dynamic

The router only advertises the default route if this is also available in its routing table.

OSPF areas

The parameters for the OSPF area are configured under **OSPF areas ...**.



OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

Area ID

The area ID (displayed as an IPv4 address) identifies the area.

If this instance is to be the backbone area, the value to be used is 0.0.0.0.

Area type

Specifies the type of the area.

Possible values:

Normal (default)

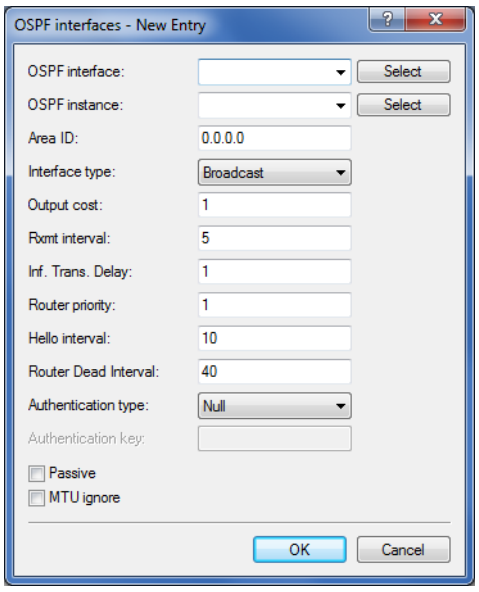
Stub

Stub default cost

If the area is configured as a stub area and the router itself is an area border router, the parameter **Stub default cost** indicates the cost of the default summary LSA that this router should advertise in this area.

OSPF interfaces

Defines the interfaces on which OSPF should be operated.



OSPF interface

Contains the interface (IPv4 network or WAN remote site) on which OSPF is to be activated.

OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

Area ID

Identifies the area by means of an IPv4 address.

Port type

Defines the interface type.

Possible values:

Broadcast

Ethernet-based network; a default router is selected and multicast is used for communication.

Point-to-point

Network consisting of two routers only (e.g. GRE tunnel) or Ethernet via P2P link; no default router is selected and multicast is used for communication.

Point-to-multipoint

Network as hub-and-spoke topology; a default router is selected and multicast is used for communication.

Non-Broadcast Multi- Access (NBMA)

Point-to-multipoint networks that do not support broadcast or multicast; a default router is selected and unicast is used for communication; the neighbors are configured manually.

Output cost

Specifies the cost to send a packet on this interface, shown in the link-state metric. The advertisement is implemented in router LSA messages as a link cost for this interface.

The value must always be greater than zero.

Retransmit interval

Contains the number of seconds between retransmissions.

Transmit delay

Contains the estimated number of seconds required to transfer a link-state update packet over this interface.

Router priority

Defines the priority of this router on this interface when set as the designated router (DR). The router with the highest priority is set as the default router.

The value 0 prevents the router from becoming default router on this interface.

Hello interval

Contains the interval in seconds in which the router sends Hello packets from this interface.

Router Dead Interval

Specifies the elapsed time in seconds during which at least one hello packet must be received from a neighbor before the router declares that neighbor as down.

This value must be greater than the Hello interval.

Authentication type

Contains the authentication method to use for this interface.

Possible values:

Null

Simple password

Cryptographic MD5

Authentication key

Contains the authentication key for this network.

In this case the authentication type **Null** may not be selected.

Passive

Defines whether OSPF should work actively or passively on this interface.

Possible values:

Yes

No routing updates or hello packets are sent from this router on this interface. Similarly, no incoming OSPF messages are processed either. However, the corresponding route or network of this interface is still inserted into the LSDB and so is advertised on other interfaces.

No (Default)

MTU ignore

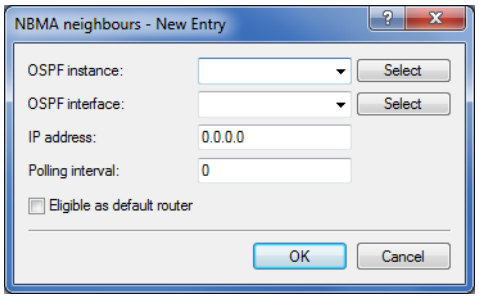
Disables the MTU value check in database description packets.

This allows routers to establish a full neighbor relationship even if the MTU of the corresponding interfaces is not uniform.

NBMA neighbors

Non-broadcast multi-access networks are networks containing multiple routers, but where broadcast is not supported. In this type of network, OSPF emulates operations in a broadcast network. Initially, a default router is selected for this purpose.

The communication takes place not by multicast, but by unicast. Neighborhood connections must be configured manually, as the routers are unable to discover one another automatically by multicast.



OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

OSPF interface

Contains the interface (IPv4 network or WAN remote site) on which OSPF is to be activated.

IP address

Contains the IPv4 address of the neighboring router (router at the remote end).

Poll interval

Contains the interval in which Hello messages are sent to this router.

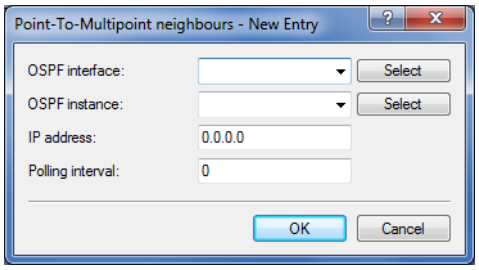
The value zero disables the transmission of Hello messages.

Eligible as default router

Specifies whether the local device itself is selectable as default router.

Point-to-multipoint neighbors

In a point-to-multipoint network, all neighbors are treated as if point-to-point neighbors were directly connected via a non-broadcast network. No default router is selected and multicast is used for communications.



OSPF interface

Contains the interface (IPv4 network or WAN remote station) on which OSPF is to be activated.

OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

IP address

Contains the IPv4 address of the neighboring router (router at the remote end).

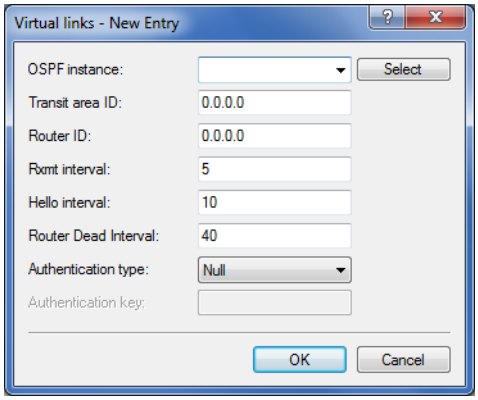
Polling interval

Contains the interval in which Hello messages are sent to this router.

The value zero disables the transmission of Hello messages.

Virtual links

This table is used to define virtual links (also referred to as transit area). In principle, OSPF requires all areas to be directly connected to the backbone area. Virtual links can be used in cases where this is not possible. A virtual link uses a non-backbone area to connect a router to the backbone area.



OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

Transit area ID

Contains the area ID, defined as an IPv4 address

Router ID

Contains the router ID of the router at the remote end of the virtual link as an IPv4 address.

Retransmit interval

Contains the number of seconds between retransmissions.

Hello interval

Specifies the interval in seconds that the router sends Hello packets from this interface.

Router Dead Interval

Specifies the elapsed time in seconds during which at least one hello packet must be received from a neighbor before the router declares that neighbor as down.

This value must be greater than the Hello interval.

Authentication type

Contains the authentication method to use for this interface.

Possible values:

Null

Simple password

Cryptographic MD5

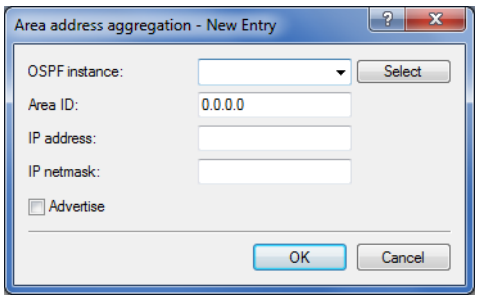
Authentication key

Contains the authentication key for this network.

In this case the authentication type **Null** may not be selected.

Area address aggregation

In order to reduce the number of entries in the routing tables, IP addresses can be grouped by address aggregation at the borders transitioning from the backbone area to non-backbone areas. The corresponding subnet is advertised as a summary LSA.



OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

Area ID

Identifies the area by means of an IPv4 address.

If this instance is to be the backbone area, the value to be used is 0.0.0.0.

IP address

Contains the IPv4 address.

IP netmask

Contains the IPv4 subnet mask.

Advertise

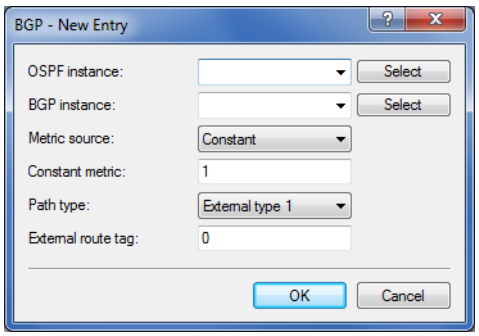
Enables or disables the advertisement of this address aggregation.

Route redistribution

Routes can be redistributed from other route sources or protocols by means of OSPF. For this purpose, routes of the corresponding type are read out from the routing table and redistributed by OSPF.

BGP

The distribution of routes learned dynamically from the Border Gateway Protocol is configured under **BGP**.



OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

BGP instance

Contains the name of the BGP instance.

Metric source

Specifies which source is used to set the OSPF metric.

Possible values:

Constant

A user-defined constant metric is used.

Protocol

The "Local preference" value of the BGP prefix is used or imported.

Constant metric

If the metric source is set to "Constant", the OSPF metric of the imported routes is set to the value Constant metric.

Path type

Specifies the type assigned to the routes imported into OSPF.

Possible values:

External type 1

The OSPF metric is formed from the redistribution metric or constant metric + the total path metric used to reach this ASBR.

In the OSPF routing algorithm of routers, type 1 routes are generally preferred over type 2 routes.

External type 2

The OSPF metric is formed from the redistribution metric and/or the constant metric.

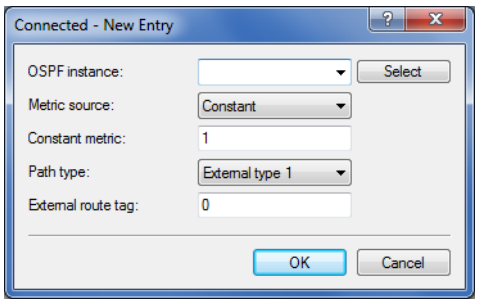
External route tag

Specifies which external route tag the routes are imported with.

The value is not processed by OSPF itself.

Connected

The redistribution of routes that are automatically set by the operating system is configured under **Static**.



OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

Metric source

Specifies which source is used to set the OSPF metric.

Possible values:

Constant

A user-defined constant metric is used.

Protocol

The value is set automatically.

Constant metric

If the metric source is set to "Constant", the OSPF metric of the imported routes is set to the value Constant metric.

Path type

Specifies the type assigned to the routes imported into OSPF.

Possible values:

External type 1

The OSPF metric is formed from the redistribution metric or constant metric + the total path metric used to reach this ASBR.

In the OSPF routing algorithm of routers, type 1 routes are generally preferred over type 2 routes.

External type 2

The OSPF metric is formed from the redistribution metric and/or the constant metric.

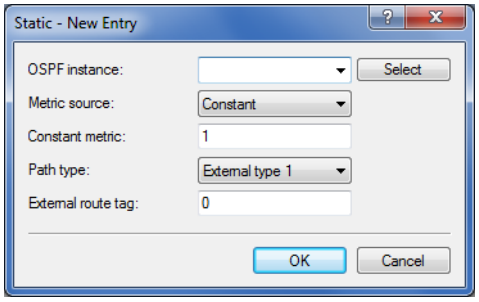
External route tag

Specifies which external route tag the routes are imported with.

The value is not processed by OSPF itself.

Static

The redistribution of static routes, i.e. routes that the user manually enters into the routing table, is configured under **Static**.



OSPF instance

Contains the name of the OSPF instance.

Metric source

Specifies which source is used to set the OSPF metric.

Possible values:

Constant

A user-defined constant metric is used.

Protocol

The value is set automatically.

Constant metric

If the metric source is set to "Constant", the OSPF metric of the imported routes is set to the value Constant metric.

Path type

Specifies the type assigned to the routes imported into OSPF.

Possible values:

External type 1

The OSPF metric is formed from the redistribution metric or constant metric + the total path metric used to reach this ASBR.

In the OSPF routing algorithm of routers, type 1 routes are generally preferred over type 2 routes.

External type 2

The OSPF metric is formed from the redistribution metric and/or the constant metric.

External route tag

Specifies which external route tag the routes are imported with.

The value is not processed by OSPF itself.

6.29.2 Show commands via CLI

The available show commands are listed in the following:

- **show ospf-config**

  Displays a summary of the configured OSPF instances.

- **show ospf-database**

  Displays the OSPF database.

- **show ospf-graph**

  Displays the OSPF areas as a graphical representation in Graphviz format.

- **show ospf-neighbor**

  Displays information about OSPF neighbors.

- **show ospf-rib**

  Displays information about the OSPF Routing Information Base.

6.30 Locator / ID Separation Protocol (LISP)

The Locator/ID Separation Protocol (LISP) as per RFC 6830 is a new routing architecture that splits an IP address into two entities: The routing locator (RLOC) and the endpoint identifier (EID). The goal is to achieve a highly scalable routing architecture with integrated routing, tunneling and overlay protocols.

Conventional routing protocols such as RIP, OSPF or BGP work according to the "push principle" and proactively distribute their best routes to their neighbors. This architecture is of limited scalability, as the ever larger BGP tables and routing tables increasingly become a challenge.

LISP works according to the "pull principle" and works much like the Domain Name System (DNS). LISP routers register their networks, referred to as endpoint identifiers (EIDs), at a central instance called a map server or map resolver. Along with the EID, they also register their global (WAN) address, called the routing locator (RLOC). This keeps the information about the location (locator) separate from the identity (ID).

If a router wants to transfer data to a remote LISP network, first the LISP map resolver is queried for the mappings between the requested EID prefix and the routing locator. In the next step, a data tunnel is established between the two LISP routers.

LISP currently does not provide encryption of the data tunnel and, when used in insecure networks such as the Internet, it is typically combined with VPN. Application scenarios for LISP are multi-VPNs.

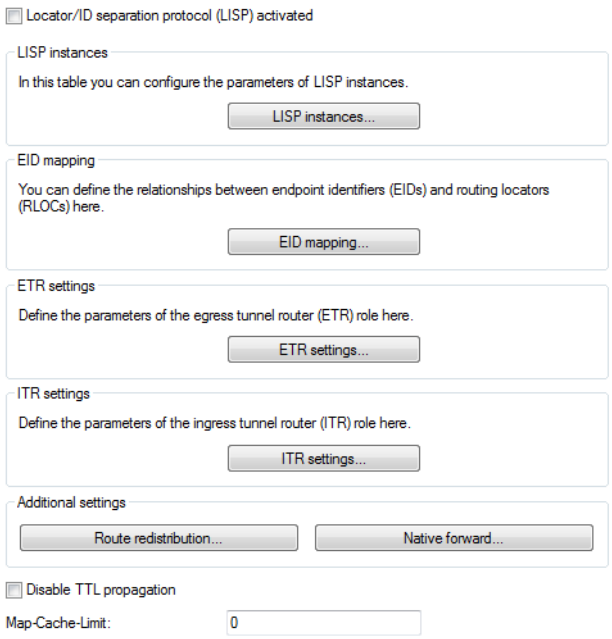
LCOS as of LCOS version 10.20 supports the following roles:

- Ingress tunnel router (ITR)
- Egress tunnel router (ETR)

The role of the map server/map resolver is currently not supported.

6.30.1 Configuration

LISP routing is configured in LANconfig under **Routing protocols** > **LISP**. The switch **Locator/ID separation protocol (LISP) activated** is used to switch this routing protocol on or off.



Disable TTL propagation

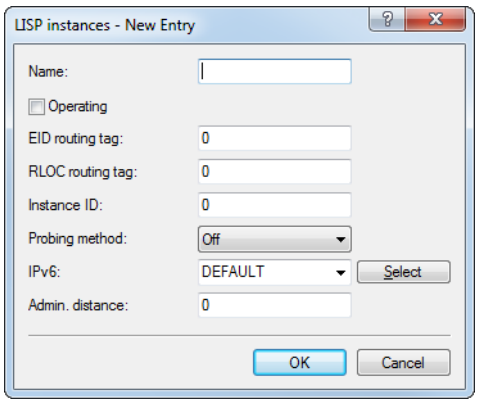
When enabled, the ITR does not copy the Time-To-Live (TTL) from the outer to the inner header. As a result, a client running traceroute sees the LISP tunnel as a hop. If disabled, traceroute shows all of the hops between ITR and ETR.

Map-Cache-Limit

Defines the maximum number of map-cache entries across all LISP instances. After reaching the limit, new entries are rejected. Only after older entries in the map cache have become invalid will new entries be accepted. 0 means there is no restriction.

LISP instances

This table contains the global configuration of the LISP instances on the device.



Name

Specifies a unique name for a LISP instance. This name is referenced in other LISP tables.

Entry active

Activates or deactivates this LISP instance.

EID routing tag

Routing tag of the endpoint identifier (EID) of this instance.

RLOC routing tag

Routing tag of the routing locator (RLOC) of this instance.

Instance ID

LISP instance ID as a numeric tag from RFC 8060 (LISP Canonical Address Format (LCAF)) for the segmentation of networks with ARF.

Probing method

Specifies the method used to periodically check the accessibility of the RLOCs for map cache entries. Available methods:

- Off: The availability of the RLOCs is not checked periodically.
- RLOC probing: The availability of the RLOCs is periodically checked by LISP RLOC messages.

IPv6

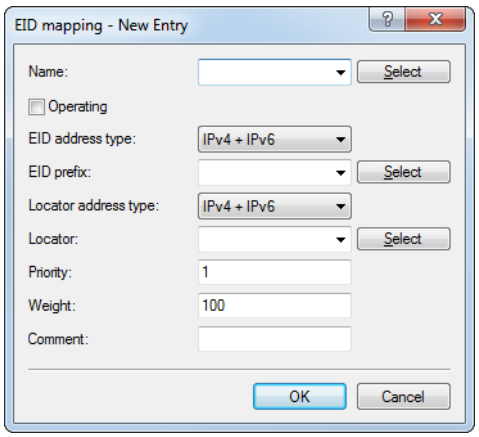
Name of the IPv6 WAN profile from the IPv6 WAN interface table. An entry is required if IPv6 EIDs are used.

Administrative distance

The administrative distance of this LISP instance.

EID mapping

This table specifies the mapping of EIDs to RLOCs to be registered with the map server.



Name

References the name of the LISP instance.

Operating

Activates or deactivates this EID mapping.

EID address type

Protocol version of the EID prefix when referencing the EID prefix via an interface or network name. Possible values:

- **IPv4**: Only the IPv4 prefix of the referenced interface is used.
- **IPv6**: Only the IPv6 prefix of the referenced interface is used.
- **IPv4+IPv6**: Both the IPv4 prefix and the IPv6 prefix of the referenced interface are used.

EID prefix

EID prefix of the EID mapping. Possible values are an IPv4 network name or an IPv6 interface, e.g. INTRANET, or a named loopback address.

Locator address type

Protocol version of the RLOC when referencing the EID prefix via an interface name. Possible values:

- **IPv4**: Only the IPv4 address is used as the RLOC of the referenced interface.
- **IPv6**: Only the IPv6 address is used as the RLOC of the referenced interface.
- **IPv4+IPv6**: Both the IPv4 address and the IPv6 address are used as the RLOC of the referenced interface.

Locator

RLOC of the EID mapping. Possible values are named remote sites, IPv6 WAN interfaces, or loopback interfaces.

Priority

The priority of the EID mapping. Default: 1.

Weight

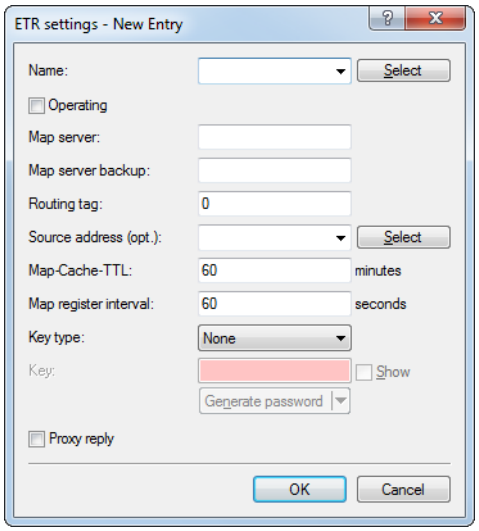
The weight of the EID mapping. Default: 100.

Comment

Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

ETR settings

This table specifies the parameters for the role as Egress Tunnel Router (ETR).



Name

References the name of the LISP instance.

Operating

Activates or deactivates these ETR settings.

Map-Server

IPv4 or IPv6 address of the LISP map server

Map-Server-Backup

IPv4 or IPv6 address of the LISP backup map server. The LISP registration is sent in parallel both to the primary map server and to the backup map server.

Routing tag

Routing tag to be used to access the map server.

Source address (opt.)

Contains the sender address as the named interface that is used with the map server in LISP communication.

Map-Cache-TTL

Time-to-live of the EID mappings in minutes registered with the map server.

Map register interval

Registration interval in seconds in which map registrations are sent to the map server.

Key type

Algorithm used for authentication at the map server. Possible values:

- None
- HMAC-SHA-1-96
- HMAC-SHA-256-128

Key

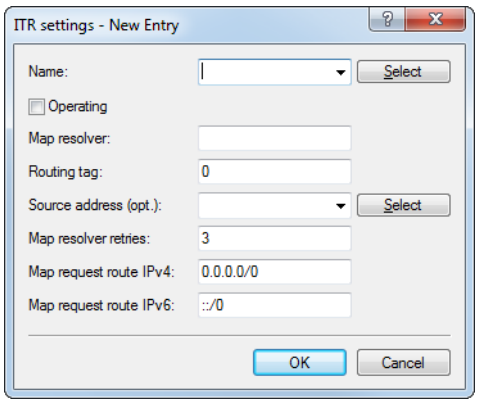
Key or password used to register the EID mapping on the map server.

Proxy-Reply

Determines whether the proxy reply bit is set in map registrations. In this case, the map server acts as a proxy and responds to map requests on behalf of the ETR.

ITR settings

This table specifies the parameters for the role as Ingress Tunnel Router (ITR).



Name

References the name of the LISP instance.

Operating

Activates or deactivates these ITR settings.

Map-Resolver

IPv4 or IPv6 address of the LISP map resolver.

Routing tag

Routing tag used to access the map resolver.

Source address (opt.)

Contains the sender address as the named interface that is used with the map resolver in LISP communication.

Map-Resolver-Retries

Number of retries for map requests to the map resolver. Default: 3

Map-Request-Route-IPv4

Specifies the IPv4 route or prefix for the LISP map requests.

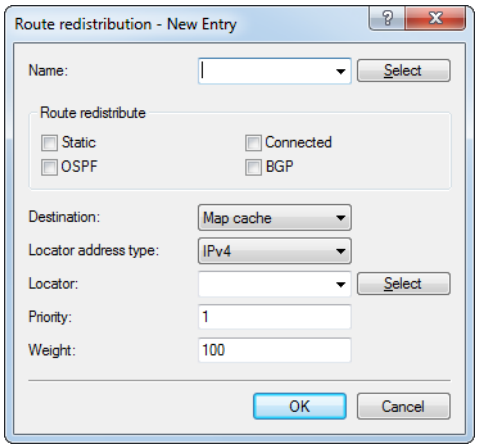
Map-Request-Route-IPv6

Specifies the IPv6 route or prefix for the LISP map requests.

Route redistribution

The redistribution of routes allows routes from the routing table to be imported into the LISP map cache. Map requests are performed for these routes.

Route redistribution also allows routes to be imported from the routing table and dynamically registered to the map server as an EID prefix.



Name

References the name of the LISP instance.

Route redistribute

Specifies the route sources of the imported routes.

- **Static**: The device imports static routes from the routing table into the LISP map cache or into the EID table as an EID prefix.
- **Connected**: From directly connected networks, the device imports information from the routing table into the LISP map cache or into the EID table as an EID prefix.
- **OSPF**: The device imports OSPF routes from the routing table into the LISP map cache or into the EID table as an EID prefix.
- **BGP**: The device imports BGP routes from the routing table into the LISP map cache or into the EID table as an EID prefix.

Destination

Specifies the destination of routes imported to LISP. Possible values:

- **Map cache**: Imports the routes into the map cache. LISP performs map requests for these routes.

- **EID table**: Import the routes into the LISP EID table. These routes are registered with the map server as an EID prefix with the configured RLOC.

Locator address type

Protocol version of the RLOC when referencing the EID prefix via an interface name. Possible values:

- **IPv4**: Only the IPv4 address is used as the RLOC of the referenced interface.
- **IPv6**: Only the IPv6 address is used as the RLOC of the referenced interface.
- **IPv4+IPv6**: Both the IPv4 address and the IPv6 address are used as the RLOC of the referenced interface.

Locator

Specifies the RLOC used to register the imported EID prefixes with the map server. Possible values are named remote sites, IPv6 WAN interfaces, or loopback interfaces.

Priority

The priority. Default: 1

Weight

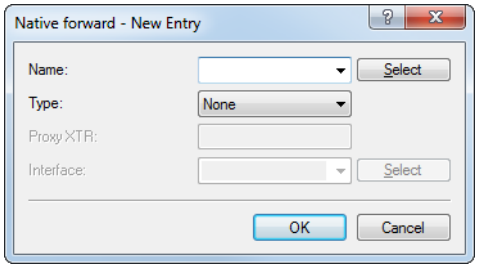
The weight. Default: 100

Native forward

If LISP networks are to communicate with non-LISP networks, proxy routers can be used. These roles are referred to as proxy ingress tunnel routers (proxy ITRs) and proxy egress tunnel routers (proxy ETRs).

If a LISP router receives a negative response from the map resolver, i.e. there is no mapping between the requested EID and an RLOC, the LISP router can either send the associated packets to a proxy xTR (packet with LISP header) or send it via another local interface (packet without LISP header).

LCOS only supports scenarios where PITR and PETR functions are operated on the same router.



Name

References the name of the LISP instance.

Type

Defines how to send packets to non-LISP networks.

- **None**: Packets to non-LISP networks are not forwarded but dropped
- **Proxy XTR**: Packets to non-LISP networks are sent to a ProxyXTR
- **Interface**: Packets to non-LISP networks are sent via a local interface

Proxy XTR

IPv4 or IPv6 address of the proxy XTR used to send packets to non-LISP networks.

Interface

Name of the interface used to send packets to non-LISP networks.

6.30.2 LISP tutorial

In this tutorial we will configure a LISP network on the basis of an ARF network that is named INTRANET and uses tag 1. This involves registering the network prefix as an EID prefix with the MAP server 1.1.1.1. Registration is performed via the WAN remote site INTERNET (default route), which uses tag 0. The IP address of the INTERNET remote site can be dynamic or static. This address is registered as an RLOC address with the MAP server.

Data from the INTRANET should be sent to the LISP tunnel. For this purpose, the router requesting an unknown destination sends a map request to the MAP resolver 1.1.1.1.

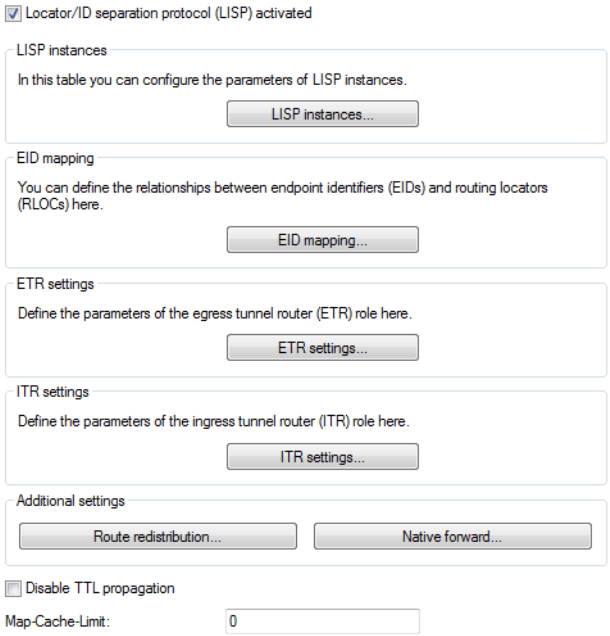
If the map resolver returns a positive mapping, LISP automatically establishes a dynamic tunnel to the remote LISP router and enters the corresponding routes into the routing table.

If the map resolver returns a negative mapping, i.e. the destination prefix is unknown or is not registered on the map server/resolver, then the packet can optionally be sent directly over the INTERNET remote site, without using a tunnel (native forward).

LISP routes do not have to be configured manually. LISP automatically creates routes and later deletes them.

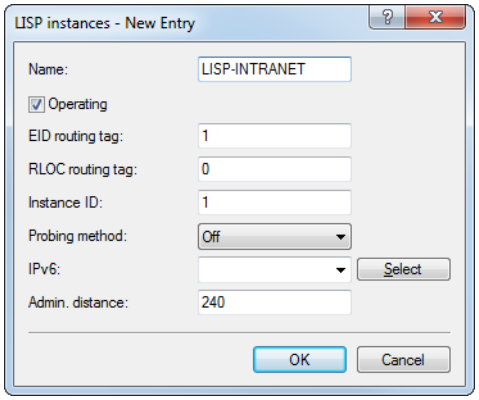
As a matter of principle, entries for the routing tags have to be created manually in the WAN tag table.

1. First, enable the LISP protocol under **Routing protocols** > **LISP** > **Locator/ID separation protocol (LISP) activated**.

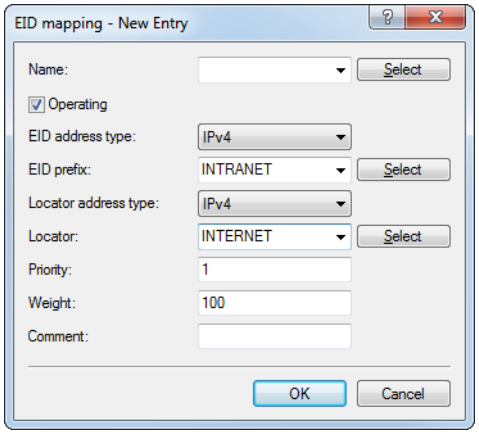


2. Create a new entry in the table of LISP instances. Do this by navigating to **Routing protocols** > **LISP** > **LISP instances** and then click on **Add**.
   a) Give this LISP instance a **Name**, e.g. LISP-INTRANET.
   b) Enable the entry **Operating**.
   c) Set the **EID routing tag** to 1.
   d) Set the **RLOC routing tag** to the value of the tag of the WAN remote site INTERNET, in this case 0.
   e) Set the **Instance ID** to the value created on the LISP map server, in this case 1 like the tag of the INTRANET.

f) Under **IPv6** you can remove the entry **DEFAULT**, as we are only considering IPv4 here.

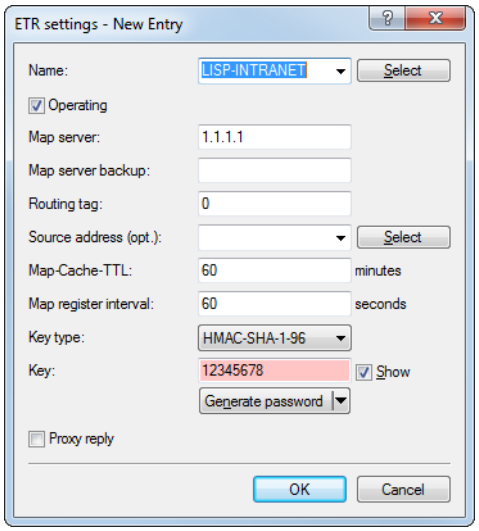


3. Create a new entry in the EID mapping table, which is used to link the EID prefix and the locator. Do this by navigating to **Routing protocols** > **LISP** > **EID mapping** and then click on **Add**.
   a) Set the **Name** to the LISP instance created previously, in this case LISP-INTRANET.
   b) Enable the entry **Operating**.
   c) Set both the **EID address type** and the **Locator address type** to IPv4.
   d) Set the **EID prefix** to INTRANET.
   e) Set the **Locator** to INTERNET.

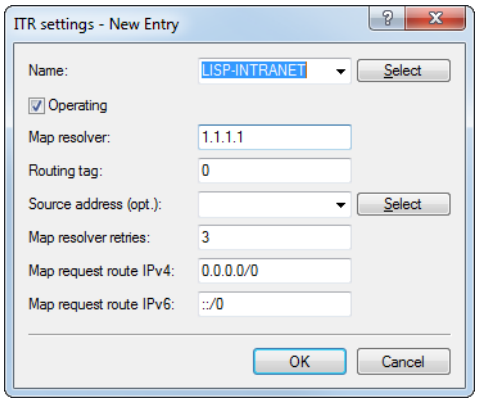


4. In the ETR settings table, create a new entry containing the parameters for communication with the map server. Do this by navigating to **Routing protocols** > **LISP** > **ETR settings** and then click on **Add**.
   a) Set the **Name** to the LISP instance created previously, in this case LISP-INTRANET.
   b) Enable the entry **Operating**.
   c) Set the **Map server** to 1.1.1.1.
   d) Set the **Routing tag** to 0.

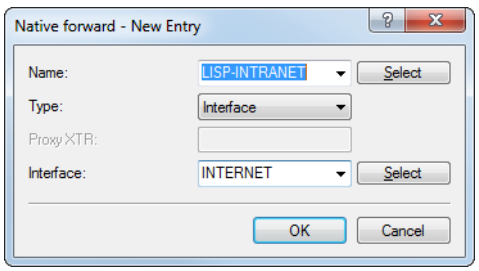
e) Set the **Key type** and the **Key** for connecting to the map server. These must match the type and password configured on the map server. In this example we take HMAC-SHA-1-96 and 12345678.



5. In the ITR settings table, create a new entry containing the parameters for communications with the map resolver. Do this by navigating to **Routing protocols** > **LISP** > **ITR settings** and then click on **Add**.
   a) Set the **Name** to the LISP instance created previously, in this case LISP-INTRANET.
   b) Enable the entry **Operating**.
   c) Set the **Map resolver** to 1.1.1.1.
   d) Set the **Routing tag** to 0.



6. Optional: Packets to destinations that are not LISP networks can be sent directly via a local interface, i.e. without using the LISP tunnel. In our example, the interface to be used is INTERNET. Create a new entry in the Native forward table. Do this by navigating to **Routing protocols** > **LISP** > **Native forward** and then click on **Add**.
   a) Set the **Name** to the LISP instance created previously, in this case LISP-INTRANET.
   b) Set the **Type** to **Interface**.
   c) Set the **Interface** to INTERNET.



7. Navigate to **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **WAN tag table**, click on **Add** and create an entry for the LISP instance with the instance ID of 1 that you just created.

   For each LISP instance, an entry with the corresponding interface tag for the EID/ARF network must be created in the WAN tag table.

   Do this by creating each entry with the name for the remote site set to LISP-<LISP instance ID>*. The name of each remote site is formed from the keyword LISP supplemented by the corresponding LISP instance ID (in hexadecimal form) and the wildcard *. This unequivocally assigns the incoming traffic from the LISP tunnel to the EID/ARF network.

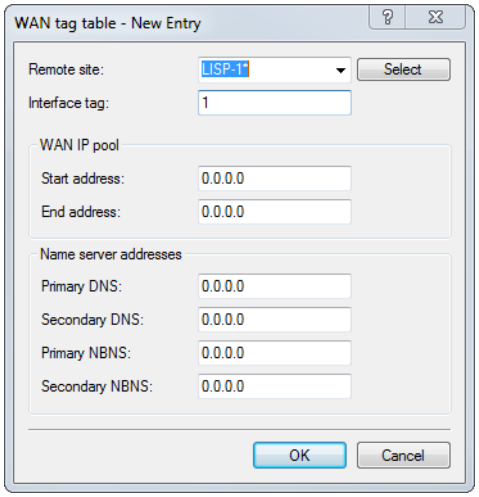
   The instance ID must be specified in hexadecimal without a leading 0x.

   Representation: LISP-<LISP instance ID>*

   Examples:

   - For LISP instance 1: LISP-1*
   - For LISP instance 15: LISP-F*

   a) Fill out the **Remote site** field as described above, i.e. the LISP instance with instance ID 1 takes the value "LISP-1*".
   b) Set the **Interface tag** to 1.



That's it!

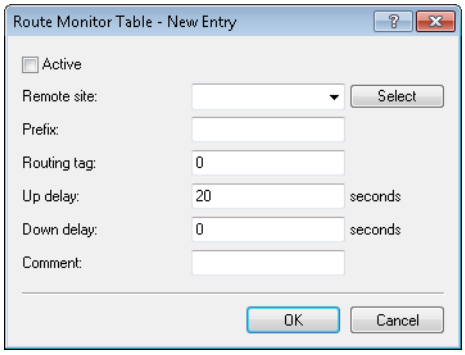
6.31 Route monitor

The route monitor observes the connections to the networks of different providers and establishes a backup connection in case of failure. The monitoring makes use of a trigger prefix, which providers supply in their routing protocol, for example with the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP). As soon as a route to a provider's network becomes unavailable, the route monitor declares the relevant trigger prefix to be invalid for its network and opens a backup connection to the provider's network.

6.31.1 Configuring the route monitor with LANconfig

To activate the route monitor, switch to the view **Communication** > **Call management** and check the option **Route monitor active**.

To configure the route monitor, open the **Route monitor table**.



Active

Specifies whether this backup connection is enabled.

Remote site

Contains the name of the backup remote site.

Prefix

Contains the prefix (IPv4 or IPv6 address) to be observed by the route monitor.

Routing tag

Contains the routing tag of the prefix being monitored.

Up delay

Should the prefix fail to arrive, the device waits for this delay in seconds before it connects to the backup peer.

Down delay

Once the prefix arrives, the device waits for the delay in seconds specified here before it disconnects from the backup peer.

The value "0" causes the device to disconnect from the backup peer immediately after the prefix arrives (no delay).

Comment

Comment on this entry.

6.32 DSLoL for WLAN routers

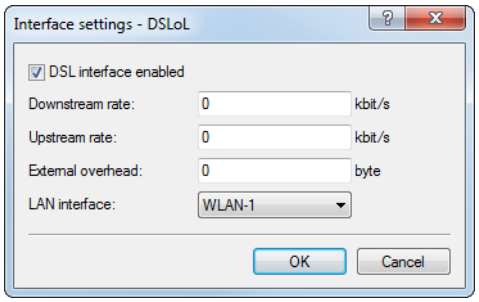
IPv4 addresses can only be masked ("NAT") on WAN connections. If you want to masquerade in the direction of a LAN or WLAN interface, then the corresponding LAN or WLAN interface must be declared as a DSL port in order for it to establish a WAN connection (typically by IPoE or DHCPoE).

Until LCOS10.12, this was only possible for access points. From LCOS10.20, DSLoL is also available for WLAN routers.

An example scenario for DSLoL:

A WLAN router should be used to connect to the Internet primarily over WLAN. This is done using the WLAN client mode. If the WLAN is not available, the Internet connection should instead be established via LTE/4G as a backup. For this purpose, an LTE/4G connection is configured as usual, and the other WLAN-based Internet connection is set up by operating DSLoL on the WLAN interface. This is done in LANconfig under **Interfaces** > **WAN** > **Interface settings** >

DSLoL by selecting the option **DSL interface enabled** and then setting the **LAN interface** to the WLAN that was earlier set up as the WLAN client.



The LTE/4G connection is now configured as a backup for the WLAN/DSLoL Internet connection.

7 IPv6

7.1 IPv6 basics

IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4) is a protocol for unique addressing of nodes in a network and, at the time of writing, it has defined all of the IP addresses assigned globally. The limited availability of address space required the development of IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), which is to replace the former standard. With a different IP-address structure, IPv6 provides for a greater range of IP addresses and thus increases the possible number of participants in networks worldwide.

7.1.1 Why use IPv6-standard IP addresses?

The new IPv6 standard was developed for the following reasons:

- IPv4 address space allows for approximately four billion IP addresses for unique identities in networks. When the IPv4 standard was implemented in the '80s this address space was considered to be sufficient. Due to the enormous growth of the World Wide Web and the unexpectedly large number of computers and network devices, an address shortage has arisen that the IPv6 standard is intended to bridge.
- The increase in address space with IPv6 hampers the scanning of IP addresses by viruses and Trojans. The broader spectrum provides greater protection against attacks.
- IPv6 has been implemented with a view to the security requirements. For this reason it uses the security protocol IPSec (IP Security). This provides secure network communications on layer 3 whereas many of IPv4 security mechanisms only operate on higher layers.
- Simplified, fixed descriptors for data packets save on router processing power and thus accelerate the available throughput.
- IPv6 allows for easier and faster transmission of data in real time, making it suitable for multimedia applications such as Internet telephony and Internet TV.
- So-called mobile IPs allow you to use a fixed IP address to login to different networks. This allows you to log on with your laptop using the same IP address, whether you are in your home network, in a café or at work.

7.1.2 IP address structure according to the IPv6 standard

The new IPv6 addresses are 128 bits long and the range of possible addresses can cater for about 340 sextillion network participants. IPv6 addresses consist of eight blocks of 16 bits and are written as hexadecimal numbers. The following is an example of a possible IPv6 address:

2001:0db8:0000:0000:0000:54f3:dd6b:0001/64

To improve the legibility of these IP addresses, zeros at the beginning of a block of numbers are omitted. It is also possible to omit one group of blocks that consist entirely of zeros. For the above example, one possible representation would be as follows:

2001:db8::54f3:dd6b:1/64

An IPv6 address consists of two parts; a prefix and an interface identifier. The prefix denotes the membership of the IP address to a network, while the interface identifier (e.g. in the case of auto-configuration) is generated from a link-layer address, and thus belongs to a particular network card. The device can also generate interface identifiers from random numbers. This improves security. In this way, multiple IPv6 addresses can be assigned to a single component.

The prefix describes the first part of the IP address. The length of the prefix is shown as a decimal number after a slash. For the example given here the prefix is:

2001:db8::/64

The remainder of the IP address is the interface identifier. In our example, this is:

::54f3:ddb6:1

Compared with the IP addresses for the IPv4 standard, a number of changes have resulted in the structure of the new IPv6 addresses:

- While IPv4 addresses cater for an address space of 32 bits, the new length of 128 bits results in a significantly larger address space with IPv6. IPv6 addresses are four times longer than IPv4 addresses.
- An interface can have multiple IPv6 addresses due to the potential assignment of multiple prefixes to a single interface identifier. With the IPv4 standard, an interface has only one IP address.
- IPv4 addresses must be assigned by a central server. This is usually a DHCP server. However, IPv6 can operate an auto-configuration, which makes the use of a DHCP server unnecessary. However, you the option of using a DHCP server is still open to you.

7.1.3 Stages of migration

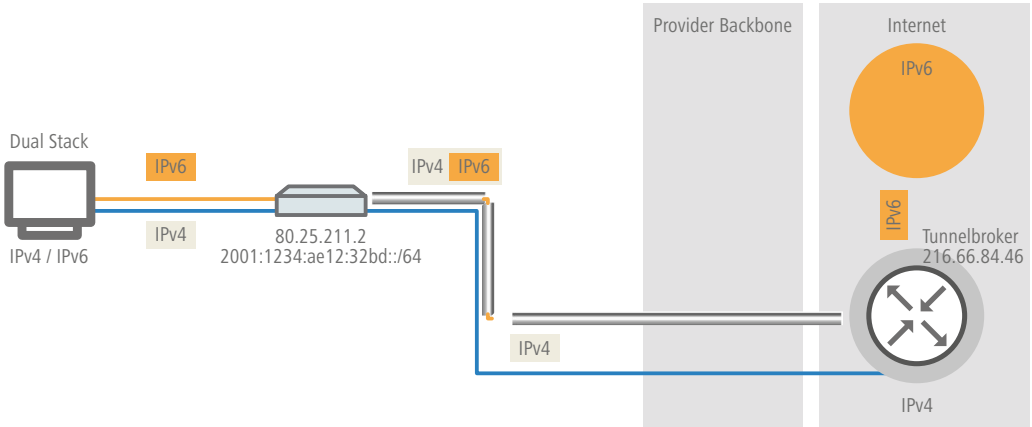
IPv6 is available to networks in a variety of ways. We make a distinction between environments with native IPv6 and those which provide IPv6 through a tunnel.

- **Native IPv6:** Native IPv6 describes a network that communicates to the outside only via IPv6. Users with IPv4 addresses can only access this network by communicating if the router uses one of the tunneling technologies below.
- **IPv6 via dual stack:** Dual stack refers to the parallel operation of IPv4 and IPv6 in a network.
- **IPv6 tunneling:** If a router does not have IPv6 Internet access, it can still access IPv6 networks by means of a tunnel.

7.2 IPv6 tunneling technologies

7.2.1 6in4 tunneling

6in4 tunnels are used to connect two hosts, routers, or to interconnect a host and router. This means that 6in4 tunnels can connect two IPv6 networks via an IPv4 network. The diagram shows a static 6in4 tunnel between the local router and a 6in4 gateway belonging to a tunnel broker.



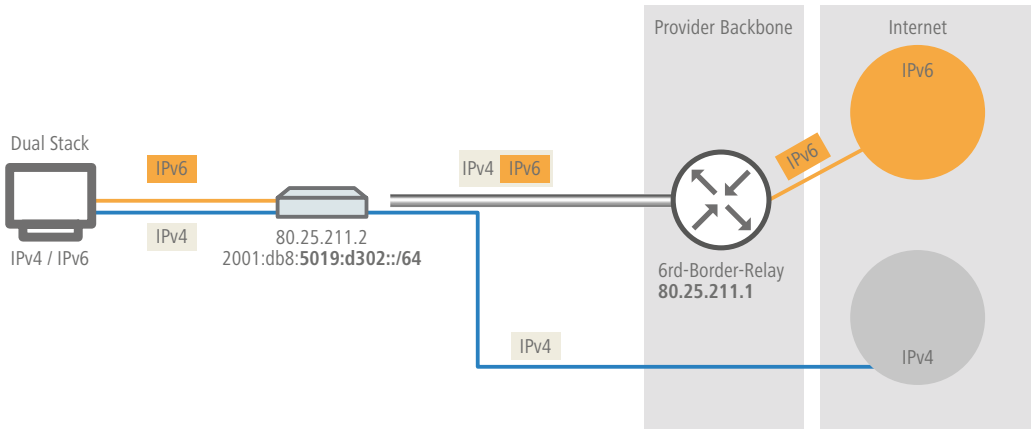
Unlike 6to4, these are dedicated services operated by a known provider. The end-points are fixed and the tunnel broker assigns a static prefix. The advantages of a 6in4 solution are that the gateways are fixed and the operator is known. The fixed prefix from the tunnel broker also determines the number of possible subnets that can be used. A 64-bit prefix (e. g. 2001:db8::/64) allows one subnet to be used. If a 48-bit prefix is used, 16 bits of the 64-bit prefix are available for use. This allows the implementation of up to 65,536 subnets.

The disadvantage of the 6in4 technology is the higher administrative effort. You must be registered with and login to the tunnel broker. In addition, the tunnel endpoints must be statically configured. Where a dynamic IPv4 address is used, the relevant data must be updated regularly. This can be automated by running a script on a router.

6in4 is a relatively secure and stable technology for providing IPv6 Internet access. This technology is thus suitable for operating web servers that are to be accessed over IPv6. The only drawback is the increased effort in administration. This technology is also suitable for professional use.

7.2.2 6rd tunneling

6rd (rapid deployment) is a development of 6to4. The underlying function is identical. The difference is that just one particular relay is used, as operated by a provider. This solves the two basic problems of the 6to4 technology—the lack of security and stability. The prefix with 6rd is either configured manually or sent via DHCP (IPv4), which further reduces the effort involved with configuration. The diagram is a schematic representation of a 6rd scenario.



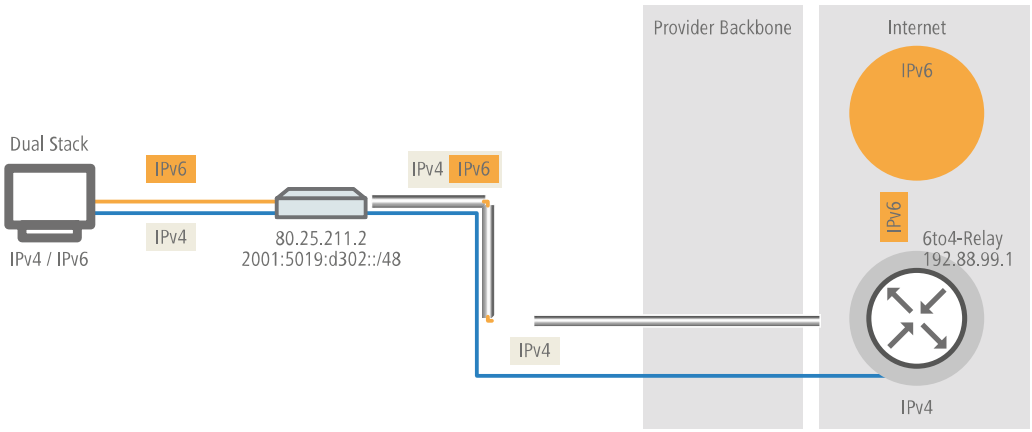
The provider assigns the router with a prefix (2001:db8::/32), which the router then supplements with its own IPv4 address. The IPv6 address generated in this way has the form: 2001:db8:5019:d302::/64. This makes 6rd interesting from two perspectives. The provider has a simple way to give its customers access to the IPv6 Internet. In addition, customers benefit from greatly simplified usage. They do not have to accept the security risks of 6to4, nor do they have to handle the complicated configuration of 6in4.

7.2.3 6to4 tunneling

6to4 tunneling offers you an easy way to set up a connection between two IPv6 networks via an IPv4 network. To this end, what is known as a 6to4 tunnel is set up:

- A router between the local IPv6 network and an IPv4 network serves to mediate between the networks.
- The router has both a public IPv4 address and an IPv6 address. The IPv6 address consists of an IPv6 prefix and the IPv4 address in hexadecimal notation. If a router such has the IPv4 address 80.25.211.2, this will first be converted into hexadecimal notation: 5019:d302. Supplementing this is an IPv6 prefix (e.g. 2002::/16), so that the IPv6 address for the router appears as follows: 2002:5019:d302::/48.
- If a device in the IPv6 network sends data packets via the router to a destination address in the IPv4 network, then the router first of all repacks the IPv6 packets and encapsulates them into a package with an IPv4 header. The router

then forwards the encapsulated package to a 6to4 relay. The 6to4 relay unpacks the packet and forwards it to the desired destination. The following illustration shows the operating principle of 6to4 tunneling:



6to4 tunnels establish a dynamic connection between IPv6 and IPv4 networks: the response packets may be routed back via a different 6to4 relay. 6to4 tunnels are not a point-to-point connection. For every new connection, the router always looks for the "nearest" public 6to4 relay. This is done using the anycast address 192.88.99.1. This aspect is an advantage of 6to4 tunneling on the one hand, but it also presents a disadvantage on the other. Public 6to4 relays do not require registration and are freely accessible. What's more, the dynamic connection is easily configured. In this way it is possible for any user to create a 6to4 tunnel over a public relay, quickly and easily.

On the other hand, the dynamic connection means that the user has no influence on the choice of the 6to4 relay. The provider of the relay is able to intercept or manipulate data.

7.2.4 Dual-Stack Lite (DS-Lite)

Dual-Stack Lite, abbreviated DS-Lite, is used so that Internet providers can supply their customers with access to IPv4 servers over an IPv6 connection. That is necessary, for example, if an Internet provider is forced to supply its customer with an IPv6 address due to the limited availability of IPv4 addresses. In contrast to the other three IPv6 tunnel methods "6in4", "6rd" and "6to4", DS-Lite is also used to transmit IPv4 packets on an IPv6 connection (IPv4 viaIPv6 tunnel).

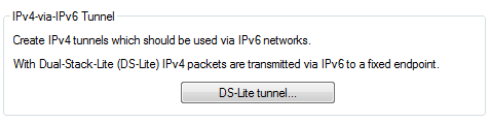
For this, the router packages the IPv4 packets in an IPv4-in-IPv6 tunnel and transmits them unmasked to the provider, who then performs a NAT with one of their own remaining IPv4 addresses.

To define a DS-Lite tunnel, all the router needs is the IPv6 address of the tunnel endpoint and the routing tag with which it can reach this address.

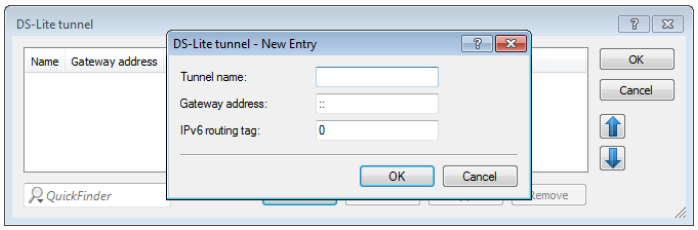
By default, the router uses the IPv4 address of the corresponding internal network, e.g., from "INTRANET". If you would like to define a different IP address instead (e.g., 192.0.0.2), it must be entered in the IP parameter list along with the remote site name of the DS-Lite tunnel.

Entering an IPv4 DNS server is not recommended for a DS-Lite tunnel, since its entries would unnecessarily fill the NAT table of the Internet provider.

You set up a DS-Lite tunnel in LANconfig via **IPv4** > **Tunnel** by clicking on **DS-Lite tunnel**.



Then click on the **Add** button and enter the designation of the tunnel, the IPv6 address of the gateway, and the routing tag.



Name of the tunnel

This entry determines the name of the IPv4-over-IPv6 tunnel.

Gateway address

This entry defines the address of the DS-Lite gateway, the so-called Address Family Transition Router (AFTR).

The following values are possible:

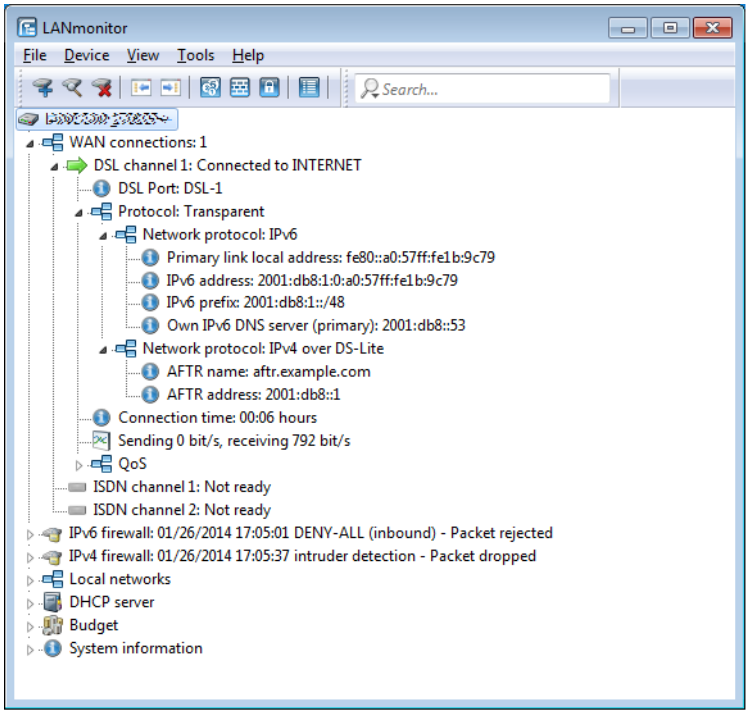
- One IPv6 address (e.g. 2001:db8::1)
- An FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) that can be resolved by DNS, e.g., aftr.example.com
- The IPv6 unspecified address "::" determines that the device should retrieve the address of the AFTRs via DHCPv6 (factory setting).
- An empty field behaves the same as the entry "::".

IPv6 routing tag

The routing tag uniquely specifies the route to the DS-Lite gateway.

With DS-Lite, since the NAT is performed by the provider, the function of many applications depends on the settings of the NAT provider (e.g., SIP, H.323, IRC or IPSec). PPTP does not work via DS-Lite at all. If the provider does not operate port forwarding, the IPv4 server services do not function.

The status table and the number of current DS-Lite connections can be shown using LANmonitor:



7.3 DHCPv6

Compared to IPv4, clients in an IPv6 network do not require automatic address assignment from a DHCP server because they use auto-configuration. However, because certain information such as DNS server addresses are not transmitted during auto-configuration, certain application scenarios can benefit from a DHCP service on the IPv6 network.

7.3.1 DHCPv6 server

The use of a DHCPv6 server is optional for IPv6. In principle, a DHCPv6 server supports two modes:

- **Stateless**: The DHCPv6 server does not distribute addresses but only information, such as DNS server addresses. Using this method, clients generate their own IPv6 addresses by "stateless address auto-configuration (SLAAC)". This method is particularly attractive for example for small networks in order to keep administration efforts to a minimum.
- **Stateful**: The DHCPv6 server distributes IPv6 addresses, similar to IPv4. This method is more complicated, since a DHCPv6 server has to assign and manage the addresses.

A DHCPv6 server distributes only the options that are explicitly requested by an IPv6 client, i. e. the server only assigns an address to a client if it explicitly requests one.

Additionally, the DHCPv6 server can pass on prefixes to routers for further distribution. This method is referred to as "prefix delegation". A DHCPv6 client must have explicitly requested this prefix, however.

7.3.2 DHCPv6 client

The auto-configuration available with IPv6 networks makes it very easy and convenient to configure the clients.

However, in order for a client to receive additional information, such as a DNS server address, you must configure the device so that it can activate the DHCPv6 client when necessary.

The settings for the DHCPv6 client ensure that a device receiving certain flags in the router advertisement will start the DHCPv6 client, which can then send requests to the DHCPv6 server:

- **M flag**: If an appropriately configured device receives a router advertisement with the "M flag" set, the DHCPv6 client will request an IPv6 address from the DHCPv6 server along with other information such as DNS server, SIP server and NTP server.
- **O flag**: With an "O flag", the DHCPv6 client requests the DHCPv6 server for information such as a DNS server, SIP server and NTP server only, but not an IPv6 address.

If the "M flag"' is set, the "O flag" does not necessarily have to be set as well.

With IPv6, the default route is distributed via router advertisements and not via DHCPv6.

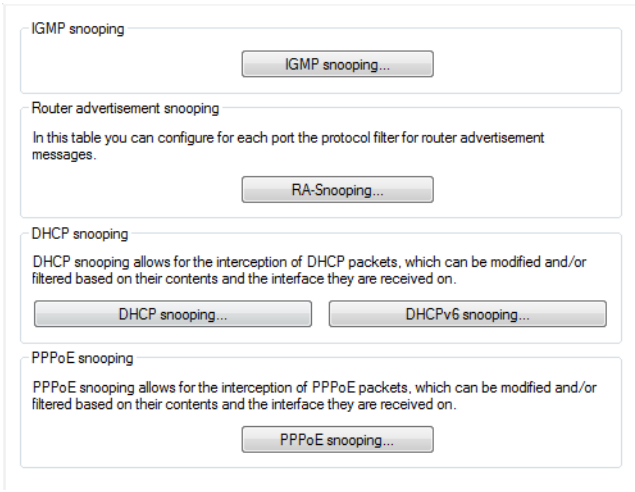
7.3.3 Lightweight DHCPv6 relay agent (LDRA)

Unlike a DHCPv6 relay agent, which has the full IPv6 features (such as ICMPv6) and can route data packets on the network (layer 3), a lightweight DHCPv6 relay agent as per RFC 6221 enables only the creation and forwarding of relay-agent information between DHCPv6 clients and DHCPv6 servers (layer 2).

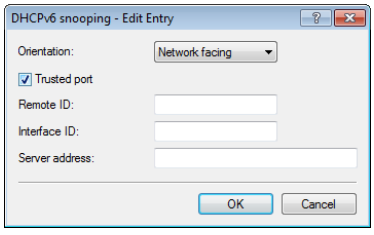
In contrast to DHCPv4 snooping, the LDRA does not simply append the DHCPv6 packets with information about the relay agent: Instead, it packs the message from the client into a separate option, prepends its own relay-agent header and then forwards this DCHPv6 packet with its supplementary information to the DHCPv6 server (relay forward message).

The DHCPv6 server evaluates this data packet and sends a similarly packaged response to the relay agent. This then extracts the message and sends it to the requesting client (relay-reply message).

In LANconfig you can set up DHCPv6 snooping for each interface under **Interfaces** > **Snooping** and a click on **DHCPv6 snooping**.



After selecting the appropriate interface, you can set the following:



Orientation

This is where you enable or disable DHCPv6 snooping. The following options are possible:

- **Network facing**: The LDRA uses this interface to communicate with a DHCPv6 server.
- **Client facing**: The LDRA uses this interface to communicate with DHCPv6 clients connected to the network.

The default setting **Network facing** disables the LDRA.

Trusted port

With this option enabled, the LDRA forwards DHCP requests from clients and also DHCP responses from DHCP servers. If this interface is classified as not trusted, the LDRA discards DHCPv6 requests to this interface. Similarly, the LDRA does not forward DHCPv6 responses with the wrong interface ID to the client.

Remote ID

According to RFC 4649, the remote ID uniquely identifies the client making a DHCPv6 request.

Interface ID

The interface ID uniquely identifies the interface used by a client to make a DHCPv6 request.

Server address

You can set the IPv6 address of a DHCPv6 server here.

Leave this field blank if you want to receive responses from all DHCPv6 servers on the network. Otherwise the LDRA reacts only to DHCPv6 responses from the server you have specified. In this case, the LDRA discards responses from other DHCPv6 servers.

You can use the following variables for **Remote ID** and **Interface ID**:

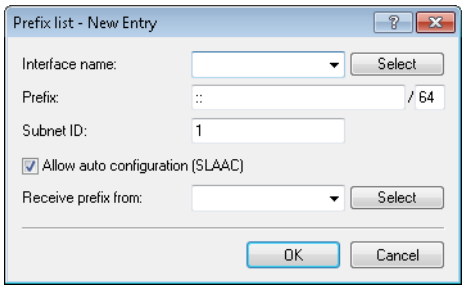
- `%%`: Inserts a percent sign.
- `%c`: Inserts the MAC address of the interface where the relay agent received the DHCP request. If a WLAN-SSID is involved, then this is the corresponding BSSID.
- `%i`: Inserts the name of the interface where the relay agent received the DHCP request.
- `%n`: Inserts the name of the DHCP relay agent as specified under **Setup** > **Name**.
- `%v`: Inserts the VLAN ID of the DHCP request packet. This VLAN ID is sourced either from the VLAN header of the DHCP packet or from the VLAN ID mapping for this interface.
- `%p`: Inserts the name of the Ethernet interface that received the DHCP packet. This variable is useful for devices featuring an Ethernet switch or Ethernet mapper, because they can map multiple physical interfaces to a single logical interface. For other devices, `%p` and `%i` are identical.
- `%s`: Inserts the WLAN SSID if the DHCP packet originates from a WLAN client. For other clients, this variable contains an empty string.
- `%e`: Inserts the serial number of the relay agent, to be found for example under **Management** > **General**.

7.3.4 Prefix-exclude option for DHCPv6 prefix delegation

The DHCPv6 client of the device supports the prefix exclude option for DHCPv6-based prefix delegation according to RFC 6603.

Providers use this mechanism with DHCPv6 prefix delegation in order to exclude a prefix from the delegated prefix set from being used on the customer LAN. This means that the device does not require an additional prefix for the WAN link, but instead it uses the prefix that was excluded from the delegated DHCPv6 prefix set. This prefix is no longer available for the LAN on the customer site.

If a device is configured to use the excluded prefix for the LAN, is a syslog message is issued and the prefix is not advertised on the LAN. To resolve this conflict, you configure a different subnet ID for this LAN under **IPv6** > **Router advertisement** > **Prefix list**.

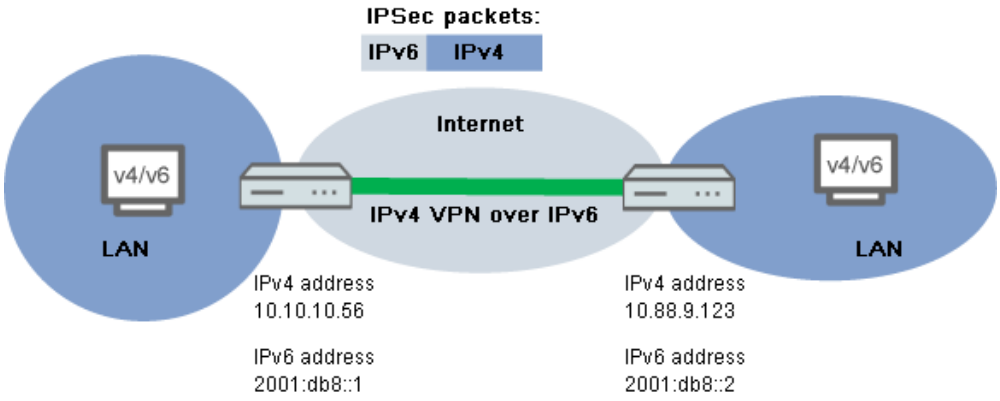


7.4 IPv4 VPN tunnel via IPv6

Until now it was not possible to set up a VPN between two remote stations using private IPv4 addresses to access the Internet (e. g. 3G/4G networking).

This restriction no longer exists with IPv6, because every IPv6 device receives a public IPv6 address. Thus IPv6 can be used to set up an IPv4 VPN tunnel to interconnect two remote IPv4 networks, regardless of the IPv4 WAN addresses used at each site.

In the example shown, two local IPv4 networks are connected via an IPv4 VPN tunnel, which is established over an IPv6 Internet connection. The IPv4 VPN packets are given IPv6 headers and sent to the remote site via the IPv6 Internet connection (either native or via tunnel broker).



7.4.1 Setup Wizard—Setting up an IPv4 VPN connection via IPv6

The Setup Wizard option “Connect two local area networks” helps you to set up a VPN connection.

1. Start LANconfig

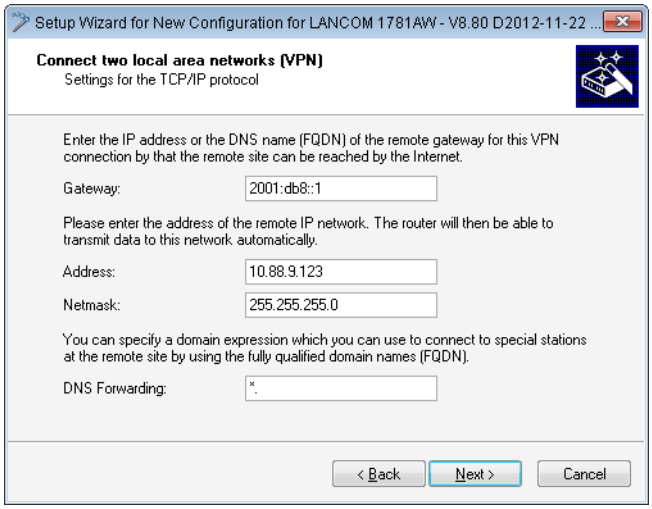
   LANconfig now automatically searches the local network for devices. As soon as LANconfig has completed its search, it presents a list of all the devices it found, if possible with a brief description, the IP address and the status.

2. Choose your device from the selection window in LANconfig and select the **Setup Wizard** button or use the menu under **Tools** > **Setup Wizard**.

   LANconfig first reads out the device configuration and then displays the selection window with the optional applications.

3. Launch the action **Connect two local area networks**.

4. Follow the Wizard's instructions and enter the necessary data.
5. As the gateway address, enter the IPv6 address of the gateway.



6. You can then close the Wizard with **Finish**.

   The Setup Wizard writes the configuration to the device.

7.5 IPv6 firewall

7.5.1 Function

While the IPv4 firewall only controls the forwarding of IP data, the IPv6 firewall also regulates the functions of the access lists for all IPv6 server services. Therefore, the IPv6 firewall is similar to a classic firewall design, which separately supports the inbound and outbound communications, as well as forwarding. Since the configuration of the device specifically controls communication, the device does not require an outbound firewall.

7.5.2 Configuration

The configuration of the IPv6 firewall is practically the same as the IPv4 firewall; however, it is performed separately.

The inbound and forwarding firewalls each have their own rule tables, which are similar in scope and structure to the IPv4 firewall.

The rules are sorted with decreasing priority, i. e. the rule with the highest priority is at the top of the list. Rules of the same priority are sorted by their precision, analogous to the IPv4 procedure. If a rule requires further actions, these are also performed by firewall in sequence. Otherwise, firewall filtering is terminated after the current rule has been applied.

7.5.3 Default entries for the IPv6 firewall rules

By default, IPv6 firewall has a number of filter rules that are applied on incoming data streams.

Default entries for the inbound rules

This overview contains the rules that the firewall will apply to inbound connections. The factory settings provide the following rules for the most important applications:

ALLOW-ICMP, ACCEPT

Allow all connections using ICMPV6.

ALLOW-DHCP-CLIENT, ACCEPT

Allow communication with the DHCPv6 client.

ALLOW-DHCP-SERVER, ACCEPT

Allow communication with the DHCPv6 server.

ALLOW-CONFIG-LOCALNET, ACCEPT

Allow configuration in the local network via HTTP, HTTPS, SNMP, SSH, TELNET, TFTP.

ALLOW-CONFIG-VPN, ACCEPT-VPN

Allow VPN communication via HTTP, HTTPS, SNMP, SSH, TELNET, and TFTP.

ALLOW-DNS-SERVER, ACCEPT

Allow unsecured communication from the local network with the internal DNS server.

ALLOW-DNS-SERVER-VPN, ACCEPT-VPN

Allow VPN communication with the internal DNS server.

DENY-ALL, REJECT-SNMP

Block all communication and send a message to the admin via SNMP.

ALLOW-CONFIG-WAN, ACCEPT

Allow communication via the WAN interface via HTTPS, SSH. (deactivated)

ALLOW-IPSEC, ACCEPT

Allow all VPN communication over IPSec. (deactivated)

ALLOW-IPSEC-HTTPS-ENCAPSULTION, ACCEPT

Allow all VPN communication with HTTPS over IPSec. (deactivated)

Default entries for the forwarding rules

This table contains the rules that the firewall will apply for forwarding data. The factory settings provide the following rules for the most important applications:

ALLOW-VPN, ACCEPT-VPN

Allow all connections using IPSec.

DENY-ALL, REJECT-SNMP

Block all communication via SNMP.

ALLOW-OUTBOUND, ACCEPT-VPN

Allow all outbound communication.

CONTENT-FILTER

Block communication via content filter profile **CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC**.

Content Filter must be activated.

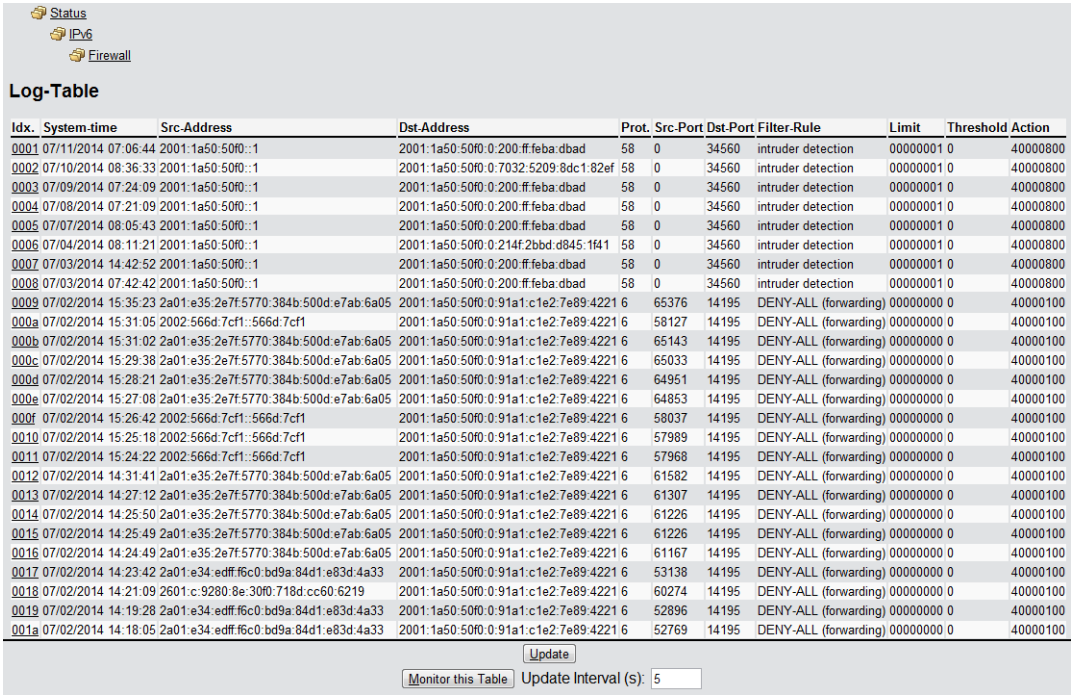
7.5.4 IPv6 firewall log table

Similar to the IPv4 firewall, the IPv6 firewall provides a log table of events in the IPv6 environment.

The syntax of the log table is the same as the IPv4 log table with the exception of the IP address format (IPv6 addresses are in hexadecimal format, IPv4 in decimal format).

IPv6-Firewall-Log-Tabelle über WEBconfig auswerten

You can open IPv6 log tables in WEBconfig with **LCOS menu tree** > **Status** > **IPv6** > **Firewall** > **Log table**.



Idx.	System-time	Src-Address	Dst-Address	Prot.	Src-Port	Dst-Port	Filter-Rule	Limit	Threshold	Action
0001	07/11/2014 07:06:44	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:200:ff:feba:dbad	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0002	07/10/2014 08:36:33	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:7032:5209:8dc1:82ef	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0003	07/09/2014 07:24:09	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:200:ff:feba:dbad	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0004	07/08/2014 07:21:09	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:200:ff:feba:dbad	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0005	07/07/2014 08:05:43	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:200:ff:feba:dbad	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0006	07/04/2014 08:11:21	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:214f:2bbd:d845:1f41	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0007	07/03/2014 14:42:52	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:200:ff:feba:dbad	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0008	07/03/2014 07:42:42	2001:1a50:50f0::1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:200:ff:feba:dbad	58	0	34560	intruder detection	00000001	0	40000800
0009	07/02/2014 15:35:23	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	65376	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
000a	07/02/2014 15:31:05	2002:566d:7cf1::566d:7cf1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	58127	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
000b	07/02/2014 15:31:02	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	65143	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
000c	07/02/2014 15:29:38	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	65033	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
000d	07/02/2014 15:28:21	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	64951	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
000e	07/02/2014 15:27:08	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	64853	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
000f	07/02/2014 15:26:42	2002:566d:7cf1::566d:7cf1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	58037	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0010	07/02/2014 15:25:18	2002:566d:7cf1::566d:7cf1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	57989	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0011	07/02/2014 15:24:22	2002:566d:7cf1::566d:7cf1	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	57968	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0012	07/02/2014 14:31:41	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	61582	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0013	07/02/2014 14:27:12	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	61307	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0014	07/02/2014 14:25:50	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	61226	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0015	07/02/2014 14:25:49	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	61226	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0016	07/02/2014 14:24:49	2a01:e35:2e7f:5770:384b:500d:e7ab:6a05	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	61167	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0017	07/02/2014 14:23:42	2a01:e34:edff:f6c0:bd9a:84d1:e83d:4a33	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	53138	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0018	07/02/2014 14:21:09	2601:c:9280:8e:30f0:718d:cc60:6219	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	60274	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
0019	07/02/2014 14:19:28	2a01:e34:edff:f6c0:bd9a:84d1:e83d:4a33	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	52896	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100
001a	07/02/2014 14:18:05	2a01:e34:edff:f6c0:bd9a:84d1:e83d:4a33	2001:1a50:50f0:0:91a1:c1e2:7e89:4221	6	52769	14195	DENY-ALL (forwarding)	00000000	0	40000100

The items have the following meanings:

- **Idx.**: Consecutive index. Furthermore, the table can also be checked via SNMP.
- **System time**: System time in UTC encoding (converted to plain text for display).
- **Source addresses**: Source address of the filtered packets.
- **Destination addresses**: Destination address of the filtered packets.
- **Prot.**: Protocol (TCP, UDP, etc.) of the filtered packets.
- **Source port**: Source port of the filtered packet (only for port related protocols).
- **Destination port**: Destination port of the filtered packet (only for port related protocols).
- **Filter rule**: Name of the rule that created the entry. If the filtering was caused by several rules all applicable rules are listed. If there is not enough space '...' is shown.
- **Limit:** Bit field that contains the description of the limit that caused the firewall to apply the filter. There following values are currently defined:
  - 0x01: Absolute number
  - 0x02: Number per second
  - 0x04: Number per minute
  - 0x08: Number per hour:
  - 0X10: Global limit
  - 0x20: Byte limit (if not set, it is a packet limit)
  - 0x40: Limit only applies in the inbound direction
  - 0x80: Limit only applies in the outbound direction
- **Threshold**: Threshold limit value of the triggering limit.
- **Action**: Bit field which lists all the actions performed. The following values are currently defined:
  - 0x00000001: Accept
  - 0x00000100: Reject
  - 0x00000200: Establish filter

- 0x00000400: Internet (default router) filter
- 0x00000800: Drop
- 0x00001000: Disconnect
- 0x00004000: Lock source address
- 0x00020000: Lock destination address and port
- 0X20000000: Send SYSLOG notification message
- 0x40000000: Send SNMP trap
- 0x80000000: Send e-mail

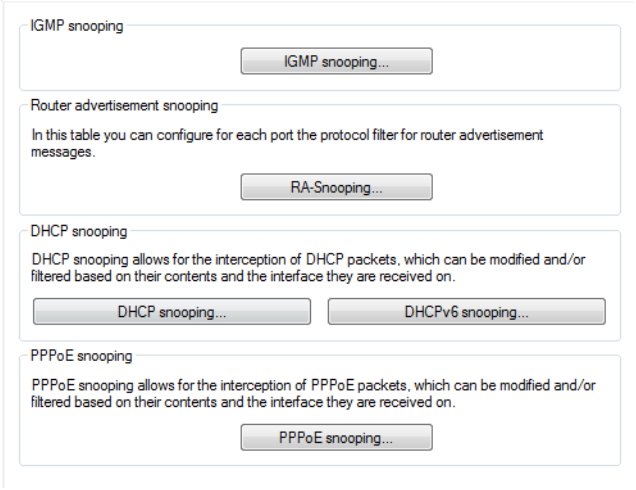
All firewall actions also appear in the IP router trace .

7.6 Router advertisement snooping

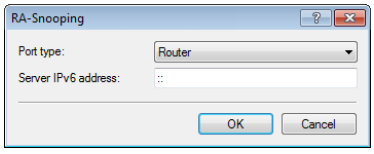
In an IPv6 network, router advertisements are sent by routers, either periodically or upon request, to present themselves as a gateway for networked clients. As with DHCPv4, attackers can use this mechanism to deliver a fake network configuration to the requesting clients.

With RA snooping, the device mediates router advertisements from routers only, and not from clients. By specifying the address of a router, the router advertisements can be restricted to one specific router as the broadcaster.

In LANconfig you can set up RA snooping for each interface under **Interfaces** > **Snooping** and a click on **RA snooping**.



After selecting the appropriate interface, you can set the following:



Port type

Specify the preferred interface type here. The following options are possible:

- **Router**: The device mediates all of the RAs arriving at this interface (default).
- **Client**: The device discards all of the RAs arriving at this interface.

Router-Address

If you have selected the interface type **Router**, enter an optional router address here. If you specify a router address, the device will only mediate RAs from that router.

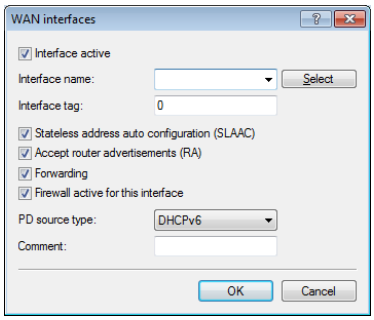
With the interface type **Client** selected, the device ignores this input field.

7.7 IPv6 prefix delegation from the WWAN to the LAN

For cellular networks with IPv6 support, the support of DHCPv6 prefix delegation is only expected to be provided with 3GPP Release 10. So for cellular networks earlier than Release 10, the only way to assign just one /64 prefix to a terminal device is, for example, by using router advertisements. In the case of smartphones or laptops, this method allows IPv6 support to be implemented relatively simply. However, each IPv6 router needs at least one additional prefix that it can propagate to clients on the LAN.

IPv6 prefix delegation from the WWAN into the LAN makes it possible for clients to use the /64 prefix, as assigned on the WAN cellular network side, to be used on the LAN. This makes it possible to operate a router in an IPv6 cellular network without DHCPv6 prefix delegation and neighbor discovery proxy (ND proxy). The router announces the assigned /64 prefix by router advertisement on the LAN, rather than adding it at the WAN interface. Clients can then generate an address from this prefix and use it for IPv6 communication.

To do this, you configure the IPv6 Internet access in the normal way. Additionally you should go to **IPv6** > **General** > **IPv6 interfaces** > **WAN interface** and, for the corresponding WAN interface, switch the parameter **PD source type** from "DHCPv6" to "Router advertisement".



The following restrictions apply:

- You can only use the feature on point-to-point connections (such as PPP), whereby the remote station automatically sends all traffic to the router because there is no ND proxy.
- You can create only one IPv6 network in the LAN, because only one /64 prefix is available.
- This feature is not suitable for scenarios where an interim router cannot or does not perform prefix delegation, with the exception of point-to-point connections.
- The automatically generated IPv6 address on the WAN interface cannot be reached from clients on the LAN, because there is no ND proxy.

7.8 IPv6 configuration menu

Where previous versions provided configuration menus for TCP/IP for IPv4, you now find the options **IPv4** and **IPv6**.

Click on **IPv6** to adjust the settings for this protocol. The **IPv6** configuration is divided into the options

- **General**,

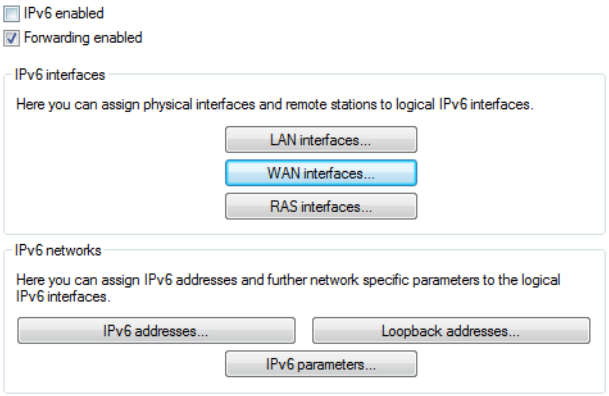
- **Router advertisement**,
- **DHCPv6** and
- **Tunnel**.

By default a click on **IPv6** takes you straight to the *General* on page 528 options.

7.8.1 General

This is where you make the basic settings.

- **IPv6 enabled:** This is where you can enable or disable IPv6 for the device.
- **Forwarding enabled:** Forwarding is used for packet forwarding between IPv6 interfaces. This option is activated by default.



IPv6 interfaces

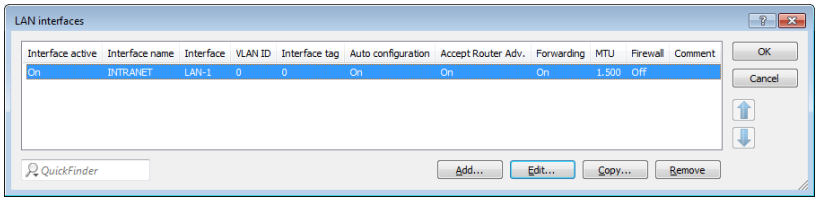
The buttons **LAN interfaces**, **WAN interfaces** and **RAS interfaces** access the tables where you can add new interfaces, configure existing interfaces, or delete them.

IPv6 networks

The buttons **IPv6 addresses** and **IPv6 parameters** are used to assign IPv6 addresses to interfaces and to configure the interface parameters (gateway address, primary and secondary DNS). Using the **Loopback addresses** button, you can define IPv6 loopback addresses which the device considers to be additional sender addresses.

LAN interfaces

For each existing IPv4 network, you must create an equivalent IPv6 network under **LAN interfaces**. Here, the settings for interface binding, routing tag, and VLAN ID must match the settings of the corresponding IPv4 network settings. Because a device can have multiple IPv6 addresses, you must add statically configured IPv6 addresses under **IPv6 addresses**.



Entries in the **LAN interfaces** table have the following meaning:

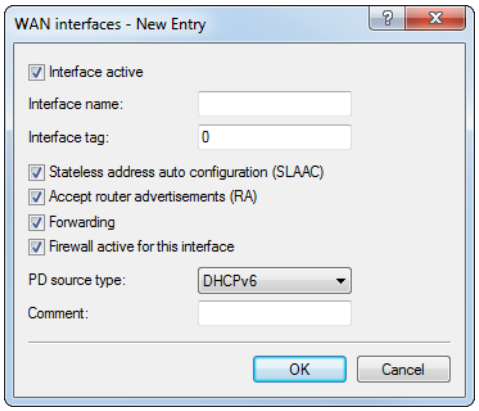
- **Interface active**: Activates or deactivates this LAN interface.
- **Interface name** or **Network name**: Enter a name for the logical IPv6 interface which is to apply to the physical interface (interface assignment) and the VLAN ID.

- **Interface**: Select the physical interface to be combined with the VLAN ID to form the logical IPv6 interface. With IPv6, the mapping "any" used with IPv4 is no longer possible.
- **VLAN ID**: Select the VLAN ID to be combined with the physical interface to form the logical IPv6 interface.
- **Interface tag**: The interface tag that you enter here is a value that uniquely identifies the network. All packets received by this device on this network will be internally marked with this tag. The interface tag enables the routes which are valid for this network to be separated even without explicit firewall rules.
- **Autoconfiguration**: Enable or disable the automatic configuration of addresses (SLAAC or DHCPv6) for this interface in the client role.

  If the device itself sends router advertisements from this interface, it does not produce IPv6 addresses from received router advertisements from other routers, even when auto-configuration is enabled.
- **Accept router advertisements**: Enables or disables the processing of received router advertisement messages. With processing disabled, the device ignores any prefix, DNS and router information received via router advertisements.
- **Forwarding**: Enables or disables the forwarding of data packets to other interfaces. With forwarding disabled, no router advertisements are transmitted from this interface.
- **MTU**: Here you set the valid MTU for the corresponding link.
- **Firewall**: If the global firewall is enabled for IPv6 interfaces, you can disable the firewall for an individual interface here.
- **Comment**: Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

WAN interfaces

For each remote site with which you want to communicate using IPv6, you must additionally create an equivalent logical IPv6 WAN interface under **WAN interfaces**. This is then selected at the remote site.



Entries in the **WAN interfaces** table have the following meaning:

Interface active

Activates or deactivates this WAN interface.

Interface name

Give the logical IPv6 interface a name. This can be selected at the corresponding IPv4 remote site. The default setting is always the WAN interface DEFAULT. If an empty entry is selected as an IPv6 remote station, then IPv6 is not active for this remote site.

An entry in the WAN interfaces table can be referenced multiple times by remote sites.

Interface tag

The interface tag that you enter here is a value that uniquely identifies the network. All packets received by this device on this network will be internally marked with this tag. The interface tag enables the routes which are valid for this network to be separated even without explicit firewall rules.

Auto configuration

Enable or disable the automatic configuration of addresses (SLAAC or DHCPv6) for this interface in the client role.

Accept router advertisements

Enables or disables the processing of received router advertisement messages. With processing disabled, the device ignores any prefix, DNS and router information received via router advertisements.

Forwarding

Enables or disables the forwarding of data packets to other interfaces. With forwarding disabled, no router advertisements are transmitted from this interface.

Firewall active for this interface

If the global firewall is enabled for IPv6 interfaces, you can disable the firewall for an individual interface here.

PD source type

This option allows you to set the way the router performs the prefix delegation:

- **DHCPv6**: Prefix delegation is performed via DHCPv6.
- **Router advertisement**: Prefix delegation is performed via router advertisement and the DHCPv6 client does not start.

Comment

Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

RAS interfaces

There are basically two ways to manage the configuration of RAS remote stations:

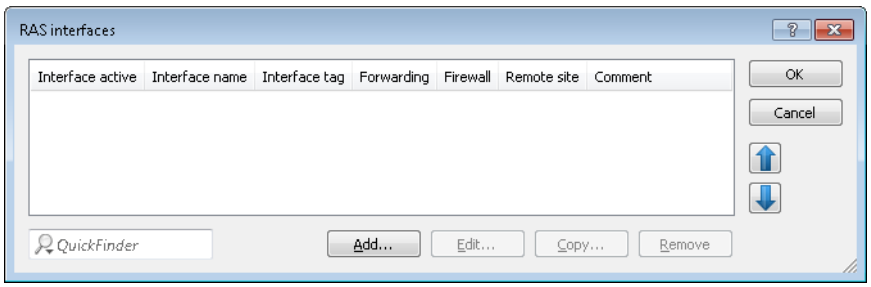
The user data or the configurations are locally stored on the device.

The advantage of this alternative is that a RADIUS server is not necessary, which reduces the management and cost of the network infrastructure.

The user data or the configurations are stored on an external RADIUS server.

The advantage of this alternative is the centralized user management for extensive distributed network scenarios.

For RAS access via IPv6, you must also set up the corresponding **RAS interface**.



Entries in the **RAS interfaces** table have the following meaning:

- **Interface active**: Enable or disable this interface here.
- **Interface name**: Here you define the name of the RAS interface that the IPv6 remote sites use for access.
- **Interface tag**: The interface tag that you enter here is a value that uniquely identifies the network. All packets received by this device on this network will be internally marked with this tag. The interface tag enables the routes which are valid for this network to be separated even without explicit firewall rules.

- **Forwarding**: Enables or disables the forwarding of data packets to other interfaces.
- **Firewall**: If the global firewall is enabled for IPv6 interfaces, you can disable the firewall for each interface individually here. To globally enable the firewall for all interfaces, navigate to **Firewall/QoS** > **General** and check the option **IPv6 firewall/QoS enabled**.

  If you disable the global firewall, the firewall of an individual interface is also disabled. This applies even if you have enabled this option.
- **Remote site**: Specify the remote site or a list of remote sites for RAS dial-in users.

  The following values are possible:

  - A single remote station from the tables under **Setup** > **WAN** > **PPTP-Peers**, **Setup** > **WAN** > **L2TP-Peers** or **Setup** > **PPPoE-Server** > **Name-list**.
  - The wildcard "*" makes the interface valid for all PPTP, PPPoE and L2TP peers.
  - The "*" wildcard as a suffix or prefix of the peer, such as "COMPANY*" or "*TUNNEL" .

  Using the wildcards you can create several peers for IPv6 RAS services based on so-called template interfaces These template interfaces can be used as normal interfaces for IPv6 services such as DHCPv6 server or router advertisements. For example, using these, a group of RAS interfaces can be provided from an IPv6 prefix pool.
- **Comment**: Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

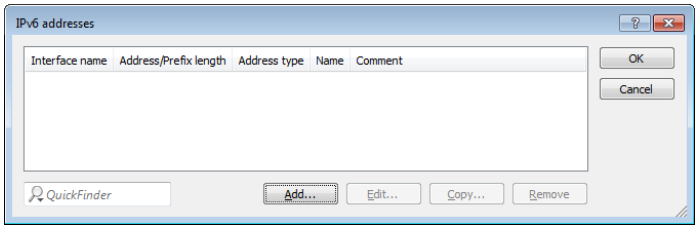
Information on RADIUS attributes for IPv6 RAS services can be found under *RADIUS attribute extensions for IPv6 RAS services*.

If RAS clients are to be delegated to an IPv6 DNS server or are to receive their prefixes by prefix delegation, you must create a corresponding entry in the table **DHCPv6 networks** under **IPv6** > **DHCPv6**.

If you wish to authenticate a user by PPP list, you navigate to **Communication** > **Protocols** > **PPP list** and enable the option **Activate IPv6 routing** for that user.

IPv6 addresses

The **IPv6 addresses** table is used to create IPv6 addresses for LAN and WAN interfaces.



Entries in the **IPv6 addresses** table have the following meaning:

- **Interface name**: Give a name to the interface that you want to assign the IPv6 network.
- **Address/prefix length**: Specify an IPv6 address including the prefix length for this interface.

  The default prefix length is 64 bits ("/64"). If possible do not use IPv6 addresses with longer prefixes, as many IPv6 mechanisms in the device (e.g. autoconfiguration) are designed for a maximum length of 64 bits.

  Example:

  - Global unicast address: "2001:db8::1/64"
  - Unique local address: "fd00::1/64"

  Link-local addresses are fixed and not configurable.
- **Address type**: Specify the type of IPv6 address.

  Options:

- Unicast
- Anycast
- EUI-64

With the address type EUI-64, IPv6 addresses conform to the IEEE standard "EUI-64". The MAC address of the interface thus forms a uniquely identifiable part of the IPv6 address. The correct input format for an IPv6 address including the prefix length as per EUI-64 would be: "2001:db8:1::/64". "EUI-64" ignores any value set as interface identifier in the corresponding IPv6 address and replaces it with an interface identifier as per "EUI-64". The prefix length for "EUI-64" must be "/64".

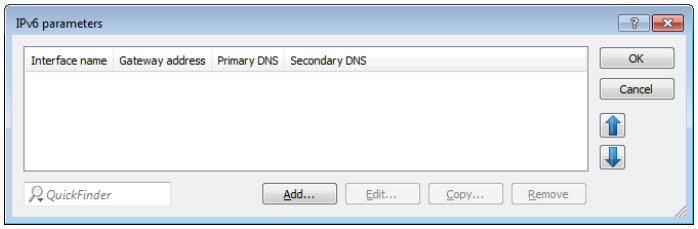
With the Unicast address type, you use the **Address/prefix length** field to specify a full IPv6 address along with its interface identifier, e.g. "2001:db8::1234/64".

With the Anycast address type, you can also use the **Address/prefix length** field to specify a full IPv6 address along with its interface identifier, e.g. "2001:db8::1234/64". Internally, the device handles this address as an anycast address.

- **Name**: Enter a descriptive name for this combination of IPv6 address and prefix.
- **Comment**: Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

IPv6 parameters

The table **IPv6 parameters** is used to manually configure static parameters for LAN or WAN interfaces, IPv6 DNS servers, and IPv6 gateways if you choose not to use autoconfiguration or DHCPv6.



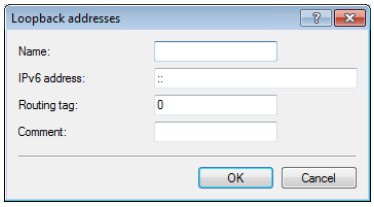
Entries in the **IPv6 parameters** table have the following meaning:

- **Interface name**: Give a name to the interface for which the IPv6 parameters are to be configured.
- **Gateway address**: Specify the IPv6 gateway to be used by this interface.

  This parameter overrides gateway information that the device may receive via router advertisements, for example.
- **Primary DNS**: Specify the primary IPv6 DNS server to be used by this interface.
- **Secondary DNS**: Specify the secondary IPv6 DNS server to be used by this interface.

Loopback addresses

IPv6 loopback addresses can be specified in the **Loopback addresses** table. The device sees each of these addresses as its own address, which is also available if a physical interface is disabled, for example.



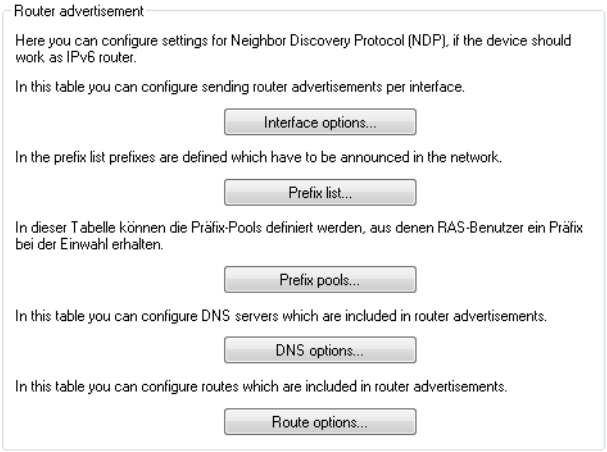
Entries in the **Loopback addresses** table have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Enter a unique name for this loopback address.
- **IPv6 address**: Enter a valid IPv6 address here.

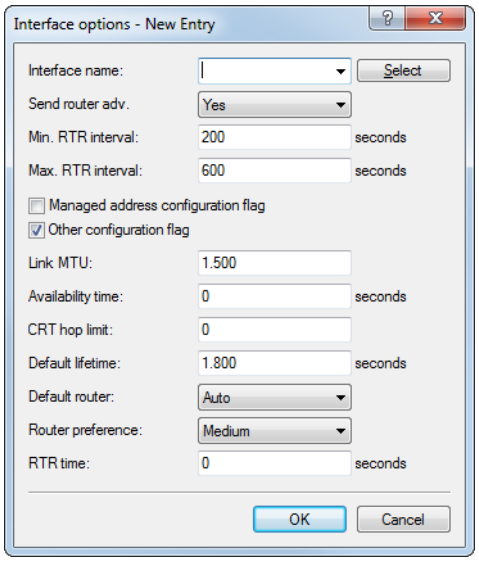
- **Routing tag**: Here you specify the routing tag of the network that the loopback address belongs to. Only packets with this routing tag will reach this address.
- **Comment**: You have the option to enter a comment here.

7.8.2 Router advertisement

The **Router advertisement** configuration provides you with four buttons for setting up the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) if the device is to operate as an IPv6 router:



Interface options



Here you can enable or disable the following interface functions:

Interface name

Defines the name of the logical interface to be used for sending router advertisements.

Send router adv.

Regulates the periodic transmission of router advertisements and the response to router solicitations.

Min. RTR interval

Defines in seconds the minimum time allowed between the transmission of unsolicited multicast router advertisements. Min. RTR interval and Max. RTR interval form a time space during which router advertisements

are sent at random. Permitted values are between 3 seconds and 0.75 * Max. RTR Interval. Default is 200 seconds.

Max. RTR interval

Maximum value of the RTR interval.

Managed address configuration flag

With this function enabled, clients receiving this router advertisement will configure their addresses with stateful autoconfiguration (DHCPv6). Clients then automatically retrieve other information, e.g. the DNS server.

Other configuration flag

If this function is active, a client will attempt to obtain additional information via DHCPv6, such as DNS server addresses. For each prefix, you can specify whether or not a client should form addresses by auto-configuration: Navigate to the **Prefix list** under **Allow auto-configuration (SLAAC)**.

Link MTU

Specifies the valid MTU for the corresponding link.

Availability time

Specifies the time for which the router is considered to be available. The default 0 means that no availability time is propagated in the router advertisements.

Hop limit

Defines the maximum number of routers to be used to forward an IP data packet. One router corresponds to one "hop". Default is 0, meaning no hop limit is specified.

Default router

Defines how the device advertises itself as the default gateway or router. The parameters have the following functions:

- **Auto**: As long as a WAN connection exists, the device sends a positive router lifetime in the router advertisement messages. The result is that a client uses this router as the default gateway.

  If there is no WAN connection, the router sets the router lifetime to "0". A client then stops using this router as the default gateway.

- **Always**: The router lifetime is always positive—i.e. greater than "0"—irrespective of the WAN connection status.
- **Never**: The router lifetime is always "0".

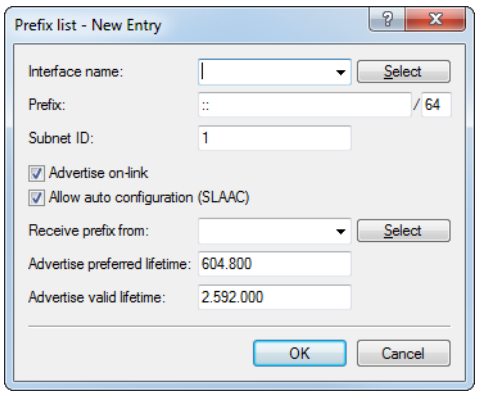
Router priority

Defines the preference of this router. Clients enter this preference into their local routing tables.

RTR time

Specifies the time in seconds between successive transmissions of neighbor-solicitation messages to a neighbor if the address is being resolved or the accessibility is being tested.

Prefix list



Used to set the prefix options for used interfaces. The following settings are possible:

Interface name

Defines the name of the logical interface to be used for sending router advertisements.

Prefix

Enter a prefix that is announced with router advertisements, e.g. "2001:db8::/64". The prefix length must always be exactly "/64", otherwise it will be impossible for clients to generate their addresses by adding their interface identifiers (with a length of 64 bits). If a prefix delegated by the provider is to be propagated automatically, set "::/64" here and enter the name of the corresponding WAN interface as the parameter **Receive prefix from**.

Subnet ID

Here you enter the subnet ID that is to be combined with the prefix delegated by the provider. If the provider assigns the prefix "2001:db8:a::/48", for example, and the subnet ID is "0001" (or "1" for short), then the router advertisement on this interface is given the prefix "2001:db8:a:0001::/64". The maximum subnet length with a 48-bit long delegated prefix is 16 bits (i.e. 65,536 subnets), with available subnet IDs ranging from "0000" to "FFFF". With a delegated prefix of "/56", the maximum subnet length is 8 bits (i.e. 256 subnets) with subnet IDs ranging from "00" to "FF". In general, the subnet ID "0" is used when the WAN IPv6 address is formed automatically. This is why subnet IDs for LANs start at "1". The default setting is '1'.

Advertise on-link

Specifies whether this prefix is linked directly to the interface ('on link').

Allow auto-configuration (SLAAC)

Specifies whether the prefix is to be used for a stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC). The default setting is "enabled".

Receive prefix from

Specifies the name of the interface used to receive a prefix via DHCPv6 prefix delegation or tunnel. This prefix can be used to derive and propagate a subnet for each interface.

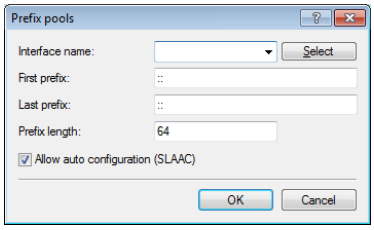
Preferred lifetime:

Specifies how long an IPv6 address should be considered as preferred. If the preferred lifetime of an address has expired, it is marked as deprecated and used only for existing sessions, but not for new ones.

Valid lifetime

Specifies how long an IPv6 address should be considered as valid, after which it becomes invalid and is discarded.

Prefix pools



This table contains the pools of prefixes which RAS users receive when they connect remotely via IPv6. The following settings are possible:

Interface name

Specifies the name of the RAS interface that is valid for this prefix pool.

First prefix

Specifies the first prefix in the pool that is assigned to remote users by the router advertisement, e.g., "2001:db8::". Each user is assigned precisely one /64 prefix from the pool.

Last prefix

Specifies the last prefix in the pool that is assigned to remote users by the router advertisement, e.g. '2001:db9:FFFF::'. Each user is assigned precisely one /64 prefix from the pool.

Prefix length

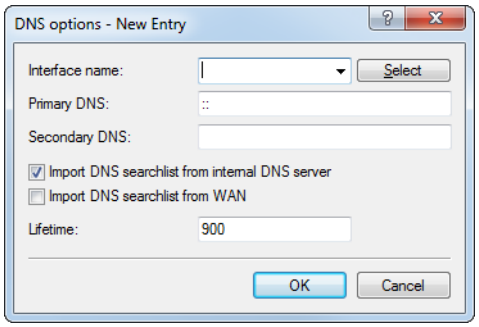
Specifies the length of the prefix that the remote user is assigned by the router advertisement here. The size of the dial-in pool depends directly on the first and last prefix. Each user is assigned precisely one /64 prefix from the pool.

In order for a client to be able to form an IPv6 address from the auto-configuration prefix, the prefix length must always be 64 bits.

SLAAC

Specifies whether the prefix can be used for a stateless address auto-configuration (SLAAC).

DNS options



Specifies the DNS information in router advertisements according to RFC 6106. The following settings are possible:

Interface name

Name of the interface on which the IPv6 DNS server announces information in router advertisements.

DNS default

IPv6 address of the first IPv6 DNS server (recursive DNS server, RDNSS, according to RFC 6106) for this interface.

DNS backup

IPv6 address of the secondary IPv6 DNS server for this interface.

Import DNS search list from internal DNS server

Indicates whether the DNS search list or the own domain for this logical network should be inserted from the internal DNS server, e.g., "internal". The own domain is configured under **IPv4** > **DNS** > **General settings**. The default setting is **enabled**.

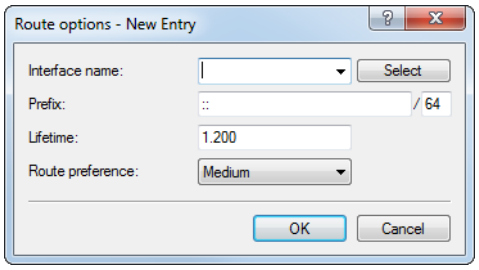
Import DNS search list from WAN

Specifies whether the DNS search list sent by the provider (e.g., provider-xy.de) is announced in this logical network. This feature is available only if the prefix list is connected to the corresponding WAN interface under **Receive prefix from**.

Lifetime

Defines the time in seconds for which a client may use this DNS server for name resolution.

Route options



Specifies the route option in router advertisements according to RFC 4191 (Route Information Option). The following settings are possible:

Interface name

Specifies the name of the logical interface to be used for sending router advertisements with this route option.

Prefix

Prefix of the route option, e.g."2001:db8::/32".

Lifetime

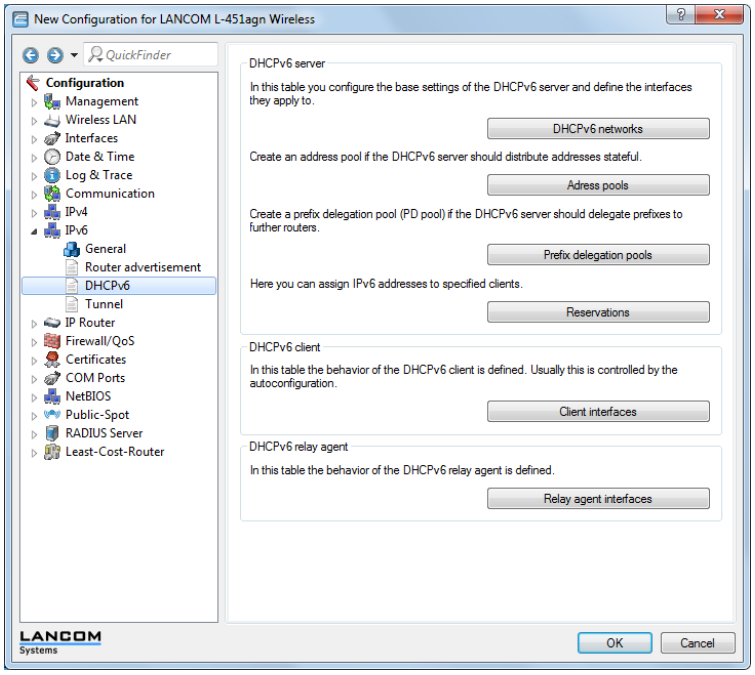
Time in seconds that the route should remain valid.

Route preference

The preference of the route. Possible values are "high", "medium" (default) and "low".

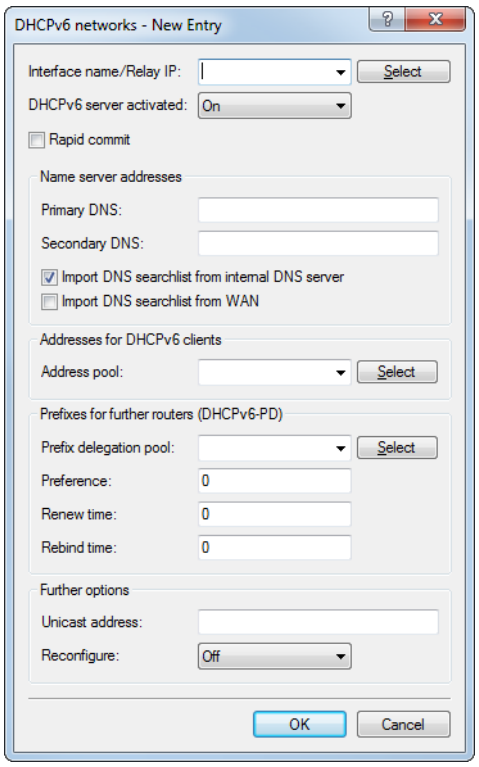
7.8.3 DHCPv6

This is where you configure the DHCPv6 server, the DHCPv6 client and the DHCPv6 relay agent.



DHCPv6 networks

This table is used to configure the basic settings of the DHCPv6 server, and to specify which interfaces they apply to.



Interface name/Relay IP

Name of the interface on which the DHCPv6 server is working, for example "INTRANET". Alternatively, you can also enter the IPv6 address of the remote DHCPv6 relay agent.

DHCP server activated

Activates or deactivates the entry.

Rapid commit

With rapid commit activated, the DHCPv6 server responds directly to a solicit message with a reply message.

The client must explicitly include the rapid commit option in its solicit message.

Primary DNS

IPv6 address of the primary DNS server.

Secondary DNS

IPv6 address of the secondary DNS server.

Import DNS search list from internal DNS server

Indicates whether the DNS search list or the own domain for this logical network should be inserted from the internal DNS server, e.g., "internal". The own domain can be configured under **IPv4** > **DNS** > **General settings**. The default setting is "enabled".

Import DNS search list from WAN

Specifies whether the DNS search list sent by the provider (e.g., provider-xy.de) is announced in this logical network. The default setting is "disabled".

Address pool

Name of the address pool used for this interface.

If the DHCPv6 server operates 'stateful' addresses distribution, you must enter the corresponding addresses into the **Address pools** table.

Prefix delegation pool

Name of prefix pools to be used by the DHCPv6 server.

If the DHCPv6 server is to delegate prefixes to other routers, you must enter the corresponding prefixes in the table **Prefix delegation pools**.

Preference

Where multiple DHCPv6 servers are operated on the network, the preference parameter gives you the control over which server the clients will use. The primary server requires a higher preference value than the backup server.

Renew time

This specifies the time in seconds when the client should contact the server again (using a renew message) to extend the address/prefix received from the server. The parameter is also called T1.

Rebind time

This specifies the time when the client should contact any server (using a rebind message) to extend its delegated address/prefix. The rebind event occurs only if the client receives no answer its renew request. The parameter is also called T2.

Unicast address

By default the DHCPv6 server exclusively responds to multicast requests. If the DHCPv6 server should respond to a unicast request, this IPv6 address can be configured here. Generally speaking, multicast is sufficient for communication.

Reconfigure

Each IPv6 address or IPv6 prefix has a default life time assigned by the server. At certain intervals, a client asks the server to renew its address (called renew/rebind times).

However, if the WAN prefix changes, for example, due to disconnection and reconnection of an Internet connection or a request for a new prefix (Deutsche Telekom Privacy feature), the server has no way to inform the network devices that the prefix or address has changed. This means that a client is still using an old address or an old prefix, and can no longer communicate with the Internet.

The reconfigure feature allows the DHCPv6 server to require the clients in the network to request a renewal of leases / bindings. If the client successfully negotiates a re-configuration (reconfigure) with the server during first contact, the server can request the client to update its address or other information at any time. The mechanism is protected by the so-called *Reconfigure Key*, so that only the original server with the correct key can make requests to the client. If the client receives a reconfigure message without a valid reconfigure key, the client rejects this invocation.

The *Reconfigure Key Authentication Protocol* according to RFC 3315 is supported for *Renew* and *Information-Request*, as well as *Rebind* according to RFC 6644. Reconfiguration is started on the console of the device using a "do" command in the status tree:

```
do /Status/IPv6/DHCPv6/Server/Reconfigure
```

The reconfigure function will then expect the following parameters:

- `renew`: (optional, default) Asks the client to perform a renewal for his address and/or prefix.
- `rebind`: (optional) Asks the client to perform a rebind for his address and/or prefix.
- `info`: (optional) Asks the client to send an Information-Request, in order to, for example, update its DNS server.
- `-c <Client-ID>`: The reconfigure function applies to the client with the specified client ID.
- `-b <Address/Prefix>`: The reconfigure function applies to the client with the specified address and the specified prefix.
- `-i <Interface/Relay>`: The reconfigure function applies to all clients that are connected to the specified interface or relay.
- `-a`: The reconfigure function applies to all clients.

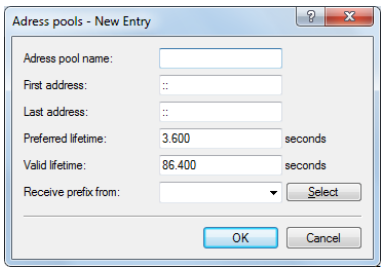
You can find more about the status of a client regarding the Reconfigure function under **Status** > **IPv6** > **DHCPv6** > **Server** > **Clients**.

In LANconfig the following settings are available for reconfiguration:

- **Off**: Disables the reconfigure function
- **Reject**: Clients that have used the Reconfigure Option in queries are rejected by the server and are not assigned an address, prefix or other options.
- **Allow**: If the client sets the Reconfigure Option in queries, the server negotiates the necessary parameters with the client in order to start a reconfiguration at a later time.
- **Require**: Clients have to set the Reconfigure Option in queries, otherwise the client rejects these clients. This mode is makes sense when you want to ensure that the server only serves clients which support Reconfigure. This ensure that all clients can use Reconfigure to update their addresses, prefixes, or other information at a later point in time.

Address pools

If distribution of the DHCPv6 server is to be stateful, this table defines an address pool:



Address pool name

Name of the address pool

First address

First address in the pool, e.g. "2001:db8::1"

Last address

Last address in the pool, e.g. "2001:db8::9"

Preferred lifetime:

Here you specify the time in seconds that the client should treat this address as 'preferred'. After this time elapses, a client classifies this address as "deprecated".

Valid lifetime

Here you specify the time in seconds that the client should treat this address as 'valid'.

If you use a prefix from a WAN interface for dynamic address formation, you cannot configure values for `preferred lifetime` and `valid lifetime`. In this case, the device automatically determines the values that apply to the prefix delegated by the provider.

Receive prefix from

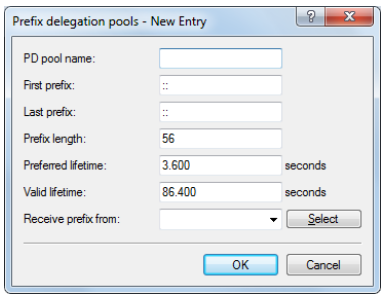
With this parameter you can assign addresses to the network clients from the prefix that the router retrieved from the WAN interface via DHCPv6 prefix delegation. Select the desired WAN interface here. For example, if the provider assigned the prefix "2001:db8::/64", you can then enter the value "::1" in the parameter **First address** and "::9" in **Last address**. In combination with the prefix "2001:db8::/64" as delegated by the provider, the clients receive addresses from the pool "2001:db8::1" to "2001:db8::9". If the provider prefix is greater than "/64", e.g.,"/48" or "56", you must take subnetting for the logical network in to account in the address. **Example:**

- Assigned provider prefix: "2001:db8:abcd:aa::/56"
- "/64" as the prefix of the logical network (subnet ID 1): "2001:db8:abcd:aa01::/64"
- First address: "0:0:0:0001::1"
- Last address: "0:0:0:0001::9"

You should only use this mechanism if the provider assigns a fixed prefix. Otherwise, it is possible that the provider delegates a new prefix to the router, but the client still has an address from the pool with the old prefix. In this case, the client must update its address at the server.

Prefix delegation pool

In this table, you specify the prefixes that the DHCPv6 server delegates to other routers:



PD pool name

Name of the PD pool

First prefix

First prefix for delegation in the PD pool, e.g. "2001:db8:1100::"

Last prefix

Last prefix for delegation in the PD pool, e.g. "2001:db8:FF00::"

Prefix length

Length of the prefixes in the PD pool, e.g. "56" or "60"

Preferred lifetime:

Here you specify the time in seconds that the client should treat this prefix as 'preferred'. After this time elapses, a client classifies this address as "deprecated".

Valid lifetime

Here you specify the time in seconds that the client should treat this prefix as 'valid'.

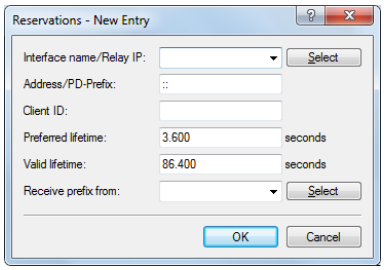
If you use a prefix from a WAN interface for dynamic address formation, you cannot configure values for `preferred lifetime` and `valid lifetime`. In this case, the device automatically determines the values that apply to the prefix delegated by the provider.

Receive prefix from

Name of the WAN interface from which the client should use the prefix to form the address or prefix.

Reservations

If you want to assign fixed IPv6 addresses to clients or fixed prefixes to routers, you can use this table to make a reservation for each client.



Interface name/Relay IP

Name of the interface on which the DHCPv6 server is working, for example "INTRANET". Alternatively, you can also enter the IPv6 address of the remote relay agent.

Address/PD prefix

IPv6 address or PD prefix that you want to assign statically.

Client ID

DHCPv6 unique identifier (DUID) of the client.

DHCPv6 clients are no longer identified with their MAC addresses like DHCPv4 clients, they are identified with their DUID instead. The DUID can be read from the respective client, for example, on Windows with the shell command `ipconfig /all`, in LCOS with `show dhcpv6-client` or in WEBconfig under **Status** > **IPv6** > **DHCPv6** > **Client** > **Client ID**.

For devices working as a DHCPv6 server, the client IDs for clients that are currently using retrieved IPv6 addresses are to be found under **Status** > **IPv6** > **DHCPv6** > **Server** > **Address bindings**, and retrieved IPv6 prefixes are under **Status** > **IPv6** > **DHCPv6** > **Server** > **PD bindings**.

LANmonitor displays that client IDs under **DHCPv6 server**.

Preferred lifetime:

Here you specify the time in seconds that the client should treat this address as 'preferred'. After this time elapses, a client classifies this address as "deprecated".

Valid lifetime

Here you specify the time in seconds that the client should treat this address as 'valid'.

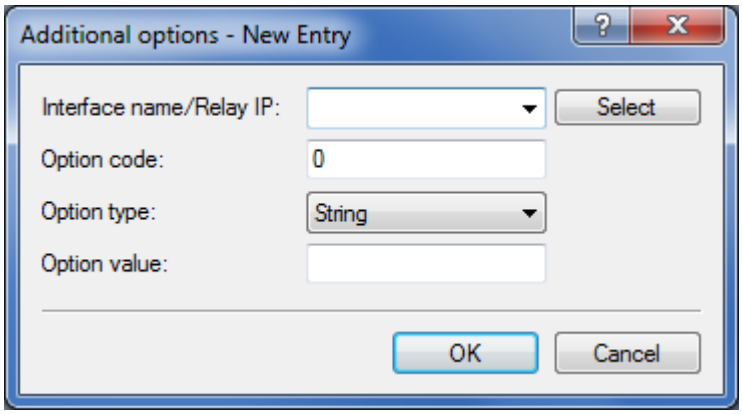
If you use a prefix from a WAN interface for dynamic address formation, you cannot configure values for `preferred lifetime` and `valid lifetime`. In this case, the device automatically determines the values that apply to the prefix delegated by the provider.

Receive prefix from

Name of the WAN interface from which the client should use the prefix to form the address or prefix.

DHCPv6 options

This feature allows the DHCPv6 server to assign DHCPv6 options to its DHCPv6 clients.



Interface name/Relay IP

Sets the name of the IPv6 interface or the remote IPv6 address of a relay agent for which the DHCPv6 server should distribute the additional option

In order for this option to be delivered to clients, the request sent by a client must must also contain the corresponding option code.

Option code

Contains the code of the DHCPv6 option.

Option type

Specifies the type of the DHCPv6 option. You can select from:

String

Accepts the characters as a string.

All other types use comma- and space-delimited lists; empty list elements are ignored; a list may be empty and results in an option of length 0.

Integer types

Accepts whole numbers. These are decimal, octal with a leading 0, and hexadecimal with a leading 0x; capitalization is ignored. The value range for Integer8 is from -128 to 127; for Integer16 from -32768 to 32767; and for Integer32 from -2147483648 to 2147483647. A leading + or - sign is generally allowed.

IPv6 address

Accepts IPv6 addresses (case insensitive) in all permissible notations, including the mixed IPv4/IPv6 notation of mapped V4 addresses (e.g., ::ffff:1.2.3.4).

Domain list

Accepts all strings that produce labels of maximum 63 characters in length. Empty labels are allowed but are ignored. A domain always ends with the empty label 0.

Hexdump

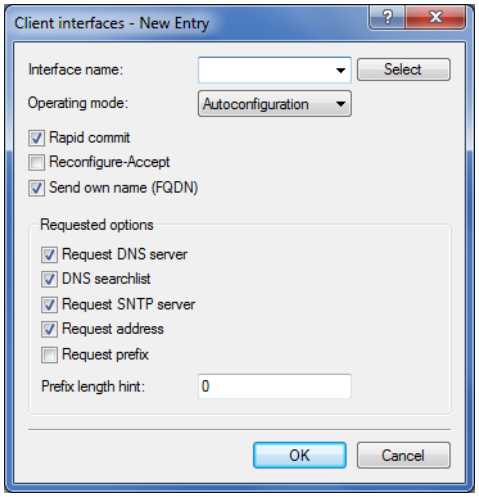
Expects each block to have hex numbers only, without a leading 0x. Each block is filled with a leading 0 for an even length and ends with the block **bigendian**.

Option value

Contains the contents of the DHCPv6 option, formatted according to the option type.

Client interfaces

This table determines the behavior of the DHCPv6 client.



Normally client behavior is controlled by the auto-configuration. Only make entries in this table if you want to use the client in "stand-alone" mode or if there are other specific options that deviate from the default settings.

Interface name

Name of the interface on which the DHCPv6 client is working. These can be LAN interfaces or WAN interfaces (remote sites), e.g. "INTRANET" or "INTERNET".

Operating mode

Specifies if and how the device enables the client. Possible values are:

- "Autoconfiguration": The device waits for router advertisements, and then starts the DHCPv6 client. This option is the default setting.
- "Yes": The device starts the DHCPv6 client as soon as the interface is active, without waiting for router advertisements. The device ignores the specifications from router advertisements.
- "No": The DHCPv6 client is disabled on this interface. Even if the device receives router advertisements, it will not start the client.

Rapid commit

When rapid commit is activated, the client attempts to obtain an IPv6 address from the DHCPv6 server with just two messages. If the DHCPv6 server is configured correspondingly, it immediately responds to this solicit message with a reply message.

Reconfigure accept

If the client successfully negotiates a re-configuration (reconfigure) with the server during first contact, the server can request the client to update its address or other information at any time. The mechanism is protected by the so-called 'Reconfigure Key', so that only the original server with the correct key can make requests to the client. If the client receives a reconfigure message without a valid reconfigure key, the client rejects this invocation. The client supports the "Reconfigure Key Authentication Protocol" according to RFC 3315 for the options "Renew" and "Information Request", and also "Rebind" as per RFC 6644.

This option is enabled by default for WAN interfaces.

Send own name (FQDN)

The client sends its own host name (Fully Qualified Domain Name). By default, this option is active on LAN interfaces.

Request DNS server

Specifies whether the client queries the DHCPv6 server for DNS servers.

You must enable this option in order for the device to obtain information about a DNS server.

DNS search list

The client queries the DNS search list.

Request SNTP server

Specifies whether the DHCPv6 client requests a list of SNTP servers (Simple Network Time Protocol) from the DHCPv6 server.

For this to work, the periodical synchronization with a time server must be enabled as in *Configuring the time server under LANconfig*.

Request address

Determines whether the client should request the DHCPv6 server for an IPv6 address.

Only activate this option if addresses configured by the DHCPv6 server via this interface are stateful, i.e. not distributed by 'SLAAC'.

Request prefix

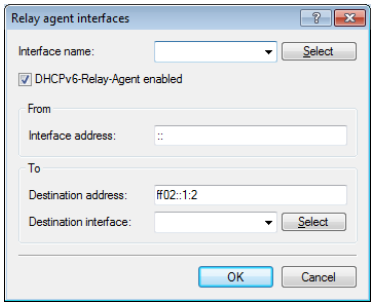
Specifies whether the DHCPv6 client requests a desired prefix length from the DHCPv6 server. Activating this option is only necessary if the device itself functions as a router and redistributes these prefixes. This option is enabled by default on WAN interfaces in order for the DHCPv6 client to request a prefix from the provider for use in its local network. This option is disabled by default on LAN interfaces because devices in a local network are more likely to function as clients rather than as routers.

Prefix length hint

This is a suggestion by the client to the server regarding the length of the prefix to be received from the server.

Relay agent interfaces

A DHCPv6 relay agent forwards DHCP messages between DHCPv6 clients and DHCPv6 servers, which are located in different networks. This table determines the behavior of the DHCPv6 relay agent.



Interface name

The name of the interface on which the relay agent receives requests from DHCPv6 clients, e.g. "INTRANET".

Relay agent operating

Determines if and how the device enables the relay agent. Possible values are:

- "Yes": Relay agent is enabled. This option is the default setting.
- "No": Relay agent is not enabled.

Interface address

The relay agent's own IPv6 address at the interface that is configured under Interface Name. This IPv6 address is used as a sender address in DHCP messages that are forwarded. This sender address enables DHCPv6 clients to uniquely identify a relay agent. An explicit specification of the interface address is necessary because an IPv6 host can have multiple IPv6 addresses for each interface.

Destination address

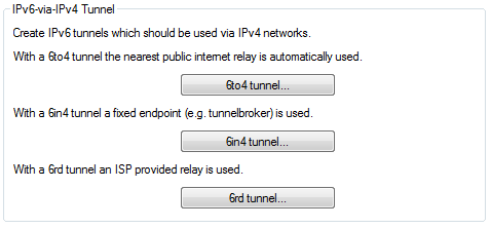
The IPv6 address of the (destination) DHCPv6 server which the relay agent is to forward DHCP requests to. The address can be either a unicast or link-local multicast address. When using a link-local multicast address, you must specify the destination interface where the DHCPv6 server is to be reached. All DHCPv6 servers and relay agents are available at the link-local multicast address ff02::1:2.

Destination interface

The destination interface where the parent DHCPv6 server or the next relay agent is to be reached. This information is essential if a link-local multicast address is configured under the destination address, as link local-multicast addresses are only valid at that respective link.

7.8.4 Tunnel

The **Tunnel** configuration offers you 3 buttons to create IPv6 tunnels that can be used over IPv4 networks. Use these options to gain access to the IPv6 Internet using an IPv4 connection.



- **6to4 tunnel**: This button opens the 6to4 tunnel settings.

  Connections through a 6to4 tunnel work with relays that are selected by the IPv4 Internet provider's backbone. The device administrator has no influence on relay selection. Furthermore, the selected relay can change without the administrator knowing about it. For this reason, connections via a 6to4 tunnels are suitable **for test purposes only**. In particular, avoid using 6to4-tunnel data connections for productive systems or for the transmission of confidential data.

- **6in4 tunnel**: This button opens the 6in4 tunnel settings.

  6in4 tunnels require more administrative effort, but they represent a secure and stable technology for IPv6 Internet access. This option is also suitable for professional use.

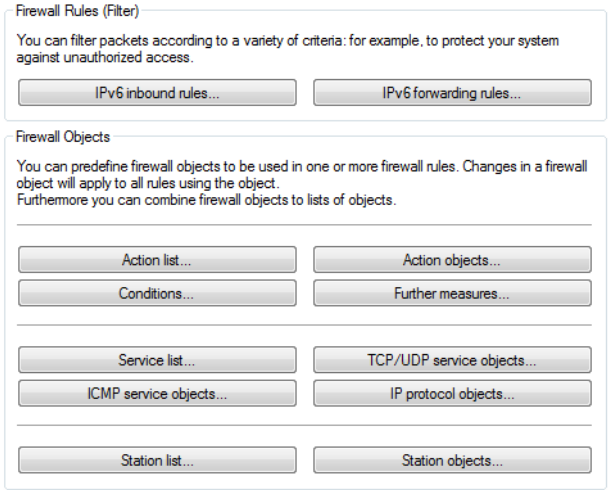
- **6rd tunnel**: This button opens the 6rd tunnel settings.

  6rd tunneling is suitable for end users and for professional applications because configuration is less complex than with 6in4 tunneling and the technology avoids the security risks of 6to4 tunneling.

7.9 Tutorials

7.9.1 Configuring the IPv6 firewall rules

With LANconfig you can set the firewall rules under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 Rules**.



The factory settings provide various objects and lists for the most important applications.

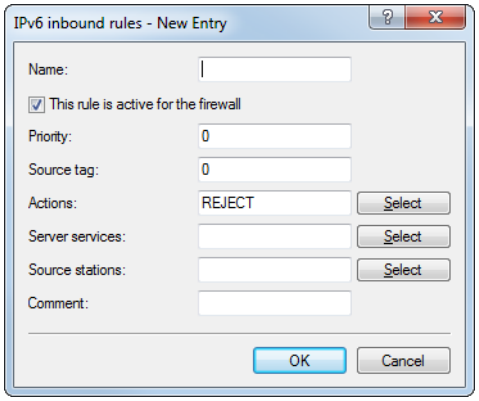
You cannot delete objects or lists if the firewall uses them in a forwarding or inbound rule.

IPv6 inbound rules

Using the **IPv6 inbound rules** you set the rules that the IPv6 firewall should use to handle incoming traffic.

The factory settings provide various rules for the most important applications.

Click on **Add...** to create a new rule.



You can set the following properties for the rule:

Name

Specifies the name of the rule.

This rule is active for the firewall

Enables the rule.

Priority

Specifies the priority of the rule: The higher the value, the higher the priority.

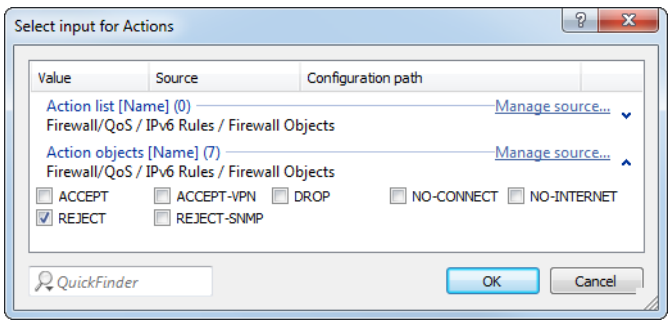
Source tag

Please specify a port- or routing-tag (tag context), if the rule shall only apply to such packets. Default value 0 means the rule applies to all packets, regardless of port- or routing-tag.

If actually all packets with port- or routing-tag 0 shall be observed, you have to enter 65535 here.

Actions

Specifies the action that the firewall performs if the rule condition is true. Using **Select** you can choose one action or a list of actions.



If you make a new entry here, it initially appears under **Unknown source**. Next, highlight the entry for a source that you want to assign to the new entry, and click on **Manage source.** Set the values for this entry, and save the new object. The new entry now appears as a new object in the list of the corresponding source.

Server services

Determines the services which the firewall applies this rule to. Using **Select** you can choose one service or a list of services.

Source stations

Determines the source stations which the firewall applies this rule to. Using **Select** you can choose one station or a list of stations.

Comment

Here you assign a meaningful description for the filter rule.

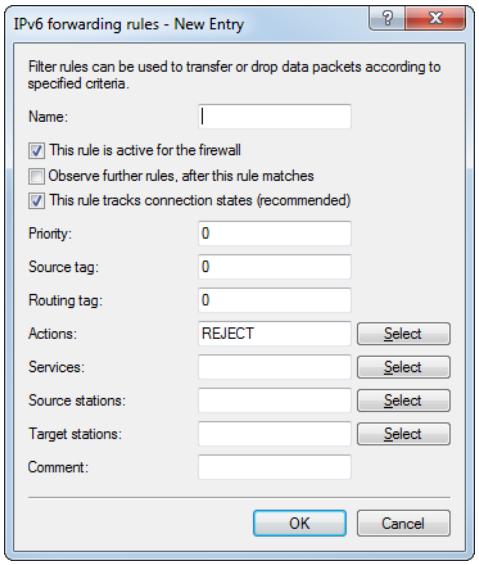
IPv6 forwarding rules

The **IPv6 forwarding rules** button accesses dialog where you set the rules that the IPv6 firewall should use to handle forwarded traffic.

The factory settings provide various rules for the most important applications.

In order to change the order of the rules, highlight the specific rule in the table and move it up or down in the table by clicking on the arrow buttons. The firewall applies the rules one after the other from top to bottom.

Click on **Add** to create a new rule.



You can set the following properties for the rule:

Name

Specifies the name of the rule.

This rule is active for the firewall

Enables the rule.

Observe further rules after this one matches

If you enable this option, the firewall also applies the subsequent rules in the list. This is useful if the firewall should, for example, initially apply a group rule and then apply each rule to the individual objects in the group.

This rule tracks connection states (recommended)

Select this option if the rule should track the TCP connection states.

Priority

Specifies the priority of the rule: The higher the value, the higher the priority.

Source tag

Please specify a port- or routing-tag (tag context), if the rule shall only apply to such packets. Default value 0 means the rule applies to all packets, regardless of port- or routing-tag.

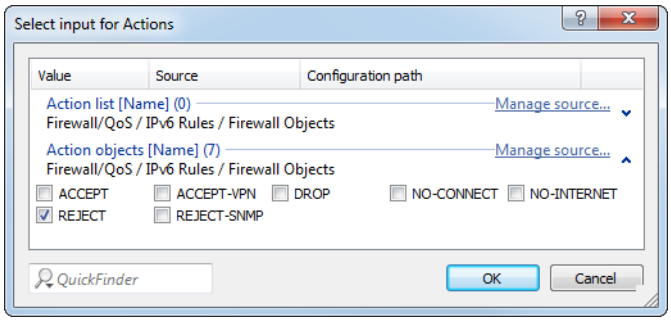
If actually all packets with port- or routing-tag 0 shall be observed, you have to enter 65535 here.

Routing tag

The interface tag that you enter here is a value that uniquely identifies the network. All packets received by this device on this network will be internally marked with this tag. The interface tag makes it possible to separate the rules valid for this network.

Actions

Specifies the action that the firewall performs if the rule condition is true. Using **Select** you can choose one action or a list of actions.



If you make a new entry here, it initially appears under **Unknown source**. Next, highlight the entry for a source that you want to assign to the new entry, and click on **Manage source.** Set the values for this entry, and save the new object. The new entry now appears as a new object in the list of the corresponding source.

Services

Determines the services which the firewall applies this rule to. Using **Select** you can choose one service or a list of services.

Source stations

Determines the source stations which the firewall applies this rule to. Using **Select** you can choose one station or a list of stations.

Target stations

Determines the target stations which the firewall applies this rule to. Using **Select** you can choose one station or a list of stations.

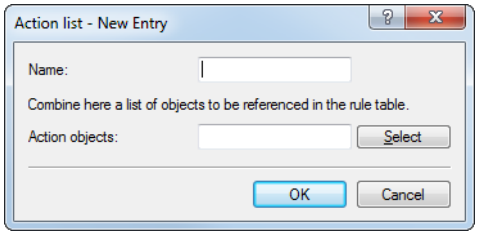
Comment

Here you assign a meaningful description for the filter rule.

Action list

Using the **Action list** button, you can collect actions into groups. The actions available here must first be defined using **Action objects**.

Click on **Add** to create a new rule.



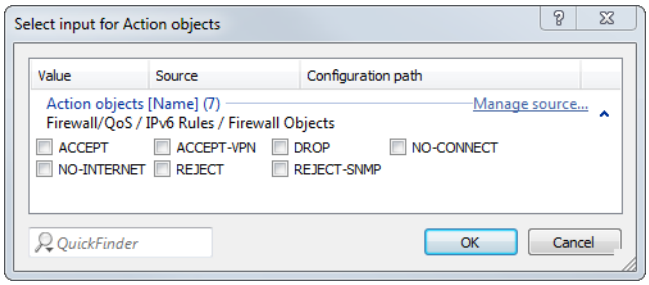
You can set the following properties for a list:

Name

Determines the name of the list.

Action objects

Determines the objects that you want to combine in this list. Using **Select** you can choose one or more objects from a list.

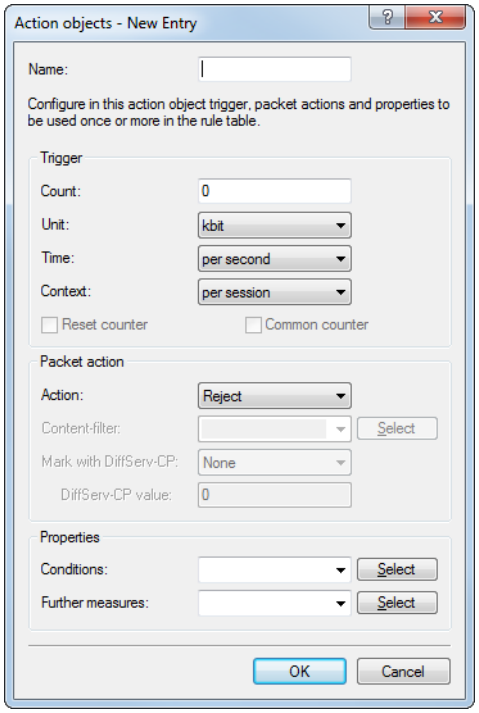


If you make a new entry here, it initially appears under **Unknown source**. Next, highlight the entry for a source that you want to assign to the new entry, and click on **Manage source.** Set the values for this entry, and save the new object. The new entry now appears as a new object in the list of the corresponding source.

Action objects

Using the **Action objects** button, you define actions that the IPv6 firewall runs when a filter is true.

Click on **Add** to create a new action.



You can set the following properties for the object:

Name

Specifies the name of the object.

Count

When this limit is exceeded, the firewall performs the action.

Unit

Determines the unit for the limits. Select the corresponding value in the drop-down menu.

Time

Determines the measurement period that the firewall applies to the limit. Select the corresponding value in the drop-down menu.

Context

Determines the context that the firewall applies to the limit. Select the corresponding value in the drop-down menu.

Reset counter

If you enable this option, the firewall resets the counter after running the action.

You can only activate this option if you selected "absolute" in the **time** value.

Common counter

If you enable this option, the firewall adds all action triggers together in one counter.

You can only activate this option if you selected "per station" or "global" in the **Context** value.

Action

Determines the action the firewall performs when the limit is reached.

The following options are possible:

- **Reject**: The firewall rejects the data packet and sends an appropriate notification to the sender.
- **Drop**: The firewall discards the data packet without notification.
- **Transmit**: The Firewall accepts the data packet.

Content-filter

Profile of the Content Filter. See *Firewall settings for the content filter* on page 1540.

Mark with DiffServ-CP

Determines the priority of the data packets (differentiated services, DiffServ), with which the firewall should transfer the data packets.

You can only activate this option if you selected "transmit" in the **Action** value.

Further information about DiffServ CodePoints is available under the section *Quality of Service* on page 615.

DiffServ-CP value

Determines the value for the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP).

You can only activate this option if you selected "Value" in **Mark with DiffServ-CP**.

Conditions

Determines which conditions must be met in order for the action to be performed. The item **Conditions** is used to specify any conditions.

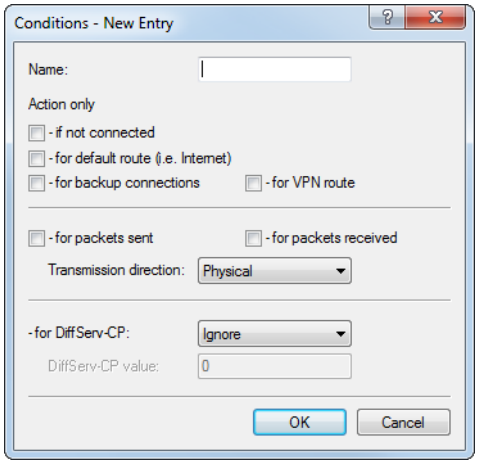
Further measures

Determines which trigger actions the firewall should start in addition to filtering the data packets. You can specify trigger actions under the **Further measures**.

Conditions

Use the **Conditions** button to specify the conditions that have to be met for the forwarding and inbound rules to apply.

Click on **Add** to create a new condition.



You can set the following properties for the condition:

Name

Specifies the name of the object.

Action only – if not connected

Select this option if the firewall should only perform the action if there is no connection.

Action only – for default route (e.g. Internet)

Select this option if the firewall should only perform the action if there is a connection over the default route.

Action only – for backup connections

Select this option if the firewall should only perform the action if the connection is a backup connection.

Action only – for VPN route

Select this option if the firewall should only perform the action if the connection is a VPN connection.

Action only – for packets sent

Select this option if the firewall should only perform the action for packets sent.

Action only – for packets received

Select this option if the firewall should only perform the action for packets received.

Transmission direction

Determines whether the transport direction refers to the logical connection or the physical data transmission over the respective interface.

Action only – for DiffServ-CP

Determines the priority that the data packets (differentiated services, DiffServ) have to have, so that the condition is met.

Further information about DiffServ CodePoints is available under the section *Quality of Service* on page 615.

DiffServ-CP value

Determines the value for the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP).

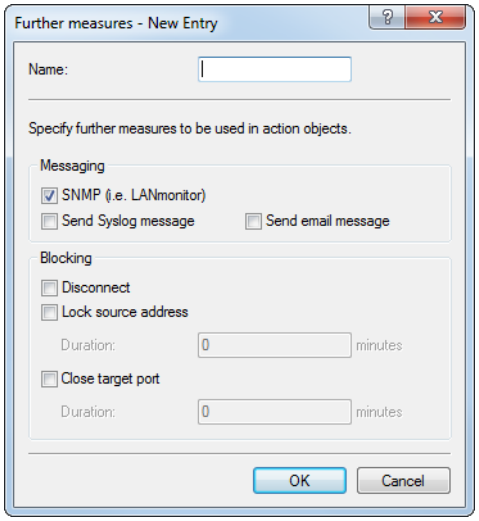
Enter a value here if you selected the "Value" option in the **– for DiffServ-CP** field.

Further information about DiffServ CodePoints is available under the section *Quality of Service* on page 615.

Further measures

Use the **Further measures** button to define further measures that the firewall performs after you apply the forwarding and inbound rules.

Click on **Add** to create a new measure.



You can set the following properties for the trigger actions:

Name

Specifies the name of the object.

SNMP (e.g. LANmonitor)

Select this option if the firewall should send a notification via SNMP. You can receive this notification, e.g., with LANmonitor.

Send SYSLOG message

Select this option if the firewall should send a SYSLOG notification via SNMP.

For more information about SYSLOG, refer to the chapter "Diagnostics" in the section "SYSLOG".

Send e-mail message

Select this option, if the firewall should send a notification by e-mail.

If you want to receive e-mail notifications, you must enter an e-mail address in **Firewall/QoS** > **General** > **Administrator e-mail**.

Disconnect

Select this option if the firewall should disconnect.

Lock source address

Select this option if the firewall should block the source address. The firewall registers the blocked IP address, the lockout period, as well as the underlying rule in the **Host-lock-list** under **Status** > **IPv6** > **Firewall**.

Duration

If the firewall should block the sender, you can set the duration of the lock in minutes. The value "0" disables the lock because, in practice, the lockout period expires after 0 minutes.

Close destination port

Select this option, if the firewall should block the target port. The firewall registers the blocked destination IP address, the protocol, the destination port, the lockout period, as well as the underlying rule in the **Port-block-list** under **Status** > **IPv6** > **Firewall**.

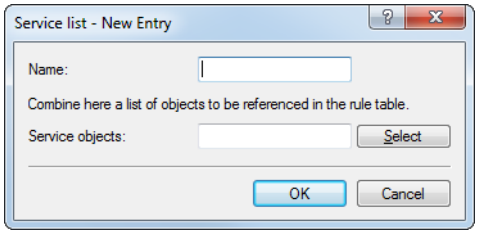
Duration

If the firewall should block the target port, you can set the duration of the lock in minutes. The value "0" disables the lock because, in practice, the lockout period expires after 0 minutes.

Service list

Using the **Service list** button, you can collect services into groups. You first define the services under **TCP/UDP service objects**, **ICMP service objects** and **IP protocol objects**.

Click on **Add** to specify a new service.



You can set the following properties for a list:

Name

Determines the name of the list.

Service objects

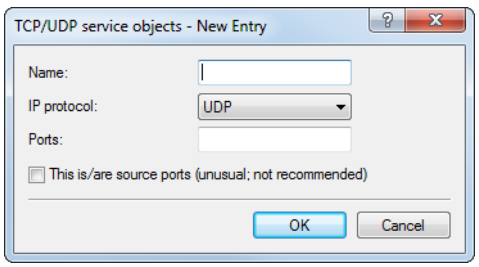
Determines the objects that you want to combine in this list. Using **Select** you can choose one or more objects from a list.

If you make a new entry here, it initially appears under **Unknown source**. Next, highlight the entry for a source that you want to assign to the new entry, and click on **Manage source.** Set the values for this entry, and save the new object. The new entry now appears as a new object in the list of the corresponding source.

TCP/UDP service objects

Using the **TCP/UDP service objects** button, you define TCP/UDP services that the IPv6 firewall can use in filter rules.

Click on **Add** to create a new service.



You can set the following properties for the rule:

Name

Specifies the name of the object.

IP protocol

Specifies the protocol of the service

Ports

Specifies the ports for the service. Separate multiple ports with a comma.

Lists with the official protocol and port numbers are available in the Internet at *www.iana.org*.

This is/are source ports

Determines whether the specified ports are source ports.

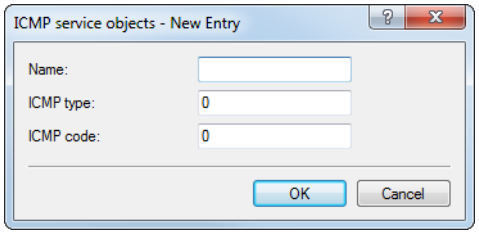
In certain scenarios, it may be useful to specify a source port. This is unusual. Selecting "No" is recommended.

ICMP service objects

Using the **ICMP service objects** button, you define ICMP services that the IPv6 firewall can use in filter rules.

Lists with the official ICMP types and port codes are available in the Internet under *www.iana.org*.

Click on **Add** to create a new service.



You can set the following properties for the rule:

Name

Specifies the name of the object.

ICMP type

Specifies the type of the ICMP service.

ICMP code

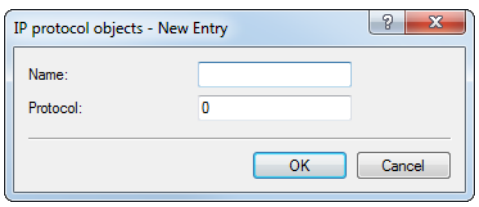
Specifies the code of the ICMP service.

IP protocol objects

Using the **IP protocol objects** button, you define IP protocol objects that the IPv6 firewall can use in filter rules.

Lists with the official protocol and port numbers are available in the Internet at *www.iana.org*.

Click on **Add** to create a new object.



You can set the following properties for the rule:

Name

Specifies the name of the object.

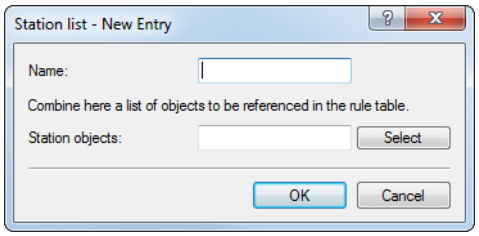
Protocol

Defines the protocol number.

Station list

Using the **Station list** button, you can collect stations into groups. Stations must previously be defined using **Station objects**.

Click on **Add** to create a new list.



You can set the following properties for a list:

Name

Determines the name of the list.

Station objects

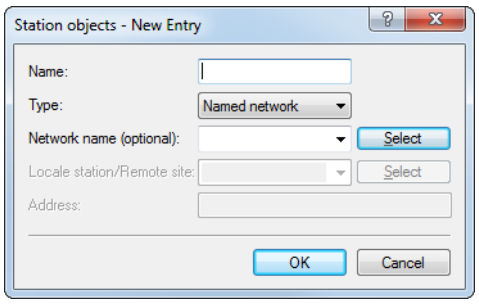
Determines the objects that you want to combine in this list. Using **Select** you can choose one or more objects from a list.

If you make a new entry here, it initially appears under **Unknown source**. Next, highlight the entry for a source that you want to assign to the new entry, and click on **Manage source.** Set the values for this entry, and save the new object. The new entry now appears as a new object in the list of the corresponding source.

Station objects

Using the **Station objects** button, you define stations that the IPv6 firewall can use in filter rules.

Click on **Add** to create a new object.



You can set the following properties for the object:

Name

Specifies the name of the object.

Type

Determines the station type.

Network name

Here you enter the name of the network if you selected the appropriate option in the **Type** field.

Entering the network name is optional.

Local station/Remote site

Here you enter the name of the remote site if you selected the appropriate option in the **Type** field.

Address

Here you enter the address of the remote site if you selected the appropriate option in the **Type** field.

7.9.2 Setting up IPv6 Internet access

You can set up access to an IPv6 network if

- You have an IPv6-capable device,
- You use a tunneling technology and
- Your provider supports a native IPv6 network or you have access to a so-called tunnel broker who can mediate your IPv6 packets.

IPv6 access using the Setup Wizard in LANconfig

The Setup Wizard assists you with the configuration of IPv6 access with your equipment.

The Wizard presents following options:

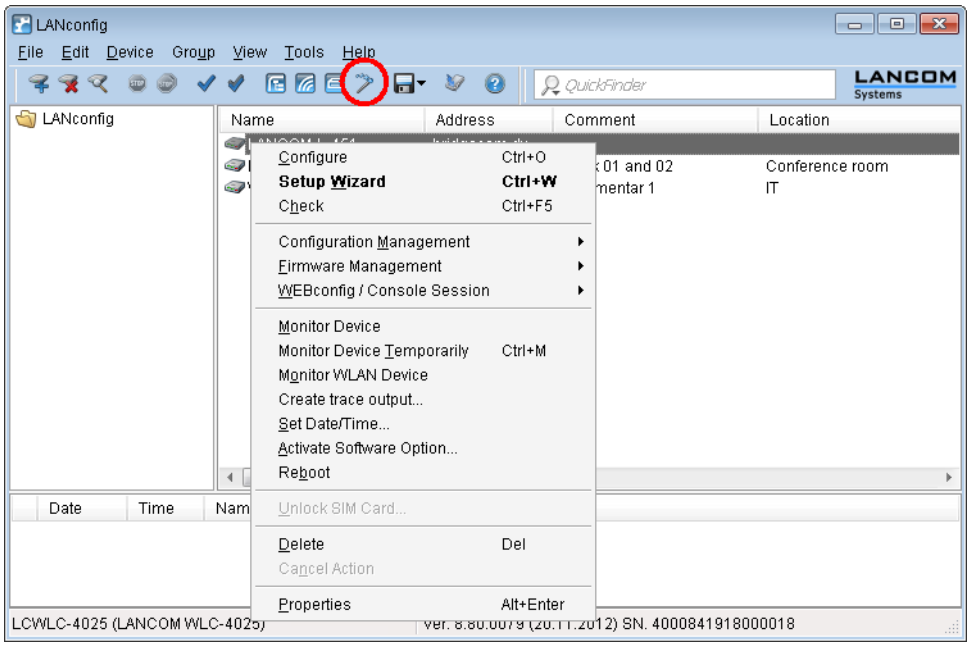
- *Set up IPv6 access for a new, unconfigured device.*
- *Set up IPv6 access in addition to a functioning IPv4 access for an existing device.*

Setup Wizard – setting up IPv6 in a new device

If you have connected up a new device but not have yet configured it, you have the option of using a Setup Wizard to set up IPv4 and IPv6 connections.

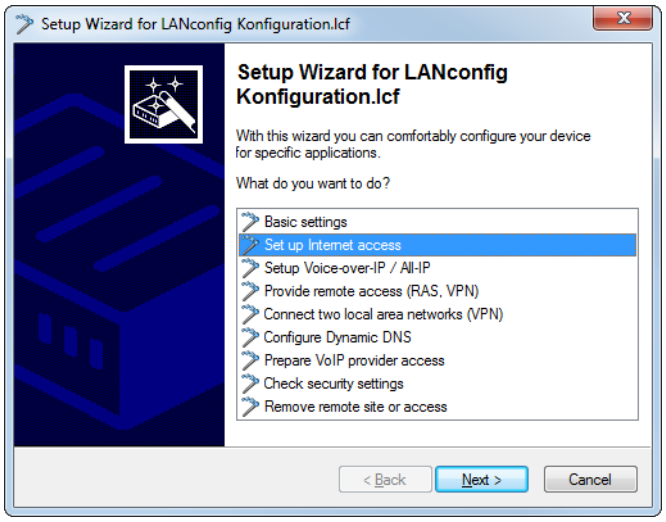
To save your entries and proceed to the next screen, click **Next**.

1. Start the Setup Wizard in LANconfig. Highlight the device to be configured. The Setup Wizard is started either by right-clicking and using the context menu, or with the Magic Wand icon in the toolbar



The options displayed by the wizard depend on the options available with your device and from your Internet provider.

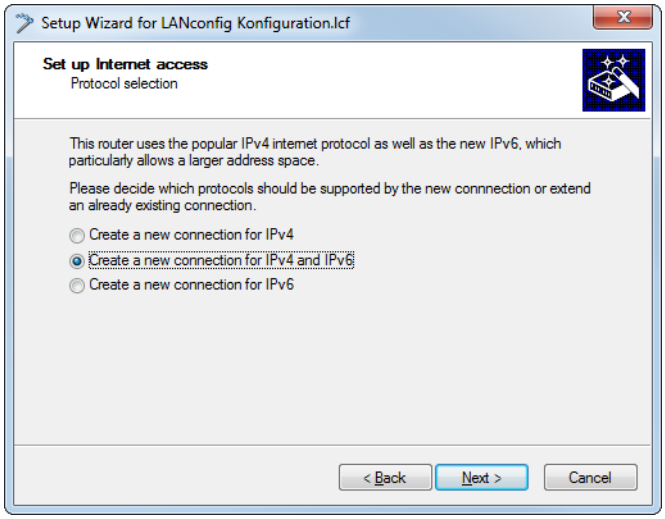
2. In the Setup Wizard, select the option **Set up Internet access**.



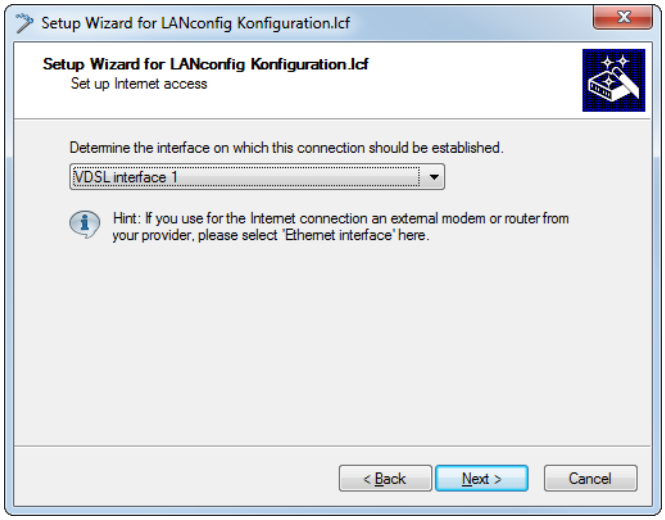
3. You can choose from the following options:

- Set up a connection for both IPv4 and IPv6. This is the recommended option for a new device.
- Set up an IPv4-only connection.
- Set up an IPv6-only connection.
- Supplementing an existing IPv4 connection with IPv6

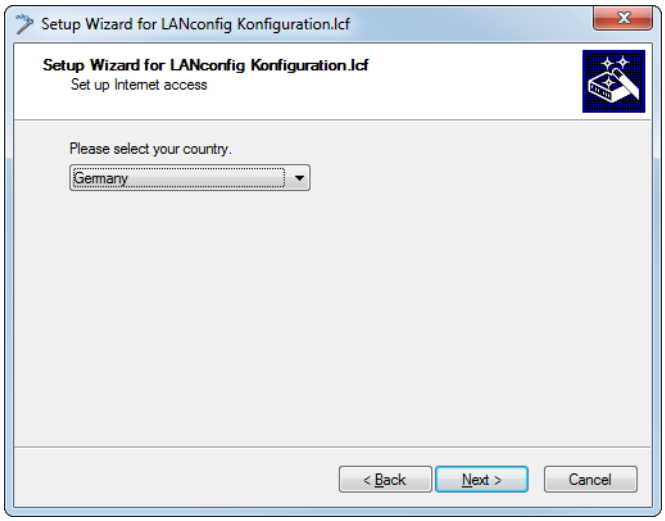
In the following we take you through the setup of a dual-stack connection. Activate the appropriate selection.



4. Set the interface to be used for the connection.



5. Select your country from the list.

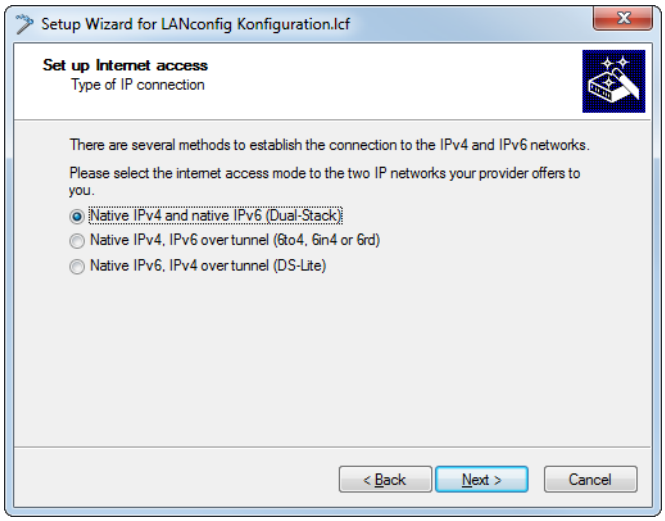


6. Select your Internet provider.

   You can select from the following entries:

   - A selection of relevant Internet providers
   - Internet connection via PPP over ATM
   - Internet connection via PPP over Ethernet
   - Internet access via Plain Ethernet
   - Internet access via PPTP
   - Internet access via DHCP
   - Internet access with static IP

7. The type of IP access depends on your Internet provider.



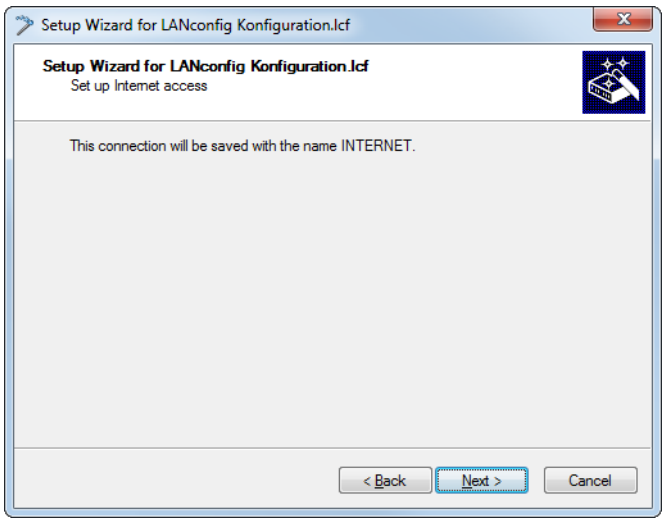
   You can select from the following options:

   - **Native IPv4 and native IPv6 (dual-stack)**: Configure a direct connection without a tunnel.
   - **Native IPv4, IPv6 via tunnel**: Start the wizard to configure a 6to4, 6in4 or 6rd tunnel.
   - **Native IPv6, IPv4 via tunnel (DS-Lite)**: Start the wizard to configure a DS-Lite tunnel.

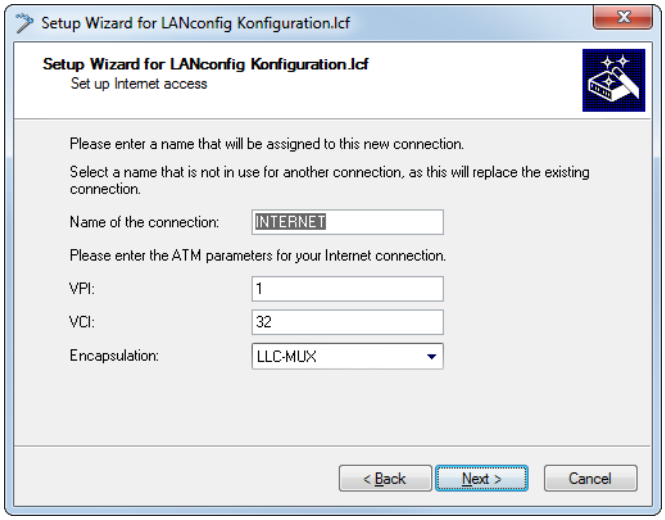
   Select the option for setting up a native IPv6 Internet connection.

8. The name for this connection is "INTERNET".

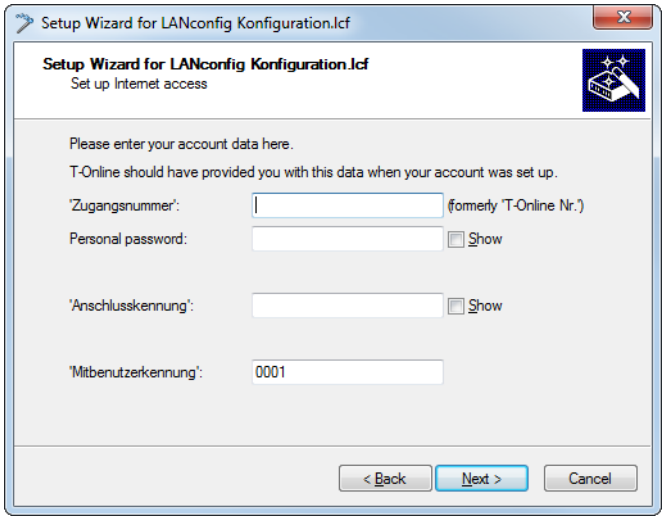
If a connection already exists with this name, you can specify a separate name for this connection.



If you access the Internet with an alternative connection, e.g. over a PPPoE connection, you should additionally enter the appropriate ATM parameters.

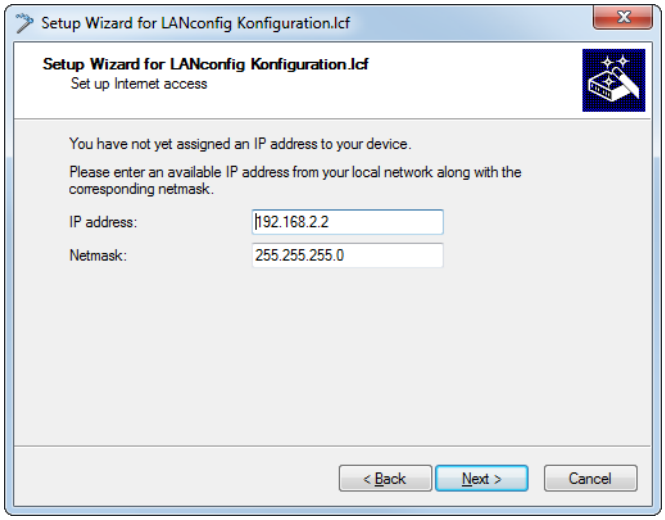


9. Enter the login details given to you by your provider for setting up your Internet access.

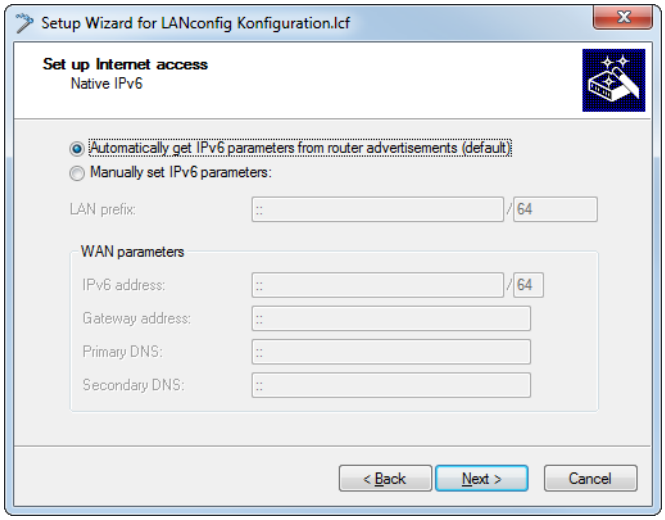


Depending on the provider, the type and number of fields may vary.

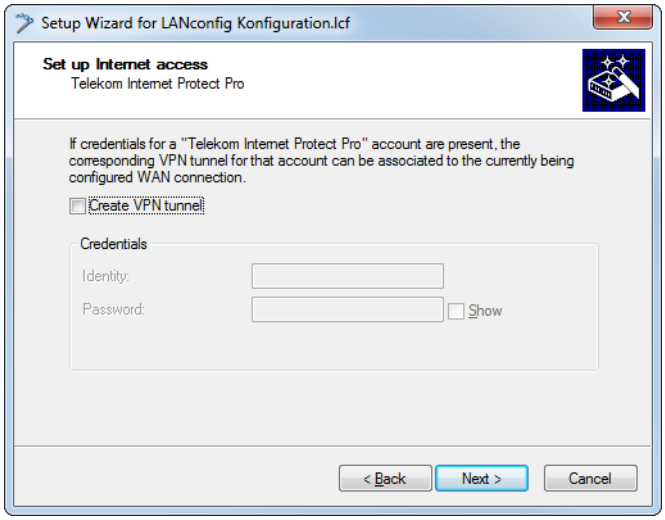
10. If your device does not yet have an IP address, enter a new IP address and corresponding netmask.



11. Accept the default setting of **Automatically take IPv6 parameters from router advertisements.**



12. Further options may be set up, depending on the Internet provider.



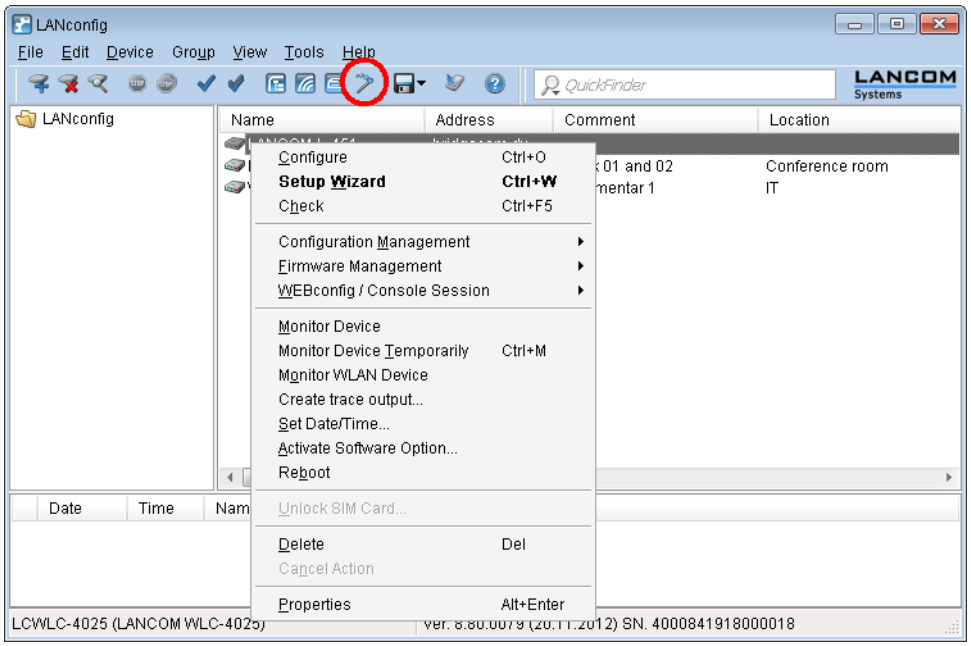
13. You have completed the setup of the native IPv6 Internet access. Click on **Finish** when you are done and the wizard will save your entries to the device.

Setup Wizard – Setting up IPv6 on an existing device

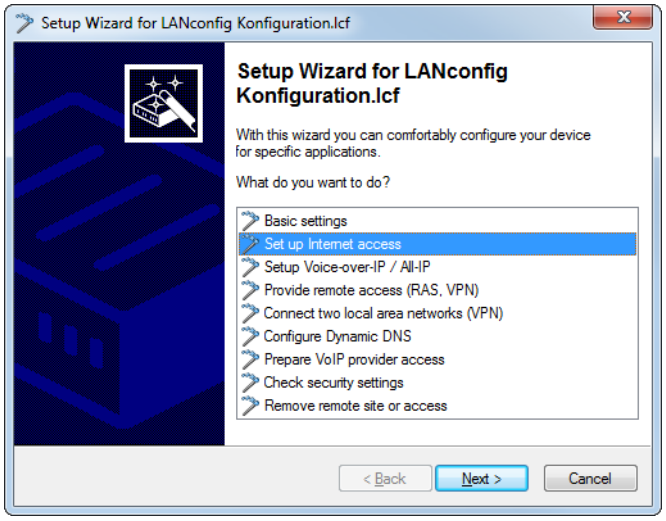
If you have a device configured for IPv4 and you wish to set up an additional IPv6 connection, you have the option of setting up the IPv6 connections with the Setup Wizard.

To save your entries and proceed to the next screen, click **Next**.

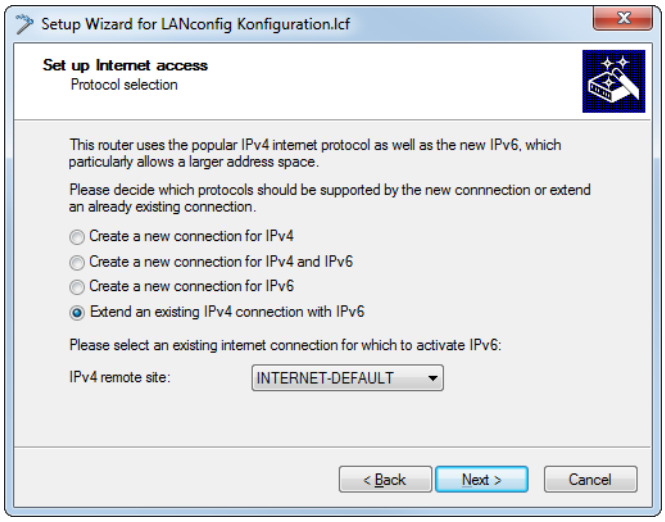
1. Then start the Setup Wizard in LANconfig. Highlight the device to be configured. The Setup Wizard is started either by right-clicking and using the context menu, or with the Magic Wand icon in the toolbar



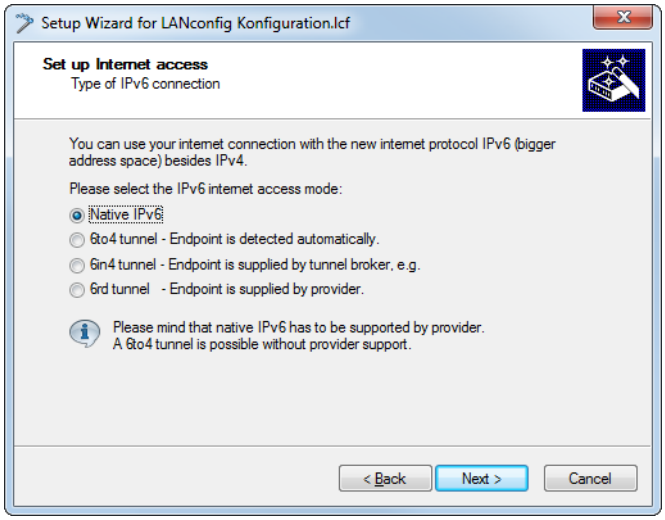
2. In the Setup Wizard, select the option **Set up Internet access**. To continue, click on **Next**.



3. Because your device is already IPv4-capable, the Setup Wizard gives you the opportunity to extend your existing settings with IPv6. Select this option and click on **Next.**



4. Select the type of IPv6 Internet access.

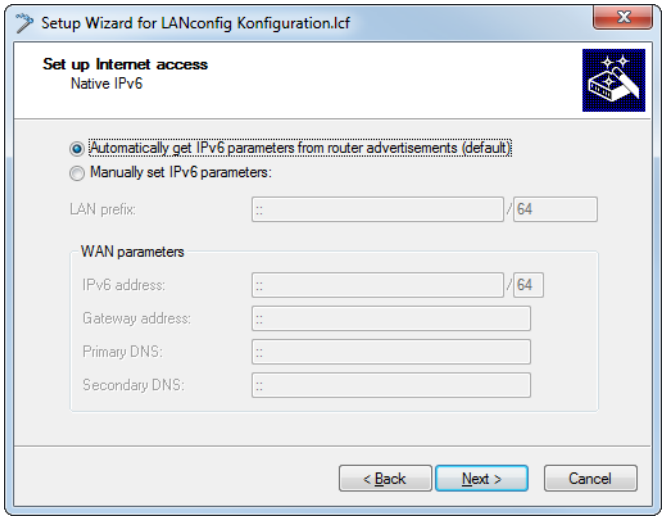


You can select from the following options:

- **Native IPv6**: Configure a direct connection without a tunnel.
- **6to4 tunnel**: Start the wizard to configure a 6to4 tunnel.
- **6in4 tunnel**: Use the input mask to set the parameters for the 6in4 tunnel.
- **6rd tunnel**: Use the input mask to set the parameters for the 6rd tunnel.

Select the option for setting up a native IPv6 Internet connection.

5. Accept the default setting of **Automatically take IPv6 parameters from router advertisements.**



6. You have completed the setup of the native IPv6 Internet access. Click on **Finish** when you are done and the wizard will save your entries to the device.

7.9.3 Setting up a 6to4 tunnel

The use of a 6to4 tunnel is feasible when

- Your device is IPv6 capable and you want to access IPv6 services,
- Your provider does not support a native IPv6 network and
- You do not have access to a so-called tunnel broker who can mediate your IPv6 packets.

When using a 6to4 tunnel, the lack of support of IPv6 by the provider means the device does not receive an IPv6 address or an IPv6 prefix.

The device calculates its own unique prefix from "2002::/16" and the hexadecimal representation of its own public IPv4 address from the provider. This application only works if the device has a public IPv4 address. The device does not receive a public IPv4 address but an IPv4 address from a private address range only, for example when it accesses the Internet via UMTS and the provider supplies an IP address from its private address range, or if the device does not access the Internet directly, but is "behind" another router.

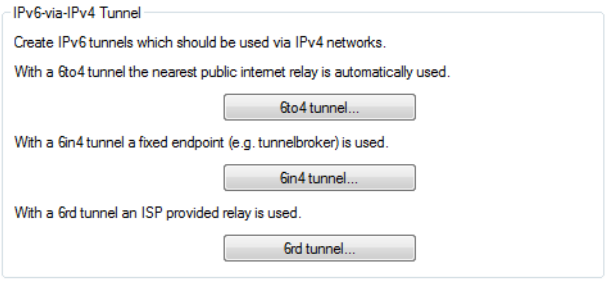
Connections through a 6to4 tunnel work with relays that are selected by the IPv4 Internet provider's backbone. The device administrator has no influence on relay selection. Furthermore, the relay used can change without the administrator knowing about it. For this reason, connections via a 6to4 tunnels are suitable **for test purposes only**. In particular, avoid using 6to4-tunnel data connections for productive systems or for the transmission of confidential data.

Working with LANconfig

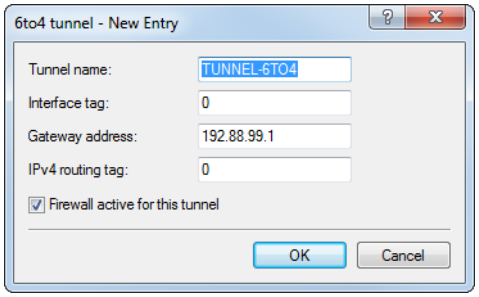
To set up a 6to4 tunnel with LANconfig, proceed as follows:

1. Start LANconfig. LANconfig now automatically searches the local network for devices.
2. Select the device on which you want to set up a 6to4 tunnel. Select it with a left-click and start the configuration from the menu bar with **Device** > **Configure**.

3. Navigate to **IPv6** > **Tunnel** and click on **6to4 tunnel**.

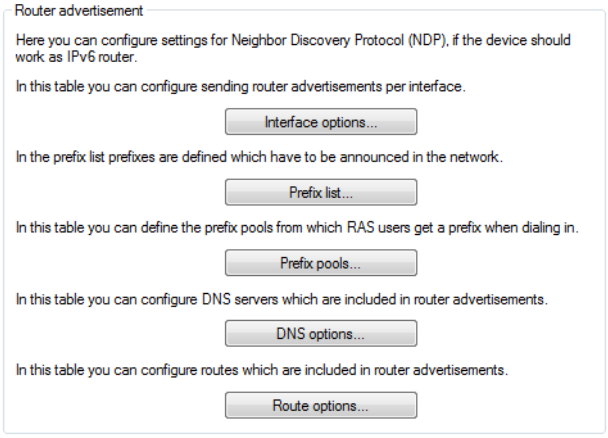


4. Click on **Add** to create a new 6to4 tunnel.

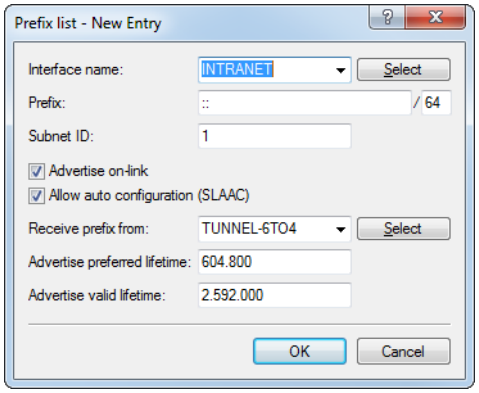


5. Set the name of the 6to4 tunnel.
6. Set the **Interface tag** to a value that uniquely identifies the network. All packets received by this device on this network will be internally marked with this tag. The interface tag enables the routes which are valid for this network to be separated even without explicit firewall rules.
7. The **Gateway address** is set by default to the anycast address "192.88.99.1".
8. Here you define the routing tag that the device uses to determine the route to the associated remote gateway. The **IPv4 routing tag** specifies which tagged IPv4 route is to be used for the data packets to reach their destination address.
9. The default value is this tunnel's firewall.

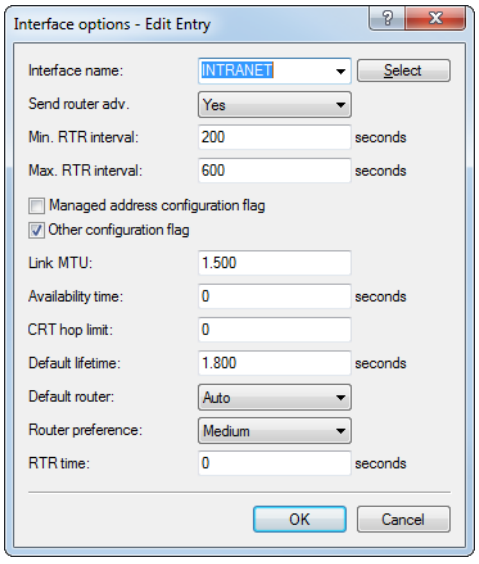
   If you disable the global firewall, you should also disable the firewall for the tunnel.
10. Accept your entries with **OK**.
11. Change to the directory **IPv6** > **Router advertisements**.



12. Open the **Prefix list** and click on **Add.**

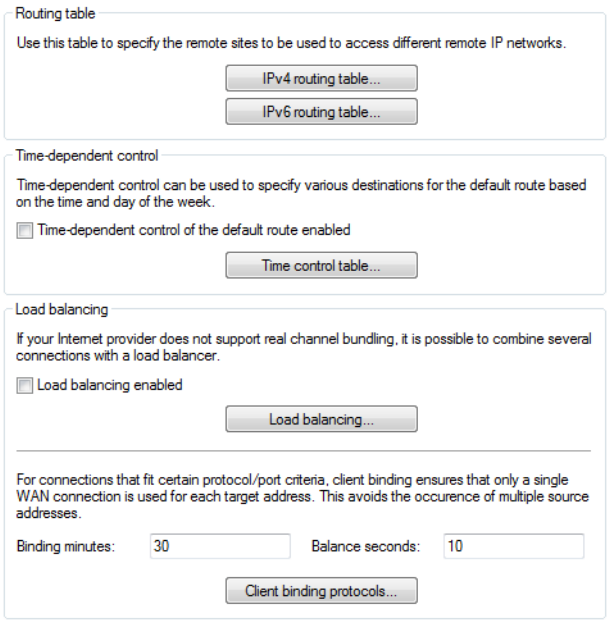


13. Enter a name for the interface that is used by the 6to4 tunnel, e. g. "INTRANET".
14. Set the value for the **Prefix** to "::/64" in order to accept the prefix issued by the provider automatically and in its entirety.
15. Accept the default value of "1" for the **Subnet ID**.
16. Accept the activated option **Allow auto configuration (SLAAC)**.
17. In the field **Prefix delegation from**, enter the name of the tunnel that you have defined earlier, e.g. in the example above "TUNNEL-6TO4".
18. Accept your entries with **OK**.
19. In the directory **IPv6** > **Router advertisements**, open the **Interface options**, select the entry INTRANET and click on **Edit**.
20. In the drop-down menu **Send router advertisements** select the option 'Yes'.

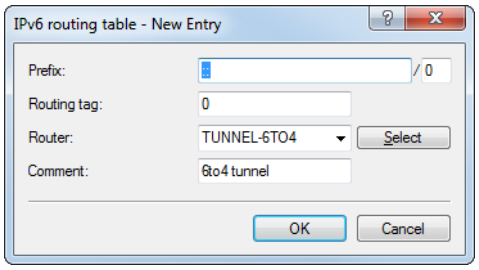


21. Accept all other default values without change.
22. Save your entries with **OK**.

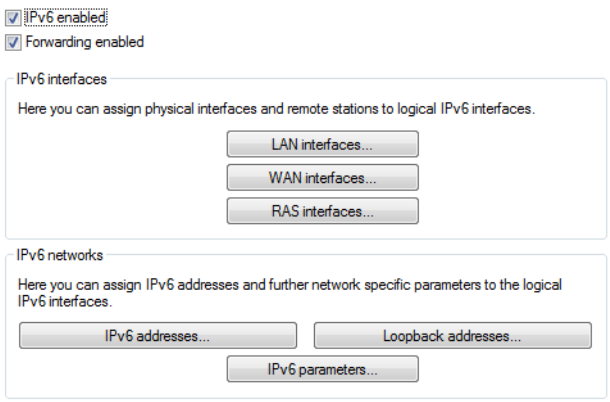
23. Change to the directory **IP router** > **Routing**.



24. Open the **IPv6 routing table** and click on **Add**.



25. Set the **Prefix** to the value "::/0".
26. In the field **Routing tag** accept the default value "0".
27. In the field **Router**, select from the list the name of the tunnel that you defined earlier, e.g. in the example above "TUNNEL-6TO4".
28. Enter a descriptive **Comment** for this entry.
29. Save your entries with **OK**.
30. Change to the directory **IPv6** > **General** and enable the IPv6 stack.



8 Firewall

For most companies and many private users a work without the Internet is no longer conceivable. E-mail and web are indispensable for communication and information search. But each connection of the workstations from the own, local network to the Internet represents however a potential danger: Unauthorized users can try to see your data via this Internet connection, to modify it or to manipulate your PCs.

Therefore this chapter covers an important topic: the firewall as defensive measure against unauthorized access. Besides a brief introduction to the topic of Internet security, we show you which protection a router is able to offer you by right configuration and how to make the needed specific settings.

8.1 Threat analysis

In order to plan and implement appropriate security measures, we first need to be aware of the potential sources of danger:

- Which dangers threaten your LAN or your data?
- Which paths can intruders take to gain access to your network?

Intruding into protected networks is generally referred to as an “attack”, so an intruder is also known as an “attacker”.

8.1.1 The dangers

The dangers on the Internet arise from all sorts of different motives. On the one hand, perpetrators are trying to personally enrich themselves or to specifically harm their victims. The increasingly widespread knowledge of “hacking” means it has become a kind of sport, which often attracts juveniles competing to see who can be the fastest to overcome the hurdles of cybersecurity.

Regardless of the individual motivation, the perpetrators' intentions usually following certain patterns:

- Insight into confidential information such as company secrets, access information, passwords for bank accounts, etc.
- Hijacking computers in the LAN for the purpose of the attackers, e.g. for the distribution of their own content, attacks on further computers, etc.
- Modifying data on the computers in the LAN, for example to create further means of access
- Destruction of data on computers in the LAN
- Disabling computers in the LAN or the Internet connection

We will concentrate on the attacks on local area networks (LAN) or on workstations and servers in these LANs.

8.1.2 The paths of the attackers

In order to achieve their objectives, the attackers first need a way to access your PCs and data. In principle, the following paths are open to them as long as they are not blocked or protected:

- Via the central Internet connection, e.g. via a router
- Via decentralized connections to the Internet, e.g. using modems on individual PCs or mobile phones connected to laptops
- Via wireless networks operating to supplement wired networks

This section concentrates exclusively on the paths through the central Internet connection, the router.

For information on protecting your wireless networks, please refer to the corresponding sections of this Reference Manual or the relevant device documentation.

8.1.3 The methods

Usually, strangers do not have access to your local network or the computers on it. So nobody can access the protected area without the corresponding access credentials or passwords. If these credentials cannot be gained by espionage, the attackers will attempt to reach their objectives in a different way.

One basic approach is to smuggle data into the network using one of the approved routes for data exchange, which then opens up access to the attacker from within. Attachments in e-mails or active content on web pages can be used to install a small program on a computer, which is then caused to crash. The program then uses the crash to create a new administrator on the computer, which can then be remotely used for further actions in the LAN.

If access via e-mail or WWW is not possible, an attacker may also search for a server on the LAN that offers certain services that can be used for their own purposes. The services on these servers are identified through specific ports in the TCP/IP protocol, so the search for open ports is referred to as port scanning. The attacker initiates this with a certain program that requests the desired services either from the Internet in general or from specific networks only. The corresponding response will come from unprotected computers.

A third option is to intercept and eavesdrop on an existing data connection. The attacker observes the victim's Internet connection and analyzes the connections. They then use an active FTP connection to insert their own data packets into the LAN.

One variant of this method is the "man-in-the-middle" attack. The attacker first observes to the communication between two computers and then intervenes.

8.1.4 The victims

The question of the degree of danger of an attack greatly influences the expenditure that one wishes to, or must, make on protection. You as a potential victim can assess whether your network is of particular interest to an attacker by means of the following criteria:

- At particular risk are networks of well-known companies or institutions, where valuable information may be available. This may include the research results that are of interest to industrial espionage, or bank servers that control large sums of money.
- However, the networks of smaller organizations are also at risk as they may be of interest to specific groups. The computers of tax consultants, lawyers or doctors certainly contain information that could be of interest to third parties.
- Last but not least, computers and networks are victims of attacks that offer no apparent benefit to the attackers. In particular "script kiddies", who test their abilities out of youthful ambition, are sometimes just looking for a defenseless victim as practice for tougher tasks.

  Attacking a private person's unprotected computer, which is not really very interesting at all, may serve as a starting point for attacks on the actual targets in the second step. The "uninteresting" computer becomes the starting point of the later attack, and the identity of the attacker is disguised.

All things considered, the statistical probability of an attack on the network of a global player is far greater than for a home-office network. But it is surely only a matter of time until a defenseless workstation on the Internet will, perhaps even accidentally, become the victim of attacks.

8.2 What is a firewall?

There are very different ways to interpret the concept of the "firewall". At this point we would like to explain the meaning of firewall in this manual:

A firewall is a centrally located collection of components for monitoring data exchange between two networks. In most cases, the firewall monitors the data exchange between an internal, local area network (LAN) and an external network such as the Internet.

The firewall can consist of hardware and / or software components:

- In purely hardware systems, the firewall software often runs on a proprietary operating system.
- The firewall software can also run on a normal computer with Linux, Unix or Windows, which is dedicated to this task.
- As a third and common alternative is the firewall software that runs directly within the router connecting the LAN to the Internet.

In the following sections, we will only consider the firewall in a router.

The functions "intrusion detection" and "DoS prevention" are a part a firewall in some applications. These functions are also included in our router, although they are implemented as separate modules alongside the firewall. Refer to sections *Protection against break-in attempts: Intrusion detection* on page 606 and *Protection against Denial-of-Service attacks* on page 607 for further information on this.

8.2.1 The tasks of a firewall

Checking data packets

How does the firewall monitor the traffic? In principle, the firewall works like a doorman for data packets: Each packet is inspected to see if it is allowed to pass the door of the network (the firewall) in the desired direction or not. This firewall inspection makes use of various criteria referred to as "rules" or "guidelines". Different types of firewalls are distinguished according to the type of information that is used to create the rules and that is inspected by firewall operations.

Above all, the aspect of central positioning is important: Only when all of the data traffic between the inside and outside passes through the firewall can it reliably fulfill its task. Any alternative path would reduce or even disable the security of the firewall. This central location of the firewall also makes maintenance easier: A firewall as a common transition between two networks is easier to maintain than a "personal firewall" on each computer in the LAN.

In principle, firewalls work at the interface between two or more networks. For the following explanation, we will focus on the transition between a local network at a company and the Internet. However, these explanations do apply analogously to other network constellations, such as for protecting a Human Resources subnet in an organization from the other network users.

Logging and alerting

Important functions of a firewall include not only inspecting the data packets and responding appropriately to the results of this check, but also the logging of all actions triggered by the firewall. By evaluating these logs, the admin can draw conclusions about the attacks and further improve the configuration of the firewall.

But sometimes, logging alone can come too late. Often, quick intervention by the admins can prevent further damage. For this reason, firewalls usually have an alert function which reports firewall messages to the administrator, possibly by e-mail.

8.2.2 Different types of firewalls

In recent years, the ways firewalls operate have continued to evolve. “Firewall” as a generic term refers to a whole range of different technologies used to protect the LAN. We introduce the most important types here.

Packet filters

A packet-filter based firewall inspects the information in the header of the data packets and uses this information to decide whether the packet should be allowed through or not. The information checked for data packets includes:

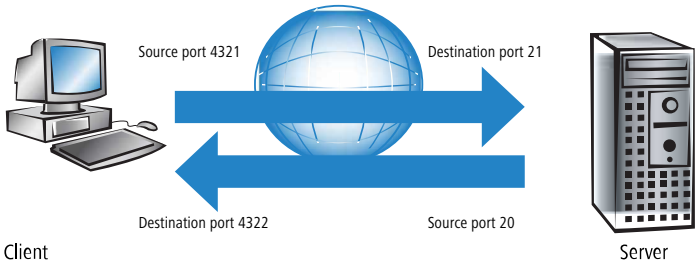
- Source and destination IP addresses
- Transmission protocol (TCP, UDP or ICMP)
- Source and destination port numbers
- MAC address

The rules defined in a packet-filter based firewall can decide, for example, whether packets from a particular IP address range are allowed to be forwarded to the local network, or whether packets for certain services (i.e., specific port numbers) should be filtered. These measures can be used to restrict or prevent communication with certain computers or entire networks, or the use of particular services. Rules can be combined. For example, you may want to allow only computers with specific IP addresses to access the Internet via TCP port 80, while disabling this service for all other computers.

The configuration of packet-filtering firewalls is relatively simple, and the list of allowed or forbidden packets can be quickly extended. Since the resources required for a packet filter to perform well are relatively modest, packet filters are usually implemented directly in routers, which anyway operate as an interface between the networks.

The disadvantage of packet filters is that the list of rules can become difficult to manage over time. Furthermore, some services negotiate the ports for their connections dynamically. For this communication to work, the administrator is forced to leave open any ports that may potentially be required, which of course goes against the principles of most security concepts.

An example of a process that causes difficulties for simple packet filters is establishing an FTP connection from a computer in its own LAN to an FTP server on the Internet. With the widely used active FTP, the client sends a request (from the protected LAN) via a higher numbered port (> 1023) to port 21 of the server. The client informs the server about which port it expects for the connection. The server then establishes a connection from its port 20 to the port requested by the client.



To enable this operation, even though it is impossible to know in advance which ports the client will request for the FTP connection, the administrator of the packet filter is forced to open all ports for inbound connections. An alternative is to use passive FTP. Here, the client itself establishes the connection to the server using a port which it previously communicated to the server. However, this method is not supported by all clients/servers.

Using the comparison of the firewall with a doorman once again, the doorman only checks whether or not he knows the courier at the door with the parcel. If the doorman knows the courier and has previously allowed him to enter the building, the courier may enter unhindered and unchecked and go to the recipient's workstation for all subsequent orders.

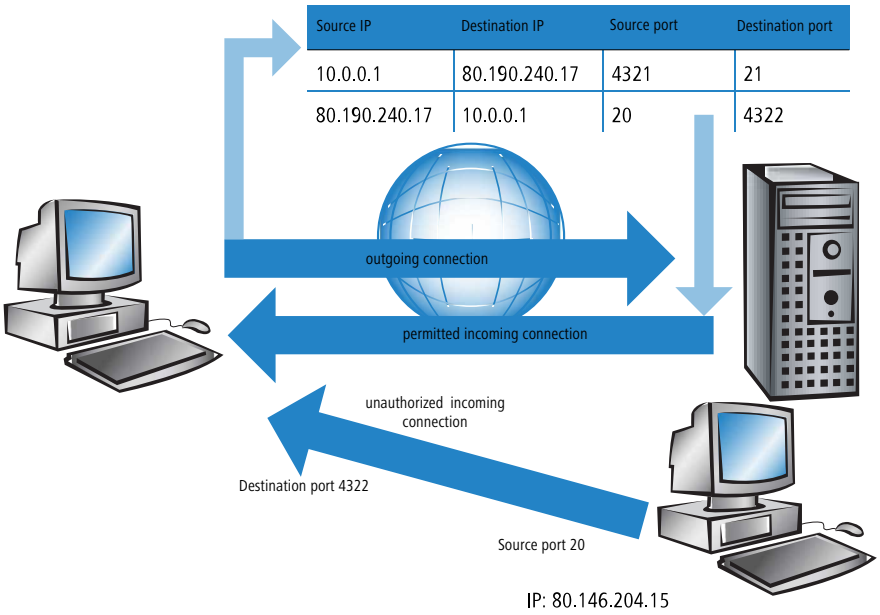
Stateful packet inspection

Stateful packet inspection (SPF), or stateful inspection for short, enhances the packet filter approach by checking additional information about the connection state. In addition to the static table with the permitted ports and address ranges, this technology maintains a dynamic table containing information about the status of the individual connections. This dynamic table initially allows all vulnerable ports to be blocked; only when an approved connection (defined by source and destination address) requests it will a port be opened. The act of opening ports is always initiated from the protected network towards the unprotected network, i.e. generally speaking from the LAN to the WAN (Internet). Data packets that are not associated with a valid connection in the state table are automatically dropped.

The rules used by stateful-inspection firewalls—unlike for conventional port-filter firewalls—are direction-dependent: A connection is always established from the source to the destination, unless there is an explicit entry for the return direction. Once a connection is established, the only the data packets that are transmitted are those that belong to this connection—in both directions, of course. This ensures that any unsolicited access attempts that are not from the local network are reliably blocked.

In addition, stateful inspection can see from the connection establishment whether additional channels are being negotiated for the data exchange. Protocols such as FTP (for data transfer), T.120, H.225, H.245 and H.323 (for Netmeeting or IP telephony), PPTP (for VPN tunnels) or IRC (for chat) establishing a connection from the LAN to the Internet using a particular source port indicate whether they are negotiating additional ports with the remote site. Stateful inspection enters these additional ports into the connection list, of course restricting them to the corresponding source and destination addresses.

Let's take another look at the example of an FTP download. When starting the FTP session, the client establishes a connection from the source port '4321' to the destination port '21' at the server. Provided that the FTP protocol is allowed from local computers to the outside, stateful inspection permits this initial connection to be established. The firewall enters the source and destination addresses along with the corresponding ports into the dynamic table. At the same time, the stateful inspection can inspect the control information sent to port 21 of the server. These control signals show that the client is requesting a connection from the server port 20 to the client port 4322. The firewall enters these values into the dynamic table because the client is requesting the connection into the LAN. The server can then send the data to the client as desired.



Should another computer on the Internet attempt to send data from its port 20 to the protected client via the now open port 4322, the firewall will prevent this because the IP address of the attacker does not match with the one permitted for this connection.

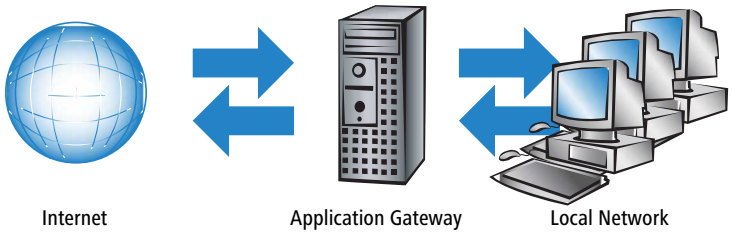
After a successful data transfer, the entries are automatically deleted from the dynamic table and the ports are closed again.

Moreover, a firewall with stateful inspection is usually able to re-assemble the data packets it receives, i.e. to buffer individual fragments and reassemble them into a complete packet. As a result, the firewall inspects not only the individual parts of fragmented packets, but also the complete IP packet itself.

This doorman is dong a much better job. A courier ordered by this company now has to call the doorman, tell them to expect a courier, what time he will be there, and what is written on the parcel delivery note. Only if this information agrees with the doorman's instructions will the courier be allowed through. If the courier brings not just one parcel, but two, then only the one with the correct delivery note will be allowed to pass. Similarly, a second courier demanding to see the employee will be turned away at the door.

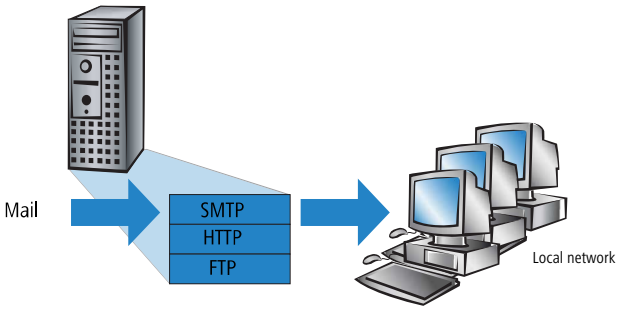
Application gateway

By checking content at application level, application gateways are a supplement to the packet-filter address validation and stateful-packet-inspection connection monitoring. As a rule, the high demands on hardware performance require the application gateway to run on a separate computer. This computer is located between the local network and the Internet. Seen from either direction, this computer is the only way to exchange data with the other network. There is no direct connection between the two networks, just to the application gateway.



The application gateway acts as a proxy for each of the two networks. Another name for this is a "dual-homed gateway" as this computer is, so to speak, at home in two networks.

A dedicated service is set up on the gateway for each of the permitted applications, such as SMTP for mail, HTTP for surfing the Internet, or FTP for data download.



This service receives the data received from one side and maps it to the other side. What at first glance looks like a rather superfluous mirroring of data actually represents the basic concept of application gateways: There is never a direct connection between a client on the local network and a server on the Internet. The computers in the LAN can only "see" the proxy, as can the computers from the Internet. This physical separation of LAN and WAN makes it much harder for an attacker to invade the protected network.

Put in terms of our earlier doorman's example, the parcel in this case is delivered at the gate and the courier may not even enter the company premises. The doorman accepts the parcel, opens it after checking the address and delivery note, and checks the contents. Once the parcel has successfully taken all these hurdles, an in-house messenger will take the parcel directly to the recipient in the company. The messenger thus becomes the representative of the courier on the company premises. Conversely, employees who want to send a parcel must call the doorman, who has the parcel picked up at the workplace and handed over to an appointed courier at the gate.

The function of an application gateway is not supported by the device due to the high demands on the hardware.

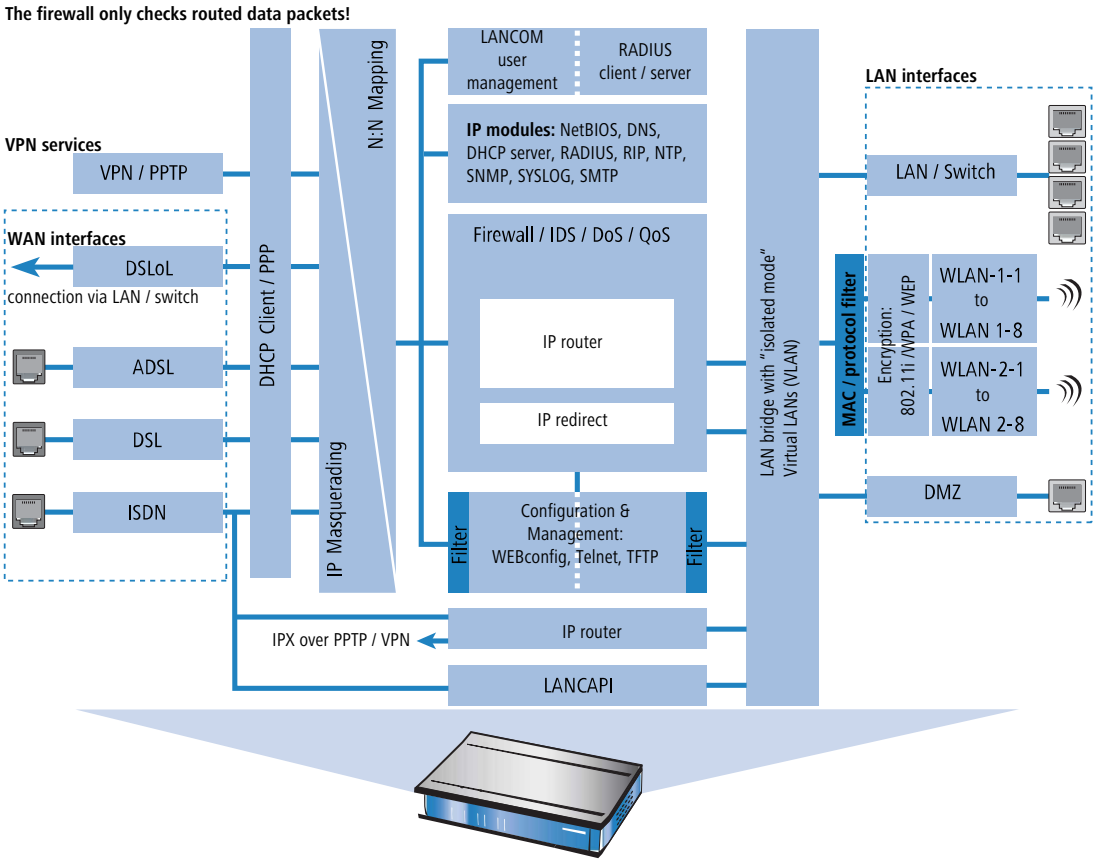
8.3 The firewall in the device

This section presents a general explanation of the dangers from the Internet, the tasks and types of firewalls, descriptions of the special functions of the firewall in the device, and information on its specific configuration.

For devices with VoIP functions that were already integrated or added in with a software option, the ports required for voice connections are activated automatically.

8.3.1 How the firewall inspects data packets

From the entire data stream passing through the IP router, the firewall filters out all data packets that have been targeted for special treatment.



The firewall only inspects the data packets that are routed by the IP router in the device. In general, these are data packets being exchanged between the internal networks (LAN, WLAN, DMZ) and the "outside world" via one of the WAN interfaces. Communication between the LAN and WLAN is not usually handled by the router, assuming that the LAN bridge allows a direct exchange. Thus the firewall rules do not apply here. The same applies to the so-called "internal services" such as Telnet, TFTP, SNMP and the web server for configuration via WEBconfig. The data packets for these services do not travel through the router and are therefore not affected by the firewall.

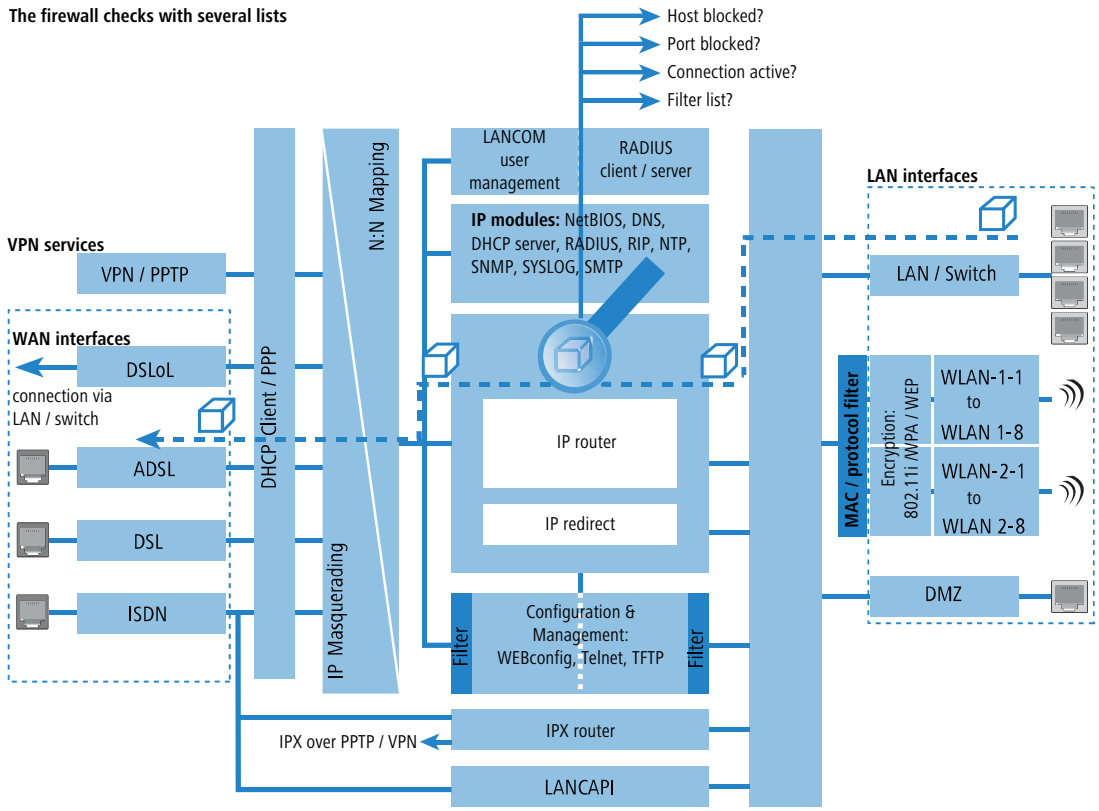
As it is located behind the masquerading module (as seen from the WAN), the firewall works with the "real" internal IP addresses of the LAN stations and not with the external Internet address of the device.

The firewall in the device inspects the data packets using a number of lists, which are generated automatically from the firewall rules, the firewall actions triggered by them, or the active data connections:

- Host blocking list
- Port blocking list
- Connection list
- Filter list

When a data packet is to be routed via the IP router, the firewall uses the lists as follows:

1. The first check is, whether the packet has arrived from a workstation that is in the **host block list**. If the sender is blocked, the packet is dropped.
2. If the sender is not blocked, the **port block list** is checked to see whether the port/protocol combination used on the target computer is closed. In this case these packet is dropped.
3. If the sender and the destination are not blocked in the first two lists, a check is made as to whether this connection is entered in the **connection list**. If an entry exists, then the packet is treated as is noted in the list.
4. If no entry is found for the packet, the **filter list** is scanned for a suitable entry and the action indicated there is performed. If the action indicates that the packet is to be accepted, an entry is made in the connection list and any further actions are noted there.



If there is no explicit firewall rule for a data packet, the packet is accepted (allow all). This ensures backwards compatibility with existing installations. To maximize protection by stateful inspection, please refer to the section *Establishing an explicit deny-all strategy* on page 593.

The four lists obtain their information as follows:

- The host blocking list contains those stations that are blocked for a certain time due to a firewall event. This list is dynamic and new entries can be added continuously by corresponding firewall events; entries disappear automatically after the blocking time expires.
- The port blocking list contains those protocols and services that are blocked for a certain time due to a firewall event. This list is also dynamic and new entries can be added continuously by corresponding firewall events; entries disappear automatically after the blocking time expires.
- Established connections are entered into the connection list if the checked packet is accepted by the filter list. The connection list records the source and destination, the protocol, and the port that a connection is currently allowed to use. The list also indicates how long the entry remains in the list and which firewall rule generated the entry. This list is highly dynamic and always "on the move".
- The filter list is generated from the rules in the firewall. The filters it contains are static and can only be changed when firewall rules are added, edited or deleted.

All lists used by the firewall to inspect the data packets are therefore ultimately based on the firewall rules (*Parameters of the firewall rules* on page 584).

8.3.2 Special protocols

An important point in connection monitoring is how to handle protocols that dynamically negotiate ports and/or addresses that are used for other communications. Examples of these protocols are FTP, H.323 or even many UDP-based protocols. These require further connections to be opened in addition to the initial one. (Also see *Different types of firewalls* on page 575).

UDP connections

Although UDP is actually a stateless protocol, even UDP-based protocols can be said to be short-term connections, as most of them are request-response protocols: Here, a client sends its request to the server's well-known port (e.g. 53 for DNS), and this sends back its response to the source port selected by the client:

Client port	Connection	Server port
12345	Request	53
	→	
12345	Response	53
	←	

However, for a server to send larger amounts of data, for example using TFTP where it does not need to differentiate between requests and acknowledgments on the well-known port, it first sends the response packet to the source port of the sender. In doing so, it sets an arbitrary free port as its own source port for exchanging data with the client:

Client port	Connection	Server port
12345	Request	69
	→	
12345	Response	54321
	←	
12345	AckData	54321
	→	

Client port	Connection	Server port
12345	Data/Ack	54321
	←	

With data transmission ongoing via the ports 12345 and 54321, the server can accept further requests on its well-known port (69). If the device pursues a “deny-all strategy”, the client's first request creates an entry in the connection list that only allows the server's data packets on port 69. The answer from the server would simply be dropped. To prevent this, the entry created in the connection list initially has no value for the connection’s destination port, and this is only set when the first response packet arrives. This caters for both possible cases of a UDP connection.

TCP connections

TCP connections cannot be tracked simply by inspecting the ports. For some protocols such as FTP, PPTP or H.323, checks of the payload are necessary to open all subsequently negotiated connections, so that only those packets that genuinely belong to the connections are accepted. This is a simpler version of how IP masquerading works, but without address and port mapping. It is sufficient to follow the negotiation, open the appropriate ports and link them with the main connection. This means that these ports are also closed when the main connection is closed, and the data traffic on the secondary connections also keeps the main connection open.

ICMP connections

For ICMP, we differentiate between two cases: These are the ICMP request/reply connections as used by “ping”, and the ICMP error messages that can be received in response to any IP packet.

ICMP request/reply connections can be uniquely assigned to the initiator according to the identifier used, i.e. when an ICMP request is sent, an entry is created in the state database that only allows ICMP replies with the correct identifier to pass. All other ICMP replies are silently dropped.

For ICMP error messages, the IP header and the first 8 bytes of the IP packet (usually UDP or TCP header) are inside the ICMP packet. On receipt of an ICMP error message, this information is used to search for the corresponding entry in the status database. The packet is forwarded only if a suitable entry exists, otherwise it is silently dropped. Furthermore, potentially dangerous ICMP error messages (redirect route) are filtered out.

Connections using other protocols

For all other protocols, no related connections can be tracked, i.e. only one connection between the participating hosts can be stored in the state database. These can only be initiated from one side, unless there is a dedicated entry for the “opposite direction” in the firewall.

8.3.3 General settings of the firewall

In addition to the individual firewall rules that generate the entries in the filter, connection and revocation lists, other settings are for the firewall in general:

- Firewall/QoS enabled
- Administrator e-mail *Administrator e-mail* on page 582
- Fragments *Fragments* on page 582
- Session recovery *Session recovery* on page 582
- Ping block *Ping blocking* on page 583
- Stealth mode *TCP stealth mode* on page 583
- Mask authentication port *Mask authentication port* on page 583

Firewall/QoS enabled

This option turns the entire firewall on or off, including the Quality of Service features.

Please note that the N:N mapping function is only effective when the firewall is activated.

Administrator e-mail

One of the actions that the firewall can trigger is to alert the administrator by e-mail. The administrator e-mail is the e-mail address to which the corresponding alerting e-mails are sent.

Fragments

Some attacks from the Internet try to outsmart the firewall with fragmented packets (packets split into several small units). One of the key features of stateful inspection is the ability to reassemble fragmented packets and then inspect the entire IP packet.

The desired behavior of the firewall can be set centrally. The following options are available:

- **Filter**: The fragmented packets are immediately dropped by the firewall.
- **Route**: Fragmented packets are passed through by the firewall without further checks, provided that the valid filter settings permit this.
- **Re-assemble**: The fragmented packets are cached and reassembled into a complete IP packet. The reassembled packet is then inspected with the valid filter settings and handled accordingly.

Session recovery

The firewall enters all currently permitted connections into the connection list. After a certain time (timeout) the entries automatically disappear from the connection list again, unless data is transmitted over the connection, which resets the timeout.

The general aging settings occasionally cause connections to be terminated before the requested data packets have been received by the remote site. In this case, there may still be an entry for a valid connection in the connection list even though the connection itself no longer exists.

The session-recovery parameter determines the firewall's behavior for packets that point to a former connection:

- **Always denied**: The firewall does not restore the session and drops the packet.
- **Denied for default route**: The firewall only restores the session if the packet was not received via the default route.
- **Denied for WAN**: The firewall only restores the session if the packet was not received over any of the WAN interfaces.
- **Always allowed**: The firewall always restores the connection if the packet belongs to a "former" connection from the connection list.

Because the function of the virtual router is based on checks of the interface tags, additional routes must be included as “default routes” in addition to the untagged default routes:

- When a packet is received at a **WAN interface**, the firewall considers the WAN interface to be a default route if either a tagged or an untagged default route refers to this WAN interface.
- If a packet is received at a **LAN interface** and is to be routed to a WAN interface, then this WAN interface is considered to be a default route if either the untagged default route or a default route tagged with the interface tag refers to this WAN interface.

Similarly, the default-router filters take effect even if the default route is in the LAN. Here it applies that the filter takes effect when

- A packet was received over a tagged LAN interface and is to be sent over a default route tagged with the interface, or
- A packet from another router was received at a tagged LAN interface and there is a default route with the interface tag to the packet's source address, or
- A packet was received from the WAN and is to be sent to the LAN via a default route with any tag

Ping blocking

One—not uncontroversial—way to increase security is to hide the router according to the motto: “If you can’t see me, you won’t attack me ..”. Many attacks start by looking for computers and/or open ports with the help of harmless requests, e.g. with the ping command or a port scan. Any response to these requests, including the “I am not here” response, informs the attacker about a potential target. Because if you answer, you're there. To prevent this, the device can suppress the responses to these requests.

It does this by simply not responding to ICMP echo requests. At the same time, the TTL-exceeded messages used with a traceroute are suppressed, so that the device cannot be found by a ping or a traceroute.

The available settings are:

- **Off**: ICMP responses are not blocked
- **Always**: ICMP responses are always blocked
- **WAN only**: ICMP responses are blocked on all WAN connections
- **Default route only**: ICMP responses are blocked on the default route (usually Internet)

For the choice of “default routes”, the same tips apply as for *Session recovery* on page 582.

TCP stealth mode

Along with ICMP messages, the behavior of TCP and UDP connections also provides information on the existence or non-existence of the addressed computer. Depending on the network environment, it may be useful to simply drop TCP and UDP packets instead of responding with a TCP reset or an ICMP message (port unreachable) if there is no listener for that particular port. The desired behavior can be set in the device.

By hiding ports without listeners, masked connections have the problem that the "authenticate" and "ident" service no longer works (or is no longer denied correctly). The corresponding port can therefore be treated separately (*Mask authentication port* on page 583).

The available settings are:

- **off**: All ports are closed and TCP packets are answered with a TCP reset
- **Always**: All ports are hidden and TCP packets are dropped silently.
- **WAN only**: All ports are hidden on the WAN side and closed on the LAN side
- **Default route only**: The ports are hidden on the default route (usually Internet) and closed on all other routes

For the choice of “default routes”, the same tips apply as for *Session recovery* on page 582.

Mask authentication port

Concealing TCP or UDP ports can mean that requests from servers (e.g. mail servers) to authenticate users are no longer answered correctly. Requests from the server run into a timeout, and the delivery of the mails is delayed considerably.

Even with TCP stealth mode enabled, the firewall detects a station's intention to connect to a mail server. The port required for the authentication request is then opened briefly (for 20 seconds).

This behavior of the firewall in TCP stealth mode can be suppressed specifically with the parameter “Always mask authentication port too”.

Activating the option “Always mask authentication port too” can lead to considerable delays in sending and receiving e-mails or news.

A mail or news server that requests any additional information from the user first runs into a disturbing timeout before it starts to deliver the mails. This service thus needs its own switch to hide it while remaining compliant.

The problem is that a setting that hides all of the ports but issues rejects from the ident port is nonsensical, simply because these rejects (i.e. destination unreachable) reveal the presence of the device.

In order to solve this problem, the device has the option of rejecting ident requests from mail and news servers only. Requests from all other computers are simply dropped. To this end, requests sent to a mail (SMTP, POP3, IMAP2) or news server (NNTP) cause ident requests from the respective servers to be rejected for a brief period (20 seconds).

When the time has expired, the port is hidden again.

8.3.4 Parameters of the firewall rules

In this section, we describe the components of a firewall rule and the options available for setting the various parameters.

Components of a firewall rule

A firewall rule is first determined by its name and a few other options:

- **On/off switch**: Is the rule enabled?
- VPN rule: Is the firewall rule used to create VPN rules? *VPN rules* on page 585
- Observe further rules: Should further firewall rules be observed if this rule applies to a data packet? *Observe further rules* on page 584
- **Priority**: Which priority does the rule have? *Priority* on page 584
- **Source tag**: Using a source tag you add the source network where the device applies the firewall rule to the routing tag. Enter the source tag in order to uniquely specify the relationship between the source and destination hosts in ARF contexts: The device only forwards data packets to an ARF network when they originate from hosts in an ARF network with the specified source tag.
- **Routing tag**: By using the routing tag, additional information obtained via the destination IP addresses, such as the service or protocol used, can be used to select the destination route. The policy-based routing implemented in this way is used to achieve a significantly finer-grained routing behavior.

  The routing tag 0 means 'do not mark'. If the device is to route data packets to a network tagged with 0, please enter 65535 here.

Priority

When the device uses the firewall rules to generate the filter list, the entries are sorted automatically. The "degree of detail" is considered here: The first rules to be processed are those that have been specified, followed by the general ones (e.g. deny-all).

If the automatic sorting does not produce the desired behavior from the firewall, the priority can be modified manually. The higher the priority of the firewall rule, the higher the corresponding filter is placed in the filter list.

For complex rule sets, check the filter list as described in the section *Firewall diagnosis* on page 600.

Observe further rules

Some requirements of the firewall cannot be achieved by a single rule alone. If the firewall is used to limit the Internet traffic of different departments (each in their own IP subnet), no individual rule is able to simultaneously reproduce the common upper limit. For example, if each of the three departments has a maximum bandwidth of 512 kbps, but the total data rate of the three departments together cannot exceed a limit of 1024 kbps, then a multi-level check of the data packets must be established:

- The first stage checks that the current data rate of each individual department does not exceed the limit of 512 kbps.
- The second stage checks that the data rate of all the departments together does not exceed the limit of 1024 kbps.

Normally the list of firewall rules is applied sequentially to a received data packet. If one of the rules applies, the corresponding action is executed. This completes the firewall check; no further rules are applied to the packet.

To achieve two-stage or multi-level checks on data packets, the “Observe further rules” option is activated for the rules. If a firewall rule with the “Observer further rules” option enabled applies to a data packet, the corresponding action is executed first and then the firewall inspection is continued. If one of the other rules also applies to this packet, the action

that corresponds to this rule is also executed. If the “Observer further rules” option is also enabled for this subsequent rule, the inspection continues until

- either a rule with the “Observer further rules” option not enabled applies to the packet
- or the list of firewall rules is processed completely and no further rules apply to the packet.

To implement the aforementioned scenario, a firewall rule is set up for each subnet to drop additional packets of the FTP and HTTP protocols from a data rate of 512 kbps and upwards. For these rules, the “Observer further rules” option is enabled. An additional rule is set up for all stations in the LAN to drop all packets exceeding 1024 kbps.

VPN rules

Once possible source for a VPN rule to obtain information about the source and destination networks is the firewall rules.

Enabling the “This rule is used to create VPN rules” option for a firewall rule determines that a VPN rule is derived from this firewall rule.

When using multiple local networks (also see ARF) the automatic generation of VPN rules for each network also has to be set up very precisely. The definition of networks with automatically generated VPN rules uses the interface tag which is given for every network. This tag enables the allocation of local network to VPN route: Every packet received at a local interface is marked with the interface tag and forwarded along a route with the same tag or with the default tag (0).

For automatic VPN rule generation, all networks are taken up that

- Have the tag '0' or
- Fulfill the two conditions as follow:
  - The network has the same interface tag as the IP-routing-table entry for the VPN connection (not to be confused with the routing tag for the remote gateway).
  - The network is of the type 'Intranet'

VPN rules for a DMZ also have to be manually created just as for networks with an interface tag which does not fit to the routing tag of the VPN route.

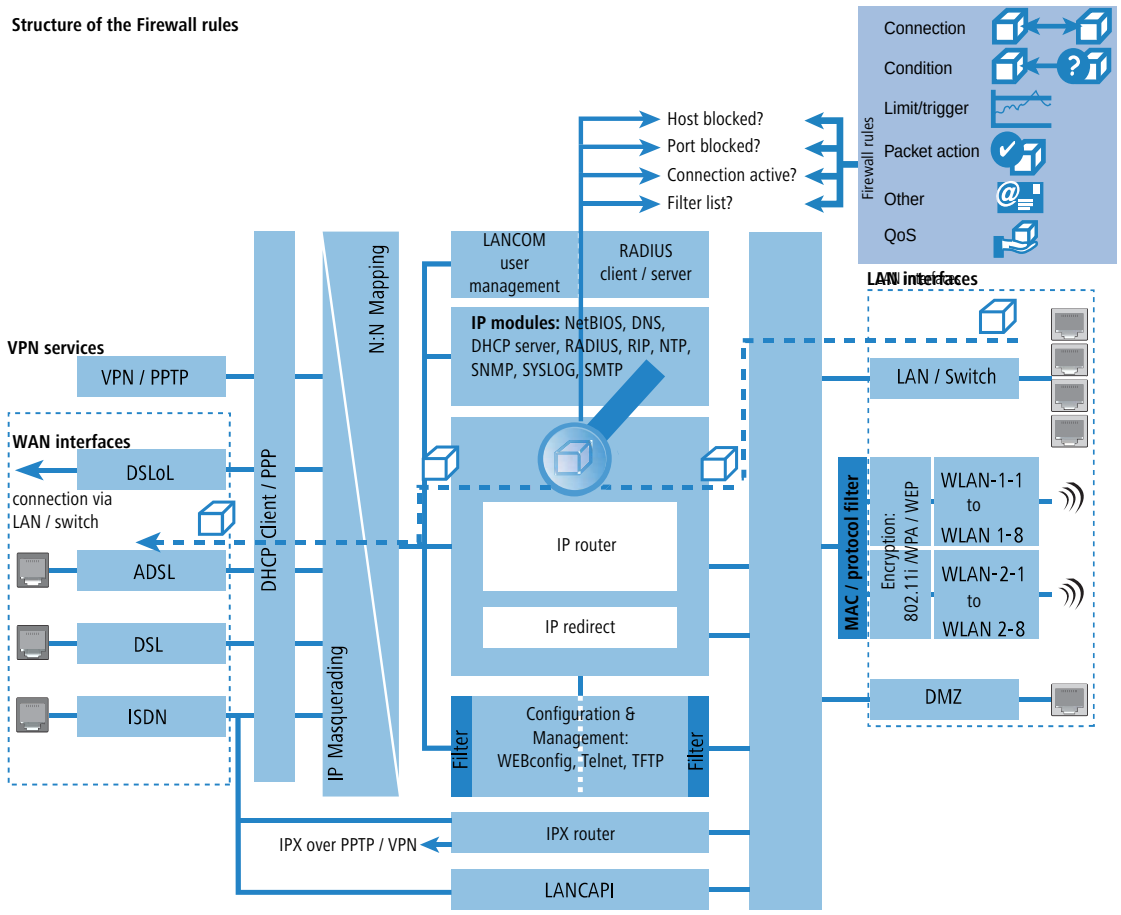
Application of the firewall rules

In addition to this basic information, a firewall rule answers questions such as when and to what it is to be applied, and what actions should be executed, if any:

- Connection: Which stations/networks and services/protocols does the rule refer to? *Connection* on page 586
- Conditions: Is the effectiveness of the rule restricted by other conditions? *Condition* on page 587
- Trigger: When reaching which thresholds should the rule trigger? *Limit (trigger)* on page 587
- Packet action: What should happen to the data packets when the condition is met and the threshold is reached? *Packet action* on page 587
- Further measures: Should other measures be initiated in addition to the packet action? *Further measures* on page 587
- Quality of Service (QoS): Are data packets for particular applications or with the corresponding markings given preferential treatment by Quality of Service? *Quality of Service (QoS)* on page 588

Condition, trigger, packet action, and further measures are collectively known as the “action set”. Each firewall rule can contain several action sets. If the same trigger is used for several action sets, the order of the action sets can be adjusted.

In the section *How the firewall inspects data packets* on page 578 we have already shown that the lists for checking the data packets are ultimately formed from the firewall rules. The block diagram in further detail appears as follows:



Connection

The connection in the firewall rule specifies which data packets the rule refers to. A connection is defined by the source, the destination and the service used. The following details are used to specify the source or destination:

- All stations
- The entire local area network (LAN)
- Certain remote sites (designated by the name in the list of remote sites)
- Certain stations in the LAN (designated by the host name)
- Certain MAC address

> MAC stands for Media Access Control and is the linchpin for communications on a LAN. Every network adapter has its own MAC address. MAC addresses are unique and distinctive worldwide, similar to device serial numbers. Using the MAC addresses, the PCs in the LAN can be specifically granted or denied rights at the IP packet level. Network devices are often labeled with their MAC addresses in hexadecimal notation (for example, 00:A0:57:01:02:03).

- Ranges of IP addresses
- Complete IP networks

Host names can only be used if the device can resolve the names into IP addresses. To this end, the device must have learned the names via DHCP or NetBIOS, or the assignment must be entered statically in the DNS or IP routing table. An entry in the IP routing table can therefore assign a host name to a whole network.

> If the source or the destination for a firewall rule has not been specified, the rule applies in general to data packets “from all stations” or “to all stations”.

The service is determined by combining an IP protocol with the corresponding source and/or destination ports. For frequently used services (WWW, e-mail, etc.), the necessary combinations are predefined in the device, and others can be created as required.

Condition

Additional conditions can be used to restrict the effectiveness of a firewall rule. The following conditions are available:

- Only for packets with certain ToS and/or DiffServ markings
- Only if not connected
- Only for the default route (Internet)
- Only for VPN routes

Limit (trigger)

The limit (or trigger) denotes a quantified threshold that must be exceeded on the defined connection before the filter action is executed for a data packet. A limit is made up of the following parameters:

- Unit (kbit, kbyte or packets)
- Amount, i.e. data rate or number
- Reference value (per second, per minute, per hour or absolute)

Additionally, you can determine whether the limit relates to a logical connection or to all of the various connections existing between the specified destination and source stations and using the corresponding services. This controls whether the filter applies when the sum of all user HTTP connections in the LAN exceed the limit, for example, or whether it is sufficient for just one of the parallel established HTTP connections to exceed the threshold value.

For absolute values, you can also define whether the relevant counter should be reset to zero when the limit has been reached.

Data is always transferred until the limit is reached. With a trigger value of "0" a rule is activated immediately when data packets arrive for transmission over the specified connection.

Packet action

The firewall has three ways to handle a filtered packet:

- **Transmit**: The packet is transmitted normally.
- **Drop**: The packet is dropped silently.
- **Reject**: The packet is rejected and the recipient is sent a corresponding message via ICMP.

Further measures

The firewall is not only used to drop or accept filtered data packets. It can also take further measures once a data packet has been inspected by the filter. The measures are divided into two functions: "Logging/Notification" and "Prevention of further attacks":

- Send SYSLOG message: Sends a message via the SYSLOG module to a SYSLOG client specified in the "Log & Trace" configuration section.
- Send e-mail message: Sends an e-mail message to the administrator specified in the "Log & Trace" configuration section.
- Send SNMP: Sends an SNMP trap for processing by LANmonitor, for example.

  Each of these three messaging actions automatically results in an entry in the firewall event log.

- Disconnect: Cuts the connection from which the filtered packet was received.

  This cuts the physical connection, i.e. the Internet connection, and not just the logical connection between the two computers!

- Lock source address: Blocks the IP address where the filtered packet was received from, for an adjustable time.
- Lock target port: Blocks the destination port to which the filtered packet was sent, for an adjustable time.

Quality of Service (QoS)

In addition to restricting the transmission of data packets, the firewall can also grant "special treatment" for certain applications. The QoS settings use the firewall to assign data packets to specific connections or services.

8.3.5 Alert functions of the firewall

This section contains detailed descriptions of the messages sent by the firewall during security-related events. The following message types are available:

- E-mail notification
- SYSLOG report
- SNMP trap

Alerts are triggered either by the intrusion detection system, the denial of service protection, or by freely adjustable actions in the firewall. You can specify the specific parameters for the different types of notification (e.g. the e-mail account to be used) in the following places:

LANconfig: **Log & Trace** > **SMTP account** and **Log & Trace** > **System events**

Command line: **Setup** > **Mail** and **Setup** > **SYSLOG**

An example:

Let us assume a filter named 'BLOCKHTTP' is defined to block access to an HTTP server (192.168.200.10). In the event that someone attempts to access this server anyway, all traffic to and from that computer is blocked and the administrator is alerted via SYSLOG.

SYSLOG notifications

When the port filter firewall drops a packet, SYSLOG displays a message, such as:

```
PACKET_ALERT: Dst: 192.168.200.10:80 {}, Src: 10.0.0.37:4353 {} (TCP): port filter
```

The ports are output for ported protocols only. Furthermore, computer names are output when they can be directly resolved by the device (i.e. without a DNS request).

If the SYSLOG flag is set for a filter entry (`%s` action), this notification becomes more detailed. In this case the name of the filter, the exceeded limit, and the executed filter actions are also output. For the example above, the notification might look like this:

```
PACKET_ALERT: Dst: 192.168.200.10:80 {}, Src: 10.0.0.37:4353 {} (TCP): port filter
PACKET_INFO:
matched filter: BLOCKHTTP
exceeded limit: more than 0 packets transmitted or received on a connection
actions: drop; block source address for 1 minutes; send syslog message;
```

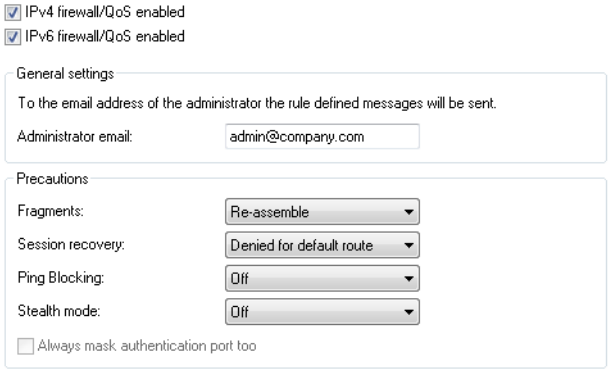
Notification by e-mail

If the e-mail system on the device is enabled, you can use the convenient e-mail notification. As soon as the firewall action is performed, the device sends an e-mail to the administrator in the following form:

```
FROM: device@company.com
TO: admin@company.com
SUBJECT: packet filtered
Date: 9/24/2002 15:06:46
The packet below
Src: 10.0.0.37:4353 {cs2} Dst: 192.168.200.10:80 {ntserver} (TCP)
45 00 00 2c ed 50 40 00 80 06 7a a3 0a 00 00 25 | E..,.P@. ..z....%
c0 a8 c8 0a 11 01 00 50 00 77 5e d4 00 00 00 00 | .......P .w^.....
60 02 20 00 74 b2 00 00 02 04 05 b4 | `. .t... ....
```

```
matched this filter rule: BLOCKHTTP
and exceeded this limit: more than 0 packets transmitted or received on a connection
because of this the actions below were performed:
drop
block source address for 1 minutes
send syslog message
send SNMP trap
send email to administrator
```

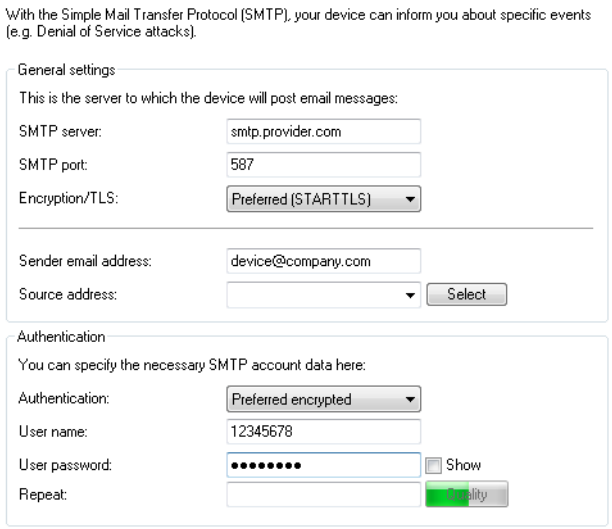
Sending e-mail from the device to the administrator only works if the correct e-mail address is entered.



LANconfig: **Firewall/QoS** > **General**

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall**

In addition, a mailbox must be set up in order to send e-mail.



LANconfig: **Log & Trace** > **SMTP account**

Command line: **Setup** > **SMTP** > **Firewall**

Notification by SNMP trap

If sending SNMP traps is the selected notification method, then the first line of the logging table is sent as enterprise-specific trap 26. This trap additionally contains the system descriptor and the system name from the MIB-2.

For the example, an SNMP trap is generated with the following information:

```
SNMP: SNMPv1; community = public; SNMPv1 Trap; Length = 443 (0x1BB)
SNMP: Message type = SNMPv1
```

```
SNMP: Version = 1 (0x0)
SNMP: Community = public
SNMP: PDU type = SNMPv1 Trap
SNMP: Enterprise = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021
SNMP: Agent IP address = 10.0.0.43
SNMP: Generic trap = enterpriseSpecific (6)
SNMP: Specific trap = 26 (0x1A)
SNMP: Time stamp = 1442 (0x5A2)
```

- System descriptor:

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0 1.
SNMP: String Value = LANCOM Business 6021 2.80.0001 / 23.09.2002 8699.000.036
```

- Device string:

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5.0 2. System-Name
SNMP: String Value = LANCOM Business 6021
```

- Time stamp:

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021.1.10.26.1.2.1 3.
SNMP: String Value = 9/23/2002 17:56:57
```

- Source address:

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021.1.10.26.1.3.1 3.
SNMP: IP Address = 10.0.0.37
```

- Destination address

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021.1.10.26.1.4.1 4.
SNMP: IP Address = 192.168.200.10
```

- Protocol (6 = TCP):

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021.1.10.26.1.5.1 5.
SNMP: Integer Value = 6 (0x6) TCP
```

- Source port

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021.1.10.26.1.6.1 6.
SNMP: Integer Value = 4353 (0x1101)
```

- Destination port (80 = HTTP):

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021.1.10.26.1.7.1 7.
SNMP: Integer Value = 80 (0x50)
```

- Name of the filter rule:

```
SNMP: OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.400.1.6021.1.10.26.1.8.1 8.
SNMP: String Value = BLOCKHTTP
```

This trap and all other traps generated in the device are sent to all manually configured trap receivers and to any authenticated LANmonitor, which can evaluate this and possibly all other traps.

8.3.6 Strategies for configuring the firewall

Firewalls form the interfaces between networks and, to a greater or lesser extent, they restrict the unhindered exchange of data. The purpose of a firewall is thus diametrically opposed to that of the network to which it belongs: Networks are supposed to connect computers, firewalls aim to prevent connections.

This contradiction indicates the dilemma of the responsible administrators who, as a result, have developed various strategies as a solution.

Allow all

The allow-all strategy prioritizes the unobstructed communication between network users over security. It basically allows any communication, and the LAN is open to attackers. The LAN only becomes more secure when the administrator successively configures new rules that restrict or prevent elements of the communication.

Deny all

The deny-all strategy starts with a "block everything" approach with the firewall blocking all communication between the network and the rest of the world. As a second step the administrator then opens up address ranges or ports that are required for day-to-day communication with the Internet, etc.

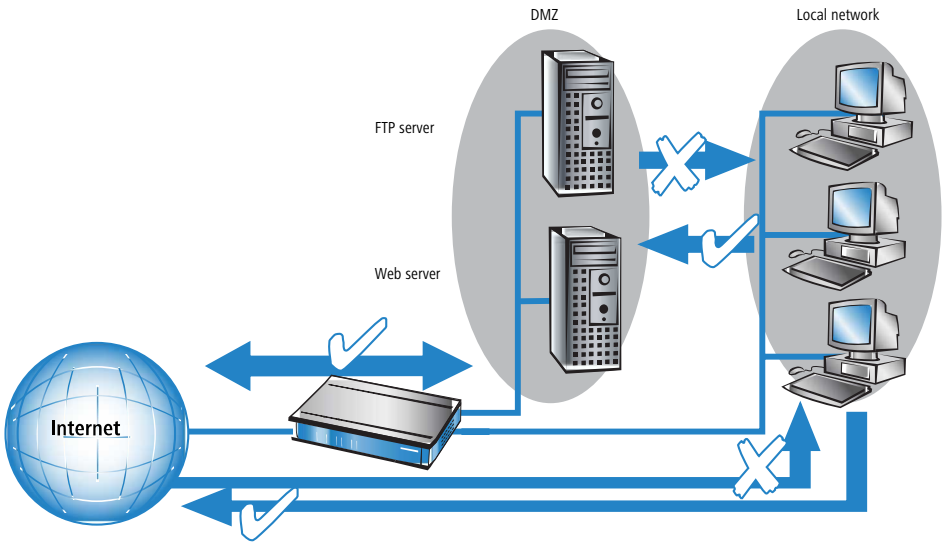
This approach is better for the security of the LAN than the allow-all strategy but often leads to difficulties for users in the initial phase. Some things may simply not work in the same way after the deny-all firewall is activated and some computers may not be reachable, etc.

Firewall with DMZ

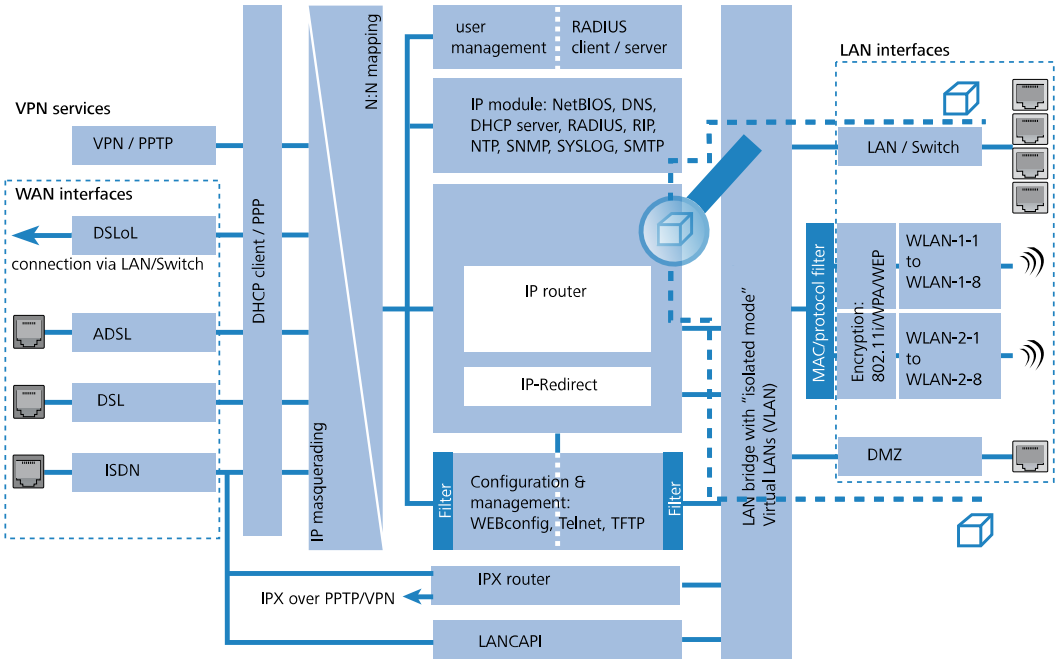
The demilitarized zone (DMZ) represents a special area of the local area network, which is shielded by a firewall both from the Internet and from the LAN itself. Computers or servers that should be accessible from the unsecured network (Internet) should be placed into this network. These include, for example, your own FTP and Web servers.

First and foremost, the firewall protects the DMZ against attacks from the Internet. Additionally, the firewall also protects the LAN against the DMZ. The firewall is configured so that only the following accesses are possible:

- Stations from the Internet can access the servers in the DMZ, but access to the LAN from the Internet is not possible.
- The stations on the LAN can access the Internet and the servers in the DMZ.
- The servers in the DMZ cannot access the stations in the LAN. This ensures that even a “cracked” server in the DMZ does not pose a security risk for the LAN.



Some router models support this setup by means of a separate LAN interface used only for the DMZ. Looking at the data path through the device, the function of the firewall for shielding the LAN from the DMZ becomes clear.



The direct data exchange between LAN and DMZ is not possible via the LAN bridge if a dedicated DMZ port is used. The path from the LAN to the DMZ and vice versa is therefore only through the router, and thus through the firewall. This in turn shields the LAN against requests from the DMZ as well as against the Internet.

For many network structures, shielding the DMZ against the Internet on the one hand and the LAN on the other requires the use of two separate firewalls. When using a device with a DMZ port, only one device is needed for this configuration, which has the advantage of a much simplified configuration.

8.3.7 Tips for setting the firewall

The firewall in the device is an extremely versatile and powerful tool. To help you to create custom firewall rules, here are some tips for finding the best settings for your specific application.

For devices with VoIP functions that were already integrated or added in with a software option, the ports required for voice connections are activated automatically.

Default firewall settings

Ex-factory there is just one entry in the firewall rule table, the "WINS rule". This rule prevents unwanted connections over the default route (usually to the Internet) by means of the NetBIOS protocol. Windows networks send requests to the network at regular intervals to find out if the known stations are still available. In combination with time-based billing of a network connection, this results in unwanted connection being setup.

The device can prevent unwanted connections, including those for network connectivity, by using its integrated NetBIOS proxy to pretend to respond to queries for resources until an actual access takes place.

Security through NAT and stateful inspection

If no other firewall rule is entered, the local network is protected by the interaction of network address translation and stateful inspection: Only connections from the local network generate an entry in the NAT table, whereupon the device opens a communication port. Communication over this port is monitored by stateful inspection: Only packets belonging

to this connection may be communicated over this port. Attempts to access the local network from outside are met with an implicit deny-all strategy.

If you operate a server on your LAN that is made accessible from the Internet by means of entries in the service table, then stations from the Internet can establish connections to this server from the outside. In this case, inverse masquerading takes precedence over the firewall unless an explicit deny-all rule has been set up.

Transferring firewall rules with scripts

Firewall rules can be easily and conveniently transferred via scripts across device and software versions. Explicit example scripts can be found in the LANCOM Knowledge Base.

Establishing an explicit “deny-all” strategy

In order to achieve the maximum degree of security and control over data traffic, we recommend that you initially block all data transfers through the firewall. Subsequently, only those functions and communication paths that are really required are selectively activated. This provides protection for example from so-called 'Trojan horses' or e-mail viruses that actively establish an outgoing connection via certain ports.

The “deny-all” rule is by far the most important rule for the protection of your LAN. With this rule the firewall acts in accordance with the following principle: “Anything not explicitly allowed is forbidden.” This is the only strategy with which the administrator can be really sure that no possibility of access has been overseen—only those points of access that have been explicitly allowed are available.

We recommend that you set the deny-all rule before attaching the LAN to the Internet via a device. You can then use the logging table (that can be launched from LANmonitor) to easily see which connections have been blocked by the firewall. Using this information you can then successively add “allow-rules” to the firewall.

Some typical applications are shown below.

The filters described here are easily set up with the Firewall Wizard. If necessary, they can be further refined with LANconfig, for example.

› Sample configuration “Basic Internet”

Rule name	Source	Destination	Action	Service (target port)
ALLOW_HTTP	Local network	All stations	Transmit	HTTP, HTTPS
ALLOW_FTP	Local network	All stations	Transmit	FTP
ALLOW_EMAIL	Local network	All stations	Transmit	MAIL, NEWS
ALLOW_DNS_FORWARDING	Local network	Router IP address (option: Local network)	Transmit	DNS
DENY_ALL	All stations	All stations	Reject	ANY

› If you want to allow VPN dial-in to a device as a VPN gateway, you need a firewall rule that allows incoming communication from the client to the local network:

Rule name	Source	Destination	Action	Service
ALLOW_VPN_DIAL_IN	Remote site name	Local network	Transmit	ANY

› In the situation where a VPN is not terminated by the device itself (e.g. VPN client in the local network, or the device is a firewall in front of an additional VPN gateway), then you also need to allow IPSec and/or PPTP (for the 'IPSec over PPTP' used by the LANCOM VPN client):

Rule name	Source	Destination	Action	Service (target port)
ALLOW_VPN	VPN client	VPN server	Transmit	IPSEC, PPTP

› If you allow ISDN dial-in or V.110 dial-in (e.g. via HSCSD mobile phone), you must allow the particular remote:

Rule name	Source	Destination	Action	Service
ALLOW_DIAL_IN	Remote site name	Local network	Transmit	ANY

› For connectivity between networks, you also have to allow communications between the participating networks:

Rule name	Source	Destination	Action	Service
ALLOW_LAN1_TO_LAN2	LAN1	LAN2	Transmit	ANY
ALLOW_LAN2_TO_LAN1	LAN2	LAN1	Transmit	ANY

› If you operate your own web server, you selectively allow access to the server:

Rule name	Source	Destination	Action	Service (target port)
ALLOW_WEBSERVER	ANY	Web server	Transmit	HTTP, HTTPS

› For diagnostic purposes, it is recommended that you enable the ICMP protocol (e.g. for the ping command):

Rule name	Source	Destination	Action	Service
ALLOW_PING	Local network	All stations	Transmit	ICMP

These rules can now be refined as required, for example by specifying minimum and maximum bandwidths for server access, or by the granular restriction to certain services, stations or remote sites.

When the filter list is set up, the device automatically sorts the firewall rules. The rules are sorted according to their level of detail. The first rules to be processed are the specific ones followed by the general ones (e.g. deny-all). For complex rule sets, check the filter list as described in the following section.

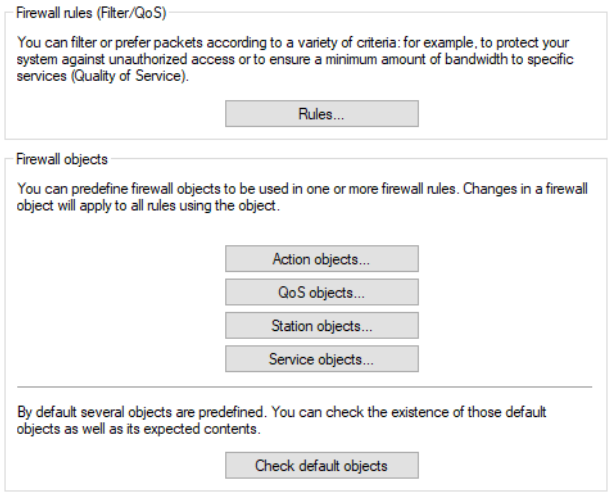
8.4 Configuring the firewall with LANconfig

8.4.1 Definition of firewall objects

When configuring the firewall with LANconfig, various objects can be defined that are used in the firewall rules. This means that frequently used definitions (such as a particular action) do not need to be re-entered for every rule. Instead they can be stored once at a central location.

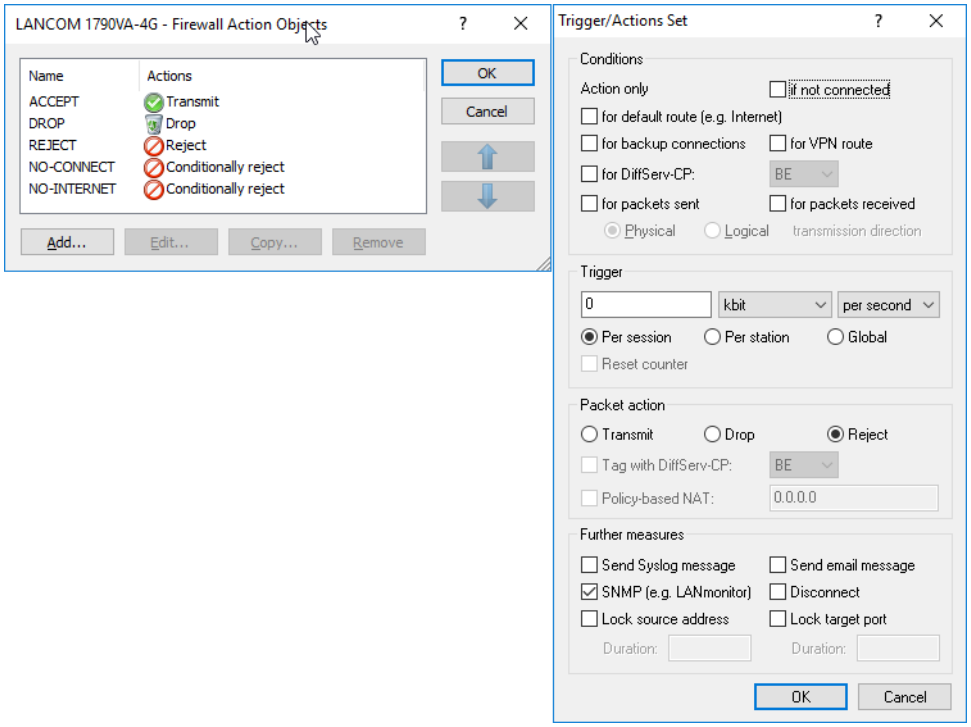
Please note that a change to firewall objects affects all of the firewall rules that use this object. For this reason, all firewall rules that also use these objects are displayed when you make changes to firewall objects.

Existing firewalls (in the % notation) are not automatically converted to the object-oriented form when the configuration is opened in LANconfig. The LANCOM Knowledge Base contains the pre-defined firewall settings used by the new objects.



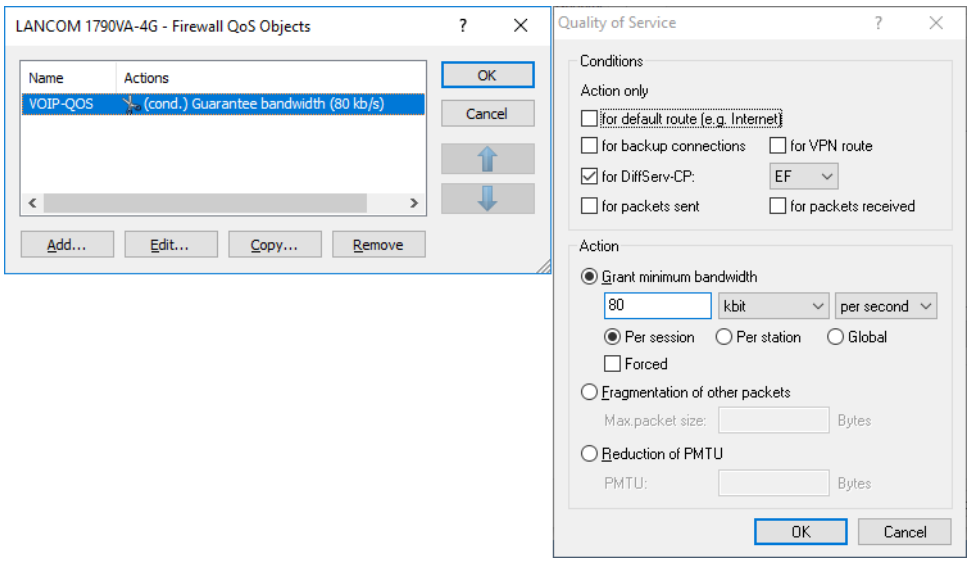
Action objects

Here you specify here the firewall action, which is comprised of condition, limit, packet action and other measures to be used by the firewall rules.



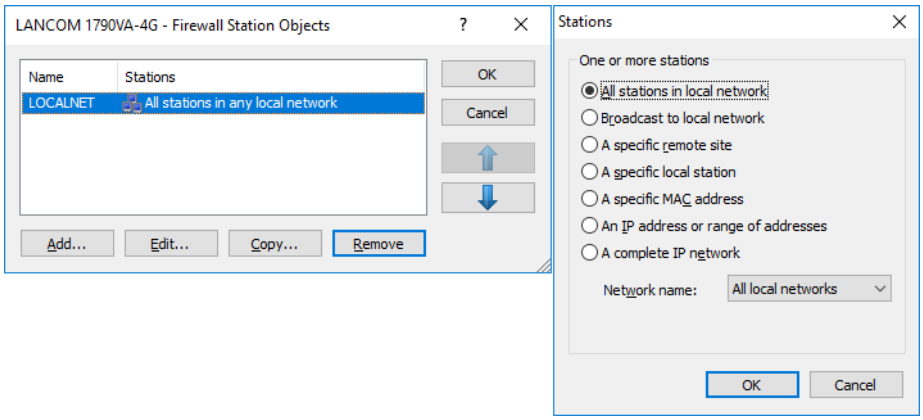
QoS objects

Here you set the minimum bandwidths that the firewall rules allocate to data packets.



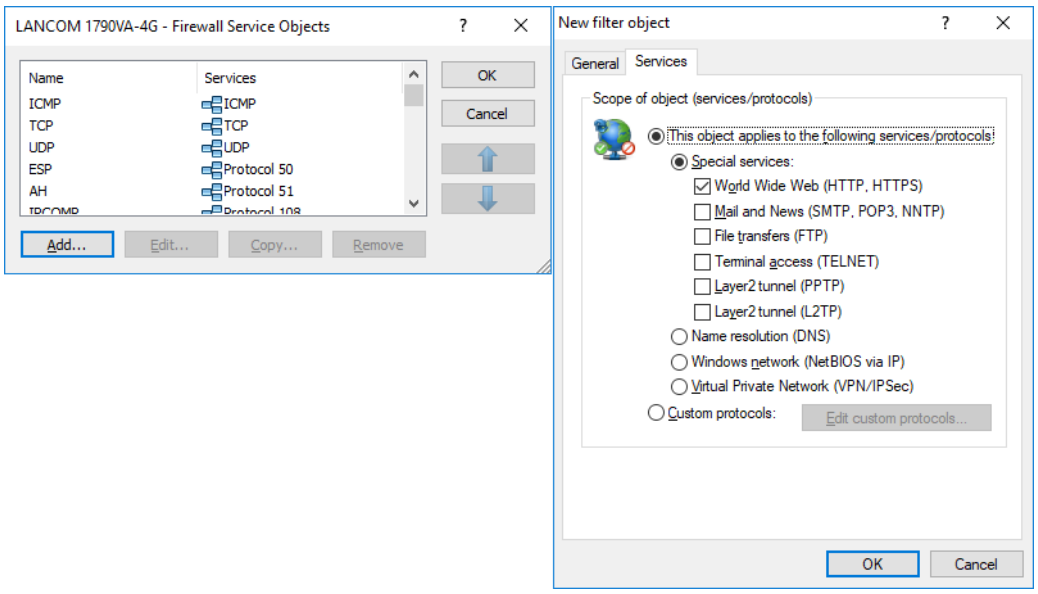
Station objects

This is where the stations are defined that the firewall rules are to use as packet sender or addressee. The station objects are not restricted to any particular source or destination, but can be used as required by the firewall rules. In conjunction with ARF, for example, it is possible to define a specific IP network as a station object.



Service objects

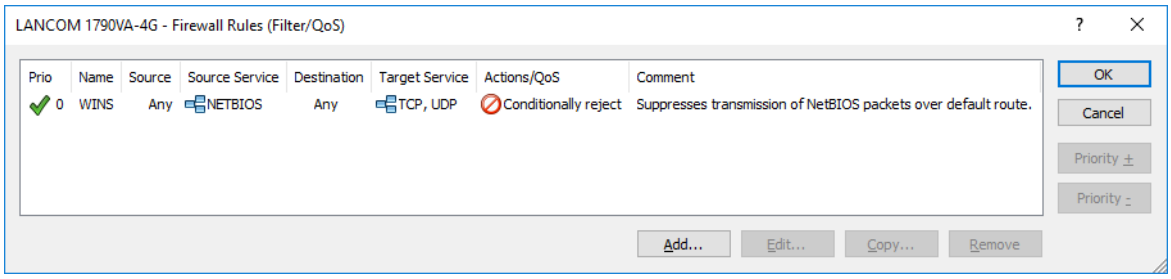
The IP protocols and the source/destination ports to be used by the firewall rules are defined here.



8.4.2 Defining firewall rules

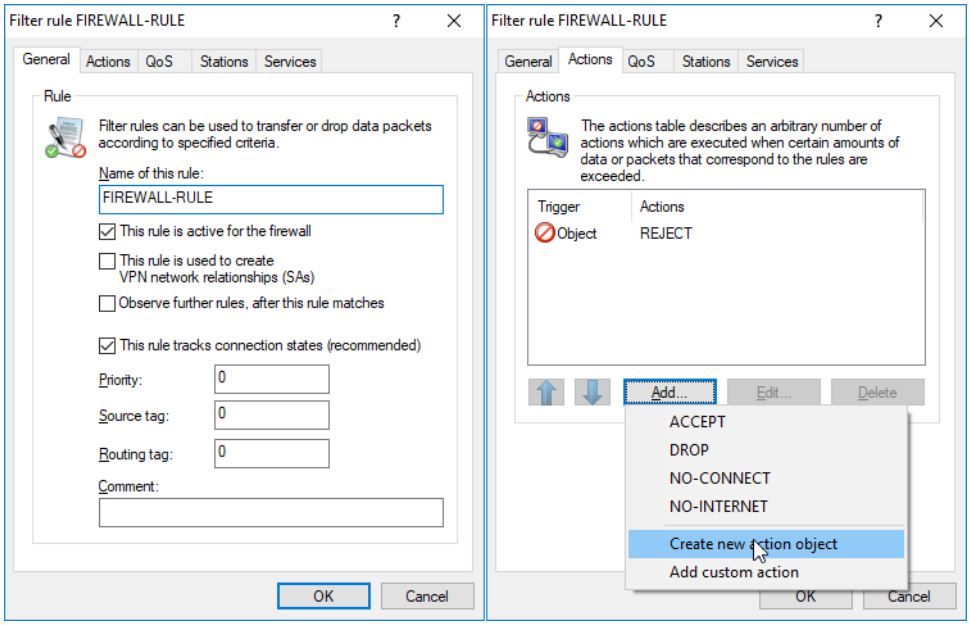
The firewall rules are shown in a clearly laid-out table containing the following information:

- In the left-most column, icons indicate the status of the firewall rule:
  - Green check-mark: Firewall rule is enabled.
  - Red cross: Firewall rule is disabled.
  - Lock: Firewall rule is used to create VPN rules manually.
  - Two interlinked arrows: If this firewall rule applies, consider other rules.
- Name of firewall rule
- Source
- Destination
- Source and destination service
- Action/QoS
- Comment



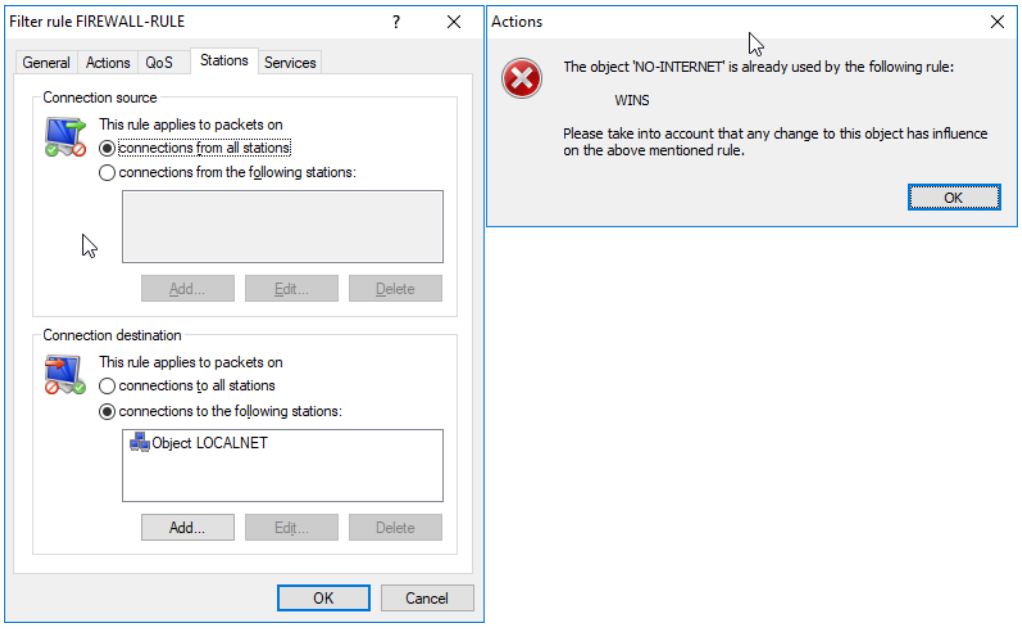
Adding a new firewall rule

When creating a new firewall rule, the general data is entered first. Objects already defined can be selected directly from the tabs for Actions, QoS, Stations and Services. New objects that can also be used in other rules can be created here, as can user-defined entries that are only to be used in the active firewall rule.



Editing firewall rules

When editing an existing firewall rule, the user is shown whether actions, QoS, stations or services have been added as pre-defined objects. A message is displayed if you try to edit a referenced object that is already used by another firewall.



8.4.3 Separate views for the IPv4 and IPv6 firewalls

As of firmware version 8.80, you can configure the rules for the IPv4 and IPv6 firewalls in separate views.

The corresponding configurations are located under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 rules** and **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** respectively.

8.5 Configuring firewall rules from the command line

8.5.1 Rules

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Rules**

The rules table links various pieces of information on a firewall rule. The rule contains the protocol to be filtered, the source, the destination and the firewall action to be executed. For every firewall rule there is also an on/off switch, a priority, the option to link with other rules, and activation of the rule for VPN connections.

The routing tag 0 means 'do not mark'. If the device is to route data packets to a network tagged with 0, please enter 65535 here.

The firewall is configured using objects. The % notation described as follows is only necessary for defining objects or actions.

Existing firewalls in the % notation are not automatically converted to the object-oriented form. However, the LANCOM Knowledge Base contains the pre-defined firewall settings used by the new objects.

Devices with firmware version 7.6 or later are automatically pre-defined with the main firewall objects. When processing older configurations with LANconfig, the firewall's standard objects are added automatically.

The firmware uses a special syntax to define firewall rules. This syntax enables the representation of complex interrelationships for the testing and handling of data packets in the firewall with just a few characters. The rules are defined in the rules table. Pre-defined objects can be stored in two further tables so that frequently used objects do not have to be entered into the firmware syntax every time:

- The firewall actions are stored in the action table
- The object table holds the stations and services

The objects from these tables can be used for rule definition, although this is not compulsory. They merely simplify the use of frequently used objects.

The definition of firewall rules can contain entries in the object table for protocols, services, stations and the action table for firewall actions, and also direct definitions in the appropriate firmware syntax (e.g. %P6 for TCP).

For direct input of level parameters in the firmware syntax, the same rules apply as specified for protocols, source/destination and firewall actions.

8.5.2 Object table

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Objects**

Elements/objects that are to be used in the firewall rules table are defined in the objects table. Objects can be:

- Individual computers (MAC or IP address, host name)
- Complete networks
- Protocols
- Services (ports or port areas, e.g. HTTP, Mail&News, FTP,…)

These elements can be combined and hierarchically structured in any way. For example, objects for the TCP and UDP protocols can be defined first. Building upon this, objects can subsequently be created, for example, for FTP (= TCP +

ports 20 and 21), HTTP (= TCP + port 80) and DNS (= TCP, UDP + port 53). These can in turn be combined into one object that contains all the definitions of the individual objects.

8.5.3 Action table

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Actions**

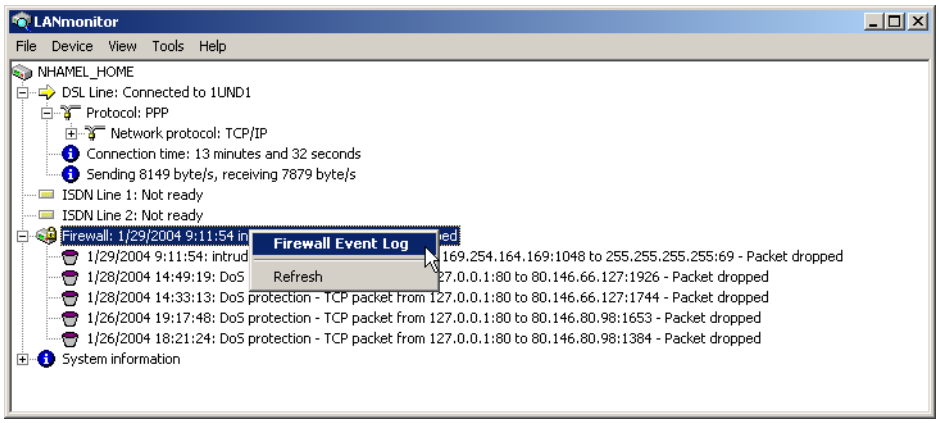
A firewall action comprises of a condition, a limit, a packet action and other measures.

As with the elements of the object table, firewall actions can be given a name and be combined with each other in any way recursively. The maximum recursion depth is limited to 16. They can also be entered into the actions field of the rules table directly.

8.6 Firewall diagnosis

All events, states and connections of the firewall can be logged and monitored in detail.

The easiest way to inspect the log is to display the log table in LANmonitor (see below). In LANmonitor, the Firewall section displays the last five events triggered by a firewall rule, the DoS, or the IDS system with the SNMP option enabled.



With a right-click on this section, the context menu allows the log to be displayed in full by clicking on Firewall Event Log *The firewall table* on page 600.

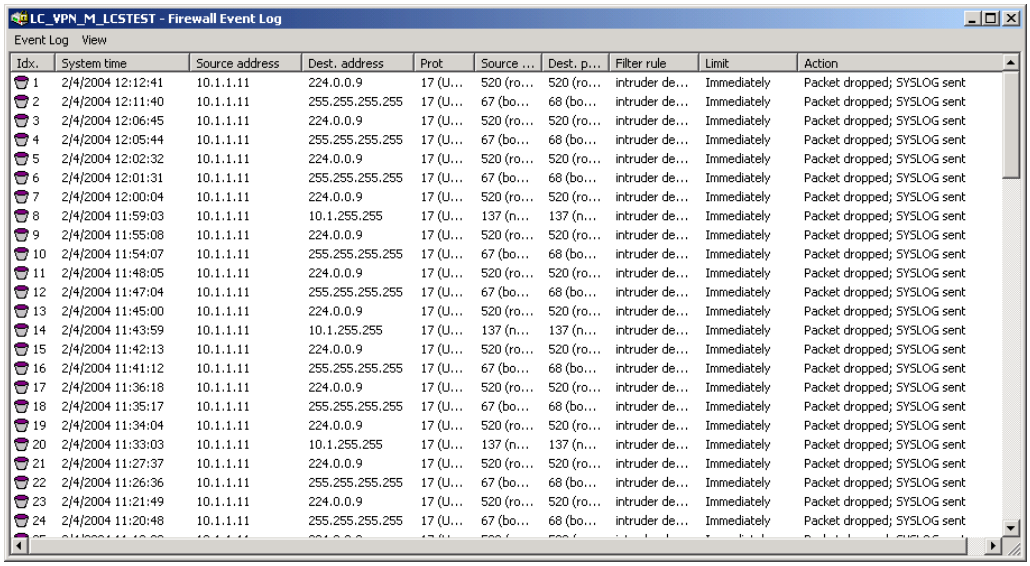
All of the lists and tables described in this section are to be found under the following menu items:

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Status** > **IP-Router-Statistics**

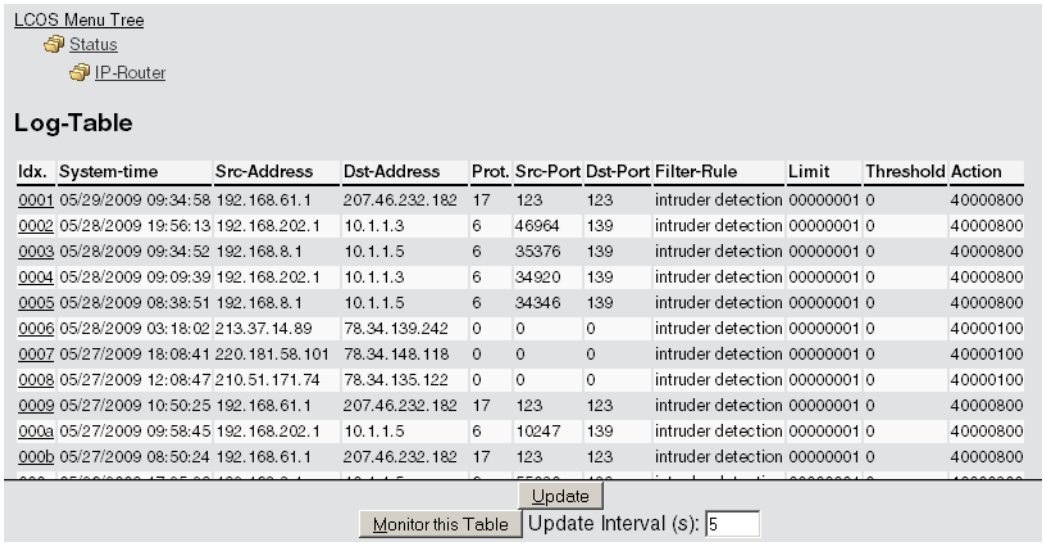
8.6.1 The firewall table

When a loggable event occurs, i.e. an action is taken when a packet is received, or a message is sent by e-mail, syslog or SNMP, this event is recorded in the log table.

Viewing the log table in LANmonitor appears as follows:



Viewing the log table in WEBconfig appears as follows:



The table contains the following values:

Element	Meaning
Idx.	Sequential index (so that the table can also be polled via SNMP)
System time	System time in UTC encoding (converted to cleartext for display)
Source address	Source address of the filtered packet
Destination address	Destination address of the filtered packet
Prot.	Protocol (TCP, UDP, etc.) of the filtered packet
Source port	Source port of the filtered packet (only for port related protocols).
Destination port	Destination port of the filtered packet (only for port related protocols)
Filter rule	Name of the rule that created the entry.
Limit	Bit field describing the exceeded limit by which the packet was filtered. The following values are currently defined:

Element	Meaning
	> 0x01 Absolute number > 0x02 Number per second > 0x04 Number per minute > 0x08 Number per hour > 0X10 Global limit > 0x20 Byte limit (if not set, it is a packet limit) > 0x40 Limit only applies in the inbound direction > 0x80 Limit only applies in the outbound direction
Threshold	Threshold limit value of the triggering limit
Action	Bit field which lists all the actions performed. The following values are currently defined: > 0x00000001 Accept > 0x00000100 Reject > 0x00000200 Connect filter > 0x00000400 Internet (default router) filter > 0x00000800 Drop > 0x00001000 Disconnect > 0x00004000 Block source address > 0x00020000 Block destination address and port > 0x20000000 Send SYSLOG notification > 0x40000000 Send SNMP trap > 0x80000000 Send e-mail

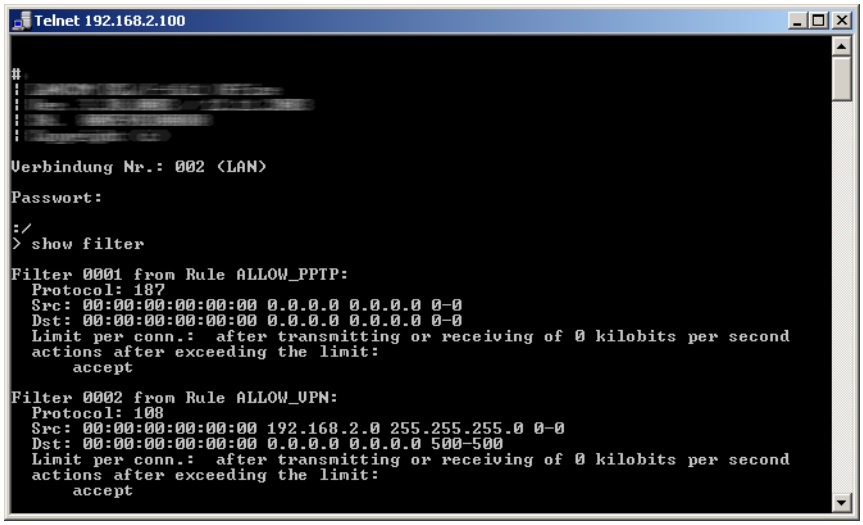
All firewall actions are also displayed in the IP router trace. Some models also have a firewall LED, which indicates each packet filtered.

Filter list

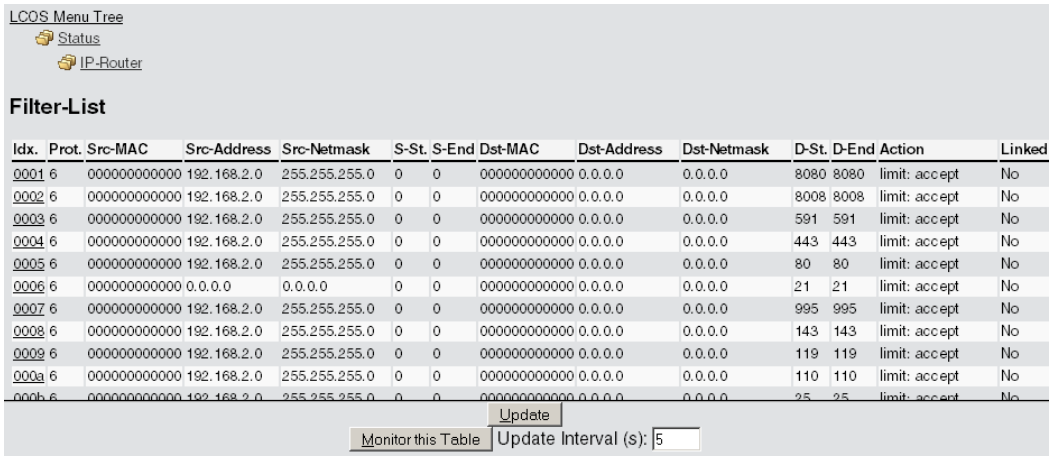
The filter list allows you to examine the filters that are generated from the rules specified in the action, object and rule tables.

If a filter is defined manually from the command line or in WEBconfig and there are errors in the syntax, no entry will be created in the filter list. In this case, no error message will be output. If you configure the filters manually, you should always use the filter list to check whether the desired filters have actually been created.

On the command line, the contents of the filter list are displayed using the command `show filter`:



Under WEBconfig the filter list is structured as follows:



Idx.	Prot.	Src-MAC	Src-Address	Src-Netmask	S-St.	S-End	Dst-MAC	Dst-Address	Dst-Netmask	D-St.	D-End	Action	Linked
0001	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	8080	8080	limit: accept	No
0002	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	8008	8008	limit: accept	No
0003	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	591	591	limit: accept	No
0004	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	443	443	limit: accept	No
0005	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	80	80	limit: accept	No
0006	6	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	21	21	limit: accept	No
0007	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	995	995	limit: accept	No
0008	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	143	143	limit: accept	No
0009	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	119	119	limit: accept	No
000a	6	000000000000	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	0	0	000000000000	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	110	110	limit: accept	No

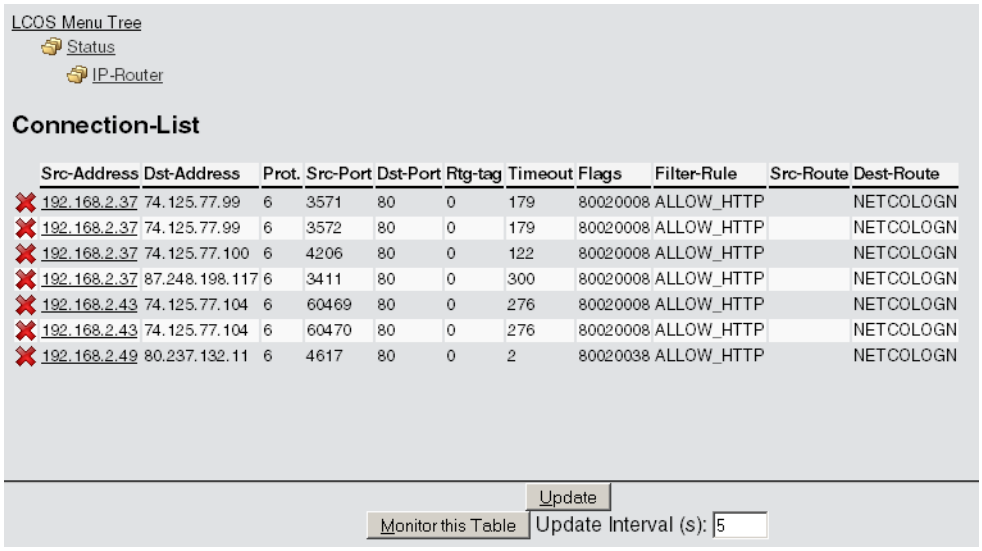
The individual fields in the filter list have the following meaning:

Entry	Description
Idx.	Sequential index
Prot.	Protocol to be filtered, e.g. 6 for TCP or 17 for UDP
Src MAC	Ethernet source address of the packet to be filtered or 000000000000 if the filter is to apply to all packets
Src address	Source IP address or 0.0.0.0 if the filter is to apply to all packets
Source mask	Source netmask which, together with the source IP address, determines the source network, or 0.0.0.0 if the filter is to apply to packets from all networks
Q start	Start source port of the packets to be filtered.
Q end	End source port of the packets to be filtered. Together with the start source port, this defines a port range in which the filter takes effect. If start and end port are 0, the filter applies to all source ports.
Dst-MAC	Ethernet destination address of the packet to be filtered or 000000000000 if the filter is to apply to all packets.
Dst address	Destination IP address or 0.0.0.0 if the filter is to apply to all packets
Dst mask	Destination netmask which, together with the destination IP address, determines the destination network, or 0.0.0.0 if the filter is to apply to packets for all networks
Z start	Start destination port of the packets to be filtered.
Z end	End destination port of the packets to be filtered. Together with the start destination port, this defines a port range in which the filter takes effect. If start and end port are 0, the filter applies to all destination ports.
Action	This column displays the “main action” as text, i.e. the action that is executed when the first limit is exceeded. The first limit can also be an implicit limit. For example, when throughput is limited by a single value only, an implicit limit is added that is linked with an “accept” action. The main action in this case is “accept”. Actions can be viewed in full with the command `show filter`.
Linked	Indicates whether this rule is a first match rule (linked = no). Only in the case of linked rules will further rules be evaluated if this rule applies.
Prio	Priority of the rule that created the entry.

Connection list

The connection list monitors the source address, destination address, protocol, source port, destination port, etc. of a connection, along with any actions that may be executed. This list is sorted by the source address, destination address, protocol, source port and destination port of the packet that caused the entry in the list.

Under WEBconfig the filter list is structured as follows:



The list contains the following elements:

Element	Meaning
Src address	Source address of the connection
Dst address	Destination address of the connection
Prot.	Protocol used (TCP/UDP, etc.), shown as a decimal
Src port	Source port of the connection. The port is only shown for port-related protocols (TCP/UDP) or protocols that have a comparable field (ICMP/GRE)
Dst port	Destination port of the connection (in the case of UDP connections, this contains the first answer only)
Timeout	Each entry ages out of this list over time, which prevents the list from overflowing with “dead” connections.
Flags	The flags are used to store information on the connection state and other (internal) information to a bit field. The states can have the following values: New, establish, open, closing, closed, rejected (corresponding to the TCP flags: SYN, SYN ACK, ACK, FIN, FIN ACK and RST) UDP connections know the states, open and closing (the latter only if the UDP connection is linked by a stateful control channel. This is the case with H.323, for example)
Src route	Name of the remote site from which the first packet was received.
Dst route	Name of the remote site to which the first packet is sent.
Filter rule	Name of the rule that created the entry. It also determines the actions to take when a matching packet is received.

Meaning of the flags in the connection list

Flag	Meaning
00000001	TCP: SYN sent
00000002	TCP: SYN/ACK received
00000004	TCP: Waiting for ACK from server
00000008	All: Connection open
00000010	TCP: FIN received
00000020	TCP: FIN sent

Flag	Meaning
00000040	TCP: RST sent or received
00000080	TCP: Session being restored
00000100	FTP: Passive FTP connection being established
00000400	H.323: Related T.120 connection
00000800	Connection via loopback interface
00001000	Checking linked rules
00002000	Rule is linked
00010000	Destination is on "local route"
00020000	Destination is on default route
00040000	Destination is on VPN route
00080000	No physical connection established
00100000	Source is on default route
00200000	Source is on VPN route
00800000	No route to destination
01000000	Contains global action with condition

Port block list

If the blocking of the destination port on the destination computer has been selected as the action, the address, protocol and port of the destination computer are stored in the port block list. This list is also a sorted semi-dynamic list. The list is sorted by address, protocol and port. The list contains the following elements:

Element	Meaning
Address	Address of the computer to be blocked.
Protocol	Protocol used (TCP/UDP, etc.), shown as a decimal.
Port	The port to be blocked on the computer. If the protocol is not port-related, then the entire protocol is blocked for this computer.
Timeout	Duration of the blocking in minutes.
Filter rule	Name of the rule that created the entry. It also determines the actions to take when a matching packet is received.

Host block list

If the action selected for a filter is to block the sender, then the address of the computer is stored in the host block list. This list is a semi-dynamic list sorted by sender address. It contains the following elements:

Element	Meaning
Address	Address of the blocked computer
Timeout	Duration of the blocking in minutes
Filter rule	Name of the rule that created the entry. It also determines the actions to take when a matching packet is received.

8.7 Firewall limitations

Apart from understanding how firewalls function, it is also very important to recognize their limitations and to supplement them if necessary. For example, the firewall provides no protection against malicious content entering the local network on the permitted routes. Although it is true to say that the effects of some viruses and worms are reduced because they cannot communicate via the required ports, the firewall by itself does not provide real protection against viruses.

Similarly, the interception to confidential data on the Internet cannot be prevented by the firewall. Data that has passed the firewall and reached the insecure network is exposed to the known dangers there. Even when using a firewall, confidential information such as contracts, passwords, development information, etc., should therefore only be transferred with suitable protection, such as by using suitable encryption methods or via VPN connections.

8.8 Protection against break-in attempts: Intrusion detection

The task of the firewall is to check the traffic crossing the boundaries between networks and to reject or drop packets that have no permission for transmission. Along with direct attacks on computers in protected networks, attacks can also be directed to the firewall itself, or attempts can be made to outwit the firewall with fake data packets.

These attempts are detected, repelled and logged by an intrusion detection system (IDS). There is a choice of alerts including in-device logging, e-mail messaging, SNMP traps or SYSLOG alarms. The IDS checks the traffic for certain properties and can detect new attacks from conspicuous patterns.

8.8.1 Examples of attempted break-ins

Typical break-in attempts include fake source addresses (IP spoofing) and port scans, as well as the misuse of special protocols such as FTP to open a port on the attacked computer and bypass the firewall in front of it.

IP spoofing

In IP spoofing, the sender of a packet pretends to be another computer. This is done either to outsmart firewalls that trust packets from their own network more than packets from untrusted networks, or to disguise the originator of an attack.

The device firewall protects against spoofing by route examination, i.e. whether a packet is allowed to be received at the interface where it arrived.

Port scan detection

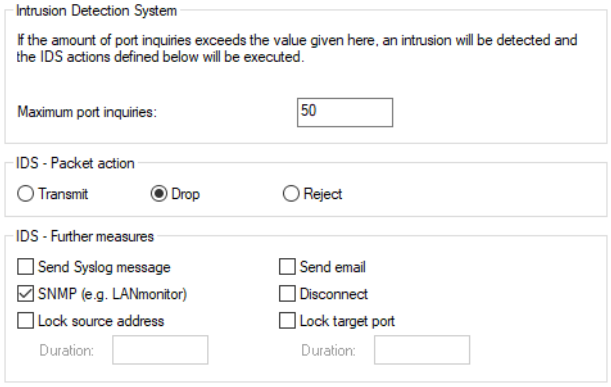
The intrusion detection system tries to detect port scans, to report them, and to react to the attack. This is similar to detecting a SYN flood attack (see *SYN flooding* on page 608): A count is kept of the number of "half-open" connections, whereby a TCP reset sent by the scanned computer leaves a "half-open" connection open again.

Once a certain number of half-open connections exists between the scanned and the scanned computer, this is reported as a port scan.

Similarly, the reception of empty UDP packets is interpreted as an attempted port scan.

8.8.2 Configuring the IDS

The settings for the IDS are located here.



LANconfig: **Firewall/QoS** > **IDS**

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall**

Along with the maximum number of port requests, the packet action and the available reporting mechanisms, there are further reaction options:

- Disconnection
- The source address is blocked for an adjustable time
- The target port of the scan is blocked for an adjustable time

8.9 Protection against "Denial-of-Service" attacks

In addition to conventional break-ins, attacks from the Internet may aim to block the availability of individual services. These attacks are also called "Denial of Service". The routers are equipped with appropriate security mechanisms to recognize popular hacker attacks and keep the router functioning.

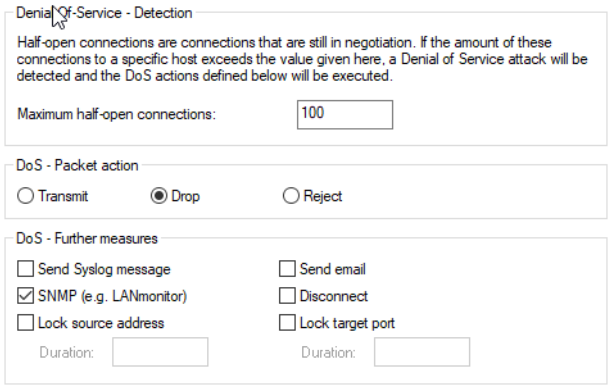
8.9.1 Increased DoS threshold value for central devices

Denial-of-Service attacks take advantage of inherent weaknesses in the TCP/IP protocol in combination with poor implementations.

- Attacks which target these inherent weaknesses include SYN Flood and Smurf.
- Attacks which target erroneous implementations include those operating with erroneously fragmented packets (e.g. Teardrop) or with fake sender addresses (e.g. Land).

Your device detects most of these attacks and reacts with appropriate countermeasures. Detecting these attacks relies on counting the number of connections which are concurrently under negotiation (half-open connections). If the number of half-open connections exceeds a certain threshold value, then the device assumes that a DoS attack is underway. The actions and measures which are taken in this case can be defined, similar to firewall rules.

Central devices are connected to a large number of users, so it is possible for a large number of half-open connections to exist without being caused by a DoS attack. For this reason, a higher default threshold value is required for the accurate detection of DoS attacks.



LANconfig: **Firewall/QoS** > **DoS**

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall**

- **Maximum half-open connections**

  Specifies the number of half-open connections which triggers DoS-attack countermeasures.

  Possible values:

  - 0 to 9999

  Default:

  - 100
  - 1000 for central devices

8.9.2 Examples of Denial-of-Service attacks

Denial-of-Service attacks exploit the inherent weaknesses in the TCP/IP protocol and poor implementations of the TCP/IP protocol stack. Attacks which target these inherent weaknesses include SYN Flood and Smurf. Attacks which target erroneous implementations include those operating with erroneously fragmented packets (e.g. Teardrop) or with fake sender addresses (e.g. Land). A number of these attacks, their effects and possible countermeasures are described in the following.

SYN flooding

With SYN flooding, an attacker sends a rapid and continuous succession of TCP packets set with a SYN flag from constantly changing source ports to open ports of the victim. The computer under attack then sets up a TCP connection, returns a packet with set SYN and ACK flags to the attacker, and waits in vain for confirmation of the connection establishment. This results in hundreds of "half-open" TCP connections that consume resources (e.g. memory) on the computer under attack. This can result in the victim no longer being able to accept any further TCP connections, or it may even crash the machine due to a lack of memory.

As a countermeasure, the firewall monitors and limits the number of half-open TCP connections between two computers. Any further TCP connections being established between these computers are blocked by the firewall.

Smurf

The Smurf attack works in two stages and paralyzes two networks at once. In the first step a ping (ICMP echo request) packet with a fake sender address is sent to the broadcast address of the first network. Now all workstations in this network respond with an ICMP echo reply to the fake sender address, which is located in the second network. If the rate

of the incoming echo requests and the number of responding computers is high enough, the entire incoming traffic of the second network is blocked for the duration of the attack and, furthermore, the owner of the fake address is unable to accept normal data for this time. If the fake sender address is also the broadcast address of the second network, then all of the computers in this network are blocked as well.

In this case, DoS detection in the device blocks packets that are directed to the local broadcast address.

LAND

The LAND attack is a TCP packet that is sent to the target computer with a SYN flag set and a fake sender address. The tricky thing here is that the fake sender address is the same as the victim's address. If TCP has been implemented poorly, the victim interprets its own SYN-ACK response as a SYN request and sends yet another SYN-ACK. This leads to an infinite loop that causes the computer to freeze.

In a newer variant, the sender address of the packet is not the address of the attacked computer, but the loopback address 127.0.0.1. The purpose of this trick is to outsmart personal firewalls that respond to the classic variant (sender address = destination address), but which let the new form through unhindered. This form is also recognized and blocked by the device.

Ping of Death

The Ping of Death is an attack that exploits errors in the re-assembly of fragmented packets. This works as follows:

The IP header contains the fragment-offset field, which identifies where the received fragment is inserted into the assembled IP packet. This field is 13 bits long and specifies the point of insertion in 8-byte increments. The point of insertion can thus take on a value between 0 and 65528 bytes. With an MTU on the Ethernet of 1500 bytes, an IP packet can be generated with a potential size of up to 65528 + 1500 - 20 = 67008 bytes. This, however, would provoke internal counter overflows or even buffer overflows, which can give attackers a potential way to execute their own code on the victim computer.

The firewall provides two options here: Either the firewall re-assembles the entire incoming packet and checks its integrity, or else the fragment that exceeds the maximum packet size is discarded. In the first case, the firewall itself can become a victim of a faulty implementation. In the second case, the victim keeps collecting partially re-assembled packets and, since these are only discarded after a certain time, this could result in a new Denial-of-Service attack if the victim runs out of memory.

Teardrop

The teardrop attack works with overlapping fragments. In this case, an initial fragment is followed by a further fragment that apparently belongs entirely inside the first packet, i.e. the end of the second fragment is before the end of the first. Now, if the programmer of the IP stack took the easy option of calculating the number of bytes for re-assembly simply by using “new end” - “old end”, the result is either a negative value or a very large positive value. This causes parts of the victim machine's memory to be overwritten during copy operations, which leads to the computer crashing.

Here, too, the firewall has two options: Either it performs re-assembly itself and, if necessary, drops the entire packet, or it keeps track of the minimum offset and maximum end of the packet, and discards any fragments with an offset or end that falls within that range. The first case requires the correct implementation in the firewall so that it does not itself become a victim; in the second case, partially re-assembled packets are again collected by the victim.

Bonk / Fragrouter

Bonk is a variant of the Teardrop attack. However, it does not aim to crash the attacked computer, but instead it outsmarts simple port-filter firewalls, which also accept fragmented packets, and penetrates the network that requires protection. This attack uses carefully chosen fragment offsets to overwrite the UDP or TCP header of the first fragment. As a result, simple port-filter firewalls accept the first packet and the associated fragments. By overwriting the header in the second fragment, an apparently legitimate packet suddenly becomes a packet that should actually be blocked in the firewall.

Again, the firewall can either perform re-assembly itself, or it can filter out the erroneous fragment (and all subsequent ones) with the consequences outlined for the other solutions described above.

Ex-factory, all settings are configured to “secure”, i.e. a maximum of 100 half-open connections are allowed from different computers (see SYN flooding), a maximum of 50 half-open connections are allowed from a single computer (see Port scan), and fragmented packets are re-assembled.

8.9.3 Configuring DoS blocking

LANconfig: **Firewall/QoS** > **DoS**

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall**

In order to drastically reduce the vulnerability of the network to DoS attacks, packets from remote networks should only be accepted if either a connection from the internal network was initiated or if the incoming packets are allowed through by an explicit filter entry (source: remote network, destination: local network). This measure already blocks a large number of attacks.

For all permitted accesses, the device explicitly checks the connection state, the source addresses, and the correctness of the fragments. This is performed both for incoming and outgoing packets, since an attack can also be launched from within the local network.

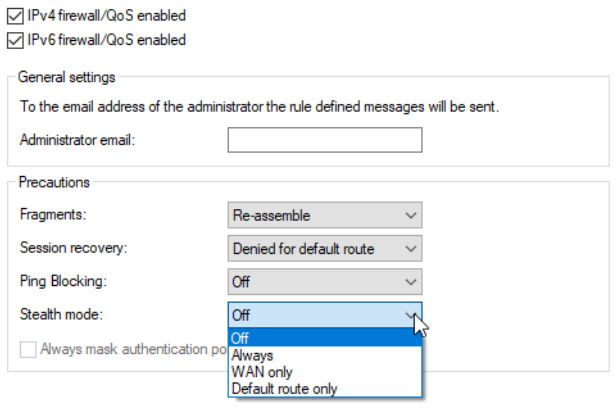
In order to avoid opening a path for DoS attacks due to the incorrect configuration of the firewall, this aspect is configured centrally. Along with the maximum number of half-open connections, the packet action and the available reporting mechanisms, there are further reaction options:

- Disconnection
- The source address is blocked for an adjustable time
- The target port of the scan is blocked for an adjustable time

The following protection mechanisms are always active:

- Address inspection (against IP spoofing)
- Blocking broadcasts into local network (against Smurf, etc.)

8.9.4 Configuring ping blocking and stealth mode



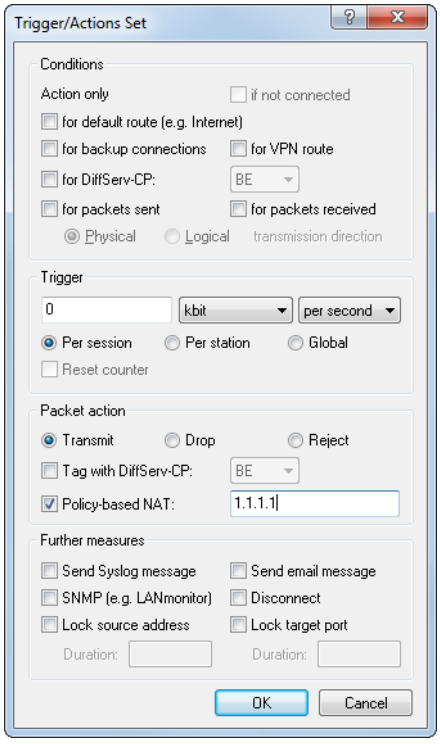
LANconfig: **Firewall/QoS** > **General**

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall**

8.10 WAN policy-based NAT

WAN policy-based NAT allows address translation (masking) of connections based on firewall rules. You can now configure which of the WAN-IPv4 addresses assigned by the provider is to be used to mask internal addresses. This is ideal for scenarios where a provider assigns multiple static IPv4 addresses, e.g. for operating mail servers and web servers with different WAN addresses.

For this purpose, the firewall features the new packet option **Policy-based NAT** under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 Rules** > **Action objects**. This action can be used together with the option **Transmit** and allows masking or NAT behind a specified IPv4 address.



The parameter must be entered as a fixed IP address. Dynamic IP addresses are not supported.

NAT is only possible if a WAN interface is involved. NAT between two LAN interfaces is not supported.

The CLI under (`/Setup/IP-Router/Firewall/Action-Table`) provides the variable `%Y` as an action.

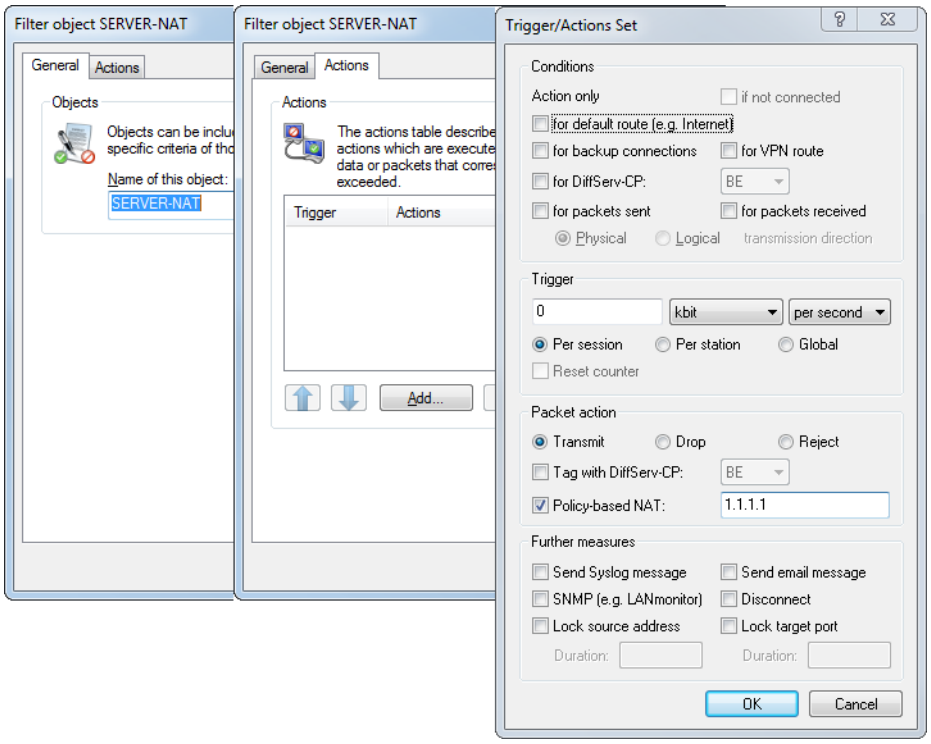
8.10.1 Configuring policy-based NAT with firewall rules

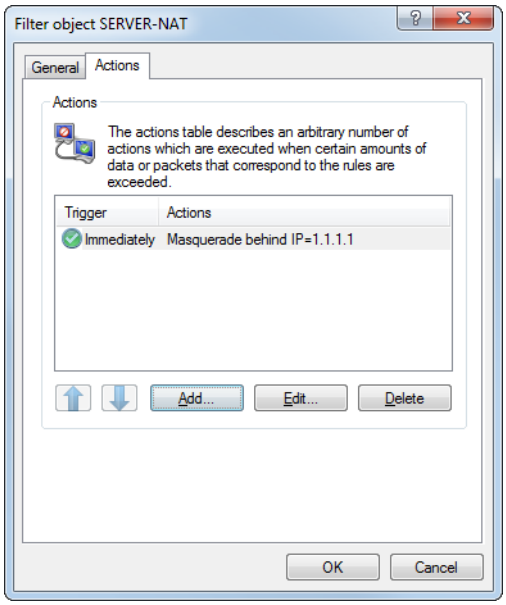
The following example configures an IPv4 network (intranet) with the subnet 192.168.80.0/24. The Internet provider has assigned a number of public IP addresses. Internet access has been set up using the Setup Wizard. Clients on the intranet are automatically masked behind the public IP address that was created with the Wizard.

Now we want to mask a server with the internal IP address 192.168.80.21 behind the public IP address 1.1.1.1.

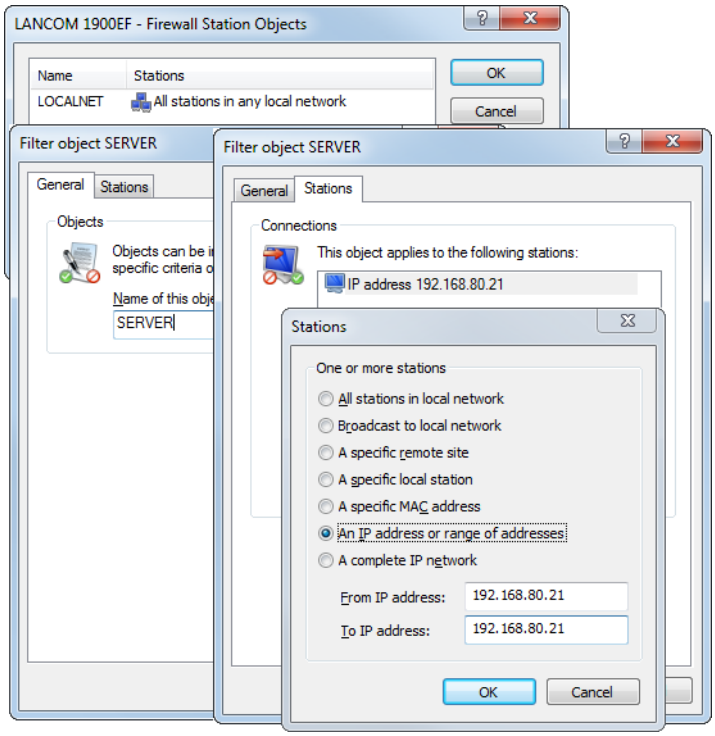
The "return direction" of the masking, i.e. the server's accessibility from the outside, is realized by a port-forwarding entry, which is not part of this example.

1. Create a new action object in the firewall under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 rules** > **Action objects**. Under Action, set the packet action to **Transmit** and the **Policy-based NAT** to 1.1.1.1.

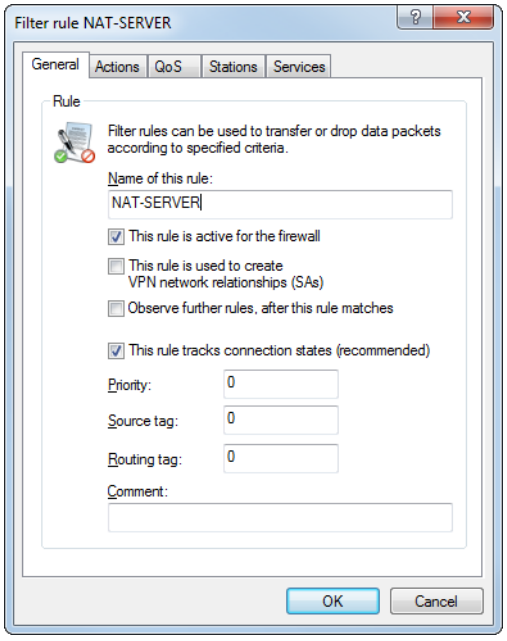




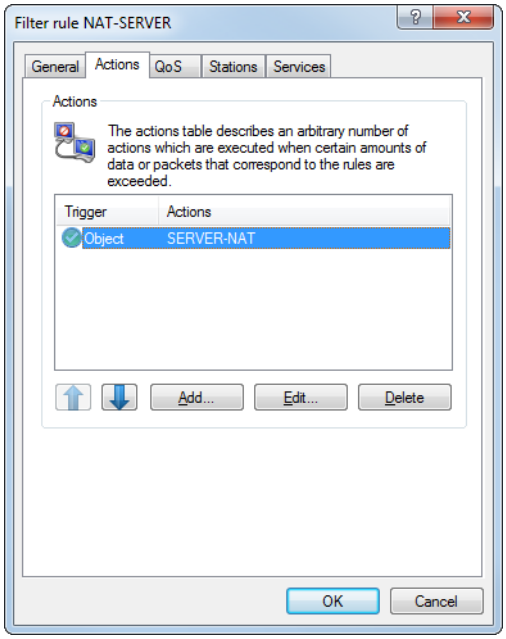
2. Under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 rules** > **Station objects** create a new station object defined for the IP address 192.168.80.21.



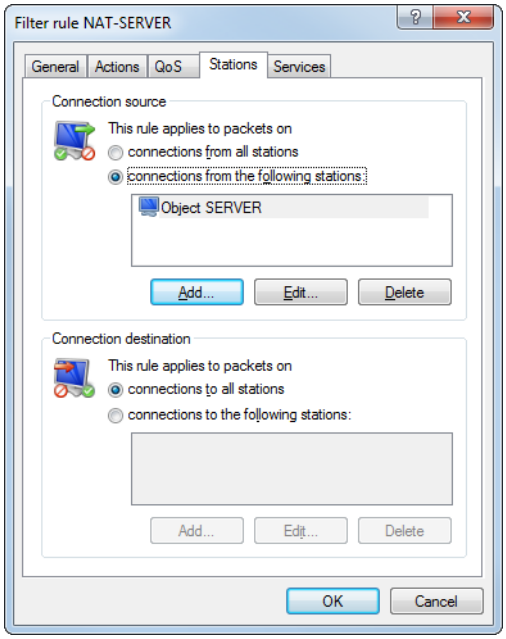
3. Next, go to **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 rules** > **Firewall rules** and create a filter rule.

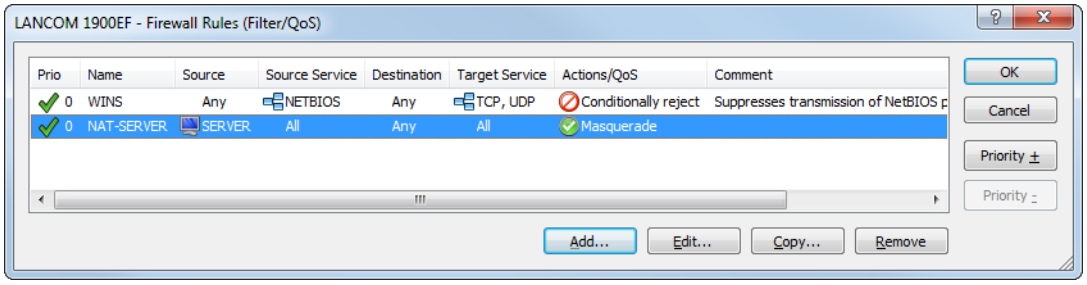


4. In this filter rule, go to **Actions** and select the new action “SERVER-NAT” that was defined above.



5. Then go to **Stations** and use the newly created station object. If necessary. you can also specify the Internet line under **Connection destination**.





9 Quality of Service

This chapter is devoted to the topic of Quality-of-Service (abbreviation: QoS). This term embraces a range of functions in your LCOS that assure a certain quality of service.

9.1 What is QoS used for?

In general, the aim of the Quality of Service is to ensure that particular data packets are transmitted either with high certainty or as quickly as possible.

- When transmitting data, it may well happen that data packets do not arrive at the recipient. However, some applications strongly depend on all of the sent data packets actually arriving. For example, an e-mail that is divided into numerous small data packets can only be reassembled at the receiver when all of its parts have arrived. The occasional packet arriving with a slight time delay is uncritical. These applications usually rely on the connection-oriented Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). This protocol ensures that the data is transported over the network correctly and in the right sequence. It reduces the transmission rate by itself if the confirmations of the sent data packets take longer to arrive, and automatically repeats transmission in the event of packet loss.
- For other applications, such as Internet telephony (Voice over IP, VoIP), it is vital that the data packets arrive at the recipient with a minimum of delay. The occasional data packet getting lost on the way is not so important here. The subscriber at the other end of the line can still understand the caller even if small parts of the speech get lost. This application therefore places priority on data packets being transmitted as quickly as possible. These applications frequently rely on the connectionless User Datagram Protocol (UDP). The administration overhead for this protocol is very small. However, there is no guarantee that the data packets are delivered in the correct order; they are simply sent off. There is no acknowledgment of receipt, so lost packets are not re-sent.

9.2 Which data packets to prefer?

The need for the QoS concept arises from the fact that the available bandwidth is not always sufficient to transmit all of the pending data packets reliably and on time. Load peaks can quickly occur when running FTP downloads, exchanging e-mails and using IP telephones over the data line all at the same time. In order to meet the needs for data transmission even in these situations, certain data packets need to be treated preferentially. This of course requires the device to recognize which data packets should be preferred.

There are two ways to signal the need for preferential treatment of data packets in the device:

- The application, such as the software of an IP phone, can mark the data packets accordingly. This mark, or "tag", is inserted into the header of the IP packets. The two types of tagging "ToS" and "DiffServ" can, in simplified terms, take on the following states:
  - ToS "Low Delay"
  - ToS "High Reliability"
  - DiffServ "Expedited Forwarding"
  - DiffServ "Assured Forwarding"

In the case of a VPN route, the IP header bits of the ToS or DiffServ field are also copied to the enclosing IP header of the IPSec VPN packet. This allows QoS to be used on VPN routes over the Internet as long as the provider supports preferential treatment of the corresponding packets in the WAN.

- If the application itself is unable to tag the data packets appropriately, the device can handle this. This makes use of the functions available in the firewall, which classify the data packets by subnets or services (applications). These functions allow, for example, the data packets of an FTP connection or those of a specific company department (i.e. in a separate subnet) to be treated differently.

  The following two options are available for the treatment of data packets that are classified by the firewall:

  - Guaranteed minimum bandwidth
  - Limited maximum bandwidth

9.2.1 What is DiffServ?

DiffServ stands for "Differentiated Services" and is a model that signals the priority of the data packets. DiffServ is based on the Type of Service (ToS) field and uses the same byte in the IP header.

ToS uses the first three bits to denote the precedence of 0 to 7, and four more bits (the ToS bits) to optimize the data flow (including "low delay" and "high reliability"). This model is rather inflexible and has been little used in the past.

The DiffServ model uses the first 6 bits to distinguish different classes. This allows up to 64 differentiated services code points (DSCPs), which allow a finer prioritization of the data flow:

- To ensure backwards compatibility with the ToS implementation, the "Class Selectors" (CS0 to CS7) are used to map the former precedence levels. The level CS0 is also called "Best effort" (BE) and represents the normal transmission of data packets without special treatment.
- The "Assured Forwarding" (AF) classes are used for the certain transmission of data packets. The first digit of the AF class stands for the priority of the transmission (1 to 4), the second digit for "Drop Probability" (1 to 3). Packets marked with AFxx are "assured" of being transmitted and are not dropped.

With the class "Expedited Forwarding" marks those packets that are to be transmitted before all other packets (preferred).

Codepoint	DSCP bits	Dec.	Codepoint	DSCP bits	Dec.	Codepoint	DSCP bits	Dec.
CS0 (BE)	000000	0	AF11	001010	10	AF33	011110	30
CS1	001000	8	AF12	001100	12	AF41	100010	34
CS2	010000	16	AF13	001110	14	AF42	100100	36
CS3	011000	24	AF21	010010	18	AF43	100110	38
CS4	100000	32	AF22	010100	20	EF	101110	46
CS5	101000	40	AF23	010110	22			
CS6	110000	48	AF31	011010	26			
CS7	111000	56	AF32	011100	28			

9.2.2 Guaranteed minimum bandwidth

This gives priority to important applicationssuch as Voice-over-IP (VoIP) PBX systems or specific user groups.

For devices with VoIP functions that were already integrated or added in with a software option, the QoS settings for SIP calls are set automatically.

Fully dynamic bandwidth management when sending

Bandwidth in the send direction is managed dynamically. This means that a guaranteed minimum bandwidth is only made available for as long as a data transfer is actually in progress.

An example:

VoIP data being transmitted by a VoIP gateway should always have a guaranteed bandwidth of 256 kbps. A single VoIP connection requires 32 kbps.

As long as nobody is on the phone, all the bandwidth is available to other services. With each new VoIP connection established, the other applications have 32 kbps less, until 8 VoIP connections are active. As soon as a VoIP connection is terminated, the corresponding bandwidth is available again to all other applications.

For this mechanism to operate correctly, the sum of the configured minimum bandwidths must not exceed the effective transmission bandwidth available.

Dynamic bandwidth management also for reception

For bandwidth control during reception, packets can be buffered and acknowledged only later. A result of this is that TCP/IP connections automatically regulate themselves to a lower bandwidth.

Each WAN interface is assigned a maximum receive bandwidth. Any QoS rule that guarantees a minimum receive bandwidth on a particular interface will reduce the bandwidth accordingly.

- If the QoS rule is connection-based, immediately after the connection is terminated the reserved bandwidth is released and the maximum available bandwidth on the WAN interface increases accordingly.
- If the QoS rule is defined globally, the reserved bandwidth is released again only after the last connection has been terminated.

9.2.3 Limited maximum bandwidths

This allows you to limit the overall or connection-related maximum bandwidth used for server access.

An example:

You operate a web server and a local network at a shared Internet connection.

To prevent your productive network (LAN) from being overloaded by large numbers of Internet accesses to your web server, you can limit server access to half of the available bandwidth. You can also ensure that users have simultaneous and equal access to your server services by setting a maximum bandwidth per connection to the server.

Combination possible

Minimum and maximum bandwidths can be used together in combination. This allows you to distribute the available bandwidth to meet your needs, e.g. by favoring certain user groups or applications.

9.3 The queue concept

9.3.1 Queues in the send direction

Quality of Service is implemented in LCOS by means of different queues for the data packets. The following queues are used for data transmission:

- Urgent queue I

  This queue is always processed first. The following data packets are handled here:

  - Packets with ToS "Low Delay"
  - Packets with DiffServ “Expedited Forwarding“
  - All packets that have been assigned a certain minimum bandwidth as long as the guaranteed minimum bandwidth is not exceeded
  - TCP control packets can also be sent preferentially through this queue

- Urgent queue II

  Packets that end up here have been assigned a guaranteed minimum bandwidth, but their connection has exceeded this bandwidth.

Until the interval for the minimum bandwidth has expired (e.g. until the end of the current second), all packets in this queue are handled without any special priority. All of the packets in this queue, the "secured queue" and the "standard queue" now share the available bandwidth. Packets being sent are retrieved from the queues in the same order in which they were placed in the queues. If the interval expires, all blocks remaining in the Urgent Queue II are put back into the Urgent Queue I until the respectively assigned minimum bandwidth is exceeded, whereafter the rest remains in the Urgent Queue II.

This procedure ensures that prioritized connections do not overwhelm the rest of the traffic.

- Secured queue

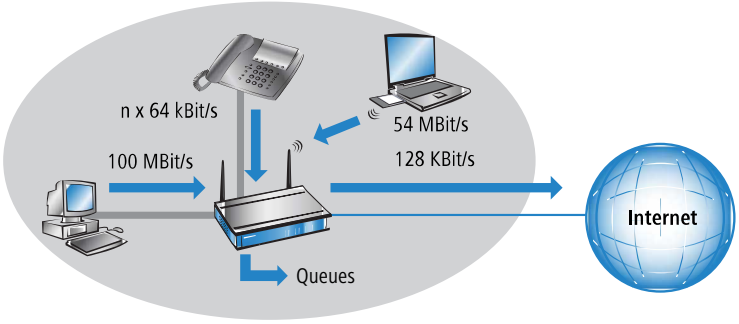
  This queue has no separate priority. However, packets in this queue are never dropped (transmission guaranteed). The following data packets are handled here:

  - Packets with ToS "High Reliability"
  - Packets with DiffServ "Assured Forwarding"

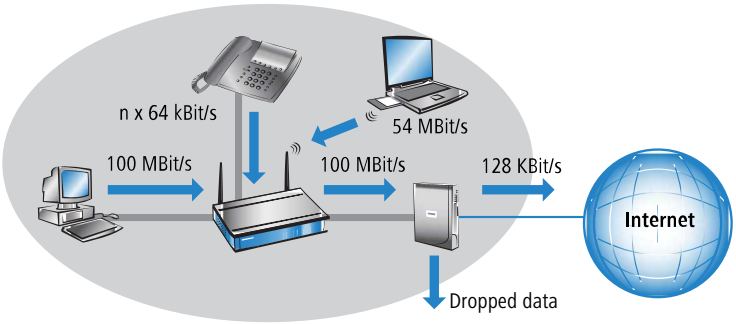
- Standard queue

  The standard queue contains all unclassified data packets. Packets in this queue are initially dropped if the data packets cannot be delivered fast enough.

  The concept of queues only works if data packets are congested at the interface from the LAN to the WAN. Congestion occurs at peak times when data arrives from the LAN quicker than the device interface can deliver it to the WAN. This may be the case when the interface to the WAN is an integrated ADSL interface with a comparatively low upstream transmission speed. The integrated ADSL modem automatically reports back to the device how many data packets it can still accommodate, so that the data flow is slowed in the router. The queues will then be filled automatically.



Things look different when an Ethernet interface connects to the WAN. From the device's point of view, the connection to the Internet via an external DSL modem looks like an Ethernet segment. Between the device and the DSL modem, data is transmitted at the full LAN speed of 10, 100, 1000 or more Mbps. The input and output speeds are the same, so no natural congestion can arise here. Furthermore, the Ethernet between the device and the broadband modem does not report anything about the capacity of the connection. Consequently, congestion first arises in the DSL modem. Since no queues are available here, surplus data is lost. It is not possible to prioritize the preferred data.



To solve this problem, the transmission rate of the WAN interface in the device is reduced artificially. The interface is set to the transmission rate that is available for transporting data to the WAN.

In most cases, the data rate specified by the providers is the net data rate. The gross data rate available from the interface is slightly higher than the net data rate guaranteed by the provider. If you know the gross data rate offered by your provider, you can enter this value for the interface and thus slightly increase the data throughput. By entering the net data rate you are certainly on the safe side.

9.3.2 Queues in the receiving direction

Along with the transmission rate in the transmitting direction, the same consideration also applies to the receiving direction. In this case, the device's WAN interface receives significantly less data from the DSL modem than the Ethernet interface can theoretically handle. All data packets received on the WAN interface are transferred to the LAN with equal priority.

In order to be able to prioritize incoming data, an artificial "brake" needs to be applied to the received data. As with the transmitting direction, the transmission rate of the interface in the receive direction is adapted to match the speed of the provider, e.g. a downstream rate of 16 Mbps. Again, as with the upstream rate, the gross data rate may also be entered, if known.

Reducing the reception bandwidth now makes it possible to handle the received data packets in a suitable manner. The preferred data packets are passed directly to the LAN up to the guaranteed minimum bandwidth, the remaining data packets run into congestion. This congestion usually leads to the acknowledgment of the packets being delayed. On a TCP connection, the sending server will respond to these delays, decreasing its transmit frequency and adapting to the available bandwidth.

The following queues are used when receiving data:

- Deferred acknowledge queue

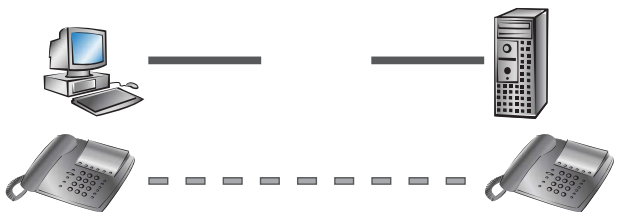
  Each WAN interface additionally has a QoS receive queue, which receives the packets to be slowed down. The storage period of each individual packet depends on the length of the packet and the currently permitted reception bandwidth. Packets that are granted a minimum receive bandwidth by a QoS rule are allowed to pass without delay, as long as the minimum bandwidth is not exceeded.

- Standard reception queue

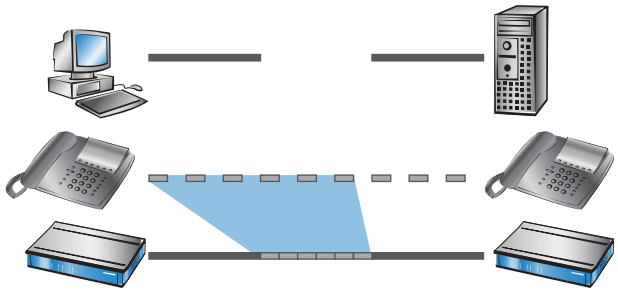
  All received packets not given priority treatment by a QoS rule end up in this queue. Packets in this queue are forwarded or acknowledged directly, without consideration of maximum bandwidths.

9.4 Reducing the packet length

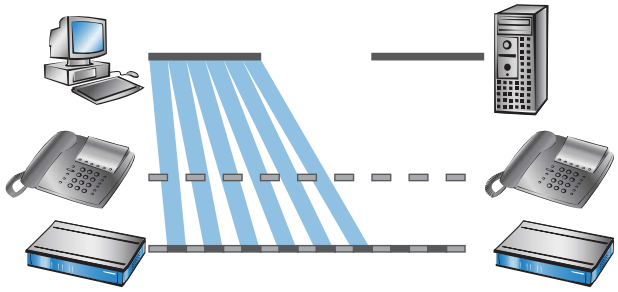
The preferred handling of data packets from an important application can be jeopardized by extremely long data packets from other applications. This may be the case, for example, when IP telephony and FTP data transfer are simultaneously active on the WAN connection.



FTP transfer uses quite large data packets of 1500 bytes, while the Voice-over-IP connection packets are of 24 bytes net and are sent in relatively frequent intervals. If FTP packets are present in the send queue of the device at the moment when a VoIP packet is to be transmitted, the VoIP packet cannot be sent until the line is free again. Depending on the connection's transmission rate, this can lead to a noticeable delay in voice transmission.



This disruptive behavior can be offset if data packets not belonging to the preferred QoS connection do not exceed a certain length. For example, the FTP connection only sends packets small enough to ensure that the time-critical VoIP connection can deliver packets at the necessary frequency and without delay. For TCP-secured FTP transfers, delays are not critical.



There are two different ways to influence the length of a packet:

- The device can inform the users of the data connection that they should only send data packets up to a certain length. This is done by forcing a suitable PMTU (Path Maximum Transmission Unit) at the sending end in a process referred to as "PMTU reduction".

  PMTU reduction can be operated in both the transmit and receive directions. For the transmit direction, the senders in their own LAN are set to a smaller packet size by PMTU reduction; for the receive direction, the senders in the WAN, e.g. Web or FTP servers on the Internet, are also instructed to deliver a smaller packet size.

  If the data connection is already established when the VoIP connection starts, the senders very quickly regulate the packet length down to the permissible value. When a data connection is established with a VoIP connection already in place, the maximum permissible packet length is negotiated directly during the connection handshake.

  The reduced packet length on the data connection is still used even after the VoIP connection is terminated and until the sender re-checks the PMTU value.

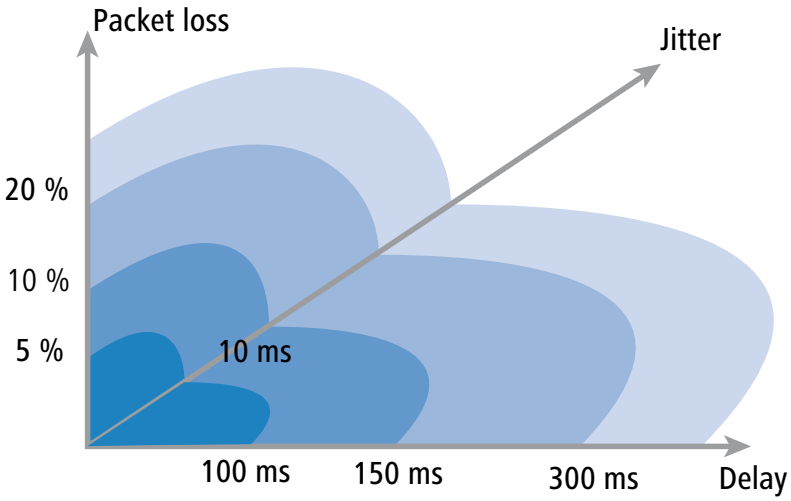
- The device itself is able to split packets due for transmission but which are above an adjustable maximum size (e.g. 256 bytes) into smaller units. This method referred to as "fragmentation" is not supported by all servers on the Internet, because processing fragmented packets is considered a security risk, so it is often turned off. This may cause disruptions when downloading data or when transferring websites, for example.

  This method is therefore recommended only for connections that do not involve unknown Internet servers, such as for the direct connection of branches to a central office over a VPN connection that does not simultaneously run Internet traffic.

9.5 QoS parameters for Voice-over-IP applications

An important task when configuring VoIP systems is to ensure sufficient voice quality. Two factors significantly affect the voice quality of a VoIP connection: The voice delay on its way from the sender to the receiver, and the loss or late arrival of data packets on their way to the receiver. The International Telecommunication Union (ITU) has extensively tested what people perceive to be sufficient voice quality, and has published the result in the ITU G.114 recommendation.

For devices with VoIP functions that were already integrated or added in with a software option, the QoS settings for SIP calls are set automatically.



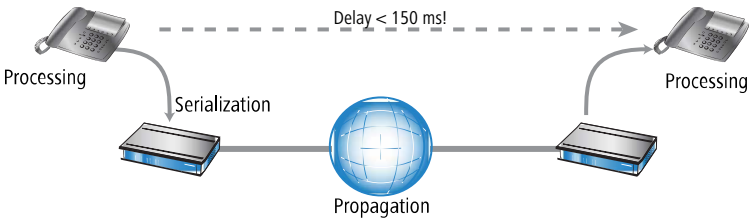
The quality of a telephone connection is perceived as normal with a delay of no more than 100 ms and a packet loss of less than 5%, and still as good quality with no more than a 150 ms delay and less than 10% packet loss. Ultimately, some listeners still find the quality to be acceptable with up to 300 ms at 20%, although this is the limit before the connection becomes no longer useful for voice transmission.

Along with the average delay time, the fluctuation in this delay can also be perceived by the human ear. Variations in the runtime of the speech information from the sender to the receiver (jitter) are tolerable at up to 10 ms, but more is perceived as irritating.

A VoIP connection should be configured to remain within these marginal values: Packet loss up to 10%, delay up to 150 ms, jitter up to 10 ms.

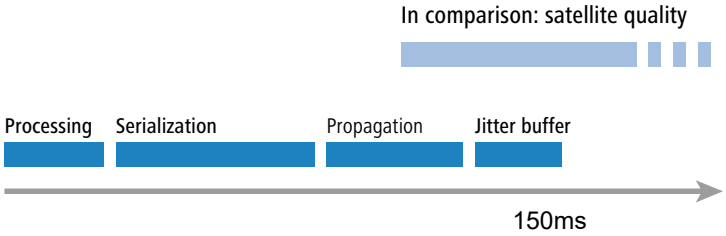
- Jitter can be offset by using a buffer at the receiver. This jitter buffer caches a quantity of packets and passes them to the receiver at regular intervals. This buffering compensates for the fluctuations in the transmission time between the individual packets.
- The delay is influenced by several components:
  - The fixed portion of the delay consists of the processing (packet assembly, encoding and compression at the sender and the receiver), serialization (the time for transferring the packet from the application to the interface), and propagation (the time for transmission over the WAN link).
  - The variable component is determined by the jitter or the jitter-buffer setting.

These two components together make up the delay, which ideally should not be more than 150 ms.



- Along with the general network losses, packet loss is ultimately significantly affected by the jitter buffer. If packets arriving have a greater delay than the jitter buffer can counterbalance, the packets are dropped and packet loss increases. The larger the jitter buffer, the smaller the loss. Conversely, the jitter buffer also increases the overall delay. The jitter buffer should thus be set small enough for the quality to still be considered sufficient.

Going into detail, the delay is determined in particular by the codec used, the resulting packet size, and the available bandwidth:



- The time of processing is determined by the codec used. With a sampling time of 20 ms, a new packet is generated every 20 ms precisely. The times for compression, etc. are usually negligible.
- The time to transfer packets to the interface is defined by the quotient of packet size and available bandwidth:

	Packet size in bytes						
	1	64	128	256	512	1024	1500
56 kbps	0.14	9	18	36	73	146	215
64 kbps	0.13	8	16	32	64	128	187
128 kbps	0.06	4	8	16	32	64	93
256 kbps	0.03	2	4	8	16	32	47
512 kbps	0.016	1	2	4	8	16	23
768 kbps	0.010	0.6	1.3	2.6	5	11	16
1536 kbps	0.005	0.3	0.6	1.3	3	5	8

- A 512-byte packet on an FTP connection over a 128-kbps upstream link occupies the line for at least 32 ms.

Apart from that, the packets on a VoIP connection often consist of much more than just the payload itself. In additional to the payload, there are also IP headers and, if applicable, IPSec headers. The payload results from the product of payload data rate and the codec sampling interval. In addition, all codecs require 40 bytes for IP, RTP and UDP headers and at least 20 bytes for the IPSec header (although the RTP and IPSec headers can be larger, depending on the configuration).

Without IPSec	Payload	IP payload	Ethernet / PPPoE	ATM net Bps	ATM gross Bps
Code	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms
G711-64	160	200	222	96000.0	106000.0
G722-64	160	200	222	96000.0	106000.0

Without IPSec	Payload	IP payload	Ethernet / PPPoE	ATM net Bps	ATM gross Bps
G726-40	100	140	162	76800.0	84800.0
G726-32	80	120	142	76800.0	84800.0
G726-24	60	100	122	57600.0	63600.0
G726-16	40	80	102	57600.0	63600.0
G729-8	20	60	82	57600.0	63600.0

Without IPSec	Payload	IP payload	Ethernet / PPPoE	ATM net Bps	ATM gross Bps
Code	30 ms	30 ms	30 ms	30 ms	30 ms
G711-64	240	280	302	89600.0	98933.3
G722-64	240	280	302	89600.0	98933.3
G726-40	150	190	212	64000.0	70666.7
G726-32	120	160	182	64000.0	70666.7
G726-24	90	130	152	51200.0	56533.3
G726-16	60	100	122	38400.0	42400.0
G729-8	30	70	92	38400.0	42400.0
G723-6,3	24	64	86	38400.0	42400.0

With IPSec	Payload	IP payload	IPSec payload	Ethernet / PPPoE	ATM net Bps	ATM gross Bps
Code	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms
G711-64	160	200	260	282	134400.0	148400.0
G722-64	160	200	260	282	134400.0	148400.0
G726-40	100	140	200	222	96000.0	106000.0
G726-32	80	120	180	202	96000.0	106000.0
G726-24	60	100	160	182	96000.0	106000.0
G726-16	40	80	140	162	76800.0	84800.0
G729-8	20	60	120	142	76800.0	84800.0

With IPSec	Payload	IP payload	IPSec payload	Ethernet / PPPoE	ATM net Bps	ATM gross Bps
Code	30 ms	30 ms	30 ms	30 ms	30 ms	30 ms
G711-64	240	280	340	362	102400.0	113066.7
G722-64	240	280	340	362	102400.0	113066.7
G726-40	150	190	250	272	89600.0	98933.3
G726-32	120	160	220	242	76800.0	84800.0
G726-24	90	130	190	212	64000.0	70666.7
G726-16	60	100	160	182	64000.0	70666.7
G729-8	30	70	130	152	51200.0	56533.3
G723-6,3	24	64	124	146	51200.0	56533.3

› IP payload: Voice payload + 40 byte header (12 byte RTP; 8 byte UDP; 20 byte IP header)

- IPSec payload: IP packet + padding + 2 byte (padding length & next header) = multiple of the IPSec initialization vector

The values in the table apply to the use of AES. For other encryption methods, the resulting packet size may vary slightly.

For further information on bandwidth requirements for Voice over IP with IPSec is available in the LANCOM techpaper Performance Analysis of Routers.

- The time for transmission over the Internet depends on the distance (about 1 ms per 200 km) and the other routers en route (about 1 ms per hop). This time is approximately half the average time of a series of pings to the remote site.
- Many IP telephones allow the jitter buffer to be set directly, i.e. as a fixed number of packets for caching. The phones then load up to 50% of the set number of packets, and then start the playback. The jitter buffer thus corresponds to half the set number of packets multiplied by the sampling time of the codec.
- Conclusion: The total delay in the following example results from the bandwidth, a ping time of 100 ms to the remote station, and a jitter buffer of 4 packets for the two codecs:

Codec	Processing	Serialization	Propagation	Jitter buffer	Total
G.723.1	30 ms + 7.5 ms look ahead	32 ms	50 ms	60 ms	179.5 ms
G.711	20 ms	32 ms	50 ms	40 ms	142 ms

- The packet transmission time to the interface (serialization) is based on a PMTU of 512 bytes for a 128 kbit connection. For slower interfaces or other codecs, you may need to set other jitter buffers and / or PMTU values.

Please note that the bandwidths are required in the sending and receiving direction, as well as just for one single connection.

These explanations relate to very low bandwidth Internet connections. Where higher bandwidths are available, reducing the size of the PMTU has a barely perceptible influence on performance.

9.6 QoS in send or receive direction

When using QoS to regulate data transfer, you can decide whether the corresponding rule applies to the send or receive direction. Of course, whether a particular data transmission is being sent or received is a question of perspective. There are two variants:

- The direction corresponds to the logical connection establishment
- The direction corresponds to the physical data transmission over the respective interface

The differences are made clear when we consider an FTP transfer. A client on the LAN is connected to the Internet via a device.

- In an active FTP session, the client uses the PORT command to inform the server on which port it expects to receive the DATA connection. The server then establishes the connection to the client and sends the data in the same direction. In this case the logical connection and the actual data stream are sent from the server over the interface to the client, so the device considers both to be the receive direction.
- The situation is different with a passive FTP session. Here, the client establishes the connection to the server. Consequently the logical connection is from the client towards the server, but the data transmission over the physical interface is in the reverse direction, from the server to the client.

By default, a device evaluates the send or receive direction based on the logical connection establishment. In some applications this way of seeing things is not so obvious, and an alternative is to switch to considering the physical data stream.

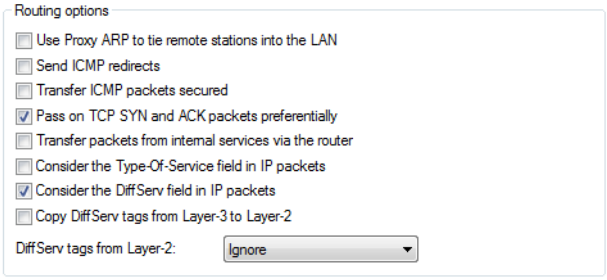
The distinction between the send and receive directions only applies for the setup of maximum bandwidths. For guaranteed minimum bandwidths, fragmentation and PMTU reduction, the direction is always taken to be the physical data transfer over the respective interface.

9.7 QoS configuration

9.7.1 Evaluating ToS and DiffServ fields

ToS or DiffServ?

When using LANconfig for the configuration, select the configuration area **IP router**. On the **General** tab, you can set whether the prioritization of data packets should consider the 'Type-of-Service field' or alternatively the 'DiffServ field'. If both options are disabled, the ToS / DiffServ field is ignored.



When using the CLI terminal for the configuration, the setting for evaluating the ToS or DiffServ fields is adjusted here: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Routing-Method**

The possible settings for the value Routing Method are as follows:

Normal

The TOS / DiffServ field is ignored.

TOS

The TOS / DiffServ field is regarded as a TOS field; the bits “low delay” and “high reliability” will be evaluated.

DiffServ

The TOS / DiffServ field is regarded as a DiffServ field and evaluated as follows:

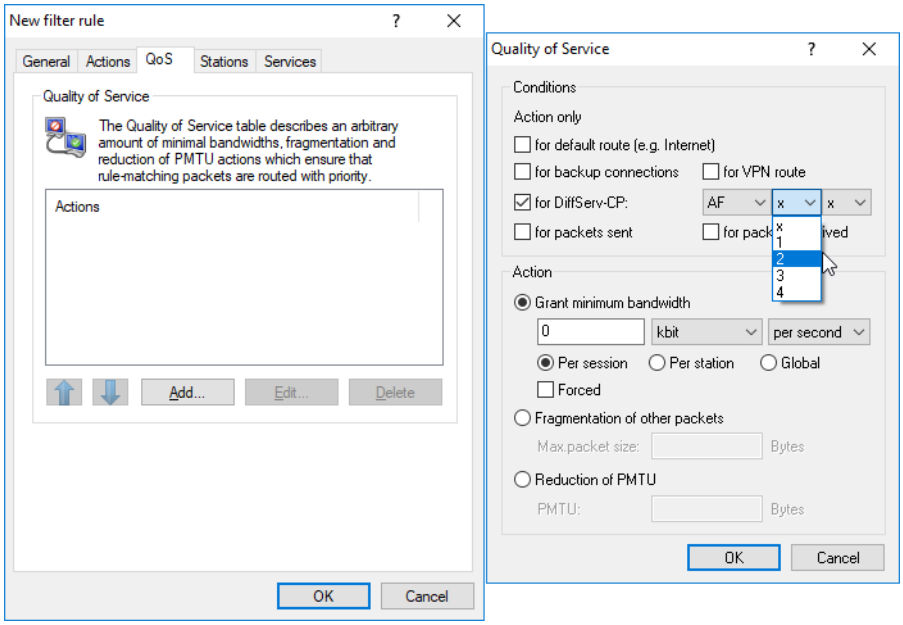
DSCP Codepoints	Transmission mode
CSx (including CS0 = BE)	Normal transmission
AFxx	Secure transmission
EF	Preferred transmission

The DSCP marking can be configured for internal LCOS applications. With the CLI, this is done under **Setup** > **Config** > **DCSP-Marking**.

DiffServ in firewall rules

The code points from the DiffServ field can be evaluated by firewall rules for further control over QoS parameters such as minimum bandwidth or PMTU reduction.

In LANconfig, the parameters for evaluating the DiffServ fields are set when the QoS rule is defined:



Depending on the selected DSCP type (BE, CS, AF, EF), additional drop-down lists enable you to set the applicable values. Alternatively, the DSCP decimal value can be entered directly. A table listing the valid values can be found under *What is DiffServ?* on page 616.

When configuring from the command line, these parameters are entered here: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Rule-List**

The rule in the firewall is extended by the condition "@d" and the DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point). The code point can be specified either by its name (CS0 - CS7, AF11 to AF 43, EF or BE) or its decimal or hexadecimal representation. For example, “Expedited Forwarding” can be specified as “@dEF”, “@d46” or “@d0x2e”. Collective names (CSx or AFxx) are also possible.

Examples:

- **%Lcds0 @dAFxx %A**: Accept (secure transmission) with DiffServ “AF”, limit ““0”
- **%Qcds32 @dEF**: Minimum bandwidth for DiffServ EF of 32 kbps
- **%Fprw256 @dEF**: PMTU reduction on reception for DiffServ EF to 256 bytes

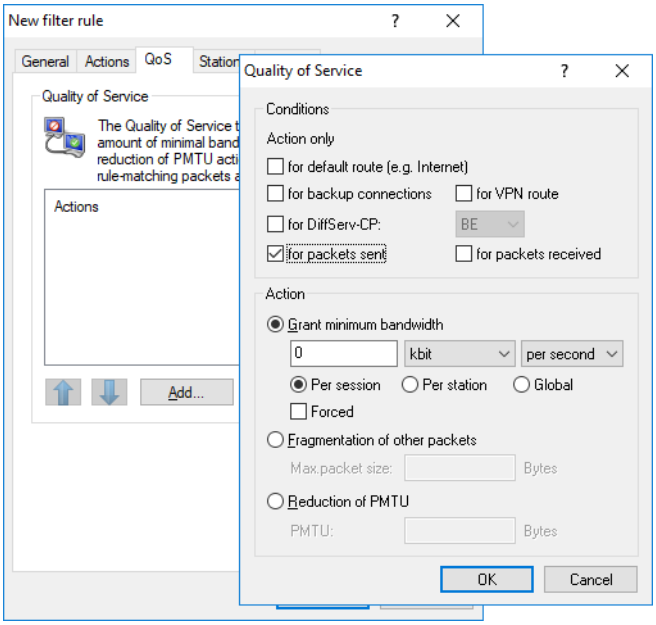
The examples listed here reserve a required bandwidth for Voice-over-IP phone calls. The first element “%Lcds0 @dAFxx %A” accepts packets marked with DSCP “AFxx” that are used for signaling calls. Voice data marked with EF is transmitted prioritized by the entry “%Qcds32@dEF” with a guaranteed bandwidth of 32 kbps. In parallel, “%Fprw256 @dEF” sets the PMTU to 256 bytes in order to guarantee the necessary bandwidth in the receive direction.

9.7.2 Defining minimum and maximum bandwidths

A minimum bandwidth for a specific application is defined in LANconfig by means of a firewall rule according to the following conditions:

- The rule does not need an action, because QoS rules always implicitly assume “transfer” to be the action.

- The guaranteed bandwidth is set on the tab **QoS**.



- The option **Action only for default route** restricts the rule to packets that are sent or received over the default route.
  - The option **Action only for VPN routes** restricts the rule to packets sent or received over a VPN tunnel.
  - The option **Forced** defines a static reservation of bandwidth. Bandwidth reserved in this way cannot be used for any other connections, even while the preferred connection is inactive.
  - The option **Per connection** or **Globally** specifies whether the minimum bandwidth set here applies to every single connection that complies with this rule (per connection), or if it is the upper limit for the sum of all connections together (globally).
- The tabs **Stations** and **Services** are used, as with the other firewall rules, to decide which stations in the LAN/WAN and which protocols this rule applies to.

When configuring from the command line, the minimum and maximum bandwidths in a new firewall rule are entered here: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Rule-List**

A required minimum bandwidth is initiated in the rules by the identifier ""%Q". The implicit assumption here is that the rule involves an "Accept" action, so the packets will thus be transmitted.

For a maximum bandwidth, a simple limit rule is defined that uses a "Drop" action to discard all packets that go beyond the set bandwidth.

Examples:

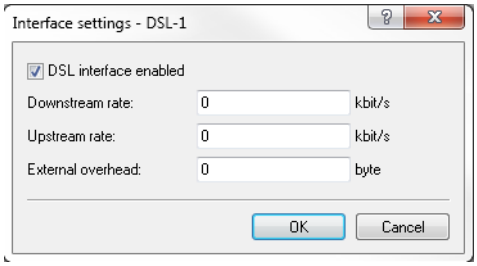
- **%Qcds32**: Minimum bandwidth of 32 kbps for each connection
- **%Lgds256 %d**: Maximum bandwidth of 256 kbps for all connections (globally)

9.7.3 Setting transmission rates for interfaces

Restrictions on the data transmission rate for Ethernet, DSL and DSLoL interfaces are set in LANconfig by navigating to **Interfaces** > **WAN** and clicking the button **Interface settings**:

The values for the upstream rate and the downstream rate are specified in kbps, and the values for the external overhead are set in bytes per packet.

Ethernet, DSL and DSLoL interfaces



- A DSL interface can be completely switched off in this dialog.
- The upstream and downstream rates specified here are the gross data rates, which are usually slightly higher than the net data rates as specified by providers as the guaranteed data rate (also see *The queue concept* on page 617).
- The "external overhead" allows for the extra information that is appended to the packets during data transmission. For applications with relatively small data packets (e.g. Voice over IP), this extra overhead can have noticeable effects. Examples of external overhead:

Transmission	External overhead	Comment
T-DSL	36 bytes	Additional header, losses due to underused ATM cells
PPTP	24 bytes	Additional header, losses due to underused ATM cells
IPoA (LLC)	22 bytes	Additional header, losses due to underused ATM cells
IPoA (VC-MUX)	18 bytes	Additional header, losses due to underused ATM cells
Cable modem	0	Direct transmission of Ethernet packets

From the CLI, you can enter the limits on the data transmission rates for the Ethernet, DSL and DSLoL interfaces at the following location: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **DSL-Interfaces**

VDSL and ADSL interfaces

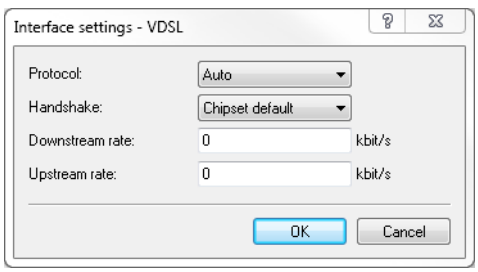
In order for Quality of Service to function properly, you need to know the actual bandwidth of the WAN connection. Sometimes, the bandwidth negotiated by the DSL modem may not agree with the actual data transfer rate. In this case, it is necessary to manually correct the speed of DSL connection to the actual value.

This only applies to devices with an integrated ADSL / VDSL modem.

Example:

The bandwidth negotiated during the DSL synchronization is 100 Mbps. In fact, the actual available bandwidth is a transmission speed of just 50 Mbps.

Settings for devices with an integrated VDSL modem



Protocol

Select the protocol used by your DSL connection. Your Internet provider will be able to provide this information.

The following options are available:

Automatic

Automatic selection of the operating mode.

VDSL2 (G.993.2)

Operating mode VDSL2 for transmission rates of up to 100 Mbps upstream and downstream.

ADSL

Operating mode ADSL with up to 8 Mbps downstream and 0.6 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (G.992.5)

Operating mode ADSL2+ with up to 24 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (G.992.3)

Operating mode ADSL2 with up to 12 Mbps downstream and 1.2 Mbps upstream.

ADSL1 (G.992.1/G.DMT)

Operating mode ADSL (G.DMT) with up to 8 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (Annex J)

Operating mode All Digital ADSL2+ with up to 24 Mbps downstream and 3.5 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (Annex J)

Operating mode All Digital Mode ADSL2+ with up to 12 Mbps downstream and 3.5 Mbps upstream.

No

The interface is not active.

Handshake

Select from the following handshake methods for this interface:

Chipset-default

The handshake is carried out according to the default for the chipset in the device.

V43 if needed

The V43 carrier set is used for the handshake if required.

V43 enabled

The carrier set V43 is enabled for the handshake.

V43 disabled

The carrier set V43 is disabled for the handshake.

Downstream rate

Specify the downstream rate (RX). The actual bandwidth corresponds to the minimum of the negotiated value and the value set here.

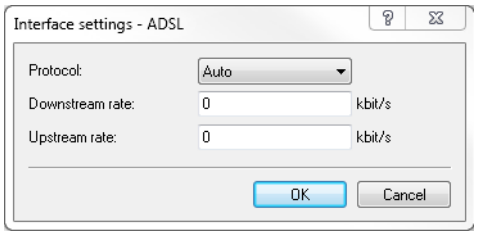
If the default value is 0, the value used is negotiated automatically.

Upstream rate

Specify the upstream rate (TX). The actual bandwidth corresponds to the minimum of the negotiated value and the value set here.

If the default value is 0, the value used is negotiated automatically.

Settings for devices with an integrated ADSL modem



Protocol

Select the protocol used by your DSL connection. Your Internet provider will be able to provide this information.

The following options are available:

Automatic

Automatic selection of the operating mode.

ADSL1 (autom. Annex A/B)

Operating mode ADSL over POTS/ISDN for transmission rates up to 10 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (autom. Annex A/B)

Operating mode ADSL2 over POTS/ISDN for transmission rates up to 12 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (autom. Annex A/B)

Operating mode ADSL2+ over POTS/ISDN for transmission rates up to 24 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

Auto-POTS (autom. Annex A/I/L/M)

Operating mode ADSL over POTS for transmission rates from 10 to 24 Mbps downstream and up to 3.5 Mbps upstream.

ADSL1 (Annex A)

Operating mode ADSL over POTS for transmission rates up to 10 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (Annex A)

Operating mode ADSL2 over POTS with up to 12 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (Annex A)

Operating mode ADSL2+ over POTS with up to 24 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (Annex I)

Operating mode All Digital Mode ADSL2+ with up to 12 Mbps downstream and 3.2 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (Annex I)

Operating mode All Digital ADSL2+ with up to 24 Mbps downstream and 3.2 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (Annex L)

Operating mode RE-ADSL2 with up to 6 Mbps downstream and 1.2 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (Annex M)

Operating mode ADSL2 with up to 24 Mbps downstream and 3.5 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (Annex M)

Operating mode ADSL2+ with up to 24 Mbps downstream and 3.7 Mbps upstream.

Auto-ISDN (autom. Annex B/J)

Operating mode ADSL over ISDN for transmission rates from 10 to 24 Mbps downstream and up to 3.5 Mbps upstream.

ADSL1 (Annex B)

Operating mode ADSL over ISDN for transmission rates up to 10 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (Annex B)

Operating mode ADSL over ISDN for transmission rates up to 12 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (Annex B)

Operating mode ADSL over ISDN for transmission rates up to 24 Mbps downstream and 1 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2 (Annex J)

Operating mode ADSL over ISDN for transmission rates up to 12 Mbps downstream and 3.5 Mbps upstream.

ADSL2+ (Annex J)

Operating mode ADSL over ISDN for transmission rates up to 24 Mbps downstream and 3.5 Mbps upstream.

No

The interface is not active.

Downstream rate

Specify the downstream rate (RX). The actual bandwidth corresponds to the minimum of the negotiated value and the value set here.

If the default value is 0, the value used is negotiated automatically.

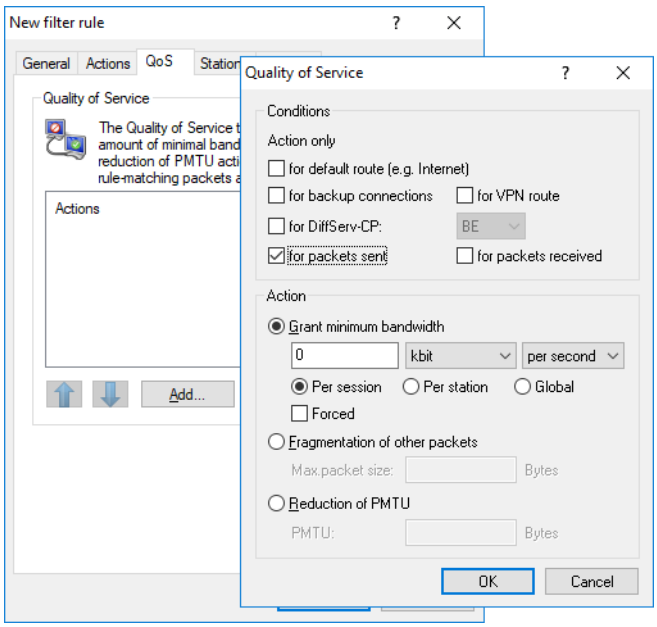
Upstream rate

Specify the upstream rate (TX). The actual bandwidth corresponds to the minimum of the negotiated value and the value set here.

If the default value is 0, the value used is negotiated automatically.

9.7.4 Sending and receiving direction

The sense of the direction of data transmission is set in LANconfig when defining the QoS rule:



When configuring a new rule in the firewall from the command line, the sense of the direction of data transmission is set using the parameter "R" for receive, "T" for transmit and "W" for reference to the WAN interface in the following location: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Rule-List**

The following rule in the firewall restricts the data transmission with respect to the physical WAN interface to 16 Kbps in the send direction:

- %Lcdstw16%d

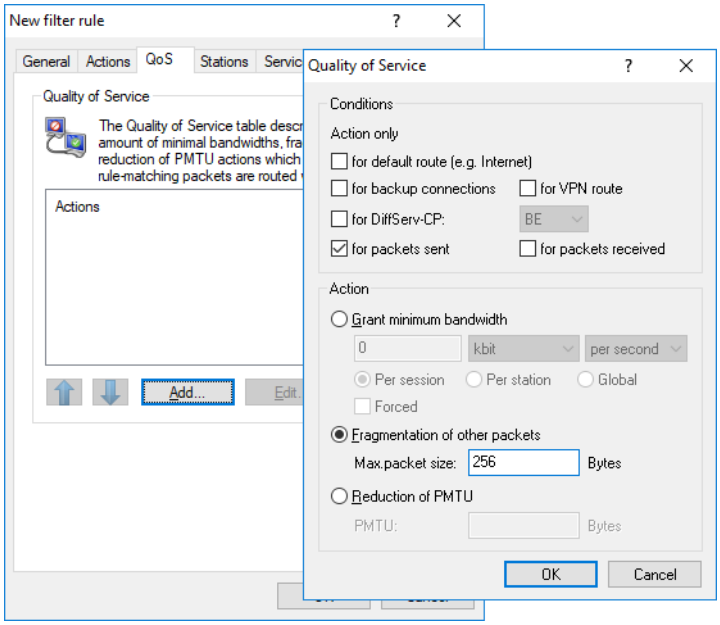
9.7.5 Reducing the packet length

The length reduction of the data packets is defined with a firewall rule, which observes the following conditions:

- The reduction affects to **all** packets that are sent to the interface and **do not** match the rule.
- Reduction applies globally to all packets on the interface; there is no exception of certain protocols.

For devices with VoIP functions that were already integrated or added in with a software option, fragmentation and PMTU reduction can be set separately for SIP calls.

The reduction in the length of data packets is set in LANconfig when defining the QoS rule:



When configuring a new rule in the firewall from the command line, the reduction is set in the following location whereby parameter "P" is for PMTU reduction (Path MTU, MTU = Maximum Transmission Unit) and "F" for the fragment size: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Firewall** > **Rule-List**

PMTU reduction and fragmentation are always related to the physical connection. Specification of the parameter "W" for the WAN transmission direction is therefore not required here and is ignored, if available.

The following example shows a setting for Voice-over-IP telephony:

Policy	Source	Destination	Action	Protocol
VOIP	IP addresses of the IP phones in the LAN, all ports	IP addresses of the IP phones in the LAN, all ports	%Qcds32 %Prt256	UDP

This rule sets the minimum send and receive bandwidth to 32 kbps while enforcing the reduction of the PMTU of sent and received packets to 256 bytes. For the TCP connections, the maximum segment size of the local workstation is set to 216, so that the server sends packets of a maximum of 256 bytes in size (PMTU reduction in the transmit and receive directions).

9.8 QoS for WLANs according to IEEE 802.11e (WMM/WME)

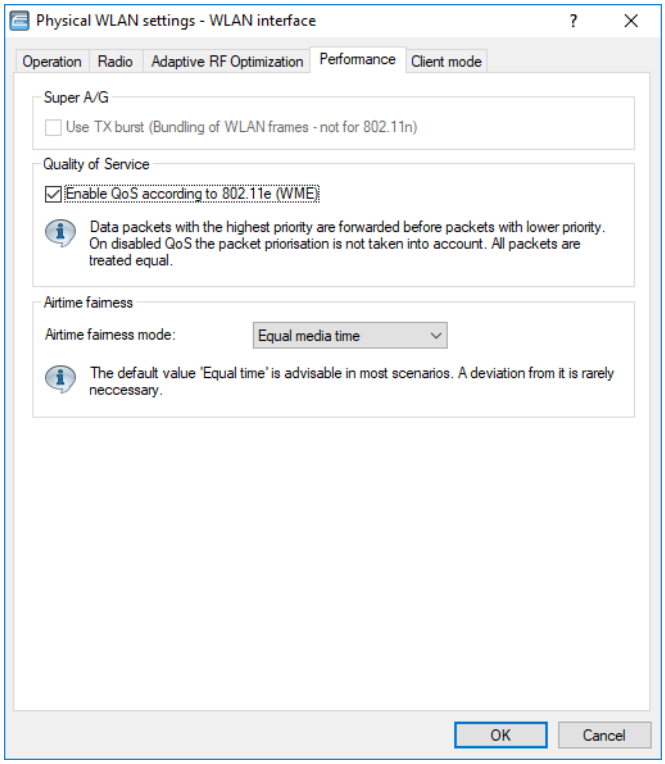
With the extension to the 802.11 standard, 802.11e, Quality of Service can be provided for transfers via WLAN. Among others, 802.11e supports the prioritization of certain data-packet types. This extension is an important basis for the use of voice applications in WLANs (Voice over WLAN, VoWLAN).

The Wi-Fi alliance certifies products that support Quality of Service according to 802.11e, and refer to WMM (Wi-Fi Multimedia, formerly known as WME or Wireless Multimedia Extension). WMM defines four categories (voice, video, best effort and background) which make up separate queues to be used for prioritization.

The 802.11e standard sets priorities by referring to the VLAN tags or, in the absence of these, by the DiffServ fields of IP packets. Delay times (jitter) are kept below 2 milliseconds, a magnitude which is inaudible to the human ear. 802.11e controls access to the transfer medium with EDCF, the Enhanced Distributed Coordination Function.

Priorities can only be set if the WLAN client and the access point both support 802.11e or WMM, and also if the applications are able to mark the data packets with the corresponding priorities.

An access point can activate 802.11e for each of its physical WLAN networks separately.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Performance**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Performance**

10 Virtual Private Networks – VPN

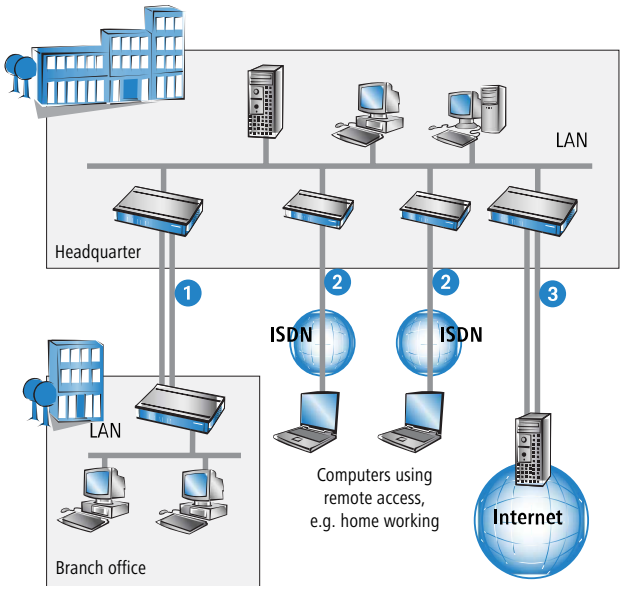
10.1 What does VPN offer?

A VPN (Virtual Private Network) can be used to set up cost-effective, public IP networks, for example via the Internet.

While this may sound unspectacular at first, in practice it has profound effects. To illustrate this, let's first look at a typical corporate network without VPN technology. In the second step, we will see how this network can be optimized by the deployment of VPN.

10.1.1 Conventional network infrastructure

First, let's have a look at a typical network structure that can be found in this form or similar forms in many companies:



The corporate network is based on the internal network (LAN) in the headquarters. This LAN is connected to the outside world in three ways:

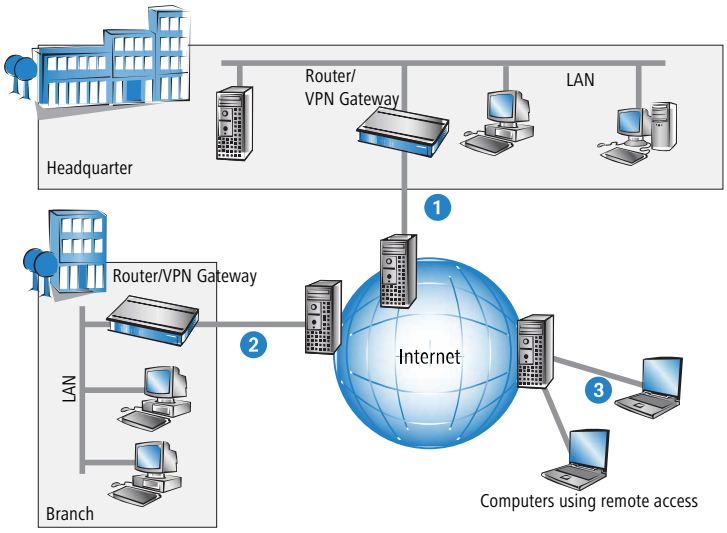
1. A subsidiary is connected to the LAN, typically using a leased line.
2. 2 PCs dial into the central network via modem or ISDN connections (Remote Access Service – RAS).
3. The central LAN has a connection to the Internet so that its users can access the Web, and send and receive e-mail.

All connections to the outside world are based on dedicated lines, i.e. switched or leased lines. Dedicated lines are very reliable and secure. On the other hand, they involve high costs. In general, the costs for dedicated lines are dependent on the distance. Especially in the case of long-distance connections, keeping an eye out of cost-effective alternatives can be worthwhile.

The appropriate hardware must be available in the headquarters for every type of required connection (analog dial-up, ISDN, leased lines). In addition to the original investment costs, ongoing costs are also incurred for the administration and maintenance of this equipment.

10.1.2 Networking via the Internet

The following structure results when using the Internet instead of direct connections:



All participants have fixed or dial-up connections to the Internet. Expensive dedicated lines are no longer needed.

1. All that is required is the Internet connection of the LAN in the headquarters. Special switching devices or routers for dedicated lines to individual participants are superfluous.
2. The subsidiary also has its own connection to the Internet.
3. The RAS PCs connect to the headquarters LAN via the Internet.

The Internet is available virtually everywhere and typically has low access costs. Significant savings can thus be achieved in relation to switched or dedicated connections, especially over long distances.

The physical connection no longer exists directly between two participants; instead, the participants rely on their connection to the Internet. The access technology used is not relevant in this case: ideal is the use of broadband technologies such as DSL (Digital Subscriber Line) in combination with flatrate contracts.

The technologies of the individual participants do not have to be compatible to one another, as would be the case for conventional direct connections. A single Internet access can be used to establish multiple simultaneous logical connections to a variety of remote sites.

The resulting savings and high flexibility makes the Internet (or any other IP network) an outstanding backbone for a corporate network.

Two technical properties of the IP standard speak against using the Internet as a part of a corporate network, however:

- The necessity of public IP addresses for all participants
- The lack of data security of unprotected data transfers

10.1.3 Private IP addresses on the Internet?

The IP standard defines two types of IP addresses: Public and private. A public IP address is valid worldwide, while a private IP address only applies within a closed LAN.

Public IP addresses must be unique on a worldwide basis. Private IP addresses can occur any number of times worldwide; they must only be unique within their own closed network.

Normally, PCs in a LAN only have private IP addresses, while the router to the Internet also has a public address. All PCs behind this router have access to the Internet via its public IP address (IP masquerading). In such a case, only the router

itself is responsive via the Internet. PCs behind the router are not responsive to the Internet without intervention by the router.

Routing at the IP level with VPN

IP connections must be established between routers with public IP addresses in order to link networks via the Internet. These routers provide the connections between multiple subnetworks. When a computer sends a packet to a private IP address in a remote network segment, the local router forwards the packet to the router of the remote network segment via the Internet.

The "encapsulation" of data packets with private IP addresses inside packets with public IP addresses is handled by the VPN gateway. Without VPN, computers without public IP addresses would not be able to communicate with one another via the Internet.

10.1.4 Secure communications via the Internet?

The idea of using the Internet for corporate communications has been met with skepticism. The reason for this is that the Internet lies beyond a company's field of influence. Unlike dedicated connections, data on the Internet travels through the network structures of third parties that are frequently unknown to the company.

In addition, the Internet is based on a simple form of data transfer using unencrypted data packets. Third parties can monitor and perhaps even manipulate the contents of these packets. Anyone can access the Internet. As a result, third parties may gain unauthorized access to the transferred data.

VPN – Security through encryption

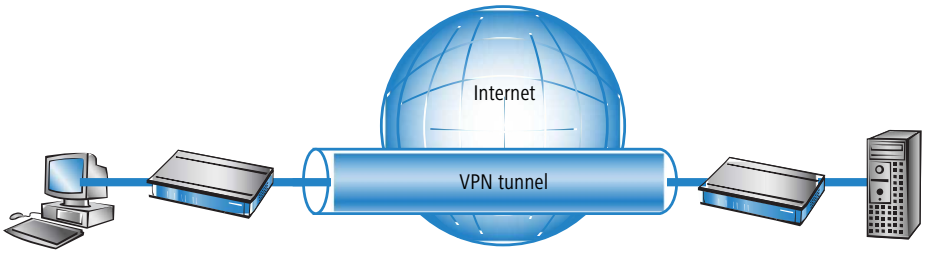
VPN was developed as a solution to this security problem. If necessary, it can encrypt the complete data communications between two participants. The packets are then unreadable for third parties.

The latest and most secure encryption technologies can be used for VPN. A very high level of security can thus be reached. VPN-protected data traffic via the Internet offers a degree of security that at least corresponds to that of dedicated lines.

Codes usually referred to as "keys" are agreed upon between the participants and used for data encryption. Only the participants in the VPN know these keys. Without a valid key, it is not possible to decrypt the data. They thus remain "private", inaccessible to unauthorized parties.

Send your data through the tunnel – for security's sake

This also explains the nature of a virtual private network: A fixed, physical connection between the devices of the type required for a direct connection does not exist at any time. Rather, the data flows via suitable routes through the Internet. With the proper technology, third parties can monitor and even record data traffic. As the packets are encrypted by VPN, the actual content of the packets is inaccessible. Experts compare this state to a tunnel: it's open at either end, but perfectly shielded in between. Secure connections within public IP networks are thus also referred to as "tunnels".

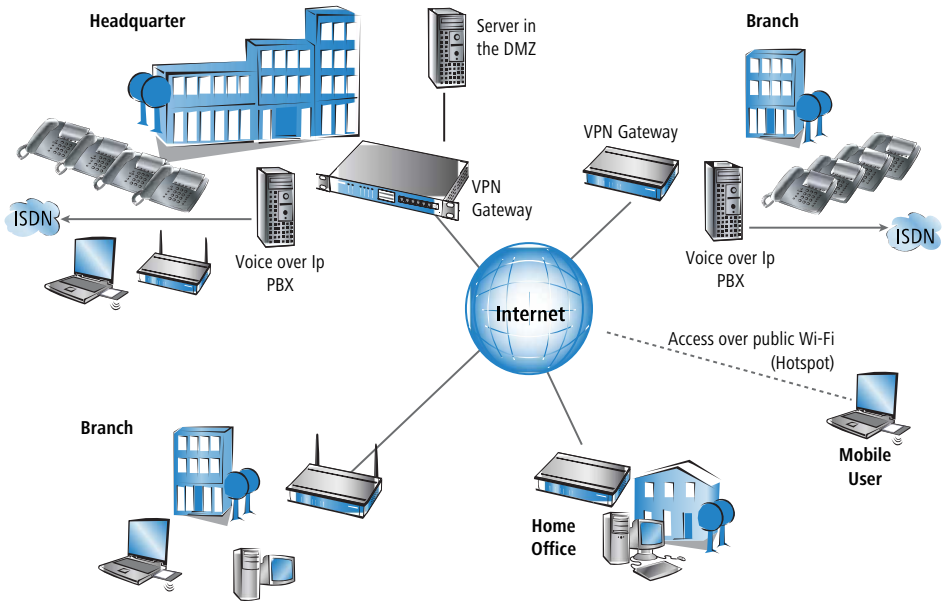


The goal of modern network structures has thus been achieved: secure connections via the largest and most low-cost public IP network, the Internet.

10.2 The VPN module at a glance

10.2.1 VPN example application

VPN connections are used in many different fields of application. In most cases, a variety of communications technologies is used for transferring both data and audio, and VPN unites these systems into an integrated network. The following example illustrates a typical application that is often used in practice.



The principal components and features of these applications:

- The connectivity of networks, for example between headquarters and a branch office
- Connecting external locations without fixed IP addresses via VPN router
- Connecting home offices without fixed IPs via ISDN or analog modems
- Connection to Voice-over-IP PBX systems
- Connecting mobile users, for example when using public WLAN access

10.2.2 Functions of the VPN module

This section lists all of the functions and properties of the LCOS VPN module. Experts of the VPN sector are offered a highly compressed summary of the performance of the function. Understanding the terminology requires a sound knowledge of the technical fundamentals of VPN. However, for commissioning and normal operation of the VPN, this information is non-essential.

- VPN tunnel via leased lines, switched connections and IP networks
- LANCOMDynamic VPN: Public IP addresses can be static or dynamic (establishing a connection with remote sites using dynamic IP addresses requires ISDN)
- VPN in accordance with IPSec standard
- IPSec protocols ESP, AH and IPCOMP in tunnel mode
- Hash algorithms:
  - HMAC-MD5-96, hash length 128 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-96, hash length 160 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-256, hash length 256 bits

- HMAC-SHA-1-384, hash length 384 bits
- HMAC-SHA-1-512, hash length 512 bits

- Compression with “Deflate” (ZLIB)
- Key management as per ISAKMP (IKEv1, IKEv2)
- Symmetrical encryption methods
  - AES, key lengths of 128, 192 and 256 bits
  - Triple-DES (3DES), key length 168 bit
  - Blowfish, key length 128 - 448 bits
  - CAST, key length 128 bits
  - DES, key length 56 bits
- IKEv1 main and aggressive mode
- IKEv1 / IKEv2 config mode
- IKEv1 with pre-shared keys and IKEv2
- IKEv1 and IKEv2 with RSA signature and digital certificates (X.509)
- Key exchange via Oakley, Diffie-Hellman algorithm with the following DH groups:
  - DH-1 (768-bit modulus)
  - DH-2 (1024-bit modulus)
  - DH-5 (1536-bit modulus)
  - DH-14 (2048-bit modulus)
  - DH-15 (3072-bit modulus)
  - DH-16 (4096-bit modulus)
  - DH-19 (256-bit random ECP group)
  - DH-20 (384-bit random ECP group)
  - DH-21 (521-bit random ECP group)
  - DH-28 (brainpoolP256r1)
  - DH-29 (brainpoolP384r1)
  - DH-30 (brainpoolP512r1)

10.3 VPN connections in detail

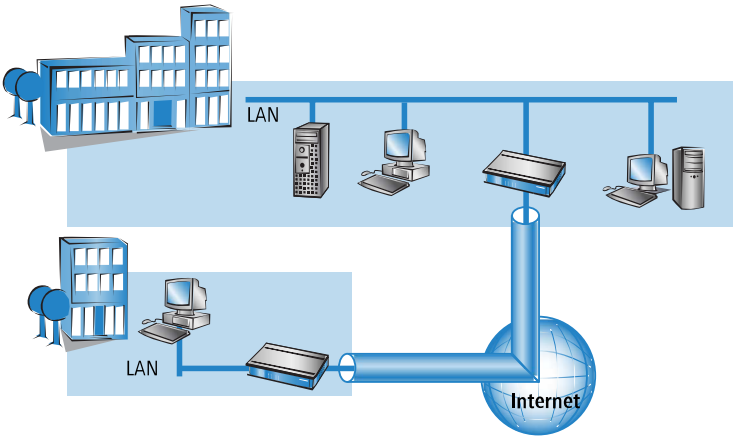
Two types of VPN connections are available:

- VPN connections linking two local networks. This type of connection is also known as a “LAN-LAN link”.
- The connection of an individual computer with a network, generally via a dial-in connection (Remote Access Service – RAS).

10.3.1 LAN-LAN links

The connectivity of two remote networks is known as a “LAN-LAN connectivity”. With such a connection, the devices in one LAN can access those of the remote LAN (assuming they have the necessary access rights).

In practice, LAN-LAN links are frequently used between company headquarters and subsidiaries, or for connections to partner companies.



A VPN-enabled router (VPN gateway) is located at either end of the tunnel. The configuration of both VPN gateways must be matched to one another.

The connections are transparent for the remaining devices in the local networks, i.e., they appear to have a direct connection. Only the two gateways must be configured for the VPN connection.

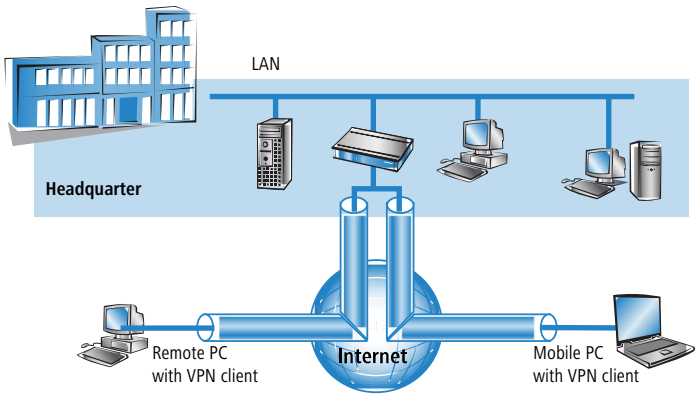
Internet access in parallel

The Internet access for VPN can be used simultaneously for other Internet applications, such as web-browsing or e-mail. For security reasons, the parallel Internet access may be unwanted in some cases. For instance, if a branch office should be enforced to access the Internet only via a central firewall. For such applications the parallel Internet access can be disabled as well.

10.3.2 Dial-in connections (Remote Access Service)

Individual remote computers (hosts) can access the resources of the LAN via dial-up connections. Practical examples of this are employees working from home or field staff that dial into the company network.

If the dial-up connection of an individual computer to a LAN is to be realized via VPN, that computer first connects to the Internet. A special VPN client software then sets up a tunnel to the VPN gateway of the LAN using this Internet connection.



The VPN gateway of the LAN must support the establishment of VPN tunnels with the VPN client software of the remote PC.

10.4 What is LANCOM Dynamic VPN?

LANCOM Dynamic VPN is a technology which permits VPN tunnels to be connected even to remote sites that do not have a static IP address, but a dynamic one instead.

Who needs LANCOM Dynamic VPN and how does it work? We will answer this question in two steps: First, a look at the basics of IP addressing will show the problem of dynamic IP addresses. The second step shows the solution thereof with LANCOM Dynamic VPN.

10.4.1 A look at IP addressing

Every participant on the Internet needs an IP address. Participants even need a special kind of IP address - a public one. The administration of public IP addresses is handled from central locations in the Internet. Each public IP address may only occur once on the entire Internet.

Local IP-based networks do not use public, but private IP addresses. For this reason, a number of address ranges within the entire IP address range have been reserved for private IP addresses.

A computer connected to both a local network and directly to the Internet therefore has two IP addresses: a public one for communication with the rest of the Internet and a private one by which the computer can be reached within the local network.

Static and dynamic IP addresses

Public IP addresses must be applied for and managed, which involves costs. There is also only a limited number of public IP addresses. For this reason, not every Internet user has his or her own fixed (static) IP address.

The alternative to static IP addresses are the so-called dynamic IP addresses. A dynamic IP address is assigned to an Internet user by the Internet Service Provider (ISP) upon dialing-in, and remains valid for the duration of the connection. The ISP takes an unused address selected at random from their pool of IP addresses. This IP address is only temporarily assigned to the user for the duration of a given connection. When the connection is ended, the IP address is once again free and the ISP can assign it to another user.

Many flatrate connections, too, are realized with via dynamic IP addresses. Every 24 hours or so, the connection is forcibly interrupted. The new connection is generally assigned with a new and different IP address.

Advantages and disadvantages of dynamic IP addresses

This process has a very important advantage for ISPs: they only need relatively small pools of IP addresses. Dynamic IP addresses are also favorable for users: it's not necessary for them to apply for static IP addresses in advance - they can connect to the Internet immediately. It's also not necessary for them to manage IP addresses. This saves trouble and costs. The other side of the coin: A user without a static IP address cannot be addressed directly from the Internet.

This is a major problem when setting up VPNs. If, for example, Computer A would like to communicate with Computer B using a VPN tunnel on the Internet, Computer A needs the remote computer's IP address. If B only has a dynamic address, A cannot know that address and therefore cannot contact B.

The LANCOM Dynamic VPN offers the answer here.

10.4.2 This is how LANCOM Dynamic VPN works

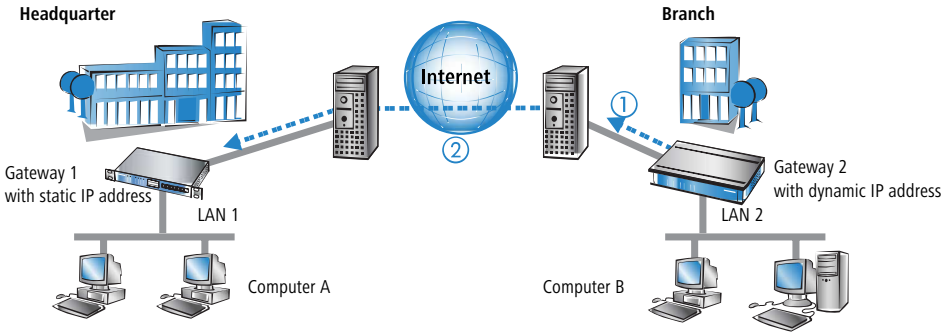
Let's use two examples to explain how LANCOM Dynamic VPN works (designations refer to the IP addressing type of the two VPN gateways):

- Dynamic – static
- Static – dynamic
- Dynamic – dynamic

Dynamic – static

If a user on computer B in LAN 2 wishes to connect to computer A in LAN 1, then gateway 2 receives a request and tries to establish a VPN tunnel to gateway 1. Gateway 1 has a static IP address and can be directly contacted over the Internet.

A problem arises in that the IP address from gateway 2 is assigned dynamically, and gateway 2 must communicate its current IP address to gateway 1 when attempting to connect. In this case, LANCOM Dynamic VPN takes care of transmitting the IP address during connection establishment.



1. Gateway 2 connects to the Internet and is assigned a dynamic IP address.
2. Gateway 2 contacts Gateway 1 via its known public IP address. LANCOM Dynamic VPN enables the identification and transmission of the actual IP address of Gateway 2. Gateway 1 then initiates the VPN tunnel.

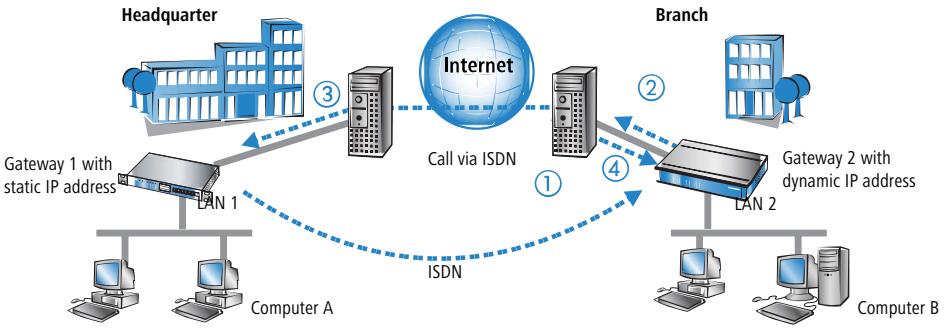
The main advantage here: Rather than the "Aggressive Mode" that is normally used when connecting VPN clients to the headquarters, the far more secure "Main Mode" can be applied instead. Main Mode exchanges significantly more unencrypted messages during the IKE handshake than the Aggressive Mode.

An ISDN line is not necessary for establishing this type of connection. The dynamic end communicates its IP address encrypted via the Internet protocol ICMP (or alternatively via UDP).

Static – dynamic

If, on the other hand, computer A in LAN 1 requires a connection to computer B in LAN 2, for example when headquarters carries out remote maintenance at the external locations, then gateway 1 receives the request and attempts to establish a VPN tunnel to gateway 2. Gateway 2 only has a dynamic IP address and cannot be directly contacted over the Internet.

With LANCOM Dynamic VPN, the VPN tunnel can be set up nevertheless. The connection is established in three steps:



1. Gateway 1 calls Gateway 2 via ISDN. It takes advantage of the ISDN functionality of sending its own subscriber number via the D-channel free of charge. Gateway 2 determines the IP address of Gateway 1 from the preconfigured VPN remote sites using the received subscriber number.

If Gateway 2 does not receive a subscriber number via the D-channel (if that particular ISDN service feature is not available, for example) or an unknown number is transferred, the authentication will be performed via the B-channel. Once the negotiation was successful, Gateway 1 sends its IP address and closes the connection on the B-channel immediately.

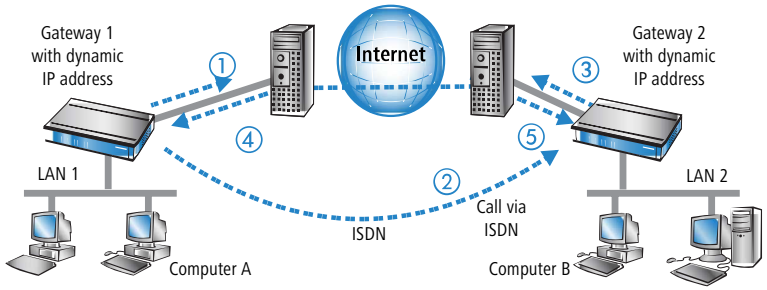
2. Now it's Gateway 2's turn: It first connects to its ISP and is assigned a dynamic IP address.
3. Gateway 2 authenticates with Gateway 1 at the static address known to it.
4. Gateway 1 now knows the address of Gateway 2 and can now establish the VPN tunnel to Gateway 2.

The advantage of these devices, for example when connecting from the headquarters to branch offices: The functions in LANCOM Dynamic VPN also allows access to networks without a flatrate, i.e. networks that are not "always online". The ISDN connection and an associated MSN act to substitute the another address, such as a static IP address or the dynamic address translation via dynamic DNS services, a solution often used with flatrate connections.

The described connection set up requires an ISDN connection for both VPN gateways. But usually no charges will arise for this procedure.

Dynamic – dynamic

With LANCOM Dynamic VPN, VPN tunnels can also be set up between two gateways that both have dynamic IP addresses. Let's modify the previous example so that in this case Gateway 1 also has a dynamic IP address. Once again, Computer A would like to connect to Computer B:



1. Gateway 1 connects to its ISP and is assigned a public, dynamic IP address.
2. It then calls Gateway 2 via ISDN to send this dynamic address. Three procedures are used to send the address:

   - As information in the LLC element of the D-channel. In the D-channel protocol of Euro-ISDN (DSS-1), the so-called LLC (Lower Layer Compatibility) element can be used to send additional information to the remote site. This transfer takes place before the B-channel connection is established. Once the address has been sent successfully, the remote site rejects the call. Charges are thus not incurred for a B-channel connection. The IP address is sent nevertheless for free in this case.

     The LLC element is generally available as a standard feature in Euro-ISDN that does not require registration or activation. It may be disabled by telephone companies or individual exchanges, however. The LLC element is not available in 1TR6, the German national ISDN. The procedure described above thus will not work with 1TR6.

   - As a subaddress via the D-channel. If it is not possible to send the address via the LLC element, Gateway 1 will attempt to send the address as a so-called subaddress. Like the LLC element, the subaddress is an information element of the D-channel protocol that permits short items of information to be sent free of charge. In this case, the telephone company must enable the 'subaddressing' feature first; this is generally subject to a charge. As with the LLC element, the call is rejected by the remote site once the IP address has been transferred successfully. The connection thus remains free of charge.
   - Via the B-channel. If both attempts to send the IP address via the D-channel fail, then a conventional connection via the B-channel is required to send the IP address. The connection is dropped immediately after the IP address has been sent. This connection is subject to the usual charges.

3. Gateway 2 connects to the ISP and receives a dynamic IP address.
4. Gateway 2 authenticates with Gateway 1 (whose address is known from step 2).
5. Gateway 1 now knows the address of Gateway 2 and can now establish the VPN tunnel to Gateway 2.

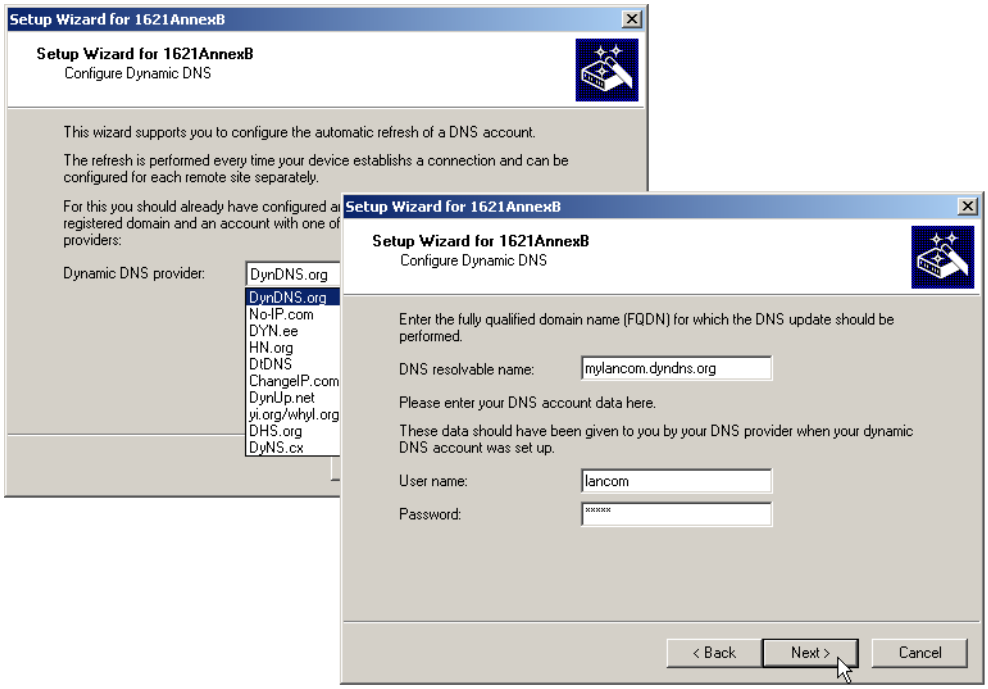
Dynamic VPN works only between LANCOM that each feature at least one ISDN port that can be used for the ISDN connection.

Dynamic IP addresses and DynDNS

It is also possible to establish a connection between two stations using dynamic IP addresses by using so-called dynamic DNS services (DynDNS). The address of the tunnel end-point is not defined as an IP number (which is, of course, dynamic and subject to frequent change) but as a static name instead (e.g. MyDevice@DynDNS.org).

Two things are needed for translating a name to its current IP address: A dynamic DNS server and a dynamic DNS client:

- The first, available from numerous providers in the Internet, is a server that is in communication with Internet DNS servers.
- The dynamic DNS client is integrated in the device. It can make contact to any one of a number of dynamic-DNS service providers and, assuming that a user account has been set up, automatically update its current IP address for the DNS name translation. This can be set up very conveniently with a Wizard under LANconfig:



10.5 Configuration of VPN connections

Three questions are answered in the configuration of VPN connections:

- Between which VPN gateways (remote stations) is the connection established?
- What security parameters are used to secure the VPN tunnel between the two gateways?
- Which networks or computers can intercommunicate via these tunnels?

This section introduces the basic considerations for configuring VPN connections. Considered first of all is the simple connection of two local networks. Special cases such as dialling in to LANs with individual computers (RAS) or the connection of structured networks will be covered subsequently.

10.5.1 VPN tunnel: Connections between VPN gateways

Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) are used to interconnect local networks over the Internet. This involves the routing of the private LAN IP addresses via an Internet connection between two gateways with public IP addresses.

For the secure routing of private IP addresses over the Internet, a VPN connection, also known as a VPN tunnel, is established between the two LANs.

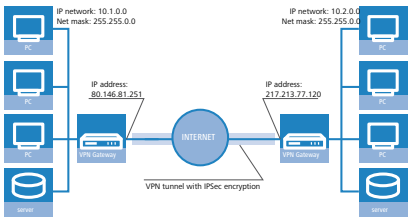
The VPN tunnel has two important tasks:

- To shield the transported data from unauthorized access
- To route private IP addresses via an Internet connection that can normally only be used to route public IP addresses.

The VPN connection between the two gateways is defined by the following parameters:

- The end-points of the tunnel, the VPN gateways, each of which are accessible via public IP addresses (static or dynamic)
- The IP connection between the two gateways
- The private IP address range that are to be routed between the VPN gateways
- Setting relevant to security, such as passwords, IPSec keys etc. to shield the VPN tunnel

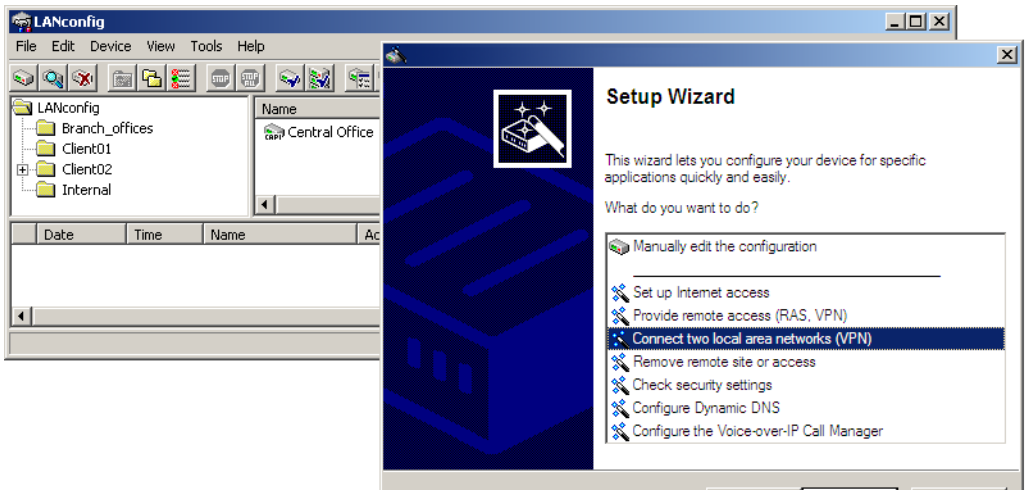
This information is contained in the so-called VPN rules.



10.5.2 Set up VPN connections with the Setup Wizard

If possible, make use of the Setup Wizard within LANconfig to set up VPN connections between local networks. The Wizard guides you through the configuration and makes all the necessary settings for you. Carry out the configuration on both routers, one after the other.

1. Choose your device from the selection window in LANconfig and select the **Setup Wizard** button or use the menu bar **Tools** / **Setup Wizard**.



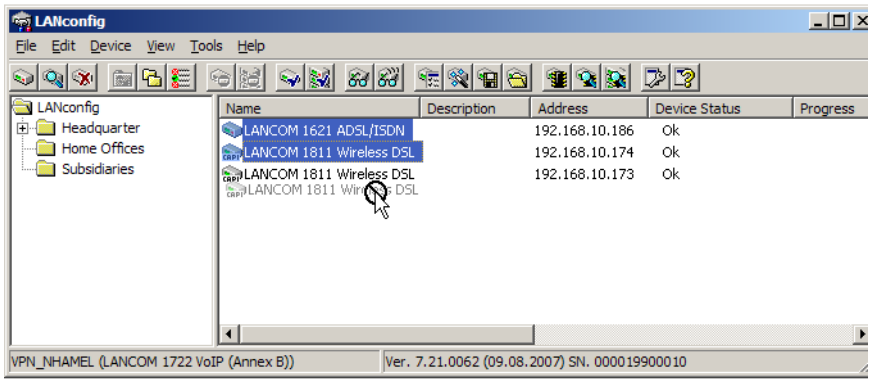
2. Follow the Wizard's instructions and enter the necessary data. The Wizard will inform you when the required information is complete. You can then close the Wizard with **Finish**.
3. Once you have completed the set-up of both routers, you can start testing the network connection. Try to communicate with a computer in the remote LAN (e. g. with `ping`). The device should automatically connect to the remote station and make contact to the requested computer.
   This Wizard automatically sets up the VPN connections essential for typical LAN-LAN coupling. In the following situations, the VPN connections will have to be configured manually:

   - Where no Windows computer with LANconfig is available. In this case, the necessary parameters are set with WEBconfig or via the Telnet console.
   - Where only selected portions of the LAN (intranet) are to communicate with other computers via the VPN connection. This is the case where, for example, the intranet is connected to further subnets with routers, or when only selected portions of the intranet should have access to the VPN connection. In such cases, additional parameters are defined supplementary to those entered in the Setup Wizard.
   - Configuring VPN connections to third-party devices.

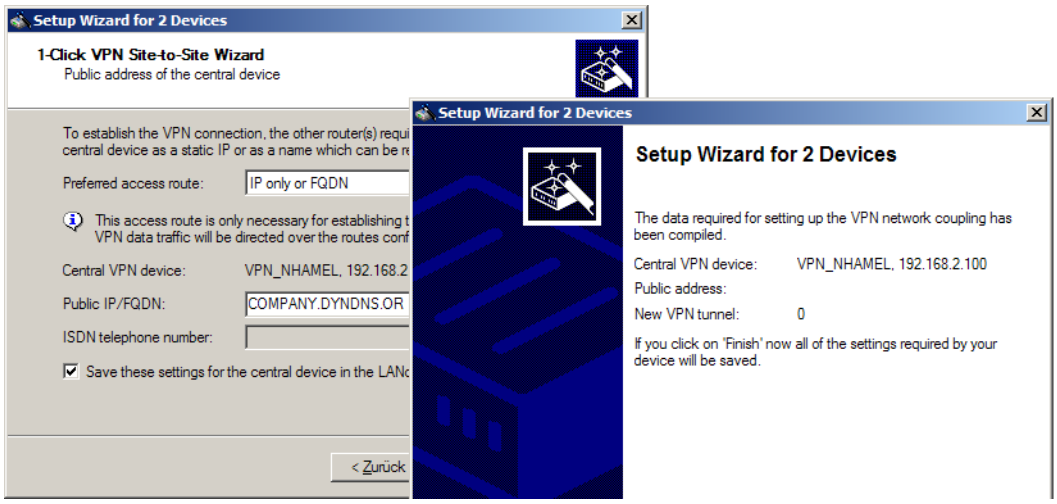
10.5.3 1-Click-VPN for networks (site-to-site)

The site-to-site coupling of networks is now very simple with the help of the 1-Click-VPN wizard. It is even possible to simultaneously couple multiple routers to a central network.

1. In LANconfig, mark the routers at branch offices which are to be coupled to a central router via VPN.
2. Use drag&drop by mouse to place the devices onto the entry for the central router.



3. The 1-Click-VPN Site-to-Site Wizard will be started. Enter a name for this access and select the address under which the router is accessible from the Internet.



4. Select whether connection establishment is to take place via the name or IP address of the central router, or via an ISDN connection. Enter the address or name of the central router, or its ISDN number.
5. The final step is to define how the networks are to intercommunicate:
   - The INTRANET at headquarters only is to be provided to the branch offices.
   - All private networks at the branch offices can also be connected to one another via headquarters.

> All entries for the central device are made just once and are then stored to the device properties.

10.5.4 1-Click-VPN for LANCOM Advanced VPN Client

VPN accesses for employees who dial into the network with the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client are very easy to set up with the Setup Wizard and exported to a file. This file can then be imported as a profile by the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client. All of the information about the LANCOM VPN Router's configuration is also included, and then supplemented with randomly generated values (e.g. for the preshared key).

1. Use LANconfig to start the 'Set up a RAS Account' wizard and select the 'VPN connection'.
2. Activate the options 'LANCOM Advanced VPN Client' and 'Speed up configuration with 1-Click-VPN'.
3. Enter a name for this access and select the address under which the router is accessible from the Internet.
4. In the final step you can select how the access data is to be entered:
   - Save profile as an import file for the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client
   - Send profile via e-mail
   - Print out profile

> Sending a profile via e-mail could be a security risk should the e-mail be intercepted en route!

To send the profile via e-mail, the device configuration must be set up with an SMTP account with the necessary access data. Further, the configuration computer requires an e-mail program that is set up as the standard e-mail application and that can be used by other applications to send e-mails.

When setting up the VPN access, certain settings are made to optimize operations with the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client, including:

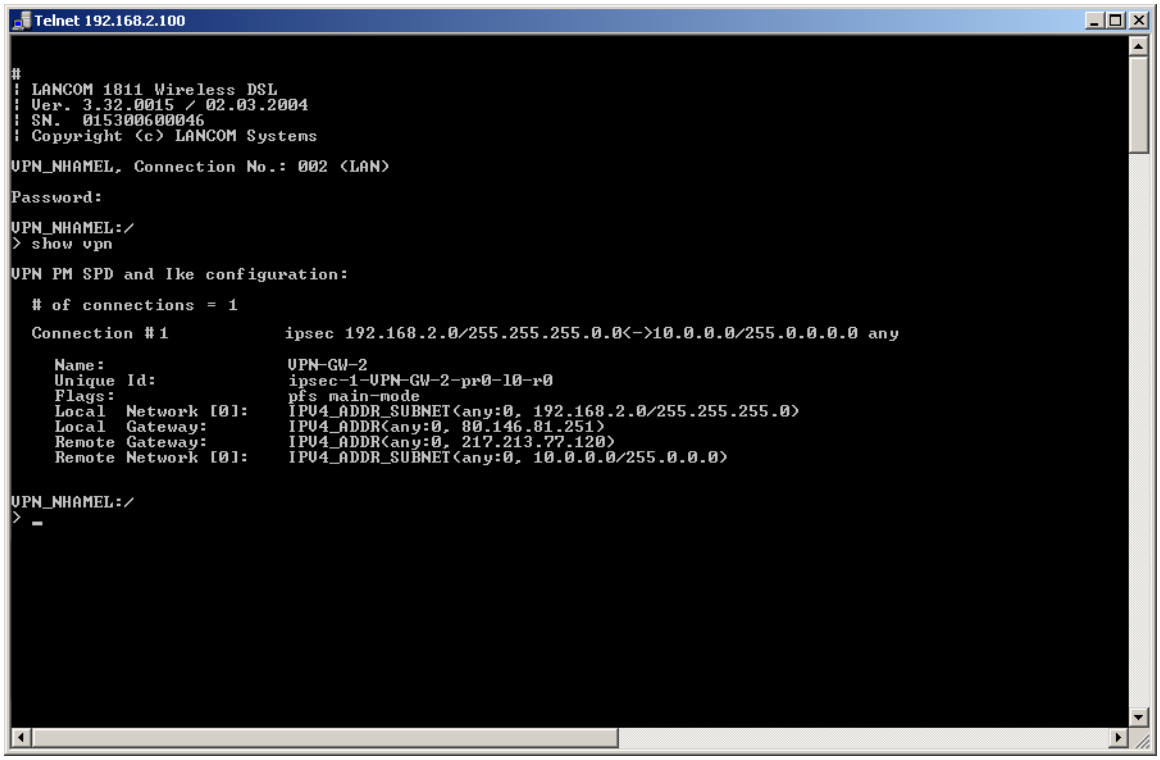
- Gateway: If defined in the LANCOM VPN Router, a DynDNS name is used here, or alternatively the IP address
- FQUN: Combination of the name of the connection, a sequential number and the internal domain in the LANCOM VPN Router.

- Domain: If defined in the LANCOM VPN Router, the internal domain is used here, or alternatively a a DynDNS name or IP address
- VPN IP networks: All IP networks defined in the device as type 'Intranet'.
- Preshared key: Randomly generated key 16 ASCII characters long.
- Connection medium: The LAN is used to establish connections.
- VoIP prioritization: VoIP prioritization is activated as standard.
- Exchange mode: The exchange mode to be used is 'Aggressive Mode'.
- IKE config mode: The IKE config mode is activated, the IP address information for the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client is automatically assigned by the LANCOM VPN Router.

10.5.5 Inspect VPN rules

VPN rules represent a combination of various pieces of information and they are not directly defined in a LANCOM device; instead, they are compiled from a variety of sources. This is why it is not possible to inspect the VPN rules with LANconfig or any other configuration tool.

Information about the current VPN rules in the device can be retrieved with the Telnet console. Start a Telnet connection to the VPN gateway and enter the command **show vpn** in the console:



The output informs you of the network relationships that are relevant to VPN connections to other networks.

In this example, the local network at a branch office (network 192.168.2.0, netmask 255.255.255.0) is connected to the network at the headquarters (network 10.0.0.0, netmask 255.255.255.0). The public IP address of the local gateway is 80.146.81.251, and that of the remote VPN gateway is 217.213.77.120.

Entering “any:0” displays the protocols and ports that can be used over the connection.

Further output is displayed by the command “show vpn long”. The information displayed here covers network relationships and also the parameters that are relevant to security, such as IKE and IPSec proposals.

10.5.6 Manually setting up VPN connections

Manually setting up VPN connections involves the tasks described previously:

- Definition of the tunnel endpoints
- Definition of the security-related parameters (IKE and IPSec)
- Definition of the VPN network relationships, i.e. the IP address ranges to be connected. Should the IP ranges overlap at both ends of the connection, please refer to the section .
- When coupling Windows networks (NetBIOS/IP): Without WINS servers at both ends of the VPN connection (such as when linking a home office), the LANCOM can take over the necessary NetBIOS proxy functions. To this end, the NetBIOS module in the LANCOM must be activated, and the corresponding VPN remote site must be entered into the NetBIOS module as the remote site. Should WINS servers be present in both of the coupled networks, then the NetBIOS module should be deactivated so that the LANCOM does not perform NetBIOS proxy functions.

  To use the LANCOM NetBIOX proxy either LANCOM Dynamic VPN must be applied, because it transmits the required addresses, or the IP address of the remote station as a primary NBNS must be entered in the IP parameter list (\-LANconfig: Communication / Protocols).
- When using LANCOM Dynamic VPN: Entry for the corresponding remote site in the PPP list with a suitable password for the Dynamic VPN handshake. The username entered here must correspond with the name entered in the remote device that describes the VPN connection to this local device. Activate "IP routing". If Windows networks are also to be coupled, then the NetBIOS entry should be activated here.

The tunnel endpoints, i.e. the local VPN gateway and each of the VPN remote stations, are entered into the VPN connection list.

Manually configuring the VPN connection involves the following steps:

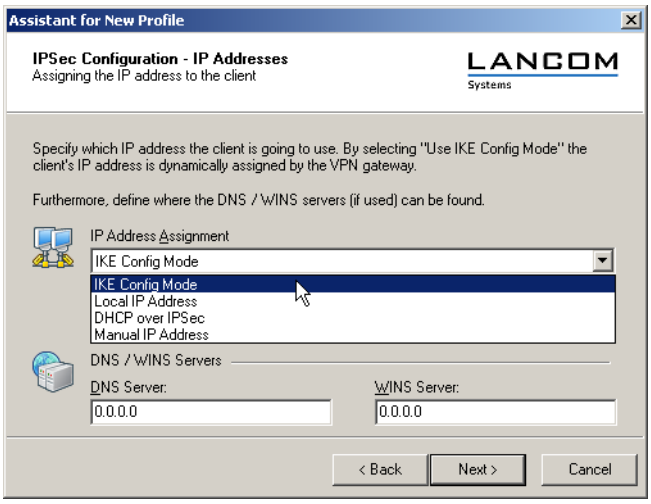
1. Create an entry for the remote VPN gateway in the connection list and enter its public IP address.
2. The security parameters for the VPN connection are normally taken from the prepared list, and all that is required here is to define an IKE key.
3. For a Dynamic VPN connection, create a new entry in the PPP list with the name of the remote VPN gateway as the remote station, with the name of the local VPN gateway as the User Name, and set a suitable password. Be sure to activate the IP routing for this PPP connection and, if required, the routing of “NetBIOS over IP” as well. The remaining PPP parameters, such as the procedure for checking the remote station, can be defined in the same way as for other PPP connections.
4. The main task in setting up VPN connections is in defining the network relationships. Which IP address ranges at each end of the VPN tunnel should be included in the secured connection?

10.5.7 IKE config mode

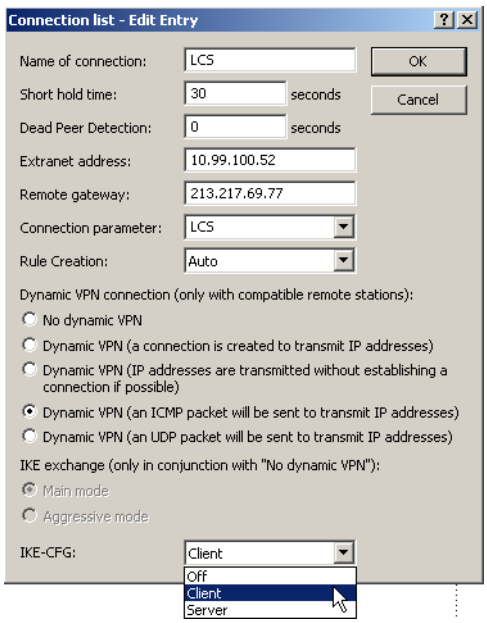
When configuring VPN dial-in connections, there is as an alternative to fixed IP addresses for the remote stations that dial in, in that a pool of IP addresses can be made available to them. To this end, the "IKE-CFG" mode is additionally added to the entries in the connection list. This can assume the following values:

- **Server**: With this setting, the device functions as the server for this VPN connection. The assignment of an IP address to the client can take place in two ways:
  - If the remote site is entered in the routing table, the IP address defined here will be assigned to the client.
  - If the remote site is not entered in the routing table, an IP address which is available from the IP pool will be taken for the dial-in connections.

The remote site must be configured as IKE-CFG client in this case, and thus has to request an IP address from the server. To dial in with a LANCOM Advanced VPN Client, the option **Use IKE Config Mode** has to be activated in the connection profile.



- **Client**: With this setting, the device functions as the client for this VPN connection and requests an IP address from the remote site (server). The device acts in a similar manner to a VPN client.
- **Off**: If the IKE-CFG mode is switched off, no IP addresses will be assigned for the connection. Fixed IP addresses must be defined for both ends of the connection.



LANconfig: VPN / General / Connection list

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN E VPN-Peers

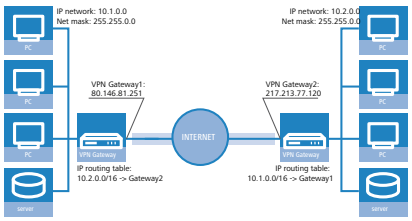
10.5.8 Prepare VPN network relationships

The firewall integrated into LANCOM routers is a powerful instrument for defining source and target address ranges between which data transfer (and limitations to it) can be enabled or prohibited. These functions are also used for setting up the network relationships for the VPN rules.

In the simplest case, the firewall can generate the VPN rules automatically.

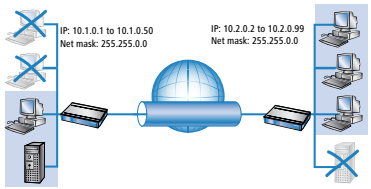
- The local intranet serves as the source network, i.e. the same private IP address range that the local VPN gateway itself belongs to.
- For automatically generated VPN rules, the target networks are those network ranges that have a remote VPN gateway set as their router.

To activate the automated rule generation, simply switch on the corresponding option in the firewall automatic when using the VPN installation Wizard under LANconfig. When coupling two simple local networks, the automatic VPN can interpret the necessary network relationships from the IP address range in its own LAN and from the entry for the remote LAN in the IP routing table.

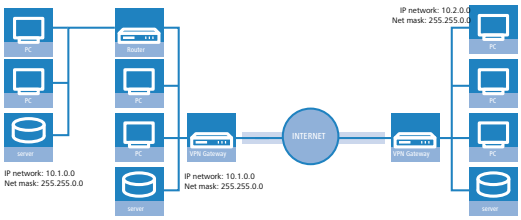


The description of the network relationships is more complicated if the source and target networks are not only represented by the intranet address ranges of the connected LANs:

- When only a portion of the local intranet is to be available to the remote network, then the automatic method is unsuited as the IP address range that is open to the VPN connection is too large.



- In many network structures, the local network is connected by further routers to sections of other networks with their own IP address ranges. Additional settings are required to include these address ranges in the network relationship.



In these cases, the network relationships that describe the source and target networks must be entered manually. Depending on the situation, the scope of the automatically generated VPN rules may be extended, although sometimes it is better to deactivate the automatic VPN system to prevent unwanted network relationships.

The necessary network relationships are defined by the appropriate firewall rules under the following circumstances:

- In the firewall rules, the option "Consider this rule when generating VPN rules" must be activated.

  The firewall rules for generating VPN rules are active even when the actual firewall function in the LANCOM device is not required and is switched off!

- Make sure that the firewall action is set to "Transfer".
- Sources and targets for the connection can be entered as individual stations, certain IP address ranges, or whole IP networks.

  It is vital that target networks are defined in the IP routing table so that the router in the LANCOM devices can forward the appropriate data packets to the other network. You can make use of the entries that already exist there and simply enter a higher-level network as the target. The intersecting portion of the target network

defined by the firewall and the subordinate entries in the IP routing table is integrated into the network relationships for the VPN rules.

Example: The target networks 10.2.1.0/24, 10.2.2.0/24 and 10.2.3.0/24 are entered into the IP routing table and can be accessed via the router VPN-GW 2. An entry for the target network 10.2.0.0/16 is sufficient for these three subnets to be included in the VPN rules.

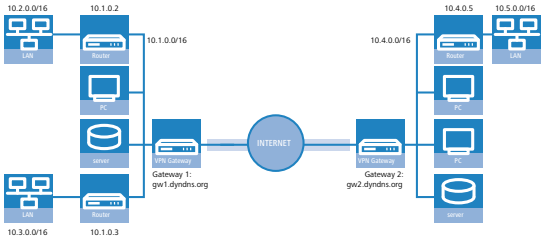
The definition of source and target networks must agree at both ends of the VPN connection. It is not possible, for example, to map a larger target address range to a smaller source address range at the opposite end. Decisive here are the IP address ranges allowed by the VPN rules and not the networks defined in the firewall rules. These can be very different from the network relationships in the VPN rules because of the intersecting ranges.

> VPN connections can also be limited to certain services or protocols according to your requirements. This means that the VPN connection can be limited to use only with a Windows network, for example.

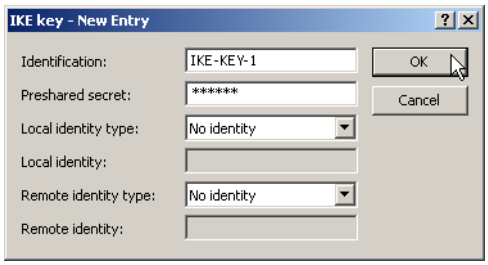
These limitation should be defined by a separate set of rules that applies only to the firewall and that will not be used in generating VPN rules. Combined firewall/VPN rules can very quickly become highly complex and difficult to comprehend.

10.5.9 Configuration with LANconfig

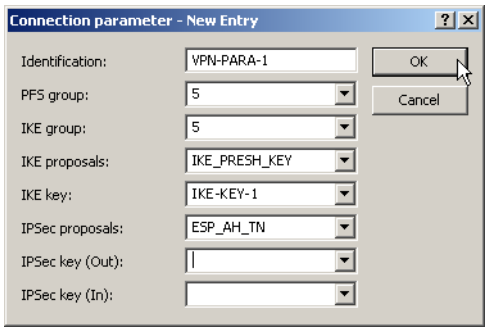
The section demonstrates how LANconfig can be used to configure a LAN-LAN coupling with additional subnets. In this section, VPN gateway 1 will be configured and then the configuration of gateway 2 with the help of WEBconfig will be demonstrated.



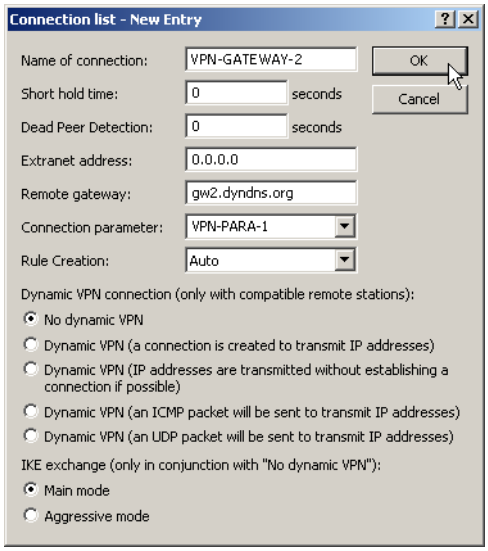
1. When configuring VPN, access the “IKE param.” tab and create a new IKE key for the connection:



2. Under the "General" tab, create a new entry in the list of Connection parameters. Select the IKE key created earlier for this. PFS and IKE groups can also be selected in the same way as IKE and IPSec proposals from the options prepared earlier.

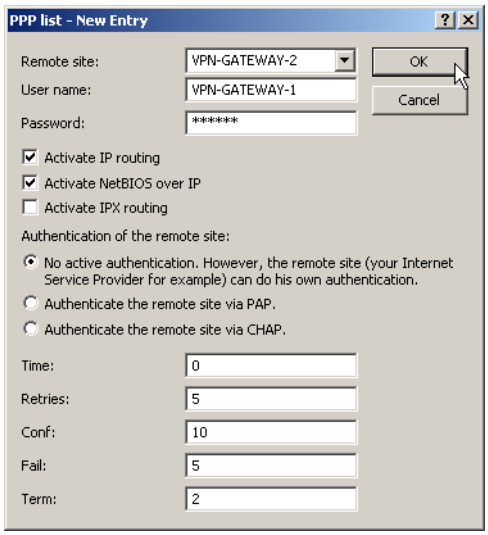


3. You should then generate a new entry in the Connection list with the name of the remote gateway as "name for the connection". For LANCOM Dynamic VPN connections the entry "Remote gateway" must remain empty. Otherwise enter the public address of the remote station: either the fixed IP address or the name for translation by DNS.

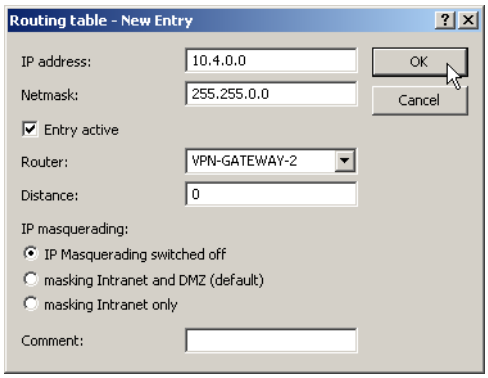


4. When using LANCOM Dynamic VPN: Change to the "Communication" configuration area. Using the "Protocols" tab, make a new entry in the PPP list. Select the remote VPN gateway as the remote site, enter the User Name as the

name of the VPN connection that the remote VPN gateway uses to address the local device, and enter a suitable password that is identical at both locations, but for safety reasons should not be identical to the pre-shared key.



5. Be sure to activate "IP routing" and, if required, "NetBIOS over IP".
6. Change to the “IP Router” configuration area. On the “Routing” tab, make a new entry in the routing table for those parts of networks that are to be accessible in the remote and in the local LAN. In each case, define the router as the remote VPN gateway and switch the IP masquerading off.



7. For the “VPN gateway 1”, the following entries are necessary so that the remote network sections can be reached.

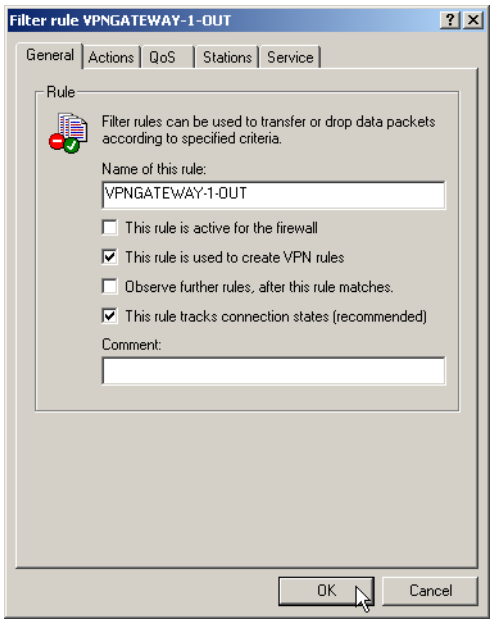
IP address	Net mask	Router	IP masquerading
10.4.00.0	255.255.0.0	VPN gateway 2	No
10.5.0.0	255.255.0.0	VPN gateway 2	No

For those subnetworks connected to your own LAN, define the router as the IP address for the appropriate LAN router.

IP address	Net mask	Router	IP masquerading
10.2.0.0	255.255.0.0	10.1.0.2	No
10.3.0.0	255.255.0.0	10.1.0.3	No

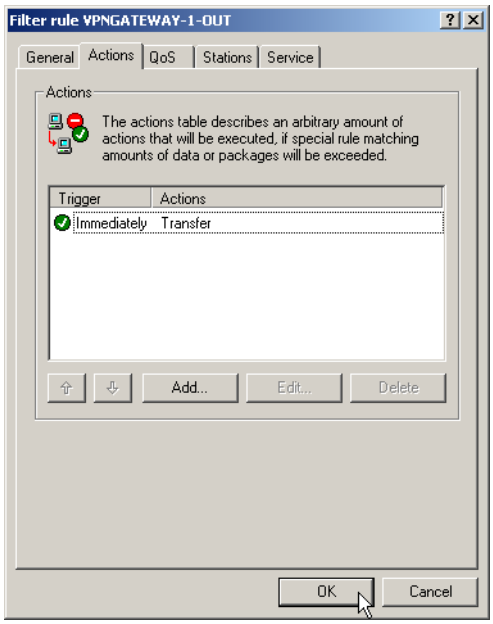
These entries enable VPN gateway 1 to forward packets arriving from the remote network to the correct sections of the local network.

8. Change to the "Firewall/QoS" configuration area. On the "Rules" tab, add a new firewall rule with the name "VPN GATEWAY 1 OUT" and activate the option "This rule is used to create VPN rules". This ensures that IP networks described in this rule will be used in establishing VPN network relationships.

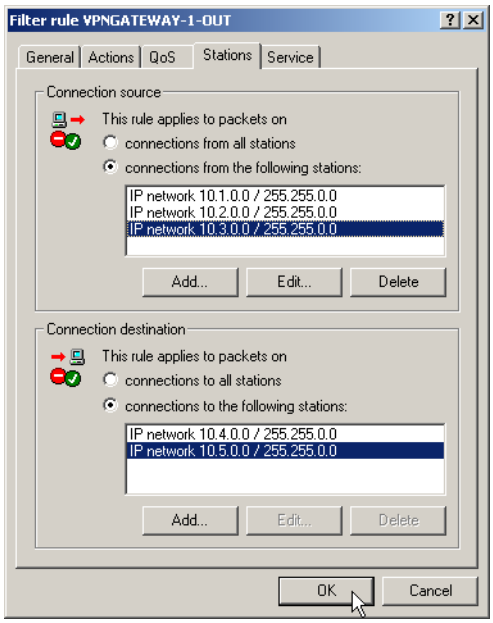


It is recommended to keep the rules used for making network relationships (source and target IP) separate from those firewall rules that for instance affect the services used in communications. Combining both aspects can leed to a higher number of internal managed VPN relationships and therefore to a loss of performance in the VPN tunnels.

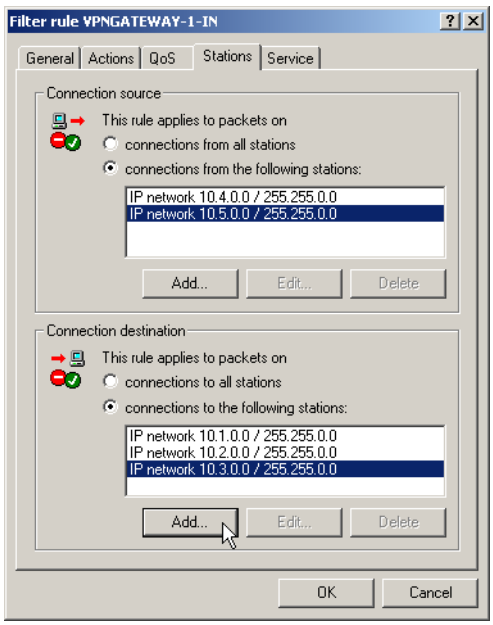
9. On the "Actions" tab for these firewall rules, set the "Packet Action" to "Transmit".



10. On the "Stations" tab for these firewall rules, define the source of the data transfers as the subnets at the local site, and set the destination as all of the subnets at the remote site.

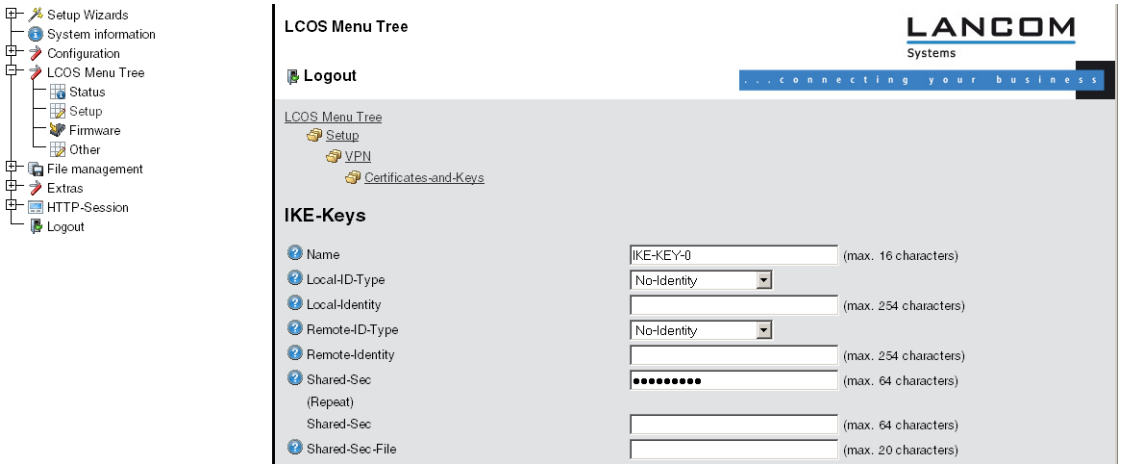


11. Now for the incoming data transmissions, generate a firewall rule named "VPN GATEWAY 1 IN" with the same parameters as the rule just described. The only difference is that the source and the destination networks are swapped.

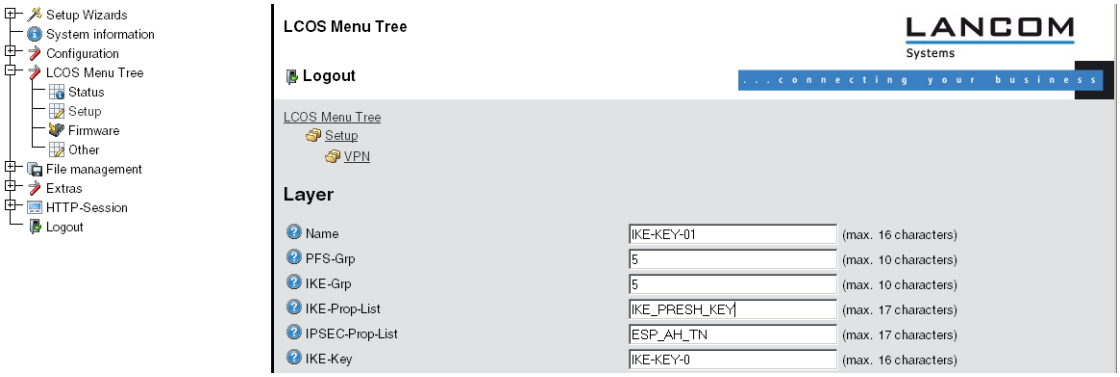


10.5.10 Configuration with WEBconfig

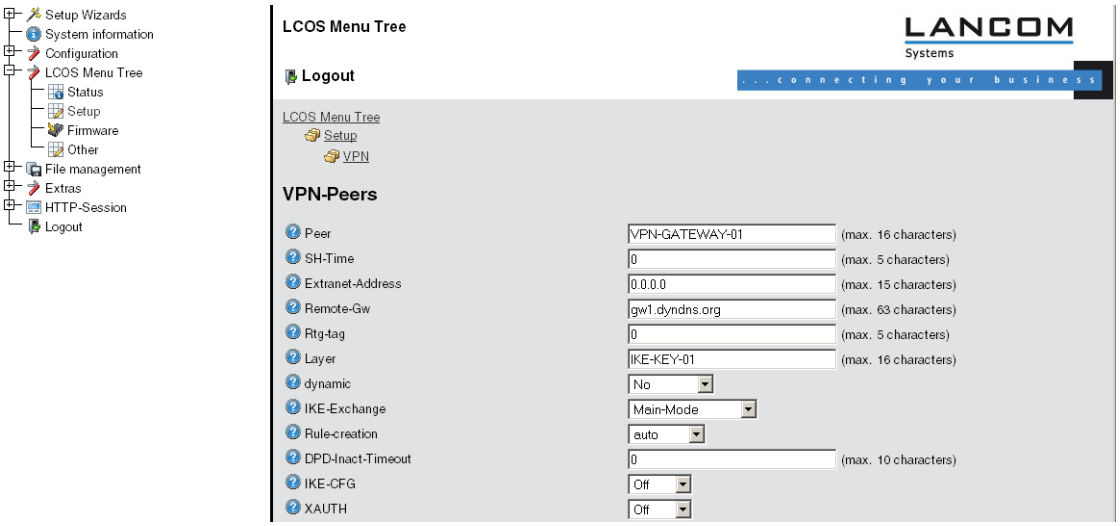
1. Under **Configuration** / **VPN** / **IKE-Param.** / **IKE key** set a new IKE key for the connection:



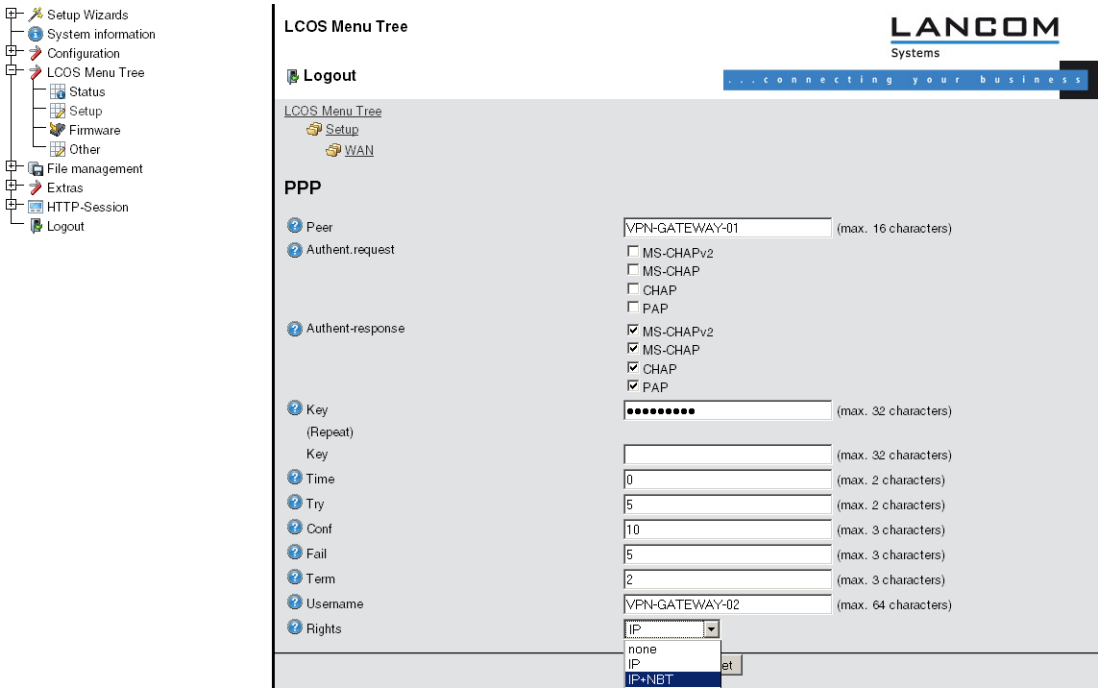
2. Under **Configuration** / **VPN** / **General** / **Connection parameters** define a new "VPN layer" for the connection parameters. Select the IKE key created earlier for this.



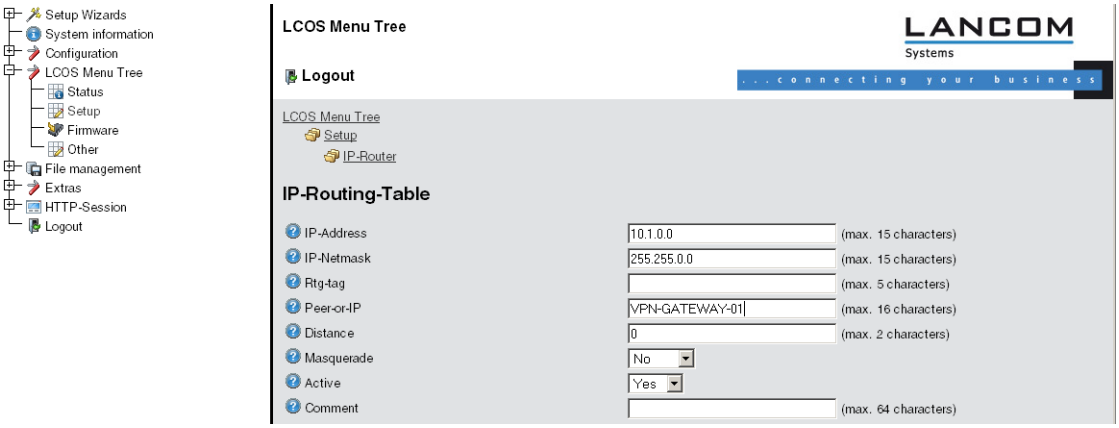
3. Under **Configuration** / **VPN** / **Connection list** generate a new entry with the name of the remote gateway set to "Name". For the "Remote gateway", enter the public address of the remote station: either the fixed IP address or the name for translation by DNS.



4. When using LANCOM Dynamic VPN: Under **Configuration** / **Setup** / **WAN module** / **PPP list** make a new entry. Select the remote VPN gateway as the remote site, enter the User Name as the name of the VPN connection that the remote VPN gateway uses to address the local device, and enter a suitable password that is identical at both locations.



5. Be sure to activate "IP routing" and, if required, "NetBIOS over IP".
6. Under **Configuration** / **Setup** / **IP router module** / **IP routing table** generate a new entry for each network portion that should be accessible in the remote and in the local LAN. In each case, define the router as the remote VPN gateway and switch the IP masquerading off.



7. For the “VPN gateway 2”, the following entries are necessary so that the remote network sections can be reached.

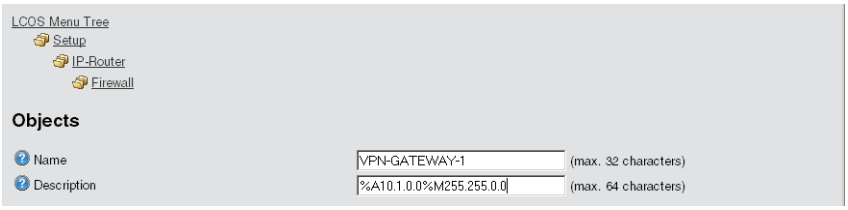
IP address	Net mask	Router	IP masquerading
10.1.0.0	255.255.0.0	VPN gateway 1	No
10.2.0.0	255.255.0.0	VPN gateway 1	No
10.3.0.0	255.255.0.0	VPN gateway 1	No

For those subnetworks connected to your own LAN, define the router as the IP address for the appropriate LAN router.

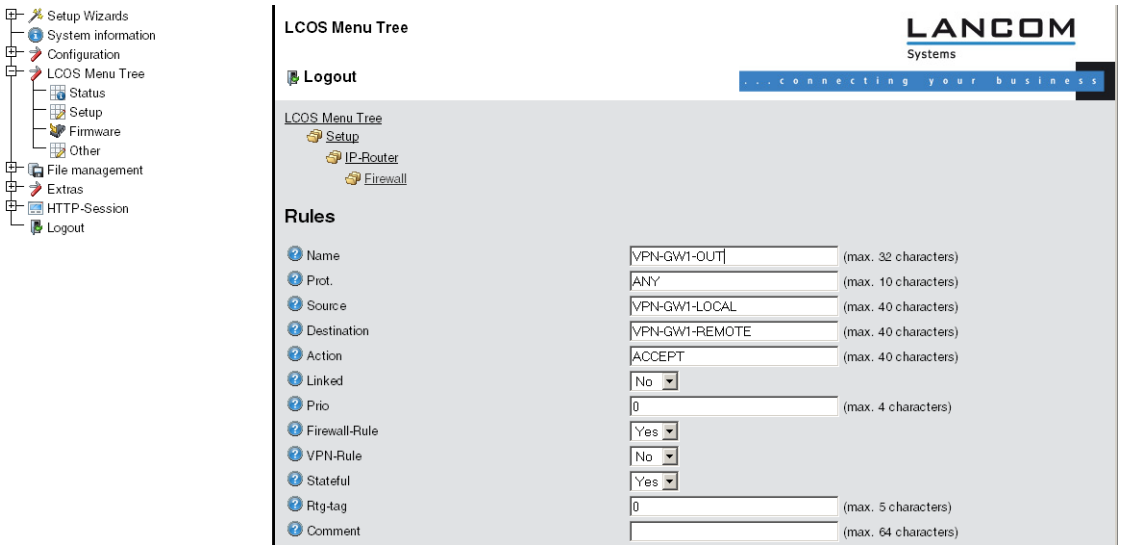
IP address	Net mask	Router	IP masquerading
10.5.0.0	255.255.0.0	10.4.00.5	No

These entries enable VPN gateway 2 to forward packets arriving from the remote network to the correct sections of the local network.

8. Under **Configuration** / **Firewall/QoS** / **Object table** make an entry for each part of the network that should be used as a source or destination for the VPN connection via "VPN GATEWAY 1" ("VPN-GW1-LOCAL" and "VPN-GW1-REMOTE"). Enter each subnet in the form "%A10.1.0.0 %M255.255.0.0".

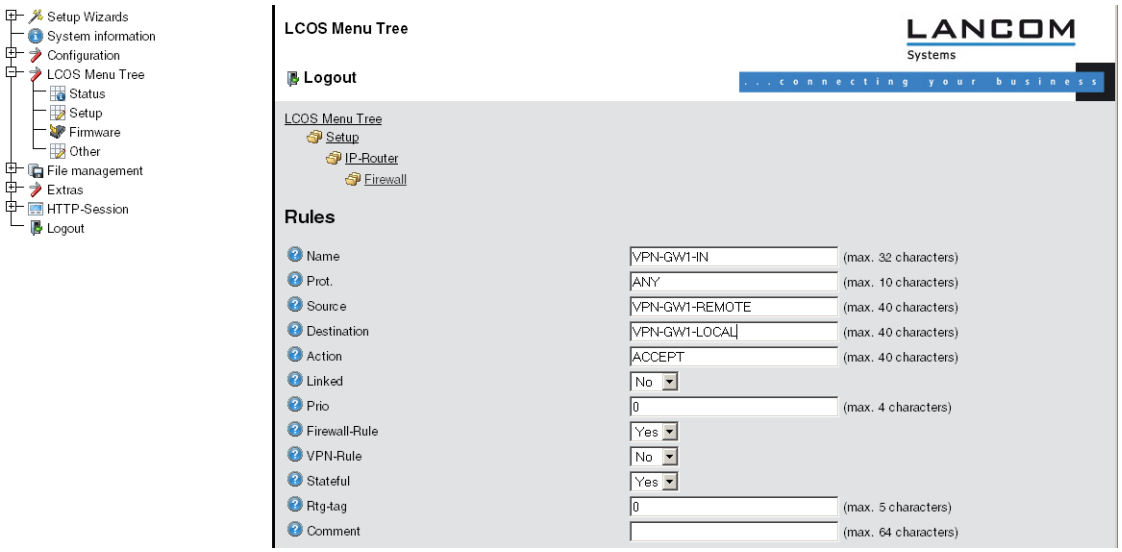


9. Under **Configuration** / **Firewall/QoS** / **Rules table** define a new firewall rule named "VPN-GW1-OUT". Set the objects to "CPN-GW1-LOCAL" and "VPN-GW1-REMOTE", the protocol to "ANY" and the action to "ACCEPT". Activate the option "VPN rule" so that the IP networks described in this rule will be used in establishing VPN network relationships.



As a rule, it is recommended that you keep the rules used for making network relationships separate from those firewall rules that affect the services used in communications, for example.

10. Now for the incoming data transmissions, generate a firewall rule named "VPN-GWY1-IN" with the same parameters as the rule just described. The only difference is that the source and the destination networks are swapped.



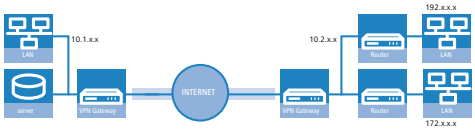
10.5.11 Establishing Security Associations collectively

Security Associations (SAs) are the basis for establishing a VPN tunnel between two networks. Parameters defined by a SA include:

- Source and destination network IP addresses
- Encyption, integrity check and authentication methods
- The key for the connection
- The key's lifetime

Security Associations are defined by automatically or manually generated VPN rules (also see in the reference manual).

The establishment of Security Associations is normally initiated by an IP packet which is to be sent from a source network to a destination network. With keep-alive connections, this is an ICMP packet which is sent to the remote site by an entry in the polling table.



In complex network scenarios it is possible for multiple network relationships to be defined between two VPN gateways. If a single IP packet is transferred, then the SAs are established for this single packet and its corresponding network relationship only. To establish the other SAs, IP packets fitting to the other network relationships are needed.

It takes time to establish SAs based on data packets, and this can lead to the loss of packets as long as the SAs are not yet installed. This is often an undesirable side effect, particularly with keep-alive connections. Instead, **all** SAs relevant to the network relationships defined in the remote site should be established **immediately**. However, since the negotiation of SAs can make heavy demands on CPU performance—particularly in complex scenarios—the behavior can be defined with the parameter "Establish SAs collectively".

- Establish SAs collectively
  - Yes: All SAs defined in the device will be established.
  - No [default]: Only the SA which corresponds explicitly to a packet waiting for transfer is to be established.
  - Only with KeepAlive: All of the defined SAs will be established for remote stations in the VPN connection list with a hold time set to '9999' (Keep Alive).

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN

In most cases and particularly where automatically generated VPN rules are in use, the setting which establishes only explicitly corresponding SAs is perfectly sufficient.

The SAs currently in effect can be seen under /Status/VPN.

10.5.12 Diagnosis of VPN connections

If the VPN connections fail to work after the configuration of the parameters, the following diagnostic methods can be applied:

- The command **show vpn spd** on the Telnet console calls the "Security Policy Definitions".
- Use the command **show vpn sadb** to access information about the negotiated "Security Associations" (SAs).
- The command **trace + vpn** [status, packet] calls up the status and error messages for the current VPN negotiations.
  - The error message "No proposal chosen" indicates a fault in the configuration at the remote site.
  - The error message "No rule matched", on the other hand, indicates a fault in the configuration of the local gateway.

10.6 Working with digital certificates

The security of communications via VPN fulfils three core requirements:

- Confidentiality: The transmitted data cannot be read by unauthorized persons (via encryption).
- Integrity: The data cannot be changed during transmission (via authentication).
- Authenticity: The receiver can be certain that received data has genuinely been sent by the supposed sender (via authentication).

A number of encryption and authentication methods exist which provide satisfactory solutions for the first two aspects, confidentiality and integrity. The use of digital certificates aims to provide assurance about the authenticity of the communications partner.

10.6.1 Basics

Encryption methods can be divided into two categories: Symmetrical and the asymmetrical encryption.

Symmetrical encryption

This is a method known for thousands of years and is based on the fact that the sender and the recipient both have access to a message by knowing a secret shared key. This key can take on a wide variety of forms: The Romans used a stick of a certain diameter for encryption and decryption.

Today's digital communications rely in the main upon a password as the key. Using this password and an encryption algorithm, the data from the sender are changed. The recipient uses the same key and the fitting encryption algorithm so that the data become legible again. Other persons who do not know the key cannot read the data. A common symmetrical method of encryption is 3DES, for example.

Example:

- Alice wants to send a confidential message to Bob. To do this, she encrypts the message with a secret key and a suitable method, e.g. 3DES. She sends the encrypted message to Bob informing him of the encryption method she used.
- Bob has the same key as Alice. Since he knows which encryption method was used, he can decrypt the message and transform it back into plain text.

Symmetrical encryption is simple and efficient but has two serious disadvantages:

- A different key is required for every secret communications relationship. If Alice and Bob are joined by Carol, three keys are necessary for secure data communications between all parties; with four participants, the number of keys required is six; with 12 participants, 66 keys are required and with 1000 participants, almost 500,000 keys are necessary! In a worldwide network with ever increasing demands for secure communications and higher numbers of participants, the serious nature of this problem is obvious.
- While this first disadvantage could be solved with technology, the second problem that is the core problem for symmetrical encryption: The secret key must be known at both ends of the communication and must not fall into the hands of unauthorized persons. Thus it is not possible for Alice simply to send the key to Bob per e-mail before the data connection has been secured sufficiently—which is the whole point of the encryption. She has to give the key to Bob in person, or at least make use of a communications method which is safe from eavesdroppers. This is a task which is almost impossible to handle in these times of worldwide dynamic communications.

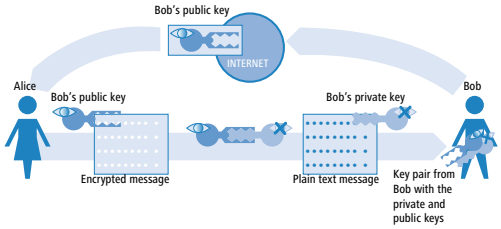
Asymmetric encryption

A totally new approach was developed in the 1970s; that of asymmetric encryption. This method no longer relies on a secret key that is known at both ends, but on a pair of keys instead:

- The first part of the key pair is used to **en**crypt the data that are to be sent to the key owner. This key, subsequently called the public key, can be made publicly available to anybody interested in communication.
- The second part of the key pair is the private key that is only used to **de**crypt the received message. This key is secret and may not fall into the hands of unauthorized persons.

The main difference to symmetrical methods: A publicly available key is used in this so-called "public key method". An example of an asymmetrical encryption method is RSA.

Let's take another look at the example with Alice and Bob:



- For secure communications, Bob first of all generates a key pair with a private key and a public key that belong together. The method used for generating this key ensures that the private key cannot be backwardly computed with knowledge of the public key. Bob can now publicize the public key without worry. He can send it to Alice per e-mail or simply publish it on a web server.
- Alice now encrypts the message for Bob with his public key. This now illegible message can only be decrypted by using Bob's private key. Even if the data are intercepted on the way from Alice to Bob, no-one but Bob can regenerate the plain text message.

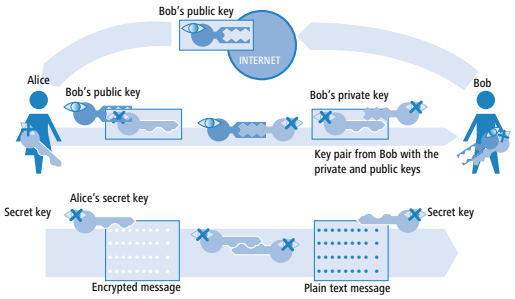
The asymmetrical encryption offers the following advantages over symmetrical variants:

- A key pair is not required for every communications relationship, but for each participant only. Even with 1000 participants, each user needs only his/her personal key pair, of which only the public key is publicly available. Instead of 500,000 secret keys, the public key method requires just 1000 key pairs.
- The risky transmission of a secret key to the communications partner is simply not necessary as knowledge is only required of the public key on the other side of the communications relationship. This is the solution to a significant problem in the dynamic encryption of data between multiple participants.

Combination of symmetrical and asymmetrical encryption

Asymmetrical encryption methods have quickly become established due to the security they offer. However, security has its price: Asymmetrical encryption methods are slow. The mathematics involved in the encryption and decryption of messages is far more complex that with symmetrical encryption methods and thus require more computing time—a critical factor when transmitting larger quantities of data.

The advantages of symmetrical and asymmetrical encryption can be used in suitable combinations of these methods. In this way, the higher security of the asymmetrical encryption is used to protect the transmission of the secret key. The actual data for transmission are then encrypted with the faster symmetrical method.



- First of all, Bob generates a key pair and publicizes the public key.
- Alice uses the public key to **en**crypt a secret symmetrical key and sends this to Bob. For each transmission, this secret key is newly defined according to a random procedure.
- Bob is the only one who can **de**crypt this secret key by using his private key.
- Alice and Bob then use this secret key to **en**crypt and **de**crypt the clearly much larger volume of the payload data.

Public key infrastructure

The combination of symmetrical and asymmetrical encryption methods enable initially unsecured connections to be used to establish secure data communications. Until now, the aspect of authenticity has been ignored. How should Alice know that the public key really does come from Bob? The use of public keys thus depends directly on the trust in the authenticity of the communications partner.

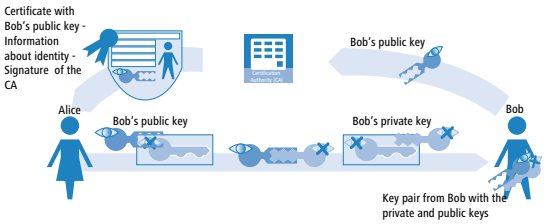
To secure this trust, a confirmation of the key pairs for use with asymmetrical encryption can be issued by publicly recognized and trustworthy authorities. In Germany, for example, the highest authority for the confirmation of digital keys is the Regulatory Authority for Telecommunications and Post (RegTP). The RegTP in turn issues accreditations to suitable service providers who are viewed as equally trustworthy.

The RegTP web site (www.regtp.de) features up-to-date lists of accredited certification service providers and notification of revoked accreditations. Accredited service providers include numerous tax advisers and legal associations.

The task of this organization is to attribute a public key to just one person or organization. This attribution is recorded and officially publicized in a certificate. Consequently these providers are known as Certification Authorities, or CAs for short. The uppermost certification authority is known as the Root CA.

Bob can now approach a CA to have his public key certified as belonging to him. He submits his public key to the CA who then confirm that the key belongs to Bob.

The CA issues a certificate which lists the public key and further information about Bob, such as his identity, among other things.



The certificate carries the signature of the CA to show that the confirmation itself is genuine. The certificate takes up just a small amount of data and is suitable for exchange with an asymmetric method. With a signature, however, the asymmetric method is used in the opposite direction:

- The CA, too, has a key pair consisting of private and public keys. Since this is a trustworthy authority, their key pair can be considered as reliable.
- The CA calculates a hash value for the certificate, encrypts this and uses it in the signature in Bob's certificate. This acts to confirm the attribution of Bob's public key to his identity.

  This procedure behaves in the opposite manner to the normal asymmetrical encryption. In this case, the encryption does not fulfil the task of protecting the data from unauthorized persons, but confirms the signature of the CA instead.
- Any data communications participant anywhere in the world with the public key from the CA is now in a position to check the signed certificate.

  Only the CA is in a position to use their private key to generate signatures that can be decrypted again by using the CA's public key. This signature guarantees that the certificate is genuinely sourced from the issuing CA.

10.6.2 Advantages of certificates

In some cases the use of certificates for securing VPN connections can be an alternative to the otherwise widespread preshared key (PSK) method:

- Increase security of VPN client connections (with IKE Main Mode)

  Main Mode cannot be used when using PSK connections between peers that use dynamic IP addresses. In these cases, the aggressive mode must be used with its lower degree of security. Using certificates allows peers with dynamic IP addresses, such as dial-in computers with LANCOM Advanced VPN Client, to use the Main Mode and thus to increase the level of security.
- Higher security of the used keys and passwords

  Preshared keys are just as susceptible as other passwords, too. The way that users treat these passwords is a major factor in the securing of connections. With a certificate-based VPN establishment, the keys in the certificates are automatically generated with the desired key length. What's more, the random keys generated by computers offer more security from attack than the preshared keys of the same key length thought up by people.
- Possibility of authenicating remote sites

  When connecting with certificates oth remote stations must authenticate themselves. Further information can be contained in the certificates, which can be used for testing remote sites. The time limit of the certificates provide an additional protection, e.g. for users, who are only supposed to have access for a limited period of time.
- Providing tokens and smartcards

  When saving certificates on external data media the integration of “Strong Security” environments, the readout of passwords from computers of networks is inhibited.

The advantages of certificates have to be considered in relation to the considerable increase in effort of introducing and maintaining a public key infrastructure (PKI).

10.6.3 Structure of certificates

Contents

A certificate contains a variety of information which is important for it to fulfil its purpose. Some information is obligatory, some is optional. A certificate can also be stored in a variety of different formats. An X.509-standard certificate contains the following information, for example:

- Version: This is the relevant version of the X.509 standard. The current (06.2005) version is 'v3'.
- Serial number: This is a unique number that identifies the certificate.
- Signature algorithm: This identifies the algorithm that the issuer used to sign the certificate. The digital signature of the issuer is also to be found here.
- Validity: Certificates are valid for a limited period of time. This entry indicates the duration of the certificate's validity.
- Issuer: This identifies the issuer, for example by name, e-mail address, nationality, etc.
- Subject: This identifies the certificate's owner, for example by name, institution, e-mail address, nationality, city, etc.
- Subject public key: Information indicating the method used to generate the public key used by the certificate's owner. The owner's public key is also to be found under this item.

Target application

When the certificates are generated, the possible uses of the certificate usually have to be selected. Some certificates are intentionally designed for transfer with web browsers or e-mails only, and others are more generally applicable to any use.

When you generate certificates, make sure that you enter its intended purpose.

Formats

The ITU standard X.509 is a wide spread format for certificates. When displayed as text, this type of certificate looks like the following:

```
Certificate:

Data:

Version: 3 (0x2)

Serial Number: 1 (0x1)

Signature algorithm: md5WithRSAEncryption

Issuer: C=XY, ST=Austria, L=Graz, O=TrustMe Ltd, OU=Certificate Authority,
CN=CA/Email=ca@trustme.dom

Validity

Not Before: Oct 29 17:39:10 2000 GMT

Not After : Oct 29 17:39:10 2001 GMT

Subject: C=DE, ST=Austria, L=Vienna, O=Home, OU=Web Lab,
CN=anywhere.com/Email=xyz@anywhere.com

Subject Public Key Info:

Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption

RSA Public Key: (1024 bit)

Modulus (1024 bit):

00:c4:40:4c:6e:14:1b:61:36:84:24:b2:61:c0:b5:
```

```
d7:e4:7a:a5:4b:94:ef:d9:5e:43:7f:c1:64:80:fd:
9f:50:41:6b:70:73:80:48:90:f3:58:bf:f0:4c:b9:
90:32:81:59:18:16:3f:19:f4:5f:11:68:36:85:f6:
1c:a9:af:fa:a9:a8:7b:44:85:79:b5:f1:20:d3:25:
7d:1c:de:68:15:0c:b6:bc:59:46:0a:d8:99:4e:07:
50:0a:5d:83:61:d4:db:c9:7d:c3:2e:eb:0a:8f:62:
8f:7e:00:e1:37:67:3f:36:d5:04:38:44:44:77:e9:
f0:b4:95:f5:f9:34:9f:f8:43
Exponent: 65537 (0x10001)
X509v3 extensions:
X509v3 Subject Alternative Name:
email:xyz@anywhere.com
Netscape Comment:
mod_ssl generated test server certificate
Netscape Cert Type:
SSL Server
Signature Algorithm: md5WithRSAEncryption
12:ed:f7:b3:5e:a0:93:3f:a0:1d:60:cb:47:19:7d:15:59:9b:
3b:2c:a8:a3:6a:03:43:d0:85:d3:86:86:2f:e3:aa:79:39:e7:
82:20:ed:f4:11:85:a3:41:5e:5c:8d:36:a2:71:b6:6a:08:f9:
cc:1e:da:c4:78:05:75:8f:9b:10:f0:15:f0:9e:67:a0:4e:a1:
4d:3f:16:4c:9b:19:56:6a:f2:af:89:54:52:4a:06:34:42:0d:
d5:40:25:6b:b0:c0:a2:03:18:cd:d1:07:20:b6:e5:c5:1e:21:
44:e7:c5:09:d2:d5:94:9d:6c:13:07:2f:3b:7c:4c:64:90:bf:
ff:8e
```

File types

There are various file types for digital certificates and private keys depending on the issuer. The following types are common:

- *.pfx and *.p12: PKCS#12 files
- *.pem, *.cer and *.crt: BASE-64-coded certificates
- *.cer, *.crt and *.der: DER coded certificates
- *.key: BASE64 or DER coded keys
- *.pvk: Microsoft-specific key format

Apart from the straightforward certificates, there is another file type that is of significance in the world of certificate-secured VPN connections: The PCK#12 files which can contain multiple components such as a certificate and a private key. To process the PKCS#12 file, a password has to be entered which was set when the certificate was exported.

BASE64-coded certificates have a header that typically features the following lines: `----- BEGIN CERTIFICATE -----`

Validity

A further option is to refer to a certificate revocation list (CRL). CRLs list certificates that have lost their validity, for example if an employee has left the company and his certificate has been withdrawn. This information allows those who are checking certificates to refer to the appropriate CRL.

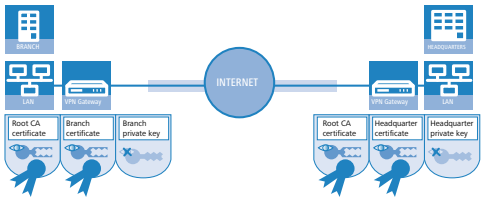
10.6.4 Security

Certain security aspects have to be observed even when dealing with certificates:

- Only ever transfer private keys via secure connections, e.g. with HTTPS.
- Passwords for keys or PKCS#12 files should be passphrases that are long enough and secure.

10.6.5 Certificates for establishing VPN connections

Along with basic information about certificates, this section now considers their concrete application in establishing VPN connections. For connection establishment with the support of certificates, certain information must be available at both ends of the connection (e.g. when connecting a branch office to the network at headquarters via LANCOM routers):



- The branch office has the following components:
  - The Root CA's certificate with the CA's public key
  - A certificate for its own device with its own public key and the confirmation of identity. The hash value of this certificate is signed with the CA's private key.
  - Its own private key
- The headquarters has the following components:
  - The Root CA's certificate with the CA's public key
  - A certificate for its own device with its own public key and the confirmation of identity. The hash value for this certificate is signed with the CA's private key.
  - Its own private key

Put simply, the following procedures are carried out during the VPN connection exchange in Main Mode (symmetrical in both directions):

1. In an initial exchange of packets the peers negotiate, for example, the methods of encryption and authentication that are to be used. At this phase, both ends are not fully certain about who they are negotiating with, although this is not yet critical.
2. At the next stage, common key material is negotiated for the continued communications, including among other things symmetrical keys and asymmetrical key pairs. At this phase, too, the two ends are not yet fully certain about who the keys are being negotiated with.
3. In the next stage, the certificate is used in a check to ensure that the peer involved in negotiating the key material really is the intended communication partner:
   - The branch office uses the current negotiation's key material to calculate a checksum (hash value) that can only be calculated by the two peers involved (branch office and headquarters) and only so long as the connection exists.
   - The branch office encrypts the hash with its own private key, generating a signature with it.
   - The branch office then transmits this signature together with its own certificate to the peer at headquarters.

- The headquarters then checks the signature of the certificate received from the branch office. This can be done with the help of the public key at the Root CA, which is identical for both peers. If the signature in the branch office's certificate (generated with the CA's private key) can be decrypted with the CA's public key, then the signature is valid and the certificate is trustworthy.
- In the next stage, the headquarters checks the signature of the encrypted hash. The branch office's public key in the corresponding certificate was found to be valid at the previous stage. The headquarters can thus check if the signed hash can be decrypted with the branch office's public key. The headquarters can calculate the same hash as the branch office using the key material for the current connection. If this check is successful then the peer "branch office" can be considered as authentic.

10.6.6 Certificates from certificate service providers

Certificates on offer from public certifiers are available in various security classes. The higher security classes require more effort on behalf of the applicants to demonstrate the authenticity of their identity to the CA. The Trustcenter AG in Hamburg, for example, uses the following classes:

- Class 0: These certificates are issued without an identity check and serve only for customer tests.
- Class 1: For this class, the existence of an e-mail address is the only check. These certificates are useful for private users wishing to sign their e-mails, for example.
- Class 2: This level, too, does not involve any personal proof of identity. The submission of an application along with, for example, a certificate of company registration is sufficient. This level is suitable for communications between companies that already know each other.
- Class 3: This level involves a personal check of the person or company. The information in the issued certificates is compared with a passport or a notarized copy of the certificate of company registration. This level is suitable for advanced applications such as e-business or online banking.

In your dealings with public certificate service providers, be sure to check in detail the security class or the proof of identity. This is the only way to be sure that the certificates really do meet with your security requirements.

10.6.7 Establishing a proprietary CA

Referring to public CAs for secure enterprise communications can only be recommended under certain conditions.

- There is considerable effort involved in the issue of new certificates and this can be slow.
- The keys in use are transferred via connections which are inadequately secured.
- Communication is based upon the trust in the CA.

An alternative for company communications is to establish a proprietary CA. Suitable packages are the Microsoft CA on a Microsoft Windows 2003 server or, as an open source version, OpenSSL. A proprietary CA empowers you to issue and manage all of the necessary certificates for secure data exchange with complete independence from any external parties.

Companies are recommended to use a proprietary CA rather than public certifiers. There are, however, several important issues to be considered when planning a CA. For example, even as early as during the installation of a Windows CA, the validity period for the Root CAs has to be defined and cannot be altered subsequently. Other aspects of planning include:

- The certificate policy or the level of security that is to be achieved with certificates
- The available name space
- Key lengths
- The duration of certificate validity
- Managing blocking lists

Precise planning is strongly recommended since corrections at a later date often imply considerable amounts of effort.

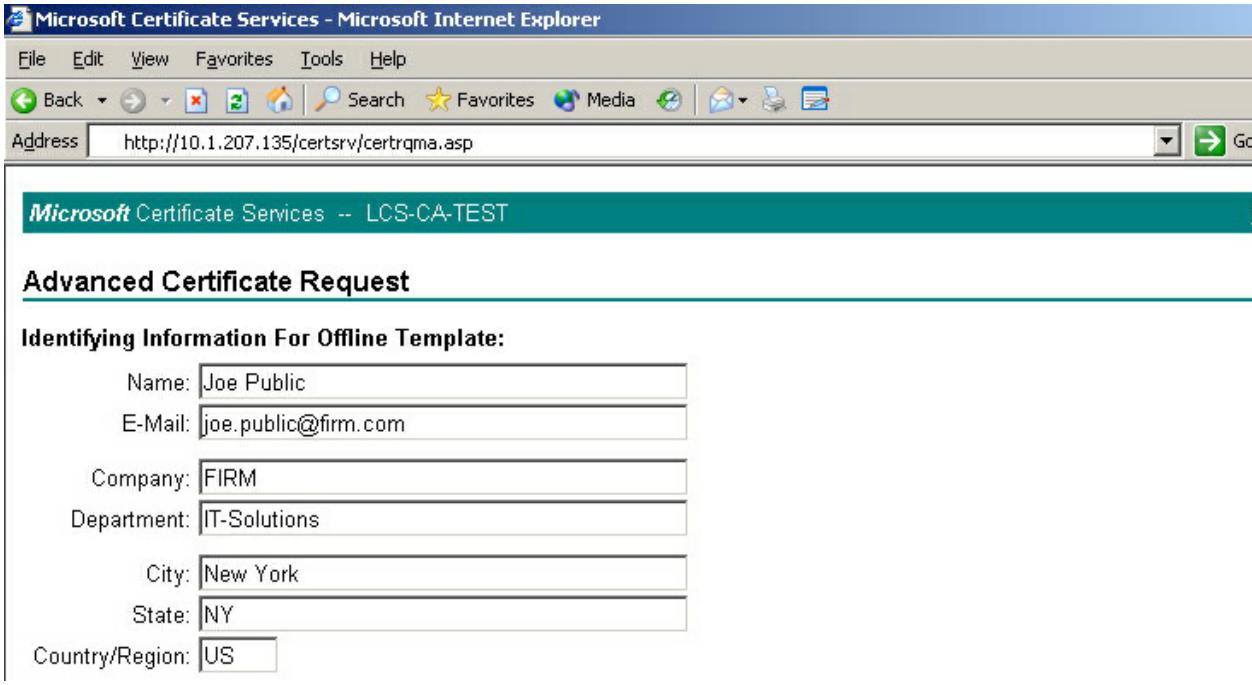
10.6.8 Requesting a certificate with Stand-alone Windows CA

For operations with a router, a combination of PKCS#12 file with root certificate, a proprietary device certificate and the device's public key offer the best services.

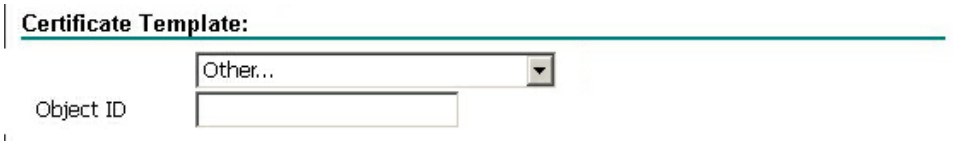
1. Using your browser, access the start page of the Microsoft Certificate Services.
2. For the certificate type, select 'Advance Certificate Request'.
3. The next step is to selection the option 'Generate and submit a certificate request '.

> If, and only if, the root certificate is already available as a file, select the option 'BASE64'.

4. In the following step the information for identification is entered.



5. In the same dialog, select the certificate template as 'Other...' and then delete the value in 'Object ID'.

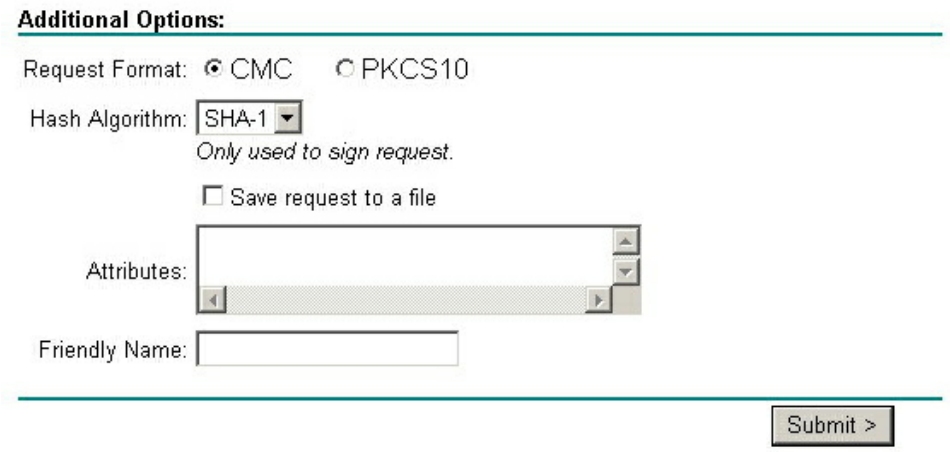


6. Mark 'Create new key set'. The public and private keys for the current user will now automatically be generated by the CA.

7. Select the key size according to certificate policy and activate the option to mark keys as exportable.

> The key is not exported at this point and so a file name does not have to be specified. An export would create a Microsoft-specific *.pvk file, a format which is unsuitable for use with a LCOS.

8. Finally, select the hash algorithm 'SHA-1' and send your certificate request with a click on **Submit**.



> You can check on the status of your certificate request at any time via the Windows CA start page. Certificate requests can only be viewed from the same computer used to submit the request.

9. The certificate can be installed on your computer once the CA administrator has checked the request and created the certificate.

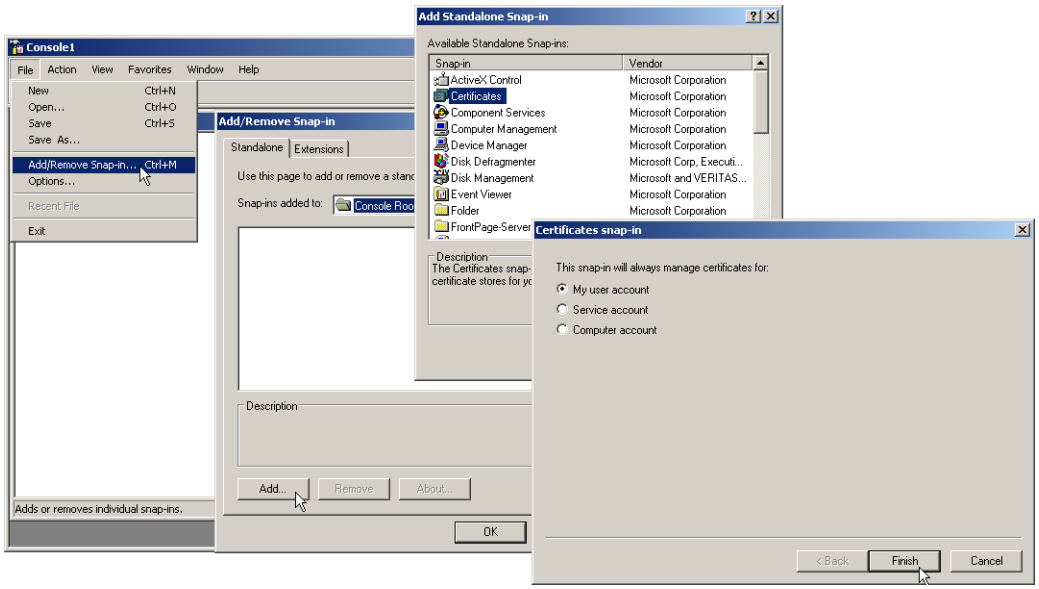
> Certificates can only be installed on the same computer that was used for the request.

10.6.9 Export the certificate to a PKCS#12 file

The installation stores the certificate in your operating system but it is not yet available as a separate file. You will need this for installation to the LANCOM, though. For access to a certificate in file form, it has to be exported first.

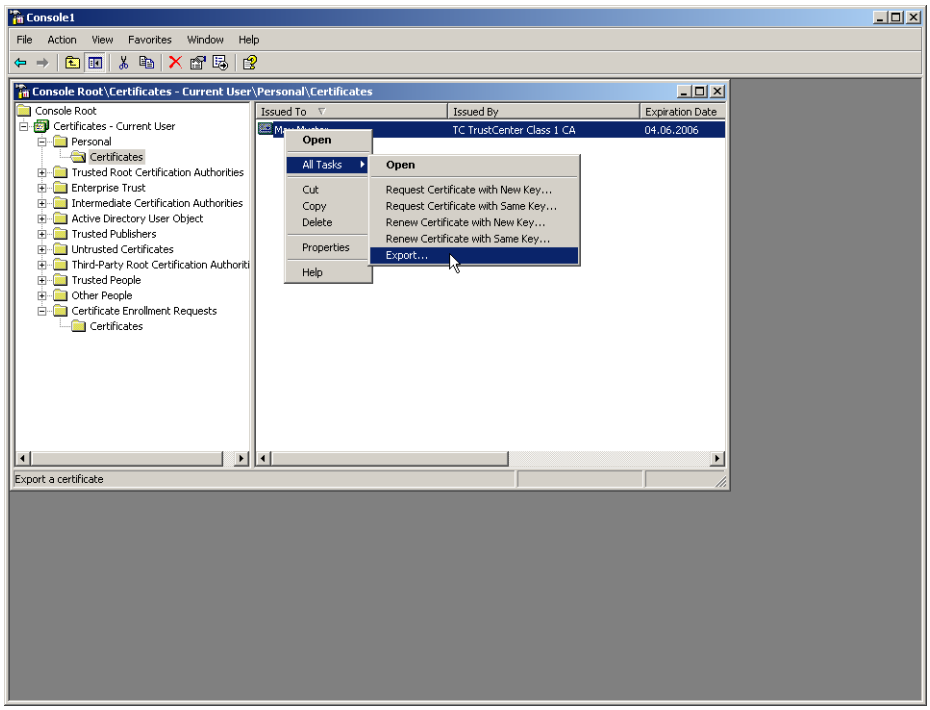
Export via the Windows console root

1. Open the Management console with the command `mmc` at the command line and select the menu item **File** / **Add/Remove Snap-In**.

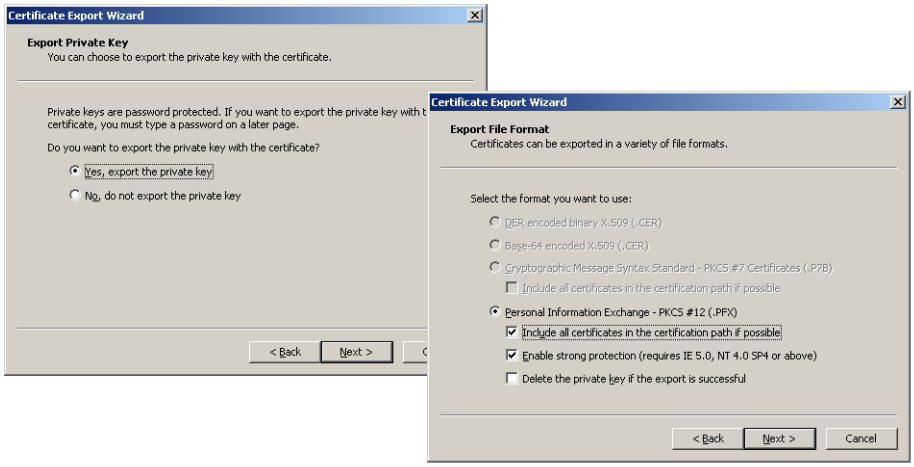


2. Click on **Add...** and select 'Certificates'. Confirm with **Add**, then mark 'My user account' and click on **Finish**.

3. To export the desired certificate to a file, go to the Management console and click in the group **Certificates - current user** / **My certificates**/ **Certificates** with the right mouse key and, from the context menu, select **All tasks** / **Export**.



4. In the Certificate Export Wizard, activate the option to export the private key. You can optionally delete the private key from the system after exporting.



The option 'Include all certificates in the certification path' must be activated so that the root certificate is also exported to the PKCS#12 file.

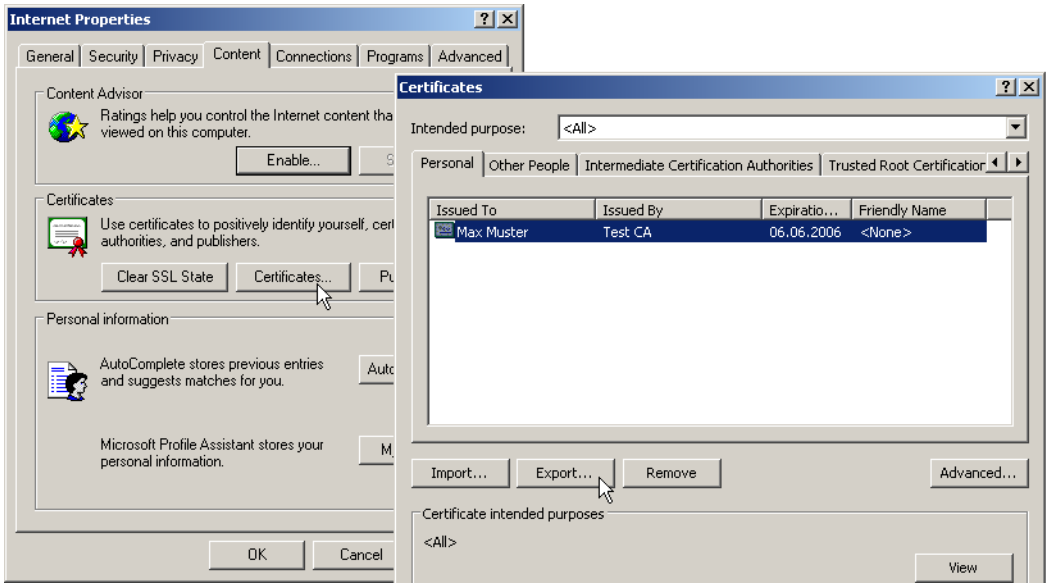
5. You will be requested to enter a password to protect the private key. Ensure that you choose a secure password of sufficient length (passphrase). You will need this password later to install the certificated in the device.

The term password is synonymous with other terms used in the different environments, e.g. "PIN".

Export via the Control Panel

As an alternative, you can open certificates on your system via the Control Panel.

1. To do this, click on **Start** / **Control Panel** / **Internet Options**, the 'Contents' tab and the button **Certificates**.
2. Choose the required certificate and click on **Export**.



The actions required in the Certificate Export Wizard that follows are identical to those described under .

10.6.10 Create certificates with OpenSSL

OpenSSL is a further possibility for creating proprietary certificates and to test certified connections. OpenSSL is an OpenSource project available for Linux and Windows at no cost; as a command-line tool, however, it does not offer the user-friendliness of other CA variants.

The configuration file openssl.cnf must be adapted to your specific needs. Further information is available in the OpenSSL documentation.

Installing OpenSSL

1. Download the current version of OpenSSL from http://www.slproweb.com/products/Win32OpenSSL.html.
2. Install the package and, in the directory `./bin/PEM/demoCA` create the following subdirectories:
   - `/certs`
   - `/newcerts`
   - `/crl.`
3. In the file openssl.cnf, change the path in the `[CA_default]` group to: `dir= ./PEM/demoCA`
4. OpenSSL is started with a double-click on `openssl.exe` in the `./bin` directory.

Issue a certificate for Root CA

1. Create a key for the CA with the command:

   ```
   genrsa -des3 -out ca.key 2048
   ```

   Remember the password that you enter after the request for the CA key as you will need it again later!

   This command creates the file 'ca.key' in the current directory.
2. Create a certificate request for the CA with the command:

```
> req -key ca.key -new -subj /CN="Test_CA" -out ca.req
```

You will be requested to enter the password for the CA key here.

This command creates the file 'ca.req' in the current directory.

3. Create a certificate from the certificate request with the command:

```
> x509 -req -in ca.req -signkey ca.key -days 365 -out ca.crt
```

Here, too, you will be requested to enter the password for the CA key.

This command signs the certificate request 'ca.req' with the key 'ca.key' and then issues the certificate 'ca.crt'.

Issue certificates for users or devices

1. Create a key for the device or user with the command:

```
> genrsa -out device.key 2048
```

This command creates the file 'device.key' in the current directory.

2. Create a certificate request for the device or user with the command:

```
> req -key device.key -new -subj /CN=DEVICE -out device.req
```

This command creates the file 'device.req' in the current directory.

Apart from this instruction further changes are necessary in the file "openssl.cnf" for the definition of a Extension.

3. Create a certificate from the certificate request with the command:

```
> x509 -extfile openssl.cnf -req -in device.req -CAkey ca.key -CA ca.crt -CAcreateserial -days 90 -out device.crt
```

This command signs the certificate request 'device.req' with the key 'ca.key' and then issues the certificate 'device.cert'. The configuration file openssl.cnf is also involved in the procedure.

4. Export the certificate for the device or user with the command:

```
> pkcs12 -export -inkey device.key -in device.crt -certfile ca.crt
  -out device.p12
```

This command combines and saves the key 'device.key', the certificate 'device.crt' and the root certificate 'ca.crt' in the file 'device.p12'. This PKCS#12 file can be uploaded directly to the required device.

10.6.11 Upload certificates to the LANCOM

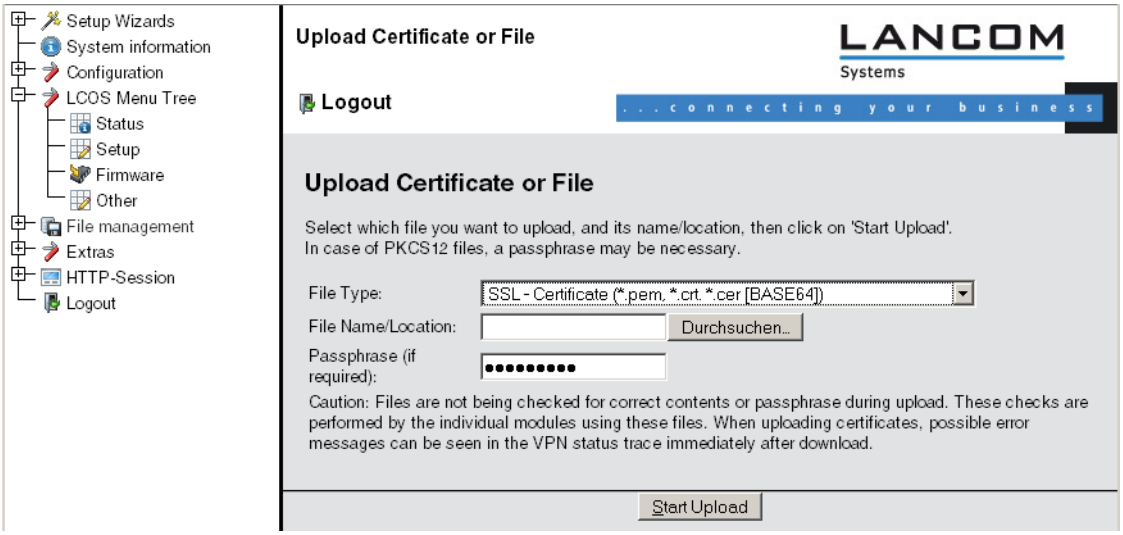
The following components must be available in a LANCOM for the establishment of VPN connections that are secured by certificate.

- The Root CA's certificate with the CA's public key
- A certificate for its own device with its own public key and the confirmation of identity. The hash value for this certificate is signed with the CA's private key.
- Its own private key

If you have followed the instructions for issuing certificates with a Windows CA and their export, then this information will now be available in the form of a combined PKCS#12 file. Alternatively you have used a different method and the individual components are available as separate files.

The certificate file can at this time only be uploaded to the devices with WEBconfig. Make sure that you use an HTTPS connection as the passphrase for the PKCS#12 file is transmitted unencrypted

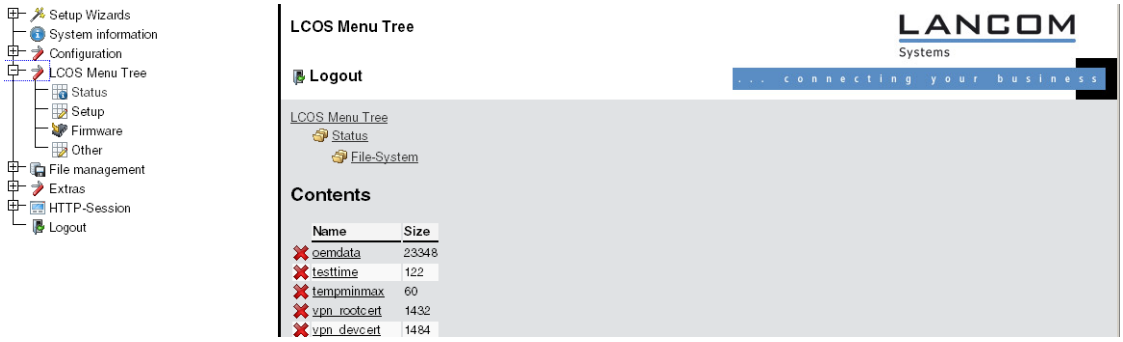
1. Use WEBconfig to log on to the required device; you will need administrator rights.
2. Select the entry for **Upload Certificate or File**.



1. Select the components that you wish to upload to the device:
   - Root certificate
   - Device certificate
   - Private key for the device
   - PKC#12 file with a combination of root certificate, device certificate and private key

The relevant password must be entered depending on the type of file to be uploaded.

The uploaded files can then be viewed in a list under **LCOS menu tree** / **Status** / **File system** / **Content** .



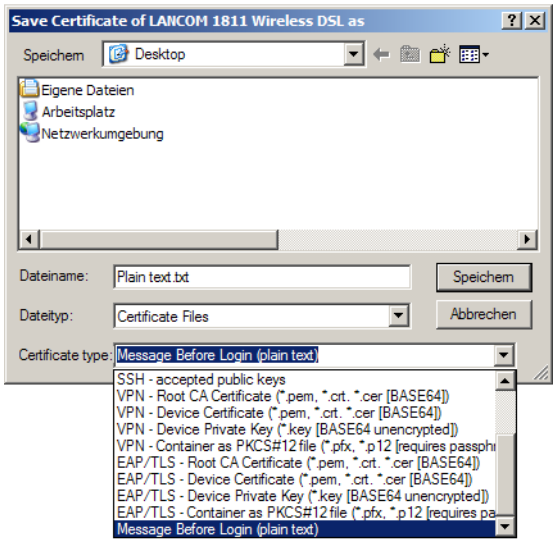
A combined PKCS#12 file is divided up into the necessary components upon upload.

10.6.12 Storing and uploading certificates

Various certificates can be used in a LANCOM for the encryption of certain services. These certificates can be uploaded to the devices by using LANconfig. Furthermore, the certificates in a device can also be read by LANconfig and stored to a file.

1. Select the device which you want to upload a certificate into, or from which you want to save a copy.

2. Click on the device with the right mouse key and from the context menu select **Configuration management** / **Save certificate as file** or **Upload certificate from file**.



3. Select the storage location and the type of certificate to be saved or uploaded and confirm your selections with **Save**/**Open**.

By selecting several devices, a certificate file can be uploaded to several devices at once. It is however not possible to simultaneously save the certificates from multiple devices. Depending on the type of certificate file, a passphrase may be necessary for uploading.

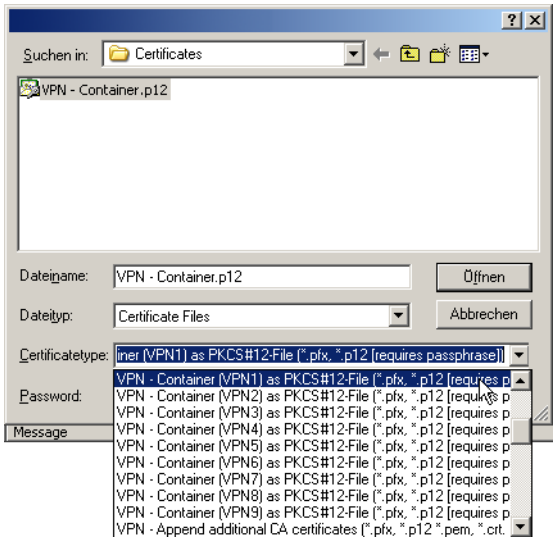
Addition(s) to LCOS 7.80

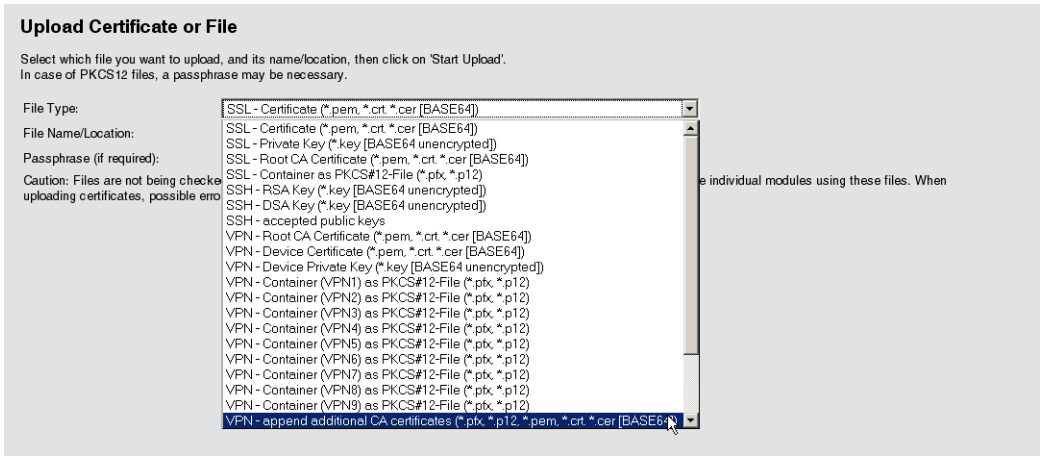
Enhanced certificate support

In order to support multiple certificate hierarchies, LCOS as of version 7.80 allows up to nine PKCS#12 files to be uploaded to the device. Also, further files with individual additional CA certificates can be uploaded, which enclose the certificates either individually or as PKCS#12 containers. All certificate hierarchies can be managed manually or with SCEP, and they can use CRLs.

LANconfig: Device / Configuration management / Upload certificate from file

WEBconfig: File management / Upload certificate or file





The certificates in the device can be viewed in the status area:

WEBconfig: Status / Status / Certificates / Device certificates

The internal file system for the device classifies the device certificates as applications "VPN-1" to "VPN-9".

To use the certificate, either the certificate subject or this abbreviation can be used as "local identity" in the IKE keys of type ASN.1-Distinguished Name.

Using this abbreviation to reference the certificates allows subjects containing special characters to be used, such as German umlauts. This is not usually possible when working with the command-line interface configuration.

The abbreviation is entered as "Application" when configuring the certificates for the SCEP client.

10.6.13 Set up VPN connections to support certificates

VPN connections, which support certificates, can only be set up, if the LANCOM has the correct time. If the device does not has the actual correct time, the validity of the certificates can not be evaluated. The certificates will be rejected and no connection will be set up.

Several areas of the configuration have to be changed to set up VPN connections to support certificates.

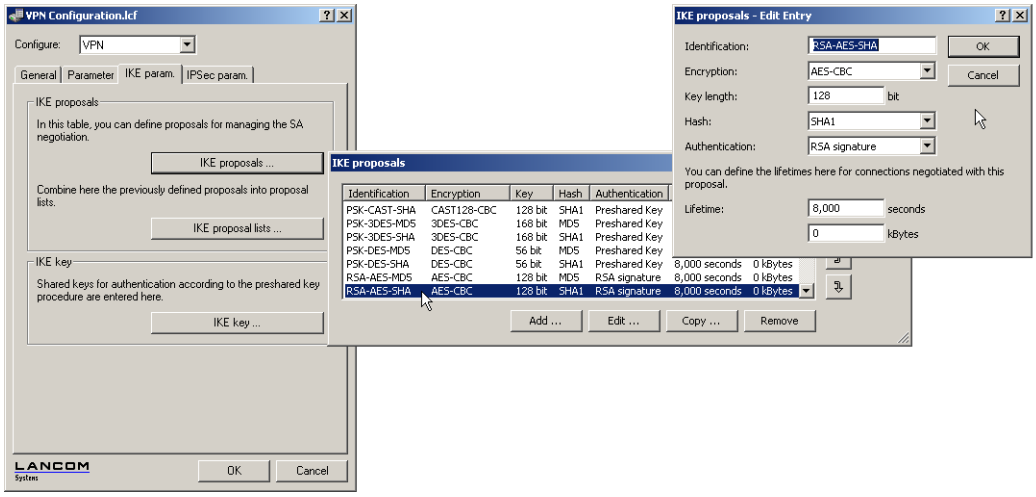
- IKE proposals
- IKE proposal lists

- IKE key
- VPN parameters
- Connection parameters

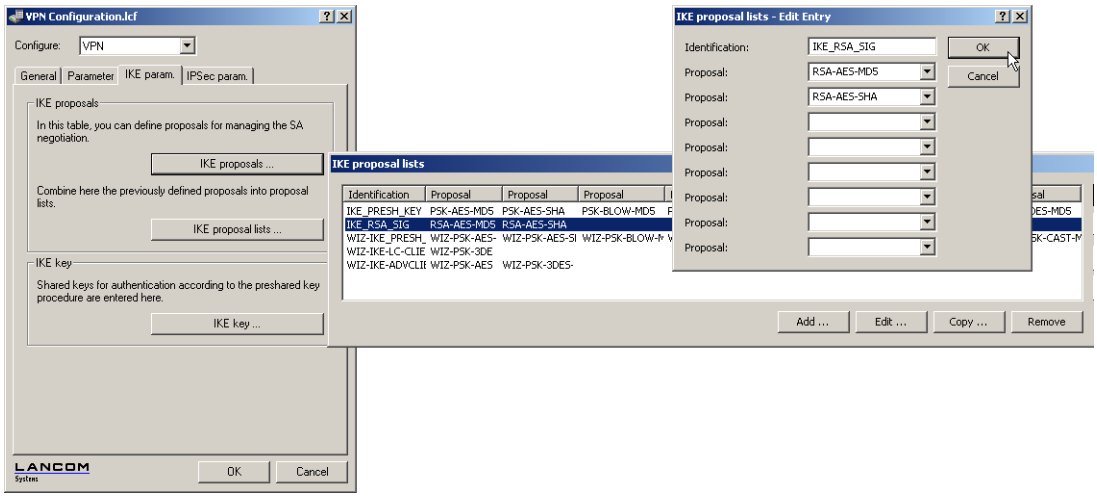
Some of the values may already be available in your device depending on its firmware version. In this case you just have to check that the values are set correctly.

If you are reconfiguring a remote device for certificate support with the method described below, and that device can only be reached via a VPN tunnel, then it is imperative that you reconfigure the remote device first before adjusting the connection in the local device. Changing the local configuration first would make the remote device unattainable!

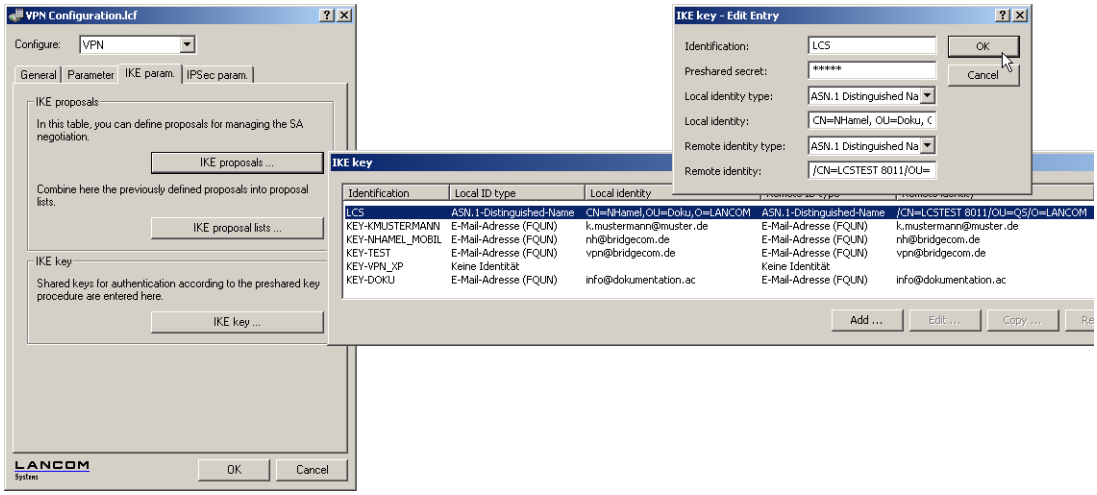
1. The proposals lists are to be supplemented with two new proposals with the exact description of 'RSA-AES-MD5' and 'RSA-AES-SHA', both of which use 'AES-CBC' for encryption and 'RSA signature' as the authentication mode, and which differ only in their hash method (MD5 and SHA1). I



2. A new list will be required in the proposals lists with the exact name 'IKE_RSA_SIG' which contains the two new proposals 'RSA-AES-MD5' and 'RSA-AES-SHA'.



3. In the list of IKE keys, all certificate connections must be set up with the corresponding identities.



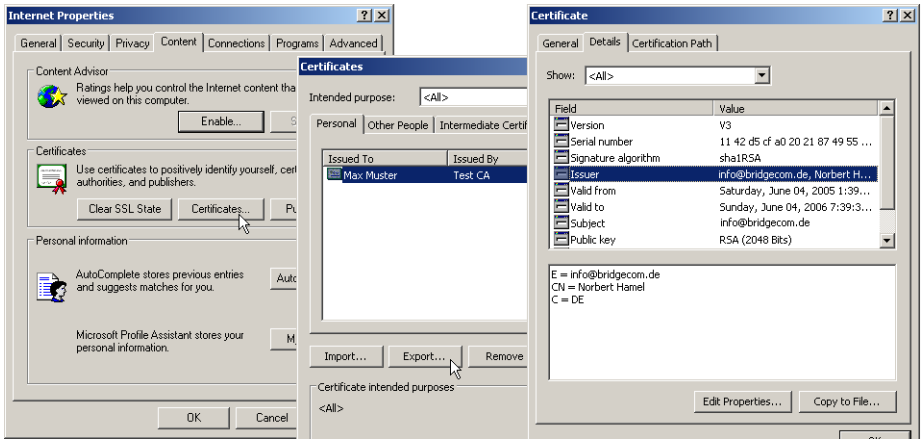
› Once it is no longer required, the preshared key can be deleted.

› The type of the identities is reset to ASN.1 Distinguished Names (local and remote).

› The identities are entered exactly as they stand in the certificates. The individual values such as 'CN', 'O' or 'OU' can be separated by commas or slashes.

All of the values entered in the certificates must be listed in the same order. If necessary, check the certificate contents by using the Control Panel. To do this, click on **Start** / **Control Panel** / **Internet Options**, the 'Contents' tab and the button **Certificates**.

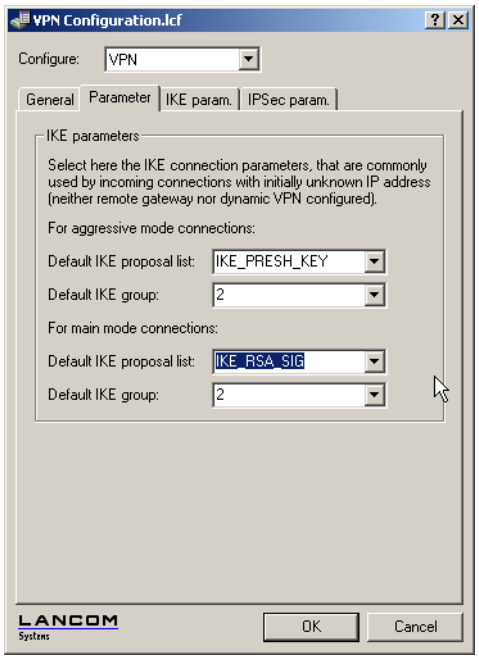
Open the certificate and use the 'Details' tab to select the corresponding value. For the applicant you will find, for example, the necessary ASN.1 Distinguished Names and their abbreviations here. The values listed from top to bottom in the certificates must be entered into the IKE key from left to right. Observe the use of upper and lower case!



Special characters in the ASN.1 Distinguished Names can be entered by typing in the hexadecimal ASCII codes after a leading backslash. For example, "\61" corresponds to a small "a".

The display of certificates under Microsoft Windows shows for some values older short forms, for instance 'S' instead of 'ST' for 'stateOrPrivinceName' or 'G' instead of 'GN' for 'givenName'. Only use the new short forms 'ST' and 'GN'.

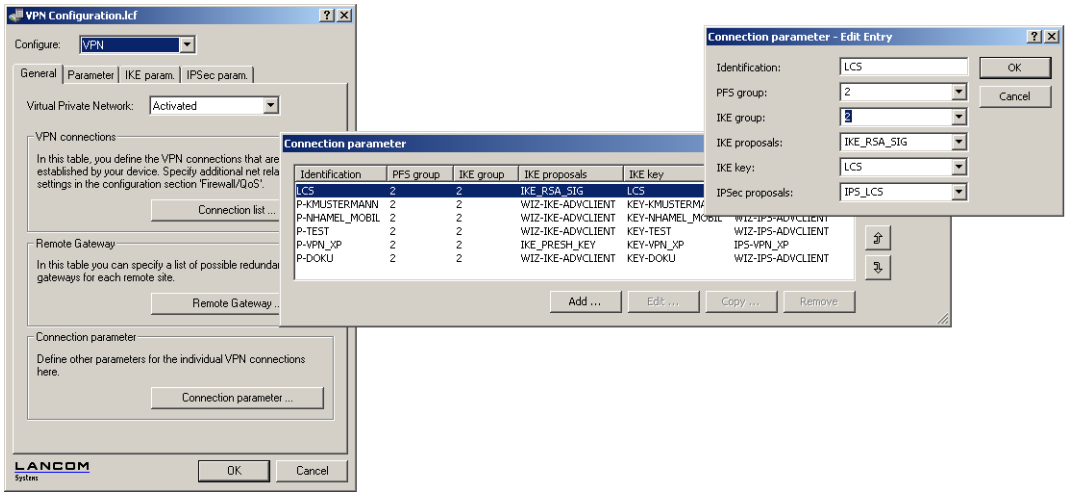
› In the IKE connection parameters, the default IKE proposal lists for incoming aggressive-mode and main-mode connections must be set to the proposal list 'IKE_RSA_SIG'. Also observe the settings in the default IKE group which are adjusted in the following step as necessary.



4. LANconfig: VPN / Parameter

   WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN

5. Finally, the VPN connection parameters must be set up to use the correct IKE proposals ('IKE_RSA_SIG'). The values for 'PFS group' and 'IKE group' must agree with the values set in the IKE connection parameters. Configuration with LANconfig



LANconfig: VPN / General / Connection parameters

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN E VPN layers

Addition(s) to LCOS 7.80

Wildcard matching of certificates

Introduction

Generally speaking, the local identity and remote identity for certificate-based VPN connections are the certificate subjects. In the VPN configuration, these are stored in the form of (often complex) ASN.1 Distinguished Names (DN). During VPN negotiation, the local identity is used to select the certificate which is to be transmitted to the remote station, whereas the local value for the remote identity is compared with the received identity of the remote station and the subject of the received certificate.

Until now, the local and the remote identities had to be entered in full into the VPN configuration. Not only is this prone to error, it is sometimes desirable to specify only a part of the certificate subject. This is practical where different certificates with similar subjects are to be accepted automatically, for example where certificates can change, or where multiple parallel certificate hierarchies operate simultaneously.

This is facilitated by flexible identity comparison. The certificate subjects have to contain the components of an ASN.1 Distinguished Name (DN) (Relative Distinguished Names – RDNs) as included in the configured identities. The RDNs can be in any order. Also, the RDN values can include the wildcards '?' and '*'. If the RDNs are to include wildcards, these must be entered in the form '\?' or '*'. Examples:

- Subject = '/CN=John Doe/O=*ACME*', DN = '/CN=John?Doe*'
- Subject = '/CN=John Doe/O=*ACME*', DN = '/O=*ACME*'

Configuration

This flexible method of identification comparison is activated or deactivated in the VPN configuration.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN

- Flexible ID comparison

  Possible values:

  - Yes, No

  Default:

  - No

Flexible identity comparison is used when checking the (received) remote identity and also for selecting the certificate based on the local identity.

10.6.14 Set up certificate-based VPN connections with the Setup Wizard

LANconfig is equipped with Setup Wizards with which you can set up certificate-based LAN coupling or RAS access via VPN.

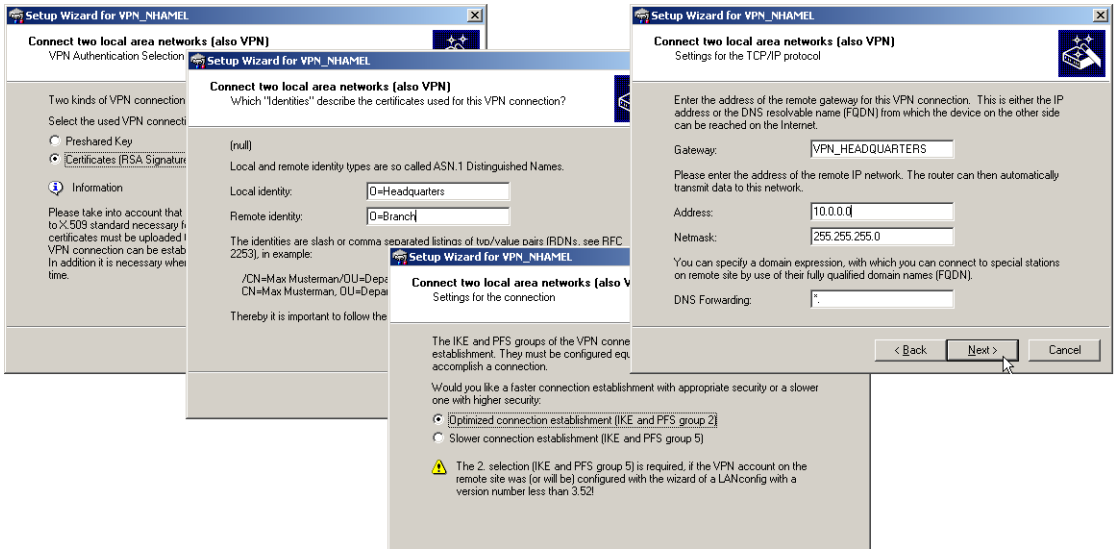
VPN connections that support certificates can only be set up if the LANCOM is programmed with the correct time and if the corresponding certificates are loaded into the device.

LAN coupling

1. Choose the Wizard that connects two local area networks over VPN. In the appropriate dialog, select VPN connection authentication with certificates (RSA signature).
2. Enter the identities contained in the certificates for the local and remote devices. Be sure to use the information from each certificate in full and in the right order: The ASN.1-Distinguished Names listed in Windows from top to bottom in the certificates must be entered into LANconfig from left to right.

Microsoft Windows displays some values in the certificates with outdated abbreviations, such as 'S' instead of 'ST' for 'stateOrProvinceName', or 'G' instead of 'GN' for 'givenName'. In these cases make sure that you use the current abbreviations 'ST' and 'GN'.

The Telnet command `show vpn cert` displays the content of the device certificate in a LANCOM, including the entered Distinguished Names (DN) under "Subject". The Distinguished Names are displayed in reverse order here until LCOS 6.00 and in the usual order as of LCOS 6.10!



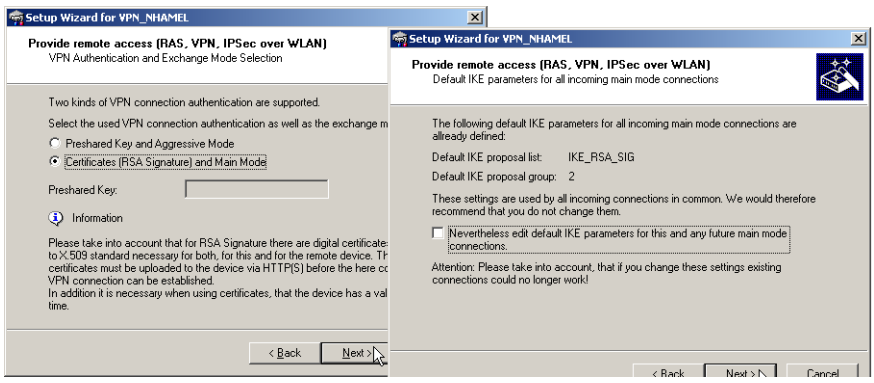
3. If available choose the optimized connection establishment with IKE and PFS group 2. Only choose group 5 for IKE and PFS if this is required by the remote device. This will be the case if, for example, the VPN remote device is configured with LANconfig 3.52 or earlier.
4. Enter the names of the VPN remote site, the IP address, the netmask for the remote network and, if applicable, the domain for the DNS forwarding. If required, activate the "Extranet" function and the "NetBIOS routing".

RAS connections

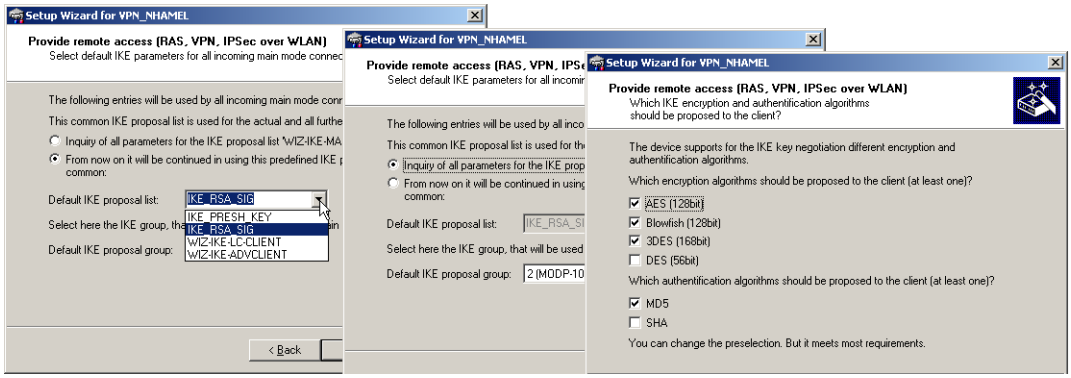
RAS connections that support certificates can be set up for the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client or for any other VPN client with user-defined parameters. The LANCOM Standard VPN Client does not support certificates.

Various parameters are requested depending on the choice of client or the options. This description shows all of the possible Wizard dialogs, some of which may not necessarily be relevant for your application.

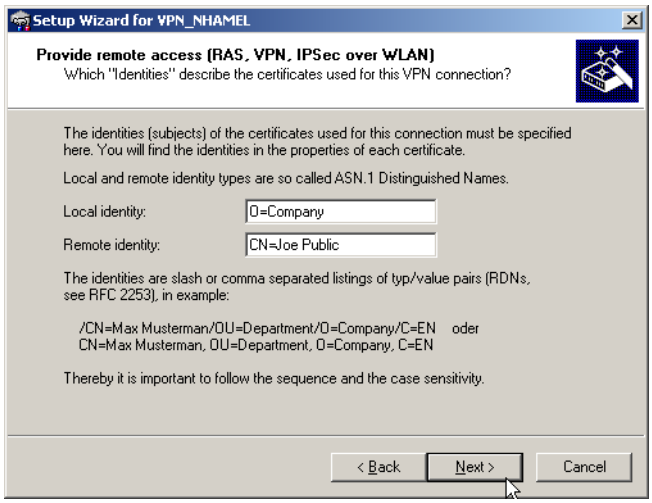
1. Choose the Wizard that provides remote access over VPN. In the appropriate dialog, select VPN connection authentication with certificates (RSA signature). The default "Exchange Mode" is the Main Mode.



2. The configuration normally presents standard IKE parameters for incoming main mode connections in the standard IKE proposal list 'IKE_RSA_SIG'. If possible use the list of prepared IKE parameters.
3. If you wish to use different parameters for incoming main mode connections, you can adapt the standard IKE parameters to fit your requirements. You can either create a new list 'WIZ-IKE-MAIN-MODE' or you can select one of the existing IKE proposal lists as the new "Standard IKE proposal list". The list defined here will be used for all incoming main mode connections in the future. For a new IKE proposal list, you can select the encryption and authentication methods that are to be used by the client during the IKE negotiation.



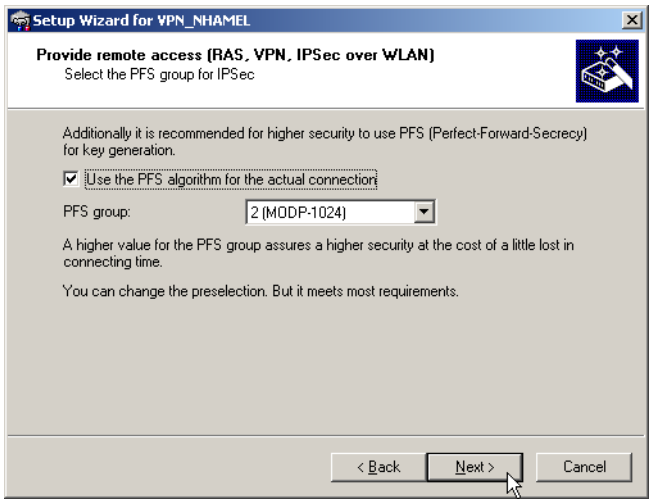
4. Enter the identities contained in the certificates for the local and remote devices. Be sure to use the information from each certificate in full and in the right order: The ASN.1-Distinguished Names listed in Windows from top to bottom in the certificates must be entered into LANconfig from left to right.



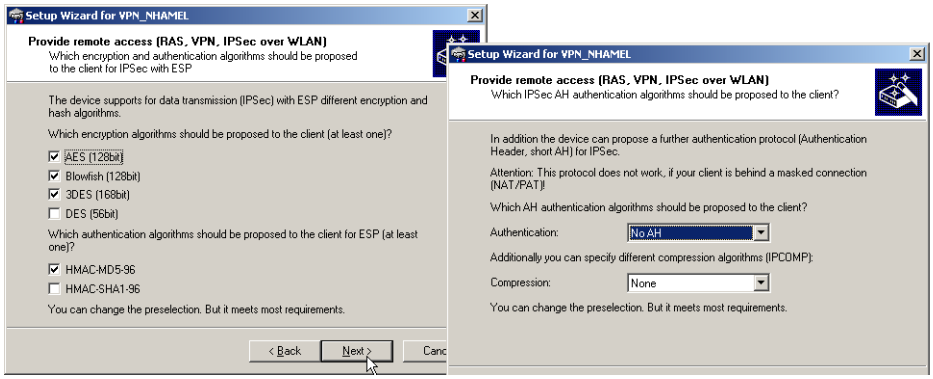
Microsoft Windows displays some values in the certificates with outdated abbreviations, such as 'S' instead of 'ST' for 'stateOrProvinceName', or 'G' instead of 'GN' for 'givenName'. In these cases make sure that you use the current abbreviations 'ST' and 'GN'.

The Telnet command `show vpn cert` displays the content of the device certificate in a device, including the entered Distinguished Names (DN) under "Subject". The Distinguished Names are displayed in reverse order here until LCOS 6.00 and in the usual order as of LCOS 6.10!

5. If available choose the optimized connection establishment with IKE and PFS group 2. Only choose group 5 as the PFS group if this is required by the client.



6. The following dialogs define the encryption and authentication methods, the authentication header and the data compression that the client will use for the transfer of the payload data with IPSec. Use the preset values as much as possible as long as the client does not demand different settings.

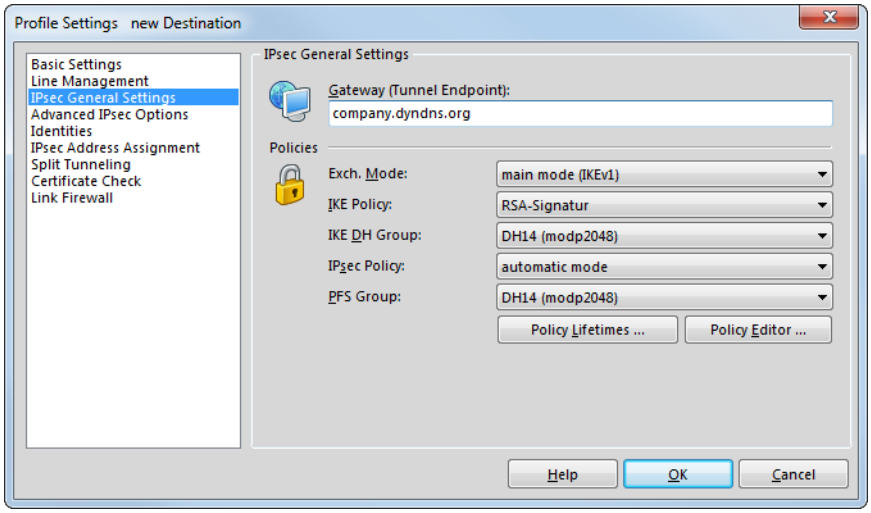


7. Enter the IP address of the client and for the address range that is to be accessible in the local network. If required, activate "NetBIOS routing".

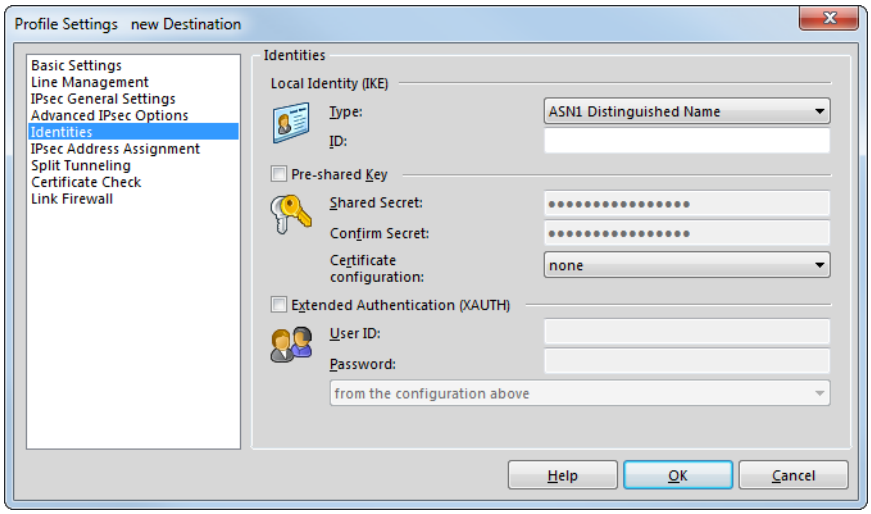
10.6.15 Setting up the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client for certificate connections

To use the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client to dial in to a router, the appropriate profile settings must be adjusted to allow for the use of certificates.

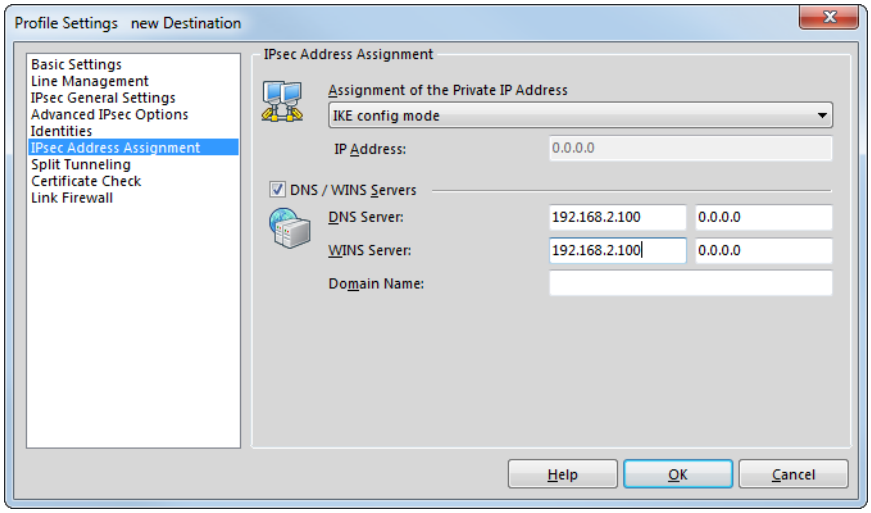
1. In the IPSec General Settings for the profile, change the IKE policy to 'RSA signature'.



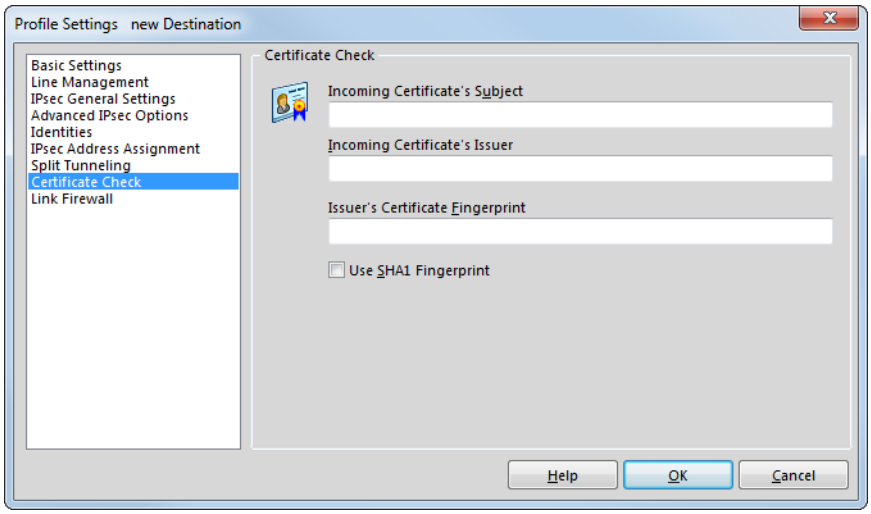
2. Switch the identity to 'ASN1 Distinguished Names'. The 'identity' can remain blank since this information is taken from the certificate.



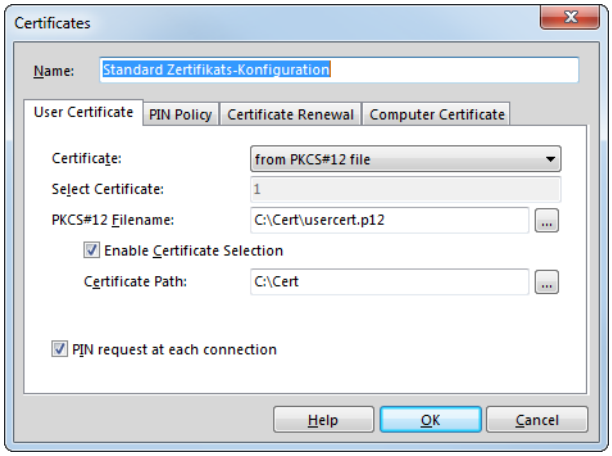
3. Use the 'IKE config mode' to assign the IP address.



4. For the certificate check, you can optionally restrict the certificates accepted by the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client. To do this, you define the user and/or the issuer of the incoming certificate and, if applicable, the associated “fingerprint”.

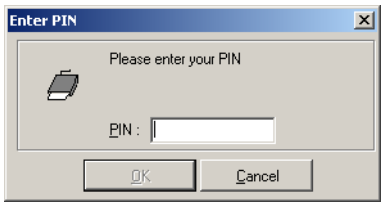


5. After storing the adapted connection profile, click on the menu item **Configuration / Certificates** to open the settings for the User Certificate.

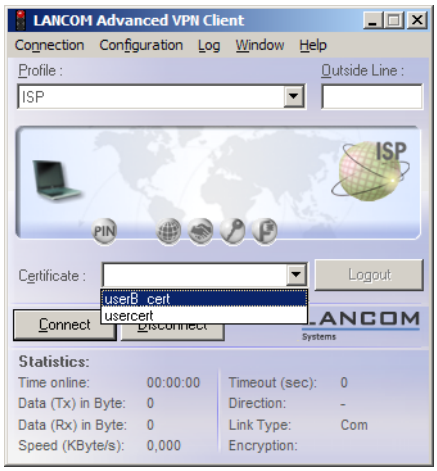


6. Select the certificate type 'from PKCS#12 file' and set the required certificate file.

   - To work with different certificates, activate the option 'Soft Certificate Selection' and enter the path for the folder where the certificate files are stored.
   - Specify whether the PIN (password) for the certificate should be requested for every connection. Alternatively, the PIN can be permanently stored in the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client under the menu item **Connection** > **Enter PIN**.



› If you have enabled certificate selection, when you initiate the connection you can select the required certificate in the main window of the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client according to the selected profile.



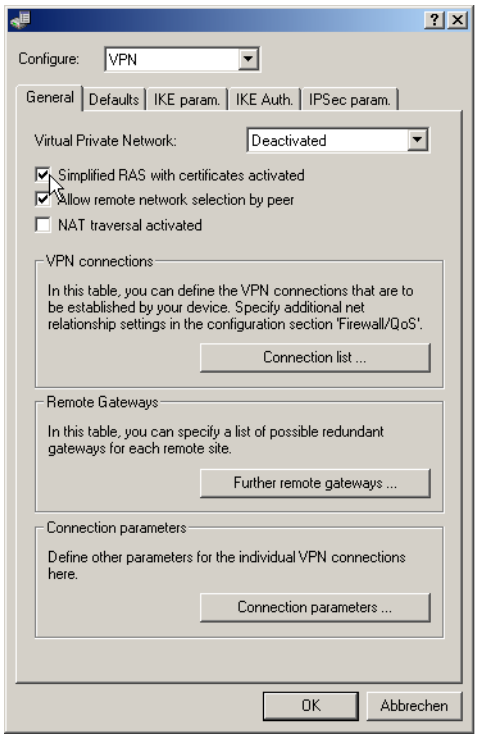
10.6.16 Simplified RAS with certificates

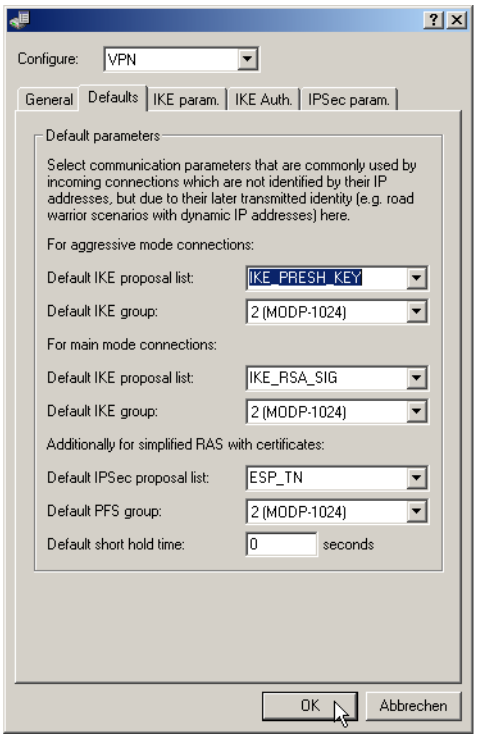
When dialling in, the identity of computers that use varying IP addresses is unknown at the initial stages of the IKE negotiation (Phase 1), so communication is facilitated by using default values for IKE proposal lists and IKE proposal groups. During negotiation, the identity is communicated and this is used to determine the parameters for phase 2 (IPSec proposal list and PFS group). For this to occur, every single user must be entered individually into the VPN router configuration.

With certificate-based RAS, the identity is communicated via the certificate. To avoid having to make individual user entries in the router configuration, common parameters for phase 2 can be defined for all users who are identified by certificate. All the user requires for simplified RAS is a valid certificate with a signature from the publisher of the root certificate in the device. Furthermore, the parameters used by the client during dial-in must agree with the default values in the VPN router.

Information about configuring the VPN client is available in the relevant documentation from the software manufacturer.

This function has to be activated to configure the simplified dial-in. The default parameters can be altered according to requirements.





LANconfig: VPN / General and VPN / General / Defaults

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN

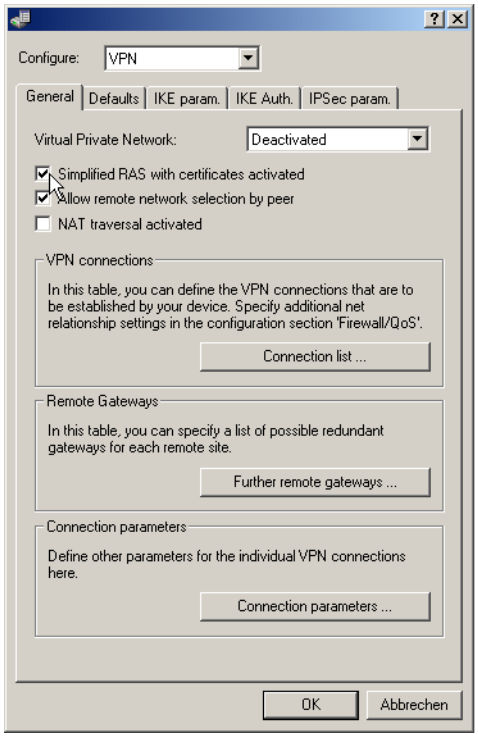
By activating the simplified RAS with certificates, **all** clients that have a valid certificate signed by the publisher of the device's root certificate can dial in to the corresponding network. No further configuration of the router is necessary! Unwanted dial-ins are then prevented exclusively by using a CRL and blocking the certificates there.

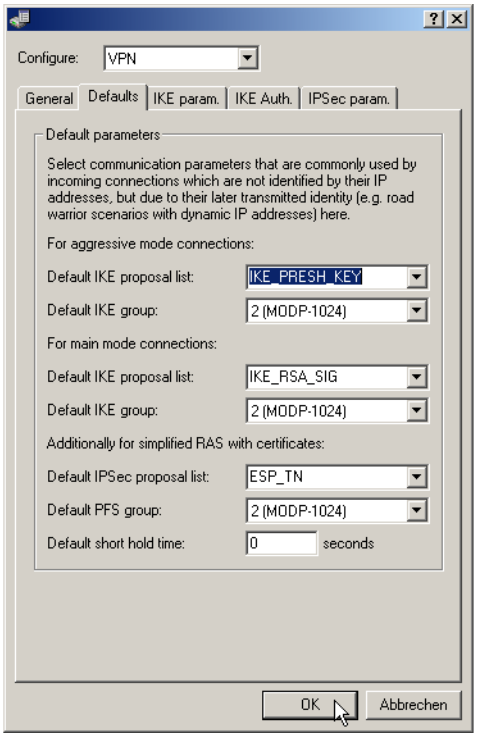
10.6.17 Simplified network connection with certificates – proadaptive VPN

In cases where large network infrastructures are coupled via VPN, it is advantageous for the costs and effort in configuring a new subnetwork to be limited to the local VPN router and that the central dial-in router configuration remains unchanged. In order to achieve this simplified network connection, the dial-in devices transmit their identity with the help of a digital certificate.

If simplified dial-in with certificates is activated for the LANCOM Router at the headquarters, then the remote routers can suggest a network to be used for the connection during the IKE negotiation in phase 2 This network is entered, for example, when setting up the VPN connection on the remote router. The LANCOM Router at the headquarters accepts the suggested network when the option 'Allow remote station to select the remote network' is activated. Moreover, the parameters used by the client during dial in must agree with the default values in the VPN router.

When configuring the dial-in remote stations, be sure to note that each remote station requests a specific network so that no network address conflicts arise.





LANconfig: VPN / General and VPN / General / Defaults

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN

By activating the simplified RAS dial in, **all** remote routers that have a valid certificate signed by the publisher of the device's root certificate can dial in to the corresponding network. No further configuration of the router is necessary! Unwanted dial-in connections are then prevented exclusively by blocking the certificates and using a CRL. The simplified connection of networks with certificates is therefore limited to LANCOM Router models that support certificate revocation lists (CRL).

10.6.18 Request certificates using CERTREQ

During IPSec negotiations authenticated with the use of RSA signatures, some VPN gateways expect the remote station to request the certificates to be exchanged via a "certificate request" (CERTREQ). Among other things, this allows the gateway to select the certificate to be used providing that the gateway trusts more than one CA.

In order to establish a connection to these VPN gateways, the LANCOM VPN Router sends a corresponding CERTREQ when the connection is initiated. This is received by the publisher of the root certificate stored in the LANCOM.

10.6.19 Certificate revocation list - CRL

Certificates for VPN connections have a validity period by a start date and an end date. During this period, the certificate can be used to establish a VPN connection. Should an employee leave the company, then it should be possible for certificates, for example that were used for mobile VPN access, to be declared as invalid. This prevents continued access to the company network and does not require any changes to the VPN router configuration.

The certificate is physically located with the ex-employee and cannot be changed, which is why a certificate revocation list is of use. Certificates which are no longer valid are entered into the CRL, which are supported by Microsoft CA and OpenSSL, for example. The CRL is available from a suitable server. The URL to be used by a router to download the CRL

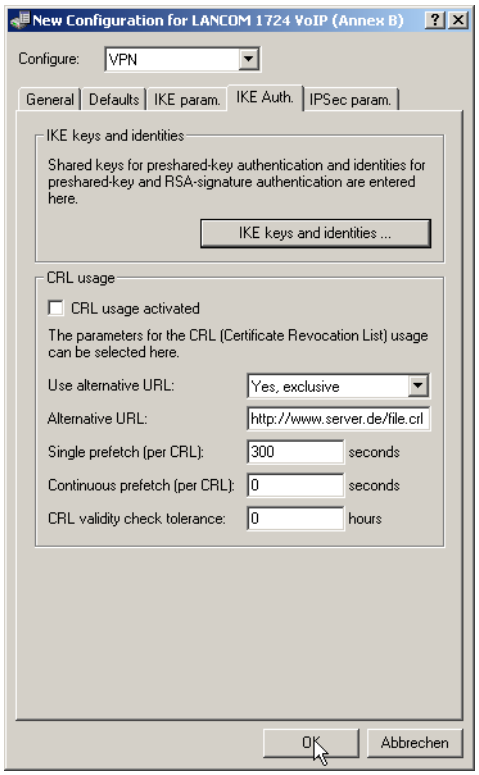
into its own memory is entered into the root certificate of the VPN router and/or into the configuration of the device itself.

The CRL is renewed by the CA on a regular basis, enabling changes in the CRL, such as withdrawn certificates, to be recognized by the VPN routers in good time. During the setup at the CA, a schedule is defined for the regular updating of the CRL. After an update to the CRL and its storage to the server (manual or automatic), the VPN router then has to update its infomation, too. To do this, the router reads out the validity period of the CRL and, briefly before expiry, attempts to load a current version. Alternatively, a regular update which depends on the validity period of the CRL can be set in the LANCOM.

When a connection is being established, the VPN router checks if the remote station's certificate is in the current CRL. Connections to remote stations without a valid certificate are rejected.

Configuring the CRL function

Configuration of the CRL function involves the definition of the path to the CRL and additional parameters such as the update interval.



LANconfig: VPN / IKE Auth.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN / Certificates-and-Keys / CRLs

- CRL function [Default: Off]
  - Enabled: During the certificate check, the CRL (if available) will be considered as well.

  If this option is activated but no valid CRL is available (e.g. if the server can't be reached), then all connections will be rejected and existing connections will be interrupted.
- Use alternative URL [Default: No
  - No: Only the URL defined in the root certificate is to be used.
  - Yes, always: The alternative URL will always be used even if a URL is entered into the root certificate.
  - Yes, alternative: The alternative URL will only be used if there is no URL entered into the root certificate.

- Alternative URL
  - This is an alternative URL which can be used to retrieve a CRL.
- Single prefetch [Default: 300 seconds]
  - The point in time prior to expiry of the CRL when the new CRL can be loaded. This value is increased by a random value to prevent server overload from multiple simultaneous queries. Once within this time frame, any coinciding regular planned updates will be stopped.

  If the first attempt to load the CRL fails, new attempts are made at regular short intervals.
- Continous prefetch [Default: 0 seconds]
  - The time period after which periodic attempts are made to retreive a new CRL. Useful for the early retreival of CRLs published at irregular intervals. The entry '0' disables regular retreival.

  If with regular updates the CRL cannot be retreived, no further attempts will be started until the next regular attempt.
- Validity tolerance
  - Even after expiry of the CRL, certificate-based connections will continue to be accepted for the period defined here. This tolerance period can prevent the unintentional rejection or interruption of connections if the CRL server should be temporarily unavailable.

  Within the time period defined here, even certificates in the CRL which have expired can still be used to maintain or establish a connection.

CRL status display in LANmonitor

Information about the validity period and the publisher of the current CRL in the LANCOM can be inspected in LANmonitor.

10.6.20 Diagnosis of VPN certificate connections

If the VPN connection establishment does not work as desired, then entering the following commands at the LANCOM console can provide useful information.

- `trace + vpn-status`

  Displays a trace of the current VPN connections.
- `show vpn long`

  Displays the contents of the VPN configuration, including the entered Distinguished Names (DN).
- `show vpn ca`

  Displays the content of the root certificate.
- `show vpn cert`

  Displays the content of the device certificate.

  The Distinguished Names are displayed in reverse order here until LCOS 6.00 and in the usual order as of LCOS 6.10!

10.6.21 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.00

Alternative URLs for CRLs

Introduction

The address from where a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) can be retrieved is usually included in the certificates (as crlDistributionPoint). LCOS provides a table for alternative URLs. After the system boot the corresponding CRLs are automatically loaded from these URLs and used in addition to the lists mentioned in the certificates.

Configuration

The table for alternative URLs can be found in the following menus:

LANconfig: Certificates / SCRL-Client / Alternative URLs

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Certificates / CRLs / Alternative-URL-Table

- Alternative-URL

  Geben Sie hier die URL an, von der eine CRL abgeholt werden kann.

  - Possible Values:

  Valid URL, max. 251 characters.

  - Default:

  Empty

10.6.22 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.50

OCSP client for certificate validation

Introduction

The Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) provides a way to verify the status of certificates, for example when establishing VPN connections. The devices use this protocol to investigate whether the issuer has revoked the certificate before its expiry, so marking it as invalid.

Certificate issuers update the status of all issued certificates on a special server, the OCSP responder. The OCSP client (e.g. a VPN router that wants to establish a connection) uses the HTTP protocol to send an OCSP request to the responder to verify the certificate. The responder answers with a signed response, which the OCSP client uses to verify its validity. The message from the OCSP responder describes one of the following conditions:

- Good: The verified certificate has not been revoked.
- Revoked: The verified certificate has been revoked and may not be used to establish VPN connections.
- Unknown: The OCSP responder cannot determine the status of the certificate. This may be because the OCSP responder does not recognize the certificate issuer because the certificate has been faked and therefore has not been entered into the database of the OCSP responder.

You can use the OCSP to complement or substitute certificate verification by certificate revocation lists (CRL). OCSP offers the following advantages when compared to CRLs:

- The issuers generate the CRLs at specific time intervals and, in the ideal case, distribute the CRLs to the devices which use the certificates for establishing VPN connections. The reliability of this check thus depends on the speed with which CRLs in the devices are updated. However, certificate verification through an OCSP responder is always "online", i.e. it is automatically updated. The operator of the OCSP responder can automatically synchronize their data with that of the CA or CAs, thus ensuring that they are up to date at all times.

- Using certificate revocation lists for certificate verification takes up a considerable amount of device memory, especially if the CRLs are large. Querying certificate status from an OCSP responder, on the other hand, is independent of the number of CAs and certificates being used, and is therefore more scalable.
- As the CRL method does not allow for unknown certificates, this method cannot detect fake certificates. The OCSP responder, depending on its configuration, responds to a request about an unknown certificate with a negative evaluation.

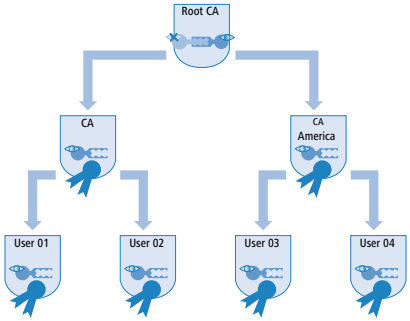
10.7 Multi-level certificates for SSL/TLS

New with LCOS 7.6:

- Multi-level certificates for SSL/TLS

10.7.1 Introduction

Larger or geographically dispersed organizations often make use of multi-level certificate hierarchies that rely on one or more intermediate CAs to issue certificates. The interim CAs themselves are certified by the Root CA.



To authenticate final certificates, it must be possible to check the entire certificate hierarchy.

10.7.2 SSL/TLS with multi-level certificates

For applications based on SSL/TLS (e. g. EAP/802.1x, HTTPS or RADSEC), the SSL (server) certificate together with the private key and intermediate level CA certificate(s) are loaded into the device as a PKCS#12 container.

The remote devices establishing a connection only have to send their own device certificates to the LANCOM. The certificate chain is checked for validity in the LANCOM.

10.7.3 VPN with multi-level certificates

For the certificate-based establishment of VPN connections, the following are stored to the file system in the LANCOM: A private key, a device certificate, and the CA certificate. With single-layer certificate solutions this can be handled with the individual files or with a PKCS#12 file. After uploading and entering the password, a container is separated into the three components indicated above.

In the case of a multi-level certificate hierarchy, however, a PKCS#12 container has to be used that includes the CA certificates from all levels in the certificate chain. After uploading and entering the password, the private key, the device certificate and the certificate from the next CA "above" the LANCOM are unpacked—the other certificates remain in the PKCS#12 container. The unpacked certificates and the certificates from the container are imported when the VPN configuration is updated. A remote station establishing a VPN connection transfers its own device certificate only and not the entire chain. The LANCOM then checks this certificate against the hierarchy available to it.

The certificate structures in the two stations must match to one another, i.e. the hierarchy in the VPN device making the request should not demand certificates that are not included in the other VPN device's hierarchy.

10.8 Certificate enrollment via SCEP

An increasing number of certificate-based VPN connections are being used to provide secure communications via public networks. The high levels of security provided by certificates comes at the price of significantly higher levels of effort in the administration and distribution of certificates. Most of this effort arises at branch offices or home offices within a geographically dispersed network structure.

A LANCOM VPN Router router requires the following components to establish a certificate-based VPN connection from a remote site to network at headquarters:

- The Root CA's certificate with the CA's public key. The headquarters also requires a certificate issued by the same CA.
- The device's own certificate with its own public key. This certificate is signed with the CA's private key and serves identity confirmation.
- Own private key.

The current version of LCOS supports only a public key infrastructure (PKI) with a root CA.

In the case of a conventionally structured VPN with certificates, the keys and certificates have to be loaded into each device manually and exchanged before they expire. The Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) enables a secure and automatic distribution of certificates via a suitable server, so reducing the effort of roll-out and maintaining certificate-based network structures. There is no need for the key pair for the device to be generated by an external application and subsequently transferred to the device. Instead, the key pair is generated directly by the LANCOM VPN Router itself; the private portion of the key never has to leave the device, which results in a significant gain in security. A LANCOM VPN Router can automatically retrieve the CA root certificate and its own certificate from a central location.

10.8.1 SCEP server and SCEP client

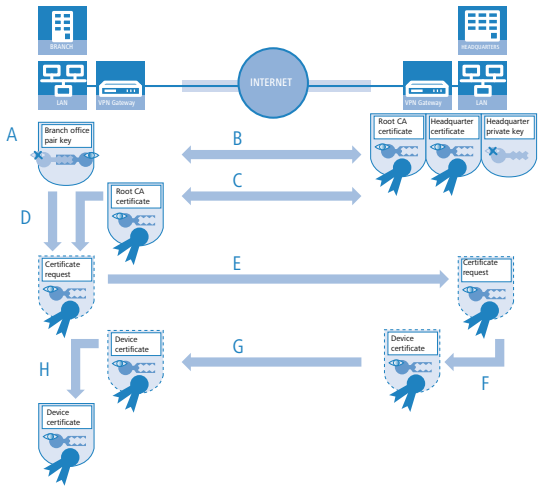
Provisioning and administration of the certificates is handled by an SCEP server that fulfills the usual function of a Certificate Authority (CA) as well as the SCEP functions. This server can, for example, be implemented as a Windows 2003 Server CA by using a special plug-in (mscep.dll). There are also a number of other CA solutions which work with SCEP, such as the OpenSource solution OpenCA (www.openca.org).

The SCEP extension such as with mscep.dll creates an additional instance on the server and processes requests from SCEP clients for forwarding to the actual CA. This instance is referred to as the Registration Authority (RA).

The VPN devices (i.e. the LANCOM VPN Router) are SCEP clients that attempt to automatically retrieve the necessary certificates from the central server. Also generally required by the SCEP procedure are the RA (Registration Authority) certificates as signed by the CA. For VPN operations the LANCOM VPN Routers mainly require valid system certificates (device certificates). Any other certificates which may be in use only apply to the SCEP procedure.

10.8.2 Distributing certificates

In brief, the procedure for distributing certificates via SCEP is as follows:



1. Generate key pair in the LANCOM VPN Router.

   A key pair is generated in the LANCOM VPN Router. The public part of this key pair is later sent together with the request to the SCEP server. The private key remains in the SCEP client (LANCOM VPN Router). The fact that the private key never has to leave the device is a major security gain over manual certificate distribution, for example with PKCS#12 containers.

2. Retrieve CA and RA certificates.

   For communication with the RA/CA, the appropriate RA and CA certificates must be available in the LANCOM VPN Router. To ensure that CA certificates retrieved via SCEP do genuinely originate from the CA, an automated check can be carried out with the use of a fingerprint which is defined in advance. SCEP itself has no mechanism for clients to conduct automated authentication of CA certificates. If the administrator of the LANCOM VPN Router does not have direct access to the CA then the fingerprint can be checked manually, for example with a telephone call to the CA admin.

3. Generate and encrypt the request for a device certificate.

   To place a request for a system or device certificate, the SCEP client collects all of the configured information such as the identity of the requester device and, if applicable, the "challenge phrase" or password for automatic request processing by the SCEP server. This request is signed with the private key.

4. Send the request to the SCEP.

   The SCEP client then sends the request along with its public key to the SCEP server.

5. Check the certificate request on the SCEP server and issue the device certificate.

   The SCEP server can decrypt the request and subsequently issues a system or device certificate to the requester. SCEP has two different methods for request processing:

   - Automatic processing requires the requester's authenticity to be assured by means of the challenge phrase. The challenge phrase can, for example, be generated automatically by a Windows CA server using mscep.dll. The phrase is valid for one hour. If the challenge phrase submitted with the certificate request agrees with the valid value, the system certificate is issued automatically.
   - For manual processing, the SCEP server puts the certificate request "on hold" until the acceptance or rejection has been received from the CA administrator. While waiting, the SCEP client regularly checks with the SCEP server to see if the certificate has been issued yet.

6. Retrieve device certificate from the SCEP server

   Once the certificate has been issued, the client's regular polling informs it that the certificate is ready for retrieval.

7. Check the device certificate and present it for VPN operation

10.8.3 Configuring SCEP

To configure SCEP, global parameters are defined for SCEP operations and for the CAs where the device certificates are to be retrieved.

In addition to the configuration of the SCEP parameters, it may be necessary to adapt the VPN configurations.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN / Certificates-and-Keys / SCEP

Global SCEP parameters

- Active

  Switches SCEP on or off.

  - Values: Yes, No
  - Default: No

- Retry-After-Error-Interval

  Interval in seconds between retries after errors of any type.

  - Default: 22

- Check-Pending-Requests-Interval

  Interval in seconds for checks on outstanding certificate requests.

  - Default: 101

- Device-Certificate-Update-Before

  Preparation time in days for the timely request for new system certificates (device certificates).

  - Default: 2

- CA-Certificate-Update-Before

  Preparation time in days for the timely retrieval of new RA/CA certificates.

  - Default: 1

Actions

- Reinit

  Starts the manual reinitialization of the SCEP parameters. As with the standard SCEP initialization, the necessary RA and CA certificates are retrieved from the CA and stored within the LANCOM Router's file system so that they are **not yet** ready for use in VPN operations.

  - If the available system certificate fits to the retrieved CA certificate, then the system certificate, CA certificate and the device's private key can be used for VPN operations.
  - If the existing system certificates **do not** fit to the retrieved CA certificate, then the next step is for the SCEP server to submit a new certificate request. Only once a new system certificate that fits to the retrieved CA certificate has been issued and retrieved can the system certificate, CA certificate and the device's private key can be used for VPN operations.

- Update

  Manually triggers a request for a new system certificate, irrespective of the remaining period of validity. A new key pair is generated at the same time.

- Clear-SCEP-Filesystem

Starts a clean-up of the SCEP file system.

- Deleted are: RA certificates, pending certificate requests, new and inactive CA certificates, new and inactive private keys.
- Retained are: System certificates currently in use for VPN operations, associated private keys, and the CA certificates currently in use for VPN operations.

Configuring the CAs

- Name

  Configuration name of the CA.

- URL

  The CA's URL.

- DN

  Distinguished name of the device. With this parameter the CAs are assigned to system certificates (and vice versa) on the one hand. On the other hand this parameter is also important for evaluating whether received or available certificates match with the configuration.

- Enc-Alg

  This algorithm encrypts the payload of the certificate request.

  - Values: DES, 3-DES, Blowfish.
  - Default: DES.

- Identifier

  CA identifier (as required by some web server to identify the CA).

- RA-Autoapprove

  Some CAs provide the option of using an earlier certificate issued by this CA as proof of authenticity for future requests. This option defines whether an existing system certificate should be used to sign new requests.

  - Values: Yes, No.
  - Default: No.

- CA-Signature-Algorithm

  The certificate request is signed with this algorithm.

  - Values: MD5, SHA1.
  - Default: MD5.

- CA-Fingerprint-Algorithm

  Algorithm for signing the fingerprint. This determines whether the CA certificate is to be checked by means of fingerprint, and which algorithm is used for this. The CA fingerprint has to agree with the checksum which results when this algorithm is applied.

  - Values: Off, MD5, SHA1.
  - Default: Off.

- CA-Fingerprint

  The authenticity of a received CA certificate can be checked by means of the the checksum (fingerprint) entered here (corresponding to the set CA fingerprint algorithm).

Configuring the system certificates

- Name

The certificate's configuration name.

- CADN

  Distinguished name of the CA. With this parameter the CAs are assigned to system certificates (and vice versa) on the one hand. On the other hand this parameter is also important for evaluating whether received or available certificates match with the configuration.

- Subject

  Distinguished name of the subject of the requester.

- ChallengePwd

  Password (for the automatic issue of device certificates on the SCEP server).

- SubjectAltName

  Further information about the requester, e.g. domain or IP address.

- KeyUsage

  Any comma-separated combination of:

  - digitalSignature
  - nonRepudiation
  - keyEncipherment
  - dataEncipherment
  - keyAgreement
  - keyCertSign
  - cRLSign
  - encipherOnly
  - decipherOnly
  - critical (possible but not recommended)

- Extended Key Usage

  Any comma-separated combination of:

  - critical
  - serverAuth
  - clientAuth
  - codeSigning
  - emailProtection
  - timeStamping
  - msCodeInd
  - msCodeCom
  - msCTLSign
  - msSGC
  - msEFS
  - nsSGC
  - 1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.18 für WLAN-Controller
  - 1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.19 für Access Points im Managed-Modus

- Device-Certificate-Keylength

  The length of the key to be generated for the device itself.

- **Application**

  Shows the application of the registered certificates. It will be asked for the registered certificates only for the corresponding application.

10.9 NAT Traversal (NAT-T)

The insufficient number of publicly valid IP addresses has lead to the development of procedures such as IP masquerading or NAT (Network Address Translation), where a whole local network is masked by a single, publicly valid IP address. In this way, all clients in a LAN use the same IP address to exchange data with public networks such as the Internet. The assignment of the incoming and outgoing data packets to the different participants in the network is ensured by connecting the internal IP addresses to corresponding port numbers.

This process has proven its worth in the last few years and has since become the standard in almost all Internet routers. However, new difficulties arise when the hidden data packets are processed using VPN. As data connections over VPN are highly secured, mechanisms such as authentication and encryption are of great importance here.

Converting internal IP addresses to the gateway's central, publicly valid IP address and converting source and target ports can lead to problems in many applications, for example where the UDP port 500 that is usually used during the IKE negotiation has been changed and the IKE can no longer be successfully completed as a result. The address change using NAT is therefore assessed by a VPN gateway as a security-critical data packet change, the VPN negotiation fails and no connection is made. In fact these problems occur, for example, when you dial in using some UMTS mobile telephone networks where the network operator's servers do not support the address conversion in combination with IPSec-based VPNs.

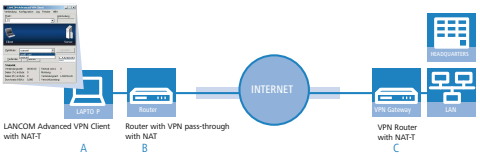
So you can successfully create a VPN connection even in such cases, NAT-T (NAT Traversal) provides a process that can overcome the problems described when handling data packets with changed addresses.

NAT-T can only be used with VPN connections that use ESP (Encapsulating Security Payload) for authentication. Unlike AH (Authentication Header), ESP does not consider the IP header of the data packets when determining the hash value for authentication. The hash value calculated by the receiver is therefore also equivalent to the hash value entered in the packets.

If the VPN uses AH for authentication, then in principle no connection can be established over sections with Network Access Translation, as the AH hash values similarly change when the IP addresses change, and the recipient would classify the data packets as untrustworthy.

The NAT Traversal process eliminates the problems that occur when establishing a VPN connection at the end points of the VPN tunnel. The following scenarios can be distinguished from one another:

- A member of the field staff uses a LANCOM Advanced VPN Client to dial into the company VPN router **without** "VPN pass-through" support (i.e. IPSec masking) but **with** Network Address Translation.

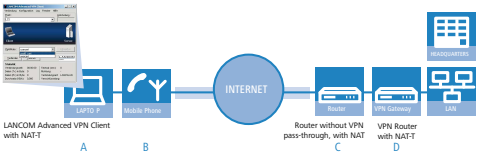


- Both tunnel end points LANCOM Advanced VPN Client **A** and VPN router **C** support NAT-T and can therefore also establish a VPN connection through the intermediary router.

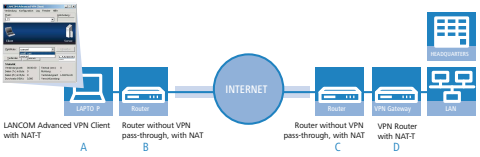
  - Router **B** as a NAT device between the VPN end points performs straight forward NAT address conversion.

  This router does not require NAT but firewall ports 500 and 4500 must be open in order to enable NAT communication between both tunnel end points.

- In the second example application, the travelling field worker dials in to the network at the headquarters with his notebook **A** and a mobile telephone or modem **B**.



- At the headquarters, the VPN router **D** is located behind a terminating router **C**, which only provides Internet access with the address conversion.
  - Both tunnel end points LANCOM Advanced VPN Client **A** and VPN router **D** support NAT-T and can therefore establish a VPN connection, as in the first example.
  - In the terminating router **B**, the firewall ports 500 and 4500 have to be activated, as does port forwarding.
- In both of these cases, the two ends of the connection are the straight-forward NAT routers **B** and **C**. The VPN connection is established between the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client **A** and VPN router **D**.



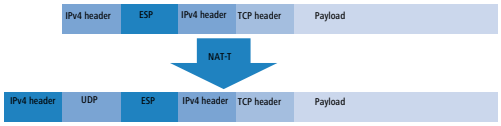
- The two routers **B** and **C** have to permit the NAT-T connection between the two tunnel endpoints in that the firewall ports 500 and 4500 are activated, and port forwarding has to be activated in the terminating router at the headquarters, as well.

To enable this process, both ends of the VPN connection have to work with NAT-T. The process of establishing the VPN connection (reduced to the NAT-T-relevant operations) appears as follows:

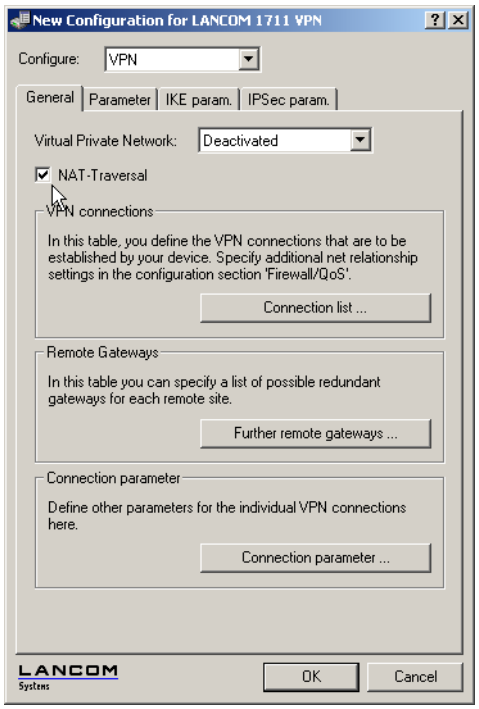
1. At an early stage of the IKE negotiation, there is a check to see if both ends of the VPN connection are NAT-T-compatible.
2. In the second step, there is a check to see if the address is converted to NAT on the section between the two tunnel end points, and at what point in the connection the NAT devices are located.
3. To deal with problems with ports that may have changed, all negotiation and data packets are subsequently sent only via UDP port 4500 when a NAT device has been detected.

   If the device functions as a NAT router between the VPN end points, ensure that UDP ports 500 and 4500 are activated in the firewall when you use NAT-T! This port is activated automatically if you use the firewall assistant in LANconfig.

   If the VPN connections are first created on devices with LCOS version 5.20 or above using the VPN assistant and later with the firewall assistant from LANconfig, then no additional firewall settings are required for the NAT router.
4. In the diagram below, the data packets are packed again into UDP packets (UDP encapsulation) and are also sent using port 4500. As a result of this additional encapsulation, changing the IP addresses for the VPN negotiation is no longer relevant and the VPN tunnel can be established without any problems. At the other end of the connection, the IP data is released again by the additional UDP header and can be processed by the router without further action.



In order to use this process, both ends of the VPN connection (such as the WLANmonitor and a LANCOM router) have to use NAT-T.



LANconfig: VPN / General

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN E NAT-T Operating

10.10 Extended Authentication Protocol (XAUTH)

10.10.1 Introduction

RADIUS servers are often used to authenticate users for remote sites dialing-in over WAN connections (such as via PPP). Over time, conventional WAN connections increasingly gave way to secure (encrypted) and more cost-effective VPN connections. However, the structure of VPN connections over IPSec with IKE does not permit unidirectional authentication of users by RADIUS or similar technologies.

The Extended Authentication Protocol (XAUTH) provides the ability to extend authentication in the negotiation of IPSec connections by an additional level in which user data can be authenticated. An additional authentication with XAUTH user name and XAUTH password is performed between the first and second IKE negotiation phases. This authentication is protected by the encryption negotiated in advance. A RADIUS server can be used for this authentication, enabling existing RADIUS databases to continue to be used in the migration of dial-in clients to use VPN connections. Alternatively, authentication can use an internal user table of the device.

In order make XAUTH particularly secure, dial-in via RSA-SIG (certificates) was to be used instead of the preshared key method (PSK) whenever possible. Here it is important to ensure that the VPN gateway accepts only the certificate of the correct remote site (and not all certificates issued by the same CA).

10.10.2 XAUTH in LCOS

In the LANCOM, the XAUTH protocol uses entries in the PPP table for remote site authentication. Use of the entries in the PPP table is dependent on which direction the connection is established, i.e. on the XAUTH operating mode:

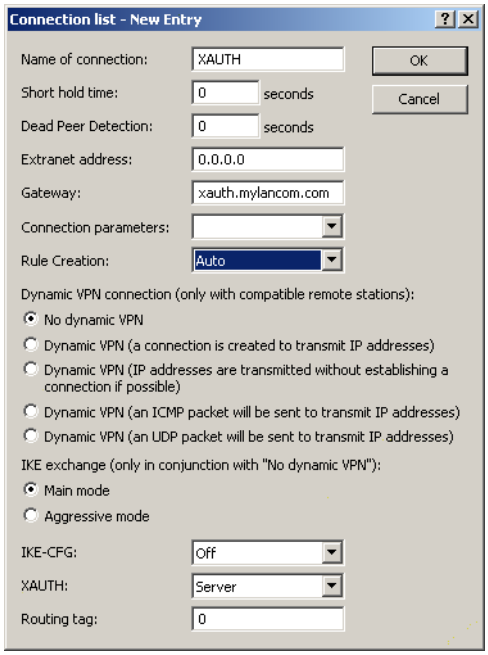
XAUTH operating mode	Server	Client
XAUTH user name	Remote site from the PPP table. The PPP-table entry is selected for which the PPP remote site corresponds to the transferred XAUTH user name. The PPP remote site must also match the VPN remote site used.	User name from the PPP table. The entry selected from the PPP table is that for which the PPP remote site corresponds to the VPN remote site used.
XAUTH password	Password from the PPP table.	Password from the PPP table.

In LCOS version 7.60 in XAUTH operating mode, the XAUTH user name has to agree with the name of the VPN remote site. For this reason only one user can be authenticated by XAUTH for each VPN remote site. Authentication by RADIUS server is not available with LCOS 7.60.

10.10.3 Configuring XAUTH

The application of the XAUTH protocol is set up separately for each VPN remote site. Only the XAUTH operating mode is specified.

LANconfig: VPN / General / Connection list



WEBconfig: Setup / VPN / VPN peers

› XAUTH

Enables the use of XAUTH for the VPN remote site selected.

Possible values:

› Client: In the XAUTH client operating mode, the device starts the initial phase of IKE negotiation (Main mode or Aggressive mode) and then waits for the authentication request from the XAUTH server. The XAUTH client responds to this request with the user name and password from the PPP table entry in which the PPP remote site corresponds to the VPN remote site defined here. There must therefore be a PPP remote site of the same name for the VPN remote site. The user name defined in the PPP table normally differs from the remote site name.

- Server: In the XAUTH server operating mode, the device (after successful negotiation of the initial IKE negotiation) starts authentication with a request to the XAUTH client, which then responds with its user name and password. The XAUTH server searches for the user name in the PPP table and, if a match is found, it checks the password. The user name for this entry in the PPP table is not used.
- Off: No XAUTH authentication is performed for the connection to this remote site.

Default:

- Off

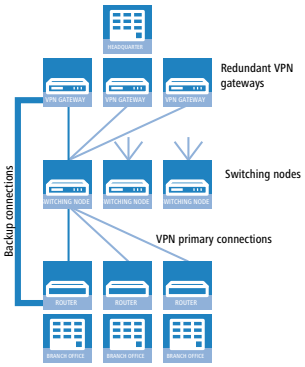
If XAUTH authentication is enabled for a VPN remote site, the IKE-CFG option must be set to the same value.

10.11 Backup via alternative VPN connection

10.11.1 Introduction

The subject of backup connections is vital to the availability of business-critical applications, especially at distributed sites with several branch offices connected via VPN to the main office. The subject of backups is easy to resolve where routers at the branch offices relate directly to redundant routers at the main office: If a router at the main office can be not reached over the Internet, the branch office simply dials-in to another router at the main office. RIP ensures that the devices can communicate over the available routes.

However, in very large networks branch offices are rarely connected directly to the main office. Instead, several sites initially merge at switching nodes, and these in turn are connected to the main office. If the branch office temporarily loses contact to the switching node, the branch office could establish a direct backup connection to main office.



However, this only works via an ISDN connection, often an undesirable solution due to the costs and limited bandwidth. A parallel backup connection directly over VPN does not achieve the objective for the following reasons:

- Only the switching nodes are defined as VPN remote sites in the main office – all routes to the branch offices pass through these switching nodes. If a branch office attempts to establish a direct connection to the main office, the attempt is rejected. And even if this connection were successful, the routes to the branch offices via the switching nodes remain in place at the main office because the switching node is, from the viewpoint of the main office, still accessible.
- The switching node knows nothing about any potential direct connection from branch office to main office. It therefore cannot access the destinations in the network at the branch office by detouring via the main office.
- Both the network of the switching node and the network of the branch office are accessible from the main office via the standard VPN connection. However, a direct VPN connection of the branch office to the main office only provides access to the branch-office network. It is because of these different characteristics that the router at the main office cannot accept the direct connection as a backup for the standard connection.

- The branch office can no longer establish the standard connection to the switching node because the principle of unambiguousness in IPsec rules does not permit a second connection with the same set of rules. Along with the specifications on encryption, IPSec rules also contain "network relationships", i.e. the IP addresses of the networks at both ends of the connection. These network relationships may only appear once in the VPN rule set. For a backup, however, two rules would have to exist for the same network relationship – once for the backup connection and once for the newly established primary connection.

10.11.2 Backup-capable network infrastructure

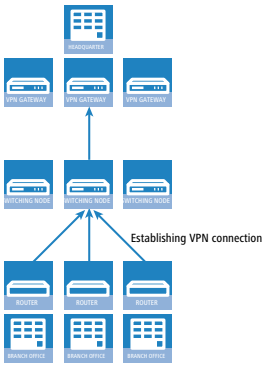
In order to also build up an operational backup solution for these applications, the points described in the following sections must be satisfied.

Basic prerequisites

The basic prerequisite for the backup function described here are; the configuration of a "Dynamic VPN" connection between branch offices and switching nodes; and the functions “Simplified RAS with certificates“ and “Allow remote site to select the remote network“ must be enabled in the VPN gateways at the main office.

Hierarchy for establishing VPN connections

In order for branch offices to connect to the network at the main office for backup purposes, a defined hierarchy must be observed when establishing the connection. Connections are only established from the "lower" to the "upper" networks, i.e. from the branch office to the switching node, from the switching node to the main office.



Thus connections only have to be accepted passively at the main office. The switching nodes also accept the branch office connections passively, but establish the connections to the main office actively. This hierarchy is a prerequisite for the later definition of VPN rules.

Network definitions

The branch offices establish network relationships with the switching nodes and with the main office - this must be allowed by the appropriate rules. In addition, either all conceivable network relationships must be stored individually or the networks have to be defined such that all required network relationships can be allowed with a single rule. This is possible if, for example, the IP addresses in the networks have the following structure:

- Central network 10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0
- Switching nodes 10.x.1.0/255.255.255.0
- Branch offices 10.x.y.0/255.255.255.0

Using the following VPN rule in the VPN gateways at the main office permits all required network relationships, i. e. all remote sites from the 10.x... range of addresses can establish connections to all gateways:

- Source 10.0.0.0/255.0.0.0
- Destination 10.0.0.0/255.0.0.0

Because branch offices communicate with the main office via the intermediate level of the switching nodes, corresponding VPN rules must also be created in the switching nodes. If communication with other sub-nodes and branch offices is also to be made possible, all of the required network relationships are permitted with the following VPN rule in the switching nodes:

- Source 10.x.0.0/255.255.0.0
- Destination 10.0.0.0/255.0.0.0

Routing information

During normal operation, the routes from main office to individual branch offices run via the switching nodes. These routes must be adapted for backup situations. For this adaptation to be performed automatically, "Simplified RAS with certificates" is enabled in the VPN gateways at the main office. This allows a shared configuration to apply for all incoming connections (using default settings) if the certificates of the remote sites have been signed with the root certificate of the VPN gateways in the main office. This also allows remote sites to select the remote network. The routers at the branch offices can then suggest a network (during IKE negotiations in phase 2) to be used for the connection.

Enabling the two functions “Simplified RAS with certificates“ and “Allow remote site to select the remote network“ is a necessary condition for the backup function described here.

The routing information at the switching nodes must also be adapted in backup situations. The switching nodes are normally accessed directly from the branch offices. In backup situations, the switching nodes must be able to receive the data from the branch offices via the main office detour. This is made possible with a route that transmits the entire combined network (10.x.0.0/255.255.0.0 in the example or, if communication with other nodes is to be possible: 10.0.0.0/255.0.0.0) to the main office.

In order for the routes to be switched automatically, “Allow remote site to select the remote network“ must also be activated at the switching nodes.

This results in the following sequence of events when establishing VPN connections:

- The switching node establishes the connection to the main office and requests all network relationships to the branch offices (i. e. it requests the 10.x.0.0/255.255.0.0 network).
- The branch office establishes the connection to the switching node and requests its network (10.x.y.0/255.255.255.0).

  Data can now be transferred from the branch office to the main office via the switching node.

The following happens if the VPN connection between branch office and main office now fails:

- The switching node detects the loss by polling (DPD) and removes the route to the branch office.
- At some point the branch office establishes the backup connection to the main office and requests its network (10.x.y.0/255.255.255.0).

  Data can now be transferred from the branch office to the main office.

  If the networks have been combined and the switching nodes always route the combined network (as in the example, network 10.x.0.0/255.255.0.0 or 10.0.0.0/255.0.0.0) to the main office, data can be transmitted from the branch office to the switching node via the main office.

Once the backup event is over, the branch office reestablishes the primary connection to the switching node:

- The branch office tears down the backup connection and the main office deletes the route to the branch office.
- The branch office again requests its network (10.x.y.0/255.255.255.0) from the switching node.

  Smooth communication between branch office and switching node now exists again.

  Because the branch office network is a sub-network of the network in the switching node, immediate communication between branch office and main office via the switching node is also possible again. The main office no longer has its own route to the branch office and therefore resumes transfers data for the branch office via the switching node again.

If network addresses cannot be structured as described above, the route to the branch office must be configured statically at the main office and point to the switching node. If the branch office then establishes the backup connection, the statically registered route is overwritten by the dynamically registered route. If the backup connection is torn down again, the dynamic route is deleted and the static route re-enabled. If, in this case, communication between branch offices and switching node is to be guaranteed for backup as well, the routes to the branch offices must also be configured statically in the switching nodes.

Establishing a backup connection

In order to conform to the basic principle of unambiguous IPSec rules, backup situations require VPN rules for the primary connection to be deleted first, and then new rules for the backup connection are created.

If the establishment of a backup connection fails, the backup module selects the next backup connection (if several are configured). If the next backup connection uses an ISDN connection, it is established completely normally, i.e. no IPSec rules need be reformulated.

If the backup at the main office is based on ISDN, it is important to avoid coupling the backup connection with the normal VPN connections to the other branch offices. In the event of a backup, these primary VPN connections carry not only the data traffic to the branch offices, but all traffic to the switching nodes and all other branch offices as well. This coupling can be prevented in two ways:

- A very high distance for the branch-office network is entered into the ISDN backup connection. This way the route can be overwritten by the routes automatically communicated via the VPN.
- Alternatively, the routes can be controlled using WAN RIP. For this, an ISDN connection with WAN RIP support is set up for every B-channel.

Re-establishing the primary connection

The device attempts to restore the primary connection while the backup connection is being established. During this attempt to connect, the VPN rule set must not be recreated again – otherwise the backup connection would fail or an existing VPN connection would simply be torn down.

To prevent this, initial "Dynamic VPN" negotiations with the primary connection's remote site are performed. If these negotiations are successful, the primary connection can be reestablished. To this end, the backup connection is disconnected and the backup status is reset. This prevents the backup connection from being reestablished immediately. Only after this is the primary connection reestablished with the original VPN rules.

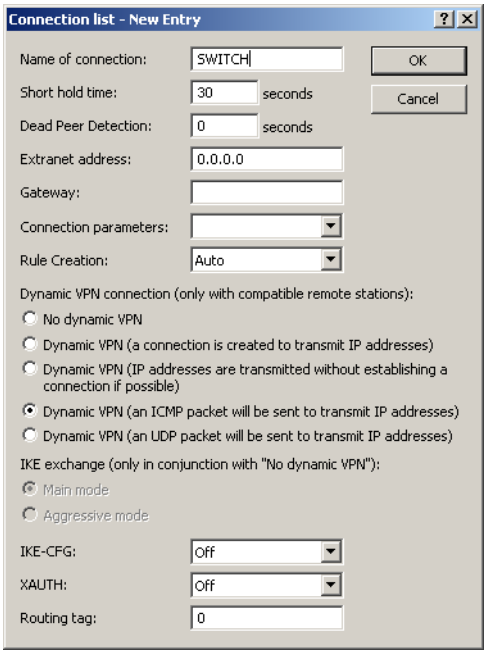
The use of the "Dynamic VPN" connection between branch office and switching node is a necessary condition for the backup function described here.

10.11.3 Configuring the VPN backup

For configuring the VPN backup, the devices at the branch offices, main office and switching nodes must be considered separately.

- Branch office

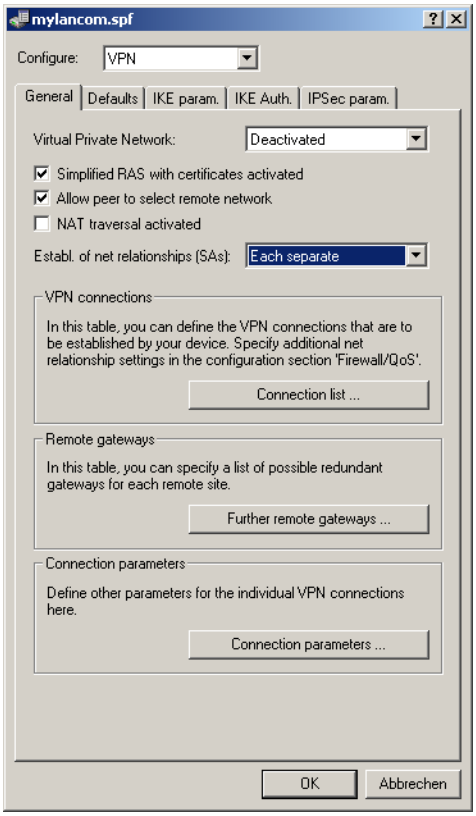
- "Dynamic VPN" over ICMP/UDP must be configured for the primary connection.



- The backup connection has no requirement for "Dynamic VPN".
- The backup is configured in the backup table, as with ISDN backup.
- At the branch office, the main office must be configured as a backup remote site.

- Main office
  - Simplified RAS with certificates must be enabled.
  - Selection of the remote network by the remote site must be enabled.

- A configuration in the backup table is not necessary here.



- Switching nodes
  - The VPN connection to the main office must be completely configured.
  - Simplified RAS with certificates must be enabled.
  - Selection of the remote network by the remote site must be enabled.

If the system does not have "combined networks" (i.e. the branch office network is a sub-network of the switching node and the switching node network is a sub-network of the central network), then the switching node's route to the branch office must point to the main office in order for the branch office to be able to reach the switching node in backup situations. In normal operation, this route is overwritten by the route passed by the branch office in the VPN (because remote sites may provide network relationships) and is therefore only used when the direct connection is torn down and the branch office establishes the backup connection.

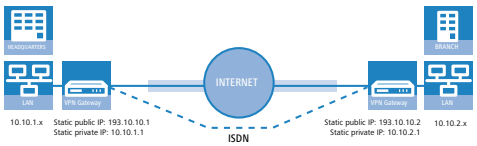
10.12 Specific examples of connections

This section covers the 4 possible types of VPN connections with concrete examples. These 4 different connection types are categorized by the type of IP address of the two VPN gateways:

- static/dynamic
- dynamic/static (the dynamic peer initiates the connection)
- static/dynamic (the static peer initiates the connection)
- dynamic/dynamic

There is a section for each of these types, together with a description of all required configuration information in the familiar table form.

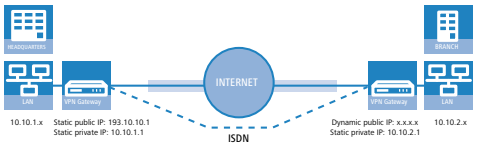
10.12.1 Static/static



A VPN tunnel via the Internet serves as the connection between the LANCOM **Headquarters** and **branch office**. Both gateways have static IP addresses. Thus, both can initiate the connection.

Entry	Headquarters		Branch_office
Type of local IP address	static		static
Type of remote IP address	static		static
Name of the local device	Headquarters		Branch_office
Name of the remote device	Branch_office		Headquarters
Shared Secret for encryption	secret		secret
IP address of the remote device	193.10.10.2		193.10.10.1
IP-network address of the remote network	10.10.2.0		10.10.1.0
Netmask of the remote network	255.255.255.0		255.255.255.0

10.12.2 Dynamic/static



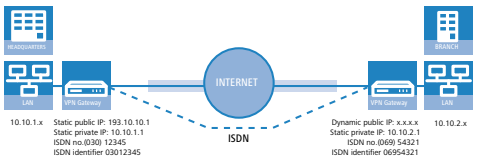
The VPN gateway **Branch office** initiates a VPN connection to the gateway **Headquarters**. **Branch office** has a dynamic IP address that was chosen and assigned by the Internet service provider upon dialling in, whereas **Headquarters** has a fixed, static address. When the connection is set up, **Branch office** transmits its actual IP address to **Headquarters**. This is accomplished by a special ICMP packet (alternatively UDP, port 87).

Entry	Headquarters		Branch_office
Type of local IP address	static		dynamic
Type of remote IP address	dynamic		static
Name of the local device	Headquarters		Branch_office
Name of the remote device	Branch_office		Headquarters
Password for the secure transmission of the IP address	confidential		confidential
Shared Secret for encryption	secret		secret
IP address of the remote device	–		193.10.10.1
IP-network address of the remote network	10.10.2.0		10.10.1.0
Netmask of the remote network	255.255.255.0		255.255.255.0

An ISDN line is not necessary for establishing this type of connection. The dynamic end communicates its IP address encrypted via the Internet protocol ICMP (or alternatively via UDP).

10.12.3 Static/dynamic (with LANCOM Dynamic VPN)

In this case (other than the example above), the peer with the static IP address initiates the VPN connection.



The VPN gateway **Headquarters** initiates a VPN connection to **Branch office**. **Headquarters** has a static IP address, **Branch office** a dynamic one.

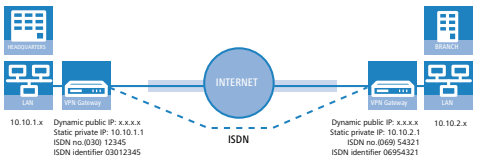
The entries for the ISDN connection are needed for the transmission of the actual dynamic IP address solely. The Internet access wizard configures the connection to the Internet.

Alternatively, this application can be solved with the help of dynamic DNS. In this constellation, the headquarters with its static IP address connects to the branch office with the help of a dynamic DNS name which is assigned to the current dynamic IP address. More information is available under .

Entry	Headquarters		Branch_office
Type of local IP address	static	⤫	dynamic
Type of remote IP address	dynamic		static
Name of the local device	Headquarters	⤫	Branch_office
Name of the remote device	Branch_office		Headquarters
ISDN-calling number of the remote device	06954321		03012345
ISDN-caller ID of the remote device	06954321		03012345
Password for the secure transmission of the IP address	confidential	⟷	confidential
Shared Secret for encryption	secret	⟷	secret
IP address of the remote device			193.10.10.1
IP-network address of the remote network	10.10.2.0		10.10.1.0
Netmask of the remote network	255.255.255.0		255.255.255.0

The described connection set up requires an ISDN connection for both VPN gateways.

10.12.4 Dynamic/dynamic (with LANCOM Dynamic VPN)



A VPN tunnel via the Internet serves as the connection between the LANCOM **Headquarters** and **branch office**. Both sites have dynamic IP addresses. Thus, both can initiate the connection.

The entries for the ISDN connection are needed for the transmission of the actual dynamic IP address solely. The Internet access wizard configures the connection to the Internet.

Alternatively, this application can be solved with the help of dynamic DNS. Instead of a static IP address, a dynamic DNS name helps to find the dynamic IP address that is currently in use. More information is available under .

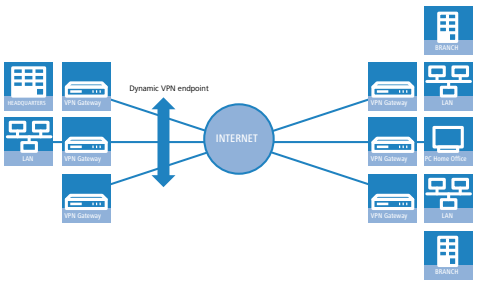
Entry	Headquarters		Branch_office
Type of local IP address	dynamic		dynamic
Type of remote IP address	dynamic		dynamic
Name of the local device	Headquarters		Branch_office
Name of the remote device	Branch_office		Headquarters
ISDN-calling number of the remote device	06954321		03012345
ISDN-caller ID of the remote device	06954321		03012345
Password for the secure transmission of the IP address	confidential		confidential
Shared Secret for encryption	secret		secret
IP-network address of the remote network	10.10.2.0		10.10.1.0
Netmask of the remote network	255.255.255.0		255.255.255.0

Dynamic VPN works only between LANCOM that each feature at least one ISDN port that can be used for the ISDN connection

10.12.5 VPN connections: High availability with VPN load balancing

Multiple VPN gateway addresses

In decentralized company structures that rely on VPN for networking the various locations, the availability of the central VPN gateway is of particular significance. The company-wide communications only remain reliable as long as these central dial-in nodes are working properly.



With the option of configuring several "remote gateway" addresses as "dynamic VPN endpoints" for a VPN connection, LANCOM VPN gateways offer a high level of availability by using redundant devices. This involves multiple gateways at the headquarters being set up with identical VPN configurations. On location at the satellite sites, all of these available gateways are entered as possible remote stations for the VPN connection. If one of the gateways is unavailable, the remote router automatically redirects the request to one of the other routers.

To ensure that the computers in the LAN at the headquarters know which VPN gateway it to be used to reach a particular satellite station, the outband router currently connected to the remote site is propagated via RIPv2 to the network at the headquarters.

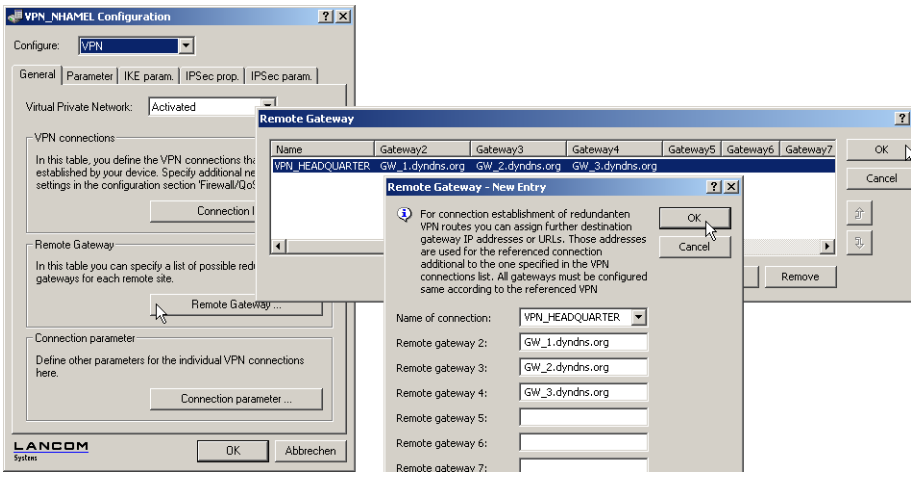
A powerful mechanism for high availability with constant load balancing between the VPN gateways at the headquarters is attained with the configuration of the satellite stations to select the remote site for VPN connection on a random basis.

Configuration

During configuration, additional destinations for a VPN connection should be entered in the list of "Remote gateways". The list consists of the following entries:

- Name: Name of the remote site from the VPN connection list, the "target" of the VPN connection.
- Gateway 2 to Gateway 9: Address of the alternative gateways, as an IP address or DNS-translatable address.
- Begin with: In which order should the entries are to be tried. You can select from:
  - Last used: Selects the entry for the VPN connection which was successfully used most recently.
  - First: Selects the first of the configured remote stations.
  - Random: Selects one of the configured remote stations at random. This setting provides an effective measure for load balancing between the gateways at the headquarters.

The entry for the gateway in the VPN connection list can be left blank if all of the possible gateways are entered into the list of "Remote gateways".



LANconfig: VPN / General / Remote gateway

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Config E Remote-gateway-list

The following options are available for defining the strategy for the utilization of the configured remote-gateway addresses:

- `last used`
- `first`
- `random`

Example:

The following command sets three gateways as target at the headquarters, one of which is to be selected at random:

```
set VPN_HEADQUARTERS 213.217.69.75 213.217.69.76 213.217.69.77 * * * * * random
```

10.13 How does VPN work?

In practice, a VPN must fulfill a number of requirements:

- Unauthorized third parties must not be able to read the data (encryption)
- It should not be possible to manipulate the data (data integrity)
- Unambiguous identification of the sender of data (authentication)

- Simple key management
- Compatibility to VPN devices from a variety of manufacturers

LANCOM VPN achieves these five major goals by applying the widely used IPSec standard.

10.13.1 IPSec—The basis for LANCOM VPN

The original IP protocol does not contain any provisions for security. Security problems are compounded by the fact that IP packets do not go directly to a specific recipient, but are sent scattershot to all computers on a given network segment. Anyone can help themselves and read the packets. This leaves the door open to the misuse of data.

IP has been developed further for this reason. A secure version is now available: IPSec. LANCOM VPN is based on IPSec.

IPSec stands for "**IPSec**urity Protocol" and was originally the name used by a working group of the IETF, the **I**nternet **E**ngineering **T**ask **F**orce. Over the years, this group has developed a framework for a secure IP protocol that is generally referred to as IPSec today.

It is important to note that IPSec itself is not a protocol, but merely the standard for a protocol framework. IPSec actually consists of a variety of protocols and algorithms for encryption, authentication and key management. These standards will be introduced in the following sections.

Security in an IP environment

IPSec has been implemented almost completely within level 3 of the OSI model, i.e. in the network layer. The transfer of data packets using the IP protocol is realized on level 3 of IP networks.

IPSec thus replaces the IP protocol. Under IPSec, the packets have a different internal structure than IP packets. Their external structure remains fully compatible to IP, however. IPSec packets can therefore be transported without problems by existing IP networks. The devices in the network responsible for the transport of the packets cannot distinguish IPSec packets from IP packets on the basis of their exterior structure.

The exceptions in this case are certain firewalls and proxy servers that access the contents of the packets. Problems can arise from the (often function dependent) incompatibilities of these devices to the existing IP standard. These devices must therefore be adapted to IPSec.

IPSec will be firmly implemented in the next generation of the IP standard (IPv6). For this reason, we can assume that IPSec will remain the most important standard for virtual private networks in the future.

10.13.2 Alternatives to IPSec

IPSec is an open standard. It is not dependent on individual manufacturers and is being developed by the IETF with input from the interested public. The IETF is a nonprofit organization that is open to everyone. The broad acceptance of IPSec is the result of this open structure which unites a variety of technical approaches.

Nevertheless, there are other approaches for the realization of VPNs. We will only mention the two most important of these here. They are not realized at the network level like IPSec, but at the connection and application levels.

Security at the connection level – PPTP, L2F, L2TP

Tunnels can already be set up at the connection level (level 2 of the OSI model). Microsoft and Ascend developed the **P**oint-to-**P**oint **T**unneling **P**rotocol (PPTP) early on. Cisco presented a similar protocol with **L**ayer **2F**orwarding (L2F). Both manufacturers agreed on a joint effort and the IETF produced the **L**ayer **2T**unnel **P**rotocol (L2TP).

Their main advantage over IPSec is that any network protocol can be used with such a network connection, especially NetBEUI and IPX.

A major disadvantage of the described protocols is the lack of security at the packet level. What's more, these protocols were designed specifically for dial-up connections.

Security at higher levels – SSL, S/MIME, PGP

Communications can also be secured with encryption at higher levels of the OSI model. Well known examples of this type of protocol are SSL (**S**ecure **S**ocket **L**ayer) mainly used for web browser connections, S/MIME (**S**ecure **M**ultipurpose **I**nternet **M**ail **E**xtensions) for e-mails and PGP (**P**retty **G**ood **P**rivacy) for e-mails and files.

In all of the above protocols, an application handles the encryption of the data, for example the Web browser on one end and the HTTP server on the other.

A disadvantage of these protocols in the limitation to specific applications. In addition, a variety of keys is generally required for the different applications. The configuration must be managed on the individual computers and can not be administered conveniently on the gateways only, as is the case with IPSec. Security protocols at the application level tend to be more intelligent as they know the significance of the data being transferred. They are usually much more complex, however.

All of these layer-2 protocols only support end-to-end connections; they are therefore not suitable for coupling entire networks.

On the other hand, these mechanisms do not require the slightest changes to the network devices or access software. And unlike protocols in lower network levels, they are still effective when the data content is already in the computer.

Combinations are possible

All of the alternatives listed above are compatible to IPSec and can therefore be used parallel to it. This permits a further increase of the security level. It would be possible, for example, to dial into the Internet using an L2TP connection, set up an IPSec tunnel to a Web server and exchange HTTP data between the Web server and the browser in secure SSL mode.

Each additional encryption would reduce the data throughput, however. Users can decide on a case-by-case basis whether the security offered by IPSec alone is sufficient. Only in rare cases is a higher level of security really necessary. Particularly as the degree of security can be adjusted within IPSec.

10.14 The standards behind IPSec

IPSec is based on a variety of protocols for the individual functions. These protocols are based on, and complement one another. The modularity achieved with this concept is an important advantage of IPSec over other standards. IPSec is not restricted to specific protocols but can be supplemented at any time by future developments. The protocols integrated to date also offer such a high degree of flexibility that IPSec can be perfectly adapted to virtually any requirements.

10.14.1 IPSec modules and their tasks

IPSec has to perform a number of tasks. One or more protocols have been defined for each of these tasks.

- Authentication of packets
- Encryption of packets
- Transfer and management of keys

10.14.2 Security Associations – numbered tunnels

A logical connection (tunnel) between two IPSec devices is known as an SA (**S**ecurity **A**ssociation). SAs are managed independently by the IPSec device. An SA consists of three values:

- Security Parameter Index (SPI)

  ID to distinguish multiple logical connections to the same target device with the same protocols
- **Target IP address**
- **Security protocol used**

Designates the security protocol used for the connection: AH or ESP (further information will be provided on these protocols in the following sections).

An SA applies only to one communication direction of the connection (simplex). A complete send and receive connection requires two SAs. In addition, an SA only applies for one used protocol. Two separate SAs are also required if AH and ESP are used, i.e. two for each communication direction.

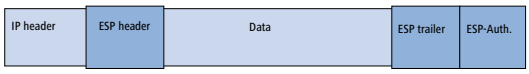
The SAs are managed in an internal database of the IPSec device that also contains the advanced connection parameters. These parameters include the algorithms and keys used, for example.

10.14.3 Encryption of the packets – the ESP protocol

The ESP protocol (**E**ncapsulating **S**ecurity **P**ayload) encrypts the packets as protection against unauthorized access. This was once the only function of ESP, but in the course of the further development of the protocol it was expanded with options for the protection of integrity and verification of authenticity. In addition, ESP also features effective protection against replayed packets. ESP thus offers all of the functions of AH – in some cases, however, the use of AH parallel to ESP is advisable.

How ESP works

The structure of ESP is more complex than that of AH. ESP also inserts a header behind the IP header as well its own trailer and a block of ESP authentication data.



Transport and tunnel mode

Like AH, ESP can be used in two modes: transport and tunnel mode.

In transport mode, the IP header of the original packet is left unchanged and the ESP header, encrypted data and both trailers are inserted.

The IP header contains the unchanged IP address. Transport mode can therefore only be used between two end points, for the remote configuration of a router, for example. It cannot be used for the coupling of networks via the Internet – this would require a new IP header with the public IP address of the recipient. In such cases, ESP can be used in tunnel mode.

In tunnel mode, the entire packet including the original IP header is encrypted and authenticated and the ESP header and trailers are added at the entrance of the tunnel. A new IP header is added to this new packet, this time with the public IP address of the recipient at the end of the tunnel.

Encryption algorithms

As a higher-level protocol, IPSec does not require specific encryption algorithms. The manufacturers of IPSec products are thus free in their choice of the processes used. The following standards are common:

- AES – Advanced Encryption Standard AES is the official encryption standard for use by US authorities, and therefore one of the most important standards worldwide. Following a worldwide competition in the year 2000 to find the best of the numerous encryption algorithms, the **N**ational **I**nstitute of **S**tandards and **T**echnology (NIST) selected the Rijndael algorithm (pronounced: "Rinedoll") and declared it as the AES in 2001.

  AES is a symmetric key algorithm with variable block and encryption lengths. It has been developed by the Belgian scientists Joan Daemen and Vincent Rijmen, and features outstanding security, flexibility and efficiency.

- DES – Data Encryption Standard DES was developed by IBM for the NSA (National Security Agency) in the early 1970s and was the worldwide security standard for years. The key length of this symmetrical process is 56 bits. Today, it is considered to be insecure due to its short key length and in the year 2000 the NIST replaced it with the AES (Rijndael algorithm). It is no longer suitable for use.

- Triple DES (a.k.a. 3-DES) A further development of DES. The conventional DES algorithm is applied three times consecutively. Two or three different keys, each with a length of 56 bits are used. The key for the first run is reused for the third DES run. The result is a nominal key length of 168 bit, with an effective key length of 112 bits.

  Triple-DES combines the sophisticated DES technology with a sufficiently long key and is therefore considered to be highly secure. Triple-DES is slower than other processes, however.

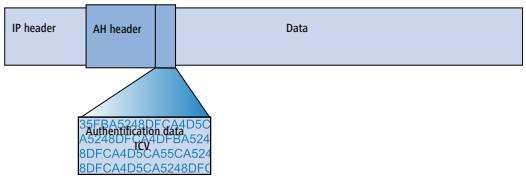
- Blowfish This development by the renowned cryptographer Bruce Schneier is a symmetrical encryption process. Blowfish achieves outstanding data throughput on multifunction processors. The process is reputed to be extremely efficient and secure.
- CAST (from the authors **C**arlisle **A**dams and **S**tafford **T**avares) is a symmetrical process with a key length of 128 bits. CAST permits the modification of parts of the algorithm at runtime.

The encryption settings can be modified in the LCOS menu tree within LANconfig. Modifications of this sort are generally only required when setting up VPN connections between devices from different manufacturers. LANCOM gateways offer the encryption as standard either after AES (128 bit), Blowfish (128 bit) or Triple-DES (168 bit).

10.14.4 Authentication – the AH protocol

The AH protocol (**A**uthentification **H**eader) guarantees the integrity and authenticity of the data. Integrity is frequently regarded as a component of authenticity. In the following, we will consider integrity to be a separate problem that is resolved by AH. In addition to integrity and authenticity, AH also provides effective protection against the replay of received packets (Replay Protection).

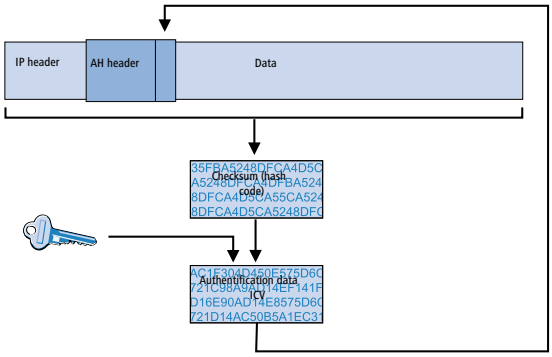
AH adds its own header to IP packets immediately after the original IP header. The most important part of this AH header is a field containing authentication data, often referred to as the **I**ntegrity **C**heck **V**alue (ICV).



The AH process in the sender

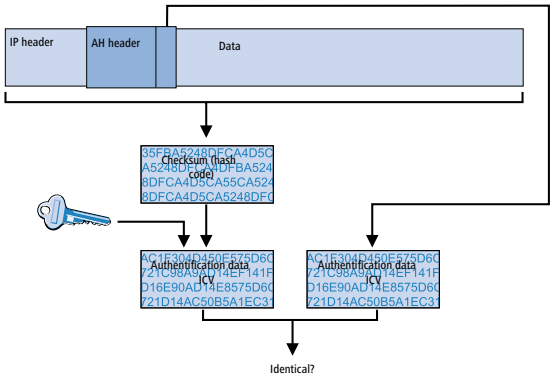
In the sender, the authentication data is generated in 3 steps.

1. A checksum is calculated for the complete package using a hash algorithm.
2. This checksum is once again sent through a hash algorithm together with a key known to both the sender and the recipient.
3. This results in the required authentication data which is inserted in the AH header.



Checking of integrity and authenticity by the recipient

The AH protocol works in a very similar manner at the recipient's end. The recipient also uses his key to calculate the authentication data for the received packet. The comparison with the sent ICV of the packet determines the integrity and authenticity of the packet.



Determining the checksum for the integrity check

AH adds a checksum to each packet before it is sent to guarantee the integrity of the transferred packets. At the recipients end, AH checks whether the checksum and the contents of the package match. If this is not the case, the packet was either incorrectly transferred or deliberately manipulated. Such packets are discarded immediately and are not forwarded to higher protocol levels.

A variety of so-called hash algorithms are available to determine the checksum. Hash algorithms are distinguished by the fact that their results (the hash code) are a unique fingerprint of the original data. Conversely, the original data cannot be determined on the basis of the hash code. In addition, minimum changes of the input value entail a completely different hash code with a high-grade hash algorithm. Systematic analyses of several hash codes thus are made more difficult.

LANCOM VPN supports the two most common hash algorithms: MD5 and SHA-1. Both methods work without keys, i.e. on the basis of fixed algorithms. Keys do not play a role until a later step of AH: the final generation of the authentication data. The integrity checksum is only a necessary intermediate result on the way there.

Generation of the authentication data

In the second step, AH generates a new hash code using the checksum and a key, the final authentication data. A variety of standards are available under IPSec for this process as well. LANCOM VPN supports HMAC (**H**ash-based **M**essage **A**uthentication **C**ode). The hash functions MD5 and SHA-1 are available as hash algorithms. The HMAC versions are accordingly known as HMAC-MD5-96 and HMAC-SHA-1-96.

This clarifies why AH leaves the packet itself unencrypted. Only the checksum of the packet and the local key are added to the packet together with the ICV, the authentication data, in encrypted form as a verification criterion.

Replay protection – protection against replayed packets

In addition to the ICV, AH assigns a unique sequence number to each packet. The recipient can thus recognize which packets were intercepted by a third party and resent. Attacks of this type are known as “packet replay“.

AH does not cater for the masking of IPSec tunnels unless additional measures, such as NAT-Traversal or an outer Layer-2-Tunneling (e.g. PPPT/L2TP), are used that offer “changeable” IP headers.

10.14.5 Key management – IKE

The **I**nternet **K**ey **E**xchange Protocol (IKE) permits the integration of subprotocols for managing the SAs and for key administration.

Within IKE, two subprotocols are used in LANCOM VPN: Oakley for the authentication of partners and key administration, and ISAKMP for managing the SAs.

Setting up the SAs with ISAKMP/Oakley

Establishing an SA involves a sequence of steps (with dynamic Internet connections, these steps follow the exchange of the public IP addresses):

1. The initiator sends a plain-text message to the remote station via ISAKMP with the request to set up an SA and with proposals for the security parameters of the SA.
2. The remote station replies with the acceptance of a proposal.
3. Both devices now generate key pairs, each consisting of a public and private key, for Diffie-Hellman encryption.
4. In two further messages, the devices exchange their public keys for Diffie-Hellman. The further communication is encrypted with Diffie-Hellman.
5. Both ends use numbers that have been transferred (with the Diffie-Hellman method) and the Shared Secret to generate a common secret key that is used to encrypt the subsequent communication. Both sides additionally authenticate their Shared Secrets by using hash codes. Phase 1 of the SA setup is thus completed.
6. Phase 2 is based on the encrypted and authenticated connection established in Phase 1. In Phase 2, the session keys for the authentication and symmetrical encryption of the actual data transfer are generated at random and transferred.

Symmetrical processes are used for the encryption of the actual data transfer. Asymmetrical processes (also known as public-key encryption) are more secure as they do not require the exchange of secret keys. However, they require considerable processing resources and are thus significantly slower than symmetrical processes. In practice, public-key encryption is generally only used for the exchange of key material. The actual data encryption is then performed using the fast symmetrical process.

The regular exchange of new keys

ISAKMP ensures that new key material is regularly exchanged between the two devices during the SA. This takes place automatically and can be checked using the 'Lifetime' setting in the advanced configuration of LANconfig.

10.15 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.00

10.15.1 VPN Pathfinder

Introduction

In some environments it is impossible to establish a secured VPN connection over an existing Internet connection due to an interim firewall that blocks the ports used by IPsec. To be able to set up an IPsec-secured VPN connection in such a situation, LANCOM VPN routers support the technology known as VPN Pathfinder.

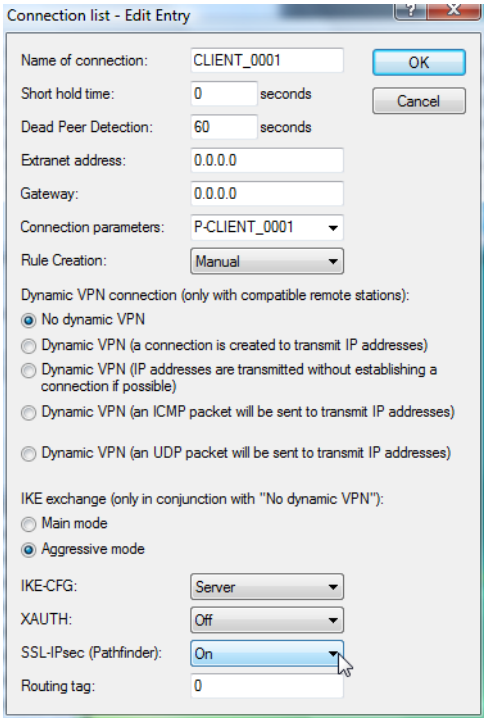
The first attempt always tries to establish data communications with standard IPsec. If the connection cannot be established (e.g. because IKE port 500 is blocked by a cellular network), then an attempt is then automatically made to establish a connection that encapsulates the IPsec VPN in an additional SSL header (port 443, like https).

Note that VPN Pathfinder technology only works when both ends of the connection support this function and that the corresponding options have been activated. VPN Pathfinder is available in LANCOM VPN routers with LCOS 8.0 or higher, and with the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client 2.22 or higher.

Configuring VPN Pathfinder technology

For the active establishment of a connection from one LANCOM VPN device to another VPN remote by using VPN Pathfinder technology, activate the option in the VPN name-list entry that corresponds to the remote site.

- LANconfig: VPN / General / Connection list
- WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN / VPN remote sites



- SSL-IPsec (Pathfinder)

  With this option you activate VPN Pathfinder technology when actively establishing a connection to this remote site.

  Possible values:

  - On, off

  Default:

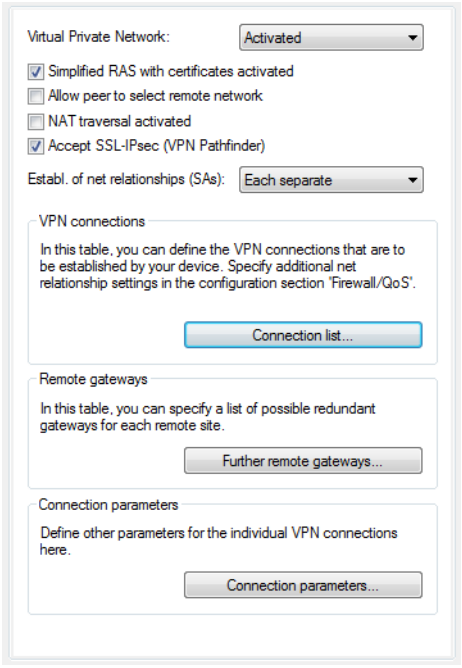
  - Off

  Note that when the VPN Pathfinder option is activated, the VPN connection can only be established when the remote site also supports this technology, and when the remote site is set up to receive passive VPN connections that use VPN Pathfinder.

Activate the option in the general VPN settings to enable passive connection establishment to a LANCOM VPN device from another VPN remote that works with VPN Pathfinder technology (LANCOM VPN device or LANCOM Advanced VPN client).

- LANconfig: VPN / General

› WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN



› Accept SSL-IPsec (VPN Pathfinder)

With this option your system accepts passive attempts to connect when the remote site supports VPN Pathfinder technology.

Possible values:

› On, off

Default:

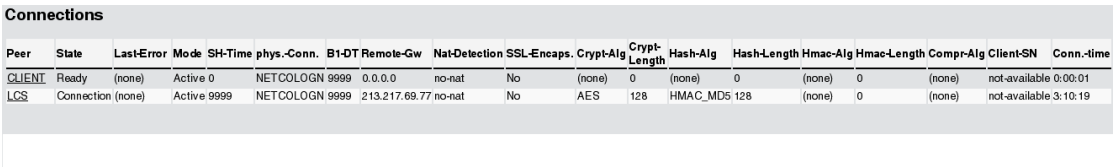
› Off

The LANCOM Advanced VPN Client supports automatic fallback to VPN Pathfinder. With this setting, the VPN client initially attempts to establish a connection **without** using the additional SSL encapsulation. If the connection cannot be made, the device then tries to connect **with** the additional SSL encapsulation.

Status displays for VPN Pathfinder technology

The status displays show whether VPN-Pathfinder technology is being used on each of the active VPN connections.

› WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN / Connections



Connections

Peer	State	Last-Error	Mode	SH-Time	phys.-Conn.	B1-DT	Remote-Gw	Nat-Detection	SSL-Encaps.	Crypt-Alg	Crypt-Length	Hash-Alg	Hash-Length	Hmac-Alg	Hmac-Length	Compr-Alg	Client-SN	Conn.-time
CLIENT	Ready	(none)	Active	0	NETCOLOGN	9999	0.0.0.0	no-nat	No	(none)	0	(none)	0	(none)	0	(none)	not-available	0:00:01
LCS	Connection	(none)	Active	9999	NETCOLOGN	9999	213.217.69.77	no-nat	No	AES	128	HMAC_MD5	128	(none)	0	(none)	not-available	3:10:19

10.16 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.60

10.16.1 Improved phase 1 rekeying

Throughout the operation of an active VPN connection, the stations constantly check whether communications are subject to a previously agreed security association (SA). If the framework conditions change (e. g. a change of the client's IP address through relocation to a different radio cell), you must renegotiate this security association. This is done with "rekeying".

As of version 2.30, the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client transmits a special identification number (ID) during phase 1 rekeying. A LANCOM VPN gateway detects rekeying based on this ID and links the previous security association with the client. This makes re-authentication unnecessary.

10.16.2 MPPE encryption for PPTP tunnels

The encryption protocol MPPE (Microsoft Point-To-Point Encryption) secures data transmission over PPP and VPN connections with key lengths of up to 128 bit.

MPPE uses the "stateless mode" for encryption to ensure that both communication partners are synchronized. In this mode, the session key changes with each transmitted data packet. The two stations also synchronize their encryption tables (where the keys are stored for data encryption) each time.

VPN-capable devices from LANCOM use MPPE to encrypt data transfer by PPTP tunnel.

In LANconfig you find this setting under **Communication** > **Protocols** > **PPTP list**

If you have enabled the MPPE encryption protocol, connections to clients are established only under the following conditions:

- The client establishes a connection secured with MPPE. The router rejects the request for other protocols.
- The client uses as a minimum the key length specified in the router. With shorter key lengths the router refuses to connect and, with stronger encryption, the router switches to the appropriate key length.

10.17 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.62

10.17.1 Default proposals for IKE and IPSec

The proposals for IKE and IPSec all now support a key length of 256 bits in the default settings.

A firmware upgrade initially does not enable this change, to avoid any problems for existing installations. To accept the changes, you must perform a reset of the device or reset the tables. For new devices with LCOS 8.62 or later, the new defaults are already active.

10.17.2 myVPN

The LANCOM myVPN app offers you a very easy way to set up a VPN connection to your company network from your iPhone, iPad or iPod (or from any iOS device in general). The LANCOM myVPN app offers the following functions:

- Highly secure, mobile VPN connections made easy
- Facilitates the complex VPN configuration of the integrated VPN client of iOS devices and the LANCOM router
- PIN operation for the authentication during the VPN tunnel establishment
- Access control via adjustable firewall rules on LANCOM VPN gateways
- LANCOM myVPN user management and automatic detection of myVPN-activated LANCOM gateways

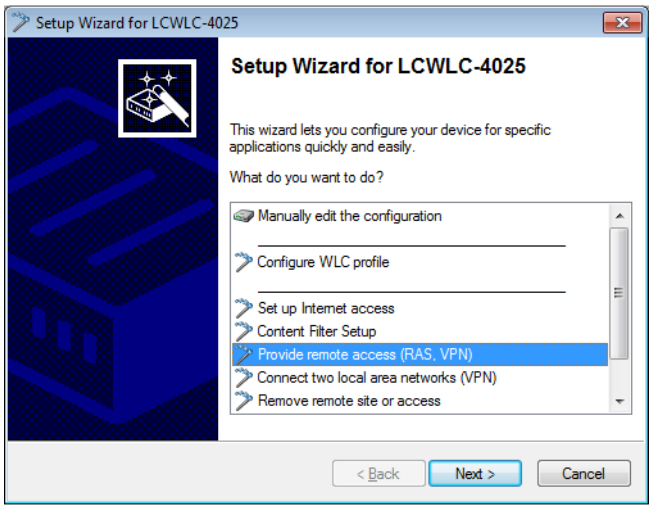
› For version 4.1 iOS devices and later

After its installation, the LANCOM myVPN app retrieves a VPN profile from your LANCOM VPN device and automatically configures all of the necessary settings on the iOS device. You can then use the internal features of iOS to establish a VPN connection to your company network in just a few steps.

Using the Setup Wizard in LANconfig to set up a VPN profile for the LANCOM myVPN app

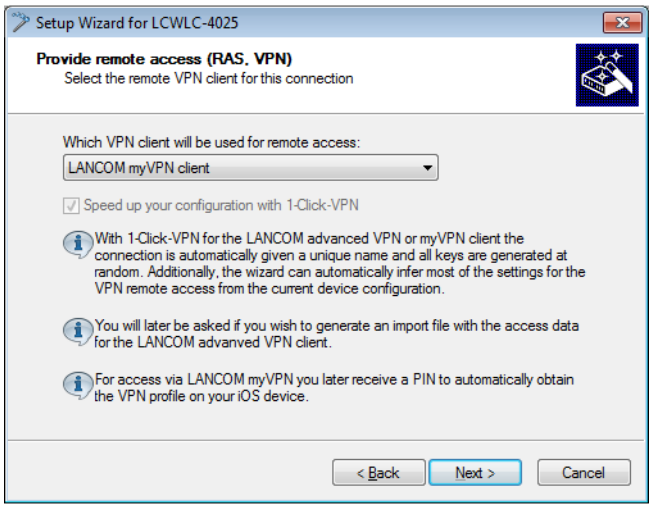
This is how to use the Setup Wizard to provide an access account for a VPN client on an iOS device:

1. Start LANconfig, for example from the Windows start menu with **Start** > **Programs** > **LANCOM** > **LANconfig**. LANconfig now automatically searches the local network for devices.
2. Choose the required device from the selection window in LANconfig and select the **Setup Wizard** button or use the menu under **Tools** > **Setup Wizard**.
3. Select the item **Provide remote access (RAS, VPN)** and then click on **Next**.

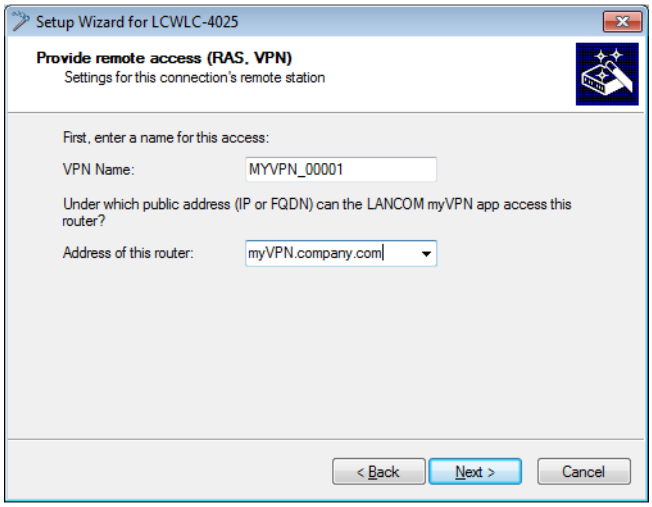


You can skip the following information dialog with **Next**.

4. From the drop-down list select the option **LANCOM myVPN client** and click on **Next**.

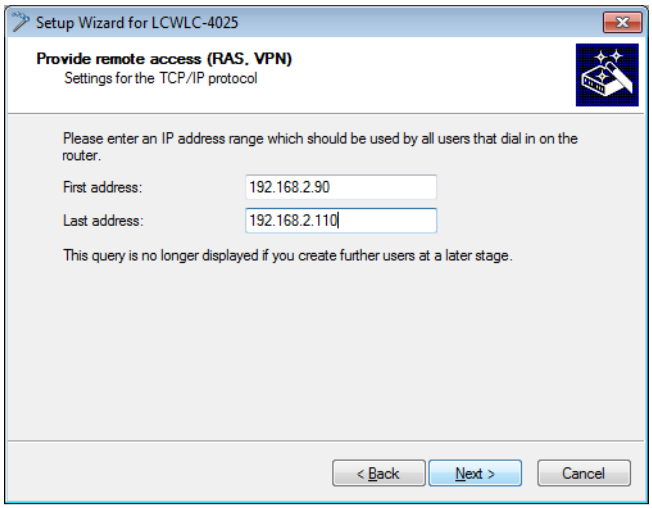


5. Enter a name for this access account and select the address at which the VPN client on the iOS device can reach the router from the Internet. To continue, click on **Next**.



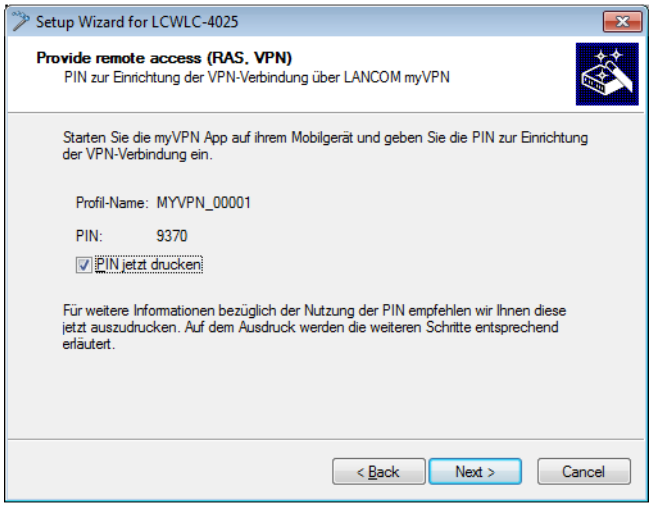
The Setup Wizard will suggest a name that you can accept if you wish.

6. If the VPN device doesn't have a pool of IP addresses configured already, the following dialog will prompt you to specify a unique range of IP addresses as a pool. During dial-in the VPN device will assign a free IP address from this pool to the iOS device.



If the VPN device already has configured a pool of IP addresses for VPN clients, it will automatically use this address pool and skip the dialog shown above.

7. The Setup Wizard displays the profile name and the PIN that was auto-generated for the VPN client. If you want to print out the PIN now, select the option **Print PIN now**. Click on **Next**.



8. By clicking on **Finish** the Setup Wizard stores all the settings on the corresponding VPN device. If applicable, it then starts with the printout of the myVPN PIN.
   The myVPN module is now enabled on the selected VPN device. On your iOS device, you can now start the myVPN app and enter the PIN to retrieve the VPN profile.

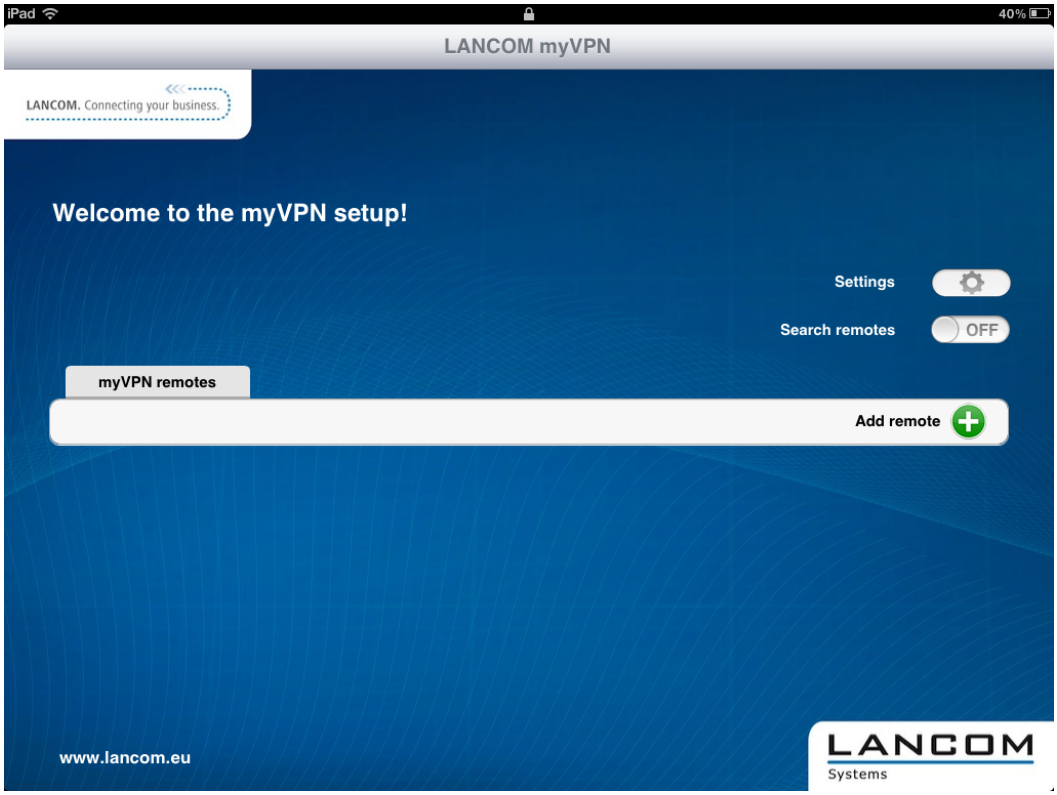
Retrieve the VPN profile with the LANCOM myVPN app

This is how you can use the LANCOM myVPN app on your iOS device to retrieve a VPN profile from a LANCOM VPN device:

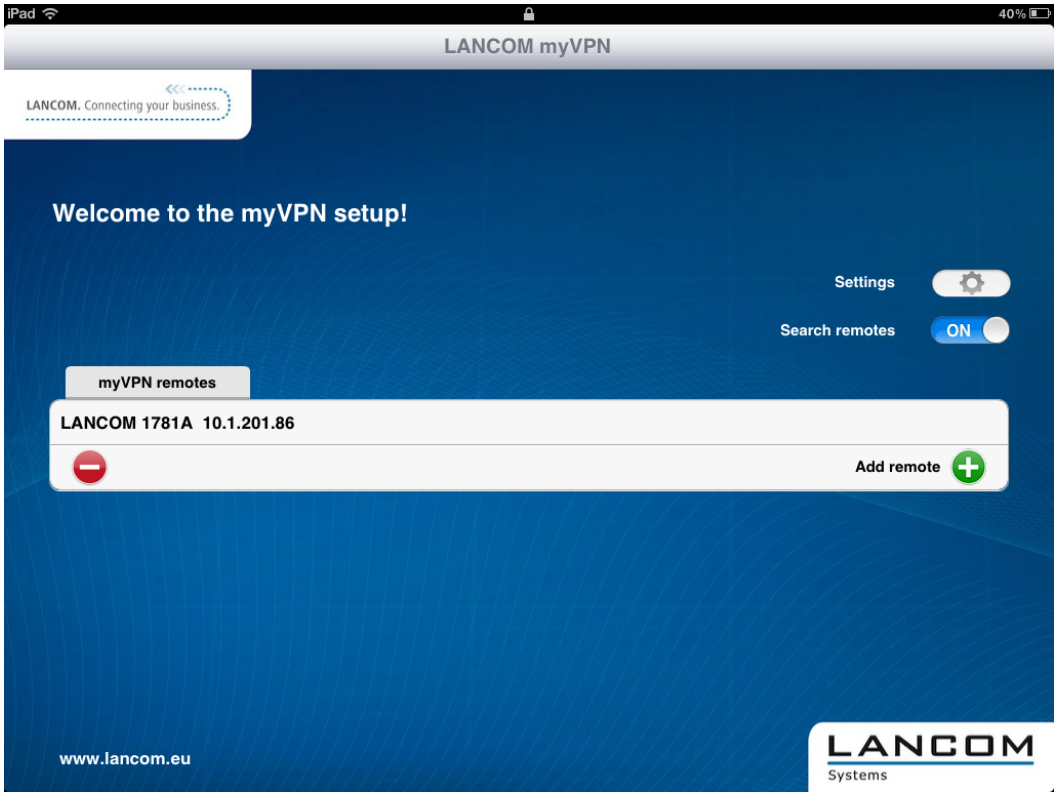
The purpose of the LANCOM myVPN app is to set up the VPN client on iOS devices with the correct parameters and in a quick and easy way. The establishment of the VPN connection to the company network itself is handled directly by the VPN client in the iOS device.

1. Download the LANCOM myVPN app from the Apple App Store.

2. Open the app on your iPhone or iPad.

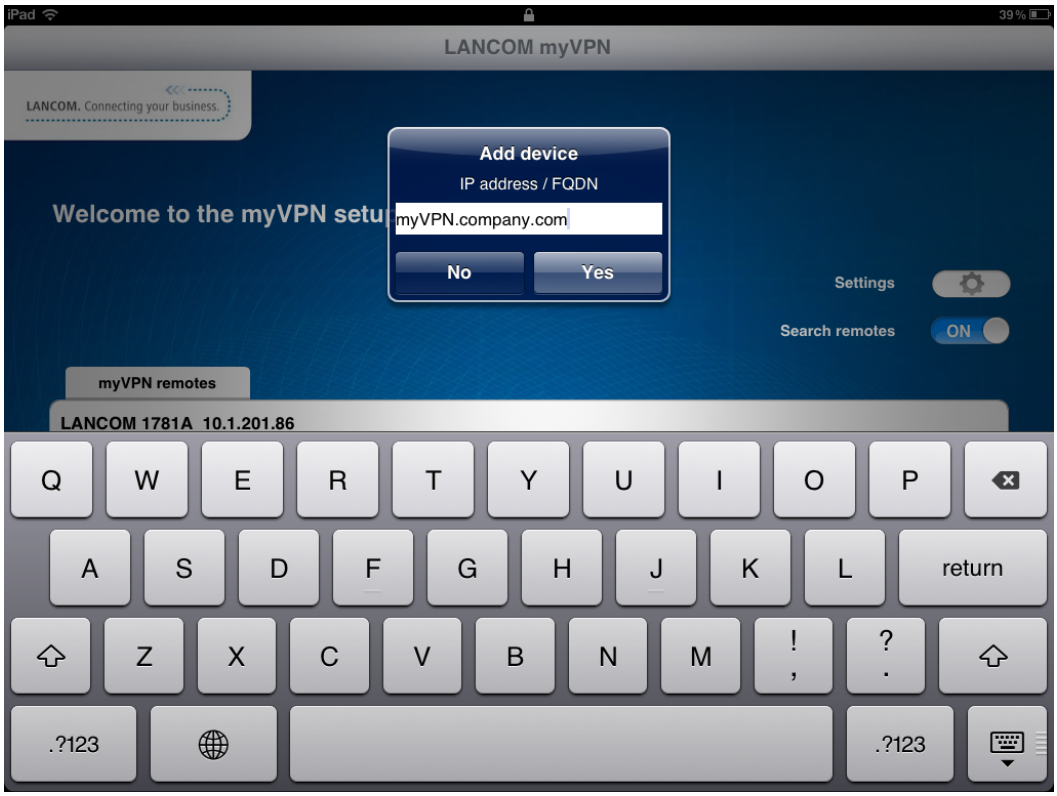


3. Optional: Enable the option **Search remotes** to find VPN devices with an activated LANCOM myVPN module and which is available to iOS devices via WLAN.

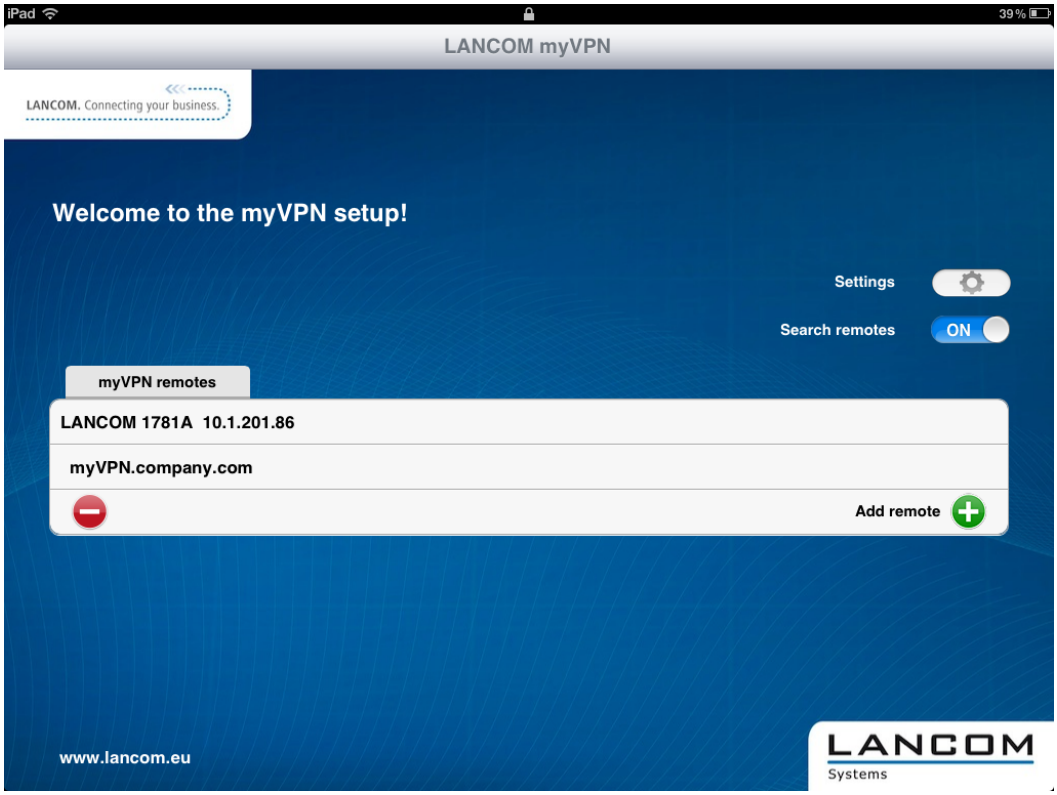


The iOS device now lists all VPN devices which are accessible via WLAN and which have an active LANCOM myVPN module. However, the inclusion of an entry in this list does not necessarily mean that your iOS device can retrieve a LANCOM myVPN profile from this VPN device.

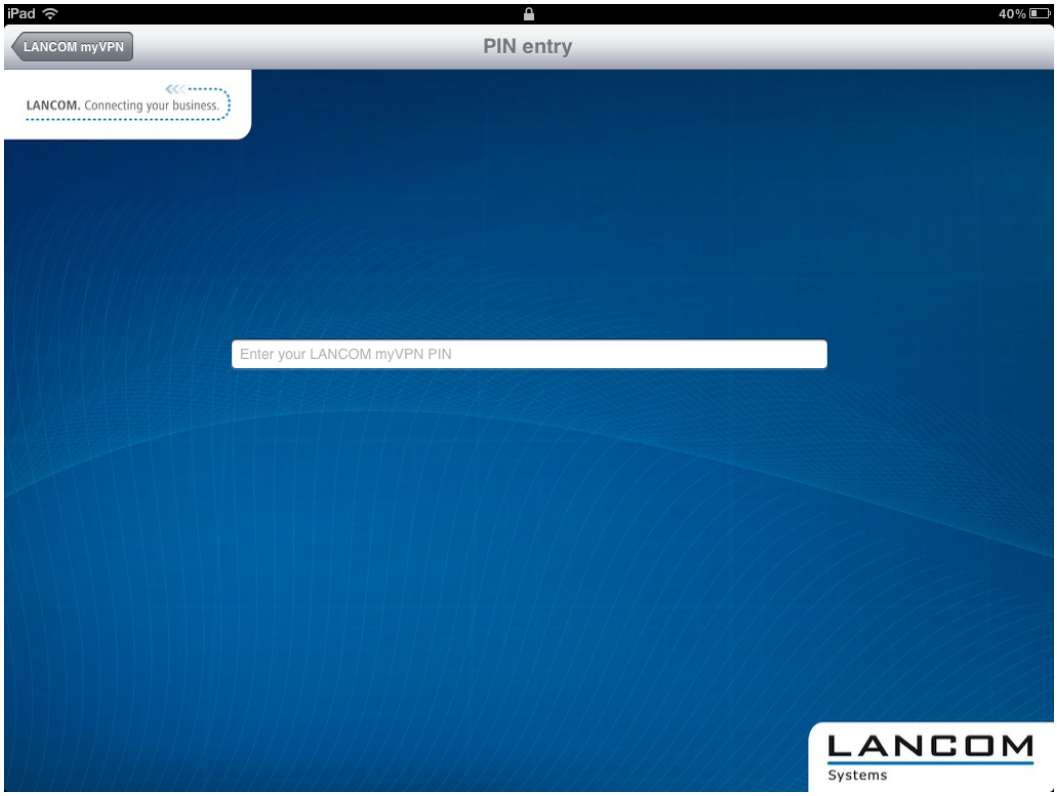
4. Optional: Select the option **Add device manually** to enter the IP address or name of VPN devices that the iOS device can access via an Internet connection (3G or WLAN). In the dialog that follows, enter the IP address or the name of the VPN device and confirm with **Yes**.



5. The app now displays all VPN devices that offer profiles for the LANCOM myVPN app.



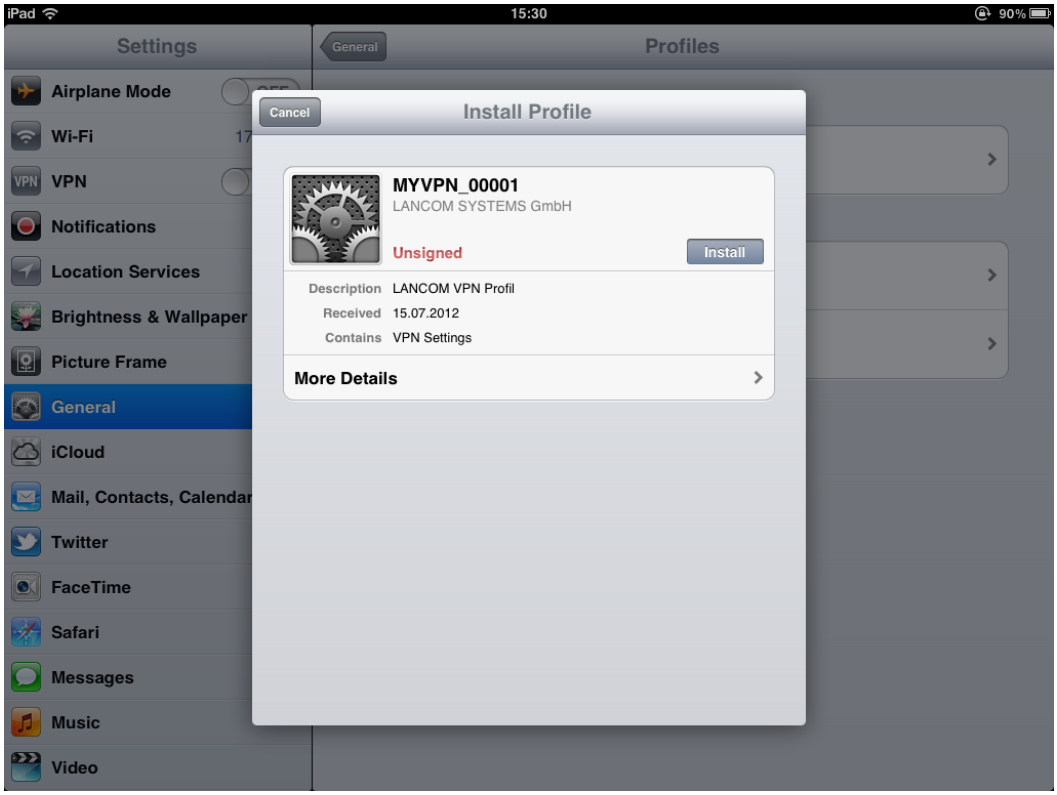
6. Tap on the entry in the list to select the desired VPN device and then enter the PIN required for retrieving the VPN profile.



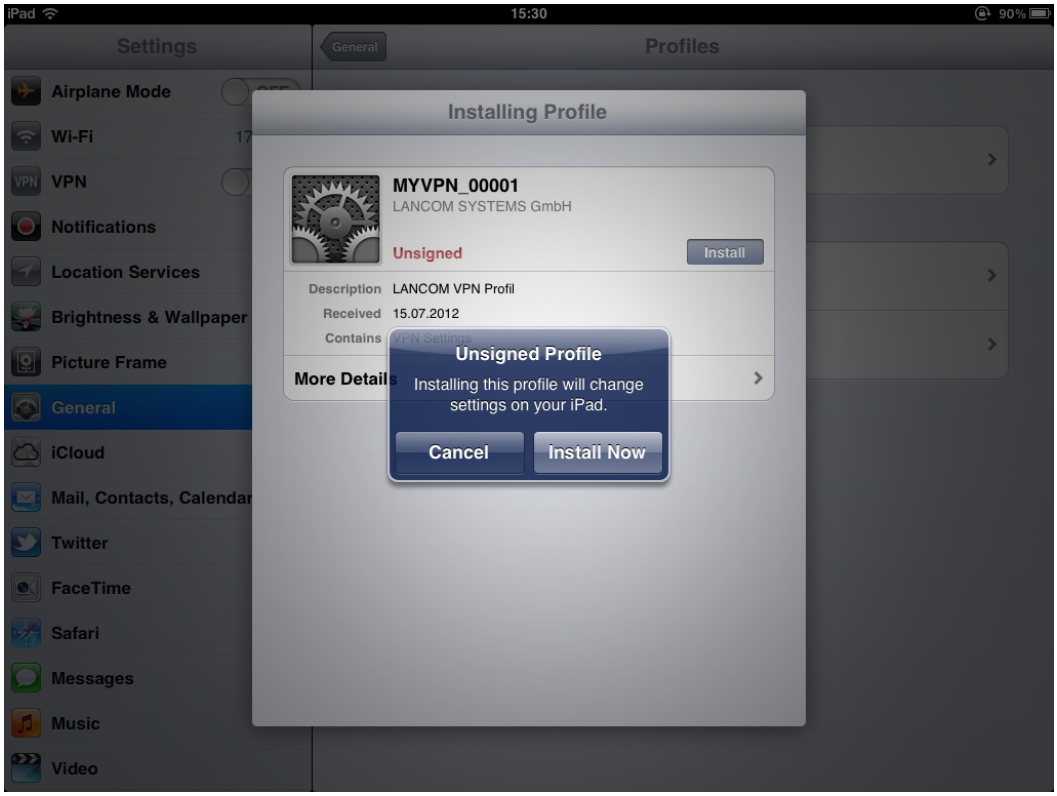
If you enter your PIN incorrectly 5 times, the myVPN module on the LANCOM VPN device will be completely locked for a definite period. In this state, VPN connections remain possible for iOS devices that previously set up their VPN access accounts successfully. However, iOS devices cannot retrieve myVPN profiles from this VPN device so long as the lock is in place. An administrator can re-enable the myVPN module.

7. In the case that the following dialog contains a notice about a non-signed certificate, simply confirm with the **Yes** button.

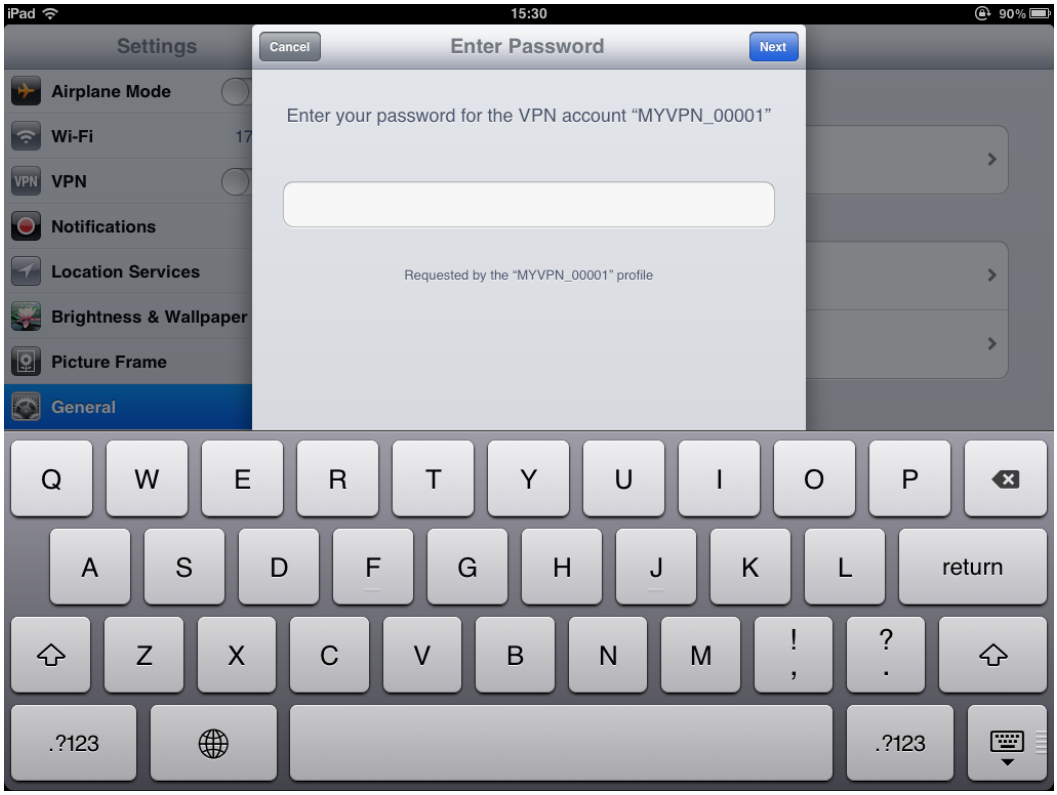
8. In the next dialog, confirm the request to install the profile with the **Install** button.



Confirm the necessary changes to the settings on your iOS device.

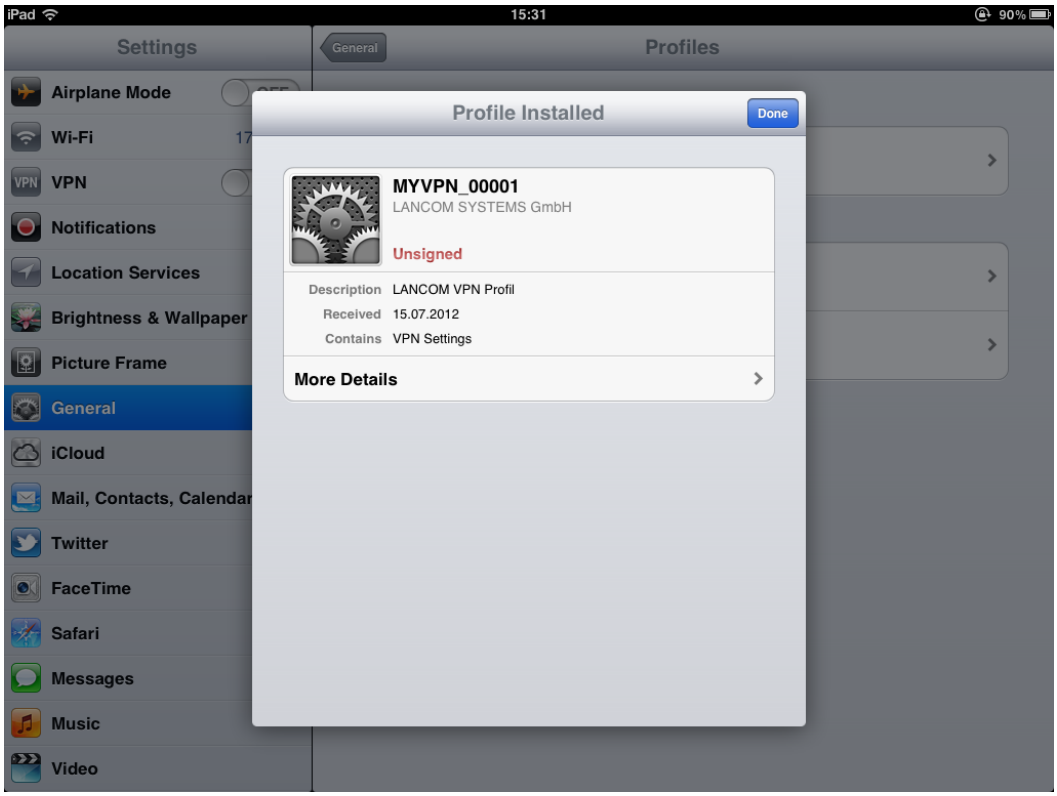


9. The next step of the installation routine is to enter the password for the VPN access account. By default the VPN password is the PIN for the myVPN profile. If you enter the password for the VPN access account here, the iOS device can then establish VPN connections to your company network without requesting a password again. If you leave the box for the VPN password empty, you will be requested for the VPN password every time you connect using the iOS device. Confirm your selection with the **Next** button.

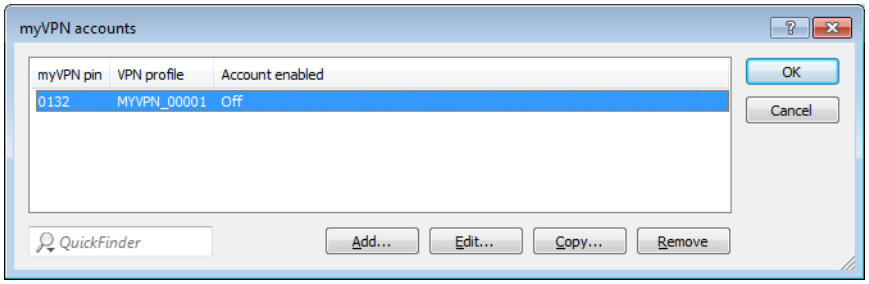


For security reasons we recommend that you do **not** save the VPN-access password on the device. It is a better policy to enter it each time you make the connection.

10. The VPN profile is now fully installed on your iOS device and is ready for establishing a VPN connection to your company network. Confirm that the installation has been concluded by clicking on the **Done** button.



Once retrieved from an iOS device, the myVPN profile is disabled on the LANCOM VPN device. You can check your status with LANconfig by navigating to the configuration area **VPN** > **myVPN** and viewing the **myVPN accounts** list:



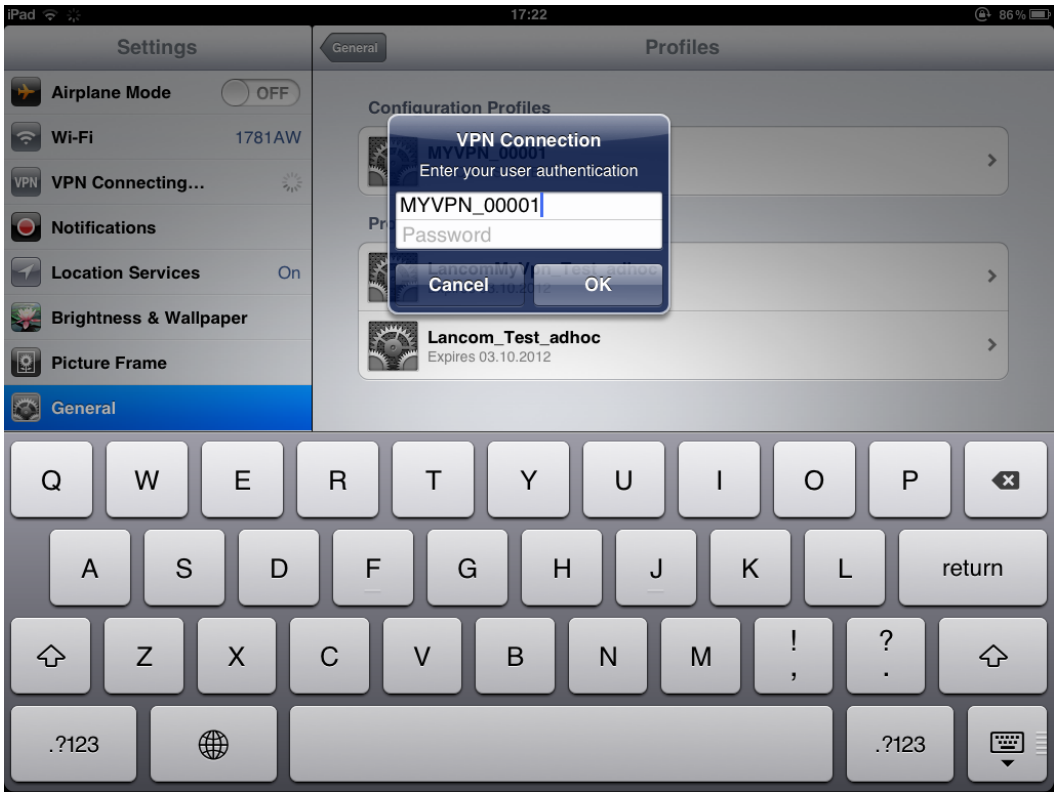
By disabling the myVPN profile, other IOS device are prevented from installing the same myVPN profile and thus using the same VPN access credentials. However, disabling the myVPN profile has no effect on the VPN connection itself.

Establishing and closing the VPN connection on the iOS device

After you have installed the VPN profile on your iOS device with the LANCOM myVPN app, you establish and close the VPN connection to your company network as follows:

1. Activate the VPN tunnel in the configuration area **Settings** under the option **VPN**.

2. The following dialog already displays the user name from the myVPN profile. Enter the password for the VPN connection and confirm with **OK**.



By default, the password for the VPN connection is the PIN for the myVPN profile.

The password is already displayed if you entered the password for the VPN connection while installing the myVPN profile. In this case the connection is established directly without showing this window.

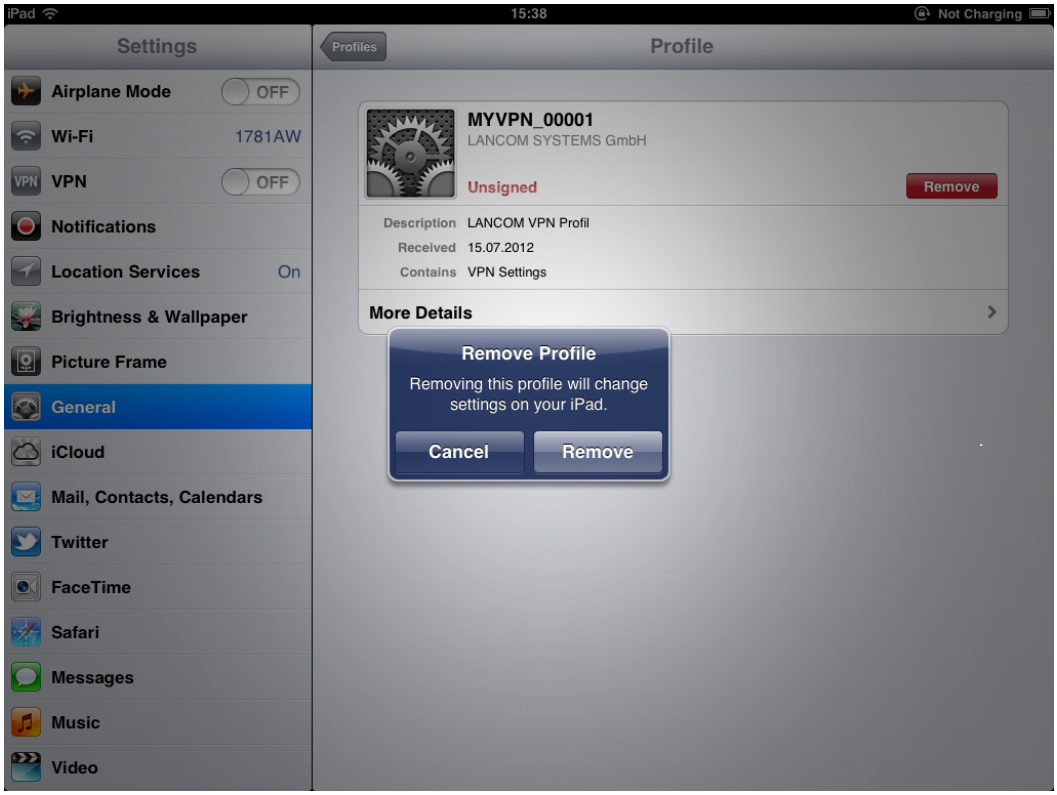
3. Close the VPN connection on your iOS device in the configuration area **Settings** under the option **VPN**.

Deleting a VPN profile from the iOS device

To delete the VPN profile you can use the LANCOM myVPN app:

1. Navigate to **Settings** > **General** > **Profiles** to the list of available profiles on your iOS device.

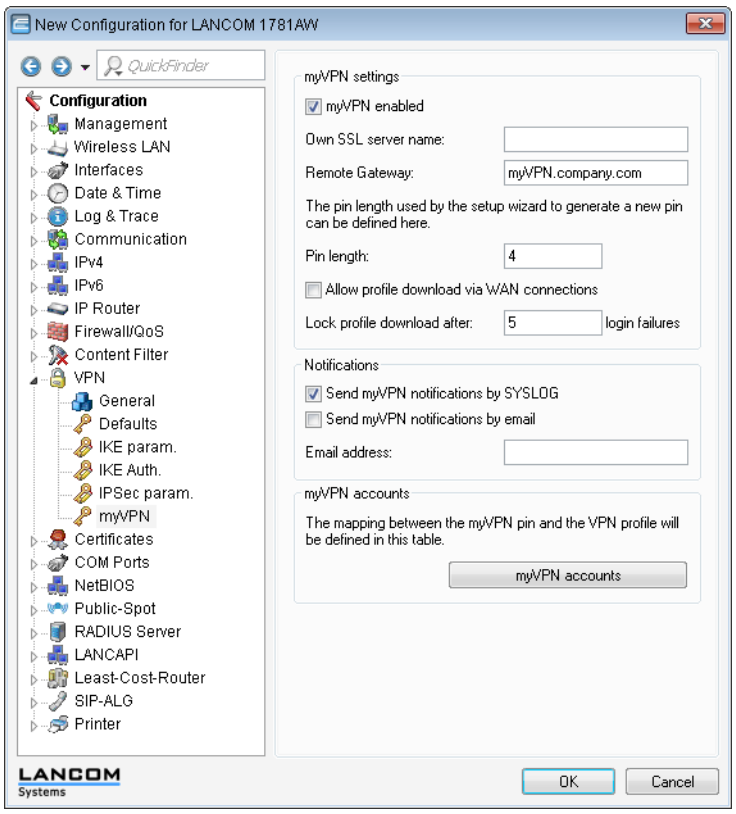
2. Select the profile, click on **Remove** and confirm the action again in the next dialog with **Remove**.



Enhancements to LANconfig

Configuring the LANCOM myVPN app

Under **VPN** > **myVPN** you can manually adjust the settings for the LANCOM myVPN app.



Check the **myVPN enabled** box to allow the LANCOM myVPN app to load a VPN profile.

Specify the **Device name** here if a trusted SSL certificate is installed on this device. This ensures that the IOS device does not issue a warning about an untrusted certificate when the profile is retrieved.

Use the field **Remote gateway** to enter the WAN address of the router or its name as resolved by public DNS servers. If the myVPN app cannot find the remote gateway by means of automatic search, you should enter this gateway into the myVPN app.

The item **PIN length** sets the length of new PINs generated by the setup wizard (default = 4).

Activate the option **Send myVPN notifications by SYSLOG** to send messages about the myVPN app to SYSLOG.

Activate the option **Send myVPN notifications by e-mail** to send messages about the myVPN app to a specified e-mail address.

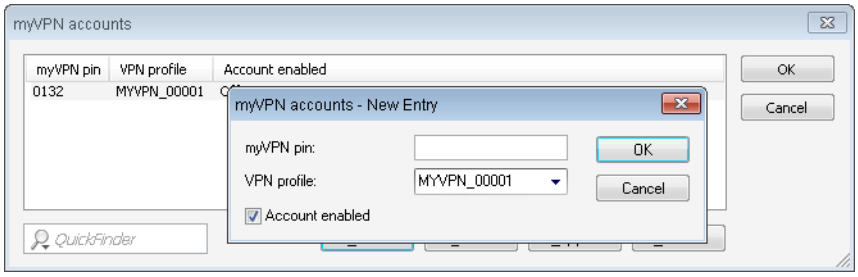
These messages include:

- Successful profile retrieval
- Disabled login for LANCOM myVPN due to too many failed attempts
- Re-enabling of the login (irrespective of whether this is done manually or if the specified time period has expired)

Specify the **E-mail address** to which messages about the myVPN app are to be sent.

The transmission of e-mails must be enabled in the VPN device.

The item **myVPN accounts** is used to assign the myVPN PIN to the VPN profiles.



Here you determine which **VPN profile** is to supply data to the myVPN app upon retrieval of the profile.

You set the myVPN PIN that is to be entered when the LANCOM myVPN app is to retrieve the profile.

Security notice: As a security feature of myVPN, the repeated incorrect entry of a PIN causes the device to temporarily disable profile retrieval, and a notification is sent by SYSLOG and by e-mail. After five failed attempts, the device disables profile retrieval for 15 minutes. Five more failed attempts, profile retrieval is disabled for a day. In case of further failed attempts, the time periods vary. Manually releasing this lock resets the corresponding counter. Please also be aware that an attempt to retrieve the profile while access is disabled (e. g. when the profile has previously been retrieved successfully) is also considered by the device to be a failed attempt.

You activate the profile by checking the **Account enabled** box.

After the profile has been retrieved successfully, the device automatically disables the corresponding profile to avoid the repeated download by another device.

Once you save these settings to the device, the myVPN module is active on the selected VPN device. On your iOS device, you can now start the LANCOM myVPN app and enter the PIN to retrieve the VPN profile.

10.18 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.80

10.18.1 Deleting all VPN errors with one command

As of LCOS 8.80, you have the ability to delete all of the VPN errors in a device with a single command.

10.18.2 Default proposals for IKE and IPSec

The proposals for IKE and IPSec now support a key length of 256 bits in the default settings.

A firmware upgrade initially does not enable this change, so avoiding any problems for existing installations. To accept the changes, you must perform a reset of the device or reset the tables. For new devices with LCOS 8.62 or later, the new defaults are already active.

10.18.3 Selecting DH group 14 for VPN connections

The IKE and PFS group for VPN connections now support the DH group 14 with a key length of 2048.

10.18.4 Replay detection

Replay detection is a feature of the IPSec standard for the detection of so-called replay attacks. In a replay attack, an unauthorized station logs data and sends this, either repeatedly or with a delay, to a remote site to simulate a different identity.

Replay detection defines a certain number of consecutive packets (a "window" with the length of "n"). Because the IPSec standard provides the packages with a continuous sequence number, the receiving VPN device can determine whether a packet contains a sequence number from the permitted window. If, for example, the current highest received sequence number is 10,000 and the window width is 100, then a sequence number of 9,888 is outside the permitted window.

Replay detection discards received packets if:

- they contain a sequence number before the current window, in which case they are seen as being too old, or if
- they contain a sequence number which has already been received by the VPN device, in which case replay detection evaluates this package as part of a replay attack

Please consider the following aspects when configuring the replay-detection window:

- If you select too large a window, then replay detection may overlook a replay attack
- If you make the window too small, replay detection may drop legitimate packets that became reordered during data transfer, so generating errors on the VPN connection

You have to weigh-up the application of replay detection for your particular case. Only activate replay detection if the security of the VPN connection is more important to you than interference-free data transfer.

10.18.5 myVPN

The LANCOM myVPN app offers you a very easy way to set up a VPN connection to your company network from your iPhone, iPad or iPod (or from any iOS device in general). The LANCOM myVPN app offers the following functions:

- Highly secure, mobile VPN connections
- Handles the complex VPN configuration of the VPN client integrated into iOS devices and of the LANCOM router
- PIN-protected authentication for VPN tunnel creation
- Access control with configurable firewall rules on the LANCOM VPN gateway
- LANCOM myVPN user management and automatic detection of myVPN-enabled LANCOM gateways
- For version 4.1 iOS devices and later

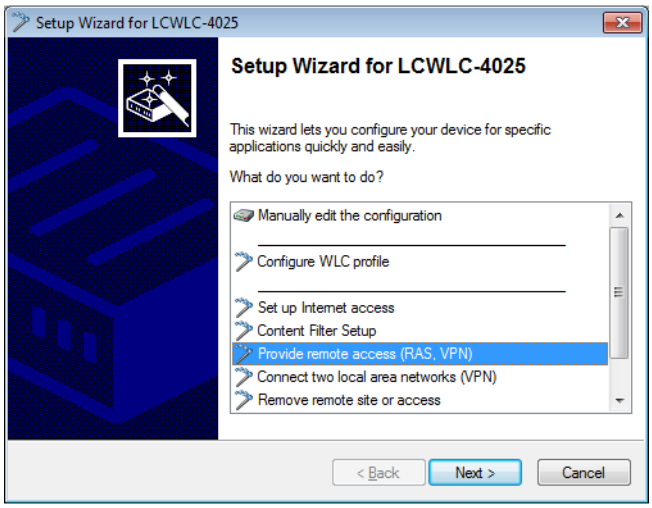
After its installation, the LANCOM myVPN app retrieves a VPN profile from your LANCOM VPN device and automatically configures all of the necessary settings on the iOS device. You can then use the internal features of the iOS to establish a VPN connection to your company network in just a few steps.

Using the Setup Wizard in LANconfig to set up a VPN profile for the LANCOM myVPN app

This is how to use the Setup Wizard to provide an access account for a VPN client on an iOS device:

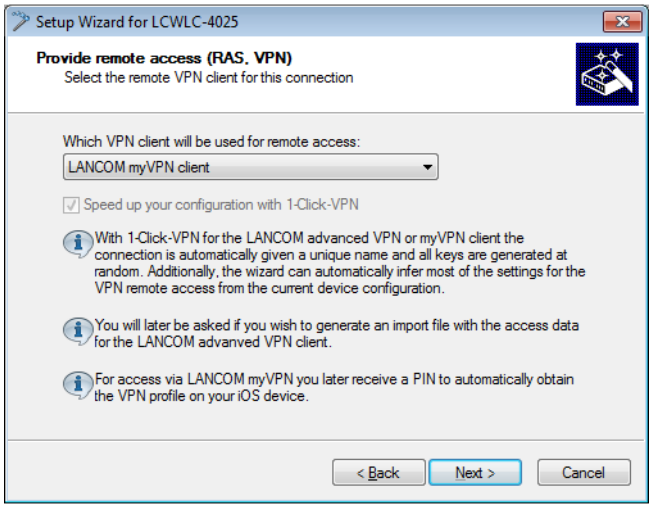
1. Start LANconfig, for example from the Windows start menu with **Start** > **Programs** > **LANCOM** > **LANconfig**. LANconfig now automatically searches the local network for devices.
2. Choose the required device from the selection window in LANconfig and select the **Setup Wizard** button or use the menu under **Tools** > **Setup Wizard**.

3. Select the item **Provide remote access (RAS, VPN)** and then click on **Next**.

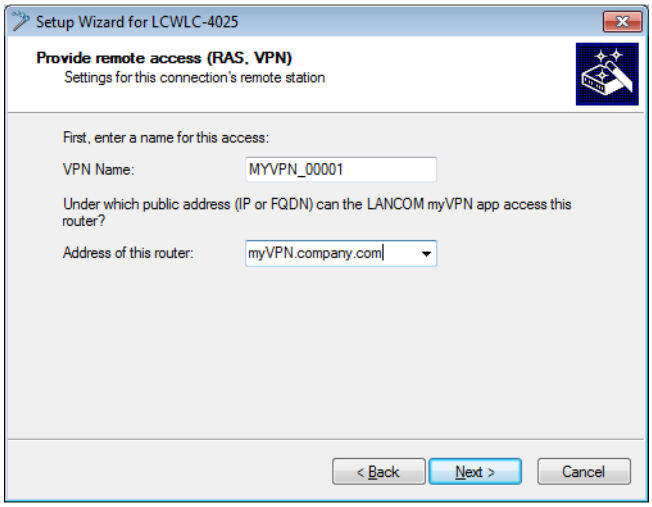


You can skip the following information dialog with **Next**.

4. From the drop-down list select the option **LANCOM myVPN client** and click on **Next**.

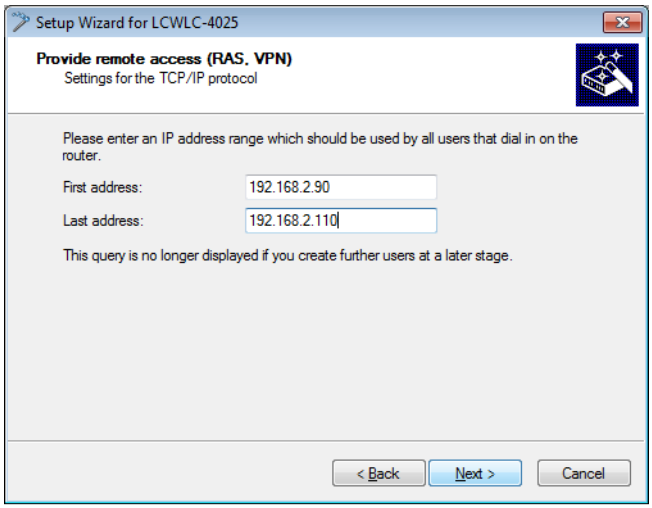


5. Enter a name for this access account and select the address at which the VPN client on the iOS device can reach the router from the Internet. To continue, click on **Next**.



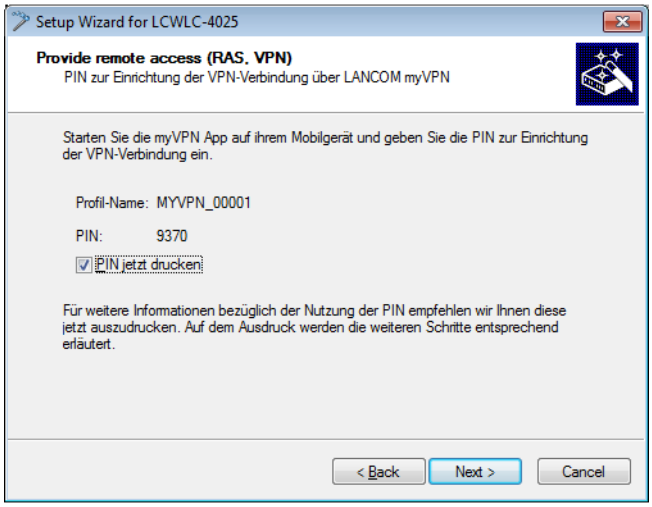
The Setup Wizard will suggest a name that you can accept if you wish.

6. If you have not yet configured a pool for allocating IP addresses to the connecting VPN devices, the wizard will prompt you the first time to specify a range of IP addresses for the pool in the following dialog. When connecting, the VPN device automatically assigns a free IP address to the iOS device from this pool.



If you have already configured a pool for allocating IP addresses to the connecting VPN devices, the VPN device automatically uses an address from the address pool, and the wizard skips the dialog shown here.

7. The Setup Wizard displays the profile name and the PIN that was auto-generated for the VPN client. If you want to print out the PIN now, select the option **Print PIN now**. Click on **Next**.



8. By clicking on **Finish** the Setup Wizard stores all the settings on the corresponding VPN device. If applicable, it then starts printing out the myVPN PIN.
   The myVPN module now enabled on the selected VPN device. On your iOS device, you can now start the myVPN app and enter the PIN to retrieve the VPN profile.

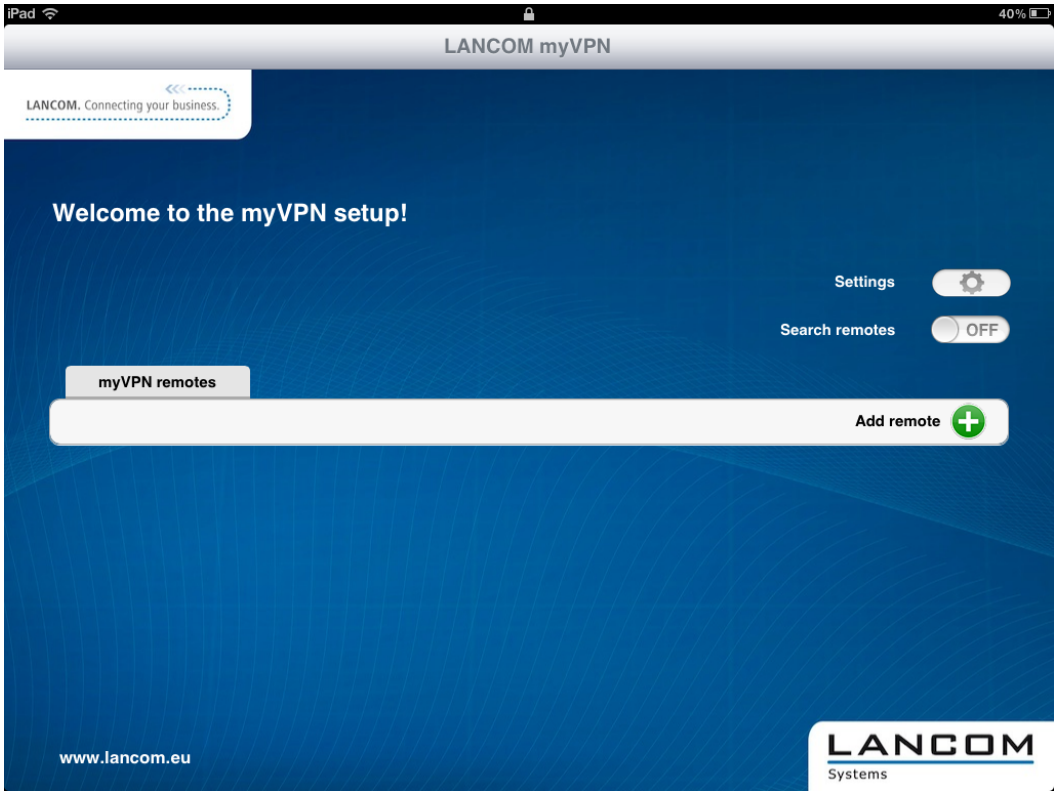
Retrieve the VPN profile with the LANCOM myVPN app

This is how you can use the LANCOM myVPN app on your iOS device to retrieve a VPN profile from a LANCOM VPN device:

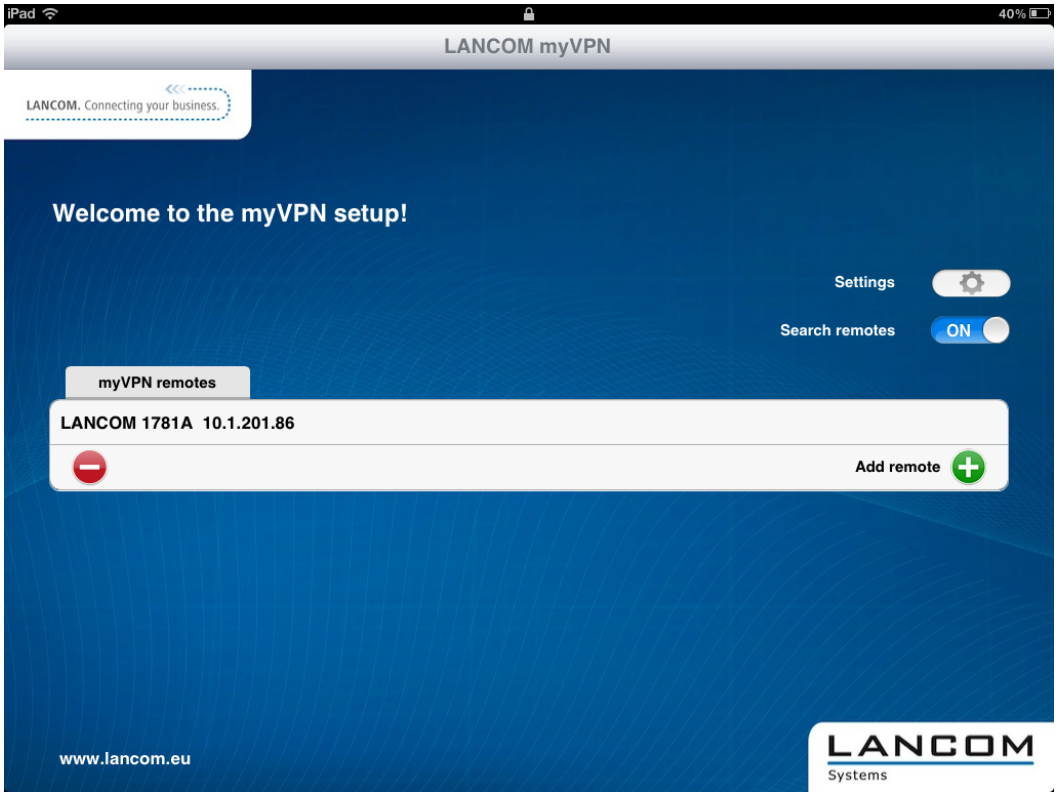
The purpose of the LANCOM myVPN app is to set up the VPN client on iOS devices with the correct parameters and in a quick and easy fashion. The establishment of the VPN connection to the company network itself is handled directly by the VPN client in the iOS device.

1. Download the LANCOM myVPN app from the Apple App Store.

2. Open the app on your iPhone or iPad.

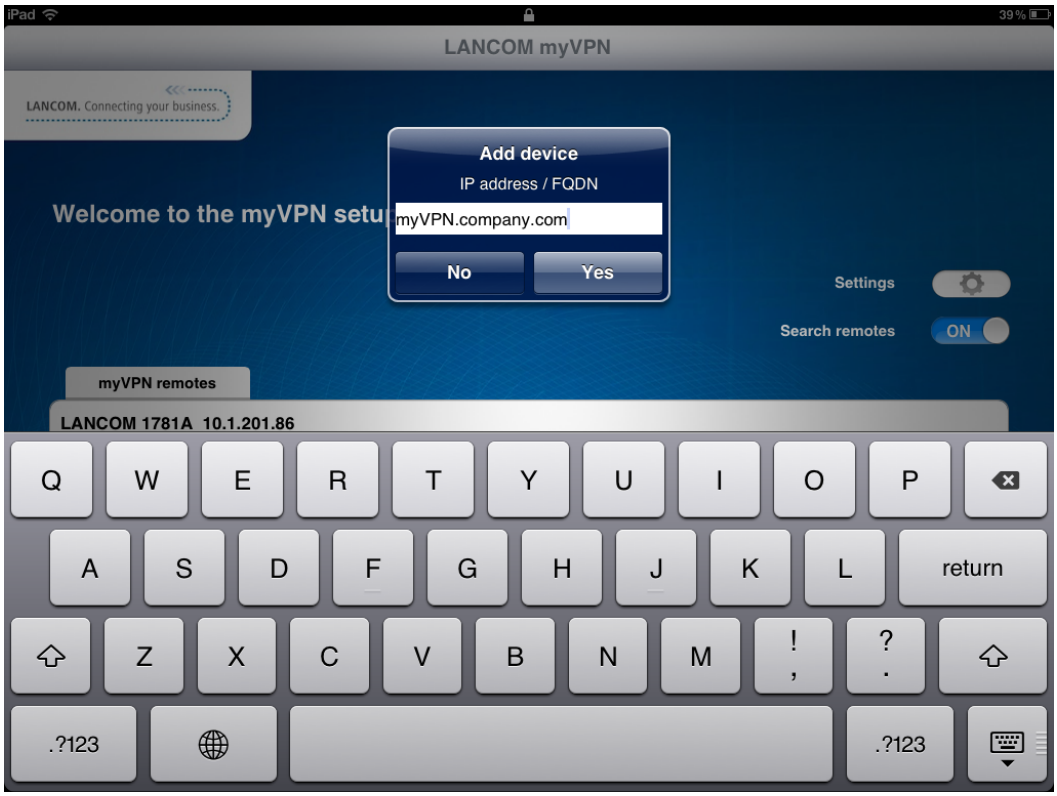


3. Optional: Enable the option **Automatic search** to find VPN devices with an activated LANCOM myVPN module, which are available to iOS devices via WLAN.

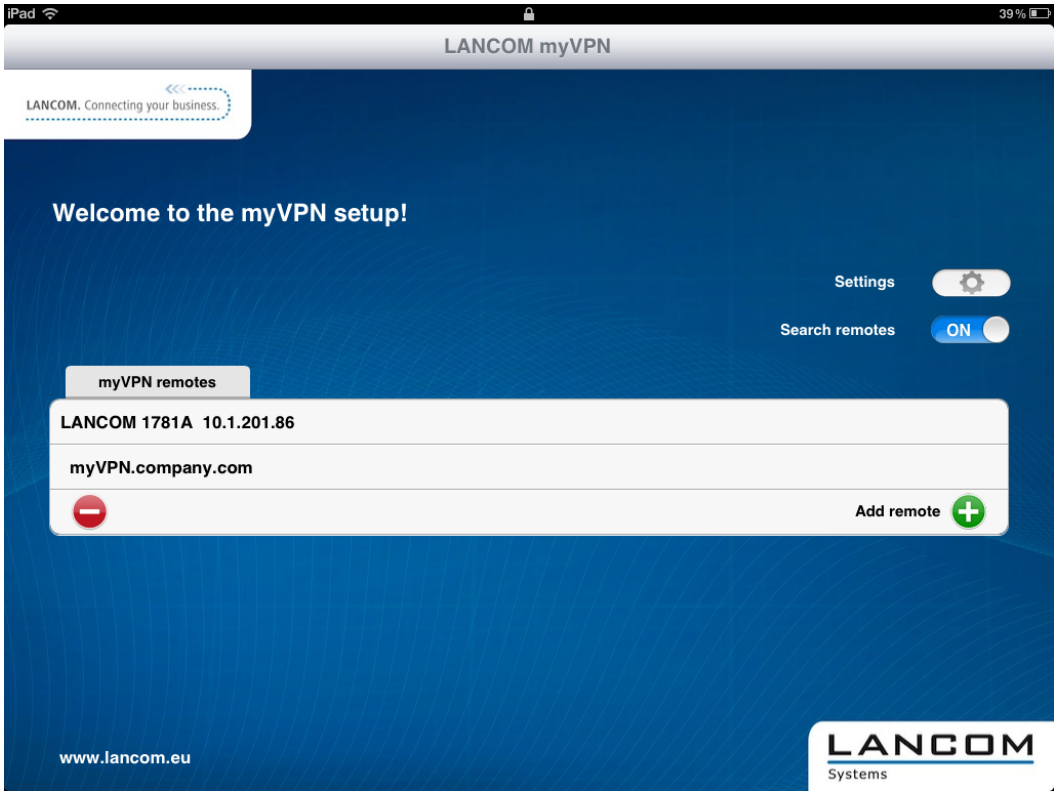


The iOS device now lists all VPN devices which are accessible via WLAN and which have an active LANCOM myVPN module. However, the inclusion of an entry in this list does not necessarily mean that your iOS device can retrieve a LANCOM myVPN profile from this VPN device.

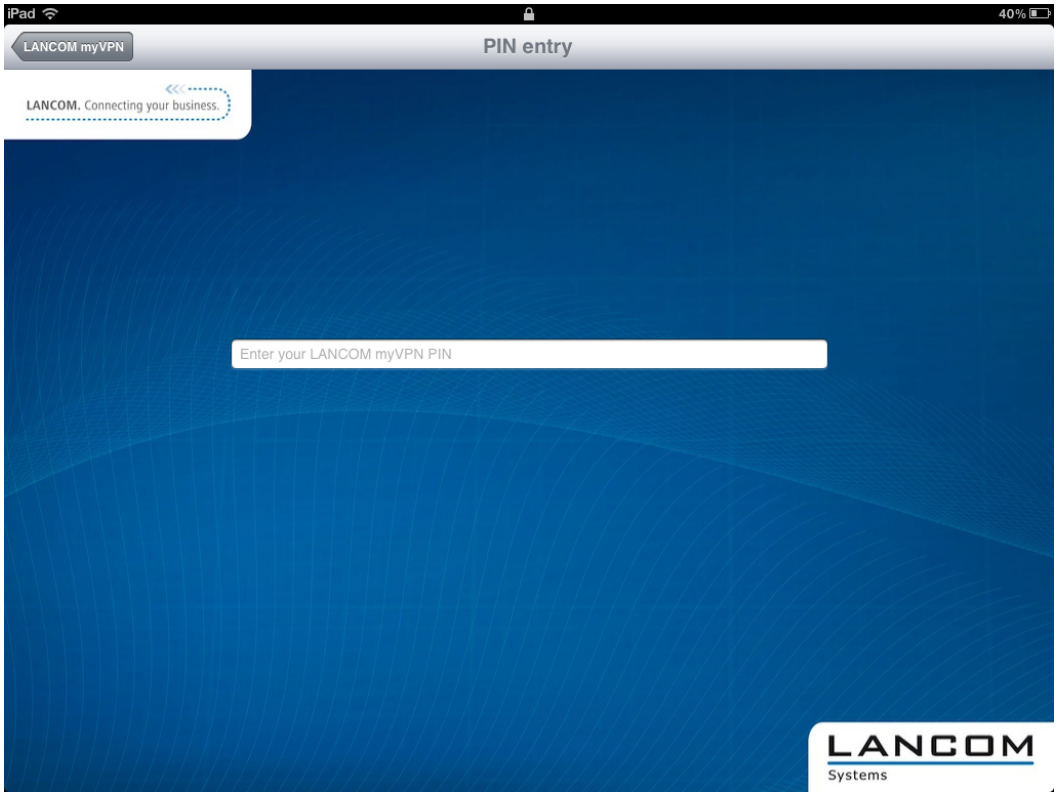
4. Optional: Select the option **Add device manually** to enter the IP address or name of VPN devices that the iOS device can access via an Internet connection (3G or WLAN). In the dialog that follows, enter the IP address or the name of the VPN device and confirm with **Yes**.



5. The app now displays all VPN devices that offer profiles for the LANCOM myVPN app.



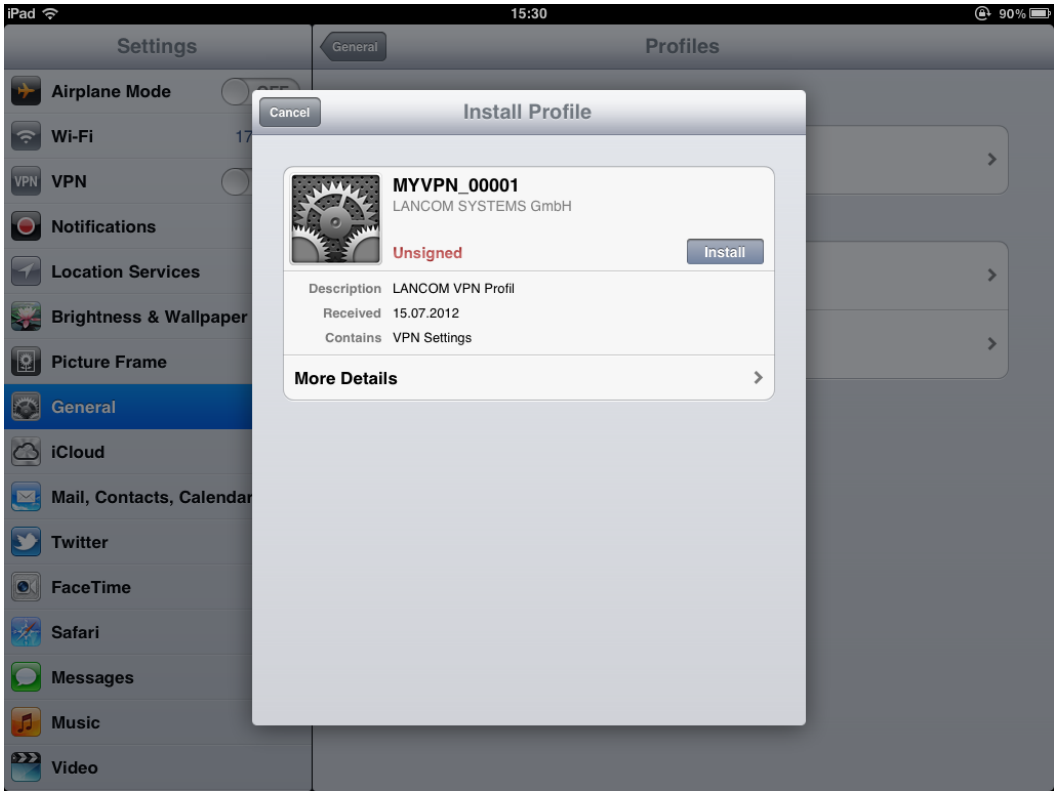
6. Tap on the entry in the list to select the desired VPN device and then enter the PIN required for retrieving the VPN profile.



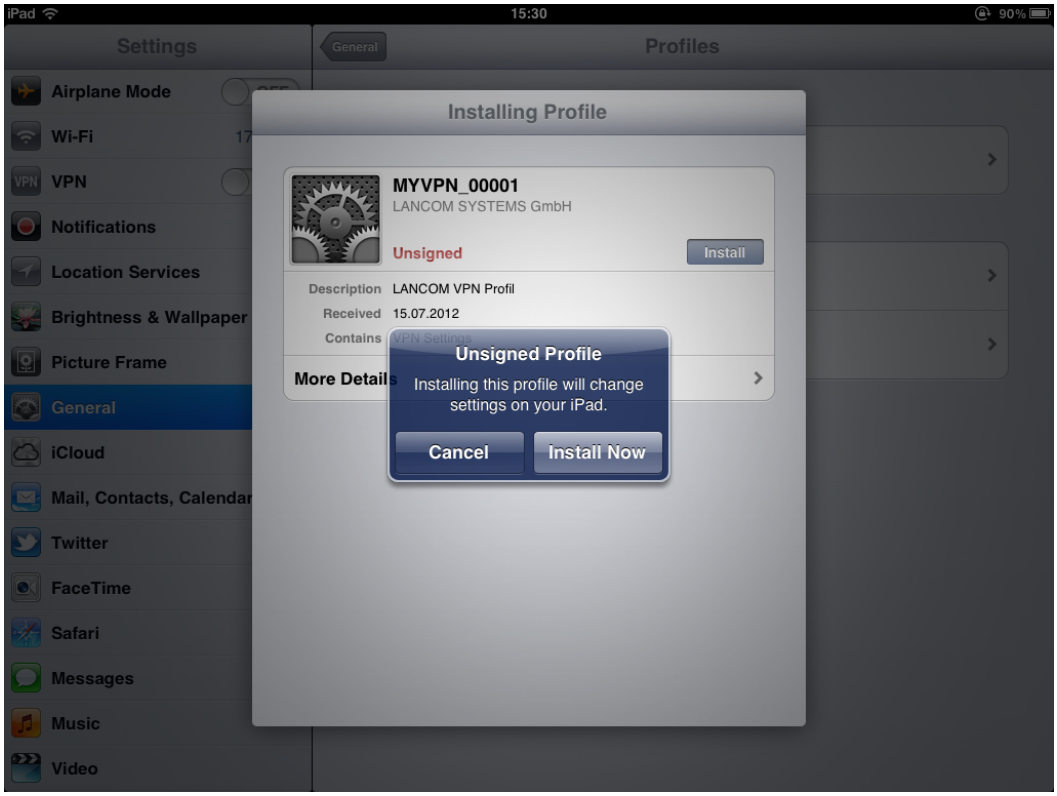
If you enter your PIN incorrectly 5 times, the myVPN module on the LANCOM VPN device will be completely locked for a specific time period. In this state, VPN connections remain possible for iOS devices that previously set up their VPN access accounts successfully. However, iOS devices cannot retrieve myVPN profiles from this VPN device so long as the lock is in place. An administrator can re-enable the myVPN module.

7. If the following dialog contains a notice about an unsigned certificate, simply confirm it with **Yes**.

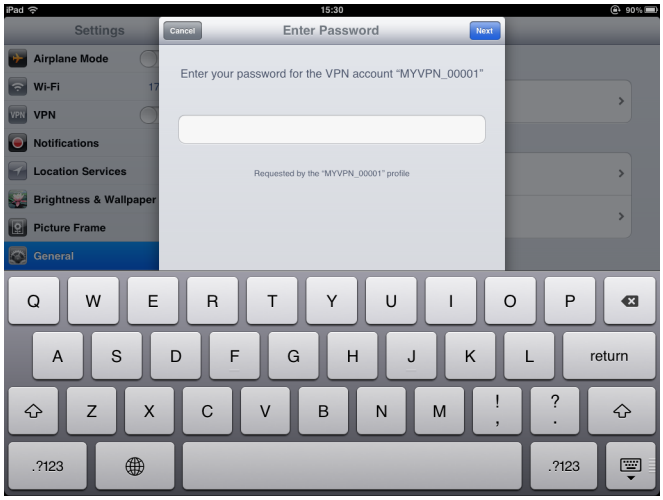
8. In the next dialog, confirm the request to install the profile with the **Install** button.



Confirm the necessary changes to the settings on your iOS device.

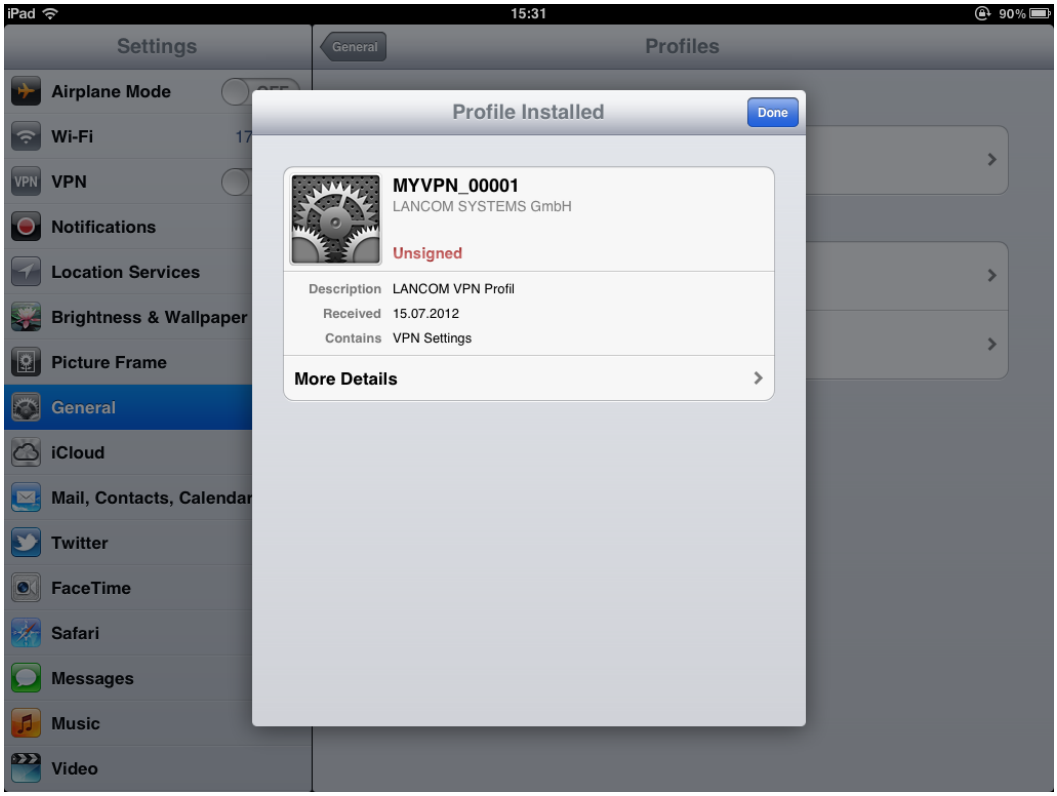


9. The next step of the installation routine is to enter the password for the VPN access account. By default, the VPN password is the PIN for the myVPN profile. If you enter the password for the VPN access account here, the iOS device can establish a VPN connection to your company network without requesting a password. If you leave the box for the VPN password empty, you will be asked for the VPN password every time you connect using the iOS device. Confirm your selection with the **Next** button.

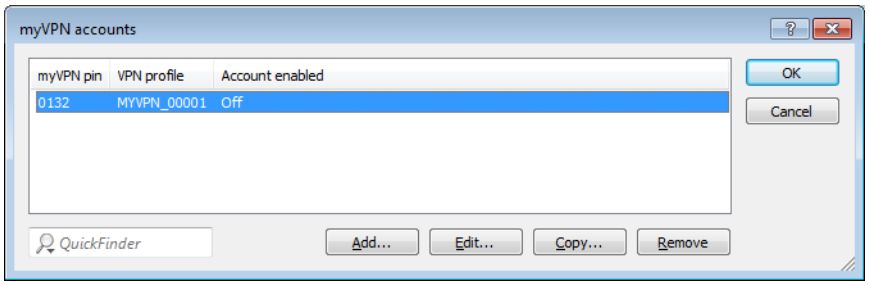


For security reasons we recommend that you do **not** save the VPN access password on the device, but that you enter it each time you wish to connect.

10. The VPN profile is now fully installed on your iOS device and is ready for setting up a VPN connection to your company network. Confirm that the installation has been concluded by clicking on the **Complete** button.



Once installed on an iOS device, the LANCOM VPN device disables the installation routine for this myVPN profile. You can check your status with LANconfig by navigating to the configuration area **VPN** > **myVPN** and viewing the **myVPN accounts** list:

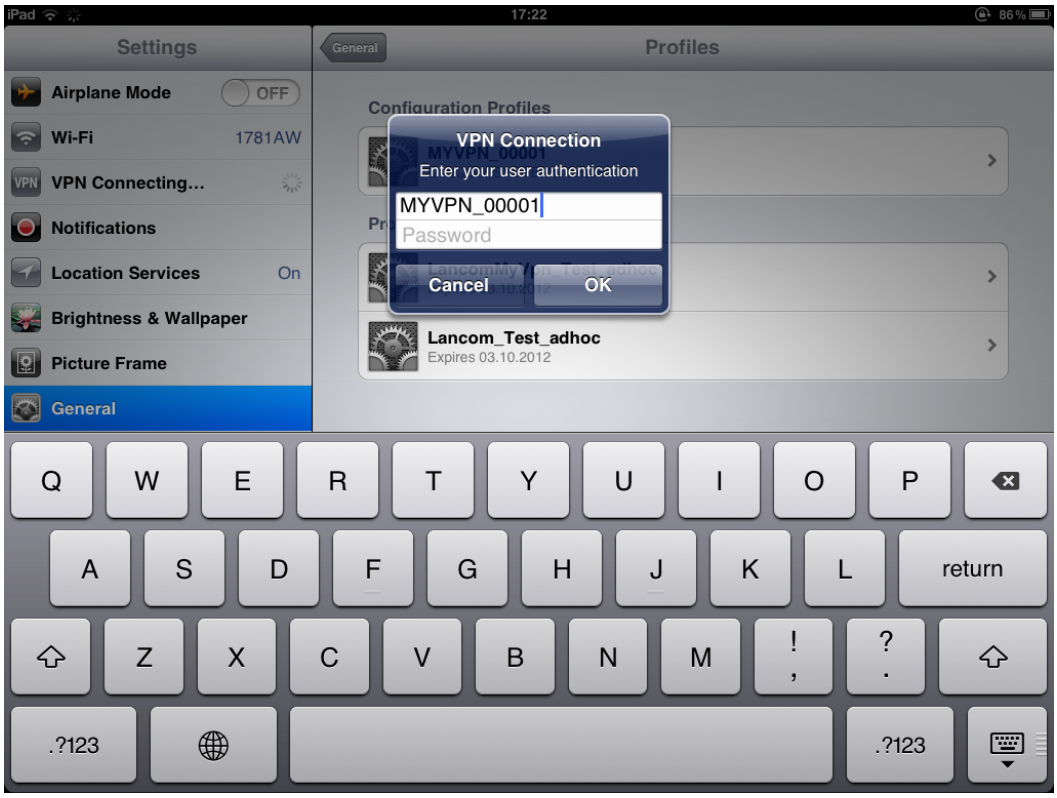


By disabling the myVPN profile, other IOS device are prevented from installing the same myVPN profile and thus using the same VPN access credentials. However, disabling the myVPN profile has no effect on the VPN connection itself.

Opening and closing the VPN connection on the iOS device

After you have installed the VPN profile on your iOS device with the LANCOM myVPN app, you open and close the VPN connection to your company network as follows:

1. Enable the VPN tunnel in the configuration area **Settings** under the option **VPN**.
2. The following dialog already displays the user name from the myVPN profile. Enter the password for the VPN connection and confirm with **OK**.



By default, the password for the VPN connection is the PIN for the myVPN profile.

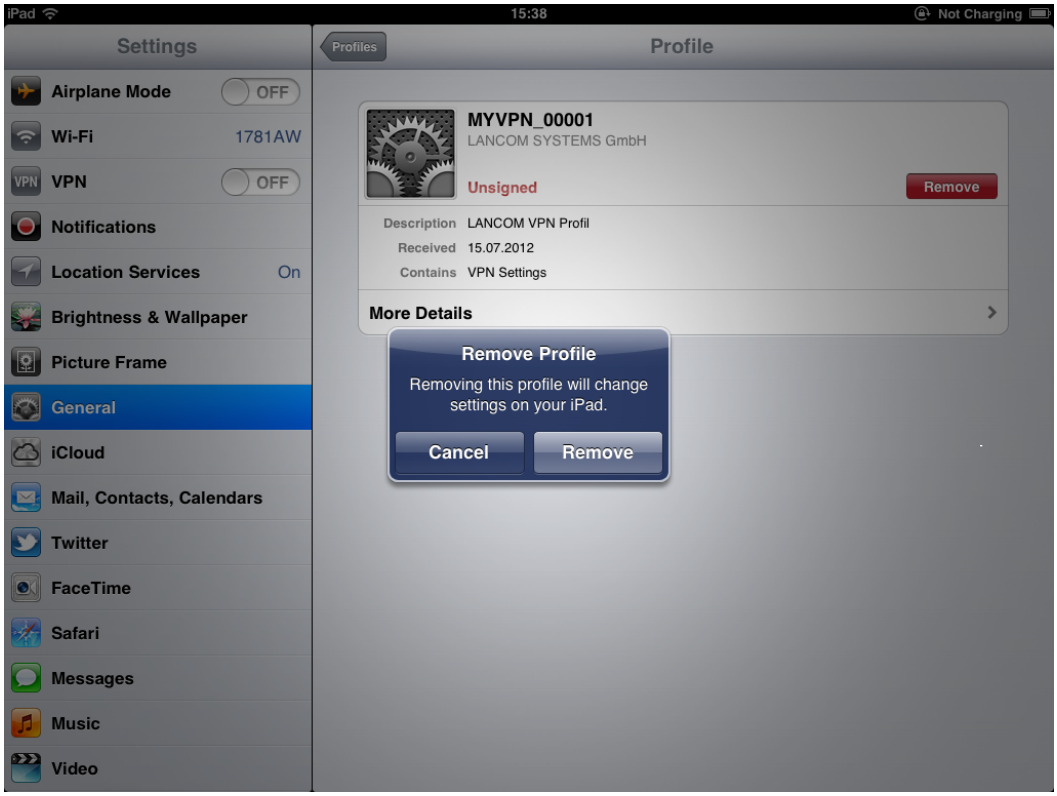
The password does not have to be entered if you entered it while installing the myVPN profile for the VPN connection. In this case, this window is not displayed, and the connection will be established immediately.

3. Close the VPN connection on your iOS device in the configuration area **Settings** under the option **VPN**.

Deleting a VPN profile from the iOS device

To delete the VPN profile from your iOS device:

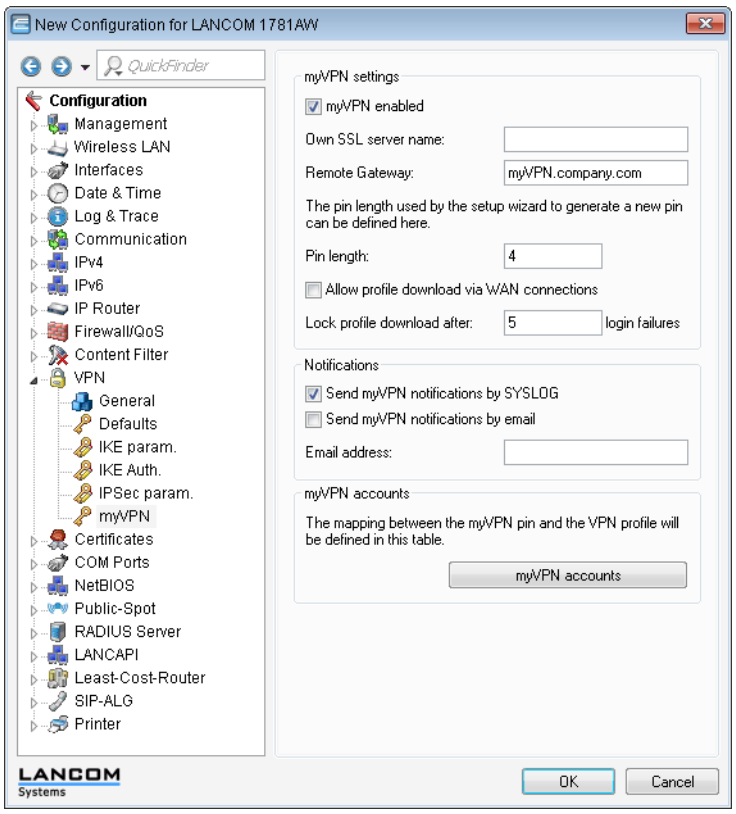
1. Navigate to **Settings** > **General** > **Profiles** to the list of available profiles on your iOS device.
2. Select the profile, click on **Delete** and confirm the action again in the next dialog with **Delete**.



Enhancements to LANconfig

Configuring the LANCOM myVPN app

Under **VPN** > **myVPN** you can manually adjust the settings for the LANCOM myVPN app.



Check the **myVPN enabled** box to allow the LANCOM myVPN app to load a VPN profile.

Specify the **Device name** here if a trusted SSL certificate is installed on this device. This ensures that the IOS device does not issue a warning about an untrusted certificate when the profile is retrieved.

Use the field **Remote gateway** to enter the WAN address of the router or its name as resolved by public DNS servers. If not found automatically, enter the remote gateway into the LANCOM myVPN app.

Specify the **PIN length** to be used by the setup wizard for generating new PINs (default = 4).

You can allow or prevent the **profile download via WAN connections**.

You can limit the number of login failures accepted by the myVPN app in the field **Lock profile downlod after**.

Activate the option **Send myVPN notifications by SYSLOG** to send messages about the myVPN app to SYSLOG.

Activate the option **Send myVPN notifications by e-mail** to send messages about the myVPN app to a specified e-mail address.

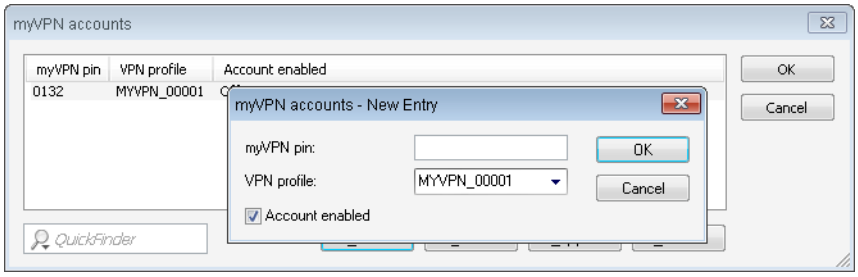
These messages include:

- Successful profile retrieval
- Disabled login for LANCOM myVPN due to too many failed attempts
- Re-enabling of the login (irrespective of whether this is done manually or if the specified time period has expired)

Specify the **E-mail address** to which messages about the LANCOM myVPN app are to be sent.

E-mail must be configured on the VPN device.

The item **myVPN accounts** is used to assign the myVPN PIN to the VPN profiles.



Here you determine which **VPN profile** is to supply data to the myVPN app upon retrieval of the profile.

You set the myVPN PIN that is to be entered when the LANCOM myVPN app is to retrieve the profile.

Security notice: As a security feature of myVPN, the repeated incorrect entry of a PIN causes the device to temporarily disable profile retrieval, and a notification is sent by SYSLOG and by e-mail. After three failed attempts, the device disables profile retrieval for 15 minutes. After five further failed attempts, profile retrieval is disabled for a day. In case of further failed attempts, the time periods vary. Manually releasing this lock resets the corresponding counter. Please also be aware that an attempt to retrieve the profile while access is deactivated (e. g. when the profile has previously been retrieved successfully) is also considered by the device to be a failed attempt.

You activate the profile by checking the **Account enabled** box.

After the profile has been retrieved successfully, the device automatically disables the corresponding profile to avoid the repeated download by another device.

Once you save these settings to the device, the myVPN module is active on the selected VPN device. On your iOS device, you can now start the LANCOM myVPN app and enter the PIN to retrieve the VPN profile.

10.18.6 Intelligent precalculation of DH keys

The negotiation of a VPN connection is based on the creation of keys according to the Diffie-Hellman method. Depending on the key length, however, calculating a DH key can take some time. If a VPN gateway with 100 VPN connections temporarily loses its Internet connection, recalculating these 100 DH keys may take a while before all of the VPN clients can establish a connection to the VPN gateway again.

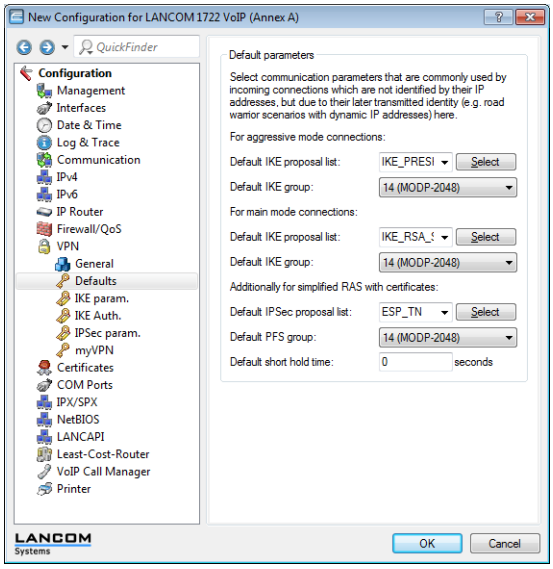
With the precalculation of DH keys, the device can accelerate the renegotiation of VPN connections:

The precalculation of keys has a low priority. When the CPU of the device is not busy with other, higher priority tasks, it builds up a stock of public DH keys.

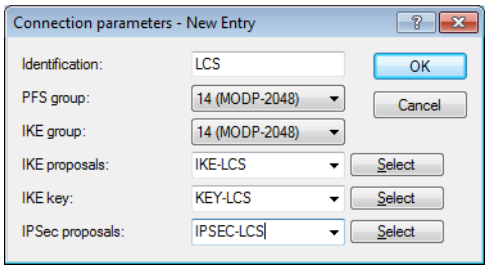
10.18.7 Enhancements to LANconfig

Selecting the IKE group in LANconfig

In LANconfig, the settings for the default IKE groups are located under **VPN** > **Defaults**:



In LANconfig, the settings for the default IKE groups for VPN connections are located under **VPN** > **General** > **Connection parameters**:



10.19 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.82

10.19.1 Hash function SHA2-256 selectable via LANconfig

As of LCOS version 8.82, you can also select the hash algorithm SHA-2-256 for IKE and IPSec proposals over LANconfig for devices that are equipped appropriately.

The VPN module at a glance

Functions of the VPN module

This section lists all of the functions and properties of the LCOS VPN module. Experts of the VPN sector are offered a highly compressed summary of the performance of the function. Understanding the terminology requires a sound knowledge of the technical fundamentals of VPN. However, for commissioning and normal operation of the VPN, this information is non-essential.

- VPN tunnel via leased lines, switched connections and IP networks
- LANCOMDynamic VPN: Public IP addresses can be static or dynamic (establishing a connection with remote sites using dynamic IP addresses requires ISDN)
- VPN in accordance with IPSec standard
- IPSec protocols ESP, AH and IPCOMP in tunnel mode
- Hash algorithms:
  - HMAC-MD5-96, hash length 128 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-96, hash length 160 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-256, hash length 256 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-384, hash length 384 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-512, hash length 512 bits
- Compression with "Deflate" (ZLIB)
- Key management as per ISAKMP (IKEv1, IKEv2)
- Symmetrical encryption methods
  - AES, key lengths of 128, 192 and 256 bits
  - Triple-DES (3DES), key length 168 bit
  - Blowfish, key length 128 - 448 bits
  - CAST, key length 128 bits
  - DES, key length 56 bits
- IKEv1 main and aggressive mode
- IKEv1 / IKEv2 config mode
- IKEv1 with pre-shared keys and IKEv2
- IKEv1 and IKEv2 with RSA signature and digital certificates (X.509)
- Key exchange via Oakley, Diffie-Hellman algorithm with the following DH groups:
  - DH-1 (768-bit modulus)
  - DH-2 (1024-bit modulus)
  - DH-5 (1536-bit modulus)
  - DH-14 (2048-bit modulus)
  - DH-15 (3072-bit modulus)
  - DH-16 (4096-bit modulus)
  - DH-19 (256-bit random ECP group)
  - DH-20 (384-bit random ECP group)
  - DH-21 (521-bit random ECP group)
  - DH-28 (brainpoolP256r1)
  - DH-29 (brainpoolP384r1)
  - DH-30 (brainpoolP512r1)

10.20 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.00

10.20.1 VPN remote access wizard in WEBconfig:

As of LCOS 9.00 you have the option of using WEBconfig to create VPN-client dial-in accounts using the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client or an alternative VPN client. This is possible as the existing Setup-Wizard **Provide remote access** has been extended with the VPN option. The setup steps are the same as those for LANconfig.

The 1-Click VPN configuration is not available in WEBconfig due to restrictions on browser access.

10.20.2 L2TPv2 (Layer-2 Tunneling Protocol version 2)

With L2TP, an L2TP access concentrator (LAC) tunnels the PPP request from a client via a public connection (e.g. Internet, ATM, frame relay) to an L2TP network server (LNS). The LNS serves as a gateway to the remote network. There, a connected RADIUS server initially authenticates the client, if necessary. The LNS then sends the IP address to the LAC and starts the L2TP tunnel. The LAC communicates the IP address to the client. As of this moment, the client has joined the remote network via an L2TP connection.

Within the firmware, the LAC and the PPP client are collected in a role. Thus a device operating as a LAC starts the control channel and the PPP session. For network virtualization, multiple PPP sessions are supported in an L2TP tunnel. An L2TP-enabled device is able to operate as an LAC and also as an LNS.

Data types

L2TP uses two types of data:

Control data

The control data are used to establish, maintain and tear down the tunnel connections. The control data includes a data-flow control to ensure that the sender and receiver correctly exchange the control data.

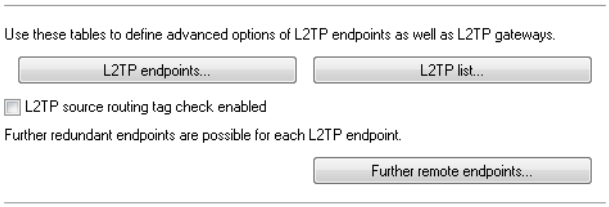
Payload data

The payload data are encapsulated in PPP frames, which are exchanged between the LAC and the LNS via the tunnel. In contrast to the control data, payload data contains no data flow control. Thus there is no guarantee that the sender and receiver are exchanging data correctly.

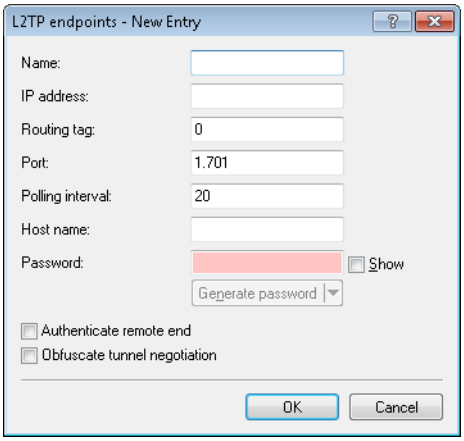
Unlike PPTP, which transfers control and payload data via different protocols (TCP and GRE), L2TP only uses UDP for both data types. You also have the option to operate multiple logical payload-data channels on each control-data channel.

Configuring the L2TP tunnel

With LANconfig, you configure L2TP under **Communication** > **Remote sites**.



The tunnel configuration for the control data of an L2TP tunnel to a tunnel endpoint is located under **L2TP endpoints**.



Name

Name of the tunnel endpoint

IP address

IP address of the tunnel endpoint (IPv4, IPv6, FQDN).

Routing tag

The routing tag of the route to the tunnel endpoint

Port

UDP Port

Polling interval

Polling interval in seconds

Host name

Name used by the device to authenticate at the tunnel endpoint

Password

Password used by the device to authenticate at the tunnel endpoint

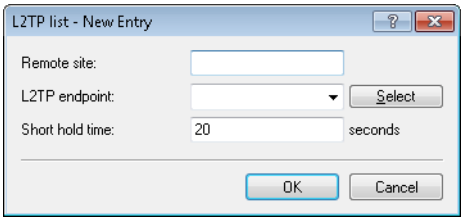
Authenticate remote end

Enable this option if two tunnel endpoints (LAC and LNS) are required to mutually authenticate one another before establishing a tunnel. In this case, the tunnel endpoint name and password for this device are configured as the tunnel endpoint and the option to **Authenticate remote end** is similarly enabled.

Obfuscate tunnel negotiation

If the tunnel negotiations between the LAC and the LNS are to be encrypted, you enable this option. The two L2TP partners encrypt and decrypt the L2TP messages with the help certain AVPs (attribute value pairs) of a common preshared secret.

Under **L2TP list**, you make the link between the L2TP remote sites and a previously configured tunnel endpoint.



An entry in this table is necessary only under the following conditions:

- Outgoing connections
- Incoming connections with an idle timeout not equal to "20" or
- If incoming links specify the use of a specific tunnel only.

Remote site

Name of the L2TP remote device

L2TP endpoint

Name of the tunnel endpoint used by this remote site.

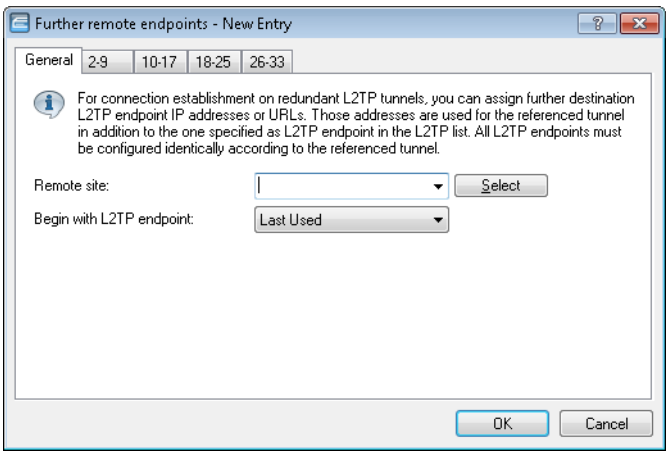
Short hold time

Determines how long the L2TP tunnel endpoint keeps the tunnel open when inactive.

In the case of incoming tunnel requests, a check is performed either by RADIUS or by means of an entry for the requesting host in the L2TP endpoints table. If the table contains an entry with the same IP address (or no IP address is specified for this entry), the device permits tunnel establishment to this host.

For additional protection, for example to enable encryption of the L2TP sessions via IPSec, the device can additionally check the routing tag of the remote site from which it received the data. This option is enabled with **L2TP source routing tag check enabled**.

You have the option to configure up to 32 additional gateways per tunnel endpoint by clicking on **Further remote endpoints**.



Ensure that all additionally specified L2TP endpoints are configured identically to the referenced tunnel endpoint.

Remote site

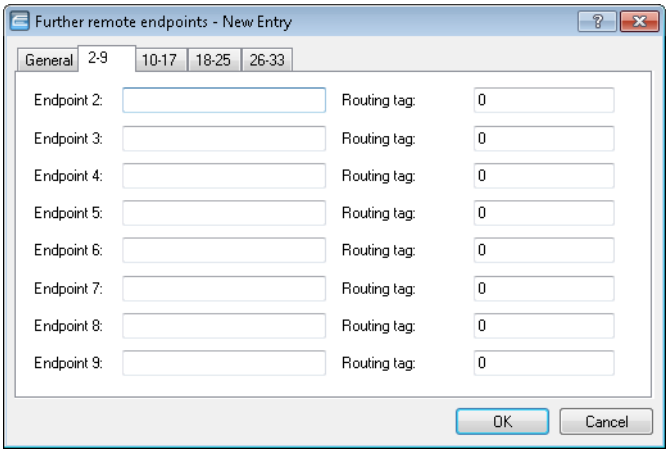
Name of the tunnel endpoint, as configured in the table of **L2TP endpoints**.

Begin with L2TP endpoint

Option for selecting the next gateway. The following options are available:

- **Last used**: Select the last successful address
- **First**: Select the first gateway in the list
- **Random**: Random selection from the gateways in the list

On the following tabs you configure the names and the respective routing tags of the alternative gateways.



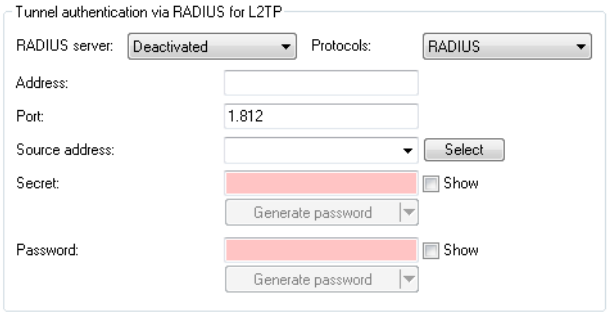
Authentication via RADIUS

RADIUS authentication for L2TP is possible in two cases:

- Tunnel authentication: The RADIUS server checks to see whether a LAC is allowed to establish a L2TP connection.
- PPP session: The RADIUS server checks the user data of the corresponding PPP session.

For this reason, the configuration of the RADIUS server for L2TP-tunnel authentication and the PPP user data are carried out independently of one another.

In the case of tunnel authentication by RADIUS, the settings in LANconfig are configured under **Communication** > **RADIUS** in the section **Tunnel authentication via RADIUS for L2TP**.



RADIUS server

Enables or disables the RADIUS server for the authentication of the tunnel endpoint, regardless of a PPP-session authentication. The following options are possible:

- **Deactivated**: The RADIUS server is not enabled for the authentication of tunnel endpoints.
- **Activated**: The RADIUS server handles the authentication of tunnel endpoints.

- **Exclusive**: Enables the use of the external RADIUS server as the only possibility for authenticating PPP remote sites. The PPP list is ignored.

Protocols

Protocol for communication between the internal RADIUS server and the tunnel endpoint.

Address

IP address or DNS name of the RADIUS server.

Port

The port the RADIUS server

Source address

Optional sender address of the device. If you have configured loopback addresses, these can also be specified here. Following input formats are allowed:

- Name of the IP network (ARF network) whose address is to be used instead
- "INT" for the address of the first intranet
- "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ
- LB0 to LBF for the 16 loopback addresses
- Any valid IP address

Secret

Shared secret between the RADIUS server and the device

Password

Dummy password for tunnel authentication

If an L2TP tunnel request arrives from a remote host (Start Control Connection Request), the device sends a request to the RADIUS server that has been enabled for L2TP. This request contains among other things the name of the host, the dummy password, the IP address of the device, and also the service type "Outbound User". The RADIUS server authenticates the host and sends a "RADIUS accept" to the device together with; the tunnel password to be used; the tunnel type "L2TP" with the tag "0"; and also the Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID, which must match with the host name transmitted earlier by the device. The device checks this data and, if the result is positive, it takes the tunnel password to authenticate the dial-in client and, if applicable, to obfuscate the L2TP tunnel negotiations.

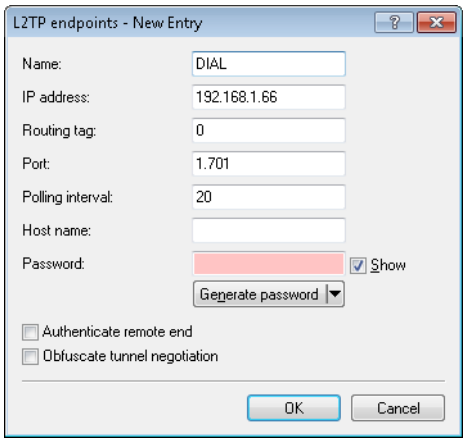
Configuring the RADIUS server to authenticate PPP sessions is conducted as described in the section **Other services** > **RADIUS** > **Configuration of RADIUS as authenticator or NAS** > **Dial-in using PPP and RADIUS**.

Operation as an L2TP access concentrator (LAC)

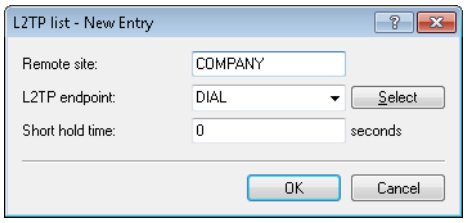
In the following example, the device operating as a L2TP access concentrator (LAC) establishes an L2TP tunnel to an L2TP network server (LNS) with the IP address 192.168.1.66.

Proceed as follows to configure the device as a LAC:

1. Under **Communication** > **Remote sites** in the table **L2TP endpoints** create an entry for an LNS as the remote L2TP gateway.

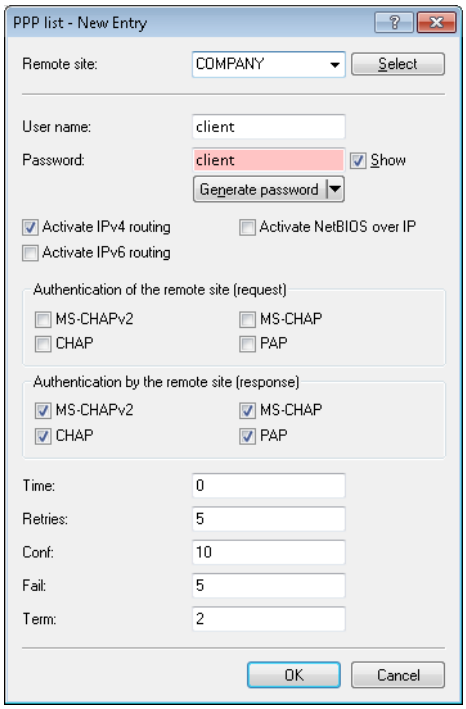


2. Enter a name for this site under **Communication** > **Protocols** in the table **L2TP list** and connect it with the L2TP endpoint you created previously.

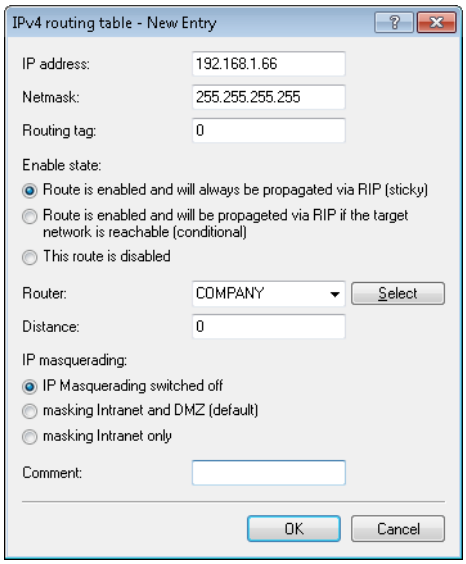


It is possible to connect several remote sites with an L2TP tunnel. This allows multiple PPP sessions to be transported through an L2TP tunnel. For this purpose, configure in this table several remote sites with the same L2TP endpoint.

3. Under **Communication** > **Protocols** in the table **PPP list** create an entry for the L2TP tunnel.



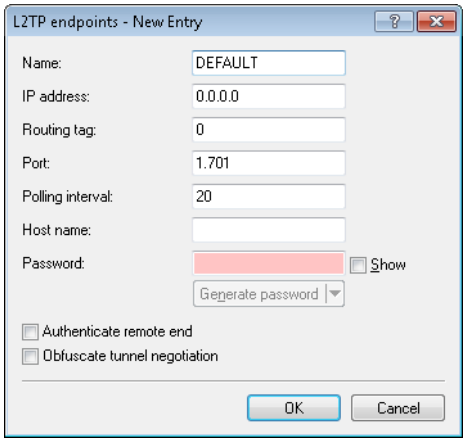
4. For this site, go to **Configuration** > **IP router** > **Routing** and create an entry in the corresponding IPv4 or IPv6 routing table.



Operation as the L2TP network server (LNS) for RAS clients

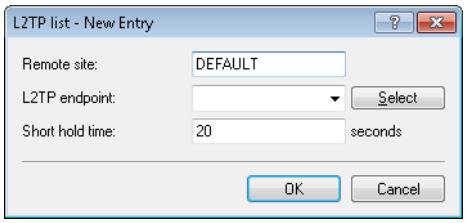
In order to configure the device as the L2TP network server (LNS) for authenticating RAS clients without configuring a RADIUS server in the device, you have two options:

1. Under **Communication** > **Remote sites** in the table **L2TP endpoints**, create an entry "DEFAULT".



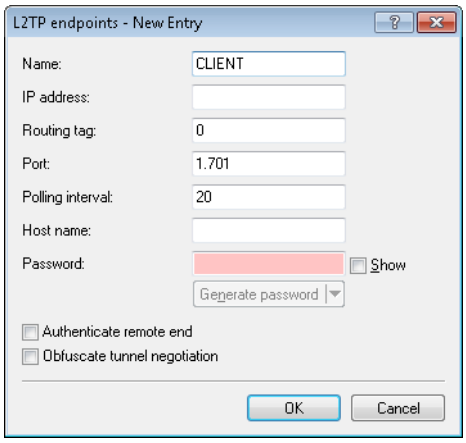
The entry for the IP address is "0.0.0.0", because the IP address of the L2TP-LAC is unknown to the device.

2. Then, under **Communication** > **Remote sites** in the table **L2TP list**, configure a "DEFAULT" entry.

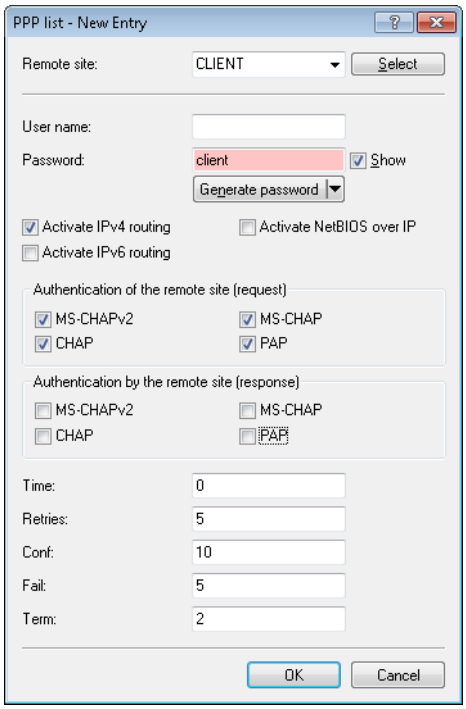


If the L2TP tunnel is to be connected permanently, set the short hold time to "9999".

3. Alternatively, you make a separate entry for the RAS client (e.g., "CLIENT") under **Communication** > **Remote sites** in the **L2TP endpoints** table.



4. You then configure a new entry for the client under **Communication** > **Protocols** in the **PPP list**.

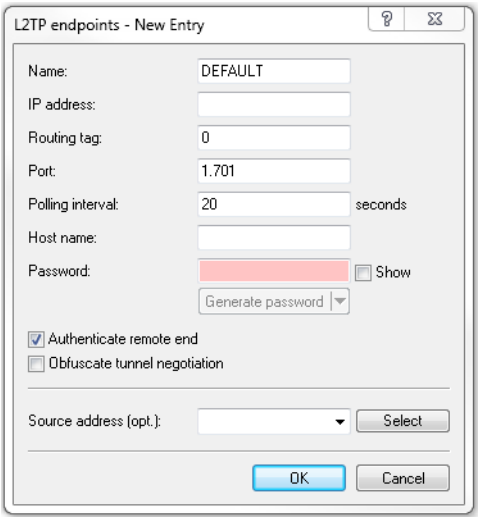


Operation as an L2TP network server (LNS) with authentication via RADIUS

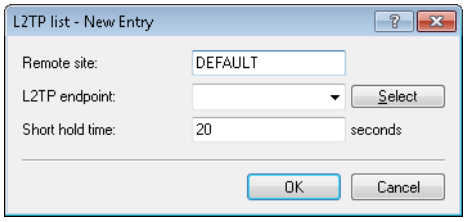
In the following example, the device functions as an L2TP network server (LNS). RADIUS is used to authenticate the incoming L2TP tunnel and the PPP sessions.

Proceed as follows to configure the device as an LNS:

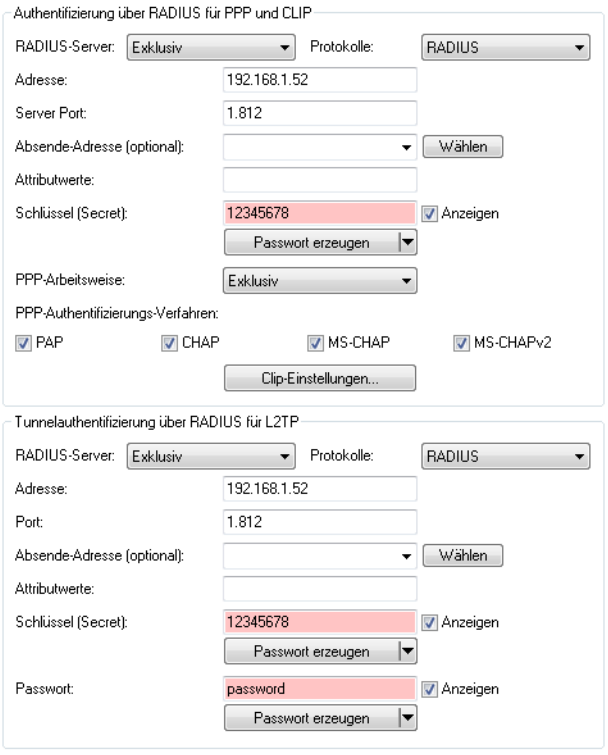
1. Under **Communication** > **Remote sites** in the table **L2TP endpoints**, create an entry "DEFAULT".



2. Then, under **Communication** > **Remote sites** in the table **L2TP list**, configure a "DEFAULT" entry.



3. Configure the RADIUS server under **Communication** > **RADIUS**.



You only configure the lower section **Tunnel authentication via RADIUS for L2TP** if L2TP tunnel authentication should be done via the RADIUS server.

4. Configure the RADIUS server in order for it to be able to authenticate the L2TP tunnel and the PPP sessions.

   If a LAC needs to authenticate itself at the L2TP tunnel with the station name "router1" and the password "abcde", you configure the appropriate entry in the RADIUS server (e.g. FreeRADIUS) as follows:

```
router1 Cleartext-Password := "password"
        Service-Type = Outbound-User,
        Tunnel-Type  = L2TP,
        Tunnel-Password = "abcde",
        Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID = "router1"
```

   For the authentication of the PPP session of a user with the username "test" and the password "test", you configure the appropriate entry in the RADIUS server as follows:

```
test Cleartext-Password := "1234"
     Service-Type = Framed-User,
     Framed-Protocol = PPP
```

10.20.3 Support of the DH groups 15 and 16

As of version 9.00, for the encryption of VPN connections LANconfig offers you improved options for key exchange according to the Diffie-Hellmann algorithm. The DH groups 15 and 16 can be used for this on compatible devices. The relevant settings are located in the configuration menu under **VPN** > **General** > **Connection parameters** > **Add**and also under **VPN** > **Defaults**.

10.21 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.10

10.21.1 SCEP-CA function in VPN environments

As of LCOS version 9.10, it is possible to use the existing CA with SCEP function in the VPN environment.

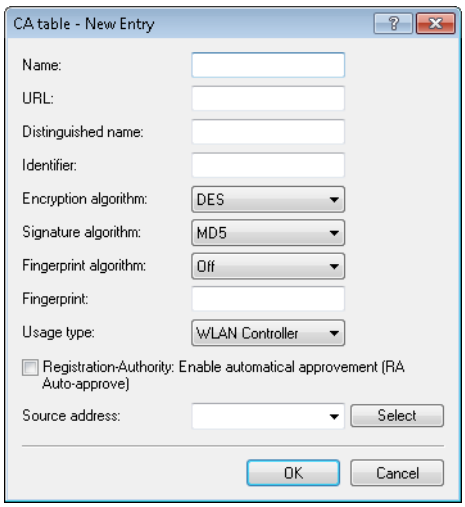
10.21.2 SCEP algorithms updated

As of LCOS version 9.10, the SCEP client and server additionally support AES192 and AES256 and also SHA256, SHA384, and SHA512.

The default entries remain unchanged so as to maintain compatibility with the remote stations in the event of a firmware update. Only use the latest algorithms when the remote stations have also been updated accordingly.

Configuring the CAs

The configuration is carried out with LANconfig under **Certificates** > **SCEP client** with the button **CA table**.



Name

Configuration name of the CA.

URL

URL of the CA.

Distinguished name

Distinguished name of the CA. With this parameter the CAs are assigned to system certificates (and vice versa) on the one hand. On the other hand this parameter is also important for evaluating whether received or available certificates match with the configuration.

You can also use reserved characters by using a preceding backslash ("\"). The supported reserved characters are:

- Comma (",")
- Slash ("/")
- Plus ("+")
- Semicolon (";")
- Equals ("=")

You can also use the following internal firmware variables:

- %% inserts a percent sign.
- %f inserts the version and the date of the firmware currently active in the device.
- %r inserts the hardware release of the device.
- %v inserts the version of the loader currently active in the device.
- %m inserts the MAC address of the device.
- %s inserts the serial number of the device.
- %n inserts the name of the device.
- %l inserts the location of the device.
- %d inserts the type of the device.

Identifier

CA identifier (as required by some web server to identify the CA).

Encryption algorithm

This algorithm encrypts the payload of the certificate request. Possible values are:

- DES (Default)
- 3-DES
- Blowfish
- AES128
- AES192
- AES256

Signature algorithm

The certificate request is signed with this algorithm. Possible values are:

- MD5 (default)
- SHA1
- SHA256
- SHA384
- SHA512

Fingerprint algorithm

Algorithm for signing the fingerprint. This determines whether the CA certificate is to be checked by means of fingerprint, and which algorithm is used for this. The CA fingerprint has to agree with the checksum which results when this algorithm is applied. Possible values are:

- Off (default)
- MD5
- SHA1
- SHA256
- SHA384
- SHA512

Fingerprint

The authenticity of a received CA certificate can be checked by means of the the checksum (fingerprint) entered here (corresponding to the set CA fingerprint algorithm).

Usage type

Indicates the intended application of the specified CA. The CA entered here is only queried for the corresponding application. Possible values are:

- VPN
- EAP/TLS
- WLAN controller
- General

If a general CA exists no further CAs can be configured. Otherwise the choice of CA would be unclear.

RA autoapprove

Some CAs provide the option of using an earlier certificate issued by this CA as proof of authenticity for future requests. This option defines whether an existing system certificate should be used to sign new requests. Possible values are:

- Yes
- No (Default)

Source address

This is where you configure an optional source address to be used instead of the one otherwise automatically selected for the source address. If you have configured loopback addresses, you can specify them here as source address.

You can enter an address in various forms:

- Name of the IP network (ARF network), whose address should be used.
- "INT" for the address of the first intranet.
- "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ (Note: If there is an interface named "DMZ", its address will be taken).
- LB0 ... LBF for one of the 16 loopback addresses or its name
- Furthermore, any IP address can be entered in the form x.x.x.x.

If the source address set here is a loopback address, these will be used unmasked on the remote client.

10.21.3 Loopback address for L2TP connections

As of LCOS version 9.10 it is possible to specify a loopback address for L2TP connections.

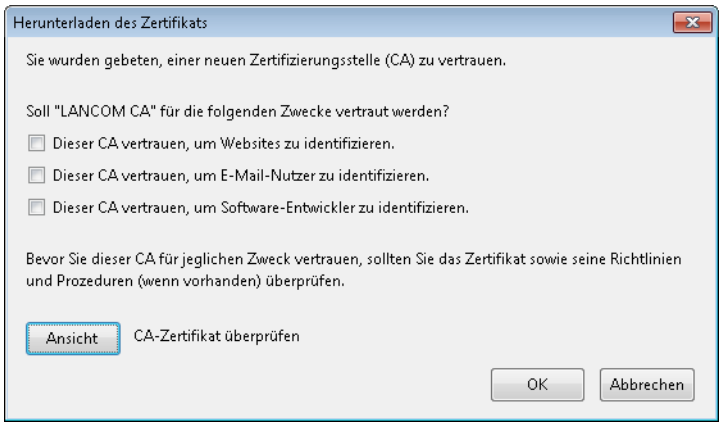
If a loopback address is entered as the source address and the routing tag has a value of "0", the device uses the routing tag of the loopback address.

10.21.4 Download link for the public portion of the CA certificate

As of LCOS version 9.10, the public part of the CA certificate is available by means of a download link.

Download link for the public portion of the CA certificate

You can download the public part of the CA certificate without having to authenticate by using the link `http://<URL>/getcacert/cacert.crt`. The transmission uses the MIME type `application/x-x509-ca-cert`, so that software with the appropriate functionality will immediately offer to the install the certificate.



The download is only possible if the CA is enabled. An error message appears if the CA is disabled.

If the CA is enabled, WEBconfig is also able to download the certificate under **Extras** > **Download current CA certificate**.

10.21.5 Deleting VPN error messages in the status table

As of LCOS version 9.10 the device automatically deletes VPN-connection error messages from the status table after a defined period. By default, this option is disabled (time = 0 minutes).

By default, the device retains the VPN error messages in the status table. Depending on the installation LANmonitor may display a large number of open error messages, which clutters the display. For this reason the WEBconfig setting under **Setup** > **Config** > **Error-Aging-Minutes** enables you to define a period of time in minutes after which the device automatically deletes these error messages from the status table.

To document sporadic errors, disable this option with the entry `0`.

10.21.6 IPv4 addresses for VPN tunnels in the IP parameter list

As of LCOS version 9.10, devices supporting VPN manage the IPv4 addresses for VPN tunnels in the IP parameter list.

10.22 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.20

10.22.1 IKEv2 support

As of LCOS version 9.20, LCOS supports IKEv2.

Functions of the VPN module

This section lists all of the functions and properties of the LCOS VPN module. Experts of the VPN sector are offered a highly compressed summary of the performance of the function. Understanding the terminology requires a sound knowledge of the technical fundamentals of VPN. However, for commissioning and normal operation of the VPN, this information is non-essential.

- VPN tunnel via leased lines, switched connections and IP networks
- LANCOMDynamic VPN: Public IP addresses can be static or dynamic (establishing a connection with remote sites using dynamic IP addresses requires ISDN)
- VPN in accordance with IPSec standard
- IPSec protocols ESP, AH and IPCOMP in tunnel mode
- Hash algorithms:
  - HMAC-MD5-96, hash length 128 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-96, hash length 160 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-256, hash length 256 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-384, hash length 384 bits
  - HMAC-SHA-1-512, hash length 512 bits
- Compression with “Deflate” (ZLIB)
- Key management as per ISAKMP (IKEv1, IKEv2)
- Symmetrical encryption methods
  - AES, key lengths of 128, 192 and 256 bits
  - Triple-DES (3DES), key length 168 bit
  - Blowfish, key length 128 - 448 bits
  - CAST, key length 128 bits
  - DES, key length 56 bits
- IKEv1 main and aggressive mode

- IKEv1/IKEv2 config mode
- IKEv1 with pre-shared keys and IKEv2
- IKEv1 and IKEv2 with RSA signature and digital certificates (X.509)
- Key exchange via Oakley, Diffie-Hellman algorithm with key lengths 768 bits, 1024 bits, 1536 bits, 2048 bits, 3072 bits and 4096 bits (well-known groups 1, 2, 5, 14, 15 and 16)

IKEv2

LANCOM devices are capable of VPN with IKEv1 and IKEv2.

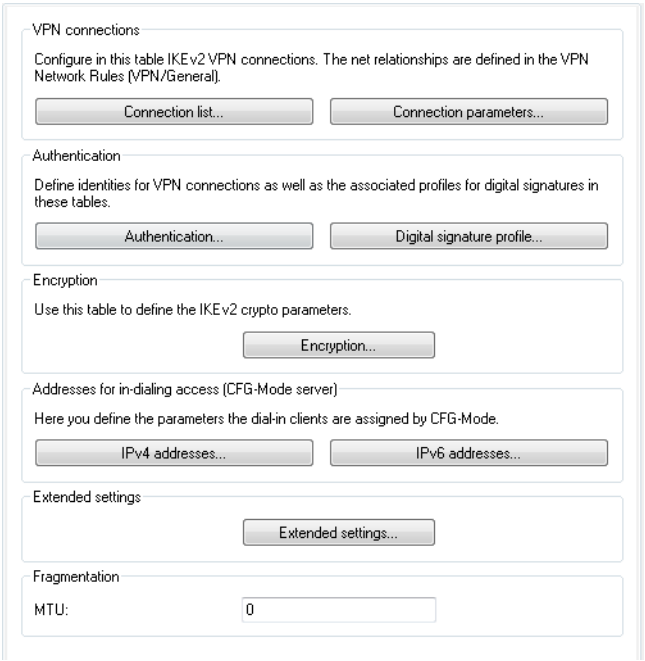
IKEv2 facilitates a fast and secure establishment of VPN tunnels. For the first time it is now possible to operate encrypted networking between IPv6-based sites and IPv4-based sites by means of the mixed mode.

Manually configuring a VPN connection that uses IKEv1 is complex and error prone. Consequently, many IPSec implementations have incompatible configurations, which causes the VPN connections between the devices to fail. The IKEv2 configuration in LCOS gives administrators a reliable method of setting up a configuration that matches that of the remote station. For example, administrators have a choice of several Diffie-Hellman groups. At the same time, the revised user interface presents recommended default values for many of the configuration parameters. The simplified configuration with IKEv2 eliminates sources of error, which results in a lower administrative overhead. Further, VPN connection establishment with IKEv2 offers better performance, because IKEv2 only exchanges 4 packets when negotiating a VPN tunnel (one `REQUEST` per VPN partner and one `REPLY`), rather than the 6 required by IKEv1 in the "aggressive/quick mode" or 12 in "main mode". The standard of security is just as high with IKEv2 as with IKEv1.

Operating IKEv2 supports *RFC 7296*, *RFC 7427* and, in the IKEv2 client mode, *RFC 5685*.

Configuring IKEv2 with LANconfig

IKEv2 is configured under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec**.



VPN connections

In this section, you configure the IKEv2 VPN connections and the connection parameters.

Authentication

This table is used to define the identities for your VPN connections.

Digital signature profile

This table is used to specify the authentication methods for your VPN connections.

Encryption

This table is used to set the encryption parameters.

Addresses for dial-in access (CFG mode server)

Use this table to specify the parameters that the device CFG mode assigns to the dial-in clients.

Extended settings

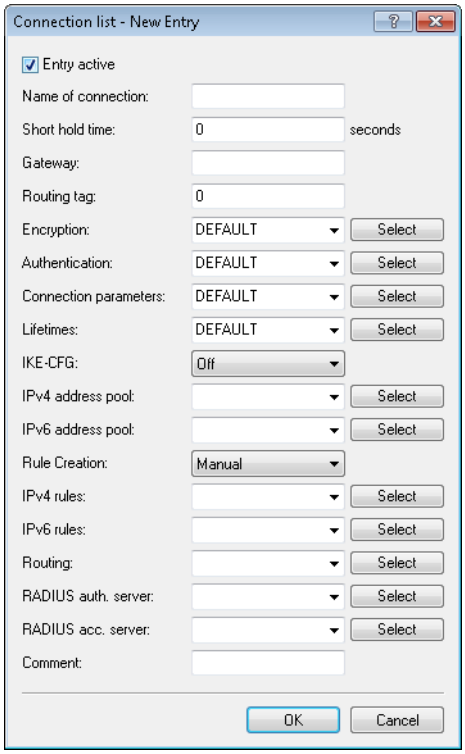
This section is used to configure the settings for the authentication of other remote identities, the IKEv2 rekeying parameters, and the prefixes for IKEv2 routing.

In order to configure an IKEv2 connection, you first need to make an entry in the **Connection list**. LCOS contains default entries in order to minimize the effort of configuration. Most of these entries contain default parameters with common settings for strong encryption algorithms, dead-peer-detection, and lifetimes. All you need to do is specify the address of the VPN remote peer, the authentication parameters (under **Authentication**), and the VPN rules (under **VPN** > **General** > **Network rules**).

The console command `show vpn` displays whether the VPN connection was established successfully.

Connection list

In this table, you configure the IKEv2 connections to VPN partners.



Entry active

Enables or disables the connection to this VPN peer.

Name of connection

Contains the name of the connection to the remote station.

Short hold time

Specifies the hold time in seconds for which the device stays connected if there is no data flow.

Gateway

Contains the address (IPv4, IPv6 or FQDN) of the VPN partner.

Routing tag

Contains the routing tag for this VPN connection.

Encryption

Specifies the encryption used for the VPN connection. The corresponding entry is located in the **Encryption** table.

Authentication

Specifies the authentication method used for the VPN connection. The corresponding entry is located in the **Authentication** table.

Connection parameters

Specifies the general parameters used for the VPN connection. The corresponding entry is located in the **Connection parameters** table.

Validity period

Specifies the lifetime of the key used for the VPN connection. The corresponding entry is located in the **Extended settings** > **Lifetimes** table.

IKE-CFG

Specifies the IKEv2 config mode of this connection for RAS dial-ins.

Possible values are:

- Off: IKEv2 config mode is disabled
- Server: The router distributes configuration parameters (such as addresses or the DNS server) to VPN clients. The parameters to be distributed are configured in the IPv4 or IPv6 address pool.
- Client: The router requests the server for configuration parameters (e.g. addresses or the DNS server).

IPv4 address pool

IPv4 addresses and DNS server for dial-in access in the IKE CFG mode Server.

IPv6 address pool

IPv6 addresses and DNS server for dial-in access in the IKE CFG mode Server.

Rule creation

Specifies how VPN rules are created.

Possible values:

Automatic

The local intranet serves as the source network (private IP address range that the local VPN gateway itself belongs to). For automatically generated VPN rules, the target networks are those network ranges that have a remote VPN gateway set as their router.

When two simple local networks are connected, the automatic VPN can interpret the necessary network relationships from the IP address range in its own LAN and from the entry for the remote LAN in the IP routing table.

Manual

Rules are created for the network relationships in the same way as rules are defined manually for IPv4 or IPv6.

IPv4-Rules

Specifies which IPv4 rules apply to this VPN connection.

The IPv4 rules are located in the table **VPN** > **Network rules**.

IPv6-Rules

Specifies which IPv6 rules apply to this VPN connection.

The IPv6 rules are located in the table **VPN** > **Network rules**.

Routing

Specifies the routes that the remote site should transmit dynamically via IKE-CFG mode. This function is only available in the IKEv2 CFG mode for the client and server.

The routes for IPv4 and IPv6 connections are located in the **Extended settings** > **IPv4 routing/IPv6 routing** tables.

RADIUS auth. server

Specifies the RADIUS server for the VPN peer authorization. You configure the RADIUS server for IKEv2 under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** under **Extended settings**.

RADIUS auth. server

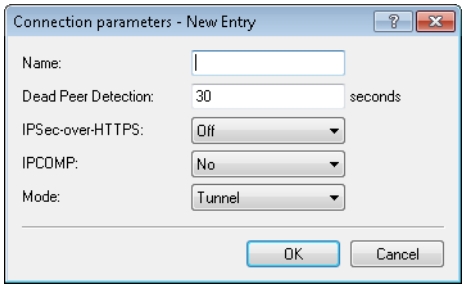
Specifies the RADIUS server for the VPN peer accounting. You configure the RADIUS server for IKEv2 under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** under **Extended settings**.

Comment

Enter a descriptive comment here.

Connection parameters

Use this table to specify the parameters of IKEv2 VPN connections that are not included in the SA negotiation. An entry named "DEFAULT" is provided with common settings.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry. You assign this name to the connections in the **Connection list** in the "Connection parameters" field.

Dead peer detection

Contains the time in seconds after which the device disconnects from the remote peer if there is a loss of contact.

IPSec-over-HTTPS

Specifies whether the connection uses IKEv2 over HTTPS.

IPCOMP

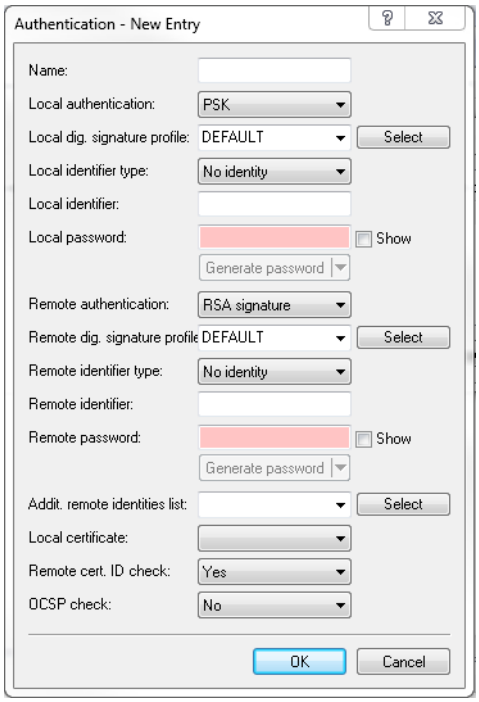
Specifies whether the devices transmit compressed IKEv2 data packets.

Mode

Specifies the mode of transmission.

Authentication

In this table, you configure the parameters for IKEv2 authentication of the local and at least one remote identifier.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry. You assign this name to the connections in the **Connection list** in the "Authentication" field.

Local authentication

Sets the authentication method for the local identity. Possible values are:

- PSK: Pre-shared key:
- RSA-Signature: Use of digital certificates with private RSA key and RSA signature scheme
- Digital signature: Use of configurable authentication methods with digital certificates as per *RFC 7427*. This procedure is an extensible and flexible authentication technique that allows padding and hash algorithms to be configured freely.

The device uses the authentication method configured here when connecting to the remote site. The method must match with a corresponding configuration at the remote site.

It is possible to use different authentication methods for the local and remote authentication. For example, the headquarters can identify itself by RSA signature, while branch offices or clients use PSK authentication.

Local digital signature profile

The profile name of the local digital signature profile that is used.

Local identifier type

Displays the ID type of the local identity. The device interprets the entry under "Local identifier" accordingly. Possible entries are:

- No identity: No identity is transmitted.
- IPv4 address: The device uses an IPv4 address as a local ID.
- IPv6 address: The device uses an IPv6 address as a local ID.
- Domain name (FQDN): The device uses a domain name as a local ID.
- E-mail address (FQUN): The device uses an e-mail address as a local ID.
- ASN.1 Distinguished Name: The device uses a distinguished name as a local ID (e.g. "CN=client01.example.com,O=test,C=DE").
- Key ID (group name): The device uses the group name as a local ID. You can set any group name.

Local identifier

Contains the local identity. The significance of this entry depends on the setting under "Local identifier type".

Local password

Contains the password of the local identity. The device uses this password to authenticate at the remote site. The local and remote password can be identical or different.

Remote authentication

Sets the authentication method for the remote identity. Possible values are:

- PSK: Pre-shared key:
- RSA-Signature: Use of digital certificates with private RSA key and RSA signature scheme
- Digital signature: Use of configurable authentication methods with digital certificates as per *RFC 7427*. This procedure is an extensible and flexible authentication technique that allows padding and hash algorithms to be configured freely.

The device uses the authentication method configured here when connecting to the remote site. The method must match with a corresponding configuration at the remote site.

It is possible to use different authentication methods for the local and remote authentication. For example, the headquarters can identify itself by RSA signature, while branch offices or clients use PSK authentication.

Remote digital signature profile

The profile name of the remote digital signature profile.

Remote identifier type

Displays the ID type that the device expects from the remote identifier. The device interprets the entry under "Remote identifier" accordingly. Possible entries are:

- No identity: The device accepts any ID from the remote device. The device to ignores entries in the "Remote identifier" field.
- IPv4 address: The device expects an IPv4 address as the remote ID.
- IPv6 address: The device expects an IPv6 address as the remote ID.
- Domain name (FQDN): The device expects a domain name as the remote ID.
- E-mail address (FQUN): The device expects an e-mail address as the remote ID.
- ASN.1 Distinguished Name: The device expects a distinguished name as a remote ID (e.g. "CN=client01.example.com,O=test,C=DE").
- Key ID (group name): The device expects the group name as the remote ID.

Remote identifier

Contains the remote identity. The significance of this entry depends on the setting under “Remote identifier type”.

Remote password

Contains the password of the remote identity.

Addit. remote identities list

Redundant VPN scenarios allow the use of alternative remote identities.

Here you configure additional remote identities from the table **Extended settings** > **Identity list**.

Local certificate

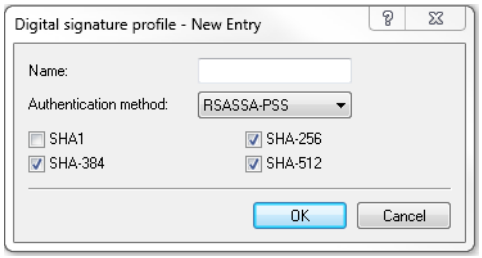
Displays the local certificate.

Remote certificate check

This option determines whether the device checks that the specified remote identity is included in the received certificate.

Digital signature profile

In this table, you configure the parameters for IKEv2 authentication of the local and at least one remote identifier.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry. You assign this name to the connections in the **Connection list** in the “Authentication” field.

Authentication method

Sets the authentication method for the digital signature. Possible values are:

- RSASSA-PSS: RSA with improved probabilistic signature schema as per version 2.1 of PKCS #1 (probabilistic signature scheme with appendix)
- RSASSA-PKCS1-v1_5: RSA according to the older version of the signature schema as per version 1.5 of PKCS #1 (probabilistic signature scheme with appendix)

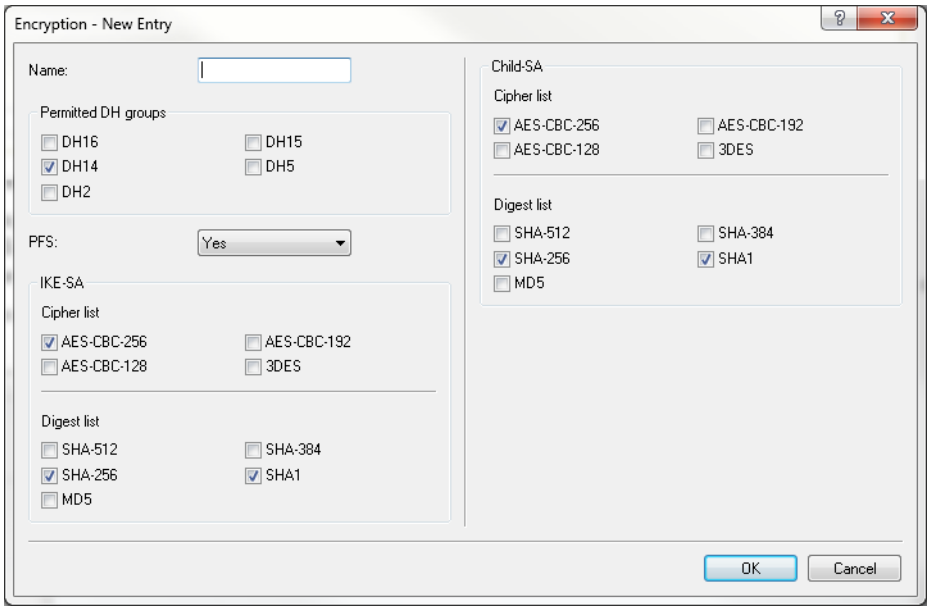
You also specify the secure hash algorithms (SHA) to be used.

Encryption

This table is used to configure the encryption parameters. An entry named “DEFAULT” is provided with common settings.

Multiple parameters can be selected. The device propagates these parameter lists in the IKE protocol and in CHILD SAs. The two VPN partners agree to use one of the algorithms in the propagated lists. While they are establishing the first IKE SA, the VPN partners agree to use the highest of the mutually propagated DH groups. The VPN partners use this DH group when they renew the IKE SAs, or when they create or renew the CHILD SAs (if PFS is enabled).

A connection will be established between the VPN partners if there are sets of encryption parameters that agree at both ends. If none of the parameters match, no connection can be established.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry. You assign this name to the connections in the **Connection list** by selecting it from the "Encryption" field.

Permitted DH groups

Contains the selection of Diffie-Hellman groups used by the VPN partners to create a key for exchanging data. The higher the DH group selected, the more complex is the key that is generated. The following groups are currently supported:

- DH-2 (1024-bit modulus)
- DH-5 (1536-bit modulus)
- DH-14 (2048-bit modulus)
- DH-15 (3072-bit modulus)
- DH-16 (4096-bit modulus)

PFS

Specifies whether perfect forward secrecy (PFS) is enabled.

Cipher list

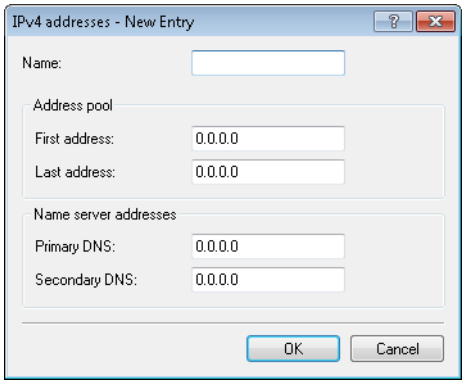
Specifies which encryption algorithms are enabled.

Digest list

Specifies which hash algorithms are enabled.

IPv4 addresses

Use this table to configure the IPv4 parameters that the device CFG mode assigns to the VPN clients.



Name

Contains the name of the interface for the dial-in access.

Address pool

First address

Here you enter the first IPv4 address of the pool of addresses that you want to provide to VPN clients.

End address

Here you enter the last IPv4 address of the pool of addresses that you want to provide to VPN clients.

Name server addresses

DNS default

Contains the primary DNS address.

DNS backup

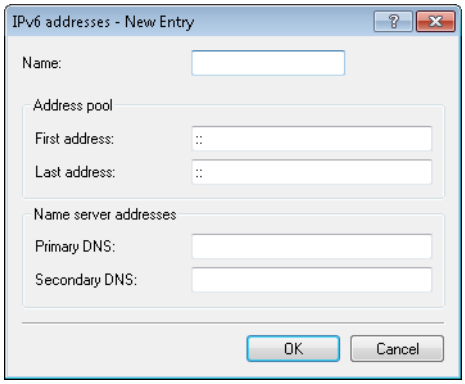
Contains the secondary DNS address.

IPv6 addresses

If the device operates as a "CFG-mode server", it uses the IKEv2 configuration payload to assign an address from a local address pool to clients. Also, it can assign up to two DNS servers to the client.

To operate this, you use the VPN connection list to enable the CFG mode "Server" on the server and the CFG mode "Client" on the client.

Use this table to configure the IPv6 parameters that the device in the CFG mode “Server” assigns to VPN clients.



Name

Contains the name of the interface for the dial-in access.

Address pool

First address

Here you enter the first IPv6 address of the pool of addresses that you want to provide to VPN clients.

End address

Here you enter the last IPv6 address of the pool of addresses that you want to provide to VPN clients.

Name server addresses

DNS default

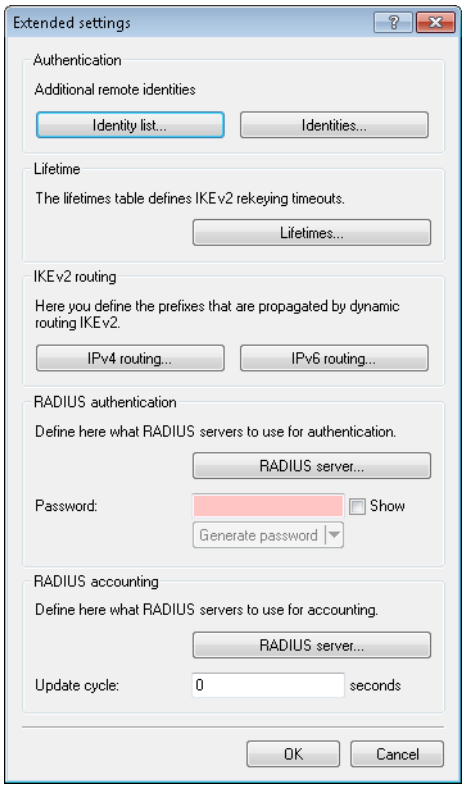
Contains the primary DNS address.

DNS backup

Contains the secondary DNS address.

Extended settings

Use this dialog to configure the settings for the authentication of other remote identities, the IKEv2 rekeying parameters, the prefixes for IKEv2 routing, and the RADIUS server for IKEv2.

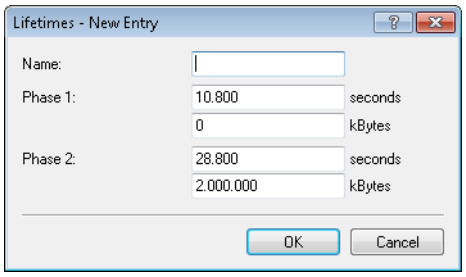


Lifetimes

Use this table to specify the IKEv2 rekeying parameters. An entry named "DEFAULT" is provided with common settings.

Depending on the phase, the device discriminates according to time or the amount of transmitting data. The parameter that reaches its limit first triggers the renewal of the corresponding IKEv2 key.

The value "0" means that the device sets no limit on the corresponding key.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry.

Phase 1:

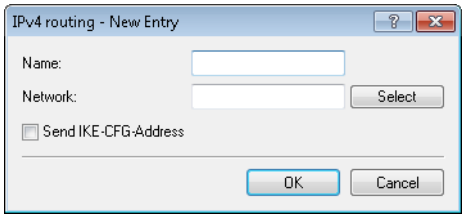
Contains the time in seconds or the data volume in kilobytes until the IKE SA key is renewed.

Phase 2:

Contains the time in seconds or the data volume in kilobytes until the CHILD SA key is renewed.

IPv4 routing

Use this table to configure the IPv4 networks that the device propagates via dynamic routing as per IKEv2.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry.

Network

Contains the comma-separated list of IP subnets.

Networks are entered in the following available formats:

- IP address
- IP address/IP mask
- IP address/prefix length
- IP interface name

The IP subnets are configured under **IPv4** > **General** in the section **Own addresses**.

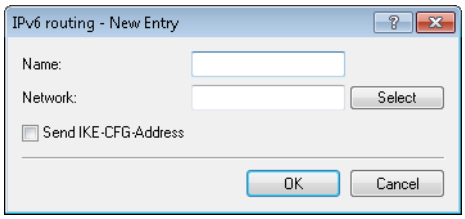
Send IKE-CFG address

As a client, the device sends the retrieved CFG-mode address to the VPN peer (server).

This option is required only if the remote site does not automatically create a routing entry for assigned IP addresses. LANCOM routers generate the necessary routes automatically.

IPv6 routing

Use this table to configure the IPv6 networks that the device propagates via dynamic routing as per IKEv2.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry.

Network

Contains the comma-separated list of IPv6 subnets.

Networks are entered in the following available formats:

- IPv6 address
- IPv6 address/prefix length
- IPv6 interface name

The IP subnets are configured under **IPv6** > **General** in the section **IPv6 networks**.

Send IKE-CFG address

As a client, the device sends the retrieved CFG-mode address to the VPN peer (server).

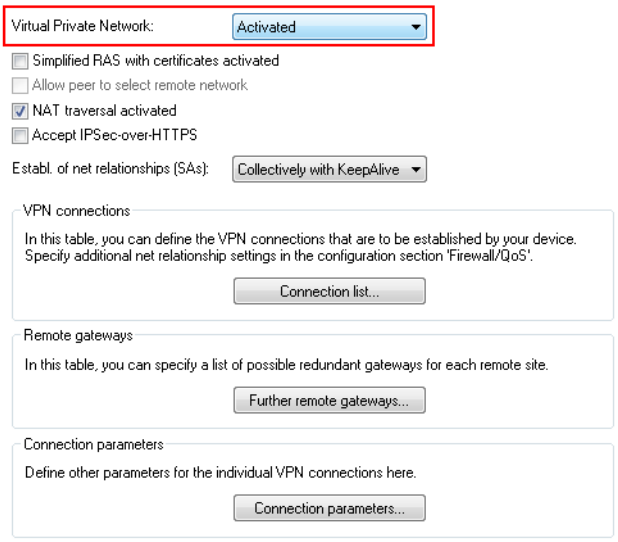
This option is required only if the remote site does not automatically create a routing entry for assigned IP addresses. LANCOM routers generate the necessary routes automatically.

Tutorial: Setting up IKEv2 under LANconfig

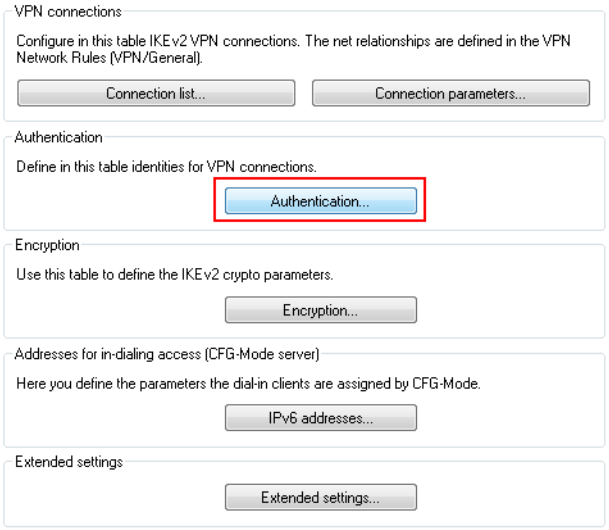
Initial situation: Two LANCOM routers are connected via a WAN link. The requirement is to establish a secure VPN connection between them by means of IKEv2/IPSec VPN. The routers are a LANCOM 1781AW at the main office and a LANCOM 1781VA-4G at the branch office.

We assume that a WAN connection exists between the two devices.

1. **Enabling VPN**: For both of the routers, open the menu item **VPN** > **General** and, under **Virtual Private Network**, select the option **Activated**. This enables VPN on that specific device.

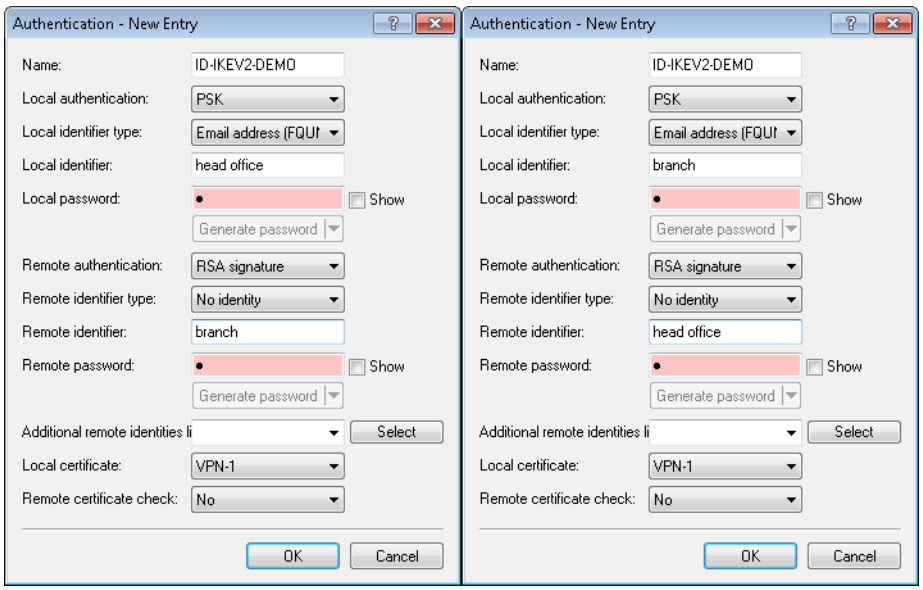


2. **Configuring the authentication**: Specify the type of authentication for the VPN connection. To do this, open the menu item **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** and click the button **Authentication**.



3. Click on the **Add** button to configure a new authentication type. Enter the information for the authentication of the VPN connection into the configuration window.

The screenshots below show the configurations for both devices for direct comparison side by side. Here we only describe the configuration parameters that differ from the default values.

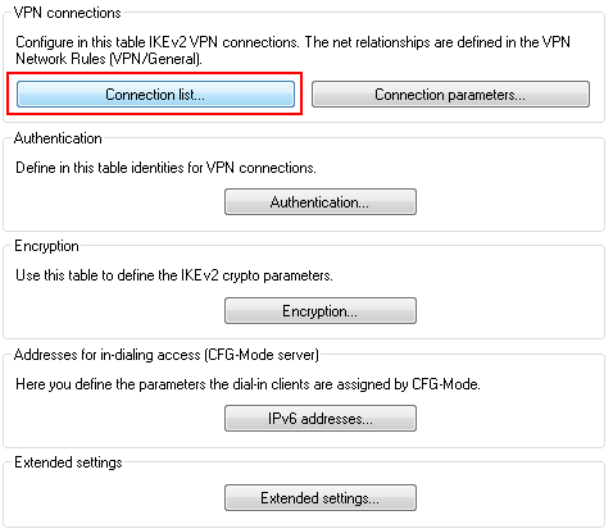


The left half of the images shows the LANCOM 1781AW, and the right half shows the parameters of the LANCOM 1781VA-4G.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the name for the authentication here. In this example, **ID-IKEV2-DEMO** was entered on both devices. This entry is used later in the VPN connection list.
Local authentication	Select the authentication type used on this router. This example uses authentication by pre-shared key (PSK).

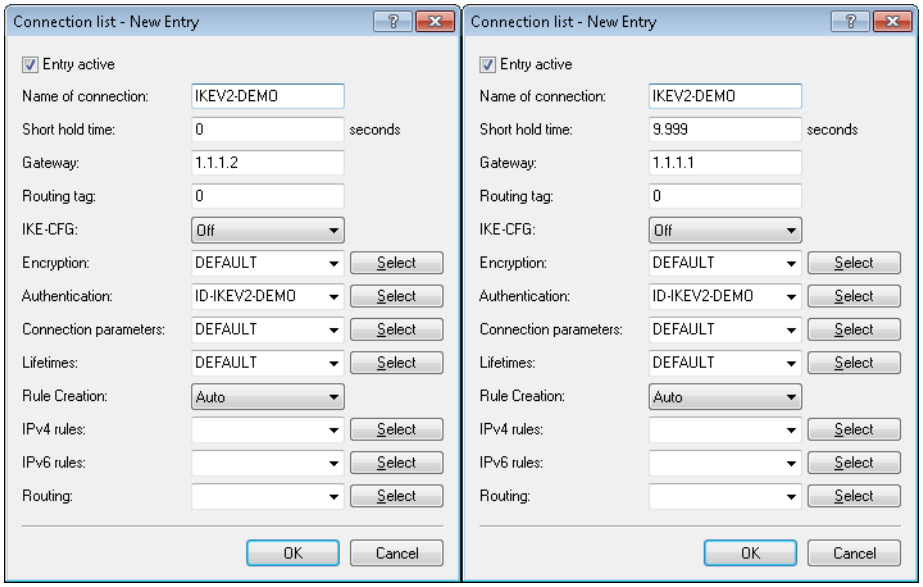
Parameter	Description
Local identifier type	Select the identifier type used on this router. In this example, the identity type was set to **E-mail address (FQUN)**.
Local identifier	Set the local identifier. In this example, the local identifier was set to **Main** on the 1781AW and **Branch** on the 1781VA-4G.
Local password	The pre-shared key required to successfully authenticate at this router.
Remote authentication	Select the authentication type used by the remote router. On the 1781AW, this entry corresponds to the entry for “Local authentication” on the 1781VA-4G.
Remote identifier type	Select the type of the remote identifier (used by the remote router). On the 1781AW, this entry corresponds to the entry for Local identifier on the 1781VA-4G.
Remote identifier	Enter the identifier of the remote station. On the 1781AW, this entry corresponds to the entry for “Local identifier” on the 1781VA-4G.
Remote password	The pre-shared key required to successfully authenticate at the remote station. On the 1781AW, this entry corresponds to the entry for Local password on the 1781VA-4G.

4. **Configuring the Connection list:** Configure the connection lists on each individual router. To carry out the configuration, open the menu item **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** and click the button **Connection list**.



5. Create a new VPN connection by clicking the button **Add**.

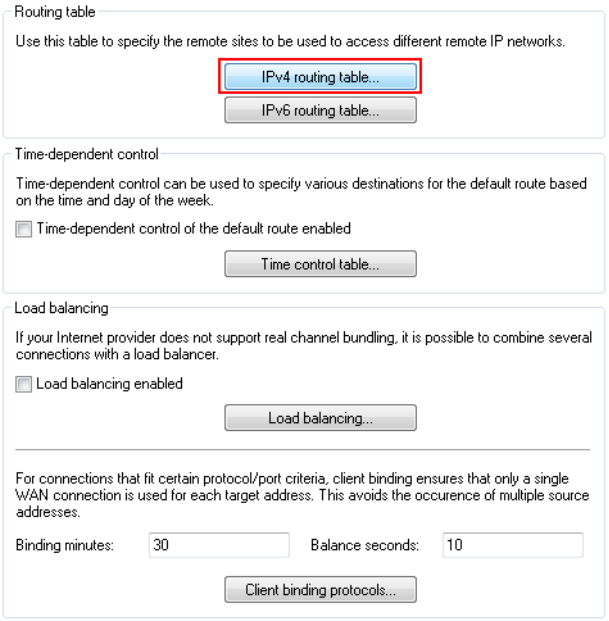
The screenshots below show the configurations for both devices for direct comparison side by side. Here we only describe the configuration parameters that differ from the default values.



The left half of the images shows the LANCOM 1781AW, and the right half shows the parameters of the LANCOM 1781VA-4G.

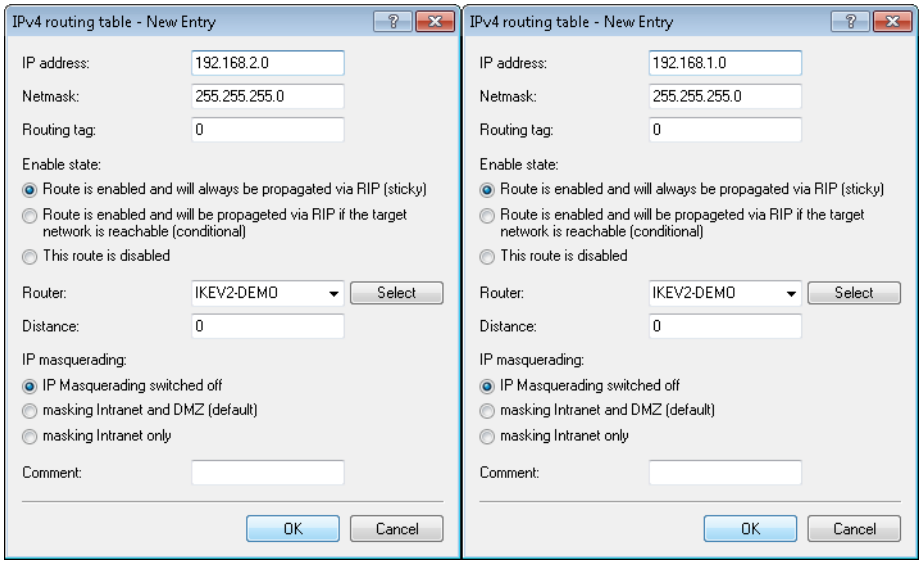
Parameter	Description
Entry active	Set a check mark in the check box to activate the connection.
Name of connection	Enter a name for the VPN connection. This name is used later in the routing table.
Short hold time	Specify the short-hold time in seconds for the VPN connection. In this example, the value for the 1781AW is set to **0**. This means that this router will not actively establish the VPN connection. The value for the 1781VA-4G is set to **9999**. This value means that the router will not actively disconnect and, in case the connection is lost, it reconnects immediately.
Gateway	Specify the IP address of the remote station. In this example, the IP address of the WAN interface of the 1781AW is `1.1.1.1` and that of the 1781VA-4G is `1.1.1.2`.
Authentication	Select the authentication. The entry here corresponds to the name of the authentication that you set in **step 3**.

6. **Configuring the Routing table:** Configuring the routes here ensures that packets can be sent from the router through the VPN tunnel to the VPN remote station. To do this, open the menu item **IP router** > **Routing** and click the button **IPv4 routing table**.



7. Create an additional route by clicking the button **Add**. Information about the route is entered into the configuration window for each router.

The screenshots below show the configurations for both devices for direct comparison side by side. Here we only describe the configuration parameters that differ from the default values.



The left half of the images shows the LANCOM 1781AW, and the right half shows the parameters of the LANCOM 1781VA-4G.

Parameter	Description
IP address	Enter the IP network to be accessed via the VPN tunnel. In this example, the IP network `192.168.2.0` should be accessed from the 1781AW and the IP network `192.168.1.0` should be accessed from the 1781VA-4G.

Parameter	Description
Netmask	Specify the netmask of the IP network named above.
Enable state	Select the option **Route is enabled and will always be propagated by RIP**. This activates the entry and makes it available for use.
Router	For the router, enter the name of the VPN connection that you entered in **step 4**.
IP masquerading	Select **IP masquerading switched off** so that the router does not conceal the other network behind its own IP address.

8. Write the respective configurations back to the two devices.
9. Use LANmonitor to check the VPN connection. LANmonitor displays the status of the VPN connection.

10.22.2 IKEv2 fragmentation support

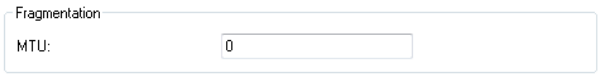
As of LCOS version 9.20, LCOS supports IKEv2 fragmentation.

IKEv2 fragmentation

The fragmentation of data packets is controlled by the maximum transmission unit (MTU). The MTU is the maximum size that a packet may have in order to be sent as payload over a channel. The two communication partners negotiate this during connection establishment in order to optimize data transmission by avoiding any additional fragmentation of the data packets.

In LCOS, IKEv2 fragmentation is enabled automatically. You can manually specify a maximum MTU if you wish.

To do this in LANconfig, go to **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Advanced settings**.



Enter the maximum IP packet length/size in bytes into the **MTU** field in the **Fragmentation** section. Smaller values lead to greater fragmentation of the payload data.

10.22.3 RADIUS support for IKEv2

As of LCOS version 9.20, RADIUS supports the IKEv2 protocol for authorization and accounting.

RADIUS support for IKEv2

LCOS enables the configuration of IKEv2 for authorization and accounting of VPN peers to be performed by an external RADIUS server.

In medium- to large-scale VPN scenarios, the tables for VPN configurations are generally rather large and complex. If multiple VPN gateways are operated for redundancy, it is important to ensure that the configuration is identical on all VPN gateways.

Operating a central RADIUS server allows the configuration of the VPN parameters on the VPN gateways to be almost completely outsourced to one or more RADIUS servers. When a device receives an incoming connection from a VPN peer, the device attempts to authenticate the incoming connection via RADIUS and to retrieve other necessary connection parameters, such as VPN network relationships, CFG-mode address or DNS server, from the RADIUS server.

The VPN configuration may be either completely or only partially retrieved from the RADIUS server, in which case it is combined with parameters stored locally. This mechanism works for incoming connections only.

Optional RADIUS accounting allows information about VPN connections to be stored centrally on a RADIUS server. This information may consist of the duration of the connection to the client, the time when the connection is established, or the transmitted data volume.

The RADIUS server is configured in LANconfig under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Extended settings**.

RADIUS authorization

When authenticating a VPN peer, the LANCOM gateway transmits the following RADIUS attributes to the RADIUS server in the `Access-Request`:

ID :	Name	Meaning
1	User name	The remote ID of the VPN peers sent in the `AUTH` negotiation with the LANCOM gateway.
2	User-Password	The dummy password as configured in LANconfig under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Extended settings** > **Password**.
4	NAS-IP-Address	Specifies the IPv4 address of the gateway that is requesting access for a user. In the case of an IPv6 connection, the gateway transmits the attribute “95” instead (see below).
6	Service type	The service type is always “Outbound (5)” or “Dialout-Framed-User”.
31	Calling-Station-Id	Specifies the identifier (as an IPv4 or IPv6 address) of the calling station (e.g. the VPN client).
95	NAS-IPv6-Address	Specifies the IPv6 address of the gateway that is requesting access for a user. In the case of an IPv4 connection, the gateway transmits the attribute “4” instead (see above).

Of the attributes contained in the `Access-Accept` response from the RADIUS server, the LANCOM gateway evaluates the following, in part vendor-specific attributes:

ID :	Name	Meaning
8	Framed-IP-Address	IPv4 address for the client (in IKE CFG-mode “Server”).
22	Framed-Route	IPv4 routes that should be entered into the routing table on the VPN gateway in the direction of the client (next-hop client).
39	Tunnel-Password	Sets the passwords on the local and remote identity to the same value when using synchronous PSKs.
88	Framed-Pool	Name of the IPv4 address pool from which the client retrieves its IP address and the DNS server. The values in “Framed-IP-Address” and “LCS-DNS-Server-IPv4-Address” take precedence over this attribute.
99	Framed-IPv6-Route	IPv6 routes that should be entered into the routing table on the VPN gateway in the direction of the client (next-hop client).
168	Framed-IPv6-Address	IPv6 address for the client (in IKE CFG-mode “Server”).
169	DNS-Server-IPv6-Address	IPv6 DNS server for the client (in IKE CFG-mode “Server”).
172	Stateful-IPv6-Address-Pool	Name of the IPv6 address pool (in IKE CFG-mode “Server”).
Lancom 19	LCS-IKEv2-Local-Password	Local IKEv2 PSK
Lancom 20	LCS-IKEv2-Remote-Password	Remote IKEv2 PSK
Lancom 21	LCS-DNS-Server-IPv4-Address	IPv4 DNS server for the client (in IKE CFG-mode “Server”).
Lancom 22	LCS-VPN-IPv4-Rule	Contains the IPv4 network rules (examples below)
Lancom 23	LCS-VPN-IPv6-Rule	Contains the IPv6 network rules (examples below)

ID :	Name	Meaning
Lancom 24	LCS-Routing-Tag	Routing tag to be configured for the client (IPv4/IPv6).
Lancom 25	LCS-IKEv2-IPv4-Route	Routes in prefix notation (e.g. "192.168.1.0/24") that the LANCOM gateway transfers to the client via `INTERNAL_IP4_SUBNET`. Multiple attributes can be analyzed.
Lancom 26	LCS-IKEv2-IPv6-Route	Routes in prefix notation (e.g. "2001:db8::/64") that the LANCOM gateway transfers to the client via `INTERNAL_IP6_SUBNET`. Multiple attributes can be analyzed.

Examples of network rules

The format for a network rule on the RADIUS server takes the form `<local networks> * <remote networks>`.

The entries for `<local networks>` and `<remote networks>`are comma-separated lists.

Example 1: `10.1.1.0/24,10.2.0.0/16 * 172.32.0.0/12`

The result is the following network rules:

- `10.2.0.0/255.255.0.0` <-> `172.16.200.0/255.255.255.255`
- `10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0` <-> `172.16.200.0/255.255.255.255`

Example 2: `10.1.1.0/24 * 0.0.0.0/0`

This results in the following network rule:

- `10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0` <-> `0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0`

Here, `0.0.0.0/0` means "ANY", i.e. any network. `0.0.0.0/32` can be used to restrict a CFG-mode client to its own (as yet unknown) config-mode address. This address could come from an address pool on the device or from the RADIUS server.

Example 3: `2001:db8:1::/48 * 2001:db8:6::/48`

RADIUS accounting

The LANCOM gateway counts the transmitted data packets and octets and sends this information as regular `Accounting-Request` messages to the RADIUS accounting server. The RADIUS server answers this message with an `Accounting-Response` message.

The `Accounting-Request` messages have the following status types:

Home

As soon as a VPN peer contacts the LANCOM gateway, the gateway starts an accounting session via IKEv2 and sends a `Start` status message with the appropriate RADIUS attributes to the RADIUS accounting server.

Interim-Update

During an ongoing accounting session, the gateway sends `Interim-Update` status messages at specified time intervals to that RADIUS accounting server, which gave a valid response to the `Start` status message. The gateway ignores any backup servers that may have been configured.

Stop

After the end of a session, the LANCOM gateway sends a `Stop` status message to the RADIUS accounting server. This message is also sent only to that RADIUS accounting server, which gave a valid response to the `Start` status message. The gateway ignores any backup servers that may have been configured.

In the `Access-Request` message, the gateway transmits the following RADIUS attributes to the RADIUS server:

ID :	Name	Meaning	Status-Type
1	User name	The remote ID of the VPN peers sent in the `AUTH` negotiation with the LANCOM gateway.	> Home > Interim-Update > Stop
4	NAS-IP-Address	Specifies the IPv4 address of the gateway that is requesting access for a user. In the case of an IPv6 connection, the gateway transmits the attribute “95” instead (see below).	> Home > Interim-Update > Stop
8	Framed-IP-Address	IP4 address of the VPN client.	> Home > Interim-Update > Stop
31	Calling-Station-Id	Specifies the identifier (as an IPv4 or IPv6 address) of the calling station (e.g. the VPN client).	> Home > Interim-Update > Stop
32	NAS identifier	The device name of the gateway.	> Home > Interim-Update > Stop
40	Acct-Status-Type	Contains the status type “Start” (1).	> Home
40	Acct-Status-Type	Contains the status type “Interim-Update” (3).	> Interim-Update
40	Acct-Status-Type	Contains the status type “Stop” (2).	> Stop
42	Acct-Input-Octets	Contains the number of octets received from the direction of the VPN peer. The value refers to the decrypted data, starting with the IP header.	> Interim-Update > Stop
43	Acct-Output-Octets	Contains the number of octets sent to the VPN peer. The value refers to the decrypted data, starting with the IP header.	> Interim-Update > Stop
44	Acct-Session-Id	The name of the VPN peer and the timestamp at the start of the session form the unique session ID.	> Home > Interim-Update > Stop
46	Acct-Session-Time	Contains the elapsed time in seconds since the start of the session.	> Interim-Update > Stop
47	Acct-Input-Packets	Contains the current number of data packets received from the direction of the VPN peer.	> Interim-Update > Stop
48	Acct-Output-Packets	Contains the current number of data packets sent to the VPN peer.	> Interim-Update > Stop
49	Acct-Terminate-Cause	Contains the reason for terminating the session.	> Stop
52	Acct-Input-Gigawords	Contains the number of gigawords received from the direction of the VPN peer. The value refers to the decrypted data, starting with the IP header.	> Interim-Update > Stop
53	Acct-Input-Gigawords	Contains the number of gigawords sent to the VPN peer. The value refers to the decrypted data, starting with the IP header.	> Interim-Update > Stop

ID :	Name	Meaning	Status-Type
95	NAS-IPv6-Address	Specifies the IPv6 address of the gateway that is requesting access for a user. In the case of an IPv6 connection, the gateway transmits the attribute “4” instead (see above).	› Home › Interim-Update › Stop
168	Framed-IPv6-Address	IP6 address of the VPN client.	› Home › Interim-Update › Stop

RADIUS authentication

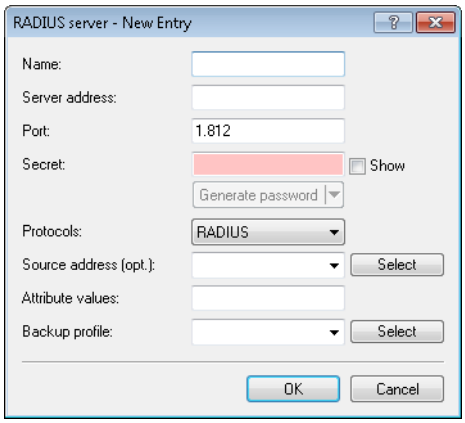
In the **RADIUS authentication** section you configure the settings for the RADIUS server used for VPN client authentication.

In the **Password** field you set the password that the RADIUS server receives as a user password in the access-request attribute.

The RADIUS server usually associates this password directly with a VPN peer for network access authorization. With IKEv2 however, the requesting VPN peer is authorized not by the RADIUS server, but instead by the LANCOM gateway after this receives the corresponding authorization in the `access-accept` message from the RADIUS server.

Accordingly, you enter a dummy password at this point.

Just click on **RADIUS server** to open the configuration dialog of the RADIUS server.



Name

Specify an identifier for this entry.

Server address

Specify the host name for the RADIUS server (IPv4, IPv6 or DNS address).

Port

Specify the UDP port of the RADIUS server. The value “1812” is preset as the default value.

Secret

This entry contains the shared secret used to authorize the LANCOM gateway at the RADIUS server.

Confirm the secret by entering it again into the field that follows.

Protocols

From the drop-down menu, choose between the standard RADIUS protocol and the secure RADSEC protocol for RADIUS requests.

Source address (optional)

Enter the loopback address of the device, where applicable.

Attribute values

LCOS facilitates the configuration of the RADIUS attributes used to communicate with a RADIUS server (for authentication and accounting).

The attributes are specified in a semicolon-separated list of attribute numbers or names along with a corresponding value in the form `<Attribute_1>=<Value_1>;<Attribute_2>=<Value_2>`.

As the number of characters is limited, the name can abbreviated. The abbreviation must be unique, however. Examples:

- `NAS-Port=1234` is not allowed, because the attribute is not unique (`NAS-Port`, `NAS-Port-Id` or `NAS-Port-Type`).
- `NAS-Id=ABCD` is allowed, because the attribute is unique (`NAS-Identifier`).

Attribute values can be used to specify names or RFC-compliant numbers. For the device , the specifications `Service-Type=Framed` and `Service-Type=2` are identical.

Specifying a value in quotation marks (`"<Value>"`) allows you to specify special characters such as spaces, semicolons or equals signs. The quotation mark requires a leading backslash (`\"`), as does the backslash itself (`\\`).

The following variables are permitted as values:

`%n`

Device name

`%e`

Serial number of the device

`%%`

Percent sign

`%{name}`

Original name of the attribute as transferred by the RADIUS application. This allows attributes to be set with the original RADIUS attributes, for example: `Called-Station-Id=%{NAS-Identifier}` sets the attribute `Called-Station-Id` to the value with the attribute `NAS-Identifier`.

Backup profile

From the list of RADIUS server profiles, select a profile as the backup server.

The RADIUS server configured is selected in the connection list under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Connection list** in the **RADIUS auth. server** field.

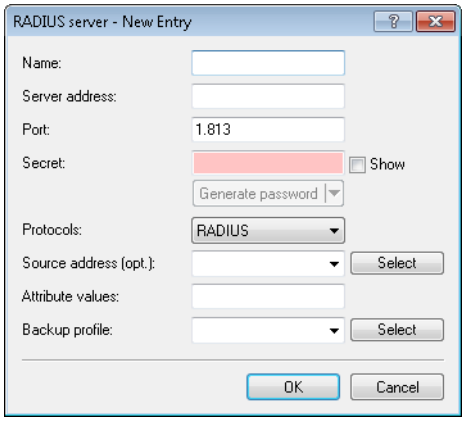
RADIUS accounting

In the **RADIUS accounting** section you configure the settings for the RADIUS server used for VPN client accounting.

Just click on **RADIUS server** to open the configuration dialog of the RADIUS server.

The **Update cycle** field is used to set the time in seconds between two successive interim-update messages. The device randomly inserts a tolerance of ±10% to keep the update messages of parallel accounting sessions separate from one another.

Just click on **RADIUS server** to open the configuration dialog of the RADIUS server.



Name

Specify an identifier for this entry.

Server address

Specify the host name for the RADIUS server (IPv4, IPv6 or DNS address).

Port

Specify the UDP port of the RADIUS server. The value “1813” is preset as the default value.

Secret

This entry contains the shared secret used to authorize the LANCOM gateway at the RADIUS server.

Confirm the secret by entering it again into the field that follows.

Protocols

From the drop-down menu, choose between the standard RADIUS protocol and the secure RADSEC protocol for RADIUS requests.

Source address (optional)

Enter the loopback address of the device, where applicable.

Attribute values

LCOS facilitates the configuration of the RADIUS attributes used to communicate with a RADIUS server (for authentication and accounting).

The attributes are specified in a semicolon-separated list of attribute numbers or names along with a corresponding value in the form `<Attribute_1>=<Value_1>;<Attribute_2>=<Value_2>`.

As the number of characters is limited, the name can abbreviated. The abbreviation must be unique, however. Examples:

- `NAS-Port=1234` is not allowed, because the attribute is not unique (`NAS-Port`, `NAS-Port-Id` or `NAS-Port-Type`).
- `NAS-Id=ABCD` is allowed, because the attribute is unique (`NAS-Identifier`).

Attribute values can be used to specify names or RFC-compliant numbers. For the device , the specifications `Service-Type=Framed` and `Service-Type=2` are identical.

Specifying a value in quotation marks (`"<Value>"`) allows you to specify special characters such as spaces, semicolons or equals signs. The quotation mark requires a leading backslash (`\"`), as does the backslash itself (`\\`).

The following variables are permitted as values:

%n

Device name

%e

Serial number of the device

%%

Percent sign

%{name}

Original name of the attribute as transferred by the RADIUS application. This allows attributes to be set with the original RADIUS attributes, for example: `Called-Station-Id=%{NAS-Identifier}` sets the attribute `Called-Station-Id` to the value with the attribute `NAS-Identifier`.

Backup profile

From the list of RADIUS server profiles, select a profile as the backup server.

The RADIUS server configured is selected in the connection list under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Connection list** in the **RADIUS acc. server** field.

10.22.4 IKEv2 routing support

As of version 9.20, LCOS supports the following functions for IKEv2-Config-Exchange

- CFG_Request
- CFG_Reply
- CFG_Set
- CFG_Ack

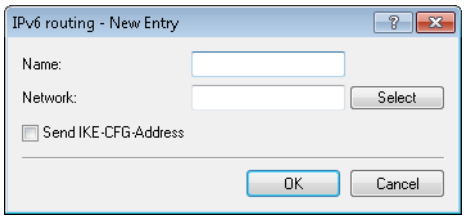
Configuring the prefixes for dynamic routing via IKEv2 in LANconfig is done under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Extended settings** in the **IKEv2 routing** section.

IPv4 routing

IKEv2 routing uses an IKEv2 tunnel to propagate local networks or to learn about remote networks.

IPv6 routing

Use this table to configure the IPv6 networks that the device propagates via dynamic routing as per IKEv2.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry.

Network

Contains the comma-separated list of IPv6 subnets.

Networks are entered in the following available formats:

- IPv6 address
- IPv6 address/prefix length
- IPv6 interface name

The IP subnets are configured under **IPv6** > **General** in the section **IPv6 networks**.

Send IKE-CFG address

As a client, the device sends the retrieved CFG-mode address to the VPN peer (server).

This option is required only if the remote site does not automatically create a routing entry for assigned IP addresses. LANCOM routers generate the necessary routes automatically.

10.22.5 "Match Remote Identity" for IKEv2

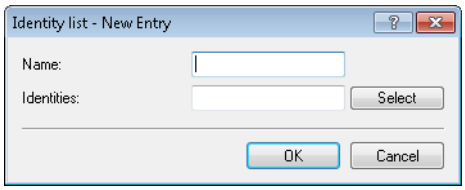
LCOS as of version 9.20 supports the configuration of multiple remote identities for IKEv2 connections. These identities can then be allocated to a VPN remote station.

The additional remote identities are configured in LANconfig under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Extended settings** in the **Authentication** section.

The allocation of an additional remote identity to a VPN connection is done under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Authentication** in the **Additional remote identities** section.

Identity list

Use this table to collect other remote identities into a group.



Name

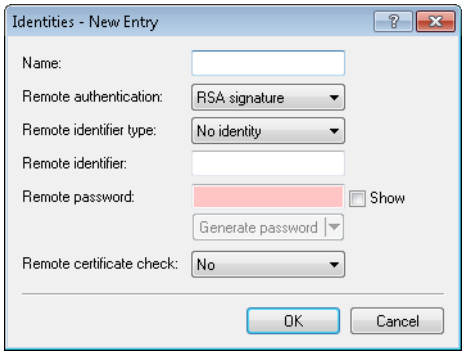
Contains the unique name of this entry.

Identity

Lists the other identities that are collected into this group. Configure the identities under **Identities**.

Identities

Use this table to configure additional remote identities. You select this name when grouping remote identities in the **Identity list**.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry.

Remote authentication

Sets the authentication method for the remote identity.

Remote identifier type

Displays the ID type that the device expects from the remote identifier. The device interprets the entry under "Remote identifier" accordingly. Possible entries are:

- No identity: The device accepts any ID from the remote device. The device to ignores entries in the "Remote identifier" field.
- IPv4 address: The device expects an IPv4 address as the remote ID.
- IPv6 address: The device expects an IPv6 address as the remote ID.
- Domain name (FQDN): The device expects a domain name as the remote ID.
- E-mail address (FQUN): The device expects an e-mail address as the remote ID.
- ASN.1 Distinguished Name: The device expects a distinguished name as the remote ID.
- Key ID (group name): The device expects the group name as the remote ID.

Remote identifier

Contains the remote identity. The significance of this entry depends on the setting under "Remote identifier type".

Remote password

Contains the password of the remote identity.

Remote certificate check

This option determines whether the device checks that the specified remote identity is included in the received certificate.

10.22.6 Redirect mechanism for IKEv2

As of LCOS version 9.20, LCOS supports the redirect mechanism as per RFC 5685 for VPN connections that use IKEv2. This is initially supported as a client only. This allows an IKEv2 server to redirect a client to a different gateway.

10.22.7 VPN via IPv6 connections with IKEv1

As of LCOS version 9.20, current VPN devices support IKEv1 for VPN connections over IPv6.

10.22.8 VPN network rules for IPv4 and IPv6

As of LCOS version 9.20, current VPN devices allow the flexible configuration of network rules for VPN connections over IPv4 and IPv6.

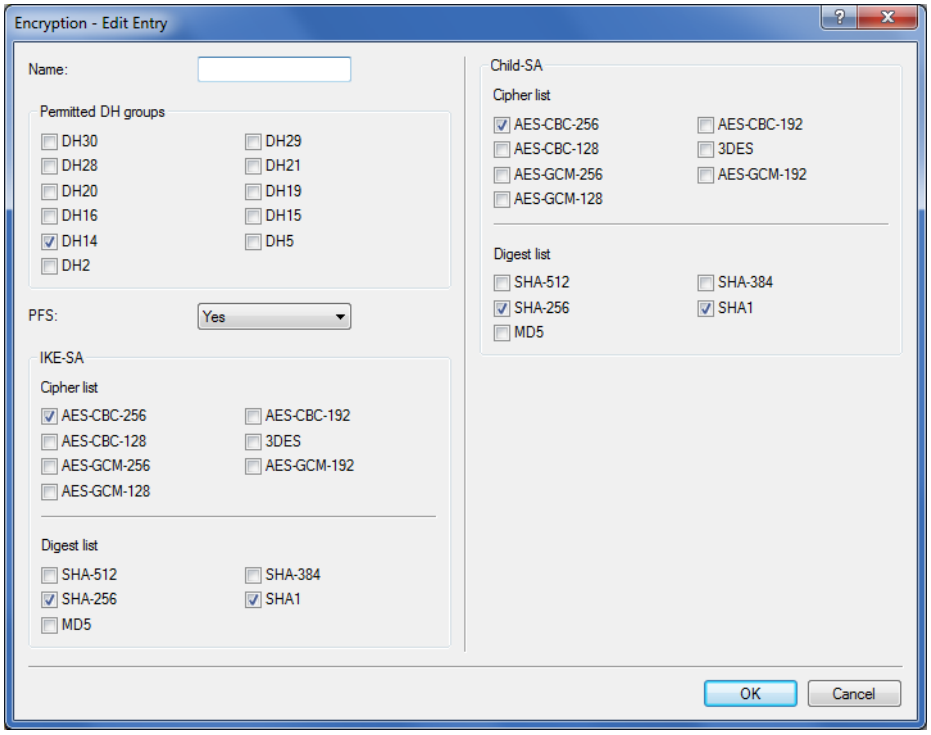
10.23 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.12

10.23.1 Addition to the IKEv2 encryption algorithms

As of LCOS version 10.12, an additional encryption algorithm is supported: GCM (Galois/Counter Mode).

This algorithm is particularly efficient and provides a noticeable increase in performance.

Also, new groups are available for the Diffie-Hellmann key exchange, namely DH-19 to DH-21 as per RFC5903 as well as DH-28 to DH-30 as per RFC 6954.



The new groups for the Diffie-Hellmann key exchange:

- DH-19 (256-bit random ECP group)
- DH-20 (384-bit random ECP group)
- DH-21 (521-bit random ECP group)
- DH-28 (brainpoolP256r1)
- DH-29 (brainpoolP384r1)
- DH-30 (brainpoolP512r1)

Variants of the newly added Galois/Counter Mode encryption algorithm:

- AES-GCM-128
- AES-GCM-192
- AES-GCM-256

10.23.2 IKEv2 load balancer

The IKEv2 load balancer allows the distribution of incoming IKEv2 connections to other gateways depending on the current load or number of VPN tunnels. The IKEv2 redirect mechanism is used to achieve this.

Larger-scale VPN scenarios generally operate with redundant VPN gateways. Often, the gateways are are not used evenly, and some gateways are reserved for backup events. The result is a non-uniform resource load across the installation.

With multiple VPN gateways in operation, all of them need to be configured on all of the clients. Particularly when a new VPN gateway is installed, it has to be subsequently configured on all of the clients. With the redirect mechanism (RFC 5685), IKEv2 offers an enhancement that enables a VPN gateway to redirect a client to another gateway.

The IKEv2 redirect mechanism in combination with VRRP provides a highly available IKEv2 load balancer that is suitable for enterprise scenarios.

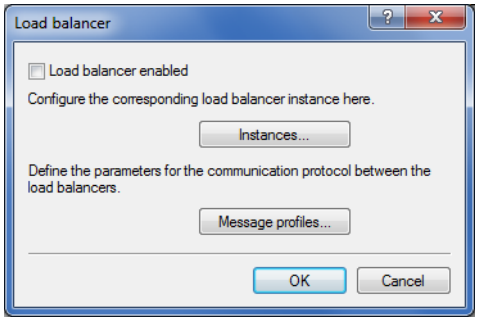
In the first step, a VRRP group is activated on all participating VPN gateways. The virtual VRRP IP address is at the same time the master IP address of the IKEv2 load balancer cluster. The VPN gateways now exchange information about their load and their availability by means of regular status messages via multicast. If the master goes down, another VPN gateway is automatically set as the master.

The only information the clients need is the master IP address. If a client establishes a VPN connection to this IP address, the master gateway checks the load of the VPN gateways and redirects the client to the gateway with the least load. The master gateway sends a redirect either in the IKE_SA_INIT response or in the IKE Auth phase. The redirect depends on the availability of free VPN tunnels of the participating gateways. The VPN client is directed to the VPN gateway with the lowest number of active tunnels.

The virtual gateway address is only used for the initial contact before the subsequent redirect. The client then establishes the actual VPN tunnel to a different gateway address.

The following limiting conditions must be observed:

- VRRP is required for the automatic selection of the master gateway.
- The VPN gateways involved must have a common layer-2 connection for the VRRP and the exchange of status messages via multicast.
- VRRP is currently supported on LAN interfaces only.
- An upstream router (redundant, if necessary) is required for WAN access.
- The client must support IKEv2 gateway redirect as per RFC 5685 (currently applies to LANCOM routers and the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client on Windows).

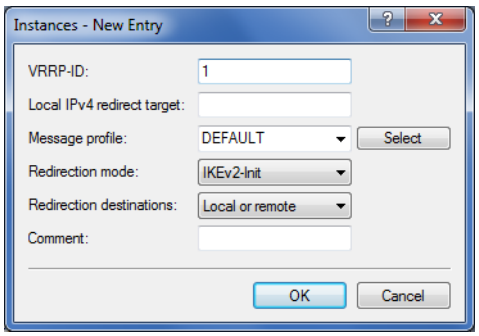


Load balancer enabled

activates the IKEv2 load balancer.

Instances

Load balancer instances are configured in the **Instances** table.



VRRP-ID

VRRP-ID (router ID) to be used for this IKEv2 load balancer instance. VRRP must be activated on this device and configured for this VRRP ID.

Possible values:

0 to 255

Default: 1

Local IPv4 redirect target

IPv4 address or FQDN on which the device is to receive VPN tunnels. A VPN client is forwarded to this address by the master in the load-balancer cluster.

This is not the virtual VRRP-IP address.

Message profile

Message profile to use for this instance. The message profile contains the parameters for the status log used by the device to communicate its status information to the load balancer cluster.

Default: DEFAULT.

Redirection mode

Specifies at which phase of the IKEv2 negotiation the VPN gateway redirects clients to another gateway.

This parameter only takes effect if the device is VRRP master.

Possible values:

IKEv2-Init (default)

The redirect message is sent in the IKE_SA_INIT response from the VPN gateway.

IKEv2-Auth

The redirect message is sent in the IKE_AUTH phase after the client has identified itself to the VPN gateway.

Redirection destinations

Specifies the destination to which the VPN client is redirected.

The parameter only takes effect if the device is VRRP master.

Possible values:

Local or remote

Clients are redirected to the device's own IP address and also to other remote gateways in the cluster.

Remote only

Clients are only redirected to other VPN gateways. This results in VPN clients being evenly distributed between all gateways except for the master gateway.

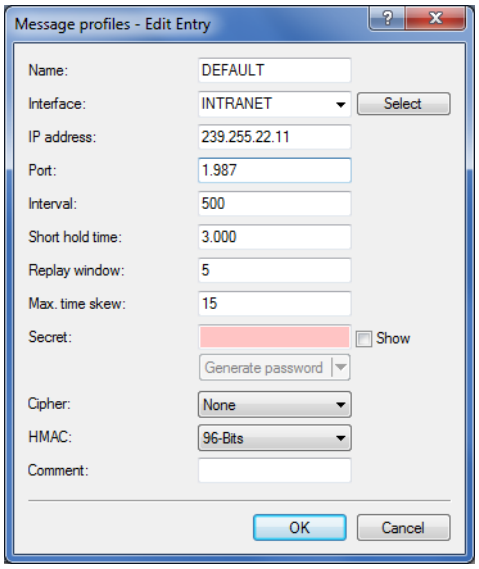
This can be used to configure scenarios in which the load balancer master only distributes the clients, but does not terminate any VPN tunnels itself.

Comment

Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

Message profiles

The **Message profiles** table contains the parameters for the status log used by the VPN gateways to communicate their status information to the load balancer cluster.



Name

Unique name for this profile

Interface

Interface used by the IKEv2 load balancer to exchange status messages with other VPN gateways in the cluster.

Possible values:

Entries from the IPv4 networks table

IP address

Specifies the multicast IP address used by the IKEv2 load balancer to communicate on the local network.

Default: 239.255.22.11

Port

Specifies the port used by the IKEv2 load balancer to communicate on the local network.

Default: 1987

Interval

Interval (in milliseconds), in which status messages are exchanged between the IKEv2 load balancers.

Possible values:

0 to 65535

Default: 500

Short hold time

Specifies the time in milliseconds following the last status message, after which the other IKEv2 load balancers flag the device as disabled.

The short hold time must be greater than the interval. A recommended value is at least three times the **Interval** parameter.

Possible values:

0 to 65535

Default: 3000

Replay window

Size of the replay window (the number of messages) for IKEv2 load-balancer status messages. Messages that fall outside the replay window are dropped.

Possible values:

1 to 9

Default: 5

0

Disables the replay detection.

Max. time skew

Maximum permitted time deviation (in seconds) of the time stamps in status messages from the IKEv2 load balancer. Messages with a higher skew are dropped.

Possible values:

0 to 255

Default: 15

Secret

Shared secret for the load balancer communication log.

The secret must be the same on all of the VPN gateways in a cluster.

Possible values:

Up to 32 random characters

Cipher

Specifies the encryption algorithm used for the status messages from the IKEv2 load balancers.

Possible values:

None (default)

AES-128-GCM

AES-192-GCM

AES-256-GCM

HMAC

Specifies the signaling algorithm used for the status messages from the IKEv2 load balancers.

Possible values:

None

96 bits (default)

128 bits

Comment

Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

Show commands via CLI

`show vlb-status`: Displays the status of the individual gateways in the cluster.

Trace commands

The available trace commands are listed in the following:

- VLB-Status
- VLB-Packet

10.23.3 Flexible identity comparison for PSK connections

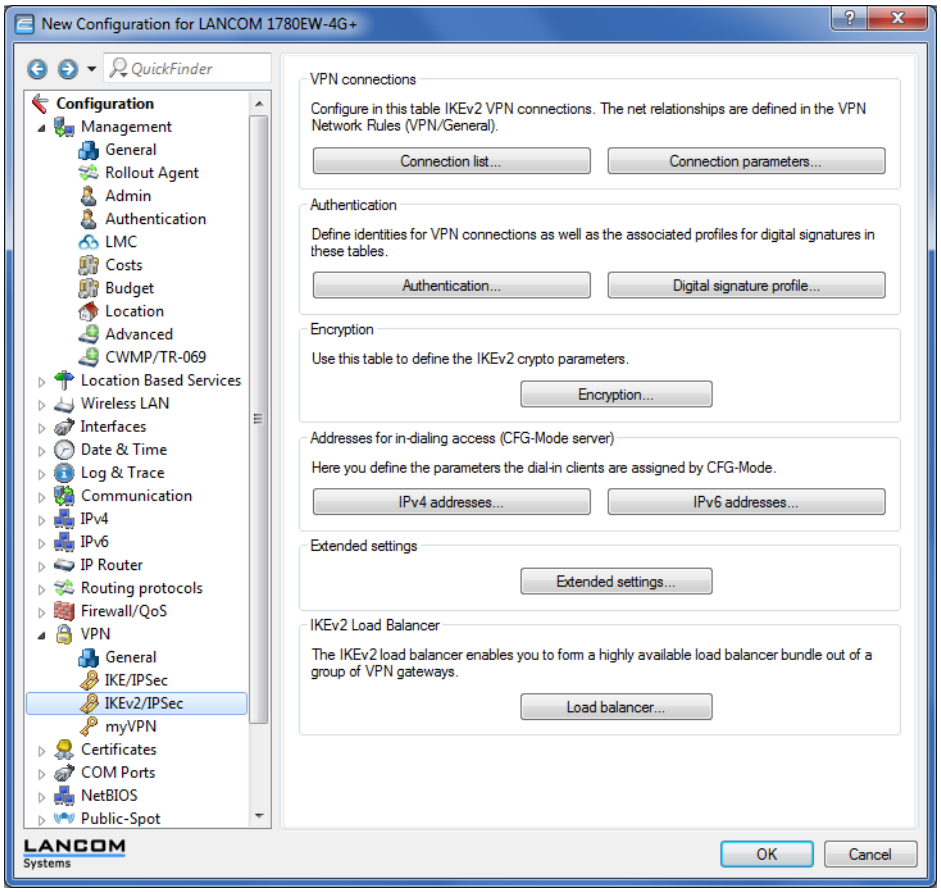
With LCOS version 10.12 the flexible identity comparison now includes PSK connections (IKEv2). Until now, identity comparison was only possible for certificate-based VPN connections (distinguished name).

Support of "wildcard globbing" is now available for IKEv2 identities. Here '?' stands for exactly one character and '*' for any number characters, including zero.

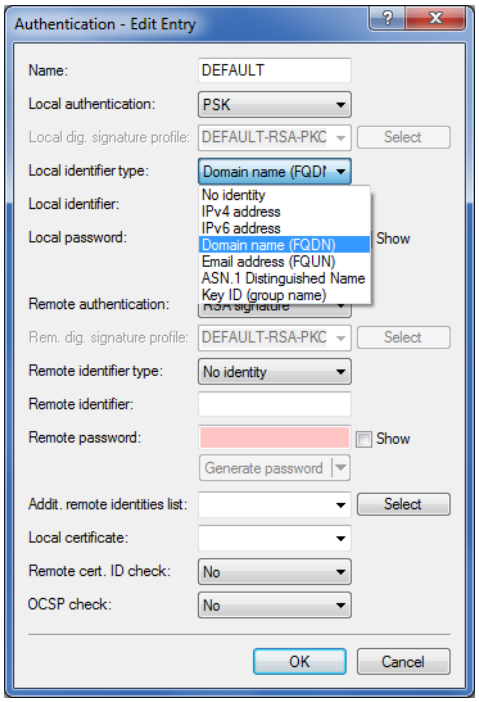
This feature makes it easier to configure your VPN, since in principle all you need for inbound IKEv2 connections is a single entry.

The prerequisite is that all inbound connections use a particular syntax and that flexible comparison is enabled.

Flexible identity comparison is configured in **LANconfig** under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec** > **Authentication** and clicking the **Authentication** button.



Flexible identity comparison for PSK connections supports the two identity types **FQUN** and **FQDN**.



Please note that all parameters are case-sensitive.

On the command line, you can access the parameters with the path **Setup** > **VPN** > **IKEv2** > **Auth** > **Parameter**.

10.24 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.20

10.24.1 OCSP server

The Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) is a procedure defined in RFC 6960 for checking the validity of a certificate at a central instance. Unlike certificate revocation lists (CRLs), the full CRL does not need to be downloaded periodically; instead, an on-demand OCSP request is made to the OCSP server when the connection is established, which ensures that the information about the validity of the certificate is always up-to-date. Only a small amount of data is transmitted since only the validity information for a certificate is sent. Compared to the CRL-based method, the validity information is always up-to-date and verification is faster.

The OCSP server can only be used in conjunction with a certification authority (CA) on the same device (LANCOM Smart Certificate). The OCSP server is not able to provide validity information for certificates from other CAs.

In order for the OCSP server to be used to generate certificates per LANCOM Smart Certificate, it must be assigned a certificate and a new entry is required in the profile for certificate creation in order to identify the OCSP server.

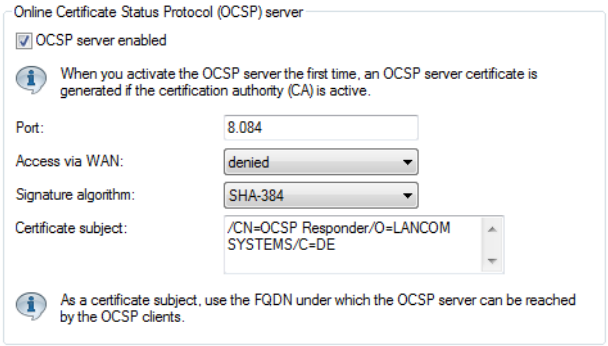
Configuring the OCSP server

Take the following steps to configure the OCSP server:

1. Enable the OCSP server under **Certificates** > **OCSP** > **Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) server** > **OCSP server enabled**.
2. Assign a certificate to the OCSP server.

   Operating the OCSP server requires it to receive a certificate from the CA whose certificates it should provide information about. This certificate is used to sign the OCSP responses.

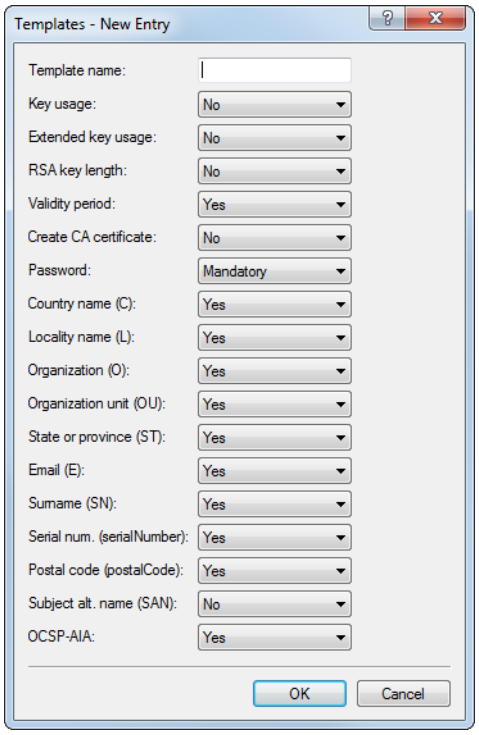
   For this purpose, go to **Certificates** > **OCSP** > **Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) server** and configure the **Certificate subject** for the OCSP server. When the server is activated for the first time, this information is used to automatically generate the certificate for the OCSP server.



   In the certificate subject, enter CN as the FQDN where OCSP clients can reach the OCSP server.

3. Provide information about the OCSP server to the Smart Certificate preconfiguration
   a) Under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** > **CA web interface** > **Templates**, you can specify that when Smart Certificate CA generates a certificate, the field "OCSP-AIA" (Authority Information Access) is available for

configuration. If you use the "Default" template, this is automatically the case. If you use a custom template, then set the field “OCSP-AIA” to Yes.

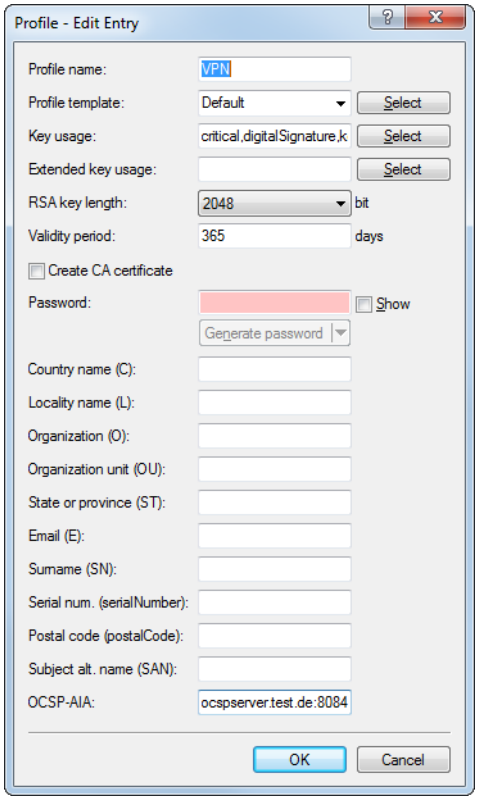


b) Under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** > **CA web interface** > **Profile** you set a default value for the field OCSP-AIA in the desired Smart Certificate profile.

This step is optional. If you do not specify a default value here, you must manually specify a value when creating a certificate.

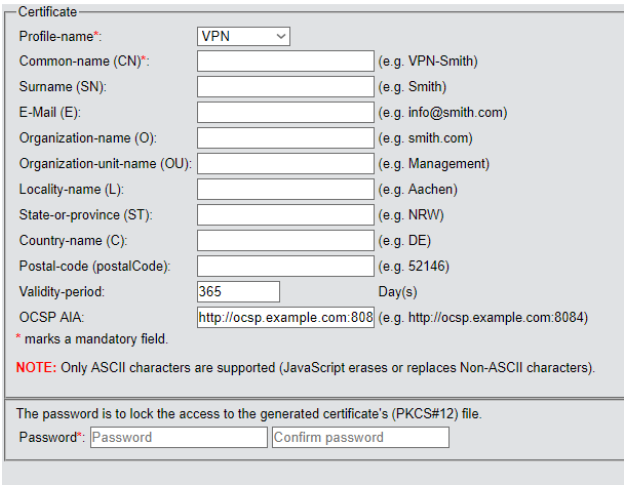
Configure the name or IP address where the OCSP server is available to the OCSP clients. This was already used earlier when generating the OCSP server certificate. Also add the port number where the OCSP server can be reached. The default setting is port 8084.

In the example, the default value for the profile “VPN” is adapted to “ocspserver.test.de:8084”:



This concludes the configuration of the OCSP server.

If you now use Smart Certificate in WEBconfig to generate a certificate as described in *Certificate creation with WEBconfig*, the OCSP AIA is automatically added to it, so enabling the client to contact the OCSP server for a validity check during connection establishment.



The OCSP server refers to its internal certificate list to check the validity. All in all, the Smart Certificate web interface offers a convenient way to withdraw or validate the certificates.

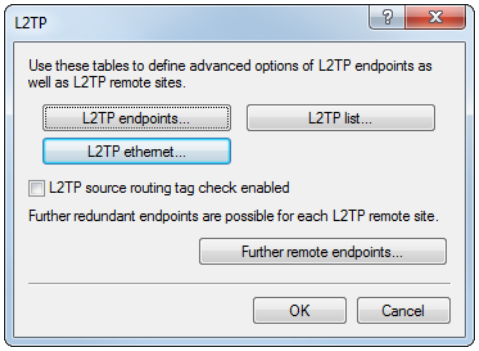
10.24.2 Layer-3 Ethernet tunnel with Layer-2 Tunneling Protocol version 3 (L2TPv3)

With L2TPv3, Ethernet traffic (layer 2) is tunneled over UDP. This allows LANs to be connected across network and site boundaries.

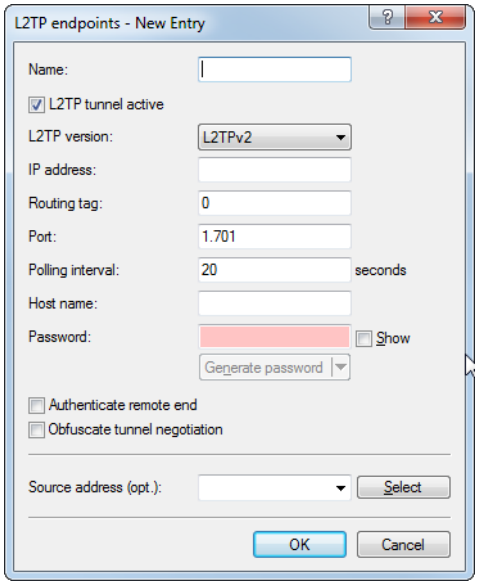
This is particularly useful for bridging WLAN traffic on access points to a central concentrator by means of an L2TPv3 Ethernet tunnel. Without L2TPv3, this would require the use of a WLAN controller operating CAPWAP layer-3 tunnels. L2TPv3 does not require WLAN controllers and this allows WLAN traffic to be bridged through tunnels to the central site.

From LCOS 10.20, layer-3 Ethernet tunnels can be configured to use L2TPv3. This is configured in the L2TP endpoints table, available since version 2 of the protocol, and in the new L2TP Ethernet table. For a corresponding scenario, see *Configuring a WLAN scenario for bridging payload data to the central site* on page 803.

With LANconfig, you configure L2TP under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **L2TP**.



For version 3, the configuration of the L2TP endpoints table under **L2TP endpoints** was enhanced with the following parameters:



L2TP tunnel active

Enables the configured L2TP tunnel.

L2TP version

The L2TP protocol version used, either version 2 or 3.

Ethernet tunnels are only possible with version 3. In this case, be sure to set the protocol “L2TPv3” here.

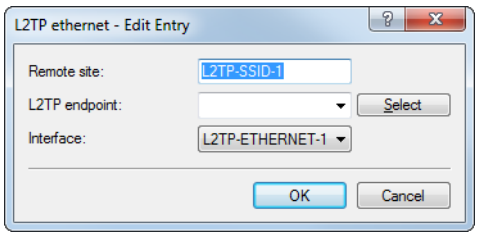
L2TPv3 in the LCOS is always encapsulated in UDP. This allows transmissions to pass through NAT gateways without problem.

If you specify an IP address or a host name, an attempt is made to establish a connection. If the corresponding field is left blank, no connection is established, but connections can be accepted. Configured properties such as the station name or password are checked by the remote site when the connection is established.

A number of implicit dependencies during the connection establishment and authentication are not directly apparent, so we will enlarge on these here:

- The host name transmitted by the remote site is checked to see whether it corresponds to a configured L2TP endpoint. The host name is configured in the L2TP endpoint table of the remote site under **Host name**. If this field is left blank, the device name is used for authentication instead.
- If this is the case, the connection is established using the configuration for the corresponding L2TP endpoint.
- If not, the L2TP endpoints table is checked to see if it contains a "wildcard" entry. This is an entry that contains no host/station name or routing tag. The connection is established using the configuration of the "wildcard" entry.
- If authentication is activated for the corresponding entry in the L2TP endpoints table, authentication is carried out based on the configured password.
- If the password field is empty and authentication is switched on, a RADIUS authentication is carried out. See *Authentication via RADIUS*.
- If authentication is turned off, a "wildcard" entry accepts any incoming tunnel accordingly.

Under **L2TP Ethernet** you link L2TPv3 sessions with one of the 16 L2TP virtual Ethernet interfaces. The L2TP virtual Ethernet interfaces can then be used elsewhere in the configuration, e.g. in the LAN bridge for linking to WLAN or LAN interfaces.



Remote site

Here you configure the name used to assign the Ethernet tunnel to the remote site. For each Ethernet tunnel, this name must be identical at both ends.

L2TP endpoint

Here you configure the name of the L2TP endpoint configured in the L2TP endpoints table. This causes an Ethernet tunnel session to be established via this endpoint. If connections are to be accepted only, and not actively established from this end, leaving this field blank allows any sessions to be accepted. Of course, these still need "to run" via an accepted/established endpoint from the L2TP endpoints table. This can be useful in scenarios where not every endpoint on the receiving side should be configured separately.

Interface

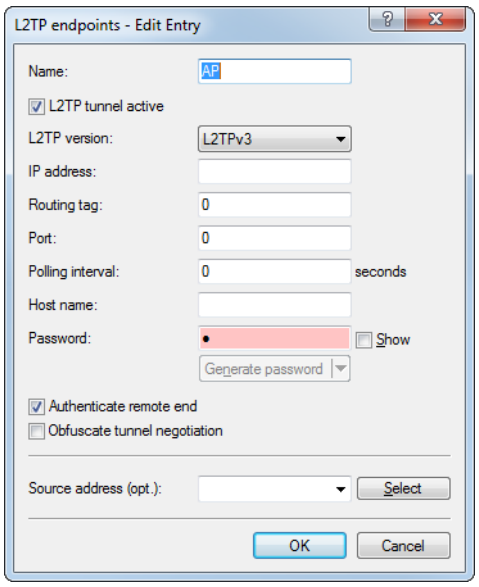
The virtual L2TP Ethernet interface to be used for the L2TPv3 session.

Configuring a WLAN scenario for bridging payload data to the central site

This is an example of how L2TPv3 is used in a scenario where several access points use bridging to transfer their payload data to a central router (referred to here as the "concentrator"), where the data are made available via a separate Ethernet port.

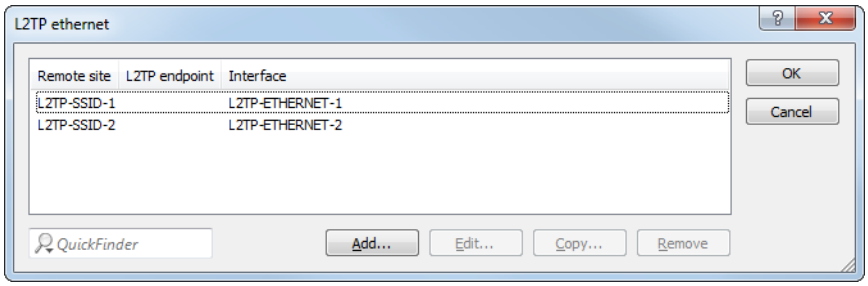
Before LCOS 10.20, this scenario would have required a WLAN controller.

1. Prepare the WLAN configuration on the access points. To enable roaming, SSID names and encryption settings should be configured identically on each AP.
2. Now configure the concentrator, which is to accept the L2TPv3 Ethernet sessions from the individual access points.
   a) Under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **L2TP** in the L2TP endpoints table, create an entry "DEFAULT". Enter a descriptive name for the new entry. Set the **L2TP version** to "L2TPv3". Do not specify an **IP address**. Set a password to increase security and enable the "Authenticate remote end" option to use the password for authentication during connection establishment. Leave the remaining settings at their default values.



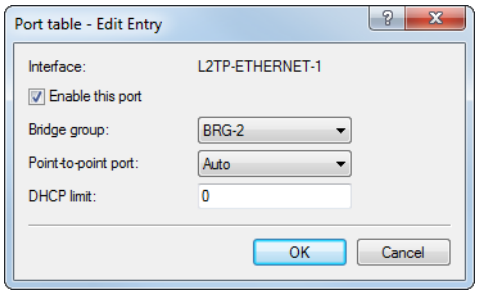
   The **IP address** is empty. This is then a "wildcard" entry that can accept connections from any remote site.

   b) Under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **L2TP** in the L2TP Ethernet table, create a new entry. Use **Remote site** to set a name for the Ethernet tunnel, e.g. the name of the SSID to which the tunnel on the access points is to be linked. Leave the field **L2TP endpoint** empty so that any (authenticated) sessions can be accepted. This method avoids having to create an entry for each individual access point in the L2TP endpoint table: The wildcard entry created in the previous step is used instead. Under **Interface** you now configure the virtual interface to which the L2TP Ethernet tunnel is to be connected. If the access points operate multiple SSIDs that are to be bridged to the central site, use this table to create an entry for each SSID, each with a unique name under **Remote site**.



In our scenario, the payload data of all connected access points are routed to the virtual interface configured here. Furthermore, the payload data of all access points connected to this virtual interface are bridged to one another—rather like the WLAN controller-based layer-3 tunneling technique.

c) Under **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **LAN bridge settings** > **Port table**, link the virtual L2TP interface selected earlier to a LAN interface where you set the same bridge group. Repeat this for any additional L2TP virtual interfaces for additional SSIDs.

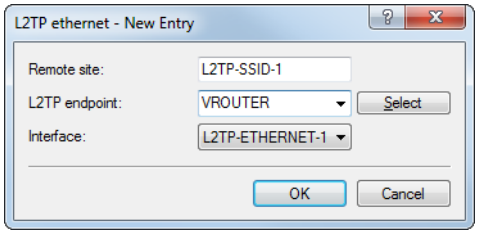


d) This concludes the configuration of the concentrator.

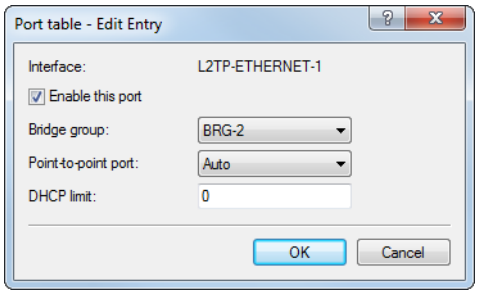
3. The following example shows how to configure an access point to transfer payload data to the concentrator.

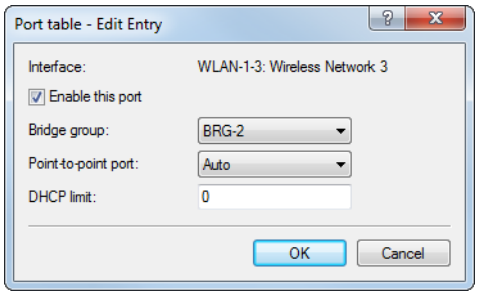
a) Under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **L2TP**, create a new entry in the L2TP endpoints table. Enter a descriptive name for the new entry. Set the **L2TP version** to "L2TPv3". Enter the IP address or host name where the access point contacts the concentrator. Enter the password you set when configuring the concentrator and select "Authenticate remote end" to use the password for authentication. Leave the remaining settings at their default values.

b) Under **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **L2TP** in the L2TP Ethernet table, create a new entry. Under **Remote site**, enter a name that identifies the Ethernet tunnel. This must be the same as the name given to this Ethernet tunnel on the concentrator. In the field **L2TP endpoint**, select the L2TP endpoint table entry that was created in the previous step. This endpoint is then used to establish the Ethernet tunnel. Under **Interface** you now configure the virtual interface to which the L2TP Ethernet tunnel is to be connected.



c) Under **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **LAN bridge settings** > **Port table**, link the virtual L2TP interface selected earlier to a WLAN interface by setting the same bridge group. Repeat this for any additional L2TP virtual interfaces for additional SSIDs.





d) Carry out the configuration described here for the other access points. Once the configuration has been completed in this way, the identical configuration can be used on all of the access points and no further adaptations are necessary for the individual APs.

10.24.3 IKEv2

LANCOM devices are capable of VPN with IKEv1 and IKEv2.

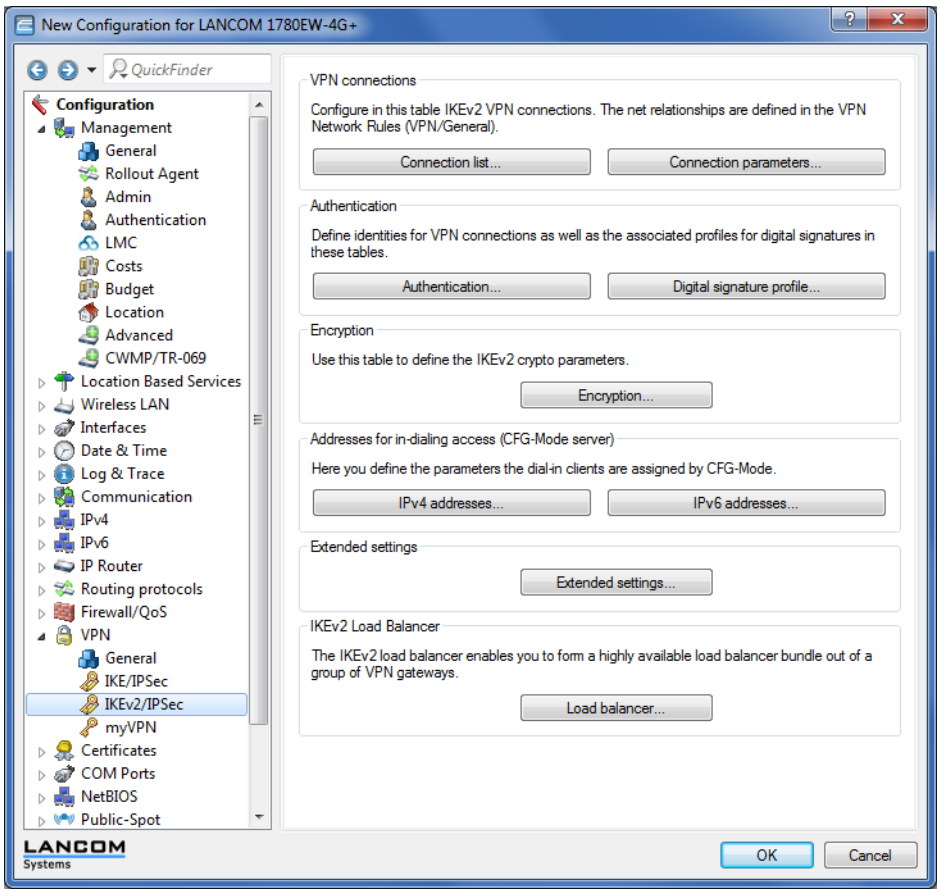
IKEv2 facilitates a fast and secure establishment of VPN tunnels. For the first time it is now possible to operate encrypted networking between IPv6-based sites and IPv4-based sites by means of the mixed mode.

Manually configuring a VPN connection that uses IKEv1 is complex and error prone. Consequently, many IPSec implementations have incompatible configurations, which causes the VPN connections between the devices to fail. The IKEv2 configuration in LCOS gives administrators a reliable method of setting up a configuration that matches that of the remote station. For example, administrators have a choice of several Diffie-Hellman groups. At the same time, the revised user interface presents recommended default values for many of the configuration parameters. The simplified configuration with IKEv2 eliminates sources of error, which results in a lower administrative overhead. Further, VPN connection establishment with IKEv2 offers better performance, because IKEv2 only exchanges 4 packets when negotiating a VPN tunnel (one `REQUEST` per VPN partner and one `REPLY`), rather than the 6 required by IKEv1 in the "aggressive/quick mode" or 12 in "main mode". The standard of security is just as high with IKEv2 as with IKEv1.

Operating IKEv2 supports *RFC 7296*, *RFC 7427* and, in the IKEv2 client mode, *RFC 5685*.

Configuring IKEv2 with LANconfig

IKEv2 is configured under **VPN** > **IKEv2/IPSec**.



VPN connections

In this section, you configure the IKEv2 VPN connections and the connection parameters.

Authentication

This table is used to define the identities for your VPN connections.

Digital signature profile

This table is used to specify the authentication methods for your VPN connections.

Encryption

This table is used to set the encryption parameters.

Addresses for dial-in access (CFG mode server)

Use this table to specify the parameters that the device CFG mode assigns to the dial-in clients.

Extended settings

This section is used to configure the settings for the authentication of other remote identities, the IKEv2 rekeying parameters, and the prefixes for IKEv2 routing.

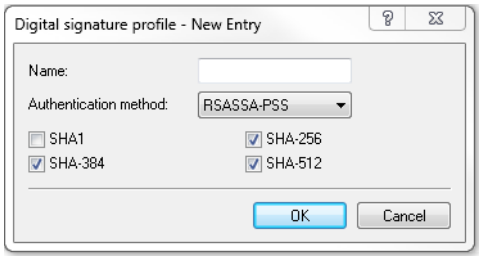
In order to configure an IKEv2 connection, you first need to make an entry in the **Connection list**. LCOS contains default entries in order to minimize the effort of configuration. Most of these entries contain default parameters with common settings for strong encryption algorithms, dead-peer-detection, and lifetimes. All you need to do is specify the address

of the VPN remote peer, the authentication parameters (under **Authentication**), and the VPN rules (under **VPN** > **General** > **Network rules**).

The CLI command `show vpn` displays whether the VPN connection was established successfully.

Digital signature profile

Use this table to configure the parameters for the IKEv2 authentication.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry. You can assign this name in three different places. In the section **Authentication** in the fields **Local dig.signature profile** and **Rem. dig.signature profile**, and under **Extended settings** > **Authentification** > **Identities** > **Rem. dig.signature profile**.

Authentication method

Sets the authentication method for the digital signature. Possible values are:

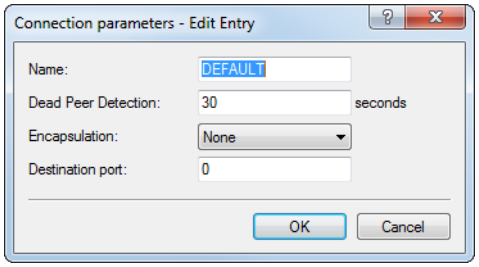
- RSASSA-PSS: RSA with improved probabilistic signature schema as per version 2.1 of PKCS #1 (probabilistic signature scheme with appendix)
- RSASSA-PKCS1-v1_5: RSA according to the older version of the signature schema as per version 1.5 of PKCS #1 (probabilistic signature scheme with appendix)

If RSASSA-PKCS1-v1_5 is selected, a check is made to see whether the remote site also supports the superior RSASSA-PSS method and switches to it if necessary. If RSASSA-PSS is selected, then a fallback to the older RSASSA-PKCS1-v1_5 is not provided.

You also specify the secure hash algorithms (SHA) to be used.

Connection parameters

Use this table to specify the parameters of IKEv2 VPN connections that are not included in the SA negotiation. An entry named "DEFAULT" is provided with common settings.



Name

Contains the unique name of this entry. You assign this name to the connections in the **Connection list** in the "Connection parameters" field.

Dead peer detection

Contains the time in seconds after which the device disconnects from the remote peer if there is a loss of contact.

Encapsulation

In some scenarios, using the normal VPN port 500 is not an option, such as when firewalls are in the way. SSL or UDP can be set here. Use this in combination to configure any **Destination port**. The IKEv2 tunnel is established either with port 4500 for UDP or with the port set for the **Destination port**. If the destination port is set to 500, this will be ignored and port 4500 is used instead. For SSL, the tunnel is established either with port 443 or with the setting for the destination port. If the destination port is set to 500 or 4500, this will be ignored and port 443 is used instead. If set to "None", the port 500 is taken and the setting in **Destination port** is ignored.

The configurable port can be used for scenarios where a LANCOM router already accepts VPN tunnels on the standard ports. A port forwarding rule would allow these ports to be forwarded to any destination.

Destination port

Here you can specify that the destination port depends on the setting in **Encapsulation**. If the setting is different from 500, UDP encapsulation is performed automatically.

11 Virtual LANs (VLAN)

11.1 What is a virtual LAN?

The increasing availability of inexpensive layer-2 switches enables the installation of much larger LANs than in the past. Until now, smaller parts of a network had been combined with hubs. These individual segments (collision domains) had been collected into larger sections by routers. A router always represents a border between two LANs, so several LANs with their own IP-address ranges arise from this structure.

By using switches, it is possible to combine many more stations into one large LAN. They specifically control the data flow on the individual ports, so the available bandwidth can be much better utilized than with hubs, and there is no need to configure and maintain routers within the network.

But even a network structure based on switches has its disadvantages:

- As with hubs, broadcasts are sent over the entire LAN, even if the data packets are only important for a certain segment of the LAN. A sufficient number of network stations thus leads to a clear reduction of the available bandwidth in the LAN.
- The entire data traffic on the physical LAN is "public". Even if individual segments use different IP address ranges, any station on the LAN can theoretically tap into data traffic from all of the logical networks on the Ethernet segment. Protecting individual LAN segments with firewalls or routers further increases the requirements of network administration.

One possibility to resolve these problems are virtual LANs (VLANs) as described in IEEE 802.1p/q. With this concept, several virtual LANs are defined on a single physical LAN. They do not obstruct one another and, what's more, they cannot receive or tap into the data traffic of the other VLANs on the physical Ethernet segment.

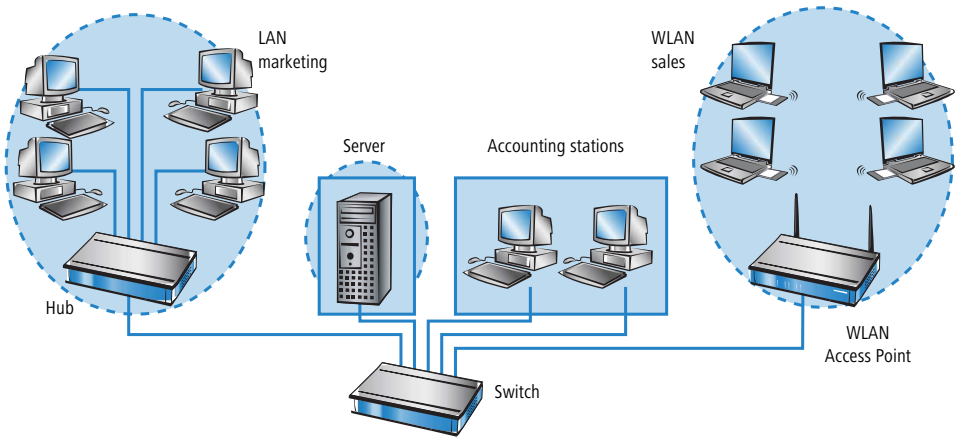
11.2 VLAN and how it works

By defining VLANs on a LAN we aim to achieve the following objectives:

- Data traffic from certain logical units should be concealed from the other network users.
- Broadcast traffic should also be restricted to these logical units, to avoid placing unnecessary load on the entire LAN.
- Data traffic from certain logical units should be handled with a higher priority for certain network users.

An example by way of illustration: In a LAN, a switch is connected to a hub, which connects 4 PCs in the Marketing department to the network. A server and two PCs in the Accounting department are connected directly to the switch.

The final segment is a wireless-network base station that connects four WLAN clients from the Sales department to the network.



The PCs from Marketing and Sales should be able to communicate with one another. The Accounting department also needs access to the server, but their communications should remain concealed from the other PCs.

11.2.1 Frame tagging

By marking data packets in a particular way, the data traffic in a virtual LAN can be concealed from the other network participants and, if required, the traffic can be prioritized. This mechanism relies on the marking of the MAC frames with an additional "tag". The procedure is referred to as “frame tagging”.

Frame tagging must be implemented so as to meet the following requirements:

- Data packets both with and without frame tagging must be able to exist in parallel on a physical LAN.
- Stations and switches on the LAN that do not support the VLAN technology need to ignore packets with frame tagging and treat them just like “normal” data packets.

Tagging is implemented by an additional field in the MAC frame. This field contains two pieces of information that are essential for the virtual LAN:

- **VLAN-ID**: The virtual LAN is distinguished by a unique number. This ID determines which logical (virtual) LAN the data packet belongs to. This 12-bit value allows up to 4094 different VLANs to be specified (the VLAN IDs 0 and 4095 are reserved or not permissible).

  Many devices use the VLAN ID 1 as the default VLAN ID. On an unconfigured device, all ports belong to this default VLAN. This assignment can be changed again during the configuration.

- **Priority**: The priority of a VLAN-tagged packet is set with a 3-bit value. 0 stands for the lowest priority and 7 for the highest. Data packets without a VLAN tag are handled with a priority of 0.

This additional field makes the MAC frames longer than is actually allowed. These oversized packets can only be correctly recognized and processed by VLAN-enabled stations and switches. For network users without VLAN support, frame tagging rather incidentally still results in the desired behavior:

- Switches that do not support VLAN simply forward these packets while ignoring the additional fields in the MAC frame.
- Stations that do not support VLAN are unable to recognize the packets' protocol and drop them silently.

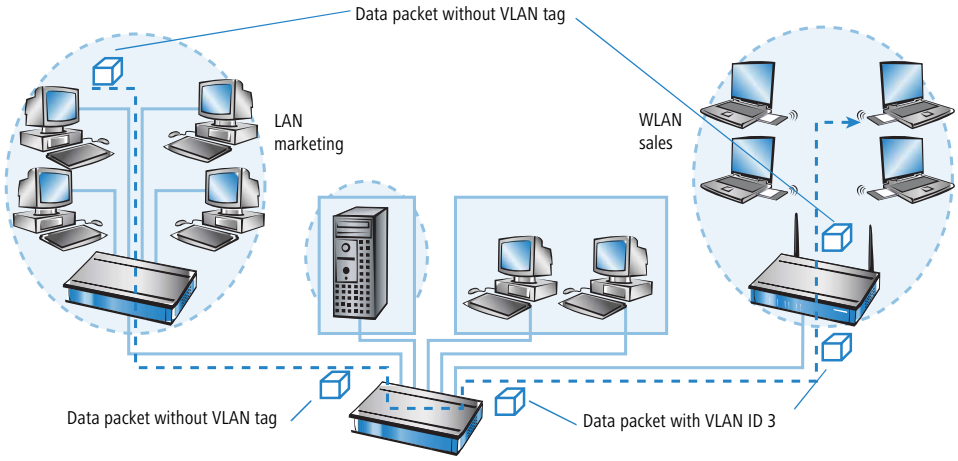
Older switches on the LAN may be unable to forward the oversize frames between the different ports, so the packets are simply dropped.

11.2.2 Implementation in the LAN interfaces

Virtual LANs are intended to group particular stations into logical units. Generally speaking however, the stations themselves are unable to generate or process the necessary VLAN tags.

The data traffic between the network participants always travels via the various interfaces of the distributors in the LAN. These distributors (switches, base stations) thus have to handle the VLAN tags in the data packets according to the particular application, in terms of creating, processing, and if necessary, removing the tags. Because the logical units are connected to the various interfaces of the distributors, the rules governing the generation and processing of VLAN tags are assigned to these individual interfaces.

Let's take up the first example again:



A computer in Marketing sends a data packet to a computer in Sales. The hub in Marketing simply forwards the packet to the switch. The switch receives the packet on port no. 1 and knows that this port belongs to the VLAN with the VLAN-ID 3. It inserts the additional field with the correct VLAN tag into the MAC frame and forwards the packet only on the ports (2 and 5) that also belong to VLAN 3. The base station in Sales receives the packet on the LAN interface. Due to its settings, the base station detects that the WLAN interface also belongs to VLAN 3. It strips the VLAN tag from the MAC frame and transmits the packet on the wireless interface. The WLAN client is able to process the packet, which now has the normal length, like any other data packet without VLAN tagging.

11.2.3 VLAN Q-in-Q tagging

VLANs compliant with IEEE302.1q are generally used to connect multiple networks that share a common physical medium but which are to be kept separate from one another. In some cases VLANs are operated on public networks that are operated by providers in order to keep the various company networks separate. Consequently VLAN tags may be used both in the LAN and over the WAN path—VLAN tagged LAN packets therefore require an additional VLAN tag for transmission over WAN. For control over VLAN tagging, the actions performed by each port can be defined separately.

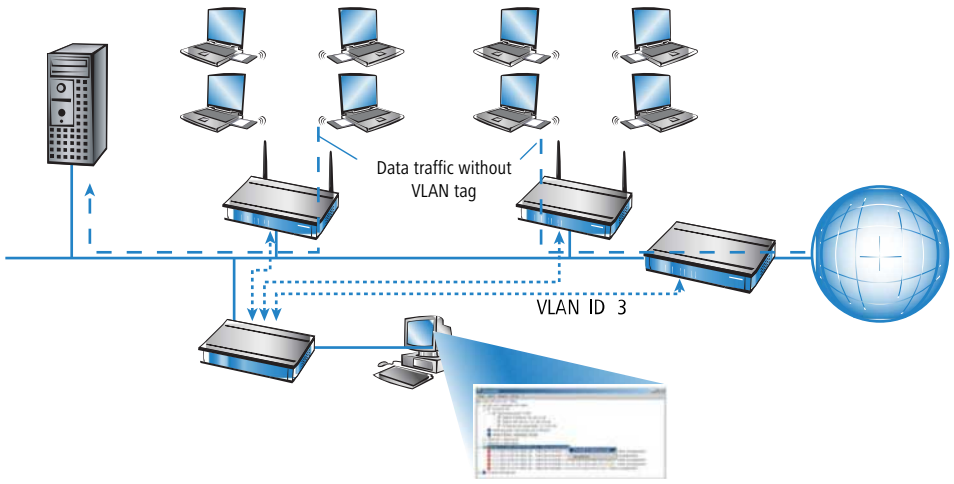
11.2.4 Example applications

The primary application of virtual LANs is the support of different logical networks—each separated into its own secure environment—on a single, shared Ethernet infrastructure.

The following sections present examples of how virtual LANs are used in this context.

User and management traffic on a LAN

Several hotspots are located on a University campus. They provide access to the library server and the Internet for students with WLAN notebooks. The hotspots are connected to the University's LAN. This LAN is also used by administrators, who access the base stations to perform various management tasks via SNMP.

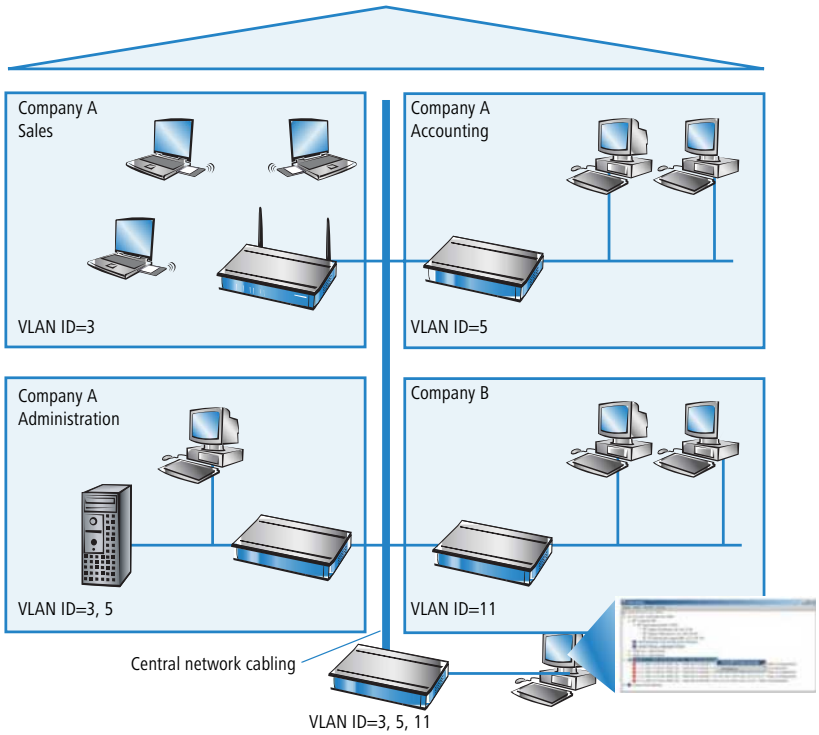


Setting up a virtual LAN between the base stations and the administrators' switch serves to protect the management traffic from the “public” traffic on the LAN.

Different organizations on a LAN

Flexibility in the modern working world brings new challenges for administrators in the design and maintenance of network structures. Office buildings are often dynamic venues where the tenants have shifting demands for space, and where even within a company, the teams are frequently reorganized. However, in both of these cases, each unit needs

to have an independent, secured LAN. Achieving this with changes to the hardware is possible either with considerable effort or not at all because, for example, the office building may be equipped with just one central cable infrastructure.



An elegant solution to this task is to use virtual LANs. Even with subsequent changes of departments or companies within the building, the network structure is easily adjusted.

All network users in this example use the central Ethernet, which is, like the connected devices, supervised by a service provider. Company A has three departments on two floors. The Sales department can communicate with the Administration department via VLAN ID 3, the Accounting department with the Administration via VLAN ID 5. The networks of the Accounting department and Sales do not see each other. Company B is also shielded by VLAN ID 11 against all other networks, only the service provider can access all devices for maintenance purposes.

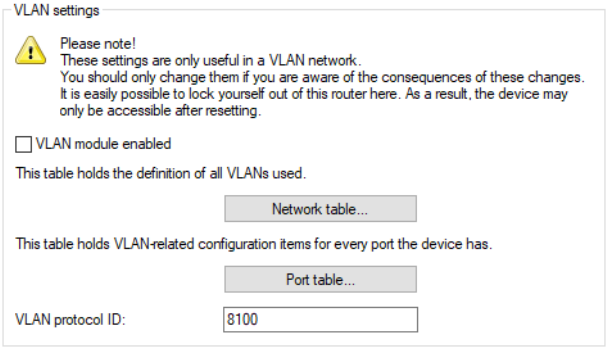
11.3 Configuration of VLANs

There are two important tasks when configuring the VLAN capabilities of the devices:

- Defining virtual LANs and giving each one a name, a VLAN ID, and allocating the interfaces
- For each interface, define how data packets with or without VLAN tags are to be handled

11.3.1 General settings

This dialog contains the general settings for the VLAN.



LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **VLAN**

Command line: **Setup** > **VLAN**

To activate the VLAN module

You should only activate the VLAN module if you are familiar with the effects this can have.

Faulty VLAN settings may cause access to the device's configuration to be blocked.

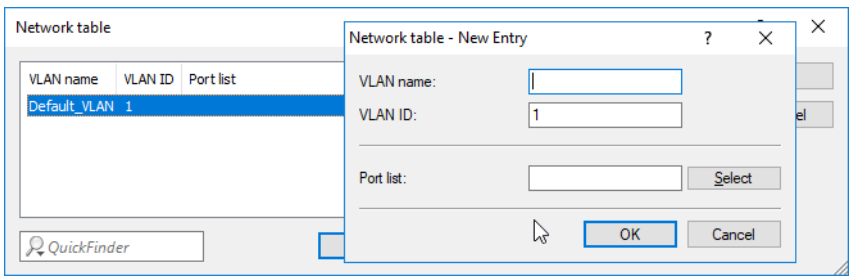
To ensure that your initial VLAN configuration works properly, you not only have to switch on the VLAN module, you also have to adjust the VLAN ID of the management IP network (typically "Intranet"). This is usually the VLAN ID 1, which is the default setting for the port VLAN ID in the VLAN module. These steps must be performed together, either using LANconfig or using the WEBconfig action under **Extras** > **Activate VLAN module**. Clicking on **Execute** enables the VLAN module and simultaneously sets the VLAN ID for all IPv4 and IPv6 networks with the VLAN ID 0 to VLAN ID 1.

VLAN tagging mode

When transmitting VLAN tagged networks via provider networks that use VLAN themselves, providers sometimes use special VLAN tagging IDs. In order for VLAN transmission to allow for this, the Ethernet2 type of the VLAN tag can be set as a 16-bit hexadecimal value as tag value. The default is 8100 (802.1p/q VLAN tagging) other typical values for VLAN tagging could be 9100 or 9901.

11.3.2 The network table

The network table defines the virtual LANs that the device belongs to.



LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **VLAN** > **VLAN table**

Command line: **Setup** > **VLAN** > **Networks**

VLAN name

The name of the VLAN only serves as a description for the configuration. This name is not used anywhere else.

VLAN ID

This number uniquely identifies the VLAN.

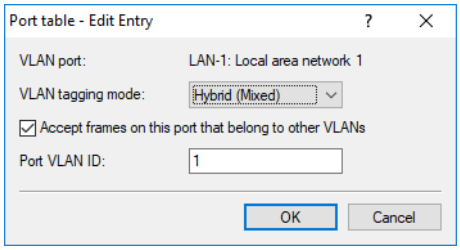
Port table

This table is used to enter the interfaces for this device that belong to the VLAN.

For a device with a LAN interface and a WLAN port, ports that to be entered could include "LAN-1" and "WLAN-1". Port ranges are defined by entering a tilde between the individual ports: "P2P-1~P2P-4".

11.3.3 The port table

The port table is used to configure each of the device's ports that are used in the VLAN. The table has an entry for each of the device's ports with the following values.



LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **VLAN** > **Port table**

Command line: **Setup** > **VLAN** > **Port-Table**

Port

The name of the port; this cannot be edited

Tagging mode

Controls the processing and assignment of VLAN tags at this port.

Access (never)

Outbound packets are not given a VLAN tag at this port. Incoming packets are treated as though they have no VLAN tag. If incoming packets have a VLAN tag, it is ignored and treated as though it were part of the packet's payload. Incoming packets are always assigned to the VLAN defined for this port.

Trunk (always)

Outgoing packets at this port are always assigned with a VLAN tag, irrespective of whether they belong to the VLAN defined for this port or not. Incoming packets must have a VLAN tag, otherwise they are dropped.

Hybrid (mixed)

Allows mixed operation of packets with and without VLAN tags at the port. Packets without a VLAN tag are assigned to the VLAN defined for this port. Outgoing packets are given a VLAN tag unless they belong to the VLAN defined for this port.

Allow all VLANs (allows packets from other VLANs to enter this port)

This option defines whether tagged data packets with any VLAN ID should be accepted, even if the port is not a "member" of this VLAN.

Port VLAN-ID

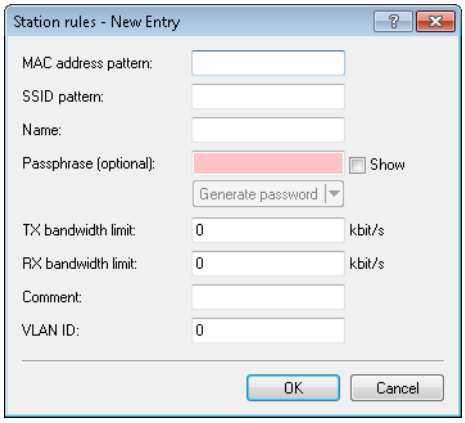
This port ID has two functions:

- Untagged packets received at this port in **Hybrid (mixed)** mode are assigned to this VLAN, as are all ingress packets received in **Access (never) mode**.
- In the **Hybrid (mixed)** mode, this value determines whether outgoing packets receive a VLAN tag or not: Packets assigned to the VLAN defined for this port receive **no** VLAN tag; all others are given a VLAN tag.

11.4 Configurable VLAN IDs

11.4.1 Different VLAN IDs per WLAN client

VLANs are usually connected to a LAN interface on the device. Therefore, all packets that pass through this interface receive the same VLAN ID when the VLAN module is enabled. However, in some cases, administrators will want to assign different WLAN users to different VLANs.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **Station rules**

Command line: **Setup** > **WLAN** > **Access-List**

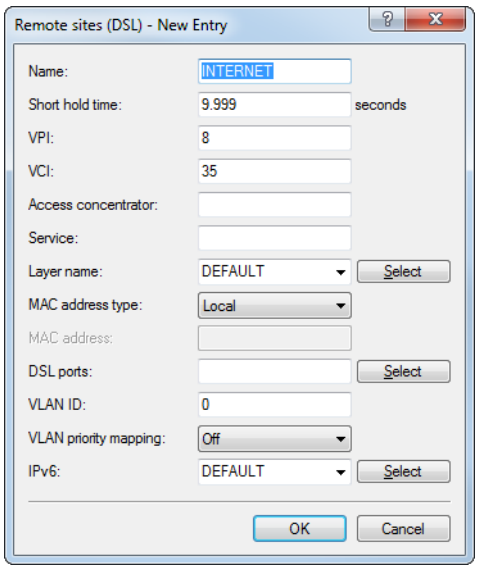
The client-specific VLAN ID accepts values from 0 to 4094. The default value of 0 stands for an unspecified VLAN ID. In such a case, the client will be assigned to the VLAN port of the logical WLAN.

The following requirements must be met in order to ensure successful client-specific VLAN assignment:

- VLAN operation must be enabled.
- The VLAN IDs that are to be assigned to the individual clients must be included in the VLAN network table.
- The LAN interfaces and all WLAN interfaces that are used by the clients must be assigned to the corresponding VLAN.

11.4.2 VLAN IDs for DSL interfaces

Some DSL networks use VLAN tags in the same way as they are used in local networks to differentiate between logical networks on shared transmission media. The router can process these VLAN tags correctly if a VLAN ID is defined for each DSL remote site.



LANconfig: **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **Remote sites (DSL)**

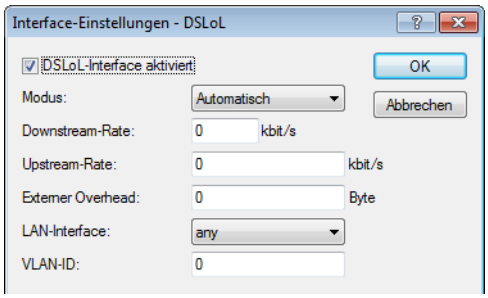
Command line: **Setup** > **WAN** > **DSL-Broadband-Peers**

VLAN ID

ID used to explicitly identify the VLAN over the DSL connection.

11.4.3 Special VLAN IDs for DSLoL interfaces

In order to better separate the data traffic on a DLSoL interface from other traffic, the **VLAN ID** for the DSLoL interface can be set up under **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **DSLoL** or in LANconfig under **Interfaces** > **WAN** > **Interface settings**.



11.5 VLAN tags on layer 2/3 in the Ethernet

11.5.1 Introduction

VLAN tags enable a simple form of QoS control even when using switches that cannot evaluate IP headers. The IEEE 802.1p standard defines a priority tag in the VLAN header with a length of 3 bits, which correspond to the first 3 bits of the DSCP fields (Differentiated Services Code Point – DiffServ) and/or the precedence in the ToS field (Type of Service). The processing of VLAN tagged packets requires that packets in the receive direction are regarded differently to packets in the send direction.

› Upon receipt of a tagged Ethernet packet, it may be processed in one of three ways:

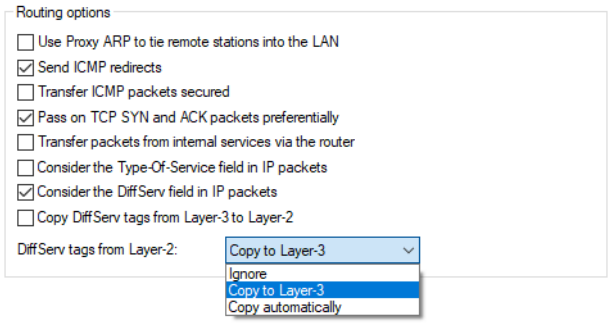
- The VLAN tag is ignored.
- The VLAN tag is always copied to the DiffServ or TOS field.
- The VLAN tag is copied to the DiffServ or TOS field if this is not marked already, i.e. the precedence is '000'.

- When a packet is transmitted over Ethernet, the VLAN tag can be set depending on the precedence. This should only happen if the recipient of the tag can understand it, i.e. tagged packets can be received. Tags are thus only set for packets which are sent to addresses from which the LCOS already received tagged packets.

When a tagged packet is received, the tag is saved to the associated entry in the connection list. If a packet is to be sent with a precedence setting, then the VLAN ID recorded earlier is entered into the packet together with the precedence to form a VLAN tag. Where a connection causes other connections to be opened, e.g. with FTP or H.323, then the tag is inherited to the new entries.

11.5.2 Configuring VLAN tagging on layer 2 / 3

Configuring VLAN tagging on layer 2 / 3 involves the definition of the general routing settings and the behavior upon receipt and transmission of tagged packets.



LANconfig: **IP router** > **General**

Command line: **Setup** > **IP-Router** > **Routing-Method**

Interpret the type-of-service field

The TOS / DiffServ field is regarded as a TOS field; the bits 'low delay' and 'high reliability' are evaluated.

Consider the DiffServ field in IP packets

The TOS / DiffServ field is regarded as a DiffServ field. After evaluating the precedence, packets with the code points AFxx are saved and packets with the code points EF receive preferential treatment. All other packets are transmitted as normal.

DiffServ tags from Layer 2

The setting for Layer2-Layer3 tagging regulates the behavior when a data packet is received.

Ignore

VLAN tags are ignored.

Copy to layer 3

Priority bits in the VLAN tag are always copied to the precedence of the DSCP.

Copy automatically

Priority bits in the VLAN tag are only copied to the DSCP precedence if this is '000'.

Copy DiffServ tags from layer 3 to layer 2

The setting for Layer3-Layer2 tagging regulates the behavior when a data packet is transmitted. With this option enabled, VLAN tags with priority bits originating from the DSCP precedence are generated if the recipient has sent at least one tagged packet.

12 Wireless LAN – WLAN

12.1 Introduction

The following sections are a general description of the LCOS operating system functions relating to wireless networks. The functions provided by your specific device are outlined in the manual supplied with it.

This chapter gives you a brief introduction to wireless networking technology. It also provides an overview of the many different applications, fraction and capabilities of LANCOM WLAN devices.

A wireless LAN connects individual end-user devices (PCs and mobile computers) to form a local network (also called – **L**ocal **A**rea **N**etwork). In contrast to a traditional LAN, communication takes place over a wireless connection and not over network cables. In this case we refer to a radio LAN as a **W**ireless **L**ocal **A**rea **N**etwork (WLAN).

A wireless LAN provides the same functionality as a cable-based network: Access to files, servers, printers etc. as well as the integration of individual work stations into a corporate mail system or access to the Internet.

There are obvious advantages to wireless LANs: Notebooks and PCs can be installed where they are needed—problems with missing connections or structural changes are a thing of the past with wireless networks. Apart from that, wireless LANs can also be used for connections over longer distances. Expensive leased lines and the associated construction measures can be saved.

LANCOM Systems differentiates between two different types of WLAN device, each with its own field of application and consequently offering specialized functions and configuration options.

- Access points or APs are generally used to connect one or more WLANs to a cabled LAN. As such, they merely function as a "bridge" to transfer data to and from the clients. Routing into the Internet or to other remote stations is handled by other network components. APs generally have just one or more Ethernet interfaces.
- In addition to one or more Ethernet interfaces, LANCOM wireless routers are equipped with WAN interfaces for VDSL, ADSL, DSL and/or ISDN. In a single device, they combine WLAN functions with the task of routing data into the Internet or to other remote stations.

The following sections mostly refer to "access points" as a synonym for both types of device, unless we explicitly differentiate between a LANCOM wireless router and a LANCOM access point.

The devices operate either as standalone APs with their own configuration (WLAN modules in "access point mode") or as components in a WLAN infrastructure, which is controlled from a central WLAN controller ("managed mode").

12.2 Application scenarios

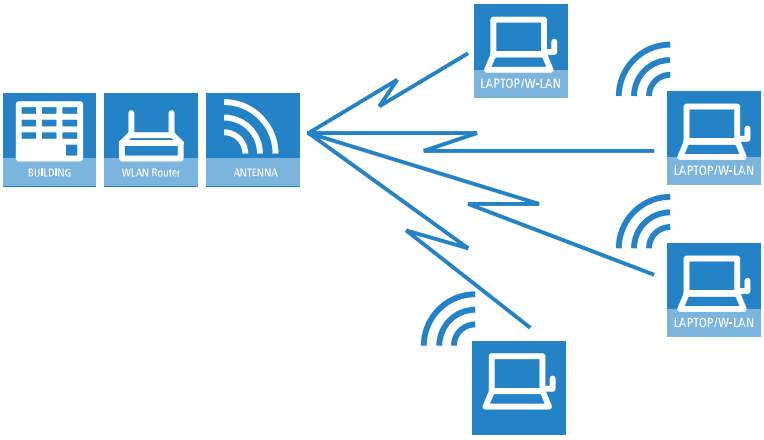
Wireless LAN systems can act as an extension to or even as a replacement for cabled networks. In some cases wireless LANs even provide completely new application possibilities, which can mean a major advance in the way work is organized, or significant cost savings.

- Extensive wireless LANs, possibly connected to a LAN, with one or more APs (infrastructure mode)
- Hotspot or guest access
- Connecting two LANs over a wireless link (point-to-point mode)
- Relay function for connecting networks via multiple APs
- Connecting devices with an Ethernet interface via an AP (client mode)

- Central management by a WLC (managed mode)
- WDS (Wireless Distribution System)
- Data transfer to mobile objects in industrial environments.
- Transmission of VPN-encrypted connections with VPN pass through
- Simple, direct connection between terminal devices with an AP (ad-hoc mode)

12.2.1 Infrastructure mode

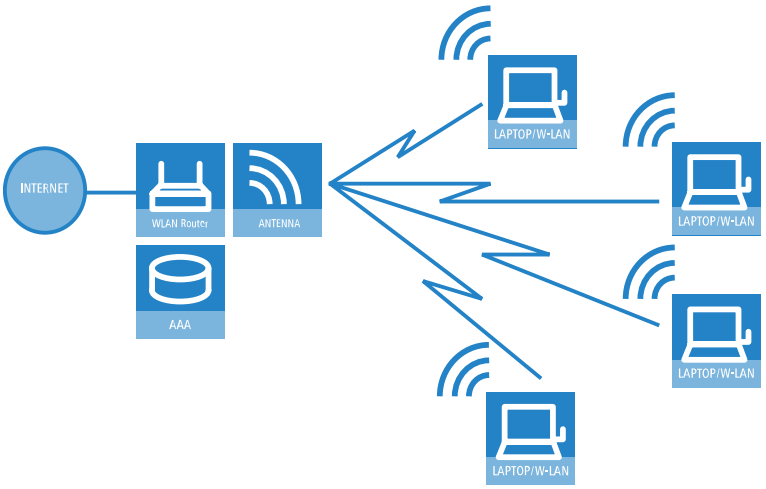
In infrastructure mode, WLAN clients connect to a central AP. The AP provides one or more wireless LAN networks. It regulates the client's rights to access the radio cell, communications between the clients, and access to further networks. In larger scale WLAN scenarios (e.g. in companies with offices extending between several buildings or floors) multiple APs can provide WLAN clients with access to a common, shared network. The clients can roam between the different APs, if necessary. A common term used here is “campus coverage” because this solution is used by a large number of colleges and universities to provide students and staff with network access.



12.2.2 Hotspot or guest access

A hotspot is a special variant of the infrastructure mode described above. Whereas the normal infrastructure mode provides the members of a closed user group with access to a network that includes all the necessary services, a hotspot provides network access (generally restricted to Internet only) to wireless LAN clients at a fee. In addition to the differences in AP configuration, setting up a hotspot requires authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA) functions such as those provided by the Public Spot options. Hotspots are generally set up at public locations where people have a short-term need to access the Internet, such as at airports, cafés or hotels.

A hotspot provides network access to a WLAN client for a limited time period and without having to configure the AP. This method is often used by companies, for example to provide guests with temporary Internet access.

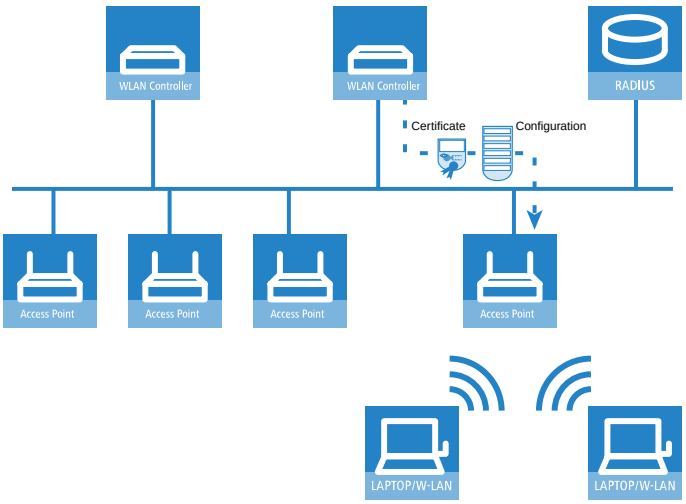


12.2.3 Managed mode

The widespread use of wireless devices provides great convenience and flexibility in network access for businesses, universities and other organizations. With centralized WLAN management, the APs in managed mode are not configured themselves but at a central location, the WLAN controller (WLC).

The WLC authenticates the APs and transmits a certificate and the correct configuration to any approved devices. This allows for convenient configuration of the WLAN from a central point and the changes to the configuration affect all of the APs simultaneously.

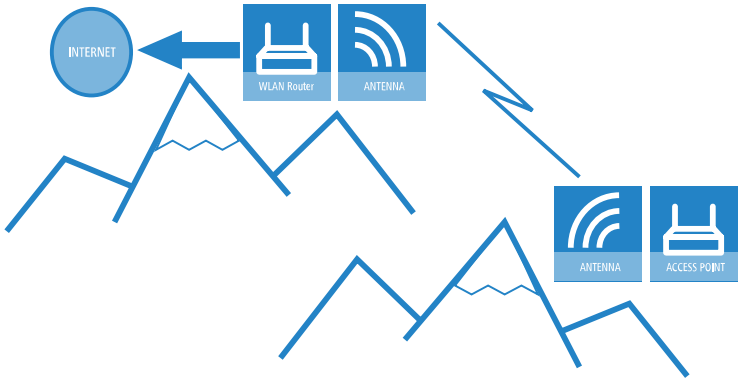
Split management can be used to separate the WLAN configuration from the rest of the router configuration. This allows router settings and VPN settings to be adjusted locally, for example in a branch office or home office installation, and the WLAN configuration is regulated by a LANCOM WLAN controller at the main office.



12.2.4 WLAN bridge (point-to-point)

Whereas the scenarios discussed so far have involved connecting multiple WLAN clients to one AP (point-to-multipoint), outdoor wireless LAN systems are particularly advantageous for providing a link between two APs (point to point). By setting up a wireless link between two APs, a distant production building on extensive company premises can be very easily integrated into the company network, for example.

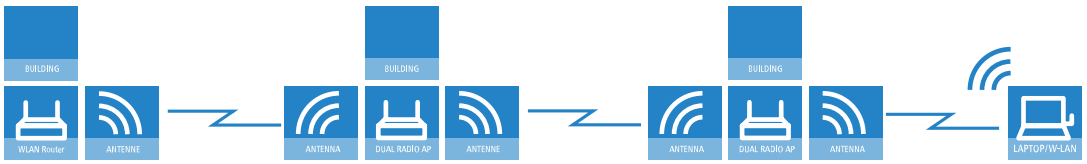
A point-to-point connection can also be used in difficult terrain (such as mountainous areas or islands) to provide Internet access in areas where cabling would be too expensive. With a direct line of sight between the two APs, distances of several kilometers can be bridged by this type of wireless link.



12.2.5 WLAN bridge in relay mode

In some cases, the distance between the two locations to be connected exceeds the range of a single wireless link. This may be the case when the distance between the APs exceeds the radio range, or when obstacles block the line of site between the two APs.

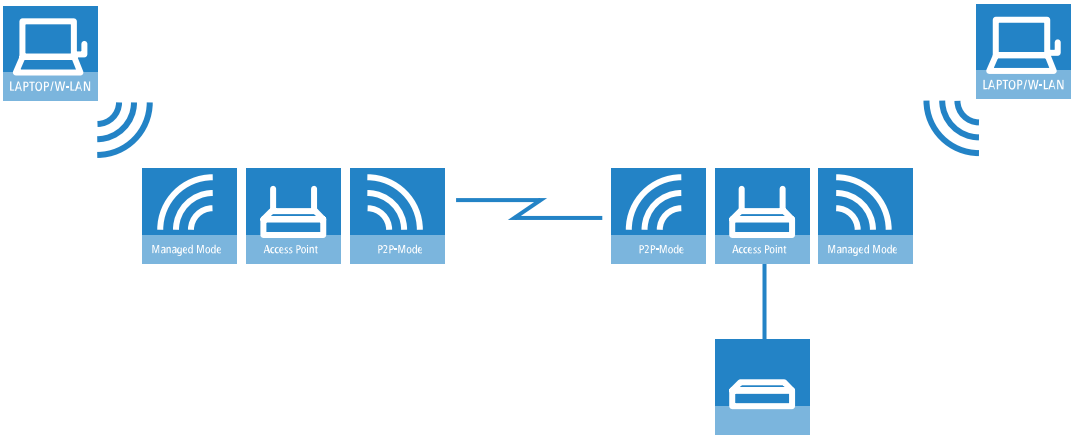
In these cases, the two end points can be connected by stringing together multiple APs, each of which has two WLAN modules. Because the intermediate APs often operate solely as relay stations, the operating mode of these APs is referred to as “relay mode”.



Even though the radio module of any LANCOM AP can operate several P2P links and support wireless LAN clients all at the same time, for performance reasons we recommended that relay stations be equipped with LANCOM APs with two wireless modules.

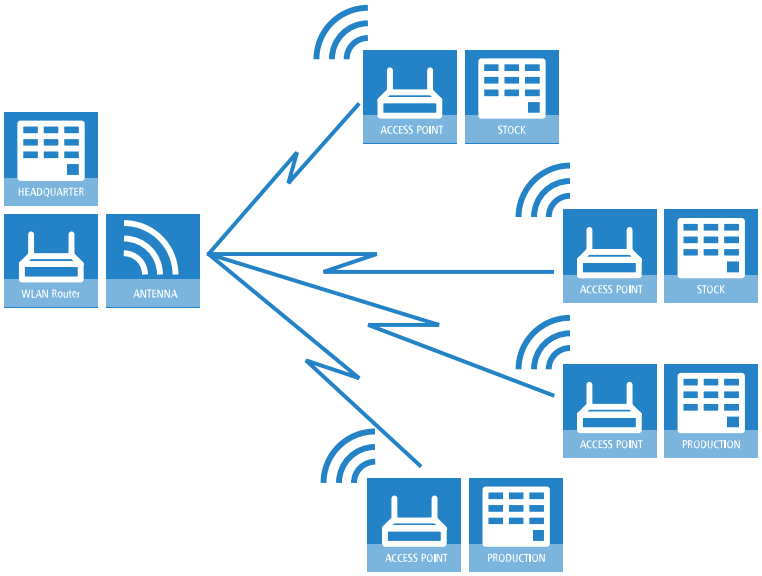
12.2.6 WLAN bridge to the AP – managed and unmanaged mixed

APs managed from a central WLC are generally connected to the network via cabled Ethernet. Where this is not possible, managed APs can be integrated into the LAN via a WLAN bridge, assuming that the APs are equipped with two WLAN modules. In this scenario, one WLAN module operates as a managed AP which obtains its configuration from the central WLC. The other WLAN module is permanently configured as a WLAN bridge.



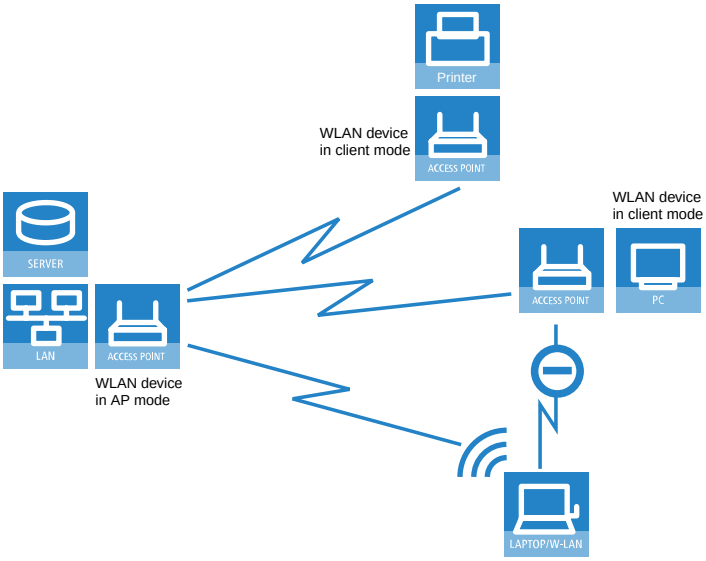
12.2.7 Wireless distribution system (point-to-multipoint)

A special type of wireless link is the connection of several distributed APs to a central point – the point-to-multipoint wireless LAN (P2MP) is also referred to as a Wireless Distribution System (WDS). This mode of operation allows for example several buildings on a company's premises to be connected to the central administrative building. The central AP or wireless router is configured as “master” and the remote WDS stations as “slaves”.



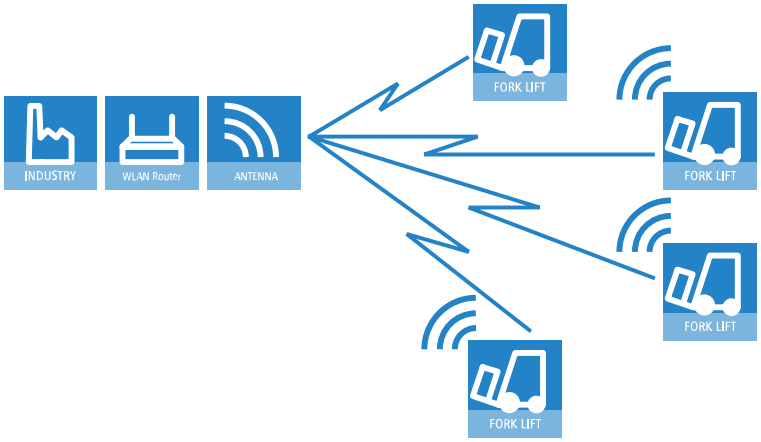
12.2.8 Client mode

In order for individual devices equipped with an Ethernet interface to be connected to a wireless LAN, APs can be switched to client mode, in which they act as conventional wireless LAN adapters and not as APs. The use of client mode therefore allows devices fitted with only an Ethernet interface, such as PCs and printers, to be integrated into a wireless LAN.



12.2.9 Client mode with mobile objects in industry

Completely new applications allow wireless LAN systems in industrial environments to transmit data to mobile objects. In logistics, for example, this means that fork-lift trucks can stay continuously connected to the company network via the wireless LAN. In combination with mobile barcode scanners, inventory movements within a warehouse can be monitored in real time and passed on to an ERP system, which then provides all employees with up-to-the-minute information on current inventories at all times.



12.3 WLAN standards

LANCOM WLAN devices operate with the IEEE 802.11 standard. This is a collection of standards that build on the earlier IEEE standards for LANs. The best known of these is IEEE 802.3 for Ethernet. Among the various IEEE 802.11 standards, some specify wireless transmissions in different frequency bands and at different speeds.

By complying with these IEEE standards, LANCOM WLAN products operate with devices from other manufacturers reliably and without problems.

The WLAN module in the APs only operates in one frequency band at a time, i.e. either at 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz. It is impossible for a single WLAN module to operate at different frequencies simultaneously. However, APs with two WLAN modules (dual radio) can operate each module at a different frequency (depending on the hardware). As the standards are backwards compatible, different standards can be operated simultaneously on a single WLAN module, although this will result in lower data rates.

12.4 WLAN security

12.4.1 Basics

Even though one constantly hears the blanket term "Security" when talking about computer networks, it is still important for the coming exposition to differentiate a little more closely between the requirements it actually entails.

Authentication

The first point in security is access security:

- Here, a protective mechanism is involved which allows access to the network only to authorized users.
- On the other hand, however, it must also be ensured that the client is connected to the precise desired AP, and not to some other AP with the same name which has been smuggled in by some nefarious third party. Such an authentication can be provided, for example, using certificates or passwords.

Authenticity

Authenticity: Proof of the authorship of the data and the originality of the data content; the process of establishing this proof is known as authentication.

Integrity

Once access is provided, one would like to ensure that data packets reach the receiver without any falsification, that is, that no-one can change the packets or insert other data into the communication path. The manipulation of data packets themselves cannot be prevented, but changed packets can indeed be identified using suitable checksum processes, and then dropped.

Confidentiality

Quite separate from access security is confidentiality, that is, unauthorized third parties must not be able to read the data traffic. To this end, the data are encrypted. This sort of encryption process is exemplified by DES, AES, RC4, or Blowfish. Along with encryption, of course, there must also be a corresponding decryption on the receiving end, generally with the same key (a so-called symmetric encryption process). The problem naturally then arises, how the sender can give the key to the receiver for the first time—a simple transmission could very easily be read by a third party, who could then easily decrypt the data traffic.

In the simplest case, this problem is left to the user, that is, one simply assumes that the user can make the key known at both ends of the connection. In this case, we refer to pre-shared keys, or PSK.

More sophisticated processes come into play when the use of PSK is impractical, for instance in an HTTP connection established with SSL—in this case, the user can't retrieve a key from a remote web server quite so easily. In this case, so-called asymmetric encryption methods such as RSA can be used, that is, to **de**crypt the data, a different key is used than the one used to **en**crypt it, meaning that key pairs are used. Such methods are, however, much slower than symmetric encryption methods, which leads to a two-phase solution:

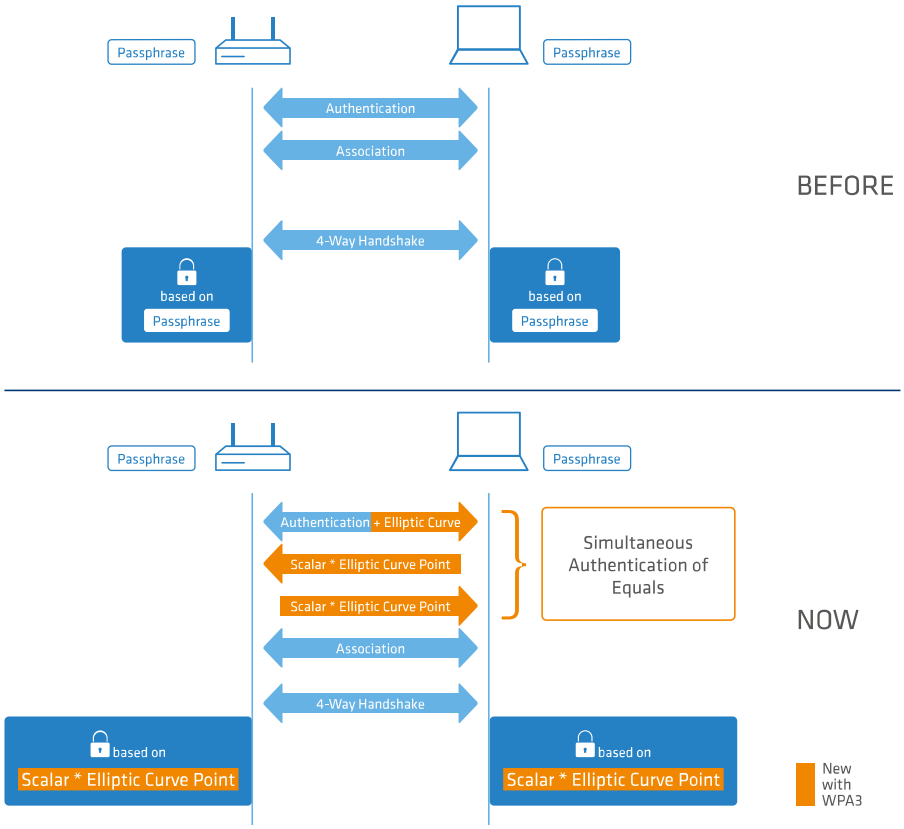
- The sender possesses an asymmetric key pair. It transmits the public part of the key pair, i.e. the key for **en**cryption, to the receiver as a certificate, for example. Since this part of the key pair cannot be used for **de**cryption, there are no misgivings with regard to security.

› The receiver selects any symmetrical key. This symmetrical key that is used both for **en**cryption and for **de**cryption, must now be securely transmitted to the sender. It is encrypted with the sender's public key and returned to the sender. The only way that the symmetrical key can be decrypted again is with the sender's private key. Potential eavesdroppers observing the key exchange cannot decrypt this information, and consequently the transmission of the symmetrical key is secure.

12.4.2 WPA3 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 3)

Compared to the predecessor standard WPA2 introduced by the Wi-Fi Alliance in 2004, the WPA3 standard introduced in 2018 offers improved security by combining various security methods. Like WPA2, WPA3 also exists in the versions WPA3-Personal and WPA3-Enterprise.

WPA3-Personal uses the Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE) authentication method, which only requires a password for authentication but which prevents brute-force and dictionary attacks. Furthermore, for the first time this method offers forward secrecy, i.e. captured WPA3-secured traffic cannot be decrypted subsequently after the attacker gains knowledge of the pre-shared key.



Also available with WPA3 is the support of CNSA Suite B cryptography, which is an optional part of WPA3-Enterprise for high-security environments. Suite B ensures that all links in the encryption chain match with one another. Suite B forms classes of bit lengths for hashed, symmetric, and asymmetric encryption in order to provide suitable levels of protection. For example, an SHA-2 hash with 256 bits matches AES with 128 bits. Where Suite B is operated, the support of all other combinations is expressly excluded. Consequently, the encryption chain consists of links of equal strength.

Both variants now require the use of protected management frames (PMF) according to IEEE 802.11w. PMF prevents attackers from computing the WLAN password from captured material gained by using fake management frames to force a disassociation and then eavesdropping the re-authentication.

WPA3-Personal

The WLAN encryption settings under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Logical WLAN settings**. now offer the new WPA versions **WPA3** and **WPA2/3**.

With **WPA3** selected, only WLAN clients that support WPA3-Personal will be able to login. This configuration enforces authentication with the Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE). Similarly, this SSID enforces the use of PMF (Protected Management Frames as per 802.11w), a mandatory part of WPA3.

By selecting **WPA2/3**, these two versions of WPA are offered in parallel. This option allows clients that only support WPA2 to operate in parallel with clients that already support WPA3. For WPA3-compatible WLAN clients, this configuration enforces the use of PMF; for WPA2-compatible WLAN clients, PMF is offered as an option for backwards compatibility.

WPA3-Enterprise

WPA3-Enterprise does not fundamentally change or replace the protocols defined in WPA2-Enterprise. Rather, it set out policies to ensure greater consistency in the application of these protocols and to assure the desired level of security.

The WLAN encryption settings under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Logical WLAN settings**. now offer the new WPA versions **WPA3** and **WPA2/3**.

By selecting **WPA3**, only WLAN clients that support WPA3-Enterprise will be able to log in. This SSID enforces the use of PMF (Protected Management Frames as per 802.11w), a mandatory part of WPA3.

By selecting **WPA2/3**, these two versions of WPA are offered in parallel. This option allows clients that only support WPA2 to operate in parallel with clients that already support WPA3. For WPA3-compatible WLAN clients, this configuration enforces the use of PMF; for WPA2-compatible WLAN clients, PMF is offered as an option for backwards compatibility.

Suite B cryptography

Also available is the support of CNSA Suite B cryptography, which is an optional part of WPA3-Enterprise for high-security environments. Suite B ensures that all links in the encryption chain match with one another. Suite B forms classes of bit lengths for hashed, symmetric, and asymmetric encryption in order to provide suitable levels of protection. For example, an SHA-2 hash with 256 bits matches AES with 128 bits. Where Suite B is operated, the support of all other combinations is expressly excluded. Consequently, the encryption chain consists of links of equal strength.

Further information on CNSA Suite B can be found at the following link: *CNSA algorithm suite factsheet*

The switch **WPA 802.1X security level** under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Logical WLAN settings** is used to enable the optional Suite B encryption. With "Suite B 192 bits" support enabled, the following EAP cipher suites are enforced:

- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384

Other cipher suites can no longer be used. Also enforced are a minimum key length of 3072 bits for the RSA and Diffie-Hellman key exchange, as well as 384 bits for the ECDSA and ECDHE key exchange. The session key type AES-GCMP-256 is also enforced.

If these cipher suites are not supported by the WLAN clients or the remaining infrastructure (e.g. the RADIUS server), then no connection is possible!

With "Suite B 128 bits" support enabled, the following EAP cipher suites are enforced:

- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384

Other cipher suites can no longer be used. Also enforced are a minimum key length of 3072 bits for the RSA and Diffie-Hellman key exchange, as well as 384 bits for the ECDSA and ECDHE key exchange. The session key type AES-GCMP-128 is also enforced.

Because the session key types AES-GCMP-128 and AES-GCMP-256 are not supported by all WLAN modules, the use of Suite B cryptography may be limited or impossible, depending on the device type.

If these cipher suites are not supported by the WLAN clients or the remaining infrastructure (e.g. the RADIUS server), then no connection is possible!

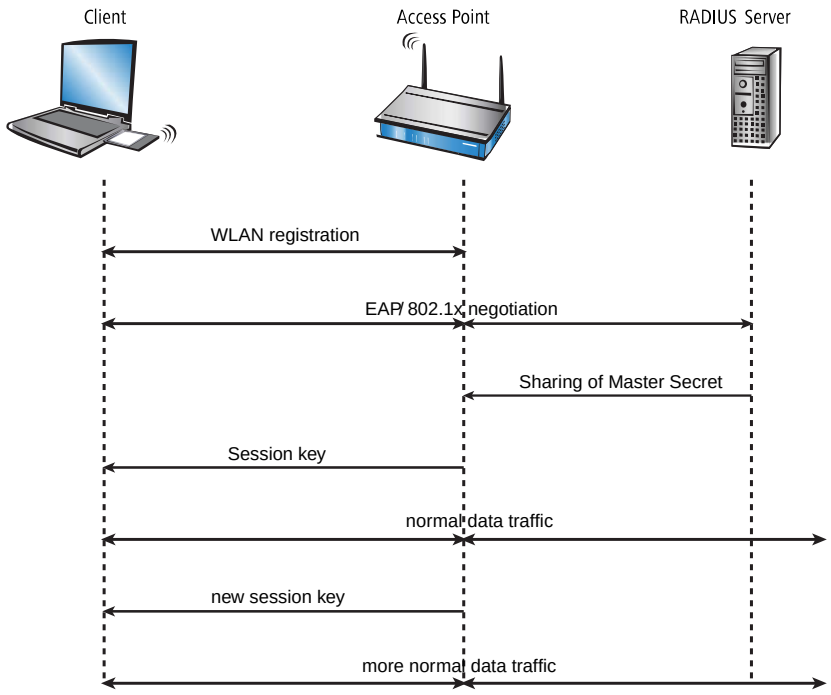
12.4.3 IEEE 802.11i / WPA2

In mid-2004 the IEEE adopted the standard 802.11i, also known as WiFi Protected Access 2 (WPA2). WPA2 enables the authentication and authorization of users by IEEE802.1X and it supports AES encryption, which is a far more secure method than WEP or WPA. The following sections outline some relevant technical aspects.

EAP and IEEE 802.1X

A clear increase in WLAN security can be achieved by using keys that are dynamically negotiated instead of keys with fixed values. The established process for this purpose is the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP). As the name suggests, the original purpose of EAP is authentication, that is, the regulated access to a WLAN—the possibility of installing a valid key for the next session is more or less a byproduct. The figure below illustrates the basic procedure of a session secured by EAP.

In principle, EAP / 802.1X can be used in combination with WEP. However, this method is generally employed with WLANs using WPA2.



In the first phase, the client registers with the AP as usual, and enters the state in which it can now send and receive over the AP in the formerly used WEP—but not with EAP, because in this state the client still doesn't have a key to secure its data traffic from eavesdropping. Instead, the client is in an 'intermediate state' from the point of view of the AP, in which only particular packets from the client are forwarded, and these are only directed to an authentication server. These packets are the EAP/802.1X mentioned previously. The AP packs these packets in RADIUS queries and sends them on to the authentication server. The AP converts the replies from the RADIUS server back into EAP packets, and returns them to the client.

The AP is thus a sort of middle man between client and server: It doesn't have to check the contents of these packets, it just has to check that no other data traffic to or from the client can occur. Over this “tunnel” through the AP, the client and server authenticate one another, that is, the server checks the client's access privilege to the network, and the client checks that it is talking to the right network. This helps to detect “rogue” access points set up by hackers.

A whole series of authentication processes exist which can be used in this tunnel. A common method is for instance TLS, in which server and client exchange certificates; another is TTLS, in which only the server supplies a certificate—the client is authenticated using only a user name and password.

After the authentication phase, a secure tunnel even without encryption has been set up, in which the AP is connected in the next step. For this, the RADIUS server sends the so-called 'Master Secret', a session key calculated during the negotiation, to the AP. The LAN behind the AP is considered secure in this scenario, so that this transmission can be performed in cleartext.

With this session key, the AP now takes over the tunnel and can use it to provide the actual key to the client. Depending on the capabilities of the access point hardware, this can be a true session key, i.e. a key which will only be used for data packets between the AP and precisely this client. Older WEP uses a hardware group key, which the AP will use for communication with multiple clients.

The particular advantage of this procedure is that the AP can regularly change the key over the EAP tunnel, that is, it can perform a so-called rekeying. In this way, keys can be replaced by new ones long before they run the risk of being cracked due to IV collisions. A common 'use time' for such keys might be 5 minutes.

Status counters for IEEE 802.1X login attempts

A table showing the number of accepted and rejected connect requests for each logical interface is located in the LCOS menu tree under **Status** > **IEEE802.1x** > **Ports**.

The overview also indicates the number of times the authorization limit was reached for each interface.

Ports

Port	Num-Accept	Num-Reject	Num-ReauthMax-reached
LAN-1	0	0	0
LAN-2	0	0	0
LAN-3	0	0	0
LAN-4	0	0	0
WLAN-1	0	0	0
P2P-1-1	0	0	0
P2P-1-2	0	0	0
P2P-1-3	0	0	0
P2P-1-4	0	0	0
P2P-1-5	0	0	0
P2P-1-6	0	0	0
P2P-1-7	0	0	0
P2P-1-8	0	0	0
P2P-1-9	0	0	0
P2P-1-10	0	0	0
P2P-1-11	0	0	0
P2P-1-12	0	0	0
P2P-1-13	0	0	0
P2P-1-14	0	0	0

WPA with passphrase

The handshake described in the EAP/802.1X section runs strictly under WPA, i.e. the user will never have to define any keys. In environments in which no RADIUS server is available to provide master secrets (for instance in smaller companies), WPA offers the PSK method; here, users of the AP and other stations must enter a passphrase of 8 to 63 characters, which together with the SSID is used to calculate the master secret by means of a hash procedure. The master secret is therefore constant in such a PSK network, although different session keys still result.

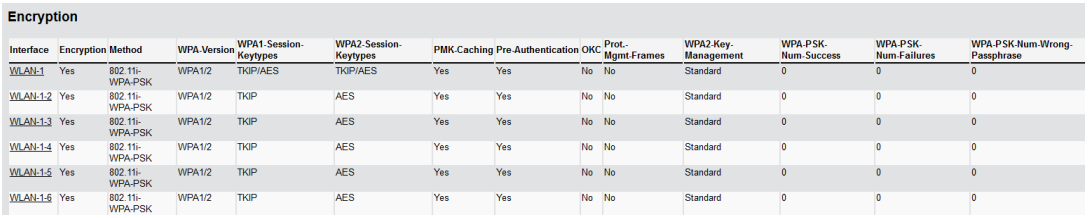
In a PSK network both access security and confidentiality depend on the passphrase not being divulged to unauthorized people. As long as this is the case, WPA-PSK provides significantly improved security against break-ins and eavesdropping

over any WEP variant. For larger installations in which such a passphrase would have to be made known to too large a user community for it to be kept secret, EAP/802.11X is used in combination with the key handshake described here.

Status counters for WPA-PSK login attempts

An overview of the number of failed WPA-PSK login attempts is located in the LCOS menu tree under **Status** > **WLAN** > **Encryption**.

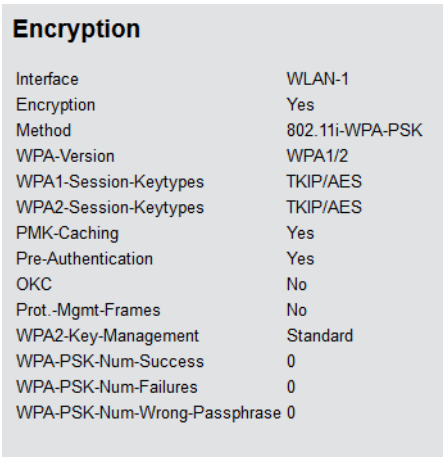
There is also an overview of successful login attempts, as well as the number of authorizations rejected due to an incorrect passphrase.



Encryption

Interface	Encryption	Method	WPA-Version	WPA1-Session-Keytypes	WPA2-Session-Keytypes	PMK-Caching	Pre-Authentication	OKC	Prot.-Mgmt-Frames	WPA2-Key-Management	WPA-PSK-Num-Success	WPA-PSK-Num-Failures	WPA-PSK-Num-Wrong-Passphrase
WLAN-1	Yes	802.11i-WPA-PSK	WPA1/2	TKIP/AES	TKIP/AES	Yes	Yes	No	No	Standard	0	0	0
WLAN-1-2	Yes	802.11i-WPA-PSK	WPA1/2	TKIP	AES	Yes	Yes	No	No	Standard	0	0	0
WLAN-1-3	Yes	802.11i-WPA-PSK	WPA1/2	TKIP	AES	Yes	Yes	No	No	Standard	0	0	0
WLAN-1-4	Yes	802.11i-WPA-PSK	WPA1/2	TKIP	AES	Yes	Yes	No	No	Standard	0	0	0
WLAN-1-5	Yes	802.11i-WPA-PSK	WPA1/2	TKIP	AES	Yes	Yes	No	No	Standard	0	0	0
WLAN-1-6	Yes	802.11i-WPA-PSK	WPA1/2	TKIP	AES	Yes	Yes	No	No	Standard	0	0	0

Select an interface in the table (e.g. WLAN-1) to display the information for the selected interface.



Encryption

Interface	WLAN-1
Encryption	Yes
Method	802.11i-WPA-PSK
WPA-Version	WPA1/2
WPA1-Session-Keytypes	TKIP/AES
WPA2-Session-Keytypes	TKIP/AES
PMK-Caching	Yes
Pre-Authentication	Yes
OKC	No
Prot.-Mgmt-Frames	No
WPA2-Key-Management	Standard
WPA-PSK-Num-Success	0
WPA-PSK-Num-Failures	0
WPA-PSK-Num-Wrong-Passphrase	0

TKIP

The Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) was a temporary solution for use until the introduction of a stronger encryption method, but it at least dealt with the problems of the then popular WEP. Employing TKIP is only recommended for operating older WLAN clients which do not support AES.

If an SSID uses only WEP or WPA with TKIP for encryption, the WLAN clients connected to it achieve a maximum gross data rate of 54 Mbps.

Standard encryption with WPA2

The factory settings (or those after resetting the device) are different in LANCOM APs from those in LANCOM wireless routers.

- Unconfigured APs with standard factory settings cannot be commissioned by means of the WLAN interface. The WLAN modules are switched off and the devices search the LAN for a WLC which will supply a configuration profile.
- Unconfigured wireless routers can be commissioned by means of the WLAN interface, even with the device in its standard factory settings. Also, encryption with WPA-PSK as described here is used as standard.

The preshared key (PSK) for the standard WPA encryption consists of the first letter “L” followed by the LAN MAC address of the access point in ASCII characters. The LAN MAC addresses of the LANCOM devices always begin with the character

string "00A057". You will find the LAN MAC address on a sticker on the base of the device. **Only** use the number labeled as "LAN MAC address" that starts with "00A057". The other numbers that may be found are **not** the LAN MAC address.

A device with the LAN MAC address "00A05713B178" thus has a preshared key of "L00A05713B178". This key is entered into the 'WPA or private WEP settings' of the device for each logical WLAN network as 'Key 1/Passphrase'.

To use a WLAN adapter to establish a connection to a LANCOM wireless router that has factory settings, the WPA encryption must be activated for the WLAN adapter and the standard 13-character preshared key.

After registering for the first time, change the WPA preshared key to ensure that you have a secure connection.

AES

The most obvious extension is the introduction of a new encryption process, namely AES-CCM. As the name already suggests this encryption scheme is based on AES, the successor to DES, unlike WEP and TKIP, which are both based on RC4. Not all older WLAN clients support TKIP, so 802.11i continues to specify TKIP, although with the opposite prerequisites: Any 802.11i-compliant hardware must support AES, while TKIP is optional. In WPA, this was exactly the other way around, with the use of AES being optional. With WPA3, the only permitted security methods are those considered to be secure at the time of adoption. Methods such as TKIP, with known security vulnerabilities, may no longer be used.

The suffix CCM denotes the way in which AES is used in WLAN packets. The process is actually quite complicated, for which reason CCM is only sensibly implemented in hardware—software-based implementations are possible, but would result in significant speed penalties due to the processors commonly used in access points.

In contrast to TKIP, AES only requires a 128-bit key for the encryption and protection against packet falsification. Furthermore, CCM is fully symmetric, i.e. the same key is used in both communications directions—a standards compliant TKIP implementation, on the other hand, requires the use of different Michael keys in the send and receive directions, meaning that CCM is significantly easier in use than TKIP.

Like TKIP, CCM uses a 48-bit Initial Vector in each packet—an IV repetition is impossible in practice. As in TKIP, the receiver notes the last IV used and drops packets with an IV which is equal to or less than the comparison value.

Pre-authentication and PMK caching

802.11i helps with the use of WLAN for speech connections (VoIP) in enterprise networks. Especially in connection with WLAN-based wireless telephony, quick roaming (switching from one AP to another without lengthy interruptions) is of special significance. In telephone conversations, interruptions of 100 milliseconds are irritating, but the full authentication process over 802.1X, including the subsequent key negotiation with the AP, can take significantly longer.

For this reason, the so-called PMK caching was introduced as a first measure. The PMK serves as the basis for key negotiation in an 802.1X authentication between client and access point. In VoIP environments it is possible that a user moves back and forth among a relatively small number of APs. Thus it may happen that a client switches back to an AP in which it was already registered earlier. In this case it makes no sense to repeat the entire 802.1X authentication. For this reason, the AP provides the PMK with a code called the PMKID, which it transmits to the client. Upon a new registration, the client uses the PMKID to ask whether this PMK is still stored. If yes, the 802.1X phase can be skipped and the connection is quickly restored. This optimization is unnecessary if the PMK in a WLAN is calculated from a passphrase as this applies everywhere and is known.

Another measure allows for some acceleration even in the case of first-time authentication, but it requires a little care on the part of the client: The client must detect a degrading connection to the AP during operation and select a new access point while it is still in communication with the old AP. In this case it has the opportunity to perform the 802.1X negotiation with the new AP over the old one, which again reduces the "dead time" required for the 802.1X negotiation.

12.4.4 TKIP and WPA

As clarified in the last section, the WEP algorithm is flawed and insecure in principle; the measures taken so far were largely either 'quick fixes' with limited improvement, or so complicated that they were basically impractical for home use or smaller installations.

After the problems with WEP became public knowledge, the IEEE began with the development of the standard IEEE 802.11i. As an interim solution, the Wi-Fi Alliance defined the Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) 'standard'. WPA uses the following changes:

- TKIP and Michael as replacement for WEP
- A standardized handshake procedure between client and AP for determination/transmission of the session key.
- A simplified procedure for deriving the Master Secret mentioned in the last section, which can be performed without a RADIUS server.
- Negotiation of encryption procedure between AP and client.

Encryption makes use of components familiar from WEP but benefits from decisive improvements with the "Michael hash" from improved encryption and the TKIP method for calculation of the RC4 key. Furthermore, the internally incremented IV transmitted in cleartext in the packet is 48 bits long instead of 24--thus the problem with the repeating IV value is practically excluded.

As a further detail, TKIP also mixes the MAC address of the sender into the calculation of the key. This ensures that the use of identical IVs by different senders cannot lead to identical RC4 keys and thus again to attack possibilities.

The Michael hash does not, however, represent a particularly tough cryptographic hurdle: If the attacker can break the TKIP key or get encrypted packets past the CRC check via modifications similar to those for WEP, then not many barriers remain. For this reason, WPA defines countermeasures if a WLAN module detects more than two Michael errors per minute: Both the client and the AP break data transfer off for one minute, afterwards renegotiating the TKIP and Michael keys.

Over time, ways are found to compromise the encryption protocols. The Wi-Fi Alliance has counteracted this with the WPA2 and later the WPA3 certification standards, which implement more modern encryption methods while prohibiting the use of methods that are known to be insecure.

Negotiating the encryption method

Since the original WEP definition specified a fixed key length of 40 bits, the only option when a client associated at an AP was whether encryption should be used or not. Key lengths exceeding 40 bits require the key length to be announced. WPA provides a mechanism with which client and AP can agree on the encryption and authentication procedures to be used. The following information is made available:

- A list of encryption methods which the AP provides for the pairwise key—here, WEP is explicitly disallowed.
- A list of authentication methods a client may use to show itself to the WLAN as authorized for access—available methods include EAP/802.1X or PSK.

As mentioned, the original WPA standard specifies only TKIP/Michael as an improved encryption method. With the further development of the 802.11i standard, the AES/CCM method described below was added. In a WPA network it is now possible for some clients to communicate with the AP using TKIP, while other clients use AES.

12.4.5 WEP

WEP is an abbreviation for Wired Equivalent Privacy. The primary goal of WEP is the confidentiality of data. In contrast to signals which are transmitted over cables, radio waves spread out in all directions—even into the street in front of the house and other places where they really aren't desired. The problem of undesired interception is particularly obvious in wireless data transmission, even though it can also arise in larger installations with wired networks—however, access to cables is far more easily restricted than is the case with radio waves.

WEP offers far lower security than IEEE802.1X/WPA2. For reasons of compatibility to older WLAN clients, LANCOM APs continue to support this method of encryption. However, LANCOM expressly recommends the use of a better form of WLAN security (e.g. IEEE 802.1X/WPA2 or WPA3).

12.4.6 LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security (LEPS)

The encryption method WPA2 protects data traffic in the WLAN from “interception”. The required passphrase is easily handled as a central key; a RADIUS server such as that for 802.1X installations is not required.

Nevertheless, the tap-proof WPA2 method still has some weaknesses:

- One passphrase applies **globally** for **all** WLAN clients
- The passphrase may fall into unauthorized hands if treated carelessly
- A “leaked” passphrase then offers any attacker free access to the wireless network

This means in practice that: Should the passphrase “go missing” or if an employee with knowledge of the passphrase leaves the company, then the passphrase in the access point needs to be changed in the interests of security—in every WLAN client, too. As this is not always possible, an improvement would be to have an individual passphrase for each user in the WLAN instead of a global passphrase for all WLAN clients. In the case mentioned above, the situation of an employee leaving the company requires merely his “personal” passphrase to be deleted; all others remain valid and confidential.

With LEPS, LANCOM Systems GmbH Systems has developed two efficient methods that makes use of the simple configuration of IEEE 802.11i with passphrase, but that avoid the potential security loopholes that come with global passphrases.

LEPS-U (LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security User) assigns an individual password for the SSID to each individual client or to entire groups. LEPS-MAC (LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security MAC) additionally authenticates the clients by their MAC address, which is ideal for secure enterprise networks.

LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security User (LEPS-U)

LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security Users (LEPS-U) allows a set of passphrases to be configured and assigned to individual users or groups. This avoids having one global passphrase for an SSID. Instead, there are several passphrases, which can then be distributed individually.

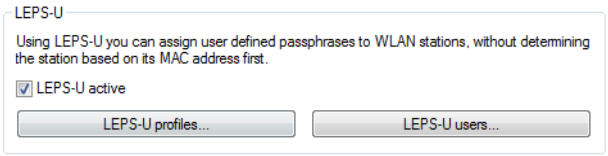
This is useful for onboarding devices into the network. For example, a network operator “onboarding” multiple WLAN devices into different areas of the network does not want to configure each specific device; instead this should done by the users of the devices themselves. In this case, users are given a preshared key for the company WLAN for use with their own devices. The preshared key is used to map each user to a VLAN, thus automatically assigning them to a specific network. The configuration of LEPS-U takes place on the infrastructure side only, which assures full compatibility to third-party products.

The security issue presented by global passphrases is fundamentally remedied by LEPS-U. Each user is assigned their own individual passphrase. If a passphrase assigned to a user should “get lost” or an employee with knowledge of their passphrase leaves the company, then only the passphrase of that user needs to be changed or deleted. All other passphrases remain valid and confidential.

For technical reasons, LEPS-U is only compatible with WPA version WPA2.

Configuration

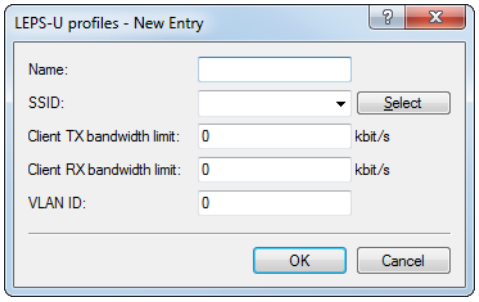
The **LEPS-U profiles** and **LEPS-U users** are configured in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-U**. The switch **LEPS-U active** enables the LEPS-U feature.



When configured in LEPS-U, each user who should be able to authenticate client devices on the WLAN receives an individual passphrase. This is done with LEPS-U profiles, which avoids having to repeat all of the settings for every new user. You then create the LEPS-U users with their individual passphrases and link them to one of the LEPS-U profiles created previously.

LEPS-U profiles

Configure LEPS-U profiles here and link them to an SSID. You can then assign the LEPS-U profiles to the LEPS-U users.



Name

Enter a unique name for the LEPS-U profile here.

SSID

Here you select the SSID or, in the case of a WLC, the logical WLAN network for which the LEPS-U profile is valid. The only users who can authenticate at the SSID or, in the case of a WLC, at the logical WLAN network are those who are connected to it via the LEPS-U profile.

Client TX bandwidth limit

Here you can set a transmission bandwidth limit in kbps for authenticating WLAN clients.

Client RX bandwidth limit

Here you can set a reception bandwidth limit in kbps for authenticating WLAN clients.

VLAN-ID

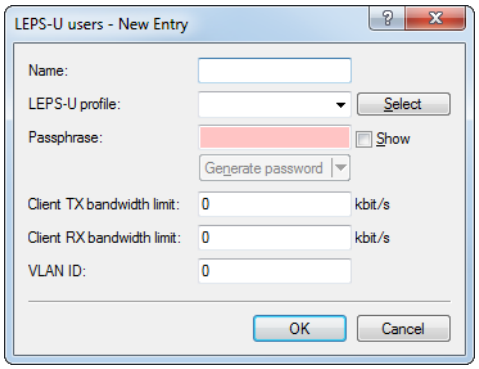
Here you specify which VLAN ID is assigned to a LEPS-U user who is connected to this profile.

LEPS-U users

Create individual LEPS-U users here. Each LEPS-U user must be linked with a previously created profile and assigned an individual WPA passphrase. Any client can then use this passphrase to authenticate at the SSID specified in the corresponding profile. The passphrase identifies the user, who is assigned to the VLAN specified in this table. If no VLAN is specified here, the user is assigned to the VLAN configured in the profile. Settings for the individual user thus take priority over settings in the profile.

There are platform-specific restrictions on the number of LEPS-U users created at the same time.

Device	Users
L-15x, L-3xx, OAP-32x, OAP-8xx, IAP-32x, IAP-82x, LN-630acn	› up to 300 users per SSID › Access Point total: 2,000 users
L-45x, L(N)-8xx, L-13xx, LN-17xx	› per SSID up to 1,000 users › Access Point total: 6,000 users



Name

Enter a unique name for the LEPS-U user here.

LEPS-U profiles

Select the profile for which the LEPS-U user is valid. The only users who can authenticate at the SSID are those who are connected to it via the LEPS-U profile.

Passphrase

Here you can specify the passphrase to be used by LEPS-U users to authenticate at the WLAN.

The passphrase can be a string of 8 to 64 characters. We recommend that the passphrases consist of a random string at least 32 characters long.

Client TX bandwidth limit

Here you can set a transmission bandwidth limit in kbps for authenticating WLAN clients. If no limit is configured here, the limitation configured in the LEPS-U profile (if any) applies. If a limit is configured in both the LEPS-U profile and for the LEPS-U user, the limit configured for the LEPS-U user applies.

Client RX bandwidth limit

Here you can set a reception bandwidth limit in kbps for authenticating WLAN clients. If no limit is configured here, the limitation configured in the LEPS-U profile (if any) applies. If a limit is configured in both the LEPS-U profile and for the LEPS-U user, the limit configured for the LEPS-U user applies.

VLAN-ID

Here you specify which VLAN ID is assigned to the LEPS-U user. If no VLAN-ID is configured here, the VLAN-ID configured in the LEPS-U profile (if any) applies. If a VLAN-ID is configured in both the LEPS-U profile and for the LEPS-U user, the VLAN-ID configured for the LEPS-U user applies.

LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security MAC (LEPS-MAC)

LEPS-MAC uses an additional column in the ACL (access-control list) to assign an **individual** passphrase consisting of any 8 to 63 ASCII characters to each MAC address. Authentication at the access point is only possible with the correct combination of passphrase and MAC address.

This combination makes the spoofing of the MAC addresses futile—and LEPS-MAC thus shuts out a potential attack on the ACL. If WPA2 is used for encryption, the MAC address can indeed be intercepted—but this method never transmits the passphrase over wireless. This greatly increases the difficulty of attacking the WLAN as the combination of MAC address and passphrase requires both to be known before an encryption can be negotiated.

LEPS-MAC can be used both locally in the device and centrally managed by a RADIUS server. LEPS-MAC works with all WLAN client adapters available on the market without any modification. Full compatibility to third-party products is assured as LEPS-MAC only involves configuration in the access point.

Compared to LEPS-U, the administrative overhead is slightly higher because the MAC address has to be entered for each device.

Configuration

The configuration of LEPS-MAC involves the assignment of an individual passphrase to the MAC address of each client that is approved for the WLAN. This is done either with an entry in the list under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** > **Station rules** (see *Stations* on page 1010) or in the RADIUS server. One entry is generated per MAC address—from the point of view of the RADIUS server, the MAC address is therefore a user. It is also necessary to activate the MAC filter under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Logical WLAN settings**, i.e. data will be transmitted for the WLAN clients entered here.

The passphrase can be a string of 8 to 64 characters. We recommend that the passphrases consist of a random string at least 32 characters long.

If you are storing client-specific passphrases in the user table of a RADIUS server, a LAN-based device can serve as the central RADIUS server and take advantage of LEPS-MAC.

12.4.7 Background WLAN scanning

To detect other access points within range, LANCOM Wireless Routers actively scan all of the available channels (just as a WLAN client would do to find an available access point). If another access point is active, the relevant information is stored to the scan table. Since this recording occurs in the background in addition to the access points' "normal" radio activity, it is called a "background scan".

Background scanning is mainly used for the following tasks:

- Rogue AP detection
- Fast roaming for WLAN clients

Rogue AP detection

WLAN devices that make unauthorized attempts at accessing a WLAN by posing as an access point or client are called rogues. An example of rogue APs are access points that a company's employees connect to the network without the knowledge or permission of the system administrators, thereby consciously or unconsciously making the network vulnerable to potential attackers via unsecured WLAN access. Not quite as dangerous, but disruptive all the same are access points that belong to third-party networks yet are within the range of the local WLAN. If such devices also use the same SSID and channel as the local AP (default settings), then local clients could attempt to log on to external networks.

Unidentified access points within the range of the local network frequently pose a possible threat and security gap. At the very least, they are a disturbance. Therefore, background scanning identifies rogue APs and helps to decide whether further measures in securing the local network need to be introduced.

Fast roaming in client mode

However, the background scanning method can be used for objectives other than rogue AP detection. A LANCOM Access Point in client mode that logs itself on to another access point can also use the roaming procedure in a mobile installation. This is the case, for example, when a LANCOM Access Point used in an industrial application scenario is mounted to a forklift that navigates its way through multiple warehouses with separate access points. Under normal circumstances, the WLAN client would only log on to another access point when the connection to the access point it had been using until that moment was lost. With the background scanning function, the LANCOM Access Point using the client mode can collect information about other available access points in advance. In this case the client is not switched to another access point once the existing connection has been lost completely, but rather when another access point within its range has a stronger signal.

Evaluating the background scan

The information on the access points found can be viewed in the LANCOM Access Point statistics. The WLANmonitor presents the scan results quite conveniently and also offers additional functions such as access point grouping or automatic notification via e-mail whenever a new WLAN device appears.

12.4.8 Starting an environment scan at a configurable time

Your WLAN's environment can be regularly searched for rogue APs.

You can configure the times of the automatic environment scan for rogue APs.

Environment scans should be performed at times that minimize interference to normal operations.

This feature allows you to perform the scan of the configured frequency band each day at a predefined time.

In this case, scan refers to:

- Active scanning using probe requests.
- Passive scanning for beacons.

It is not always possible to use active scanning, for example where a 5-GHz channel is not DFS-free. No transmissions are permitted in this case.

The configuration is performed from the command console, shown here with default values as an example:

```
root@LN-1700Esc:/Setup/Interfaces/WLAN/Environment-Scan
> ls -a

[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][2.23.20.27]
Ifc      Operating  Hour    Minute  Channel-List
[1]      [2]          [3]    [4]     [5]
=========-------------------------------------------------------------------
WLAN-1    No           3      0
WLAN-2    No           3      0
```

"Hour" and "Minute" are used to set the time at which the daily environment scan is performed. These fields also permit the use of the CRON syntax. The channel list can be used to limit the channels to be scanned (as a comma-separated list). If this list is left empty, all of the channels of the frequency band operating on the module are scanned.

During the scan, the WLAN module spends about three seconds on each channel. The next channel is then scanned. Once all of the configured channels have been scanned, the module returns to normal operating mode.

During the scan the module is not capable of regular WLAN operations, in contrast, for example, to the background scan. However, only one of the two modules can perform an environment scan at any one time, and the other module operates normally.

In addition to the time-controlled activation of the environment scan, it can also be activated permanently. For this purpose, the WLAN module can be switched to the operating mode "Scanner" (see operation mode 7):

```
root@LN-1700Esc:/Setup/Interfaces/WLAN/Operational
> 1
```

```
Ifc       Operating     Operation-Mode  Link-LED-Function     Broken-Link-Detection
==========------------------------------------------------------------------------
WLAN-1    Yes           Scanner         Normal                No
WLAN-2    Yes           managed-AP      Normal                No

root@LN-1700Esc:/Setup/Interfaces/WLAN/Operational
> set ?

Possible input for columns in table 'Operational':
[  1] Ifc                  : WLAN-1 (1), WLAN-2 (2)
[  2] Operating            : Yes (0), No (1)
[  3] Operation-Mode       : Access-Point (1), managed-AP (4), Station (0),
                             Probe (5), Scanner (7)
[  4] Link-LED-Function    : Normal (0), Client-Mode-Strength (1), P2P-1-Strength (8))
[  5] Broken-Link-Detection : No (0), LAN-1 (1), LAN-2 (2)
```

This performs the environment scan as described above: After scanning the configured channels, the scan does not terminate but it starts again from the beginning.

This operating mode allows the use of an AP as a full-time "scanner" AP.

The result of the environment scan can be found in the table **Status** > **WLAN** > **Environment-Scan-Results**.

See *Environment scan* on page 920 for the configuration in LANconfig.

12.4.9 Replay-attack recognition

Every packet encrypted with AES or TKIP contains a unique sequence number so that the receiver can recognize and and drop replays. Where QoS is active, the recipient has to run a replay counter for each different priority level.

If not, an attacker could replay a sniffed packet on a different priority level. This situation is actually the basis for a number of methods of attacking TKIP.

As of LCOS version 7.70, recipients can conduct replay checks for each priority level, and there is also an additional 'global' check that keeps track of the sequence numbers recently used by the remote station. Senders are prohibited from repeating sequence numbers on different priority levels, meaning that to a certain extent replay attacks on another priority level can be recognized.

Some WLAN clients, such as those used in mobile phones, operate with a faulty AES implementation, whereby the sender uses a separate sequence counter for each priority level. It is normal for these devices to repeat sequence numbers.

In order to allow these devices to operate in the WLAN, it is possible to omit the global check of the crypto sequence.

Command line: **Setup** > **WLAN**

Omit-Global-Crypto-Sequence-Check

This is where you set the value for the crypto sequence check.

Possible values:

- Auto, Yes, No

Default:

- Auto

Special values:

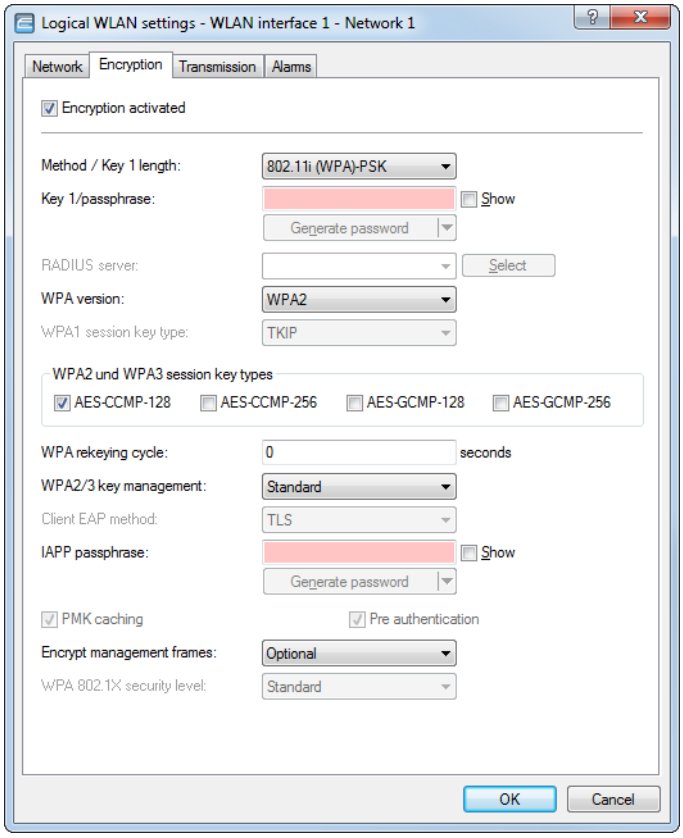
- Auto: LCOS contains a list of relevant devices. In the 'Auto' setting, the global sequence check is disabled. For other devices not included in this list, the global sequence check has to be disabled manually.

12.4.10 WLAN protected management frames (PMF)

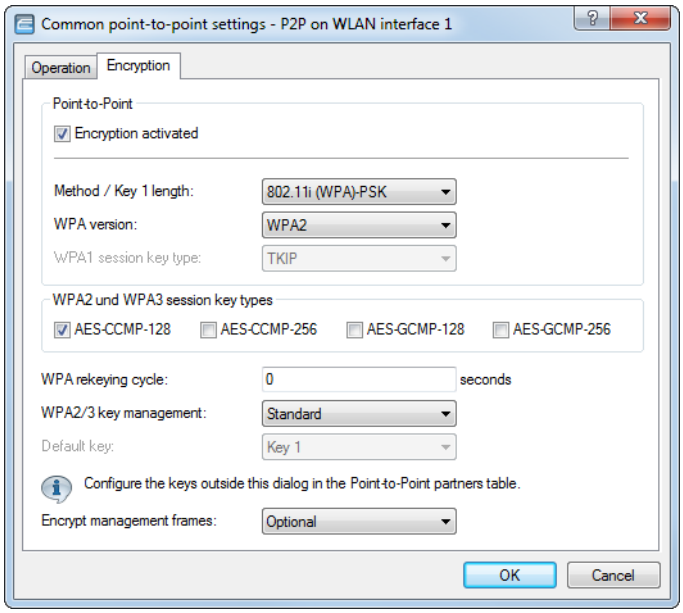
By default, the management information transmitted on a WLAN for establishing and operating data connections is unencrypted. Anybody within a WLAN cell can receive this information, even those who are not associated with an AP. Although this does not entail any risk for encrypted data connections, the injection of fake management information could severely disturb the communications within a WLAN cell.

The IEEE 802.11w standard encrypts this management information, meaning that potential attackers can no longer interfere with the communications if they don't have the corresponding key.

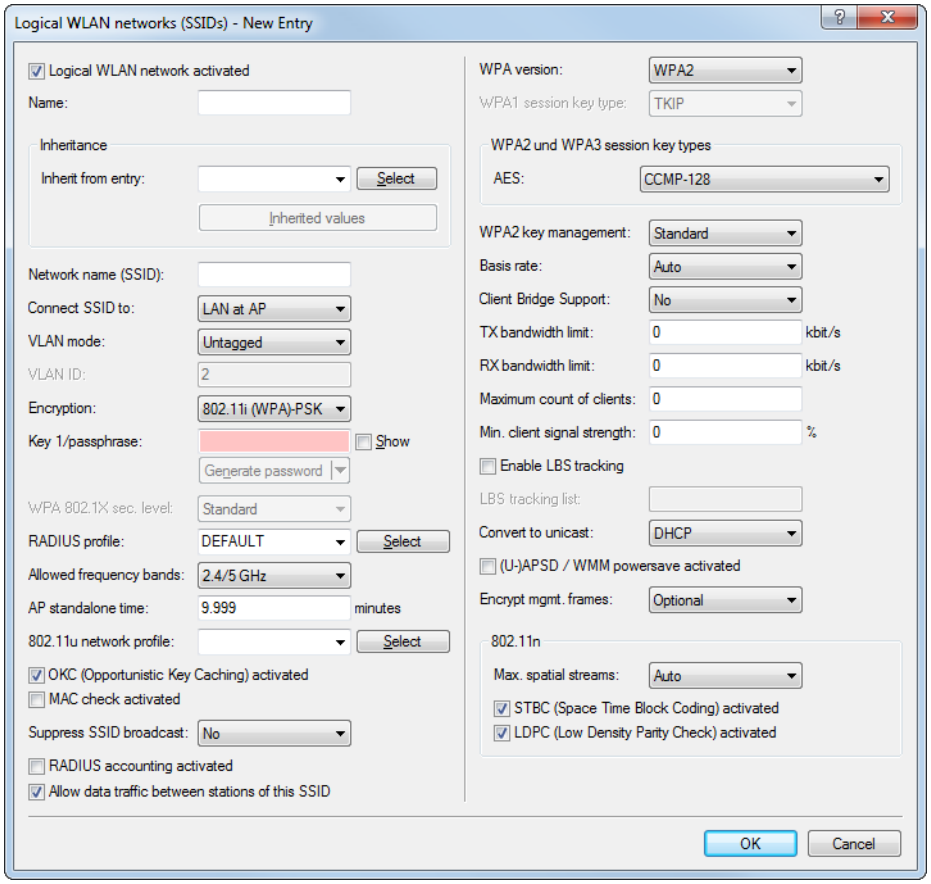
To enable protected management frames for a logical WLAN interface, in LANconfig you navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings**, open the configuration of the appropriate WLAN interface, switch to the **Encryption** tab, and click the appropriate option in the selection list **Encrypt management frames**.



To encrypt management frames between the base stations of a P2P WLAN bridge, in LANconfig you navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Common point-to-point settings**, open the P2P configuration of the appropriate WLAN interface, switch to the **Encryption** tab, and click the appropriate option in the selection list **Encrypt management frames**.



To manage the encryption of management frames for a WLAN controller, in LANconfig you navigate to **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles**, click on **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)** and click the appropriate option in the selection list **Encrypt mgmt. frames**.



The following options are available in each of these configurations:

No

The WLAN interface does not support PMF. The WLAN management frames are not encrypted.

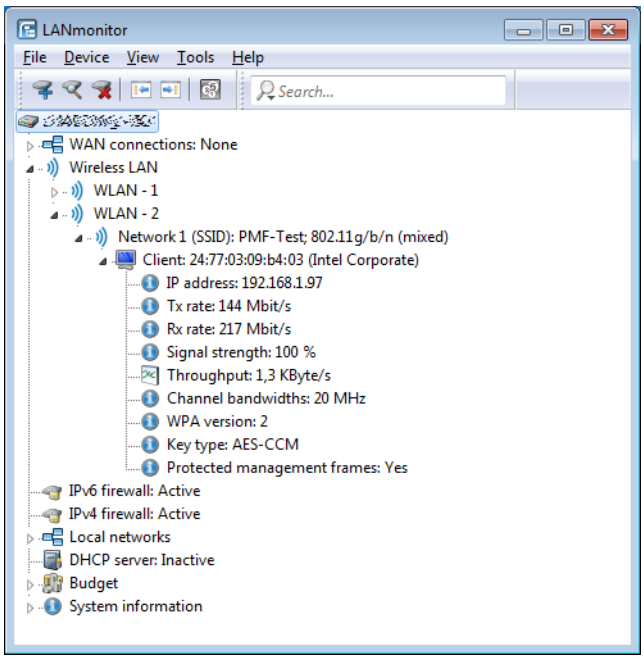
Mandatory

The WLAN interface supports PMF. The WLAN management frames are always encrypted. It is not possible to connect with WLAN clients that do not support PMF.

Optional

The WLAN interface supports PMF. Depending on the WLAN client's PMF support, the WLAN management frames are either encrypted or unencrypted.

LANmonitor displays information about WLAN management frame encryption below each client.



12.5 LANCOM Active Radio Control (ARC)

The intelligent WLAN optimization concept xml:lang="en"behind **LANCOM Active Radio Control (ARC)** helps you to sustainably optimize your radio field and proactively avoid sources of interference on the WLAN. Active Radio Control consists of numerous complementary functions in the LANCOM operating system LCOS, which combine to significantly improve the performance of your WLAN. All of the features in Active Radio Control are included for free in the LANCOM operating system LCOS and they are easy to operate with the appropriate management tools.

RF optimization

Automatic selection of optimum WLAN channels: WLAN clients benefit from improved throughput thanks to reduced channel overlap. In controller-based WLAN installations, the optimal channels are selected automatically for managed access points.

For more information about RF optimization, see the relevant section *RF optimization* on page 1074.

Band steering

Make optimal use of your WLAN's bandwidth: Automatically controlled by the access point, clients steered to the 5-GHz frequency band can effectively double the WLAN performance because only here are sufficient channels available for channel bundling.

For more information about band steering, see the relevant section *WLAN band steering* on page 849.

Adaptive noise immunity

Better WLAN throughput thanks to immunity to interfering signals: WLAN clients benefit from significantly improved data throughput thanks to interference-free signal coverage. Enabling the adaptive noice immunity allows an access point to block out interfering signals and to focus exclusively on WLAN clients with sufficient signal strength.

For more information about adaptive noise immunity, see the relevant section *Adaptive noise immunity for reducing interference on the WLAN* on page 853.

Spectral scan

Check your WLAN radio spectrum for sources of interference: With LANCOM Spectral Scan, you have a professional tool for efficient WLAN troubleshooting. A scan of the entire radio spectrum identifies sources of interference from outside the WLAN and allows a graphical representation.

For more information about spectral scanning, see the relevant section *Spectral scan* on page 854.

12.5.1 Adaptive RF Optimization

Improved WLAN throughput due to dynamic selection of the best WLAN channel by the access point in case of interference.

Choosing a WLAN channel specifies which part of the frequency band is used by an access point for its logical WLANs. To ensure the flawless operation of a WLAN within range of another access point, each of the access points should be using a separate channel—otherwise the WLANs have to share the medium. For this purpose, LANCOM access points use the feature Adaptive RF Optimization: The access point permanently scans the radio field for interfering signals. If a threshold is exceeded on the current WLAN channel (by means of the “wireless quality indicators”), the access point

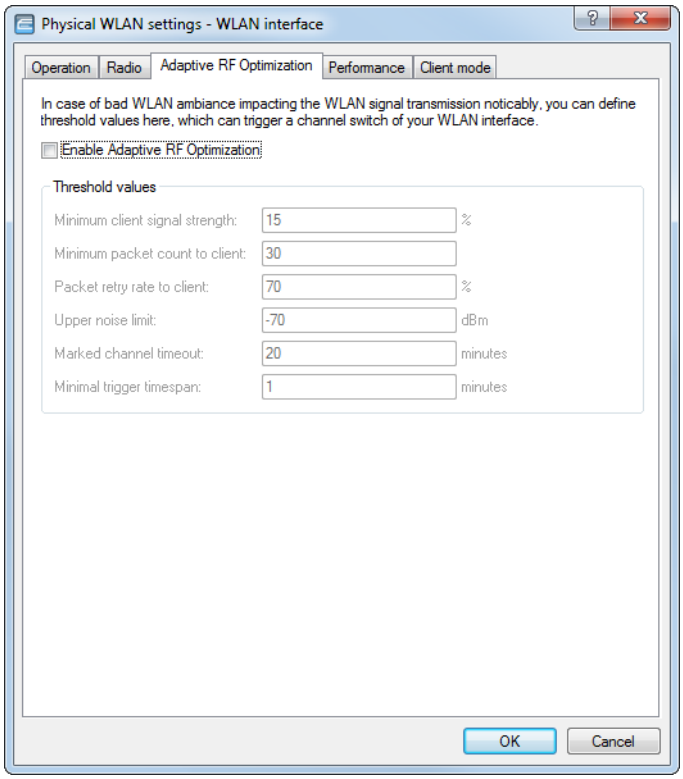
automatically switches to a qualitatively better channel. This intelligent feature enables the access point to dynamically adapt to an ever-changing radio field in order to maximize the WLAN's stability.

In LANconfig you have the option to manually configure the different thresholds that are used as the basis for an automatic channel change.

Setting up Adaptive RF Optimization with LANconfig

In order to use LANconfig to configure the function Adaptive RF Optimization, it is necessary for the devices that you want to configure to offer the feature "Wireless Quality Indicators". Further information about WQI is available in the reference manual.

To configure Adaptive RF Optimization, open LANconfig and go to **Wireless LAN** > **General**. In the "Interfaces" section, click on **Physical WLAN settings**. Select the WLAN interface you want to configure and go to the tab **Adaptive RF Optimization**.



Enable Adaptive RF Optimization

To enable monitoring of the WLAN radio field via Adaptive RF Optimization, check the box **Enable Adaptive RF Optimization**.

You then configure the thresholds that trigger automatic channel changes.

Minimum client signal strength

Setting for the minimum client signal strength. Clients with a lesser signal strength are not considered at the next evaluation and cannot trigger a channel change. The value is set in % with a default of 15).

Minimum packet count to client

Setting for the minimum number of packets sent to a client (TX). Clients with a lesser signal strength are not considered at the next evaluation and cannot trigger a channel change (default value: 30).

Packet retry rate to client

Setting for the upper limit of packets that are resent to a client. If a client receives a proportion of resent packets that exceeds this percentage value, the device will consider this client the next time the need for a channel change is evaluated. The value is set in % with a default of 70).

Upper noise limit

Setting for the upper limit of acceptable noise on the channel. The value is set in dBm with a default of -70).

Marked channel timeout

If a channel is considered unusable, it will be marked/blocked for the length of time specified here. This value also blocks the channel change trigger in case all channels have been blocked. The value is set in minutes (default value: 20).

Minimal trigger timespan

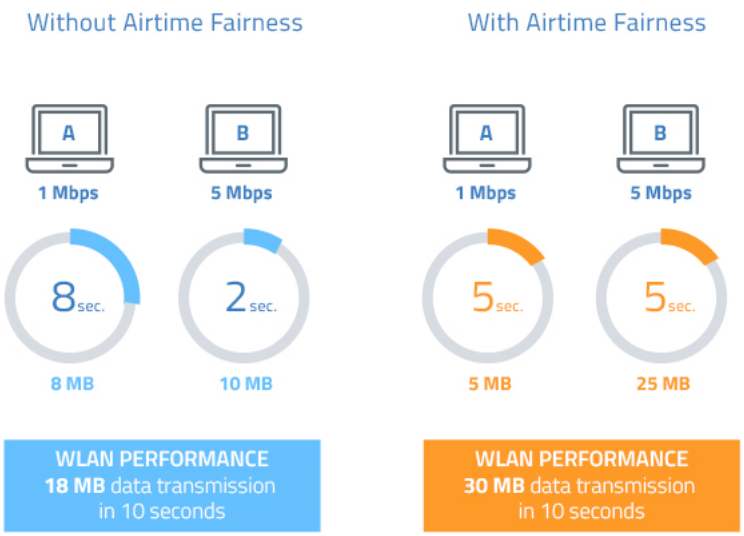
Here you specify for how long a limit is exceeded continuously before an action is triggered. The timer is reset if no limits are exceeded for a period of 20 seconds. If a limit is exceeded for the entire time span, the current channel is blocked/marked. The value is set in minutes (default value: 1).

For this setting we recommend small single-digit values.

12.5.2 Airtime Fairness

By fairly sharing the WLAN transmission time between all of the active clients, the available bandwidth is used to maximum effect and WLAN performance is improved.

Especially in WLAN scenarios with a high client-density, the devices have to compete for the available bandwidth. Here, the AP offers transmission slots to each of the clients in turn—without any consideration for the necessary transmission times. Legacy clients end up slowing down faster clients, even though the faster ones could complete their data transmission more quickly. The feature "Airtime Fairness" ensures that the available bandwidth is used efficiently. To this end, the WLAN transmission time ("airtimes") is fairly distributed between the active clients. The consequence: Thanks to all clients being provided with the same airtime, faster clients can achieve more data throughput in the same amount of time.

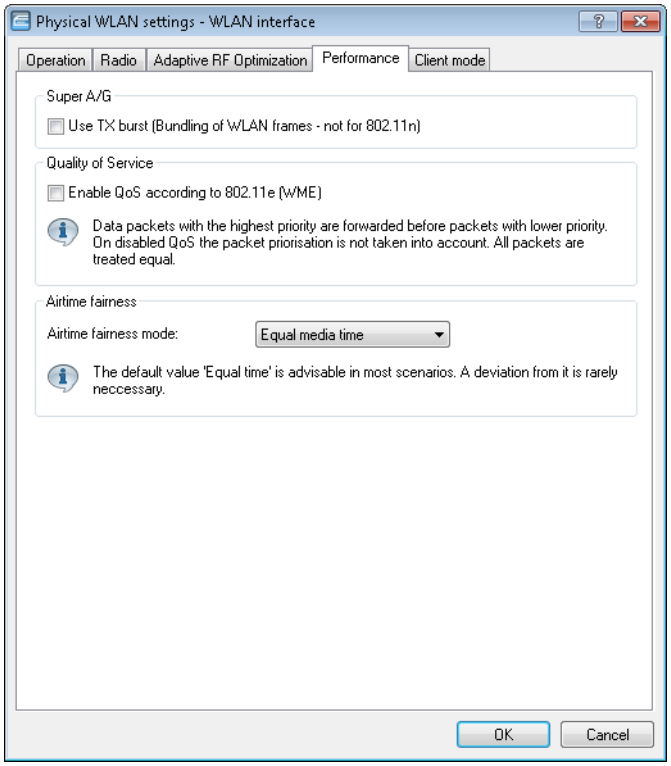


"Airtime" refers to the WLAN transmission time. Airtime Fairness provides WLAN transmission time to all of the active clients according to the mode configured for the Airtime Fairness. This, for example, stops older clients from slowing down more modern clients.

For devices with WLAN modules supporting the IEEE 802.11ac standard, the **Airtime Fairness** feature is automatically enabled in the WLAN module.

Setting up Airtime Fairness with LANconfig

Go to **Wireless LAN** > **General**. In the **Interfaces** section, click on **Physical WLAN settings**. Select the WLAN interface you want to configure, and go to the tab **Performance**.



In the section **Airtime fairness mode** you select the Airtime Fairness operating mode:

Round robin scheduling

Each client receives a time slot for transmission, one after the other.

Equal media time

All clients will receive the same airtime. Clients with a higher data throughput benefit from this setting because they can transmit a greater amount of data to the access point in a given amount of time.

IEEE 802.11ac WLAN modules already use an algorithm similar to this setting.

802.11n preferred

This setting prefers clients using IEEE 802.11n. Clients using IEEE 802.11a or IEEE 802.11g only receive 25% of the airtime of an IEEE 802.11n client. Clients using IEEE 802.11b only receive 6.25% airtime. The result is that data is sent a lot faster to clients using IEEE 802.11n.

Equal media volume

This setting distributes the airtime between the clients to ensure that all clients will receive the same amount of throughput by the access point. However, slower clients will slow down the other clients.

This setting is only recommended where it is necessary for all clients to receive the same throughput.

12.5.3 WLAN band steering

The IEEE 802.11 standard contains virtually no criteria by which a WLAN client should select the AP for a connection. While there are, for example, general guidelines for the preference given to an AP with a higher RSSI value (i.e. the received signal strength), WLAN clients do not, in practice, adhere strictly to these definitions or the general guidelines. If both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz are used to broadcast an SSID, there is normally no way of influencing the client as regards the preferred frequency band.

WLAN "client steering" is based on the principle that many clients find the APs available to them by means of an active scan. Active scanning here means that a client sends probe requests containing the network ID to which the client is to connect. APs with this ID then send a test response, enabling the client to create a list of available APs. The vast majority of WLAN clients only connect to APs from which they have received a probe response, and this can be used to steer their selection process.

There are several, sometimes highly advanced, criteria for steering. One of these criteria relates to the wireless frequency ranges used for client communication. Modern dual-band WLAN clients are expected to prefer the 5 GHz frequency band over the (now) overcrowded 2.4 GHz band. Band Steering is the term given to purposefully assigning a WLAN client to a particular frequency band or range.

The list of detected or "seen" clients contains all clients from which the AP has received a test request packet. In combination with the radio frequency on which the WLAN client sends the probe request, this list is one of the bases used by the AP to decide whether or not to respond to the request.

Other criteria depend on the reported client IDs and the configuration of the devices. It may be the case, for example, that fewer SSIDs are reported on the preferred frequency band than are on the one with the lower preference. Similarly, too low a transmit strength when SSIDs are reported can result in the client not receiving any probe responses at all on the preferred frequency band. For the latter scenario, it is important to ensure that the AP does not suppress probe responses on the less favored frequency band. The minimum signal strength responsible here can be set in the following ways :

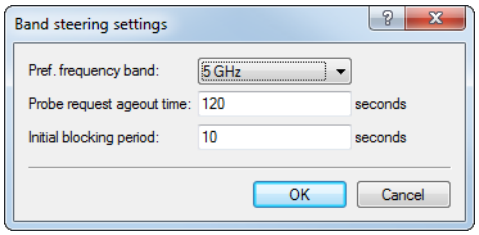
- LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Network** > **Minimum client signal strength**
- Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Network** > **Minimum client strength**

In LANconfig, band steering is activated for the access point under **Wireless LAN** > **Client management** > **Client management** > **Management mode** by selecting **AP-based band steering** and is administered under **Wireless LAN** > **Client management** > **Expert settings** > **Band-steering settings**.

WLAN band steering is a component of *LANCOM Active Radio Control (ARC)*

Configuring band steering

This dialog enables you to configure the settings for band steering in LANconfig.



The following features are available under **Wireless LAN** > **Client management** > **Expert settings** > **Band-steering settings**:

Preferred frequency band

Specifies the frequency band to which the device steers WLAN clients. Possible values are:

- **2.4 GHz**: The device steers clients to the 2.4-GHz frequency band.

- **5 GHz**: The device steers clients to the 5-GHz frequency band.

Probe request age-out time

The time for which the access point steers the WLAN client to the preferred frequency band. The default value is 120 seconds.

Initial block time

If an access point with a 5-GHz DFS radio module is put into operation for the first time, and also following a restart, it cannot detect any dual-band capable WLAN clients during the DFS scan. As a result, the access point cannot direct a WLAN client to a preferred 5-GHz band. Instead, the 2.4-GHz radio module would answer the client request and forward it to the 2.4-GHz band.

By setting an initial block time, the radio module that is configured to 2.4-GHz only responds to client requests after the specified delay. The default value is 10 seconds.

The delayed response to the 2.4 GHz probes causes WLAN clients, which would otherwise expect to find an access point in the 2.4 GHz band, to scan again in the 5 GHz band.

Registration of a purely 2.4-GHz WLAN client also occurs after this delay time. If no 5-GHz WLAN clients are present in the network, the delay time should be set to 0 seconds.

12.5.4 Client Management

With Client Management, Wi-Fi clients are steered to the best available access point and frequency band. This feature improves the quality of wireless networks of all sizes—whether they operate stand-alone or orchestrated by the LANCOM Management Cloud. The popular band steering and client steering, which so far were separate features, have now been combined and even operate without a WLAN controller.

Compared to the previous client steering feature supported by WLCs, Client Management operates independently and without a WLC. The access points communicate with one another using the protocol IAPP.

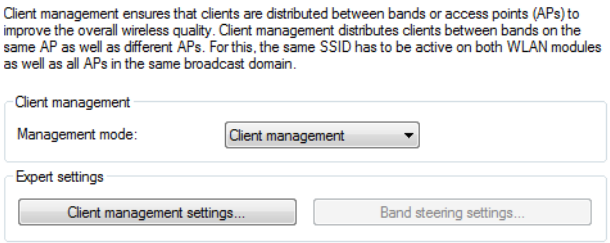
For the access points to communicate with one another, they need to be able to exchange IAPP messages. IAPP messages are transmitted by multicast. If necessary, the infrastructure—and switches in particular—requires exemptions to be created for IGMP snooping or other filtering mechanisms. IAPP uses the multicast group 224.0.1.76.

LANCOM switches in the default setting are already set up correctly for Client Management.

In this way Client Management ensures that clients are evenly distributed across the frequency bands and access points to optimize overall WLAN performance. A requirement for this is that the WLAN modules and access points in a broadcast domain all transmit on the same SSID.

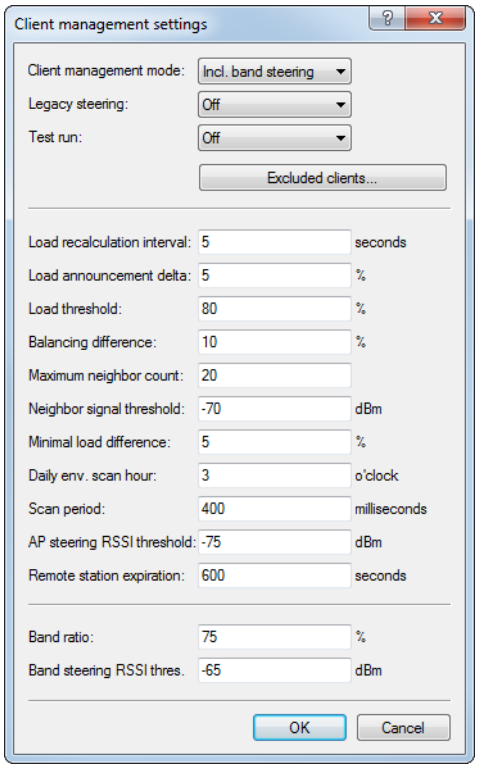
Configuration of Client Management

Client Management is switched on and off under **Wireless LAN** > **Client Management** > **Client Management** > **Management mode**. For new installations, this is turned on by default and usually does not require any special settings. As an alternative for access points with multiple WLAN modules, **AP-based band steering** can also be activated. See also *WLAN band steering* on page 849.



Expert settings

The settings for Client Management are configured under **Wireless LAN** > **Client Management** > **Expert settings** > **Client Management**. The default settings are ideal for operating Client Management in offices and school environments.



Client Management mode

Access points with multiple WLAN modules can operate Client Management with and without band steering.

Default setting:with band steering

Legacy steering

Configures whether clients that do not fully support 802.11v are also directed to other access points by Client Management. Even with legacy steering activated, Client Management first steers the 802.11v-capable clients to other access points; only then does it steer the clients that do not support 802.11v. Legacy steering forcibly disconnects these clients from the WLAN. The AP prevents the client from re-associating with it for a certain period, so that the client itself selects another access point. Compared to clients steered with 802.11v, this can lead to a poorer user experience, although this depends mainly on the behavior of the legacy clients.

Default setting: Off

Test run

Operates the Client Management in test mode: Environment scans are performed and steering decisions are made by the system and recorded to the syslog, but no actual client steering takes place. Use the test run to test the behavior of Client Management without actually making changes to your network.

Default setting: Off

Excluded clients

In many environments, there are certain clients that are known to be unresponsive. Imagine a hospital with custom VoIP phones that are unable to properly handle dropped calls and that tend to stick to a certain access point. To avoid having to switch off Client Management completely, you can exclude these clients from client steering.

Use the table to configure the MAC addresses of the clients that are to be excluded from client steering. The wildcard character `*` can be used, which stands for any characters. However, this must not be used as the only character of a MAC address. Possible entries are, for example `01:23:45:12:34:56`, `01:*:56` or `01:23:*`.

Load recalculation interval

Configures the interval at which the load on the AP is calculated and decisions are made to steer the clients. Increase the value to reduce the load on the network. Decrease the value to steer clients faster. Values < 2 seconds are not recommended as this negatively impacts network performance. Values > 10 seconds are not recommended as client steering does not happen in time. We recommend that you use the default value.

Default value: 5 seconds

Load announcement delta

Configures the percentage change in current load at which an access point communicates the load to other access points outside of the regular announcement interval. Increase the value in installations with many mobile clients. Decrease the value in installations with fewer moving clients. The default setting has been chosen for office and school environments. Note that this value should be lower than the value configured for the balancing difference to avoid miscalculations.

Default value: 5 %

Load threshold

Configures the load threshold at which the access point starts steering regardless of the load threshold of the neighbor access points. Increase the value in low-quality/high-density scenarios such as stadiums. Decrease the value in high-quality/high-throughput scenarios such as offices/schools.

Default value: 80 %

Balancing difference

Configures the load difference between access points at which clients are steered to the access point with the lesser load. High values lead to less balanced installations, low values lead to more steering of the clients. Increase the value if excessive client steering is happening. Decrease the value to achieve maximum balancing across the installation. The default setting has been chosen for office and school environments.

Default value: 10 %

Maximum neighbor count

Configures the number of neighbor access points that Client Management on this access point takes into consideration. In high-density scenarios, a lower number can be advantageous as clients are predominantly steered to nearby access points and less management communication is required between the access points. Values < 4 are not recommended, as there are not enough available access points for useful steering decisions. Values > 72 are not supported due to limitations of the 802.11 protocol.

Default value: 20 APs

Neighbor signal threshold

Configures the signal strength that an AP must display in order to be classified as a neighbor access point. Increase the value for high-density scenarios (for example: -60, -50). Decrease the value for scenarios where widespread coverage is required (e.g. -80, -90).

Default value: -70 dBm

Minimum load difference

Configures the minimum load difference between neighboring access points for steering to be performed between these access points. Steering is only performed when the configured load threshold is exceeded. To avoid miscalculation, the minimum load difference should not exceed the value for balancing difference. Increase the value for less steering in the installation. Decrease the value for more steering in the installation.

Default value: 5 %

Daily env. scan hour

Configures the time (00-23) at which the daily environment scan is performed as required by Client Management. The exact time of the scan is spread over a 30-minute window to minimize conflicts between concurrent environment scans. The environment scan takes about 15 seconds. No WLAN data is exchanged while the WLAN module is scanning.

Default value: 03:00 hours

Scan period

Configures the length of the environment scan used to identify neighbor access points. The scan period should be 2 to 2.5 times the configured beacon interval; the default value is suitable for the default beacon interval. This value can be configured from 200 ms to 1000 ms.

Default value: 400 ms

AP steering RSSI threshold

The signal strength that a client must have on a remote access point in order to be steered to it.

A higher signal threshold reduces the number of potentially steerable clients, thus limiting the options available to the Client Management. At the same time this would be useful in environments with high quality demands, for example where VoIP is heavily used. This requires very good signal coverage and a higher density of access points.

A lower signal threshold increases the number of potentially steerable clients, although there is a risk that clients could be assigned to access points with a poor signal quality. Clients may even refuse to be steered to an access point with a poorer signal quality. This is a help in environments with coverage over a large area. Values below -80 dBm produce poor results, as the likelihood increases that clients cannot connect to the access points they are being steered to.

The default value is ideal for office environments.

Default value: -75 dBm

Remote station expiration

Time for which an access point remembers the information about the clients of a neighboring access point. This information is used to speed up the steering decisions. The default value suits office environments with a relatively static set-up and few moving clients. Set lower values in environments with larger numbers of moving clients or with clients that connect for a short time only. Values that are too high lead to incorrect steering if the information of the cache no longer applies.

Default value: 600 seconds

Band ratio

Configures the intended distribution of clients between the radio bands. The configured ratio specifies what proportion of clients should be steered to the 5-GHz band.

Default value: 75 %

Band steering RSSI threshold

Configures the signal strength (RSSI) that a client “displays” on the other radio band in order to be steered there. The default setting is suitable for office environments.

Default value: -65 dBm

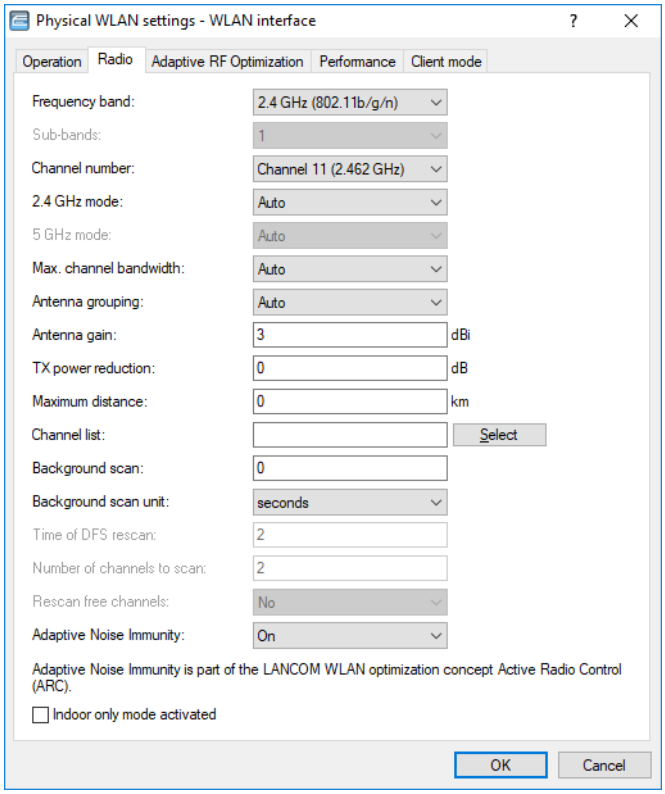
12.5.5 Adaptive noise immunity for reducing interference on the WLAN

A wireless LAN can be subjected to interference from various sources. Devices such as microwave ovens or cordless phones interfere with data transmission, and even the network devices themselves can emit interference and hinder

communications. Each type of interference has its own characteristics. Adaptive noise immunity (ANI) enables the access point to use different error conditions to determine the best way to compensate for the interference. By automatically increasing noise immunity, the size of the radio cell can be reduced to mitigate the impact of interference on the data transfer.

The current values and any previous actions are to be found on the command line under **Status** > **WLAN** > **Noise-Immunity**.

You can enable adaptive noise immunity in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Radio**.



To enable the adaptive noise immunity function, go to the Radio tab and set the value in the selection field **Adaptive noise immunity** to "On".

Adaptive noise immunity is a component of *LANCOM Active Radio Control (ARC)*

12.5.6 Spectral scan

In addition to connecting computers to the Internet, professional users are increasingly using wireless local area networks (WLAN) for business-critical applications. Examples include accessing of patient files, online monitoring of production facilities, and the transmission of video and audio data (ideally without any time lags). The reliability and performance of WLAN systems are thus increasingly important.

The rising significance and usage of WLAN for data transmission is resulting in more and more scenarios where the equipment and systems of various users are crowding the WLAN frequency ranges. These may include, for example, microwave ovens, cordless telephones, Bluetooth devices and video transmitters, with their signals occurring on a continual or intermittent basis. The simultaneous usage of a frequency band or frequency range gives rise to interference that can disrupt or negatively impact the reliability and performance of a WLAN. This type of interference can result in data packets or connections being lost. If the interference is too strong, the complete failure of the WLAN may result.

It is therefore becoming increasingly important to use targeted analysis to check the frequency ranges. These checks should identify the interference or other interference factors, and introduce countermeasures as required. It can also be used to ensure that the WLAN is working properly and operating interference free.

Targeted analysis can also clarify or identify the following:

- Proper, fault-free operation of the WLAN
- Existence of interference or noise
- Display or identify the bands with interference
- Strength of the interference signal
- Regularity or frequency of the interference signal
- Type, and possibly source, of the interference signal

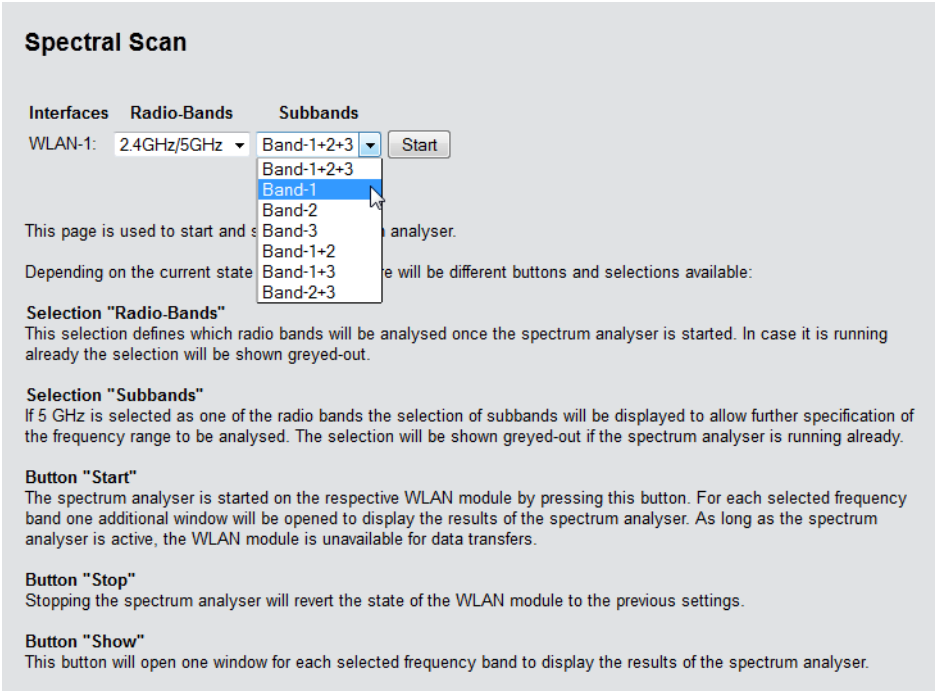
The WLAN-related frequency ranges are subject to spectral analysis. Results are displayed graphically, i.e. in the form of real-time diagrams or real-time overviews of frequencies and interference. However, graphical analyses of a spectral range are open to some freedom of interpretation. Therefore, the following scenario should be fairly commonplace: You ascertain that the frequency currently being used is being subjected to interference that is continual and of constant signal strength. However, you cannot unequivocally ascertain or even "read-out" which room or building the signal is coming from, nor the type of equipment which is transmitting the interfering signal.

Spectral Scan is a component of the *LANCOM Active Radio Control (ARC)*

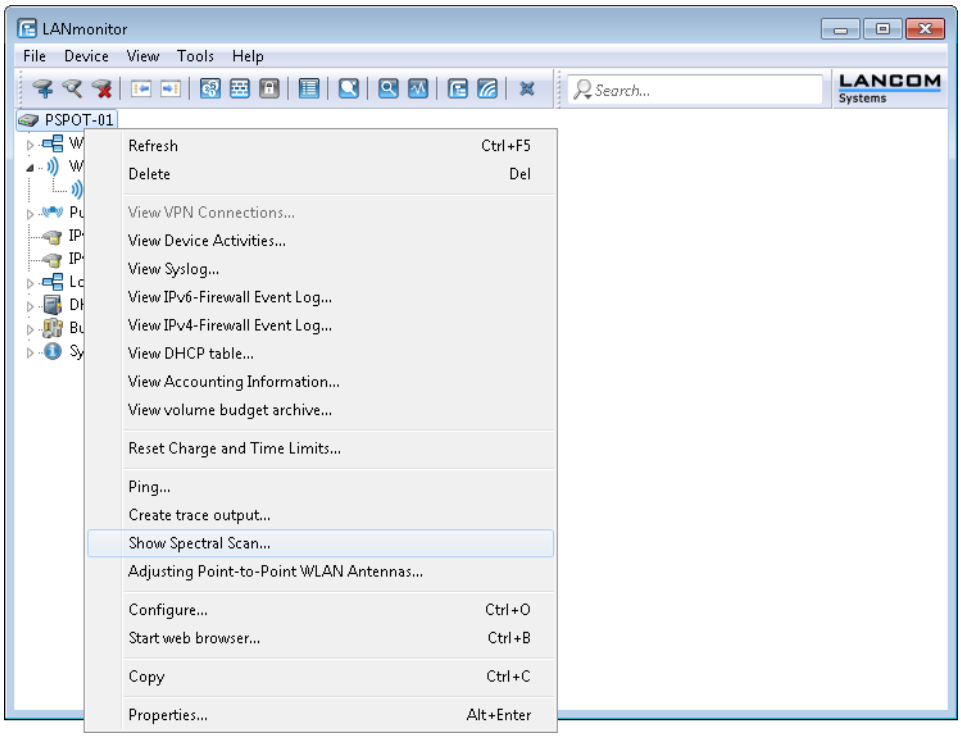
Functions of the software module

The "Spectral Scan" software module enables you to run a spectral analysis directly on the access point. There is no need to purchase any additional software or hardware as the integrated features can be used to analyze the frequency ranges and bands in question. This gives you a graphical overview of the frequency response characteristics within your WLAN at all times, so that you can detect interference and safeguard against it.

Clicking on the menu option**Extras** > **Spectral scan** in WEBconfig opens the window shown below:



The Spectral Scan can also be started from LANmonitor. To do this, right-click the relevant device in the list and select **Display spectral scan** in the context dialog.



When the WLAN module is disabled (**Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Operational**), a message is displayed and the spectral scan cannot be started. Configure the access point for "Base station" operation or ensure that a WLC configures the AP.

The following entries, buttons and selection menus are available here:

- **Interfaces**: Shows the selected WLAN module for analysis.
- **Radio bands**: Use this selection menu to set which frequency band(s) you wish to analyze. The relevant field is grayed out once the spectral scan has started on this module.
- **Subbands**: This selection menu is only enabled if '5GHz' or '2.4GHz/5Ghz' is selected in **Radio bands**. You are then able to specify which sub-bands of the 5GHz band are included in the analysis.
- **Start**: Clicking this button starts the "spectral scan" on the relevant WLAN module. A separate window opens for each of the selected frequency bands.
- **Stop**: This buttons ends the analysis. The WLAN module then returns to the previous mode and is available again with its usual functionality.

  This button is only shown once the module has been started.

- **Show**: Once the spectral scan has started, click this button to open a window for each selected frequency band. Click the button repeatedly to open multiple windows.

During the analysis, the WLAN module being analyzed does not send any data or transmit any SSID.

Please refer to Section *Spectral scan analysis window* for further information on the diagrams displayed.

Spectral scan analysis window

The spectral scan is displayed in a browser application. For this to work properly, your browser must support the latest version of WebSockets and the HTML5 `<canvas>` element. The browser integrated in LANmonitor meets all of these requirements.

In the separate analysis window of the spectral scan, there are different ways to show the frequencies and frequency ranges along with any potential interference. The following buttons are available at the top of the window:

- **Current**: Shows or hides the curve of the values being measured.
- **Maximum**: Shows or hides the maximum values of the ongoing spectrum scan in relation to the currently set history range.
- **Average**: Shows or hides the average values of the ongoing spectral scan in relation to the currently set history range.
- **History**: Shows or hides the values last measured.
- **Number of history values**: Determines the number of the most recent results to be displayed. You are able to show at least the last 5 and at most the last 50 measuring points for every frequency.
- **Last channel**: Shows or hides the channel last used.
- **Frequency**: Switches the display on the X-axis between WLAN channel and frequency.

The window contains two graphical views showing the readings in a different manner. The top diagram shows the signal strength in dBm on the Y-axis, and either the WLAN channel or the relevant frequency on the X-axis. The lower diagram contains the analysis progression over time in the form of a waterfall diagram, with the Y-axis showing the time and the X-axis again showing the WLAN channel or the relevant frequency. These view formats depict both continuous and occasional interference on the frequencies, so helping you to take appropriate action to improve the connection (e.g. by changing the channel or identifying and eliminating the interference source). For example, certain interference sources such as microwave devices, DECT telephones (working in the 2.4 GHz frequency range) and audio-video transmitters exhibit very typical transmit patterns that occur prominently in both diagrams.

On the lower border of the window there is a slider labeled **Time slider**. This enables you to extend or limit the time period analyzed for the waterfall diagram. Alternatively, you can use the input box to the right of the slider to select how many readings you would like to display in the waterfall diagram. The web application can display up to 300 readings in the waterfall diagram using the time slider. The readings from a maximum of 24 hours can be cached.

Below are some examples of analysis results, which graphically represent other settings in different ways:

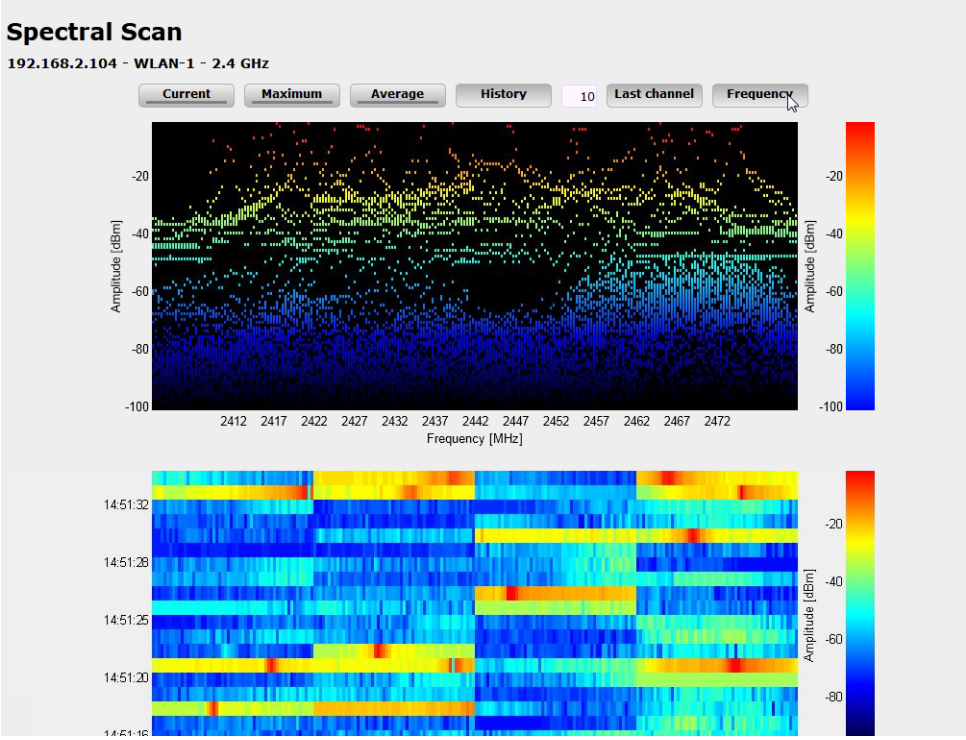


Figure 2: Spectral scan, frequency display of the last 10 history values

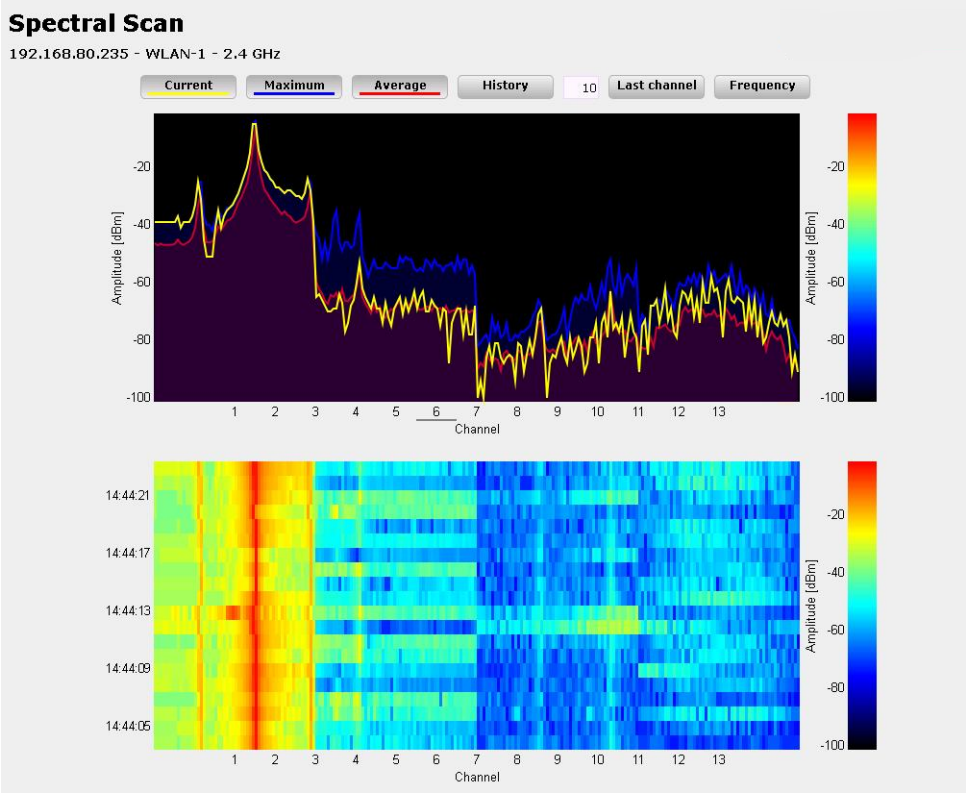


Figure 3: Spectral scan, channel display of Current, Maximum and Average, interference from radio camera

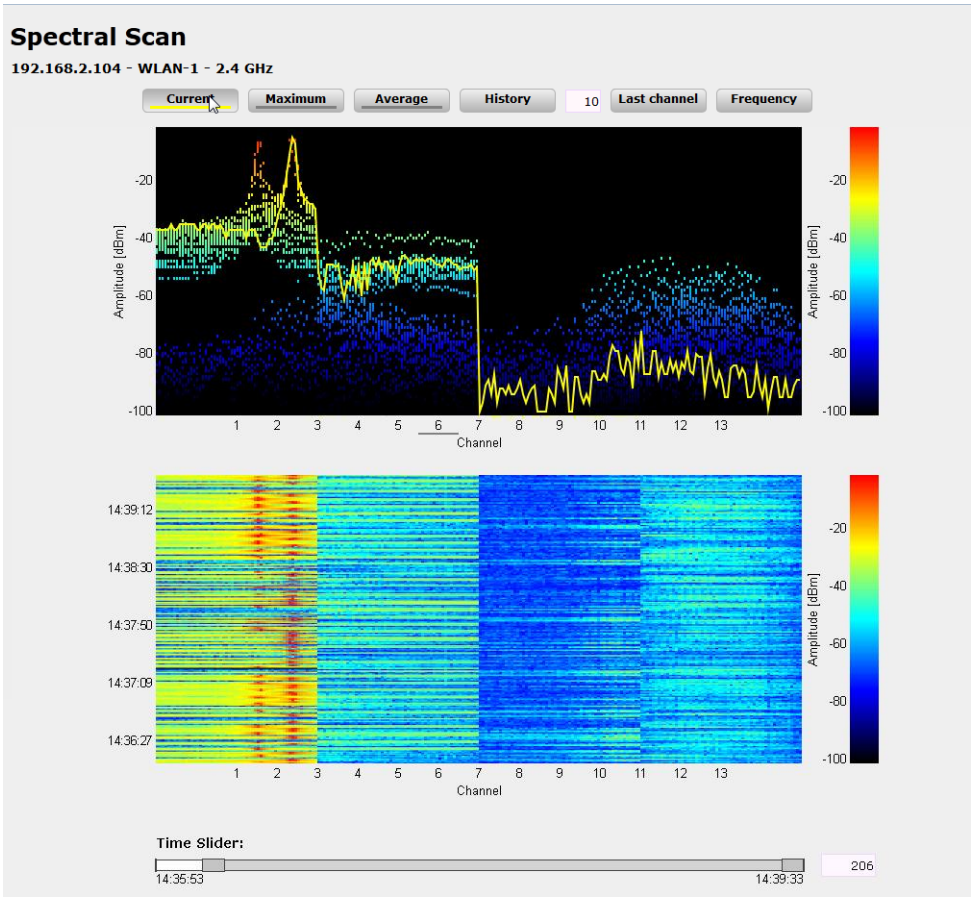


Figure 4: Spectral scan, channel display of Current, last 10 history values and "Time Slider", interference from baby phone

12.6 Dynamic frequency selection (DFS)

For the DFS method (Dynamic Frequency Selection) required for 5 GHz WLANs, an unused frequency is automatically selected, for example, to avoid interference from radar systems. Occasionally, however, signals from weather radar stations cannot be identified reliably.

For this reason the European Commission is extending the requirements of the standards ETSI EN 301 893 V1.3.1 and ETSI EN 301 893 V1.4.1 to additionally avoid the use of three channels (120, 124 and 128) in subband 2 of the 5 GHz band, and not to allow use of these bands for automatic channel selection until a process to auto-detect weather radar station signals is made available. The versions EN 301 893 V1.3 and EN 301 893 V1.4 are referred to as "DFS-2".

In the middle of 2010 the new version ETSI EN 301 893 V1.5.1 came into force, which was accompanied by changes in the usage of WLAN frequencies in the ranges 5.25 to 5.35 GHz and 5.47 to 5.725 GHz. The new Version 1.5.1 regulates the DFS (Dynamic Frequency Selection) method for the protection of radar stations from WLAN systems working in this frequency range. By using DFS to detect certain patterns in the radio signals received, it is now possible to detect active radar stations, and WLAN systems can automatically switch their operating channel. To differentiate from previous regulations, the new standard EN 301 893-V1.5 for the updated DFS is referred to as "DFS-3".

A pulse pattern can generally be described in terms of its pulse rate, pulse width and the number of pulses. Former DFS technology was only able to detect fixed radar patterns as defined by the various combinations of pulse rates and pulse widths which were stored in the WLAN device. According to DFS-3, the device is now able to recognize changing pulse rates and pulse widths as radar patterns. Furthermore, two or three different pulse rates may be used within a radar signal.

The version ETSI EN 301 893 V1.5.1 (DFS-3) expired on January 01, 2013. The new version ETSI EN 301 893 v1.6.1 (known as "DFS-4"), which applied thereafter, also detects shorter radar pulses.

The version ETSI EN 301 893 V1.5.1 (DFS-4) expired on December 31, 2014. The new version ETSI EN 301 893 V1.7.1 applies (known as "DFS-5"), which applied thereafter, brought some changes to signal strengths.

The detection of weather radar stations (channels 120, 124 and 128 in the 5.6 to 5.65 MHz frequency range) is subject to special conditions. The DFS implementation in LCOS does not support the more stringent detection conditions. Therefore, these three channels will be omitted from newer versions of LCOS.

Operating principles

After switching on or booting, the device randomly selects one of the available channels (e.g. based on the country settings). It checks whether radar signals exist on this channel, and whether it is already in use by another WLAN. This scan is repeated until it finds a radar-free channel with as few other networks as possible. The selected channel is then monitored for radar signals for a further 60 seconds. For this reason, data traffic may be interrupted for a period of 60 seconds while the frequencies are scanned for a free channel.

To avoid these pauses in data transmission every time the channel is changed, devices carry out the scan **before** a channel is chosen. Information about scanned channels is stored to an internal database.

- Was a radar signal detected on the channel?
- How many other networks were found on the channel?

This database helps the AP to select from the list of radar-free channels with the lowest number of other networks (the operating channel). After the channel has been selected, data transmission can continue immediately without any waiting.

- The "blacklist" in the database stores the channels to be blocked due to the detection of radar signals. This entries are removed from the list every 30 minutes in order to keep the information up to date.
- The "whitelist" in the database stores the channels where no radar was detected. These entries remain valid for 24 hours, although if radar signals be detected in the meantime, an entry is made to the blacklist.

By default, the AP permanently uses the channel that was selected as the operating channel during the first scan. Connections can now be operated for any length of time on the channel selected by the DFS algorithm until either a radar signal is detected or the radio cell is restarted (e.g. by changing the device configuration, firmware upload, or restart).

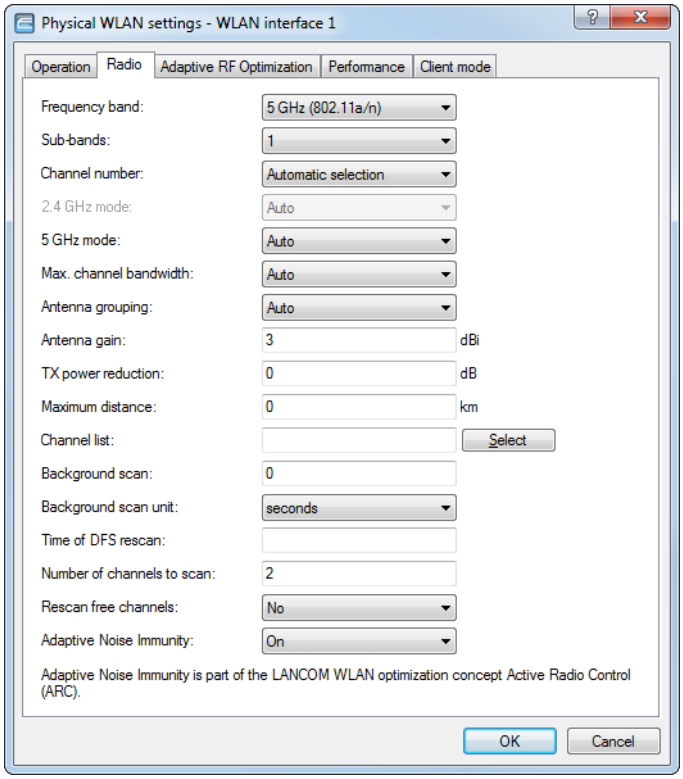
A new 60-second scan is necessary under the following conditions:

- The device is switched on or cold-started. In this case the database is empty, so the device cannot select the preferred channels from the whitelist. A scan has to be performed.
- Within the first 24 hours of scanning, it becomes necessary to switch channels because a radar signal is detected within range of the AP. In this case, the AP can refer to alternatives in the whitelist. It then informs associated WLAN clients and/or P2P partners of the new operating channel and switches to this channel. This process takes place within about a second, so the switch can be considered to be uninterrupted.
- The device is in operation for 24 hours already, so a new channel scan is required. Entries in the whitelist are "out of date" and thus discarded. The AP has no alternative channel that it can switch to directly. In this case the database requires new information from a scan and WLAN operation is interrupted for one minute.

In principle the operator of the WLAN is responsible for maintaining the ETSI standards. For this reason LANCOM recommends that you perform an update to a firmware version with DFS support.

12.6.1 DFS configuration

In LANconfig you access the DFS settings under **Wireless LAN** > **General**, then click **Physical WLAN settings** and select the **Radio** tab.



Time of DFS rescan

This entry determines at what time (0 - 24h) the device deletes the DFS database and performs a DFS rescan. If this item is left empty, the device only performs a DFS rescan when no further free channel is available. This is the case when the number of channels determined during the initial DFS scan falls below the minimum number of free channels.

The cron command options can be used to define the time: The entry '1,6,13' starts the rescan at 01:00h, 06:00h and 13:00h. The entry ' 0-23/4 ' starts a rescan every four hours between 00:00h and 23:00h.

Number of channels to scan

This entry determines the minimum number of free channels that a DFS scan has to achieve. The default value of '2' means that the device performs a DFS scan for as long as it takes to detect 2 free channels. If the device has to switch channels, for example if it detects an active radar pattern, the second channel is immediately available for the change.

A value of '0' disables the restriction. The physical WLAN interface performs a DFS scan on all available channels.

Rescan free channels

With this item you select whether, following the completion of a DFS rescan, the physical WLAN interface deletes occupied channels or saves them for subsequent DFS rescans.

- **Yes:** The physical WLAN interface deletes occupied channels after completing a DFS rescan so that they are available again for a new DFS rescan.
- **No**: The device saves occupied channels after completing a DFS rescan and so that the device immediately skips them during a new DFS rescan.

12.7 APSD – Automatic Power Save Delivery

12.7.1 Introduction

Automatic Power Save Delivery (APSD) is an extension to the IEEE 802.11e standard. APSD is available in two versions:

- Unscheduled APSD (U-APSD)
- Scheduled APSD (S-APSD)

These two methods differ in the way that they use the transmission channels, among others. LANCOM APs and wireless routers support U-APSD, which forms the basis for the Wi-Fi-certified WMM Power Save (WMMPS).

U-APSD allows WLAN devices to save considerable amounts of energy. This function has come into demand due to the increasing use of WLAN-capable telephones (Voice over WLAN – VoWLAN).

Activating U-APSD for a wireless LAN enables WLAN devices making calls to switch into "doze mode" while they wait for the next data packet. Transmission of VoIP data takes place in a fixed time pattern—WLAN devices synchronize their phases of activity with this cycle, so that they are ready in good time to receive the next packet. This significantly reduces power consumption and the batteries provide a considerably longer call time.

The precise behavior of the power-saving mode is negotiated between the AP and WLAN client under consideration of the actual application at hand. This makes APSD much more flexible than former power saving methods, referred to in this context as "legacy power save".

12.7.2 Configuration

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Network**

APSD

Activates APSD power saving for this logical WLAN network.

Possible values:

- On, off

Default:

- Off

Please note that in order for the APSD function to work in a logical WLAN, QoS must be activated on the device. APSD uses mechanisms in QoS to optimize power consumption for the application.

12.7.3 Statistics

Command line: **Status** > **WLAN** > **Networks**

APSD

Indicates whether APSD is activated or deactivated for the respective WLAN (SSID). APSD is only indicated as active if it is activated in the settings for the logical WLAN and also if the general QoS module is activated.

Command line: **Status** > **WLAN**

Station table

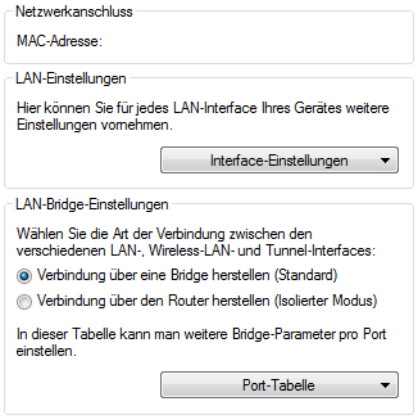
Displays the access categories for which associated WLAN clients are using APSD:

- Voice (highest priority)
- Video
- Best effort (including data traffic from “legacy power-save” clients)
- Background (lowest priority).

12.8 WLAN routing (isolated mode)

The standard setting allows data traffic to be “bridged” between LAN and WLAN, i.e. layer-2 transparent transmission. Data traffic between the cabled network and the wireless LAN is **not** directed via the IP router. Consequently, the firewall and Quality of Service functions integrated into the firewall are not available for traffic between LAN and WLAN. In order to be able to use these functions, the WLAN interfaces are set to “isolated mode” and the data traffic is intentionally routed via the IP router.

To ensure that the IP router can correctly transmit the data between the LAN and WLAN, the two areas must have different IP address ranges. Further information is available in the Advanced Routing and Forwarding (ARF) section.



LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **LAN**

Command line: **Setup** > **LAN-Bridge** > **Isolated-Mode**

12.9 IEEE 802.11e user priority converted into VLAN tags

IEEE 802.11e is an extension to the WLAN standards that incorporates quality-of-service (QoS) functions. An access point operating this standard can assign a user priority to each wireless client associated with it. By prioritizing wireless data packets, the access point can provide preferred handling for voice over IP clients, for example. On the LAN side, access points are commonly connected with a switch, and different LAN segments are often separated by VLANs. The wired LAN uses other mechanisms for the prioritization of data packets.

The following example application illustrates this:

- A wireless client (e.g. VoIP phone) is connected to an access point, QoS is enabled on the WLAN, the data between the phone and access point is not VLAN tagged.
- On the Ethernet side, the access point is connected to a VLAN-capable switch, and the data between AP and switch is VLAN tagged.

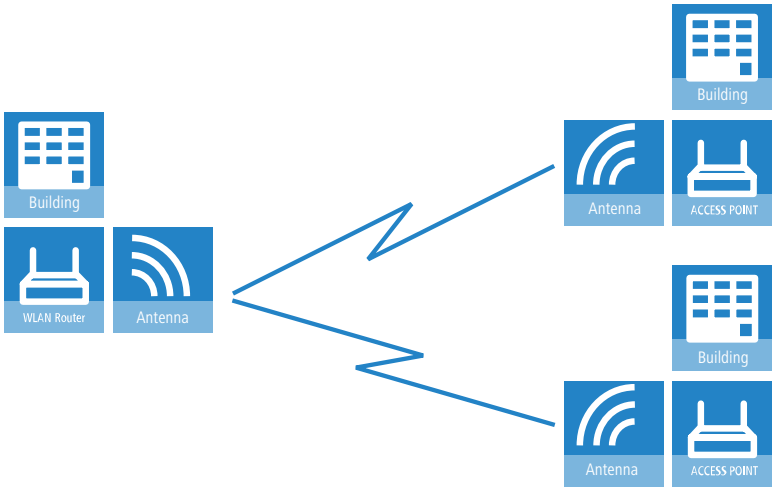
The access point is the interface between wired LAN and wireless LAN, and it converts the different prioritization information accordingly:

- When an access point receives data for transfer to a WLAN client, it determines the priority of each data packet either from the VLAN tag or the ToS/DSCP field in the IP header. The access point sends the packets to the client with this priority.
- However, data packets transferred from the WLAN client to the access point do not have a VLAN tag. What's more, in this direction the access point does not inspect the IP header. Instead, the access point takes the user priority of the WLAN packet and translates this into the appropriate VLAN tag to be attached to outgoing data packets on their way to the switch.

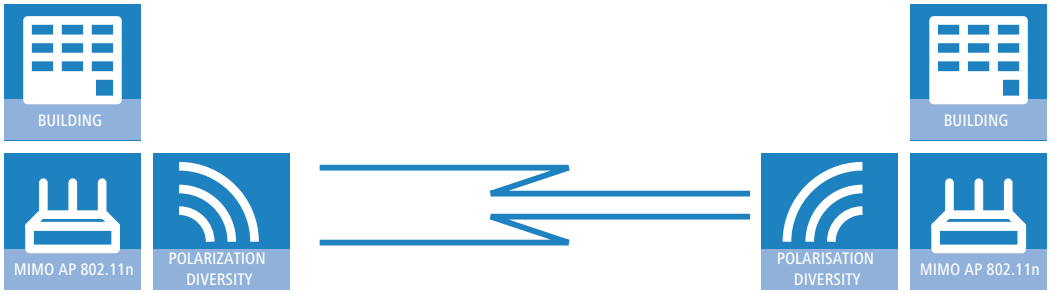
12.10 Establishing WLAN bridges

12.10.1 Configuring WLAN bridges

LANCOM APs can serve not only as central stations in a wireless network, they can also operate in point-to-point mode to form links over longer distances. For example, they can provide a secure connection between two networks that are several kilometers apart—without direct cabling or expensive leased lines.



When using APs and appropriately polarized antennas in accordance with IEEE 802.11n two wireless links can be established simultaneously between the end points of a point-to-point connection. This allows higher data throughput to be achieved or greater distances to be covered than when using other standards.

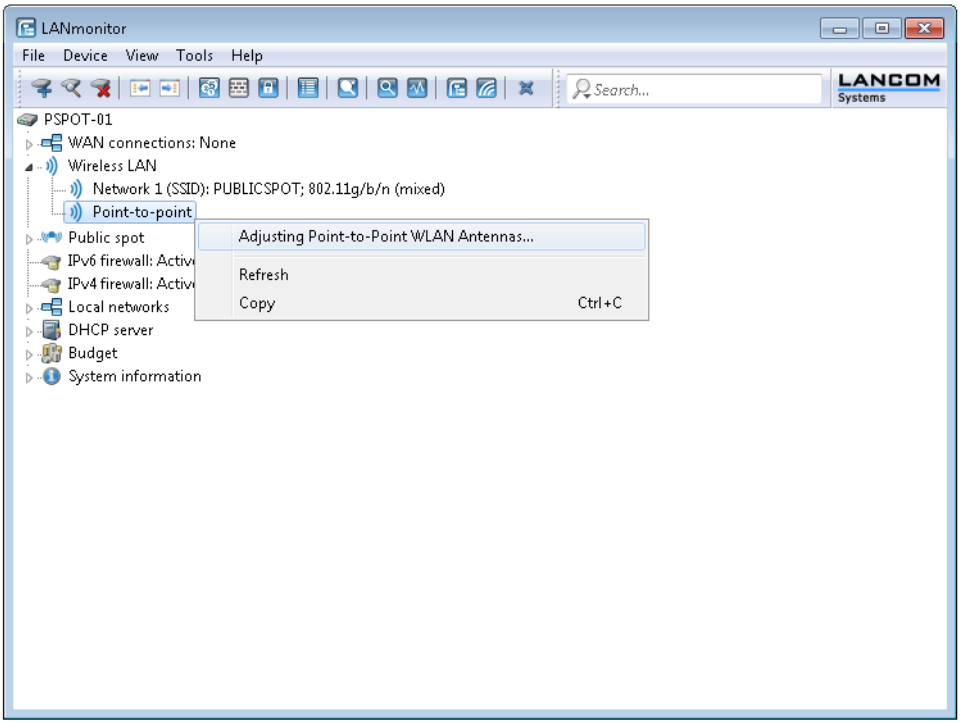


This section introduces the basic principles involved in designing WLAN bridges and provides tips on aligning the antennas.

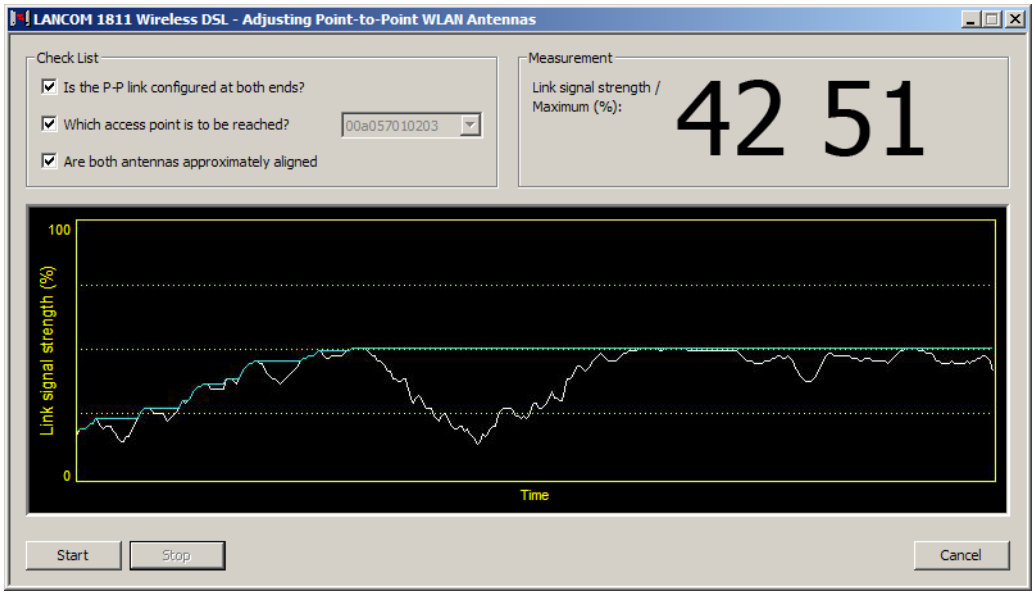
12.10.2 Setting up WLAN bridges with LANmonitor

To find the best possible alignment for point-to-point connection antennas, the current signal quality over a P2P connection can be displayed on the device's LEDs or in LANmonitor. LANmonitor provides not only an optical display of link strength, but an acoustic signal as well.

In LANmonitor the connection quality display is opened with the context menu. Right-clicking with the mouse on 'Point-to-point' activates the option **Adjusting Point-to-Point WLAN Antennas**.



Once signal monitoring has commenced, the P2P dialog displays the absolute values for the current signal strength and the maximum value since starting the measurement. The trend of the signal strength over time and the maximum value are also displayed in a diagram.



Initially only one of the two antennas should be adjusted until a maximum value is achieved. This first antenna is then fixed and the second antenna is then adjusted to attain the best signal quality.

An acoustic signal can be activated to help align the antennas precisely. With this option, the PC can emit a tone which varies according to signal strength. Maximum signal strength over the link is signaled by a constant tone. If the signal strength drops below the maximum, tones are emitted at intervals indicating the difference from the former maximum. The shorter the interval, the closer the current link signal strength is to the maximum.

12.10.3 Geometric dimensioning of outdoor wireless network links

The following basic questions must be answered when designing wireless links:

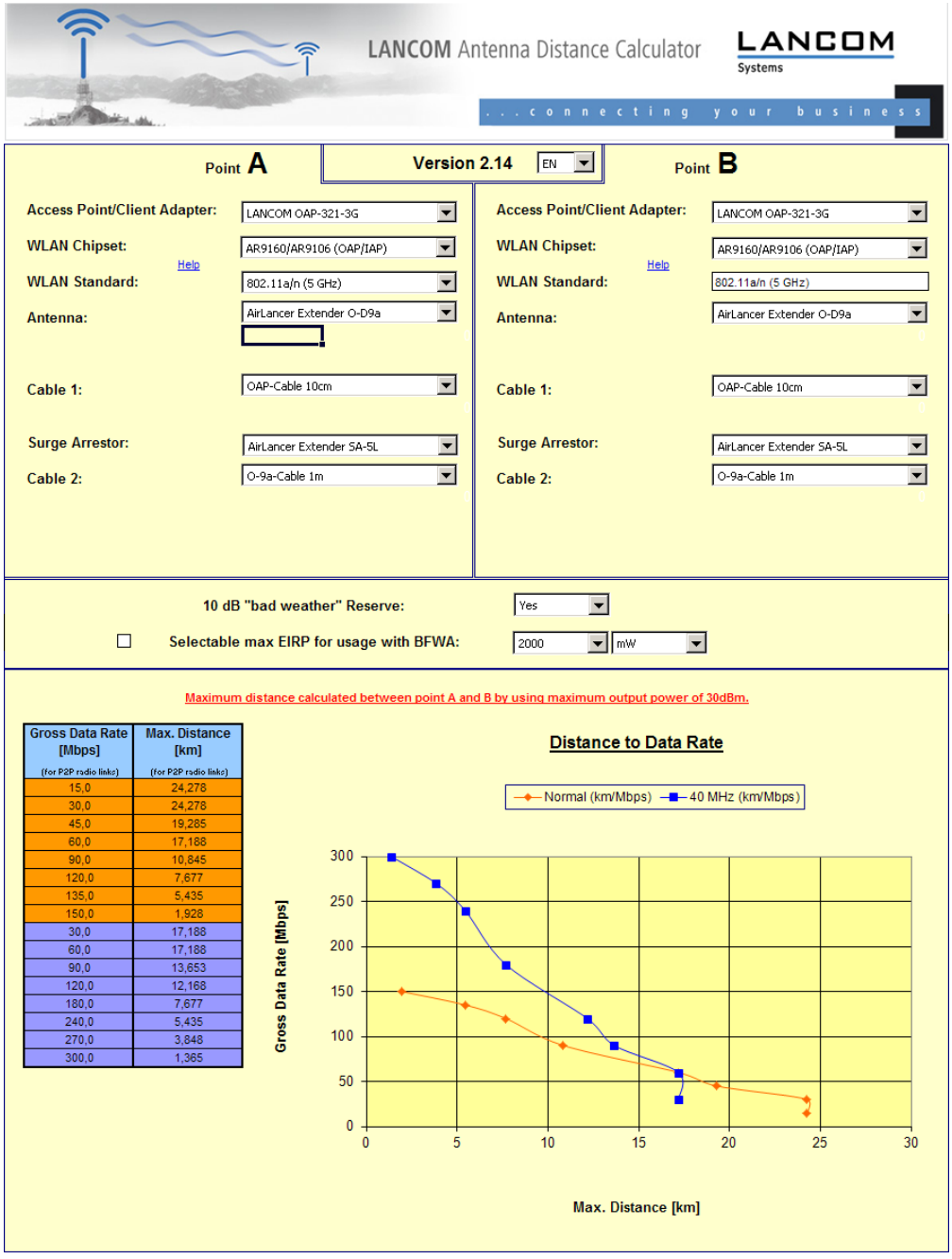
- Which antennas are necessary for the desired application?
- How do the antennas have to be positioned to ensure problem-free connections?
- What performance characteristics do the antennas need to ensure sufficient data throughput within the legal limits?

Antenna selection with the LANCOM Antenna Distance Calculator

The LANCOM Antenna Distance Calculator is a program that you can use for calculating the output power at the AP and to make a first estimate of the achievable ranges and data rates. The program is available for download from our Web site at *www.lancom-systems.com*.

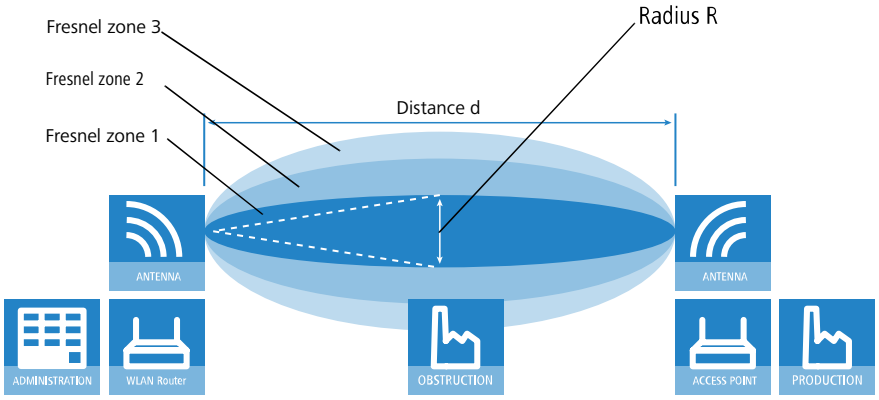
After selecting your components (APs, antennas, lightning protection and cable) the calculator works out the data rates, ranges, and the antenna gain settings that have to be entered into the AP.

Please note that when using 5 GHz antennas additional technologies such as dynamic frequency selection (DFS) may be stipulated depending on the country of use. The operator of the wireless LAN system is responsible for ensuring that local regulations are met.



Positioning the antennas

Antennas do not broadcast their signals linearly, but within an angle that depends on the model in question. The spherical expansion of the signal waves produces amplification or interference of the effective power output at certain distances along the connection between the transmitter and receiver. The areas where the waves amplify or cancel themselves out are known as Fresnel zones.



The Fresnel zone 1 must remain free from obstruction in order to ensure that the maximum level of output from the transmitting antenna reaches the receiving antenna. Any obstructing element protruding into this zone will significantly impair the effective signal power. The object not only screens off a portion of the Fresnel zone, but the resulting reflections also lead to a significant reduction in signal reception.

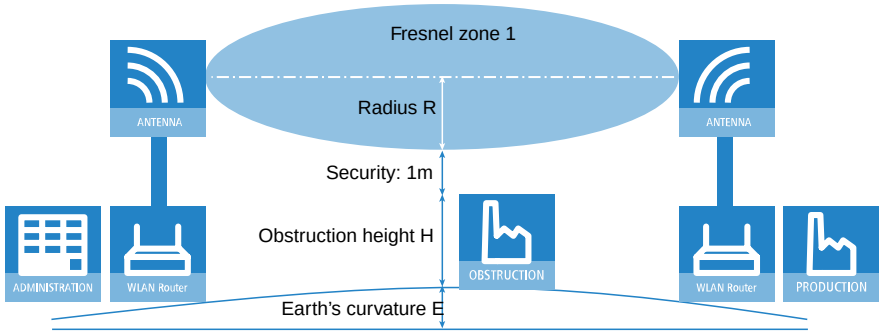
The radius (R) of Fresnel zone 1 is calculated with the following formula assuming that the signal wavelength ( ) and the distance between transmitter and receiver (d) are known.

R = 0,5 * √ (* d)

The wavelength in the 2.4 GHz band is approx. 0.125 m, in the 5 GHz band approx. 0.05 m.

Example: With a separating distance of 4 km between the two antennae, the radius of Fresnel zone 1 in the 2.4-GHz band is **11 m**, in the 5-GHz band **7 m**.

To ensure that the Fresnel zone 1 remains unobstructed, the height of the antennas must exceed that of the highest obstruction by this radius. The full height of the antenna pole (M) should be as depicted:



M = R + 1m + H + E (earth's curvature)

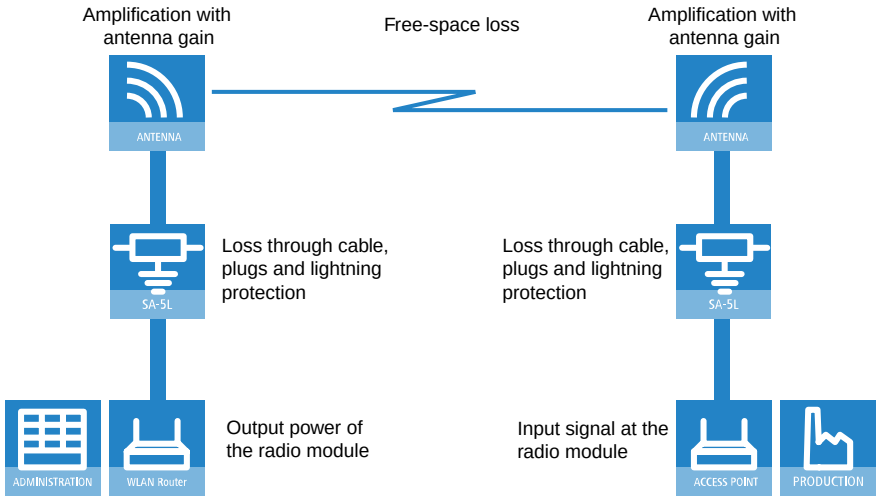
The allowance for the curvature of the earth (E) can be calculated at a distance (d) as E = d^2 * 0.0147 – i.e. at a distance of 8 km this is almost 1 m.

Example: With a distance of 8 km between the antennae, the result in the 2.4-GHz band is a pole height above the level of the highest obstruction of approx. **13 m**, in the 5-GHz band **9 m**.

Antenna power

The power of the antennas must be high enough to ensure acceptable data transfer rates. On the other hand, the country-specific legal regulations regarding maximum transmission power should not be exceeded.

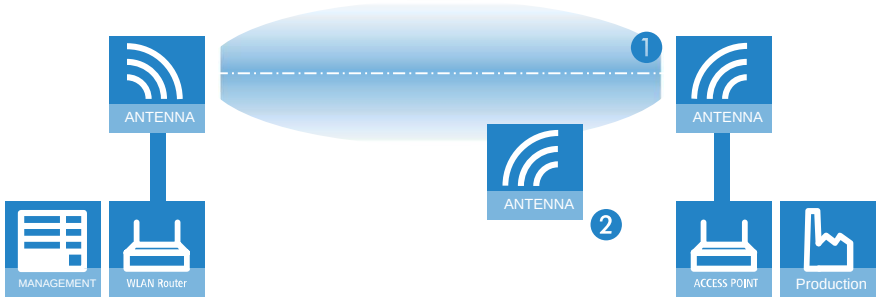
The calculation of effective power considers everything from the radio module in the transmitting AP to the radio module in the receiving AP. In between there are attenuating elements such as the cable, plug connections or simply the air transmitting the signals and amplifying elements such as the external antennas.



12.10.4 Antenna alignment for P2P operations

Protecting components from the consequences of lightning strikes and other electrostatic influences is a vital aspect in the design and installation of WLAN systems for outdoor use. Please refer to the appropriate notes on “Lightning and surge protection” as otherwise LANCOM cannot provide any guarantee for damage to components. Information on the installation of WLAN systems for outdoor deployment is available in the ‘LANCOM Outdoor Wireless Guide'.

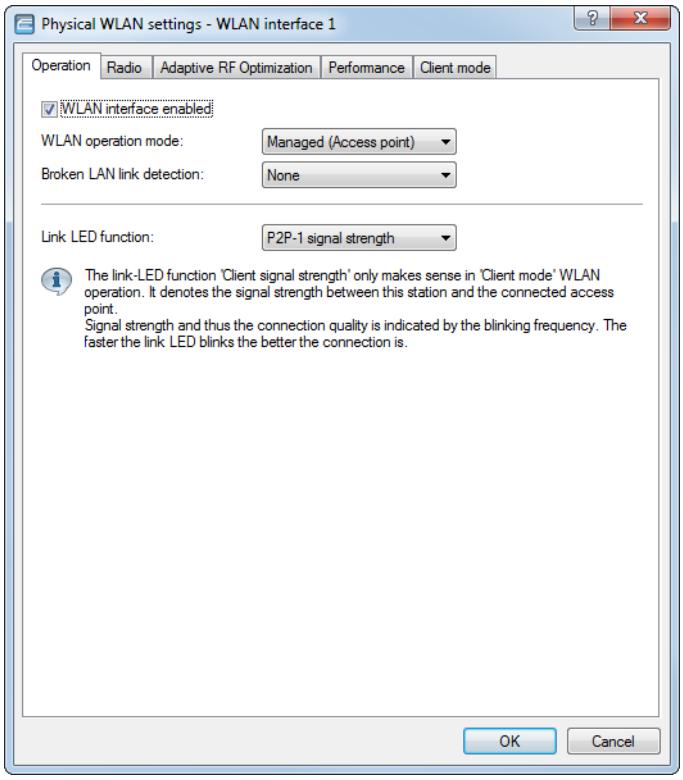
The precise alignment of the antennas is of critical importance for establishing P2P connections. The more central the receiving antenna is located in the “ideal line” of the transmitting antenna, the better is the actual power and the effective bandwidth **1**. If the receiving antenna is outside of this ideal area, however, significant losses in performance will be the result **2**.



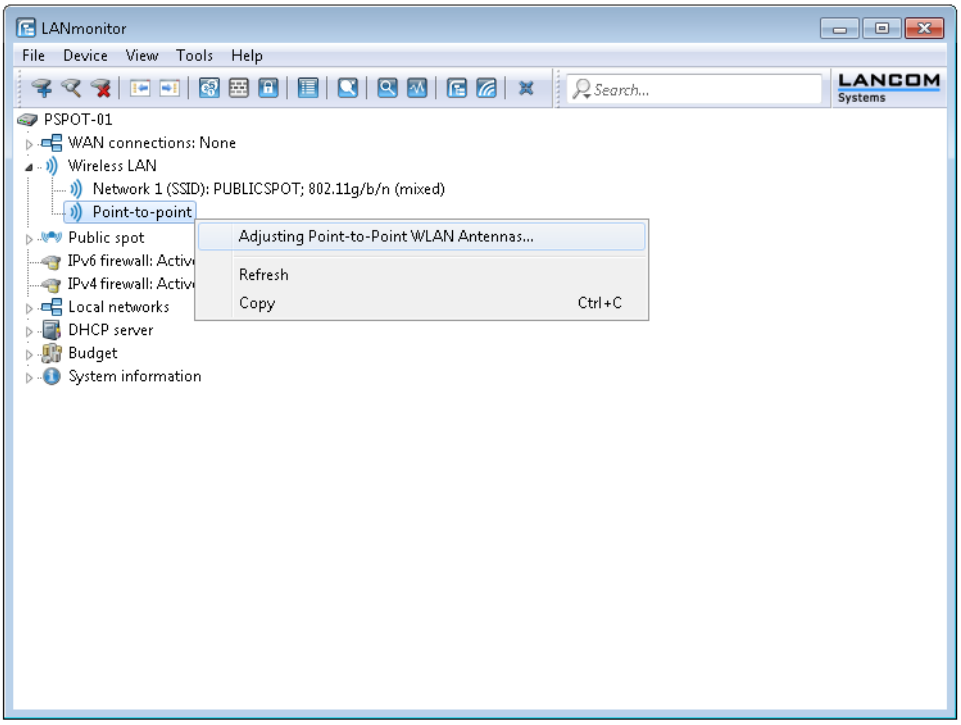
The current signal quality over a P2P connection can be displayed on the device's LEDs or in LANmonitor in order to help find the best possible alignment for the antennas.

The display of signal quality with the LEDs must be activated for the physical wireless LAN interface (LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Operation**). The faster the LED blinks the better the connection (a blinking

frequency of 1 Hz represents a signal quality of 10 dB, double the frequency indicates that the signal strength is twice as high).



In LANmonitor the connection quality display is opened with the context menu. Right-clicking with the mouse on **Point-to-point** activates the option **Adjusting Point-to-Point WLAN Antennas**.

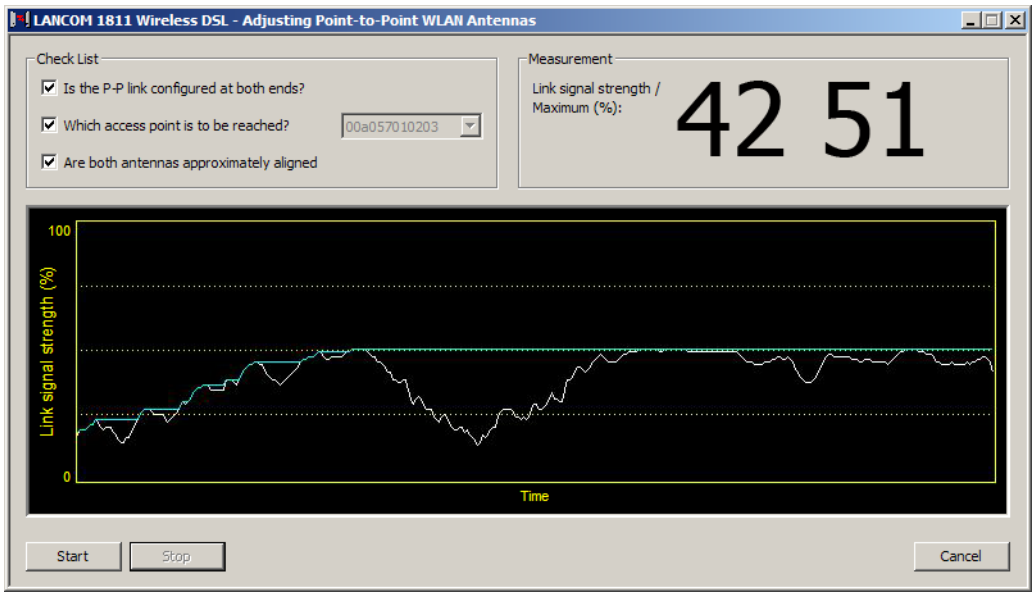


The **Point-to-point** entry is only visible in LANmonitor if the monitored device has at least one base station defined as a remote station for a P2P link (LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Common point-to-point settings** > **Operation**).

In the dialog for setting up point-to-point links, LANmonitor prompts for the information required to establish the P2P connection:

- Is the P2P connection configured at both ends (remote base station defined with MAC address or station name)?
- Is the point-to-point mode of operation activated?
- Which AP should be monitored? All of the base stations defined as P2P remote sites in the device concerned can be selected here.
- Are both antennas approximately aligned? The basic P2P connection has to be working before fine-tuning can be performed with the aid of LANmonitor.

Once signal monitoring has commenced, the P2P dialog displays the absolute values for the current signal strength and the maximum value since starting the measurement. The trend of the signal strength over time and the maximum value are also displayed in a diagram.



Initially only one of the two antennas should be adjusted until a maximum value is achieved. This first antenna is then fixed and the second antenna is then adjusted to attain the best signal quality.

12.10.5 Surveys for wireless bridges

After planning and installation, the wireless bridge can be analyzed to determine the actual data throughput.

Further information about the available tools and taking measurements can be found in the *LANCOM Outdoor Wireless Guide*, available as a download from *www.lancom-systems.com*.

12.10.6 Activating point-to-point operation mode

The operation mode used by an AP to exchange data with other APs is set in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Common point-to-point settings** > **Operation** with the **Point-to-point operation mode** option:

Off

The AP communicates with mobile clients only.

On

The AP communicates with other base stations and with mobile clients.

Exclusive

The AP communicates with other base stations only.

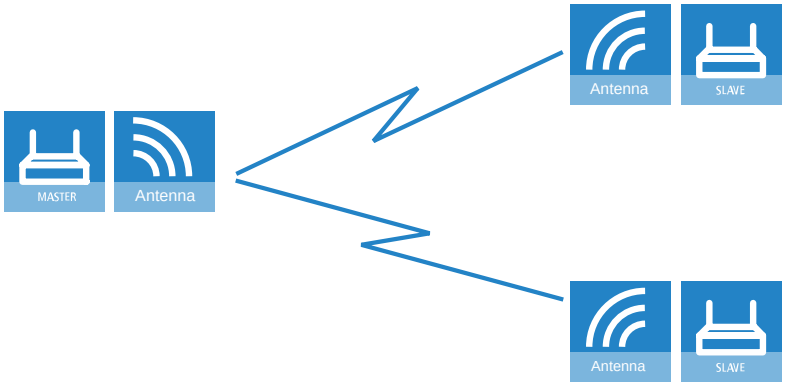
In the 5-GHz band, the automatic search for vacant WLAN channels can lead to several simultaneous test transmissions from multiple APs, with the result that they do not find each other. This stalemate situation can be avoided with the appropriate **Channel selection scheme**.

Master

This AP makes the decisions when selecting a free WLAN channel.

Slave

All other APs will search for a channel until they have found a transmitting Master.



Thus it is recommended for the 5 GHz band that one central AP should be configured as 'Master' and all other point-to-point partners should be configured as 'Slave'. In the 2.4 GHz band, too, this setting simplifies the establishment of point-to-point connections if the automatic channel search is activated.

It is imperative that the channel selection scheme is configured correctly if the WLAN bridges are to be encrypted with 802.11i/WPA (a master as authentication server and a slave as client).

Automatic channel selection for P2P links in the 5-GHz band is only enabled if the selected country profile supports DFS.

12.10.7 Configuration of P2P connections

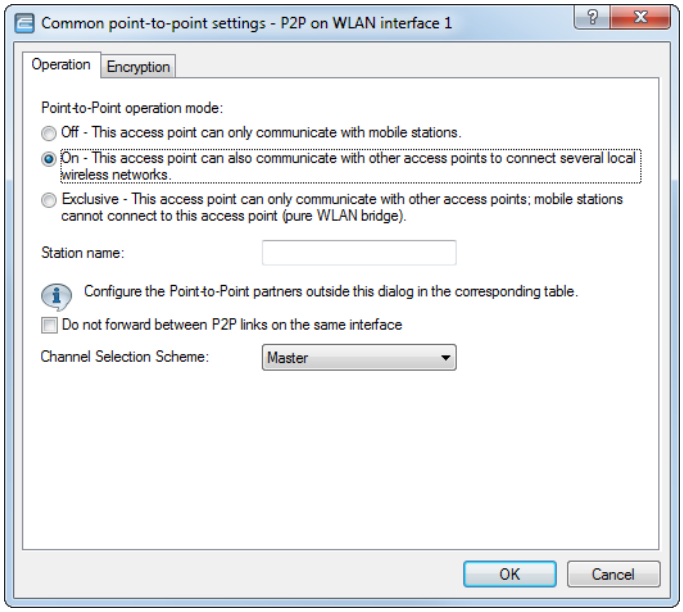
In the configuration of point-to-point (P2P) connections, enter the point-to-point operation mode and the channel selection scheme, along with the MAC addresses or station names of the remote sites. The configuration can be done in LANconfig either by using the Setup wizard **Configure WLAN** or manually using the configuration dialog.

The following steps show you how you create an encrypted or unencrypted P2P basic configuration.

Along with a P2P connection, each of the APs automatically operates an SSID ***** P2P INFO *****. This SSID works purely as an administrative network for establishing the connection and for the availability check ("Alive") of a point-to-point partner. It is not possible for the WLAN clients to connect to this network.

1. Open the configuration dialog for the device that is to operate as the P2P master or P2P slave, and navigate to the page **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings**.

2. Select the WLAN interface which you want to use explicitly for the P2P connection and move to the tab **Point-to-Point**.

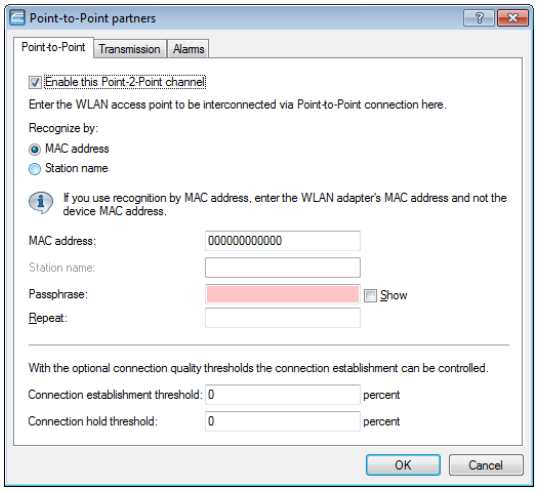


3. Enable the desired **Point-to-point operation mode**, such as **On**.
4. Set the **Channel selection scheme** to **Master** or **Slave**.
5. Optional: If the remote site should identify the physical interface by an alias and not the MAC address, then enter a corresponding descriptor into the field **Station name**, for example `P2P_MASTER` or `P2P_SLAVE`.
6. Optional: Adjust the settings on the tab **P2P encryption** for the IEEE 802.11i encryption of the P2P connection, if necessary.

   IEEE 802.11i can attain a significant increase in the security of WLAN point-to-point connections. All of the advantages of 802.11i such as the simple configuration and the powerful encryption with AES are thus available for P2P mode, as are the improved security of the passphrase from the LANCOM Enhance Passphrase Security MAC (LEPS-MAC).

   The setting options are practically identical with those of the physical WLAN interfaces, see *Encryption settings* on page 907. By default, P2P encryption is enabled and filled-out with meaningful values.

7. Close the dialog with **OK** and under **Point-to-Point partners** on the same page of the configuration dialog select a logical P2P connection, such as **P2P-1-1**.



8. Enable the selected P2P channel on the **Point-to-Point** tab and specify whether the device identifies the remote station using a **MAC address** or a **Station name**. Here you then enter either the MAC address of the physical WLAN interface which the remote station uses for the P2P connection, or its station name accordingly.
   You will find the WLAN MAC address on a sticker located under each of the antenna connectors on the housing of the device. Only use the string that is marked as the "WLAN-MAC" or "MAC-ID". The other addresses that may be found are not the WLAN MAC address but the LAN MAC address.

   Alternatively, you will also find the MAC address in the status menu under **WLAN** > **Interfaces** > **MAC-Address**.

9. In **Passphrase**, enter a shared secret of at least 8 characters (recommended: 32 characters), which is used to additionally encrypt the P2P connection. The P2P encryption must be enabled for this (see above).
   When set as P2P Master, the passphrase entered here will be used to check the Slave's authorization to access. When set as P2P Slave, the AP transfers this information to register with the remote site.
10. Optional: Move to the **Transmission** tab to enter the limits and settings for packet transmission.

    The setting options are practically identical with those of the logical WLAN networks (see *Alarm settings* on page 916). By default, all parameters are adjusted for optimization and automatic operation.

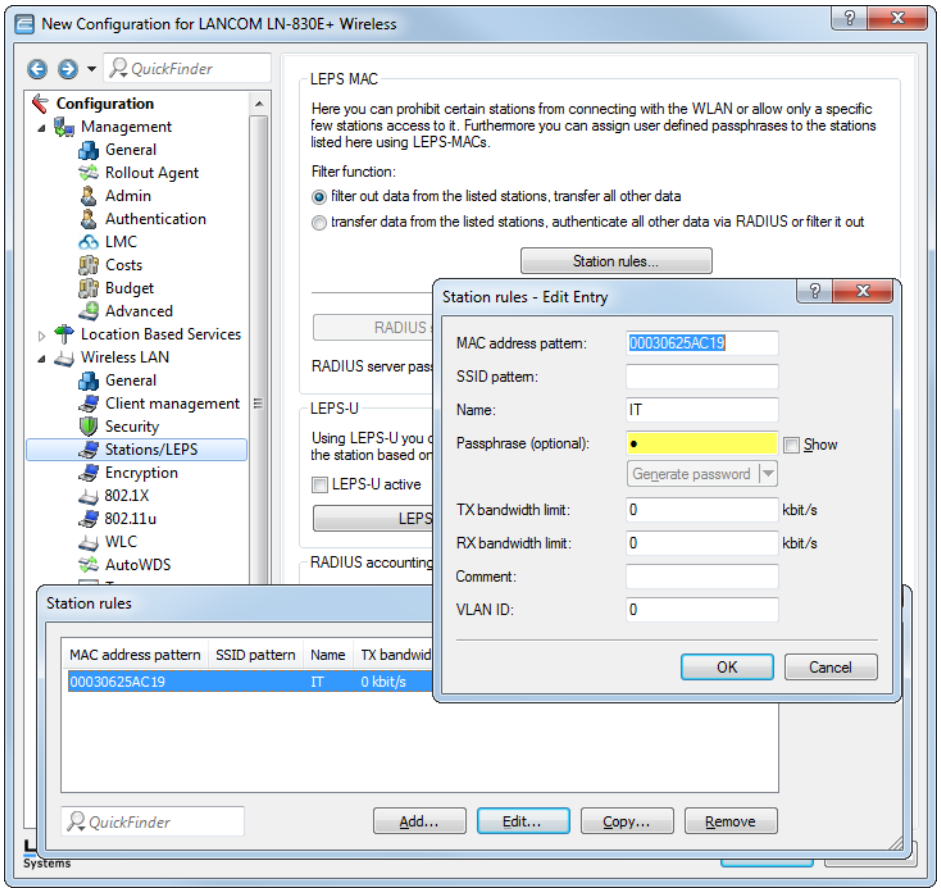
11. Close the dialog with **OK** and save the configuration to your device.
12. You continue by performing the corresponding configuration steps for the remote station (slave or master).

12.10.8 LEPS-MAC for P2P connections

A further gain in security can be attained by additionally using LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security MAC (LEPS-MAC) which involves the matching of MAC address and passphrase.

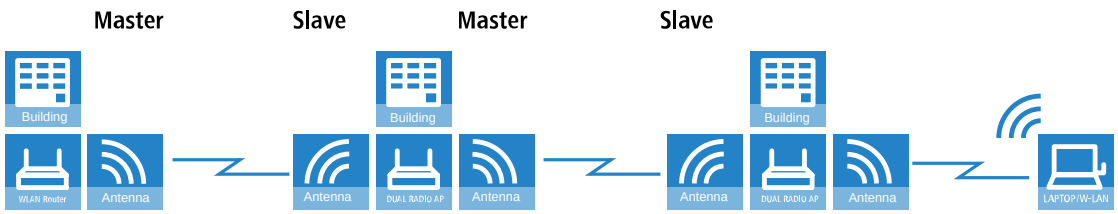
LEPS-MAC can be used to secure single point-to-point (P2P) connections with an individual passphrase. Even if an AP in a P2P installation is stolen and the passphrase and MAC address become known, all other WLAN connections secured by LEPS-MAC remain secure.

When using LANconfig for the configuration, you enter the passphrases of the stations approved for the WLAN in the configuration section 'Wireless LAN' on the 'Stations' tab under the button **Stations**.



12.10.9 Access points in relay mode

APs equipped with two wireless modules can be used to establish wireless bridges across multiple stations. Each wireless module is configured as a 'Master' and then 'Slave' in turn.



Employing relay stations with two WLAN modules each also cuts down on the problems from “hidden stations”.

12.11 Adaptive transmission power

Dynamic transmission power adaptation is an essential feature for WLAN environments with professional backup scenarios. If an AP fails, the remaining access points automatically increase their transmission power to ensure full WLAN coverage at all times.

To do this, specify how many APs operate within a broadcast domain. So long as all of the devices are available, the transmission power reduction configured here applies to all of the APs in this group (e.g. -6 dB). Using IAPP (Inter Access Point Protocol), the APs continually check that the correct number of APs is present on the network.

If an AP fails, the check reveals that the actual number number of APs does not equal the expected number, and so the remaining APs activate the backup transmission power reduction as configured (e.g. 0 dB). As soon as the failed AP is available again, the actual number of APs becomes equal to the expected number of devices. The other APs return their transmission power to the default value.

For more about the configuration, see *Backup transmission power reduction (Adaptive Transmission Power)* on page 923.

12.12 Opportunistic key caching (OKC)

Authentication of wireless clients using EAP and 802.11X has become standard in corporate networks, and these methods are becoming even more widespread with the integration of the Hotspot 2.0 specification for public Internet access. The disadvantage of 802.11X authentication is the significantly longer time between login and connection, because up to twelve data packets have to be exchanged between the WLAN client and the access point. For most applications, which are all about data exchange, this may not be particularly important. However, for time-critical applications such as Voice over IP, it is important that the authentication at neighboring WLAN radio cells does not affect communication.

To counteract this, authentication strategies such as PMK caching and pre-authentication have become established, although pre-authentication does not fix all of the problems. On the one hand, there is no guarantee that the WLAN client can recognize whether the access point can perform pre-authentication. On the other hand, pre-authentication causes considerable load on the RADIUS server, which needs to handle the authentication of all clients and all access points in the WLAN.

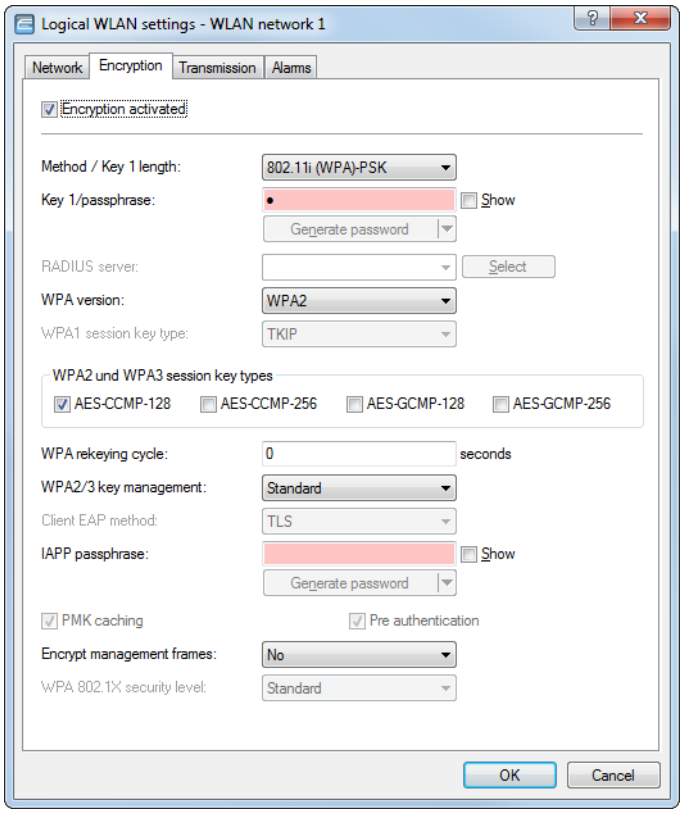
Opportunistic key caching delegates the key management to a WLAN controller, or to a central switch, which manages all of the access points in the network. If a client logs on to an access point, the WLAN controller behind it works as an authenticator to manage the keys and send the PMK to the access point, which is ultimately received by the client. If the client moves to another cell, it uses this PMK and the MAC address of the new access point to calculate a PMKID. It then send this to the new access point in the hope that OKC is enabled there (therefore "opportunistic"). If the access point cannot handle the PMKID, then it negotiates an 802.11X authentication with the client in the usual manner.

A LANCOM access point can even perform OKC if the WLAN controller is temporarily unavailable. In this case, it stores the PMK and sends this to the WLAN controller when it becomes available again. Ultimately it sends the PMK to all of the access points in the network, which allows clients to use OKC to login after a change of radio cell.

12.12.1 Encrypted OKC via IAPP

By setting an IAPP passphrase (PMK-IAPP secret) on an AP, it is possible to transfer the encrypted PMK (pairwise master key) to the other APs and store it there.

To enter the IAPP passphrase in LANconfig, navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Encryption**.



12.13 Fast roaming

By operating authentication according to the IEEE 802.1X standard and key management according to the IEEE 802.11i standard, modern WLAN installations offer a high degree of security and confidentiality for the transmitted data. However, these standards require transmission of additional data packets during the connection negotiation as well as additional computing power on the client and server.

Currently, WLAN devices have hardware accelerators, which perform the real-time encryption and decryption of payload data during a connection without noticeable delays or conspicuous network loading. In the meantime, because sufficient computing power is available, the creation of keys on the client side no longer causes any noticeable delays.

The delays when connecting via EAP / 802.1X or WPA are therefore mostly related to the time that the client and server require to negotiate the security protocol during login.

The original IEEE 802.11 only required up to six data packets to establish a data connection between a WLAN client and an AP. The standard extension IEEE 802.11i improved on weak points of WEP encryption; however, depending on the authentication method, it substantially increased the length of the login process.

This extra time for the WLAN client to login to the AP is not a problem for non-time-critical applications. However, for smooth, loss-free roaming of a WLAN client from one AP to the next (as required, for example, for Voice-over-IP applications or in industrial, real-time environments), a delay of more than 50 ms is not acceptable.

Methods such as pair-wise master key caching (PMK caching), pre-authentication, opportunistic key caching (OKC) and the use of central WLCs for key management improve the time for the key negotiation between the WLAN client and AP during login. Despite this, the comparatively long time required for key negotiation between the WLAN client and the AP has still not been reduced to a viable extent.

Along with the improved encryption protocols, IEEE 802.11e makes it possible to reserve additional bandwidth with the AP. This allows the WLAN client to prevent interruptions, for example for VoIP connections at times of high network loads at the AP. For roaming from one AP to the next, the WLAN client must again reserve this additional bandwidth on the new AP. However, the additional management frames required for this considerably increase the login time.

The IEEE 802.11r standard provides a simplified authentication process for mobile WLAN clients to roam trouble-free from one AP to the next. The goal is to once again reduce the number of data packets for the login on the AP to the four to six packets known from 802.11.

Similar to opportunistic key caching (OKC), a centralized key management (preferably by a WLC) supplies the APs connected to it with the credentials of the WLAN clients. In contrast to OKC, the WLAN client performing fast roaming can detect whether the AP supports IEEE 802.11r

APs managed by the WLC transmit the mobility domain information element (MDIE) to inform the WLAN clients about which "mobility group" the AP belongs to, among other things. Based on this information, the WLAN client detects whether it belongs to the same domain and can therefore authenticate without delay. This mobility domain is announced to a WLAN client the first time it authenticates at an AP.

The domain identifier and other special keys generated during the initial authentication and transmitted to all managed APs now reduce the stages of negotiation to the desired four to six steps when authenticating at a new AP.

To avoid futile and thus time-wasting login attempts with expired PMKs, IEEE 802.11r provides additional information about the validity periods of keys. In this manner, the client negotiates a new PMK while connected to the current AP. This is also valid on the AP that the WLAN client wants to connect to next.

Additionally, IEEE 802.11r uses "resource requests" to reserve additional bandwidth on the new AP, so that there is no need to cause added delay by transferring unnecessary data packets during the IEEE 802.11e authentication.

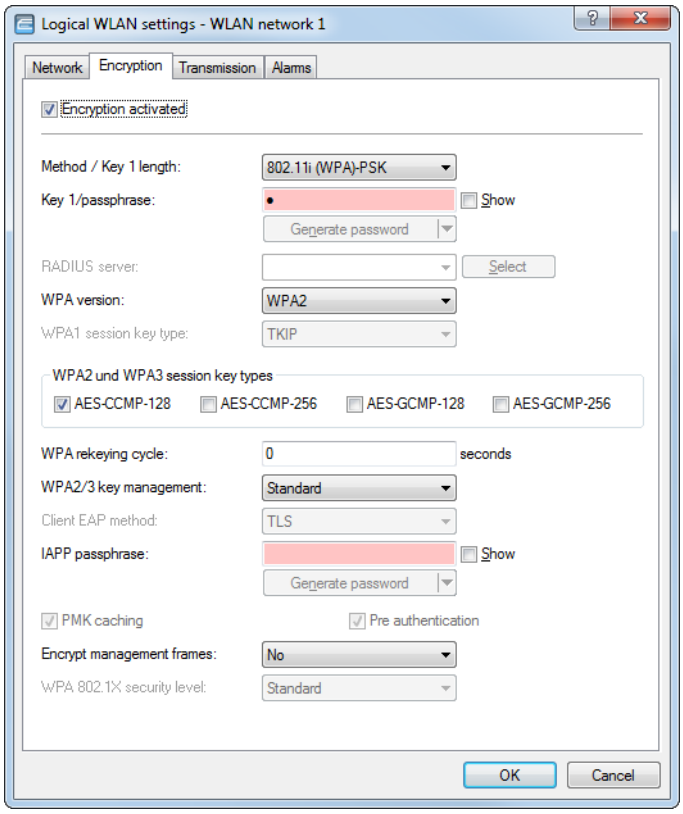
Older WLAN clients may have trouble establishing a connection to an SSID with enabled 802.11r. Therefore, it is advisable to use two SSIDs here: One SSID for older clients without 802.11r support and another SSID with enabled 802.11r for clients that support 802.11r.

Fast roaming is setup in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Encryption** > **WPA2/3 key management**.

12.13.1 Fast roaming with IAPP

In order to use fast roaming with IAPP, you need to assign an individual IAPP passphrase in the WLAN encryption settings for each interface. This is used to encrypt the pairwise master keys (PMKs). APs that share a matching IAPP passphrase (PMK-IAPP secret) are able to exchange PMKs between themselves and ensure uninterrupted connections.

To enter the IAPP passphrase in LANconfig, navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Encryption**.



Please note the use of IEEE 802.11r requires **WPA2/3 key management** in the encryption settings to be set to "Fast roaming".

12.14 Bandwidth limitations in the WLAN

The bandwidths that are available can be limited so that they can be better distributed among several participants in the WLAN. This bandwidth limit is available, for example, for wireless ISPs who want to provide their customers with a specified bandwidth.

Unlike bandwidth management using QoS (Quality of Service), this procedure does not allow a minimum bandwidth, but an exactly defined maximum bandwidth instead. Even if more bandwidth were actually available due to low traffic from other network stations, only the bandwidth specified here is provided to the user.

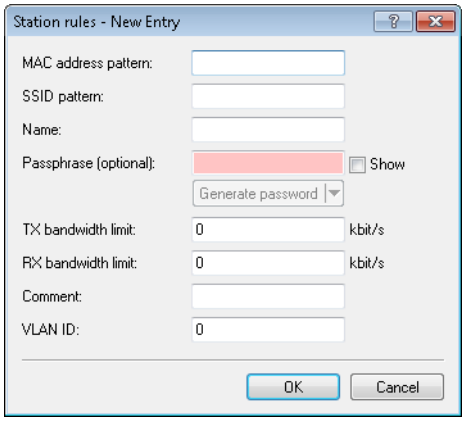
These settings are the difference between operating a device as an AP or in client mode.

12.14.1 Operating as an access point

In the AP operating mode, the maximum permitted bandwidths can be specified in Tx and Rx direction for the WLAN clients that register with the AP. The values of the maximum Tx and Rx bandwidths are entered in kbps in the MAC access list. A value of '0' indicates that there is no intention to restrict the bandwidth in this transmission direction. The bandwidth that is actually provided is determined from the value that is entered here and the value that is transmitted by the client.

The significance of the Rx and Tx values depends on the device's operating mode. In this case, as an AP Rx stands for “Send data” and Tx stands for “Receive data”.

The maximum bandwidths for the connected clients are entered in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** > **Station rules**.



Comment

Comment on this entry.

VLAN-ID

VLAN ID for the WLAN client.

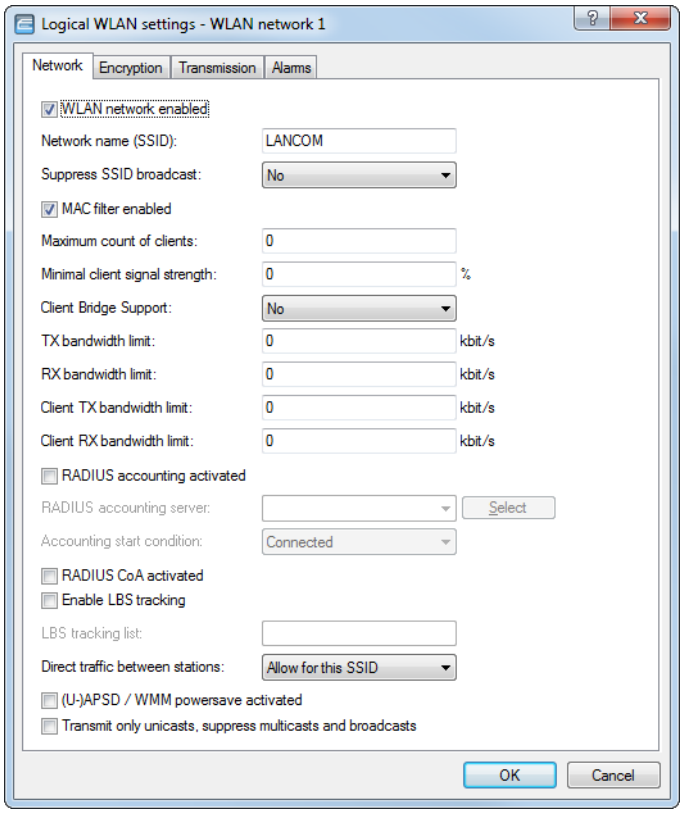
- Possible values: 0 to 4094
- Special values: 0: Switches the use of VLAN off.

12.14.2 Operating as a Client

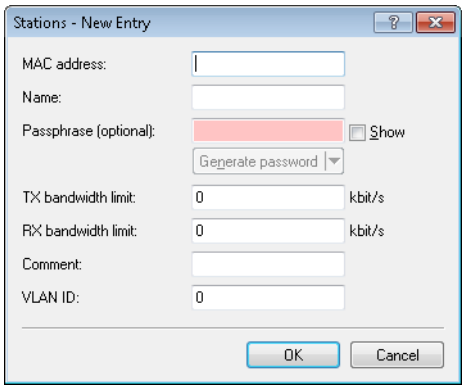
If the device is operated as a WLAN client, the device can transmit its maximum bandwidth when it registers with the AP. The AP then provides the actual maximum bandwidths with proprietary limits for this client where necessary.

The significance of the Rx and Tx values depends on the device's operating mode. In this case, as a client, Tx stands for “Send data” and Rx stands for “Receive data”.

The maximum bandwidths for a device in client mode are entered in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **General** by clicking on **Logical WLAN settings**, selecting the corresponding logical WLAN interface and the **Network** tab.



On the WLC, bandwidth restrictions are set for each individual station under **WLAN controller** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** and by clicking on **Station rules**.



12.14.3 Bandwidth restriction of the LAN interfaces

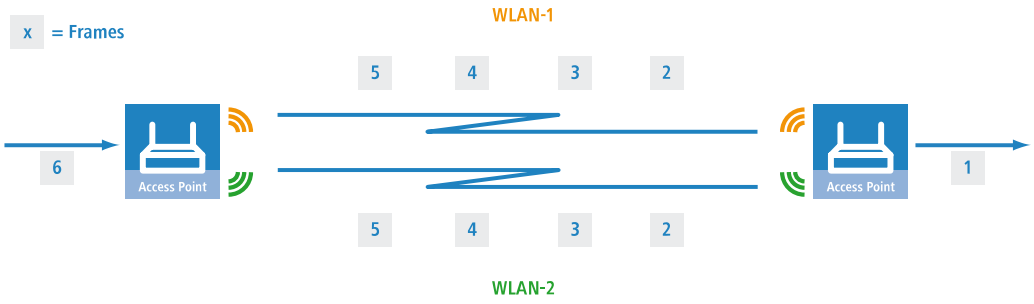
For a device with an integrated WLAN module, you can specify a bandwidth limit for individual LAN ports. The table of LAN interfaces contains the parameters necessary to configure bandwidth restrictions.

12.15 Redundant connections using PRP

Applications that are sensitive to connection failures require uninterrupted communications. Examples are to be found in automation, transport and mobile applications.

As of LCOS 9.00, you have the option of operating redundant connections in your WLAN by means of the parallel redundancy protocol (PRP). Redundant point-to-point links offer you a high level of failover reliability.

PRP achieves high failover reliability by sending twin packets over 2 independent WLANs. While 1 WLAN is active, PRP transports data packets.



12.15.1 Basic function

PRP devices act as the sender and receiver of PRP packets, whereby PRP devices are capable of assuming both roles.

The sender operates as follows:

1. It duplicates packets to produce twin pakets, and sends them over 2 independent (W)LANs.
2. Each packet is given a redundancy control trailer (RCT).

The RCT provides the following information for the recipient:

- It identifies the packet as a PRP packet.
- It contains a sequence ID.
- It shows which (W)LAN the packet arrived from.
- It contains the packet size.

The sequence ID is a consecutive incremented number. The sequence ID together with the the source MAC address allow the receiver to detect duplicate packets. Duplicate detection causes the packet arriving later to be discarded.

The receiver operates as follows:

- It reads the RCT.
- It forwards the first of the duplicated packets without its RCT.
- Through duplicate detection, the receiver discards the packet that arrives later.

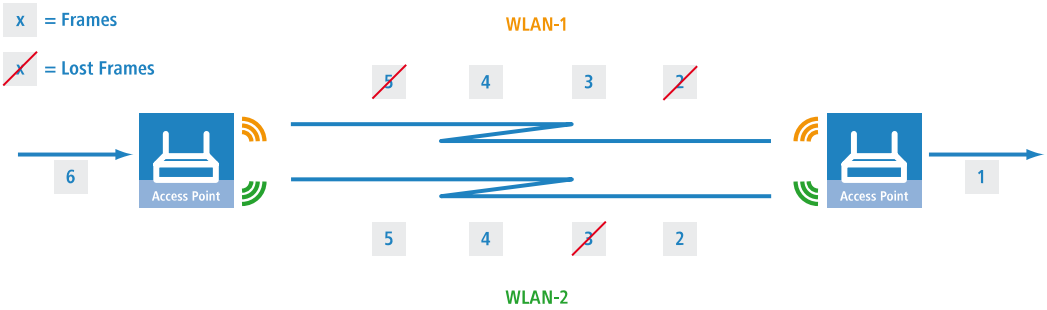
12.15.2 Advantages of WLAN PRP

The functions of PRP offer you significant advantages for your WLAN. In practice, PRP improves the 3 most important quality indicators for a network: Jitter, latency and packet loss.

With PRP, the receivers will accept and forward the first copy of the PRP packets and discard those that arrive later. Because the devices always forward the first incoming packet, latency is reduced. In practice, significant improvements were seen to average and maximum jitter.

Like Ethernet, WLAN is designed to be a shared medium. Within a single WLAN connection, the devices hold back packets if the medium is busy. Because the devices with PRP transport the data via 2 different WLANs, in effect 2 media are available thanks to frequency division.

Because the devices send each packet twice, PRP can to some extent compensate for unsystematic packet loss. As long as the receiver receives one of the packets, then communication was successful. Under certain circumstances there is no need to retransmit lost packets, which also positively affects jitter.



12.15.3 Implementation of PRP in the access points

Any access point (AP) with at least 3 interfaces can be used to setup a PRP network. The AP handles all of the functions necessary for establishing a PRP network.

The devices offer the following options:

1. PRP networks can be implemented via wireless interfaces
2. Each device can implement up to 2 PRP networks
3. In addition to a PRP network, connect additional clients to an AP
4. Activate dual roaming so that the 2 WLAN modules can roam asynchronously with PRP.
5. Comprehensive diagnostic options

12.15.4 Implementing PRP exclusively over WLAN

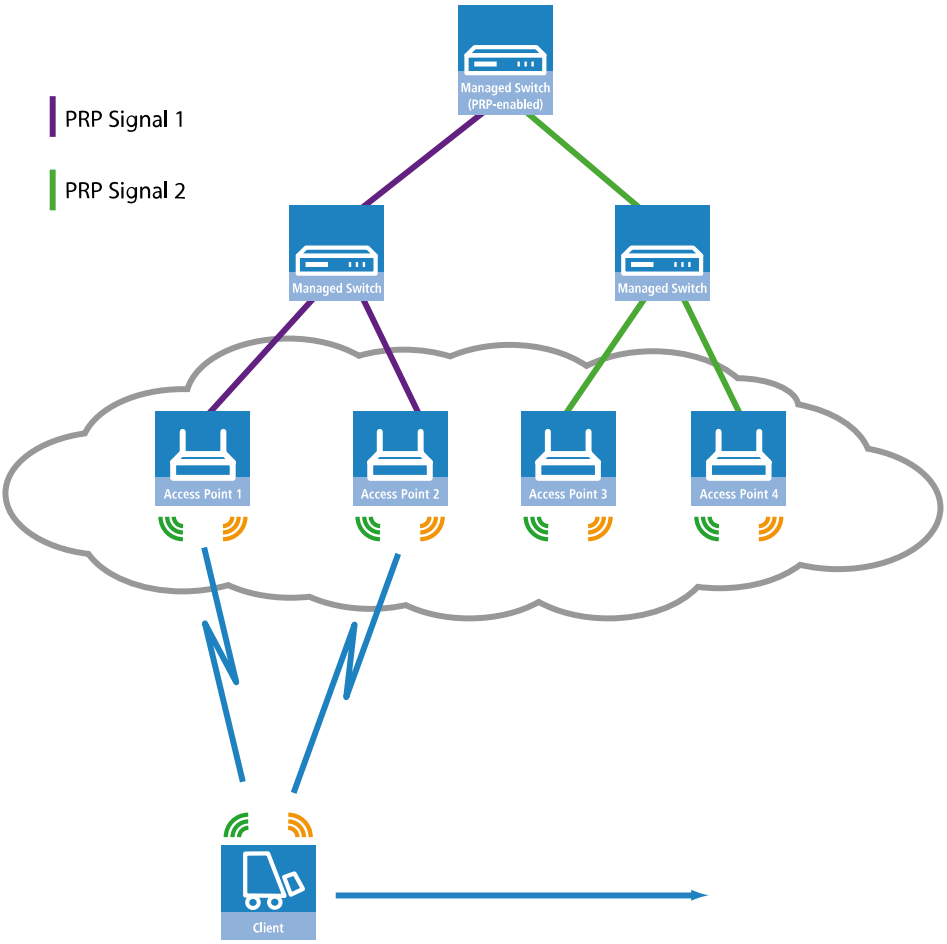
You can optionally setup a PRP network that operates over WLAN only. This is useful if the costs of cabling are high. A WLAN solution is suitable when the application type or environmental conditions demand this.

12.15.5 Dual roaming

A device with just 1 WLAN module will lose its connection to the infrastructure in a handover scenario.

However, a device with 2 WLAN modules can use PRP to reduce interruptions if the corresponding LANconfig setting prevents both WLAN modules from roaming at the same time. This mode is called dual roaming.

A practical example is a client moving past an access point. Due to the design of the network, one WLAN module stays connected and receives PRP packets, while the other WLAN module can already associate with the next AP.



A concrete example would be for materials management, and for the real-time monitoring of inventory flow in particular.

Another example is the railway. An AP in a train connects to the trackside APs throughout the journey.

In addition, you can specify the block time in LANconfig. The block time specifies the minimum time that passes before the different WLAN modules of the same device can perform roaming operations.

12.15.6 Diagnostic options

Recipients of PRP packets discard duplicates during normal operation and remove the RCT from packets that they pass on to their bundled output port.

LCOS provides you the following options to assist you in network diagnostics:

1. Forwarding packet duplicates without RCT
2. Forwarding single packets with RCT
3. Forwarding packet duplicates with RCT

LCOS also features the following trace options:

1. trace # PRP-DATA
2. trace # PRP-NODES

PRP-DATA contains information about packets that are sent and received. Information included: Name of the interface group transporting the packet: Direction of transport of the packet (RX|TX): Trailer sequence number: MAC address of the partner device: Interface within the PRP group (A|B) transporting the packet: Treatment of the packet (accept|discard)

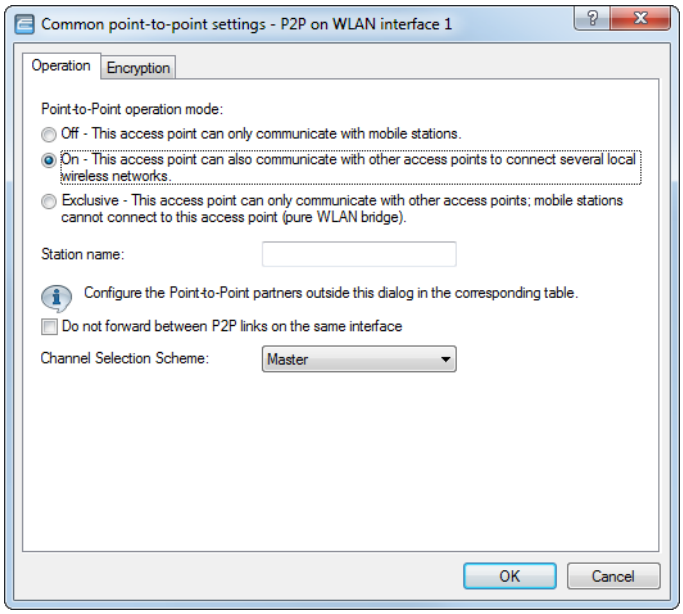
PRP-NODES contain the following information: Removed new address (proxy) node table address from the table (proxy) node, node type an address has changed.

12.15.7 Tutorial: Setting up a PRP connection over a point-to-point network (P2P)

The following steps must be conducted for both P2P partners.

Proceed as follows to set up a P2P connection between two PRP-enabled APs:

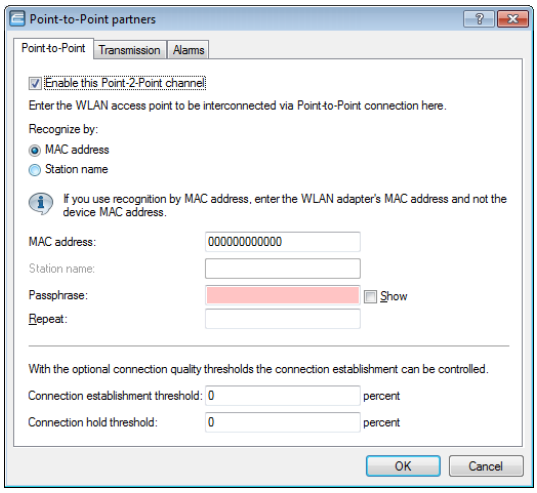
1. Under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings**, go to the **Operation** tab for each physical WLAN interface (WLAN interface 1, WLAN interface 2) and, under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Common point-to-point settings**on the **Operation** tab, enable the **Point-2-Point operation mode**.



2. In the field **Station name**, give each of the physical WLAN interfaces a name that is unique on the WLAN. If the P2P partner can or should identify this interface using the MAC address, leave this field blank.

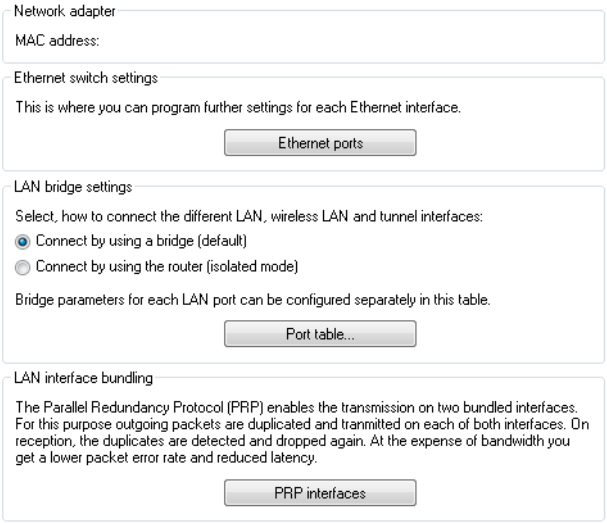
In order for PRP to operate smoothly, the two instances of PRP must be operating on separate physical interfaces. If you are operating PRP on two logical interfaces of a single physical interface (e.g. "P2P-1-1" and "P2P-1-2"), then the device transmits the data sequentially. Apart from causing a loss of redundancy, this can also lead to delays in data transmission and a reduction in the bandwidth.

3. Under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Point-to-point partners**, enable the point-to-point channels "P2P-1-1" and "P2P-2-1" and specify the interface identifier for each point-to-point partner (**MAC address** or **Station name**).

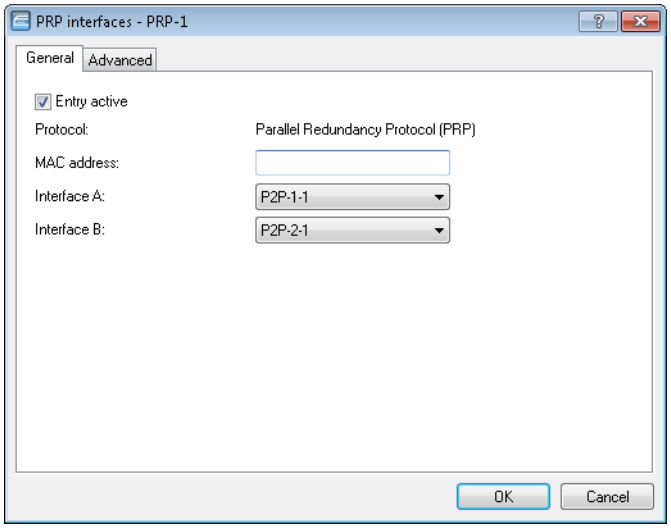


Specify either the MAC address or the station name of the corresponding WLAN interface of the P2P partner. You set these station names in the previous step.

4. Open the PRP configuration under **Interfaces** > **LAN** with a click on **PRP interfaces**.



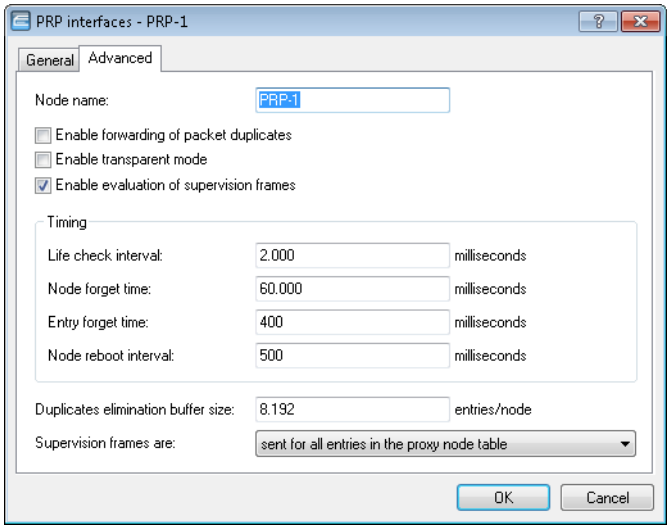
5. Enable the PRP interfaces and set the interfaces that the AP uses for bundling.



Here you select the previously activated point-to-point interfaces "P2P-1-1" and "P2P-2-1".

In order for PRP to operate smoothly, the two instances of PRP must be operating on separate physical interfaces. If you are operating PRP on two logical interfaces of a single physical interface (e.g. "P2P-1-1" and "P2P-1-2"), then the device transmits the data sequentially. Apart from causing a loss of redundancy, this can also lead to delays in data transmission and a reduction in the bandwidth.

6. You can accept the advanced settings from the default configuration by clicking on **OK**.



This completes the setup of a PRP connection over a point-to-point network.

12.15.8 Tutorial: Roaming with a dual-radio client and PRP

A common way to increase the resilience of a WLAN infrastructure is to operate the various APs in different frequency bands. One way to implement this is for the physical WLAN interfaces of the APs to operate SSID-1 on the 2.4-GHz band and SSID-2 on the 5-GHz band, for example. A PRP-capable dual-radio client moving from the radio cell of one physical WLAN interface to a neighboring cell of the same infrastructure can experience uninterrupted cell switching thanks to PRP.

To do this, the dual-radio client using PRP initially connects its physical WLAN interface WLAN-1 to SSID-1 and WLAN-2 to SSID-2. If the reception for SSID-1 deteriorates and another radio cell with better reception is within range, the

dual-radio client will perform a cell change. During the cell change the dual-radio client continues to send the data via WLAN-2 on SSID-2, while WLAN-1 already starts sending the same data with better reception on SSID-1. A PRP-enabled switch filters out the duplicate PRP packets before forwarding the data to the LAN.

In this scenario, the APs in the WLAN infrastructure do not have to be configured to operate PRP.

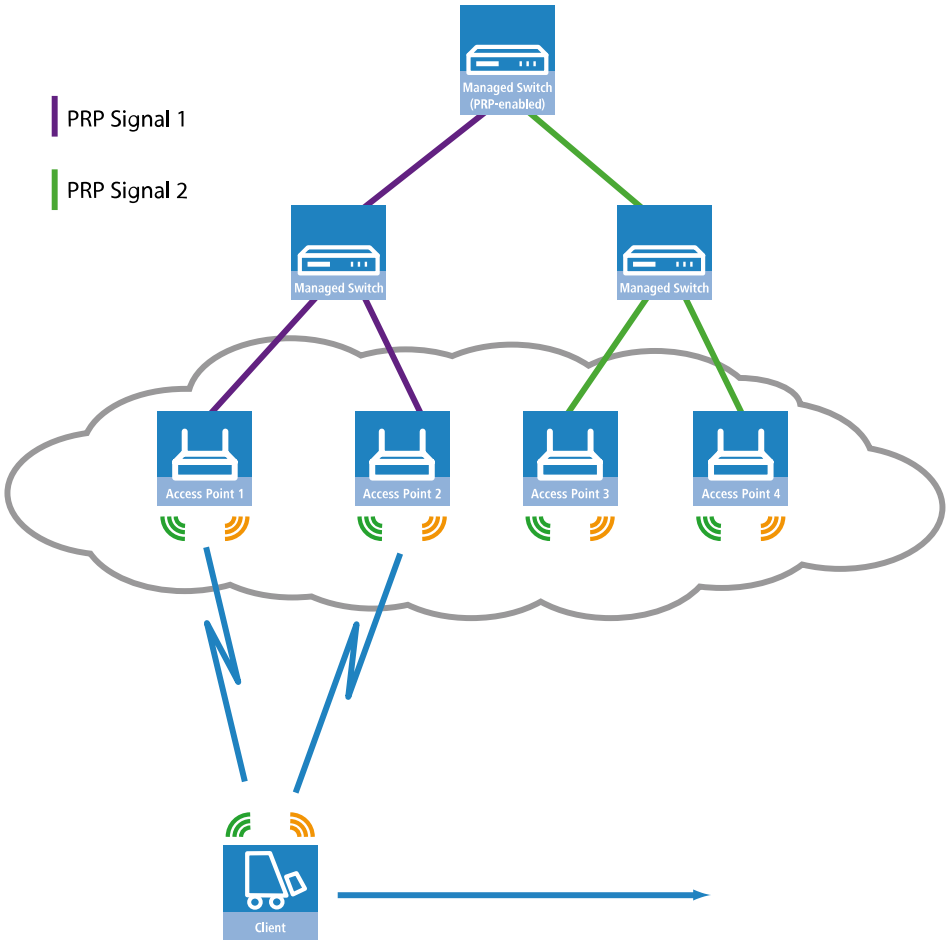
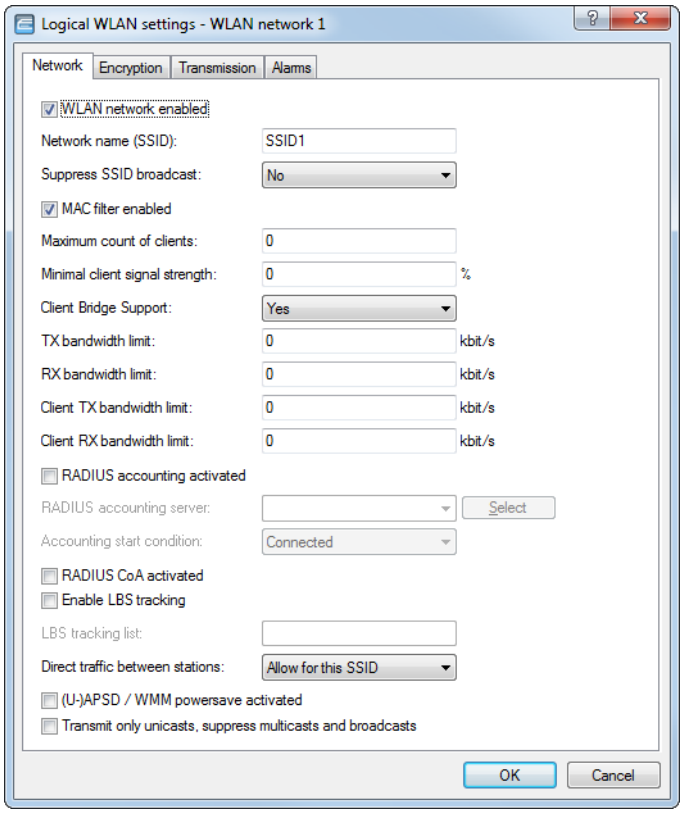


Figure 5: Roaming of a dual-radio client in a PRP-based WLAN infrastructure

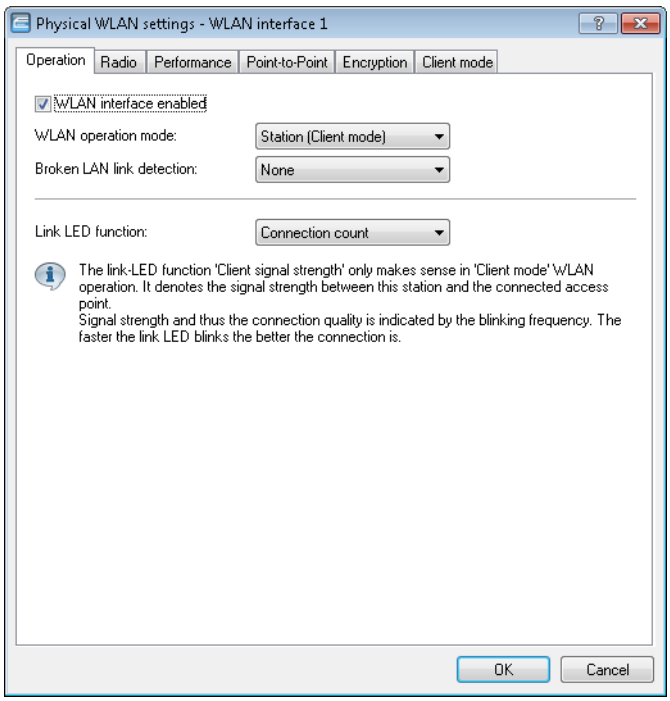
In order for the receiver to detect duplicate data packets, the APs in the WLAN infrastructure must be operating in client-bridge mode. The MAC address of the dual-radio client together with the RCT ensure that the receiver detects the duplicate packets. Without client-bridge support, an AP in the WLAN infrastructure would replace the MAC address of the dual-radio client with its own MAC address, so preventing the detection of duplicates.

Client-bridge support is enabled with LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** on the **Network** tab.



The PRP configuration of the dual-radio clients involves the following steps:

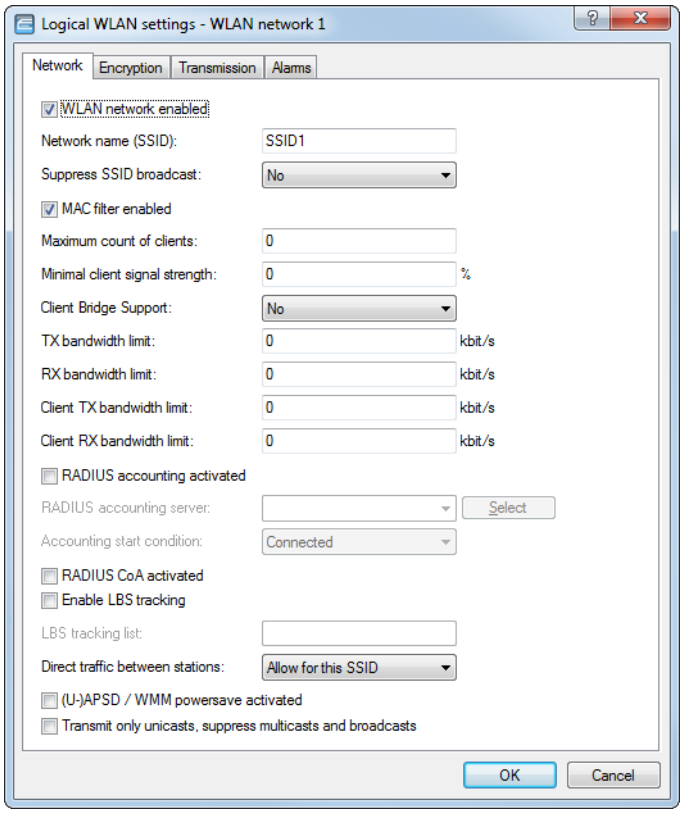
1. Under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings**, go to the **Operation** tab for each WLAN interface (WLAN interface 1, WLAN interface 2) and set the **WLAN operation mode** for each one to **Client**.



Specify the remaining WLAN parameters under **Radio**, **Performance**, **Encryption** and **Client mode** according to the requirements of the WLAN radio cells.

In order for PRP to operate smoothly, the two instances of PRP must be operating on separate physical interfaces. If you are operating PRP on two logical interfaces of a single physical interface (e.g. "P2P-1-1" and "P2P-1-2"), then the device transmits the data sequentially. Apart from causing a loss of redundancy, this can also lead to delays in data transmission and a reduction in the bandwidth.

2. To enter the SSID, switch to the view **Wireless LAN** > **General**, click **Logical WLAN settings** and, for each WLAN interface, select network 1.
3. In the field **Network name (SSID)**, enter the name of the WLAN which the WLAN interface is to be connected to.



4. Use WEBconfig to check whether **Setup** > **WLAN** > **Dual-Roaming** > **Group** is set to **Off**.

   By deactivating the parallel roaming, you prevent the two physical WLAN interfaces from roaming at the same time or performing background scans. The result could be that both could lose connectivity to their radio cell.

When configured in this way, the dual-radio client can move past a line of APs and roam between the individual APs (see *Figure 5: Roaming of a dual-radio client in a PRP-based WLAN infrastructure* on page 888).

12.16 Automatic adjustment of multicast and broadcast transmission rates

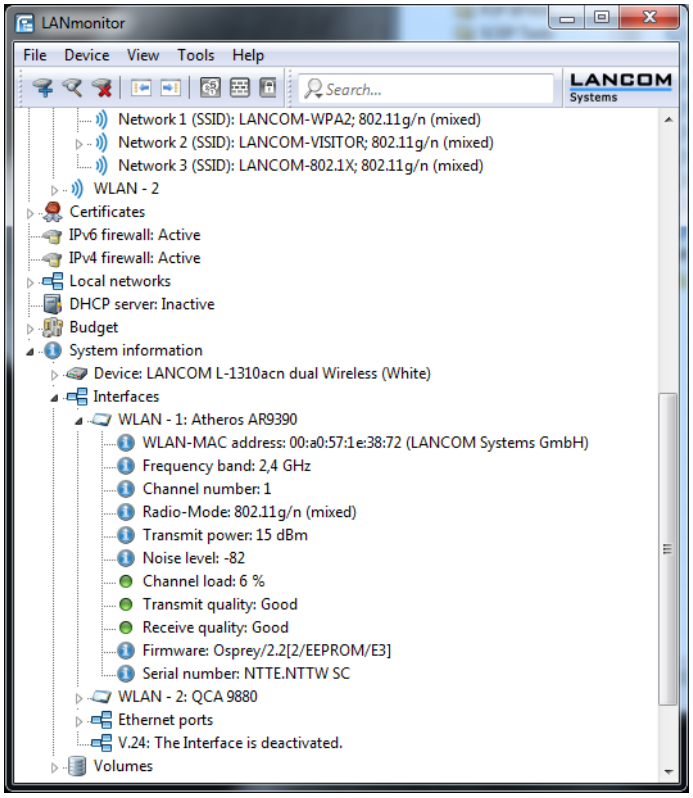
Whereas with unicast broadcasts the access point and client can negotiate the optimum transfer rate between them, multicast and broadcast transmissions communicate in just one direction: From the access point to the client. The clients cannot report back the access point with their actual maximum transmission speeds.

The access point has two options for setting the transmission rate for multicast and broadcast transmissions:

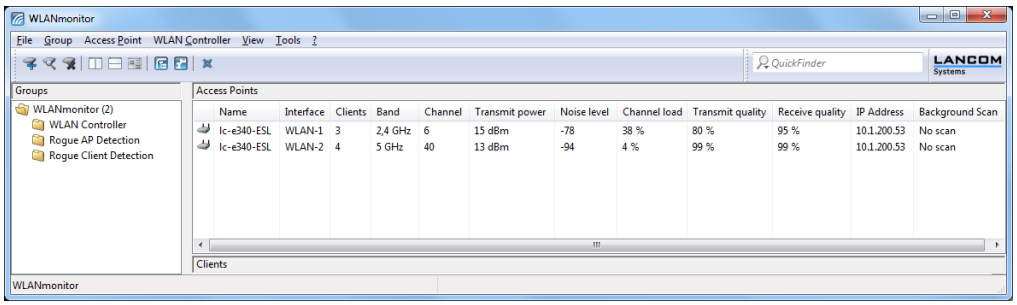
- **Fixed bit rate**: The transfer rate is set so that the slowest client in the WLAN can receive error-free transmissions even under unfavorable conditions. This can lead to the situation that the LANCOM transmits at a lower rate sends than environmental conditions and the clients would actually allow. As a result, the access point slows down the communications in the WLAN unnecessarily.
- **Automatic bit rate**: By setting the transmission rate to auto, the access point collects information about the transmission rates of the various WLAN clients. Clients automatically notify the access point of this rate with each unicast communication. The access point takes the lowest transmission rate from the list of associated clients and applies this to all multicast and broadcast transmissions.

12.17 LANCOM "Wireless Quality Indicators" (WQI)

LANmonitor optionally displays the signal quality of the individual interfaces with the **Wireless Quality Indicators**. This representation of reception and transmission quality (RX and TX) helps you to make a quick assessment of signal quality. To display this information in LANmonitor, open the section **System information** for the device. The indicators are displayed under **Interfaces**.



The WLANmonitor also displays the **Wireless quality indicators**. To do this click on the main folder for the group.

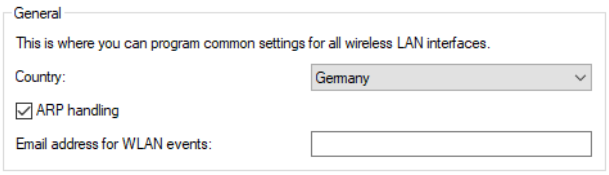


12.18 Configuring the WLAN parameters

The settings for the cellular networks are made at various points in the configuration:

- Some parameters concern the physical WLAN interfaces. Some LANCOM models have just one WLAN interface (single radio), and others have a second WLAN module integrated (dual radio). The settings for the physical WLAN interface apply to all of the logical wireless networks supported by this module. These parameters include, for example, the transmission power of the antenna and the operating mode of the WLAN module (AP or client).
- Other parameters are related solely to the logical wireless network that is supported by a physical interface. These include, for example, the SSID or the activation of encryption, such as 802.11i with AES.
- A third group of parameters affect the wireless network operation, but are not significant only to WLANs. These include, for example, the protocol filter in the LAN bridge.

12.18.1 General WLAN settings



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General**

Command line: **Setup** > **WLAN**

- **Country**

  Regulations for the operation of WLAN modules differ from country to country. The use of some radio channels is prohibited in certain countries. To operate the APs while observing the regulations in the relevant country, the Country setting is used to set up all of physical WLAN interfaces for the country where they are operated.

- **ARP handling**

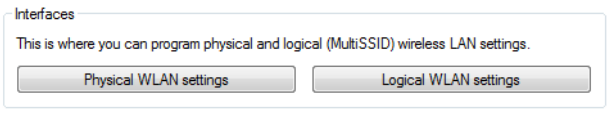
  Mobile stations in the wireless network that are on standby do not answer the ARP requests from other network stations reliably. If 'ARP handling' is activated, the AP takes over this task and answers the ARP requests on behalf of stations that are on standby.

- **E-mail address for WLAN events**

  Information about events in the WLAN is sent to this e-mail address.

12.18.2 The physical WLAN interfaces

In addition to the general WLAN parameters, a variety of settings apply specifically to each WLAN module in the AP.

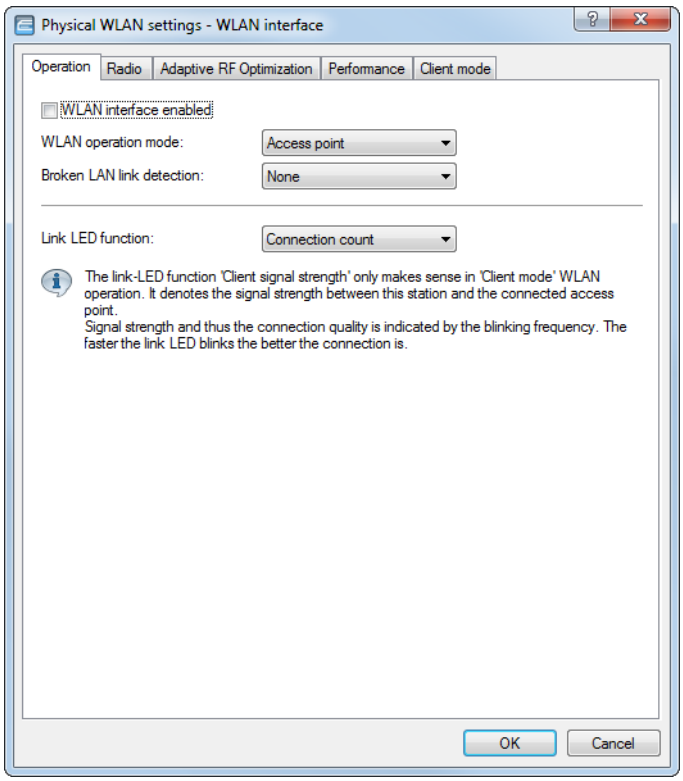


LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Physical WLAN settings.**

If the AP has more than one radio module, you first select the relevant module in order to access its configuration pages.

Operation

This section contains the settings used for operation.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical wireless LAN settings** > **Operation**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Operational**

WLAN interface enabled

If the WLAN interface is not required, it can be completely deactivated.

WLAN operation mode

LANCOM APs provide different operating modes:

Access point

An access point acts as a link between WLAN clients and the cabled LAN.

Client

In client mode, the device attempts to connect to another AP and to authenticate with a wireless network. In this case the device uses a radio link to connect a wired device to a base station.

Managed

As a managed AP, the device searches for a central WLC from which it can retrieve a configuration.

Probe

In the **Probe** operating mode the device collects WLAN information only, for example for an integrated spectrum analyzer.

Broken LAN-link detection

When an AP is not connected to the cabled LAN, it is normally unable to fulfill its primary task, namely the authorization of WLAN clients for access to the LAN. The broken-link detection function allows a device's

WLAN to be disabled if the connection to the LAN should fail. Clients associated with that AP are then able to login to a different one (even one with a weaker signal).

This function allows the WLAN modules in a device to be disabled if the assigned LAN interface has no connection to the LAN.

Possible values:

None

Broken-link detection is disabled.

LAN-1 to LAN-n

Depends on the LAN interfaces available in the device. All of the WLAN modules in the device will be deactivated if the LAN interface set here should lose its connection to the cabled LAN.

The interface names LAN-1 to LAN-n represent the logical LAN interfaces. To make use of this function, the physical Ethernet ports on the device must be set with the corresponding values LAN-1 to LAN-n.

Broken-link detection can also be used for WLAN devices operating in WLAN client mode. With broken-link detection activated, the WLAN modules of a WLAN client are only activated when a connection exists between the relevant LAN interfaces and the cabled LAN.

Link LED function

When setting up point-to-point connections or operating the device as a WLAN client, the best possible positioning of the antennas is facilitated if the signal strength can be recognized at different positions. The WLAN link LED can be used for displaying the signal quality during the set-up phase. In the corresponding operating mode, the WLAN link LED blinks faster with better reception quality.

Possible values:

Connection count

In this operation mode, the LED uses “inverse flashing” in order to display the number of WLAN clients that are logged on to this AP as clients. There is a short pause after the number of flashes for each client. Select this operation mode when you are operating the device in access point mode.

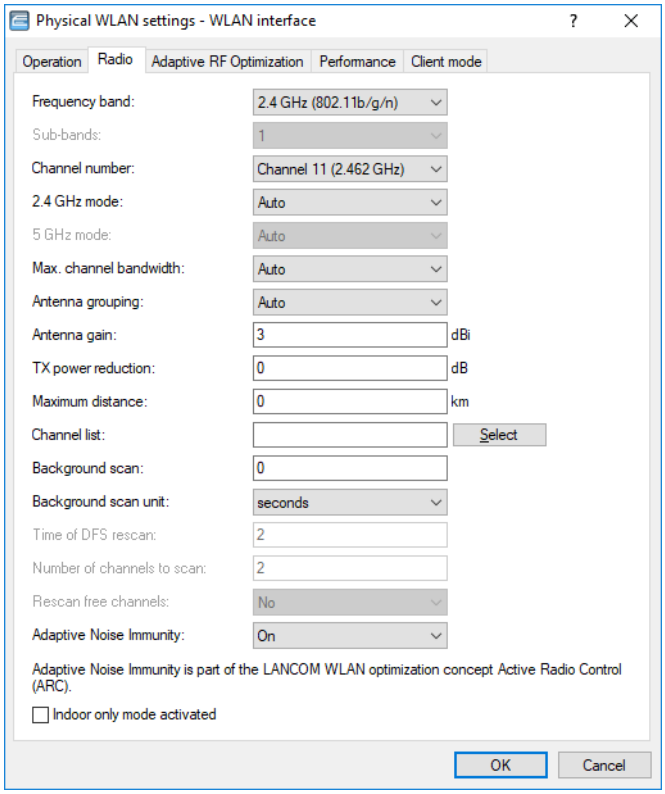
Client signal strength

In this operation mode, this LED displays the signal strength of the AP with which the device has registered itself as a client. The faster the LED blinks, the better the signal. Select this operation mode only if you are operating the AP in client mode.

P2P-1 to P2P-x signal strength

In this operation mode, the LED displays the signal strength of respective P2P partner with which the AP forms a P2P path. The faster the LED blinks, the better the signal.

Radio settings



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Radio**

Frequency band, subbands

Selecting the frequency band determines whether the wireless LAN module operates in the 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz band, which in turn determines the available radio channels.

Furthermore in the 5-GHz band, a subband can be selected which is linked to certain radio channels and maximum transmission powers.

In some countries, the use of the DFS method for automatic channel selection is a legal requirement. Selecting the subband also defines the radio channels that can be used for the automatic channel selection.

Channel number

Specify the channel for data transmission in the WLAN here.

In the 2.4-GHz band, two separate wireless networks must be at least three channels apart to avoid interference.

2.4-GHz mode / 5-GHz mode

Here you specify the wireless standard(s) that the physical WLAN interface provides to the WLAN clients.

In the 2.4-GHz and the 5-GHz frequency bands, there are several different wireless standards that an AP can use for transmission. In the 2.5-GHz frequency band, these were to date the standards IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g and IEEE 802.11n; in the 5-GHz frequency band, the standards are IEEE 802.11a, IEEE 802.11n and IEEE 802.11ac. Depending on the device type and selected frequency band, you have the option of operating an AP in just one particular mode or one of the compatibility modes.

Please observe that WLAN clients supporting only a slower standard may not be able to associate with the WLAN if the value for the mode is set too high. However, compatibility is always achieved at the expense of performance. It is therefore recommended to allow only those modes of operation that are absolutely necessary for the wireless LAN clients in use.

For example, if there are only 802.11n-enabled devices in your WLAN, we recommend you select the greenfield mode: By doing this you prevent login of slower clients which would otherwise act as a brake on the network.

By selecting a compatibility mode, you are able to achieve the best possible data rates without excluding slower WLAN clients (e.g., for 2.4 GHz "802.11b/g/n (mixed)"; for 5 GHz "802.11a/n (mixed)"). In compatibility mode, a physical WLAN interface works according to the fastest standard, but reverts to a slower standard if a slower WLAN client logs on to the network. When using 802.11b, you can select whether the physical WLAN interface should exclusively support 11-Mbps mode or also the older 2-Mbps mode ("(2-Mbps compatible)").

For APs operating according to the 802.11g standard you can optionally increase the data transfer speeds up to 108Mbps. In what is referred to as Turbo mode, an AP simultaneously uses two neighboring free channels for the radio transmission. With an AP in the 108Mbps Turbo mode, the only WLAN clients that can establish a connection to this AP are those also operating with the 108Mbps Turbo mode.

Turbo mode is associated with the 802.11g standard, although it was never officially adopted by the IEEE. The technology represents the proprietary extensions of various chipset manufacturers who also market this technology under the name "802.11g+" or "802.11g++". Turbo mode is therefore exclusively available on APs with pure 802.11g hardware.

If you leave the selection of the 2.5/5-GHz mode up to the device with the "Automatic" setting, the selection of the best mode depends on the frequency band in use and the capabilities of the device hardware:

- In the 2.4-GHz mode, the automatic setting results in either **802.11 b/g/n (mixed)** or **802.11 b/g (mixed)**.
- In the 5-GHz mode, the automatic setting results in either **802.11a/n/c (mixed)**, **802.11 a/n (mixed)**, or **54Mbps mode**.

In principle, according to 802.11n APs in the 2.4-GHz frequency band are backwards compatible to the IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g standards. Only the 802.11n-specific functions are not available for 802.11n hardware operated in 802.11b or 802.11g mode. However, this backwards compatibility is not available in the 5-GHz frequency band: The affected 802.11n devices must explicitly support 802.11a.

Max. channel bandwidth

Specify how and to what extent the AP specifies the channel bandwidth for the physical WLAN interface(s). Possible values:

Automatic

The AP automatically adjusts the channel bandwidth to the optimum. The AP allows the use of the maximum available bandwidth, assuming that the current operating conditions allow this. Otherwise, the AP limits channel bandwidth to 20MHz.

20 MHz

The AP uses channels bundled at 20 MHz.

40 MHz

The AP uses channels bundled at 40 MHz.

80 MHz

The AP uses channels bundled at 80 MHz.

By default, the physical WLAN interface automatically determines the frequency range used to modulate the data onto the carrier signals. 802.11a/b/g use 48 carrier signals in one 20-MHz channel. The use of double

the frequency range of 40 MHz means that 96 carrier signals can be used, resulting in a doubling of the data throughput.

802.11n can use 52 carrier signals in a 20-MHz channel for modulation, and even up to 108 carrier signals in a 40-MHz channel. The use of the 40 MHz option for 802.11n therefore means a performance gain of more than double.

Antenna grouping

Available for 802.11n only.

LANCOM APs with 802.11n support can use up to three antennas to transmit and receive data. Using several antennas with 802.11n can have different purposes:

- Improved data throughput: Using "spatial multiplexing" allows parallel data streams to be implemented to transmit double the amount of data.
- Improving wireless coverage: "Cyclic shift diversity (CSD)" can be used to transmit a radio signal in different phases. This reduces the risk of the signal being erased at certain points in the radio cell.

Depending on the application the use of the antennas can be set:

- When using the device in AP mode to connect wireless LAN clients it is generally recommended to use all three antennas in parallel in order to achieve good network coverage.
- To work with 2 parallel data streams; for example for point-to-point links with an appropriate dual slant antenna, the antenna ports 1 + 2 **or** 1 + 3 are used. The unused antenna port is deactivated.
- For applications with only one antenna (for example an outdoor application with just one antenna) the antenna is connected to port 1 and ports 2 and 3 are deactivated.
- The "Auto" setting means that all available antennas are used.

Please note the following when connecting antennas: Antenna connector 1 must always be used. Depending on the mounting and cabling, the second antenna may be connected either to connector 2 or connector 3. The configuration of the device software must agree with the actual antenna connections.

Antenna gain / TX power reduction

Where the transmission power of an antennae exceeds the levels permitted in the country of operation, the power must be attenuated accordingly.

- The field **Antenna gain** is for the gain of the antenna minus the actual cable loss. For an AirLancer Extender O-18a antenna with a gain of 18 dBi and a 4 m cable with a loss of 1 dB/m, the 'Antenna gain' would be entered as 18 - 4 = 14. This value for true antenna gain is dynamically used to calculate and emit the maximum permissible power with regards to other parameters such as country, data rate and frequency band.
- In contrast to this, the entry in the field **TX power reduction** causes a static reduction in the power by the value entered, and ignores the other parameters.

The transmission power reduction simply reduces the emitted power. The reception sensitivity (reception antenna gain) remains unaffected. This option is useful, for example, where large distances have to be bridged by radio when using shorter cables. The reception antenna gain can be increased without exceeding the legal limits on transmission power. This leads to an improvement in the maximum possible range and, in particular, the highest possible data transfer rates.

Maximum distance

The run-time over large distances between transmitter and receiver give rise to increasing delays for the data packets. If a certain limit is exceeded, the responses to transmitted packets no longer arrive within a given time limit. The entry for maximum distance increases the wait time for the responses. This distance is converted into a delay as required by the data packets for wireless communications.

Channel List

Access points automatically carry out channel selection for the frequency band available in the country of operation, assuming that no entry is made here.

Enter the channels to be available for automatic selection. If just one channel is defined here, then only this channel will be used and no automatic selection takes place. For this reason you should ensure that the channels entered here are legal for use in the defined country of operation. Channels which are invalid for the frequency band are ignored.

If radar detection is enabled, the channels entered here are preferred. If radar pulses are detected on these channels, the device will attempt to switch to further channels that are not listed here. Only when radar detection is switched off by activating the indoor-only mode is the selection of the channels performed exclusively.

The channels for automatic selection are specified as a comma-separated list.

For example, the entry "1, 7-9, 13" means that the automatic channel search is limited to the channels 1, 7 to 9, and 13.

Background scan / Background scan unit

If a value is entered here, the wireless router or AP searches currently unused frequencies in the active band to find available APs. This value is the time interval between search cycles.

- The background scan function is usually deployed for rogue AP detection for the device in AP mode. This scan interval should correspond to the time span within which rogue APs should be detected, e.g. 1 hour.
- Conversely, for the device in client mode, the background scan function is generally used for improved mobile WLAN client roaming. In order to achieve fast roaming, the scan time is limited here, for example, to 260 seconds.
- When the background scan time is '0' the background scanning function is deactivated.

The time interval allows the entered value to be defined in milliseconds, seconds, minutes, hours or days.

To avoid adverse effects on data transfer rates, the interval between channel scans in AP mode is at least 20 seconds. Lesser values will be corrected to this minimum value automatically. For example, with 13 channels to scan in the 2.4-GHz band, one scan of the full spectrum takes at least 13 x 20s = 260 seconds.

Background scanning can be limited to a lower number of channels when indoor mode is activated. This allows roaming for the mobile wireless router or AP in client mode to be improved even further.

DFS configuration

Configure the DFS settings here.

For information on Dynamic Frequency Selection, see *Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS)*.

Adaptive noise immunity

Adaptive Noise Immunity can be activated or deactivated here.

For information on Adaptive Noise Immunity, see *Adaptive Noise Immunity*.

Indoor-only mode activated

By selecting the frequency band (2.4 or 5 GHz) you determine which channels can be used to transmit data, among other things. From these available channels, automatic channel selection causes an AP to select a vacant channel in order, for example, to avoid interference with other radio signals.

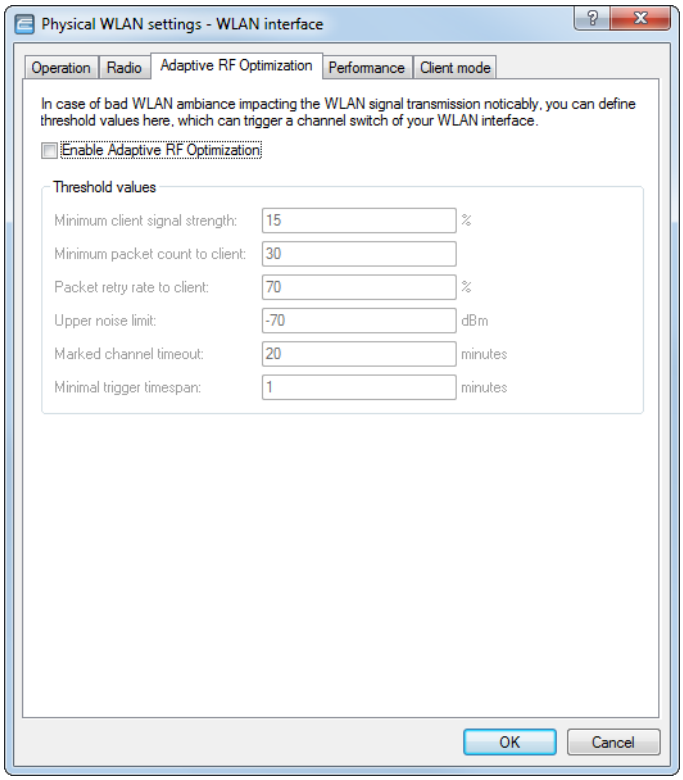
In some countries, there are special regulations on the frequency bands and channels which may be used for WLAN for indoor and outdoor operation. For example, in France, not all available channels in the 2.4-GHz band may be used in outdoor operation. In some countries the DFS procedure is required for outdoor operation in the 5-GHz band in order to avoid interference from radar systems.

The option 'indoor-only' sets up an AP for operation exclusively within closed buildings. This restriction on the other hand allows the channels to be managed more flexibly under automatic channel selection.

The indoor-only function only functions correctly if the country in which the AP is being operated has been set.

Activating the indoor-only function is only permitted when the AP and all connected clients are located within a closed space.

Adaptive RF Optimization



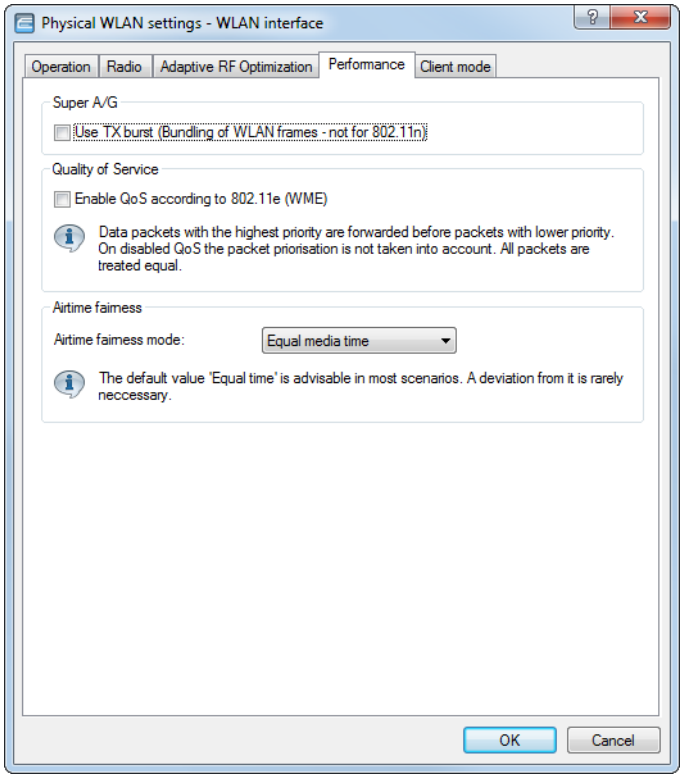
LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Adaptive RF optimization**

Configure the settings for the adaptive RF optimization here. For further information, please see *Adaptive RF Optimization* on page 844:

Performance

LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Performance**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Performance**



Use TX burst

Enables/prevents packet bursting for increasing throughput. Bursting leads to less fairness on the medium.

Enable QoS according to 802.11e (WME)

With the extension to the 802.11 standard, 802.11e, Quality of Service can be provided for transfers via WLAN. Among others, 802.11e supports the prioritization of certain data-packet types. This extension is an important basis for the use of voice applications in WLANs (Voice over WLAN, VoWLAN). The WiFi alliance certifies products that support Quality of Service according to 802.11e, and refer to WMM (WiFi Multimedia, formerly known as WME or Wireless Multimedia Extension). WMM defines four categories (voice, video, best effort and background) which make up separate queues to be used for prioritization. The 802.11e standard sets priorities by referring to the VLAN tags or, in the absence of these, by the DiffServ fields of IP packets. Delay times (jitter) are kept below 2 milliseconds, a magnitude which is inaudible to the human ear. 802.11e controls access to the transfer medium with EDCF, the Enhanced Distributed Coordination Function.

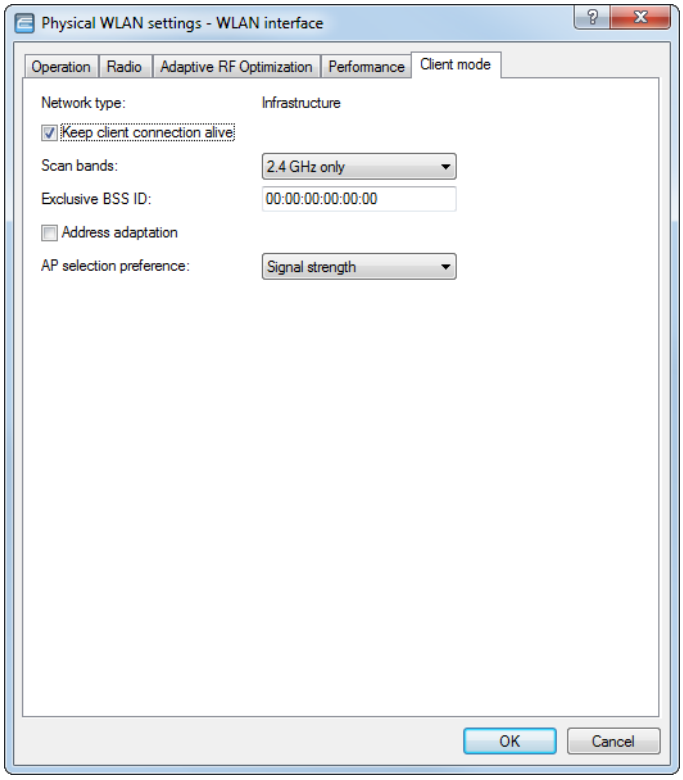
Priorities can only be set if the WLAN client and the AP both support 802.11e or WMM, and also if the applications are able to mark the data packets with the corresponding priorities.

Airtime Fairness

Configure the settings of airtime fairness here. For further information, please see *Airtime Fairness* on page 847:

Client mode

If the device is operating as a client, the tab 'Client mode' can be used for further settings that affect the behavior as a client.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Client mode**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Client-Modes**

Keep client connection alive

This option ensures that the client station keeps the connection to the access point alive even if the connected devices are not exchanging any data packets. If this option is disabled, the client station is automatically logged off the wireless network if no packets are transferred over the WLAN connection within a specified time.

Scan bands

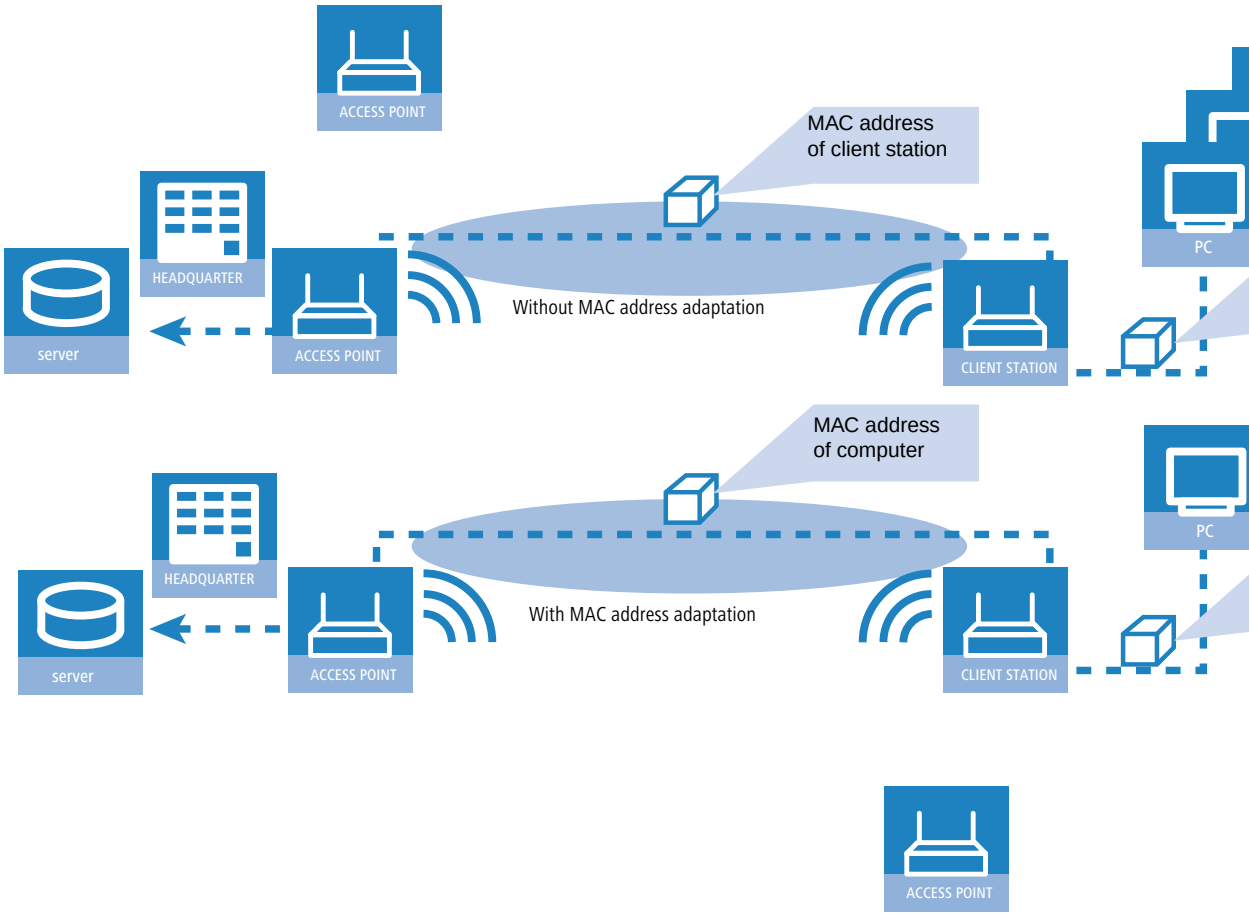
This defines whether the client station scans just the 2.4 GHz, just the 5 GHz, or all of the available bands for access points.

Exclusive BSS ID

If the client station is to log onto one particular AP only, the MAC address of the WLAN module in this AP can be entered here.

Address adaptation

In client mode, the client station normally replaces the MAC addresses in data packets from the devices connected to it with its own MAC address. The AP at the other end of the connection only ever "sees" the MAC address of the client station, not the MAC address of the computer(s) connected to it.



In some installations it may be desirable for the MAC address of a computer to be transmitted to the AP and not the MAC address of the client station. The option **Address adaptation** prevents the MAC address from being replaced by the client station. Data packets are transferred with their original MAC addresses—in the WLAN, the AP takes the client's MAC address.

Address adaptation only works when just **one** computer is connected to the client station.

AP selection preference

If several APs are available that match different profiles, the following criteria can be used to select the AP.

Profile

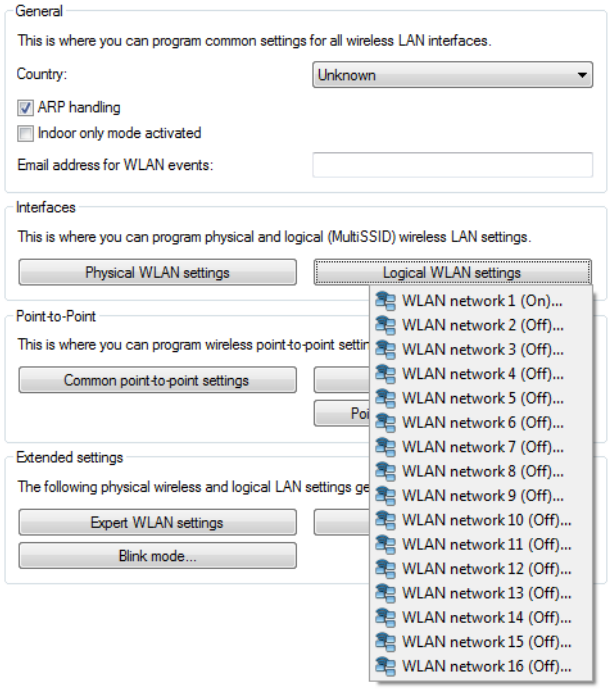
The profile with the smallest index is chosen, even if a stronger AP is available that matches a profile of a higher index.

Signal strength

The signal strength is the most important selection criterion.

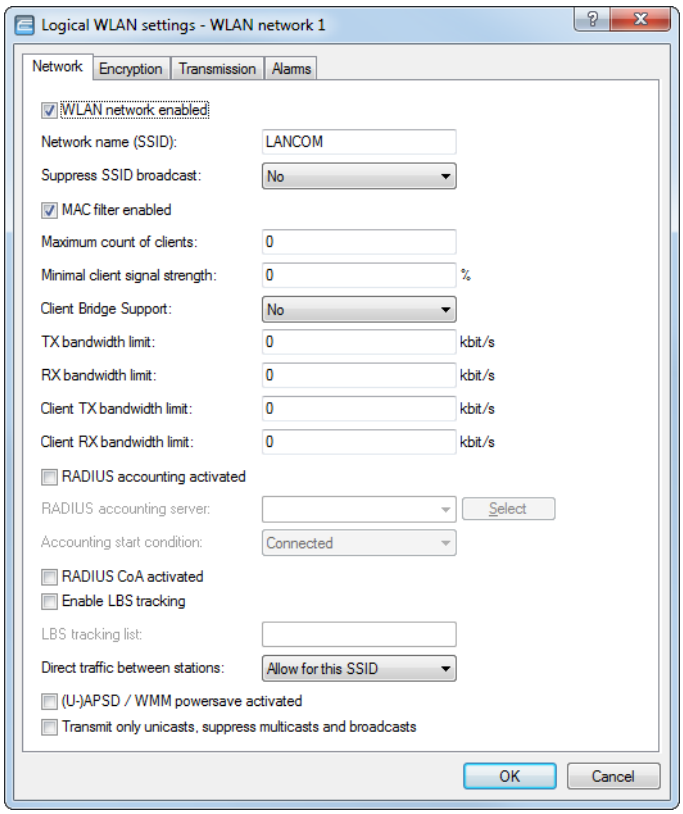
12.18.3 The logical WLAN interfaces

Every physical WLAN interface can support up to 16 different logical cellular networks (Multi-SSID). Parameters can be defined specifically for each of these networks, without the need of additional access points.



Network settings

The following settings are made in LANconfig in **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Network**.



WLAN network enabled

This switch enables or disables the corresponding logical WLAN.

Network name (SSID)

Specify a unique SSID (the network name) for each of the required logical wireless LANs. Only clients configured with the same SSID can associate with this wireless network.

Suppress SSID broadcast

You can operate your wireless LAN either in public or private mode. A wireless LAN in public mode can be contacted by any mobile station in the area. Your wireless LAN is put into private mode by activating the closed network function. In this operation mode, mobile stations that do not know the network name (SSID) are excluded from taking part in the wireless LAN.

With the "Closed-network mode" activated, WLAN clients that use an empty SSID or the SSID "ANY" are prevented from associating with your network.

The option **Suppress SSID broadcast** provides the following settings:

No

The AP publishes the SSID of the cell. When a client sends a probe request with an empty or incorrect SSID, the AP responds with the SSID of the radio cell (public WLAN).

Yes

The AP does not publish the SSID of the cell. When a client sends a probe request with an empty SSID, the AP similarly responds with an empty SSID.

Tightened

The AP does not publish the SSID of the cell. When a client sends a probe request with a blank or incorrect SSID, the AP does not respond.

Simply suppressing the SSID broadcast does not provide adequate protection: When legitimate WLAN clients associate with the AP, this transmits the SSID in cleartext so that it is briefly visible to all clients in the WLAN network.

MAC filter enabled

The MAC addresses of the clients that are allowed to associate with an AP are stored in the MAC filter list (**Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** > **Station rules**). The **MAC filter enabled** switch allows you to switch off the use of the MAC filter list for individual logical networks.

Use of the MAC filter list is required for logical networks in which the clients register via LEPS-MAC with an individual passphrase. The passphrase used by LEPS-MAC is also entered into the MAC filter list. The AP always consults the MAC filter list for registrations with an individual passphrase, even if this option is deactivated here.

Maximum count of clients

Here you set the maximum number of clients that may associate with this AP. Additional clients wanting to associate will be rejected by the AP.

Minimum client signal strength

This value sets the threshold value in percent for the minimum signal strength for clients when logging on. If the client's signal strength is below this value, the AP stops sending probe responses and discards the client's requests.

A client with poor signal strength will not detect the AP and cannot associate with it. This ensures that the client has an optimized list of available APs, as those offering only a weak connection at the client's current position are not listed.

Client bridge support

Enable this option for an AP if you have enabled the client-bridge support for a client station in WLAN client mode.

The client-bridge mode only operates between two LANCOM devices.

TX bandwidth limit

With this setting, you define the overall bandwidth that is available for transmission within this SSID (limit in kbps). A value of `0` disables the limit.

RX bandwidth limit

With this setting, you define the overall bandwidth that is available in the reception direction within this SSID (limit in kbps). A value of `0` disables the limit.

Client TX bandwidth limit

Here, you set the transmit-direction bandwidth limit (in kbps) available to each wireless client on this SSID. A value of `0` disables the limit.

Client RX bandwidth limit

Here, you set the receive-direction bandwidth limit (in kbps) available to each wireless client on this SSID. A value of `0` disables the limit.

RADIUS accounting activated

Enable this option to switch on RADIUS accounting for this SSID.

RADIUS accounting server

Enter a RADIUS accounting server for the respective SSID. The servers that can be selected here are specified in the table under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **RADIUS Accounting** > **RADIUS accounting servers**.

Accounting-Start-Condition

Normally, the WLAN stack sends a RADIUS "accounting start" message as soon as the WLAN client is connected. Often the WLAN client has no IP address at this time, most likely because one has not yet been issued by the DHCP server. Consequently the `Framed-IP-Address` attribute in the RADIUS accounting message may lack meaningful content.

Connected

Accounting starts when the WLAN client takes on the status "Connected". This is the default setting.

Valid IP address

Accounting starts when the WLAN client receives a valid IP address (IPv4 or IPv6).

Valid IPv4 address

Accounting starts when the WLAN client receives a valid IPv4 address.

Valid IPv6 address

Accounting starts when the WLAN client receives a valid IPv6 address.

APIPA addresses (`169.254.1.0` – `169.254.254.255` and `fe80:`) are not recognized as valid IP addresses.

RADIUS CoA activated

RADIUS CoA (Change of Authorization) provides the capability to modify current WLAN sessions. A modification is initiated when the CoA client sends a CoA message to the NAS. This message contains the identifying characteristics for the session to be modified, the attributes to be modified, and their new values.

Another option is to disconnect the current session. This is done with a disconnect message (DM) sent to the NAS, whereupon the NAS terminates the connection.

For more information about the configuration of RADIUS CoA see the section *Configuring dynamic authorization with LANconfig*.

Enable LBS tracking

This option specifies whether the LBS server is permitted to track the client information.

This option configures the tracking of all clients in an SSID. In the Public Spot module you determine whether the LBS server is allowed to track the users who are logged on to the Public Spot.

LBS tracking list

With this entry, you set the list name for the LBS tracking. When a client successfully associates with this SSID, the AP transfers the specified list name, the MAC address of the client, and its own MAC address to the LBS server.

Direct traffic between stations

Check this option if all stations logged on to this SSID may communicate with one another.

(U)APSD / WMM power save activated

Enable this option to signal stations that the power saving function (U)APSD ([Unscheduled] Automatic Power Save Delivery) is supported.

(U)APSD is established in the 802.11e standard, and helps VoWLAN devices to increase their battery life. The related devices switch to power saving mode after login on a (U)APSD-capable AP. If the AP receives data packets for the related devices thereafter, it temporarily stores the data and waits until the VoWLAN device is available again. It then forwards the data. Afterwards, (U)APSD increases the latency time of the radio module, whereby it ultimately consumes less power. The individual rest periods may be so short that a VoWLAN device can still use the power saving function in the call state itself. However, the relevant devices must also support (U)APSD.

WWM (Wi-Fi Multimedia) Power Save is a power saving function of the Wi-Fi Alliance and is based on U-APSD. Certain LANCOM APs are WMM® Power Save CERTIFIED by the Wi-Fi Alliance.

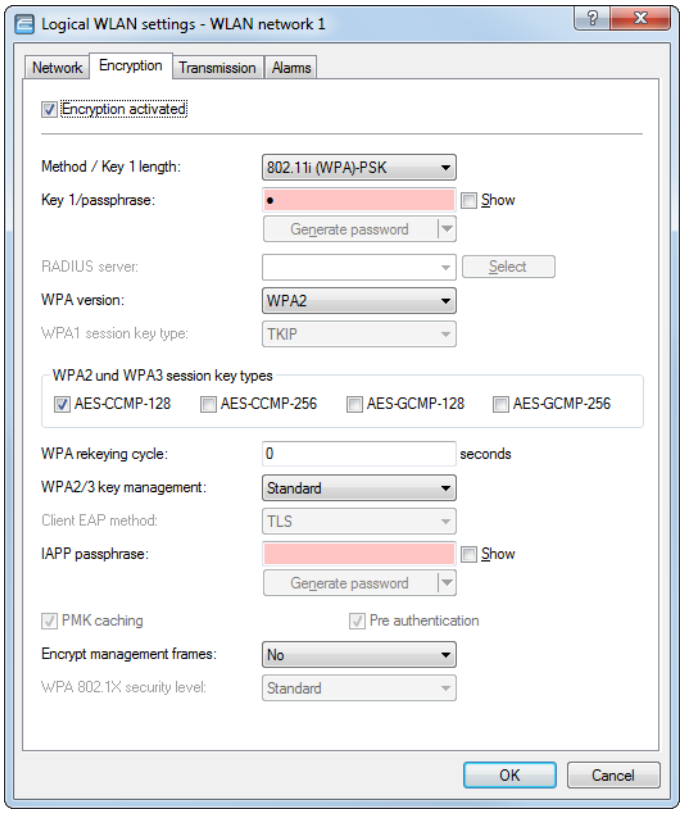
Only transmit unicasts, suppress broadcast and multicasts

Multicast and broadcast transmissions within a WLAN cell cause a load on the bandwidth of the cell, especially since the WLAN clients often do not know how to handle these transmissions. The AP already intercepts a large part of the multicast and broadcast transmissions in the cell with ARP spoofing. With the restriction to unicast transmissions it filters out unnecessary IPv4 broadcasts from the requests, such as Bonjour or NetBIOS.

The suppression of multicast and broadcast transmissions is also a requirement from the HotSpot 2.0 specification.

Encryption settings

Details for the encryption over the logical interface in LANconfig are set under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Encryption**.



Enable encryption

Enable or disable encryption for this WLAN interface.

Method/key 1 length

Set the encryption method to be used here. Possible values are:

802.11i (WPA)-PSK

Encryption according to the 802.11i standard offers the highest security. The 128-bit AES encryption used here offers security equivalent to that of a VPN connection. Select this setting if no RADIUS server is available and authentication is based on a pre-shared key.

802.11i (WPA)-802.1X

Select this option if authentication is performed by a RADIUS server. When using this setting, additionally ensure that the RADIUS server is configured in the 802.1X settings.

WEP 152, WEP 128, WEP 64

Encryption according to the WEP standard with key lengths of 128, 104 or 40 bits respectively. This setting should only be used if the WLAN client does not support the modern methods.

WEP 152-802.1X, WEP 128-802.1X, WEP 64-802.1X

Encryption according to the WEP standard with key lengths of 128, 104 or 40 bits respectively, and with additional authentication via 802.1X/EAP. This setting is also only to be recommended when the hardware used by the WLAN client does not support the 802.11i standard. The 802.1X/EAP authentication offers a higher level of security than WEP encryption alone.

Enhanced Open

Until now, hotspots were mainly operated without encryption, meaning that the data transmitted over the wireless interface was open to inspection. Also, the widespread practice of securing a hotspot with WPA2-PSK and publicly posting the shared key provides limited security. Since WPA2-PSK does not provide Perfect Forward Secrecy, an attacker who knows the key can use it to decrypt recordings of data traffic. The Enhanced Open method minimizes these risks. Clients that support this method use encrypted communication to prevent other users in the same radio cell from eavesdropping on their communications. The threat of a man-in-the-middle attack remains, but the risk is much lower than when using an unencrypted open hotspot. Just set the encryption method. That is all you need to do to encrypt communications for clients that support this method. To use Enhanced Open with the Public Spot, also see *Setting up a secure hotspot with Enhanced Open* on page 1229.

Enhanced Open Transitional

The Enhanced Open Transition mode allows connections to clients that support Enhanced Open and also to those that do not yet support Enhanced Open. With the transition mode in operation, the regular Enhanced Open SSID is operated in parallel to an unencrypted/open SSID with the same name and otherwise identical settings.

A prerequisite for this is that at least one other SSID is available and unused on the selected radio module. Depending on the device, a total of 15 or 16 SSIDs are available per radio module. If no SSID is available, both the Open Transition SSID and the actual Enhanced Open SSID will not be activated.

Key 1/passphrase

In line with the encryption method activated, you can enter a special WEP key for the respective logical WLAN interface or a passphrase when using WPA-PSK:

› The passphrase, or the "password" for the WPA-PSK method, is entered as a string of at least 8 and up to 63 ASCII characters.

Please be aware that the security of this encryption method depends on the confidential treatment of this passphrase. Passphrases should not be made public to larger circles of users.

› The WEP key 1, that applies only to its respective logical WLAN interface, can be entered in different ways depending on the key length. Rules for entering the keys can be found in the description of the WEP group key.

RADIUS server

If you select an authentication method based on the IEEE 802.1X standard under **Method/Key 1 length**, you specify the profile of a RADIUS server here.

WPA-Version

WPA version for encryption offered by the access point to the WLAN clients.

WPA1

WPA2 only

WPA2

WPA2 only

WPA1/2

WPA1 and WPA2 in one SSID (radio cell)

WPA2/3

WPA2 and WPA3 in one SSID (radio cell)

WPA3

WPA3 only

WPA1/2/3

WPA1, WPA2 and WPA3 in one SSID (radio cell)

WPA1 session key type

If '802.11i (WPA)-PSK' has been entered as the encryption method, the procedure for generating a session or group key for WPA1 can be selected here:

AES

The AES method will be used.

TKIP

The TKIP method will be used.

AES/TKIP

The AES method will be used. If the client hardware does not support the AES method, TKIP will be used.

WPA2 and WPA3 session key types

Here you select the methods that should be offered for generating the WPA2 or WPA3 session or group keys. The following Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) methods can be offered: AES-CCMP-128, AES-CCMP-256, AES-GCMP-128, AES-GCMP-256.

WPA rekeying cycle

A 48-bit long initialization vector (IV) impedes attackers in their attempts to calculate the WPA key. The true key consisting of the IV and WPA key only repeats every 16 million packets. In high-traffic WLANs, the key is repeated only after several hours. To avoid repetition of the key, WPA automatically renegotiates the key at regular intervals. This takes place before repetition of the key.

Enter a value in seconds after which the key is renegotiated.

The standard value is '0' and the key is not negotiated in advance.

WPA2/3 key management

Here you specify the standard to be used for WPA2/3 key management. Possible values are:

Standard

Enables key management according to the IEEE 802.11i standard without Fast Roaming and with keys based on SHA-1. Depending on the configuration, the WLAN clients in this case must use opportunistic key caching, PMK caching or pre-authentication.

Fast roaming

Enables fast roaming as per 802.11r

SHA256

Enables key management according to the IEEE 802.11w standard with keys based on SHA-256.

Combinations of these three settings

Activates a corresponding combination.

Although it is possible to make multiple selections, this is advisable only if you are sure that the clients attempting to login to the AP are compatible. Unsuitable clients may refuse a connection if an option other than **Standard** is enabled.

Client EAP method

In WLAN client operating mode, APs can authenticate themselves to another AP using EAP/802.1X. To activate the EAP/802.1X authentication in client mode, the client EAP method is selected as the encryption method for the first logical WLAN network.

Note that the selected client EAP method must match the settings of the access point that the AP is attempting to log onto.

In addition to setting the client EAP method, also be sure to observe the corresponding setting for the WLAN client operation mode. The client EAP method setting has no function on logical WLAN networks other than WLAN 1.

IAPP passphrase

This passphrase is used to implement encrypted opportunistic key caching. See *Opportunistic key caching (OKC)* on page 876.

PMK caching

When establishing a connection from a WLAN client to an AP operating with 802.1X-authentication, the two stations negotiate a shared key, known as the Pairwise Master Key (PMK), for the subsequent encryption. In applications with mobile WLAN clients (laptops in large offices, moving objects with WLAN connections in the industrial sector, smartphones), the WLAN clients often switch between the APs they use to access the WLAN network. And although WLAN clients roam back and forth between different APs, in most cases these tend to be the same ones.

APs typically save a negotiated PMK for a certain period of time. WLAN devices in WLAN client mode also store PMKs. As soon as a WLAN client starts a login procedure for which a connection already existed, the WLAN client can directly transfer the existing PMK to the AP. In this way, the two remote stations skip the PMK negotiation phase while establishing the connection, and the WLAN client and AP establish the connection much faster.

Pre-authentication

Fast authentication by means of the Pairwise Master Key (PMK) only works if the WLAN client was logged on to the AP previously. The WLAN client uses pre-authentication to reduce the time to logon to the AP at the first logon attempt.

Usually, a WLAN client carries out a background scan of the environment to find existing APs that it could connect to. APs that support WPA2/802.1X can communicate their pre-authentication capability to any WLAN clients that issue requests. A WPA2 pre-authentication differs from a normal 802.1X authentication as follows:

- The WLAN client logs on to the new AP via the infrastructure network, which interconnects the APs. This can be an Ethernet connection or a WDS link (wireless distribution system), or a combination of both connection types.
- A pre-authentication is distinguished from a normal 802.1X authentication by the differing Ethernet protocol (EtherType). This allows the current AP and all other network partners to treat the pre-authentication as a normal data transmission from the WLAN client.
- After successful pre-authentication, the negotiated PMK is stored to the new AP and the WLAN client.

  The use of PMKs is a prerequisite for pre-authentication. Otherwise, pre-authentication is not possible.
- When the client wants to connect to the new AP, the stored PMK significantly accelerates the logon procedure. The further procedure is equivalent to the PMK caching.

On the client side, the number of concurrent pre-authentications is limited to four. This minimizes the network load on the central RADIUS server in network environments with large numbers of APs.

Encrypt management frames

By default, the management information transmitted on a WLAN for establishing and operating data connections is unencrypted. Anybody within a WLAN cell can receive this information, even those who are not associated with an AP. Although this does not entail any risk for encrypted data connections, the injection of fake management information could severely disturb the communications within a WLAN cell.

The IEEE 802.11w standard encrypts this management information, meaning that potential attackers can no longer interfere with the communications if they don't have the corresponding key.

As of WPA3, management frames must be encrypted. For WPA2, this is optional.

WPA 802.1X security level

WPA-3 additionally features support for CNSA Suite B cryptography, which is an optional part of WPA3-Enterprise for high-security environments. Suite B ensures that all links in the encryption chain match with one another. Suite B forms classes of bit lengths for hashed, symmetric, and asymmetric encryption in order to provide suitable levels of protection. For example, an SHA-2 hash with 256 bits matches AES with 128 bits. Where Suite B is operated, the support of all other combinations is expressly excluded. Consequently, the encryption chain consists of links of equal strength.

Further information on CNSA Suite B can be found at the following link: *CNSA algorithm suite factsheet*

The switch **WPA 802.1X security level** under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Logical WLAN settings** is used to enable the optional Suite B encryption. With "Suite B 192 bits" support enabled, the following EAP cipher suites are enforced:

- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384

Other cipher suites can no longer be used. Also enforced are a minimum key length of 3072 bits for the RSA and Diffie-Hellman key exchange, as well as 384 bits for the ECDSA and ECDHE key exchange. The session key type AES-GCMP-256 is also enforced.

If these cipher suites are not supported by the WLAN clients or the remaining infrastructure (e.g. the RADIUS server), then no connection is possible!

With “Suite B 128 bits” support enabled, the following EAP cipher suites are enforced:

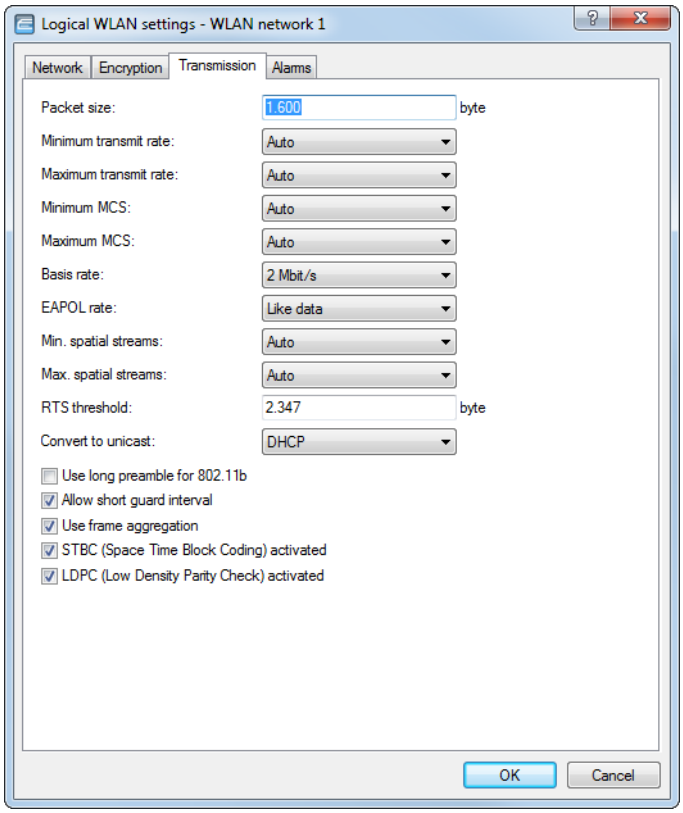
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384

Other cipher suites can no longer be used. Also enforced are a minimum key length of 3072 bits for the RSA and Diffie-Hellman key exchange, as well as 384 bits for the ECDSA and ECDHE key exchange. The session key type AES-GCMP-128 is also enforced.
Because the session key types AES-GCMP-128 and AES-GCMP-256 are not supported by all WLAN modules, the use of Suite B cryptography may be limited or impossible, depending on the device type.

If these cipher suites are not supported by the WLAN clients or the remaining infrastructure (e.g. the RADIUS server), then no connection is possible!

Transmission settings

Details for the data transmission over the logical interface in LANconfig are set under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Transmission**.



Packet size

Smaller data packets cause fewer transmission errors than larger packets, although the proportion of header information in the traffic increases, leading to a drop in the effective network load. Increase the factory value only if your wireless network is largely free from interference and very few transmission errors occur. Reduce the value to reduce the occurrence of transmission errors.

Minimum and maximum transmit rate

Normally the AP negotiates the data transmission speeds continuously and dynamically with the connected WLAN clients. The AP adjusts the transmission speeds to the reception conditions. As an alternative, you can set fixed values for the minimum and maximum transmission speeds if you wish to prevent the dynamic speed adjustment.

Modulation coding scheme, MCS (802.11n only)

A specific MCS number denotes a unique combination from the modulation of the individual carriers (BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM), coding rate (i.e. proportion of error correction bits in the raw data) and number of spatial streams. 802.11n uses this term instead of the term “data rate” used in older wireless LAN standards because data rate is no longer an unambiguous description.

MCS index	Data streams	Modulation	Coding rate	Data throughput (GI=0.4 µs, 40 MHz)
0	1	BPSK	1/2	15
1	1	QPSK	1/2	30
2	1	QPSK	3/4	45
3	1	16QAM	1/2	60
4	1	16QAM	3/4	90
5	1	64QAM	1/2	120
6	1	64QAM	3/4	135
7	1	64QAM	5/6	150
8	2	BPSK	1/2	30
9	2	QPSK	1/2	60
10	2	QPSK	3/4	90
11	2	16QAM	1/2	120
12	2	16QAM	3/4	180
13	2	64QAM	1/2	240
14	2	64QAM	3/4	270
15	2	64QAM	5/6	300

The MCS selection therefore indicates the type and minimum or maximum number of modulation parameters that should be used for one or two spatial data streams. Within these limits, the appropriate MCS is selected when the connection is established depending on the current conditions and may be adapted during the connection if required. This also defines the maximum attainable data throughput, indicated in the last column of the table (here for the short guard interval GI = 0.4 µs using the 40MHz channel).

Basis rate

The defined basis rate should allow the slowest clients to connect to the WLAN even under poor reception conditions. A higher value should only be set here if all clients in this logical WLAN can be reached "faster". By setting the transmission rate to auto, the AP collects information about the transmission rates of the various WLAN clients. Clients automatically notify the AP of this rate with each unicast communication. The AP takes the lowest transmission rate from the list of associated clients and applies this to all multicast and broadcast transmissions.

EAPOL rate (EAP over LAN)

WLAN clients use EAPOL to log on to APs via WPA and 802.1X. They encapsulating EAP packets in Ethernet frames to allow EAP communications on layer-2 connections.

Under certain circumstances it may be desirable to select a lower data rate for the transfer of EAPOL packets than that available for the payload data. In the case of mobile WLAN clients, high data rates can cause EAPOL packet losses, which in turn leads to considerable delays in client association. This procedure can be stabilized by selecting specific data rates for EAPOL.

With the default selection "Like data", EAPOL packets are handled like normal data packets. This means that the standard transmission rate for data packets is applied, or the usual rate adaptation for data packets is used.

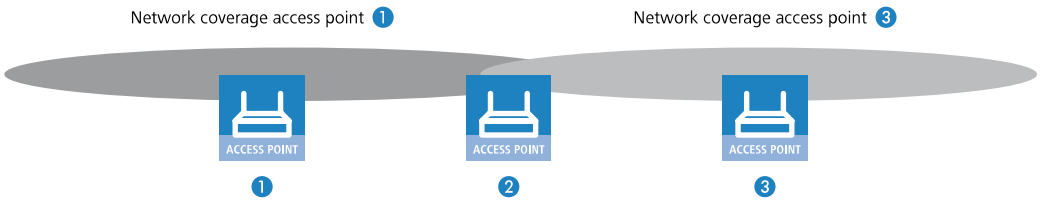
Number of spatial streams (802.11n only)

The spatial multiplexing function allows several separate data streams to be transmitted over separate antennas in order to increase data throughput. The use of this function is only recommended when the remote device can process the data streams with corresponding antennas.

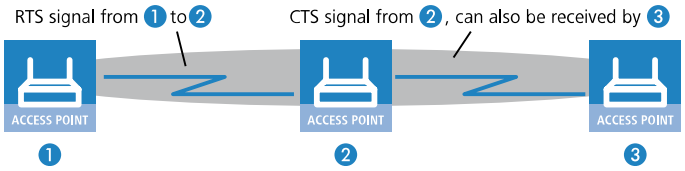
With the 'Auto' setting all spatial streams that are supported by the wireless LAN module in question are used.

RTS threshold

The RTS threshold prevents the occurrence of the “hidden station” phenomenon.



Here, the three APs **1**, **2**, and **3** are positioned such that no direct wireless connection between the two outer devices is possible. If **1** sends a packet to **2**, **3** is not aware of this as it is outside of **1**'s coverage area. **3** may also try, during the transmission from **1**, to send a packet to **2** as well, because **3** has no knowledge of the medium (in this case the wireless connection) being blocked. A collision results and neither of the transmissions from **1** nor **3** to **2** will be successful. The RTS/CTS protocol is used to prevent collisions.



To this end, **1** precedes the actual transmission by sending an RTS packet to **2**, that **2** answers with a CTS. The CTS sent by **2** is now within “listening distance” of **3**, so that **3** can wait with its packet for **2**. The RTS and CTS signals each contain information about the time required for the transmission that follows.

A collision between the very short RTS packets is improbable, although the use of RTS/CTS leads to an increase in overhead. The use of this procedure is only worthwhile where long data packets are being used and the risk of collision is higher. The RTS threshold is used to define the minimum packet length for the use of RTS/CTS. The best value can be found using trial and error tests on location.

The RTS/CTS threshold value also has to be set in the WLAN client, as far as the driver and/or operating system allow this.

Convert to unicast

You have the following options for converting data streams to unicast:

None

No data streams are converted to unicast.

DHCP

Response messages sent from the DHCP server as a broadcast are converted into unicasts. This form of message delivery is more reliable because data packets sent as a broadcast have no specific addressee, they do not use optimized transmission techniques such as ARP spoofing or IGMP/MLD snooping, and they have a low data rate.

Multicast

After activation of the feature, multicast data streams intended for transmission over WLAN interfaces are converted on the MAC layer or WLAN layer into individual unicast data streams for each client. Although the packets are identical for each client, the fact that they are now part of a unicast means that they can be transmitted at the highest possible data rate supported by the respective client. Even though the packets are now duplicated, in most scenarios the much faster transmission means that significantly less airtime is consumed, which benefits the other transmissions.

In order for the feature to work, you need to enable and configure IGMP snooping on the device. IGMP snooping is used to determine which client wants to receive which multicast stream. This ensures that the appropriate target clients or addresses are available for the multicast conversion.

DHCP and multicast

Converts DHCP and multicast data streams to unicast.

Use long preamble for 802.11b

Normally, the clients in 802.11b mode negotiate the length of the preamble with the AP. "Long preamble" should only be set when the clients require this setting to be fixed.

Allow short guard interval (802.11n only)

This option is used to reduce the transmission pause between two signals from 0.8 µs (default) to 0.4 µs (short guard interval). This increases the effective time available for data transmission and thus the data throughput. However, the wireless LAN system becomes more liable to disruption that can be caused by interference between two consecutive signals.

The short guard interval is activated in automatic mode, provided that the remote station supports this. Alternatively the short guard mode can be switched off.

Use frame aggregation (802.11n only)

Frame aggregation is used to combine several data packets (frames) into one large packet and transmit them together. This method serves to reduce the packet overhead, and the data throughput increases.

Frame aggregation is not suitable when working with mobile receivers or time-critical data transmissions such as voice over IP.

STBC (space time block coding) activated (802.11n only)

STBC is an IEEE 802.11n coding procedure. The function 'STBC' (Space Time Block coding) additionally varies the transmission of data packets over time to minimize time-related effects on the data. Due to the time offset of the packets the recipient has an even better chance of receiving error-free data packets, regardless of the number of antennas. This results in better reception conditions in a MIMO system.

LDPC (low density parity check) activated (802.11n only)

LDPC is an error correction method. IEEE 802.11n uses convolution coding (CC) as the standard method for error correction, and the more effective LDPC method of error correction is available an an option.

In contrast to CC encoding, LDPC encoding uses larger packets to calculate checksums and can also recognize more bit errors. The improved ratio of payload to checksum data enables LDPC encoding to provide a higher data transfer rate.

Hard retries (in WEBconfig only)

This value defines the number of times that the hardware should attempt to send packets before a Tx error message is issued. Smaller values mean that a packet which cannot be sent blocks the sender for less time.

Soft retries (in WEBconfig only)

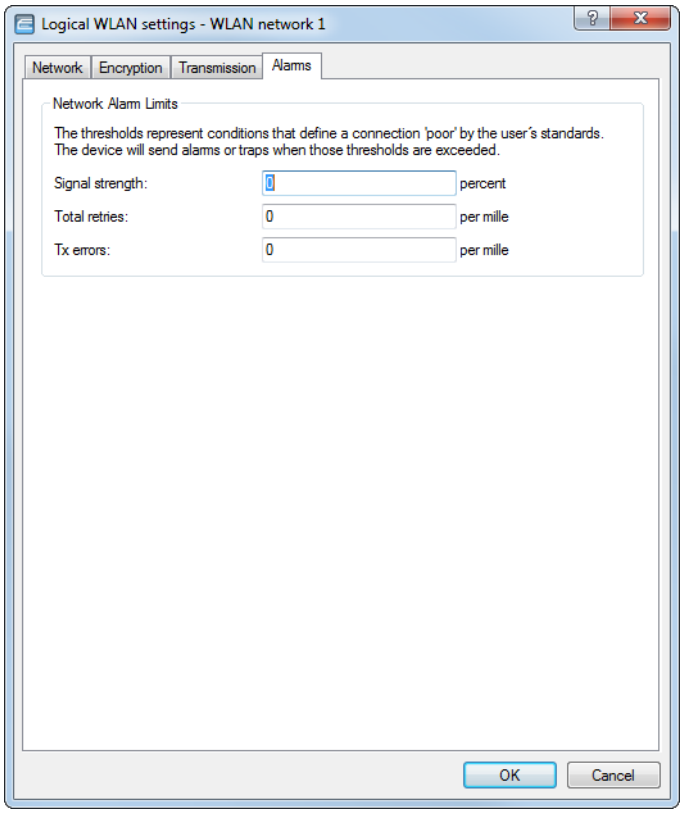
If the hardware was unable to send a packet, the number of soft retries defines how often the system should attempt retransmission.

The total number of attempts is thus (soft retries + 1) * hard retries.

The advantage of using soft retries at the expense of hard retries is that the rate-adaption algorithm immediately begins the next series of hard retries with a lower data rate.

Alarm settings

Details for the alarms sent over the logical interface in LANconfig are set under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Alarms**.



Typical situations that cause problems in the wireless LAN environment include a decrease in signal strength below a certain threshold, the percentage of lost packets exceeding a certain threshold, or packets frequently having to be resent—all of which can greatly reduce the available bandwidth.

In order to recognize and react to these situations, LANCOM WLAN devices now issue alerts to provide information on the over- or undershooting of threshold values.

A connection is not absolutely rated as poor. The assessment always depends on the parameters that are specified. It should be noted that threshold limits that are too high or too low can lead to incorrect evaluation, and that a very large number of false alerts could be the result. A certain amount of packet loss and fluctuating signal strengths are to be expected even for stable wireless connections.

Here you can set the limit values for the individual SSIDs. Threshold values can also be set for point-to-point links (WLAN bridges) operated by an AP. These limits are used to evaluate a client's connection to the SSID and the connection to a P2P remote.

Signal strength

The parameter specifies the minimum of the required signal strength in percent. The alarm is triggered when the signal strength falls below the configured value. An alarm limit must be between 1 and 100. The value 0 switches the alarm off.

In the case of client and P2P links, separate values are evaluated for beacon and data signal strength. If available, the beacon signal is preferred for comparison because the values are up-to-date, even though there is currently no traffic on the connection.

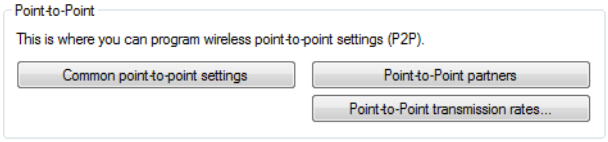
Total retries

This parameter specifies the maximum limit of the retry rate per mille. The alarm is triggered when the ratio of total retries and Tx packets reaches the configured value. An alarm limit must be between 1 and 1000. The value 0 switches the alarm off.

Tx-Errors

This parameter specifies the maximum limit of the transmit error rate per mille. The alarm is triggered when the ratio of Tx errors and Tx packets reaches the configured value. An alarm limit must be between 1 and 1000. The value 0 switches the alarm off.

12.18.4 Point-to-point

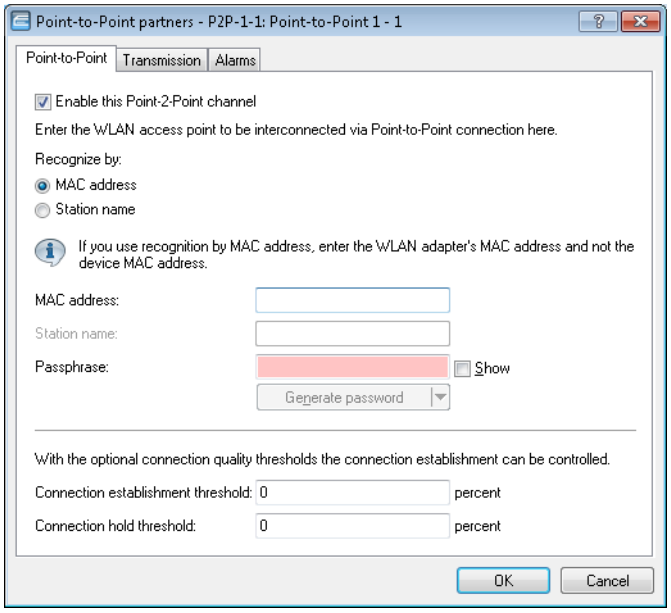


LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Point-to-point**

Here you configure the settings required by an AP for a point-to-point WLAN bridge. For further information, please see *Establishing WLAN bridges* on page 864:

12.18.5 Point-to-point partners

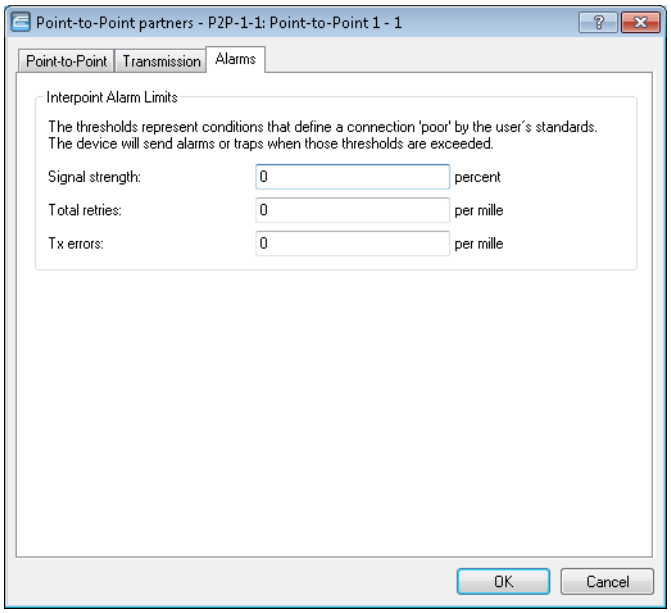
Up to 16 point-to-point connections can be activated for each WLAN module. In LANconfig you find these settings under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Point-to-point** > **Point-to-point partners**



Proceed as follows to set up a point-to-point link:

1. Select the option **Enable this point-2-point channel**.
2. Select whether the P2P peer is to be identified by its **MAC address** or its **Station name**.
3. The corresponding text box is activated. Enter the MAC address or station name.

If you work with detection by MAC address, enter the MAC address of the WLAN module here and not that of the device itself.



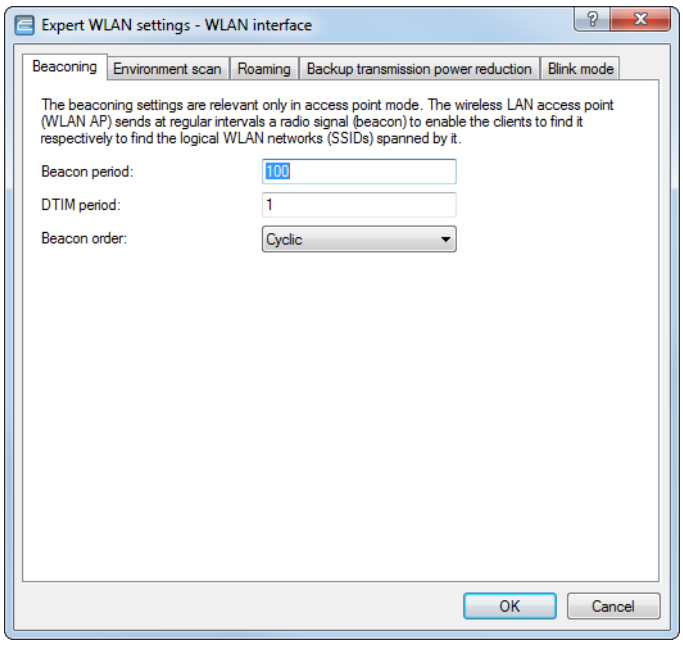
On the **Alarm** tab,you can set threshold values for **signal strength**, **total repetitions** and **Tx errors** for the point-to-point connection. If the value exceeds or falls below this value, the access point sets off alarms or traps.

Conclude your entries by clicking on **OK**.

12.18.6 Expert WLAN settings

The beaconing table

Settings in the beaconing table influence the transmission of beacons by the access point in AP mode. In part this can influence the roaming behavior of clients, and in part this serves to optimize the MultiSSID mode for older WLAN clients.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Extended settings** > **Expert WLAN settings** > **Beaconing**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Beaconing**

Beacon period

This value defines the time interval in Kµs between beacon transmission (1 Kµs corresponds to 1024 microseconds and is a measurement unit of the 802.11 standard. 1 Kµs is also known as a Timer Unit (TU)). Smaller values result in a shorter beacon timeout period for the client and enable quicker roaming in case of failure of an AP, but they also increase the WLAN overhead.

DTIM period

This value defines the number of beacons which are collected before multicasts are broadcast. Higher values enable longer client sleep intervals, but worsen the latency times.

Beacon order

Beacon order refers to the order in which beacons are sent to the various WLAN networks. For example, if three logical WLAN networks are active and the beacon period is 100 Kµs, then the beacons will be sent to the three WLANs every 100 Kµs. Depending on the beacon order, the beacons are transmitted at times as follows.

Cyclic

In this mode the AP transmits the first beacon transmission at 0 Kµs to WLAN-1, followed by WLAN-2 and WLAN-3. For the second beacon transmission (100 Kµs) WLAN-2 is the first recipient, followed by WLAN-3 and then WLAN-1. For the third beacon transmission (200 Kµs) the order is WLAN-3, WLAN-1, WLAN-2. After this the sequence starts again.

Staggered

In this mode, the beacons are not sent together at a particular time, rather they are divided across the available beacon periods. Beginning at 0 Kµs, WLAN-1 only is sent; after 33.3 Kµs WLAN-2, after 66.6 Kµs WLAN-3. At the start of a new beacon period, transmission starts again with WLAN-1.

Simple burst

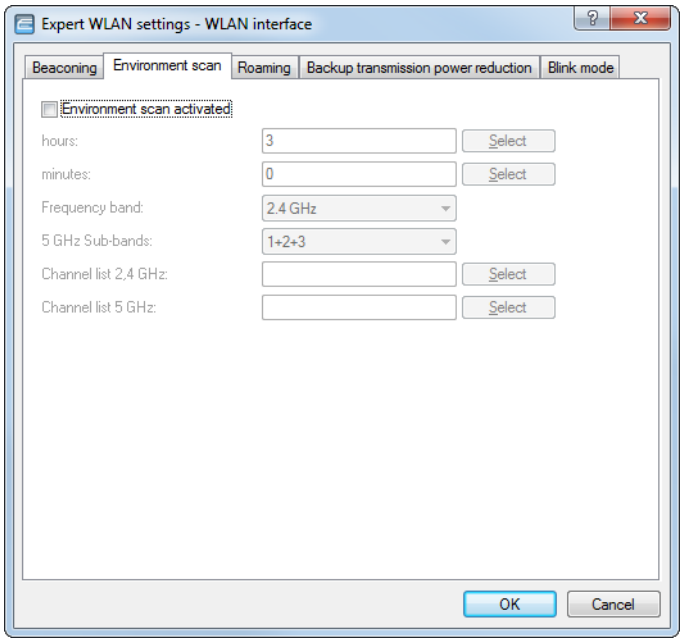
In this mode the AP always transmits the beacons for the WLAN networks in the same order. The first beacon transmission (0 Kµs) is WLAN-1, WLAN-2 and WLAN-3; the second transmission is in the same order, and so on.

Some older WLANs are unable to process the quick succession of beacons which occur with simple burst. Consequently these clients often recognize the first beacons only and can only associate with this network.

Staggered transmission of beacons produces better results but increases load on the AP's processor. The preset cyclic transmission proves to be a good compromise as all networks are transmitted first in turn.

Environment scan

Your WLAN's environment can be regularly searched for rogue APs. See also *Starting an environment scan at a configurable time* on page 839. These settings in LANconfig are located under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Extended settings** > **Expert WLAN settings** > **Environment scan**.



Environment scan activated

Activates / deactivates the environment scan.

The following parameters are grayed out if the environment scan is disabled.

Hours

Contains the hour value of the time for the environment scan.

Minutes

Contains the minute value of the time for the environment scan.

Frequency band

Contains the frequency bands for the environment scan.

Possible values:

2.4 GHz

The 2.4-GHz frequency band is scanned.

5 GHz

The 5-GHz frequency band is scanned.

2.4/5 GHz

Scans the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz frequency bands.

5-GHz subbands

Contains the subbands of the 5-GHz frequency band.

Channel list 2.4 GHz

Specifies the 2.4-GHz channels for the environment scan.

If you make no entries here, the environmental scan is performed for all channels of the 2.4-GHz frequency band.

Possible values (multiple selection allowed):

1 to 13

In steps of 1.

Channel list 5 GHz

Specifies the 5-GHz channels for the environment scan.

If you make no entries here, the environmental scan is performed for all channels of the 5-GHz frequency band.

Possible values (multiple selection allowed):

36 to 64

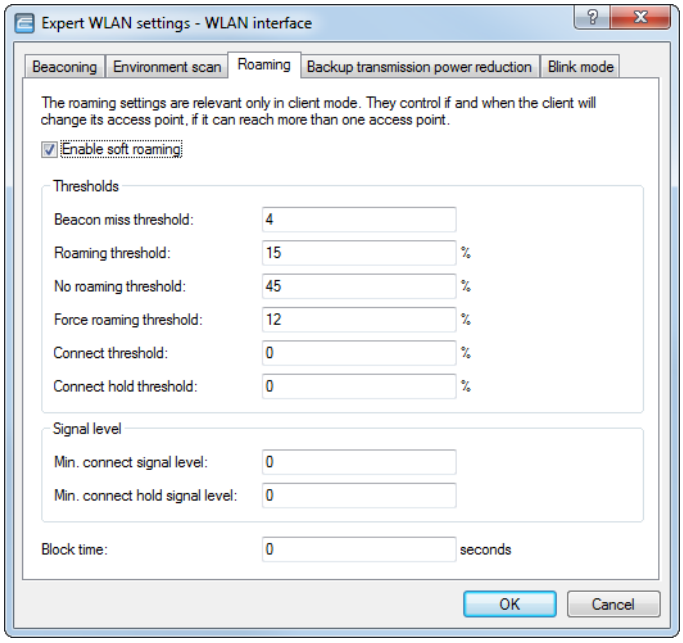
In steps of 4.

100 to 140

In steps of 4.

The roaming table

The roaming table contains various threshold values which control the behavior of the WLAN device when it is roaming in the 'Client' operating mode.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Extended settings** > **Expert WLAN settings** > **Roaming**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Roaming**

Enable soft roaming

With this option enabled, a client uses scan information to roam to a stronger AP (soft roaming). Roaming due to connection loss (hard roaming) is unaffected by this. The roaming threshold values only take effect when soft roaming is activated.

Beacon miss threshold

The beacon loss threshold defines how many AP beacons can be missed before a registered client starts searching again.

Higher values will delay the recognition of an interrupted connection, so a longer time period will pass before the connection is re-established.

The lower the value set here, the sooner a potential interruption to the connection will be recognized; the client can start searching for an alternative AP sooner.

Values which are too small may cause the client to detect lost connections more often than necessary.

Roaming threshold

This value is the percentage difference in signal strength between access points above which the client will switch to the stronger AP.

Other contexts require the value of signal strengths in dB. The following conversion applies:

64dB – 100%

32dB – 50%

0dB – 0%

No roaming threshold

This threshold refers to the field strength in percent. Field strengths exceeding the value set here are considered to be so good that no switching to another AP takes place.

Force roaming threshold

This threshold refers to the field strength in percent. Field strengths below the value set here are considered to be so poor that a switch to another AP is required.

Connect threshold

This value defines field strength in percent defining the minimum that an AP has to show for a client to attempt to associate with it.

Connect hold threshold:

This threshold defines field strength in percent. A connection to an AP with field strength below this value is considered as lost.

Min. connect signal level

Similar to the connect threshold, but specified as absolute signal strength.

Min. connect hold signal level

Similar to the connection hold threshold, but specified as absolute signal strength.

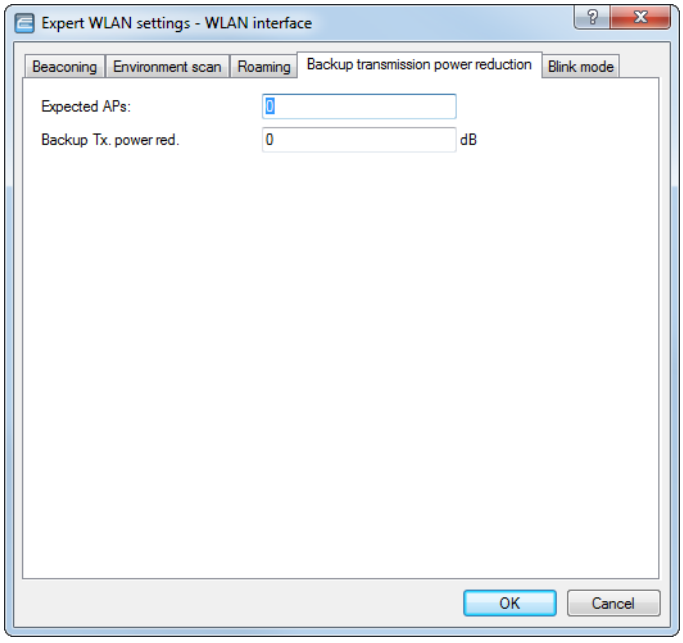
Block time

If your device is operating as a WLAN client in an environment with multiple WLAN access points all with the same SSID, you can define a time period during which the WLAN client will avoid associating with a particular AP after receiving an "association-reject" from it.

Possible values are 0 to 4294967295 seconds.

The default value is 0 seconds. Client authentication is not blocked.

Backup transmission power reduction (Adaptive Transmission Power)



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Extended settings** > **Expert WLAN settings** > **Backup transmission power reduction**

Configure the settings of backup transmission power reduction here. For further information, please see *Adaptive transmission power* on page 875:

Expected APs

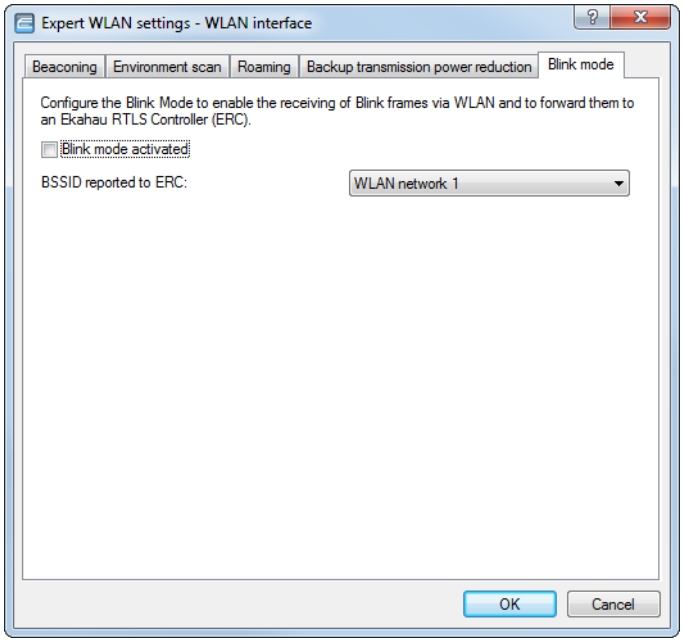
Specify how many APs operate within a broadcast domain.

Backup TX power red.

Here you specify the transmission power reduction in dB to be applied by the AP if an AP from the configured group is no longer reachable.

The default transmission power reduction is configured under **Wireless LAN** > **General** by clicking the button **Physical WLAN settings** (selecting the WLAN interface, if necessary) and accessing the **Radio** tab.

Blink mode



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Extended settings** > **Expert WLAN settings** > **Blink mode**

Configure the settings for the AiRISTA Flow blink mode here. For further information, please see *AiRISTA Flow Blink Mode* on page 927:

Blink mode activated

Enable or disable the blink mode for this interface here.

BSSID reported to ERC

Here you select the logical WLAN interface that the device reports to the ERC.

The ERC "maps" this BSSID to a particular location. For example, if this location were a server room, the ERC knows that Wi-Fi tag "A" is located in the server room as long as the "blink" arrives from the BSSID belonging to the corresponding APs.

12.18.7 Configurable data rates per WLAN module

Some application scenarios may require you to exclude certain data rates, for example where environmental conditions are unfavorable. For this reason it is possible to configure the data rates per SSID or P2P link precisely according to your particular requirements.

In most cases there is no need to change the default settings. Ensure that only WLAN experts adjust these settings, as improper changes may lead to problems with your WLAN network.

By configuring the data rates for each WLAN module, you fix the data rates used by the AP to communicate with its clients (TX) as well as the data rates "announced" by the AP to the client for its communication with the AP (RX).

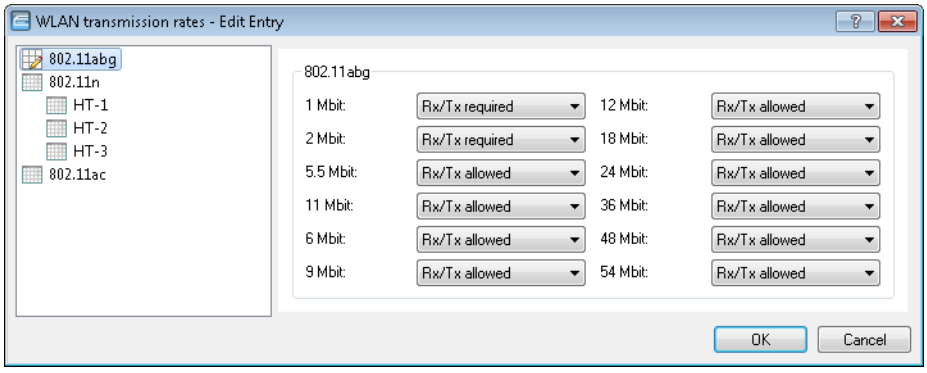
This rate adaptation specifies a minimum and a maximum data rate, and it also allows you to disable certain data rates between these limits.

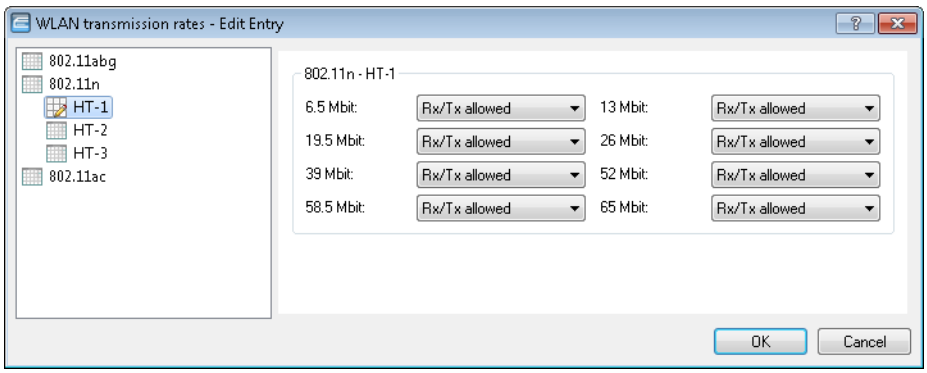
The configuration of data rates is only possible for stand-alone APs. Using this in WLC scenarios requires the use of scripts, which the WLC rolls-out to the APs.

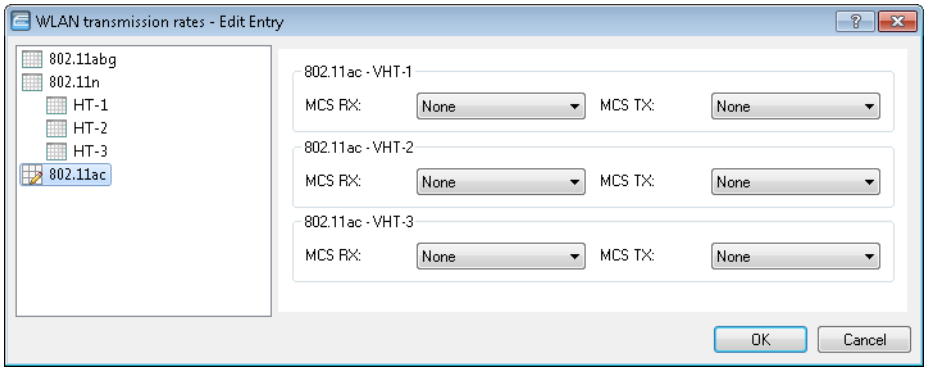
Configuring the data rates with LANconfig

To configure the data rates with LANconfig, switch to the view **Wireless LAN** > **General**, and in the section **Extended settings** open the dialog **WLAN transmission rates**. LANconfig lists the settings for all of the available interfaces. To change the setting for an interface, select its entry and click on **Edit**.

On the left you select the standard that you want to configure.







The configuration can be modified for each of the standards separately

- 802.11abg
- 802.11n
  - HT-1
  - HT-2
  - HT-3
- 802.11ac
  - VHT-1
  - VHT-2
  - VHT-3

Depending on the standard, the following settings are available for each transmission rate and each SSID or P2P link:

Rx/Tx required

The AP uses beacons and probe responses to announce to the client that the data rate is “supported” and “required”. The AP also uses this data rate to communicate with the client. If the client does not support a particular rate, the AP will reject a connection request.

Rx/Tx allowed

The AP announces to the client that the rate is “supported”. The AP also uses the rate to communicate with the client. However, the AP also accepts requests from clients that do not support this rate.

Rx required

The AP announces to the client that the rate is “supported” and “required”, but does not use the rate to communicate with the client.

Rx allowed

The AP announces to the client that the rate is “supported”, but does not use the rate to communicate with the client.

Deactivated

The AP does not announce this rate and does not use it to communicate with the client.

MCS-9/8/7

In the case of 802.11ac modules, the data rate per stream option (1, 2 or 3 streams) is restricted to the maximum MCS only.

None

With 802.11ac modules, the respective stream option is disabled for the corresponding data direction.

12.18.8 AiRISTA Flow Blink Mode

Ekahau and their "Real Time Location System" (RTLS) allow you to determine the location of objects and persons within a wireless LAN. This works with special Wi-Fi transmitters known as "Wi-Fi tags" that are located on the device or person's body and which send specially coded Wi-Fi packets. APs located nearby receive these packets, enrich them with additional information (e.g. RSSI), encapsulate them in the "TaZmen Sniffer Protocol" (TZSP) and forward this information to the "Ekahau RTLS Controller" (ERC) installed on the network. The ERC analyzes this data to determine the position of the Wi-Fi tag.

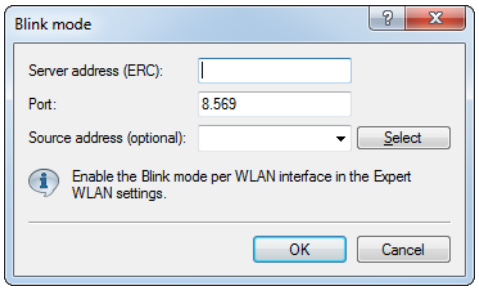
The Wi-Fi tags support three modes for sending the Wi-Fi packets:

- **Associated mode**: In "associated mode" the Wi-Fi tag functions like a Wi-Fi client. It associates with a nearby AP and stays in constant contact with it. While this provides seamless positioning, this mode consumes more power and the battery life of the Wi-Fi tag is reduced. In "associated mode" the Wi-Fi tags use the Ekahau Location Protocol (ELP).
- **Blink mode**: In "blink mode", the Wi-Fi tag transmits short Wi-Fi packets but does not connect to an AP. In "blink mode" the Wi-Fi tags use the "Ekahau Blink Protocol" (EBP).
- **Mixed mode**: In "Mixed mode", the Wi-Fi tags use EBP to send the RSSI and ELP to send status messages to the ERC.

Configuring the AiRISTA Flow Blink Mode with LANconfig

The blink mode only works with 802.11n WLAN modules, not with 802.11ac WLAN modules. Correspondingly, it is not possible to activate the 'blink mode' for 802.11ac WLAN modules in LANconfig. The option is permanently disabled for devices of this type.

To configure access to the RTLS Server (ERC) with LANconfig, open the view **Wireless LAN** > **General** and click the button **Blink mode**.



Server address (ERC)

Enter the address of the ERC. You can enter an IP address or a host name.

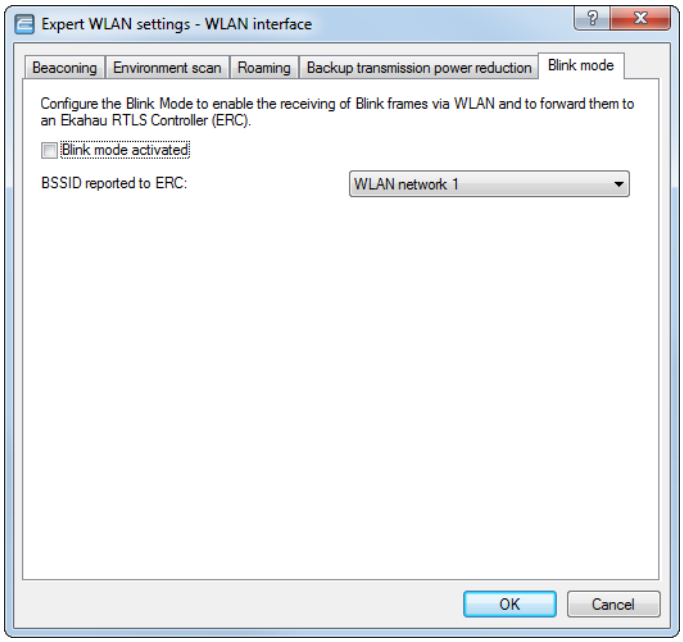
Port

Contains the default UDP port (8569) for communication with the ERC. Change this value only in exceptional cases.

Source address (optional)

Optionally, specify a source address.

To configure the blink mode for each physical WLAN interface, navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** and click the button **Expert WLAN settings**. If applicable, select the desired WLAN interface from the drop-down list and switch to the **Blink mode** tab.



Blink mode activated

Enable or disable the blink mode for this interface here.

BSSID reported to ERC

Here you select the logical WLAN interface that the device reports to the ERC.

The ERC "maps" this BSSID to a particular location. For example, if this location were a server room, the ERC knows that Wi-Fi tag "A" is located in the server room as long as the "blink" arrives from the BSSID belonging to the corresponding APs.

12.18.9 Client Management

With Client Management, Wi-Fi clients are steered to the best available access point and frequency band. This feature improves the quality of wireless networks of all sizes—whether they operate stand-alone or orchestrated by the LANCOM Management Cloud. The popular band steering and client steering, which so far were separate features, have now been combined and even operate without a WLAN controller.

Compared to the previous client steering feature supported by WLCs, Client Management operates independently and without a WLC. The access points communicate with one another using the protocol IAPP.

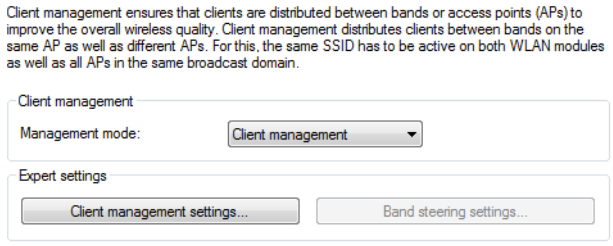
For the access points to communicate with one another, they need to be able to exchange IAPP messages. IAPP messages are transmitted by multicast. If necessary, the infrastructure—and switches in particular—requires exemptions to be created for IGMP snooping or other filtering mechanisms. IAPP uses the multicast group 224.0.1.76.

LANCOM switches in the default setting are already set up correctly for Client Management.

In this way Client Management ensures that clients are evenly distributed across the frequency bands and access points to optimize overall WLAN performance. A requirement for this is that the WLAN modules and access points in a broadcast domain all transmit on the same SSID.

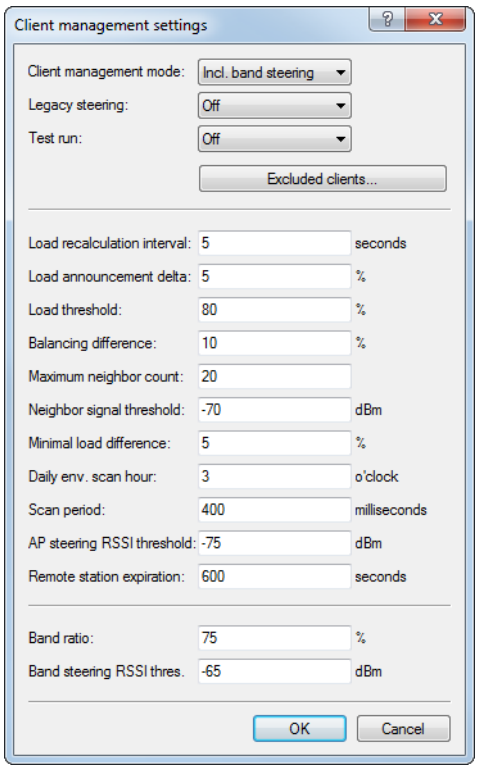
Configuration of Client Management

Client Management is switched on and off under **Wireless LAN** > **Client Management** > **Client Management** > **Management mode**. For new installations, this is turned on by default and usually does not require any special settings. As an alternative for access points with multiple WLAN modules, **AP-based band steering** can also be activated. See also *WLAN band steering* on page 849.



Expert settings

The settings for Client Management are configured under **Wireless LAN** > **Client Management** > **Expert settings** > **Client Management**. The default settings are ideal for operating Client Management in offices and school environments.



Client Management mode

Access points with multiple WLAN modules can operate Client Management with and without band steering.

Default setting:with band steering

Legacy steering

Configures whether clients that do not fully support 802.11v are also directed to other access points by Client Management. Even with legacy steering activated, Client Management first steers the 802.11v-capable clients to other access points; only then does it steer the clients that do not support 802.11v. Legacy steering forcibly disconnects these clients from the WLAN. The AP prevents the client from re-associating with it for a certain

period, so that the client itself selects another access point. Compared to clients steered with 802.11v, this can lead to a poorer user experience, although this depends mainly on the behavior of the legacy clients.

Default setting: Off

Test run

Operates the Client Management in test mode: Environment scans are performed and steering decisions are made by the system and recorded to the syslog, but no actual client steering takes place. Use the test run to test the behavior of Client Management without actually making changes to your network.

Default setting: Off

Excluded clients

In many environments, there are certain clients that are known to be unresponsive. Imagine a hospital with custom VoIP phones that are unable to properly handle dropped calls and that tend to stick to a certain access point. To avoid having to switch off Client Management completely, you can exclude these clients from client steering.

Use the table to configure the MAC addresses of the clients that are to be excluded from client steering. The wildcard character `*` can be used, which stands for any characters. However, this must not be used as the only character of a MAC address. Possible entries are, for example `01:23:45:12:34:56`, `01:*:56` or `01:23:*`.

Load recalculation interval

Configures the interval at which the load on the AP is calculated and decisions are made to steer the clients. Increase the value to reduce the load on the network. Decrease the value to steer clients faster. Values < 2 seconds are not recommended as this negatively impacts network performance. Values > 10 seconds are not recommended as client steering does not happen in time. We recommend that you use the default value.

Default value: 5 seconds

Load announcement delta

Configures the percentage change in current load at which an access point communicates the load to other access points outside of the regular announcement interval. Increase the value in installations with many mobile clients. Decrease the value in installations with fewer moving clients. The default setting has been chosen for office and school environments. Note that this value should be lower than the value configured for the balancing difference to avoid miscalculations.

Default value: 5 %

Load threshold

Configures the load threshold at which the access point starts steering regardless of the load threshold of the neighbor access points. Increase the value in low-quality/high-density scenarios such as stadiums. Decrease the value in high-quality/high-throughput scenarios such as offices/schools.

Default value: 80 %

Balancing difference

Configures the load difference between access points at which clients are steered to the access point with the lesser load. High values lead to less balanced installations, low values lead to more steering of the clients. Increase the value if excessive client steering is happening. Decrease the value to achieve maximum balancing across the installation. The default setting has been chosen for office and school environments.

Default value: 10 %

Maximum neighbor count

Configures the number of neighbor access points that Client Management on this access point takes into consideration. In high-density scenarios, a lower number can be advantageous as clients are predominantly steered to nearby access points and less management communication is required between the access points.

Values < 4 are not recommended, as there are not enough available access points for useful steering decisions. Values > 72 are not supported due to limitations of the 802.11 protocol.

Default value: 20 APs

Neighbor signal threshold

Configures the signal strength that an AP must display in order to be classified as a neighbor access point. Increase the value for high-density scenarios (for example: -60, -50). Decrease the value for scenarios where widespread coverage is required (e.g. -80, -90).

Default value: -70 dBm

Minimum load difference

Configures the minimum load difference between neighboring access points for steering to be performed between these access points. Steering is only performed when the configured load threshold is exceeded. To avoid miscalculation, the minimum load difference should not exceed the value for balancing difference. Increase the value for less steering in the installation. Decrease the value for more steering in the installation.

Default value: 5 %

Daily env. scan hour

Configures the time (00-23) at which the daily environment scan is performed as required by Client Management. The exact time of the scan is spread over a 30-minute window to minimize conflicts between concurrent environment scans. The environment scan takes about 15 seconds. No WLAN data is exchanged while the WLAN module is scanning.

Default value: 03:00 hours

Scan period

Configures the length of the environment scan used to identify neighbor access points. The scan period should be 2 to 2.5 times the configured beacon interval; the default value is suitable for the default beacon interval. This value can be configured from 200 ms to 1000 ms.

Default value: 400 ms

AP steering RSSI threshold

The signal strength that a client must have on a remote access point in order to be steered to it.

A higher signal threshold reduces the number of potentially steerable clients, thus limiting the options available to the Client Management. At the same time this would be useful in environments with high quality demands, for example where VoIP is heavily used. This requires very good signal coverage and a higher density of access points.

A lower signal threshold increases the number of potentially steerable clients, although there is a risk that clients could be assigned to access points with a poor signal quality. Clients may even refuse to be steered to an access point with a poorer signal quality. This is a help in environments with coverage over a large area. Values below -80 dBm produce poor results, as the likelihood increases that clients cannot connect to the access points they are being steered to.

The default value is ideal for office environments.

Default value: -75 dBm

Remote station expiration

Time for which an access point remembers the information about the clients of a neighboring access point. This information is used to speed up the steering decisions. The default value suits office environments with a relatively static set-up and few moving clients. Set lower values in environments with larger numbers of moving clients or with clients that connect for a short time only. Values that are too high lead to incorrect steering if the information of the cache no longer applies.

Default value: 600 seconds

Band ratio

Configures the intended distribution of clients between the radio bands. The configured ratio specifies what proportion of clients should be steered to the 5-GHz band.

Default value: 75 %

Band steering RSSI threshold

Configures the signal strength (RSSI) that a client "displays" on the other radio band in order to be steered there. The default setting is suitable for office environments.

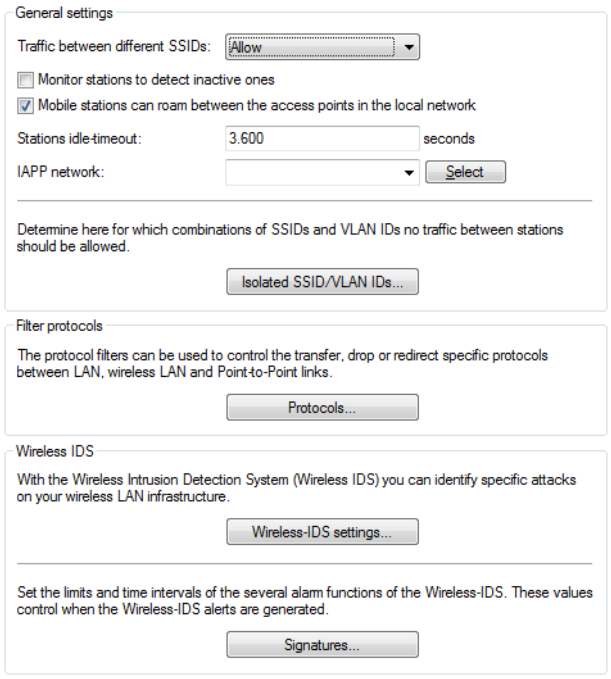
Default value: -65 dBm

12.18.10 WLAN security

In this part of the configuration, you can place limitations on the communications available to the users in the wireless network. This is done by limiting the data transfer between user groups according to individual stations or the protocol being used.

General settings

Here you find the general settings for WLAN security.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **Security**

Traffic between different SSIDs

Depending on the application, it may be required that the WLAN clients connected to an AP can—or expressly cannot—communicate with other clients. Communications between clients in different SSIDs can be allowed or stopped with this option. For models with multiple WLAN modules, this setting applies globally to all WLANs and all modules.

Communications between clients in a logical WLAN is controlled separately by the logical WLAN settings (Inter-Station-Traffic). If the Inter-SSID-Traffic is activated and the Inter-Station-Traffic deactivated, a client in one logical WLAN can communicate with clients in another logical WLAN. This option can be prevented with the VLAN settings or protocol filter.

Monitor stations to detect stations that are inactive

In particular for public WLAN access points (public spots), the charging of usage fees requires the recognition of stations that are no longer active. Monitoring involves the AP regularly sending packets to logged-in stations. If the stations do not answer these packets, then the charging systems recognizes the station as no longer active.

Mobile stations can switch between base stations in the local network (roaming)

In addition to controlling the communication between clients, you can also define whether neighboring access points can exchange information via the inter-access point protocol IAPP. The IAPP is a protocol for communication between APs. The "handoff AP" receives information that a WLAN client associated with it is switching to another AP, and that the client can be removed from its list.

Stations idle-timeout after ... seconds

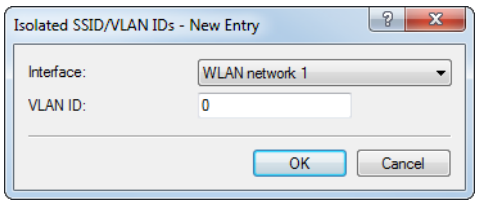
Specify a duration in seconds after which inactive stations are removed from the list of currently connected stations.

IAPP network

Roaming information exchanged via the IAPP protocol may cause high network loads. For this reason we advise that you select an ARF network to be used for the IAPP communications.

Isolated SSID/VLAN IDs

This menu allows you to map a "collective VLAN" where WLAN clients are unable to communicate with one another. Communication is only possible between WLAN client and AP (hotspot scenario). Outside of this "collective VLAN", communication between the clients can be permitted. This works perfectly transparently within a common SSID where the clients are assigned to different VLANs.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **Security** > **Isolated SSID/VLAN IDs**

Here you specify the combinations of SSIDs and VLANs between which the traffic between clients is prohibited. This table functions as a blacklist because, generally speaking, we define just a few VLANs where the communication is forbidden, but several where it is allowed.

This mechanism also works when the clients are associated with different APs (although care should be taken to ensure that the table configurations match). A prerequisite for this is that the APs are able to communicate via IAPP.

Interface

The list of available WLAN networks.

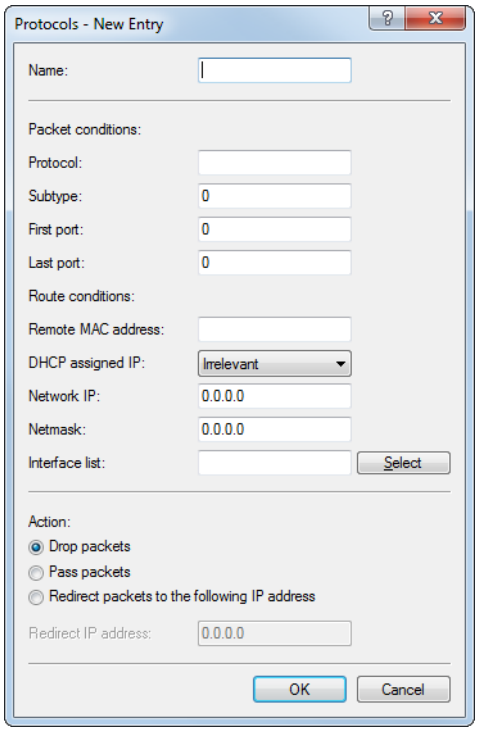
VLAN ID

The identification number of the VLAN.

Allow traffic between stations of this SSID must be permitted globally in order for it to be restricted again with this feature.

Filtering protocols

With the protocol filter you can influence the handling of certain protocols during transfer from the WLAN to the LAN. The use of appropriate rules allows the definition of which data packets should be inspected, interfaces for which the filter applies and which action should be performed on the data packets.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **Security** > **Protocols**

Command line: **Setup** > **LAN-Bridge** > **Protocol-Table**

Similar to a firewall rule, a protocol filter consists of two parts:

- The packet conditions defines the conditions that must be satisfied in order for the filter to be applied to a packet.
- The action defines what happens to the packet if the condition is met.

A packet filter is described by the following parameters:

Name

A name of your choice for the filter entry.

Protocol

The protocol that this filter is valid for. If '0' is entered as the protocol, the filter applies to **all** packets.

Subtype

The sub-protocol for which this filter is valid. If '0' is entered as the sub-protocol, the filter applies to **all** packets of the specified protocol.

First port / Last port

The port range that this filter is to be valid for. If '0' is entered as the start port, this filter will be applied to **all** ports of the corresponding protocol/sub-protocol. If '0' is entered as the end port, the start port becomes an end port.

Lists with the official protocol and port numbers are available in the Internet at www.iana.org.

Remote MAC address

The MAC address of the client to which the packet is to be sent. If no destination MAC address is entered, the filter is applied to **all** packets.

DHCP source MAC

Enabling of DHCP address tracking.

- **Yes:** The rule applies if the source MAC address of the packet is listed in the table under `Status > LAN-Bridge > DHCP-Table` as an address that obtained an IP address via DHCP.
- **No**: The rule applies if this is not the case.
- **Irrelevant**: The source MAC address is not considered.

If DHCP address tracking is enabled, any IP addresses usually entered are disregarded.

Network IP / Netmask

The IP address of the network mask to which this filter applies. Only those IP packets whose source and destination IP addresses lie within this network are captured by the rule.

If no network is entered, the filter applies to **all** packets.

Interface list

List of the interfaces to which the filter applies.

All of the LAN interfaces, DMZ interfaces, logical WLAN networks and point-to-point connections in the WLAN may be entered as interfaces.

The following examples illustrate how interfaces are specified: 'LAN-1' for the first LAN interface, 'WLAN-2-3' for the third logical WLAN network on the second physical WLAN interface, 'P2P-1-2' for the second point-to-point connection on the first physical WLAN interface.

Groups of interfaces may be specified in the form 'WLAN-1-1~WLAN-1-6' (logical WLANs 1 to 6 on the first physical WLAN interface) or with a wildcard as 'P2P-1-*' (all P2P connections on the first physical interface).

Only filter rules with valid entries in the interface list are active. A rule with no specification of the interfaces does not apply to all of them - it is ignored instead.

Action

Action performed for the data packets processed by this rule:

Redirect IP address

Destination IP address for the "Redirect" action

On redirection, the destination IP address of the packets is replaced by the Redirect IP address entered here. Furthermore, the destination MAC address is replaced by the MAC address determined using ARP for the Redirect IP address.

If ARP was unable to determine the destination MAC address, the packet is dropped rather than redirected.

Example:

Name	DHCP-Src-MAC	Dest-MAC-Addr.	Prot.	IP address	IP network	Subtype	First port	Last port	Interface list	Action	Redirect IP address
ARP	irrelevant	000000000000	0806	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0	0	0	WLAN-1-2	Pass	0.0.0.0
DHCP	irrelevant	000000000000	0800	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	17	67	68	WLAN-1-2	Pass	0.0.0.0
TELNET	irrelevant	000000000000	0800	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	6	23	23	WLAN-1-2	Redirect	192.168.11.5

Name	DHCP-Src-MAC	Dest-MAC-Addr.	Prot.	IP address	IP network	Subtype	First port	Last port	Interface list	Action	Redirect IP address
ICMP	irrelevant	000000000000	0800	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	1	0	0	WLAN-1-2	Pass	0.0.0.0
HTTP	irrelevant	000000000000	0800	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	6	80	80	WLAN-1-2	Redirect	192.168.11.5

ARP, DHCP, ICMP are allowed to pass, Telnet and HTTP are redirected to 192.168.11.5 and all other packets are dropped.

If no filter rules are defined for an interface, all packets from and destined to it are transmitted without alteration. As soon as a filter rule has been defined for an interface, all packets to be transferred via this interface are checked prior to being processed.

1. As a first step, the information required for checking is read out of the packets:
   - DHCP source MAC
   - Destination MAC address of the packet
   - Protocol, e.g. IPv4, ARP
   - Sub-protocol, e.g. TCP, UDP or ICMP for IPv4 packets, ARP Request or ARP Response for ARP packets
   - IP address and network mask (source and destination) for IPv4 packets
   - Source and destination port for IPv4 TCP or IPv4 UDP packets
2. As a second step, this information is checked against the information from the filter rules. All those rules in which the source **or** destination interface is included in the interface list are considered. Checking of the rules for the individual values is as follows:
   - For DHCP source MAC, protocol and sub-protocol, the values read out of the packets are checked for consistency with the values defined in the rule.
   - With IP addresses, the source **and** destination address of the packet are checked to see whether they lie within the range formed by the IP address and the network mask of the rule.
   - Source and destination ports are checked to see whether they lie in the range between start port and end port.

   If none of the rule values specified (not filled by wildcards) agree with the values read out of the packet, the rule is not considered applicable and is disregarded. If several rules apply, the most accurate rule action is carried out. Parameters are more accurate the further down the list of parameters they are or the further right they appear in the protocol table.

   If rules are defined for an interface, but there is no match with one of the rules for a packet from/for this interface, the default rule for this interface is used for the packet. The default rule is preconfigured for each interface with the 'drop' action but this is not visible in the protocol table. To modify a default rule for an interface, a rule with the name 'default-drop' is defined. Besides the interface naming, this rule can only contain wildcats and the required action.

   Checking of MAC addresses in packets sent over the respective interface takes on a different form to that with in-coming packets.
   - With out-going packets, the source MAC address read out of the packet is checked against the destination MAC address entered in the rule.
   - The destination MAC addresses read out of the packet are then checked to see whether they are listed as currently active DHCP clients.
   - Rules with the 'Redirect' action are ignored if they apply for an interface over which the packet is to be sent.
3. In the third step, the action associated with the applicable rule is carried out.

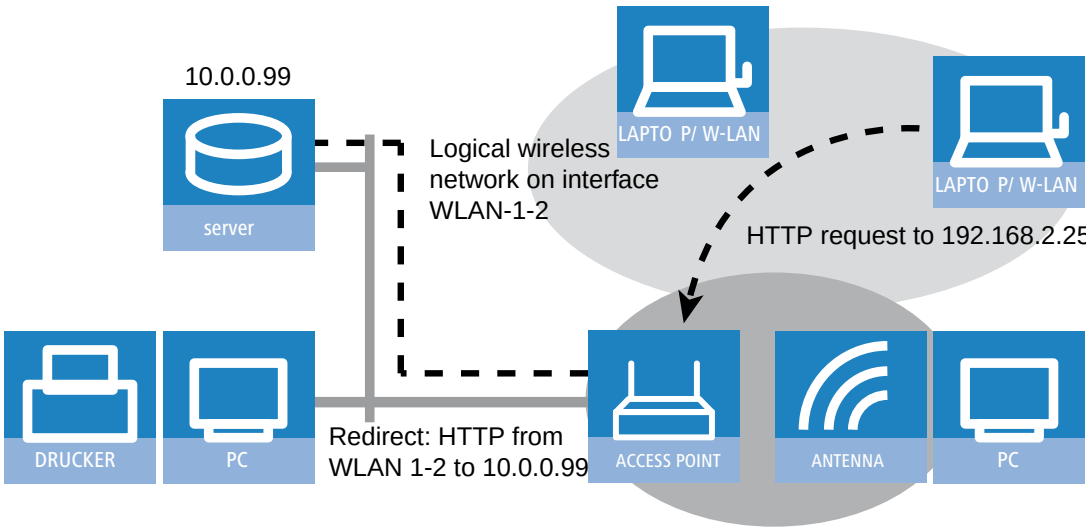
With the Redirect action, IPv4 packets can not only be transferred and dropped, they can also be communicated specifically to a particular destination. As a general rule, the destination IP address of the packet is replaced by the Redirect IP address entered. The destination MAC address of the packet is replaced by the MAC address determined by ARP and associated with the Redirect IP address.

In order for the redirected packets to find the correct sender on their “return trip”, a dynamic table is compiled with automatic filter rules that apply to packets leaving via this interface. This table can be viewed under `Status > LAN`

`bridge > Connection table`. Rules in this table have a higher priority than other matching rules with the 'Transfer' or 'Drop' actions.

Clients within wireless networks often have one aspect in common: They are highly mobile. Consequently, clients are not necessarily always connected to the same AP, but frequently change between APs and the related LANs.

The redirect function assists WLAN client applications to automatically find the correct target computer in the LAN. If a WLAN client's HTTP request from a particular logical wireless network is to be always directed to a particular server in the LAN, a filter setting with the "Redirect" action is set up for the appropriate protocol for the desired logical WLAN interface.



All requests with this protocol from this logical wireless network are automatically redirected to the target server in the LAN. The returning data packets are sent to the senders' addresses and ports according to the entries in the connection statistics, ensuring trouble-free operation in both directions.

DHCP address tracking keeps a record of which clients have received their IP addresses using DHCP. The relevant information for an interface is automatically maintained in a table under `Status > LAN Bridge > DHCP Table`. DHCP tracking is enabled on an interface if, for this interface, a minimum of one rule is defined where 'DHCP Source MAC' is set to 'Yes'.

The number of clients which may be connected to an interface via DHCP can be configured in the Port table under `Setup > LAN Bridge > Port Data`. Setting the entry to '0' means that any number of clients can register at this interface via DHCP. If the maximum number of DHCP clients is exceeded by a further attempt to register, the oldest entry in the list is deleted.

When checking data packets, IP addresses and the IP network mask defined in the rule are not used. Consequently no check is made as to whether the destination IP address of the packet lies within the range specified. Instead, a check is made as to whether the source IP address of the packet matches the IP address assigned to the client via DHCP. The connection of the two IP addresses is made based on the source MAC address.

This check can be used to block clients which have received an IP address via DHCP, but which actually use a different IP address (either intentionally or inadvertently). A rule in which the DHCP Source MAC parameter is set to 'Yes' would not apply since the two addresses do not match. The packet would instead be processed either by other rules or the default rule.

In order for DHCP tracking to work, at least two more rules must be set up for this interface, rules which are not dependent on DHCP tracking. This is necessary since the required DHCP information is not exchanged until the end of DHCP handshake. This is why packets due to be sent beforehand must be allowed by rules which do not use DHCP tracking. These usually included TCP/UDP packets on port 67 and 68 and ARP packets.

If DHCP tracking is enabled on an interface, packets received on this interface from HDCP servers are automatically dropped.

Wireless Intrusion Detection System (WIDS)

An Intrusion Detection System (IDS) recognizes attacks on a network and reports these attacks to a network management system. Especially in a professional environment, an IDS is essential for the detection and handling of potential attacks or interference.

The Wireless Intrusion Detection System (WIDS) in LCOS devices monitors the different WLANs by using a wide range of specified thresholds. If a potential attack is detected, the system reports it immediately via e-mail, SYSLOG, or SNMP traps.

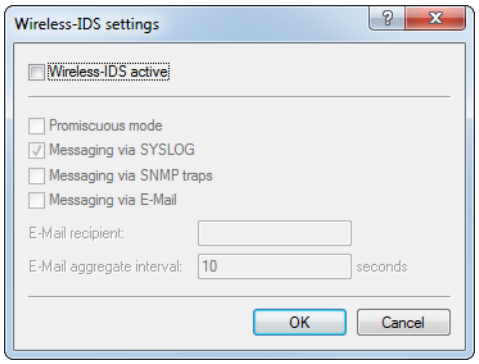
Attacks are detected by monitoring for known or similar patterns.

The WIDS configuration is either done directly on the AP, or by means of a WIDS profile assigned to the AP by a WLC.

Please note that detection based on pattern recognition (heuristics) can lead to false alarms ("false positives").

Configuring WIDS on the AP

To configure the Wireless Intrusion Detection System (WIDS) open LANconfig and go to **Wireless LAN** > **Security** > **Wireless-IDS settings**.



Wireless-IDS active

Activates or deactivates the Wireless Intrusion Detection System.

Promiscuous mode

With the ("promiscuous mode") enabled, the AP additionally receives packets that were not directed at it, but to other network participants.

This mode is necessary to be able to detect the attacks listed below. However, the promiscuous mode affects the performance. For this reason, activating the promiscuous mode automatically causes frame aggregation to be switched off.

Messaging via SYSLOG

Activates or deactivates the messaging via SYSLOG.

The generated SYSLOG message has the severity level "INFO" and contains the timestamp, the interface, and the trigger (type of attack and passed threshold).

Messaging via SNMP traps

Activates or deactivates the WIDS messaging via SNMP traps.

Messaging via e-mail

Activates or deactivates the messaging via e-mail.

An SMTP account has to be configured in order to use messaging via e-mail.

E-mail recipient

The e-mail address of the recipient when messaging via e-mail is activated.

The field must contain a valid e-mail address.

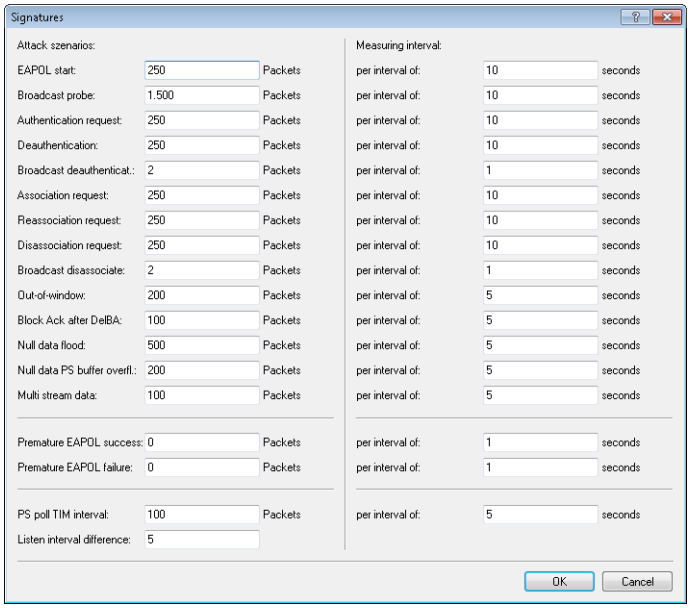
E-mail aggregate interval

This setting sets the delay in seconds before a new e-mail is sent if the WIDS is triggered again.

This prevents flooding by e-mail in case of extensive attacks.

Signatures

To configure the various thresholds and measuring intervals (packets per second) of the different WIDS alarm functions, change to **Wireless LAN** > **Security** > **Signatures**. These settings are used by the WIDS to determine if an attack is taking place.



The following attack scenarios can be detected by configuring the thresholds and measuring intervals:

- EAPOL-Start
- Broadcast probe
- Authentication request
- Deauthentication request (*)
- Broadcast deauthentication
- Association request
- Reassociation request
- Disassociation request (*)
- Broadcast disassociate
- Out-of-window
- Block Ack after DelBA

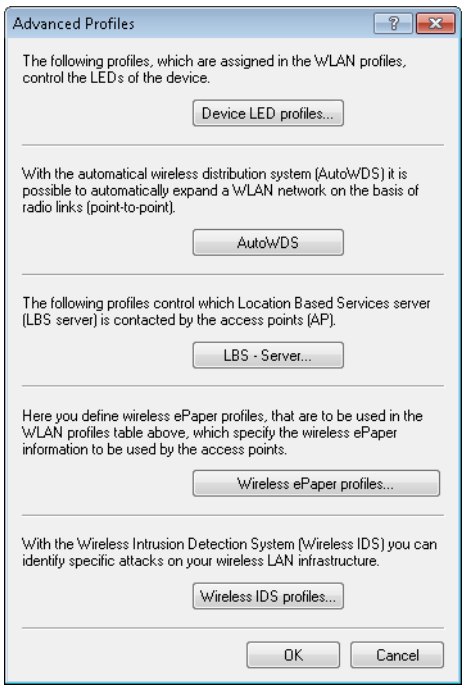
- Null data flood
- Null data PS buffer overflow
- Multi stream data
- Premature EAPOL success (*)
- Premature EAPOL failure (*)
- PS poll TIM interval
- Listen interval difference

There are typical default values set for the different attack scenarios.

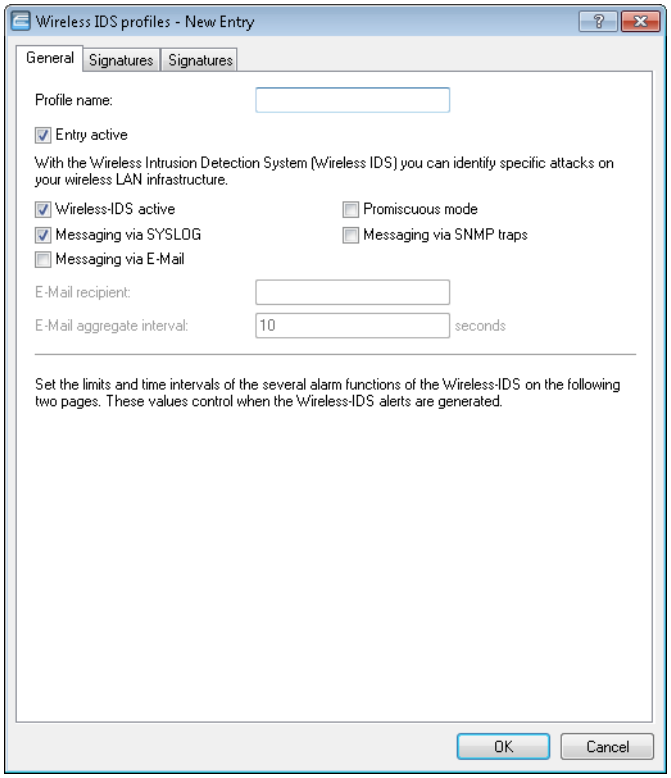
(*) These attacks are only detected if promiscuous mode is active.

Configuring WIDS profiles on the WLC with LANconfig

To configure a profile for the Wireless Intrusion Detection System (WIDS) with LANconfig, go to the view **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** and click on **Advanced profiles**.



Create or edit the WIDS profiles under **Wireless IDS profiles**.



Profile name

Enter an identifier for this profile. You allocate this profile name to a WLAN profile under **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**.

You need to specify a profile name for the configuration of the WIDS signatures.

Wireless-IDS active

Activates or deactivates the Wireless Intrusion Detection System.

Promiscuous mode

With the ("promiscuous mode") enabled, the AP additionally receives packets that were not directed at it, but to other network participants.

This mode is necessary to be able to detect the attacks listed below. However, the promiscuous mode affects the performance. For this reason, activating the promiscuous mode automatically causes frame aggregation to be switched off.

Messaging via SYSLOG

Activates or deactivates the messaging via SYSLOG.

The generated SYSLOG message has the severity level "INFO" and contains the timestamp, the interface, and the trigger (type of attack and passed threshold).

Messaging via SNMP traps

Activates or deactivates the WIDS messaging via SNMP traps.

Messaging via e-mail

Activates or deactivates the messaging via e-mail.

An SMTP account has to be configured in order to use messaging via e-mail.

E-mail recipient

The e-mail address of the recipient when messaging via e-mail is activated.

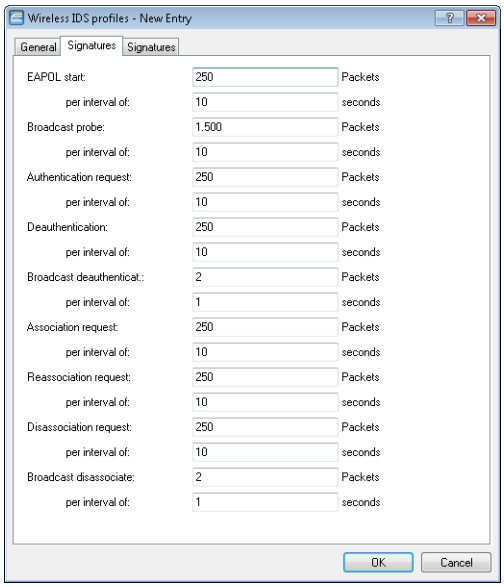
The field must contain a valid e-mail address.

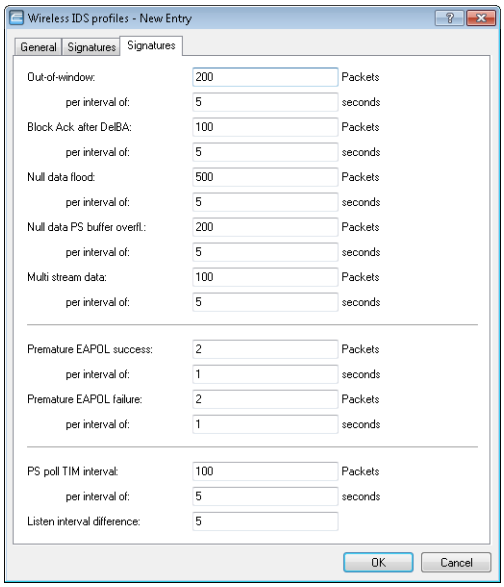
E-mail aggregate interval

This setting sets the delay in seconds before a new e-mail is sent if the WIDS is triggered again.

This prevents flooding by e-mail in case of extensive attacks.

The “Signatures” tabs are used to configure the various thresholds and measuring intervals (packets per second) of the different WIDS alarm functions. These settings are used by the WIDS to determine if an attack is taking place.





The following attack scenarios can be detected by configuring the thresholds and measuring intervals:

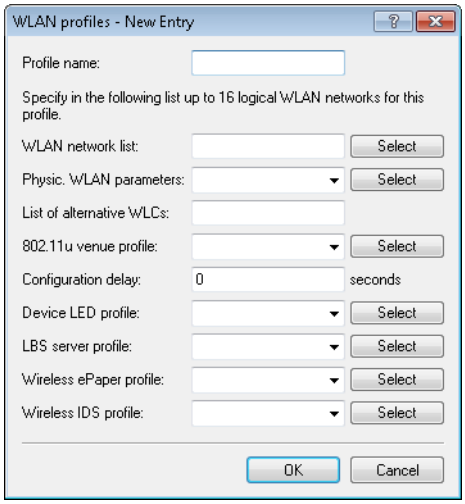
- EAPOL-Start

- Broadcast probe
- Authentication request
- Deauthentication request (*)
- Broadcast deauthentication
- Association request
- Reassociation request
- Disassociation request (*)
- Broadcast disassociate
- Out-of-window
- Block Ack after DelBA
- Null data flood
- Null data PS buffer overflow
- Multi stream data
- Premature EAPOL success (*)
- Premature EAPOL failure (*)
- PS poll TIM interval
- Listen interval difference

There are typical default values set for the different attack scenarios.

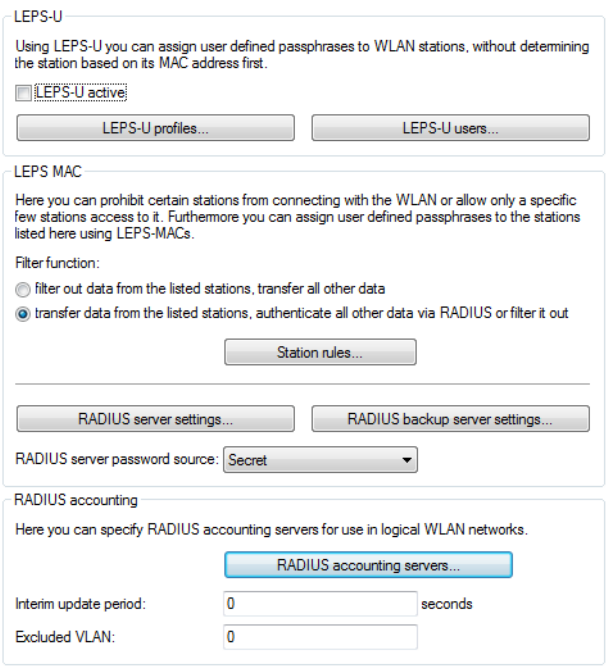
(*) These attacks are only detected if promiscuous mode is active.

Save the WIDS profile and then assign it to a WLAN profile under **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**.



12.18.11 Selecting approved stations for the WLAN

In LANconfig, the client that can login to the WLAN are configured under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS**.



LEPS-U

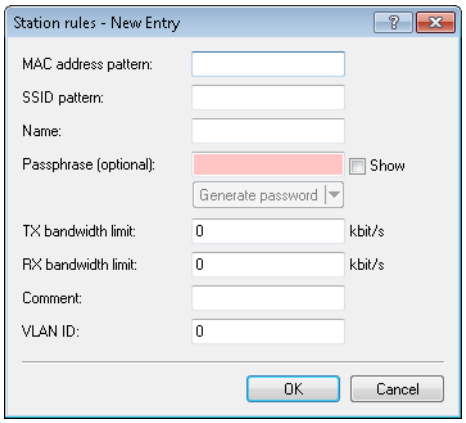
See *LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security User (LEPS-U)* on page 835.

Access-control list (LEPS-MAC)

With the **A**ccess **C**ontrol **L**is (ACL) you can permit or prevent individual WLAN clients accessing your WLAN. The decision is based on the MAC address that is permanently programmed into WLAN adapters.

If you centrally manage your LANCOM WLAN routers and LANCOM APs with a WLC, you will find the station table under **WLAN controller** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** under the button **Station rules**.

Check under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** to see if the setting **Filter out data from the listed stations, transfer all other** is activated. New stations to be included in your wireless network are added with the button **Station rules**.



MAC address pattern

MAC address of the WLAN client for this entry. The following entries are possible:

Individual MAC address

A MAC address in the format `00a057112233`, `00-a0-57-11-22-33` or `00:a0:57:11:22:33`.

Wildcards

The wildcards '*' and '?' uses to specify MAC address ranges, e.g. `00a057*`, `00-a0-57-11-??-??` or `00:a0:??:11:*`.

Vendor ID

The device contains a list of the major manufacturer OUIs (organizationally unique identifier). The MAC address range is valid if this entry matches the first three bytes of the MAC address of the WLAN client.

It is possible to use wildcards.

SSID pattern

WLAN clients with the corresponding MAC addresses have access that is limited to this SSID.

The use of wildcards makes it possible to allow access to multiple SSIDs.

Name

You can enter any name you wish and a comment for any WLAN client. This enables you to assign MAC addresses more easily to specific stations or users.

Passphrase

Here you may enter a separate passphrase for each physical address (MAC address) that is used in a 802.11i/WPA/AES-PSK-secured network. If no separate passphrase is specified for this MAC address, the passphrases stored in the **802.11i/WEP** area will be used for each logical wireless LAN network.

TX bandwidth limit

Transmission-bandwidth restriction for WLAN clients currently authenticating themselves. A WLAN device in client mode communicates its setting to the AP when logging on. This then uses uses these two values to set the minimum bandwidth.

RX bandwidth limit

Reception-bandwidth restriction for WLAN clients currently authenticating themselves. A WLAN device in client mode communicates its setting to the AP when logging on. This then uses uses these two values to set the minimum bandwidth.

The RX bandwidth restriction is only active for WLAN devices in client mode. For value is not used by normal WLAN clients.

Comment

You can enter a comment here.

VLAN-ID

This VLAN ID is assigned to packets that are received from the client with the MAC address entered here. In case of VLAN-ID '0', the station is not assigned a specific VLAN ID. Instead, the VLAN ID of the radio cell (SSID) applies.

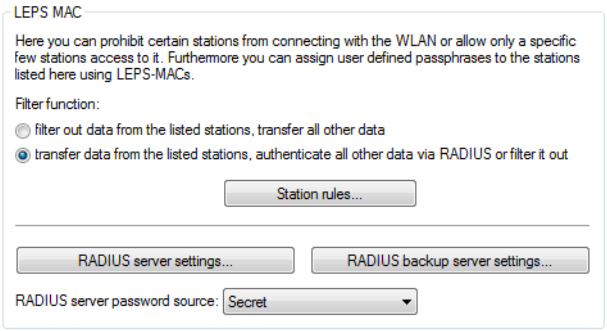
If filter rules contradict, the individual rule has a higher priority: A rule without wildcards in the MAC address or SSID takes precedence over a rule with wildcards. When creating these entries, the user should ensure that filter rules do not contradict. The definitions in the filters can be checked in a Telnet session with the trace command `trace WLAN-ACL`.

The filter criteria in the station list either allow or deny WLAN clients to access your wireless network. The entries **Name**, **Bandwidth limit**, **VLAN ID** and **Passphrase** are meaningless if the device uses valid filter criteria to deny access to the WLAN.

WLAN and RADIUS

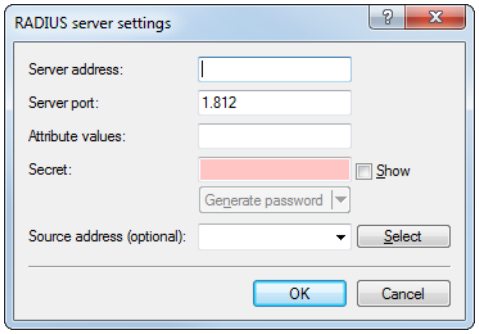
RADIUS is used for user authentication and accounting. For further information on this protocol, refer to the section *RADIUS* on page 1066.

When using a RADIUS server for the authentication of WLAN clients, the RADIUS server uses the MAC address to check client authorizations.



To use the RADIUS functionality for WLAN clients, go to the **LEPS-MAC** section and set the filter function to the option "Transfer data from the listed stations, authenticate all other data via RADIUS or filter it out".

In LANconfig, the configuration is performed under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS**. Here you configure the **RADIUS server settings** and the **RADIUS backup server settings**.



Server address

Enter the IP address (IPv4, IPv6) or the hostname of the RADIUS server used for central user management.

Server port

Specify here the port used for communication to your RADIUS server (default: 1,812).

Attribute values

Here you can assign user-defined values to RADIUS attributes. The individual name-value pairs must have the form <Name>=<Value>, and they are separated by semicolons.

<Name> identifies the RADIUS attribute by its name or number. The associated attribute names can be found in the corresponding RADIUS RFCs. Attribute names can be abbreviated as long as the identifiers are unequivocal.

Attribute values can be set in quotation marks to allow the use of spaces or semicolons in the value definitions. To use a quotation mark as a character, use a leading backslash. To use the backslash itself as a character, use a double backslash.

It is also possible to use a number of placeholders:

- %n – replaced by the configured device name.
- %e – replaced with the serial number of the device as displayed in the device system info.
- %% – replaced by a single % character.
- %{name} – replaced by the original value of the corresponding RADIUS attribute. Any new / re-definitions within this attribute list are ignored. The identifier can be truncated as long as it remains unique.

For more information about RADIUS attributes, please see *RADIUS attributes* on page 1437.

Secret

Specify here the key to be used for coding data. The key must also be configured on the RADIUS server.

Backup server address

Enter the IP address (IPv4, IPv6) or the hostname of the backup RADIUS server used for central user management.

Backup server port

Specify here the port used for communication to your backup RADIUS server (default: 1,812).

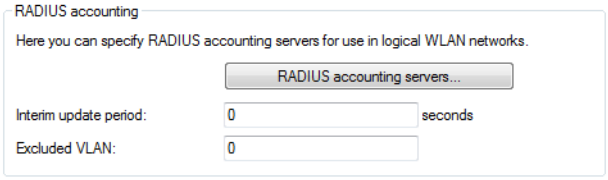
Source address

The device automatically determines the correct source IP address for the destination network. To use a fixed source IP address instead, enter it symbolically or directly here.

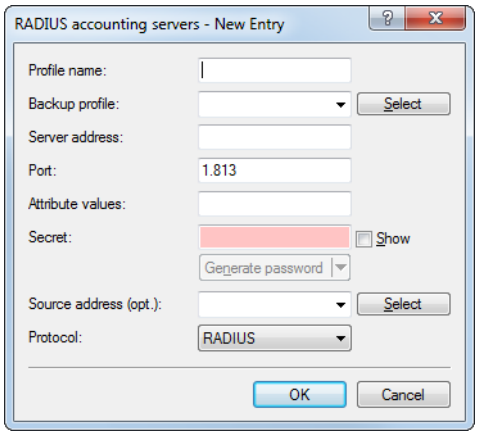
RADIUS server password source

Select whether you want to use a **Secret** or the **MAC address** as the password source for the RADIUS server.

RADIUS accounting



A RADIUS server that is to be used for accounting requires the appropriate configuration. The configuration is carried out with LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **RADIUS accounting**. Configure the settings for a **RADIUS accounting server** here.



Profile name

Name of the RADIUS server performing the accounting for WLAN clients. The name entered here is used to reference that server from other tables.

Backup profile

Enter the name of the RADIUS backup server used for the accounting of WLAN clients if the actual accounting server is not available. This allows you to specify a "backup chaining" of multiple backup servers.

Server address

Here you enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address or the hostname of the RADIUS server used by the RADIUS client for the accounting of WLAN clients.

- The RADIUS client automatically detects which address type is involved.
- You also need to set the general values for retry and timeout in the RADIUS section.

Port

Port for communication with the RADIUS server during accounting (default: 1,812).

Attribute values

Here you can assign user-defined values to RADIUS attributes. The individual name-value pairs must have the form <Name>=<Value>, and they are separated by semicolons.

<Name> identifies the RADIUS attribute by its name or number. The associated attribute names can be found in the corresponding RADIUS RFCs. Attribute names can be abbreviated as long as the identifiers are unequivocal.

Attribute values can be set in quotation marks to allow the use of spaces or semicolons in the value definitions. To use a quotation mark as a character, use a leading backslash. To use the backslash itself as a character, use a double backslash.

It is also possible to use a number of placeholders:

- %n – replaced by the configured device name.
- %e – replaced with the serial number of the device as displayed in the device system info.
- %% – replaced by a single % character.
- %{name} – replaced by the original value of the corresponding RADIUS attribute. Any new / re-definitions within this attribute list are ignored. The identifier can be truncated as long as it remains unique.

For more information about RADIUS attributes, please see *RADIUS attributes* on page 1437.

Secret

Enter the key (shared secret) for access to the accounting server here. Ensure that this key is consistent with that specified in the accounting server.

Source address

Here you have the option to configure a sender address for the device to use in place of the one that would otherwise be used automatically for this target address.

If you have configured loopback addresses, you can specify them here as source address.

You can enter an address in various forms:

- Name of the IP network (ARF network), whose address should be used.
- "INT" for the address of the first intranet.
- "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ

  If there is an interface called "DMZ", its address will be taken in this case.
- LB0 … LBF for one of the 16 loopback addresses or its name.
- Furthermore, any IPv4 or PIv6 address can be entered in the usual form.

If the source address set here is a loopback address, these will be used unmasked on the remote client.

Protocol

Select the protocol. Either **RADIUS** or **RADSEC**.

Accounting Interim Interval

The accounting function in the device can be used to check the budgets of associated wireless LAN clients, among other things. Wireless Internet Service Providers (WISPs) use this option as a part of their accounting procedure. Accounting periods generally switch at the end of the month. A suitable action will cause the accounting session to be restarted at this time. Existing WLAN connections remain intact. A cron job can be used to automate this restart by calling the function `do /Setup/WLAN/RADIUS-Accounting/Restart-Accounting`.

Excluded VLAN

Here you enter the ID of the VLAN that the device is to exclude from RADIUS accounting. The RADIUS server then receives no information about the traffic in that VLAN.

12.18.12 Encryption settings

APs from LANCOM support the most up-to-date methods of encryption and security for data that is transferred via WLAN.

- The IEEE standard 802.11i/WPA stands for the highest degree of security that is currently available for WLAN connections. This standards uses a new encryption procedure (AES-CCM) which, in combination with other methods, achieves levels of security equaled only by VPN connections until now. However, using AES-capable hardware provides much faster transmission than relying on VPN protection.
- WEP is also supported to ensure compatibility with older hardware. WEP (**W**ired **E**quivalent **P**rivacy) is the encryption method originally incorporated in the 802.11 standard for the encryption of data in wireless transmission. This method uses keys of 40 (WEP64), 104 (WEP128) or 128 bits (WEP152) in length. A number of security loopholes in WEP have come to light over time, and so the latest 802.11i/WPA method should be used wherever possible.

To simplify the task of configuration, as of LCOS 10.20 the WLAN encryption settings appear as an additional tab in the dialog for the Logical WLAN settings. When configuring an SSID, it is no longer necessary to switch back and forth between the logical WLAN settings dialog and the WLAN encryption settings dialog.

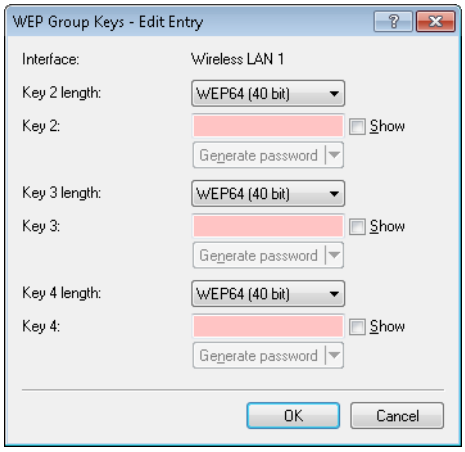
The logical WLAN settings are to be found under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Interfaces** > **Logical WLAN settings**.

WEP group keys

The WEP method uses keys of 40 (WEP64), 104 (WEP128) or 128 bits (WEP152) in length. Each WLAN interface has four WEP keys: A special key for each logical WLAN interface and three common group WEP keys for each physical WLAN interface.

If 802.1X/EAP is in use and the **Enable dynamic re-keying** option is enabled under **Wireless LAN** > **802.1X** > **Interfaces**, the group keys from 802.1X/EAP are used and are consequently no longer available for WEP encryption.

As of LCOS 9.00 the system no longer displays WPA and WEP group keys in cleartext on the CLI, but masked (********). As a result, it is no longer possible to read these keys via SNMP, for example.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **Encryption** > **WEP group keys**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Group-Encryption-Keys**

Rules for entering WEP keys

WEP keys can be entered as ASCII characters or in hexadecimal form. The hexadecimal form begins with the characters '0x'. The keys have a length depending on the WEP method:

Method	ASCII	HEX
WEP 64	5 character example: 'aR45Z'	10 character example: '0x0A5C1B6D8E'
WEP 128	13 characters	26 characters
WEP 152	16 characters	32 characters

The ASCII character set includes the characters '0' to '9', 'a' to 'z', 'A' to 'Z' and the following special characters: ! " # $ % & ´ () * + , - ./ : ; < = > ? @ [\ ] ^ _ ‘ { | } ~

The HEX form uses the numbers '0' to '9' and the letters 'A' to 'F' to display each character as a character pair, which is why twice the number of characters is required to display a HEX key.

Select the length and the format (ASCII or HEX) of the key depending on the best option available in the wireless network cards that register with your WLAN. If the encryption in an AP is set to WEP 152, some clients may not be able to log into the WLAN as their hardware does not support the key length.

Group keys per VLAN

In a VLAN environment, the central network administration generally assigns a unique VLAN ID to each virtual network. Which VLAN a client belongs to is mostly decided by the physical connection between the client and the network.

The central instance that manages the network (e. g. a VLAN-capable switch) internally assigns its ports to certain VLAN IDs. A data packet arriving at a port is internally passed on only to the ports with the corresponding VLAN IDs. Packets are not sent to the other network nodes that are connected to ports with different (or no) VLAN IDs.

In the case of multiple VLANs that offer various service levels, data communications are channeled through different logical wireless LANs (SSIDs). For example, employees receive access to the corporate network and the Internet via a specific SSID. Guests receive a different SSID that offers access limited to the Internet.

LANCOM access points also maintain VLAN network tables, which control the assignment of wireless LAN clients to individual VLANs. In large network environments, a RADIUS server usually handles the rights management and the assignment of clients to the VLANs. After successful authentication, the RADIUS server returns the data to the corresponding access point. For the duration of the client association, this data is stored in the AP's VLAN network table.

If necessary, the different WLAN clients associated with the same access point obtain different VLAN IDs. This is handled by the dynamic VLAN network tables in the access points. VLAN-internal communication is protected by a session key negotiated when logging onto the access point. This ensures that data communications by clients in different VLANs remain isolated from each other even though the various clients are using the same logical wireless LAN (SSID) to communicate with the access point.

A client associating with an access point in a wireless LAN is also assigned with a group key for the reception of broadcast or multicast messages.

Broadcast and multicast messages do not support VLAN tagging. This is why wireless LAN clients that are located in an isolated VLAN cannot be excluded from receiving these messages. In the ideal case, the wireless clients ignore broadcast and multicast messages from outside the VLAN.

Since these messages are increasingly being used for network configuration, the following problems arise:

- Network protocols such as "UPnP" and "Bonjour" use these messages to announce new services in the network.

  Theoretically, wireless LAN clients could set up access to servers that they have no access to at all.

- The Internet standard IPv6 uses multicast broadcasting to transmit router information to the clients.

  There is a risk that wireless LAN clients from outside the VLAN can use this information to evade access to the VLAN for which they are actually registered.

The widespread use of IPv6 will lead to an increase in this type of client problem.

To avoid these problems, the access point can assign a separate group key to each VLAN, instead of one that applies to all wireless LAN clients. Thus the access point sends its broadcast and multicast transmissions not to all existing wireless clients, but solely to a specific VLAN and the clients registered there. The wireless LAN clients in other VLANs therefore cannot decrypt these broadcasts.

The IEEE 802.11 standard provides for the administration of 4 different keys. One key is always reserved for the secure unicast communication between the access point and a wireless LAN client.

Thus in principle a maximum of 3 separate VLANs can be managed with their own group keys. Each group key is either managed automatically by the access point or manually by the network administrator. When the wireless LAN client logs on to the network, the access point sends it the corresponding VLAN group key to decrypt the broadcast and multicast transmissions for that VLAN.

This results in 2 possible scenarios:

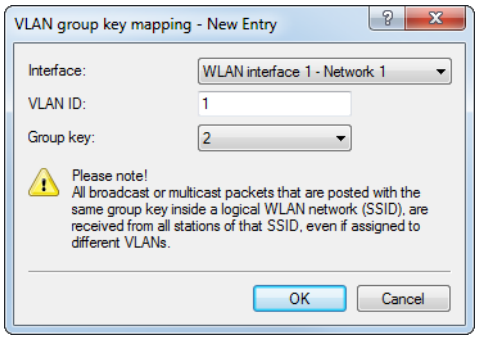
- No more than 3 VLANs are set up in the area of an access point: These VLANs are securely separated from each other by the 3 VLAN group keys.
- More than 3 VLANs exist within range of an access point: In this case, at least two VLANs share a group key. The administrator must find the optimal distribution of the shared group keys between the VLANs.

VLAN group keys are managed in 2 tables:

- The configuration table in which the assignment is carried out manually by the administrator.
- The status table in which the automatic group key assignment by the access point can be viewed.

Managing VLAN group keys

If you want to use different VLAN IDs on a single logical wireless LAN network (SSID), you have the option to assign the appropriate group key for broadcast and multicast transmissions. This setting in LANconfig is found under **Wireless LAN** > **Encrytion** > **VLAN group key mapping**



The automatic assignment of group keys is carried out in the following steps:

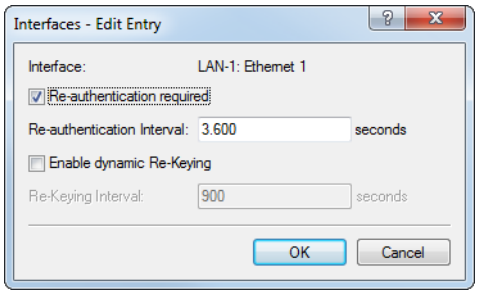
1. When a wireless LAN client logs on, the access point checks whether its VLAN ID is already listed in the status table and assigned to a group key accordingly.
2. If not, the access point consults the configuration table to check whether there is a manual assignment. Should this be the case, then it creates a mapped entry in this table.
3. If there is no manual assignment either, the access point adds a new entry for this client and assigns the group key with the fewest users.

The status table displaying the current automatic VLAN group key assignments for each SSID can be found on the command line at **Status** > **WLAN** > **VLAN-Groupkey-Mapping**

12.18.13 IEEE 802.1X / EAP

The international industry standard IEEE 802.1X and the **E**xtensible **A**uthentication **P**rotocol (EAP) enable access points to carry out reliable and secure access checks. The access information can be managed centrally on a RADIUS server and can be called up by the access point on demand.

This technology also enables the secure transmission and the regular automatic changing of WEP keys. In this way, IEEE 802.1X improves the security of WEP.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **802.1X** > **Interfaces**

Command line: **Setup** > **IEEE802.1X**

Regularly update authentication

Here you activate regular re-authentication. If a new authentication starts, the user remains registered during the negotiation.

Re-authentication interval

The interval for regular re-authentication. The default value for re-authentication interval is 3,600 seconds.

Enable dynamic re-keying and key transmission

Here you activate the regular generation and transmission of a dynamic WEP key.

Re-keying interval

Interval for the regular generation of the key.

Specific data rates for EAPOL packets

EAP over LAN (EAPOL) is used to authenticate WLAN clients at APs and makes use of WPA and/or 802.1x. This protocol allows layer-2 connections to support EAP communications by encapsulating EAP packets into Ethernet frames.

Under certain circumstances it may be desirable to select a lower data rate for the transfer of EAPOL packets than that available for the payload data. In the case of mobile WLAN clients, high data rates can cause EAPOL packet losses, which in turn leads to considerable delays in client association. This procedure can be stabilized by selecting specific data rates for EAPOL.

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Transmission**

- **EAPOL-Rate**

  Set the data rate for EAPOL transmission here.

  Possible values:

  - Like-Data, select from the available speeds

  Default:

  - Like-Data

  Special values:

  - Like-Data transmits the EAPOL data at the same rate as payload data.

12.18.14 IEEE 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0

As of LCOS8.82, your device supports WLAN connections according to the IEEE 802.11u standard and—based on that—the Hotspot 2.0 specification. Using 802.11u you have the option to implement automatic authorization and authentication of your users on a local WLAN network (for example, within your company) or a Public Spot network. The prerequisite for this is that the relevant stations (smartphones, tablet PCs, notebooks, etc.) also support connections for 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0. In detail, the following functions are offered:

- **Automatic network selection**

  In a 802.11u-enabled environment, the user does not have to manually detect and select an SSID. Instead, the client independently searches for and selects a suitable Wi-Fi network by automatically requesting and evaluating the operator and network data of all 802.11u-enabled access points that are in range. A previous login to the access point is not required.

  Hotspot 2.0 stations also have the ability to retrieve information about the services available in a Wi-Fi network. If specific services that are relevant for a user (e.g., connections via HTTP, VPN or VoIP) are not available for a Wi-Fi network, any networks that do not meet the criteria are excluded from further searches. This ensures that users are always connected to the optimal network.

- **Automatic authentication and authorization**

  In 802.11u-enabled environments, the station automatically carries out the user's login if the necessary credentials are available. Authentication can be done, for example, using a SIM card, a username and password, or a digital certificate. Repetitive manual input of the credentials by the user in a login screen is no longer necessary. After successful authentication, the user can immediately use the desired services.

- **Seamless handover**

Connections according to 802.11u and in conjunction with 802.21 facilitate the uninterrupted exchange of data connections between different network types. This enables users to switch their stations seamlessly from a cellular network to a WLAN network as soon as they get within range of a Hotspot 2.0 zone—and vice versa. The same is true for the transfer between two different operators if, for example, the user goes from one homogeneous network to another during a bus trip

- **Automatic roaming**

  Connections as per 802.11u facilitate roaming between different operator networks. If a user is in range of a Hotspot 2.0 zone of an operator for which he does not have any credentials, his station still has the option to switch to its home network. Authentication at a third-party Hotspot 2.0 zone is handled by the operator's roaming partner, which then allows the user to access the third-party Wi-Fi network. This is interesting not only in areas where there are only single network operators with access points, it is also especially attractive for people traveling abroad.

Example: For example, a user who is in transit in the city with his 802.11u-enabled smartphone (station) can enable the WLAN feature to browse the Internet. The station then starts trying to find all available Wi-Fi networks in the area. If any of the access points offer 802.11u, the station selects the one network that best fits the required service based on the operator and network information that was previously obtained, for example, from a hotspot offering Internet access from its own cellular network company. In this case, the subsequent authentication can be performed automatically via the SIM card so that the user does not need to intervene at any time during the process. The encryption method selected for the connection – e.g., WPA2 – is unaffected.

In summary, connections according to 802.11u and with Hotspot 2.0 enabled combine the security features and performance of classic Wi-Fi hotspots with the flexibility and simplicity of data cellular network connections. At the same time, they relieve the cellular networks by redistributing data traffic (and possibly also telephony) to the network connections and frequency bands offered by access points.

Hotspot operators and service providers

The Hotspot 2.0 specification of the Wi-Fi Alliance differentiates between hotspot operators and hotspot service providers: A **hotspot operator** only operates one Wi-Fi network, while a **hotspot service provider** (SP) provides the connection for the user to the Internet or a cellular network. Of course, it is possible for an operator to also be an SP. However, in all other cases, a hotspot operator requires the corresponding roaming agreements with an SP or a group of multiple SPs (called a roaming consortium). Only when an operator has made these agreements are the various roaming partners' customers able to authenticate with the hotspot operator. Each service provider operates its own AAA infrastructure. A hotspot communicates this list of possible roaming partners and the name of the hotspot operator using ANQP (see functional description).

Functional description

The **802.11u** standard is the base standard of IEEE. This standard essentially expands access points or hotspots with the ability to broadcast so-called **ANQP data packets** (Advanced Message Queuing Protocol) in its broadcast signals. ANQP is a query/response protocol that a device can use to request a range of information about the hotspot. This includes both meta-data, such as information about the owner and the venue, as well as information on the underlying network, such as information on operator domains, roaming partners, authentication methods, forwarding addresses, etc. All 802.11u-enabled devices in range have the ability to request these data packets without a prior login to the access point in order to select a network based on the network information.

The Wi-Fi Alliance has added further ANQP elements to the standard, and markets this specification as **Hotspot 2.0**. This Hotspot 2.0 function merely adds additional elements to the standard, which the device can use as criteria for selecting its network. These criteria include, for example, information about the services and WAN metrics available at the hotspot. The associated certification program is called Pass Points™. Certain LANCOM access points are Passpoint™ CERTIFIED by the Wi-Fi Alliance.

The ANQP data packets are the central information element of the 802.11u standard. However, to signal the support for 802.11u and to transmit data packets, further elements are required for the operation of 802.11u:

- The signaling of 802.11u support in the beacons and probes of a hotspot are done by the element known as the **Interworking element**. In this element, the initial basic network information—such as the network classification,

Internet availability (Internet bit) and the OI of the roaming consortium and/or of the operator—are already included. At the same time, it is used by 802.11u-enabled devices as an initial screening criterion when detecting a network.

- ANQP data packets are transferred within the so-called GAS containers. **GAS** stands for Generic Advertisement Service, and is the name of generic containers that allow a device to request additional internal and external information for the network selection from the hotspot, in addition to the information in the beacons. The GAS containers are transmitted on layer 2 by what are referred to as public action frames.

Login by an 802.11u-enabled client at a Hotspot 2.0

The following functional description schematically illustrates the selection and login process of an 802.11u-enabled device at a Hotspot 2.0.

Login via username/password or digital certificate

1. The hotspots reply with an ANQP response, which contains, among other things, the name of the hotspot operator and a list of NAI realms, which list all available roaming partners (service provider, abbreviated SP).
2. The device loads the locally stored credentials from the WLAN profiles or installed certificates that were set up by the user, and compares the local realms with the NAI realm lists obtained in (2).
   a. If the device successfully finds one, it knows that it can be authenticated successfully on the relevant Wi-Fi network.
   b. If the device successfully finds more than one, the selection of a Wi-Fi network is made based on the user's preference list. This list defines the preferred order of operators in conjunction with the potential roaming partners. In this case, the device compares the operator names listed under (2) with the list, and selects the operator with the highest priority.
3. The device authenticates itself with its local credentials at the hotspot of the preferred operator for the appropriate SP. The access point then transmits this data over its SSPN interface (Subscription Service Provider Network) to an AAA system responsible for authentication. The authentication is performed using the authentication method determined by the SP. The authentication via username/password uses EAP-TTLS, and authentication via digital certificate uses EAP-TLS.

Login via (U)SIM

1. In contrast to the login via username/password or digital certificate, a device with a (U)SIM does not request the list of NAI realms in its ANQP requests, but rather the 3GPP Cellular Network Information. The ANQP responses contain the cellular network information list of all cellular network providers for which the access point offers authentication.
2. The device loads the parameters for the cellular network from its local (U)SIM card, and compares it with the data retrieved from the cellular network information lists. The list comparison and selection of a preferred provider network is performed analogous to the login via username/password or digital certificate.
3. The device authenticates itself with its local credentials at the hotspot of the preferred operator for the appropriate cellular network company. The hotspot then transmits this data over its SSPN interface (Subscription Service Provider Network) to an AAA system responsible for the authentication. The presence of a (U)SIM card changes the possible authentication method for the device to EAP-SIM or EAP-AKA.
4. The AAA system verifies the credentials for authentication via the interface MAP (Mobile Application Part) at the HLR server (Home Location Register) of the cellular network company.

If authentication is successful, the device gets access to the WLAN network either via hotspot (credentials for the operator's network are available) or automatic roaming (credentials for the operator's network are not available).

If there are multiple authentication options available for the device (e.g., SIM card and username/password), it has the option of using the preferred EAP authentication method and, therefore, the preferred credentials based on the NAI realm or cellular network information list.

Recommended general settings

The Hotspot 2.0 specification recommends the following general settings for the 802.11u operator:

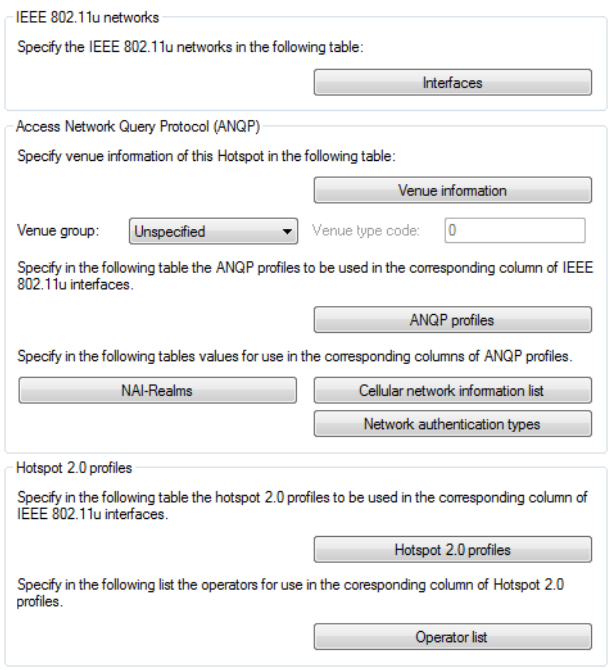
- WPA2-Enterprise Security (802.1x) enabled
- Authentication using EAP with the corresponding variant:

- EAP-SIM/EAP-AKA for authentication with SIM / USIM card
- EAP-TLS for authentication with a digital certificate
- EAP-TTLS for authentication with a username and password

- Enabled and properly configured ARP proxy
- Disabled multicasts and broadcast in cellular networks
- Non-approved data traffic between the cellular network devices (Layer 2 traffic inspection and filtering). The corresponding settings can be found in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **Security**.
- Enabled and implemented firewall on the access router, which provides Internet access

Configuration menu for IEEE 802.11u / Hotspot 2.0

You can find the configuration menu for IEEE 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0 under **Configuration** > **Wireless LAN** > **IEEE 802.11u**.



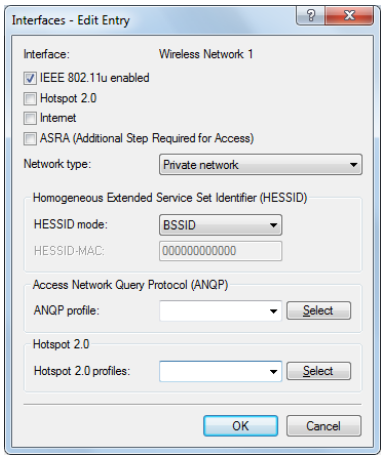
The device offers the ability to individually enable or disable and configure the support the IEEE 802.11u standard as well as the Hotspot 2.0 functionality for each logical WLAN interface using the button **Interfaces**.

Some of the parameters that need to be configured are located in so-called "profiles". Using profiles, you can group different rows in lists, which you only have to reference from the other windows. Essentially, these are profiles for ANQP data packets and Hotspot 2.0. The relationships between the profile lists is as follows:

```
| - Interfaces
  |-ANQP profiles
    |-NAI realms
    |-Cellular network information list
    |-Network authentication types
  |-Hotspot 2.0 profiles
    |-Operator list
```

Activating interfaces

The table **Interfaces** is the highest administrative level for 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0. Here you have the option of enabling or disabling functions for each interface, assigning them different profiles, or modifying general settings.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Interfaces**, click on the button **Edit...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Interface**: Name of the logical WLAN interface that you are currently editing.
- **IEEE 802.11u enabled**: Enable or disable support for connections according to IEEE 802.11u at the appropriate interface. If you enable support, the device sends the interworking element in beacons/probes for the interface or for the associated SSID, respectively. This element is used as an identifying feature for IEEE 802.11u-enabled connections: It includes, for example, the Internet bit, the ASRA bit, the HESSID, and the location group code and the location type code. These individual elements use 802.11u-enabled devices as the first filtering criteria for network detection.
- **Hotspot 2.0**: Enable or disable the support for Hotspot 2.0 according to the Wi-Fi Alliance® at the appropriate interface. Hotspot 2.0 extends the IEEE standard 802.11u with additional network information, which stations can request using an ANQP request. These include, for example, the operator-friendly name, the connection capabilities, operating class and WAN metrics. Using this additional information, stations are in a position to make an even more selective choice of Wi-Fi network.
- **Internet**: Select whether the Internet bit is set. Over the Internet-bit, all stations are explicitly informed that the Wi-Fi network allows Internet access. Enable this setting if services other than internal services are accessible via your device.

  Using this function you only communicate the availability of an Internet connection. You configure the corresponding regulations on the firewall, irrespective of this option.
- **ASRA - Additional steps for access required**: Select whether the ASRA bit (Additional Step Required for Access) is set. Using the ASRA bit explicitly informs all stations that further authentication steps are needed to access the Wi-Fi network. Enable this setting if you have, for example, set up online registration, additional authentication, or a consent form for your terms of use on your web site.

  Please remember to specify a forwarding address in the **Network authentication types** table for the additional authentication and/or **WISPr** for the Public Spot module if you set the ASRA bit.
- **Network type**: Select a network type from the available list which most closely describes the Wi-Fi network behind the selected interface. Based on the setting made here, the user has the option to limit network detection of their devices to specific network types. Possible values are:
  - `Private network`: Describes networks which are blocked to unauthorized users. Select this type, for example, for home networks or corporate networks where access is limited to employees.
  - `Private with guest access`: Similar to `Private network`, but with guest access for unauthorized users. Select this type, for example, for corporate networks where visitors may use the Wi-Fi network in addition to employees.

- `Chargeable public network`: Describes public networks that are accessible to everyone and can be used for a fee. Information about fees may be available through other channels (e.g.: IEEE 802.21, HTTP/HTTPS or DNS forwarding). Select this type, for example, for hotspots in shops or hotels that offer fee-based Internet access.
- `Free public network`: Describes public networks that are accessible to everyone and for which no fee is payable. Select this type, for example, for hotspots in public, local and long-distance transport, or for community networks where Wi-Fi access is an included service.
- `Personal device network`: In general, it describes networks that connect wireless devices. Select this type, for example, for digital cameras that are connected to a printer via WLAN.
- `Emergency services only network`: Describes networks that are intended for, and limited to, emergency services. Select this type, for example, for connected ESS or EBR systems.
- `Test or experimental`: Describes networks that are set up for testing purposes or are still in the setup stage.
- `Wildcard`: Placeholder for previously undefined network types.

- **HESSID mode**: Specify where the device gets its HESSID for the homogeneous ESS. A homogeneous ESS is defined as a group of a specific number of access points, which all belong to the same network. The MAC address of a connected access point serves as a globally unique identifier (HESSID). The SSID can not be used as an identifier in this case, because different network service providers can have the same SSID assigned in a hotspot zone, e.g., by common names such as "HOTSPOT". Possible values for the HESSID mode include:
  - `BSSID`: Select this item to set the BSSID of the device as the HESSID for your homogeneous ESS.
  - `User`: Select this item to manually assign a HESSID.
  - `None`: Select this item in order to not assign any homogeneous ESS and to isolate it from the device network.

- **HESSID-MAC**: If you selected the setting `user` for the **HESSID mode**, enter the HESSID of your homogeneous ESS as a 6-octet MAC address. Select the BSSID for the HESSID for any access point in your homogeneous ESS in capital letters and without separators, e.g., `008041AEFD7E` for the MAC address 00:80:41:ae:fd:7e.

  If your device is not present in multiple homogeneous ESS's, the HESSID is identical for all interfaces

- **ANQP profile**: Select an ANQP profile from the list. You create ANQP profiles in the configuration menu using the button of the same name.
- **Hotspot 2.0 profiles**: Select the Hotspot 2.0 profile from the list. You create the Hotspot 2.0 profiles in the configuration menu using the button of the same name.

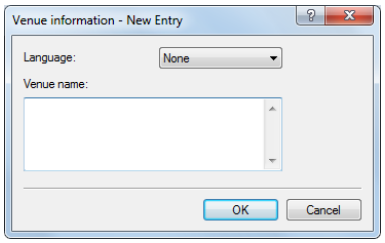
Configuring ANQP data packets

Venue information and group

Using the table **Venue information** and the following dialogs **Venue group** and **Venue type code**, you manage the information about the access point's location.

In the event of a manual search, additional details on the **Venue information** help a user to select the correct hotspot. If more than one operator (e.g., multiple cafés) in a single hotspot zone uses the same SSID, the user can clearly identify the appropriate location using the venue information.

You can place your device in a predefined category using the **Venue group** and **Venue type code** – as opposed to the user-defined location information.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Venue information**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Language**: You have the ability to specify custom information for the location of the access point for each language. The location name that matches your user's language will then be displayed. If a language is not available for a user, its station chooses one based, for example, on the default language.
- **Venue name**: Enter a short description of the location of your device for the selected language, for example:

```
Ice Café Valencia
123 Street
City, State 12345
```

The **Venue group** describes the environment where you operate the access point. You define them globally for all languages. The possible values, which are set by the venue group code, are specified in the 802.11u standard.

Using the **Venue type code**, you have the option to specify the details for the venue group. These values are also specified by the standard. The possible type codes can be found in the following table.

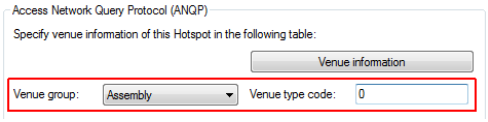


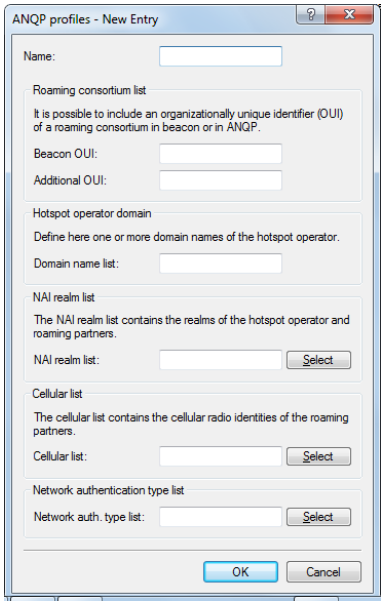
Table 23: Overview of possible values for venue groups and types

Venue group	Code = Venue-Type-Code
Unspecified	
Assembly	0 = unspecified assembly 1 = stage 2 = stadium 3 = passenger terminal (e.g., airport, bus station, ferry terminal, train station) 4 = amphitheater 5 = amusement park 6 = place of worship 7 = convention center 8 = library 9 = museum 10 = restaurant 11 = theater 12 = bar 13 = café 14 = zoo, aquarium 15 = emergency control center
Business	0 = unspecified business 1 = doctor's office

Venue group	Code = Venue-Type-Code
	> 2 = bank > 3 = fire station > 4 = police station > 6 = post office > 7 = office > 8 = research facility > 9 = law firm
Educational:	> 0 = unspecified education > 1 = primary school > 2 = secondary school > 3 = college
Factory and industry	> 0 = unspecified factory and industry > 1 = factory
Institutional	> 0 = unspecified institution > 1 = hospital > 2 = long-term care facility (e.g., nursing home, hospice) > 3 = rehabilitation clinic > 4 = organizational association > 5 = prison
Commerce	> 0 = unspecified commerce > 1 = retail store > 2 = food store > 3 = Automobile workshop > 4 = shopping center > 5 = gas station
Halls of residence	> 0 = unspecified residence hall > 1 = private residence > 2 = hotel or motel > 3 = student housing > 4 = guesthouse
Warehouse	> 0 = unspecified warehouse
Utility and miscellaneous	> 0 = unspecified service and miscellaneous
Vehicular	> 0 = unspecified vehicle > 1 = passenger or transport vehicles > 2 = aircraft > 3 = bus > 4 = ferry > 5 = ship or boat > 6 = train > 7 = motorcycle
Outdoor	> 0 = unspecified outdoor > 1 = Municipal WLAN network > 2 = city park > 3 = rest area > 4 = traffic control > 5 = bus stop > 6 = kiosk

ANQP profiles

Using this table you manage the profile lists for ANQP. **ANQP profiles** offer you the ability to group certain ANQP elements and to assign them to mutually independent logical WLAN interfaces in the table **Interfaces**. These elements include, for example, information about your OIs, domains, roaming partners and their authentication methods. Some of the elements are located in other profile lists.



In order to edit the entries in the table **ANQP profiles**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the ANQP 2.0 profile here. This name will appear later in the interfaces table in the selection for ANQP profiles.
- **Beacon OUI**: Organizationally Unique Identifier, abbreviated as OUI, simplified as OI. As the hotspot operator, you enter the OI of the roaming partner with whom you have agreed a contract. If you are the hotspot operator as well as the service provider, enter the OI of your roaming consortium or your own OI. A roaming consortium consists of a group of service providers which have entered into mutual agreements regarding roaming. In order to get an OI, this type of consortium – as well as an individual service provider – must register with IEEE.

  It is possible to specify up to 3 parallel OIs, in case you, as the operator, have roaming agreements with several partners. Multiple OIs can be provided in a comma-separated list, such as `00105E,00017D,00501A`.

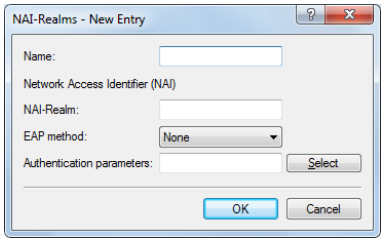
  This device transmits the specified OI(s) in its beacons. If a device should transmit more than 3 OIs, these can be configured under **Additional OUI**. However, additional OIs are not transferred to a station until after the GAS request. They are not immediately visible to the stations!
- **Additional OUI**: Enter the OI(s) that the device also sends to a station after a GAS request. Multiple OIs can be provided in a comma-separated list, such as `00105E,00017D,00501A`.
- **Domain name list**: Enter one or more domains that are available to you as a hotspot operator. Multiple domain names are separated by a comma separated list, such as `providerX.org,provx-mobile.com,wifi.mnc410.provX.com`. For subdomains it is sufficient to specify only the highest qualified domain name. If a user configured a home provider on his device, e.g., providerX.org, this domain is also assigned to access points with the domain name wi-fi.providerX.org. When searching for suitable hotspots, a station always prefers a hotspot from his home provider in order to avoid possible roaming costs.
- **NAI realm list**: Select an NAI realm profile from the list. You specify profiles for NAI realms in the configuration menu by clicking the button **NAI realms**.
- **Cellular list**: Select the cellular network identity from the list. You set the identities for cellular networks – similar to profiles – in the configuration menu using the button **Cellular network information list**.

- **Network authentication type list**: Select an authentication profile from the list. You specify profiles for network authentication in the configuration menu by clicking the button **Network authentication types**.

Additionally, using the telnet console or setup menu, you have the option to also display the type of available IP addresses, which they can obtain from the network after a successful authentication. You can access the relevant parameters **IPv4-Addr-Type** and **IPv6-Addr-Type** via the telnet path **Setup** > **IEEE802.11u** > **ANQP-General**.

NAI realms

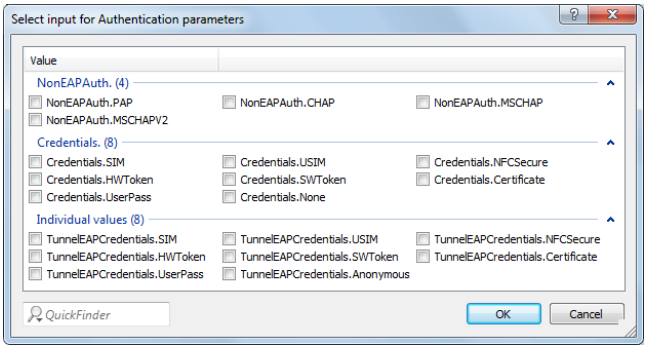
Using this table you manage the profile lists for the NAI realms. With these lists you have the ability to group certain ANQP elements. These include the realms of the hotspot operator and its roaming partners, as well as the associated authentication methods and parameters. Stations use the information stored in this list to determine whether they have the hotspot operator or one of its roaming partners have valid credentials.



In order to edit the entries in the table **NAI realms**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the NAI realm profile, such as the name of the service provider or service to which the NAI realm belongs. This name will appear later in the ANQP profile in the selection for **NAI realm list**.
- **NAI realm**: Enter the realm for the Wi-Fi network. The identification of the NAI realm consists of the username and a domain, which can be extended using regular expressions. The syntax for an NAI realm is defined in IETF RFC 2486 and, in the simplest case, is `<username>@<realm>`, for `user746@providerX.org`, and therefore the corresponding realm is `providerX.org`.
- **EAP method**: Select a language for the NAI realm from the list. EAP stands for the authentication profile (Extensible Authentication Protocol), followed by the corresponding authentication method Possible values are:
  - `EAP-TLS`: Authentication using Transport Layer Security (TLS). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI realm is performed by a digital certificate that the user has to install.
  - `EAP-SIM`: Authentication via the Subscriber Identity Module (SIM). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI realm is performed by the GSM Subscriber Identity Module (SIM card) of the station.
  - `EAP-TTLS`: Authentication via Tunneled Transport Layer Security (TTLS). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI real is performed using a username and password. For security reasons, the connection is tunneled for this method.
  - `EAP-AKA`: Authentication using Authentication and Key Agreement (AKA). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI realm is performed by the UMTS Subscriber Identity Module (USIM card) of the station.
  - `None`: Select this setting when the relevant NAI realm does not require authentication.

› **Authentication parameters**:



In the window that opens when you click the **Select** button, select the appropriate authentication parameters for the EAP method, such as EAP-TTLS `NonEAPAuth.MSCHAPV2`,`Credential.UserPass` or for EAP-TLS `Credentials.Certificate`. Possible values are:

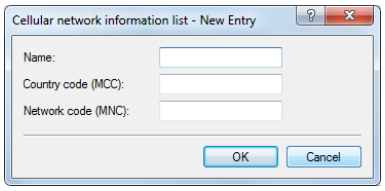
Table 24: Overview of possible authentication parameters

Parameter	Sub-Parameter	Comment
NonEAPAuth.		Identifies the protocol that the realm requires for phase 2 authentication:
	PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
	CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol, original CHAP implementation, specified in RFC 1994
	MSCHAP	Implementation of Microsoft CHAP V1, specified in RFC 2433
	MSCHAPV2	Implementation of Microsoft CHAP V2, specified in RFC 2759
Credentials.		Describes the type of authentication that the realm accepts:
	SIM	SIM card
	USIM	USIM card
	NFCSecure	NFC chip
	HWToken*	Hardware token
	SoftToken*	Software token
	Certificate	Digital certificate
	UserPass	Username and password
	None	No credentials required
TunnelEAPCredentials.*		
	SIM*	SIM card
	USIM*	USIM card
	NFCSecure*	NFC chip
	HWToken*	Hardware token
	SoftToken*	Software token
	Certificate*	Digital certificate
	UserPass*	Username and password
	Anonymous*	Anonymous login

*) The specific parameter or sub-parameter is reserved for future uses within the framework of Passpoint™ certification, but currently is not in use.

Cellular network information list

Using this table you manage the identity lists for cellular networks. With these lists you have the ability to group certain ANQP elements. These include the network and country codes of the hotspot operator and its roaming partners. Based on the information stored here, stations with SIM or USIM cards use this list to determine if the hotspot operator belongs to their cellular network company or has a roaming agreement with their cellular network company.



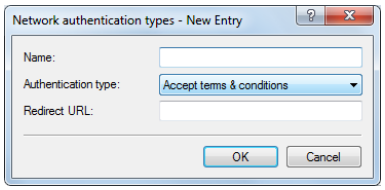
In order to edit the entries in the table **Cellular network information list**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the cellular network identity, such as an abbreviation of the network operator in combination with the cellular network standard used. This name will appear later in the ANQP profile in the selection for **Cellular list**.
- **Country code (MCC)**: Enter the Mobile Country Code (MCC) of the hotspot operator or its roaming partners, consisting of 2 or 3 characters, e.g., `262` for Germany.
- **Network code (MNC)**: Enter the Mobile Network Code (MNC) of the hotspot operator or its roaming partners, consisting of 2 or 3 characters.

Network authentication types

Using this table, you manage addresses to which the device forwards stations for an additional authentication step after the station has been successfully authenticated by the hotspot operator or any of its roaming partners. Only one forwarding entry is allowed for each authentication type.

Please remember to set the ASRA bit in the **Interfaces** table if you set up an additional authentication step.



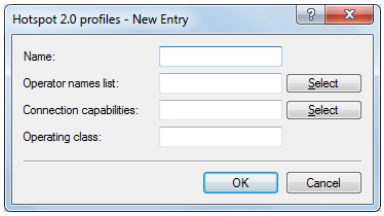
In order to edit the entries in the table **Network authentication types**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the table entry, for example, `Accept Terms & Conditions`. This name will appear later in the ANQP profile in the selection for **Network auth. type list**.
- **Authentication type**: Choose the context from the list, which applies before forwarding. Possible values are:
  - `Accept terms & conditions`: An additional authentication step is set up that requires the user to accept the terms of use.
  - `Online enrollment`: An additional authentication step is set up that requires the user to register online first.
  - `HTTP redirection`: An additional authentication step is set up to which the user is forwarded via HTTP.
  - `DNS redirection`: An additional authentication step is set up to which the user is forwarded via DNS.
- **Redirect URL**: Enter the address to which the device forwards stations for additional authentication.

Configuring Hotspot 2.0

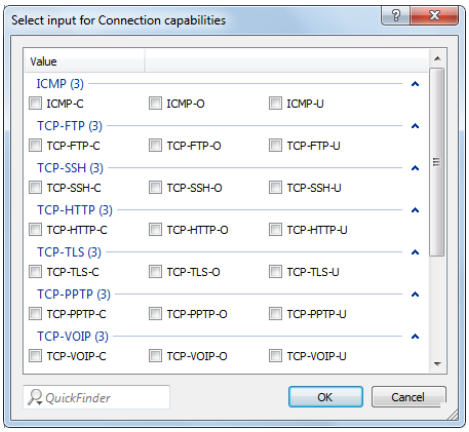
Hotspot 2.0 profiles

Using this table you manage the profile lists for the Hotspot 2.0. **Hotspot 2.0 profiles** offer you the ability to group certain ANQP elements (from the Hotspot 2.0 specification) and to assign them to mutually independent logical WLAN interfaces in the table **Interfaces**. These include, for example, the operator-friendly name, the connection capabilities, operating class and WAN metrics. Some of the elements are located in other profile lists.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Hotspot 2.0 profiles**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the Hotspot 2.0 profile here. This name will appear later in the interfaces table in the selection for the Hotspot 2.0 profile.
- **Operator name list**: Select the profile of a hotspot operator from the list. You specify profiles for hotspot operators in the configuration menu by clicking the **Operator list**.
- **Connection capabilities**:



Click the **Select** button and enter the connection capabilities for each service in the window that opens. Before joining a network, stations use the information stored in this list to determine whether your hotspot even allows the required services (e.g., Internet access, SSH, VPN). For this reason, the fewest possible entries should be entered with the status "unknown". Possible status values for each of these services are "closed" (`-C`), "Open" (`-O`) or "unknown" (`-U`):

- `ICMP`: Specify whether to allow the exchange of information and error messages via ICMP.
- `TCP-FTP`: Specify whether to allow file transfers via FTP.
- `TCP-SSH`: Specify whether to allow encrypted connections via SSH.
- `TCP-HTTP`: Specify whether to allow Internet connections via HTTP/HTTPS.
- `TCP-TLS`: Specify whether to allow encrypted connections via TLS.
- `TCP-PPTP`: Specify whether to allow the tunneling of VPN connections via PPTP.
- `TCP-VOIP`: Specify whether to allow Internet telephony via VoIP (TCP).
- `UDP-IPSEC-500`: Specify whether to allow IPSec via UDP and port 500.
- `UDP-VOIP`: Specify whether to allow Internet telephony via VoIP (UDP).
- `UDP-IPSEC-4500`: Specify whether to allow IPSec via UDP and port 4500.

- `ESP`: Specify whether to allow ESP (Encapsulating Security Payload) for IPSec.

If you do not know if a service is available and its ports are open or closed on your network, or you consciously do not want to make any entry for the status, select a `–U` setting.

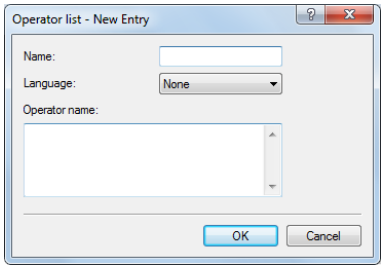
Using this dialog, you do not define permissions! The stations only use the entries to determine whether to join a network via your device. You configure specific access permissions for your network with other device functions, such as the firewall/QoS.

- **Operating class**: Enter the code for the global operating class of the access point. Using the operating class, you inform a station about the frequency bands and channels that your access point is available on. Example:
  - `81`: Operation at 2.4 GHz with channels 1-13
  - `116`: Operation at 40 MHz with channels 36 and 44

  Please refer to the IEEE standard 802.11-2012, Appendix E, Table E-4, for the operating class that corresponds to your device: Global operating classes, available at *standards.ieee.org*.

Operator list

Using this table you manage the cleartext name of the hotspot operator. An entry in this table offers you the ability to send a user-friendly operator name to the stations, which they can then display instead of the realms. However, whether they actually do that depends on their implementation.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Operator list**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the entry, such as an index number or combination of operator-name and language.
- **Language**: Select a language for the hotspot operator from the list.
- **Operator name**: Enter the cleartext name of the hotspot operator.

12.18.15 Static WLAN controller

The widespread use of wireless APs and wireless routers provides great convenience and flexibility in network access for businesses, universities and other organizations.

Yet in spite of the numerous advantages WLAN infrastructures offer, there are still a number of unsettled issues:

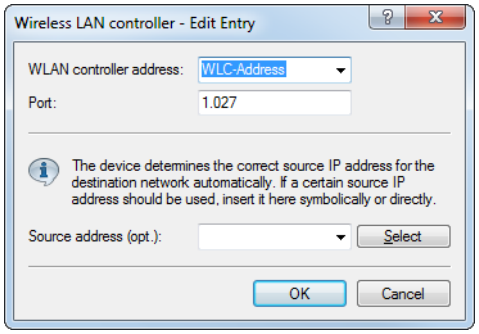
- All APs must be configured and require appropriate monitoring in order to recognize unwelcome WLAN clients, etc. The administration of the APs, especially for larger WLAN infrastructures with the appropriate security mechanisms, requires advanced qualifications and experience on the part of those responsible, and it ties up considerable resources in the IT departments.
- The manual customization of the configurations in the APs when changes are made to the WLAN infrastructure can be time-consuming, with the result that different configurations can be present in the WLAN at the same time.
- Combined utilization of the shared communications medium (air) requires effective coordination of the APs to avoid frequency interference and optimize network performance.
- In public places, APs are a potential security risk because the devices themselves, including the security-related data in them such as passwords, etc., are susceptible to theft. In addition, rogue APs may be able to connect to the LAN unnoticed, bypassing the security policies that are in place.

Centralized WLAN management is the solution to these problems. The configuration of the AP is then no longer carried out in the devices themselves but by a central authority instead, the WLAN controller (WLC). The WLC authenticates the APs and transmits the correct configuration to the approved devices. This allows for convenient configuration of the WLAN from a central point and the changes to the configuration affect all of the APs simultaneously. Optionally the configuration provided by the WLC is not stored in the AP's flash memory but in RAM, so security-related data cannot fall into the hands of unauthorized persons in the event that devices are stolen. Only in "standalone operation" is the configuration optionally saved for a defined period to flash memory (in an area that cannot be read out with LANconfig or other tools).

Here you enter the WLC that this managed AP should preferably contact. In order for the AP to receive its configuration from a WLC, navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Operation** and set the **WLAN operation mode** to **Managed**.

This setting is not required if the AP and WLC are located in the same IP network.

LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **WLC** > **WLAN controller**



WLAN controller address

The name or IP address of the WLAN controller is specified here.

The name of the LANCOM WLAN controller is preset to 'WLC-Address', so in most cases you do not have to change anything here. If DNS address resolution is not possible, enter the IP address of the WLAN controller here.

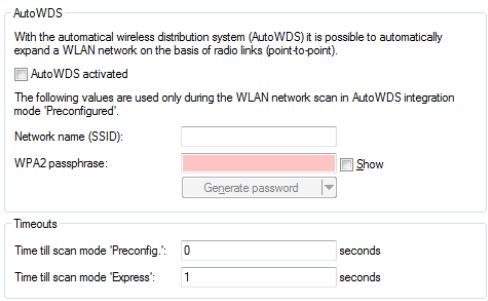
Port

The port used to communicate with the WLC. Default: 1027

Source address

Here you have the option to configure a sender address for the device to use in place of the one that would otherwise be used automatically for this target address.

12.18.16 AutoWDS



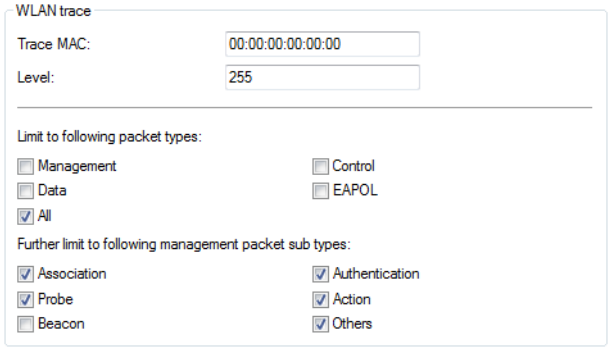
LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **AutoWDS**

Here you configure the AP settings that relate to an automatic wireless distribution system (AutoWDS). For further information, please see *AutoWDS – wireless integration of APs via P2P connections* on page 1045:

12.18.17 WLAN data trace

A trace can often help with problems. Settings that are specific to WLAN traces can be made here. See also *Trace information—for advanced users* on page 283.

LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **Trace**



Trace-MAC

The output of trace messages for the WLAN-Data-Trace can be set for a certain client. The corresponding MAC address is entered here.

Every network card has its own MAC address that is unique in the world. The address is a 12-character hexadecimal number (e.g. 00A057010203). This address can generally be found printed on the network card.

Entering '000000000000' deactivates this function and outputs trace messages for all clients.

Trace level

The output of trace messages for the WLAN data trace can be restricted to contain certain content only. The value entered here restricts the packets in the WLAN-DATA trace to the specified level.

Possible values:

0 to 255

Special values:

0: Reports that a packet has been received/sent

1: Adds the physical parameters for the packets (data rate, signal strength, etc.)

2: Adds the MAC header

3: Adds the Layer-3 header (e.g. IP)

4: Adds the Layer-4 header (TCP, UDP...)

5: Adds the TCP/UDP payload

255: No restrictions on content. The trace includes the entire packets.

Default:

255

Packet types

Similar to Trace MAC and Trace level, the output from WLAN DATA traces can be restricted by the type of packet sent or received, e.g. management (authenticate, association, action, probe-request/response), control (e.g. powersave poll), EAPOL (802.1X negotiation, WPA key handshake).

Possible values:

Management

Control

Data

EAPOL

All

Default:

All

Management packets

With this selection it is possible to set which type of management frames should automatically appear in the WLAN-DATA trace

Possible values:

Association: (Re)Association Request/Response, Disassociate

Authentication: Authentication, Deauthentication

Probes: Probe Request, Probe Response

Action

Beacon

Other: all other management frame types

Default:

Association

Authentication

Probes

Action

Other

12.18.18 Advanced WLAN parameters

> **ProbeRsp-Retries**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Transmission**

This is the number of hard retries for probe responses, i.e. messages sent from an AP in answer to a probe request from a client.

Possible values:

> 0 to 15

Default:

> 3

Default:

> Values larger than 15 are taken as 15.

> **Block time**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Roaming**

If your device is operating as a WLAN client in an environment with multiple WLAN access points all with the same SSID, you can define a time period during which the WLAN client will avoid associating with a particular AP after receiving an "association-reject" from it.

Possible values:

> 0 to 4294967295 seconds

Default:

> 0

UUID info element for LANCOM WLAN access points

All current LANCOM access points have multi-SSID capability. This means that they can simultaneously present different 'virtual' access points to their WLAN clients.

For devices with two radio modules (dual radio), the BSSIDs relate to the logical networks on the corresponding radio module. However, the MAC addresses of the two radio modules are completely independent of one another. Consequently, logical networks with different BSSIDs cannot be unequivocally related to a single device.

However, for the planning and monitoring of networks, it is often desirable to be able to relate logical networks to their respective devices (or radio modules).

LANCOM access points support an Aironet-compatible information element that contains the name of the device as assigned to it by the administrator. The transmission of this information is optional and many operators disable it for security reasons because they want to publish as little information as possible about the access point on the network.

Thus, this information either does not appear for network monitoring at all or, depending on the setting, the information may not identify the device as a LANCOM access point.

Besides this, LANCOM access points possess a UUID (universally unique identifier), which is calculated from the device type and serial number and can identify the device uniquely on the network. By using encryption when generating the UUID, the device type or serial number can only be inferred with considerable effort (brute-force attack for all types of devices and serial numbers).

Transmission of the UUID can be switched on or off independent of the radio module and logical network.

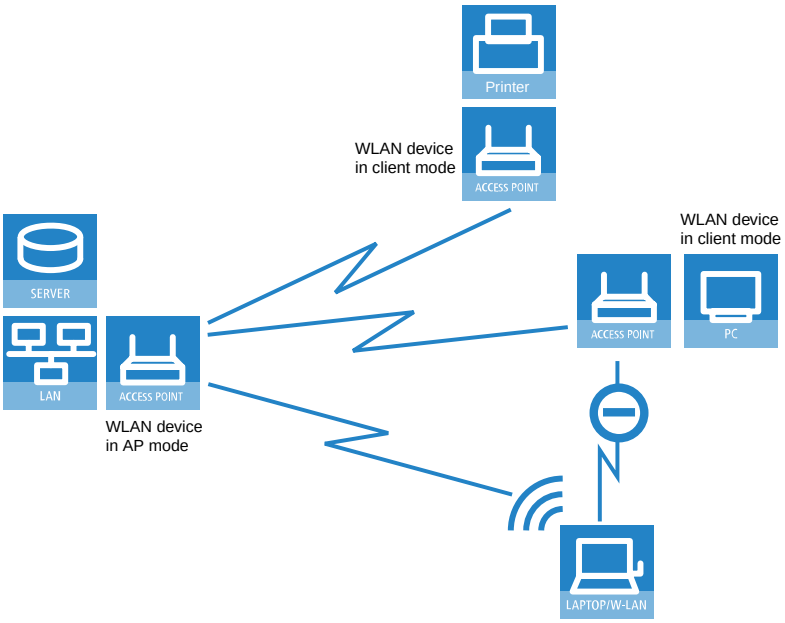
Rate adaptation algorithm

Unlike an Ethernet connection, a wireless connection uses variable bit rates. Higher bit rates provide a better throughput, but they require a high signal quality at the receiver end. This is essential for error-free decoding. WLAN devices adapt their bit rate the first time a connection is made or if there is a change to the properties of the medium. This ensures that the device uses the best available bit rate.

Unlike the standard algorithm, the well-known Minstrel algorithm checks not only the neighboring bit rates, but all available bit rates. This is a quicker way of determining the optimal bit rate.

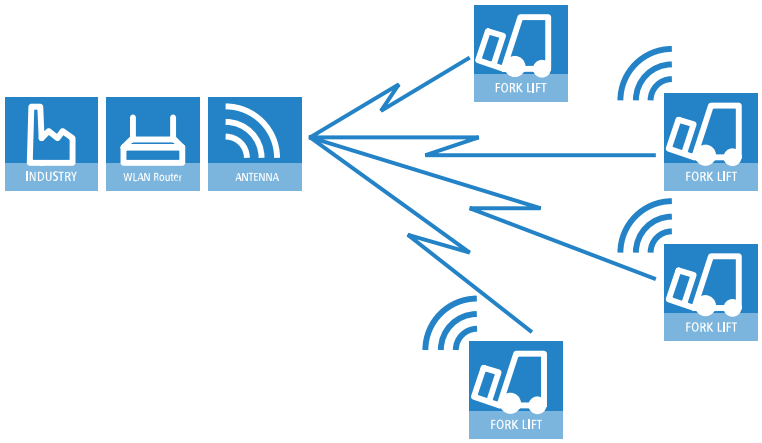
12.19 Configuring the client mode

To connect individual devices with an Ethernet interface into a wireless LAN, LANCOM devices with a WLAN module can be switched to "client mode", whereupon they act as conventional wireless LAN adapters and not as access points (AP). The use of client mode therefore allows devices fitted with only an Ethernet interface, such as PCs and printers, to be integrated into a wireless LAN.



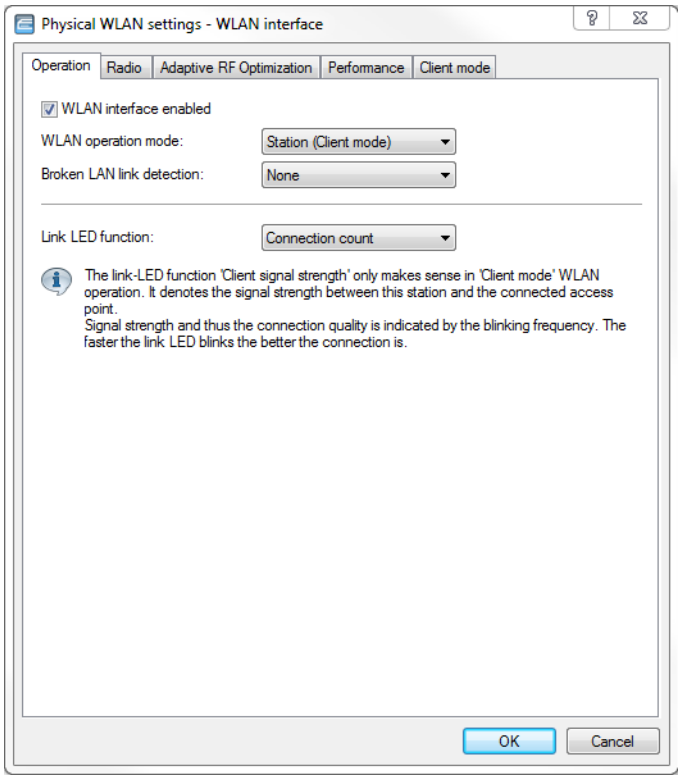
Multiple WLAN clients can register with a WLAN device in AP mode, which is not the case for a WLAN device in client mode.

In industrial applications mobile WLAN clients can also be deployed, such as on a forklift truck, which then has permanent contact to the controller over the wireless connection.



12.19.1 Enabling client mode with LANconfig

To switch your device to client mode using LANconfig, navigate to the view **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** and, on the **Operation** tab, set the WLAN operation mode to **Client**. Confirm your selection by clicking the **OK** button.



12.19.2 Client settings

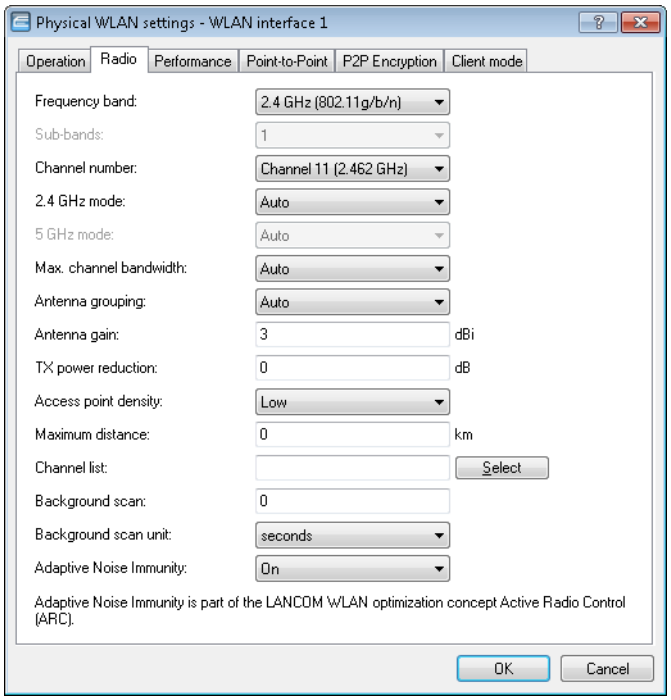
For LANCOM APs and LANCOM wireless routers in client mode, further settings relating to client behavior can be configured from the 'Client mode' tab under the settings for the physical interfaces (**Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings**). See *Client mode* on page 901.

The configuration of the client settings can also be carried out with the WLAN Wizards in LANconfig.

12.19.3 Radio settings

For the WLAN client to connect to an AP, it needs to use suitable frequency bands/channels.

1. To edit the radio settings in LANconfig, go to the 'Radio' tab under the physical WLAN settings for the desired WLAN interface.



2. Set the frequency band, the channels and the 2.4 GHz/5 GHz mode to match the settings of the AP.

Selection of the frequency band and channels is not necessary on some models, such as those devices which support only one frequency band.

Greenfield mode for access points with IEEE 802.11n

For access points that comply with the IEEE 802.11n standard, the physical WLAN settings provide the option to allow or restrict data transmission according to the IEEE 802.11n standard.

Along with the selection of the individual a/b/g/n standards and a selection of mixed operating modes, the access points provide the option of using the Greenfield mode. Once activated in the physical WLAN settings for a WLAN interface, the Greenfield mode only allows WLAN clients that support the IEEE 802.11n standard to associate with the corresponding logical WLANs (SSIDs). Other WLAN clients that only work with the standards IEEE 802.11a/b/g cannot associate with these WLANs.

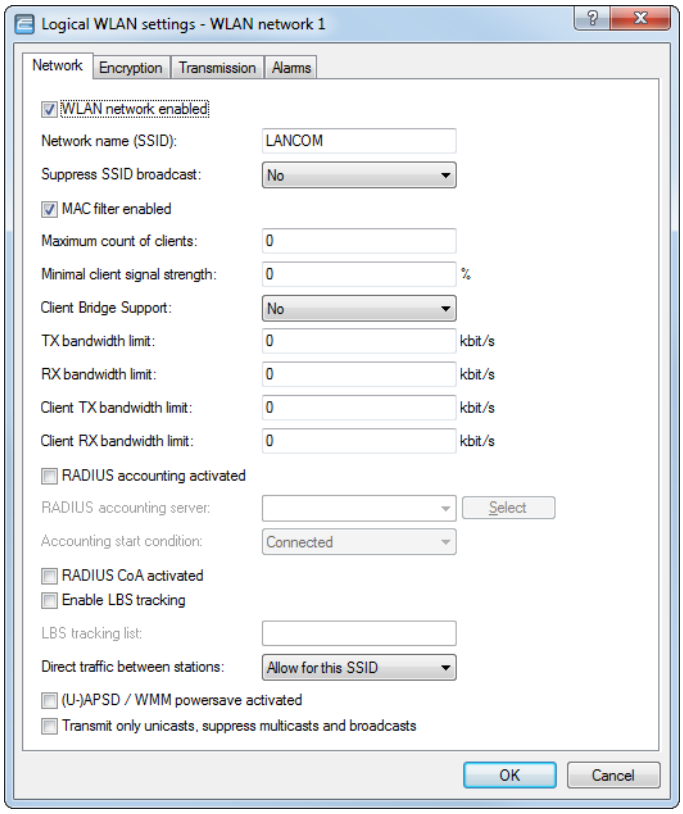
The IEEE 802.11n standard only allows connections that are either encrypted with WPA2/AES or unencrypted. WEP- and TKIP-based encryptions are not allowed in IEEE 802 11n. Please be aware of the following restrictions depending on the actual physical and logical WLAN settings:

- If, in the Physical settings, you activate support of a mixed-mode which includes the IEEE 802.11n standard and individual WLAN clients on a logical network only support WEP encryption, then the access point will reduce the transmission rate to the 802.11a/b/g standard, because the higher transfer rates available with IEEE 802.11n are not supported in combination with WEP.
- If, in the Encryption settings for a logical WLAN network, you enable not only AES session keys but also TKIP session keys, then the access point will use only the AES session key for this WLAN, because TKIP is not supported by IEEE 802.11n.
- If, in the Encryption settings for a logical WLAN network, you enable only TKIP session keys, then the access point will reduce the transmission rate to the 802.11a/b/g standard, because the higher transfer rates available with IEEE 802.11n are not supported in combination with TKIP.

12.19.4 Setting the SSID of the available network

The SSID of the network to which the client stations are to connect must be entered into the WLAN clients.

1. To enter the SSIDs in LANconfig, navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General**. After clicking on **Logical WLAN settings**, select the **first** WLAN interface.

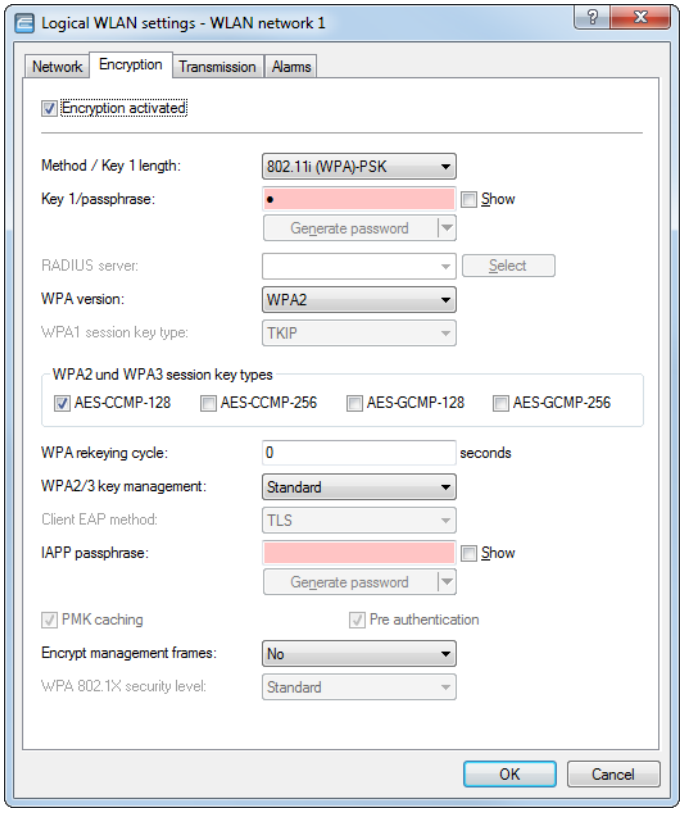


2. On the **Network** tab, enable the WLAN network and enter the SSID of the network the client station should log onto.

12.19.5 Encryption settings

For access to a WLAN, the appropriate encryption methods and key must be set in the client station.

1. To enter the key, in LANconfig navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **Encryption**.



2. Enable encryption and match the encryption method to the settings for the AP.
3. In WLAN client operating mode, LANCOM APs and LANCOM wireless routers can use EAP/802.1X to authenticate themselves at another AP. For this, select the desired client EAP method here. Note that the selected client EAP method must match the settings of the AP that the device is attempting to log onto.

Depending on the EAP method, the appropriate certificates must be stored in the device:

- For TTLS and PEAP this means the EAP/TLS root certificate only; the key is entered as a combination username:password.
- TLS additionally requires the EAP/TLS device certificate together with the private key.

When working with WPA or 802.1X, settings may need to be made in the RADIUS server.

12.19.6 PMK caching in the WLAN client mode

When establishing a connection from a WLAN client to an access point operating with 802.1x-authentication, the two stations negotiate a shared key, known as the Pairwise Master Key (PMK), for the subsequent encryption. In applications with mobile WLAN clients (laptops in large offices, moving objects with WLAN connections in the industrial sector), the WLAN clients often change the access points via which they are logged in to the WLAN network. And although WLAN clients roam back and forth between different access points, in most cases these tend to be the same ones.

Access points typically save a negotiated PMK for a certain period of time. WLAN devices in WLAN client mode also store PMKs. As soon as a WLAN client starts a login procedure for which a connection already existed, the WLAN client can directly transfer the existing PMK to the access point. In this way, the two remote stations skip the PMK negotiation phase while establishing the connection, and the WLAN client and access point establish the connection much faster.

12.19.7 Pre-authentication in WLAN-client mode

Fast authentication by means of the Pairwise Master Key (PMK) only works if the WLAN client was logged on to the access point previously. The WLAN client uses pre-authentication to reduce the time to logon to the access point at the first logon attempt.

Usually, a WLAN client carries out a background scan of the environment to find existing access points that it could connect to. Access points that support WPA2/802.1x can communicate their pre-authentication capability to any WLAN clients that issue requests. A WPA2 pre-authentication differs from a normal 802.1x authentication as follows:

- The WLAN client logs on to the new access point via the infrastructure network, which interconnects the access points. This can be an Ethernet connection or a WDS link (wireless distribution system), or a combination of both connection types.
- A pre-authentication is distinguished from a normal 802.1x authentication by the differing Ethernet protocol (EtherType). This allows the current access point and all other network partners to treat the pre-authentication as a normal data transmission from the WLAN client.
- After successful pre-authentication, the negotiated PMK is stored to the new access point and the WLAN client.

  The use of PMKs is a prerequisite for pre-authentication. Otherwise, pre-authentication is not possible.

- When the client wants to connect to the new access point, the stored PMK significantly accelerates the logon procedure. The further procedure is equivalent to the *PMK caching*.

On the client side, the number of concurrent pre-authentications is limited to four. This minimizes the network load on the central RADIUS server in network environments with large numbers of access points.

12.19.8 Multiple WLAN profiles in client mode

Introduction

In order for individual devices equipped with an Ethernet interface to be connected to a wireless LAN, APs can be switched to client mode, in which they act as conventional wireless LAN clients and not as APs.

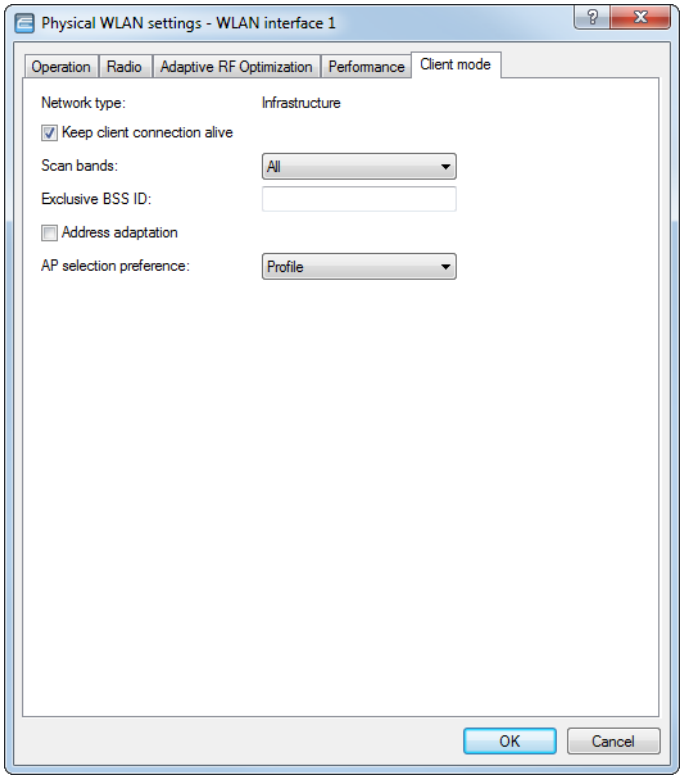
WLAN clients such as notebooks are generally able to save and manage various profiles which allow different APs to be selected depending on the environment (e.g. for a company WLAN or for another WLAN at home). These profiles store various information such as the WLAN SSID and the associated key. The WLAN client automatically selects the profile fitting to the strongest available or preferred WLAN.

LANCOM APs can store up to 16 different WLAN profiles for use in client mode. The profile in client mode activates the networking and transmission parameters, and also the encryption settings for the logical WLAN.

Please observe that a WLAN module in client mode only connects to one AP at a time, even if multiple WLAN profiles have been defined.

Configuration

Not only can networking, transmission and encryption parameters be defined separately for each WLAN module, but also which criteria are to be used to select the client profile.



LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Client mode**

Command line: **Setup** > **Interfaces** > **WLAN** > **Client-Modes** > **WLAN-1**

AP selection preference

Here you select how this interface is to be used.

Possible values:

Signal strength

Selects the profile for the WLAN offering the strongest signal. This setting causes the WLAN module in client mode to automatically switch to a different WLAN as soon as it offers a stronger signal.

Profile

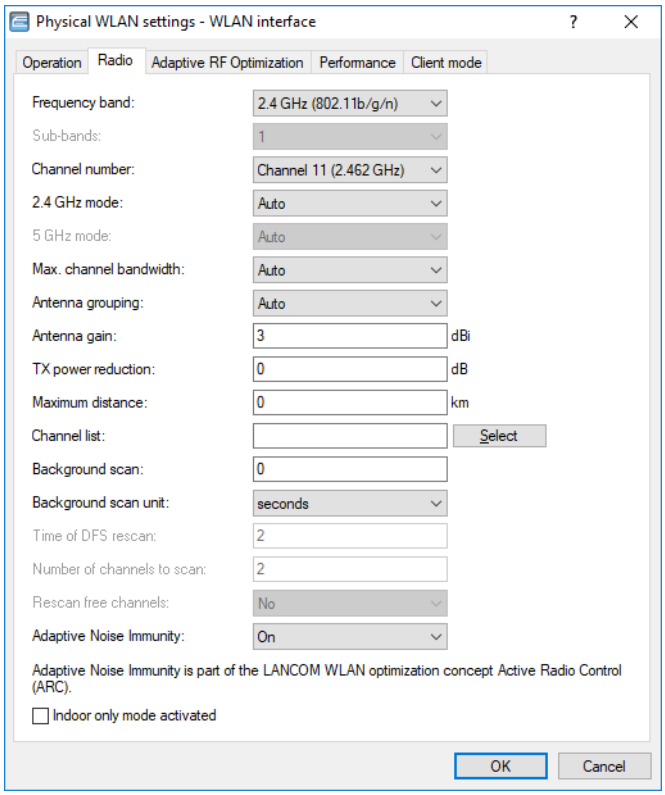
Selects the profile for available WLANs in the order that they have been defined (WLAN index, e.g. WLAN-1, WLAN-2, etc.), even if another WLAN offers a stronger signal. In this setting, the WLAN module in client mode automatically switches to a different WLAN as soon as a WLAN with a lower WLAN index is detected (irrespective of signal strengths).

12.19.9 Roaming

Roaming is defined as the transfer of a WLAN client to another AP once the connection to the access point used so far can no longer be kept alive. To allow roaming, at least one additional AP must be within range of the client, it must provide a network with an identical SSID and matching radio and encryption settings.

Under normal circumstances the WLAN client would only log onto another AP if the connection to the AP used until to that point was lost completely (hard roaming). Soft roaming on the other hand enables the client to use scan information to roam to the strongest AP. With the background scanning function, the device in client mode can gather information on other available APs prior to the connection being lost. In this case the client is not switched to another AP once the existing connection has been lost completely, but rather when another AP within its range has a stronger signal.

1. To enable soft roaming, navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Extended settings** > **Expert WLAN settings** > **Roaming** and enable soft roaming for the selected interface. If necessary, enter settings for the other parameters such as the threshold values and signal levels.
2. To configure background scanning in LANconfig, go to the 'Radio' tab under the physical WLAN settings for the relevant WLAN interface.



3. Enter the background scan interval as the time in which the device regularly searches the currently unused frequencies of the active band for available APs. To achieve fast roaming the scan time is set, for example, to 260 seconds (2.4 GHz) or 720 seconds (5 GHz).

ARF network for IAPP

APs use the IAPP protocol to communicate and pass information about the handovers of associated WLAN clients which are roaming. APs regularly send out multicast announcements to inform the devices about the BSSIDs and IP addresses of the other APs. A roaming WLAN client informs a new AP about its former AP. The AP uses the information supplied by the IAPP protocol to inform the former AP to remove the WLAN client from its list of associated clients.

Where an AP supports multiple ARF networks, the IAPP announcements are transmitted on all ARF networks. To limit these multicasts to one particular ARF network, it is possible to define an IAPP IP network.

Command line: **Setup** > **WLAN**

> **IAPP-IP-Network**

Here you select the ARF network which is to be used as the IAPP-IP network.

Possible values:

> Selection from the list of ARF networks defined in the device; max. 16 alphanumerical characters

Default:

> Blank

Special values:

> Blank: If no IAPP-IP network is defined, IAPP announcements are transmitted on all of the defined ARF networks.

13 WLAN management

13.1 Initial situation

The widespread use of wireless access points (APs) and wireless routers provides great convenience and flexibility in network access for businesses, universities and other organizations.

Yet in spite of the numerous advantages WLAN infrastructures offer, there are still a number of unsettled issues:

- All APs must be configured and require appropriate monitoring in order to recognize unwelcome WLAN clients, etc. The administration of the APs, especially for larger WLAN infrastructures with the appropriate security mechanisms, requires advanced qualifications and experience on the part of those responsible, and it ties up considerable resources in the IT departments.
- The manual customization of the configurations in the APs when changes are made to the WLAN infrastructure can be time-consuming, with the result that different configurations can be present in the WLAN at the same time.
- Combined utilization of the shared communications medium (air) requires effective coordination of the APs to avoid frequency interference and optimize network performance.
- In public places, APs are a potential security risk because the devices themselves, including the security-related data in them such as passwords, etc., are susceptible to theft. In addition, rogue APs may be able to connect to the LAN unnoticed, bypassing the security policies that are in place.

13.2 Technical concepts

Centralized WLAN management is the solution to these problems. The configuration of the AP is then no longer carried out in the devices themselves but by a central authority instead, the WLAN controller (WLC). The WLC authenticates the APs and transmits the correct configuration to the approved devices. This allows for convenient configuration of the WLAN from a central point and the changes to the configuration affect all of the APs simultaneously. Optionally the configuration provided by the WLC is not stored in the AP's flash memory but in RAM, so security-related data cannot fall into the hands of unauthorized persons in the event that devices are stolen. Only in "standalone" operation is the configuration optionally saved for a defined period to flash memory (in an area that cannot be read out with LANconfig or other tools).

13.2.1 The CAPWAP standard

The CAPWAP protocol (Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points) introduced by the IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) is a standard for the centralized management of large WLAN infrastructures.

CAPWAP uses two channels for data transfer:

- Control channel, encrypted with Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS). This channel is used to exchange administration information between the WLC and the AP.

  DTLS is an encryption protocol is based on TLS but, in contrast to TLS itself, it can be used for transfers over connectionless, unsecured transport protocols such as UDP. DTLS therefore combines the advantages of the high security provided by TLS with the fast transfer via UDP. This also makes DTLS suitable for the transfer of VoIP packets (unlike TLS) because, even after the loss of a packet, the subsequent packets can be authenticated again.

- The payload data from the WLAN is transferred through this data channel from the AP via the WLC into the LAN—encapsulated in the CAPWAP protocol.

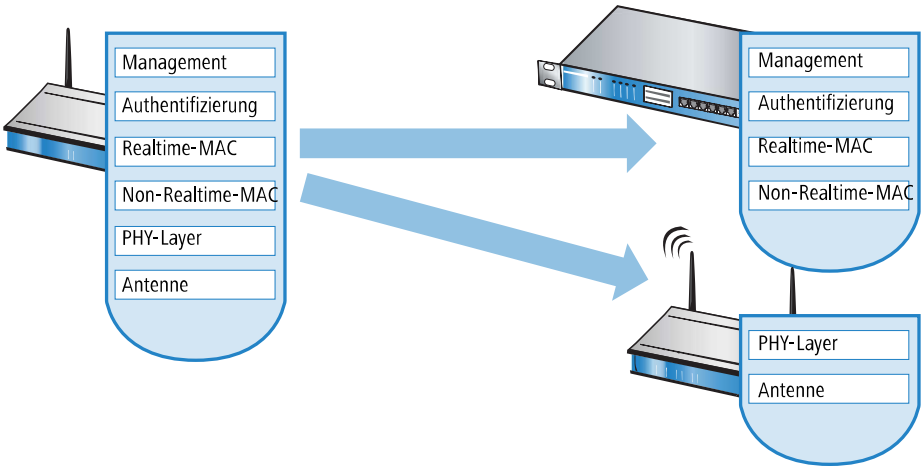
13.2.2 Smart controller technology

In a decentralized WLAN structure with stand-alone APs (operating as so-called "rich access points") all functions for data transfer take place in the PHY layer, the control functions in the MAC layer, and the management functions are integrated in the APs. Centralized WLAN management divides these tasks among two different devices:

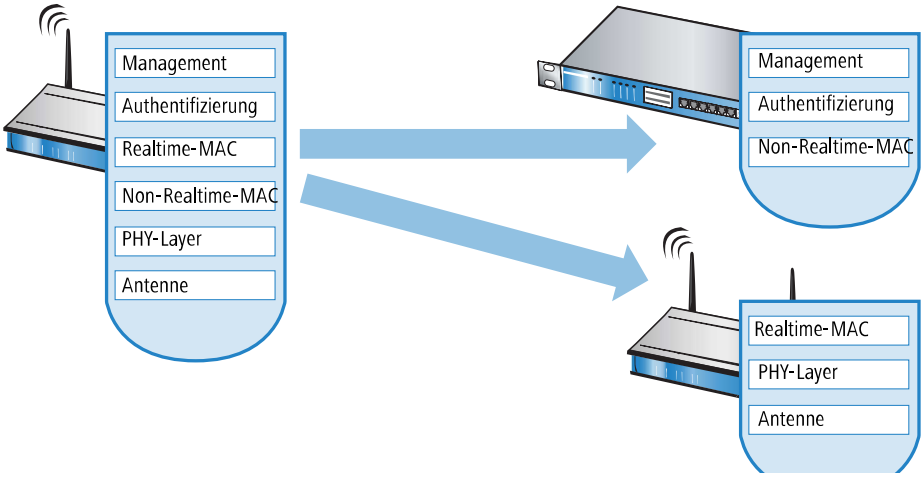
- The central WLC assumes the administration tasks.
- The decentralized APs handle the data transfer at the PHY layer and the MAC features.
- A RADIUS or EAP server can be added as a third component RADIUS or for authentication of WLAN clients (which can also be the case in stand-alone WLANs).

CAPWAP describes three different scenarios for the relocation of WLAN functions to the central WLC.

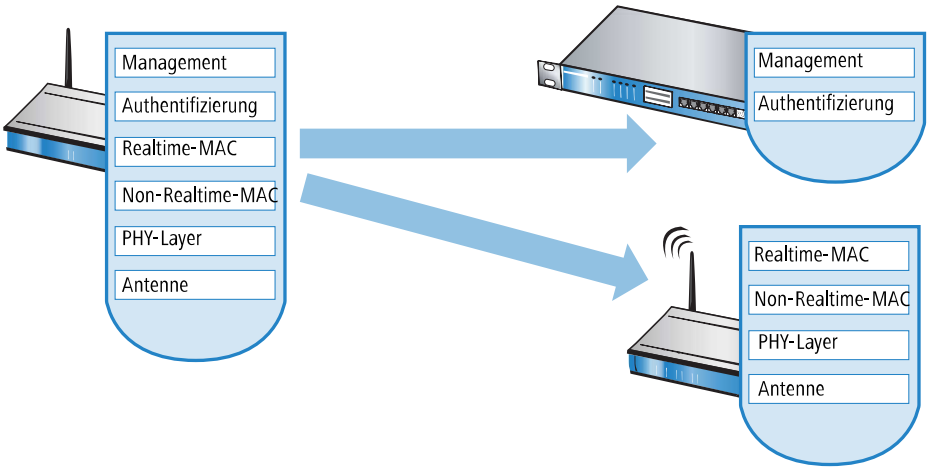
- Remote MAC: In this case, all of the WLAN functions are transferred from the AP to the WLC. Here, the APs only serve as "extended antennas" without independent intelligence



- Split MAC: With this variant, only a portion of the WLAN functions are transferred to the WLC. Normally, realtime applications will continue to be processed in the AP; the non-realtime applications are processed via the central WLC.



- Local MAC: The third possibility provides for complete management and monitoring of the WLAN data traffic directly in the APs. The only information exchanged between the AP and the WLC is for network management and ensures that the APs have a uniform configuration.



Smart Controller Technology from LANCOM uses the local MAC procedure. Thanks to the reduction of centralized tasks, these WLAN infrastructures offer optimum scalability. At the same time, infrastructure of this type prevents the WLC from becoming a central bottleneck that has to process large portions of the overall data traffic. In remote MAC and split MAC architectures, all payload data is forced to run centrally via the WLC. In local MAC architectures the data can alternatively be broken out from the APs directly to the LAN to provide high-performance data transfer. With break-out into the LAN, data can also be directly routed into special VLANs. This makes it very easy to set up closed networks, such as for guest access accounts.

Layer 3 tunneling and layer 3 roaming

WLCs with LCOS also support the transfer of payload data through a CAPWAP tunnel. This allows selected applications such as VoIP to be routed via the central WLC, for example. If WLAN clients change to a different radio cell, the underlying IP connection will not be interrupted because it continues to be managed by the central WLC (layer-3 roaming). In this way, mobile SIP telephones can easily roam between Ethernet subnets, even during a call.

Managing data streams centrally can also make configuring VLANs at the switch ports unnecessary in environments with numerous VLANs because all CAPWAP tunnels are centrally managed on the WLC.

13.2.3 Communication between access point and WLAN controller

Communication between an AP and the WLC is always initiated by the AP. In the following cases, the devices search for a WLC that can assign a configuration to them:

- When shipped, the WLAN modules in LANCOM APs are set to the 'Managed' operating mode. In this mode, APs search for a central WLC that can provide them with a configuration, and they remain in "search mode" until they discover a suitable WLC or until the operating mode of the WLAN module is changed manually.
- While the AP searches for a WLC, its WLAN module is switched off.
- Ex-factory, the WLAN modules in LANCOM wireless routers are set to the 'access point' operating mode. In this mode, wireless routers function as standalone access points with a configuration that is stored locally in the device. For integration into a WLAN infrastructure that is centrally managed by WLAN controllers, the operating mode of the WLAN modules in wireless routers has to be switched into the 'managed' mode.

The AP sends a "discovery request message" at the beginning of communication to find the available WLCs. This request is sent as a broadcast. However, because in some structures a potential WLC cannot be reached by a broadcast, special addresses from additional WLCs can also be entered into the configuration of the APs.

The DNS names of WLCs can also be resolved. All APs with LCOS 7.22 or higher have the default name 'WLC-Address' preconfigured so that a DNS server can resolve this name to a WLC. The same applies to the DHCP

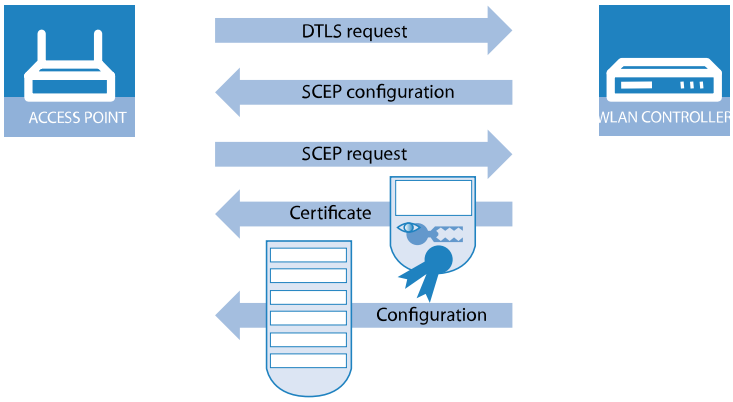
suffixes learned via DHCP. This also makes it possible to reach WLCs that are not located in the same network, without having to configure the APs.

From the available WLCs, the AP selects the best one and requests it to establish the DTLS connection. The "best" WC for the AP is the one with the least load, i.e. the lowest ratio of managed APs compared to the maximum possible number of APs. In case of two or more equally "good" WLCs, the AP selects the nearest one in the network, i.e. that with the fastest response time.

The WLC then uses an internal random number to determine a unique and secure session key, which it uses to secure the connection to the AP. The CA in the WLC issues a certificate to the AP by means of SCEP. The certificate is protected by a one-time-only "challenge" (password). The AP uses this certificate for authentication at the WLC to collect the certificate.

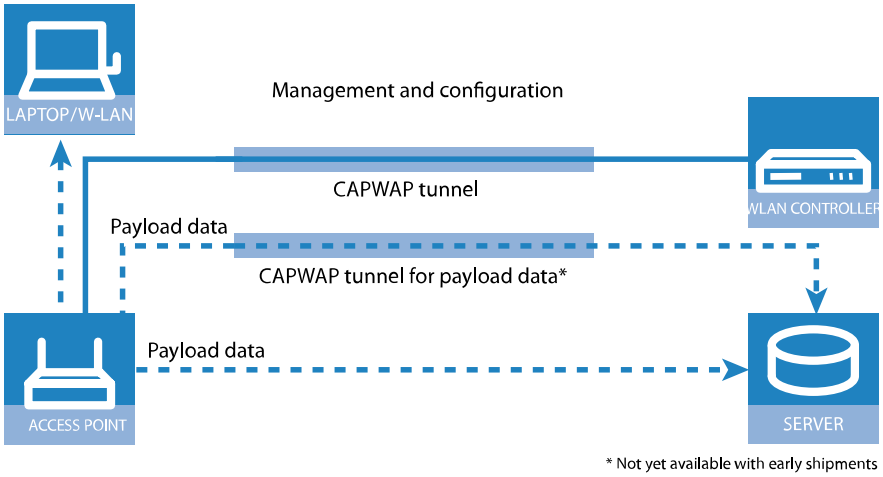
The AP is provided with the configuration for the integrated SCEP client via the secure DTLS connection – the AP uses the SCEP to retrieve its certificate from the SCEP CA. Once this is done, the assigned configuration is transferred to the AP.

SCEP stands for Simple Certificate Encryption Protocol, CA for Certification Authority.



Authentication and configuration can both be carried out either automatically or only with a corresponding entry of the AP's MAC address in the AP table of the WLC. If the AP's WLAN modules were deactivated at the beginning of the DTLS communication, these will be activated after successful transfer of the certificate and configuration (provided they are not explicitly deactivated in the configuration).

The management and configuration data will then be transferred via the CAPWAP tunnel. The payload data from the WLAN client is then released in the AP directly into the LAN and transferred, for example, to the server.



13.2.4 Zero-touch management

With their ability to automatically assign a certificate and configurations to the requesting APs, WLCs implement true "zero-touch management". Simply connect new APs to the LAN—no further configuration is necessary. This simplification to only having to install devices reduces the workload for IT departments, especially in decentralized structures, because no special IT or WLAN expertise is required for the setup at the remote locations.

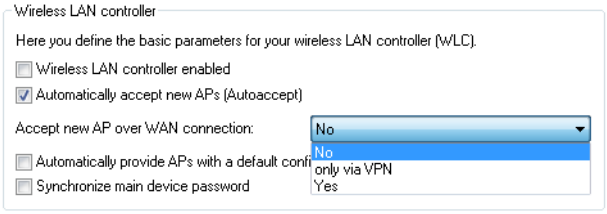
13.2.5 Split management

APs are able to search for their WLC in remote networks—a simple IP connection, such as via a VPN path, is all you need. As the WLCs only influence the WLAN part of the configuration in the AP, all other functions can be managed separately. This division of the configuration tasks makes WLCs ideal for establishing a company-wide WLAN infrastructure that is based at the headquarters and includes all of the branch and home offices connected to it.

13.2.6 Protection against unauthorized CAPWAP access from the WAN

The WLC or LANCOM router with activated WLC option handles CAPWAP requests from the LAN and the WAN in the same way. In the case of requests from WAN remote stations, it accepts the APs into its AP management and, under certain circumstances, it sends a default configuration. If configured appropriately, the CAPWAP service is no longer available to WAN remote stations, meaning that for WAN remote stations, APs are no longer accepted and configurations are not provisioned.

The configuration is done under **WLAN Controller** > **General** in the section **Wireless LAN controller**. If the automatic acceptance of new APs is enabled, you can use the feature **Accept new AP over WAN connection** to control whether the CAPWAP service is available to WAN remote stations.



No

The device accepts no new APs over the WAN connection.

Only via VPN

The device only accepts new APs if the WAN connection is via VPN.

Yes

The device accepts all new APs over the WAN connection.

13.3 Basic configuration of the WLAN controller function

To get started, a WLC requires the following two pieces of information to carry out the mainly automated configuration of the APs:

- Current time information (data and time) for checking the validity of the necessary certificates.
- A WLAN profile that the WLC can assign to the APs.

Further optional examples for configuration include setting up redundant WLC, the manual disconnection and connection of APs, and backing up any necessary certificates.

By default the WLC listens for connections on port 1027 (configurable). The certificates are distributed by SCEP, which uses port 80 (HTTP).

13.3.1 Setting the time information for the WLAN controller

The management of APs in a WLAN infrastructure is based upon the automatic distribution of certificates via the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP).

The WLC can only check the temporal validity of these certificates if it is set with the current time. If the time is not set in the WLC, the WLAN LED illuminates in red and the device is not operational.

Routers with the WLC option do not have a WLAN LED.

To set the time in the device start LANconfig, click on the entry for the WLC with the right-hand mouse key and select **Set date/time** from the context menu. Alternatively in WEBconfig you can click on **Extras** and then **Set date and time**.

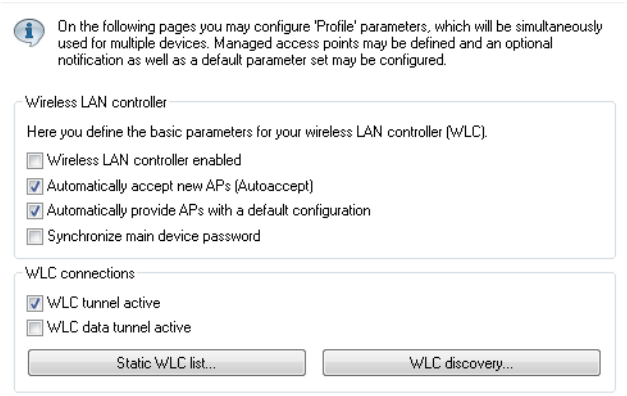
Alternatively, WLCs can automatically retrieve the current time from a time server by means of the Network Time Protocol (NTP). Information on NTP and its configuration can be found in the LCOS reference manual.

As soon as the WLC has valid time information it begins with the generation of the certificates (root and device certificate) and it determines a random number. Once the necessary certificates have been generated, the WLC indicates that it is operational and the WLAN LED blinks red.

Once operational, you should make a backup copy of the certificates (*Backing up the certificates*)

13.3.2 Example: Default configuration

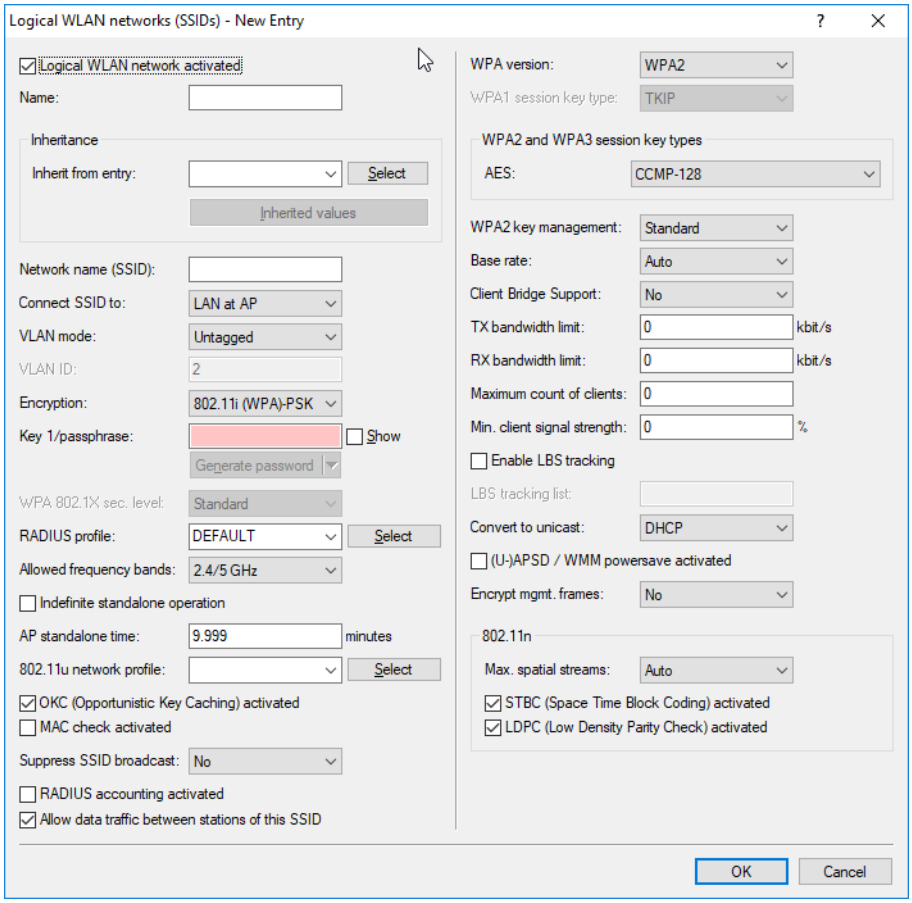
1. Open up the configuration of the WLC by double-clicking on its entry in LANconfig.
2. Activate the options for the automatic acceptance of new APs and the provision of a default configuration under **WLAN controller** > **General**.



- **Automatically accept new APs (Auto-accept)** Enables the WLC to provide a certificate to all new APs without a valid certificate. To this end, either a configuration for the AP has to be entered into the AP table, or 'Automatically provide APs with a default configuration' has to be activated.
- **Automatically provide APs with a default configuration**: This enables the WLC to assign a default configuration to any new AP, even if no explicit configuration has been stored for it.

By combining these two options, the WLC can automatically integrate any managed-mode AP found in the LAN into its WLAN infrastructure. This may, for example, be a temporary measure during the rollout phase of a WLAN installation.

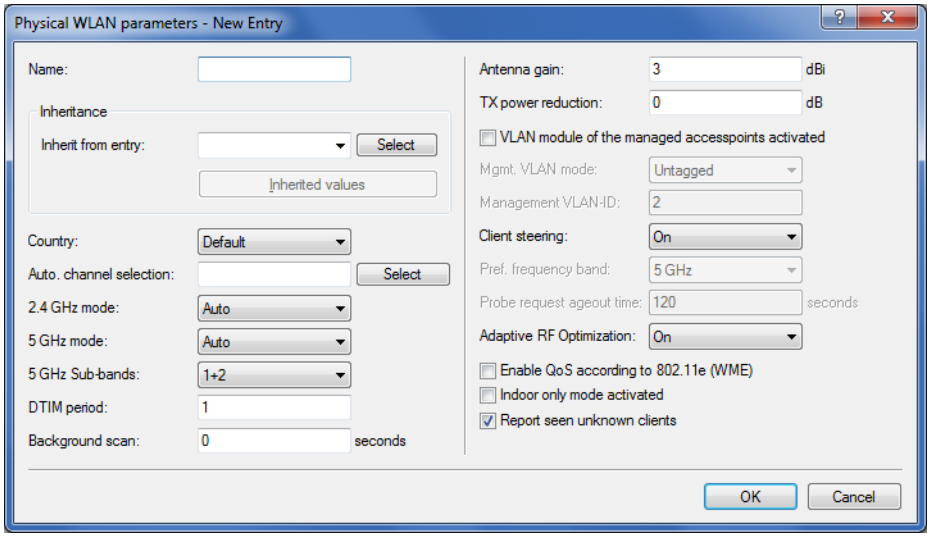
3. On the **Profiles** page, move to the logical WLAN networks. Add a new entry with the following values:



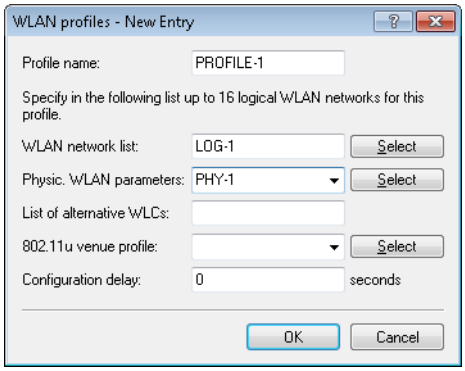
- **Name**: Give the WLAN a name. This name is used only for administrative purposes in the WLC.
- **SSID**: This SSID is used for the WLAN clients to connect.
- **Encryption**: Select the encryption method suitable for the WLAN clients being used, and enter a key or passphrase, as applicable.
- Deactivate the MAC check. Instructions on the use of MAC filter lists in managed WLAN infrastructures can be found under *Checking WLAN clients with RADIUS (MAC filter)*.

4. A new entry also has to be added to the physical WLAN parameters. In most cases involving the default configuration, just entering a name is sufficient. Adjust the other settings to meet your needs, if necessary.

For normal AP applications you should use only the 5-GHz subbands 1 and 2. Subband 3 is for special applications only (e.g. BFWA, Broadband Fixed Wireless Access).

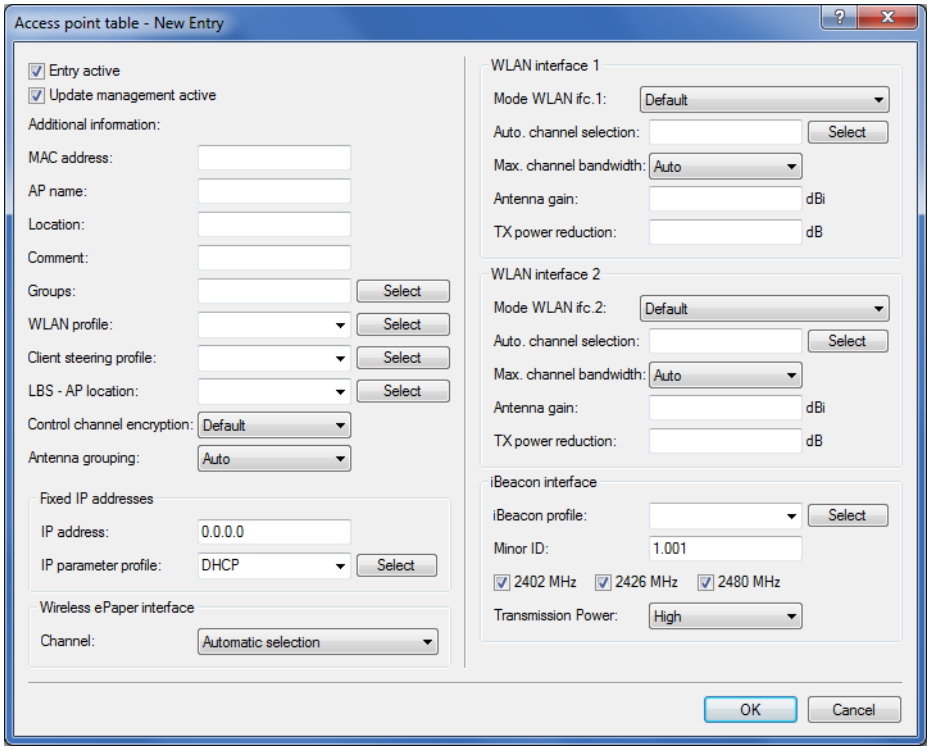


5. Create a new WLAN profile, give it an unique name, and assign the above logical WLAN network and physical WLAN parameters to it.



6. Change to the **AP configuration** view, open the **Access point table** and add a new entry by clicking on the **Default** button. Assign the WLAN profile to it as defined above. Leave **AP name** and **Location** empty.

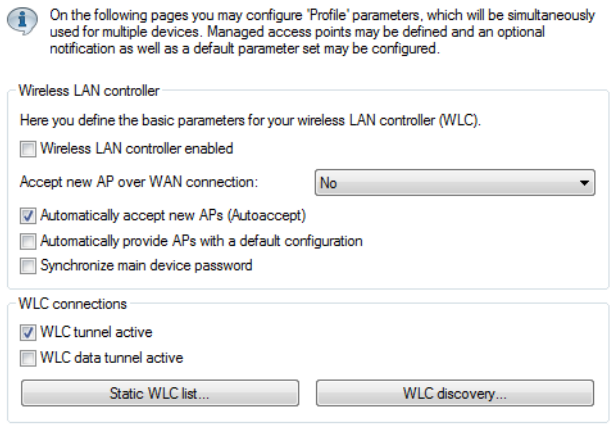
The **MAC address** is set to 'ffffffffffff' for the default configuration and it cannot be edited. This entry is thus a standard for any AP that is not explicitly listed in this table with its MAC address.



13.3.3 Assigning the default configuration to the new access points

With these settings you have defined all of the necessary values for the WLC to provide the APs with the required WLAN parameters. Upon assignment of the configuration, the APs change their status in the WLC management from "New access point" to "Expected access point", and they are listed in the device display under **Exp. APs**. Once the default configuration has been assigned to all new APs, the New APs LED switches off.

After the initial start-up phase, the option **Automatically accept new APs** can be deactivated again so that no further APs are automatically accepted into the network.



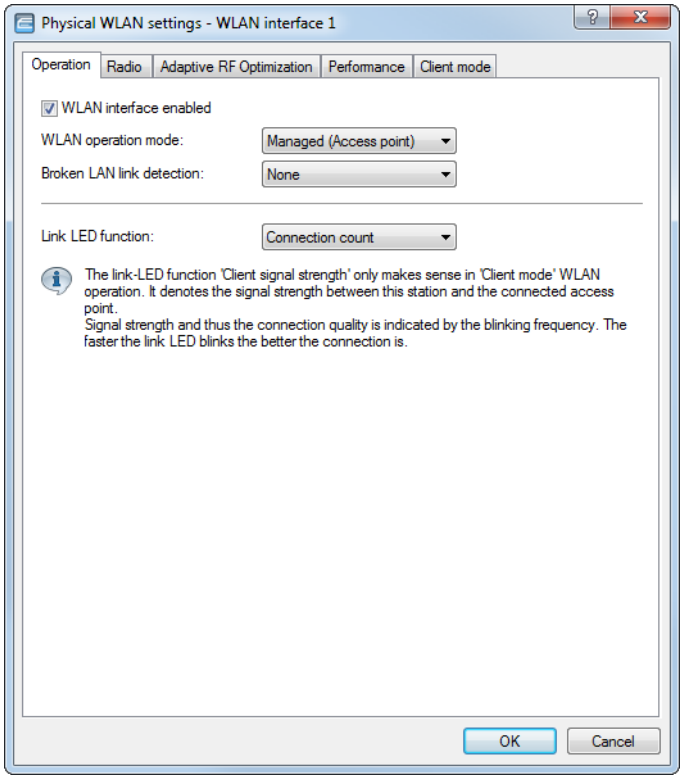
13.3.4 Configuring the access points

LANCOM access points and LANCOM wireless routers differ with regard to the ex-factory default settings in the WLAN modules.

- When shipped, the WLAN modules in APs are set to the 'Managed' operating mode. In this mode, APs search for a central WLC that can provide them with a configuration, and they remain in "search mode" until they discover a suitable WLC or until the operating mode of the WLAN module is changed manually.
- Ex-factory, the WLAN modules in wireless routers are set to the 'access point' operating mode. In this mode, wireless routers function as standalone APs with a configuration that is stored locally in the device. For integration into a WLAN infrastructure that is centrally managed by WLCs, the operating mode of the WLAN modules in wireless routers has to be switched into the 'managed' mode.

The operating mode can be set separately for every WLAN module. For models with two WLAN modules, one module can work with a local configuration and the second module can be centrally managed with a WLC.

For individual devices, the operating mode of the WLAN modules can be found in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings** > **Operation mode**:



If you need to change the operating mode for multiple devices, you can use a simple script on the devices with the following lines:

```
# Script
lang English
flash 0
cd Setup/Interfaces/WLAN/Operational
set WLAN-1 0 managed-AP 0
# done
exit
```

13.4 Configuration

Most of the parameters for configuring the WLAN controller correspond with those of the access points. For this reason, this section does not explicitly describe all of the WLAN parameters, but only those aspects necessary for operating the WLAN controller.

13.4.1 General settings

This area is for the basic settings of your WLC.

- Automatically accept new APs (auto accept)

  Enables the WLC to provide all new APs with a configuration, even those not in possession of a valid certificate.

  Enables the WLC to provide a certificate to all new APs **without** a valid certificate. a valid certificate. One of two conditions must be fulfilled for this:

  - A configuration for the AP is entered into the AP table under its MAC address.
  - The option 'Automatically provide APs with the default configuration' is enabled.

- Automatic provision of the default configuration

  This enables the WLC to assign a default configuration to every new AP (even those **without** a valid certificate), even if no explicit configuration has been stored for it. In combination with auto-accept, the WLC can accept all managed-mode APs which are found in the WLAN infrastructure managed by it (up to the maximum number of APs that can be managed by one WLC). Any APs accepted by default are also entered into the MAC list.

  This option can also lead to the acceptance of unintended APs into the WLAN infrastructure. For this reason this option should only be activated during the start-up phase when setting up a centrally managed WLAN infrastructure.

Combining the settings for auto-accept and default configuration can cater for a variety of different situations for the setup and operation of APs:

Auto accept	Default configuration	Suitable for
On	On	Rollout phase: Use this combination only if you can be sure that **no APs can unintentionally** connect with the LAN and thus be accepted into the WLAN infrastructure.
On	Off	Controlled rollout phase: Use this combination if you have entered all of the approved APs into the AP table along with their MAC addresses, assuming that these are to be automatically accepted into the WLAN infrastructure.
Off	Off	Normal operation: No new APs will be accepted into the WLAN infrastructure without the administrator's approval.

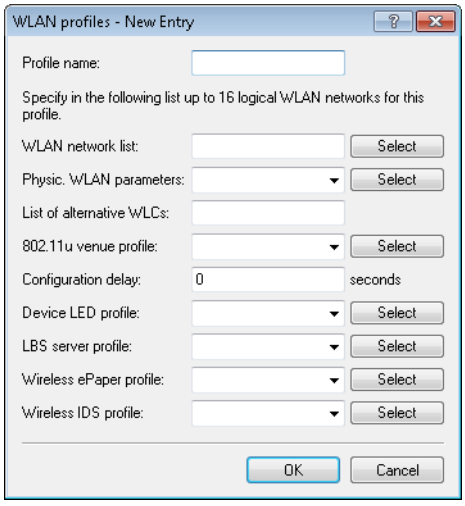
13.4.2 Profiles

The profiles area is used to define the logical WLAN networks, physical WLAN parameters, and the WLAN profiles which combine these two elements.

WLAN profiles

The WLAN profiles are collections of the various settings that are to be assigned to the APs. The allocation of WLAN profiles to the APs is set in the AP table.

For each WLAN profile you can specify the following parameters under **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**:



Profile name

Name of the profile under which the settings are saved.

Log. WLAN network list

List of the logical WLAN networks that are assigned via this profile.

From this list, APs use only the first 16 entries that are compatible with their own hardware. This means that 16 WLAN networks for purely 2.4-GHz operations and 16 for purely 5-GHz operations can be defined in a profile. Consequently, each AP—be it a model offering 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz support—can choose from a maximum of 16 logical WLAN networks.

Physic. WLAN parameters

A set of physical parameters that the AP WLAN modules are supposed to work with.

IP address of alternative WLCs

A list of WLCs that the APs should attempt to connect with. The AP starts searching for a WLC with a broadcast. Defining alternative WLCs is worthwhile when a broadcast cannot reach all WLCs (e.g.if the WLC is located in another network).

802.11u venue profile

Select the Hotspot 2.0 profile from the list. You create the Hotspot 2.0 profiles in the configuration menu using the button of the same name.

Configuration delay

Here you specify a time delay before an AP managed by the WLAN controller activates the configuration transmitted to it.

This is especially useful in AutoWDS scenarios where multiple managed APs are connected in a chain of point-to-point links. A premature change in configuration on an AP that connects to a more distant AP would otherwise cause this connection to be cut.

A rule of thumb for calculating the delay is (regardless of the topology): One second per managed AP, e.g. 200 seconds for 200 APs.

The delay does not apply to transmitted scripts.

Device LED profile

The device LED profile selected here applies to the WLAN profile. To manage the devices LED profiles, see **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** > **Device LED profiles**.

LBS general profile

The general LBS profile selected here applies to the WLAN profile. You select the general LBS profile under **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Advanced profiles** with the button **LBS - General**.

Wireless ePaper profile

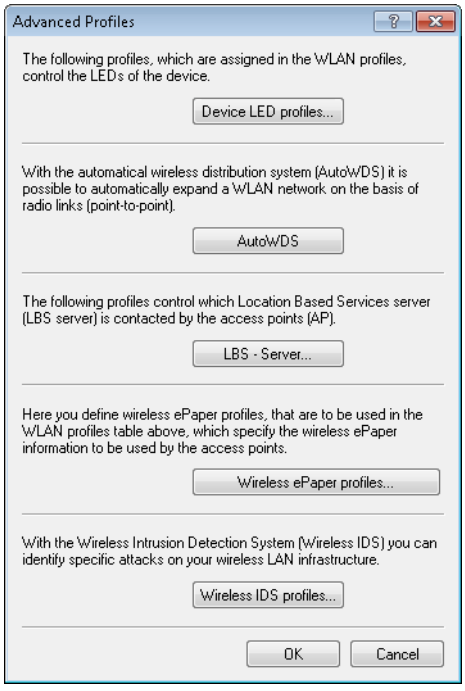
The Wireless ePaper profile selected here applies to the WLAN profile. You manage the Wireless ePaper profiles under **WLAN Controller** > **AP configuration** > **Extended settings** with the button **Wireless ePaper profiles**.

Wireless-IDS-Profile

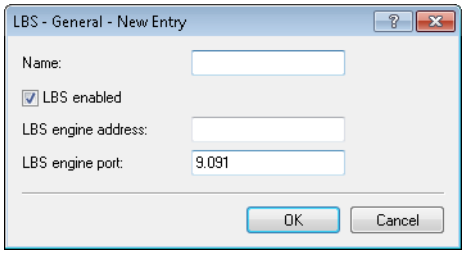
The Wireless IDS profile selected here applies to the WLAN profile. You manage the Wireless IDS profiles under **WLAN Controller** > **AP configuration** > **Extended settings** with the button **Wireless IDS profiles**.

General LBS profile and device location profile

In order to conveniently manage the settings for location-based services servers (LBS) and the AP locations by means of a WLC, you create the appropriate profiles for LBS servers via the menu **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** and the button **Advanced profiles**.



The button **LBS - Server** opens the dialog for creating a general LBS server profile.



Name

Enter a descriptive name for the profile.

LBS enabled

Enable or disable LBS.

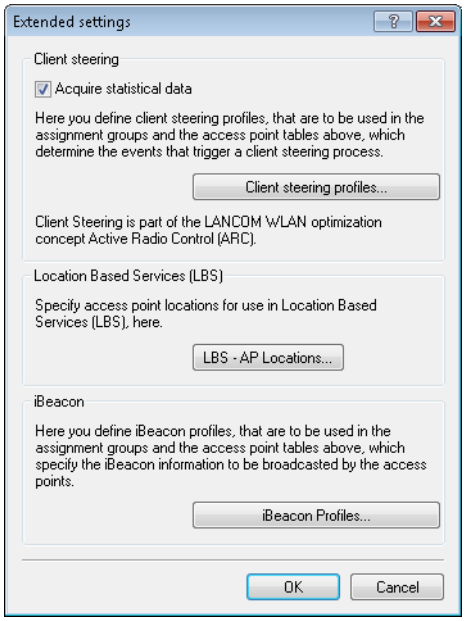
LBS server address

Enter the address of the LBS server.

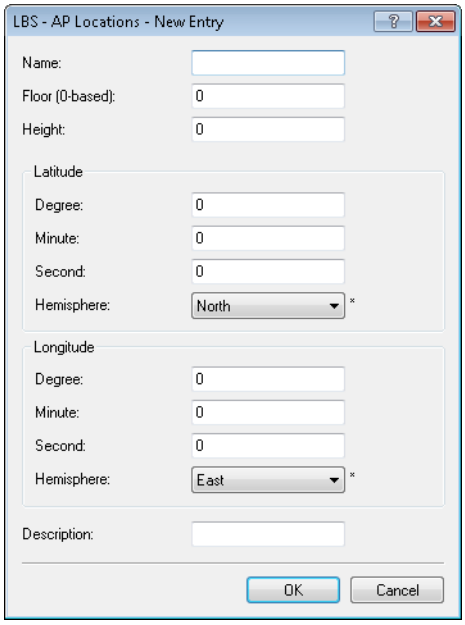
LBS server port

Enter the port used by the LBS server (default: 9091).

You create the corresponding profile for locations of the LBS APs under **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** with the button **Extended settings**.



The button **LBS - AP locations** opens the dialog for creating a location profile for the LBS APs.



Name

Enter a descriptive name for the profile.

Floor (0-based)

Here you enter the floor on which the device is located. This allows you to differentiate between the top floor and bottom floor, for example.

Height

Here you enter the height of the device installation. It is possible to specify a negative value so that you can differentiate between a location above and below sea level.

Degrees (latitude)

This field specifies the angle in degrees of the geographic coordinate system.

Minutes (latitude)

This field specifies the minutes of the geographic coordinate system.

Seconds (latitude)

This field specifies the seconds of the geographic coordinate system.

Hemisphere (latitude)

This field specifies the orientation of the geographic coordinate system. The following values are possible for geographical latitude:

- North: Northerly latitude
- South: Southerly latitude

Degrees (longitude)

This field specifies the angle in degrees of the geographic coordinate system.

Minutes (longitude)

This field specifies the minutes of the geographic coordinate system.

Seconds (longitude)

This field specifies the seconds of the geographic coordinate system.

Hemisphere (longitude)

This field specifies the orientation of the geographic coordinate system. The following values are possible for geographical longitude:

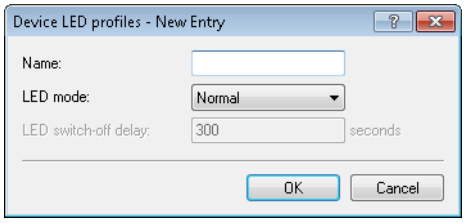
- East: Easterly longitude
- West: Westerly longitude

Description

Enter a description of the device.

Device LED profiles

The LEDs on the device are configurable so that you can, for instance, operate an AP while drawing a minimum of attention to it. In order to perform this configuration by WLC, you need to create the corresponding profile under **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Device LED profiles** and assign this to a WLAN profile.



Name

Give a name to the device LED profile here.

LED mode

The following options are available:

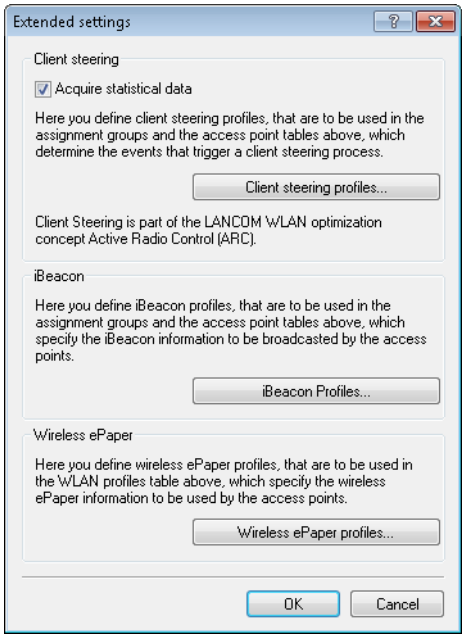
- **Normal**: The LEDs are always enabled, also after rebooting the device.
- **Timed off**: After a reboot, the LEDs are enabled for a certain period of time and are then turned off. This is useful for the LEDs to indicate critical errors during the restart process.
- **All off**: The LEDs are all off. Even after restarting the device, the LEDs remain off.

LED switch-off delay

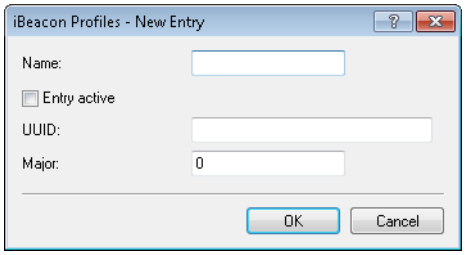
The **Timed off** option uses the setting in the field **LED switch-off delay** in seconds to control the time before the LEDs are disabled after a restart.

ESL- and iBeacon profiles

In order to use a WLC to manage the settings of the Wireless ePaper information and iBeacon information of the individual APs, you create the corresponding profiles for Wireless ePaper and iBeacon via **WLAN-Controller** > **AP-Configuration** with the button **Extended settings**.



The button **iBeacon profiles** is used to create iBeacon profiles for the assignment groups and the AP table, which specify the iBeacon information to be broadcast by the individual APs.



Name

Name of the profile

Entry active

Activates or deactivates this profile.

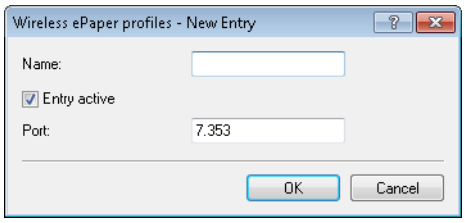
UUID

Unique identification of the transmitter

Major

Specifies the Major value of the iBeacon.

The button **Wireless ePaper profiles** is used to create Wireless ePaper profiles for the WLAN-profiles table, which specify the Wireless ePaper information to be broadcast by the individual APs.



Name

Name of the profile

Entry active

Activates or deactivates this profile.

Port

Specifies the port.

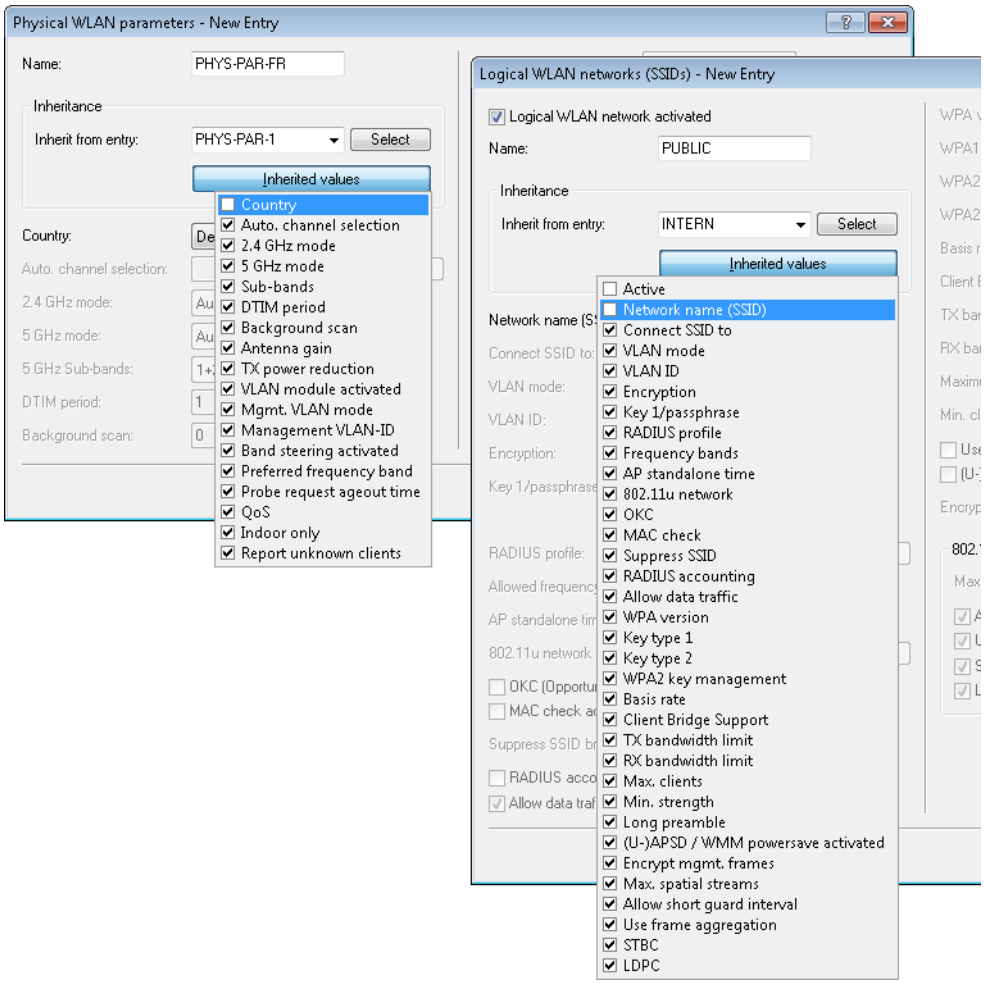
Inheritance of parameters

A WLC is capable of managing a wide range of different APs at different locations. However, WLAN profiles include settings that are not equally suitable for every type of AP that can be managed. For example, there are differences between the country settings and the device properties.

In order to avoid having to maintain multiple redundant WLAN profiles to cater for countries or device types, it is possible to "inherit" selected properties from the logical WLAN networks and the physical WLAN parameters.

1. You should initially generate the basic settings that are valid for the majority of the managed APs.

2. You can then start to generate entries for the more specific values, e.g. physical settings for a certain country, or a logical WLAN network for public access by mobile clients.



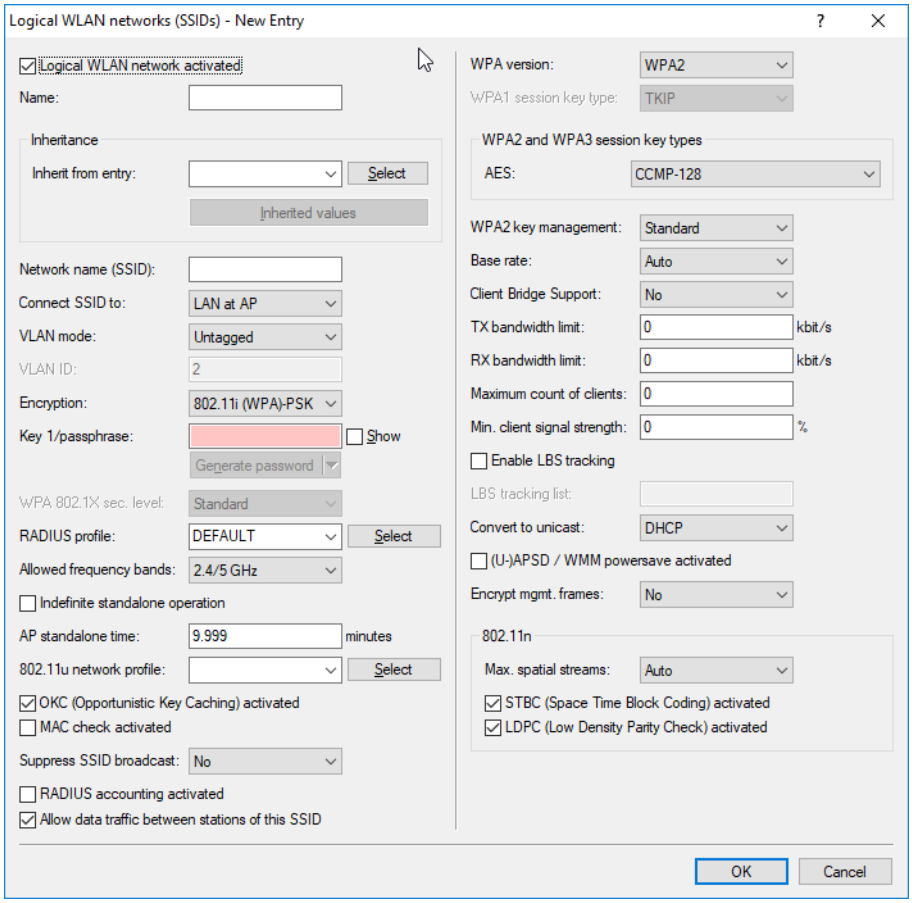
3. Select the entry from which the values are to be inherited and mark the values for inheritance. Parameters inherited in this way are displayed in the configuration dialog in gray and they cannot be edited.
4. Depending on the application, the WLAN settings collected in this way are then grouped into separate profiles, and these are then assigned to their respective access points.

Inheritance fundamentally allows chains over multiple stages (cascading). This means, for example, that country and device-specific parameters can be grouped for convenience.

Recursion is also possible—profile A inherits from profile B, and at the same time B inherits from A. However, the parameters available for inheritance are limited to one "inheritance direction" per parameter.

Logical WLAN networks

Under **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks** you set the logical WLAN network parameters that the WLC assigns to the APs. The following parameters can be defined for each logical WLAN network:



Logical WLAN network activated

Enable the logical WLAN network by clicking on this option.

Name

Here, specify a name which uniquely identifies the logical WLAN network.

Inheritance

If you wish to create entries that differ only slightly from existing ones, you can choose a "parent" entry here and select the parameters which are to be applied each time it is used.

A "parent" entry itself can contain inherited entries. Try to ensure that the structure of inherited entries is not too complex, otherwise they may be difficult to understand and configure.

Network name (SSID)

Enter the SSID of the WLAN network here. All stations that belong to this WLAN network must use the same SSID.

SSID connect to

Here you select which of the AP's logical interfaces is to be associated with the SSID, i.e. where the AP sends the data packets for this SSID.

- "LAN": The AP forwards the data packets locally into the LAN (LAN-1) by default. It must be configured appropriately to do this.
- "WLC-Tunnel-x": The SSID is connected to a WLC bridge layer-3 tunnel. The AP sends all data packets to this tunnel and thus to the WLC. This tunnel must be configured on the WLC.

Note that although forwarding all data packets to the WLC allows you to define routes and filters centrally, this creates a heavy load on the WLC. This model demands a correspondingly high bandwidth in order to transfer all of the data traffic of this and any other SSIDs that are connected to this WLC via WLC tunnel.

VLAN mode

This item sets the AP VLAN mode for packets belonging to this WLAN network (SSID). VLAN IDs are used if the VLAN module is enabled in the physical WLAN parameters of the AP. Otherwise the AP ignores all VLAN settings in the logical networks. Even with VLAN activated, it is possible to operate the network untagged.

- "Untagged": The AP does not tag data packets from this SSID with a VLAN ID.

  Even with VLAN activated, it is possible to operate a WLAN network untagged. The VLAN ID '1' is reserved internally for this.
- "Tagged": The AP marks the data packets with the VLAN ID specified as follows.

VLAN-ID

VLAN ID for this logical WLAN network

Please note that to use VLAN IDs in a logical WLAN network, you must set up a management VLAN ID (see physical WLAN parameters).

Encryption

This item sets the encryption method or, in the case of WEP, the key length for packet encryption in this WLAN.

Key 1/passphrase

You can enter the key or passphrase as an ASCII character string. An option for WEP is to enter a hexadecimal number by adding a leading "0x". The following character string lengths result for the formats used:

- WPA-PSK: 8 to 63 ASCII characters
- WEP128 (104 bit): 13 ASCII or 26 hex characters
- WEP64 (40 bit): 5 ASCII or 10 hex characters

RADIUS profile

Specify which RADIUS profile the AP should receive for this network, so that it can connect directly to the RADIUS server if necessary. Leave this field blank if the WLC is to handle RADIUS requests.

You configure the RADIUS profiles in the corresponding table.

Allowed frequency bands

Here you set the frequency band used by network participants for transmitting data on the wireless network. You can select the 2.4-GHz band, the 5-GHz band, or both bands.

Indefinite standalone operation

If the autonomous continued operation for WLAN networks is configured on the WLC in such a way that networks are broadcast permanently (value: 9999), this also applies to locally at the LAN coupled networks, as well as for via WLC tunnel connected networks. In the event of a failure of the WLC, both types of networks are broadcast further; This only makes sense for networks connected via LAN, because via WLC tunnel the endpoint in the form of the WLC is missing and the networks are therefore not operational.

With this switch the two types of networks will be handled separately.

- If the switch is set, locally decoupled networks will continue to operate autonomously and permanently. Networks decoupled via a WLC tunnel, on the other hand, are only broadcast if the WLC is accessible.
- If the switch is not set, the time specified under **AP standalone time** is used.

AP standalone time

The time in minutes that a managed-mode AP continues to operate in its current configuration.

The configuration is provided to the AP by the WLC and is optionally stored in flash memory (in an area that is not accessible to LANconfig or other tools). Should the connection to the WLC be interrupted, the AP will continue to operate with the configuration stored in flash for the time period entered here. The AP can also continue to work with this flash configuration after a local power outage.

If there is no connection to the WLC after this time period has expired then the flash configuration is deleted and the AP goes out of operation. As soon as the WLC can be reached again, the WLC transmits the configuration to the AP again.

This represents an effective measure against theft as the AP deletes all security-related configuration parameters after this time has expired.

If the AP establishes a backup connection to a secondary WLC then the countdown to the expiry of standalone operation stops. The AP and its WLAN networks remain active as long as there is a connection to a WLC.

Please note that the AP only deletes the configuration in flash memory after the time for standalone operation has expired, and not when the power is lost!

802.11u network profile

Select the Hotspot 2.0 profile from the list.

OKC activated

This option enables the opportunistic key caching. OKC makes it easy for WLAN clients to quickly and conveniently roam between WLAN cells in wireless environments with WPA2-Enterprise encryption.

MAC check activated

The MAC addresses of the clients that are allowed to associate with an AP are stored in the MAC filter list (**Wireless LAN** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** > **Station rules**). The **MAC filter enabled** switch allows you to switch off the use of the MAC filter list for individual logical networks.

Suppress SSID broadcast

You can operate your wireless LAN either in public or private mode. A wireless LAN in public mode can be contacted by any mobile station in the area. Your wireless LAN is put into private mode by activating the closed network function. In this operation mode, mobile stations that do not know the network name (SSID) are excluded from taking part in the wireless LAN.

With the closed-network mode activated, WLAN clients that use an empty SSID or the SSID "ANY" are prevented from associating with your network.

The option **Suppress SSID broadcast** provides the following settings:

- **No**: The AP publishes the SSID of the cell. When a client sends a probe request with an empty or incorrect SSID, the AP responds with the SSID of the radio cell (public WLAN).
- **Yes:** The AP does not publish the SSID of the cell. When a client sends a probe request with an empty SSID, the AP similarly responds with an empty SSID.
- **Tightened:** The AP does not publish the SSID of the cell. When a client sends a probe request with a blank or incorrect SSID, the AP does not respond.

Simply suppressing the SSID broadcast does not provide adequate protection: When legitimate WLAN clients associate with the AP, this transmits the SSID in cleartext so that it is briefly visible to all clients in the WLAN network.

RADIUS accounting activated

Select this option if you want to enable the RADIUS accounting in this logical WLAN network.

Allow traffic between stations of this SSID

Check this option if all stations logged on to this SSID may communicate with one another.

WPA-Version

Here you select which WPA version the AP is to offer to the WLAN clients for encryption.

- WPA1: WPA2 only
- WPA2: WPA2 only
- WPA3: WPA3 only
- WPA1/2: WPA1 and WPA2 in one SSID (radio cell)
- WPA2/3: WPA2 and WPA3 in one SSID (radio cell)
- WPA1/2/3: WPA1, WPA2 and WPA3 in one SSID (radio cell)

WPA1 session key type

If you use "802.11i (WPA)-PSK" for encryption, the method for generating a WPA1 session or group key can be selected here:

- AES: The AP uses the AES method.
- TKIP: The AP uses the TKIP method.
- AES/TKIP: The AP uses the AES method. If the client hardware does not support the AES method, the AP will change to the TKIP method.

WPA2 and WPA3 session key types

The method for generating the session or group key for WPA2 and WPA3 is selected here.

Basis rate

The defined basis rate should allow the slowest clients to connect to the WLAN even under poor reception conditions. A higher value should only be set here if all clients in this logical WLAN can be reached "faster". By setting the transmission rate to auto, the AP collects information about the transmission rates of the various WLAN clients. Clients automatically notify the AP of this rate with each unicast communication. The AP takes the lowest transmission rate from the list of associated clients and applies this to all multicast and broadcast transmissions.

Client bridge support

Enable this option for an AP if you have enabled the client-bridge support for a client station in WLAN client mode.

Client-bridge mode is only available between two LANCOM devices.

TX bandwidth limit

With this setting, you define the overall bandwidth that is available for transmission within this SSID. A value of `0` disables the limit.

RX bandwidth limit

With this setting, you define the overall bandwidth that is available for reception within this SSID. A value of `0` disables the limit.

Maximum count of clients

Here you set the maximum number of clients that may associate with this AP. Additional clients wanting to associate will be rejected by the AP.

Min. client signal strength

This value sets the threshold value in percent for the minimum signal strength for clients when logging on. If the client's signal strength is below this value, the AP stops sending probe responses and discards the client's requests.

A client with poor signal strength will not detect the AP and cannot associate with it. This ensures that the client has an optimized list of available APs, as those offering only a weak connection at the client's current position are not listed.

Enable LBS tracking

This option specifies whether the LBS server is permitted to track the client information.

This option configures the tracking of all clients in an SSID. In the Public Spot module you determine whether the LBS server is allowed to track the users who are logged on to the Public Spot.

LBS tracking list

With this entry, you set the list name for the LBS tracking. When a client successfully associates with this SSID, the AP transfers the specified list name, the MAC address of the client, and its own MAC address to the LBS server.

Use long preamble for 802.11b

Normally, the clients in 802.11b mode negotiate the length of the preamble with the AP. "Long preamble" should only be set when the clients require this setting to be fixed.

(U)APSD / WMM Power Save activated

Enable this option to signal stations that the power saving function (U)APSD ([Unscheduled] Automatic Power Save Delivery) is supported.

(U)APSD is established in the 802.11e standard, and helps VoWLAN devices to increase their battery life. The related devices switch to power saving mode after login on a (U)APSD-capable AP. If the AP receives data packets for the related devices thereafter, it temporarily stores the data and waits until the VoWLAN device is available again. It then forwards the data. Afterwards, (U)APSD increases the latency time of the radio module, whereby it ultimately consumes less power. The individual rest periods may be so short that a VoWLAN device can still use the power saving function in the call state itself. However, the relevant devices must also support (U)APSD.

WWM (Wi-Fi Multimedia) Power Save is a power saving function of the Wi-Fi Alliance and is based on U-APSD. Certain LANCOM APs are WMM® Power Save CERTIFIED by the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Max. spatial streams

The spatial multiplexing function allows the AP to transmit multiple data streams over separate antennas in order to increase the data throughput. The use of this function is only recommended when the remote device can process the data streams with corresponding antennas.

In the 'Auto' setting, the AP uses all of the spatial streams supported by this WLAN module.

Allow short guard interval

This option is used to reduce the transmission pause between two signals from 0.8 µs (default) to 0.4 µs (short guard interval). This increases the effective time available for data transmission and thus the data throughput. However, the wireless LAN system becomes more liable to disruption that can be caused by interference between two consecutive signals.

The short guard interval is activated in automatic mode, provided that the remote station supports this. Alternatively the short guard mode can be switched off.

Use frame aggregation

Frame aggregation is used to combine several data packets (frames) into one large packet and transmit them together. This procedure reduces the overhead of the packets to increase the throughput.

Frame aggregation is not suitable when working with mobile receivers or time-critical data transmissions such as voice over IP.

STBC (space time block coding) activated

Activate the space time block coding here.

The function 'STBC' additionally varies the transmission of data packets over time to minimize time-related effects on the data. Due to the time offset of the packets the recipient has an even better chance of receiving error-free data packets, regardless of the number of antennas.

LDPC (low density parity check) activated

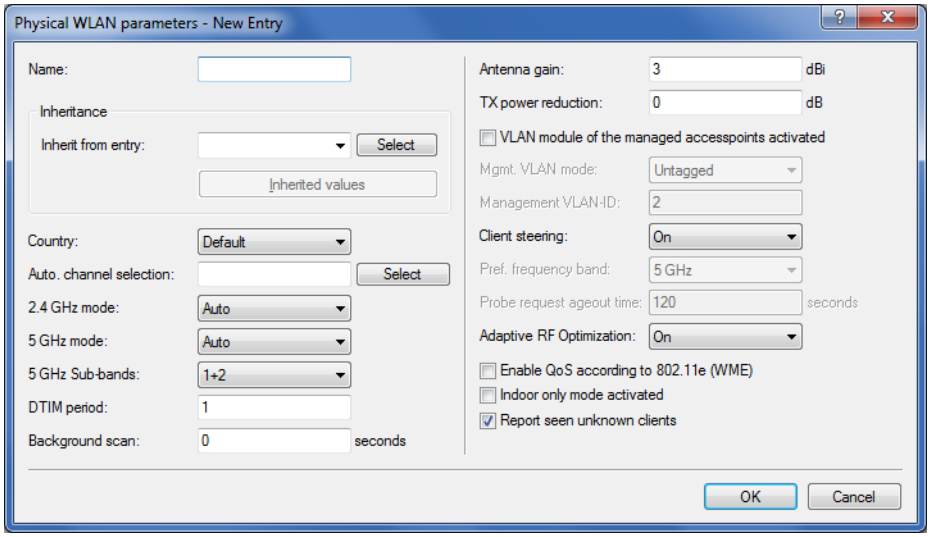
Activate the low density parity check here.

Before the sender transmits the data packets, it expands the data stream with checksum bits depending on the modulation rate. These checksum bits allow the receiver to correct transmission errors. By default the 802.11n standard uses 'Convolution Coding' (CC) for error correction, which is well-known from 802.11a and 802.11g; however, the 11n standard also provides for error correction according to the LDPC method (Low Density Parity Check).

In contrast to CC encoding, LDPC encoding uses larger packets to calculate checksums and can also recognize more bit errors. The improved ratio of payload to checksum data enables LDPC encoding to provide a higher data transfer rate.

Physical WLAN parameters

Here the physical WLAN parameters are set for assignment to the APs. The following parameters can be defined for each set of physical WLAN parameters:



LANconfig: **WLAN-Controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Configuration** > **Radioprofiles**

> **Name**

Unique name for this combination of physical WLAN parameters.

- **Inheritance**

  Selection of a physical WLAN parameter set defined earlier and from which the settings are to be inherited.

- **Country**

  The country in which the APs are to be operated. This information is used to define country-specific settings such as the permitted channels, etc.

- **Automatic channel selection**

  As standard the APs can use all of the channels permitted in the country of operation. To restrict the selection to certain channels, these can be entered here as a comma-separated list. It is also possible to specify ranges or lists (e.g. '1,6,11').

- **Management VLAN-ID**

  The VLAN ID of the management network used to manage the APs.

  The Management VLAN ID **must** be set to a value not equal to zero in order for VLANs to be used over the WLAN networks. This also applies when the management network itself is not to be tagged with VLAN IDs (Mgmt-VLANID=1).

  VLAN activation only applies to WLAN networks which are connected by means of these physical WLAN parameters.

- **Client steering**

  This entry sets the method used for client steering and whether the AP should activate band steering. In this case, a dual-port access point can forward a WLAN client to a preferred frequency band.

  With client steering, certain criteria are used to help WLAN clients located within transmission range to connect to the best suited AP. These criteria are centrally defined in the WLAN controller. Managed access points constantly report the current values to the WLAN controller, which uses these criteria to decide which access points may respond to requests from WLAN clients. For this reason, client steering is only possible with access points that are centrally managed by a WLAN controller.

  Off

  Client steering is deactivated.

  On

  The AP lets the WLC handle the client steering.

  Client management

  The client steering is handled decentrally by the APs. See *Client Management* on page 850.

  AP-based band steering

  The AP independently steers the WLAN client to a preferred frequency band.

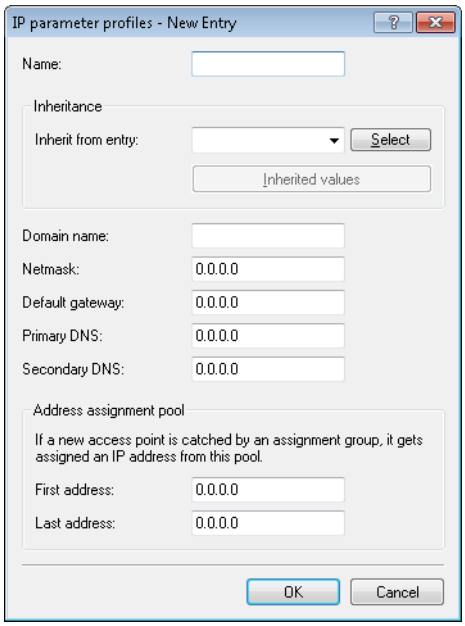
All other physical WLAN parameters correspond to those for the standard configuration of APs.

To successfully acquire a profile, HTTP access to the WLC from the local network must be allowed.

13.4.3 Access point configuration

IP parameter profiles

This table is used to configure specific network profiles that are assigned with APs that must not be automatically configured by the WLC by means of DHCP. In this way you set which specific IP parameters are used by an AP.



Name

Name of the IP parameter profiles.

Inheritance

Selection of an IP parameter profile defined earlier and from which the settings are to be inherited (see *Inheritance of parameters* on page 997).

Domain name

Name of the domain (DNS suffix) which is to use this profile.

Netmask

Netmask of the profile

Default gateway

The gateway used by the profile as standard.

DNS default

The DNS (Domain Name System) to be used by the profile.

DNS backup

Second, alternative DNS if the first is unavailable.

Start address

The start of the IPv4 address range from which a new AP receives an IP address if the WLC can allocate an assignment group to the AP and you have not defined a specific IP address for the AP in the AP table.

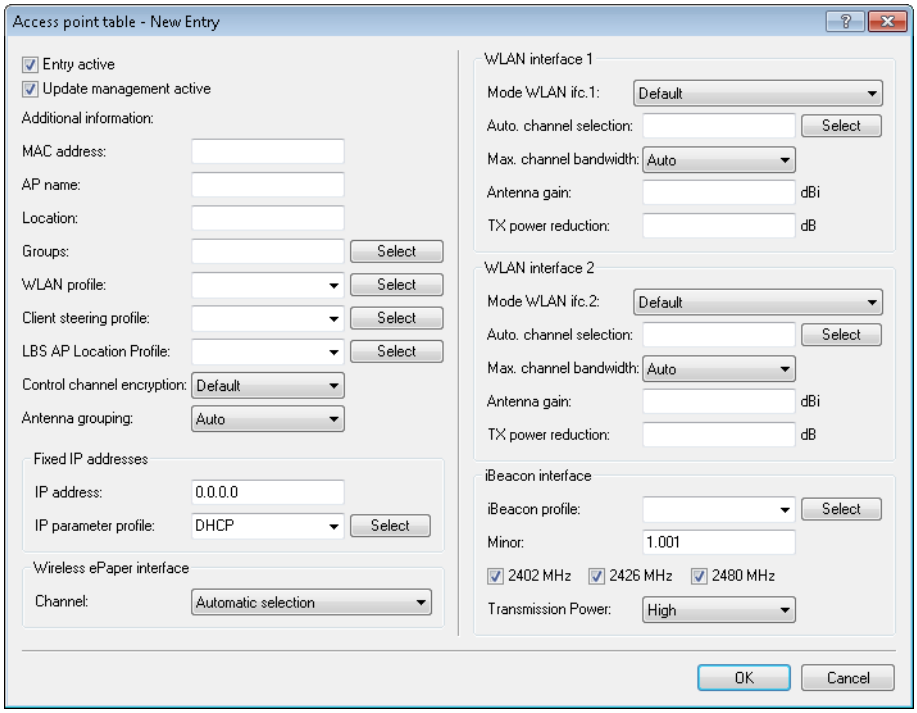
End address

The end of the IPv4 address range from which a new AP receives an IP address if the WLC can allocate an assignment group to the AP and you have not defined a specific IP address for the AP in the AP table.

For further information on assignment groups, please refer to the section *IP-dependent auto configuration and tagging of APs* on page 1040.

List of access points

The AP table is a central element of the configuration for WLCs. Here, the WLC assigns WLAN profiles (i.e. the combinations of logical and physical WLAN parameters) to the APs via their MAC addresses. Furthermore, the existence of an entry in the AP table for a specific AP affects its ability to connect to a WLC. Under **WLAN Controller** > **AP Configuration** > **Access Point Table** you can define the following parameters for each AP:



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Update management active

Activating update management for this AP enables it to download the latest firmware and script versions automatically. All other settings are adjusted under AP update (*Central firmware and script management*).

MAC address

MAC address of the AP.

AP name

Name of the AP in managed mode.

Location

Location of the AP in managed mode.

Groups

Assigns the AP to one or more groups

WLAN profile

WLAN profile from the list of defined profiles.

Client steering profile

Client-steering profiles control how the WLC decides which APs are to accept a client at the next login attempt.

LBS AP location profile

LBS location profile from the list of defined profiles.

Control channel encryption

Encryption of communications over the control channel. Without encryption, the AP and WLC exchange the control data as cleartext. In both cases authentication is by certificate.

Antenna grouping

Antenna grouping can be configured in order to optimize the gain from spacial multiplexing.

IP address

Here you specify a fixed IP address of the AP.

IP parameter profile

Here you specify the profile name used by the WLC to reference the IP settings for the AP. If you retain the default setting DHCP, the WLC ignores the setting for the fixed IP address and the AP is forced to obtain its IP address via DHCP.

Channel (Wireless ePaper interface)

Here you specify how the channel is selected for the Wireless ePaper interface.

Mode WLAN ifc.1 1

This setting allows you to configure the frequency band in which the AP operates the 1st physical WLAN interface. When set to **Default**, the AP independently selects the frequency band for the physical WLAN interface. The AP prefers the 2.4GHz band, if available.

Mode WLAN ifc.1 2

This setting allows you to configure the frequency band in which the AP operates the 2nd physical WLAN interface. When set to **Default**, the AP independently selects the frequency band for the physical WLAN interface. The AP prefers the 5GHz band, if available.

If a managed AP only has one physical WLAN interface, the AP ignores the settings for the 2nd physical WLAN interface.

Auto Channel selection

If no entry is made here, APs automatically carry out the channel selection for the frequency band available in the set country of operation.

Enter the channels to be available for automatic selection by the first WLAN module. If you enter just one channel here, the AP uses this channel only and no automatic selection takes place. For this reason you should ensure that the channels entered here are legal for use in the defined country of operation. The AP ignores channels that are invalid for the frequency band.

Max. channel bandwidth

Enter how and to what extent the AP specifies the channel bandwidth for the physical WLAN interface(s). The following values are possible:

- **Automatic**: The AP automatically detects the maximum channel bandwidth (default).
- **20MHz**: The AP uses channels bundled at 20 MHz.
- **40MHz**: The AP uses channels bundled at 40MHz.
- **80MHz**: The AP uses channels bundled at 80MHz.

By default, the physical WLAN interface automatically determines the frequency range used to modulate the data onto the carrier signals. 802.11a/b/g use 48 carrier signals in one 20-MHz channel. The use of double the frequency range of 40 MHz means that 96 carrier signals can be used, resulting in a doubling of the data throughput.

802.11n can use 52 carrier signals in a 20-MHz channel for modulation, and even up to 108 carrier signals in a 40-MHz channel. The use of the 40 MHz option for 802.11n therefore means a performance gain of more than double.

Antenna gain

This item allows you to specify the antenna gain factor (in dBi) minus attenuation of the cable and (if applicable) lightning protection. Based on this, as well as depending on the country where the system is operated and the frequency band, the AP calculates the maximum permitted transmission power.

If you leave the field blank, the AP uses the default setting from the configuration group in the relevant WLAN profile.

You can reduce the transmission power to a minimum of 0.5 dBm in the 2.4-GHz band or 6.5 dBm in the 5-GHz band. This limits the maximum value that can be added to 17.5 dBi in the 2.4-GHz band and 11.5 dBi in the 5-GHz band.

Be sure that your combination of antenna, cable and lightning-protection complies with the legal requirements of the country where the system is operated.

The receiver's sensitivity is unaffected by this.

The current transmission power is displayed by WEBconfig or telnet under **Status** > **WLAN-statistics** > **WLAN-parameters** > **Transmission-power** or with LANmonitor under **System information** > **WLAN card** > **Transmission power**.

TX power reduction

If you use an antenna with a high amplification factor, you can use this entry to attenuate the transmission power of your AP to the level permitted on the frequency band in the country of operation.

If you leave the field blank, the AP uses the default setting from the configuration group in the relevant WLAN profile.

The same values and constraints apply as for the field **Antenna gain**.

iBeacon profile (iBeacon interface)

Select an iBeacon profile from the list of profiles created.

You create iBeacon profiles under **WLAN Controller** > **AP configuration** > **Extended settings** > **iBeacon profiles**.

Minor

Set a minor ID for the iBeacon module.

2402 MHz, 2426 MHz, 2480 MHz

Specify here which channels the iBeacon module uses to transmit.

Transmission power

Specify the power used by the iBeacon module to transmit. The following values are possible:

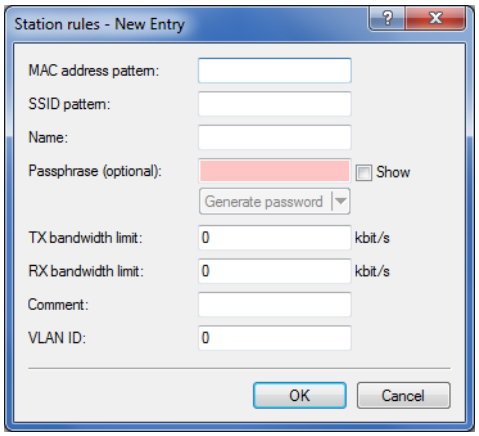
- **High**: The module sends with maximum power (default).
- **Medium**: The module sends with medium power.
- **Low**: The module sends with minimum power.

Stations

The station rules define which WLAN clients can associate with the WLAN networks of the APs that are centrally managed by the WLC. Furthermore, the method offers a convenient way to give each WLAN client an individual authentication passphrase and a VLAN ID.

To use the station rules, it is imperative that the RADIUS server is activated in the WLC under **WLAN Controller** > **Stations/LEPS** > **LEPS-MAC** > **Station rules**. As an alternative, requests can be forwarded to another RADIUS server. More information on RADIUS is available under *RADIUS*.

For every logical WLAN in which WLAN clients are authenticated by RADIUS, the MAC check has to be activated.



MAC address

MAC address of the WLAN client for this entry. The following entries are possible:

Individual MAC address

A MAC address in the format `00a057112233`, `00-a0-57-11-22-33` or `00:a0:57:11:22:33`.

Wildcards

The wildcards '*' and '?' uses to specify MAC address ranges, e.g. `00a057*`, `00-a0-57-11-??-??` or `00:a0:??:11:*`.

Vendor ID

The device contains a list of the major manufacturer OUIs (organizationally unique identifier). The MAC address range is valid if this entry matches the first three bytes of the MAC address of the WLAN client.

It is possible to use wildcards.

SSID pattern

WLAN clients with the corresponding MAC addresses have access that is limited to this SSID.

The use of wildcards makes it possible to allow access to multiple SSIDs.

Name

You can enter any name you wish and a comment for any WLAN client. This enables you to assign MAC addresses more easily to specific stations or users.

Passphrase

Here you may enter a separate passphrase for each physical address (MAC address) that is used in a 802.11i/WPA/AES-PSK-secured network. If no separate passphrase is specified for this MAC address, the passphrases stored in the **802.11i/WEP** area will be used for each logical wireless LAN network.

TX bandwidth limit

Transmission-bandwidth restriction for WLAN clients currently authenticating themselves. A WLAN device in client mode communicates its setting to the AP when logging on. This then uses uses these two values to set the minimum bandwidth.

RX bandwidth limit

Reception-bandwidth restriction for WLAN clients currently authenticating themselves. A WLAN device in client mode communicates its setting to the AP when logging on. This then uses uses these two values to set the minimum bandwidth.

The RX bandwidth restriction is only active for WLAN devices in client mode. For value is not used by normal WLAN clients.

Comment

You can enter a comment here.

VLAN-ID

The ID of the VLAN that this client belongs to. Consequently the client can only be reached by packets originating from the same VLAN. Packets sent by the client are marked with this VLAN ID. You only need to set this value if you want this client to belong to a different VLAN than the logical WLAN (SSID) that it is connected to. Valid VLAN IDs are in the range 0 to 4094. 0 means that the client belongs to the VLAN of its logical WLAN (SSID), if this belongs to a VLAN at all.

If you use IPv6, or if multicast is operating on a VLAN, different group keys must be assigned to the different VLANs of an SSID. Otherwise the different multicasts are not be assigned to the correct clients. When using IPv6, for example, clients are informed of IPv6 prefixes that do not function on the VLAN ID. The group keys are configured under **Wireless LAN** > **Encryption** > **VLAN group key mapping**.

If filter rules contradict, the individual rule has a higher priority: A rule without wildcards in the MAC address or SSID takes precedence over a rule with wildcards. When creating these entries, the user should ensure that filter rules do not contradict. The definitions in the filters can be checked in a Telnet session with the trace command `trace WLAN-ACL`.

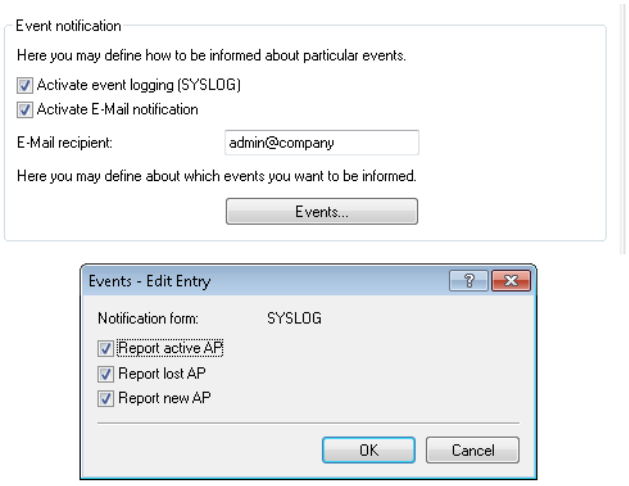
The filter criteria in the station list either allow or deny WLAN clients to access your wireless network. The entries **Name**, **Bandwidth limit**, **VLAN ID** and **Passphrase** are meaningless if the device uses valid filter criteria to deny access to the WLAN.

Options for the WLAN controller

The **Options** area in the WLC configuration is used to define notifications in case of events and to set various default values.

Event notification

Notification can take place via SYSLOG or e-mail. You can define the following parameters:



LANconfig: **WLAN Controller** > **Options**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **Notification**

- **SYSLOG**

  Activates notification by SYSLOG.

  - Possible values: On/off.

- **E-mail**

  Activates notification by e-mail.

  - Possible values: On/off.

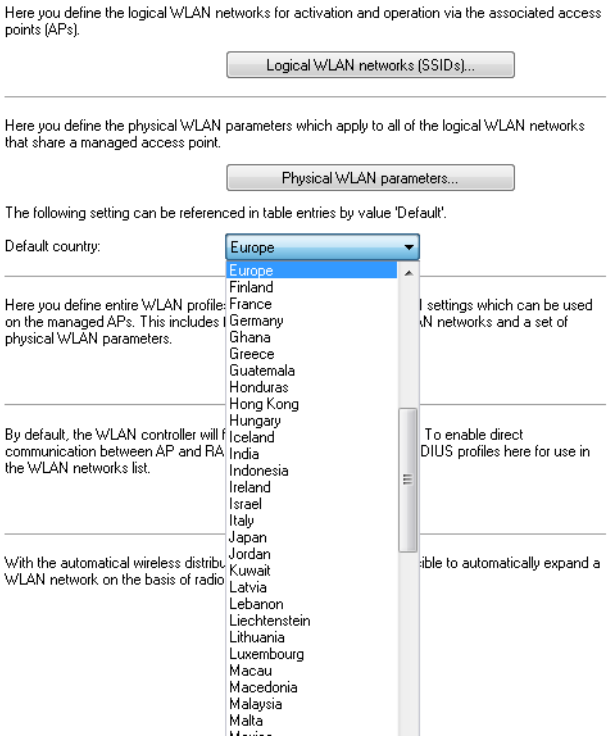
- **Events**

  Selects the events that trigger notification.

  - Possible values:
    - Report active AP
    - Report lost AP
    - Report new AP

Default parameters

For some parameters, default values can be defined centrally and these serve as reference default values for other parts of the configuration.



LANconfig: **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Default country**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Configuration** > **Country-default**

> **Default country**

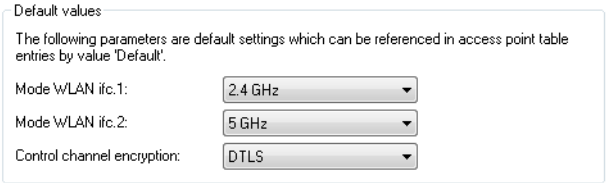
The country in which the access points are to be operated. This information is used to define country-specific settings such as the permitted channels, etc.

> Possible values:

> Selection from the list of available countries

> Default:

> Europe



LANconfig: **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** >

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Configuration**

> **WLAN-Interface 1**

Frequency of the first WLAN module. This parameter can also be used to deactivate the WLAN module.

- **WLAN-Interface 2**

  Frequency of the second WLAN module. This parameter can also be used to deactivate the WLAN module.

- **Encryption**

  Encryption for the communication over the control channel. Without encryption the control data is exchanged as cleartext. In both cases authentication is by certificate.

Virtualization and guest access via WLAN controller with VLAN

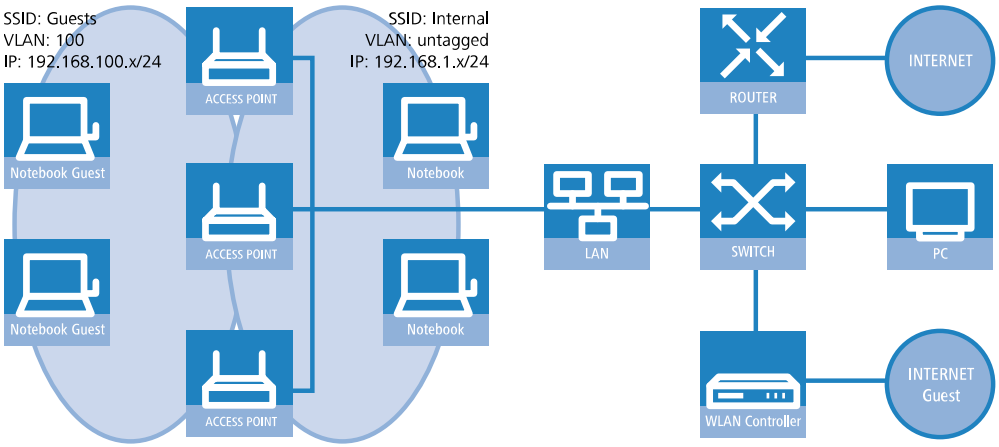
Many companies wish to offer Internet access to their visitors via WLAN. In larger installations the required settings apply to multiple access points, and these can be programmed centrally in the WLAN controller.

Targets

- Wireless LAN infrastructure available to internal employees and guests
- Shared physical components (cables, switches, access points)
- Separation of networks with VLAN and ARF
- Break-out of data streams to certain target networks:
  - Guests: Internet only
  - Internal employees: Internet, all local devices and services
- Guests login to the WLAN with a Web form.
- Internal employees use WLAN encryption for authentication.

Establish

- Management of the access points is handled by the WLC.
- The WLC serves as the DHCP server for the WLAN clients in the guest network.
- The guest network is provided with Internet access via the WLC (e.g. separate DSL access or Internet access via the company DMZ).
- The wired infrastructure is based on managed VLAN-capable switches:
  - Access point VLAN management is handled by the WLC.
  - The VLAN management of the switches is handled separately by the switch configuration.
- The access points operate within the internal VLANs.

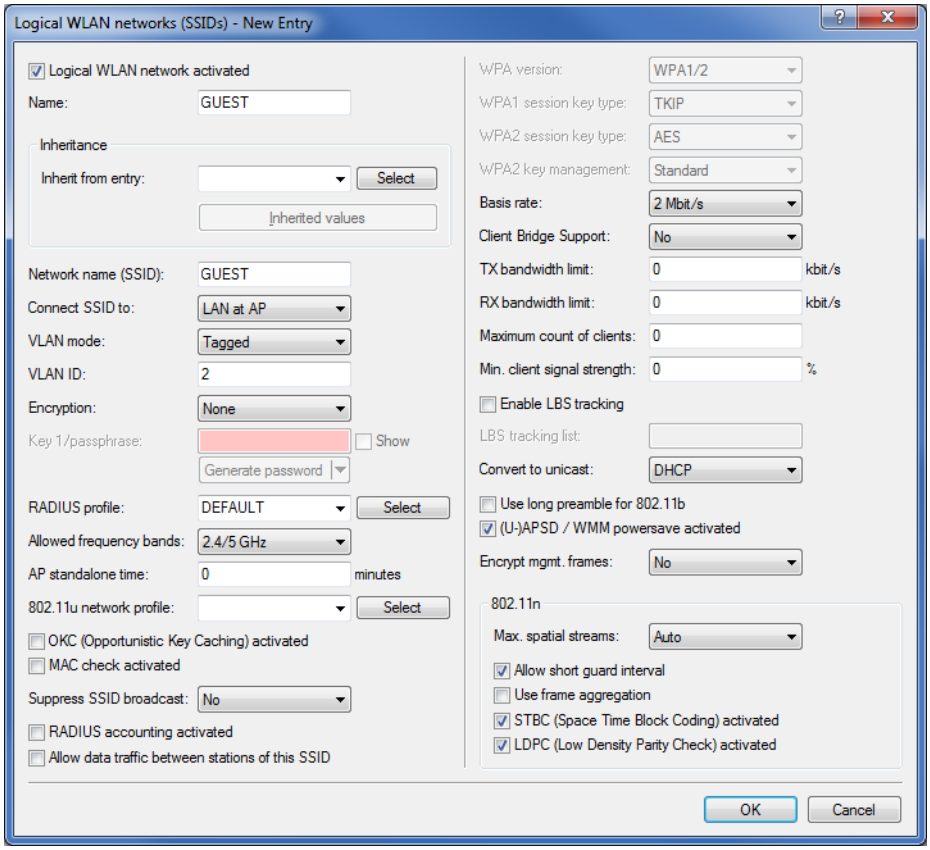


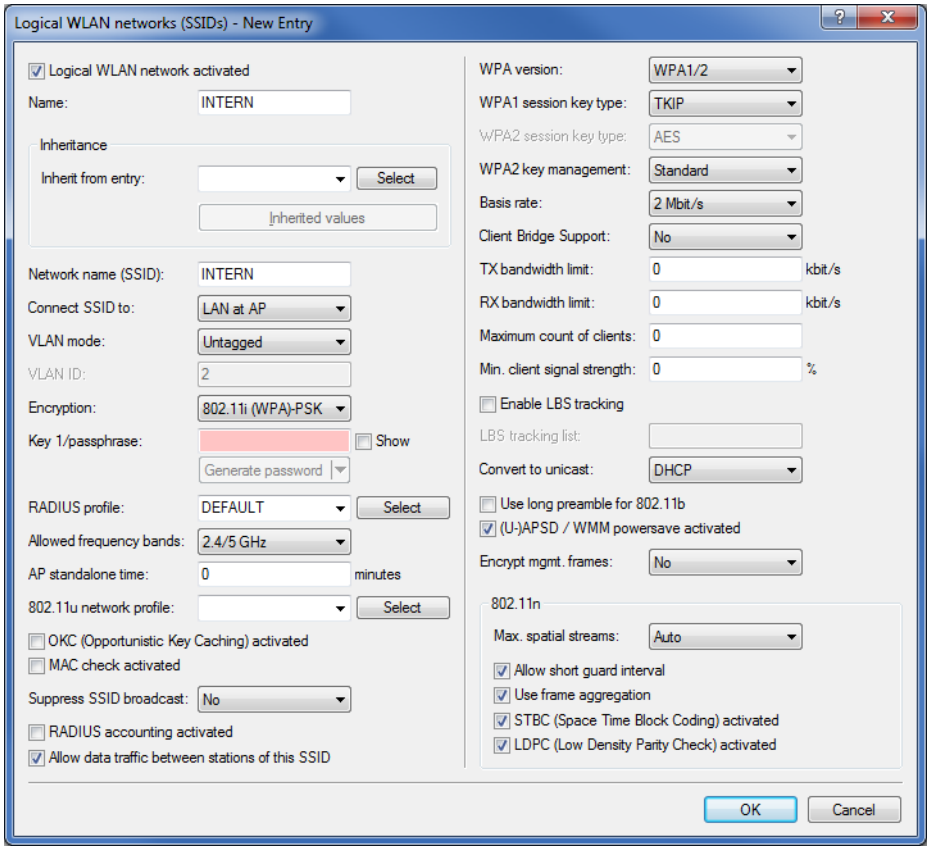
Wireless LAN configuration of the WLAN controllers

During the configuration of the WLAN, the necessary WLAN networks are defined and, along with the physical WLAN settings, are assigned to the access points managed by the controller.

1. Create a logical WLAN for guests and one for the internal employees:
   - The WLAN with the SSID `GUESTS` uses the VLAN ID `100` (VLAN operating mode **Tagged**) and uses **no** encryption.
   - The WLAN with the SSID `INTERNAL` receives no VLAN ID (VLAN operating mode **untagged**, i.e. packets are transferred in the Ethernet without a VLAN tag) and uses WPA encryption, e.g. **802 11i (WPA)-PSK**.

› LANconfig: **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)**

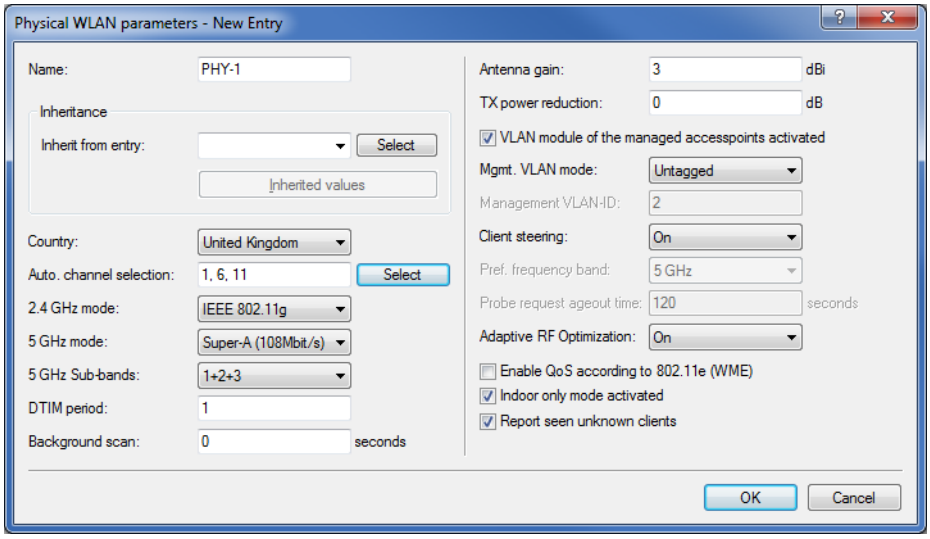




If you set the **VLAN mode** to **untagged**, LANconfig will gray-out the **VLAN ID** input field in the add/edit dialog shown above. However, the corresponding table **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)** still displays the assigned VLAN as a value in the grayed-out box. This entry is only of internal significance, as the acceptable range is between 2 and 4094. Ultimately it is the VLAN operating mode which is decisive: If this is set to **untagged**, then a VLAN ID is not transmitted under any circumstances.

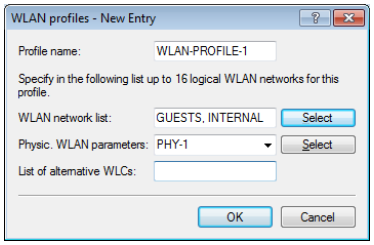
2. Create a set of physical parameters for the access points.
The management VLAN ID is set to `1`, which serves to activate the VLAN function (but without a separate management VLAN for the device; the management data traffic is transmitted untagged).

   > LANconfig: **WLAN-Controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters**



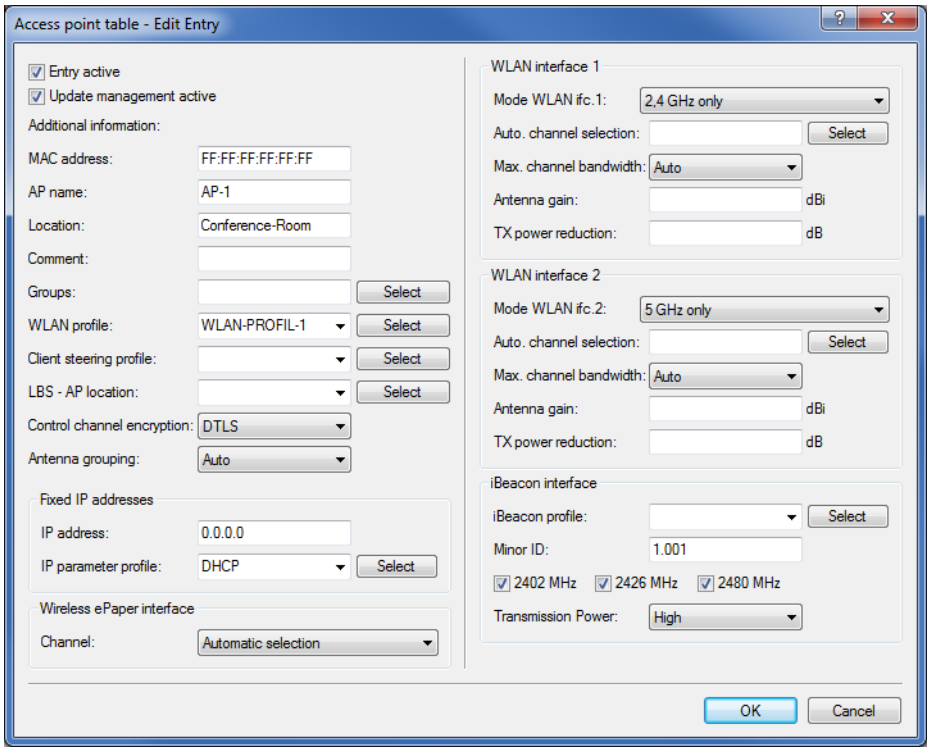
3. Create a WLAN profile that you can assign to the access points.
   The two logical WLAN networks and the set of physical parameters defined earlier are collected into this WLAN profile.

   › LANconfig: **WLAN-Controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN-Profiles**



4. Assign this WLAN profile to the access points managed by the controller.
   Do this by entering each access point with its MAC address into the access point table. Alternatively you can use the **Default** button to create a default profile, which applies to all access points.

   › LANconfig: **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Access point table**



Configuring the switch (LANCOM GS-2326P)

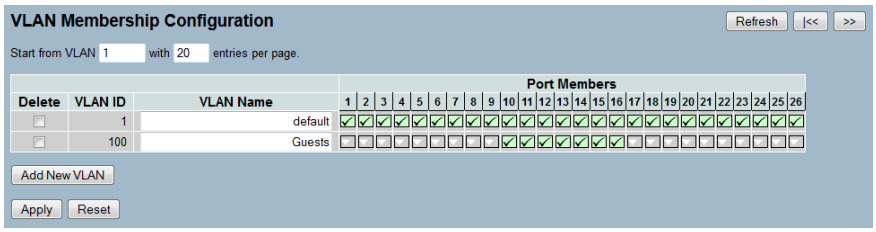
In this section we describe the configuration of the switch using the LANCOM GS-2326P as an example.

1. Under **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **VLAN-Membership**, create an additional VLAN group for the guest network.

   To differentiate between the VLANs in the switch, two groups are used. The internal network for the employees is mapped to the group `default`, and that for the guests is mapped to the group `guests`.

   › The VLAN group for the internal employees uses the default VLAN ID `1`. This VLAN ID used for internal administration applies on all ports and is operated untagged, i.e. all untagged incoming data packets are given the VLAN ID 1 for internal routing, and this is removed again from outgoing data packets (see also "PVID" in the next step).

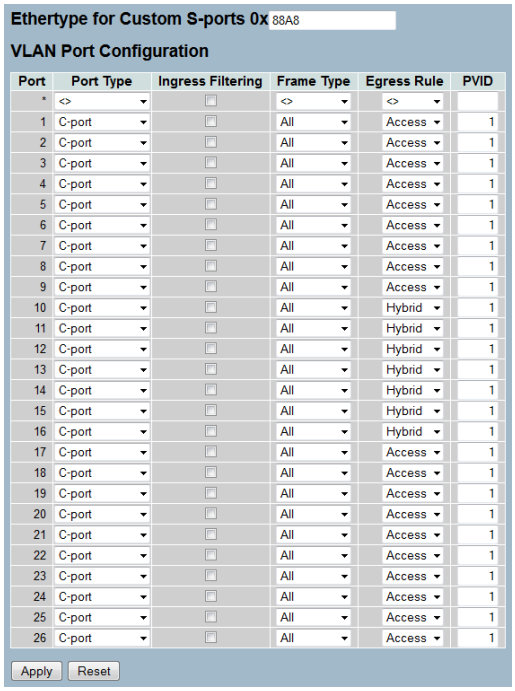
› The VLAN group for the guests uses the VLAN ID `100`, which you entered earlier when configuring the WLAN in the controller. This ID applies only to the ports which the WLAN controller and the access points are connected to (in this example: Port 10 to 16, green checkmarks for **Port members**). The switch does not remove tags from outgoing data packets. i.e. all tagged incoming packets with VLAN ID 100 retain this tag and are routed only to the ports that are members of the corresponding group.



2. Under **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **Ports** set the **Port Type** for all ports to **C-port**. See the documentation about your switch for details about this setting.
3. Configure the **Egress rule** for each port.

   › All ports except port 10 to 16 are given the **Access** rule. As a result, these ports forward only tagged packets and all others are dropped.

   › The ports 10 to 16 are given the rule **Hybrid**. As a result, these ports forward both untagged and tagged packets.



Ensure that the **PVID** (port VLAN ID) for each port is set to a value of `1`. The PVID is the VLAN ID that a port assigns to incoming data packets which do not already have a VLAN tag; Therefore, the PVID corresponds to the VLAN ID of the `default` group.

4. OPTIONAL: If you wish to allow access to the guest network via Ethernet, go to **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **Ports** and, for example, set the **PVID** to `100` for ports 17 to 20 and, under **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **VLAN-Membership**, assign these ports to the group `Guests`. All untagged incoming data packets arriving at these ports are given VLAN ID 100.

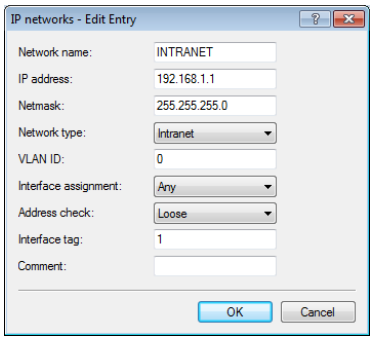
Note that these data packets can only leave the switch via the ports of the guest network.

Configuring the IP networks in the WLAN controller

To separate the data streams on layer 3, two different IP networks are employed (ARF – Advanced Routing and Forwarding).

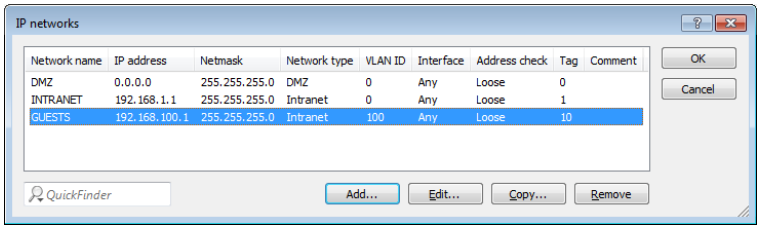
1. For the internal network, set the **INTRANET** to the address `192.168.1.1`.
   This IP network uses the **VLAN ID** `0`. This assigns all untagged data packets to this network (the VLAN module in the controller itself must be activated for this). The **interface tag** `1` is used for the subsequent break-out of data in the virtual router.

   › LANconfig: **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**



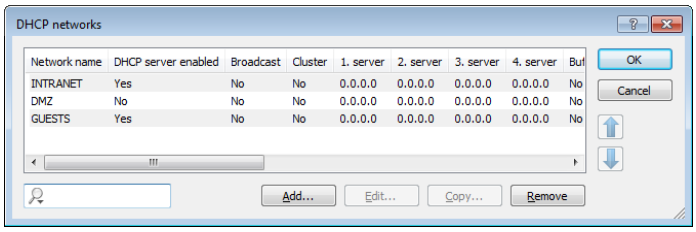
2. For guests, create a new IP network with the address `192.168.100.1`.
   This network uses the **VLAN ID** `100`. In this way, all data packets with this ID are assigned to the guest network. Here, too, the **interface tag** `10` is used later by the virtual router.

   › LANconfig: **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**

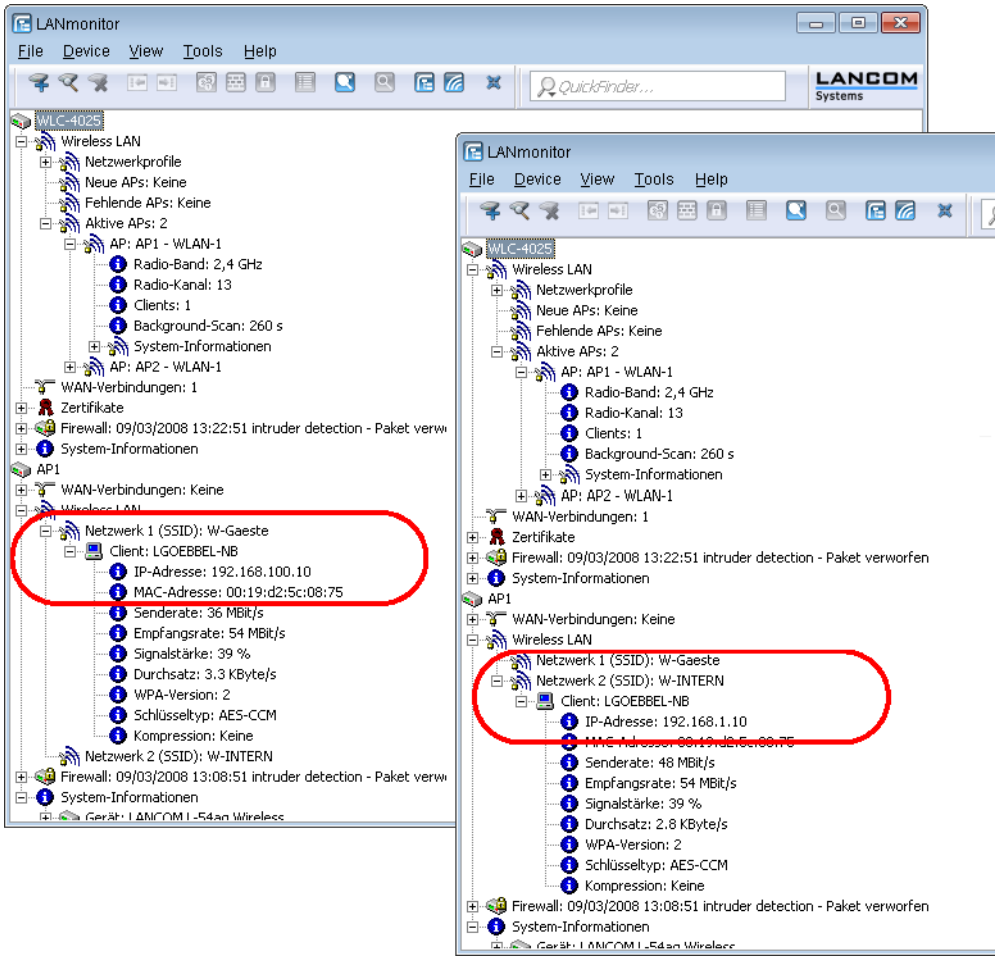


3. Enable the DHCP server for both IP networks.

   › LANconfig: **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**



With these settings, the WLAN clients of the internal employees and guests are assigned to the appropriate networks.

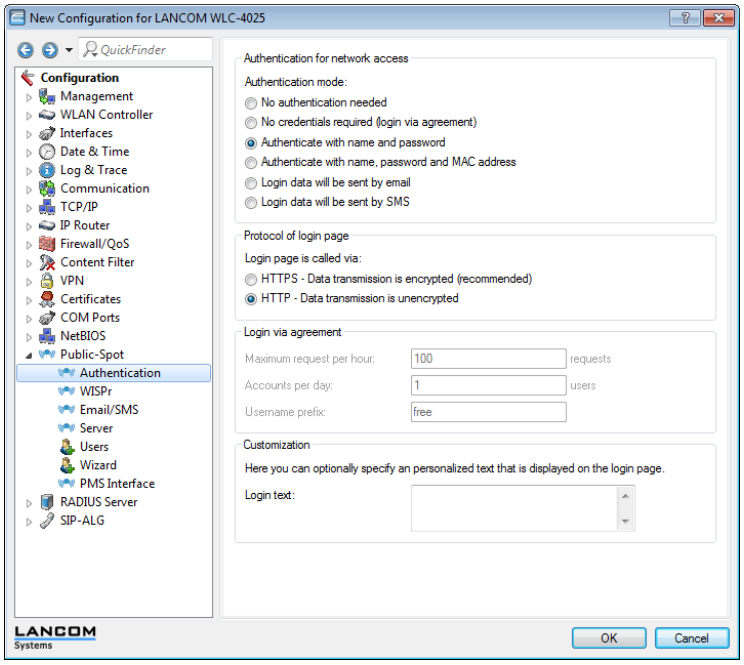


Configuring Public Spot access accounts

The Public Spot allows you to provide a strictly controlled point of access to your wireless LAN. Authentication is performed by requesting user information via a web interface. If necessary, you can can set a time limit for the access.

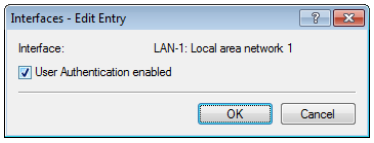
1. You should activate authentication for network access by name and password.

› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Authentication** > **Authentication for network access**



2. Activate user authentication for the controller's interface that is connected to the switch.

› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operation settings** > **Interfaces**

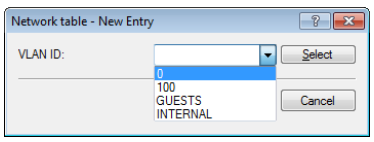


3. Restrict access to the Public Spot.

   You restrict use of the Public Spot to data packets from this virtual LAN by entering the VLAN ID of "100" for the guest network into VLAN table. Other data packets from other VLANs will be forwarded to the Public Spot without a login. Note that access to WEBconfig via the Public Spot interface is restricted to the authentication pages only (see *Limit configuration access*).

   If the interface is not restricted to the VLAN ID, the controller will no longer be reachable at the specified physical Ethernet port!

   › LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **VLAN table**



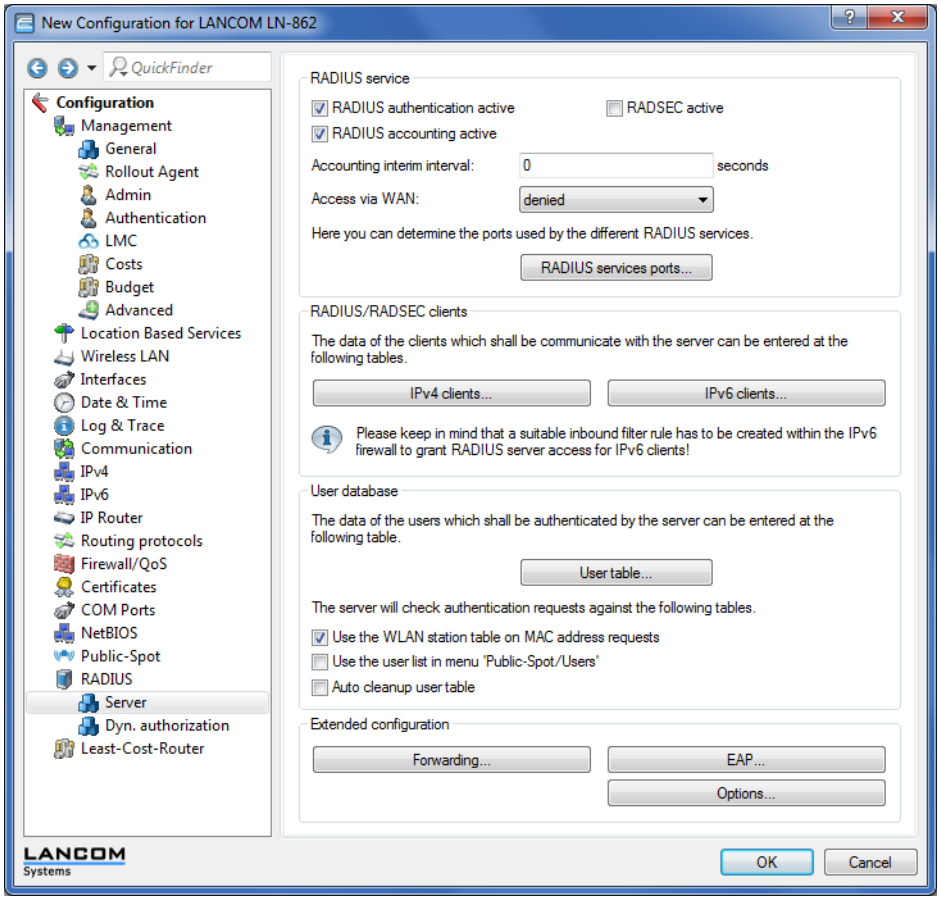
4. Enable the option to clean up the user table so that your device automatically deletes entries that are no longer needed.

   › LANconfig: **RADIUS** > **Server** > **User table** > **Auto cleanup user table**

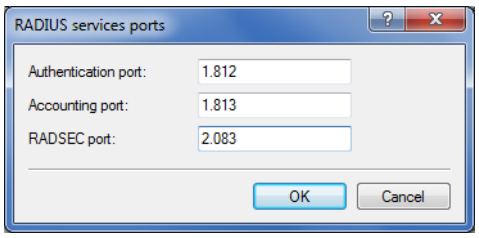
Configuring the internal RADIUS server for Public Spot operation

The Wizard stores the Public Spot access accounts in the user database of the internal RADIUS server. In order to use these Public Spot access accounts, the internal RADIUS server has been preconfigured with default values. You can inspect this setup in **LANconfig** as follows:

1. Navigate to **RADIUS** > **Server** > **RADIUS service**.
2. Ensure that checkmarks have been set for **RADIUS authentication active** and **RADIUS accounting active**.



3. Click the button **RADIUS services ports**.



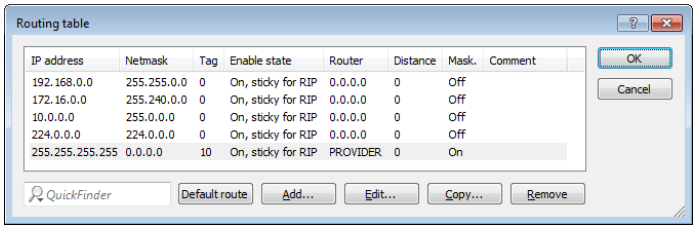
The default settings are available here for inspection.

Configuring Internet access for the guest network

1. In order to provide Internet access for guest network users, there is a wizard to set up access to a provider network.
2. Limit access to the provider network.
   In order for this access to be available to users of the guest network only, set the routing tag "10" for the corresponding route. This ensures that only data packets from the IP network "GUEST" with the interface tag "10" are transmitted

to the provider's network. The different routing tag values ensure that data cannot be routed between the guest network and the internal network.

› LANconfig: **IP router** > **Routing** > **Routing table**



3. Optional: If necessary, use **Device** > **Configuration Management** > **Upload certificate or file** in LANconfig to upload an HTML template and an image as a template to the device for output of the voucher.
The image can be a GIF, JPEG or PNG file of max. 64 KB in size.

WLAN layer-3 tunneling

Introduction

The CAPWAP standard for centralized WLAN management offers two different channels for transmissions:

› The obligatory control channel transports administrative data between the managed AP and the WLC.
› The optional data channel transmits the payload data from the various WLAN networks (SSID) between the managed AP and the WLC.

The decision whether to use of the optional data channel between the managed AP and the WLC depends on the route to be taken by the payload data:

› If you deactivate the data channel, the AP forwards the payload data directly to the LAN. In this case, you control the allocation of WLAN clients to specific LAN segments, for example by assigning VLAN IDs. The advantage of this application lies in the low load on the WLC and on the network as a whole, because the AP transmits only the management data via the CAPWAP tunnel and it transmits the payload data over the shortest available route.
› If you activate the data channel, the AP additionally forwards the payload data to the central WLC. This approach has the following advantages:
  › The APs can provide access to networks that are only available on the WLC, such as a central Internet access for a Public Spot.
  › The WLANs provided by the APs (SSIDs) can be separated from one another without the use of VLAN. Avoiding the use of VLAN reduces the effort required for the configuration of other network components such as switches, etc.
  › WLAN clients associated with the APs and in different IP networks can roam to other APs without interruption to their IP connections, because the connection is continually managed by the central WLC and not by the APs (layer-3 roaming).

The use of data channels forms additional logical networks on the basis of the existing physical infrastructure. These logical networks are known as overlay networks.

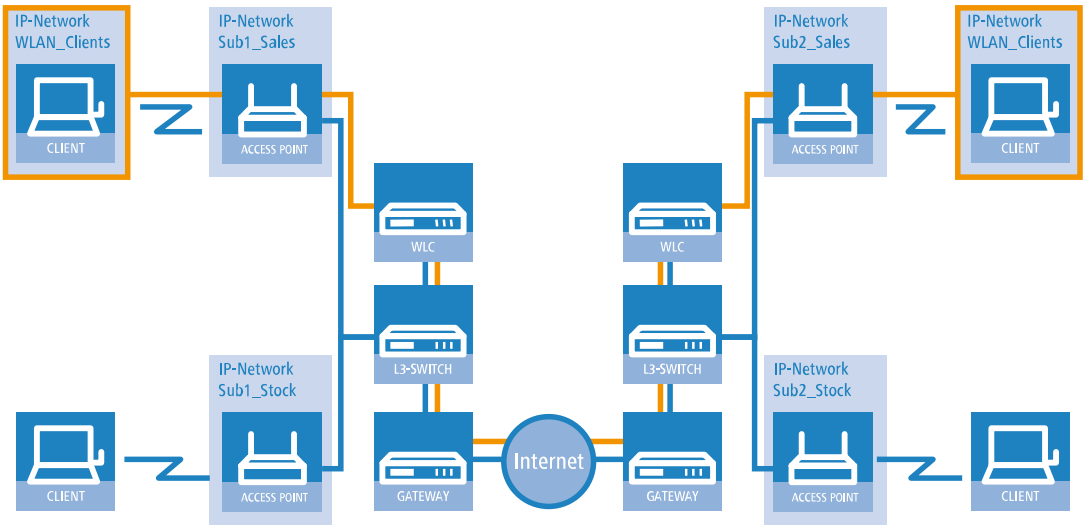


Figure 6: Overlay network across multiple IP networks

Using the data channel even allows you to span logical overlay networks across multiple WLCs.

Several WLCs within a single broadcast domain can support the same overlay network. Disable the WLC data channel between these WLCs (WEBconfig: LCOS Menu Tree > Setup > WLAN-Management > WLC-Cluster > WLC-Data-Tunnel-active). Otherwise the multiple reception of the broadcast messages would give rise to loops. Since routers drop broadcast messages, you can activate the CAPWAP data channel for WLCs in separate networks.

The APs use virtual WLC interfaces (WLC tunnels) to manage each SSID's data channels between AP and WLC. Depending on the model, each WLC provides 16 to 32 WLC tunnels that you can use when configuring the logical WLANs.

Virtual WLC interfaces are available for selection in all dialogs used to select logical interfaces (LAN or WLAN), such as in the port table of the LAN and VLAN settings or for the definition of IP networks.

Tutorials

The following sections present specific scenarios with step-by-step instructions for a number of standard situations when operating WLCs.

Overlay network: Separating networks for access points without using VLAN

In many cases, networks in a shared physical infrastructure are separated by using VLANs. However, this method assumes that the switches operated in the network are VLAN-capable and that these are configured for VLAN operations. Consequently, the administrator has to rollout the VLAN configuration for the whole network.

WLCs enable you to separate the networks while minimizing the use of VLANs. The APs use a CAPWAP data tunnel to direct the payload from the WLAN clients straight to the WLC, which then assigns the data to the corresponding VLANs. In this situation, VLAN configuration is only required for the WLC and a single, central switch. All of the other switches in this example work without a VLAN configuration.

With this configuration, you reduce the VLAN to the core of the network structure (illustrated with a blue background). What's more, only 3 of the switch ports in use require a VLAN configuration.

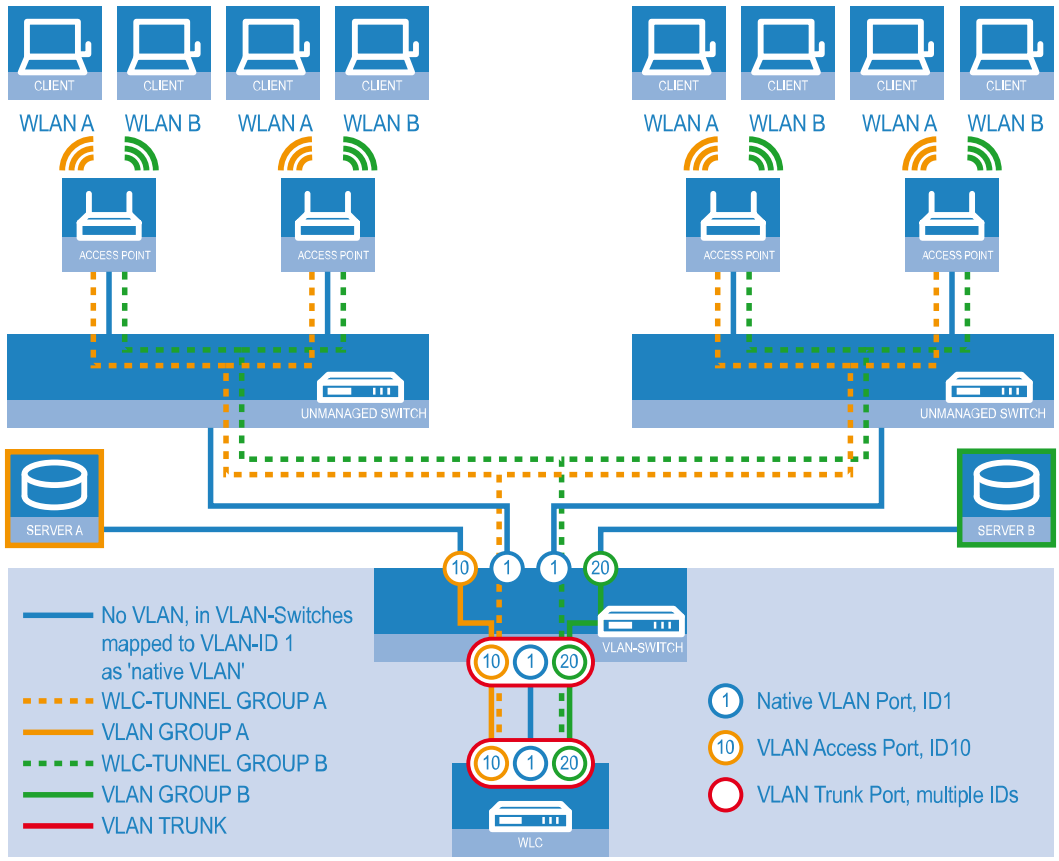


Figure 7: Example application: Overlay network

The diagram shows a sample application with the following components:

- The network consists of two segments, each with its own (not necessarily VLAN-capable) switch.
- Each segment contains several APs, each of which is connected to one of the switches.
- Each AP provides two SSIDs for the WLAN clients in two different user groups, shown in the diagram in green and orange.
- Each user group has access to its own dedicated server that is separated from other user group. The servers can only be accessed via the corresponding VLANs, i.e. through the access ports configured on the switch.
- A single WLC manages all of the APs in the network
- A central, VLAN-capable switch connects the switches in each segment, the servers for each group, and the WLC.

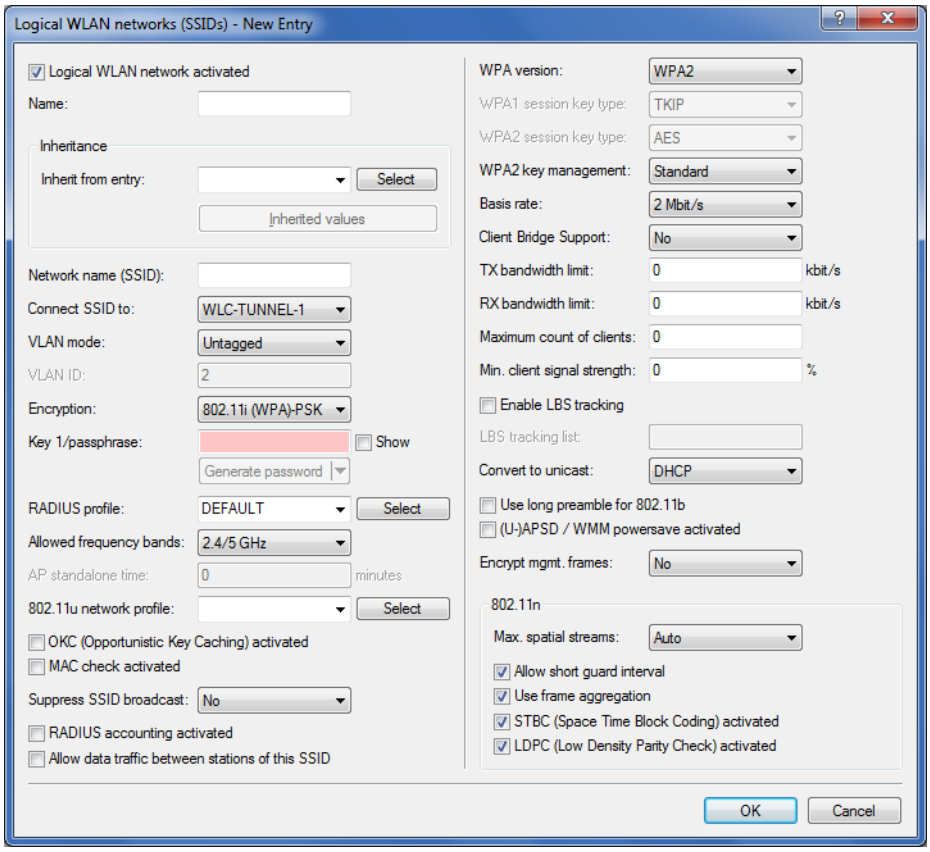
The aim of the configuration: A WLAN client that associates with an SSID is to have access to its "own" server, regardless of which AP is being used and regardless of the segment in which the client is located.

The following description assumes a working basic configuration of the WLC. The configuration of the VLAN switch is not part of this description.

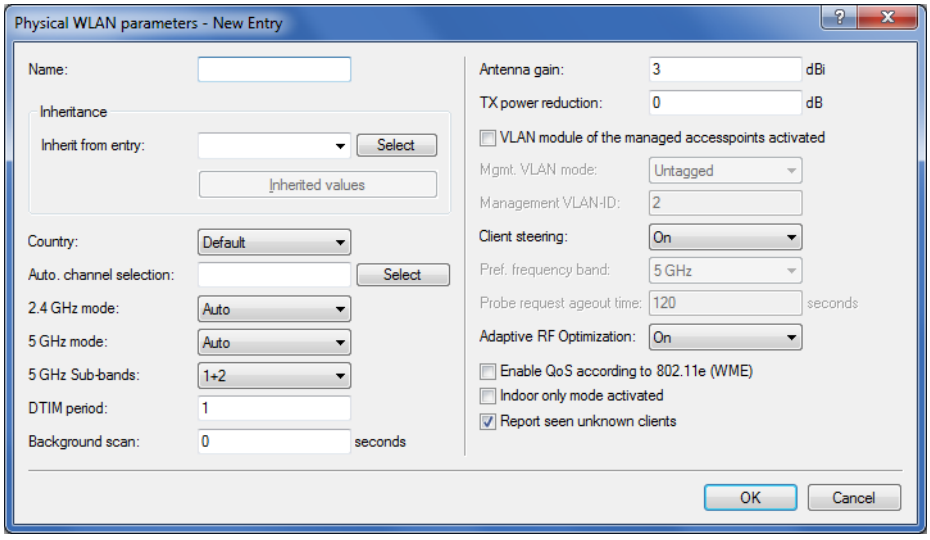
Configuring the WLAN settings

1. For each SSID, create an entry in the list of logical networks, each with a suitable name and the corresponding SSID. Connect the SSID to a WLC tunnel, for example the first SSID to "WLC-TUNNEL-1" and the second to "WLC-TUNNEL-2 '. Set the VLAN mode to 'tagged', set the VLAN ID '10' for the first logical network and the VLAN ID '20' for the

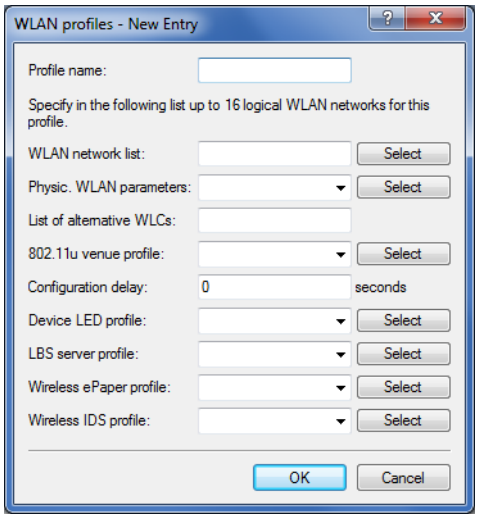
second logical network. In LANconfig you find these settings under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)**.



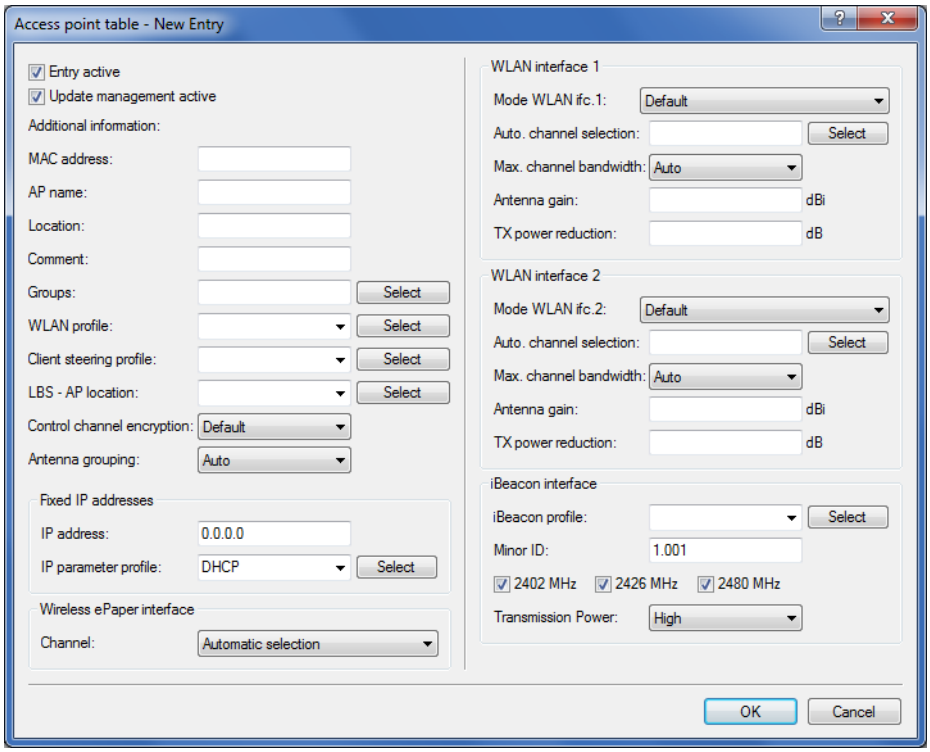
2. Create an entry in the list of physical WLAN parameters with the appropriate settings for your APs, such as the country 'Europe' with the channels 1, 6 and 11 in 802.11b/g/n and 802.11a/n in mixed mode. For this profile in the physical WLAN parameters, enable the option to turn on the VLAN module on the APs. Set the operating mode for the management VLAN in the APs to 'Untagged'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters**.



3. Create a WLAN profile and give it a suitable name. Then assign the logical WLAN networks and the physical WLAN parameters created previously to this WLAN profile. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**.

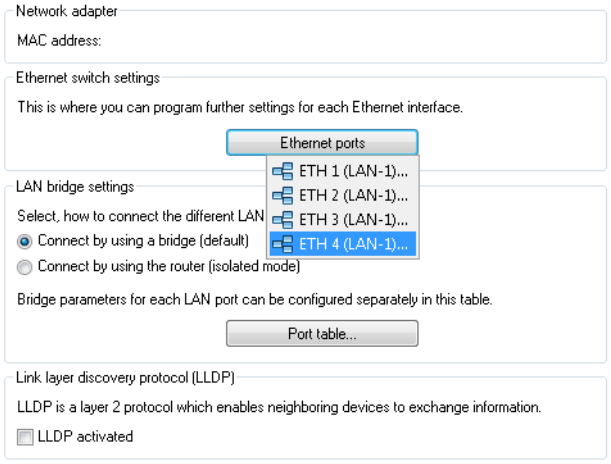


4. For each managed AP, create an entry in the AP table with a suitable name and the associated MAC address. Assign the previously created WLAN profile to this AP. In LANconfig you find these settings under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **AP config.** > **Access point table**.

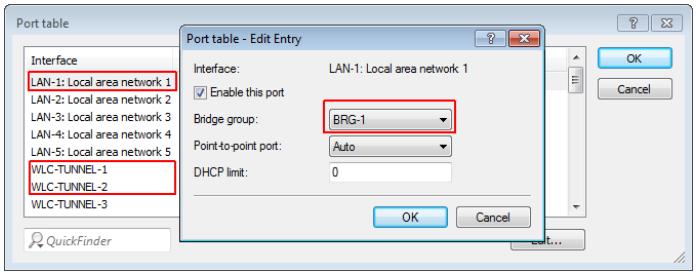


Configuring the interfaces on the WLC

5. Assign a separate logical LAN interface, e.g. 'LAN-1', to each physical Ethernet port. Make sure that the other Ethernet ports are not assigned to the same LAN interface. In LANconfig you find these settings under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Ethernet ports**.

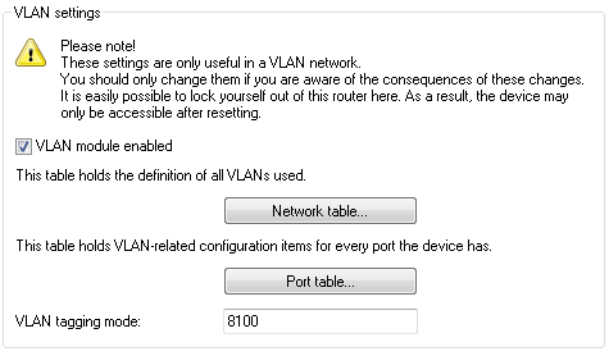


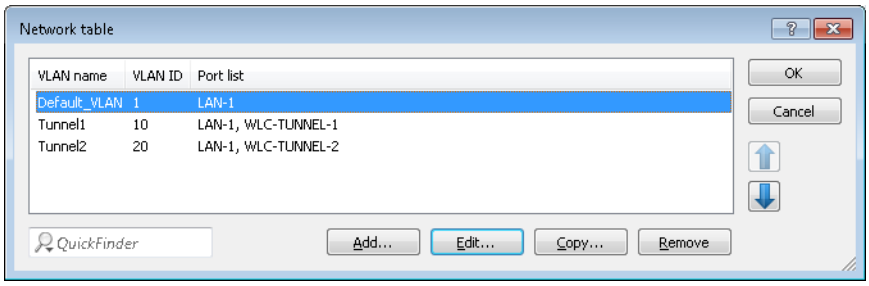
6. Assign the logical LAN interface 'LAN-1' and the WLC tunnels 'WLC-tunnel-1' and 'WLC-tunnel-2' to the bridge-group 'BRG-1'. Make sure that the other LAN ports are not assigned to the same bridge group. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**.



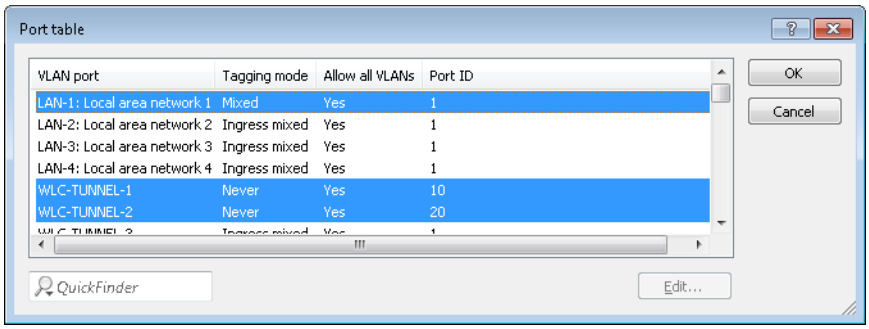
By default, the LAN interfaces and WLC tunnels do not belong to a bridge group. By assigning the LAN interface 'LAN-1' and the two WLC tunnels 'WLC-Tunnel-1' and 'WLC-Tunnel-2' to the bridge group 'BRG-1', the device transmits all data packets between LAN-1 and the WLC tunnels via the bridge.

7. Activate the VLAN module of the WLC under **Interfaces** > **VLAN** and, under **VLAN table**, assign the LAN port you selected above (LAN 1) and also the corresponding WLC tunnel to the desired VLAN.





8. Under **Interfaces** > **VLAN** > **Port table**, set the Tagging mode of the tunnel interface and the LAN interface, and set the corresponding port VLAN ID.



Depending on how the switch is configured, set the Tagging mode of the LAN interface to 'Mixed' or 'Always'.

In most cases the tunnel interfaces are operated with the mode 'Never', because packets here (from the WLAN) always arrive untagged and the WLC marks them with the port VLAN ID

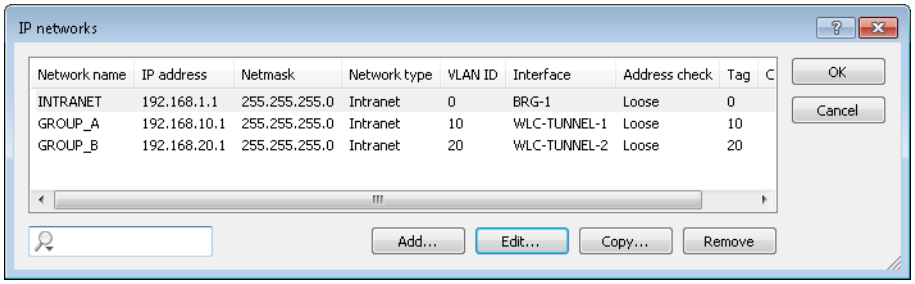
When you activate the VLAN module, please observe that the ARF networks configured on the WLC must be given a VLAN ID. In the VLAN configuration outlined above, you need to set the VLAN ID for the IP network to '1' in order for the WLC to reach the network without a VLAN tag.

A similar configuration is achieved by making the access point set a VLAN tag for packets that are to be sent via the tunnel, in which case the VLAN module of the WLC is not used.

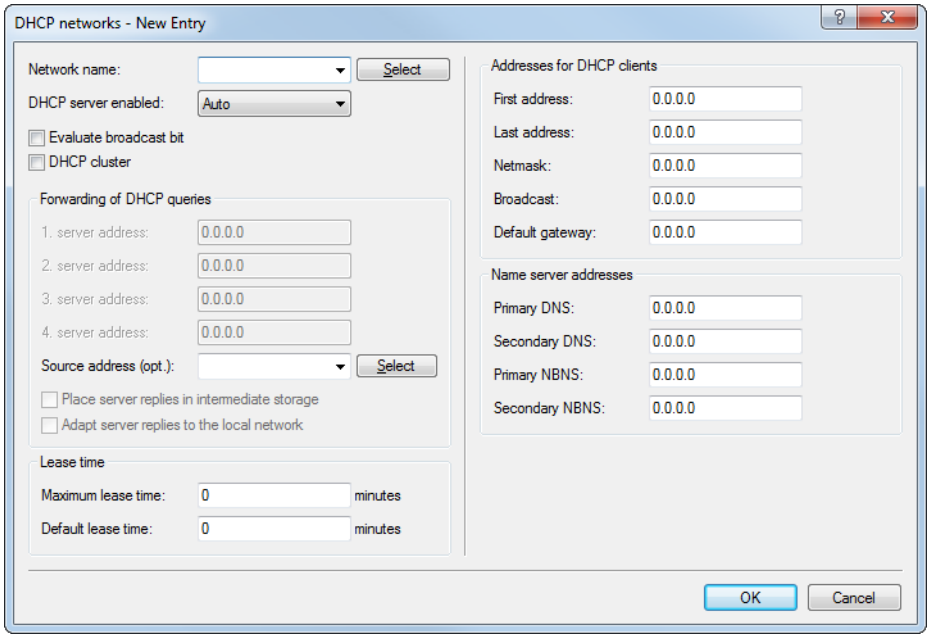
However, this bridging of the various WLC tunnels with one another causes broadcasts to be redirected into all of the tunnels; with a certain number of tunnels/SSIDs and APs, this can lead to load problems on the network and on the WLC. The VLAN module configuration presented here prevents this.

9. In addition you configure the IP settings for the networks that are separated on layer 2 under **IPv4** > **General** > **IP networks**.

To prevent the device from connecting these networks via layer 3, a separation must also be configured on layer 3, for example by using a port tag or by means of the firewall.



10. The WLC optionally acts as a DHCP server for the APs. To set this up, activate the DHCP server for the 'INTRANET'. In LANconfig you find these settings under **IPv4** > **DHCPv4** > **DHCP networks**.



"Layer 3 roaming"

Allowing payload data from the wireless LAN to pass-through the WLC tunnel to the WLC enables roaming even beyond the limits of broadcast domains. In this example application, a layer-3 switch between the floors prevents the transmission of broadcasts, and thus separates the broadcast domains.

In this example, two user groups A and B each have access to their own WLAN (SSID). On all floors of the building, the APs provide two SSIDs, 'GROUP_A' and 'GROUP_B'.

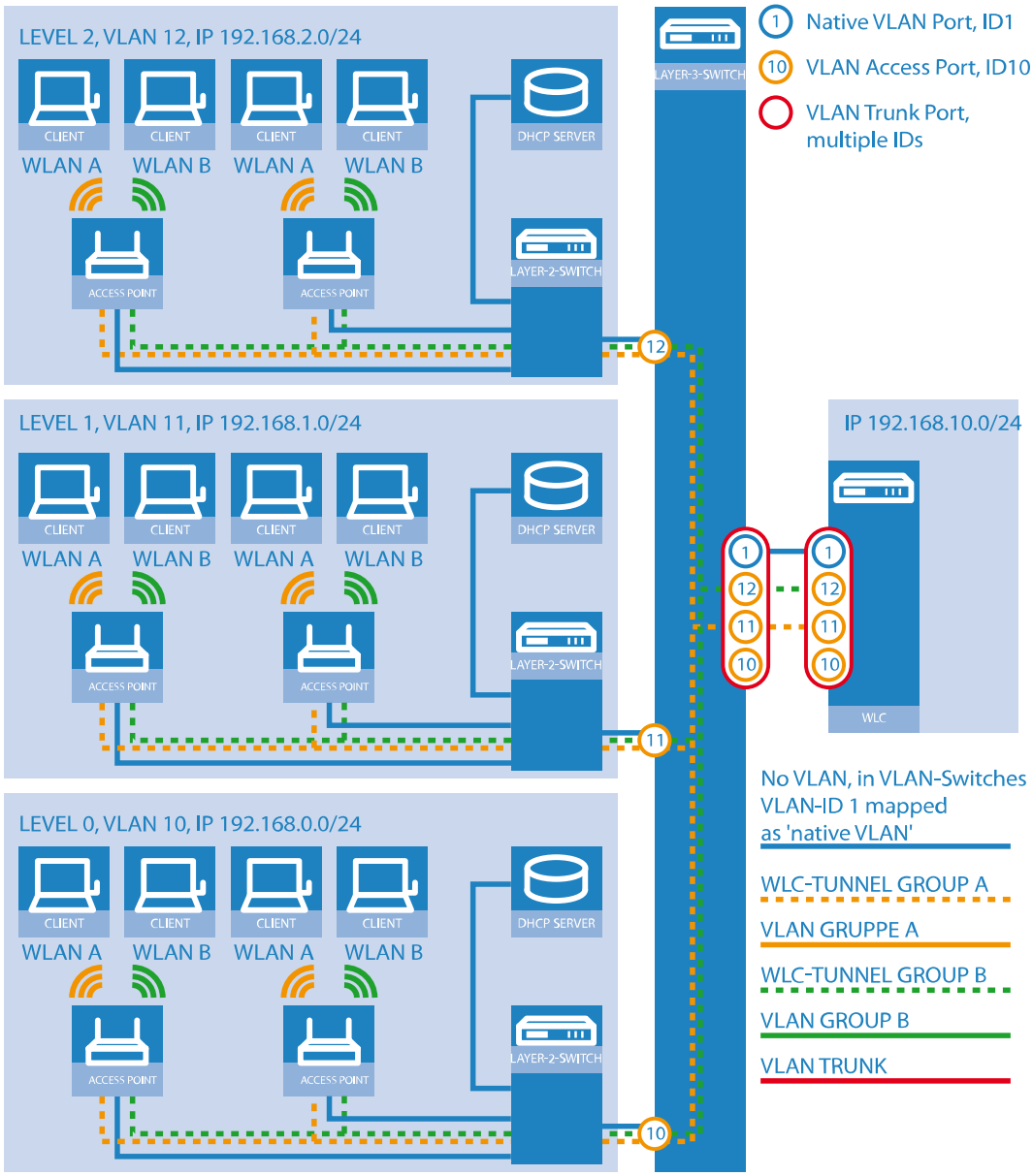


Figure 8: Example application for layer-3 roaming

The diagram shows a sample application with the following components:

- The network consists of three segments on separate floors of a building.
- A central layer-3 switch connects the segments and divides the network into three broadcast domains.
- Each segment uses its own IP address space and its own VLAN.
- Each segment operates a local DHCP server, which transmits the following information to the APs:
  - IP address of the gateway
  - IP address of the DNS server
  - Domain suffix

  This information enables the APs to contact the WLC in another broadcast domain.

The aim of the configuration: When moving to another floor, a WLAN client that associates with a particular SSID is to retain access to its "own" WLAN, regardless of which AP is being used and regardless of the segment in which the client is located. Since the segments in this example use different IP address ranges, this scenario can only be implemented by managing the APs directly with the central WLC via layer 3 and across the boundaries of the VLANs.

The configuration corresponds to the example *Overlay network: Separating networks for access points without using VLAN* on page 1025.

WLAN controller with Public Spot

This scenario is based on the first scenario (overlay network) and enhances it to include specific settings for user authentication.

The configuration of a Public Spot can be greatly simplified if the payload data sent from the WLAN to the WLC is routed through a WLC tunnel. A Public Spot can, for example, provide guests with Internet access in parallel with, but separated from, an internal wireless LAN.

In this example, the employees of a company have access to a private WLAN (SSID), while the guests use a Public Spot to access the Internet. In all areas of the building, the APs provide two SSIDs, 'COMPANY' and 'GUESTS'.

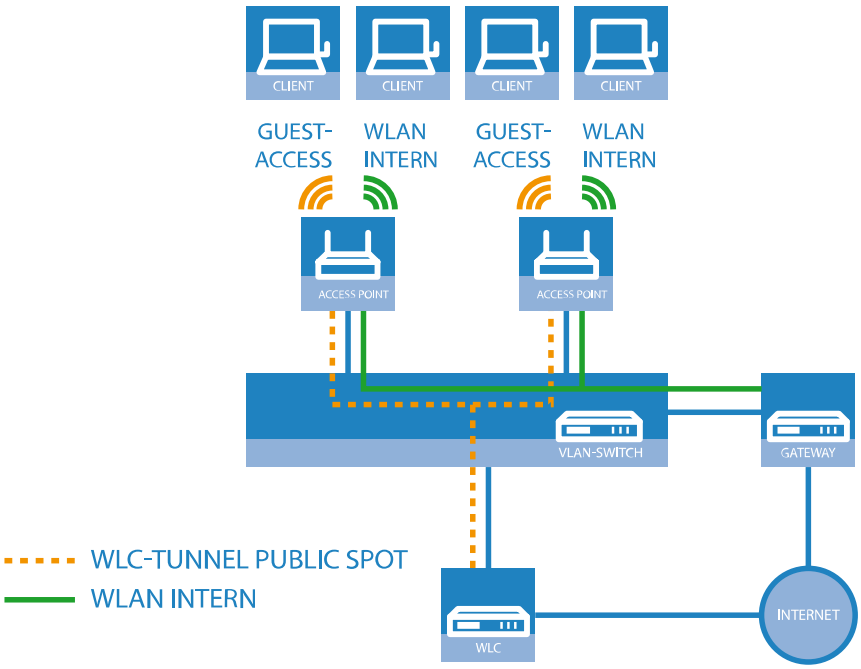
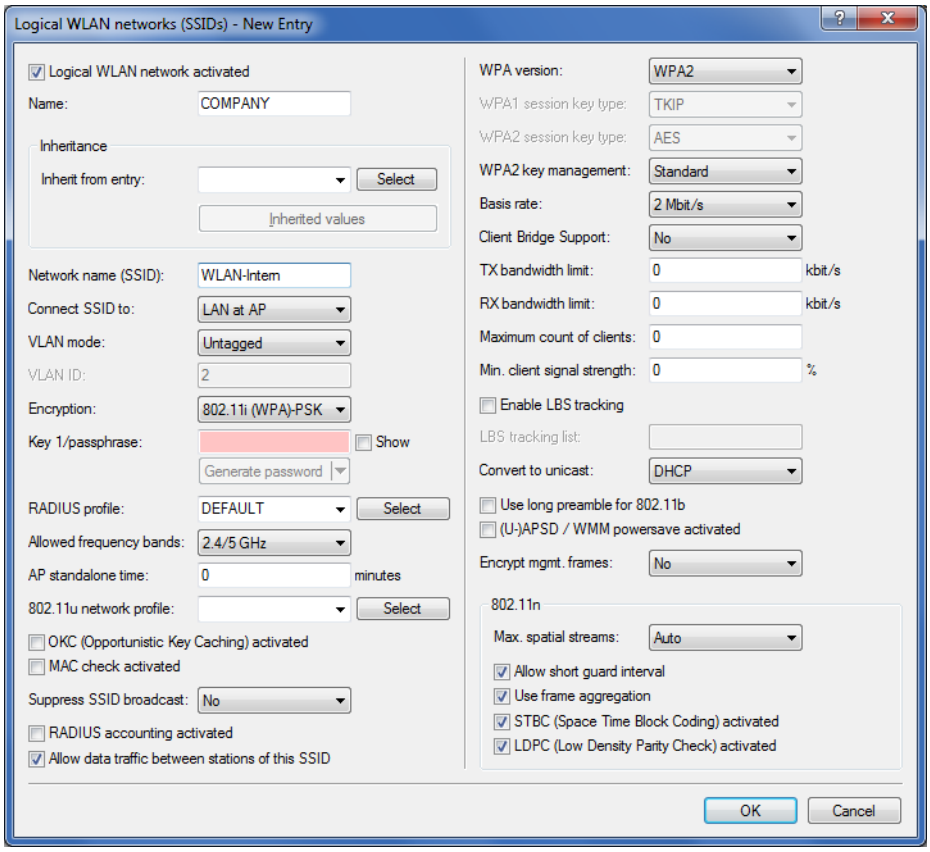


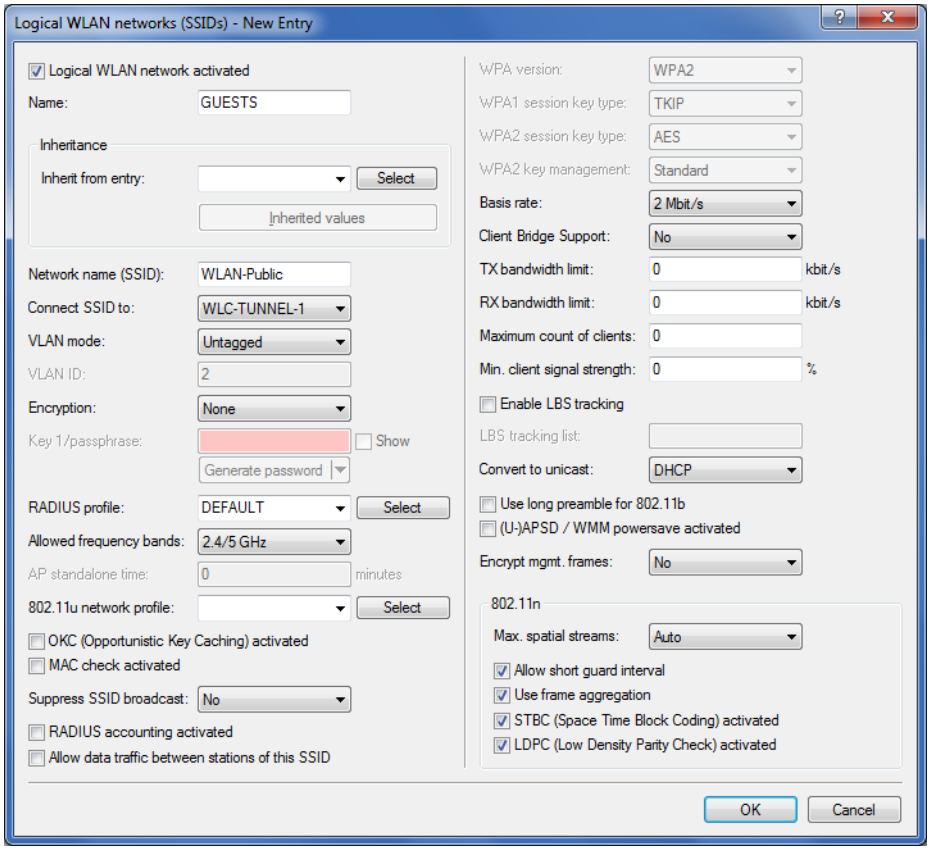
Figure 9: Example application: WLAN controller with Public Spot

The aim of the configuration: A WLAN client that associates with the internal SSID should have access to all internal resources and the Internet via the central gateway. The APs break-out the payload data from the internal clients locally and pass it on directly to the LAN. The guests' WLAN clients associate with the Public Spot. The APs send the payload data from the guest clients through a WLC tunnel directly to the WLC, which uses a separate WAN interface for Internet access.

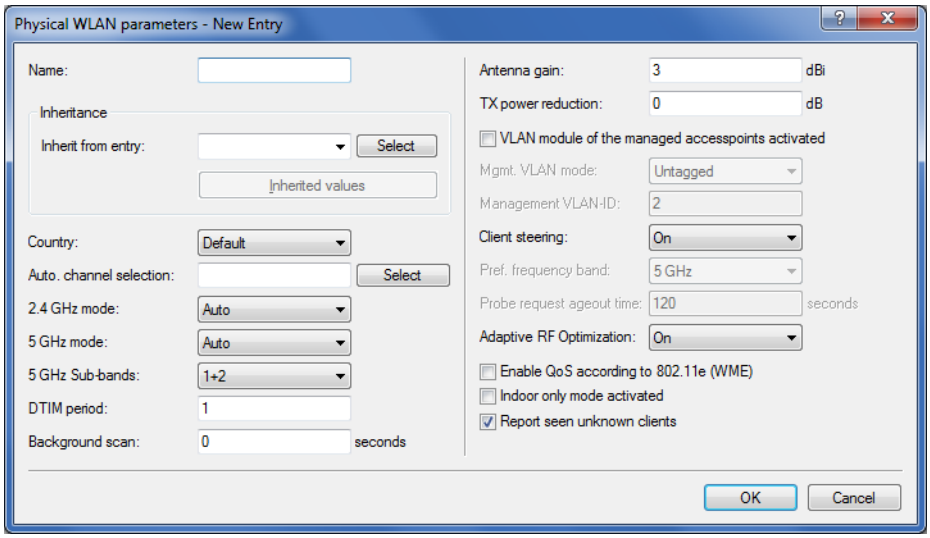
1. The internal WLAN and the guest WLAN each require an entry to be created in the list of logical networks, each with a suitable name and the corresponding SSID. Link the SSID for internal use with the 'LAN at AP', and the SSID for guests with (for example) 'WLC-TUNNEL-1'. Disable encryption for the guest network SSID so that the guests' WLAN

clients can associate with the Public Spot. You should also prevent inter-station traffic for this SSID. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)**.

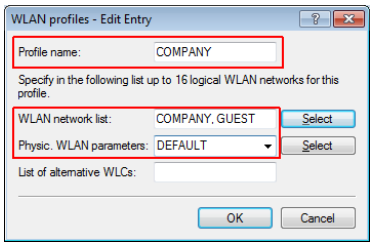




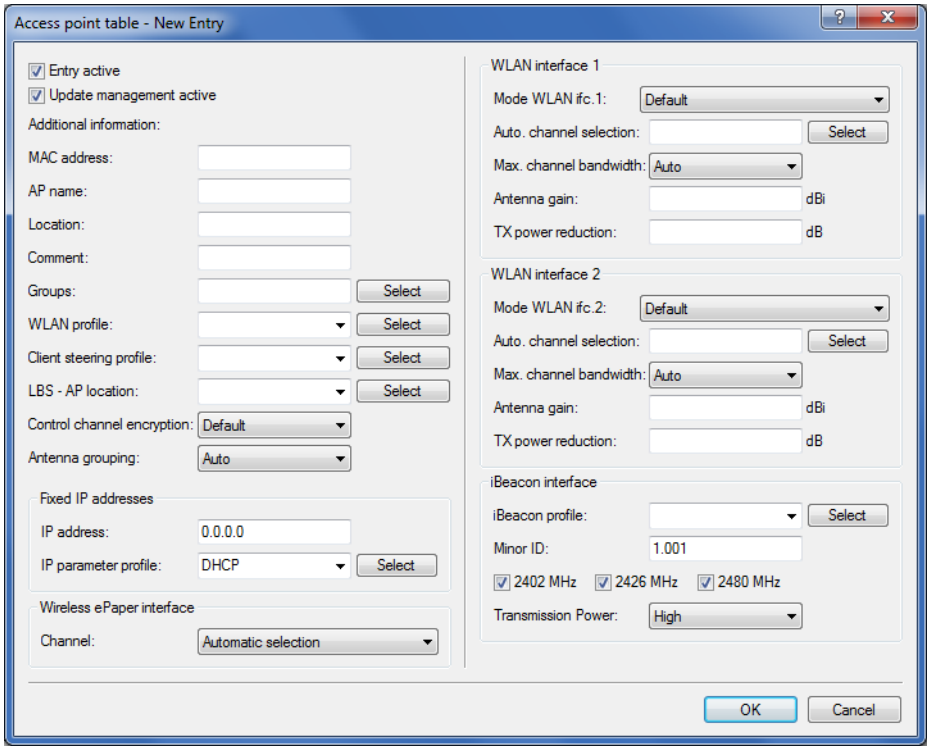
2. Create an entry in the list of physical WLAN parameters with the appropriate settings for your APs, such as the country 'Europe' with the channels 1, 6 and 11 in 802.11b/g/n and 802.11a/n in mixed mode. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters**.



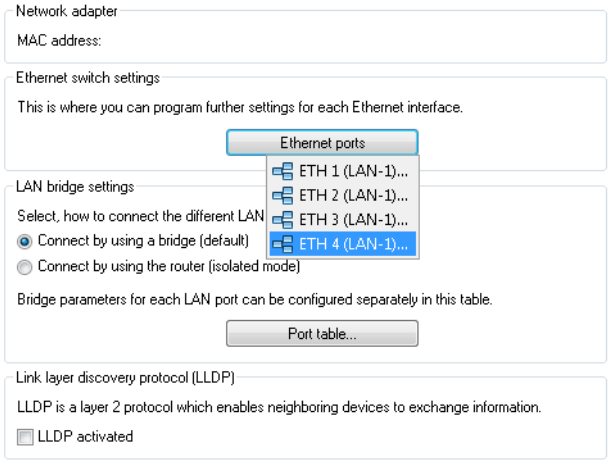
3. Create a WLAN profile and give it a suitable name. Then assign the logical WLAN networks and the physical WLAN parameters created previously to this WLAN profile. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**.



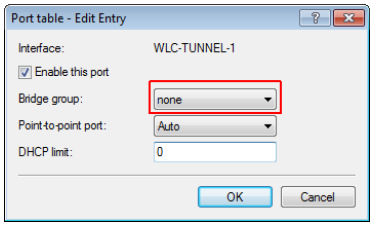
4. For each managed AP, create an entry in the AP table with a suitable name and the associated MAC address. Assign the previously created WLAN profile to this AP. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **AP config.** > **Access point table**.



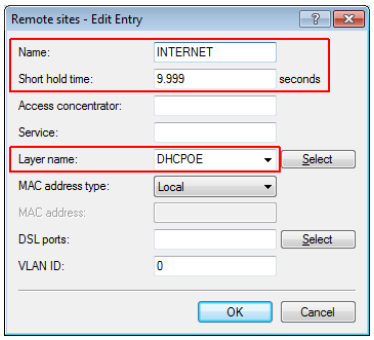
5. Assign a separate logical LAN interface, e.g. 'LAN-1', to each physical Ethernet port. Set the 4th Ethernet port to the logical LAN interface 'DSL-1'. The WLC then uses this LAN interface for the guest network Internet access. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Ethernet ports**.



6. Verify that the logical LAN interface 'WLC-tunnel-1' is not allocated to a bridge group. This ensures that the other LAN interfaces do not transmit any data to the Public Spot. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**.

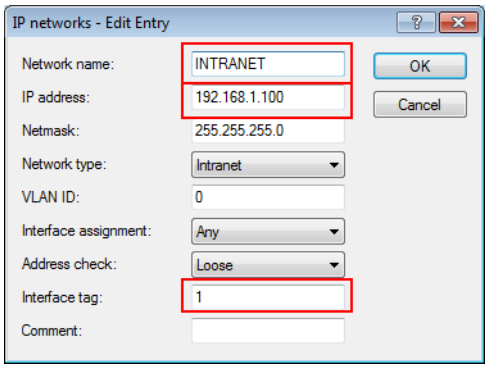


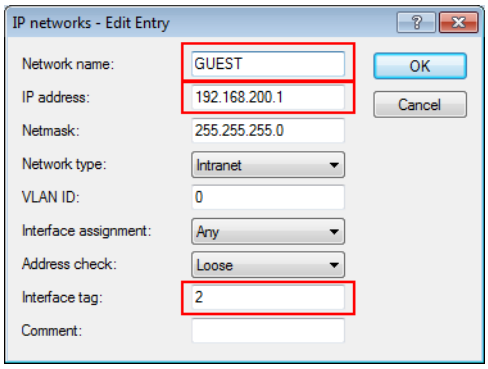
7. For the guest Internet access, create an entry in the list of DSL remote sites with the hold time '9999' and the pre-defined layer 'DHCPOE '. This example assumes that Internet access is provided by a router with DHCP server. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Communications** > **Remote sites** > **Remote sites**.



8. For internal users, create the IP network 'INTRANET' with (for example) the IP address '192.168.1.100' and the interface tag '1'. For the guest access, create the IP network 'GUEST-ACCESS' with (for example) the IP address of

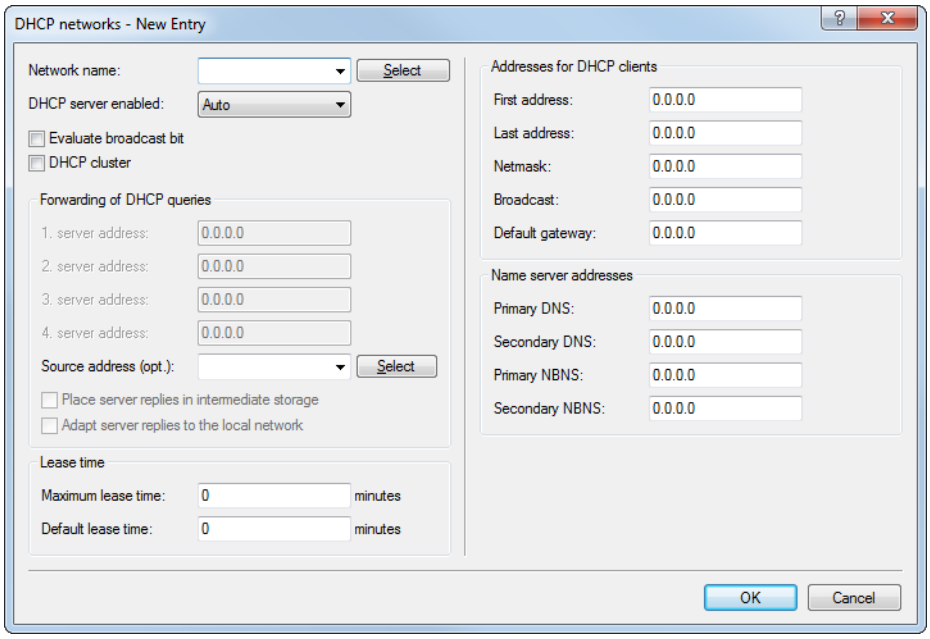
'192.168.200.1' and the interface tag '2'. The virtual router in the WLC uses the interface tags to separate the routes for the two networks. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**.



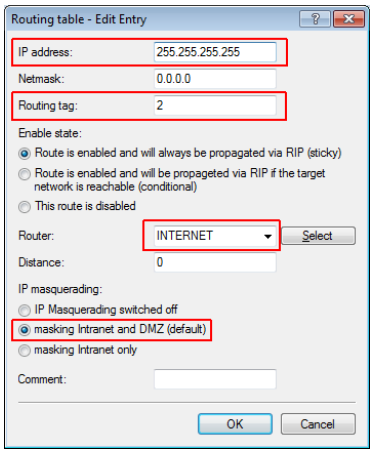


9. The WLC is able to act as a DHCP server for APs and the associated WLAN clients. To set this up, activate the DHCP server for the 'INTRANET' and the 'GUEST-ACCESS'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **TCP/IP** > **DHCP** > **DHCP networks**.

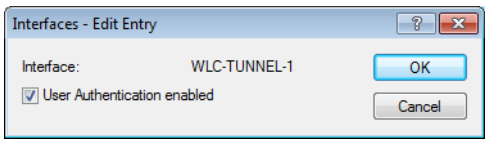
Activation of the DHCP server is obligatory for the guest network and optional for the internal network. There are other ways of realizing a DHCP server for the internal network.



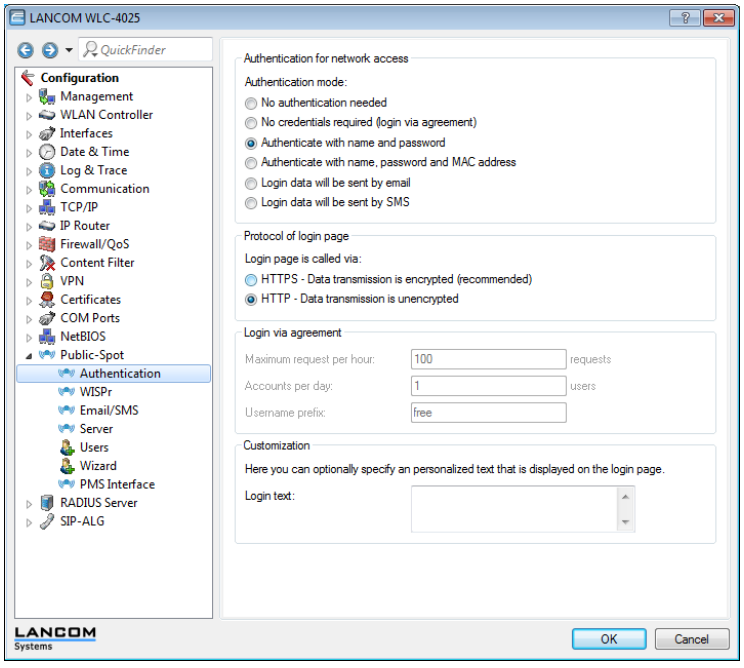
10. Create a new default route in the routing table to direct the data from the guest network to the Internet connection used by the WLC. Select the routing tag '2' and the router 'Internet'. Also activate the option 'Masking intranet and DMZ (default)'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **IP router** > **Routing** > **Routing table**.



11. Activate the Public Spot user authentication for the logical LAN interface 'WLC-Tunnel-1'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operational settings** > **Interfaces**.



12. The final step is to enable authentication via the Public Spot for the WLC. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Public Spot** > **Authentication**.



In addition to configuring the WLC, you must also configure the Public Spot either to use the internal user list or to use a RADIUS server, according to your needs.

13.4.4 IP-dependent auto configuration and tagging of APs

The easiest way to manage all of the APs that you add to a managed network is to use a flat hierarchy. However, in the largest installations with hundreds of APs across several locations, this type of organization quickly becomes confusing and creates a high level of administrative effort. Setting up **Assignment groups** can help to simplify the management of distributed APs. The WLC can automatically to configure each new AP based on the IP addresses it receives. Manual assignment of an IP parameter profile, a WLAN profile and a Client-steering profile by an administrator is no longer required.

The following describes how an assignment group is used when an unassociated AP registers with a central WLC: After the new APs are installed on site (e.g. at a company or branch network), they try to establish a connection to the specified WLC and obtain a configuration via CAPWAP. The WLC detects the connection requests and, for each new AP, it checks the AP table for a suitable AP profile (e.g., the default profile) and/or whether a suitable assignment group has been defined. If one or more configuration options are available, the WLC checks them for the following states:

1. For a new AP there is an assignment group but no AP profile. In this case, the WLC assigns the profile specified in the assignment group to the new AP.
2. For a new AP there is both an assignment group as well as an AP profile. In this case, the WLC ignores the assignment group and assigns the profile defined in the AP profile to the new AP.
3. For a new AP, there is an AP profile but no assignment group. The behavior is the same as point (2).

If a new AP has neither an AP profile nor an assignment group, the WLC issues an alarm to notify the administrator of the incorrect configuration.

After successful group assignment, the WLC automatically creates an AP profile for every new AP in the access point table. In the **Groups** field, the WLC references the assignment group used when it added the new AP.

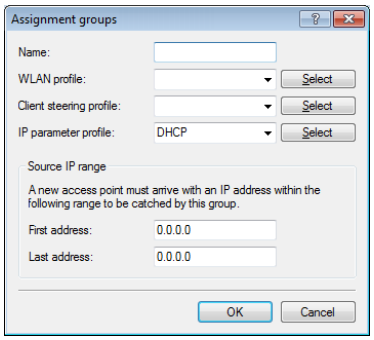
An AP is only ever allowed to receive one assignment group. If the IP address ranges of the assignment groups overlap, LCOS immediately detects the configuration error and writes the messages to the corresponding status table under **Status** > **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Configuration**.

The group field also gives you the the option of assigning individually definable tags to an AP. For example, these **Tag groups** can be used to act as filter criteria in order for the WLC to restrict the actions it performs to a selection of APs.

Setting up assignment groups for IP-dependent auto configuration

The following tutorial shows you how you setup assignment groups on a WLC for the IP-dependent automatic configuration of new APs.

1. Open the configuration dialog for your device and select **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Assignment groups**
2. Click on **Add** to create a new group.



3. Enter under **Name** a unique descriptor for the assignment group, for example, `Berlin_branch`.
4. Select the **WLAN profile** that the WLC automatically assigns to a new AP if the IP address of the new AP is within the source IP range.

5. Enter the **IP parameter profile** if the new AP should receive a manual network configuration. Otherwise, leave the value as **DHCP**, whereby the AP automatically gets a network configuration from the DHCP server. The DHCP server must be configured to do this.

   If you wish to assign a manual network configuration in which a new AP receives a different IP address, you specify the corresponding address range in the **IP parameter profile** under **Address assignment pool**.

6. **Optional**: Specify a **Client-steering profile** in order to forward future WLAN clients to the ideal AP in case there are several new APs within transmission range.

   If you activate client steering, this must be activated for every AP in the managed infrastructure. Refer to section *Client steering by WLC* on page 1076 for further information on this.

7. Enter the start and end of the **Source IP range** relevant to the assignment group.
   A new AP must register at the WLC with an IP address from this range in order to obtain the configuration for this group.
8. Close all dialog windows with **OK** and save the configuration to your device.

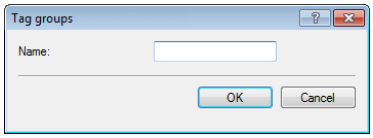
From now on, the WLC assigns the profiles referenced in the assignment groups to all new APs. The LCOS console can now provide you with information about the categorization, see *Overview of CAPWAP parameters with the show command* on page 51.

Please ensure that the access point table does not contain an AP profile (e.g., the default profile), which the WLC would assign to the unassociated APs. If an appropriate AP profile is available, this always takes higher priority than the assignment groups.

Setting up tag groups for the detailed selection of APs

The following tutorial shows you how a tag group can be added to an AP configuration on a WLC. To do this, you first create a tag group and then assign it to a WLAN profile.

1. Open the configuration dialog for your device and select **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Tag groups**
2. Click on **Add** to create a new group.



3. Under **Name** you enter the new tag and save the entry with **OK**.
4. Navigate to the dialog with **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Access point table**.
5. Select an existing AP profile with **Edit** or add a new one, if necessary.
6. Under **Groups** select the tag group(s) created earlier.
   Multiple tag groups can be specified in a comma-separated list.

   The tag groups are independent of the assignment groups, the assignment of which is specified in the same field. Assignment groups are generally assigned by the device, so this does not need to be done by the user. The manual allocation of an assignment group has no effect on the AP configuration, which is in line with the state check described under *IP-dependent auto configuration and tagging of APs* on page 1040. The only effects are on the filtering in the command `show capwap group` at the console

   The manual addition of assignment group for filtering purposes is not recommended. You should create separate tag groups instead.

7. Close all dialog windows with **OK** and save the configuration to your device.

From now on the WLC gives the tags in the edited WLAN profile to those APs that received it.

13.5 Access point administration

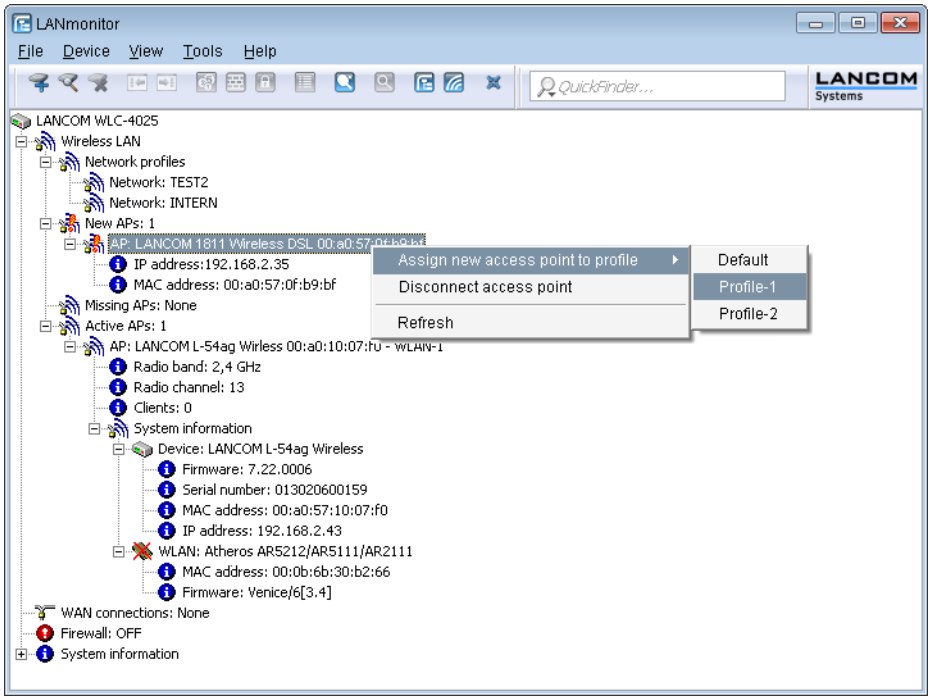
13.5.1 Accepting new access points into the WLAN infrastructure manually

If you prefer not to accept APs into the WLAN infrastructure automatically, you can also manually accept APs.

Using LANmonitor to accept access points

It is very easy to accept new APs with LANmonitor. A configuration is selected that will be assigned to the AP after transmission of a new certificate.

In LANmonitor, click on the new AP with the right-hand mouse key. From the context menu that pops up, you select the configuration which is to be assigned to the device.



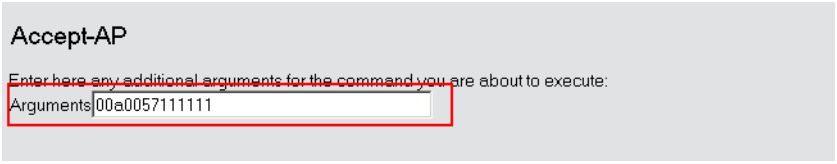
Assignment of the configuration causes the AP to be entered into the AP table in the WLC. It takes a few seconds for the WLC to assign a certificate to the AP and for this to become an active element in the central WLAN infrastructure. Due to this, the newly accepted AP is briefly signaled as a "Lost AP" by the red Lost AP LED, in the device's display, and in LANmonitor until assignment of the certificate is completed.

Accepting access points via WEBconfig with provision of a certificate

New APs that do not have a valid certificate but do have an entry in the AP table can be manually accepted with WEBconfig.

1. Open the WLC configuration with WEBconfig.
2. Under **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** select the action **Accept AP**.

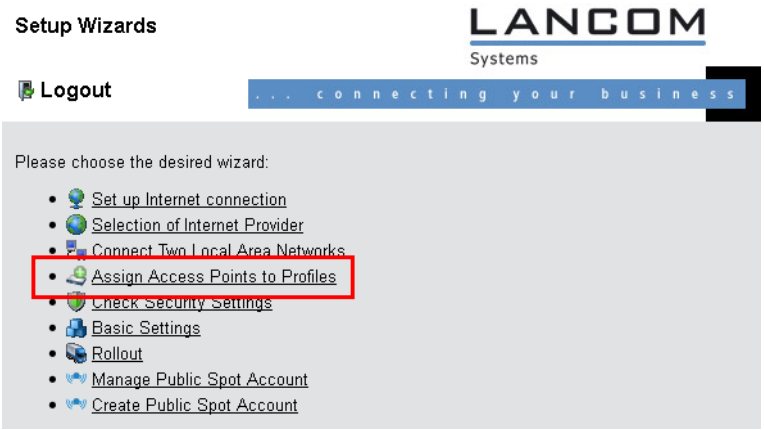
3. When requested for additional arguments, enter the MAC address of the AP to be accepted and confirm with **Execute**.



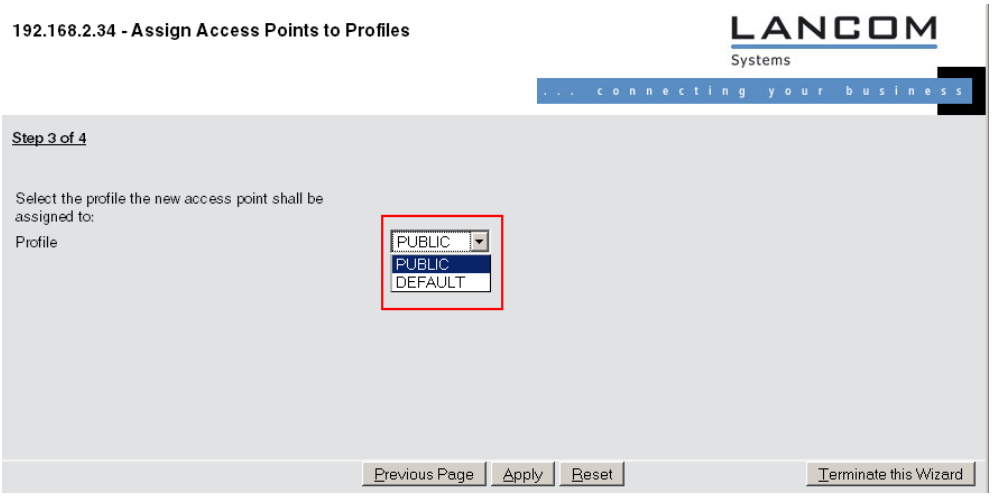
Accepting access points via WEBconfig with provision of a certificate and configuration

New APs that do not have a valid certificate and do not have an entry in the AP table can be manually accepted by means of a wizard in WEBconfig. A configuration is selected that will be assigned to the AP after transmission of a new certificate.

1. Open the WLC configuration with WEBconfig. Click on **Setup Wizards** and select the wizard **Assign access points to profiles**.



2. Click on the link to start the wizard. Select the desired AP by means of its MAC address and choose the WLAN configuration that is to be assigned to it.

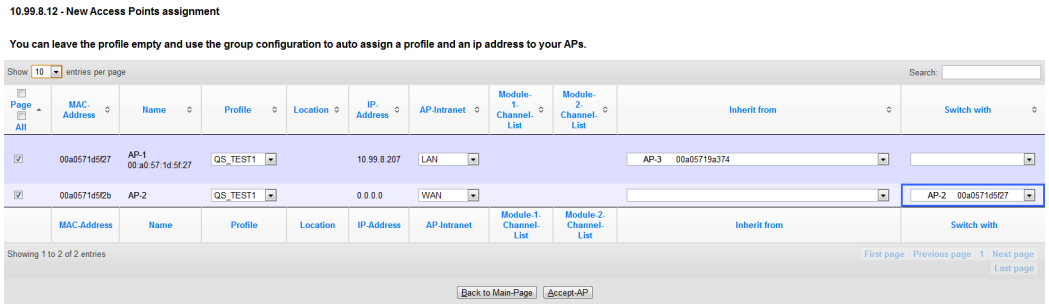


Assignment of the configuration causes the AP to be entered into the AP table in the WLAN controller. It takes a few seconds for the WLC to assign a certificate to the AP and for this to become an active element in the central WLAN infrastructure. Due to this, the newly accepted AP is briefly signaled as a "Lost AP" by the red "Lost AP" LED, in the device's display, and in LANmonitor until assignment of the certificate is completed.

Adding new APs with the WEBconfig Setup Wizard

As of LCOS 9.00, WLCs have a revised Setup Wizard **Assign Access Points to Profiles**, which makes it easier to add new APs via WEBconfig. Just a few mouse clicks with the new Setup Wizard allows you to

- Make a targeted search for a new AP;
- Accept one or more new APs at the same time;
- Assign a WLAN profile or a channel list to a new AP;
- Allow a new AP to inherit the configuration from an accepted AP;
- To exchange the configuration in a new AP for that of an accepted missing AP. When exchanging a configuration, the new AP receives the complete configuration of the accepted missing AP (except for its MAC address). When the new AP has been integrated, the WLC then deletes the configuration of the accepted missing AP.



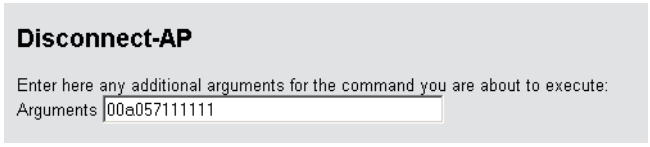
Click **Accept AP** to include the new AP with its new settings into the network.

If you have allowed an AP to be configured via assignment groups, there is no need for any further settings for this AP in the Setup Wizard. The WLC automatically assigns the settings for the appropriate groups to the AP.

13.5.2 Manually removing access points from the WLAN infrastructure

The following actions are required to remove an AP under management of the WLC from the WLAN infrastructure:

1. In the AP, switch the WLAN operating mode of the WLAN module from 'Managed' to 'Client' or 'Access Point'.
2. In the WLAN controller, delete the configuration for the AP and/or deactivate **Automatically provide APs with a default configuration** via **LCOS Menu Tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **Autoaccept-AP**.
3. Disconnect the AP in WEBconfig by selecting **LCOS Menu Tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** and the action **Disconnect AP**, or alternatively in LANmonitor.
4. When requested for additional arguments, enter the MAC address of the AP to be disconnected and confirm with **Execute**.



13.5.3 Deactivating access points or permanently removing them from the WLAN infrastructure

Occasionally it is necessary to temporarily deactivate or even permanently remove a WLC-managed AP.

Deactivating an access point

To deactivate an AP, set its corresponding entry in the AP table to 'inactive' or delete the entry from the table. In the AP, the WLAN modules in managed mode are switched off and the corresponding SSIDs are deleted.

The WLAN modules and the WLAN networks (SSIDs) are still switched off even if standalone operation is activated.

An AP deactivated in this way remains connected to the WLC and the certificates are retained. The WLC can reactivate the AP and its managed-mode WLAN modules at any time simply by activating the entry in the AP table or by making a new entry in the AP table along with the appropriate MAC address.

If the connection to a deactivated AP is broken (either unintentionally due to a failure or intentionally by the administrator) then the AP begins a new search for a suitable WLC. Although the former WLC can check the validity of the certificate, due to the fact that there is no (active) entry in the AP table the AP treats it as a secondary WLC. If the AP finds a primary WLC then it will register with it.

Permanently removing an access point from the WLAN infrastructure

In order to permanently remove an AP from a centrally managed WLAN infrastructure, the certificates in the SCEP client have to be either deleted or revoked.

- If you have access to the AP, the certificates are quickly deleted by resetting the device.
- If the device has been stolen and consequently needs to be removed from the WLAN infrastructure, then the certificates in the WLC's CA have to be revoked. This is done in WEBconfig by navigating to **LCOSmenu tree** > **Status** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** > **Certificates** and accessing the **Certificate status table**. Here you delete the certificate for the MAC address of the APs which are to be removed from the WLAN infrastructure. The certificates are not actually deleted, but they are marked as expired.

In case of a backup solution featuring redundant WLCs, the certificates have to be revoked in all of the WLCs!

13.6 AutoWDS – wireless integration of APs via P2P connections

In a centrally managed WLAN network, access points (APs) are typically connected to the WLAN controller (WLC) via the LAN. The LAN connections simultaneously determine the topology of the managed network. Network extension by means of additional APs is restricted to the reach of the hard-wired network architecture and requires the extension of the corresponding infrastructure.

By means of **AutoWDS**, you have the option of extending a WLAN by means of point-to-point (P2P) connections for the cost-effective and fast installation of highly scalable networks. "AutoWDS" stands for "automatic wireless distribution system". This feature enables you to create a radio network from several APs, which are interconnected via wireless only: a logical connection is all you need. Potential applications include the seamless connection of smaller properties or even entire districts to the Internet, or the establishment of a company network where connections via LAN are impracticable.

In the simplest case, all you need is a WLC connected via LAN to an AutoWDS-enabled AP. The AP supports the managed network and at the same time acts as an "anchor AP". Using this anchor AP, unassociated AutoWDS-enabled APs connect to the WLC, which transmits a configuration to them by means of CAPWAP. After obtaining the configuration and being incorporated into the managed WLAN, the individual APs use P2P links to forward user data, to communicate with one another, and to support the topology. Additional APs that join later are able to use the associated APs as their anchor APs. In this manner, several APs can be chained together to establish meshed networks, which can optionally feature

redundant connections via RSTP. From the perspective of an unassociated AP, associated APs are master APs. From the perspective of the master AP, unassociated APs are slave APs.

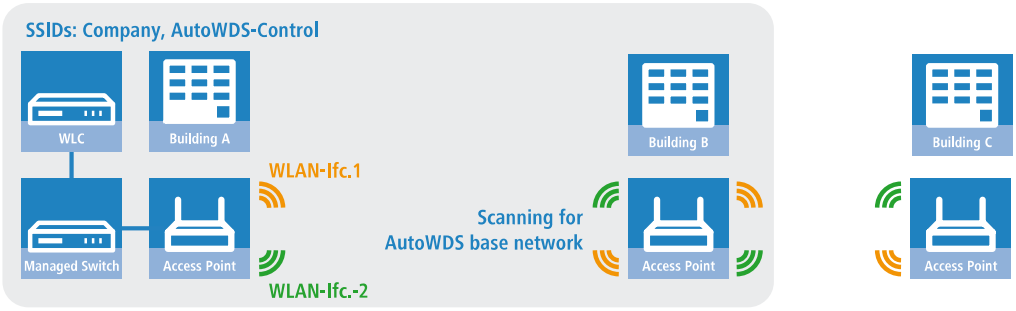


Figure 10: Phase 1 – unassociated AP in building B seeks AutoWDS base network and finds anchor AP in building A

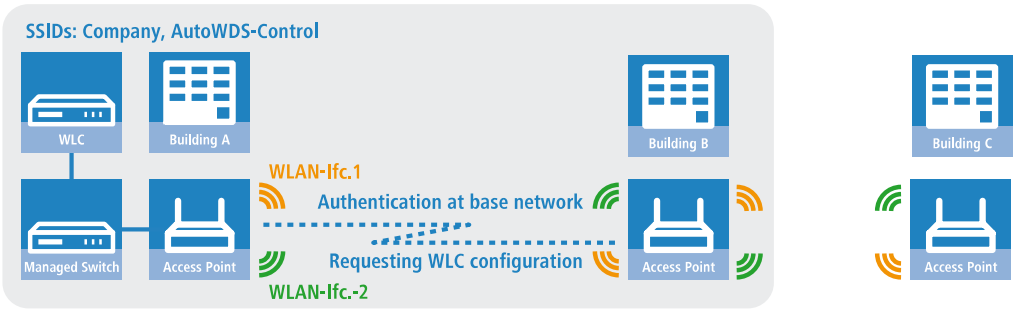


Figure 11: Phase 2 – unassociated AP in building B finds WLC and retrieves AP configuration via CAPWAP

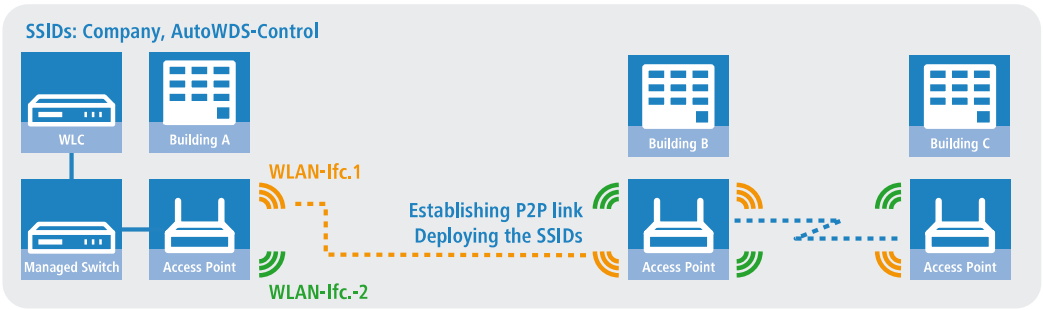


Figure 12: Phase 3 – unassociated AP in building B joins the managed WLAN. Unassociated AP in building C seeks AutoWDS base network and finds anchor AP in building B

Precise information about the integration process and the operating modes for topology management can be found in the following sections, which describe how AutoWDS functions.

AutoWDS is suitable for static infrastructure only, not for mobile APs. If an AP should move out of range of its P2P partner and lose the connection to the network, there is a temporary downtime and a subsequent *reconfiguration*. However, the roaming of WLAN clients between individual AutoWDS APs is no different than the roaming between conventional APs.

AutoWDS does not support the network separation of SSIDs to VLANs by means of a static configuration or a dynamic VLAN assignment via RADIUS. Implementing a network separation of SSIDs requires these to be separated by means of layer-3 tunnels.

The DFS processing by an AP in 5-GHz operation is unaffected by AutoWDS and has a higher priority. DFS radar recognition may cause the AP to suddenly change the channel during operation. It can even completely deactivate the WLAN for a period if radar recognition is running on different channels and the available frequencies drop

out. The impacted AP can cause interference to the entire AutoWDS group, and may not be able to deploy any SSIDs for some time. Within buildings you have the option of counteracting interference by enabling the indoor mode.

If you operate AutoWDS on a device with a single physical WLAN interface, its data rate will be reduced to just a third, since the device must send incoming/outgoing data multiple times: To the WLAN clients, to a master AP and, if applicable, to a slave AP. This effect is mitigated by operating only devices that have multiple WLAN physical interfaces and using these to divide up the data traffic. You do this by reserving one physical WLAN interface for connecting the APs and one physical WLAN interface for connecting the clients.

MultiHop on the same WLAN interface can be enabled in the AutoWDS profile configuration, if necessary. This is disabled by default due to the associated loss of performance.

13.6.1 Notes on operating AutoWDS

Owing to technical restrictions, the applications of AutoWDS are limited to certain specific application scenarios. Please carefully observe the general remarks in this chapter to avoid possible complications. The items listed here are intended to supplement the remarks elsewhere in the AutoWDS chapter, so some redundancies are possible.

- APs must switch channels when radar is detected (5-GHz band, outdoor and DFS). This can potentially lead to temporary interruptions to the WLAN due to necessary changes of channel.
- In general, we recommend a maximum of 3 hops for AutoWDS operations.
- When operating AutoWDS on one radio channel only, problems with multiple transfers and hidden stations can occur. For this reason we recommend the use of APs with two physical WLAN interfaces (dual radio) operating on separate radio channels.
- AutoWDS does not support the network separation of SSIDs to VLANs by means of a static configuration or a dynamic VLAN assignment via RADIUS. Implementing a network separation of SSIDs requires these to be separated by means of layer-3 tunnels.

If you are operating DFS in combination with AutoWDS, you should set the continuation time for autonomous operation of the AutoWDS profile to at least 2 minutes. After the downtime of a P2P connection, this extra minute allows for the one-minute DFS scan, after which the CAPWAP layer restores the CAPWAP connection to the WLC via the P2P connection.

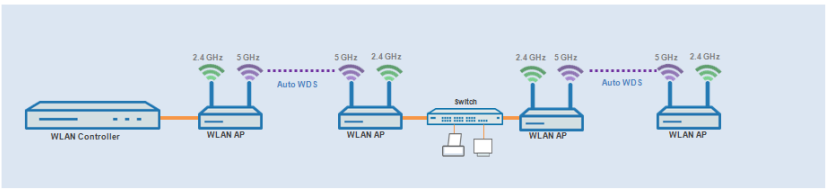
If possible, ensure that all APs on each physical WLAN interface (WLAN-1, WLAN-2) consistently use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz) to exclude any potential problems with the automatic topology configuration.

The following is a overview of the **suitability of AutoWDS** for certain application scenarios.

Suitable:

Use of a **dedicated** physical WLAN interface for the P2P links.

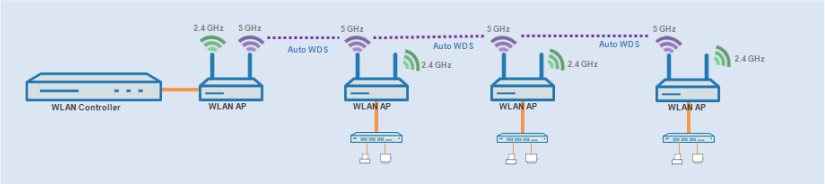
- Use of different channels for the P2P links (indoor)
- Use of AutoWDS with up to 3 hops



Partly suitable:

Use of single physical WLAN interface **simultaneously** for the AutoWDS uplink and downlink (repeater mode) where all P2P links operate on the same radio channel.

- Use for operation without DFS (indoor)
- Use of AutoWDS with up to 3 hops



Difficulties can arise from the hidden station problem or throughput loss due to multiple transmissions.

- **Hidden station problem**: Over larger distances, widely separated APs on the same network may not be able to "see" each other. In this case, several APs could end up transmitting simultaneously to cause interference for the APs between them. These collisions lead to multiple transmissions and performance losses.

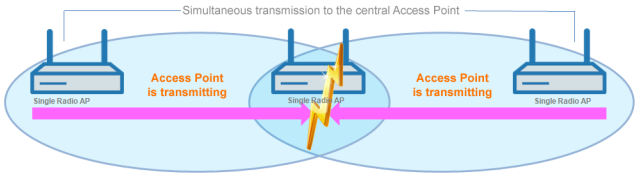


Figure 13: Simultaneous transmissions to the middle AP: The two outer APs are unaware of the collision.

- **Throughput-loss due to multiple transmissions**: An AP transmitting data packets multiple times on the same channel leads to a reduction of the maximum available throughput (by half per hop).

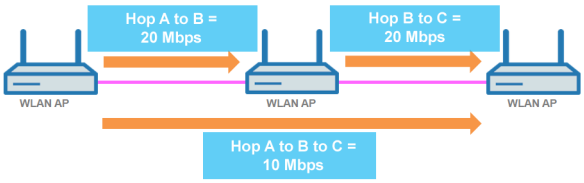
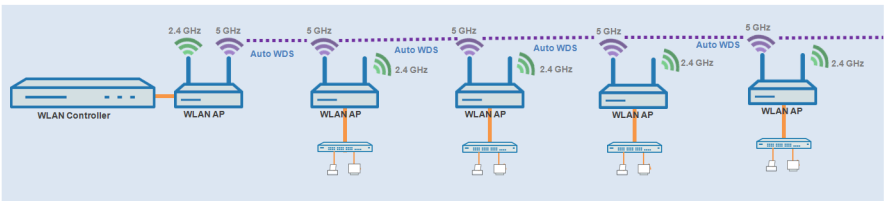


Figure 14: Transmission of data packets on every hop

Unsuitable:

Use of a physical WLAN interface **simultaneously** for AutoWDS uplink and downlink (repeater mode) during outdoor operations with more than one hop in the 5-GHz band.



In repeater mode, the physical WLAN interface has a dual role: In the direction of the WLC the interface operates as a master, while in the direction of neighboring APs it operates as a slave. For this purpose, all APs necessarily operate on the same radio channel. However, if the DFS feature detects signals, the APs are required to stop transmitting on the affected frequencies. This means that the APs cannot inform the WLC about the DFS event and the WLC cannot initiate a change of frequency for the network. As a result, the affected APs are potentially permanently separated from the network.

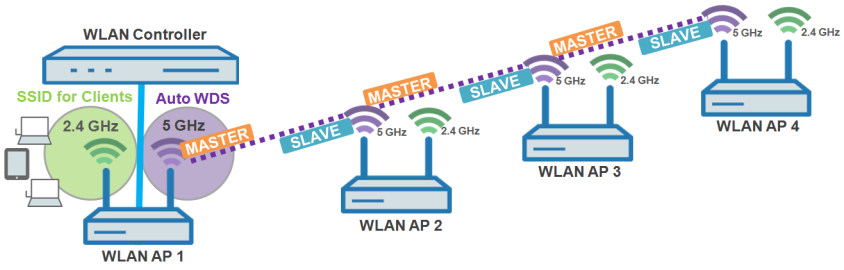


Figure 15: Connection lock after DFS detection

13.6.2 How it works

Deploying the AutoWDS base network

AutoWDS provides different integration modes for managing P2P links for meshed networks. The majority of the configuration is performed on the WLC which manages the individual logical WLAN networks. You link an active AutoWDS profile with an established WLAN profile of your managed wireless network. The AutoWDS profile groups the settings and limits to form the P2P topology and of the AutoWDS base network.

The AutoWDS base network and its associated SSID (default name: **AutoWDS-Rollout**) is a management network only. It serves two purposes: The first is to authenticate an AP during the preconfigured integration, and the second is to establish the WLC tunnel for configuration exchange. In this way, unassociated APs remain isolated from operations while they are being integrated into the managed WLAN. As soon as there is a P2P connection to a master AP, an unassociated AP is considered to be integrated and it processes further communications via the bridge on Layer 2. Similar to conventional P2P links, the P2P partners set up a management SSID, which they use to process the data traffic and the CAPWAP tunnel to the WLC (see *Updating the AP configuration and establishing the P2P link* on page 1051).

The AutoWDS base network cannot be used by other WLAN clients such as smartphones, laptops, etc. These devices require their own SSID within the WLAN infrastructure.

After assigning an active AutoWDS profile to your managed WLAN, the corresponding anchor APs deploy the AutoWDS base network and transmit their beacons (assuming you have enabled 'SSID broadcast' in the AutoWDS profile) with an additional manufacturer-dependent identifier. This identifier, also known as an "AutoWDSInfoFlag", signals the general support of the feature to unassociated AutoWDS-capable APs and informs them...

- whether AutoWDS is enabled/disabled for the detected SSID;
- whether the AP of the corresponding SSID has an enabled/disabled WLC connection;
- whether the WLC accepts or prohibits the express mode for unassociated APs; and
- whether integration requires the APs to connect to the equivalent physical WLAN interface of the anchor AP (strict interface pairing, i.e. with WLAN-1 to WLAN-1 and with WLAN-2 to WLAN-2), or whether mixed interface pairs are allowed.

A managed AP will automatically work as an AutoWDS AP after it has been initially paired with a WLC via LAN cable and a valid certificate and an AutoWDS profile with the additional AP configuration has been transferred correctly. A configured AutoWDS AP will automatically function as an unassociated AP after it has failed to establish a CAPWAP connection to a WLC after a predefined time, for example if there is no wired LAN connection. This access point then temporarily switches its operating mode to **Client** mode and scans each WLAN until it detects a suitable anchor AP. The scan is carried out in the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz frequency bands.

If your device has two physical WLAN interfaces and both are enabled, both WLAN interfaces simultaneously scan for a suitable AutoWDS base network. If a physical WLAN interface detects a suitable SSID, then it associates with the anchor AP, assuming that the interface pairing mentioned above permits this. The other physical WLAN interface continues to scan in case the already associated physical WLAN interface loses the connection again. Until then, this physical WLAN interface does not connect to any other AutoWDS base network. Once your device has received the WLC configuration, the two physical WALN interfaces behave as specified in the profile, i.e. they deploy the SSIDs assigned to them and the AutoWDS base network.

The procedure for searching for an AutoWDS base network is identical with that of the reconfiguration in the case that the WLAN connection is lost (see *Connectivity loss and reconfiguration* on page 1052).

Differences between the integration modes

When integrating unassociated APs into your managed WLAN, you have the choice of two different integration modes. The integration mode determines the conditions under which your WLC accepts an unassociated AP:

- **Preconfigured integration** is the controlled and preferred method to integrate an unassociated AP into a managed WLAN over a point-to-point link. In this mode, the WLC only allows the integration of APs that have a local, preconfigured SSID and a valid WPA2 passphrase for the AutoWDS base network.

  This mode is suitable for all productive environments, and is used to create a predefined relationship between an unassociated AP and an AutoWDS base network. As soon as the AP obtains a configuration from the WLC, the AP gives this configuration a higher priority than its own local AutoWDS configuration. This remains so until the WLC revokes the configuration via CAPWAP or you reset the device.

- **Express integration** is the quick way to integrate an unassociated AP into a managed WLAN via a point-to-point link. In this mode, the WLC allows both the integration of preconfigured devices as well as devices that are not configured at all. Unconfigured APs have neither a registered SSID nor an individual WPA2 passphrase for the AutoWDS base network. Instead, APs can authenticate with any AutoWDS base network by using a pre-shared key hard-coded in the firmware.

  This mode is suitable for the easy integration of new APs into a managed WLAN. The choice of AutoWDS base network is automatic and is outside your control. As soon as the corresponding APs obtain configurations from the WLC, these devices save the settings as default values until the WLC revokes the configuration via CAPWAP, the device executes the express *reconfiguration* after an interruption in the connection, or you reset the device.

  For the express integration make sure that no other AutoWDS base network is in range. Otherwise it is possible for an external WLC to take control of your AP and revoke your remote access. Having the express mode enabled increases the vulnerability to attack. For this reason it is advisable to disable the express mode if it is not absolutely necessary.

  For the security reasons name above, LANCOM recommends a preconfigured integration. Through the pairing of WLC and APs, you can further reduce the effort required for the preconfigured integration. Learn more about this in section *Accelerating preconfigured integration by pairing* on page 1057.

After successful authentication on the AutoWDS base network and retrieval of an IP address, the unassociated APs scan the network for a WLC. As soon as they have detected a WLC, they attempt to connect with it and retrieve a configuration. In LANmonitor, these APs are shown as unassociated devices. To include these in the managed WLAN, the administrator must still confirm them and assign WLAN profiles to them. Assigning profiles in this way is no different from accepting normal APs. Alternatively, assignment can be handled by the WLC if you

- set up a default WLAN profile and activate its automatic assignment; or
- enter the associated AP into the access point table and link it with a WLAN profile.

By simultaneously setting the automatic acceptance of unassociated APs by the WLC ("Auto Accept"), the integration of unassociated APs can be fully automated. However, for express integration you should ensure that you disable this setting in order to maintain a minimum level of security and hinder rogue AP intrusion.

The procedures for certificate generation, certificate checks, and the automatic acceptance or rejection of connection requests by the WLC are identical to a WLAN scenario with cable-connected APs. Refer to the section *Communication between access point and WLAN controller* on page 982 for further information on this.

Designing the topology

When the WLAN profile is assigned by the WLC, the slave APs simultaneously receive information about how their P2P links in the meshed network are to be established. The topology results directly from the hierarchy of the P2P connections established between the APs. The WLC offers the following management modes for this:

- **Automatic**: The WLC automatically generates a P2P configuration. The device ignores manually specified P2P links.
- **Semi automatic**: The WLC only generates a P2P configuration if no manual P2P configuration exists for the unassociated AP. Otherwise the WLC uses the manual configuration.
- **Manual**: The WLC does not automatically generate a P2P configuration. A manual P2P configuration is taken, if available. Otherwise, the WLC does not transmit a P2P configuration to the AP.

Normally, the WLC handles the automatic calculation of the topology, where a slave AP generally connects with the closest master AP. Calculated in real-time, the topology is recorded by the WLC in the status table **AutoWDS-Auto-Topology**. If you use semi-automatic or manual management, you define the static P2P links in the setup table **AutoWDS-Topology**. To achieve this, you specify the relationships between the individual master APs and slave APs in a similar manner to a normal P2P connection. For more on this, see the section *Manual topology management* on page 1058.

The automatic generation of a P2P configuration (e.g., for initial connection or reconnection of an AP) replaces any existing entry in the AutoWDS-Auto-Topology table.

The automatically generated topology entries are not boot-persistent. The table is emptied when the WLC is restarted.

For manual topology configuration, it is important for a configured P2P master AP within the topology to be closer to the WLC than a corresponding P2P slave AP. This is because a brief interruption to the P2P connection will cause the slave AP to scan for the master AP.

Updating the AP configuration and establishing the P2P link

If an unassociated AP has received the full WLAN profile with all its settings from the WLC via CAPWAP, as a slave it attempts to establish a P2P link to the master AP assigned to it. The AP simultaneously changes its WLAN operation mode from **Client** back to **Managed**.

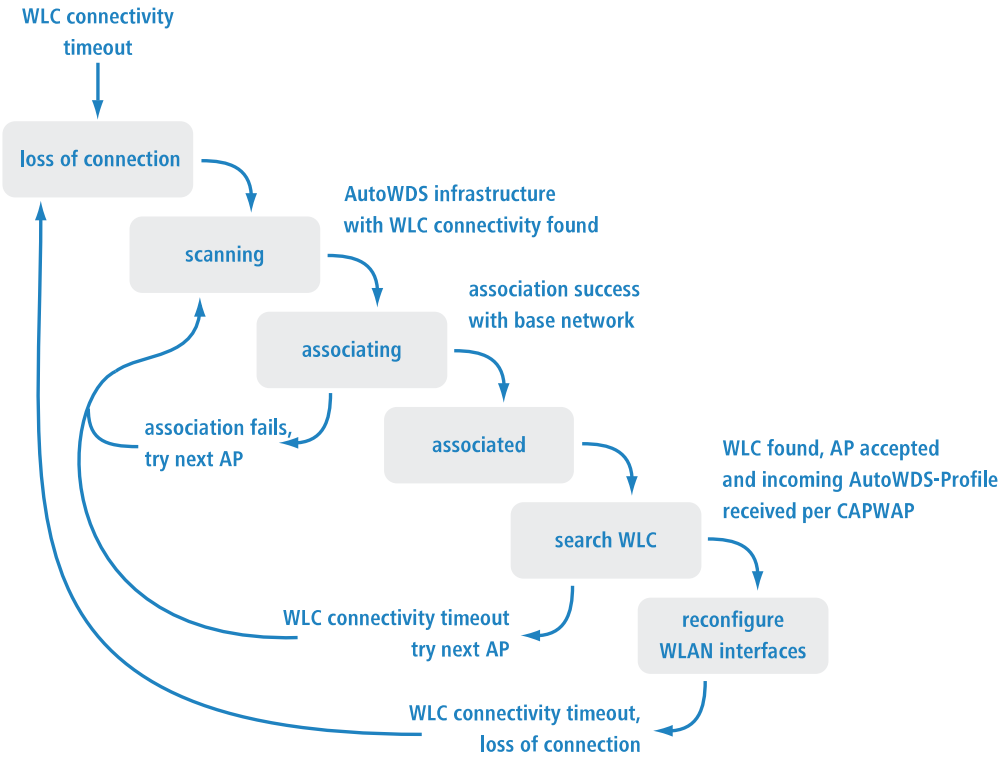
Since the master AP is already in managed mode, it obtains only an update to its P2P configuration from the WLC via CAPWAP. This informs the AP of the WPA2 passphrase and the peer identification of the AP. For an automatically generated P2P configuration, the peer identification corresponds to the MAC address; for a manual P2P configuration, it corresponds to the name of the slave AP. The master AP labels the SSIDs with ***** P2P Info *****.

Once both APs are successfully interconnected over a P2P link, the AutoWDS integration process is concluded. The unassociated AP can then be used by clients (smartphones, laptops, other APs in client mode looking for a master, etc.).

As long as the unassociated AP is in client mode, bridging between a physical WLAN interface and a LAN interface or another physical radio interface is disabled throughout the integration process. The device automatically puts all physical WLAN interfaces on different bridges. Not until successful creation of a P2P connection does the AP switch the bridging back to the original state.

Connectivity loss and reconfiguration

An automatic process of (re-)configuration is triggered as soon as you enable AutoWDS on an unassociated AP, if authentication at an anchor AP fails, or if an associated AP loses contact to the WLC. This process follows the scheme shown here:



An AP does not run the (re-)configuration process if it is in client mode and can connect to an anchor AP but not to the WLC. The AP waits for 5 minutes after connecting to the AutoWDS base network to see whether the WLC performs a configuration of the device. If no configuration is performed by the WLC by then (e.g., because no administrator accepts the AP), the AP disconnects from the AutoWDS base network and scans for further suitable SSIDs. If there is only one SSID in range, the AP contacts it again to repeat the integration process.

If there is a connection to a LAN, the AP tries to reach the WLC by broadcast over the LAN for the duration of the downtime. If the AP finds the WLC via LAN, then no new P2P link is set up and the WLC deletes all automatically generated P2P links that set the AP to be a slave.

Configuration timeouts

The initial configuration and the reconfiguration of an unassociated AP are triggered by various timeouts, which together control the behavior of the device. This includes, if specified:

1. The duration of standalone P2P-link operation if the CAPWAP connection is lost (except for reconfiguration);
2. The wait time until the start of the automatic (re-)configuration for the preconfigured integration; as well as
3. The wait time until the start of the automatic (re-)configuration for the express integration.

The continuation time refers to the lifetime of any P2P link if the AP loses the CAPWAP connection to the WLC. If the AP detects a loss of the CAPWAP connection, it attempts to reconnect within the specified continuation time. Connections to P2P partners and associated WLAN clients remain intact during these times. If the recovery fails and the continuation time expires, the AP discards the P2P part of the WLC configuration. If the standalone continuation time is specified as `0`, the AP discards this part of the configuration immediately.

Next, the device uses the remaining configuration parts—the SSID of the AutoWDS base network, the related WPA2 passphrase, and the wait times for the preconfigured and express integration—as a basis to count down the preset time

until the start of the (re-)configuration for the preconfigured integration. After this wait time expires, the device switches its physical WLAN interface(s) into client mode and scans the available SSIDs for the last detected AutoWDS base network. At the same time, the timer starts the countdown to the start of the automatic (re-)configuration for the express integration.

If the device has not found the expected AutoWDS base network when the express timer expires, the device automatically switches to express integration. It then searches for any AutoWDS-enabled network until a suitable anchor AP is detected.

By adjusting the interaction between the various wait times, you can allow the device to react flexibly to unforeseen events. This facilitates the implementation of a fallback solution, for example in the case that you change the pre-shared key for the AutoWDS base network. If the change should fail on an unassociated AP, the device becomes inaccessible as it has an invalid configuration. Please observe the notes under *Differences between the integration modes* on page 1050.

The relevant counters are configured on the AP (e.g. via LANconfig) and also on the WLC (Setup menu only). The counters are only observed by the AP if no WLC configuration (initial configuration) is available. As soon as a configuration is available, then the values specified in the AutoWDS profile apply (reconfiguration). Learn more about the setting the priorities for configurations under *Differences between the integration modes* on page 1050.

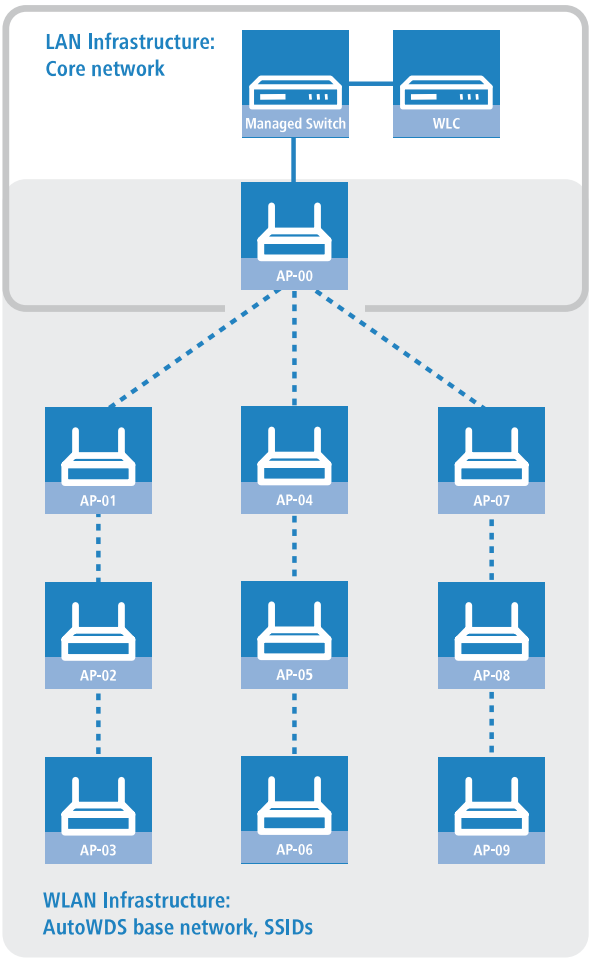
If you disable the express timer or the preconfiguration timer, the device skips the corresponding integration step. The automatic reconfiguration can be switched off by disabling both timers. This means that, after being disconnected for long enough, the device can no longer be reached by AutoWDS. However, the device remains accessible over the LAN interface and searches the LAN for a WLC.

The process of preconfigured integration does not start if the settings for the AutoWDS base network (SSID, passphrase) are incomplete or if the preconfiguration timer is set to `0`.

Example: Failure of an AP

Each AP maintains its CAPWAP connection by issuing echo requests to the WLC at a specified interval. If an AP fails or its connection is interrupted, these requests will be lost. If the APs repeat the echo request and receive no response from

the WLC, the CAPWAP connection is considered to be lost and the APs start the reconfiguration process described under *Connectivity loss and reconfiguration* on page 1052.



For the infrastructure illustrated above, a failure of AP-01 would have the following impact, assuming that automatic topology management is enabled:

1. AP-01 is defective.
2. AP-02 and AP-03 repeat their echo-requests; all repeats fail.
3. AP-02 and AP-03 start the standalone operation of their P2P link (if configured) and continue to try to reach the WLC (over wireless and LAN, assuming connectivity exists).
4. AP-02 and AP-03 stop their autonomous operation of P2P connections.
5. AP-02 and AP-03 count down the wait time until the start of the preconfigured integration.
6. After the wait time expires, AP-02 and AP-03 switch into client mode and scan the WLAN for the last known AutoWDS base network.
7. AP-02 and AP-03 find a new anchor AP (e.g. B. AP-05 or AP-06) and login as clients.
8. AP-02 and AP-03 restore the CAPWAP connection via the **WLC-TUNNEL-AUTOWDS** and inform the WLC about the new anchor AP and the physical WLAN interfaces they are using.
9. The WLC generates a P2P link for the corresponding physical WLAN interfaces and delivers the configuration to the APs by CAPWAP.
10. The APs set up the new P2P link to the master APs assigned to them and stop communicating with the WLC via the **WLC-TUNNEL-AUTOWDS**; they are bridged to the LAN instead.

13.6.3 Setup by means of preconfigured integration

The following sections show you how to set up an AutoWDS network by means of the preconfigured integration. Configuration relies on the automatic topology management of the WLC.

In this scenario, a company is expanding its business premises into a new building. The company wants to integrate the new business premises into its existing managed WLAN. The relevant APs should be connected exclusively via point-to-point link. Between building A (old) and B (new), no wired network connection can be installed.

To keep the configuration simple, a single WLC is used to configure all of the APs. The exact number of APs in building A and building B is immaterial. Particular features, such as multiple physical WLAN interfaces, are automatically taken into account by the WLC topology management.

The configuration itself is divided into two parts:

1. Configuration of the WLC in building A
2. Configuration of all APs in building B

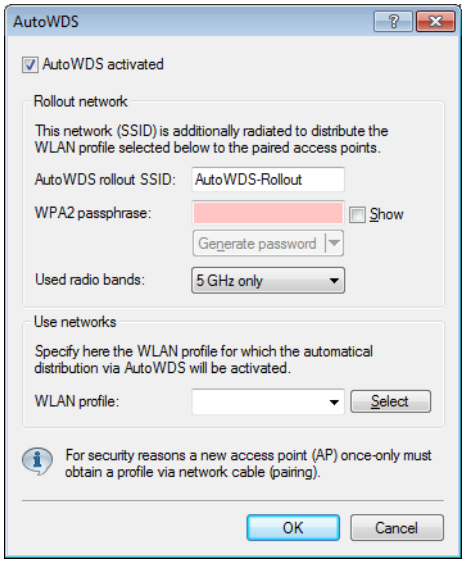
The example application requires a valid WLAN configuration with valid certificates in the WLC. Just how to set up a managed WLAN is described in the chapter on WLAN management.

Configuring the WLC

The following instructions describe how to configure the AutoWDS of a central WLC for preconfigured integration.

Ensure that the AutoWDS APs, which integrate with the network as WLAN clients, are able to reach a DHCP server via the WLC-TUNNEL-AUTOWDS interface. Without an IP address, the APs do not search for the WLC and thus do not receive a configuration from it.

1. Open the configuration dialog in LANconfig and click on **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** > **AutoWDS** to access the AutoWDS dialog.



2. Click on **AutoWDS activated** to enable the feature on the device.
3. Enter the name of the AutoWDS base network under **AutoWDS-Rollout-SSID**. By default LANconfig uses the identifier `AutoWDS-Rollout`.

   The SSID specified here acts as the management network for all APs that are searching for the AutoWDS network and, apart from the passphrase, it offers no further options for configuration. The WLC internally connects the specified SSID automatically using a WLC tunnel (**WLC-TUNNEL-AUTOWDS**). Normal WLAN clients are unable to use this management network.

In this case, enter a custom AutoWDS rollout SSID that is different from the LANconfig default.

Setting up this AutoWDS base network reduces the maximum number of SSIDs that your device can support on a physical WLAN interface by 1.

4. Under **WPA2 passphrase** you enter a key to secure the AutoWDS base network.

   Select the most complex key possible, with at least 8 and maximum 63 characters. The key requires at least 32 characters to provide encryption of suitable strength.

5. Under **Used radio bands** you specify the frequency band used by the APs for the AutoWDS base network.
6. Select the **WLAN profile** with the SSID which is to be enhanced with AutoWDS.

   The APs with this WLAN profile serve as anchor APs and support the AutoWDS base network. At the same time, associated APs receive this WLAN profile via AutoWDS as a default configuration, which they use to transmit the corresponding SSID.

7. Close the dialog window with **OK** and save the configuration to the device.

The WLC now assigns the AutoWDS settings to all managed AutoWDS-capable APs in your WLAN. These now form the basis for your AutoWDS base network. For future reconfiguration processes, the APs use only the SSID and passphrase stored here, unless configured otherwise (see *Differences between the integration modes* on page 1050).

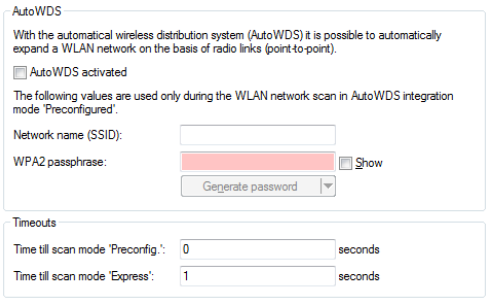
This concludes the configuration of the WLC. We now continue with the configuration of the APs.

Configuring the APs

The following instructions describe how to configure the AutoWDS of an AP for preconfigured integration. The configuration steps are identical for all unassociated APs.

There is no need to configure an AP that is already paired with a WLC. If devices are out of range of the WLC, thus making pairing impossible, then the SSID and passphrase can optionally be entered manually.

1. Open the configuration dialog in LANconfig and click on **Wireless LAN** > **AutoWDS** to access the AutoWDS dialog.



2. Click on **AutoWDS activated** to enable the feature on the device.
3. Under **Network name (SSID)** enter the name of the AutoWDS base network that you configured on the WLC (e.g. `AutoWDS-Rollout`).
4. Enter the key for the AutoWDS base network under **WPA2 passphrase** that you have configured on the WLC (e.g. AutoWDS-Control).
5. Change the timeout values for the **Time till search mode 'Preconfig'** to `1` and for the **Time until search mode 'Express'** to `0`.
6. Under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings.** make sure that at least one physical WLAN interface is in **Managed** mode.
   Otherwise the device will never search for an AutoWDS base network.
7. Close the dialog window with **OK** and save the configuration to the device.

After a successful configuration update, the AP switches its physical WLAN interface(s) into client mode and searches for the specified AutoWDS base network. To learn more about the procedure, refer to the *chapter about the function*.

13.6.4 Accelerating preconfigured integration by pairing

Through the one-time pairing of WLC and APs, you can further reduce the effort required for the preconfigured integration. For pairing, you reset an AP and connect it via LAN to the WLC used for running your managed WLAN including AutoWDS. In the reset state, the AP is automatically in managed mode after being switching on. Once the AP finds the WLC and the WLC accepts the AP, the AP automatically receives all relevant certificates and partial configurations required to configure the parameters in the device. Pairing is then complete. On location, a coworker installs the AP and switches it on. Your device then searches for the preconfigured AutoWDS base network.

The following steps summarize the pairing procedure. They also include the steps for automatic configuration assignment, which further simplifies the pairing of a high number of APs.

1. Start LANconfig and, on your WLC, set up a managed WLAN with a valid WLAN profile, if you have not already done so. In LANconfig you configure this type of profile under **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**.
2. Activate AutoWDS for this WLAN profile as described in *Configuring the WLC* on page 1055.
3. Create a profile that is valid for all APs under **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Access point table** with the button **Default**. Assign the **WLAN profile** you created earlier to this profile
4. Enable the option **Automatically provide APs with a default configuration** under **WLAN controller** > **General**.
5. **Optional:** To avoid having to manually accept unassociated APs in LANmonitor by allowing the WLC to do this automatically, you should additionally select the option **Automatically accept new APs (auto-accept)**.

   For security reasons, you should only enable this option if you have connected the unassociated APs to the WLC via a LAN interface. To exclude the possibility of rogue AP intrusion, make sure that no other devices are connected with the WLC.
6. Send the configuration to the WLC.
7. Reset the unassociated AP and connect the device to the WLC via the LAN.
   The device automatically starts to search for a WLC.
8. In LANmonitor, you accept the new AP under **Wireless LAN** > **New APs**, unless you have set up automatic acceptance. The WLC sends the device those parts of the configuration that it needs for its future operation in managed mode. After successful configuration, LANmonitor lists the device in the **Active APs**.

This completes the pairing and the AP is ready for AutoWDS operation.

13.6.5 Express integration

The following sections show you how to set up an AutoWDS network by means of the express integration. Configuration relies on the automatic topology management of the WLC.

The initial scenario is similar to the *preconfigured integration*.

By default, AutoWDS is disabled on a reset AP and you must first use a wired access to activate the feature. However, an exception is made for devices that are explicitly setup with this feature at the customer's request: In this case, AutoWDS is enabled by default. The *second part of the configuration* is eliminated and the devices in express-integration mode can be commissioned directly.

Express configuration has certain characteristics that are relevant to security. We recommend that you read the section *Differences between the integration modes* on page 1050 carefully.

Configuring the WLC

The following instructions describe how to configure the AutoWDS of a central WLC for express integration.

1. Carry out each step under *Configuring the WLC* on page 1055 for the preconfigured integration.
2. Log on to your device via WEBconfig or the console.

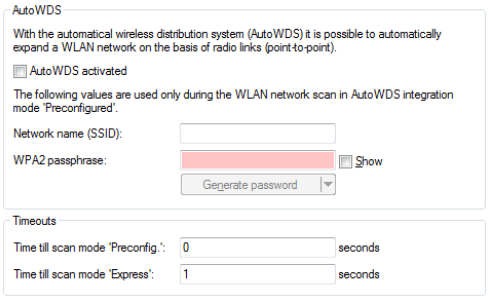
3. In the setup menu, switch to the table **WLAN Management** > **AP Configuration** > **AutoWDS Profiles**.
4. Edit the AutoWDS default profile by clicking on the entry **DEFAULT**.
5. Change the **Allow-Express-Integration** parameter to **Yes** and save the settings by clicking on **Send**.

This concludes the configuration of the WLC. We now continue with the configuration of the APs.

Configuring the APs

The following instructions describe how to configure the AutoWDS of an AP for express integration. The configuration steps are identical for all unassociated APs.

1. Open the configuration dialog in LANconfig and click on **Wireless LAN** > **AutoWDS** to access the AutoWDS dialog.



2. Click on **AutoWDS activated** to enable the feature on the device.
3. Under **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Physical WLAN settings**, make sure that at least one physical WLAN interface is in **Managed** mode.
   Otherwise the device will never search for an AutoWDS base network.
4. Close the dialog window with **OK** and save the configuration to the device.

After a successful configuration update, the AP switches its physical WLAN interface(s) into client mode and searches for any AutoWDS base network. For further information on this procedure please refer to *Deploying the AutoWDS base network* on page 1049.

13.6.6 Switching from express to preconfigured integration

Following a network rollout and the express integration, the switch to a preconfigured integration is implemented by disabling the express integration on the WLC. There is no need to change anything on the APs because they have already received an AutoWDS configuration during the express integration, and this pre-configures an AutoWDS network for subsequent re-configuration procedures.

1. Log on to your device via WEBconfig or the console.
2. In the setup menu, switch to the table **WLAN Management** > **AP Configuration** > **AutoWDS Profiles**.
3. Edit the AutoWDS default profile by clicking on the entry **DEFAULT**.
4. Change the **Allow-Express-Integration** parameter to **No** and save the settings by clicking on **Send**.

You have now disabled the express integration of further unassociated APs.

13.6.7 Manual topology management

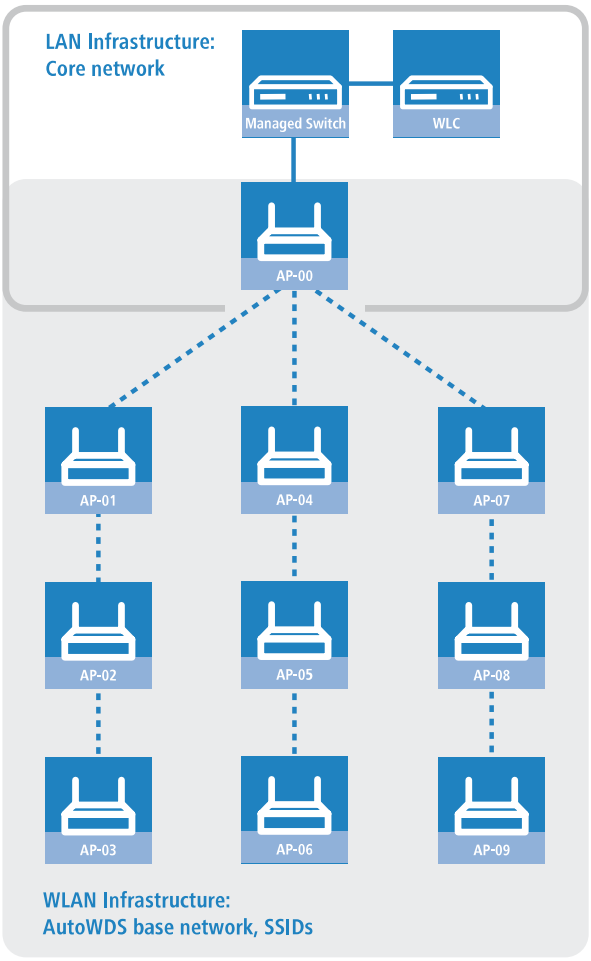
The examples of AutoWDS installation rely upon automatic topology management by the WLC, which simplifies the configuration. Depending on the usage scenario, it may be necessary to setup individual or all of the P2P links manually.

The following section shows you how to disable the automatic topology management on the WLC and create a manual P2P configuration. To configure the P2P links, you first assign unique names to each of the APs. Then link these names with the topology configuration and the physical WLAN interfaces being used. The chapter assumes that you have already performed the steps for the WLC under *Setup by means of preconfigured integration* on page 1055, so that you can complete the basic configuration and enable AutoWDS on the WLC.

In general, we recommend a maximum of 3 hops for AutoWDS operations.

Changes to the initial scenario

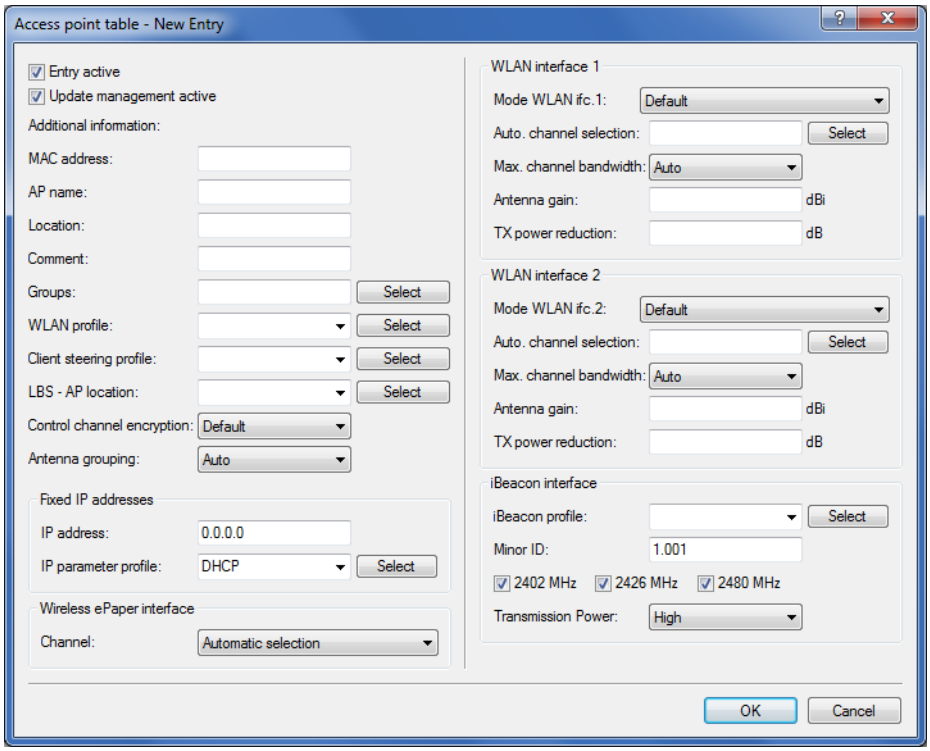
The initial scenario is similar to the preconfigured integration. The entire infrastructure is based on dual-radio APs, which are arranged according to the illustration below. The managed WLAN initially consists of a single AP, which serves as the initial anchor AP for the unassociated APs.



Configuring the WLC

The following instructions describe how to disable the automatic topology management and the configuration of manual P2P links according to the scenario described under *Manual topology management* on page 1058.

1. Open the configuration dialog in LANconfig and click on **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Access point table** to access the list of managed access points.



2. For each unassociated AP, enter the **MAC address** and a unique identifier under **AP name**. You will reference this name later in the topology configuration.

   For the example scenario, the individual configuration entries are as follows:

Table 25: Configuring the unassociated APs in the access point table

Entry	MAC address	AP name
01	00-80-63-a6-3d-f0	AP-00
02	00-a0-57-99-c6-4f	AP-01
03	00-80-63-b1-df-87	AP-02
04	00-a0-57-12-a8-01	AP-03
05	00-80-63-d9-ae-22	AP-04
06	00-a0-57-60-c4-3d	AP-05
07	00-a0-57-24-d4-1b	AP-06
08	00-80-63-a8-b1-37	AP-07
09	00-80-63-b1-df-99	AP-08
10	00-a0-57-33-e1-05	AP-09

The table entry AP-00 refers to your existing AP, which the unassociated APs use as an anchor AP.

3. Select the **WLAN profile** for which you have enabled AutoWDS.
   By means of the corresponding WLAN profile, the APs automatically receive the settings for AutoWDS and hence for the P2P configuration.

4. Close the dialog window with **OK** and save the configuration to the device.
5. Log on to your device via WEBconfig or the console.
6. In the setup menu, switch to the table **WLAN Management** > **AP Configuration** > **AutoWDS Profiles**.
7. Edit the AutoWDS default profile by clicking on the entry **DEFAULT**.
8. Change the **Topology-Management** parameter to **Manual** and save the settings by clicking on **Send**.
9. Navigate to the table **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Configuration** > **AutoWDS-Topology** and click on **Add**.
10. For each P2P pair, create a manual P2P configuration. The specified P2P link is always considered from the perspective of the slave AP.
    a) In the field **AutoWDS-Profile**, specify the AutoWDS profile that applies for the manual P2P configuration, for example `DEFAULT`.
    b) Set the **Priority** of the P2P configuration to `0` (highest priority).
    c) For the **Slave-AP-Name** and **Master-AP-Name**, enter the names of the APs according to your hierarchy.

       For the example scenario, the individual configuration entries in the case of strict interface pairing are as follows:

       Table 26: Configuring the P2P pairs in the AutoWDS-topology table

Entry	Slave-AP-Name	Slave-AP-WLAN-Ifc.	Master-AP-Name	Master-AP-WLAN-Ifc.
01	AP-01	WLAN-1	AP-00	WLAN-1
02	AP-02	WLAN-2	AP-01	WLAN-2
03	AP-03	WLAN-1	AP-02	WLAN-1
04	AP-04	WLAN-2	AP-00	WLAN-2
05	AP-05	WLAN-1	AP-04	WLAN-1
06	AP-06	WLAN-2	AP-05	WLAN-2
07	AP-07	WLAN-1	AP-00	WLAN-1
08	AP-08	WLAN-2	AP-07	WLAN-2
09	AP-09	WLAN-1	AP-08	WLAN-1

    d) Under **Key** specify the WPA2 passphrase used by the P2P partners to encrypt the P2P link.

       Select the most complex key possible, with at least 8 and maximum 63 characters. The key requires at least 32 characters to provide encryption of suitable strength. If you leave the field empty, the device automatically generates a passphrase with a length of 32 characters.
    e) Switch the entry **Enabled** to **Yes**.
    f) Save the entries by clicking on **Send**.

If APs were already connected, the WLC sends the new configuration to these APs, which triggers the reconfiguration procedure for each one. If no APs were connected, the WLC transmits the P2P configuration when the unassociated APs connect for the first time.

13.6.8 Redundant paths by means of RSTP

In combination with the rapid spanning tree protocol (RSTP), manual topology management allows you to set up redundant P2P links to improve the failover reliability of your entire AutoWDS base network. To do this, you must first enable RSTP in the Setup menu of each AP, because the WLC management settings do not include this part of the configuration. You can reduce the work involved by transmitting a script to all of the APs by means of the WLC script management.

The following steps show you how to do this. These steps assume that you have successfully set up an AutoWDS base network. After activation, RSTP automatically performs the path search.

1. Create a text file with the name `WLC_Script_1.lcs`.

2. Copy the following lines of code into the text file and save it.

```
# Script (9.000.0000 / 15.07.2014)

lang English
flash No

set /Setup/LAN-Bridge/Spanning-Tree/Protocol-Version        Rapid
set /Setup/LAN-Bridge/Spanning-Tree/Path-Cost-Computation   Rapid
set /Setup/LAN-Bridge/Spanning-Tree/Operating               yes

flash Yes

# done
exit
```

3. Login to the WEBconfig interface of your WLC and navigate to **File management** > **Upload certificate or file**.
4. In the **File type** selection list, select **CAPWAP - WLC_Script_1.lcs** and use the **Browse** button to locate your script file. Then click on **Start upload**.
   You can check if the file was successfully uploaded to the WLC in the Status menu under **File system** > **Contents**.
5. Navigate to the Setup menu item **WLAN management** > **Central firmware management** > **Script management** and click on **Add**.
6. For the **Profile** enter the corresponding WLAN profile and under **Name** enter `WLC_Script_1.lcs` in order to link the AutoWDS profile with the script name and to roll it out to the APs.
7. As described in section *Configuring the WLC* on page 1059, assign unique names to the APs in the WLC and set up the manual P2P links.

You have now successfully completed the configuration.

13.7 Central firmware and script management

WLCs allow the configurations of multiple LANCOM WLAN routers and APs to be managed from a central location in a consistent and convenient manner. With central firmware and script management, uploads of firmware and scripts can be automated for all of the WLAN devices.

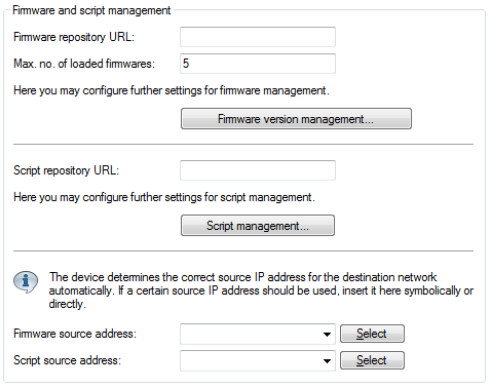
To achieve this, the firmware and script files are stored on a Web server (firmware as *.upx files, scripts and *.lcs files). The WLC checks once daily, or when prompted by a user, to compare the available files with those on the devices. Alternatively, this procedure can be handled by a cron job—overnight, for example. If an update can be carried out, or if the AP is not running the desired firmware version, then the WLC downloads the file from the Web server and uploads it to the appropriate WLAN routers and APs.

The configuration of firmware and script management provides precise control over the distribution of the files. It is possible, for example, to limit certain firmware versions to certain device types or MAC addresses.

An update can be carried out in two possible states:

- When a connection is established; the AP subsequently restarts automatically.
- If the AP is already connected, the device does not restart automatically. In this case the AP is manually restarted with the menu action **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **Central-Firmware-Management** > **Reboot-updated-APs** or by a timed cron job.

- The action **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **Central-Firmware-Management** > **Update-Firmware-and-Script-Information** updates the script and firmware directories.



The parameters for configuration can be found under the following paths:

LANconfig: **WLAN controller** > **AP update**

WEBconfig: **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **Central-Firmware-Management**

13.7.1 General settings for firmware management

- **Firmware-URL**

  The path to the directory with the firmware files.

  - Possible values: URL in the form `Server/Directory` or `http://Server/Directory`
  - Default: Blank

  Note that the Web server specified must permit directory listing. The firmware management uses this to retrieve information about the available firmware.

- **Simultaneously loaded FW**

  The number of firmware versions loaded simultaneously into the main memory of the WLC.

  The firmware versions stored here are downloaded from the server just once and then used for all update processes.

  - Possible values: 1 to 10
  - Default: 5

- **Firmware loopback address**

  Here you have the option to configure a sender address for the device to use in place of the one that would otherwise be used automatically for this target address.

  Possible values:

  - Name of a defined IP network.
  - 'INT' for the IP address in the first network with the setting 'Intranet'.
  - 'DMZ' for the IP address in the first network with the setting 'DMZ'.
  - Name of a loopback address.
  - Any other IP address.

  Default:

  - Blank

If the list of IP networks or loopback addresses contains an entry named 'INT' or 'DMZ', the associated IP address of the IP network or the loopback address named 'INT' or 'DMZ' is used.

Firmware management table

This table is used to store information about which firmware versions are to be operated with which devices (MAC address) and device types.

Device types

Select here the type of device that the firmware version specified here is to be used for.

- Possible values: All or a selection from the list of available devices.
- Default: All

MAC address

Select here the device (identified by its MAC address) that the firmware version specified here is to be used for.

- Possible values: Valid MAC address
- Default: Blank

Version

Firmware version that is to be used for the devices or device types specified here.

- Possible values: Firmware version in the form `X.XX`
- Default: Blank

Date

The date allows you to downgrade to a specific firmware version within a release, for example from a Release Upgrade (RU) on an earlier upgrade.

- Possible values: 8 characters from 0123456789. The entry must match the format of the UPX header, e.g. "01092014" for the September 01, 2014.
- Default: Blank

General settings for script management

- **Script URL**

  The path to the directory with the script files.

  Possible values:

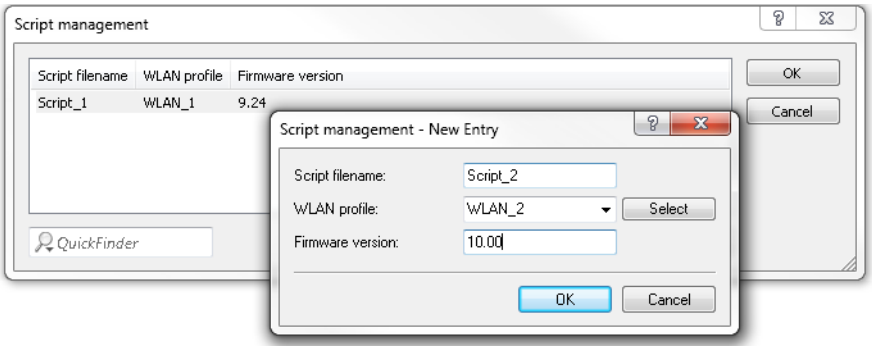
  - URL in the form `Server/Directory` or `http://Server/Directory`
  - Default: Blank

Script management table

In this table, scripts are assigned to a WLAN profile depending on the name of the script file.

Configuring a WLAN router and AP in the Managed mode is handled via WLAN profiles. A script can be used for setting those detailed parameters in managed devices that are not handled by the pre-defined parameters in a WLAN profile. Distribution is also handled by WLAN profiles to ensure that the wireless routers and APs with the same WLC configuration also use the same script.

As only one script file can be defined per WLAN profile, versioning is not possible here. However, when distributing a script to a wireless router or AP, an MD5 checksum of the script file is saved. This checksum allows the WLC to determine whether the script file has to be transmitted again in case a new or altered script has the same file name.



- **Script file name**

  Name of the script file to be used.

  - Possible values: File name in the form *.lcs
  - Default: Blank

- **WLAN profile**

  Select here the WLAN profile that the script file specified here should be used for.

  - Possible values: Selection from the list of defined WLAN profiles.
  - Default: Blank

- **Firmware version**

  By specifying a firmware version, you determine the LCOS version set in the script that is rolled out.

  Please enter the firmware version in the form **xx.yy**, e.g. 10.00 or 9.24.

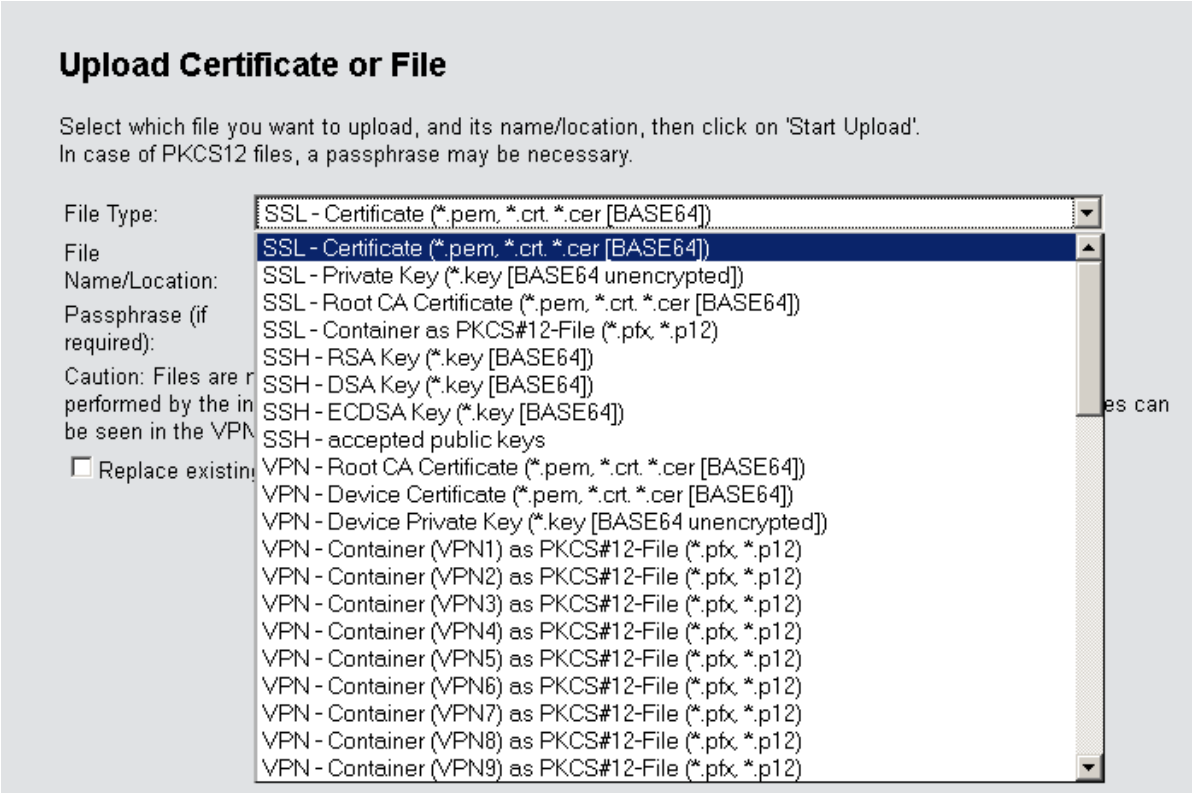
Internal script storage (script management without HTTP server)

In contrast to firmware files, script files are very small. The WLC's internal script storage allows the storage of up to three scripts of up to 64KB each. If script requirements do not exceed this volume, an HTTP server does not need to be configured for this purpose.

Script files are simply loaded from the designated storage location using WEBconfig. After upload, the list of available scripts must be updated with **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **Central-Firmware-Management** > **Update Firmware and Script Information**.

The internal scripts can be referenced from the script management table using the relevant names (WLC_Script_1.lcs, WLC_Script_2.lcs or WLC_Script_3.lcs).

Please be careful with upper and lower case letters when entering script names.

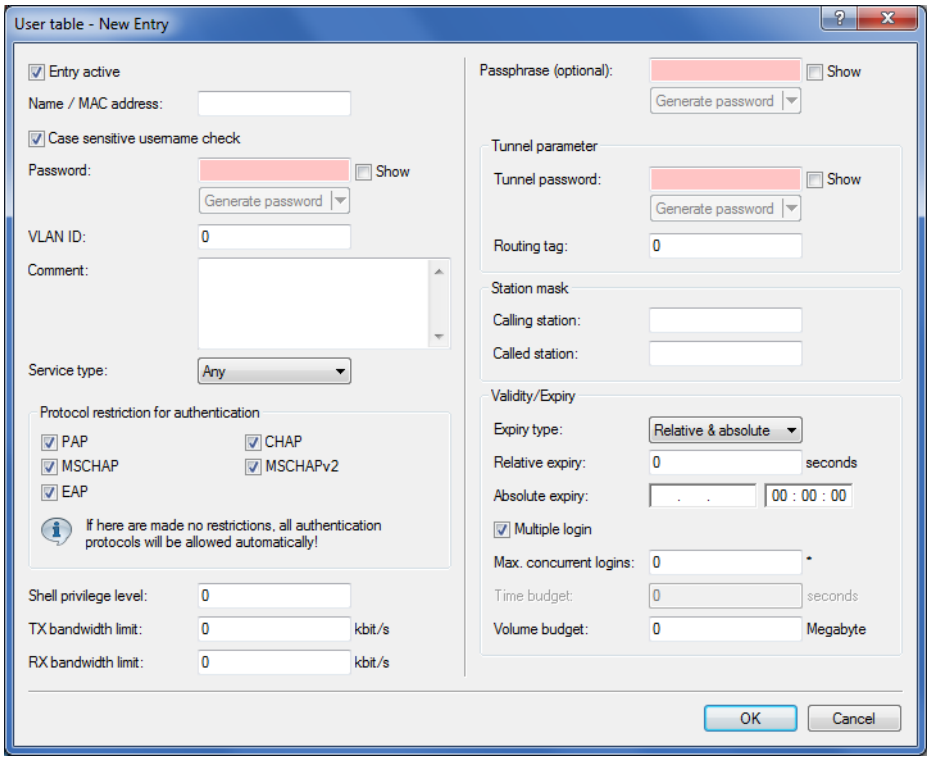


13.8 RADIUS

13.8.1 Checking WLAN clients with RADIUS (MAC filter)

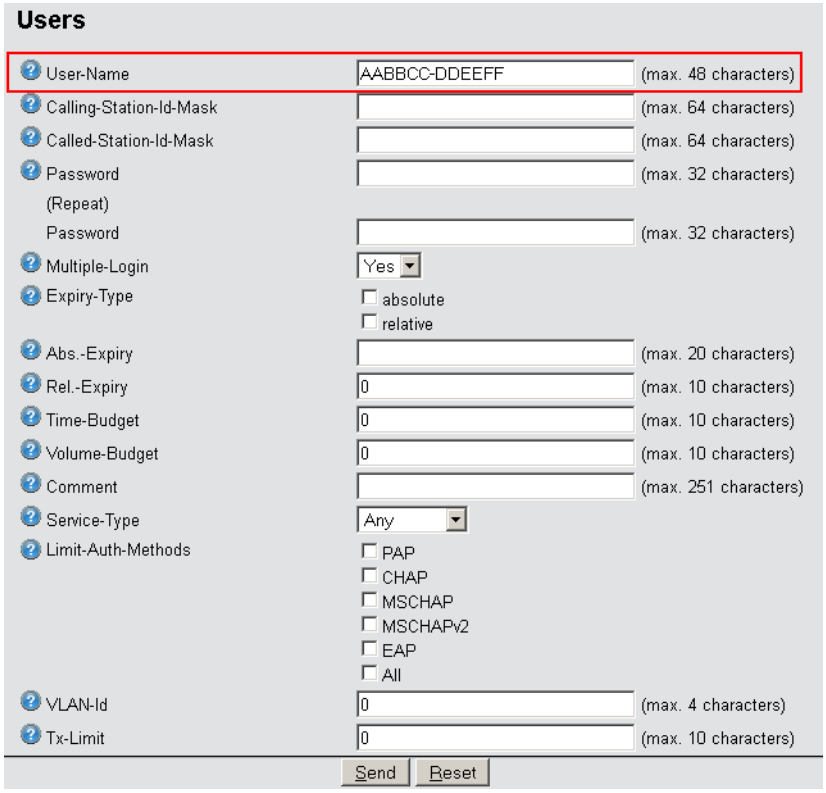
To use RADIUS to authenticate WLAN clients and grant them WLAN access based on their MAC address, an external RADIUS server can be used, as can the internal user table in the WLC.

In LANconfig enter the approved MAC addresses into the RADIUS database in the configuration section **RADIUS** > **Server** on the **General** tab. Enter the MAC address as **Name** and as **Password** and select the authentication method **All**.



Alternatively, the approved MAC addresses can be entered in WEBconfig under **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **RADIUS** > **Server** > **Users**.

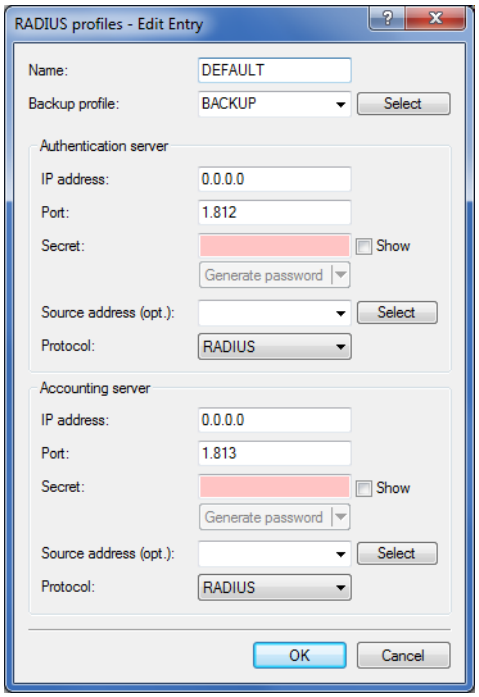
The MAC address is entered as **User name and** as **Password** in the written form 'AABBCC-DDEEFF'.



13.8.2 External RADIUS server

By default the WLC forwards account and access management requests to a RADIUS server. In order for APs to contact the RADIUS server directly, the necessary server information has to be specified here. This ensures that the RADIUS application continues to function even if the WLC is unavailable. However, this means that the RADIUS server requires

settings for each and every AP, and the managed APs must be able to access the RADIUS server from their management network. If the RADIUS server is on another IP network, then it is vital that the gateway is set in the IP parameter profile.



LANconfig: **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **RADIUS profiles**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN Management** > **RADIUS-Server**

Name

Specify an identifier for this entry.

Backup profile

From the list of RADIUS server profiles, select a profile as the backup server.

Authentication server

IP address

Enter the IP address of authentication server.

Port

Enter the port used by the authentication server.

Secret

This entry contains the shared secret used for authorization.

Show

Enables / disables the display of the key.

Source address (optional)

Enter the loopback address of the device, where applicable.

Protocol

From the drop-down menu, choose between the standard RADIUS protocol and the secure RADSEC protocol for RADIUS requests.

Accounting server

IP address

Enter the IP address of accounting server.

Port

Enter the port used by the accounting server.

Secret

This entry contains the shared secret used for authorization.

Show

Enables / disables the display of the key.

Source address (optional)

Enter the loopback address of the device, where applicable.

Protocol

From the drop-down menu, choose between the standard RADIUS protocol and the secure RADSEC protocol for RADIUS requests.

13.8.3 Dynamic VLAN assignment

Larger WLAN infrastructures often require individual WLAN clients to be assigned to certain networks. Assuming that the WLAN clients are always within range of the same APs, then assignment can be realized via the SSID in connection with a particular IP network. If on the other hand the WLAN clients frequently change their position and logon to different APs then, depending on the configuration, they may find themselves in a different IP network.

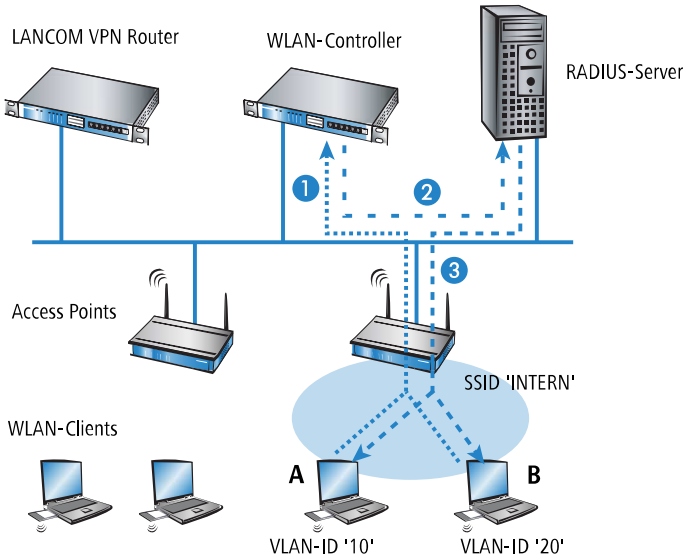
For WLAN clients to remain within a certain network **independent** of their current WLAN network, dynamically assigned VLANs can be used. Unlike the situation where VLAN IDs are statically configured for a certain SSID, in this case a RADIUS server directly assigns the VLAN ID to the WLAN client.

Example:

- The WLAN clients of two employees log into an AP in the WPA2-secured network with the SSID 'INTERNAL'. During registration, the RADIUS requests from the WLAN clients are directed to the AP. If the corresponding WLAN interface is in the operating mode 'managed' the RADIUS requests are automatically forwarded to the WLC. This forwards the request in turn to the defined RADIUS server. The RADIUS server can check the access rights of the WLAN clients. It can also use the MAC address to assign a certain VLAN ID, for example for a certain department. The WLAN client in Marketing, for example, receives the VLAN ID '10' and WLAN client from Research & Development receives '20'. If no VLAN ID is specified for the user, the SSID's primary VLAN ID is used.
- The WLAN clients of the guests log into the same AP in the unsecured network with the SSID 'PUBLIC'. This SSID is statically bound to the VLAN ID '99' and leads the guests into a certain network. Static and dynamic VLAN assignment can be elegantly operated in parallel.

Assignment of the VLAN ID by the RADIUS server can be controlled by other criteria, such as a combination of user name and password, for example. In this way the unknown MAC address of a visitor to a company can be assigned a VLAN ID that permits guest access for Internet access only, for example, but that prohibits access to other network resources.

As an alternative to an external RADIUS server, WLAN clients can be assigned with a VLAN ID via the internal RADIUS server or the stations table in the WLC.



1. Activate VLAN tagging for the WLC. This is done in the physical parameters of the profile by entering a value greater than '0' for the management VLAN ID.
2. For authentication via 802.1x, go to the encryption settings for the profile's logical WLAN network and choose a setting that triggers an authentication request.
3. To check the MAC addresses, activate the MAC check for the profile's logical WLAN network.

   For the management of WLAN modules with a WLC, a RADIUS server is required to operate authentication via 802.1x and MAC-address checks. The WLC automatically defines itself as the RADIUS server in the APs that it is managing—all RADIUS requests sent to the AP are then directly forwarded to the WLC, which can either process the requests itself or forward them to an external RADIUS server.
4. To forward RADIUS requests to another RADIUS server, use LANconfig to enter its address into the list of forwarding servers in the configuration section 'RADIUS servers' on the **Forwarding** tab. Alternatively, external RADIUS servers can be entered in WEBconfig under **Menu tree** > **LCOS Setup** > **RADIUS** > **Server** > **Forward servers**. Also, set the standard realm and the empty realm to be able to react to different types of user information (with an unknown realm, or even without a realm).
5. Configure the entries in the RADIUS server so that WLAN clients placing requests will be assigned the appropriate VLAN IDs as based on the identification of certain characteristics.

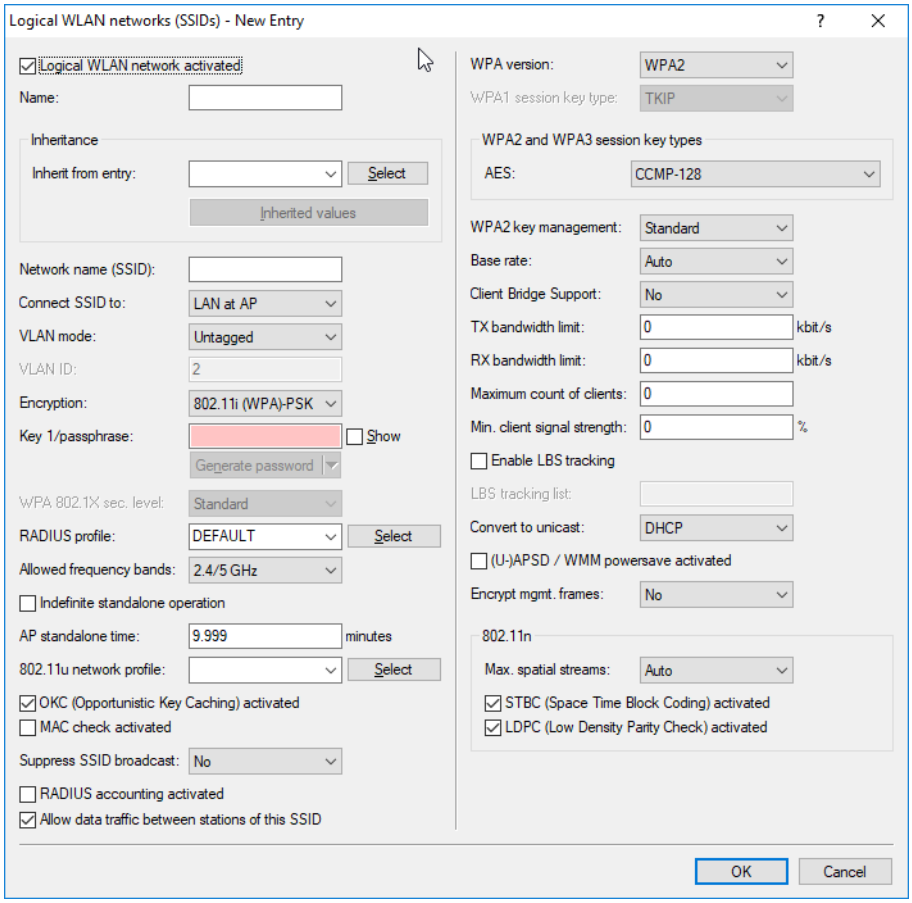
Further information about RADIUS is available in the documentation for your RADIUS server.

13.8.4 Activating RADIUS accounting for logical WLANs in the WLAN controller

The configuration for logical WLAN networks is to be found in the following menu:

LANconfig: **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Configuration** > **Networkprofiles**



> **RADIUS accounting activated**

This is where you can activate RADIUS accounting for this logical WLAN network.

Possible values:

> Yes, No

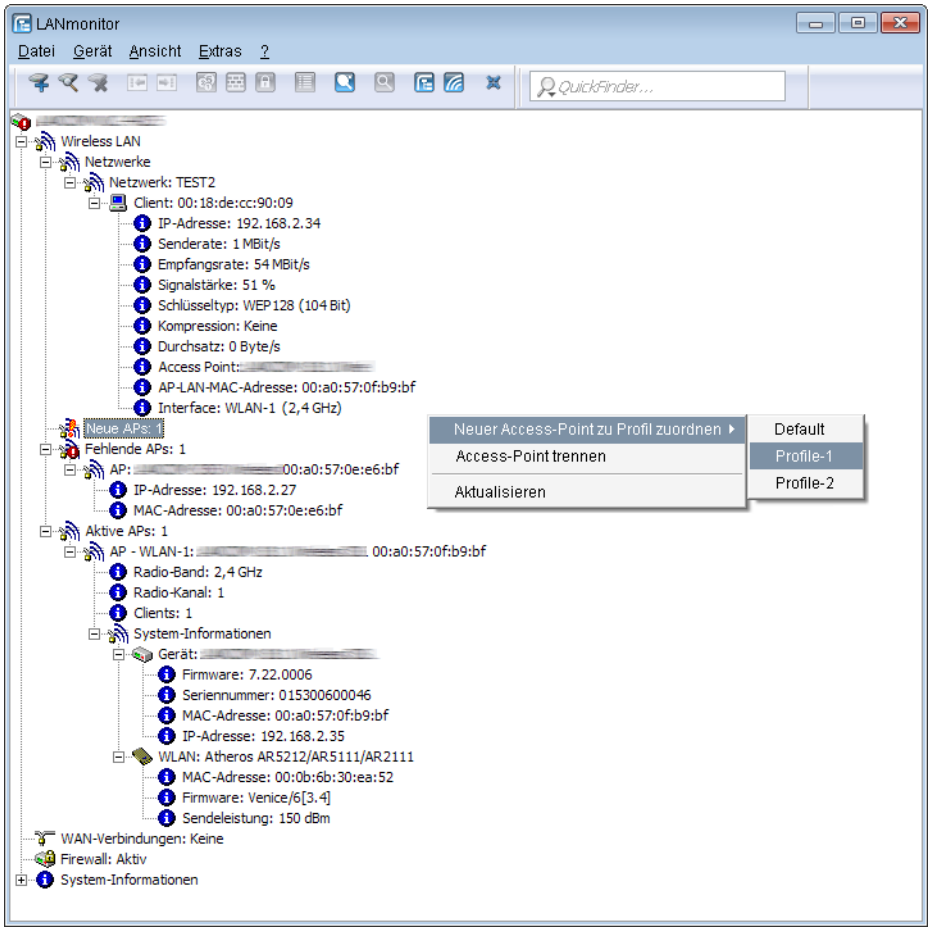
Default:

> No

The APs supporting the logical WLAN network as configured by the WLC must have a LCOS version 8.00 or higher.

13.9 Displays and commands in LANmonitor

LANmonitor gives you a quick overview of the WLCs in your network and the APs within the WLAN infrastructure. LANmonitor displays the following information, among other things:



- Active WLAN networks with the logged-in WLAN clients and the descriptor of the APs that they are associated with.
- Display of new APs with IP and MAC address
- Display of missing APs with IP and MAC address
- Display of managed APs with IP and MAC address, the utilized frequency band, and the channel

> For APs with an older firmware version and unable to transmit this data, the WLC takes the channel and frequency information from the **Active radios** status table under **Status** > **Active-Radios** > **WLAN-Management** > **AP-Status**.

Using the right-hand mouse key, a context menu can be opened for the APs and the following commands are available:

- **Assign new access point to profile**

  Enables a new AP to be allocated to a profile and accepted into the WLAN infrastructure.

- **Disconnect access point**

  Terminates the connection between AP and WLC. The AP then carries out a new search for a suitable WLC. This command can be used after a backup event to disconnect APs from a backup WLC and to redirect them to the correct WLC.

- **Refresh display**

Updates LANmonitor's display.

13.10 RF optimization

Selecting the channel from the channel list defines a portion of the frequency band that an AP uses for its logical wireless LANs. All WLAN clients that need to connect to an AP have to use the same channel on the same frequency band. The 2.4-GHz band works with channels 1 to 13 (depending on the country) and the 5-GHz band works with channels 36 to 64. On each of these channels, only one AP can actually transfer data. In order to operate another AP within radio range with maximum bandwidth, the AP must make use of a separate channel—otherwise all of the participating WLANs have to share the channel's bandwidth.

With a completely empty channel list, the APs could automatically select channels which overlap in some areas, so reducing signal quality. Similarly, the APs might select channels which the WLAN clients cannot use due to the country settings. To steer APs towards certain channels, the non-overlapping channels 1, 6, 11 can be activated in the channels list.

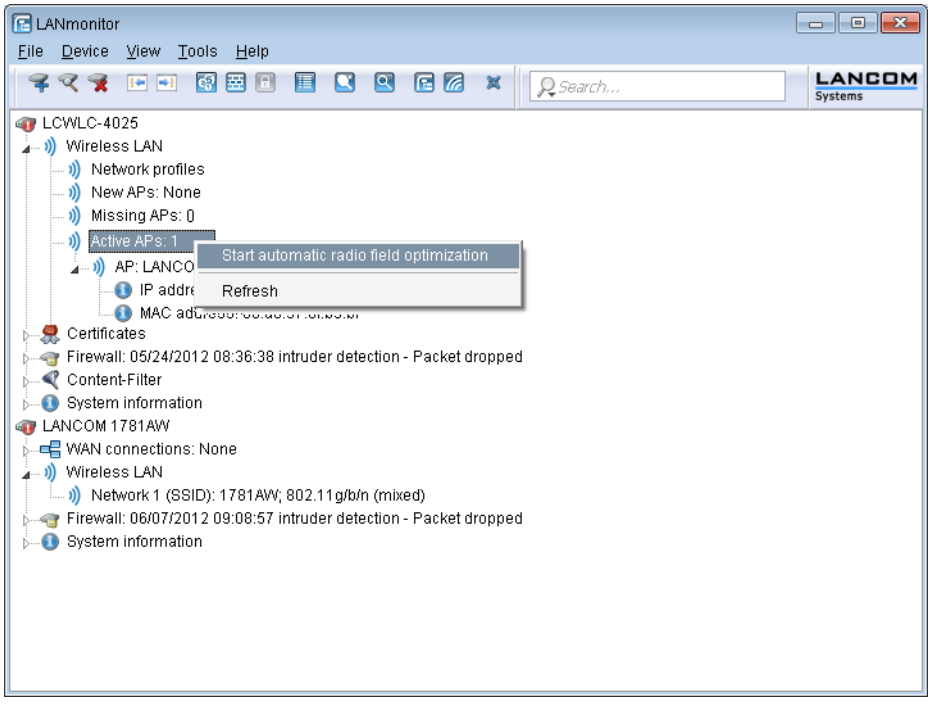
In larger installations with several APs it can be difficult to set a channel for every AP. With automatic radio-field (RF) optimization, the WLCs provide an automatic method of setting the optimum channels for APs that work in the 2.4-GHz band and 5-GHz band.

You should ensure that APs transmitting in the 5-GHz band are set to the "indoor only" mode.

Command line: **Setup** > **WLAN-Management** > **Start-automatic-radio-field-optimization**

You can invoke optimization for a particular AP by entering its MAC address as a parameter for the action.

LANmonitor: Right-click on the list of active APs or on a specific device, and in the context menu select **Start automatic RF optimization**.



Optimization is then carried out in the following stages:

1. The WLC assigns the same channel to all APs. The selected channel is the one being used by the majority of APs.
2. The APs carry out a background scan and report the results to the WLC.
3. Based on the devices found by the background scan, the WLC sets an interference value for each AP.
4. It then deletes the AP channel list for all APs. With the channel list now empty, each AP receives a configuration update with a new channel list for its respective profile.
5. The WLC disables the radio modules of all APs.
6. The individual APs now go through the following sequence. This begins with the AP with the highest interference value being the first to select a channel.
7. In the order of the interference values the WLC enables the radio modules in the APs, which then start their automatic calibration. Each AP automatically searches for the best channel from the channel list assigned to it. To determine which channel is the best, the AP scans for interference in order to allow for the signal strengths and channels occupied by other APs. Because the former list in the WLC configuration was deleted, this is now the profile channel list. If the profile channel list is empty, then the AP has freedom of choice from the channels that are not occupied by other radio modules. The selected channel is then communicated back to the WLC and entered into the AP channel list there. For this reason, the AP receives the same channel the next time a connection is established. The AP channel list has a higher weighting than the profile channel list.

If an AP has multiple radio modules, each module goes through this process in succession.

Radio-field optimization is a component of the *LANCOM Active Radio Control (ARC)*

13.10.1 Group-related radio field optimization

A WLC allows the grouping of APs by location information, device properties or network structure. This grouping can also be used as a basis for radio field optimization. Instead of performing a radio field optimization either for all APs or just for one of them, you can address all of the APs within a building tract, with a particular name, or with a particular firmware version.

Groups can be addressed via WEBconfig and also via the console by means of the Group parameters:

```
do /Setup/WLAN-Management/start optimization <Group>
```

The APs can be filtered with the following group-parameter options:

`-g <Group name>`

APs, which belong to the group. Multiple group names can be separated by commas.

`-l <Location>`

APs with the corresponding location setting.

The combination of `-l` and one of the location options `-c` to `-r` is not useful.

`-c <Country>`

APs with the corresponding country setting.

`-i <City>`

APs with the corresponding city setting.

`-s <Street>`

APs with the corresponding street setting.

`-b <Building>`

APs with the corresponding building setting.

-f <Floor>

APs with the corresponding floor setting.

-r <Room>

APs with the corresponding room setting.

-d <Device name>

APs with the corresponding device name.

-a <Antenna>

APs with the corresponding number of antennas.

A combination of the options `-d` and `-a` is not useful.

-v <Firmware>

APs with this firmware version only.

-x <Firmware>

APs with a firmware version less than that specified here.

-y <Firmware>

APs with a firmware version less than or equal to that specified here.

-z <Firmware>

APs with a firmware version greater than that specified here.

-t <Firmware>

APs with a firmware version greater than or equal to that specified here.

Combinations are possible, e.g. to address APs with a firmware version between two versions.

-n <Intranet-Address>

APs located on the intranet with the address specified here.

-p <Profile name>

APs included in the WLAN profile specified here.

13.11 Client steering by WLC

With client steering, certain criteria are used to help WLAN clients located within transmission range to connect to the best suited AP. These criteria are centrally defined in the WLC. Managed APs constantly report the current values to the WLC, which uses these criteria to decide which APs may respond to requests from WLAN clients. For this reason, client steering is only possible with APs that are centrally managed by a WLC.

In managed networks a WLC centralizes the client steering for all connected APs. In this case, client steering works as follows:

1. The WLC collects the data about the associated WLAN clients from the APs connected to it. These data are the basis for the WLC to control the client steering.
2. All APs are configured so that client steering is handled by the WLC.
3. An unassociated WLAN client sends a probe request to the APs within its range.

4. Using CAPWAP, the APs transmit the request and the signal strength of the WLAN client to the WLC.
5. For each AP within range of the WLAN client, the WLC calculates a value from three factors:
   - Signal strength value
   - A value calculated from the number of clients associated at the AP
   - Frequency band value

   The WLC weights these factors and multiplies them together to derive the final value.
6. APs with the highest value, or a value that deviates from it within a specified tolerance level, receive a message from the WLC that they may accept the WLAN client at the next login attempt.
7. WLAN clients attempting to connect to an AP before it has received the response from the WLC are rejected.
8. If a WLAN client is acting "sticky", i.e. it does not attempt to connect to another AP with a good connection quality even though its current connection is of a lower quality, the WLC can prompt the current AP to log off the WLAN client. The WLAN client is then forced to connect with the AP offering the better connection.

If an AP loses connection to the WLC which is responsible for client steering, the AP accepts all connections from authenticated WLAN clients.

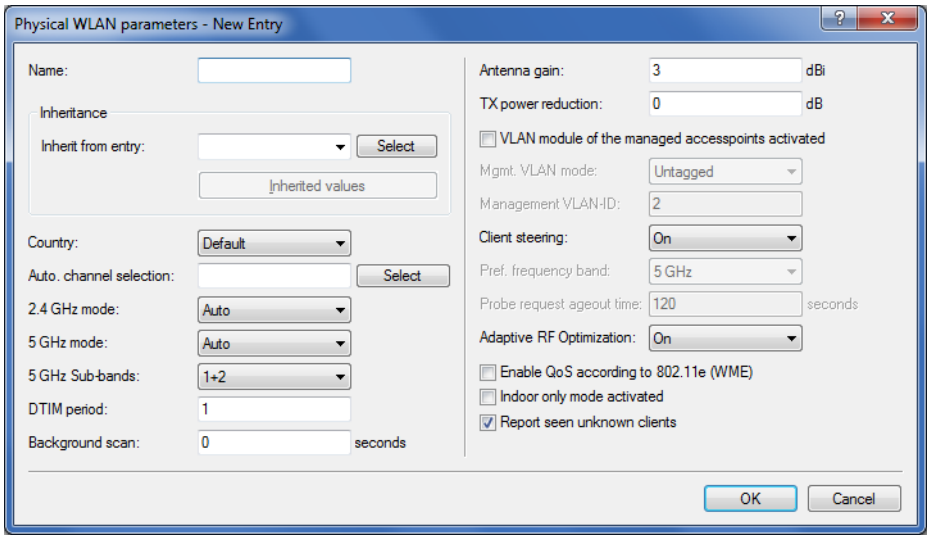
In order to optimize managed client steering, all APs require the installation of LCOS9.00 or later. If you have mixed operations with APs using earlier versions of LCOS, your WLAN will not be capable of optimizing the distribution of clients.

In scenarios with time-critical roaming, such as with VoIP phones, you should not use client steering, as this can delay the client's login process.

13.11.1 Configuration

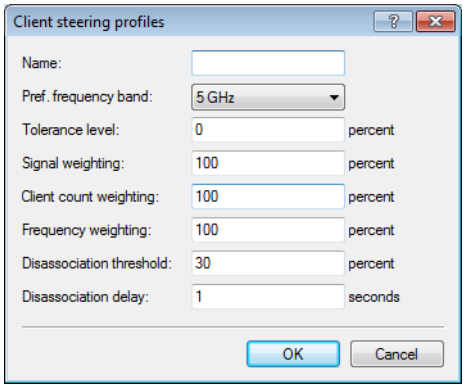
You configure client steering with LANconfig as follows:

1. First, in the WLC you activate client steering for an AP under **WLAN controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters** using the selection list **Client steering**.
   - **Off**: Client steering is deactivated.
   - **AP-based band steering**: The AP independently steers the WLAN client to a preferred frequency band.
   - **On**: The AP lets the WLC handle the client steering.



2. The menu **WLAN-Controller** > **AP-Configuration** > **Client steering profiles** contains two preconfigured default profiles (high density, default), which are sufficient for most use cases. Optionally, you create a new client steering profile by clicking on **Add**.

Client-steering profiles control how the WLC decides which APs are to accept a client at the next login attempt.



The items have the following meanings:

Name

Name of the client-steering profile.

Pref. Frequency band

Specifies the frequency band to which the WLC steers the WLAN client.

- **2.4GHz**: The WLC steers the WLAN client to the 2.4-GHz frequency band.
- **5GHz**: The WLC steers the WLAN client to the 5-GHz frequency band.

Tolerance level

The calculated value for an AP may deviate from the maximum calculated value by this percentage value in order for the AP to be allowed to accept the client at the next login attempt.

Signal-Strength-Weighting

Specifies the percentage weighting of the signal-strength value used to calculate the final value.

Associated-Clients-Weighting

Specifies with how many percent the number of clients associated with an AP is entered into the final value.

Frequency-Band-Weighting

Specifies the percent weighting of the value for the frequency band used to calculate the final value.

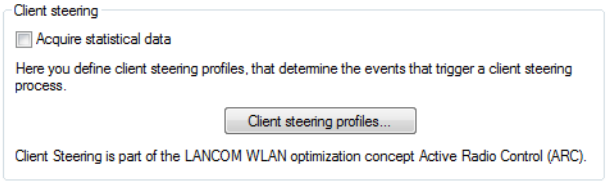
Disassociation threshold

Specifies the percentage of the maximum signal strength. If the current signal strength falls below this value, the client is disconnected.

Disassociation delay

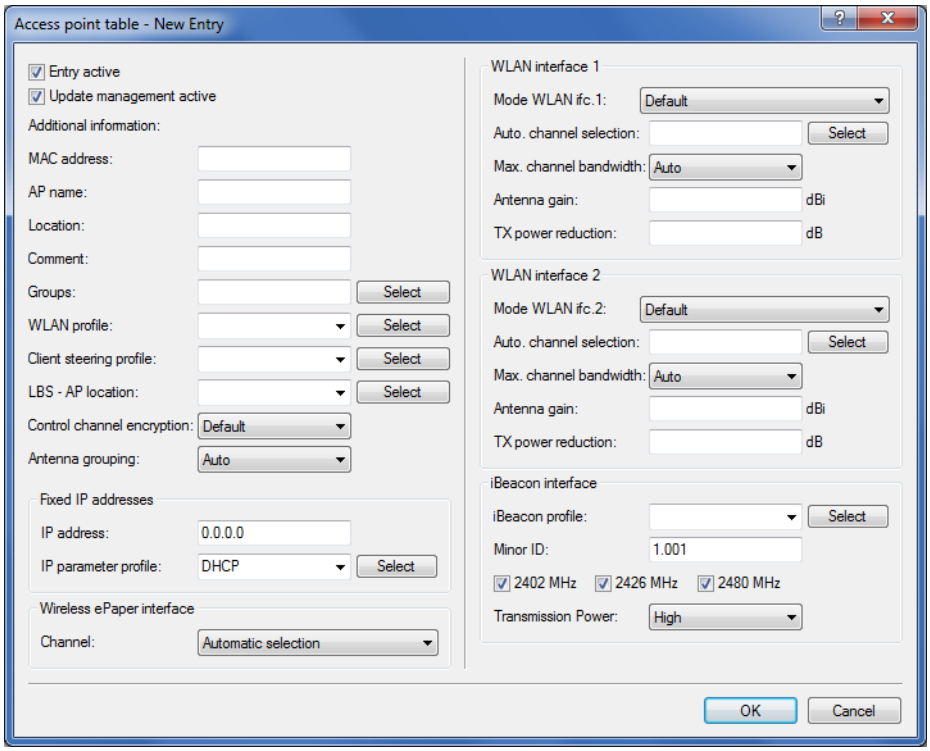
Specifies the number of seconds in which no data is transferred between AP and client before the AP disconnects the client.

3. Optional: Enable the capture of client-steering statistics with the parameter **Acquire statistical data**. This statistical data is suitable for analysis by LANmonitor, for example.

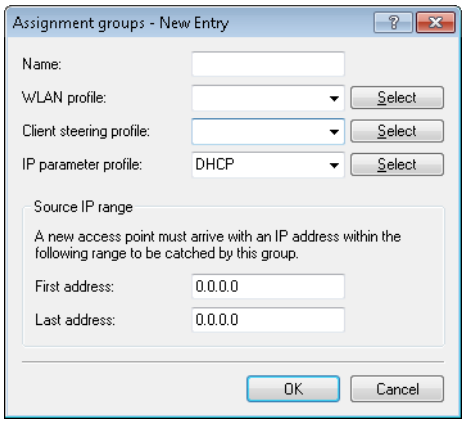


Statistics capture increases the load on the WLC. LANCOM does not recommend the permanent recording of statistics.

4. Now assign one of the client-steering profiles to the corresponding AP in the AP table under **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Access point table**.



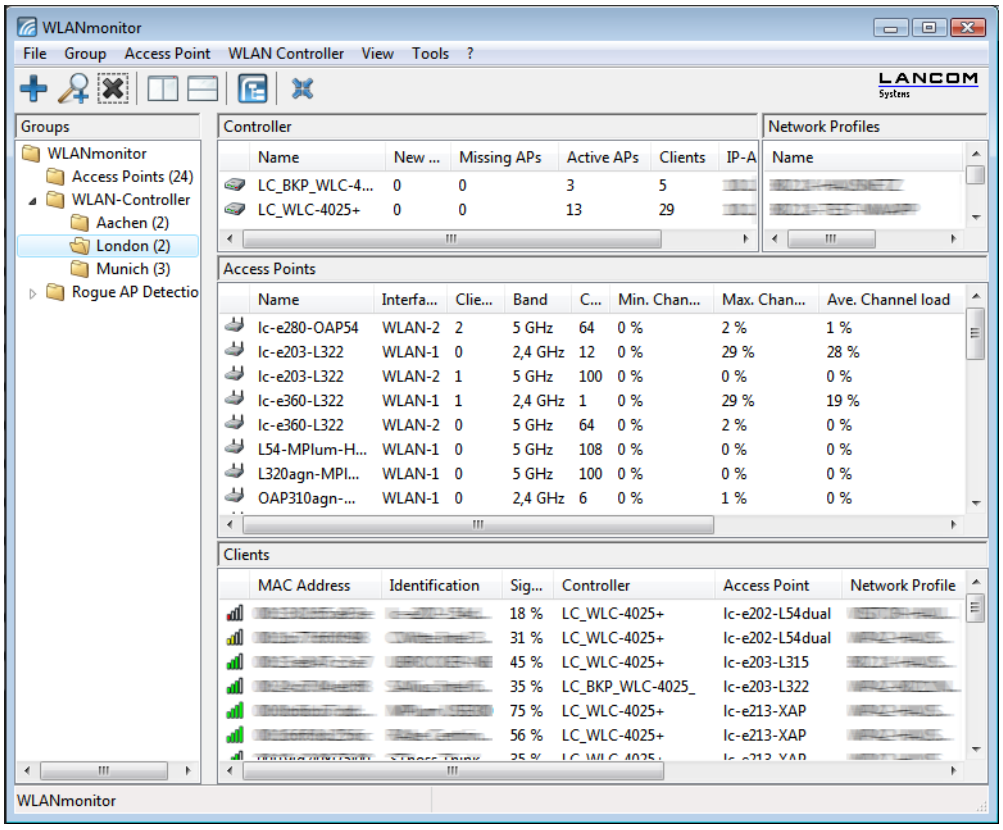
5. Optional: If necessary, assign a suitable client-steering group to the defined assignment groups.



You have now completed the configuration of the client steering.

13.12 Channel-load display in WLC mode

The loads on the various channels used by each AP which is managed by a WLC are displayed as three values, the minimum, maximum and average channel load. The values displayed are measured every three minutes. Consequently, the first values are displayed after three minutes at the earliest.



13.13 Backing up the certificates

At system startup, a WLC generates the basic certificates for the assignment of certificates to the APs, including the root certificates for the CA (Certification Authority) and the RA (Registration Authority). Based on these two certificates, the WLC issues device certificates for the APs.

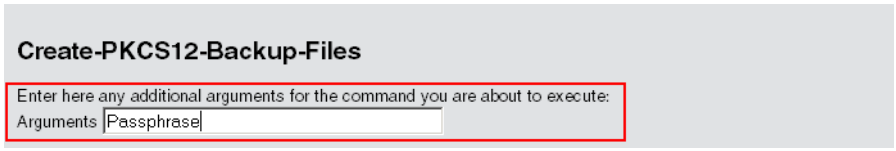
If multiple WLCs are employed in parallel in the same WLAN infrastructure (for load balancing) or if a device is being replaced or reconfigured, the same root certificates should always be used to avoid problems operating the managed APs.

13.13.1 Create backups of the certificates

To restore the CA or RA, the relevant root certificates with private keys will be required as generated automatically when the WLC was started. Furthermore the following files with information on issued device certificates should also be backed up. To ensure that this confidential information remains protected even when exported from the device, it is initially stored to a password-protected PCKS12 container.

WEBconfig

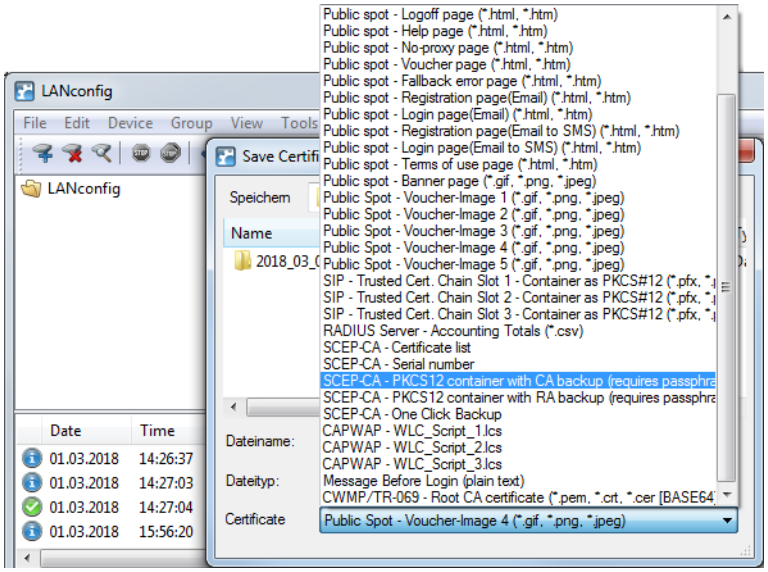
1. Open the configuration of the WLC in WEBconfig and go to **LCOS Menu Tree** > **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** > **CA-certificates**.
2. Select the command **Create PKCS12 backup files** and enter the passphrase for the PKCS12 container as the additional argument.



This command backs up the certificates and private keys to the PKCS12 files and these can then be downloaded from the device.

LANconfig

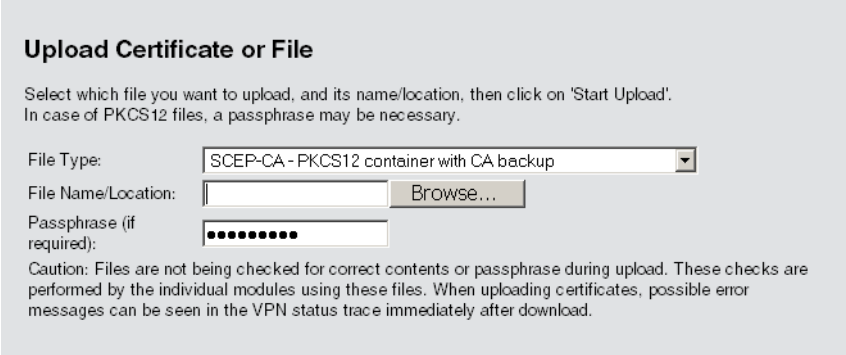
1. Highlight the WLC in the device view section and in the menu **Device** > **Configuration management** select the item **Save certificate as file**.
2. Set the **Certificate type** to PKCS12 container and click **Save**.



13.13.2 Uploading a certificate backup into the device

1. Click on **File management** > **Upload certificate or file**.
2. Select the two entries for SCEP-CA as data type one after the other:
   - PKCS12 container with CA backup
   - PKCS12 container with RA backup

3. For each upload, enter the file name, storage location, and the passphrase that was defined when the backup file was created. Confirm with **Start upload**:



4. After loading the CA backup, the file `controller_rootcert` in the directory **Status** > **File-System** > **Contents** must be deleted.
   Enter the following commands in the console:

```
cd /Status/File-System/Contents
del controller_rootcert
```

5. After restoring the backup, delete all files that start with `controller_` or `eaptls_`.
6. After that, access the directory **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-Client** and execute the command `Reinit`:

```
cd /Setup/Certificates/SCEP-Client
do Reinit
```

13.13.3 Backing up and restoring further files from the SCEP-CA

To be able to fully restore the SCEP-CA, it is important to have the information on the device certificates issued for the individual APs by the SCEP-CA.

If the root certificates only were backed up, then any issued device certificates can no longer be revoked!

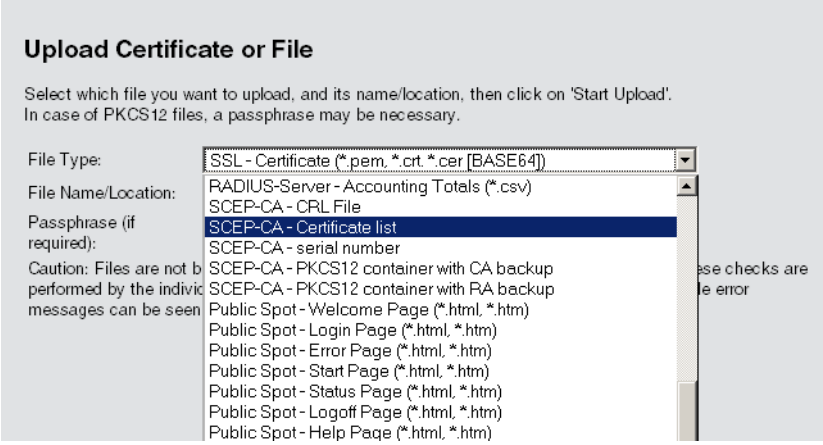
For this reason the following files have to be saved in addition to the certificates themselves:

- SCEP certificate list: List of all certificates ever issued by the SCEP-CA.
- SCEP serial numbers: Contains the serial number for the next certificate.

1. Click on **File management** > **Download certificate or file**.
2. Select the entries listed above as data type one after the other and then confirm with **Start download**:

3. To upload these files to the device, go to the entry page of WEBconfig and select the command **Upload certificate or file**.

4. Select the entries listed above as data type one after the other, enter each file name and storage location and confirm with **Start upload**:



After installing a new certificate list, expired certificates are removed and a new CRL is created. Furthermore, the CA reinitializes itself automatically if certificates and keys are successfully extracted after loading the certificate backup.

13.13.4 One-click backup of the SCEP-CA

In order to simplify the backup of the CA in the WLC, the device offers the option to generate a complete certificate record with a single action (one-click backup). This record makes it possible to completely back up and restore the CA and prevent certificate conflicts from occurring.

These conflicts can occur if you have downloaded the individual PKCS12 containers from the device separately and then reloaded: If the WLC has created a new CA in the meantime and has issued new certificates, the deviating CAs temporarily lead to authentication problems for the different services in LCOS. If you cannot wait until the individual services request new certificates, a manual resolution requires deleting the SCEP files from the LCOS file system and re-initialization of the SCEP clients. By reloading a one-click backup, on the other hand, LCOS performs the necessary steps automatically.

Creating a backup file

In order to create a certificate record, perform the action **Create PKCS12 backup files** under **Setup** > **Certificate** > **SCEP-CA** > **CA certificate**. This action generates a ZIP file within the LCOS file system that contains all necessary files. To protect the certificates and keys contained therein, the ZIP file is automatically protected with the device password, unless you enter another password. The ZIP file that was generated can then be downloaded, for example, in WEBconfig via **File management** > **Download certificate or file** > **SCEP-CA - One Click Backup**.

Reloading the backup file

In order to reload certificate records, load the saved ZIP file directly into the device using the passphrase. In WEBconfig, for example, this is done by selecting **File management** > **Upload certificate or file** > **SCEP-CA - One Click Backup**. Enable the option **Replace existing CA certificates** so that the device automatically restores the certificate record after the upload.

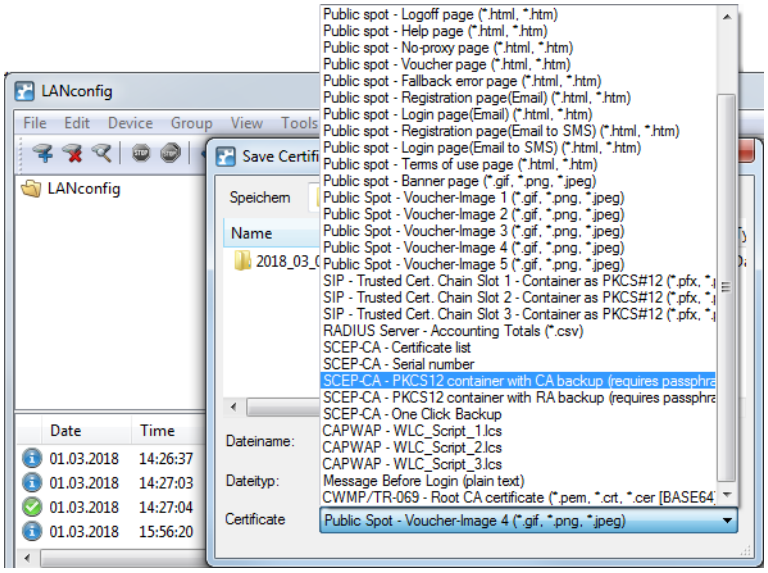
If you do not use this option, or if you upload the backup file to the device by other means, you must execute the action *2.39.2.2.11 Restore-certificates-from-Backup* in order for the device to restore the certificate record.

13.13.5 Using LANconfig to backup and restore certificates

Certificates are stored and uploaded with LANconfig as follows:

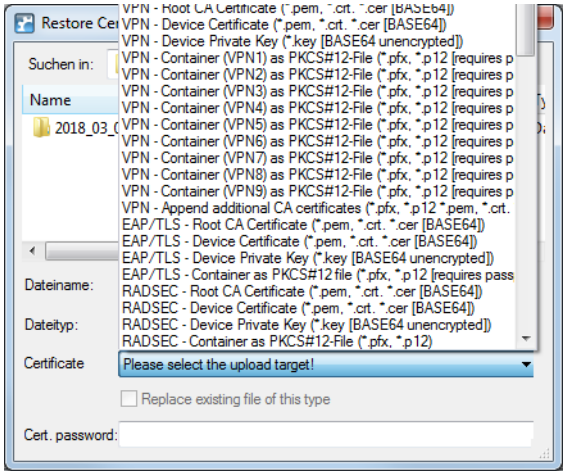
Save

1. Highlight the WLC in the device view section and in the menu **Device** > **Configuration management** select the item **Save certificate as file**.
2. Set the **Certificate type** to PKCS12 container and click **Save**.



Upload

1. Highlight the WLC in the device view section and in the menu select **Device** > **Configuration management** and the item **Upload certificate or file**.
2. Set the **Certificate type** to PKCS12 container.
3. Now navigate to the desired file, enter the password if necessary and click **Open**.



One Click Backup

For the One Click Backup, select the entry "SCEP-CA - One Click Backup" from the dialog list.

13.14 Backup solutions

WLCs manage a large number of APs, which in turn may have a large number of WLAN clients associated with them. WLCs thus play a crucial role in the functioning of the entire WLAN infrastructure—for which reason the organization of a backup solution in case of temporary WLC failure is in many cases indispensable.

In case of a backup event, a managed AP should connect to an alternative WLC. Because this connection will only function if the certificate in the AP has been authorized by the backup controller, it is essential that all WLCs sharing a backup solution have identical root certificates.

13.14.1 WLC cluster

If you are operating multiple WLCs in your network, you can collect these devices into a cluster. The APs in a managed WLAN are no longer managed by a single, central WLC but by multiple, synchronized WLCs. For large networks in particular, a WLC cluster provides numerous advantages:

- Automatic network "load balancing" between the individual APs and WLCs;
- Increased failover reliability through the provision of backup WLCs ("hot standby") and automatic redistribution of the APs in the case of a WLC failure;
- Setting up a certificate hierarchy: Management of certificates by a central certification authority (CA), represented either by a master WLC or an external station (such as a server).

As of LCOS 9.00, the cluster function received numerous enhancements described below.

Enabling/disabling CAPWAP in the WLC

In order to operate multiple WLCs in a cluster, they must all have identical configurations. This is not the case on one WLC by default, since it automatically generates certain configuration parts (such as certificates). By disabling CAPWAP on all devices except one, you have the option of setting one of the devices in your WLC cluster as a master controller. The other WLCs can be synchronized with the master WLC's configuration.

Learn more about mirroring a configuration in the section *Config-Sync*.

WLC tunnel for internal communication

The use of WLC tunnels is essential for a WLC cluster. The WLCs in the WLC cluster use this tunnel to communicate with one another and keep their status information aligned. With the feature extensions as of LCOS 9.00, the way that LCOS deals with WLC tunnels is also improved:

- WLCs are able to find one another automatically.
- You have the option to statically configure WLC tunnels.
- WLCs disconnect a WLC tunnel only after a timeout.
- WLC tunnels can be switched on or off globally.

The settings for the WLC tunnels and other WLCs (remote WLCs) are located in the section **WLAN controller** > **General** > **WLC cluster**. The setting **WLC tunnel active** allows you to disable the usage of WLC tunnels, which in effect causes the clustering feature to be switched off.

Finding the ideal WLC

The algorithms implemented in LCOS ensure that the APS are intelligently distributed between the individual WLCs. This allows the APs to equally distribute the network load between all of the WLCs in a cluster, or to select an alternative WLC if one should fail. For this, an AP first sends out a discovery request on the network to identify all available WLCs. The WLCs then respond with a discovery response which an AP uses to create a prioritized list of WLCs. This AP prioritizes the list based on various criteria.

An AP works through the different criteria sequentially: If multiple WLCs appear to be ideal candidates after applying a criterion, the AP uses the next criteria to prioritize. This process ends when a WLC finally identifies just one WLC as being ideal after the prioritization described in the following.

Criteria for prioritization

- **Specificity of the AP configuration**: An AP evaluates whether a WLC can provide it with a configuration, and whether this contains a specific AP profile or a default profile. The AP prioritizes a specific AP profile as highest, followed by a default profile. If a profile is missing, it is given the lowest priority.
- **The preference value**: The AP evaluates the preference value that you have assigned to a WLC. The higher the number between 0 and 255, the higher the AP prioritizes the WLC.

If there still remain several WLCs which are considered to be ideal, the prioritization process continues by evaluating the connection status and the type of selection process (automatically vs. manually initiated):

- When the **calculation is triggered for the first time**, an AP calculates a weighted value for each of the remaining WLCs by taking the number of APs connected to each WLC and comparing this with the maximum possible number of APs (**license usage**). Ultimately, the ideal WLC is taken as that with the lowest license usage.

  If a WLC has reached the maximum possible number of AP connections (license quota exhausted), an AP no longer considers the affected WLC for the current selection.
- In the case of **automatic checking** of the ideal AP distribution, an AP stays with the WLC it is connected to if this WLC is included in the list of the remaining WLCs. Otherwise, a **randomized algorithm** causes the AP to select an arbitrary AP.
- In the case of a **manually triggered check**, a **randomized algorithm** ensures that the APs distribute the available license quotas as evenly as possible across the network.

Determining the ideal AP distribution

The identification of the ideal AP distribution in a WLC cluster and any redistribution that may be triggered by it occur automatically. Every AP automatically performs the *Finding the ideal WLC* process at irregular intervals between 30 and 60 minutes. If the result of the process is positive for the WLC which is already connected, no redistribution takes place. If a different WLC has a higher priority, the AP attempts to connect to this WLC.

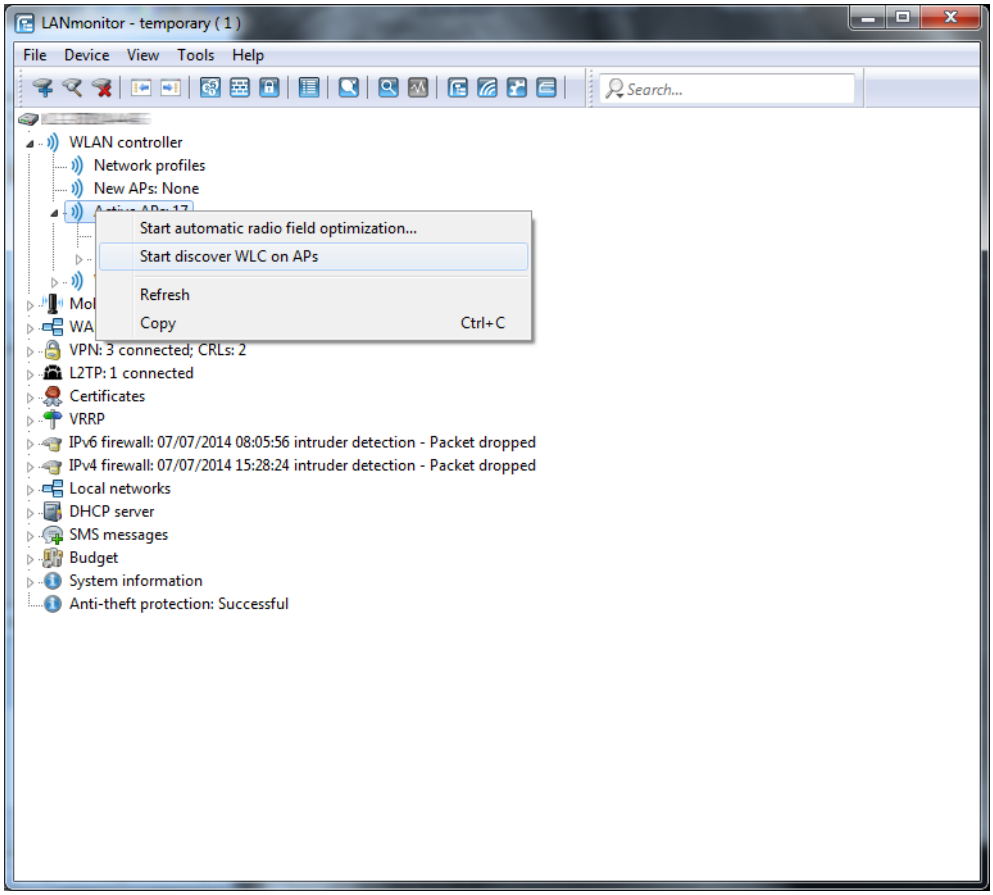
However, as an administrator you can use LANmonitor to manually trigger a calculation of the ideal AP distribution and the resulting redistribution of the APs (see *Manually initiate ideal AP distribution* on page 1086).

Manually initiate ideal AP distribution

The following steps show you how to start the recalculation of an ideal distribution, and if necessary to trigger a redistribution.

1. Start LANmonitor and select a WLC.
2. Navigate to the menu item **Wireless LAN** > **Active APs**.

3. Open the context menu on any AP and select **Start WLC search on APs**.



The access points each find their optimum WLC and distribute themselves across the WLC cluster according to the specifications.

Setting up a CA hierarchy

In order to operate multiple WLCs in a WLC cluster, they all need to have identical configurations. This also includes the certificates used within the WLC cluster. The solution lies in establishing a certificate hierarchy, also known as a CA hierarchy: This involves defining the CA of a WLC as the root-CA. The other WLCs retrieve this certificate for their (sub-) CA.

The following scenario shows you the configuration steps which are necessary for setting up a CA hierarchy. As examples, the configuration is done using two WLCs:

- WLC-MAIN represents the device with the root-CA;
- WLC-SUB is the device which obtains a certificate from the root-CA in order to issue further certificates as a sub-CA.

Configuring the root-CA

The following section describes how to set up a root CA on a WLC. These steps assume that the device has been reset, that you have commissioned the device in the standard manner, and that you have set the correct time.

1. Login to your device via WEBconfig or the command line.
2. Navigate to the menu **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** > **CA-Certificates**. Customize the name of the certificate authority (CA) and the registration authority (RA) with the parameters **CA-Distinguished-Name** and **RA-Distinguished-Name**.

   Example: `/CN=WLC-MAIN CA/O=LANCOM SYSTEMS/C=DE`

3. Navigate to the menu **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** and set the parameter **Operating** to **Yes**.

You have now completed the configuration of the root CA. The command `show ca cert` on the command line allows you to verify that the WLC has created the certificate correctly.

Configuring the sub-CA

The following section describes how to set up a sub-CA on a WLC. These steps assume that the device has been reset, that you have commissioned the device in the standard manner, and that you have set the correct time.

1. Login to your device via WEBconfig or the command line.
2. Navigate to the menu **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** and set the parameter **Root-CA** to **No**.
3. Navigate to the menu **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** > **CA-Certificates**. Customize the name of the certificate authority (CA) and the registration authority (RA) with the parameters **CA-Distinguished-Name** and **RA-Distinguished-Name**.

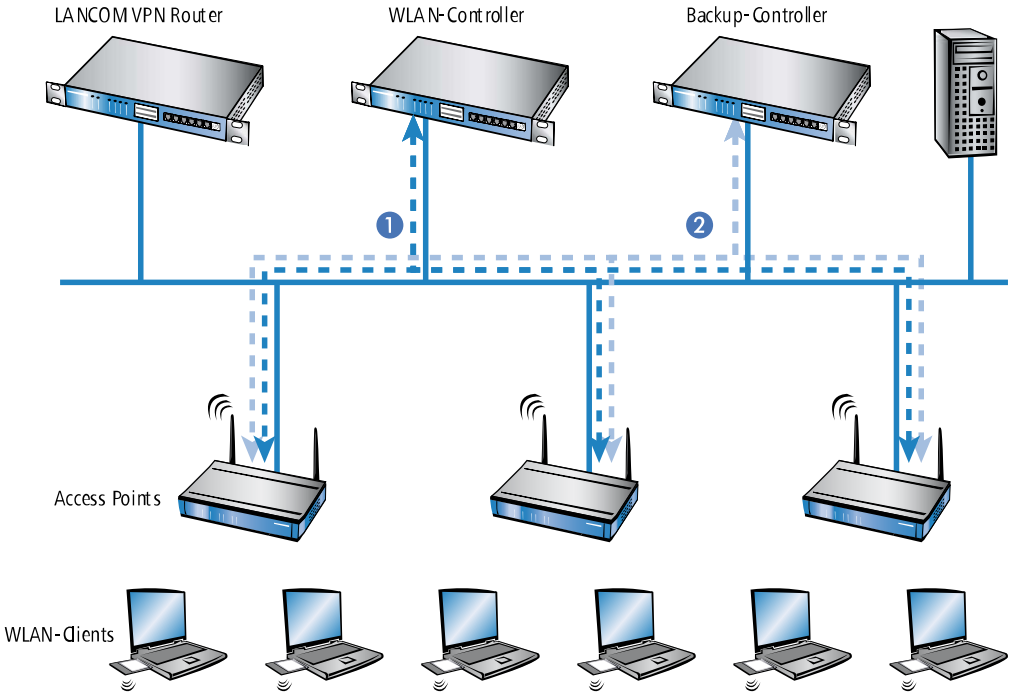
   Example: `/CN=WLC-SUB CA/O=LANCOM SYSTEMS/C=DE`
4. Switch to the menu **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** > **Sub-CA** and enter the distinguished name of the root-CA under the parameter **CADN**.

   Example: `/CN=WLC-MAIN CA/O=LANCOM SYSTEMS/C=DE`
5. For the parameter **Challenge-Pwd** , enter the challenge password that is stored on WLC-MAIN under **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA**.
6. Enter the URL (address) to the root CA in the **CA-Url-address** parameter.
   If another WLC with the LCOS operating system provides the root CA, all you need to do is replace the IP address in the default value with the address where the corresponding device is to be reached. Example: `http://192.168.1.1/cgi-bin/pkiclient.exe`.
7. Optional: Specify the **Ext-Key-Usage** and **Cert-Key Usage** to restrict the functions of the sub-CA. For more information, see the Menu Reference Guide.
8. Set the parameter **Auto-generated-request** to **Yes** to activate the sub-CA.
9. Navigate to the menu **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** and set the parameter **Operating** to **Yes** to enable the CA server with SCEP.

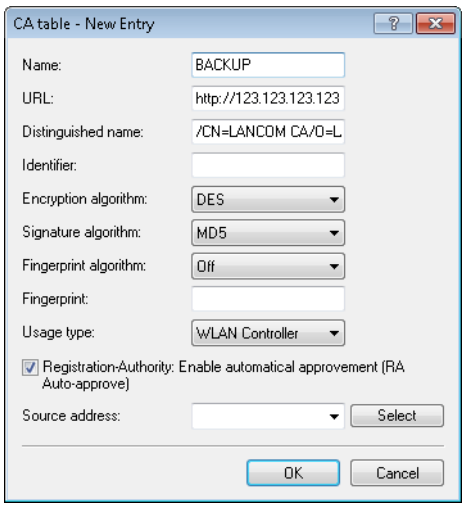
You have now completed the configuration of the sub-CA. The command `show ca cert` on the command line allows you to verify that the WLC has created the certificate correctly. The hierarchy of certificates must be visible here: The WLC first displays the certificate of the root CA and then the certificate of the sub-CA.

13.14.2 Backup with redundant WLAN controllers

This is worthwhile for backing up a WLC with a second WLC, the aim being to maintain full control over all managed APs at all times. The backup WLC is configured in such as way that it obtains the necessary certificates from the backed-up primary WLC via SCEP.



1. Set the same time on the two WLCs **1** and **2**.
2. Switch off the CA on the backup WLC (WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree > Setup > Certificates > SCEP-CA > SCEP-Operating).
3. In the configuration of the SCEP client in the backup WLC, create a new entry in the CA table (in LANconfig under **Certificates** > **SCEP client** > **CA table**). The CA of the primary WLC is entered here.

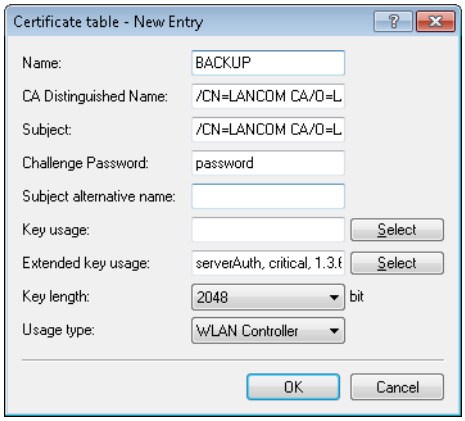


4. The URL is to be entered as the IP address or the DNS name of the primary WLC followed by the path to the CA `/cgi-bin/pkiclient.exe`. For example `10.1.1.99/cgi-bin/pkiclient.exe`'.

   > **Distinguished-Name**: Standard name of the CA (/CN=LANCOM CA/O=LANCOM SYSTEMS/C=DE) or the name given on the primary Controller

- Enable **RA auto-approve**
- **Usage type**: WLAN controller

5. Then create a new entry in the certificate table with the following information:



- **CA-Distinguished-Name**: The standard name under which the CA is entered, e.g. /CN=LANCOM CA/O=LANCOM SYSTEMS/C=DE
- **Subject**: Specification of the primary WLAN controller's MAC address in the form: /CN=00:a0:57:01:23:45/O=LANCOM SYSTEMS/C=DE
- **Challenge password**: The general challenge password of the CA on the primary WLAN controller or a password for the Controller specified manually.
- **Extended key usage**: critical,serverAuth,1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.18
- **Key length**: 2048 bits
- **Usage type**: WLAN controller

6. If a SCEP configuration was previously active on the backup controller, the following actions must be executed under WEBconfig (**LCOS Menu Tree** > **Setup** > **Certificates** > **SCEP client**):

- Clear-SCEP-Filesystem
- Update (2x: the first time, the SCEP client retrieves the new CA/RA certificates only; the second time the device certificate is updated)

7. Configure the first WLC **1** according to your requirements with all profiles and the associated AT table. The APs then establish connections to the first WLC. Each AP receives a valid certificate and a configuration for the WLAN module from the WLC.
8. Transfer the configuration from the first WLC **1**, for example using LANconfig, to the backup controller **2**. The profiles and the AP tables with the MAC addresses of the APs are transferred to the backup WLC at the same time. All APs remain logged on to the first WLC. Once the configuration is transferred, you need to give the backup controller a new IP address.

Should WLC **1** fail, the APs will automatically search for another WLC and they will find the backup WLC **2**. Because this has the same root certificate, it is able to check the validity of the APs' certificates. Because the APs are also entered into the backup WLC's AP table along with their MAC addresses, the backup WLC can fully take over the management of the APs. Changes to the WLAN profiles in the backup WLC will directly affect the managed APs.

In this scenario, the APs remain under the management of the backup WLC until this itself becomes unavailable or is manually disconnected.

If the APs are set up for standalone operation they will remain operational while searching for a backup WLC, and the WLAN clients will remain associated.

13.14.3 Backup with primary and secondary WLAN controllers

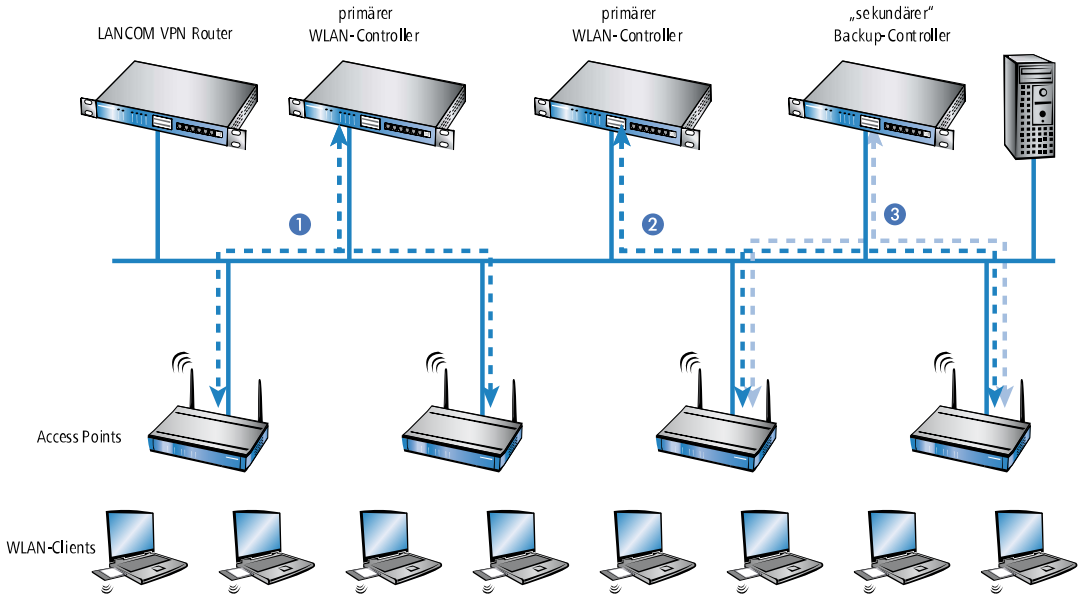
This second type of backup you can provide a larger number of "primary" WLCs with one common "secondary" backup WLC. In case a WLC should fail, the APs remain operational but they work with the current configuration of the WLAN modules. As a secondary WLC, the backup WLC cannot assign any configuration changes to the APs.

13.14.4 Primary and secondary controllers

The establishment of a WCL/AP connection is always initiated by the AP. An AP in managed mode will search the LAN for a WLC that will provide it with a configuration. During this search the AP may find various suitable WLCs:

- The WLC can authenticate the **certificate** in the AP and it has a **configuration** stored for the MAC address of the AP. A WLC of this type is described as a "primary" WLC.
- A WLC can authenticate the **certificate** of an AP, but it has **neither a configuration** stored for the MAC address of the AP, **nor does it have a default configuration**. A WLC of this type is described as a "secondary" WLC.

This is an example of a backup solution with three WLCs for 50 managed APs: Two of the WLCs each manage 25 APs and the third is available as a backup WLC:



A WLC is now able to accommodate five times the maximum number of APs that it can manage by itself. For each five WLCs (identical models), just one additional WLC is sufficient to provide a full backup WLC in case of failure.

1. Set the same time on all of the WLCs **1**, **2** and **3**.
2. Transfer the CA and RA certificates from the first primary WLC **1** to the second primary WLC **2** and to the secondary "backup WLC" **3**.
3. Configure the first WLC **1** according to your requirements with the profiles and the associated AP table for one half of the APs. This WLC becomes the primary WLC for the APs entered into it.

For a backup solution using a secondary WLC, be sure to set the time for standalone operations such that the AP has time to find a backup WLC. This is because the backup WLC is not able to provide a new configuration for the AP.

Once the AP has established a backup connection to a secondary WLC the countdown until expiry of standalone operation is halted. The AP and its WLAN networks remain active as long as there is a connection to a WLC.

1. Configure the second WLC **2** for the other half of the APs, which subsequently treat this WLC as their primary WLC.
2. For the backup WLC **3** the time and the root certificates are set up only. No further configuration is required.

3. After being started, the APs search for a WLC by emitting a discovery message. In this case, all three WLCs respond to this message—the APs select "their" primary WLC for the DTLS connection that follows. One half of the APs decides on WLC **1** and the other half chooses WLC **2**. Because WLC **3** does not function as primary WLC for any of the APs, none of the APs log on to it.
4. Should WLC **2** fail, the APs will automatically search for another WLC. They discover the WLC **A** and **C**, whereby **A** is already under full load with its 25 APs. Backup controller **C** is able to check the validity of the certificates, i.e. it can authenticate the APs and accept them as managed APs. However, because the APs are **not** entered with their MAC numbers into the backup WLC's AP table, the backup WLC cannot manage the APs any further; they simply continue to operate with their current WLAN configurations.

If WLC **A** is not under full load, for example because some of "its" APs are switched off, then some of the searching APs could log on here. WLC **A** remains a "secondary" controller for these APs because it does not have their configuration profiles. If in this case one of the APs with an entry in the AP table of WLC **A** is switched on again, then **A** accepts this reactivated AP and, in exchange, it disconnects one of the backup-event APs.

If the APs are set up for standalone operation they will remain operational while searching for a backup WLC, and the WLAN clients can continue to use all of their functions.

13.14.5 Automatic search for alternative WLCs

As of LCOS 9.00, an AP no longer attempts to reconnect to the last known WLC in case of a disconnection. Instead, the AP searches in the network for an available WLC which corresponds to the criteria for the *Finding the ideal WLC*.

13.14.6 One-click backup of the SCEP-CA

In order to simplify the backup of the CA in the WLC, the device offers the option to generate a complete certificate record with a single action (one-click backup). This record makes it possible to completely back up and restore the CA and prevent certificate conflicts from occurring.

These conflicts can occur if you have downloaded the individual PKCS12 containers from the device separately and then reloaded: If the WLC has created a new CA in the meantime and has issued new certificates, the deviating CAs temporarily lead to authentication problems for the different services in LCOS. If you cannot wait until the individual services request new certificates, a manual resolution requires deleting the SCEP files from the LCOS file system and re-initialization of the SCEP clients. By reloading a one-click backup, on the other hand, LCOS performs the necessary steps automatically.

Creating a backup file

In order to create a certificate record, perform the action **Create PKCS12 backup files** under **Setup** > **Certificate** > **SCEP-CA** > **CA certificate**. This action generates a ZIP file within the LCOS file system that contains all necessary files. To protect the certificates and keys contained therein, the ZIP file is automatically protected with the device password, unless you enter another password. The ZIP file that was generated can then be downloaded, for example, in WEBconfig via **File management** > **Download certificate or file** > **SCEP-CA - One Click Backup**.

Reloading the backup file

In order to reload certificate records, load the saved ZIP file directly into the device using the passphrase. In WEBconfig, for example, this is done by selecting **File management** > **Upload certificate or file** > **SCEP-CA - One Click Backup**. Enable the option **Replace existing CA certificates** so that the device automatically restores the certificate record after the upload.

If you do not use this option, or if you upload the backup file to the device by other means, you must execute the action *2.39.2.2.11 Restore-certificates-from-Backup* in order for the device to restore the certificate record.

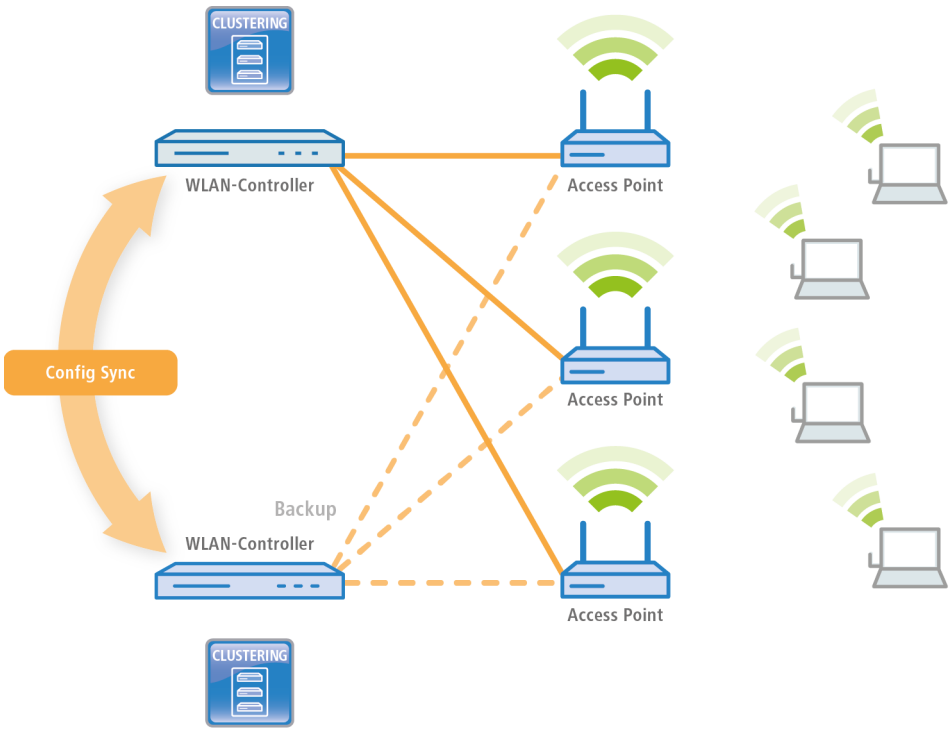
13.15 Automatic configuration synchronization (Config Sync) with the LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option

Example application, WLAN controllers:

WLAN infrastructures have become an integral part of modern corporate networks. In the age of the "all wireless office", the increasing demands on the availability of a WLAN solution make it essential to have a reliable backup and high-availability solution. In WLAN infrastructures with a single WLAN controller, any failures or maintenance downtimes (such as a firmware update) of the WLC until now caused the APs connected to it to switch to standalone operation. Consequently, the APs in standalone mode were no longer able to access the features that are provided centrally by the WLC such as a Public Spot, IEEE 802.1X authentication, or Layer-3 tunnels.

In order to avoid this and to maintain the full operation of all WLAN capabilities even if a WLC should be temporarily unavailable, one or more redundant or backup WLCs should be employed. In the backup event, the APs automatically switch from the temporarily unavailable WLC to a backup WLC. The backup WLC has the same configuration (e.g. AP table or WLAN profiles) as required by the primary WLC of the APs. The initial setup of the WLCs and any subsequent configuration changes must be carried out separately and identically on each device—a huge effort for the administrator. Manual maintenance of the configurations between multiple identical devices could lead to outdated or non-synchronous configurations on the backup WLCs, which in the case of a backup event could lead to a critical state for the entire WLAN infrastructure. The resulting troubleshooting usually turns out to be a real challenge. The users of the WLAN clients experience a loss of productivity, which could have major consequences company-wide.

New with the LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option: This software option allows multiple WLCs to be grouped into a highly-available cluster. In this way, configuration changes, features and enhancements made on one WLC are automatically transferred between the other WLCs in the cluster, without having to make manual changes on each individual device. Common parameters in a cluster (e.g. WLAN profiles, AP tables, or Public Spot settings) remain synchronized, individual parameters (such as the IP address of the WLC) are not exchanged.



The LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option offers greatly simplified administration and huge time savings because you only need to configure one WLC in the cluster. The WLC then transfers the changes to the other cluster devices automatically. In the case of maintenance downtime (e.g. for a firmware update) or even the failure of a WLC,

the APs automatically connect to another WLC which, thanks to Config Sync, already has the identical configuration without any intervention by the administrator. The result is a convenient way to high availability.

The prerequisites for a device to be a valid member of a cluster are:

- The LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option (as of LCOS version 9.10) must be available.
- IP communications must be available to all other devices, e.g. via LAN, WAN, or VPN.
- It must be in the list of group members that is stored in each device.
- A valid certificate must be available
- It needs to authenticate itself by certificate as a member of the cluster.

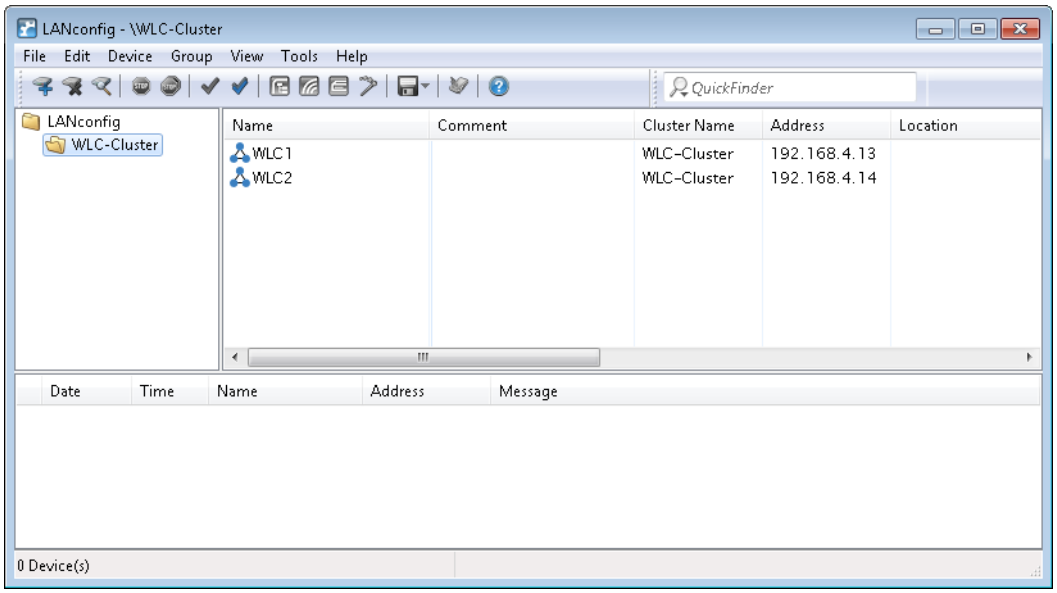
13.15.1 Special LANconfig icon for devices in a cluster or using Config Sync

LANconfig has a specific icon to mark devices that share their configuration via Config Sync. Furthermore, the **Config Cluster** column shows the configuration group for each device. LANconfig is thus able to sort and edit the device listing according to cluster name.

If you try to make changes to the configuration of a cluster member, you will receive following warning:

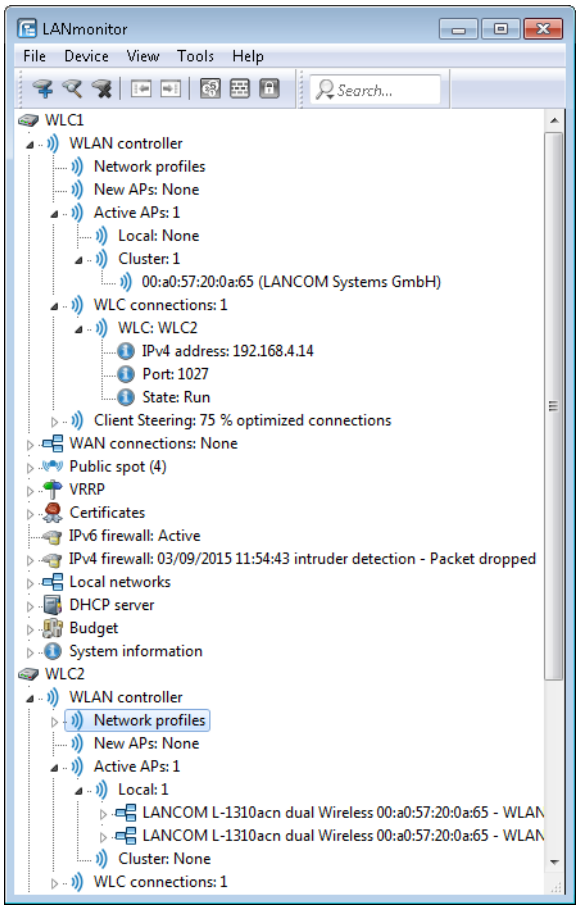
"This device belongs to the Config Cluster: [cluster name]. Editing this configuration also affects the following devices: [Listing of all devices in the same cluster]"

You can bypass this message if necessary. To do this, enable the option **Don't show again** in the displayed window.



13.15.2 Special LANmonitor icon for devices in a cluster or using Config Sync

LANmonitor has a specific icon to mark devices that share their configuration via Config Sync. Also, the name of the configuration group (cluster name) is shown after the device name. LANmonitor thus makes it easier to see which devices share the same configuration.



14 Public Spot

14.1 Introduction

This chapter provides answers to the following two questions:

- What is a Public Spot?
- Which functions and properties apply to the Public Spot module?

14.1.1 What is a Public Spot?

Public Spots, also called hotspots, are places where users can connect their terminals – such as smartphones, tablet PCs or laptops – to a publicly accessible network. Normally, these networks provide connections to the Internet; however a Public Spot can also be limited to a local network in order to offer extra information to users visiting a museum or a trade show, for example. The term is usually synonymous to the devices with which the user can connect to the network, which is also why this manual does not differentiate between the location and the device.

The solution: (W)LAN technology

Public Spot scenarios make use of the widespread (W)LAN technologies based on the internationally established IEEE 802.11/802.3 standards:

- Access via WLANs provides fast, uncomplicated network access by radio. WLAN adapters are standard equipment for mobile devices and they support bandwidths that even allow the smooth playback of HD videos.
- With automatic address allocation via DHCP, access via LAN is similarly uncomplicated: Most notebooks feature a LAN adapter for the network cable.

When accessing via LAN the user loses mobility and uninterrupted flexibility. However, this access – assuming that a corresponding infrastructure is available – also provides stable network operation with the highest network load (for example, for multimedia content such as video-on-demand) and a higher number of users (for example, in a large hotel), where connections via WLAN may reach their limits sooner. It is also possible to add a Public Spot offering to an existing cable infrastructure (for example, in a college) with the use of a Public Spot via LAN.

Noteworthy issues of access using (W)LAN

Operating conventional WLAN access points or LAN routers as a Public Spot is made more difficult by the fact that user authentication is only possible by RADIUS/802.1X, which requires a corresponding configuration. For this reason, the use of devices without the Public Spot function is not practical, since these devices are not able to separate and log the specific network usage of authorized and unauthorized users of publicly accessible networks.

User authorization and authentication

As soon as an end device moves within range of an access point, the user can spontaneously established a connect to this access point. The same is true for open LAN connections. However, the problem is that access should not be available to the public in general, but only to certain selected users. Setting up restrictions of this type is the task of a Public Spot.

For this purpose, a Public Spot must be in a position to control access to the (W)LAN on a user basis. For simple Public Spot installations, user data can be locally stored and managed in the router or access point – or alternatively on a WLAN controller. Instead, complex installations employ a direct database connection to a central authentication server in the interests of detailed accounting or direct management. Central servers of this type generally work with RADIUS technology.

Accounting

If the Public Spot operator does not want to offer this service free of charge, connection data has to be collected and billed for each user. Typical methods include: Purchase of a limited amount of online time (pre-paid model), retrospective payment of consumed resources (post-paid model), or unrestricted access until a certain time (e.g. checking out of a hotel).

For smaller Public Spot installations, accounting functions should be as simple as possible, and they should be implemented locally in the device. Larger installations offer the facilities for billing via an external RADIUS server. For each application scenario, the connection to an external system can also be implemented using a software interface which has access to the accounting data and can control the user authentication (e.g. hotel reservation systems).

Logging

The Public Spot module provides suitable functions for recording user data with RADIUS accounting and SYSLOG.

Please note that operating a Public Spot (also referred to as a hotspot) can be subject to legal regulations in your country. Before installing a Public Spot, please inform yourself about any applicable regulations. You can also find information about this topic in the LANCOM techpaper "Public Spot" which is available at *www.lancom-systems.com*.

14.1.2 Application scenarios

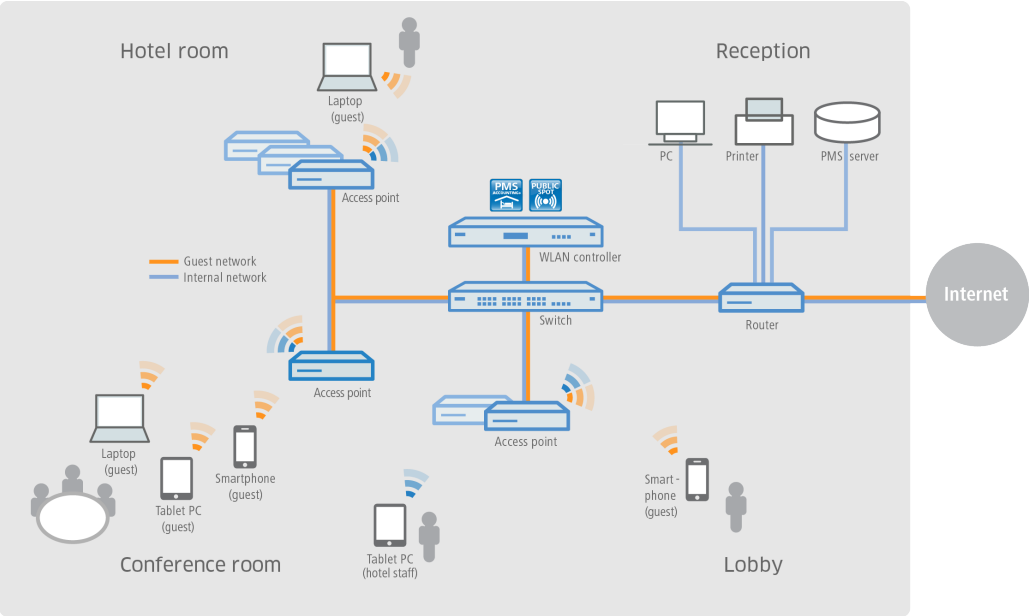
Guest access accounts in hotels

Wireless LAN makes it easier than ever for hotel operators to offer their guests convenient Internet access. Quick and easy to install, hotspot solutions from LANCOM enable guests to use their own laptop, tablet or smartphone to access the Internet via WLAN. Whether in the lobby, the conference room or in the hotel rooms—securely separated from the internal network, guest access can be provided anywhere it is desired.

The option LANCOM Public Spot PMS Accounting Plus is ideal for straightforward accounting: All Public Spot logins are automatically sent to the central PMS server where the hotel's accounting system is installed. In this way, guests can login to the hotspot using their room number and last name. For fee-based Internet access, the usage fees can be billed directly to the room. Needless to say, it is easy to set up free guest-access accounts in hotels, if desired.

- **Convenient setup and configuration** – a user-friendly setup and configuration wizard guarantees easy setup of the hotspot. For more details see the chapter *Basic installation of a Public Spot for simple scenarios* on page 1107.
- **No access by unauthorized persons to internal data** – secure separation of the in-house and guest networks within a single infrastructure is ensured with VLAN or Layer 3 tunneling. Also, data can be securely encrypted on the wireless interface so that guests cannot penetrate the hotel network over the WLAN. For more details see the chapter *Virtualization and guest access via WLAN controller with VLAN* on page 1014.
- **Simplified guest login on the WLAN** – The integrated Smart Ticket function ensures that the guest receives the login data for the Public Spot conveniently and automatically via text message (SMS) or e-mail. Alternatively, vouchers can also be printed out or guests can login with their room number and/or last name. For more details see the chapter *Alternative login methods* on page 1152.

- **Simple billing of fee-based Internet access** – with the addition of the LANCOM Public Spot PMS Accounting Plus option, it is possible to connect to hotel accounting systems such as Micros Fidelio. For more details see the chapter *Interface for property management systems* on page 1178.

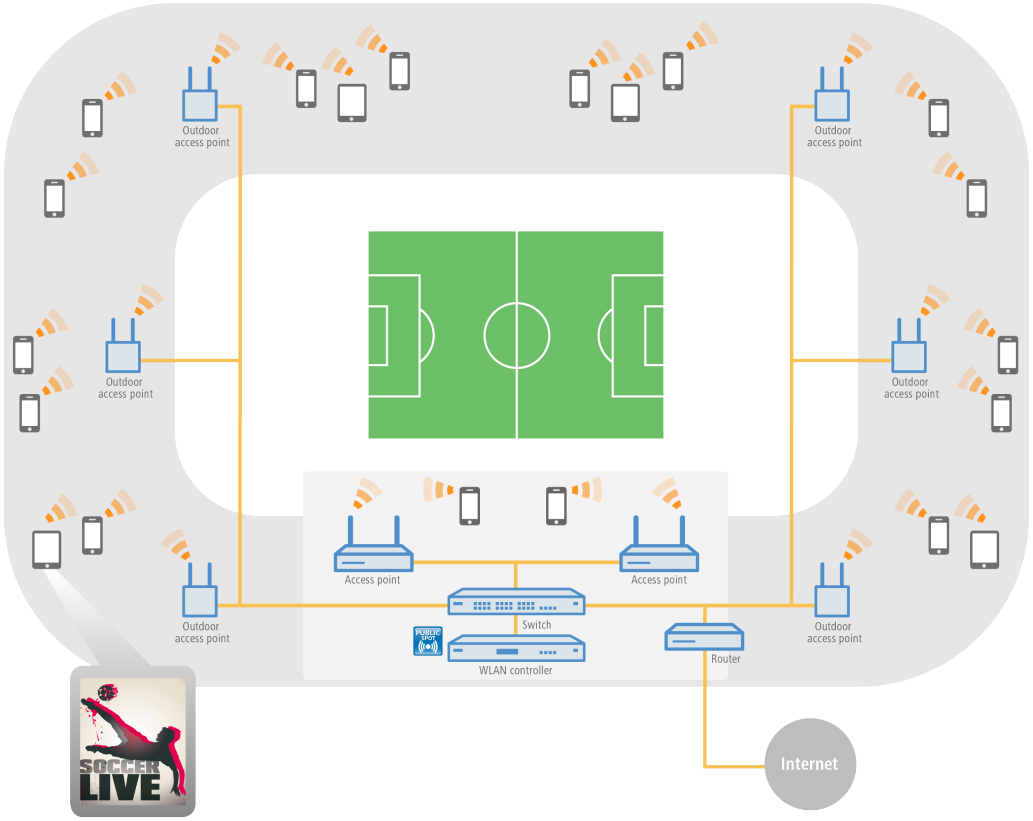


Guest access in sport arenas

Stadiums that host large sporting events increasingly offer a range of modern services. For example, they should allow very large numbers of spectators to use Internet access with their own end devices, for example to view live content about the event, or to surf online. In order to offer spectators an Internet connection that is faster than the overloaded cellular networks, a promising solution is to offload the data to the stadium Wi-Fi with the aid of LANCOM solutions. By connecting the clients to the stadium WLAN, the stadium operator has the possibility to create additional advertising space for sponsors—and thus additional sources of income. For example, the hotspot login page can be customized or sponsor websites can be invoked.

- **Multi-media fan experience** – with a WLAN Internet access, fans have the attractive option of watching current sports news live, and looking up information as well as watching replays.
- **New advertising spaces generate additional income** – additional, attractive advertising spaces can be made available to stadium operators by using the individual configuration options of the hotspot login page and also the configuration of pre-defined websites which do not require a login (walled garden function). For more details see the chapter *Open access networks (no login)* on page 1133.

- **Convenient setup and configuration** – a user-friendly setup and configuration wizard guarantees easy setup of the hotspot. For more details see the chapter *Basic installation of a Public Spot for simple scenarios* on page 1107.



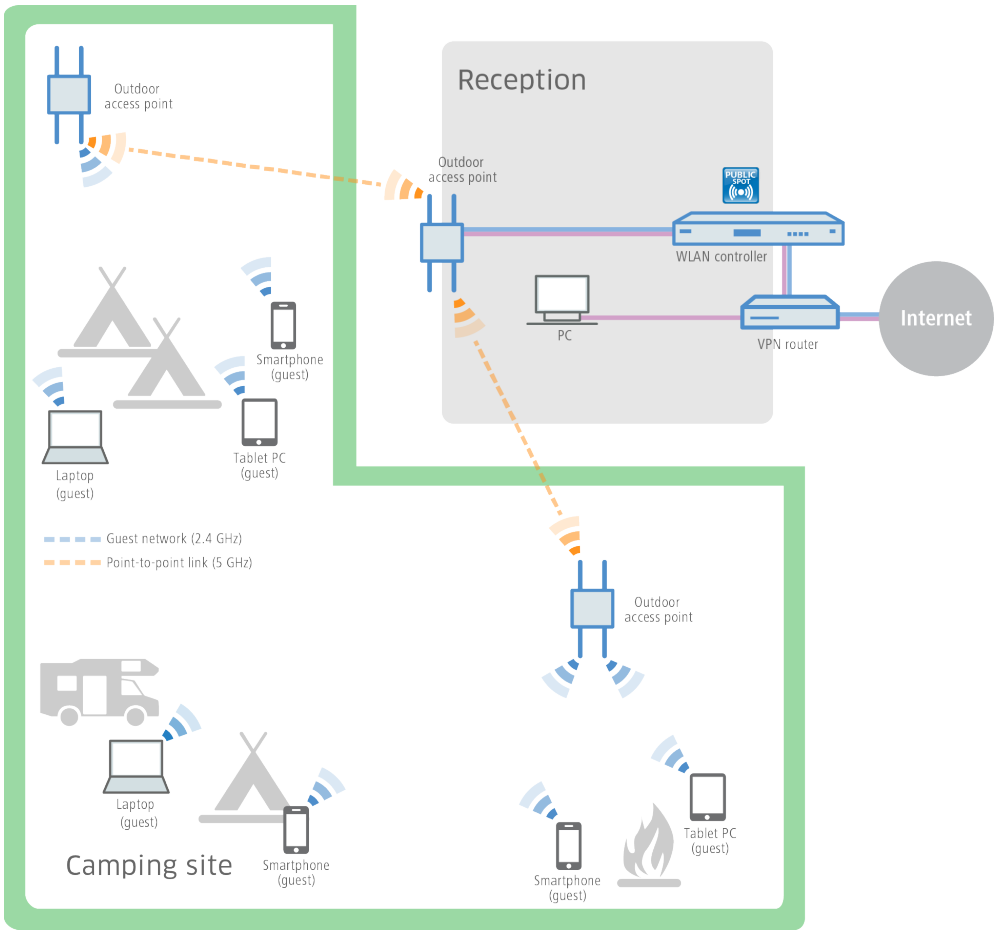
Guest access at camping grounds

Camping grounds are exposed to the weather and are often quite large. Nevertheless, people vacationing at modern camping grounds expect to have the convenience of Internet access from their own laptop, tablet or smartphone. Whether in a tent, a camper, or around the campfire, ubiquitously available Internet access is a real competitive advantage for camping ground operators.

With the robust, weather-proof outdoor devices from LANCOM and the LANCOM Public Spot option, even these demanding scenarios are implemented with ease—and without the laborious and costly need to lay cables. For example, in administration buildings for camping grounds, a WLAN controller (incl. LANCOM Public Spot option) is connected to a LANCOM dual-radio outdoor access point. This sends the signal via point-to-point connections in the 5-GHz frequency band to further outdoor access points, which provide WLAN coverage in the 2.4-GHz frequency band to the desired areas—such as campsites or recreational areas for guests. The secure separation of the guest and administrative networks is assured throughout, thanks to VLAN assignment.

- **Online convenience without laying cables** – even in wide-open areas, guests can be connected to the Internet without a costly and complicated installation.
- **Convenient setup and configuration** – a user-friendly setup and configuration wizard guarantees easy setup of the hotspot. For more details see the chapter *Basic installation of a Public Spot for simple scenarios* on page 1107.
- **Simplified guest access** – The integrated Smart Ticket function ensures that the client receives the login data for the Public Spot conveniently and automatically via text message (SMS) or e-mail. Or as an alternative, vouchers can be printed out. For more details see the chapter *Alternative login methods* on page 1152.

- **Reliable even in extreme conditions** – thanks to the robust IP66 outdoor housing and an extended temperature range, LANCOM outdoor devices are reliable and defy even extreme weather conditions from -33° to +70°C.



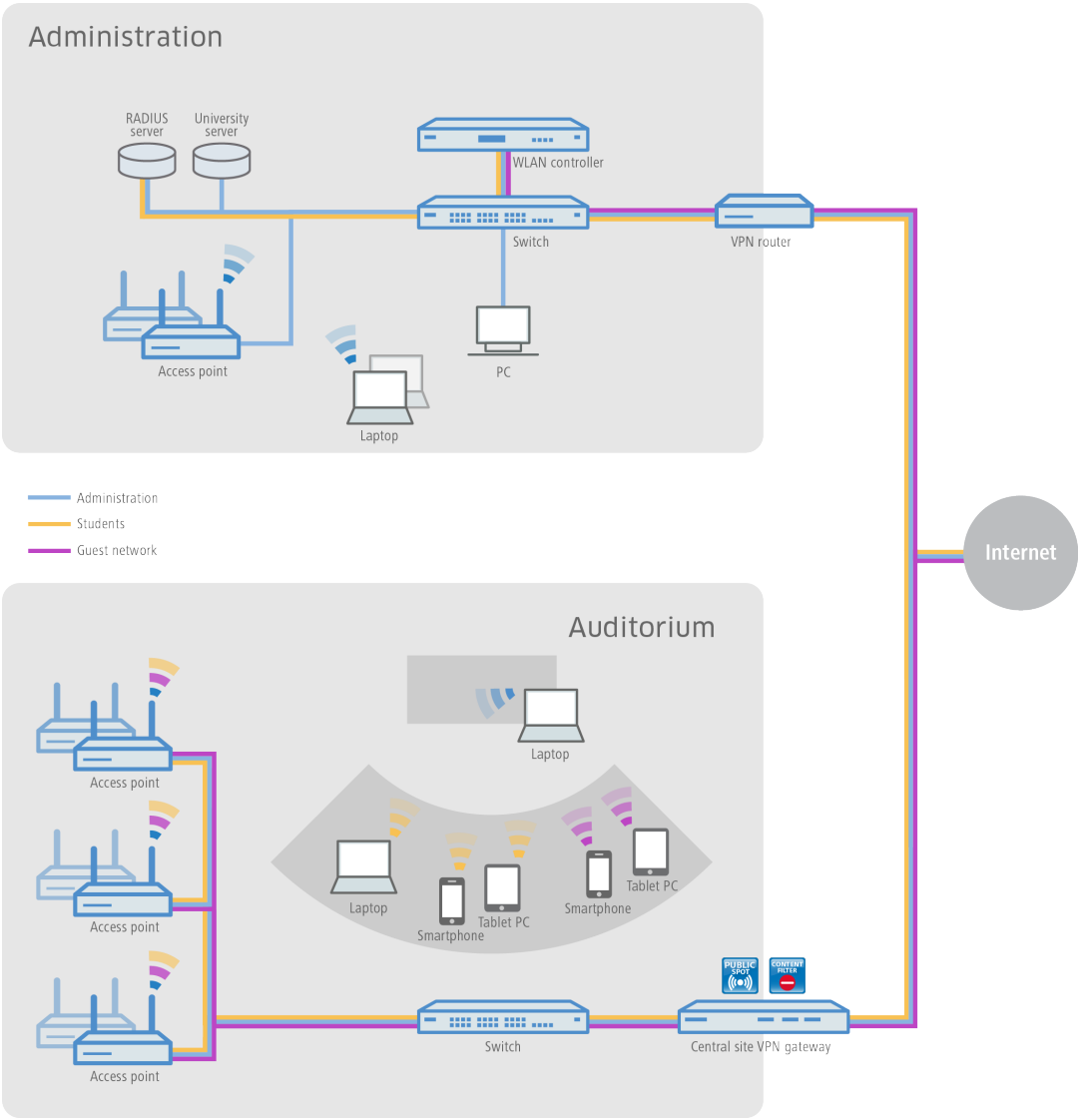
Guest access in schools and universities

Researching at home, learning for tests, preparing classes, or interactive design: The potential of Internet usage for students and pupils as well as teachers and staff of modern schools and universities is indispensable today—including at isolated buildings, preferably wireless, and with the users' own end devices.

With the help of LANCOM WLAN solutions, this is easy to implement. By configuring separate networks, the Internet access of the pupils and students is securely separated from the administrative access. Thanks to dynamic VLAN access, the different user groups are assigned to the VLANs that are intended for them, using just one SSID. For example, only staff have access to the university servers. At the same time, school and university students have the convenience of an extensive WLAN guest access, which is so important these days. The authentication in the pupil and student networks (e.g., Eduroam) can be implemented with IEEE 802.1X. This makes it possible for guest students from partner universities to connect to the WLAN of the host university. And even conference guests can be provided with a temporary guest access by means of a voucher.

- **Secure login for university affiliates** – professors, students and staff of universities can have access to the Internet and various online libraries over the securely encrypted WLAN.
- **No access by unauthorized persons to internal data** – secure separation of the administrative, students', and professors' and guests' networks within a single infrastructure is ensured with VLAN or Layer 3 tunneling. For more details see the chapter *Virtualization and guest access via WLAN controller with VLAN* on page 1014.
- **No misuse of the network** – with the LANCOM Content Filter, professional, database-supported verification of websites is performed. Undesirable websites or web content can be made inaccessible to specified user groups.

- **Comfortable, cable-free Internet access** – even in large open areas, guests have Internet access with their WLAN-enabled end devices without a costly and complicated installation.



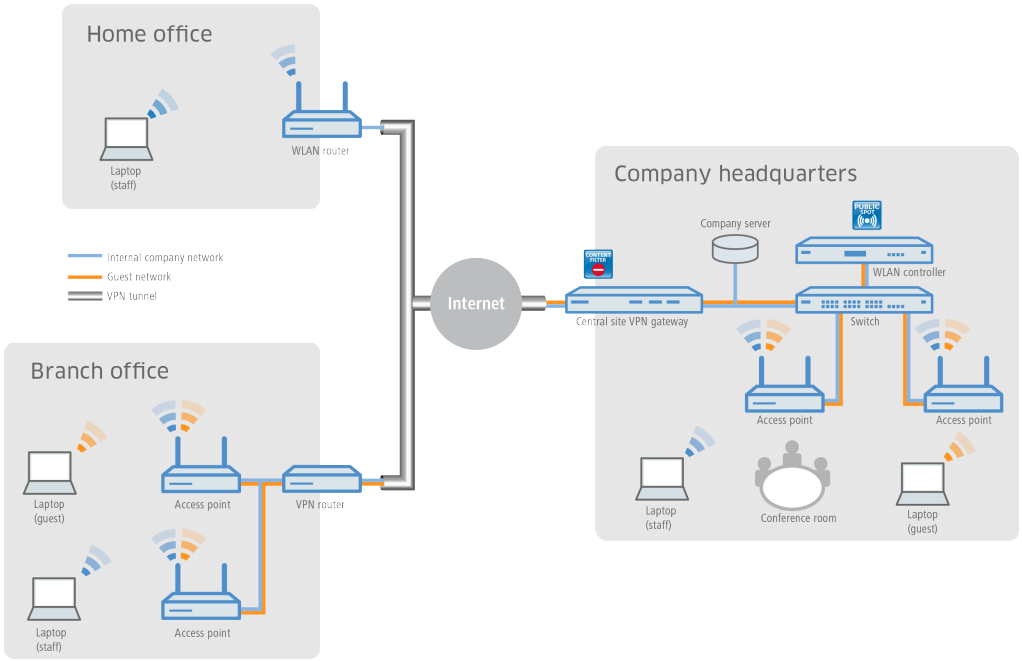
Guest access in companies

At any company with a complex network structure, the flexibility and stability of Internet access is vitally important. Branch offices must have cross-site access to the company network, and home office employees also need access to e-mail accounts and databases. In addition, customers and visitors should be offered a separate guess access.

With devices from LANCOM and the LANCOM Public Spot option, these scenarios are easy to implement. The sites are connected using a VPN tunnel. Companies can provide access to the Internet for their external guests on their own mobile devices ("Bring Your Own Device") using a separate guest network in the company main office and even at networked branch offices. Access to the company's internal data is reserved for authorized employees only.

- **Secure separation of company and guest networks** – the secure separation of employee and guess networks within a single infrastructure is achieved by using VLAN or a Layer 3 tunnel. This keeps internal data safe from unauthorized access. For more details see the chapter *Virtualization and guest access via WLAN controller with VLAN* on page 1014.
- **User-friendly setup and configuration** – a LANCOM WLAN controller allows different user profiles to be defined and configurations to be uploaded to the different WLAN devices – including those at remote sites.

- **Easy guest access** – using vouchers, it is a simple task for your reception desk to provide guests with login data for the Public Spot so that they can use their own mobile clients ("Bring Your Own Device"). In this way, only registered users have access to the Internet and e-mail.
- **No misuse of the network** – with the LANCOM Content Filter, professional, database-supported verification of websites is performed. Undesirable websites or web content can be made inaccessible to specified user groups.



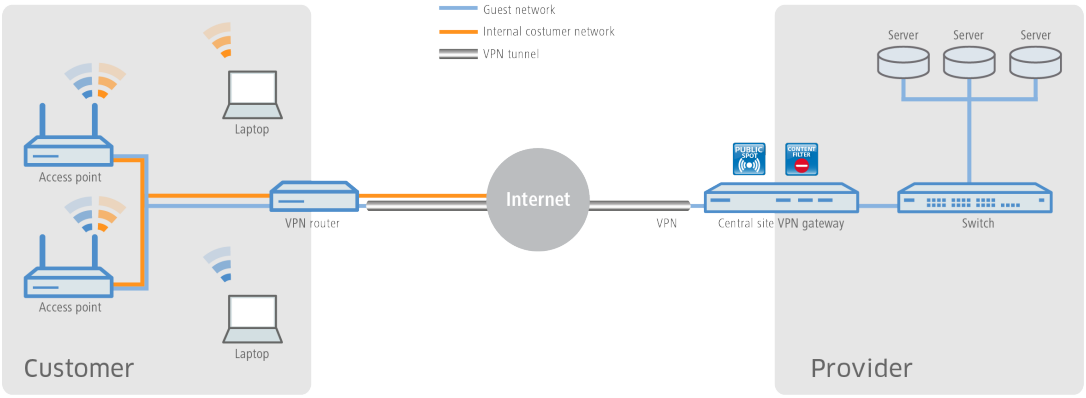
Guest access for providers

With the solutions from LANCOM, it is very easy for Internet providers to offer their customers a network with guest access. The provider receives all necessary network products from one source, LANCOM, and manages the networks of its clients centrally and conveniently—without a technician on site.

For the implementation, LANCOM access points are installed behind a LANCOM VPN router at the site of the provider's client (for example, a hotel, hospital or business). A separate internal network is given direct Internet access. The guest access is provided over a secure VPN tunnel to the central-site VPN gateway at the provider, who can log incoming requests on their internal servers. With the LANCOM Content Filter, the provider can also limit or block access to undesirable or illegal websites for customer guest-access accounts.

- **Simple and central management and roll-out** – even without a technician on site, the provider can centrally monitor and configure the networks for the customer. For more details see the chapter *Basic installation of a Public Spot for simple scenarios* on page 1107.
- **Different redirect options** – network separation means that the hotspot services can be designed and implemented in various ways. For example, services offered to end customers can be limited to hotspot administration only, or they can include full-service administration, whereby all data traffic from the end customer is forwarded to the provider via a tunnel.
- **Connection of proprietary AAA systems** – LANCOM provides different interfaces (RADIUS, XML, FIAS) which can be combined with proprietary AAA servers. Custom authentication and login to the hotspot, as well as accounting, can be implemented specific to each provider. For more details see the chapter *Alternative login methods* on page 1152.
- **Multi-provider support** – LANCOM devices are not locked into access via a specific provider. Hotspot service providers who cooperate with different providers can combine their software solutions over a variety of interfaces with the help of LANCOM devices. For more details see the chapter *Alternative login methods* on page 1152.
- **No misuse of the network** – with the LANCOM Content Filter, professional, database-supported verification of websites is performed. Undesirable websites or web content can be made inaccessible to specified user groups.

- **Data offloading** – WLAN hotspots can provide effective relief for cellular networks by offloading data traffic to different infrastructures.

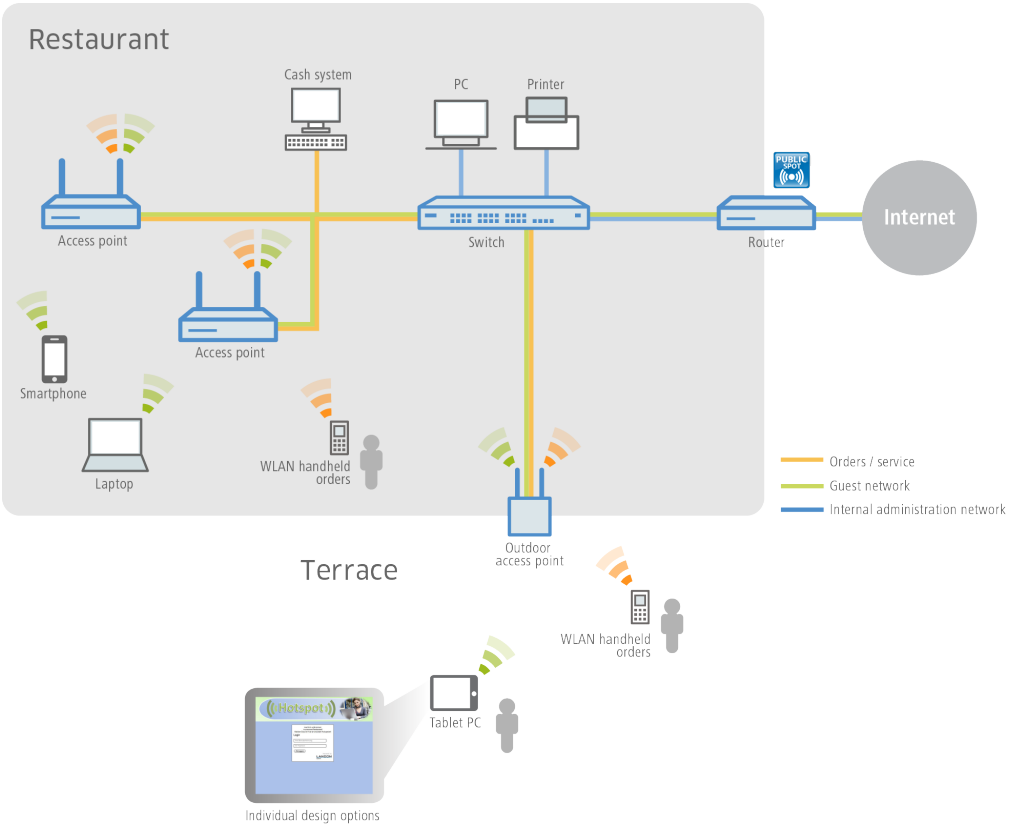


Guest access in gastronomy

Providing guests in a modern restaurant or café with a hotspot can significantly increase the appeal of any location. With the WLAN solutions from LANCOM, visitors benefit from a WLAN guest network in that they can make convenient use of the Internet with their mobile smartphones, tablet PCs or laptops—while being securely and completely separated from the internal administrative network. For a significant increase in efficiency in work processes, wait staff also have the option of taking orders with the help of a WLAN-enabled hand-held device, and transmitting the order directly to the checkout system, kitchen, or drink serving station. Needless to say, WLAN access for the guests and for taking orders can also be made available on the patio or outdoor areas of the restaurant, since a robust LANCOM outdoor access point is ideal for outdoor areas.

- **Customizable and flexible creative leeway** – whether with proprietary logos, texts or images—the welcome page of the Public Spot can be easily tailored to your own requirements. Even displaying pre-defined websites is possible (walled garden feature), so that, for example, the menu of the restaurant or its own website is shown to the guest without a prior login to the hotspot by the guest. For more details see the chapter *Internal and customized voucher and authentication pages (templates)* on page 1182.
- **No access by unauthorized persons to internal data** – secure separation of the networks within a single infrastructure is ensured with VLAN or Layer 3 tunneling. For more details see the chapter *Virtualization and guest access via WLAN controller with VLAN* on page 1014.
- **Convenient setup and configuration** – a user-friendly setup and configuration wizard guarantees the easy setup of hotspots. For more details see the chapter *Basic installation of a Public Spot for simple scenarios* on page 1107.

› **Simplified guest access** – The integrated Smart Ticket function ensures that guests receive their login data for the Public Spot conveniently and automatically via text message (SMS) or e-mail. Or as an alternative, vouchers can be printed out. For more details see the chapter *Alternative login methods* on page 1152.



14.1.3 Overview of the Public Spot module

The demands placed on devices operating Public Spots are as varied as the environments they are employed in. A Public Spot offers various functions which are described in more detail in the following sections.

Open User Authentication (OUA)

Open User Authentication (OUA) provides Web-based authentication by means of an online form and is ideal for Public Spot installations.

Typical procedure for an online session with OUA

1. The user of a W(LAN)-enabled end device is within reach of an access point or a network outlet in a Public Spot mode.

   › WLAN: After system startup, the WLAN adapter automatically logs on to the appropriate access point.
   › LAN: After system startup the user connects to the network with a suitable cable and is assigned an address by the DHCP server.

   Internet access or the use of chargeable services is not yet possible at this stage.
2. The user starts a web browser. The device offering the Public Spot service automatically directs the user to the login page of the Public Spot. This page provides detailed information on using the services.

   Alternatively, the user's client device automatically performs captive portal detection and presents the login page of the Public Spot immediately after associating with the WLAN.

Generally, the user purchases a voucher with login data that grants a limited amount of access time. Other login methods are also possible, such as login after confirming the provider's terms of use or independently requesting login data via e-mail or a text message (SMS).

3. In the case of a login using a voucher, the user enters his login data (username and password) on the login page. Depending on the configuration, the RADIUS server on the device (internal) or an external one checks the login data that was entered. If the login is successful, the user gains access to the Public Spot. Otherwise an error message will be displayed. If a prepaid model is employed, i.e. access is to be granted for a limited period of time only, then the RADIUS server additionally informs the Public Spot about the user's time credit.
4. The user can log off from the Public Spot at any time. The Public Spot can terminate a session itself if the time credit has expired, if a specified expiry date is reached, or if contact is lost for an extended period.

   During and at the end of a session the Public Spot provides the user with an overview of the session data. If required, the Public Spot can simultaneously transmit all important accounting information to the RADIUS server. This can be the device's internal server or an external server.

Security in the (W)LAN

Wireless LANs are potentially a significant security risk. Public Spots present similar risks to the operator and users.

Security for the operator

Operators of Public Spots are primarily interested in the security of their own network infrastructure. A Public Spot module provides operators with a range of security technologies and methods:

- **Multi-SSID** (only WLAN)**, VLAN and virtual routers**
  - The safe separation of public access can be achieved using one or more different radio cells for an access point (Multi-SSID).
  - VLAN technology can separate public access from the private network of the operator.
  - Virtual routing technology ARF (Advanced Routing and Forwarding) from LANCOM Systems supplies one SSID with its own security and QoS settings and only specific destinations are routed on it.

  This ensures that guest access over a Public Spot is securely and effectively separated from the productive network, even though they share the same infrastructure. The device's internal firewall can, for example, limit the available bandwidth in the WAN to max. 50 %, and access can be restricted to web pages (HTTP, port 80) and name resolutions (UDP 53).

  Further information on Multi-SSID, VLANs and ARF is available in the LCOS Reference Manual.

- **Traffic limit**

  To avoid denial-of-service (DoS) and brute-force attacks on the Public Spot you can restrict the permissible data transfer for non-authenticated Public Spot participants to a harmless volume.

- **Locking access to the configuration**

  You can lock access from your Public Spot network to device configurations (e.g., your access points, WLAN controllers or routers) so that access to configurations is only possible using other specified management interfaces.

Security for the user

The primary security concern for users of Public Spots is the confidentiality of their data. Users are also interested in security of user data to avoid misuse. Users are protected by the following security technologies:

- **Intra-cell blocking** (WLAN Only)

  Prevent communication between the WLAN clients in your Public Spot network. Along with the user's existing security mechanisms, this measure helps to prevent unauthorized access to the resources of your Public Spot users.

- **Encryption during the login phase**

If you have a digital certificate, you can load it on your device in order to secure usernames and passwords using an encrypted HTTPS method. The digital certificate should be signed by a recognized public authority so that browsers classify it as trustworthy and do not display security errors to the users. If there is no certificate, data is sent unencrypted.

The certificate merely secures the login process, as the data within a Public Spot network are normally not encrypted. This is true for LAN as well as WLAN connections. If your users wish to secure their regular data traffic as well, they will have to use their own encryption methods.

An exception to this are the WLAN connections via HotSpot 2.0: Since the HotSpot 2.0 standard is based on WPA2 (802.1X/802.11i), EAP and 802.11u, data packets are always encrypted for transmission, both for authentication and during the session.

LANCOM strongly recommends that sensitive user data should only ever be transferred via encrypted connections, such as the IPSec-based VPN tunnel with the LANCOM Advanced VPN Client or over normal encrypted data connections based on HTTPS. In addition to this, Public Spot users should ensure that a personal firewall is active on their end devices.

Setup wizard for Public Spots

The **Setup Public Spot** wizard helps you to setup and perform the initial configuration of your Public Spot. You can set up a functional Public Spot network with just a few clicks. The wizard groups the necessary settings together (e.g. assign an interface, choose an IP range, specify the access format and login procedure, logging) and offers you the option to create an administrator with limited rights who can only create and manage Public Spot users.

Wizard for creating and managing users

Using the setup wizard **Create Public Spot account** you can use WEBconfig to create temporary accesses to the Public Spot network with just a few clicks of the mouse. In the simplest case, you only need to enter the duration of access, the wizard assigns the username and password automatically and stores the credentials in the user database of the internal RADIUS server. The user receives a printed, personalized voucher, which the user can immediately use to login to the Public Spot network for the specified period.

Alternatively, a stock of vouchers can be created and printed out to speed up the voucher issue at peak times or to allow employees without access to the device to issue vouchers. In this case the Public Spot account is created with an online time duration that starts when the user logs in for the first time. You also set a maximum validity period for the access. After this time, the Public Spot automatically deletes the access account, even if the online time was not used up yet.

The setup wizard **Manage Public Spot account** displays all registered Public-Spot access accounts in a table on a web page. This gives you an overview of your most important user data, as well as a user-friendly way to extend or reduce the validity of an access account with a single click, or even delete user accounts completely. In addition, the administrator can call up information about the user account using the wizard, such as the password in cleartext, the authentication status, the IP address, the sent/received data volume or any restrictions that apply to the user account.

If several administrators are involved with the management of Public Spot accounts, you have the option of restricting the accounts that are displayed to those created by the respective administrator. As a result, the overview table only displays those accounts that were created by the administrator who is currently logged-in.

This restriction has no effect if an administrator account has a full name that is a part of the other administrator account names. "PSpot_Admin" for example sees the entries made by "PSpot_Admin1" and "PSpot_Admin2". "PSpot_Admin" acts as a super-admin in this scenario. All other administrators ("PSpot_AdminX"), however, do not see the entries made by the others.

14.2 Setup and operation

This chapter contains the main information required for setting up and operating a Public Spot.

- **1) step: Basic configuration**

  First, we describe the basic configuration. After completing the basic configuration, the Public Spot is operational and preconfigured for a simple application scenario (login using voucher).

- **2nd step: Security settings**

  This chapter describes in detail the security settings that impede attacks on your Public Spot network and promote stable operation. If you have not already made these settings during previous setup steps, you should pay close attention to the following pages.

- **3rd step: Extended functions and settings**

  Finally, we review the wide variety of available extended functions and settings. Detailed descriptions inform you on how to individually adapt your device to its task and its environment. In addition, this chapter informs you on how to keep an overview of the status and activities of your Public Spot.

Please note that operating a Public Spot (also referred to as a hotspot) can be subject to legal regulations in your country. Before installing a Public Spot, please inform yourself about any applicable regulations. You can also find information about this topic in the LANCOM techpaper "Public Spot" which is available at *www.lancom-systems.com*.

14.2.1 Basic configuration

The instructions for the basic settings are divided into several separate sections:

- The first section describes the setup of an operational Public Spot using a Wireless Router as an example.

  To set up a Public Spot for a simple application scenario, you can start the corresponding wizard, which assists you in configuring the Public Spot.

- The second section describes the configuration of the default values for the user wizard with which new employees can easily create and manage new Public Spot users without the need for general administrator rights. This also includes creating a limited access account with which your employees can access this wizard only.
- The third section describes user administration on the local RADIUS server, either using the user wizard or manually with LANconfig.

To a certain extent these sections are dependent on one another, and ideally you should work through them in sequence.

Basic installation of a Public Spot for simple scenarios

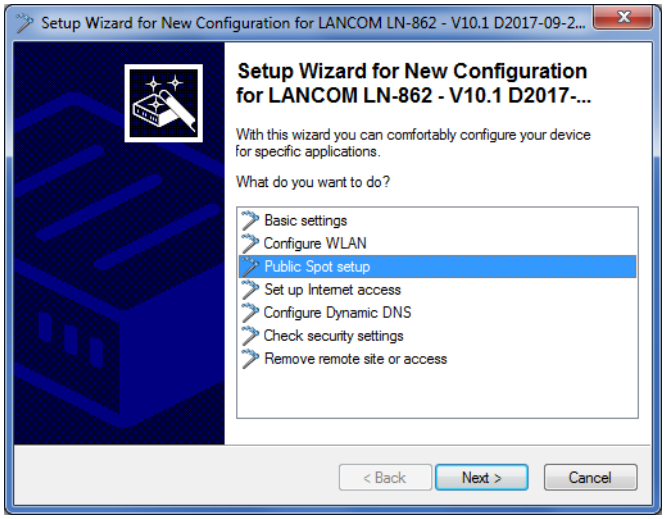
Installation using the setup wizards

The following tutorial describes how to use LANconfig's Public Spot setup wizard to perform a basic Public Spot installation.

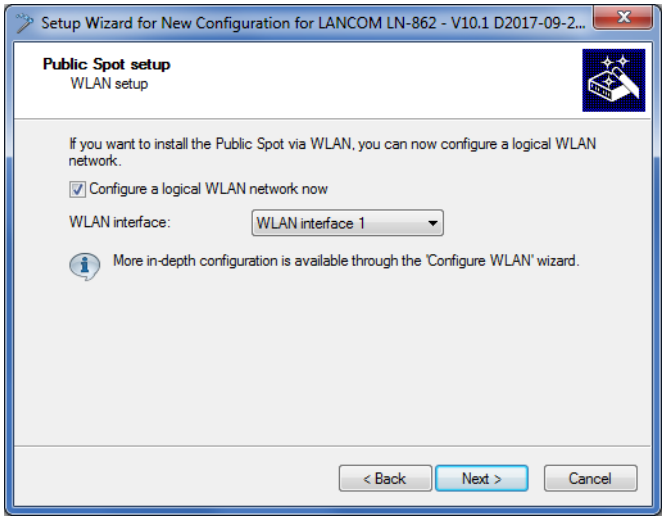
The wizard for the basic configuration of the Public Spot shows different dialogs depending on the device type and your previous choices. This tutorial is only an example.

1. To do this, start LANconfig and select the device on which you wish to set up the Public Spot, for example, an access point.

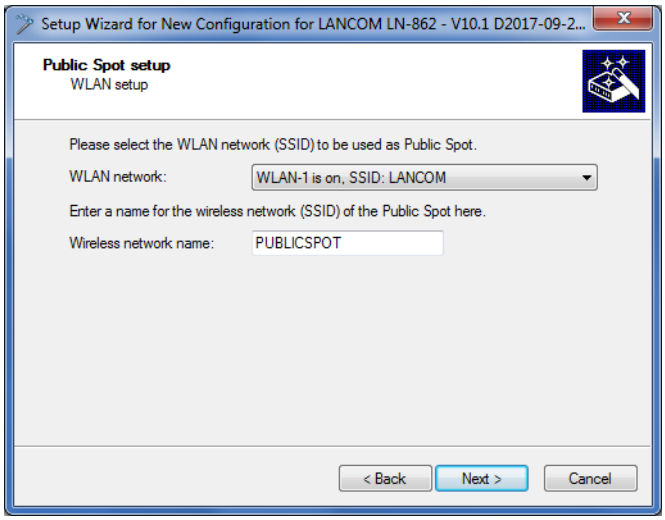
2. Start the Setup Wizard with **Device** > **Setup wizard**, select the action **Setup Public Spot** and then click **Next**.



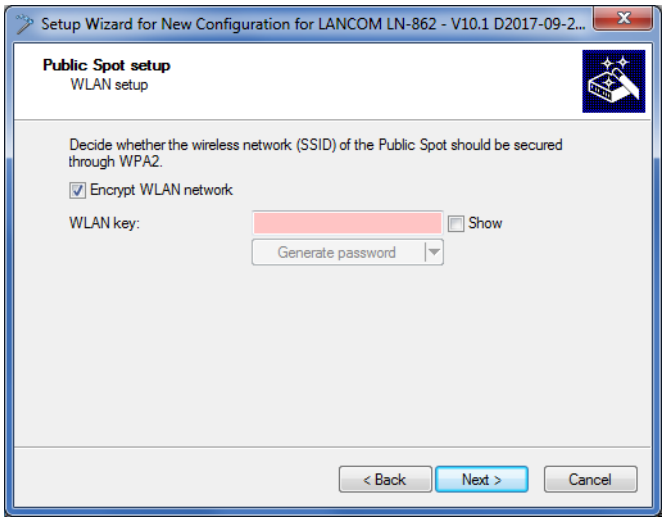
3. If you want the Public Spot to be available over WLAN, enable the corresponding option and then click **Next**.



4. Select the logical interface from the drop-down menu which the Public Spot should offer (e.g., WLAN-1), and enter a descriptive name for the wireless network (PUBLICSPOT). Click on **Next**.

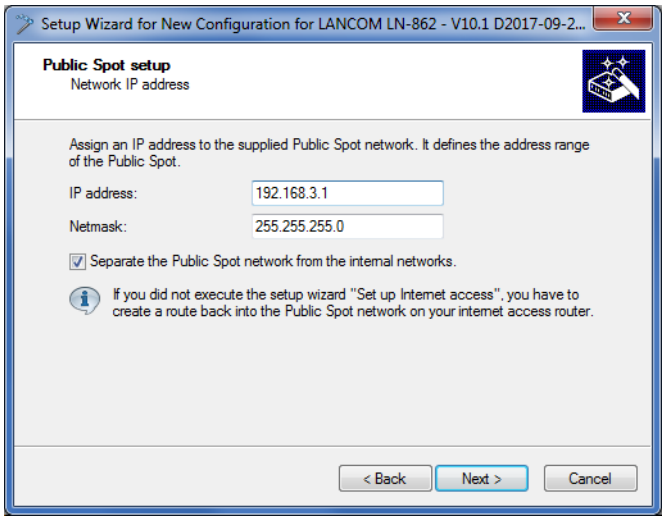


5. Specify whether the wireless network should be encrypted. In this case, specify a WLAN key or have it generated automatically.



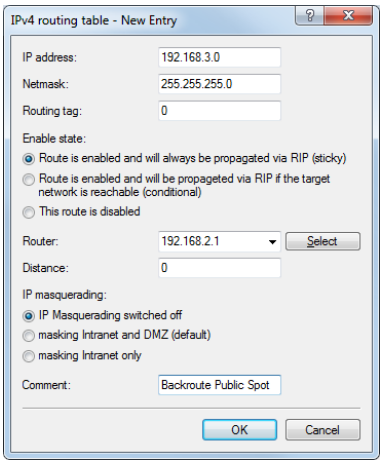
6. Assign the IP address and netmask to the device that your Public Spot network should specify and click **Next**.
   The Public Spot module has its own address on your network, which is independent from the address that you assigned to your device. For example, if you have a 192.168.0.0/24 network set up and your device has the IP address 192.168.2.1, you can assign the IP address `192.168.3.1` and the subnet mask `255.255.255.0`, as long as this IP address has not already been used elsewhere.

If you want to separate the Public Spot network from internal networks for security reasons, make sure that the corresponding option is enabled.



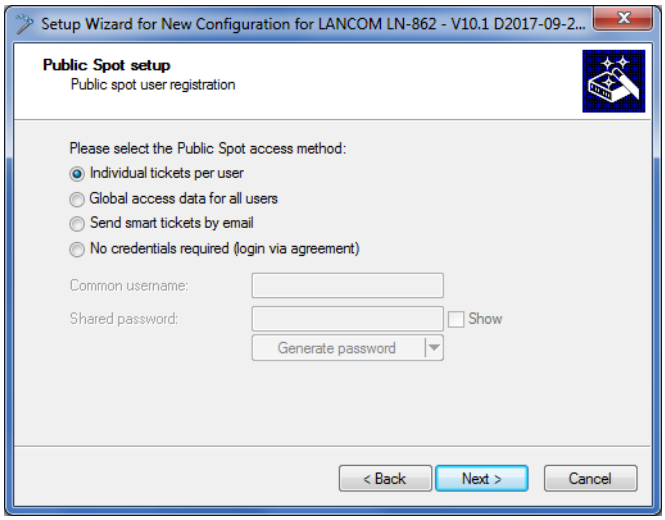
If your device is not directly connected to the Internet and you have a different address range for your Public Spot, you must set up a return route to your Public Spot network on your Internet gateway. If there is no return route, Public Spot users will see an HTTP error after they have successfully authenticated.

Please find the directions on how to set up a return route, in the documentation for your Internet gateway. In LANconfig you configure this under **IP router** > **Routing** > **IPv4 routing table**. To do this, create a new entry and enter the network address of your Public Spot network under **IP Address** and under **Router** enter the address of the Public Spot in your local network.

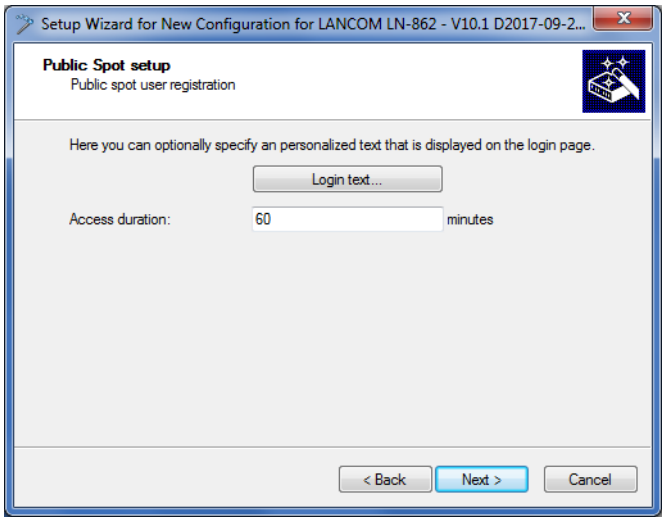


7. Specify which login data your users are to use to login to the Public Spot. Also, you can optionally add customized text to the login page. To continue, click on **Next**.

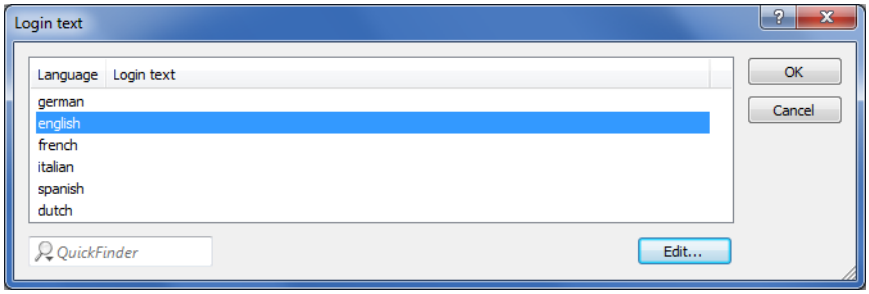
You can either give each user their own login data or set up a general account that all users use to access the Public Spot. If you issue vouchers later and would like to set up permanent user accounts, select the option **Individual tickets per guest**.

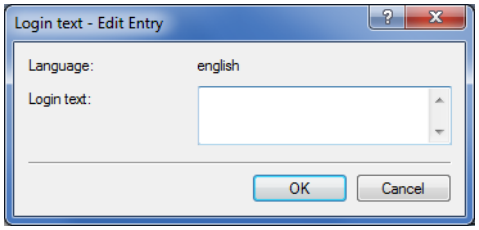


8. Here you can optionally select a login text, you set the access time and click **Next**.



Login text (optional):



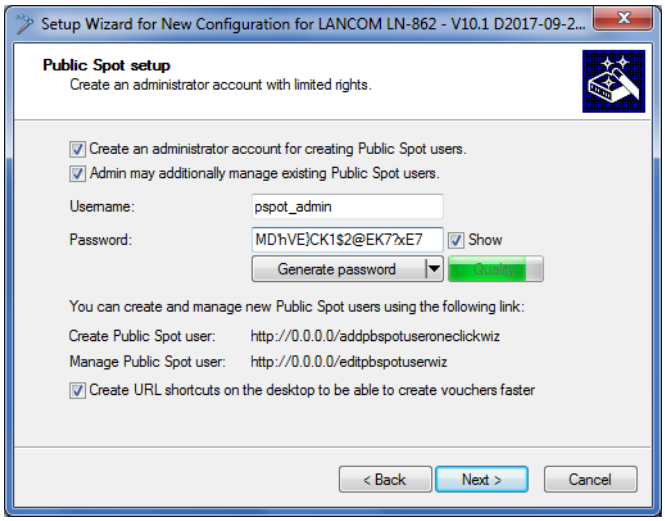


The login text is a customized text entered in HTML format, which appears on the login page inside the box on the registration form. You can manually add or edit this text at a later time (see the section *Customized text or login title for the login page* on page 1185).

9. If necessary, create an administrator with limited rights who can use the setup wizards in WEBconfig to create and manage Public Spot users. To continue, click on **Next**.
This type of administrator is useful when you want your employees to be able to manage user accounts themselves without the help of a device administrator. The right to create new accounts in WEBconfig enables the Create Public Spot account wizard, and administrator rights enable the Manage Public Spot account wizard.

   Using the user creation wizard **Create Public Spot account**, the administrator has the option of creating time-limited accounts for Public Spot users and print the corresponding login data on a voucher.

   The **Manage Public Spot accounts** wizard enable the administrator to manage the users. The administrator can extend or reduce the validity period of access, or completely delete a specific user account. In addition, the administrator can call up information about the user account using the wizard, such as the password in cleartext, the authentication status, the IP address, the sent/received data volume or any restrictions that apply to the account.

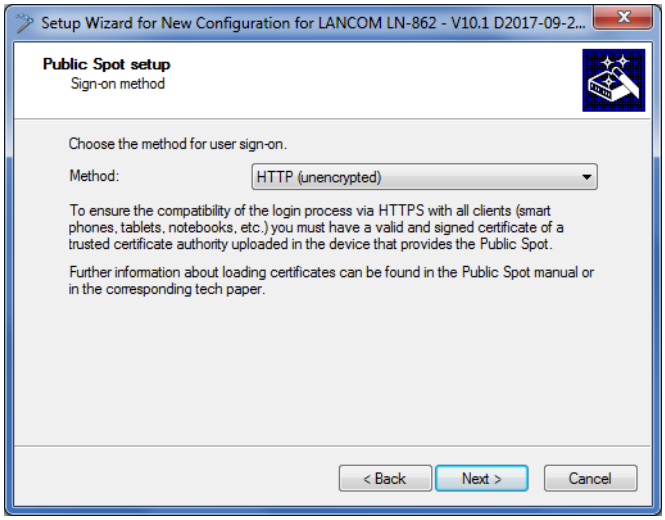


Make sure that the password you create is secure. The Setup Wizard will check the quality of the password you enter. For passwords that are not secure the input field appears in red, when it is more secure it changes to yellow, and when it is very secure the background turns green.

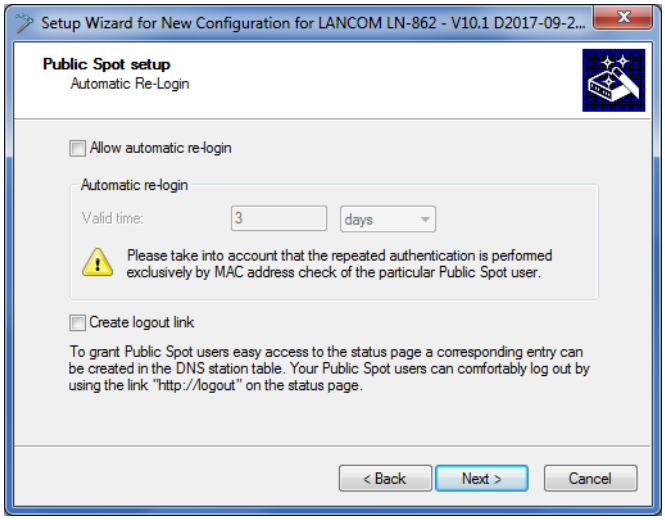
10. Select the procedure for user login. To continue, click on **Next**.

    You can select **HTTP** or **HTTPS** in the drop-down list. Using a connection with HTTPS provides a secure connection for Public Spot users.

    The use of HTTPS requires the installation of a suitable server certificate. Otherwise the user is presented the device's own certificate, which would cause the browser to issue a certificate warning.

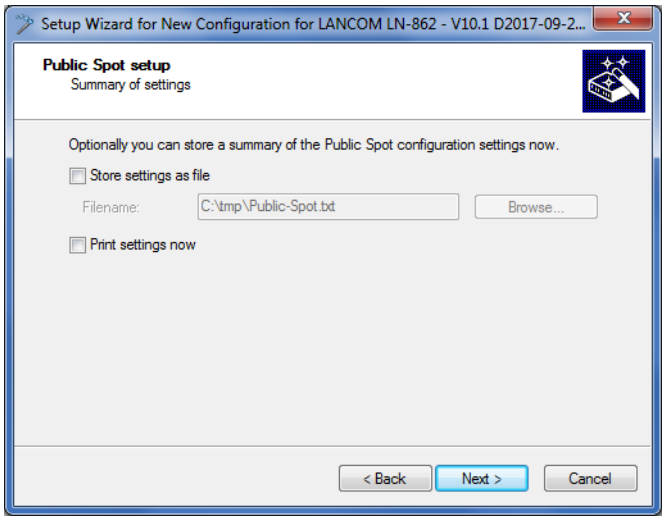


11. Determine whether automatic re-login is allowed for all Public-Spot users, and the maximum absence that is allowed before the user must login again on the Public Spot webpage. To continue, click on **Next**.
    The **Automatic re-login** option is a convenience option that allows the Public Spot to automatically authenticate known users or devices. However, if known devices are to be recognized exclusively from the MAC address of the network adapter, the fact that MAC addresses can be falsified represents a potential security risk. For this reason this option is disabled by default.



12. Save your changes if necessary.

Before you save the configuration to your device, you have the option to save the configuration locally on your PC or to print a summary.



13. The click **Next** and finally **Finish** to complete the basic installation of the Public Spot. The Setup Wizard will now send the settings to the device.

That's it! You have completed configuration of your Public Spot module! Now, if you come within range of a Public Spot with a WLAN-capable device, the device can find the SSID that you set up as a public network and login to it.

Manual installation

The following configuration steps show you how to manually setup a Public Spot for simple scenarios. For the application scenario described here, you enable the Public Spot on an interface over which there is no other data traffic other than the Public Spot traffic – where Public Spot and normal WLAN users do not share the same network (dedicated SSID).

This tutorial is only an example. Depending on the device type (access point, WLAN controller, etc.) or complexity of the network configuration (e.g., use of VLAN or ARF), setting up a Public Spot may require different or additional steps. Since this type of network configuration can be highly customized, this tutorial concentrates specifically on a simple example, so that you can adapt the steps as needed.

1. To do this, start LANconfig and select the device on which you wish to set up the Public Spot, for example, an access point. Next, open the configuration menu for the device.
2. Check that the time is correct.

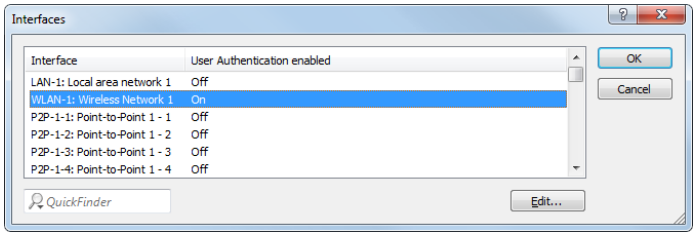
   To check the certificates and correctly record and bill session data, it is important for the Public Spot's time setting to be accurate. First make settings such as time zone and time changes (summer and standard time):

   > LANconfig: **Date/time** > **General**

   In order to ensure that the time of the Public Spot remains correct, the device should be set up as an NTP client. Enter the time server that is necessary for that under **Date/Time** > **Synchronization** > **Time server**. Open the "Add" window to show a list of possible server addresses.
3. Select the interfaces for the Public Spot operation.

   Here you activate the interfaces which will be available to registered users. Along with the logical WLAN interfaces which Public Spot users directly login to, the logical LAN interfaces (LAN-1, etc.), and the point-to-point connections (P2P-1, etc.) can also be selected. When connected via the LAN or P2P interface, additional access points can be integrated into the Public Spot provided by another device. For a single access point, on the other hand, you select, for example, the logical WLAN interface **WLAN-1**.

› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operation settings** > **Interfaces**

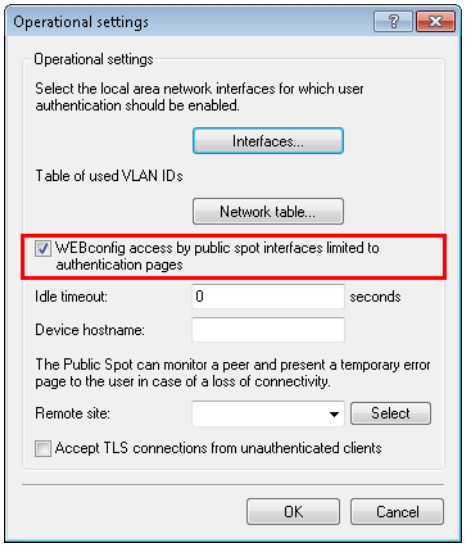


By activating the authentication for a WLAN interface, you automatically release the associated SSID for the Public Spot operation.

On a WLC you can enable certain Ethernet interfaces for the Public Spot. In this manner you can also set up selective restrictions for certain VLANs.

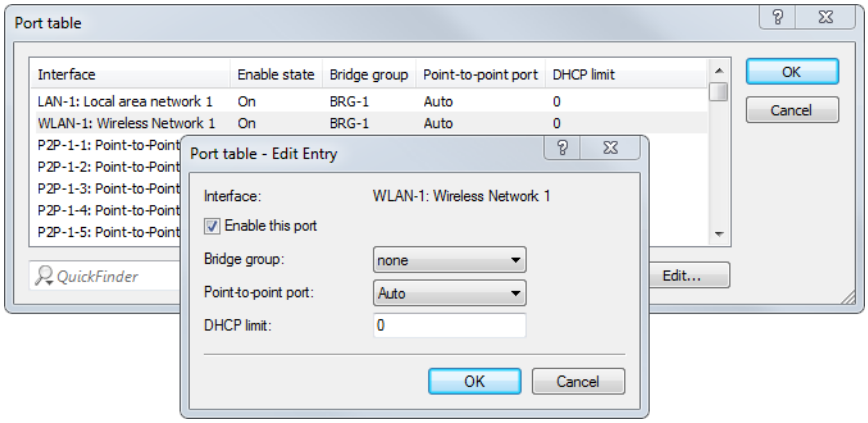
4. Access to your device from the Public Spot network should be restricted to the authentication pages.
If you do not restrict access, Public Spot users will be able to access the configuration interface of your device (WEBconfig). For security reasons you should not permit this.

   › LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operational settings** > **WEBconfig access by Public Spot interfaces limited to authentication pages**



5. Disconnect the interface which is to be used for Public Spot operations from the other network traffic.
In order for end devices to be able to communicate with one another via the different interfaces of a Public Spot device (e.g., between LAN-1 and WLAN-1), these interfaces are logically connected to one another (bridged) within your device. However, in a Public Spot scenario this type of bridging may not be desirable for security reasons. In order to disconnect the communication between an interface (e.g., WLAN-1) assigned to a Public Spot and the rest of the network, you have to remove bridging. In the **Port table** set the **Bridge group** for the respective interface to `none`.

> LANconfig: **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**

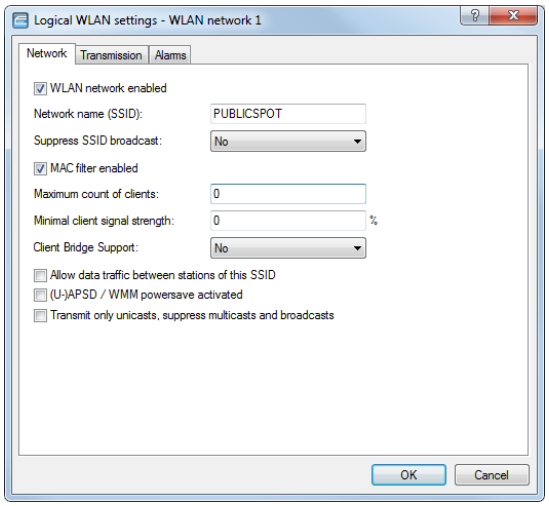


6. Enable the WLAN for the Public Spot.

   This setting does not affect: Routers, WLAN controllers, central-site gateways.

   Activate the logical WLAN which you enabled for the Public Spot login and assign a descriptive name to this network (SSID).

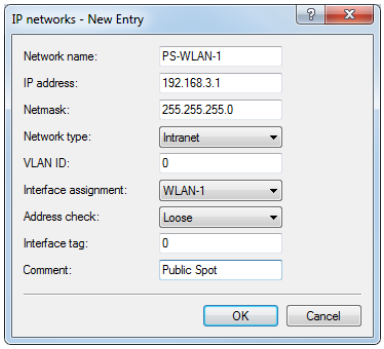
   > LANconfig: **Wireless LAN** > **General** > **Logical WLAN settings** > **WLAN network <number>** > **Network**



   If you do not set up a private WLAN, you should disable the setting **Allow data traffic between stations with this SSID** for security reasons. This prohibits communication between the individual Public Spot users.

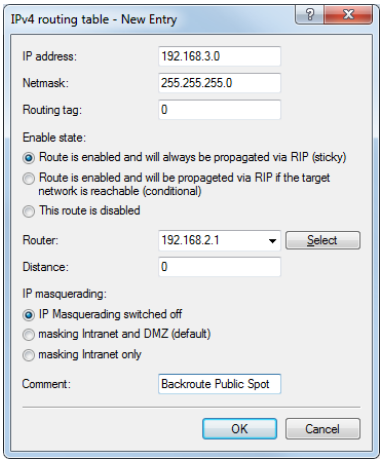
7. Assign the IP address and netmask to the device that your Public Spot network should specify.
   The Public Spot module has its own address on your network, which is independent from the address that you assigned to your device. For example, if you have a 192.168.0.0/24 network set up and your device has the IP address 192.168.2.1, you can assign the IP address `192.168.3.1` and the subnet mask `255.255.255.0`, as long as this IP address has not already been used elsewhere. Select the interface that you chose under **Interface assignment** e.g., `WLAN-1`.

› LANconfig: **IPv4** > **General** > **IP networks**



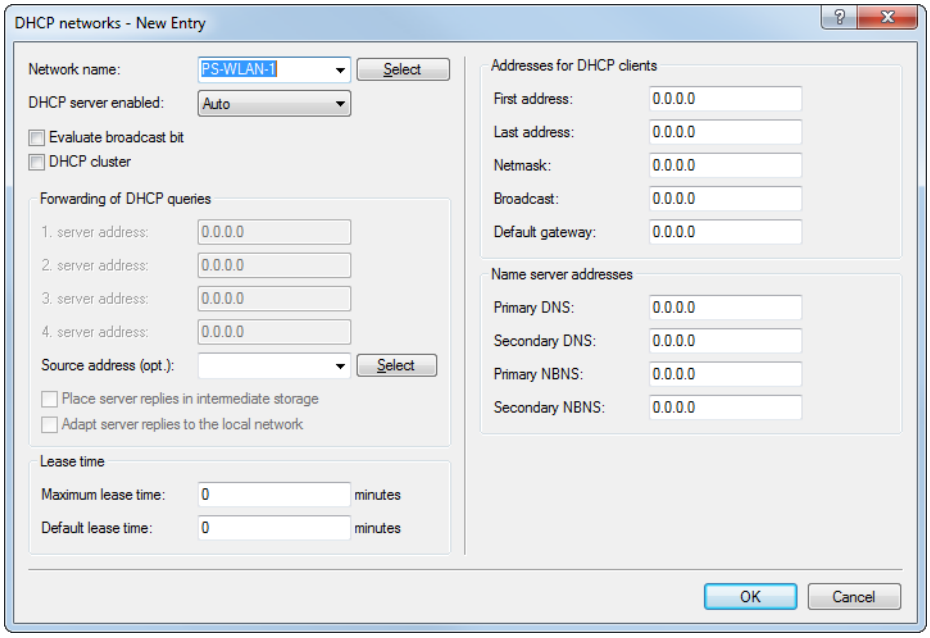
If your device is not directly connected to the Internet and you have a different address range for your Public Spot, you must set up a return route to your Public Spot network on your Internet gateway. If there is no return route, Public Spot users will see an HTTP error after they have successfully authenticated.

Please find the directions on how to set up a return route, in the documentation for your Internet gateway. In LANconfig you configure this under **IP router** > **Routing** > **IPv4 routing table**. To do this, create a new entry and enter the network address of your Public Spot network under **IP Address** and under **Router** enter the address of the Public Spot in your local network.



8. Configure the DHCP server settings for the Public Spot network.
Since the device has an IP network that is independent from the network where it is located, you must configure a DHCP server for this network. For the previously set up IP network (e.g., `PS-WLAN-1`), set the value for **DHCP server enabled** to `Yes`.

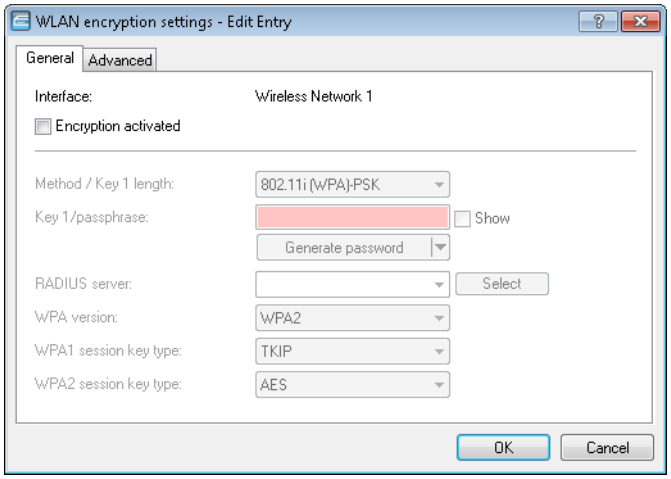
› LANconfig: **IPv4** > **DHCPv4** > **DHCP networks**



9. Disable the encryption for the interface that you are using for the Public Spot.

This setting does not affect: Routers, WLAN controllers, central-site gateways.

Encryption for all logical WLANs is enabled by default. In Public Spot applications, the payload data between the WLAN clients and the access point are usually transmitted unencrypted. For this reason, go to **Wireless LAN** > **Encryption** > **WLAN encryption settings** and disable encryption for the logical WLAN which you previously set up for the Public Spot login.

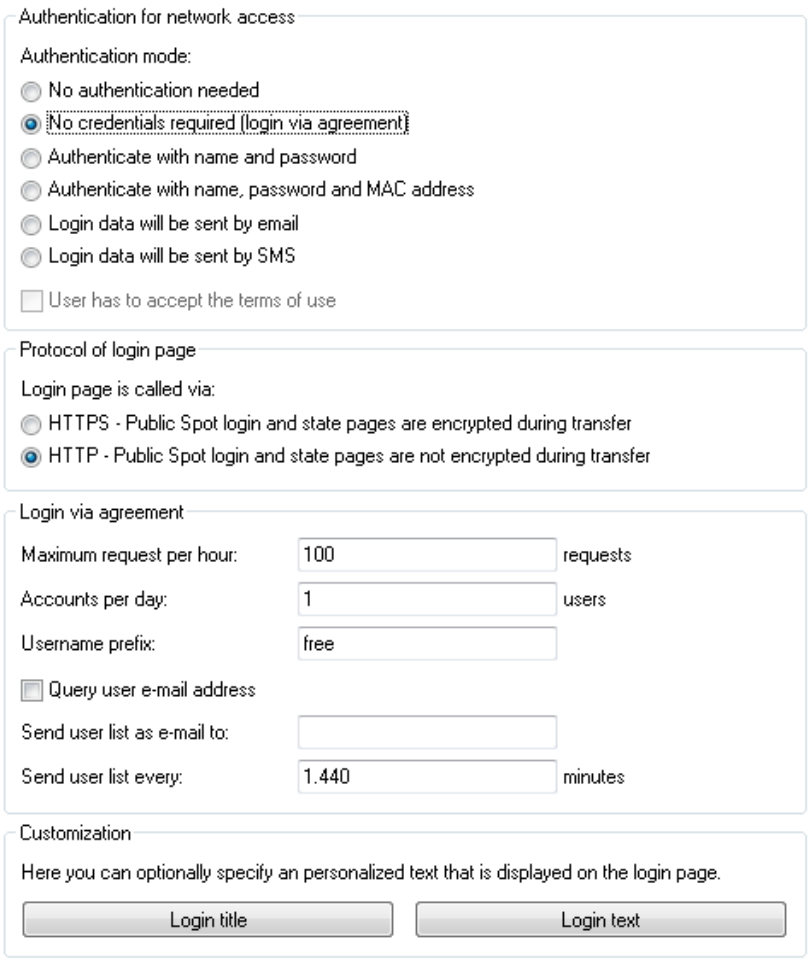


10. Select the authentication mode and the protocol used for the user login.

The authentication method that you select determines the information which users of the Public Spot WLAN must enter when logging in. Select **Authenticate with name and password** to allow your users the option to login with an individual username and password that you have previously assigned them. This setting also allows you to quickly provide Hotspot access to your guests using vouchers (tickets).

Use **HTTPS** as the protocol in order to be able to send encrypted login data to your users during login.

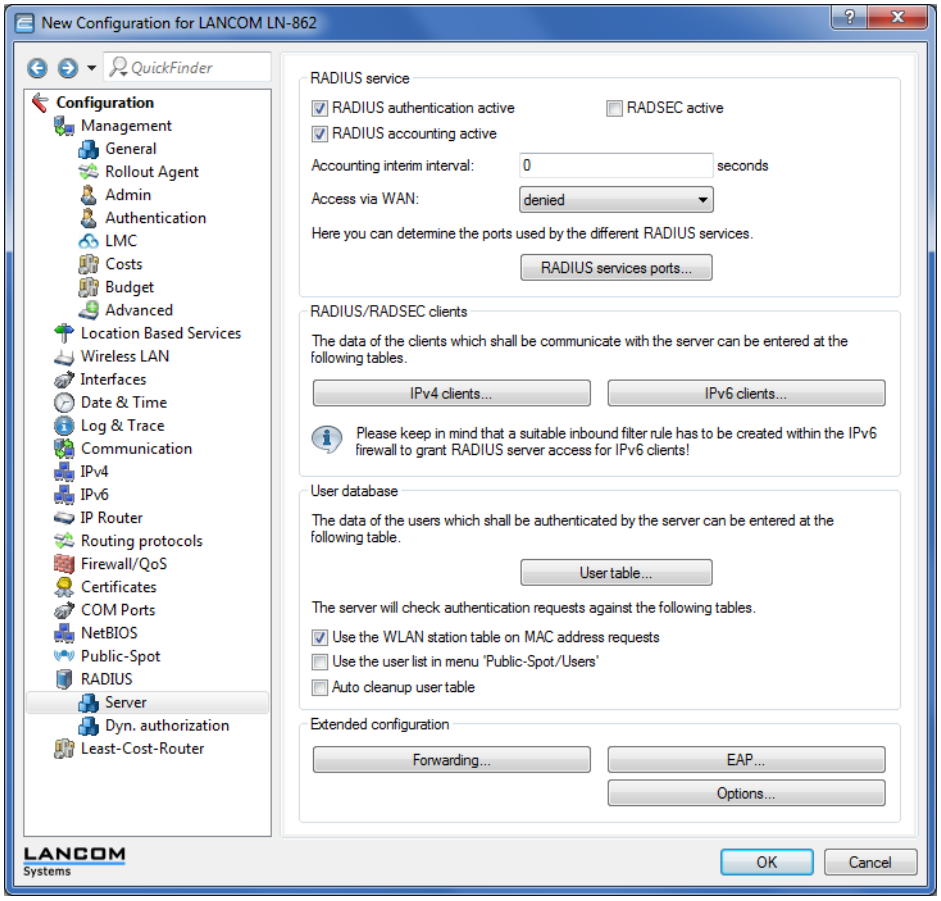
› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Authentication** > **Authentication mode**



Pay attention to the fact that, when you select the setting **No authentication needed**, unauthorized persons can have unlimited access to your Public Spot!

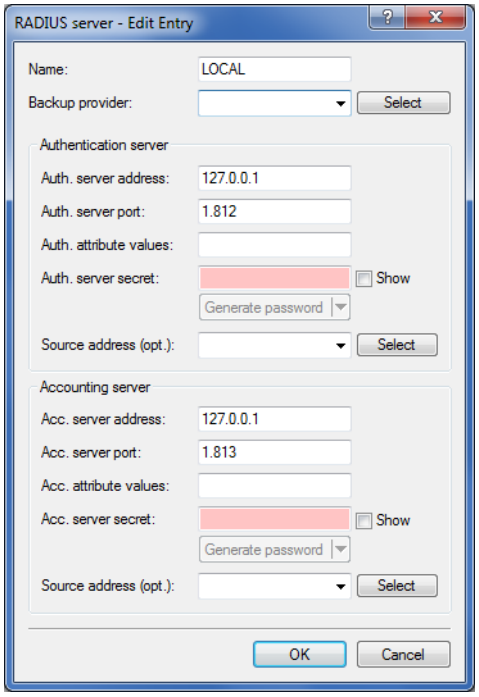
11. Activate the internal RADIUS server for user administration and accounting.
You store Public Spot access accounts in the user database on the device's own RADIUS server.

› LANconfig: **RADIUS** > **Server** > **User database**



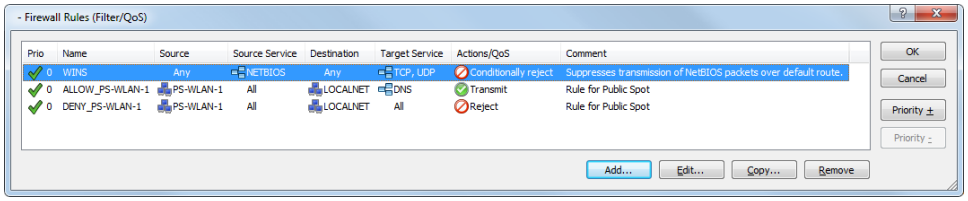
12. By default, the Public Spot is preconfigured to use the internal RADIUS server.
The list entry is necessary in order for the Public Spot to recognize the address of the RADIUS server and so that it can authenticate Public Spot access on the internal RADIUS server.

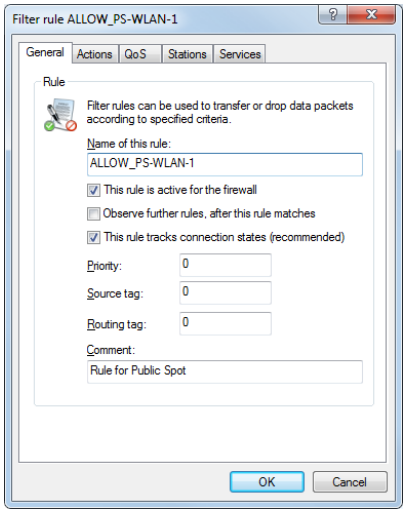
› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Users** > **Users and RADIUS servers** > **RADIUS server**



13. Set up filter rules in the Public Spot's firewall to secure your local network. In each case, create an "accept" rule (for example, `ALLOW_PS-WLAN-1`) and a "reject" rule (for example, `DENY_PS-WLAN-1`).
You use the accept rule when devices are to be able to send DNS requests from the Public Spot network to all local networks, e.g., your local intranet. On the other hand, with a reject rule you generally block all access or requests from the Public Spot network to your local network. The order – accept before reject – is essential, since the firewall applies rules from the top to bottom of the list.

› LANconfig: **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv4 Rules** > **Rules…**





› **Settings for the Accept rule:**

a) Enter the name of the rule in **General**, for example, `ALLOW_PS-WLAN-1`.

b) Remove all possible predefined action objects from the list and using **Actions** > **Add..** add an action object of type **ACCEPT**.

c) In **Stations** > **Connection source**, enable the option **Connections from the following stations** and select **Add...** > **Add custom station**.

d) In the Stations window that opens, select the option **All stations in local network** and for **Network name** select the name of your Public Spot IP network, e.g., `PS-WLAN-1`. **Close the dialog with** OK.

e) In **Stations** > **Connection destination**, enable the option **Connections to the following stations** and after selection **Add...** choose **LOCALNET**.

f) In **Services** > **Protocol/target services** enable the option **Following protocol/target services** and select **Add...** > **DNS**.

g) End the filter rule dialog with a final click on **OK**.
LANconfig then enters the allow rule into the rule table.

› **Settings for the Reject rule:**

a) Enter the name of the rule in **General**, for example, `DENY_PS-WLAN-1`.

b) Remove all possible predefined action objects from the list and using **Actions** > **Add..** add an action object of type **REJECT**.

c) In **Stations** > **Connection source**, enable the option **Connections from the following stations** and select **Add...** > **Add custom station**.

d) In the Stations window that opens, select the option **All stations in local network** and for **Network name** select the name of your Public Spot IP network, e.g., `PS-WLAN-1`. **Close the dialog with** OK.

e) In **Stations** > **Connection destination**, enable the option **Connections to the following stations** and after selection **Add...** choose **LOCALNET**.

f) End the filter rule dialog with a final click on **OK**.
LANconfig then enters the rejection rule in the rule table.

14. Store the configuration on your device.

That's it! You have completed configuration of your Public Spot module! Now, if you come within range of a Public Spot with a WLAN-capable device, the device can find the SSID that you set up as a public network and login to it.

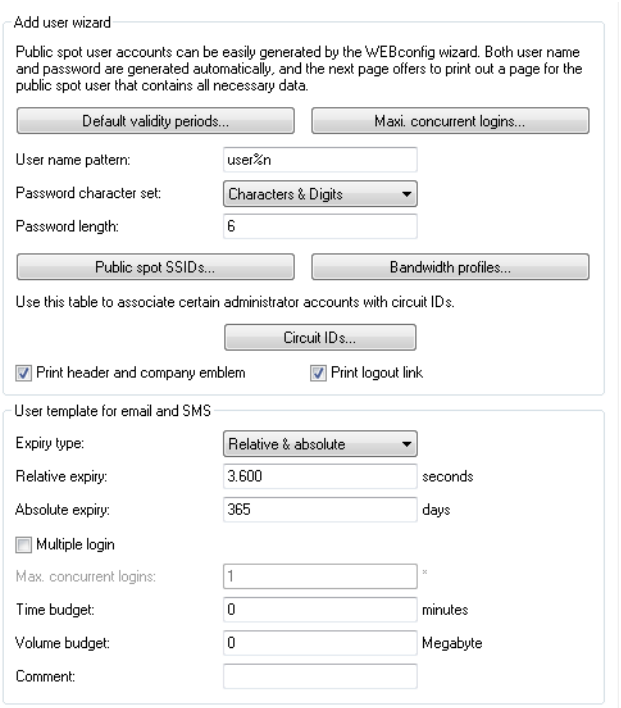
Setting default values for the Public Spot wizard

The following section describes how you define default values for the **New user wizard** (setup wizard **Create Public Spot account**) to meet your needs. Public Spot administrators can select the values defined here (e.g. for validity periods, bandwidth profiles, etc.) from selection lists when they are setting up new users and printing out vouchers.

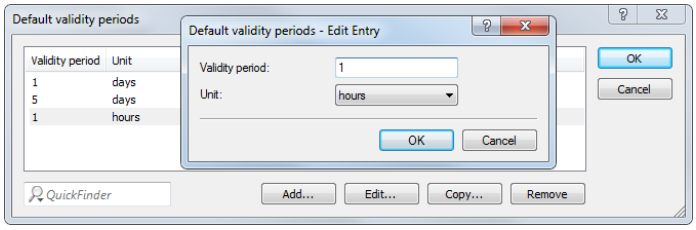
Exceptions to this are the values for User name pattern and Password length shown in the dialog below, which only serve as default values for the device.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.

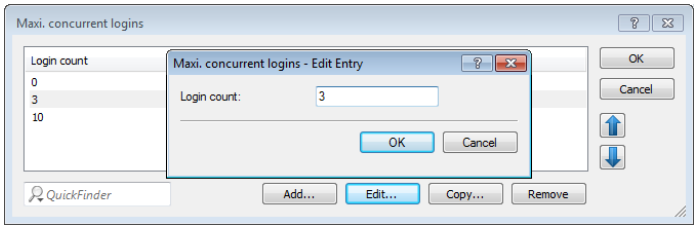
2. Change the view to **Public Spot** > **Wizard**.



3. In **Default validity periods**, define which default validity periods for user accounts and vouchers are to be available by default.
   The new-user wizard takes the shortest validity period as the default.



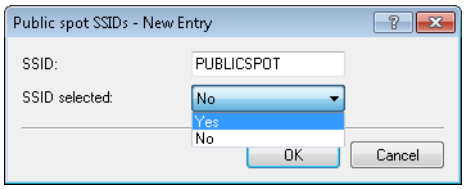
4. Under **Max. concurrent logins** you select the maximum number of devices that have access to the user account simultaneously.
   The value `0` stands for 'unlimited'. Whether or not it is generally possible for a user to login with the multiple devices at the same time is determined by the Public Spot administrator with a separate setting in the wizard when creating a new user.



5. In **User name pattern** you specify the pattern used by the new user wizard to create usernames.
   You can enter up to 19 characters, whereby the wizard will automatically create a unique number for every user if you enter "%n". The default description `user%n` will be shown later on the voucher, for example, as `user12345`.
6. Using **Password length** you specify the length of the passwords that the new user wizard generates for Public Spot access.

The default length is 6 characters. If you would like to have longer passwords, keep in mind that guests can make mistakes when entering them, which can cause unnecessary problems and complaints.

7. Optional: Under **Bandwidth profiles** you set the uplink and downlink limits for each Public Spot user.
   Learn more about this setting under *Manage bandwidth profiles* on page 1139.
8. Public Spot via WLAN only: Using **Public Spot SSIDs** you specify the names of the Public Spot networks taken by default when you create new user accounts using the Create Public Spot account wizard.



The Create Public Spot account wizard automatically marks the specified network names as **SSID selected** when creating a new Public Spot user. If you employ an access point or WLAN controller, you are able to select several network names as default values in order to give users access to different WLANs. When creating a new user and subsequently printing the voucher, these SSIDs are also printed out on the voucher.

Using the arrow buttons, you can change the order in which the SSIDs are displayed. In this way, the most popular SSIDs can be placed at the top of the list.

That's it! This concludes the configuration of the default values for the Public Spot wizard.

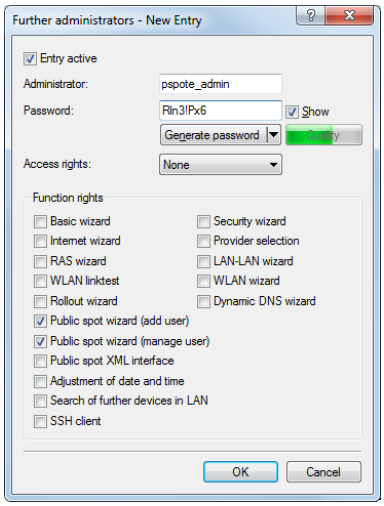
Setting up limited administrator rights for Public Spot managers

It is possible to allow employees to create and manage user accounts even though they do not have access rights to the device configuration. This is done by setting up a limited administrator, who only has the right to use the *Public Spot Wizard*. This tutorial describes the steps and the necessary access rights and privileges to do this in LANconfig.

The rights to use the Public Spot Wizards are configurable separately from one another, so it is possible to restrict a limited administrator to any single Wizard. In the case of the Public Spot setup wizard, the restricted administrator logging in to WEBconfig is automatically forwarded to the corresponding input mask.

1. In LANconfig, open the configuration dialog for the device you want to add a Public Spot administrator to.
   The Public Spot option has to be enabled on this device.
2. Navigate to the item **Management** > **Admin**. In the section **Device configuration**, click **Further administrators** and then click **Add**.

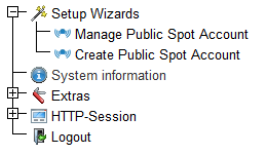
   To allow an existing user to perform Public Spot management, you instead select the user's entry in the table and click on **Change**.



3. You activate the profile by checking the **Entry active** box.
4. Assign a descriptive name in the field **Administrator**.
5. Enter a **Password** and repeat it as a check.
6. Set the **Access rights** to **None**.
7. In the section **Function rights** enable the options **Public Spot wizard (add user)**, and **Public Spot wizard (manage user)** for the Public Spot setup wizard.

   The function right **Public Spot XML interface** is not required by a Public Spot administrator. The right is only relevant if you use the XML interface and should not be combined with the function rights described above for security reasons.
8. Save the new or modified administrator profile by clicking on **OK**.

If you have granted the feature rights to several Wizards, the limited administrator can navigate between these using the navigation bar in WEBconfig.



If you have set the function right for the **Public Spot Wizard (create user)** only, then a limited administrator can only navigate within this Wizard, and the navigation bar is hidden. In this case it is not possible to logout of WEBconfig manually. For security reasons, this means that the lifetime of the WEBconfig session is very short. In case of inactivity, the device automatically logs out the limited administrator.

For technical reasons, the Create Public Spot Account wizard does not update automatically after use of the **Create and CSV export** button. A limited administrator who wishes to set up additional users and print vouchers must invoke the Wizard again (e.g. via a URL or by refreshing the web page if the navigation bar is hidden).

Setting up and managing Public Spot users for simple scenarios

You can set up and manage Public Spot users either manually or by using the setup wizard. Setting up and managing the configuration options manually offers you more extensive options and allows you, for example, to create self-defined users with an unlimited lifetime.

On the other hand, the setup wizard allows you to create generic Public Spot users with automatically generated login data with limited lifetimes. The respective setup wizard is only accessible using WEBconfig, which allows you to quickly create users without requiring administrator permissions for the entire device. The only requirement is an administrator with limited permissions.

You naturally also have the option to initially create generic users with the aid of the setup wizard and then manually adapt them to your needs (e.g., change the usernames).

Setup and management using the Setup Wizard (WEBconfig)

The Setup Wizards provide you with an easy method of managing Public Spot users.

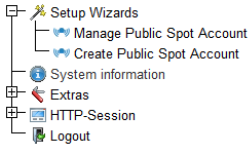
Adding Public Spot users with a single click and voucher printing

The following section describes the setup of a Public Spot user using WEBconfig and then printing a voucher. You can also prepare vouchers in advance.

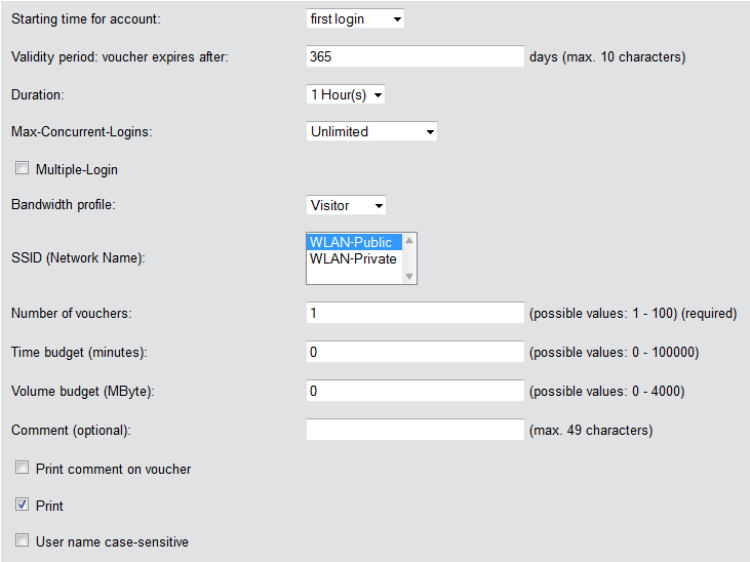
You need the permissions for the **Public Spot Wizard (create user)**, in order to create a new Public Spot user.

1. Log on to the WEBconfig home page as an Administrator.

2. Start the setup wizard by clicking on **Setup wizards** > **Create Public Spot account**



3. The new user wizard starts with an input screen. The fields have default values.



The wizard automatically creates a username and a password. In the subsequent printout dialog you can select the voucher printer and print-out the voucher.

4. If necessary, you can change the default values before you print it.

The following entries affect the appearance as well as the validity of the vouchers:

- **Starting time for account**: Sets the time when the voucher becomes valid. With the setting **first login**, the access budget runs as of the first login; with the setting **immediately**, it applies as of the time that the user was created.

  To a supply of vouchers in advance, select `First login` as the validity of the vouchers. That way the vouchers will still be valid even after a longer period.
- **Validity period: Voucher expires after**: Enter the overall time period within which the voucher can remain valid. If the access is to be valid immediately, it is not possible to enter a validity period.
- **Duration**: Set how long access is to be available after registration or the first login. The values listed here are managed in the **Default validity periods** table.
- **Max-Concurrent-Logins**: Select the maximum number of concurrent devices that can have access to the user account for the corresponding user. The values listed here are managed in the **Max. concurrent logins table**.
- **Multiple login**: Select this option in order to generally allow users to login with several devices using the same login data. The number of devices that can be logged on simultaneously is specified using the drop-down list **Max-concurrent-logins**.
- **Bandwidth profile**: Select a bandwidth profile from the list in order to selectively restrict the amount of bandwidth available to the user (uplink and downlink). Create a bandwidth profile in the **Bandwidth profile** table.
- **SSID (network name)**: Specify which wireless LAN network the access applies to. This SSIDs listed here are managed in the **SSID table**. By pressing the "Ctrl" button you have the option of selecting multiple entries. Default entries are already pre-selected.

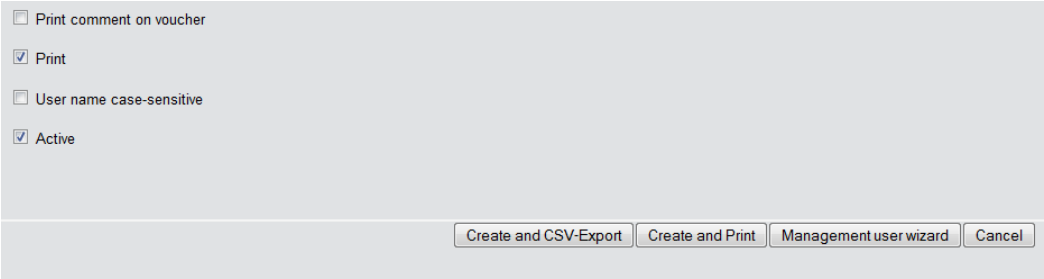
  If you have not defined any entries in the table, the wizard conceals this option.

- **Number of vouchers**: Specify how many vouchers you want to create at a time. If you set the login time as the access start time, you can print-out a supply of vouchers in advance.
- **Time budget (minutes)**: Specify the amount of time after which access to the Public Spot is closed. Depending on the chosen expiry method, access time is limited either to the time budget (incremental) or to the set voucher validity period (absolute).
- **Volume budget (MByte)**: Specify the available data volume after which access is closed.
- **Comment (optional)**: Enter a comment here. This comment can contain, for example, additional notes about the access duration or the telephone number of the receptionist in case of access problems.
- **Print comment on voucher**: Check this option if the comment is to appear on the voucher.
- **Print:** Check this option to print the vouchers as soon as they are registered.
- **User name case-sensitive**: Enable this option if Public Spot users have to pay attention to capitalization when entering their user name at login.

5. If you want to keep the default values or accept the new values without changing them, you click on **Save and print** at the end.

   If the **Print** option is disabled, the wizard displays a summary of the new Public Spot users after they have been registered. You then have the opportunity to print the vouchers again.

   The button **Manage User Wizard** button takes you to the **Manage Public Spot Account** Setup Wizard.



You have the option to either show or hide this button. It is displayed by default.

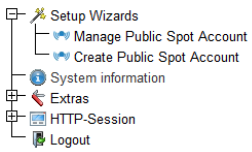
Wizard for Public Spot user management

The following section describes how to use WEBconfig to manage the registered Public Spot users.

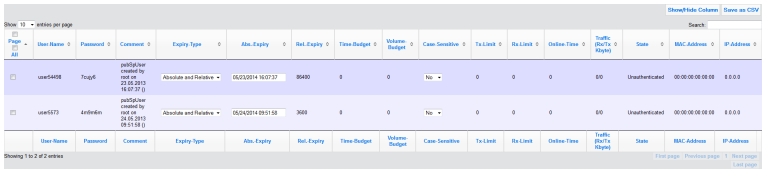
You need the **Public Spot wizard (user management)** permission, in order to manage a Public Spot account.

Unsaved changes are lost once you finish this wizard.

1. Log on to the WEBconfig home page as an Administrator.
2. Start the setup wizard by clicking on **Setup-Wizards** > **Manage Public Spot accounts**



3. The Public Spot wizard starts with a list of registered Public Spot users.



In the **Show... entries per page** drop-down list you set how many entries are displayed per page. The corresponding pages are accessed via the page navigation at the lower right:

- **First page**: Shows the page with the first entries.
- **Previous page**: Returns to the previous page.
- **Page numbers (1, 2, 3, ...)**: Goes directly to the chosen page.
- **Next page**: Goes to the next page.
- **Last page**: Shows the page with the latest entries.

With **Search** you can filter the displayed entries. The filter immediately searches for entered strings.

You export highlighted entries with **Save as CSV**.

The column headers have the following meaning:

- **Page/All**: This column is used to select the user for the desired action (print, delete, save). To select all entries on the current page, select **Page**. To select all of the entries, select **All**.
- **User name**: Manually or automatically displays the username generated by the system.
- **Password**: Manually or automatically displays the password generated by the system.
- **Comment**: Includes the comment entered at registration (in brackets) and any changes to the user data (automatically documented by the system).
- **Expiry type**: Indicates whether the validity period of this user account is absolute (e.g. expires on a set date) or relative (expires after the time has elapsed since the first successful login).
- **Abs.-Expiry**: If "absolute" has been selected as the expiry type, the user account becomes invalid at the time defined in this field.
- **Rel.-Expiry**: If "relative" has been selected as the expiry type, the user account becomes invalid after this time period has expired since the user logged in for the first time.
- **Time budget**: Specifies the maximum access time for this user account. The user can use this duration of access time until a relative or absolute expiry time (if set) is reached.
- **Volume budget**: Specifies the maximum data volume for this user account. The user can use this data volume until a relative or absolute expiry time (if set) is reached.
- **Case sensitive**: Indicates whether the login page takes capitalization of the user name into account.
- **Tx-Limit**: If a bandwidth profile was entered for the user, this entry shows the maximum transmission bandwidth available to that user.
- **Rx-Limit**: If a bandwidth profile was entered for the user, this entry shows the maximum receiving bandwidth available to that user.
- **Traffic (Rx/Tx Kbyte)**: Indicates the data volume in kilobytes that the user has received (Rx) or sent (Tx) so far.
- **State**: Displays the authentication status of each user, i.e. whether the user is currently logged on to the Public Spot (**Authenticated**) or not (**Unauthenticated**).
- **MAC address**: Indicates the physical address of the network adapter for the device with which the user is currently connected.
- **IP address**: This shows the IPv4 address that the system currently has allocated to the user.

The buttons at the bottom of the window have the following functions:

- **Print**: Print out the voucher for the selected user.
- **Delete**: Delete the selected user.
- **Save**: Save the changes.

- **Back to main page**: Return to the main page; all unsaved changes will be lost.

You can edit the following user information by changing the contents of the corresponding fields:

- **Expiry type**
- **Abs.-Expiry**
- **Case sensitive**

4. Select the account that you want to edit in the first column.
5. Change the corresponding field values and click **Save** to apply the changes. Unsaved changes are lost once you finish this wizard.
6. If you would like to delete a user, mark the corresponding entry in the first column and click **Delete**.

The deletion takes place immediately without confirmation.

Hiding fields in WEBconfig

In the setup wizard "Manage Public Spot Account", the **Show/hide column** button enables you to display or conceal columns of the table. These changes are only temporary. Hidden columns are shown again after a page refresh or in a new session.

If you want to permanently hide specific fields, use the LCOS menu tree and navigate to the view **Setup** > **Public Spot module** > **Manage user wizard**. All of the fields are displayed by default. If you hide certain fields, for example to conceal the time budget, they will stay hidden in the wizard itself and also in the drop-down menu behind the button **Show/hide column** after reloading the page.

In order to delete authenticated Public Spot users, the columns "Calling station ID mask" and "Called station ID mask" need to be visible in the wizard. Unauthenticated users can be deleted even if these two columns are hidden.

Please note that hidden fields are not printed out when you press the **Print** button. On the other hand, exporting a CSV file includes all of the data. The **Save as CSV** button can optionally be hidden. To do this, use the LCOS menu tree to navigate to the view **Setup** > **Public Spot module** > **Add User Wizard** > **Hide CSV export** . Select "Yes" and save your entry.

Manual set up and management

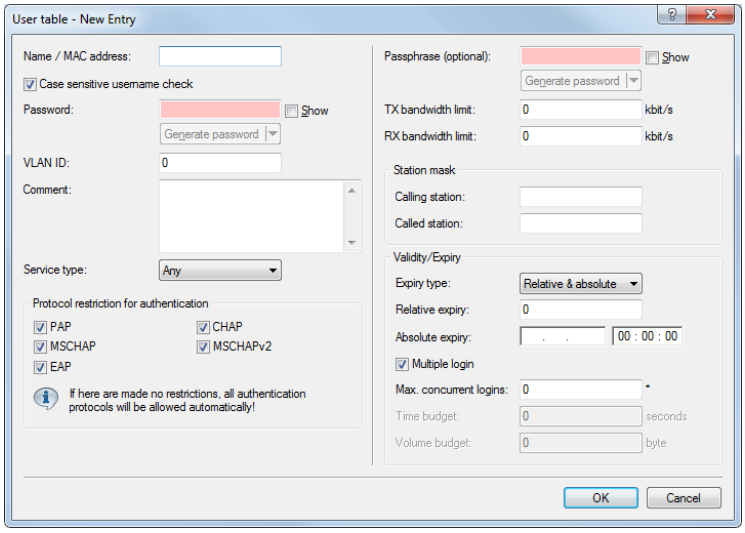
The following configuration steps show you how to use LANconfig to manually setup a Public Spot user for simple scenarios. You create and manage Public Spot users using the **User database** of the device's internal RADIUS server under **RADIUS** > **Server** > **User database**. Here you enter all of the users who should have access to the Public Spot – just as the setup wizard does as well.

For user administration, the Public Spot module also has its own internal list (found under **Public Spot** > **Users** > **User list**). During technical development, this list was replaced as of LCOS 7.70 by the user administration via RADIUS. For compatibility reasons, the device still evaluates the internal user list of the Public Spot module if it is enabled. However, for a new installation you should no longer use this list, since it prevents you from using many features (setup and administration using the wizard, bandwidth restrictions, accounting via RADIUS, VLAN IDs for Public Spot users, etc.).

1. In **Name** you enter the usernames of future users or the **MAC addresses** of their end devices.

   If you selected the authentication mode **Login with name and password**, enter the name of the username that the user employs to authenticate on the Public Spot. Entering a **password** is optional, however it is recommended for the authentication mode above.

› LANconfig: **RADIUS** > **server** > **User database** > **User table**



If the authentication is performed using the MAC address (authentication modus **Authenticate with name, password and MAC address**), you define the MAC address using the field **Calling station** in the format `12:34:56:78:90:AB`.

2. Set the **Service-Type** to `Login`.
3. You remove all protocol restrictions by deselecting all check boxes.
   Two-phase authentication is not performed in a Public Spot scenario. This only makes sense for direct WLAN connections without Public Spot operations and the associated RADIUS users.

   If you do not completely remove the protocol restrictions, a user cannot log in using the login web page of your Public Spot!
4. Optional: On request, you can also, for example,
   - › Enter a relative and/or absolute expiry date for the validity of the user account in the section **Validity/Expiry** (relative = validity in seconds after the first login);
   - › Limit the uplink/downlink under **TX/RX bandwidth limit**;
   - › Enable **Multiple login** and enter the **Max. concurrent logins** of end devices
5. Store the configuration on your device.

That's it! Your Public Spot users can now login with the credentials that you specified.

14.2.2 Security settings

The Public Spot has two additional safety mechanisms that effectively protect it against abuse.

Traffic limit option

In order for clients to login to the Public Spot via a browser, it must be possible for unauthorized users to transfer data packets (e.g. for DNS requests) to the access point. By default, there is no limit on this data. The following risks are associated with this:

- › **Unauthorized use of the Public Spot:** Certain tools enable a user to pack data into a DNS packet (i.e. to establish a DNS tunnel) and to work with the Public Spot without logging in.
- › **Denial-of-Service:** The attacker could send large amounts of data to the device and thus try to block the device or Public Spot.
- › **Brute force:** The attacker could repeatedly try to access the base station by guessing the login data until successfully breaking in.

The traffic limit option can effectively eliminate these risks.

You enable the traffic limit option by setting a value other than "0". This value determines the maximum data quantity in bytes that can be transmitted between the base station and an unauthorized terminal device.

> LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Allow access without authentication** > **Maximum data volume**

When a terminal device exceeds this traffic volume, the Public Spot locks this device and drops all data received from it without inspection. This lock expires only when the device entry disappears from the station table.

For WLAN devices, this deletion can follow the general idle timeout, for example:

> WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **WLAN** > **Idle-Timeout**

Please keep in mind that if station monitoring is active, the lock may be removed earlier. If the mobile station cannot be reached for 60 seconds, the device removes its entry from the station table, and also the block.

The idle timeout for the Public Spot module has the same purpose as the idle timeout for WLANs, but it applies only to connections via Public Spots. If the idle timeout is set and no further data packets are received from a user, the device automatically logs the device out at the end of the specified time period.

> LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Idle timeout**

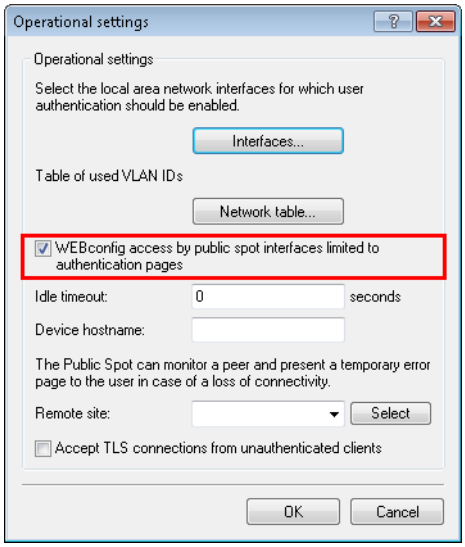
On the one hand the optimal value for traffic limit depends on the data volume of the login page. On the other hand, this value has a significant effect on the potential number of failed login attempts per user. Generally, a traffic limit of 60,000 bytes provides effective protection for a Public Spot but allows a sufficient number of login attempts. You can adjust this value to your individual needs, if necessary. The default value of "0" bytes allows an unlimited volume of data.

The traffic limit option only monitors the traffic before authentication. It does not take into account the traffic to and from a free Web server. This remains unlimited at all times.

Restricting access to the configuration

Public Spot access to a Public Spot network's configuration (WEBconfig) should always be prohibited for security reasons. A special switch allows access via the Public Spot interface to be restricted to the Public Spot authentication pages only. All other configuration protocols are automatically blocked.

> LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operational settings** > **WEBconfig access by Public Spot interfaces limited to authentication pages**



Note that using permissions under **Management** > **Admin** > **Configurations access ways** > **Access rights** you cannot generally limit the access via HTTP(S) to the device.

14.2.3 Extended functions and settings

The Public Spot offers a wide range of extended functions, options and parameters, which can be used to adapt it to the specific requirements of the application at hand.

In the following sections you will find information about:

- Multiple logins

  By default, the use of login data is restricted to login with one device. Find out how you increase this limit or completely remove this limit for a user account.

- Open access networks (no login)

  Setup additional networks so that Public Spot users can also reach them without logging in to the Public Spot to provide the user with additional information (e.g., customer web sites inside the company, event calendars in a hotel).

- User administration using the Web API

  Use URLs to create and administrate Public Spot users with file links or scripts.

- Individual bandwidth limitation

  Individually set uplink and downlink restrictions for each Public Spot user.

- Automatic cleanup of user accounts and mobile stations

  Use the device's own functions to automatically delete expired Public Spot user accounts and improperly logged off mobile stations (WLAN only) from the device's internal databases.

- WLAN handover of sessions between devices

  Find out more about the roaming possibilities of mobile stations between access points, and what special configurations are necessary so that your users benefit from the seamless handover of WLAN sessions.

- Authentication via RADIUS

  Find out how you can provide multiple RADIUS servers for authentication and accounting, and how you can chain them, in order to forward the user data to the appropriate backup system in case individual systems are unavailable.

- Accounting for Public Spot connections for commercial operation

  Learn more about the accounting functions provided by the Public Spot for commercial operations. These billing functions can be roughly divided into two models:

  - Retrospective payment for the resources actually used (credit accounting)
  - Service use on a debit payment basis (PrePaid)

- Using multi-level certificates

  Find out how to load certificate chains on your device.

- Individual assignment of VLAN IDs

  Find out how to assign individual VLAN IDs to specific Public Spot users.

Multiple logins

You have the ability to allow Public Spot users to simultaneously sign in using one user account for multiple devices. This can be necessary for a group of people (for example, a family) that has multiple devices, which they would like to use to simultaneously access the Internet.

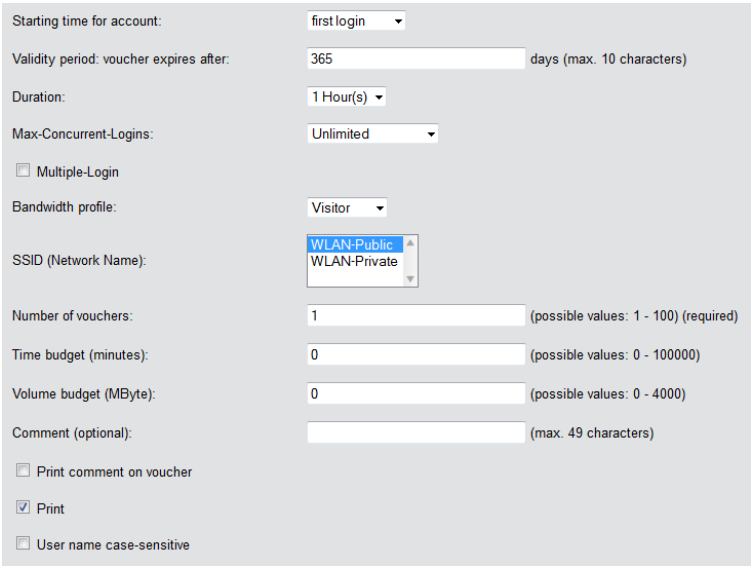
Setting default values

To use this feature, define the number of concurrent devices in the setup menu under **Public Spot module** > **Add user wizard** > **Max. concurrent logins table**. Enter the values here that you assigned in the second step with the **Create Public Spot account**. The value `0` stands for "unlimited".

Enabling multiple logins in the new user wizard

When you invoke the Wizard **Create Public Spot account**, you will see the menu item **Max concurrent logins**. The values shown here correspond to the numbers that you previously entered in the table of the same name. The values are shown within the phrase "Only ... device(s)".

Select the maximum number of concurrent devices that can have access to the user account for the corresponding user. Please note that to enable the feature in the wizard, the option **Allow multiple logins** must also be enabled.



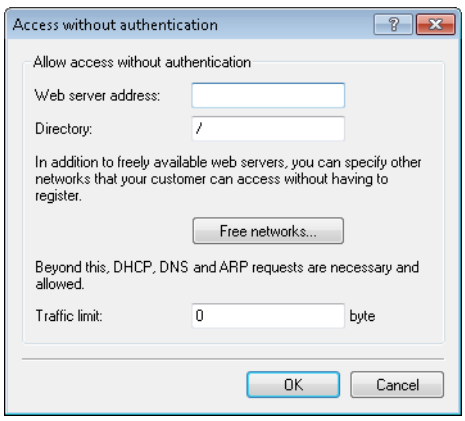
Open access networks (no login)

To provide users with access to important information without them having to login (e.g., important contact information) you can define any publicly available Web server.

› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Access without authentication**

If you do not want to completely release this service, you can optionally define an alternative path to the web server.

› LANconfig: **Public-Spot** > **Server** > **Access without authentication** > **Directory**

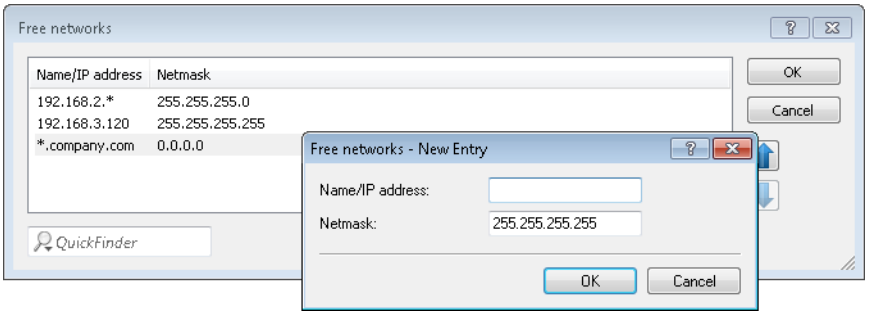


In addition to freely available web servers, you can define other networks and special sites which your customers can access without having to log on.

› **Public-Spot** > **Server** > **Access without authentication** > **Free networks**

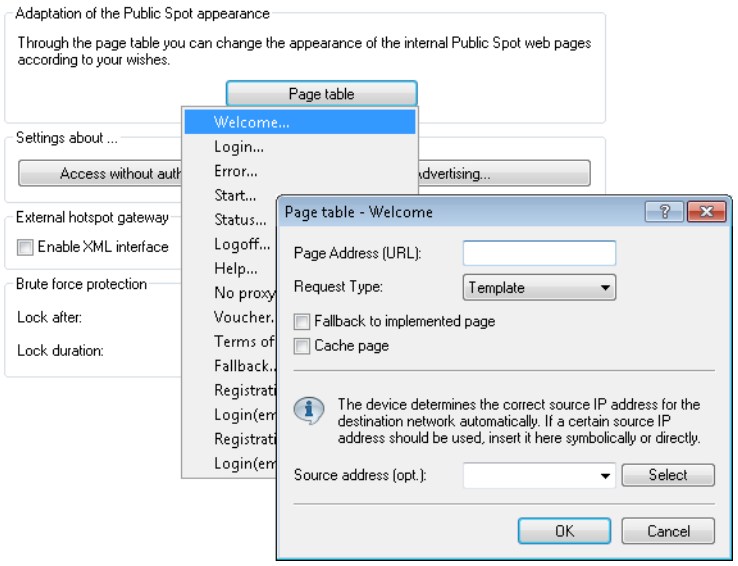
Enter the IP address of the server or of the network with its netmask, that your Public Spot users are to be given access to. Alternatively, you have the option of entering a domain name (with or without a wildcard "*"). Wildcards can be used, for example, to allow free access to all of the subdomains of a particular domain. The entry `*.company.com` allows the addresses `mail.company.com`, and `service.company.com`, etc.

If you wish to authorize a domain or just a single workstation with the address named earlier, set `255.255.255.255` as the netmask here. If you wish to authorize a whole IP network, specify the corresponding netmask. If you do not set a netmask (value `0.0.0.0`), the device ignores the table entry.



› **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Page table**

Enter the addresses (URLs) of the web pages to be displayed to users on the Public Spot in case of login, error, status display, etc. Read the chapter about *Default and customized authentication pages*.



DNS snooping

Web services with a high number of users distribute the requests for data to multiple servers for better utilization. This means that two DNS queries for the same hostname (e.g. "www.google.com") can lead to to two different IP addresses. If a Public Spot receives more than one valid IP address for the specified host name from the DNS server, it chooses one of them and stores it for future requests by Public Spot users. If a different IP address for the same host name is allocated to the user by a different server for a subsequent request, the Public Spot blocks this connection because this IP address is not stored as the authenticated one.

In order for Public Spot users to be able to connect to the requested host despite changing IP addresses, the Public Spot analyzes the user's DNS queries and stores the returned IP address with the host name, the valid time to live (TTL), the

age and the data source as a free destination address in the table **Status** > **Public Spot** > **Free-Hosts** for subsequent use.

The entries in this table will expire after the time period defined in the DNS response (TTL). When the limits are very low (e.g. 5 seconds), you can avoid locking out Public Spot users immediately after a request by setting a minimum validity under **Setup** > **Public Spot-Module** > **Free-Hosts-Minimum-TTL**.

Managing Public Spot users via the web API

As an alternative to using the Setup Wizard, entering a special URL in the address bar gives you the option of displaying, creating or deleting Public-Spot users directly.

URL structure

The URL is structured as follows:

```
http://<Device-URL>/cmdpbspotuser/...?action=actiontodo&parameter1=value1&parameter2=value2
```

The following actions are available:

- **action=addpbspotuser**: Creates one or more new Public Spot users and then prints out the required number of vouchers.
- **action=delpbspotuser**: Deletes the Public Spot user with the specified user ID.
- **action=editpbspotuser**: Displays the Public Spot user with the specified user ID. You can then print out the user's voucher again.

The required parameters and their values depend on the action specified.

The Wizard ignores incorrect parameter information and accepts only the correct parameters. If you omit a required parameter or specify it incorrectly, the wizard displays an input mask. Enter the correct parameter values here.

Adding a Public Spot user

To register a new Public Spot user, simply enter the following URL:

```
http://<Geräte-URL>/cmdpbspotuser/
   ?action=addpbspotuser&parameter1=value1&parameter2=value2&...
```

The following parameters are available:

`comment`

Comment on the registered user

If it is possible to enter multiple comments for a Public Spot user, you can enter the comments and their corresponding comment-field names as follows:

```
&comment=<Content1>:<FieldName1>;<Content2>:<FieldName2>;...;<Content5>:<FeildName5>
```

If there is just one comment field per user, then the comment is entered as follows:

```
&comment=<Comment>
```

Special characters such as German umlauts are not supported.

The maximum number of characters for the comment parameter is 191 characters.

`print`

Automatic print-out of the voucher.

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard displays a button that you can use to print the voucher.

printcomment

Print the comment on the voucher.

If this parameter is omitted, no comment will appear on the voucher (default setting).

nbGuests

Number of Public Spot users to be created.

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard creates one user only (default setting).

defaults

Use default values

The wizard replaces missing or incorrect parameters with default values.

expirytype

Combined output of expiry type and, if applicable, the validity period of the voucher.

Specify this parameter as follows:

```
&expirytype=<Value1>+validper=<Value2>
```

The parameter values have the following meaning:

- `Value1`: Expiry type. Possible values are `absolute`, `relative`, `both`, and `none`.
- `Value2`: Time of the voucher's expiry if `expirytype` has the value `both`. In this case, you use `validper` to specify the voucher's maximum validity period in days for the absolute expiry type. For all other expiry types, the parameter `validper` is not set.

If a parameter is omitted or set with incorrect values the wizard will apply the default values.

ssid

Network name

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard uses the default network name (default setting).

unit

Access time

Specify this parameter as follows:

```
&unit=<Value1>+runtime=<Value2>
```

The parameter values have the following meaning:

- `Value1`: LIfetime units. Possible values are: Minute, hour, day
- `Value2`: Duration

timebudget

Time budget

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard uses the default value.

volumebudget

Volume budget

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard uses the default value.

volumebudget

Volume budget

The following entries are allowed:

- `k` or `K`: Specified in kilobytes (kB), e.g. `volumebudget=1000k`.
- `m` or `M`: Specified in megabytes (MB), e.g. `volumebudget=1000m`.
- `g` or `G`: Specified in gigabytes (GB), e.g. `volumebudget=1g`.

Without a unit, the specification corresponds to a value in bytes (B).

If this parameter is omitted completely, the wizard uses the default value.

`multilogin`

Multiple logins

If you specify this parameter, the user can login multiple times with his/her user account. If this parameter is missing, multiple logins are disabled by default.

`maxconclogin`

Maximum number of concurrent logins

With this parameter you specify with how many different end devices a user can login to a Public Spot. Valid entries are integers such as `0, 1, 2, ...`.

If this parameter is missing or if the parameter has the value `0`, this means that the number of devices is unlimited.

This parameter requires that multiple logins be enabled. Setting this parameter in isolation has no other effects.

`casesensitive`

Username case sensitive

If you enter this parameter, the Public Spot user must pay attention to capitalization when entering the user name at login. Valid values are:

- `0`: Case-sensitive username is disabled
- `1`: Case-sensitive username is enabled

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard uses the default value.

`bandwidthprof`

Bandwidth profile

With this parameter you assign a pre-defined bandwidth profile to a Public Spot user. Enter the valid value for this parameter as the line number of an existing profile name under **Setup** > **Public Spot module** > **Add user wizard** > **Bandwidth profiles**, such as

```
&bandwidthprof=1
```

to index the first entry in the table.

If this parameter is missing or the line number is invalid (for example, the table is empty), the wizard does not limit the bandwidth.

If the Public Spot administration contains no default values to replace missing parameters, the wizard opens a dialog. Enter the missing values here.

Modifying a Public Spot user

Modify one or more Public Spot users simply by entering the following URL:

```
http://<device-URL>/cmdpbspotuser/...?action=editpbspotuser&parameter1=value1&parameter2=value2&...
```

The following parameters are available:

pbspotuser

Name of the Public Spot user

Specify multiple users in the form `&=pbspotuser=<User1>+<User2>+...`.

If the wizard cannot find the specified user, you have the option to search for a user.

After making your changes, accept these and print them out if necessary.

expirytype

Combined output of expiry type and, if applicable, the validity period of the voucher.

Specify this parameter as follows:

```
&expirytype=<Value1>+validper=<Value2>
```

The parameter values have the following meaning:

- `Value1`: Expiry type. Possible values are `absolute`, `relative`, `both`, and `none`.
- `Value2`: Time of the voucher's expiry if `expirytype` has the value `both`. In this case, you use `validper` to specify the voucher's maximum validity period in days for the absolute expiry type. For all other expiry types, the parameter `validper` is not set.

If a parameter is omitted or set with incorrect values the wizard will apply the default values.

unit

Access time

Specify this parameter as follows:

```
&unit=<Value1>+runtime=<Value2>
```

The parameter values have the following meaning:

- `Value1`: LIfetime units. Possible values are: Minute, hour, day
- `Value2`: Duration

timebudget

Time budget

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard uses the default value.

volumebudget

Volume budget

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard uses the default value.

print

Automatic print-out of the voucher.

If this parameter is omitted, the wizard displays a button. Use this to print out the voucher.

bandwidthprof

Bandwidth profile

With this parameter you assign a pre-defined bandwidth profile to a Public Spot user. Enter the valid value for this parameter as the line number of an existing profile name under **Setup** > **Public Spot module** > **Add user wizard** > **Bandwidth profiles**, such as

```
&bandwidthprof=1
```

to index the first entry in the table.

If this parameter is missing or the line number is invalid (for example, the table is empty), the wizard does not limit the bandwidth.

If the Public Spot administration contains no default values to replace missing parameters, the wizard opens a dialog. Enter the missing values here.

Deleting a Public Spot user

Delete one or more Public Spot users simply by entering the following URL:

```
http://<deviceURL>/cmdpbspotuser/...?action=delpbspotuser&pbSpotuser=<User1>+<User2>+...
```

If the wizard finds the specified user in the user list, the user is deleted and the wizard displays a confirming message.

If the wizard cannot find the specified user, it displays a table of registered Public Spot users. Mark the entries for deletion here.

Creating Public Spot users on a remote Public Spot gateway

With Smart Ticket operating, each user is given a Public Spot account on the RADIUS server of the local Public Spot gateway.

However, where multiple Public Spot gateways are in use but the user accounts should be managed by the RADIUS server of just one gateway, Smart Ticket causes the Public Spot account to be created on this central RADIUS server. To implement this, the remote Public Spot gateway needs to be specified in the LCOS menu tree under **Setup** > **Public Spot module** > **Authentication modules**.

If no remote Public Spot gateway is defined, the Public Spot user accounts are created on the local Public Spot gateway.

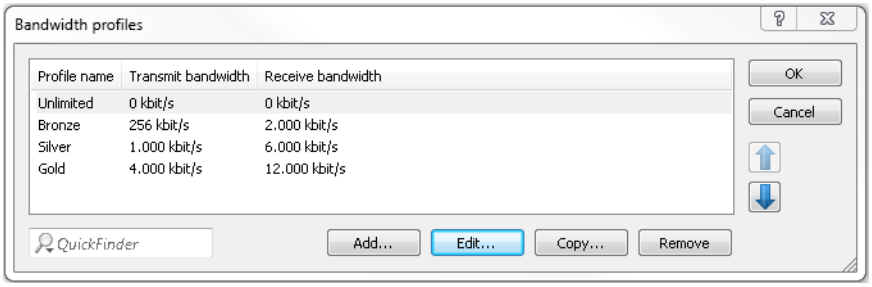
Bandwidth profile

Manage bandwidth profiles

Using the window **Public-Spot** > **Wizard** > **Bandwidth profiles**, you have the ability to set up profiles that limit the available bandwidth (uplink and downlink) for Public Spot users. You can select a predefined profile or create your own bandwidth profiles that meet your needs. These profiles can be assigned to new users when access is created for the Public Spot by calling the Setup-Wizard **Cerate Public Spot account** in WEBconfig.

Integrating predefined bandwidth profiles

From the four predefined profiles, select the bandwidth profile that closest meets your requirements:



Unlimited

No restriction in the transmit and receive bandwidth.

These values refer to the transmit bandwidth (TX) and receive bandwidth (RX) from the perspective of the client.

Bronze

The transmit (TX) bandwidth is 256 kbps, the receive (RX) bandwidth is 2 Mbps.

Silver

The transmit (TX) bandwidth is 1 Mbps, the receive (RX) bandwidth is 6 Mbps.

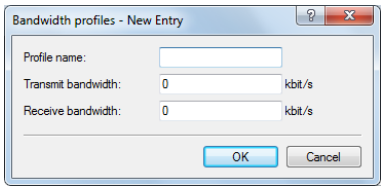
Gold

The transmit (TX) bandwidth is 4 Mbps, the receive (RX) bandwidth is 12 Mbps.

You have the option of customizing the predefined entries to meet your requirements. Select the profile for editing and click the button **Edit**. Alternatively, you can create your own profiles.

Creating your own bandwidth profiles

In order to add manual entries to the table **Bandwidth profiles**, click on the button **Add...**.



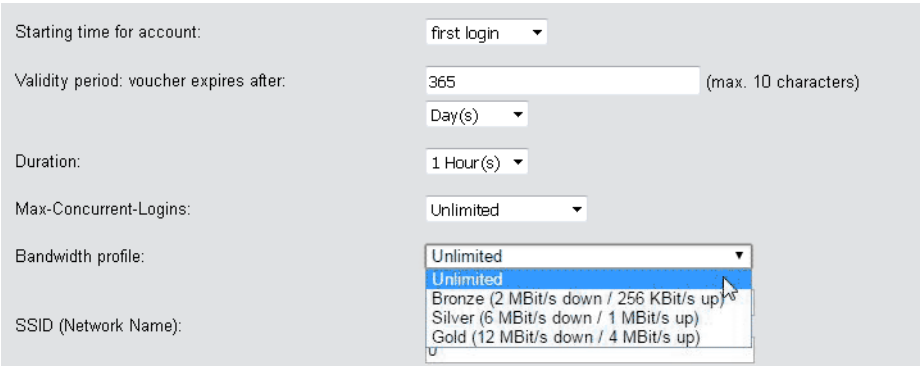
The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Profile name**: Enter the name for the bandwidth profile here.
- **TX bandwidth**: Enter the maximum uplink bandwidth (in kbps), which should be available to a Public Spot user. To limit the bandwidth, for example, to 1 Mbps, enter the value `1024`.
- **RX bandwidth**: Enter the maximum downlink bandwidth (in kbps), which should be available to a Public Spot user. To limit the bandwidth, for example, to 1 Mbps, enter the value `1024`.

Assigning bandwidth profiles

The following steps describe how you assign the available bandwidth profiles to a Public Spot user.

1. Open WEBconfig.
2. Start the add user wizard under **Setup Wizards** > **Create Public Spot account**.
3. Assign the new user an appropriate profile from the selection list **Bandwidth profile**.



When creating a new user, the RADIUS server automatically assigns the upper and lower boundaries of the bandwidth profile (not the bandwidth profile per se) to the associated account.

Auto cleanup user table

The device gives you the option to delete expired accounts for Public Spot users automatically.

Users of the Public Spot Wizard are generally administrators with restricted rights who are often unable to delete user table entries themselves. Because the user table has a limited number of entries, outdated entries could limit the capacity of the Public Spot. We strongly recommend that you activate this option.

If you use the internal RADIUS server for the administration of user accounts, enable automatic clean-up under **RADIUS** > **Server** > **User database** > **Auto cleanup user table**.

These settings have no effect on the user table on an external RADIUS server.

The following list offers you a general overview of which capacity limits apply to specific models. If you cannot find your device, please check the exact details in the product description.

Table 27: Size of the user table for specific LANCOM models

LANCOM model	User table size
with **Public Spot** option: > Access points > Routers from the 178x series	64
> vRouter 50	128
> WLC-4006(+) > vRouter 250	256
> vRouter 500 > vRouter 1000 > vRouter unlimited with **Public Spot XL** option: > WLC-4025 > WLC-4025(+) > WLC-4100 > 7100(+) VPN > 9100(+) VPN	unlimited*

*) No limitation on the table; however, an upper limit of max. 2,500 users is recommended.

Station monitoring

If station monitoring is activated, the Public Spot regularly checks to see if the associated end devices are still available. Lost end devices are automatically deleted from the local user table. If station monitoring is switched off, a user is not logged off until the validity period of the user's authentication expires.

Station monitoring is extremely important for Public Spots operating commercially on a time basis. In installations of this type, users must be assured that they are only paying for the time actually spent using the Public Spot services.

Configuration

Station monitoring for the Public Spot Module is disabled by default. You activate it by entering a value greater than 0 – this value disables the function – under **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Interface selection** > **Idle timeout**. From this point on, all end devices are automatically disconnected from the Public Spot after a specific time.

If your Public Spot device has WLAN, you also have the option of enabling station monitoring globally for all WLAN interfaces. You can find the corresponding settings under **Wireless LAN** > **Security** > **Monitor stations to detect inactive ones**. To do this, the device disconnects mobile stations after 60 seconds (default value). If WLAN station monitoring is disabled, by default this may take up to 15 minutes.

If you offer Public Spot via WLAN, please note that the station monitoring of the WLAN takes priority over that for the Public Spot, and a disconnection can occur earlier if the idle timeout for WLAN (configurable in the Setup menu under **WLAN** > **Idle timeout**) is less than that for the Public Spot.

Monitoring

You can monitor the Public Spot during operation using WEBconfig. The station table in the user authentication menu provides an overview of:

- Users currently logged in to the Public Spot and
- End devices in the WLAN which are not logged in.

You navigate to the Stations table in the Status menu under **Public Spot** > **Stations table**. Using the button **Monitor this table** you automatically refresh the table display at regular intervals.

WLAN handover of sessions between devices

Whenever a site equipped with WLAN hotspots expands, it may be necessary to deploy more than one access point to cover the whole area. One option would be to use a central device as an authentication gateway, enable the Public Spot option on this device only, and require all other access points to redirect requests to the central device. In this way, all other access points act as simple, transparent bridges, which connect to the central gateway using the Ethernet backbone. This allows clients to freely roam among the access points since all session information is kept in the central gateway.

This variant has two drawbacks, however:

- The central gateway is a single point of failure, and is not scalable. You can reduce the risk of failures by using VRRP to create a redundancy solution.

  This solution requires an external RADIUS server, since VRRP cannot synchronize configurations, e.g. the user database. However, this means that certain functions (such as the Public Spot wizards in WEBconfig) are no longer available.
- Roaming is only necessary when the Public Spot module is installed on the access points themselves. Using a WLC, the authentication can be forwarded to the central gateway. In this case, the roaming between access points is transparent to the WLAN controller.

An alternative to this type of centralized setup is to enable the Public Spot module in all of the access points. Authentication and page processing handling is thereby distributed over all devices, and a single point of failure is eliminated.

IAPP (inter access point protocol)

Since the Public Spot module is implemented as a "switchable" transparent bridge, there is no need for clients to acquire a new IP address after they roamed to another access point, so there is no need to terminate open connections. This results in the requirement that an already authenticated client does not have to re-authenticate after roaming to a new access point. Thus the authentication information should be carried over from the old to the new access point.

Access points use the IAPP (inter access point protocol) to share information about roaming clients: Whenever a wireless client decides to change to another access point, it has the option of informing the new AP about which AP it was previously connected to. This information, combined with regular Hello packets on the Ethernet backbone, enable the new access point to inform the old access point. The old access point can then remove the client from its station table and acknowledge the handover.

If a client does not use the corresponding Reassociate packet for connecting to the new access point, the new access point sends a handover request as a multicast on the backbone, instead of a directed packet to the old access point. This means that this handover also works for clients that do not support IAPP.

The main task of the IAPP in a WLAN is to tell the old access point not to send any more packets to the corresponding client in its wireless area, since it will no longer receive them. This type of behavior (based on the definition of the 802.11 frame exchange protocol) could otherwise cause problems with other clients that are connected with it.

In case of an enabled Public Spot module, the communication channel provided by IAPP is used to transport the session information of wireless clients. Whenever an access point receives a handover request for one of its wireless clients, and if a session record for this client is available in its station table, it will append state information about this client to the requesting access point. This information includes:

- The client's current state (authenticated or not authenticated)

  In case the client is authenticated, it also includes:

  - The username used to authenticate
  - The amount of data traffic generated by the client so far
  - The session duration so far
  - The IP address of the client
  - Possible limits on the session duration and data volumes
  - Possible information about idle timeouts

- If RADIUS accounting was used for the session:

  - The entry used for RADIUS accounting in the authentication server list, referenced by name
  - The accounting cycle used for interim updates

After a successful transfer, the old access point terminates the session, which, in the case of RADIUS accounting, means that it sends an accounting stop request to the RADIUS accounting server. This is necessary since a RADIUS server can use the NAS identification to associate requests with specific sessions, and these requests can no longer be associated with the correct sessions once the data packets for a session come from more than one device. If an access point receives this information in a handover reply, it immediately marks the client as authenticated and starts a new RADIUS accounting session, if possible.

Note that the new access point requires a corresponding entry in its **Authentication server** list in order to receive the necessary information. The specific part of the handover reply for the Public Spot module is protected by a shared secret, which is set in the setup menu under **Public-Spot-Module** > **Roaming-Secret**. These security measures should prevent falsification of handover replies. Without a password configured, the access point does not append the information above on a handover reply, which forces the client to authenticate again.

Authentication via RADIUS

RADIUS is an extensively accepted protocol for providing large groups of users access to a server. Although it was originally developed for dial-in server access over telephone lines, the concept is also useful for the hotspot authentication process. For that reason, it can be used in a more complex provider network, for example, to provide access for the same users via dial-in and hotspots. You configure RADIUS servers and their access parameters in the dialog **Public Spot** > **Users** > **Users and RADIUS servers** under **RADIUS server**.

In certain scenarios, it can be feasible to use more than one RADIUS server. In general, a RADIUS server is specified by its IP address, the UDP port the RADIUS service is bound to (typical ports are 1645 or 1812), and a so-called "shared secret". This is a random character string which acts as a password for access to the server. Only clients which know the shared secret can interact with the RADIUS server, since the password for the user account is hashed instead of being sent in cleartext.

If you operate your own external login portal, it is possible to change the attributes of Public Spot sessions after the user has authenticated. This is achieved with dynamic authorization by means of RADIUS CoA (Change of Authorization) (see *Dynamic authorization by RADIUS CoA (Change of Authorization)* in the Reference Manual and *Enabling the acceptance of RADIUS CoA requests by the Public Spot* on page 1144).

In theory, the simplest possible RADIUS transaction consists of the device sending the entered account data (user name + password) to the RADIUS server and the RADIUS server responding with either "yes" or "no". However, the RADIUS protocol also allows more complex responses and requests where the communication partners use a list of variables – so-called "attributes" – for requests and responses.

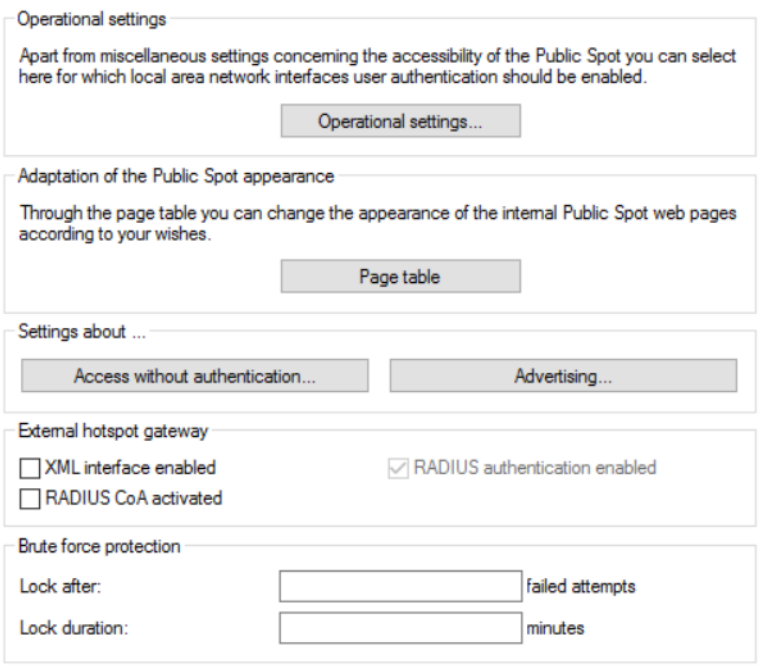
Enabling the acceptance of RADIUS CoA requests by the Public Spot

- The following steps assume that you have a functioning Public Spot that can be connected to an external hotspot gateway.
- The external hotspot gateway is located either in a freely accessible network provided by the Public Spot, or its address is included in the list of free hosts.

As an alternative to an XML-based `RADIUS_COA_REQUEST` via the XML interface, the Public Spot can also receive CoA requests by means of the RADIUS protocol from an external hotspot gateway or from an external RADIUS server. You have also have the option to use both forms of command transmission in parallel.

The following section explains how you enable RADIUS-CoA support as per RFC3576 in the Public Spot.

1. In LANconfig, open the device configuration and navigate to **Public Spot** > **Server**.



2. Set a checkmark under **RADIUS CoA activated**.
3. Now write the configuration back to the device.

From now on, the Public Spot processes any RADIUS CoA requests received from an external hotspot gateway.

Multiple authentication servers

As mentioned previously, the list of authentication servers can contain more than one entry. There may be situations where the hotspot provides access to the Internet for customers from different service providers. These providers may have separate user databases and their own RADIUS servers. The device must select which provider corresponds to the user based on the username.

Whenever the device does not find an entry for an authenticated user in its local table, it will first search through the authentication server list to find the provider that corresponds to the user. For example, user account names like `John.Doe@mydomain.com` contains the authentication server entry named `MYDOMAIN`. If the first allocation does not work, the device attempts to allocate the entry `DEFAULT` to the user. If this entry also does not exist, the device selects the authentication server that is first in the list. If the device does not find an entry (i.e., the list is empty), the user authentication fails.

Depending on the allocation of a user to a authentication server, your device always transmits the complete username to the selected RADIUS server. The selected RADIUS server is stored as the provider for the subsequent session and used for optional RADIUS accounting.

Chaining of backup servers

Internet access providers wish to provide a very high level of availability, and a common method to achieve this relies on redundancy. This redundancy is achieved using the backup servers which are needed when a request times out on the primary server, for example, because the server or another network component along the way was unavailable.

The requirements for backup servers varies widely among the different providers, which is why the list of authentication servers does not have a specific number of input fields. Instead, the device offers you a series of backup servers (backup chaining). Here, two or more entries in the authentication server table may be chained together to form a list of RADIUS servers. The device looks through the list of RADIUS servers one by one until the end of the list is reached (authentication failure due to server unavailability) or a response from a server (either positive or negative) is obtained.

You chain backup servers using the input field **Backup name** in the add/edit dialog under **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Authentication server**. Whenever a RADIUS request fails (i.e. times out), the device checks the backup field, and continues to try the RADIUS server specified in the entry that is referenced by the backup name. In general, an unlimited number of servers can be connected this way, which makes it possible for several providers to assign the same fallback server. The chain of backup servers is considered to be terminated if one of the following conditions occurs:

- Querying a RADIUS server failed and the corresponding authentication server table entry has an empty backup field.
- Querying a RADIUS server failed and the corresponding provider table entry has an invalid backup field, i.e. the entry referenced is not present in the authentication server list.
- Querying a RADIUS server failed and the corresponding authentication server list entry refers to an entry that has already been used in the query process. This avoids endless RADIUS requests due to circular references. It is possible to specify two RADIUS servers that reference each other as backups, with the primary server being selected by the user account name.

While the device is sending a RADIUS request, the TCP/HTTP connection to the client remains active. If the runtime of the chaining exceeds the lifetime of the TCP/HTTP connection, the client interrupts the login attempt. Therefore, it may be recommended to reduce the number of request retries to the individual backup servers as well as the time intervals between requests. You make these settings in the dialog **RADIUS** > **Server** > **Extended configuration** > **Options**.

Billing without a RADIUS accounting server

If user administration is performed using the internal user list of the Public Spot module, and you do not want to use a RADIUS accounting server, your only option is to use the expiry date of the user account for accounting purposes.

The use of the internal user list is no longer recommended. Instead, in order to take advantage of all of the options the Public Spot offers, you should use the internal RADIUS server for new installations.

For the purposes of billing by credit payment, the Public Spot can use SYSLOG to output detailed connection information to any computer in the network. Using the appropriate software on the destination computer allows you to precisely bill the resources that were actually used (such as connection times or transfer volumes).

Billing with a RADIUS accounting server

For the purposes of billing via a RADIUS server, you can set up the Public Spot so that it regularly supplies the current connection information for every active user to the specified accounting server. Accounting is started when a client is authenticated using RADIUS and a valid **Accounting server** is configured for the relevant **Authentication server** in the list of **Authentication servers**. It is possible to use different RADIUS servers for authentication and accounting.

Each of the regular message packets to the accounting server contains information about the resources (time, transferred data volumes, etc.) consumed by the user since the last message. This means that, even in the worst case of a Public Spot failure (e.g., due to a power outage or similar), only a small amount of accounting information will be lost.

Periodic messaging of accounting information to the accounting server (interim updates) is deactivated by default. It is activated by setting a value for the accounting cycle which is greater than 0.

- LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Users** > **Accounting update cycle**

This cycle is defined in seconds. This sets the time interval of when your device regularly sends connection information to the accounting server. Setting the cycle to `0` deactivates this function. If this is the case, your device only sends accounting information at the beginning and end of the session.

When accounting on a prepaid basis, the RADIUS server monitors the restrictions on the users (limits on connection times or transfer volumes, expiry date). As soon as a user has used up the prepaid amount, the RADIUS server locks the user account. Your device rejects future login attempts for the user.

Time limits for prepaid models can be monitored by the Public Spot during active sessions. If a time limit is exceeded, the Public Spot automatically terminates the corresponding session. The monitoring of prepaid amounts is possible if the RADIUS server transmits the user's time credit to the Public Spot as the "Session timeout" attribute at the start of the session.

Request types

Your device is able to send different types of RADIUS requests to an accounting server. These requests differ according to a user's session state:

- An accounting start request is sent after a successful authentication.
- An accounting stop request is sent after a Public Spot session is terminated.
- Optional: Interim updates are sent throughout the session.

There are two types of interim updates: An initial update is sent immediately after the start request since some RADIUS servers need this in order to create a session in the accounting database. All further updates depend on whether an accounting cycle was created for the respective session (see **Public Spot** > **Users** > **Accounting update cycle**).

Alternatively, this value may be included in a RADIUS authentication response: The RADIUS server offers the RADIUS client (for example, your Public Spot) an interim accounting interval, which the client will use if it has the appropriate support for this and as long as no interval was set locally on the device itself.

If a local value was set, it will always be given a higher priority than the one received from a RADIUS server, which the RADIUS RFCs require by default!

In the *Appendix* there is a list of which attributes a device can send to a RADIUS server and which attributes from a RADIUS response are understood by the device.

Accounting backup

The backup solution for RADIUS accounting is the same as the one for RADIUS authentication, in that your device goes through the entries in the authentication server list one by one (see chapter *Chaining of backup servers*). The backup entries for the accounting server should be chosen with the same care as for the authentication server: If you are using multiple backups, you will probably have to reduce the timeout/try values for the requests in order to achieve reasonable response times for the entire system.

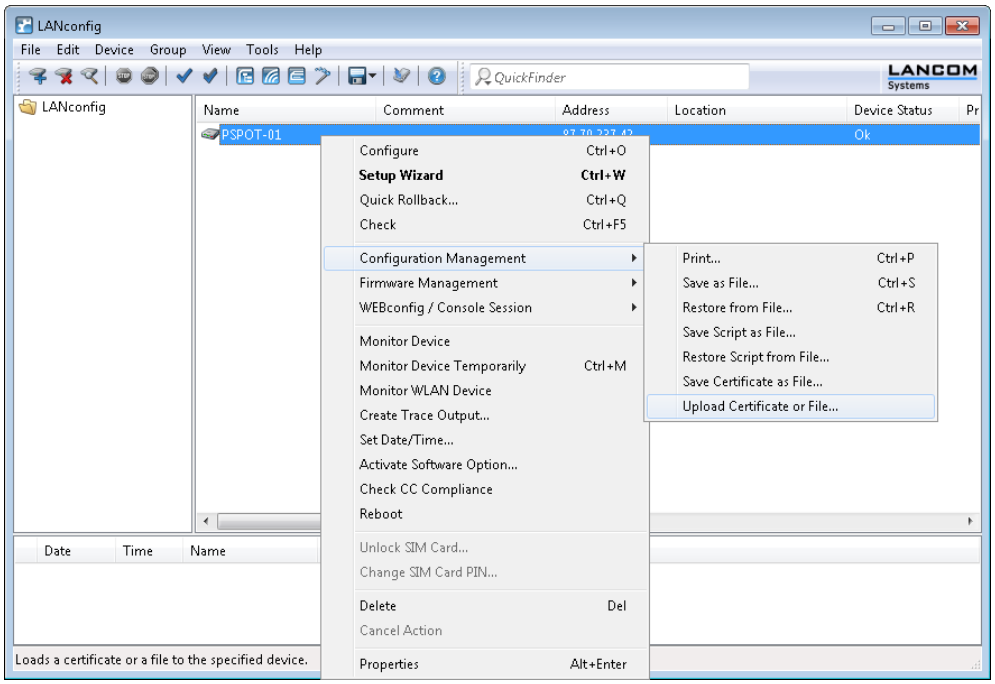
User sessions are not paused while the device sends accounting requests, which consumes additional resources in the device—in contrast to authentication. Please ensure that the time required for the selection of an accounting server* should be less than the length of an accounting cycle for interim update requests. This stops the requests from queuing up, which would result in a stack overflow.

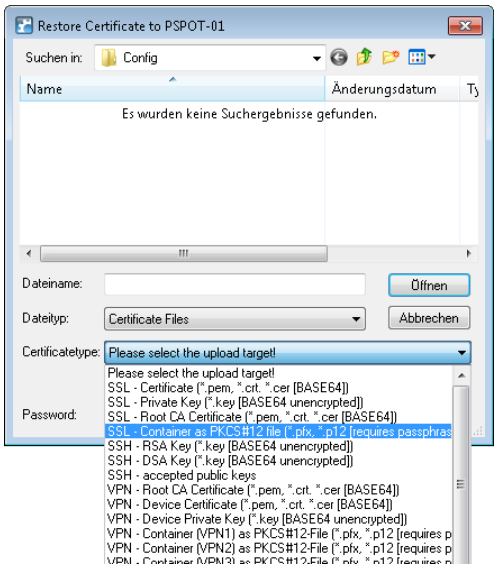
** Number of backups x (idle timeout + number of retries)*

Multi-level certificates for Public Spots

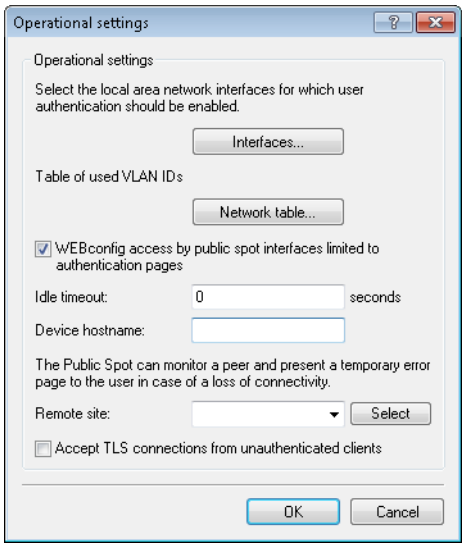
SSL certificate chains can be loaded into the device as a PKCS#12 container. These certificate chains can be used for Public Spot authentication pages by using the HTTPS server implemented in the device. Certificates from recognized trust centers are normally multi-level. Officially signed certificates in the Public Spot are necessary to avoid certificate-related error messages from the browser when authenticating at a Public Spot.

The certificate is loaded into the device for using LANconfig in File Management to upload the individual files of the root CA certificate or a PKCS#12 container:





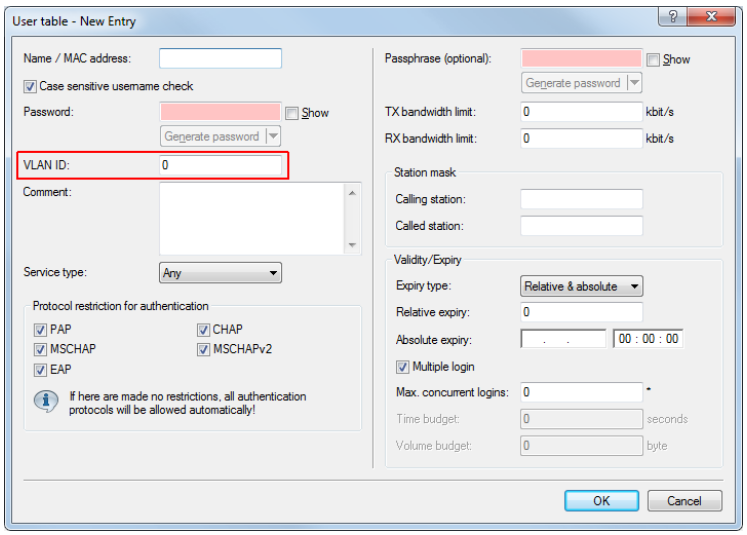
Certificates are normally issued for DNS names, so the Public Spot must specify the certificate's DNS name as the destination and not an internal IP address (enter in **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operational settings** under **Device hostname**). This name has to be resolved by the DNS server to provide the corresponding IP address of the Public Spot.



Assigning users to individual VLANs

Regardless of the assignment of a VLAN ID for the entire Public Spot module, the device offers you the option of separately assigning individual VLAN IDs for individual Public Spot users. This ID is automatically assigned by the RADIUS server to your users after successful authentication. In this way it is possible, for example, to classify different Public Spot users in separate networks with different access rights and access options without having them login to separate SSIDs or requiring you to publicize the availability of various networks (e.g., networks for different customer types). The relevant rules can be realized via the firewall by specifying the VLAN ID of the respective user/the relevant user groups as the source tag.

An enabled VLAN module is a prerequisite for the functions described above.



- Open the **User table** in the dialog **RADIUS Server User database** and click **Add...** to create a new user.
- Assign an individual VLAN ID to the new user with the input field **VLAN-ID**. After authentication by the RADIUS server, the individual VLAN ID overwrites a global VLAN ID that a user would otherwise obtain from the interface. The value `0` disables the assignment of an individual VLAN ID.

For technical reasons, the assignment of a VLAN ID requires a new address assignment by the DHCP server. As long as a client is not yet assigned a new address after successful authentication, the client is still in the previous (e.g., untagged) network. In order for the clients to be transferred to the new network as quickly as possible, it is necessary to set the lease time of the DHCP server as low as possible under **IPv4** > **DHCPv4**. Possible values (in minutes) include, for example:

- **Maximum lease time:** `2`
- **Default lease time:** `1`

Take into account that a strong reduction in global lease time can flood your network with DHCP messages, and when there is a larger number of users, it leads to an increased network load! Alternatively, you have the option of using an external DHCP server or allowing your users to manually request a new address by using their client. In the Windows command line this is done, for example, using the commands `ipconfig /release` and `ipconfig /renew`.

By assigning a VLAN-ID, the user loses his connection after the initial DHCP lease expires. The connection only remains stable as of the second lease, i.e. after successfully assigning the VLAN-ID.

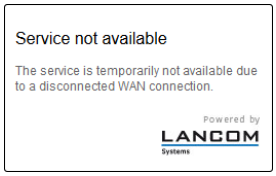
Error page in case of WAN connection failure

In addition to the general login error pages, you can also inform non-authenticated Public Spot users of a WAN connection error. Potential users are informed about the lack of network availability beforehand. This **Error** page is displayed whenever the Public Spot module registers a WAN link failure.

In order for the error page to be displayed properly, a corresponding remote site **must** be named, the connection to which is monitored by the Public Spot module. Make an appropriate entry in the dialog **Public Spot** > **Server Remote site**. The **Select** button allows you to assign an existing entry to the input field, or to create a new remote site.

If no remote site is named for monitoring, the Public Spot module disables the display of the connection error page. If the WAN connection fails, unauthenticated will not see an error page and their browsers will timeout instead.

On your custom error page, use the identifier `LOGINERRORMSG` to insert the error message issued by LCOS in case of a WAN link failure. In the event of a WAN link failure, the following error message is displayed:



Users who are already authenticated will see an appropriate error message from their browser.

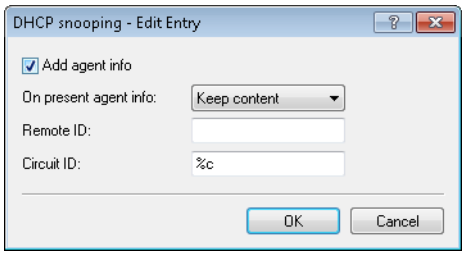
AP-specific login to a central Public Spot

A central WLC manages a Public Spot in a distributed infrastructure. Accordingly, the configuration of the Public Spot (Public Spot SSID, security standards) is identical on all of the participating APs. This allows a Public Spot provider to offer an identical Public Spot at all of the different locations.

After receiving a voucher, customers would have access to this Public Spot at any branch. In order to limit access to the branch where the customer has received the voucher, the AP transmits its own identifier in addition to the user name and password. This identifier enables the voucher to be associated with this AP. To transfer the identifier, the AP attaches the circuit ID (DHCP option 82) to the DHCP requests. These DHCP packets pass through the central Public Spot, which checks the identifier based on the entries in the RADIUS user table.

The Public Spot only allows a request if the voucher in the RADIUS user table is associated with this AP. Customers who have received a voucher at branch A cannot login to the same Public Spot at branch B, since the two APs transmit different identifiers.

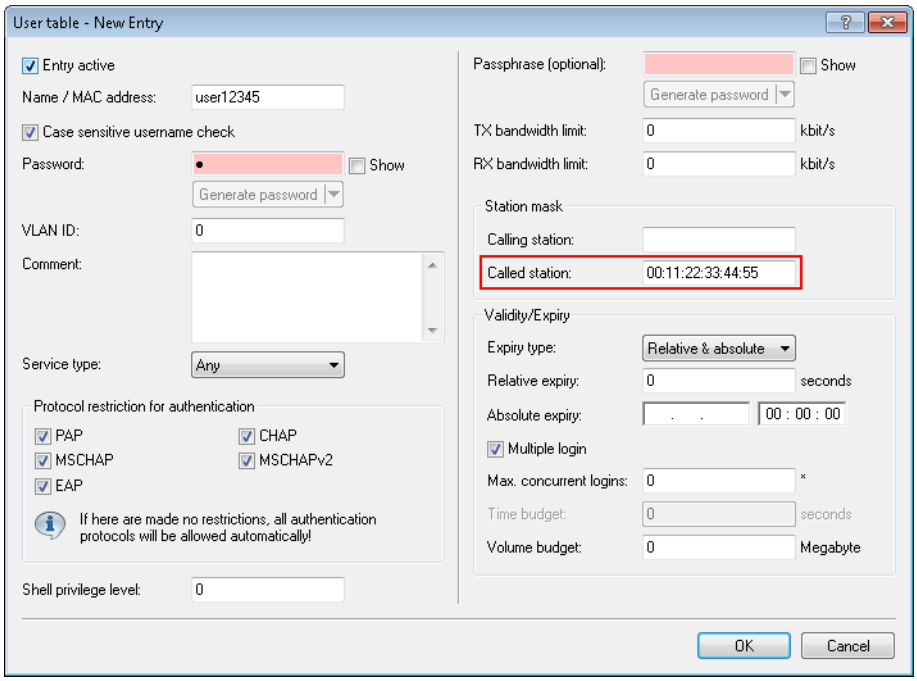
The AP identifier is configured as the circuit ID for the corresponding interface under **Interfaces** > **Snooping** > **DHCP snooping**.



You can use the following variables:

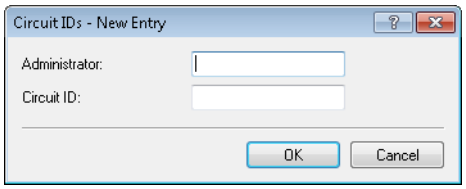
- **%%**: Inserts a percent sign.
- **%c**: Inserts the MAC address of the interface used by the Public Spot user to authenticate. If a WLAN-SSID is involved, then this is the corresponding BSSID.
- **%c**: Inserts the name of the interface used by the Public Spot user to authenticate.
- **%n**: Inserts the name of the AP as specified under **Management** > **General**.
- **%v**: Inserts the VLAN ID of the DHCP request packet. This VLAN ID is sourced either from the VLAN header of the DHCP packet or from the VLAN ID mapping for this interface.
- **%p**: Inserts the name of the Ethernet interface that received the DHCP packet. This variable is useful for devices featuring an Ethernet switch or Ethernet mapper, because they can map multiple physical interfaces to a single logical interface. For other devices, **%p** and **%i** are identical.
- **%s**: Inserts the WLAN SSID if a WLAN client is used for the authentication. For other clients, this variable contains an empty string.
- **%e**: Inserts the serial number of the AP, to be found for example under **Management** > **General**.

On the WLC, you configure this identifier in the RADIUS user table under **RADIUS** > **Server** > **General** > **User table**.



As the “Called station”, you add the ID of the AP that should enable access by means of the corresponding voucher.

When setting up new Public Spot users, the Public Spot Setup Wizard automatically uses the ID of the device if this is configured under **Public Spot** > **Wizard** > **Circuit IDs**.



When you create a new Public Spot account, the setup wizard checks to see whether this table contains an entry for the logged-in **administrator**. If this is the case, the setup wizard inserts the **circuit ID** into the RADIUS user table as the "called station".

Redirect for HTTPS connections

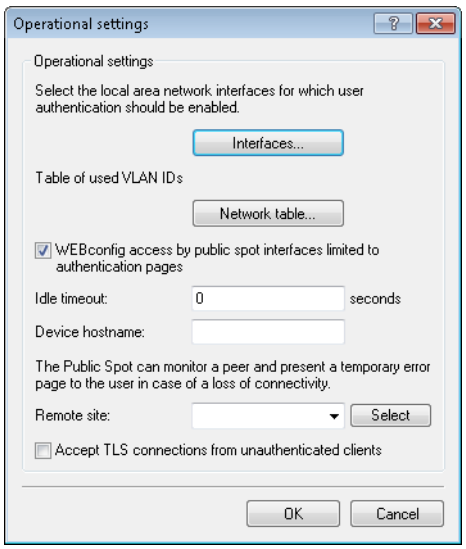
If an unauthenticated client attempts to access an HTTPS website via an interface operated by the Public Spot, the connection request is redirected to the Public Spot gateway itself, which then presents its login page to the user (as is also the case with HTTP). Usually, the user's browser displays a certificate warning, because the name or IP of the requested website is different from the name or IP address of the Public Spot. To prevent this and the increased load on the Public Spot from the HTTPS/TLS connections, this setting allows you to prevent HTTPS connections from being established for unauthenticated clients.

Once the client is authenticated, redirection is stopped and the client can establish any HTTP or HTTPS connection.

Modern clients carry out a "captive portal detection" via HTTP. The client attempts to access a certain URL via HTTP to check for the presence of a login page (from the Public Spot or other solutions). This mechanism is not affected by turning off the HTTPS redirect, since detection is usually via HTTP.

However, if unauthenticated WLAN clients should not perform connect requests over HTTP, this ineffective HTTPS redirect would place unnecessary load on the Public Spot gateway. For this reason it is possible to disable this HTTPS redirect. In this case, the user's browser displays a blank page.

In LANconfig, you configure the HTTPS redirect under **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operational settings**.



To enable the HTTPS redirect, activate the option **Accept TLS connections from unauthenticated clients**. This option is disabled by default.

Protection against brute force attacks

Brute force attacks are the most common type of attack on networks. This method of attack tries out a variety of potential passwords in the shortest possible time, until the right one is found. One form of protection against brute-force attacks is to react to one or more successive failed attempts by delaying the time until the entry is allowed to be attempted again.

Configure the protection against brute-force attacks in LANconfig under **Public Spot** > **Server** in the section **Brute force protection**.

Lock after

Specify how many unsuccessful attempts are permitted before the entry lock takes effect.

Lock duration

Specify for how long the entry lock is to apply.

You can use the console to display the current status of the brute-force protection with the command `show pbbruteprotector`:

`show pbbruteprotector`

Shows all of the MAC addresses that are associated with the Public Spot.

`show pbbruteprotector [MAC address[ MAC address [ ...]]]`

Specifying one or more space-separated MAC addresses shows the status of all of the respective MAC addresses.

MAC addresses are specified in the format `11:22:33:44:55:66`, `11-22-33-44-55-66` or `112233445566`.

14.2.4 Alternative login methods

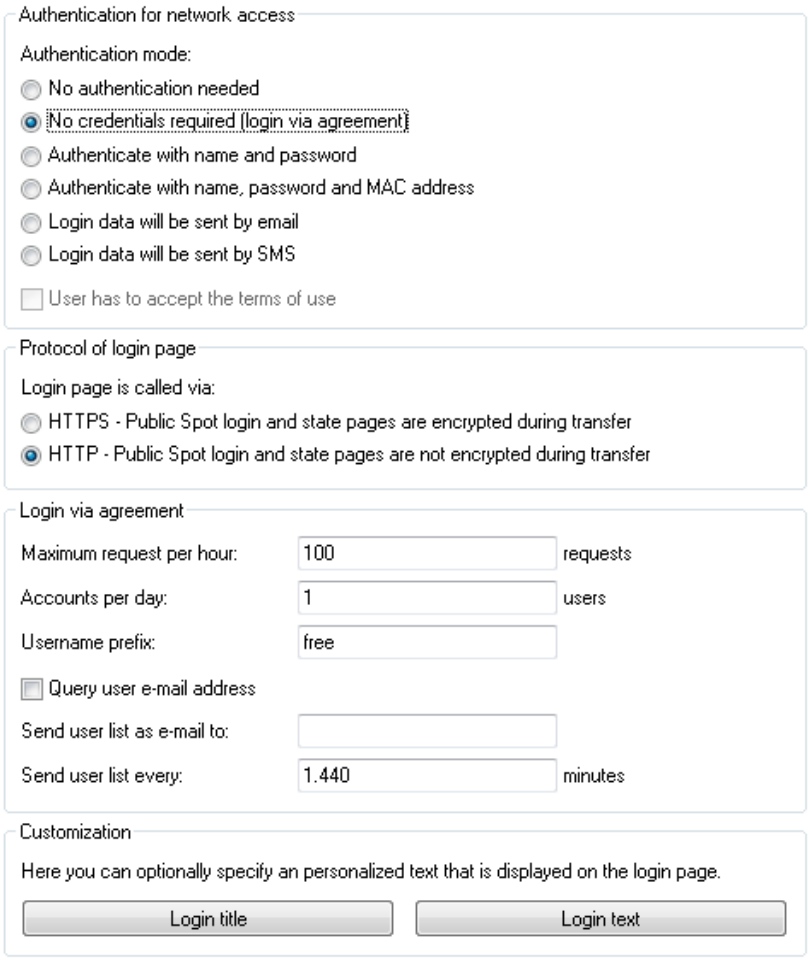
In addition to logging-in with previously provided credentials, your users can also independently request the receipt of login data via e-mail or text message (SMS), or by gaining instant access to the Public Spot by means of Login via agreement. Alternatively, in order to implement more complex or multi-level login scenarios, you can also link your Public Spot to other software systems using the XML or PMS interface (module optionally available).

You can also offer your users additional convenience by allowing, for example, automatic login processes (automatic login as well as re-login using a MAC address, login using WISPr, Hotspot 2.0), and also the related roaming services.

Hotspot 2.0 and roaming features are only available in conjunction with WLAN.

Overview of authentication modes

There are various ways to login to the Public Spot. The network access authentication setting is located in the dialog **Public Spot** > **Authentication**.



The following authentication modes are available:

- **No authentication required**

  Users get free access to the Public Spot, authentication is not required.

  Do not use this setting if your device has unlimited access to the Internet.

- **No credentials required (login after agreement)**

  Users get free access to the Public Spot after they agree to the operator's terms. With a RADIUS server, login is completely transparent for the user. The prerequisite is that you have set up an individual template page (a welcome page with a Login via agreement): In this case, the Public Spot initially forwards a user to the Welcome page. After the user agrees to the terms, the device automatically creates a user account in line with the default values set under **Public Spot** > **Wizard** and grants access to the connected network.

  Once you have select this login mode, the dialog section **Login via agreement** becomes available, where you can set additional conditions for the creation of free user accounts by the RADIUS server:

  - **Maximum requests per hour**: Specify how many users per hour can automatically create an account on the device. Decrease this value to reduce performance degradation caused by an excessive number of users.

- **Accounts per day**: Specify how many accounts a user may create per day. If this value is reached and the user session has expired, a user can not automatically register and get authenticated on the Public Spot for the rest of the day.
- **Username prefix**: Enter a prefix which can be used to identify the user in the RADIUS user table that the device created automatically after confirmation of the terms of use. This prefix is placed directly in front of the **User name pattern** specified under **Public Spot** > **Wizard**.
- **Query user e-mail address**: Enable this check box in order to query the user's e-mail address as a requirement for using the Public Spot. The device automatically enters the e-mail address specified here into the comments box of the newly created RADIUS user. Once a day a list of all of the available addresses is stored in the flash memory of the device. This list is boot persistent.
- **Send user list as e-mail to**: Enter the e-mail address where the address list is to be sent. Only new entries that have been added since the last submission are sent. The address list is transmitted as a CSV file.
- **Send user list every**: This sets the interval at which the updated address list is sent to the specified e-mail address. This value is specified in minutes.

The terms featured on the Welcome screen are not to be confused with the terms-of-use page itself. The **Terms of use** page is an extra page that becomes available when certain login modes are activated (see *Possible authentication pages* on page 1183). If no Welcome page has been set up (see *Configuration of user-defined pages* on page 1188), the device displays an error message when accessing the Public Spot.

- **Authenticate with name and password**

  Users log on to the Public Spot with their name and their password. Users get their login data from a network administrator as a voucher.

- **Authenticate with name, password and MAC address**

  Users log on to the Public Spot with their name and their password. Users get their login data from a network administrator as a voucher. For this login mode, the MAC address of the client must also match the one stored in the user list by the administrator.

- **Login data will be sent by e-mail**

  Users log on to the Public Spot with their name and their password. Users generate the credentials themselves, and the data is sent via e-mail. No action by an administrator is necessary. Learn more about this login mode under *Independent user authentication (Smart Ticket)* on page 1154.

- **Login data will be sent by SMS (text message)**

  Users log on to the Public Spot with their name and their password. Users generate the credentials themselves, and the data is sent by SMS (text message). No action by an administrator is necessary. Learn more about this login mode under *Independent user authentication (Smart Ticket)* on page 1154.

For some login modes, the option **User has to accept the terms of use** allows you to combine the login with an acceptance of the terms and conditions. In this case, the Public Spot login page displays an additional option, which prompts the user to accept the terms of use before registering or logging in. Users who do not explicitly agree to these terms and conditions are unable to login to the Public Spot.

Remember to upload a page with terms and conditions onto the device before you enable this option. Otherwise, the device will only show the user a placeholder instead of the terms and conditions.

Independent user authentication (Smart Ticket)

Devices operating a Public Spot provide users with time-limited access to certain networks, typically the Internet. In many scenarios, a limited administrator account is used for the creation of these accounts: For example, a hotel employee at the front desk can use an account that only has the functional rights to create and manage Public Spot users. With a few mouse clicks the employee can print a voucher for the hotel guests granting them network access.

However, the convenient voucher solution still requires action from an administrator. Alternatively, you can give the users the option to generate their own login data for the wireless network, and send it to themselves by e-mail or SMS (login by "Smart Ticket").

Login via agreement

Alternatively, the device gives you the ability to handle the login for Public Spot users transparently using a RADIUS server. In this case, the user login is preceded by a request to consent to the agreement before the user automatically receives access to the Public Spot. The creation of credentials by the user via e-mail or SMS does not apply for this authentication method. Learn more about this in the section under *Overview of authentication modes* on page 1153—the "Login via agreement" is not a part of the Smart Ticket function.

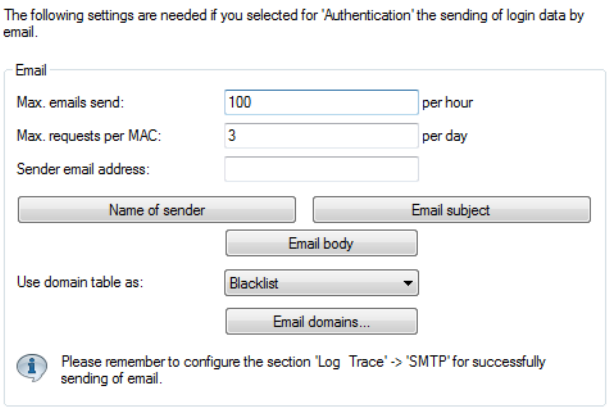
Configuring e-mail authentication

The settings for transmitting the login credentials to the e-mail address specified by the user are adjusted in the dialog **Public Spot** > **Email**. The following steps show you how to correctly configure e-mail authentication.

In order to successfully send access credentials as an e-mail, you must set up a valid SMTP account under **Log & Trace** > **SMTP account** and **Log & Trace** > **SMTP options**.

In addition, you can specify individual text blocks used by the device to send the login credentials; see *Customizing text message content* on page 1158. By default, the device inserts predefined text modules; for an overview of these see *Standard texts for e-mail sender, subject line and body* on page 1159.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.
2. Change the view to **Public Spot** > **Authentication**.
3. Change the login mode to **Login data will be sent by email**.
4. Change the view to **Public Spot** > **Email**.



5. Under **Max. emails send** you enter the maximum number of e-mails that the Public Spot module may send per hour to users authenticating via e-mail. Lower the value to reduce the number of new users per hour.
6. Under **Max.requests per MAC** you specify how many different sets of credentials the device can provide to a MAC address within one day.
7. Under **Sender e-mail address** enter the return address that your Public Spot users will see when the e-mail is delivered, e.g. `support@providerX.org`.
8. Specify whether the device uses the table **Email domains** as a blacklist or whitelist with the selection item **Use domain table as**.

   This definition sets which e-mail addresses or domains may be entered by your Public Spot users in order to register.

   - **Blacklist**: Registration is permitted on all e-mail domains except those in this table.
   - **Whitelist**: Registration is possible only via the e-mail domains that are present in this table.

   Please note that a Public Spot operating with an empty whitelist will black-list (reject) all domains.

9. Use the **Email domains** table to define the e-mail domains that you allow or prohibit in the case of logins by your Public Spot users via e-mail. Enter domains in the format `@web-domain.com`.

10. You can write the configuration back to the device.

Configuring SMS authentication

The settings for transmitting the login credentials as an SMS text message to the phone number specified by the user are adjusted in the dialog **Public Spot** > **SMS**. The choices available to you vary according to the device type:

- The credentials are sent as an SMS text message via the 3G/4G WWAN module in this device.
- The credentials are sent as an SMS text message via the 3G/4G WWAN module in another device.
- The access credentials are sent as an e-mail to an external E-Mail2SMS gateway, which then converts the e-mail to SMS.

LCOS checks the entered phone number for invalid characters. Only numbers between 0 and 9 are allowed. The user must enter 5 to 15 numbers (excluding the country code).

The following steps show you how to correctly configure the different variants of SMS authentication.

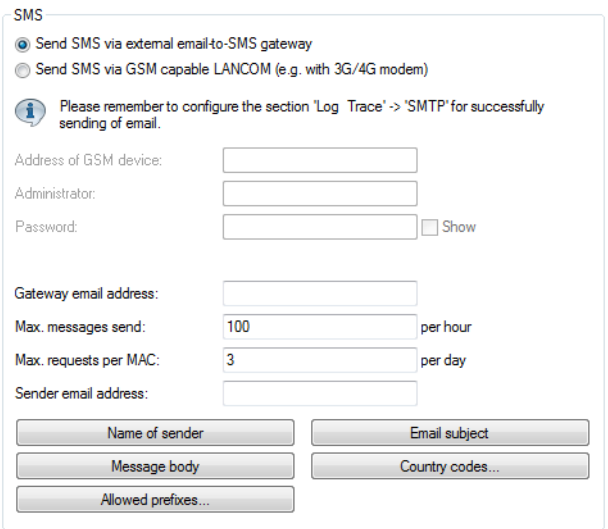
In order to send login data as a text message via a 3G/4G WWAN-capable device, the internal SMS module of this device must be set up under **Log & Trace** > **SMS messages**, see *Basic configuration of the SMS module*.

SMS transmission is suitable for installations with a maximum throughput of 10 SMS per minute.

In order to successfully send access credentials as an e-mail, you must set up a valid SMTP account under **Log & Trace** > **SMTP account** and **Log & Trace** > **SMTP options**.

In addition, you can specify individual text blocks used by the device to send the login credentials; see *Customizing text message content* on page 1158. By default, the device inserts predefined text modules; for an overview of these see *Standard texts for e-mail sender, subject line and body* on page 1159.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.
2. Change the view to **Public Spot** > **Authentication**.
3. Change the login mode to **Login data will be sent by SMS**.
4. Navigate to the menu item **Public Spot** > **SMS**.



5. Specify how the device sends SMS text messages.

   - In order to send the login credentials as an SMS text message via the internal 3G/4G WWAN module, select **Send SMS via internal GSM modem** and then continue with the next main step in the configuration.

- In order to send the login credentials as an SMS text message via the 3G/4G WWAN module of another device, you first carry out the steps in section *Operating devices with the 3G/4G WWAN module as an SMS gateway* on page 1157 and then continue with the next main step in the configuration.
- In order to send the login credentials to an external E-Mail2SMS gateway, select the setting **Send SMS via external e-mail-to-SMS gateway** and then continue with the next main step in the configuration.

a) Under **Gateway e-mail address** you enter the IP address or the hostname of the gateway server, which converts the e-mail into SMS. If the provider expects to find the mobile phone number in the local part of the e-mail, you can use the variable `$PSpotUserMobileNo`.

b) Under **Sender e-mail address** enter the return address that your Public Spot users will see when the SMS is delivered, e.g. `support@providerX.org`.

6. Under **Max. messages send** you enter the maximum number of SMS text messages that the Public Spot module may send per hour to users authenticating via SMS. Lower the value to reduce the number of new users per hour.
7. Under **Max.requests per MAC** you specify how many different sets of credentials the device can provide to a MAC address within one day.
8. Under **Country codes** you enter the international code numbers that the Public Spot will accept when sending data via SMS.
   Country codes can be entered directly or with a prefixed double-zero, for example for Germany `49` or `0049`.

   This table acts as a whitelist. You must define country codes in order for the login data to be delivered.

9. You can limit the transmission of SMS text messages to certain area codes for each country by entering the permissible codes followed by a '*' into a comma-separated list. An example for German mobile phone providers: `15*, 16*, 17*`.

   If you do not make an entry for a country in this table, all country codes will be allowed. Beforehand, an entry must have been created for this country in the Allowed-Country-Codes table.

10. You can write the configuration back to the device.

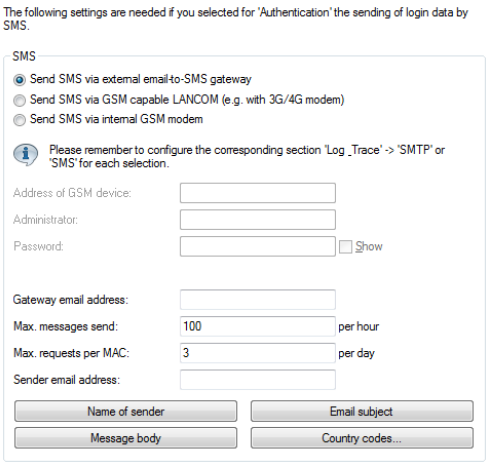
Operating devices with the 3G/4G WWAN module as an SMS gateway

When using Public Spot authentication via SMS (Smart Ticket), you have the option of sending access credentials via the 3G/4G WWAN module in a further device instead of using an external E-Mail2SMS gateway. To use this option, you must store the address and the access credentials for the 3G/4G device on the device that provides the Public Spot. For the purpose of sending the SMS, the Public Spot module uses a URL call to send the credentials and the text message to the external 3G/4G device.

The option is available on devices both with and without their own 3G/4G WWAN module. These options allow you to chain multiple devices together and to set up your own transmitting device if you operate multiple Public Spots or use a device without a 3G/4G WWAN module.

1. Start LANconfig and set up the SMS module on the 3G/4G device that is to serve as an SMS gateway (see *Basic configuration of the SMS module*). In addition, we recommended that you create an administrator without access rights (select **None**) and with just one function right, **Send SMS**.
2. Open the configuration dialog for the device that provides the Public Spot.

3. Navigate to the menu item **Public Spot** > **SMS**.



4. Select the setting **Send SMS via GSM-capable device (e.g. with 3G/4G modem)**.
5. Enter the user name and password for the administrator on the other 3G/4G device under **Administrator** and **Password**.
6. In the field **Address of GSM device**, enter the IP address where the Public Spot is to reach the other 3G/4G device.

Customizing text message content

By default, the device uses predefined text modules as the content of the e-mails or SMS text messages. An overview of these standard texts is available under *Standard texts for e-mail sender, subject line and body* on page 1159. You can also define your own texts.

If you do not specify any text for a language, the device automatically enters the internal default text.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.
2. Depending on the selected authentication method, switch to the view **Public Spot** > **E-mail** or **SMS**.
3. Using the button **Name of sender**, enter a customized sender name for the e-mails or SMS text messages sent in the various languages, e.g. `Provider X`.
4. Use the **E-mail subject** button to enter a subject line for the e-mails sent in the various languages by the Public Spot module. Special control characters are available for this, described in more detail in the section *Variables and control characters* on page 1158.
5. Use the **E-mail body** or **Message body** button to enter the content of the e-mails or SMS text messages sent in the various languages by the Public Spot module. Variables and special control characters are available for this, described in more detail in the section *Variables and control characters* on page 1158.
6. Now write the configuration back to the device.

Variables and control characters

The message texts used for the Smart Ticket function can be customized with the use of variables and control characters. The variables are automatically populated with values when the Public Spot module sends the e-mail to the user or the SMS gateway.

Variables

The following variables are available in the input field **E-mail body**:

`$PSpotPasswd`

Placeholder for user-specific password for the Public Spot access.

`$PSpotLogoutLink`

Placeholder for the logout URL of the Public Spot in the form `http://<IP address of the Public Spot>/authen/logout`. This URL allows users to logout of the Public Spot if, after a successful login, the session window (which also contains this link) was blocked by the browser or closed by the Public Spot user.

Control characters

The following control characters may also be used in the text entered into the fields **E-mail subject** and **E-mail body**:

`\n`

CRLF (carriage return, line feed)

`\t`

Tabulator

`\<ASCII>`

ASCII code of the corresponding character

If the e-mail2SMS provider requires a variable which contains a backslash ("\"), you have to prefix this with another "\". This prevents the transformation of the "\" by LCOS.

Standard texts for e-mail sender, subject line and body

If you leave the dialogs **Public Spot** > **Email** or **SMS** blank, then the device automatically reverts to the standard texts in the corresponding language as stored in LCOS to generate the e-mail. The language used depends on the language setting of the browser used by the user for registration. If there are no default texts stored internally for a language, the device uses the English texts.

Table 28: Overview of the internal standard texts for authentication via e-mail/SMS

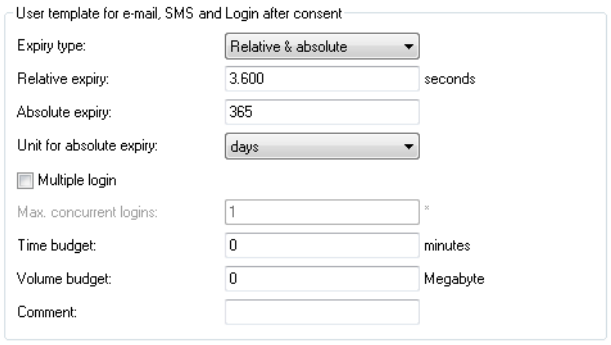
	Name of sender:	E-mail subject:	E-mail body:
Deutsch	Public Spot	Your login credentials for the Public Spot	Your password for the Public Spot: $PSpotPasswd $PSpotLogoutLink
English	Public Spot	Your Public Spot account	Your password for the Public Spot: $PSpotPasswd $PSpotLogoutLink

Setting default values for the user templates

The following section describes how you adjust the default values for the **User templates** to meet your needs. The device uses the values set here as defaults when creating new users in Smart Ticket and when users login after confirming the terms and conditions. If you have so opted to send the login credentials via e-mail/SMS or you have activated the login after confirming the terms and conditions, each new user account is equipped with the permissions and constraints as defined by the user template.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.

2. Change the view to **Public Spot** > **Wizard**.



3. Complete the input fields in the section **User template** according to your preferences:

Expiry type

Using this entry you define how an automatically created Public Spot user account expires. You can specify whether the validity period of a user account is absolute (e.g. expires on a set date) and/or relative (elapsed time since the first successful login). If you select both values, the expiry time depends on which case occurs first.

Relative expiry

Using this entry you define the relative expiry time of an automatically created user account (in seconds). The **Expiry-type** that you chose must include `relative` in order for this setting to work. The validity of the account terminates after the time period specified in this field from the time of the first successful login of the user.

Absolute expiry

Using this entry you define the absolute expiry time of an automatically created user account (in days). The **Expiry type** that you chose must include `absolute` in order for this setting to work. The validity of the account terminates at the time specified in this field, calculated from the day of the creation of the account.

Unit for absolute expiry

To configure shorter expiry times, use the drop-down menu to select the unit for absolute expiry. Adjust the value for the absolute expiry if necessary.

Multiple login

This entry allows you to generally allow or prohibit users with an automatically created account to login to the Public Spot using the same credentials with multiple devices at the same time. The number of devices that can be logged on simultaneously is specified using the input field **Max. concurrent logins**.

Maximum number

Using this entry you set the maximum number of devices which can concurrently login to an automatically created account. The value `0` stands for "unlimited". In order for this setting to work, the parameter **Multiple login** must be enabled.

Time budget

Using this entry you define the time budget which automatically created users are assigned. The value `0` deactivates the function.

Volume budget

Using this entry you define the volume budget which automatically created users are assigned. The value `0` deactivates the function.

Comment

Using this entry you specify a comment or informational text which the RADIUS server adds to an automatically created user account.

4. Optional: If necessary, change the **User name pattern** and the **Password length**. In the authentication modes mentioned above, the device uses the relevant *New user wizard default values* to automatically generate a user name and a password.
5. You can write the configuration back to the device.

Automatic re-login

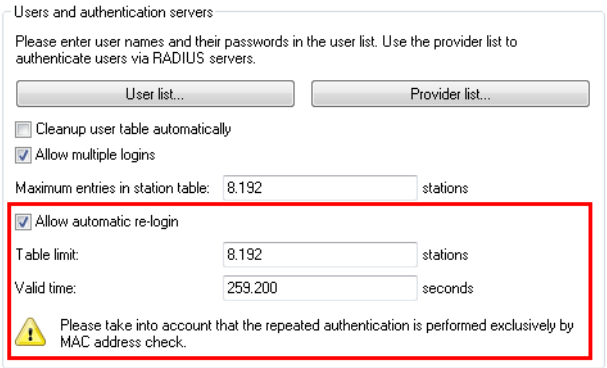
Mobile WLAN clients (e.g., smart phones and tablet PCs) automatically log in to known WLAN networks (SSID) when they reenter the cell. In this case, many apps automatically and directly access web content using the web browser in order to request current data (such as e-mails, social networks, weather reports, etc.) It is similar for mobile LAN clients (e.g., notebooks) which have to be disconnected from the network for a short time for a change of location (e.g., for changes from a lecture hall to a library in a college). In all of these cases, it is impractical to make the user manually log in to the Public Spot again in the browser.

With automatic re-login, the user only has to be identified on the Public Spot once. After a temporary absence, the user can seamlessly use the Public Spot again.

The Public Spot records the manual login and logout as well as a re-login in the SYSLOG. It stores the same login data for a re-login that a user had employed for initial authentication.

The authentication is only performed on the MAC address of the client when re-login is enabled. Since it can lead to security problems, re-login is disabled by default.

The settings for automatic re-login can be found in LANconfig in the device configuration under **Public Spot** > **Users** in the section **Users and authentication servers**.



The selection box **Allow automatic re-login** enables this function.

You specify the number of clients (maximum 65536) in the field **Automatic re-login table limit** that the re-login function may use.

In the field **Automatic re-login valid time** you specify how long the Public Spot stores the credentials of a client in the table for a re-login. After this period expires, the Public Spot user must log in again using the login page of the Public Spot in the browser.

Automatic authentication with the MAC address

After successful authentication, a Public Spot gives the user access to certain services. The Public Spot usually displays a login website so that users can authenticate. The user enters the authorization credentials into the login page and the Public Spot then redirects the user to the allowed sites.

In some applications, authentication via web site may not be desired or not possible, as the following examples illustrate:

- The end device does not have a browser and therefore cannot open the login page.
- Manually accessing the login page may be undesirable, such as when carrying out a performance test.

Automatic authentication on the Public Spot with a MAC address makes it possible to use the Public Spot without first opening the login page. The administrator enters the MAC addresses of the corresponding end device into the table of permissible MAC addresses under **Public Spot** > **Users** > **MAC authenticated users**.

MAC-address check procedure

When the device receives a request from a client, the Public Spot executes the following steps for the automatic authentication by MAC address:

- If the Public Spot has already authenticated the MAC address of the received data packets, the device forwards the data packets without further delay.
- If the MAC address is in the list of allowed clients, the Public Spot starts a new session for the user and forwards the corresponding data packets.
- If a provider has been defined for verification of the MAC addresses by RADIUS, and a positive, valid MAC address authentication is cached in the Public Spot, then the Public Spot starts a new session for that user and forwards the associated data packets.
- If a provider chooses to check the MAC address with the RADIUS server but there is no valid authentication for the MAC address cached in the Public Spot, the Public Spot initiates the authentication of the MAC address at the corresponding RADIUS server. After a positive response, the Public Spot starts a new session for that user and forwards the associated packets.
- If all of the above checks fail, the Public Spot directs the user to the login page.

Authentication of the MAC address by RADIUS

If the MAC address of a WLAN client requesting to associate is not included in the list of approved addresses, the Public Spot alternatively authenticates the address via a RADIUS server.

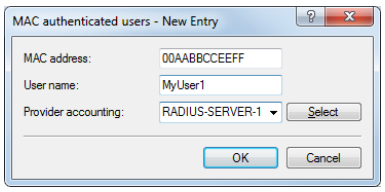
To enable RADIUS authentication, the administrator selects one of the RADIUS servers that has defined in the device and saved to the list of providers.

In addition, the administrator defines a lifetime for the rejected MAC addresses. The Public Spot uses this lifetime to prevent the RADIUS server from being flooded with repeated requests for MAC addresses that cannot be authenticated via the RADIUS server or MAC address table.

If a MAC address authentication is rejected by the RADIUS server, the Public Spot stores this rejection for the lifetime defined here. The Public Spot responds to further requests for the same MAC address directly and without forwarding them to the RADIUS server first.

Configuration by LANconfig

For the configuration in LANconfig, you find the parameters for the authentication of clients by MAC address in the dialog **Public Spot** > **Users** > **MAC authenticated users**.



Automatic authentication via WISPr

Your device provides an interface for authentication via WISPr. The **WISPr** standard is the technological predecessor of the 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0 specifications. The acronym stands for **Wireless Internet Service Provider roaming** and

designates both a process and a protocol that allow users of WLAN enabled devices to roam seamlessly between the WLANs of different operators – and, therefore, between their Internet service providers. The idea behind it is similar to that of 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0; however, it requires more comprehensive support by the respective users.

Using the WISPr protocol, you can provide logins and network usage on your hotspot in a manner similar to Hotspot 2.0, even for end devices that no longer support Hotspot 2.0. The prerequisite is that your service provider provides the necessary infrastructure. Support for the user's device is provided either by the operating system or a suitable app (smart client). This client handles authentication to the hotspot for the user. If no credentials are available for the relevant network, the client queries the user for valid credentials at the system level. In any case, this eliminates the user having to log in via a login web page in the browser.

Because of its age, almost all current end devices with iOS, Android and Windows 8 support the WISPr protocol. In addition, larger WLAN Internet service providers often have their own apps to make the login for their clients easier: These apps include a preconfigured database of the provider's own hotspots and, optionally, those of their roaming partners. The authentication process corresponds to the following schema:

1. A customer installs his provider's hotspot app to act as a client, which provides a database of preconfigured hotspot SSIDs.
2. The client connects automatically with one of the hotspots and sends a HTTP-GET-Request to a random URL to test if direct Internet access is available or the Public Spot requires authentication.
3. In HTTP-Redirect the hotspot sends a WISPr-XML-Tag with the Login-URL.
4. The client sends its login data to the Login-URL in an HTTP-Post.

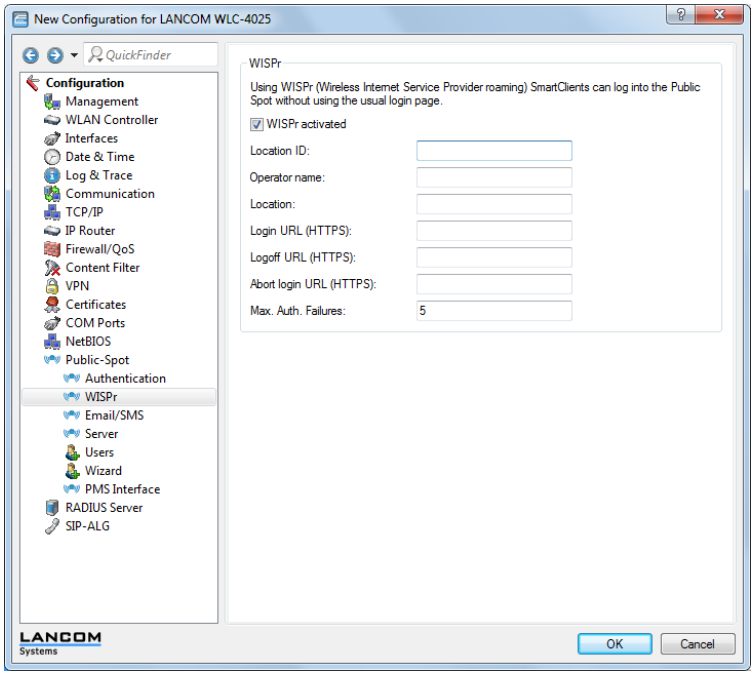
Example for an XML-Tag in redirect:

```
<HTML>
<?xml version=”1.0” encoding=”UTF-8”?>
  <WISPAccessGatewayParam xmlns:xsi=”http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance”
   xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation=”http://www.acmewisp.com/WISPAccess GatewayParam.xsd”>
    <Redirect>
      <AccessProcedure>1.0</AccessProcedure>
      <AccessLocation>Hotel Contoso Guest Network</AccessLocation>
      <LocationName>Hotel Contoso</LocationName>
      <LoginURL>https://captiveportal.com/login</LoginURL>
      <MessageType>100</MessageType>
      <ResponseCode>0</ResponseCode>
    </Redirect>
   </WISPAccessGatewayParam>
</HTML>
```

In order to use WISPr, the device must have an SSL certificate and a private key installed. The certificate must either be signed by a trusted authority or – if it is a self-signed certificate – be imported as a trusted certificate on the client. Otherwise the client will reject the login via WISPr. Further information about loading these objects on your device can be found in the LANCOM techpaper "Certificate Management in Public Spots" available from *www.lancom-systems.com*.

Configuring WISPr

Configure the WISPr function of your device in the menu **Public Spot** > **WISPr**.



In this window you have the following options:

- **WISPr activated**: Enable or disable the WISPr function for the device.
- **Location ID**: Use this ID to assign a unique location number or ID for your device, for example, in the format `isocc=<ISO_Country_Code>,cc=<E.164_Country_Code>,ac=<E.164_Area_Code>,network=<SSID/ZONE>`
- **Operator name**: Enter the name of the hotspot operator, e.g., `providerX`. This information helps the user to manually select an Internet service provider.
- **Location**: Describe the location of your device, e.g., `CafeX_Market3`. This helps to better identify a user in your hotspot.
- **Login URL (HTTPS)**: Enter the HTTPS address, that the WISPr client uses to transfer the credentials to your Internet service provider. Any external URL can be entered or the Public Spot itself. If the Public Spot should authenticate users using WISPr, enter the URL in the format `https://<Device-FQDN>/wisprlogin`. For "wisprlogin" in the example, any freely defined path can be used.
- **Logoff URL (HTTPS)**: Enter the HTTPS address that a WISPr client uses for logging off at your Internet service provider. The same rules apply as for the login URL.
- **Abort login URL (HTTPS)**: Enter the HTTPS address to which the device forwards a WISPr client if authentication fails. The same rules apply as for the login URL.

  The three URLs must be different, if the Public Spot is used in the device domain, for example:

  - Login-URL: https://<Device-FQDN>/wisprlogin
  - Logoff-URL: https://<Device-FQDN>/wisprlogoff
  - Abort-Login-URL: https://<Device-FQDN>/wisprabort

  Finally, for test purposes, you can also configure an URL with IP addresses. In a production system, the client will check the FQDN of the certificate!

- **Max. auth. failures**: Enter the maximum number of failed attempts which the login page of your Internet service provider allows. If the Public Spot is used, the Public Spot rejects further login attempts by the specified client after this number of failed attempts.

IEEE 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0

As of LCOS8.82, your device supports WLAN connections according to the IEEE 802.11u standard and—based on that—the Hotspot 2.0 specification. Using 802.11u you have the option to implement automatic authorization and authentication of your users on a local WLAN network (for example, within your company) or a Public Spot network. The prerequisite for this is that the relevant stations (smartphones, tablet PCs, notebooks, etc.) also support connections for 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0. In detail, the following functions are offered:

- **Automatic network selection**

  In a 802.11u-enabled environment, the user does not have to manually detect and select an SSID. Instead, the client independently searches for and selects a suitable Wi-Fi network by automatically requesting and evaluating the operator and network data of all 802.11u-enabled access points that are in range. A previous login to the access point is not required.

  Hotspot 2.0 stations also have the ability to retrieve information about the services available in a Wi-Fi network. If specific services that are relevant for a user (e.g., connections via HTTP, VPN or VoIP) are not available for a Wi-Fi network, any networks that do not meet the criteria are excluded from further searches. This ensures that users are always connected to the optimal network.

- **Automatic authentication and authorization**

  In 802.11u-enabled environments, the station automatically carries out the user's login if the necessary credentials are available. Authentication can be done, for example, using a SIM card, a username and password, or a digital certificate. Repetitive manual input of the credentials by the user in a login screen is no longer necessary. After successful authentication, the user can immediately use the desired services.

- **Seamless handover**

  Connections according to 802.11u and in conjunction with 802.21 facilitate the uninterrupted exchange of data connections between different network types. This enables users to switch their stations seamlessly from a cellular network to a WLAN network as soon as they get within range of a Hotspot 2.0 zone—and vice versa. The same is true for the transfer between two different operators if, for example, the user goes from one homogeneous network to another during a bus trip

- **Automatic roaming**

  Connections as per 802.11u facilitate roaming between different operator networks. If a user is in range of a Hotspot 2.0 zone of an operator for which he does not have any credentials, his station still has the option to switch to its home network. Authentication at a third-party Hotspot 2.0 zone is handled by the operator's roaming partner, which then allows the user to access the third-party Wi-Fi network. This is interesting not only in areas where there are only single network operators with access points, it is also especially attractive for people traveling abroad.

Example: For example, a user who is in transit in the city with his 802.11u-enabled smartphone (station) can enable the WLAN feature to browse the Internet. The station then starts trying to find all available Wi-Fi networks in the area. If any of the access points offer 802.11u, the station selects the one network that best fits the required service based on the operator and network information that was previously obtained, for example, from a hotspot offering Internet access from its own cellular network company. In this case, the subsequent authentication can be performed automatically via the SIM card so that the user does not need to intervene at any time during the process. The encryption method selected for the connection – e.g., WPA2 – is unaffected.

In summary, connections according to 802.11u and with Hotspot 2.0 enabled combine the security features and performance of classic Wi-Fi hotspots with the flexibility and simplicity of data cellular network connections. At the same time, they relieve the cellular networks by redistributing data traffic (and possibly also telephony) to the network connections and frequency bands offered by access points.

Hotspot operators and service providers

The Hotspot 2.0 specification of the Wi-Fi Alliance differentiates between hotspot operators and hotspot service providers: A **hotspot operator** only operates one Wi-Fi network, while a **hotspot service provider** (SP) provides the connection for the user to the Internet or a cellular network. Of course, it is possible for an operator to also be an SP. However, in all other cases, a hotspot operator requires the corresponding roaming agreements with an SP or a group of multiple

SPs (called a roaming consortium). Only when an operator has made these agreements are the various roaming partners' customers able to authenticate with the hotspot operator. Each service provider operates its own AAA infrastructure. A hotspot communicates this list of possible roaming partners and the name of the hotspot operator using ANQP (see functional description).

Functional description

The **802.11u** standard is the base standard of IEEE. This standard essentially expands access points or hotspots with the ability to broadcast so-called **ANQP data packets** (Advanced Message Queuing Protocol) in its broadcast signals. ANQP is a query/response protocol that a device can use to request a range of information about the hotspot. This includes both meta-data, such as information about the owner and the venue, as well as information on the underlying network, such as information on operator domains, roaming partners, authentication methods, forwarding addresses, etc. All 802.11u-enabled devices in range have the ability to request these data packets without a prior login to the access point in order to select a network based on the network information.

The Wi-Fi Alliance has added further ANQP elements to the standard, and markets this specification as **Hotspot 2.0**. This Hotspot 2.0 function merely adds additional elements to the standard, which the device can use as criteria for selecting its network. These criteria include, for example, information about the services and WAN metrics available at the hotspot. The associated certification program is called Pass Points™. Certain LANCOM access points are Passpoint™ CERTIFIED by the Wi-Fi Alliance.

The ANQP data packets are the central information element of the 802.11u standard. However, to signal the support for 802.11u and to transmit data packets, further elements are required for the operation of 802.11u:

- The signaling of 802.11u support in the beacons and probes of a hotspot are done by the element known as the **Interworking element**. In this element, the initial basic network information—such as the network classification, Internet availability (Internet bit) and the OI of the roaming consortium and/or of the operator—are already included. At the same time, it is used by 802.11u-enabled devices as an initial screening criterion when detecting a network.
- ANQP data packets are transferred within the so-called GAS containers. **GAS** stands for Generic Advertisement Service, and is the name of generic containers that allow a device to request additional internal and external information for the network selection from the hotspot, in addition to the information in the beacons. The GAS containers are transmitted on layer 2 by what are referred to as public action frames.

Login by an 802.11u-enabled client at a Hotspot 2.0

The following functional description schematically illustrates the selection and login process of an 802.11u-enabled device at a Hotspot 2.0.

Login via username/password or digital certificate

1. The hotspots reply with an ANQP response, which contains, among other things, the name of the hotspot operator and a list of NAI realms, which list all available roaming partners (service provider, abbreviated SP).
2. The device loads the locally stored credentials from the WLAN profiles or installed certificates that were set up by the user, and compares the local realms with the NAI realm lists obtained in (2).
   a. If the device successfully finds one, it knows that it can be authenticated successfully on the relevant Wi-Fi network.
   b. If the device successfully finds more than one, the selection of a Wi-Fi network is made based on the user's preference list. This list defines the preferred order of operators in conjunction with the potential roaming partners. In this case, the device compares the operator names listed under (2) with the list, and selects the operator with the highest priority.
3. The device authenticates itself with its local credentials at the hotspot of the preferred operator for the appropriate SP. The access point then transmits this data over its SSPN interface (Subscription Service Provider Network) to an AAA system responsible for authentication. The authentication is performed using the authentication method determined by the SP. The authentication via username/password uses EAP-TTLS, and authentication via digital certificate uses EAP-TLS.

Login via (U)SIM

1. In contrast to the login via username/password or digital certificate, a device with a (U)SIM does not request the list of NAI realms in its ANQP requests, but rather the 3GPP Cellular Network Information. The ANQP responses contain the cellular network information list of all cellular network providers for which the access point offers authentication.
2. The device loads the parameters for the cellular network from its local (U)SIM card, and compares it with the data retrieved from the cellular network information lists. The list comparison and selection of a preferred provider network is performed analogous to the login via username/password or digital certificate.
3. The device authenticates itself with its local credentials at the hotspot of the preferred operator for the appropriate cellular network company. The hotspot then transmits this data over its SSPN interface (Subscription Service Provider Network) to an AAA system responsible for the authentication. The presence of a (U)SIM card changes the possible authentication method for the device to EAP-SIM or EAP-AKA.
4. The AAA system verifies the credentials for authentication via the interface MAP (Mobile Application Part) at the HLR server (Home Location Register) of the cellular network company.

If authentication is successful, the device gets access to the WLAN network either via hotspot (credentials for the operator's network are available) or automatic roaming (credentials for the operator's network are not available).

If there are multiple authentication options available for the device (e.g., SIM card and username/password), it has the option of using the preferred EAP authentication method and, therefore, the preferred credentials based on the NAI realm or cellular network information list.

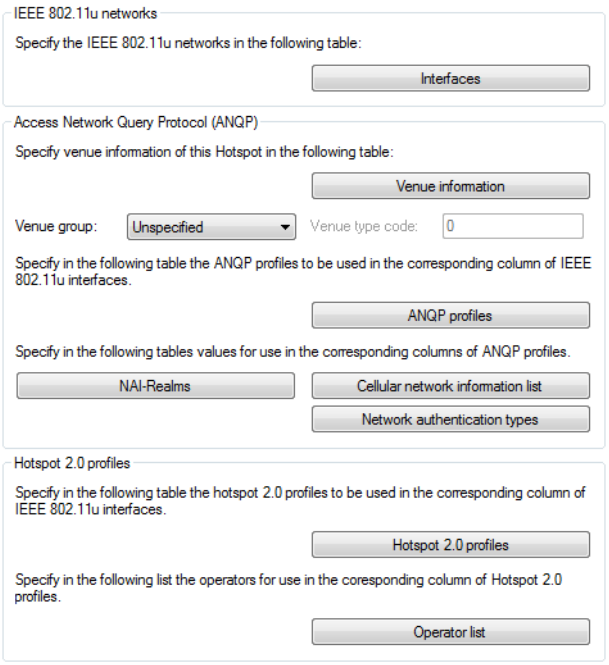
Recommended general settings

The Hotspot 2.0 specification recommends the following general settings for the 802.11u operator:

- WPA2-Enterprise Security (802.1x) enabled
- Authentication using EAP with the corresponding variant:
  - EAP-SIM/EAP-AKA for authentication with SIM / USIM card
  - EAP-TLS for authentication with a digital certificate
  - EAP-TTLS for authentication with a username and password
- Enabled and properly configured ARP proxy
- Disabled multicasts and broadcast in cellular networks
- Non-approved data traffic between the cellular network devices (Layer 2 traffic inspection and filtering). The corresponding settings can be found in LANconfig under **Wireless LAN** > **Security**.
- Enabled and implemented firewall on the access router, which provides Internet access

Configuration menu for IEEE 802.11u / Hotspot 2.0

You can find the configuration menu for IEEE 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0 under **Configuration** > **Wireless LAN** > **IEEE 802.11u**.



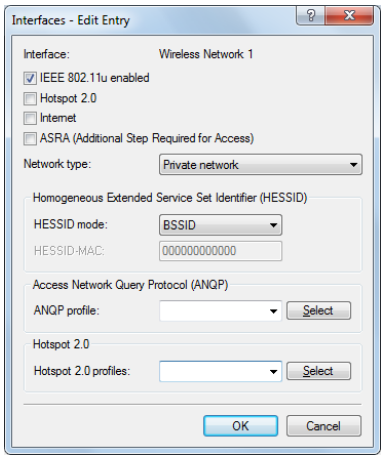
The device offers the ability to individually enable or disable and configure the support the IEEE 802.11u standard as well as the Hotspot 2.0 functionality for each logical WLAN interface using the button **Interfaces**.

Some of the parameters that need to be configured are located in so-called "profiles". Using profiles, you can group different rows in lists, which you only have to reference from the other windows. Essentially, these are profiles for ANQP data packets and Hotspot 2.0. The relationships between the profile lists is as follows:

```
| - Interfaces
  |-ANQP profiles
    |-NAI realms
    |-Cellular network information list
    |-Network authentication types
  |-Hotspot 2.0 profiles
    |-Operator list
```

Activating interfaces

The table **Interfaces** is the highest administrative level for 802.11u and Hotspot 2.0. Here you have the option of enabling or disabling functions for each interface, assigning them different profiles, or modifying general settings.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Interfaces**, click on the button **Edit...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Interface**: Name of the logical WLAN interface that you are currently editing.
- **IEEE 802.11u enabled**: Enable or disable support for connections according to IEEE 802.11u at the appropriate interface. If you enable support, the device sends the interworking element in beacons/probes for the interface or for the associated SSID, respectively. This element is used as an identifying feature for IEEE 802.11u-enabled connections: It includes, for example, the Internet bit, the ASRA bit, the HESSID, and the location group code and the location type code. These individual elements use 802.11u-enabled devices as the first filtering criteria for network detection.
- **Hotspot 2.0**: Enable or disable the support for Hotspot 2.0 according to the Wi-Fi Alliance® at the appropriate interface. Hotspot 2.0 extends the IEEE standard 802.11u with additional network information, which stations can request using an ANQP request. These include, for example, the operator-friendly name, the connection capabilities, operating class and WAN metrics. Using this additional information, stations are in a position to make an even more selective choice of Wi-Fi network.
- **Internet**: Select whether the Internet bit is set. Over the Internet-bit, all stations are explicitly informed that the Wi-Fi network allows Internet access. Enable this setting if services other than internal services are accessible via your device.

  Using this function you only communicate the availability of an Internet connection. You configure the corresponding regulations on the firewall, irrespective of this option.
- **ASRA - Additional steps for access required**: Select whether the ASRA bit (Additional Step Required for Access) is set. Using the ASRA bit explicitly informs all stations that further authentication steps are needed to access the Wi-Fi network. Enable this setting if you have, for example, set up online registration, additional authentication, or a consent form for your terms of use on your web site.

  Please remember to specify a forwarding address in the **Network authentication types** table for the additional authentication and/or **WISPr** for the Public Spot module if you set the ASRA bit.
- **Network type**: Select a network type from the available list which most closely describes the Wi-Fi network behind the selected interface. Based on the setting made here, the user has the option to limit network detection of their devices to specific network types. Possible values are:
  - `Private network`: Describes networks which are blocked to unauthorized users. Select this type, for example, for home networks or corporate networks where access is limited to employees.
  - `Private with guest access`: Similar to `Private network`, but with guest access for unauthorized users. Select this type, for example, for corporate networks where visitors may use the Wi-Fi network in addition to employees.

- `Chargeable public network`: Describes public networks that are accessible to everyone and can be used for a fee. Information about fees may be available through other channels (e.g.: IEEE 802.21, HTTP/HTTPS or DNS forwarding). Select this type, for example, for hotspots in shops or hotels that offer fee-based Internet access.
- `Free public network`: Describes public networks that are accessible to everyone and for which no fee is payable. Select this type, for example, for hotspots in public, local and long-distance transport, or for community networks where Wi-Fi access is an included service.
- `Personal device network`: In general, it describes networks that connect wireless devices. Select this type, for example, for digital cameras that are connected to a printer via WLAN.
- `Emergency services only network`: Describes networks that are intended for, and limited to, emergency services. Select this type, for example, for connected ESS or EBR systems.
- `Test or experimental`: Describes networks that are set up for testing purposes or are still in the setup stage.
- `Wildcard`: Placeholder for previously undefined network types.

- **HESSID mode**: Specify where the device gets its HESSID for the homogeneous ESS. A homogeneous ESS is defined as a group of a specific number of access points, which all belong to the same network. The MAC address of a connected access point serves as a globally unique identifier (HESSID). The SSID can not be used as an identifier in this case, because different network service providers can have the same SSID assigned in a hotspot zone, e.g., by common names such as "HOTSPOT". Possible values for the HESSID mode include:
  - `BSSID`: Select this item to set the BSSID of the device as the HESSID for your homogeneous ESS.
  - `User`: Select this item to manually assign a HESSID.
  - `None`: Select this item in order to not assign any homogeneous ESS and to isolate it from the device network.

- **HESSID-MAC**: If you selected the setting `user` for the **HESSID mode**, enter the HESSID of your homogeneous ESS as a 6-octet MAC address. Select the BSSID for the HESSID for any access point in your homogeneous ESS in capital letters and without separators, e.g., `008041AEFD7E` for the MAC address 00:80:41:ae:fd:7e.

  If your device is not present in multiple homogeneous ESS's, the HESSID is identical for all interfaces

- **ANQP profile**: Select an ANQP profile from the list. You create ANQP profiles in the configuration menu using the button of the same name.
- **Hotspot 2.0 profiles**: Select the Hotspot 2.0 profile from the list. You create the Hotspot 2.0 profiles in the configuration menu using the button of the same name.

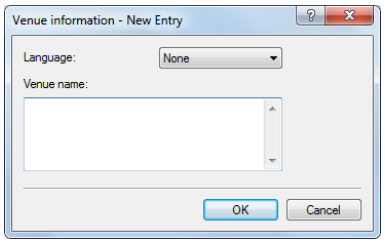
Configuring ANQP data packets

Venue information and group

Using the table **Venue information** and the following dialogs **Venue group** and **Venue type code**, you manage the information about the access point's location.

In the event of a manual search, additional details on the **Venue information** help a user to select the correct hotspot. If more than one operator (e.g., multiple cafés) in a single hotspot zone uses the same SSID, the user can clearly identify the appropriate location using the venue information.

You can place your device in a predefined category using the **Venue group** and **Venue type code** – as opposed to the user-defined location information.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Venue information**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Language**: You have the ability to specify custom information for the location of the access point for each language. The location name that matches your user's language will then be displayed. If a language is not available for a user, its station chooses one based, for example, on the default language.
- **Venue name**: Enter a short description of the location of your device for the selected language, for example:

```
Ice Café Valencia
123 Street
City, State 12345
```

The **Venue group** describes the environment where you operate the access point. You define them globally for all languages. The possible values, which are set by the venue group code, are specified in the 802.11u standard.

Using the **Venue type code**, you have the option to specify the details for the venue group. These values are also specified by the standard. The possible type codes can be found in the following table.

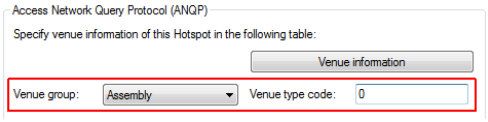


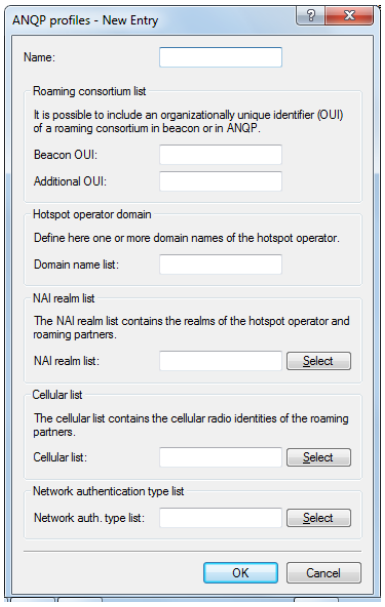
Table 29: Overview of possible values for venue groups and types

Venue group	Code = Venue-Type-Code
Unspecified	
Assembly	0 = unspecified assembly 1 = stage 2 = stadium 3 = passenger terminal (e.g., airport, bus station, ferry terminal, train station) 4 = amphitheater 5 = amusement park 6 = place of worship 7 = convention center 8 = library 9 = museum 10 = restaurant 11 = theater 12 = bar 13 = café 14 = zoo, aquarium 15 = emergency control center
Business	0 = unspecified business 1 = doctor's office

Venue group	Code = Venue-Type-Code
	> 2 = bank > 3 = fire station > 4 = police station > 6 = post office > 7 = office > 8 = research facility > 9 = law firm
Educational:	> 0 = unspecified education > 1 = primary school > 2 = secondary school > 3 = college
Factory and industry	> 0 = unspecified factory and industry > 1 = factory
Institutional	> 0 = unspecified institution > 1 = hospital > 2 = long-term care facility (e.g., nursing home, hospice) > 3 = rehabilitation clinic > 4 = organizational association > 5 = prison
Commerce	> 0 = unspecified commerce > 1 = retail store > 2 = food store > 3 = Automobile workshop > 4 = shopping center > 5 = gas station
Halls of residence	> 0 = unspecified residence hall > 1 = private residence > 2 = hotel or motel > 3 = student housing > 4 = guesthouse
Warehouse	> 0 = unspecified warehouse
Utility and miscellaneous	> 0 = unspecified service and miscellaneous
Vehicular	> 0 = unspecified vehicle > 1 = passenger or transport vehicles > 2 = aircraft > 3 = bus > 4 = ferry > 5 = ship or boat > 6 = train > 7 = motorcycle
Outdoor	> 0 = unspecified outdoor > 1 = Municipal WLAN network > 2 = city park > 3 = rest area > 4 = traffic control > 5 = bus stop > 6 = kiosk

ANQP profiles

Using this table you manage the profile lists for ANQP. **ANQP profiles** offer you the ability to group certain ANQP elements and to assign them to mutually independent logical WLAN interfaces in the table **Interfaces**. These elements include, for example, information about your OIs, domains, roaming partners and their authentication methods. Some of the elements are located in other profile lists.



In order to edit the entries in the table **ANQP profiles**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the ANQP 2.0 profile here. This name will appear later in the interfaces table in the selection for ANQP profiles.
- **Beacon OUI**: Organizationally Unique Identifier, abbreviated as OUI, simplified as OI. As the hotspot operator, you enter the OI of the roaming partner with whom you have agreed a contract. If you are the hotspot operator as well as the service provider, enter the OI of your roaming consortium or your own OI. A roaming consortium consists of a group of service providers which have entered into mutual agreements regarding roaming. In order to get an OI, this type of consortium – as well as an individual service provider – must register with IEEE.

  It is possible to specify up to 3 parallel OIs, in case you, as the operator, have roaming agreements with several partners. Multiple OIs can be provided in a comma-separated list, such as `00105E,00017D,00501A`.

  > This device transmits the specified OI(s) in its beacons. If a device should transmit more than 3 OIs, these can be configured under **Additional OUI**. However, additional OIs are not transferred to a station until after the GAS request. They are not immediately visible to the stations!

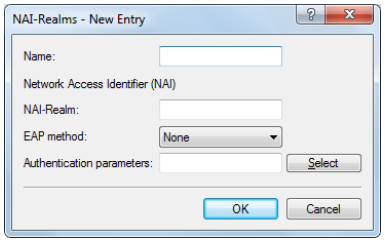
- **Additional OUI**: Enter the OI(s) that the device also sends to a station after a GAS request. Multiple OIs can be provided in a comma-separated list, such as `00105E,00017D,00501A`.
- **Domain name list**: Enter one or more domains that are available to you as a hotspot operator. Multiple domain names are separated by a comma separated list, such as `providerX.org,provx-mobile.com,wifi.mnc410.provX.com`. For subdomains it is sufficient to specify only the highest qualified domain name. If a user configured a home provider on his device, e.g., providerX.org, this domain is also assigned to access points with the domain name wi-fi.providerX.org. When searching for suitable hotspots, a station always prefers a hotspot from his home provider in order to avoid possible roaming costs.
- **NAI realm list**: Select an NAI realm profile from the list. You specify profiles for NAI realms in the configuration menu by clicking the button **NAI realms**.
- **Cellular list**: Select the cellular network identity from the list. You set the identities for cellular networks – similar to profiles – in the configuration menu using the button **Cellular network information list**.

- **Network authentication type list**: Select an authentication profile from the list. You specify profiles for network authentication in the configuration menu by clicking the button **Network authentication types**.

Additionally, using the telnet console or setup menu, you have the option to also display the type of available IP addresses, which they can obtain from the network after a successful authentication. You can access the relevant parameters **IPv4-Addr-Type** and **IPv6-Addr-Type** via the telnet path **Setup** > **IEEE802.11u** > **ANQP-General**.

NAI realms

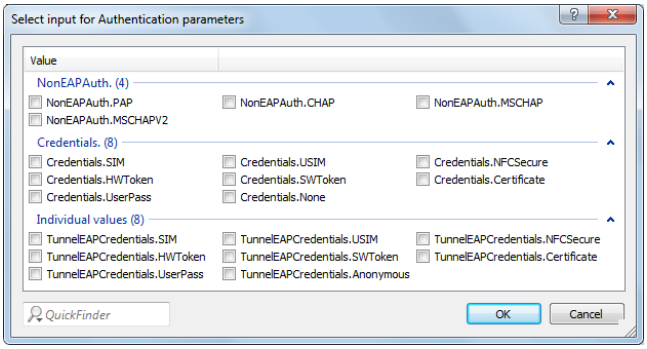
Using this table you manage the profile lists for the NAI realms. With these lists you have the ability to group certain ANQP elements. These include the realms of the hotspot operator and its roaming partners, as well as the associated authentication methods and parameters. Stations use the information stored in this list to determine whether they have the hotspot operator or one of its roaming partners have valid credentials.



In order to edit the entries in the table **NAI realms**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the NAI realm profile, such as the name of the service provider or service to which the NAI realm belongs. This name will appear later in the ANQP profile in the selection for **NAI realm list**.
- **NAI realm**: Enter the realm for the Wi-Fi network. The identification of the NAI realm consists of the username and a domain, which can be extended using regular expressions. The syntax for an NAI realm is defined in IETF RFC 2486 and, in the simplest case, is `<username>@<realm>`, for `user746@providerX.org`, and therefore the corresponding realm is `providerX.org`.
- **EAP method**: Select a language for the NAI realm from the list. EAP stands for the authentication profile (Extensible Authentication Protocol), followed by the corresponding authentication method Possible values are:
  - `EAP-TLS`: Authentication using Transport Layer Security (TLS). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI realm is performed by a digital certificate that the user has to install.
  - `EAP-SIM`: Authentication via the Subscriber Identity Module (SIM). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI realm is performed by the GSM Subscriber Identity Module (SIM card) of the station.
  - `EAP-TTLS`: Authentication via Tunneled Transport Layer Security (TTLS). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI real is performed using a username and password. For security reasons, the connection is tunneled for this method.
  - `EAP-AKA`: Authentication using Authentication and Key Agreement (AKA). Select this setting when authentication via the relevant NAI realm is performed by the UMTS Subscriber Identity Module (USIM card) of the station.
  - `None`: Select this setting when the relevant NAI realm does not require authentication.

› **Authentication parameters**:



In the window that opens when you click the **Select** button, select the appropriate authentication parameters for the EAP method, such as EAP-TTLS `NonEAPAuth.MSCHAPV2`,`Credential.UserPass` or for EAP-TLS `Credentials.Certificate`. Possible values are:

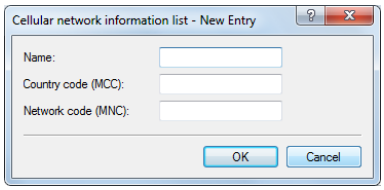
Table 30: Overview of possible authentication parameters

Parameter	Sub-Parameter	Comment
NonEAPAuth.		Identifies the protocol that the realm requires for phase 2 authentication:
	PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
	CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol, original CHAP implementation, specified in RFC 1994
	MSCHAP	Implementation of Microsoft CHAP V1, specified in RFC 2433
	MSCHAPV2	Implementation of Microsoft CHAP V2, specified in RFC 2759
Credentials.		Describes the type of authentication that the realm accepts:
	SIM	SIM card
	USIM	USIM card
	NFCSecure	NFC chip
	HWToken*	Hardware token
	SoftToken*	Software token
	Certificate	Digital certificate
	UserPass	Username and password
	None	No credentials required
TunnelEAPCredentials.*		
	SIM*	SIM card
	USIM*	USIM card
	NFCSecure*	NFC chip
	HWToken*	Hardware token
	SoftToken*	Software token
	Certificate*	Digital certificate
	UserPass*	Username and password
	Anonymous*	Anonymous login

*) The specific parameter or sub-parameter is reserved for future uses within the framework of Passpoint™ certification, but currently is not in use.

Cellular network information list

Using this table you manage the identity lists for cellular networks. With these lists you have the ability to group certain ANQP elements. These include the network and country codes of the hotspot operator and its roaming partners. Based on the information stored here, stations with SIM or USIM cards use this list to determine if the hotspot operator belongs to their cellular network company or has a roaming agreement with their cellular network company.



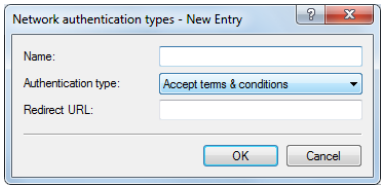
In order to edit the entries in the table **Cellular network information list**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the cellular network identity, such as an abbreviation of the network operator in combination with the cellular network standard used. This name will appear later in the ANQP profile in the selection for **Cellular list**.
- **Country code (MCC)**: Enter the Mobile Country Code (MCC) of the hotspot operator or its roaming partners, consisting of 2 or 3 characters, e.g., `262` for Germany.
- **Network code (MNC)**: Enter the Mobile Network Code (MNC) of the hotspot operator or its roaming partners, consisting of 2 or 3 characters.

Network authentication types

Using this table, you manage addresses to which the device forwards stations for an additional authentication step after the station has been successfully authenticated by the hotspot operator or any of its roaming partners. Only one forwarding entry is allowed for each authentication type.

Please remember to set the ASRA bit in the **Interfaces** table if you set up an additional authentication step.



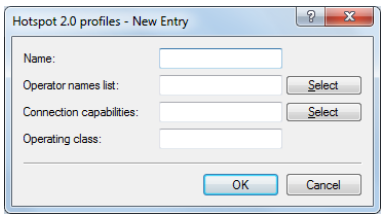
In order to edit the entries in the table **Network authentication types**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the table entry, for example, `Accept Terms & Conditions`. This name will appear later in the ANQP profile in the selection for **Network auth. type list**.
- **Authentication type**: Choose the context from the list, which applies before forwarding. Possible values are:
  - `Accept terms & conditions`: An additional authentication step is set up that requires the user to accept the terms of use.
  - `Online enrollment`: An additional authentication step is set up that requires the user to register online first.
  - `HTTP redirection`: An additional authentication step is set up to which the user is forwarded via HTTP.
  - `DNS redirection`: An additional authentication step is set up to which the user is forwarded via DNS.
- **Redirect URL**: Enter the address to which the device forwards stations for additional authentication.

Configuring Hotspot 2.0

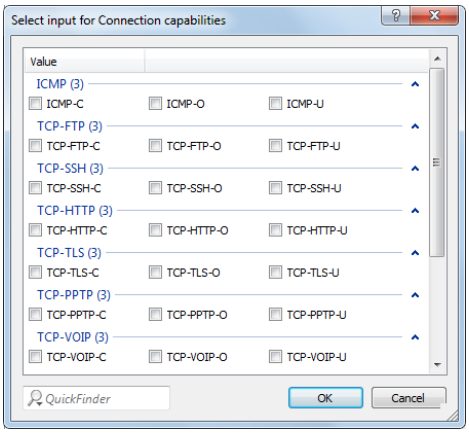
Hotspot 2.0 profiles

Using this table you manage the profile lists for the Hotspot 2.0. **Hotspot 2.0 profiles** offer you the ability to group certain ANQP elements (from the Hotspot 2.0 specification) and to assign them to mutually independent logical WLAN interfaces in the table **Interfaces**. These include, for example, the operator-friendly name, the connection capabilities, operating class and WAN metrics. Some of the elements are located in other profile lists.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Hotspot 2.0 profiles**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the Hotspot 2.0 profile here. This name will appear later in the interfaces table in the selection for the Hotspot 2.0 profile.
- **Operator name list**: Select the profile of a hotspot operator from the list. You specify profiles for hotspot operators in the configuration menu by clicking the **Operator list**.
- **Connection capabilities**:



Click the **Select** button and enter the connection capabilities for each service in the window that opens. Before joining a network, stations use the information stored in this list to determine whether your hotspot even allows the required services (e.g., Internet access, SSH, VPN). For this reason, the fewest possible entries should be entered with the status "unknown". Possible status values for each of these services are "closed" (`-C`), "Open" (`-O`) or "unknown" (`-U`):

- `ICMP`: Specify whether to allow the exchange of information and error messages via ICMP.
- `TCP-FTP`: Specify whether to allow file transfers via FTP.
- `TCP-SSH`: Specify whether to allow encrypted connections via SSH.
- `TCP-HTTP`: Specify whether to allow Internet connections via HTTP/HTTPS.
- `TCP-TLS`: Specify whether to allow encrypted connections via TLS.
- `TCP-PPTP`: Specify whether to allow the tunneling of VPN connections via PPTP.
- `TCP-VOIP`: Specify whether to allow Internet telephony via VoIP (TCP).
- `UDP-IPSEC-500`: Specify whether to allow IPSec via UDP and port 500.
- `UDP-VOIP`: Specify whether to allow Internet telephony via VoIP (UDP).
- `UDP-IPSEC-4500`: Specify whether to allow IPSec via UDP and port 4500.

- `ESP`: Specify whether to allow ESP (Encapsulating Security Payload) for IPSec.

If you do not know if a service is available and its ports are open or closed on your network, or you consciously do not want to make any entry for the status, select a `-U` setting.

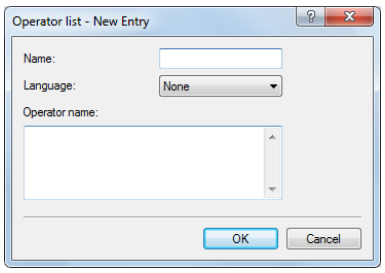
Using this dialog, you do not define permissions! The stations only use the entries to determine whether to join a network via your device. You configure specific access permissions for your network with other device functions, such as the firewall/QoS.

- **Operating class**: Enter the code for the global operating class of the access point. Using the operating class, you inform a station about the frequency bands and channels that your access point is available on. Example:
  - `81`: Operation at 2.4 GHz with channels 1-13
  - `116`: Operation at 40 MHz with channels 36 and 44

  Please refer to the IEEE standard 802.11-2012, Appendix E, Table E-4, for the operating class that corresponds to your device: Global operating classes, available at *standards.ieee.org*.

Operator list

Using this table you manage the cleartext name of the hotspot operator. An entry in this table offers you the ability to send a user-friendly operator name to the stations, which they can then display instead of the realms. However, whether they actually do that depends on their implementation.



In order to edit the entries in the table **Operator list**, click on the button **Add...**. The entries in the edit window have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Assign a name for the entry, such as an index number or combination of operator-name and language.
- **Language**: Select a language for the hotspot operator from the list.
- **Operator name**: Enter the cleartext name of the hotspot operator.

Interface for property management systems

If you use a property management system (PMS), certain device types and series give you the option of connecting your Public Spot module with your PMS database via the PMS interface. If you operate a hotel, this offers you the possibility of automatically providing your guests with access to your Public Spot when they register. This access can optionally be free of charge or fee-based (using prepaid time credits), whereby all fees are charged to the guest's bill for their room. The last name, room number and, optionally, an additional security ID (for example, registration number or departure date) are used as login data.

In contrast to a voucher solution, using the PMS interface gives you the advantage of not requiring any additional administrative steps for the setup and management of a Public Spot user account. The device creates a user account by itself as soon as the user accesses the Public Spot and logs in with his registration data. Any future changes for this guest (room change, departure date change, check-out, etc.), which affect registration, are retrieved autonomously from your PMS.

The following login methods are currently supported:

1. Voucher
2. PMS login
3. PMS login and voucher

4. E-mail
5. SMS

With login method (2), the login, for example, for hotel guests, can be based on the room number and last name, while you sell vouchers to your guests in your restaurant. Of course, even with the PMS interface enabled, you still have the option to issue vouchers, for example, for day guests or visitors.

The login method is configured globally for each device, and is thus the same for all SSIDs or networks.

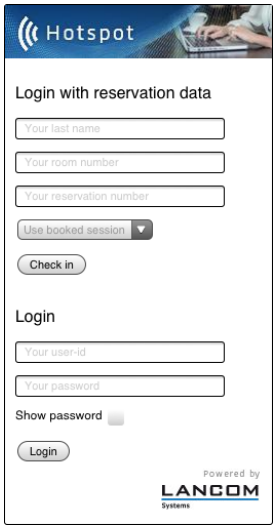
The PMS interface currently only includes support for hotel property management systems from Micros Fidelio via TCP/IP.

Currently, the PMS interface is only available for the following device types and series:

- LANCOM 1780 series
- LANCOM 1781 series
- LANCOM WLC-4006
- LANCOM WLC-4006+
- LANCOM WLC-4025
- LANCOM WLC-4025+
- LANCOM WLC-4100
- LANCOM 7100 VPN
- LANCOM 7100+ VPN
- LANCOM 9100 VPN
- LANCOM 9100+ VPN

Functional description

If you enable the PMS interface and provide a free or fee-based login page, the Public Spot portal page displays new input fields, which guests can use to authenticate by entering their surname, the room number and, if applicable, a further security identifier. The type of this identifier is set in the Setup menu; options include a registration number or the guest's arrival/departure date. If you have allowed access to your hotspot as a fee-based service, a drop-down menu additionally appears, which guests use to select the prepaid time quota or tariff/rate that they want to buy (e.g. 1 min for EUR 0.20, or 1 hours for EUR 1). The PMS working in the background automatically charges the costs to the room bill.



Every time a guest logs in to the Public Spot, the device initiates a comparison of the entered login data with that in the PMS. The PMS informs the device if it detects a valid match. The device then creates a new session for the guest and

makes an entry in the corresponding accounting table (WEBconfig: **Status** > **PMS-Interface** > **Accounting**). The device records all hotel guests, and the corresponding prices, who have logged on via the PMS interface, irrespective of whether the connection is free or charged. The device then activates user access to the Internet.

A user with charged access can purchase additional time while logged on. Users who log off before the time quota expires can resume the session at a later time by selecting the corresponding field on the login page. The device stores the session until it becomes invalid, i.e. when the time quota is used up or when the PMS informs the device that the guest has departed. For a new login and synchronization with the PMS, the device recognizes that there is still a valid user account and continues using it instead of creating a new one.

If there is a change to the registration information (such as the room number), then an existing session initially remains unaffected. Only when the current session is closed an the guest logs on to the Public Spot again is it necessary to authenticate with the modified credentials. An exception occurs when a guest is checked-out of the PMS: In this case, the device immediately terminates an existing session.

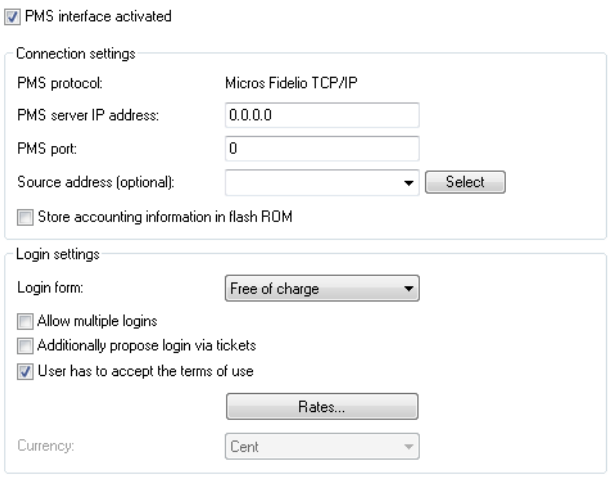
Your users should make sure that they log out properly from the Public Spot. Without a proper logout (caused by closing the browser, disconnecting the network, switching off the device, etc.) the user is considered to be still logged in. This can cause a problem for the user at login if you, as the Public Spot operator, have not allowed multiple logins.

Using *Station monitoring*, you can automatically log off these users after a specified idle time. This feature is off by default. However, for fee-based access, you absolutely should enable this. Otherwise, the device's automatic internal logout will only occur after the user account has expired, i.e., when the purchased time credit has been used up completely.

A temporary logout from the Public Spot does not change the expiry time of a purchased time quota. It is not possible to "pause" a previously purchased time credit in order to restart it at a later point in time. The countdown starts as of the purchase of the time credit regardless of the login status.

Configuring the PMS interface

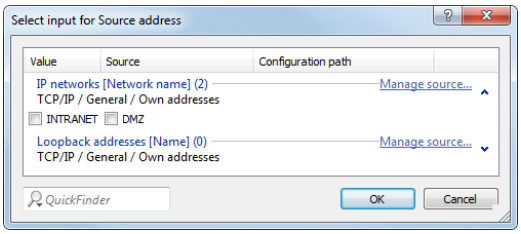
Configure the PMS interface of your device in the menu **Public Spot** > **PMS-Interface**.



In this window you have the following options:

- **PMS interface activated**: Enable or disable the PMS interface for the device.
- **PMS protocol**: Identifies the protocol used by your property management system. Currently, the hotel property management systems from Micros Fidelio is supported only via TCP/IP.
- **PMS server IP address**: Enter the IPv4 address of your PMS server.
- **PMS port**: Enter the TCP port where your PMS server is accessible.

- **Source address**: Click on the **Select** button, in order to configure another address where your PMS server sends its reply messages. By default, the PMS server sends its replies back to the IP address of your device without having to enter it here.



  Possible formats for entering the address include:

  - Name of the IP network (ARF network), whose address should be used.
  - `INT` for the address of the first Intranet
  - `DMZ` for the address of the first DMZ

    If an interface with the name "DMZ" already exists, the device will select that address instead.

  - `LB0`...`LBF` for one of the 16 loopback addresses or its name

    The device always uses **unmasked** loopback addresses, even on masked remote stations!

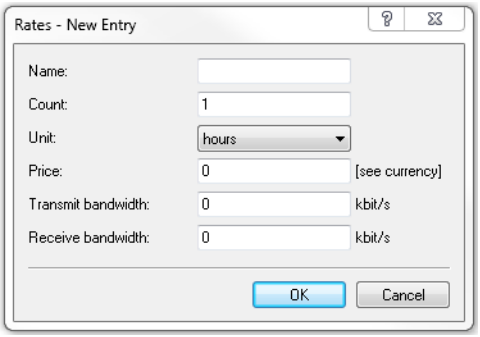
  - Any IPv4 address

- **Store accounting information in flash ROM**: Enable or disable whether your device stores accounting information in regular intervals on the internal flash-ROM. By default this occurs hourly, but you can change the interval using the setup menu. Enable this option in order to prevent a complete loss of accounting information in case of a power outage.

  Please note that frequent writing operations to this memory will reduce the lifetime of your device.

- **Login form**: Choose the login form that will be shown as a portal page for your PMS interface. Possible values are:
  - `free`: Choose this option if you offer your hotel guests free Internet access. Your hotel guests will still be required to authenticate on the hotspot on the portal page with their username, room number and, if required, an additional ID in order to prevent access to the Internet by unauthorized users.
  - `charge` Choose this option if you offer your hotel guests fee-based Internet access. Your hotel guests will be required to authenticate at the hotspot on the portal page with their username and room number, and also to select a rate.
- **Allow multiple logins**: Enable or disable this if you want to allow a hotel guest to use the same credentials to login to the hotspot with multiple devices.
- **Additionally propose login via tickets**: Enable or disable whether you also want to allow login with vouchers in addition to login with the combination of username/room number.
- **User has to accept the terms of use**: Enable this checkbox in order for hotel guests to accept the terms and conditions for the use of your hotspot.

- **Rates**: If you offer fee-based Internet access, this table is used to manage the tariff rates for the accounting.



  - **Name**: Specify a descriptive name for the rate here.
  - **Count**: Enter the rate for the time quota, for example, `1`. Combined with the unit, this is the value shown in the screenshot above, e.g., 1 hour.
  - **Unit**: Select the unit for the time quota from the list. Possible values are: `Minutes`, `Hours`, `Days`
  - **Price** Enter the amount charged for the time quota. In combination with the currency selected in the Login settings, the value amounts to 50 cents, for example.
  - **TX bandwidth**: Here you specify the maximum transmit bandwidth for this rate.
  - **RX bandwidth**: Here you specify the maximum receive bandwidth for this rate.

  A temporary logout from the Public Spot does not change the expiry time of a purchased time quota. It is not possible to "pause" a previously purchased time credit in order to restart it at a later point in time. The countdown starts as of the purchase of the time credit regardless of the login status.

- **Currency**: If you offer fee-based Internet access, you set the currency used to bill your time quotas here (time quotas are set up using the Rates table). This unit is also displayed on the portal page. Please note that this currency must match the one on the PMS server. Possible values are:
  - `Cent`
  - `Penny`

Advanced settings

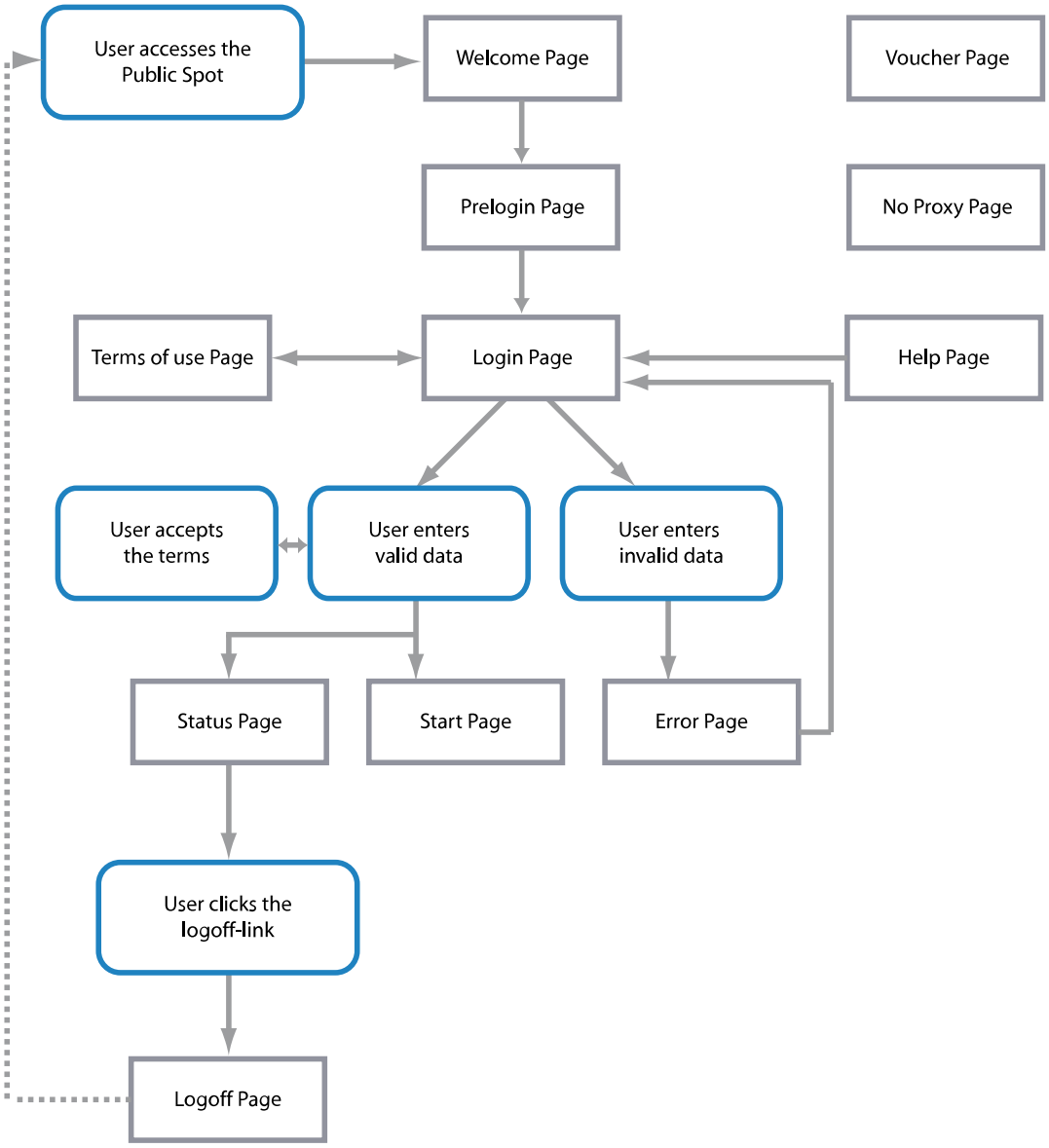
Advanced settings for the PMS interface are made on the console or in the setup menu. An overview of all additional parameters can be found in the *Appendix*.

14.2.5 Internal and customized voucher and authentication pages (templates)

By default, your device uses pre-installed templates for the login page and all other authentication pages that your user sees before, during and after a Public Spot session. However, you do have the option of adapting the individual web pages to your requirements and changing the design. You need basic HTML knowledge of DIV containers and cascading style sheets (CSS), in order to effectively change the structure and layout of the individual pages.

Possible authentication pages

The following flow-chart shows an overview and interaction of all authentication pages available with the Public Spot module: The chart takes the example of authentication using access credentials. Depending on the authentication mode and errors that can occur, the interaction may vary slightly:



The **Welcome** or **Login** pages are displayed to users when they access the Internet or the Public Spot for the first time.

- The **Welcome** page precedes the login page and is optional for most authentication modes: You can use this page, for example, to welcome a user, to provide information about the services available, or to provide instructions on how to use the Public Spot before continuing to the Start page with the login form. Only if you have selected the authentication mode "Login via agreement" is it compulsory for a customized Welcome page (containing the agreement) to be displayed, because it takes the place of the login form on the login page.

  The pre-installed default pages on your device do not include a Welcome page. If you set up this type of page without loading a template onto the device or an external server, the user either lands directly to the login page or receives an error message, depending on the login mode.

- **Authentication** includes the login form, assuming that Public Spot authentication requires the use of access credentials and that the latter have to be requested.

- The page with the **Terms of use** is only displayed if you require the confirmation of your terms of use for the selected authentication mode. In this case, a check box is displayed below the login form with an extra link that opens the terms in a pop-up.

The default pages installed on your device only include a placeholder and a generic Terms and Conditions page.

After the user has logged in with his login data (if necessary), the device checks that the information is correct and displays either an **Error** page, which sends the users back to the login page, or shows the **Start** page.

- Here, the **Error** page is only displayed to unauthenticated Public Spot users, which means that it is more or less directly associated with the login process. Typical situations in which a user sees the error page include unauthorized access to the Public Spot, when a user limit is exceeded, failed authentication due to the entry of incorrect credentials, or in case of failure of the authentication server. If you have set up monitoring of a remote site, the page could also appear whenever the Public Spot module registers a WAN link disconnection, as it provides advance notice to potential users about the lack of network availability (see *Error page in case of WAN connection failure* on page 1149).

  Users who are already authenticated will see an appropriate error message from their browser.
- If there are no errors during login, the **Start** page verifies the successful login and after a few seconds redirects the user to the Internet page originally requested by user.

Additionally, a successful login is followed by a popup window with the **Status** page.

- The **Status** page shows the user the current information about his session (e.g., time used so far, sent/received data volumes, and validity period for his account). It also offers a link to close the session and stop the accounting. A user clicking on this link is redirected to the **Logout** page.
- The **Logout** page confirms to the user that the logout from the Public Spot was successful.

The remaining **Fallback error**, **Help** and **No-proxy** pages are isolated pages not related to the login process.

- The **Fallback error** page appears whenever the device cannot deliver a custom template page and the fallback to the LCOS internal default page is missing. Delivery can fail, for example, if you have specified an incorrect file path within the pages table, or if the template page does not exist on the device.
- The **No-proxy** page is displayed whenever a user tries to connect via HTTP on port 8080 instead of port 80. In intranets, port 8080 is typically used for HTTP proxies. Since this proxy is configured with a static IP address in the browser settings, but these cannot be configured via DHCP, the user would not be able to reach this proxy. The purpose of this page is just to instruct the user to disable the proxy before the user can proceed.
- The **Help** page is only a placeholder used to embed and display specific information (e.g., details about the login or where to get vouchers) on the remaining authentication pages (e.g. the Welcome page). The default pages contain neither a help page nor any link pointing to such a page. To use a help page, you must first create a custom template page.

The **Voucher** page is not one of the authentication pages: This is the graphic template for printing the vouchers. By uploading your own template, you can print tickets with the corporate design of your own company.

Pre-installed default pages

Ex-factory, your device comes pre-installed with all of the pages you need to setup an operational Public Spot.

The following table gives you a quick overview of the default pages included with LCOS:

Table 31: Overview of installed default pages

Page designation	Pre-installed?
Welcome…	No
Login…	Yes
Error…	Yes
Start…	Yes

Page designation	Pre-installed?
Status…	Yes
Logoff...	Yes
Help...	No
No proxy	No
Voucher…	Yes
Terms of use...	No
Fallback error	Yes
Login (e-mail)...	Yes
Prelogin (e-mail)...	Yes
Login (e-mail to SMS)...	Yes
Prelogin (e-mail to SMS)...	Yes

These pages were deliberately designed to be simple, not to use any fancy features like dynamic HTML or Java Script, and just to present the necessary elements as-is. The use of plain XHTML and CSS to produce the necessary elements only ensures that the pages appear correctly on a variety of browsers and screen sizes.

As the operator of a hotspot you may want to design more sophisticated pages or display a more neutral page without the manufacturer's logo. For that reason, the Public Spot module gives you the option to customize some of the default pages, or if necessary to replace them with your own design. The latter can be done either by using HTTP redirection or templates that you upload to the device and that the device processes like an intelligent HTML pre-processor. These template pages can be stored directly to the flash memory, so you can do without an external HTTP server.

Additional languages for the authentication pages

With LCOS8.84, the Public Spot module authentication pages (i.e. all pre-installed default pages except for the voucher page) support the languages French, Spanish, Italian and Dutch. This allows you to offer Public Spot access to a broader range of international users. The language displayed is determined by the settings in the Web browser used to access the Public Spot.

Multilingual support refers exclusively to the 8.84 internal default pages. You can implement multilingual customized template pages with an external server.

Customizing the standard pages

As an alternative to installing complete user-defined Web pages, the device provides the option of customizing the pre-installed default pages to a certain extent. This includes for example the input of a login text that is displayed to your users in the registration form, or replacing the header image (logo). In this way, you can quickly deploy a customized Public Spot without having to deal in-depth with the subject of the Web page authoring.

Customized text or login title for the login page

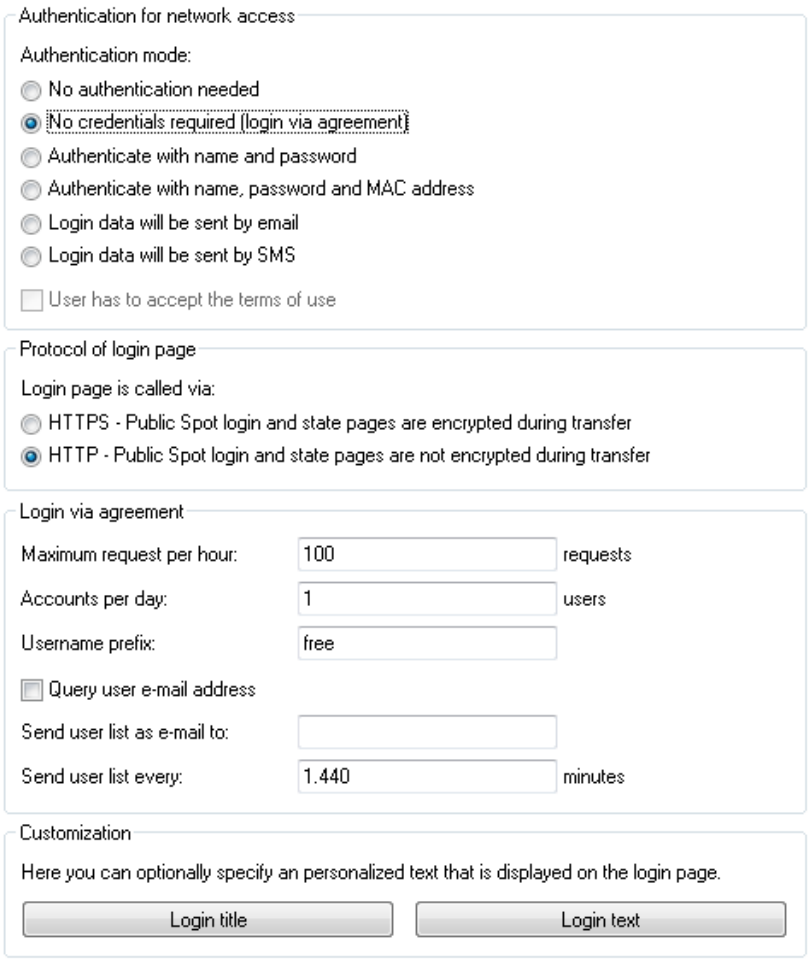
The Public Spot module gives you the option to specify customized **login text** and a **login title**, which appear on the login page in the box of the login form. The title and the text can be entered for a number of languages (English, German, French, Italian, Spanish and Dutch). The language displayed by the device depends on the language settings of the user's Web browser. If no customized login text or title is specified for a language, then the device falls back to the English login text (if available).

Please note that the login text and the login title are separate items.

Carry out the following steps to set up customized text or title on the login page.

1. In LANconfig, open the configuration dialog for the device.

2. Navigate to the dialog **Public Spot** > **Authentication**, click on the button **Login text** or **Login title** and select a language.



3. In the dialog that opens, enter the text that your Public Spot should display to users. You can enter an HTML string with max. 254 characters composed of:

```
[Leerzeichen][0-9][A-Z[a-z] @{|}~!$%&amp;'()+-,/:;&lt;=>?[\]^_.#*
```

LANconfig automatically transforms umlauts into their respective equivalents (ü to `ue`; ß to `ss`; etc.). To type umlauts, use their HTML equivalents (such as `&uuml;` for ü), because the text is directly embedded in the Web page. You can also use HTML tags to structure and format the text. Example:

```
Welcome!<br/><i>Please complete this form.</i>)
```

4. Click **OK** to complete your entries and load the configuration back to the device.

Once the configuration has been written successfully, the new login text and login title appears the next time the Public Spot page is called.

Custom header images for variable screen widths

A component of the pre-installed pages in the device is a header image (logo), which is displayed to your users above the login form for the Public Spot. You can change this header image as you please, for example to reflect the application environment or your corporate design. There is no need for an external Web server; you can simply upload the image directly into the device via the file management in WEBconfig or the configuration management in LANconfig.

A special feature of the header image is that it is available in the device as two possible variants: One version is for large screens or browser windows with a horizontal resolution exceeding 800 px (normal monitors, laptops, tablet PCs, etc.), and one is a small picture for screens with a lower horizontal resolution (PDAs, mobile phones, etc.). This allows you to provide header images for different target groups and to provide them a login page that is appropriate for their device.

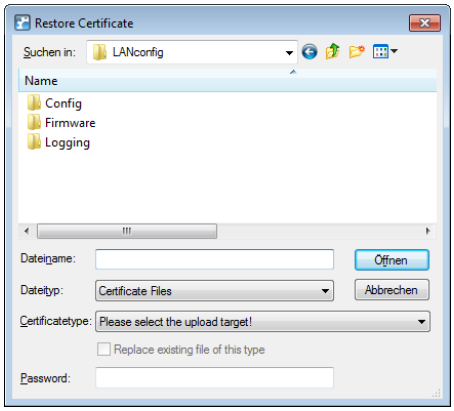
Figure 16: Login page for large screens

Figure 17: Login page for small screens

The available resolutions are set by the CSS file of the device. The pre-installed default graphics allow for 800x150 px for the large screen and 258x52 px for the small screen. The file type must be either JPG, GIF, or PNG.

To upload a new header image to the device either as a large or small version, follow the steps below.

1. Start LANconfig and highlight the device.
2. In the menu bar, click on **Device** > **Configuration management** > **Upload certificate or file**. The **Upload certificate** dialog opens.



3. Set the **File type** to **All files** and select the **Certificate type** that you want to upload.
   - **Public Spot - Header image of pages**: Certificate type for large screens
   - **Public Spot - Header image box**: Certificate type for small screens
4. Choose your custom header image and click on **Open**. LANconfig then starts the file upload.

After uploading successfully, the new header image appears the next time the Public Spot page is called.

You can check that the large and small header images are displayed by your Public Spot by setting your browser window width to >800 px and then reducing the width of the window. The CSS technology automatically switches between the large and small pictures.

Show/hide the vendor logo and header on the voucher

By default a voucher output by the device contains the header image and logo stored with the Public Spot homepage. The option **Public Spot** > **Wizard** > **Print header and company emblem** allows you to disable these graphics directly on the device without having to upload a customized version of the voucher template. In the case, the device outputs a neutral text voucher.

Configuration of user-defined pages

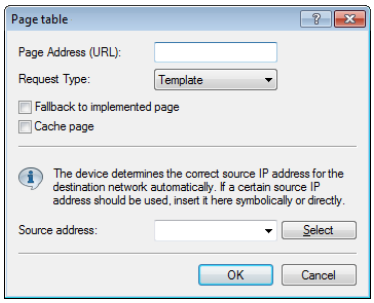
If you would like to replace the pre-installed pages with your own webpages, you can either store them directly on the device or on an external HTTP server. Sophisticated HTML pages may require more storage space than the space available on the device. There are additional advantages when using websites from an external server:

- Changes can be applied centrally. This reduces the effort required to change the login pages when using several devices.
- The server can dynamically provide the pages whose appearance is influenced by the information that the device provides. This information is discussed in more detail in the following chapters.

The storage location for the templates is entered in LANconfig in **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Page table** > **<Name of the template>** > **Page address (URL)**. There are currently three protocols available for the URL:

- `http://...`: Fetch the page via HTTP from an external server. TCP-port overrides and user/password specifications are possible.
- `https://...`: Similar to HTTP, but use HTTP over SSL for an encrypted connection.

› `file://...`: Retrieve the template from the given file in the device's local file system.



You can use any file name. If you decide to store the template pages in the device's local memory, they require the URLs reserved specially for this purpose. An internal standard page will be replaced by a new page loaded into the device by entering the local URL as the **Page address (URL)**.

Table 32: Overview of the reserved file names for template pages

Local URL on your device	Page designation
file://pbspot_template_welcome	Welcome…
file://pbspot_template_login	Login...
file://pbspot_template_error	Error...
file://pbspot_template_start	Start…
file://pbspot_template_status	Status…
file://pbspot_template_logoff	Logoff...
file://pbspot_template_help	Help...
file://pbspot_template_noproxy	No proxy
file://pbspot_template_voucher	Voucher…*
file://pbspot_template_agb	Terms of use...
file://pbspot_template_fallback	Fallback error
file://pbspot_template_reg_email	Prelogin (e-mail)...
file://pbspot_template_login_email	Login (e-mail)...
file://pbspot_template_reg_sms	Prelogin (e-mail to SMS)...
file://pbspot_template_login_sms	Login (e-mail to SMS)...

*) Template for printing vouchers, no authentication page

By uploading user-defined webpages, only the webpages that are pre-installed on the device are replaced, but not overwritten. They can be rolled back to the device's proprietary default pages at any time by deleting the local URL.

To provide the highest possible compatibility with earlier display devices and web browsers, you should avoid using frames, if possible. Also, specialized content such as JavaScript or plug-in elements can lead to an erroneous display.

Login pages depending on the login mode

The following table provides an overview of which login page is displayed by the device in the various authentication modes. If a login mode has no customized page template, the Public Spot module takes the default 8.84 page:

Table 33: Overview of login pages of each authentication mode

Authentication mode	Page designation
No authentication required	–
No credentials required (login after agreement)	Welcome…
Authenticate with name and password	Login...
Authenticate with name, password and MAC address	Login...
Login data will be sent by e-mail	› Prelogin (e-mail)... › Login (e-mail)...
Login data will be sent by SMS (text message)	› Prelogin (e-mail to SMS)... › Login (e-mail to SMS)...

Special template pages for Smart Ticket

The Public Spot module in LCOS versions prior to 8.84 used a central login page for all authentication modes. As of LCOS8.84, you can optionally equip the device with separate template pages for the Smart Ticket function (for self-sufficient user registration via e-mail/SMS). Two pages have to be configured for registration via e-mail/SMS: **Registration(...)** and **Login(...)**.

- On the registration page, users enter their personal data (e-mail address or mobile phone number) to register for the Public Spot and to request its login data.
- On the login page, users then enter their credentials in order to authenticate at the Public Spot.

The following table provides an overview of the related dependencies that you need to create your own page templates:

Table 34: Overview of dependencies of the SmartTicket login pages

Authentication mode	Page designation	Local URL on your device	Page template identifiers
Login data will be sent by e-mail	Prelogin (e-mail)...	file://pbspot_template_reg_email	<regemailform>
	Login (e-mail)...	file://pbspot_template_login_email	<loginemailform>
Login data will be sent by SMS (text message)	Prelogin (e-mail to SMS)...	file://pbspot_template_reg_sms	<regsmsform>
	Login (e-mail to SMS)...	file://pbspot_template_login_sms	<loginsmsform>

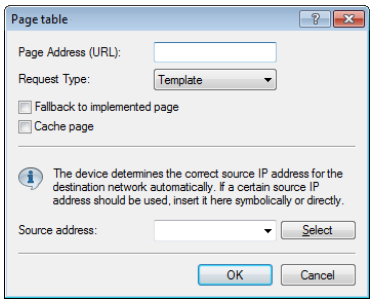
Setting up a customized template page

A custom template page allows you to replace the internal LCOS template pages with your own Web pages. This does not overwrite the LCOS templates, but just exchanges them for your own pages. If need be, you can fallback to the standard pages.

The steps below use the example of a **Login** page to show you how to set up a custom template page with the help of LANconfig.

1. You can load your customized error page either onto an external HTTP(S)-server or as the **Public Spot - Login page (* .html, * .htm)** into the memory of the device.
   Further information about uploading your own templates and sample files are available on the Internet in the *LANCOM Support Knowledgebase* under *Implementing your own websites for the LANCOM Public Spot option*.

2. Open the device configuration dialog in LANconfig, navigate to the **Public Spot** > **Server** dialog and select **Page table** > **Login**.



3. Enter the URL of the login page on the external server under **Page address (URL)** or the reference for a file on the local device (`file://pbspot_template_login`).
4. You can make these additional settings if necessary.
   - **Request type**: If you are using an external server, you can change the way in which the page is called. By default (in the setting **Template**) the device loads an externally stored HTM(L) page from the specified URL for further processing by the internal HTTP server. If you change the setting to **Redirect**, the device outsources the processing of the pages to the external server (also see *User-defined pages via HTTP redirect* on page 1192).
   - **Fallback to implemented page**: If you use an external server and chose the template type **Request**, the Public Spot module is able to use the internal LCOS template in case of HTTP(S) errors (e.g. if the server is unavailable). This enables the Public Spot to continue operating (also see *Auto fallback* on page 1193). If you do not activate this setting, the Public Spot displays the fallback error page instead.
   - **Cache page**: On some devices, you can write local and external templates to a cache. Learn more about under *Template caching* on page 1191.
   - **Source address**: This setting allows you to specify the loopback address used by the device to connect to the external HTTP(S) server. By default, the server sends its replies back to the IP address of your device without having to enter it here. By entering an optional loopback address you change the source address and route used by the device to connect to the server. This can be useful, for example, when the server is available over different paths and it should use a specific path for its reply message.
5. Close this dialog and also the general configuration dialog each with click on **OK**. LANconfig then writes the new settings back to the device.

That's it!

Embedding graphics in user-created template pages

Images for your vouchers can now be uploaded into the device because a further five images slots (voucher image 1 to voucher image 5) are now available for your pages. These images are permanently stored in the flash memory of the device.

How to transfer the images into the device is described in the section *Custom header images for variable screen widths*. When uploading, set the **Certificate type** to "Public Spot - voucher image 1" to "Public Spot - voucher image 5".

Modify the HTML template of the relevant voucher (e.g. with a text editor such as Notepad++) and reference the uploaded images by including the following in the template: `<img src="/images/voucherimg1">` to `<img src="/images/voucherimg5">`. How to set up a custom template page is described in the section *Setting up a customized template page*.

Template caching

When configuring user-defined template pages on devices with sufficient memory (e.g., Public Spot gateways), you have the option to cache templates on the device. Caching improves the performance of the Public Spot module, particularly in large-scale scenarios where the device internally caches templates and the HTML pages that were generated from them.

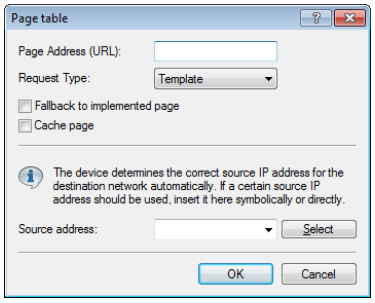
Caching is possible for:

- Templates stored in the local file system
- Templates stored on external HTTP(S) servers with static URLs

Templates on external servers that are referenced with template variables are not cached on the system.

Enable template caching

In LANconfig under **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Page table** > **<Name of the page template>**, caching for a page template is enabled by setting **Cache page**.



The corresponding parameter can be found under **Public Spot Module** > **Page table** > **Template cache**.

Delete template cache

The device automatically deletes or updates the templates stored in the cache once you load a new template file in the file system of your device (for local storage) or when the cache period for an HTTP(S) template runs out (for storage on an external server). The device evaluates the `Cache control` header of an HTTP(S) template in order to determine the maximum cache period.

If no `Cache control` header is set, the website is not cached and is immediately discarded. When setting up an individual template, ensure that you combine any META tag with a reasonable cache period (in seconds), for example, `<meta http-equiv="cache-control" content="max-age=60">`. The duration of the cache period depends on the scenario; there are no specific recommendations.

However, you do have the option of manually deleting the template cache with an action. In the status menu under **Public Spot** you can do this by starting the action **Flush template cache**.

User-defined pages via HTTP redirect

If you implement user-defined pages with redirection (request type: redirect), your device transforms it as follows: Whenever your device must send the respective page to a client, it will expand the URL according to the rules given in the previous chapter and will send an HTTP 307 (temporary redirect) response to the device, with this URL as the new location.

Redirects are particularly meaningful if you use a welcome page and all authentications should be performed on one external gateway. In this case, the clients can be immediately redirected to this gateway. This feature is often used with the external device controller.

User-defined pages via page templates

The device can alternatively act as a client and use the extended URL to download a user-defined page via an HTTP connection. The internal pre-processor takes of the processing of the page and subsequently sends the result to the Public Spot user. This pre-processor makes it possible to process session-specific data, although the server has a static page available. The URL syntax understood by the device's built-in HTTP client is the syntax recognized by web browsers. However, only a subset of what is recognized by browsers is supported:

- The user authentication is performed using the form `user:password@host/...`

- The device is incapable of automatically resolving non-fatal HTTP errors such as redirects. Make sure that an access to this page will return the page directly.

Usage of symbolic names for the server's host instead of plain IP addresses is supported, given that DNS is properly configured. In many aspects, this mechanism can be considered like a proxy, which fetches HTML pages and then sends them to the client. The biggest difference is that the URL of the pages is determined by the device and not by the client of the Public Spot user.

Auto fallback

For every entry in the page table, it is possible to individually define whether a fallback should be used or not. This fallback feature is only meaningful if a page is defined as a template (request type: template), and not as a redirect (request type: redirect). While fetching a page via HTTP, various errors can appear:

- The DNS lookup for a host name may fail.
- The TCP/HTTP connection to the server may fail.
- The HTTP server may respond with an error code (e.g. 404 if an invalid URL was given).

By default, the device passes this type of error on to the user so that the user can start a new request or inform the provider of the Public Spot. Alternatively, the configuration of a fallback feature can ensure that the hotspot continues to function by using the default pages instead. You enable the fallback feature in LANconfig using the setting **Fallback to implemented page**.

Passed HTTP attributes

As mentioned above, in some respects the device may be seen as an HTTP proxy that fetches login and status pages for the client. HTTP proxies are obliged to keep certain HTTP attributes intact while forwarding a client request:

- The device forwards cookies between the client and the server. Client cookie values can also be sent transparently to the server and the server can set cookies on the client. Using cookies is necessary if the files that are sent from the server have ASP scripts, since ASP stores the session ID in a cookie.
- The device will forward the `User-Agent` value provided by the client. This allows a server to deliver different pages, based on the browser and system platform on the client side. PDAs and mobile phones for example call for web pages optimised for their small displays.
- The device inserts an `X-Forwarded-For` line into the HTTP request to report the device's IP address.
- WEBconfig generally attempts to use a tag named `Accept-Languages` provided by client browsers to match the request to one of the languages provided by its internal message tables (currently, only German and English). The selected language is communicated to the server via another `Accept-Languages` tag, in the hope that the server will provide a page in the appropriate language. When the server delivers the page, the device will check for a Language tag in the server's response to see if the server was actually capable of delivering a page in the requested language. If not, it will adapt the strings used in template expansion (see next section) to the actual language of the page.

URL placeholder (template variables)

The URLs specified in the page table do not need to be absolute strings. You have the option to integrate template variables in the address which are then filled-out with parameters from a Public Spot session when the device requests the pages from the server. Placeholders have a form similar to C format strings, e.g., a percent sign immediately followed by a single, lowercase character. The following placeholders are defined:

%a

Inserts the device's IP address. The placeholder only returns a value if the **Request type** in the **Page table** is set to `Template`.

Note that this placeholder cannot generate a reachable address if the device itself is located behind another router with activated NAT.

%c

Inserts the LAN MAC address of the Public Spot device as a 12-character hexadecimal string. The output is in the format 'aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff'.

%d

Enter the URL parameter '%d' as the circuit ID, for example `http://ipaddress/?circuit=%d&nas=%i`. The Public Spot module replaces this variable with the circuit ID that is detected in the client's DHCP request.

This requires "DHCP snooping" to be configured on the AP in such a way that the AP can query the circuit ID in the Public Spot station table of the WLC.

In this way it is possible for the Public Spot welcome page displayed on the clients to be customized by location.

%e

Inserts the device serial number.

%i

Inserts the NAS port ID. In this context, 'NAS' stands for 'Network Access Server'. This variable contains the interface of the device that the client used to login. For a WLC or router without WLAN this corresponds to a physical interface, such as `LAN-1`, or, for a standalone access point, it is the SSID.

%l

Inserts the device host name.

%m

Inserts the MAC address of the client as a 12-character hexadecimal string. The individual bytes are separated by colons.

%n

Inserts the name of the device the way it is configured in the setup menu under **Name**.

%o

Inserts the URL of the Internet page which the user initially requested. After successful authentication, the device forwards the user to this URL.

%p

Adds the IP address of the Public Spot device to the ARF context of the respective client.

Assuming that your device is active in various IP networks, you can use this variable to specify the IP address used by the device in the network where the client is also located.

%r

Adds the IP address of the client (from the perspective of the Public Spot device in the respective ARF context).

%s

If the client is connected to the device via a WLAN interface, this placeholder will insert the WLAN SSID used in the network that the client is connected to. This feature is particularly interesting when MultiSSID is used, since this gives the server the opportunity to display different pages based on the SSID. If the client is connected via another access point that connects to the device via a Point-2-Point connection, the SSID of the first WLAN will be inserted. If the client is connect via Ethernet, the placeholder remains empty.

%t

Inserts the routing tag which is appended to the client's data packets.

%v

If the requesting client is assigned an individual VLAN ID, this variable contains the source VLAN ID.

%0-9

Inserts a single number between 0 and 9.

%%

Inserts a single percent character.

In order to be able to use variables for a template, add the parameters to the **Page address (URL)** in the page table. In the following URLs the variable `%i` is replaced with `LAN-1` as described in the sample above:

Example: `http://192.168.1.1/welcome.php?nas=%i`

Example: `http://192.168.1.1/%i_welcome.html`

Tags and syntax of page templates

After the device receives the page from the server, it performs some transformations to the page template before sending it to the client. These transformations replace pre-defined HTML tag placeholders with data belonging to the client's current session (e.g. the current resource consumption in the status page). An HTML page delivered by the server could therefore better be described as a template for an actual HTML page displayed in the client's browser. HTML syntax was chosen for the placeholders to allow editing of page templates without interfering with syntax sensitive HTML editors.

In total, three placeholder tags are defined:

- `<pblink` **`identifier`**`>`**`text`**`</pblink>`

  Marks **text** as a clickable link to an **identifier**, typically to link to another page. Note that </pblink>is just an alias for , since this symmetrical definition causes less trouble with HTML syntax checkers. For example, the following fragment defines a link to the help page:

  ```
  Please click <pblink helplink>here</pblink>for help.
  ```

- `<pbelem` **`identifier`**`>`

  Insert the item specified by **identifier** at this place. For example, the following line inserts the user's time credit:

  ```
  Session will be ended in <pbelem sesstimeout>.
  ```

- `<pbcond` **`identifier(s)`**`>`**`code`**`</pbcond>`

  Only insert **code** into the page if all the identifiers are TRUE, i.e. numeric values are not equal to zero and string values are not empty. Note that the current implementation does not allow nested conditionals. Continuing from the previous example, the session timeout is only displayed if there is a time limit (a session without timeout internally has a session timeout of zero):

  ```
  <pbcond sesstimeout>Session will be terminated in <pbelem sesstimeout>seconds.</pbcond>
  ```

A set of sample page templates is available from LANCOM Systems. They are not meant to be used in productive systems, but instead to illustrate the use of page templates, and provide a starting point for your own creations.

Page template identifiers

The following identifiers can be used when designing customized template pages. The device does not differentiate between upper and lower case.

Please note that not all identifiers are available for all printouts! Not all identifiers are available on all pages.

ACCOUNTEND

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier supplements the voucher with information about the voucher's validity, i.e. from when and until when the created access account is valid.

APADDR

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier contains the Public Spot's IP address, as seen from the client's perspective. Can be used for user-defined login forms when the `LOGINFORM` element is not used.

AUTOPRINT

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier inserts a Java script into the page with the instruction to open the print dialog for printing the displayed page. Please note that in this case you **must** complete the `pbelem` tag with a separate `script`, e.g. `<pbelem autoprint></script>`.

BANDWIDTHPROFNAME

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier contains the bandwidth profile that the user is associated with.

This identifier is available from LCOS version 9.18 RU1. Templates featuring this identifier are not suitable for LCOS versions before 9.18 RU1.

COMMENT

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier adds an optional comment to the voucher, assuming that you have entered an appropriate text into the Setup Wizard.

HELPLINK

Valid for: `<pblink>`

This identifier contains the URL to the help page provided by the device.

LOGINEMAILFORM

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

For authentication via Smart Ticket, this identifier contains the HTML form for authenticating at the Public Spot with credentials provided by e-mail.

LOGINERRORMSG

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier returns the error message from LCOS in the case of a failed authentication or a WAN-connection failure. This identifier is only available on the general error page and the fallback error page.

To retrieve the error message from the RADIUS server in the event of a failed authentication, use the identifier **SERVERMSG**.

LOGINFORM

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier contains the HTML form for authentication at the Public Spot when authenticating with user name and password (and MAC address, if applicable).

LOGINLINK

Valid for: `<pblink>`

This identifier contains the URL to the login page provided by the device.

LOGINSMSFORM

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

For authentication via Smart Ticket, this identifier contains the HTML form for authenticating at the Public Spot with credentials provided by SMS.

LOGOFFLINK

Valid for: `<pblink>`

This identifier contains the URL to the logout page provided by the device.

ORIGLINK

Valid for: `<pbelem>` `<pblink>` `<pbcond>`

This identifier contains the URL originally requested by the user prior to the authentication process. If it is unknown, this value is empty.

PASSWORD

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

On a voucher, this identifier contains the password for Public Spot access.

REDIRURL

Valid for: `<pbelem>` `<pblink>` `<pbcond>`

This identifier holds a possible redirection URL contained in the RADIUS server's authentication response (if there was one). It is only defined for the error and start page.

REGEMAILFORM

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

For authentication via Smart Ticket, this identifier contains the HTML form for requesting the access credentials via e-mail (registration).

REGSMSFORM

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

For authentication via Smart Ticket, this identifier contains the HTML form for requesting the access credentials via SMS (registration).

RXBANDWIDTH

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier contains the maximum reception bandwidth of the bandwidth profile.

This identifier is available from LCOS version 9.18 RU1. Templates featuring this identifier are not suitable for LCOS versions before 9.18 RU1.

RXBYTES

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier contains the amount of data so far received by the device from the client in this session, expressed in bytes. It is zero for a station that is not logged in.

RXTXBYTES

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier contains the amount of data received by the device from the client so far, or sent to the client in this session, expressed in bytes. This means that it is the sum of TXBYTES and RXBYTES.

SERVERMSG

Valid for: `<pbelem>` `<pbcond>`

This identifier holds the reply message contained in the RADIUS server's authentication response (if there was one). Only applicable for the error and start pages. In the case of a failed authentication, this identifier contains the error message from the RADIUS server.

To retrieve the error message from the LCOS server in the event of a failed authentication, use the identifier **LOGINERRORMSG**.

SESSIONSTATUS

Valid for: <pbelem>

This identifier contains a textual representation of the current status of the client relative to the device (whether authenticated or not).

SESSIONTIME

Valid for: <pbelem>

This identifier contains the time that has passed since the login on the Public Spot.

SESSTIMEOUT

Valid for: <pbelem> <pbcond>

This identifier contains the remaining time for the current session. After this time, the device ends the current session automatically. This identifier is zero for a session with no time limit.

SSID

Valid for: <pbelem> <pbcond>

This identifier on a voucher contains the SSID to be used for Public Spot access.

STATUSLINK

Valid for: <pbelem> <pblink>

This identifier contains the URL to the logout page provided by the device. A reference that opens a new browser window is automatically generated within the <pblink> element.

TXBANDWIDTH

Valid for: <pbelem>

This identifier contains the maximum transmission bandwidth of the bandwidth profile.

This identifier is available from LCOS version 9.18 RU1. Templates featuring this identifier are not suitable for LCOS versions before 9.18 RU1.

TXBYTES

Valid for: <pbelem>

This identifier contains the amount of data transmitted by the device to the client so far in this session.

USER NAME

Valid for: <pbcond>

This identifier allows you to supplement the voucher page with conditional HTML code, which is only printed for certain users or administrators. USER is a prefix and **must** be placed before the user name (NAME) and a space. To generate HTML output specifically for the user 'root' when calling the voucher page, use the following syntax:

```
<pbcond USER root>Conditional HTML Code</pbcond>
```

When used in larger Public Spot scenarios with central administration, such as with a WLAN controller, this dependency can be used for the purpose of site localization: To do this, you create a Public Spot admin for each of the relevant access points and you specify a conditional voucher text for each administrator.

USERID

Valid for: <pbelem>

This identifier contains the user ID (in the form of the username) with which the current session was started. The identifier is not specified if the client is not (yet) logged in.

VOLLIMIT

Valid for: <pbelem> <pbcond>

This identifier contains the amount of data, expressed in bytes, that the client is still allowed to transfer before the device terminates the current session. This identifier is zero for a session with no data limit.

VOUCHERIMG

Valid for: `<pbelem>`

This identifier inserts the page banner image (in large size) into the page.

New placeholders from LCOS version 9.20:

These placeholders enable the page templates to be fine tuned. Unlike the placeholders mentioned above, these placeholders do not output any additional descriptive text, but their values only.

${SSID}

Returns the network name / SSID.

${USERID}

Returns the user name.

${PASSWORD}

Returns the user password.

${COMMENT}

Returns the comment.

${BandwidthProfName}

Returns the name of the bandwidth profile.

${TxBandwidth}

Returns the specified maximum bandwidth (transmit direction).

${RxBandwidth}

Returns the specified maximum bandwidth (receive direction).

${ACCOUNTEND}

This identifier returns the end of the ticket (date and time).

To use this placeholder, you need to include the jquery library in the template. To do this, add the following to the template:

```
<script src="/jquery/jquery.js" type="text/javascript"></script>
<script src="/jquery/jquery.tmpl.min.js"
type="text/javascript"></script>
```

You also need to use the new placeholders inside a <script> block:

```
<script id="voucherTemplate" type="text/x-jquery-tmpl">
[... Contents ...]
</script>
```

Graphics in user-defined pages

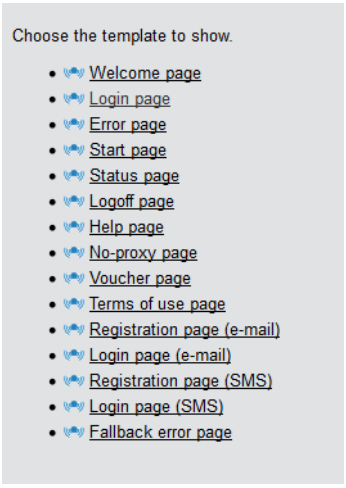
All but the simplest web pages contain images, which are fetched by the client's browser independent of the HTML page itself. The graphic files for the pre-installed page are also stored on the device. The device automatically adapts the necessary permissions so that even unauthorized clients have access to the images without problems. However, every access to the referenced (device-external) images for user-defined pages are treated like a normal Internet access, and would automatically send the user back to the welcome or start page.

In order to avoid this behavior, you should make sure that the servers where the graphics are stored are included in the **free servers**. Free servers are addresses that have unlimited access, and are therefore also accessible by unauthenticated clients, and are not billed by the accounting feature in the same way as the rest of the data traffic.

The chapter *Open access networks (no login)* on page 1133 contains additional information about configuring free servers. Note that if a user-defined page is defined as a redirect, this of course has to be defined as a free IP address.

Template preview in WEBconfig

You can view the changes to the Public Spot templates in WEBconfig by switching to the view **Extras** > **Public Spot template preview**.

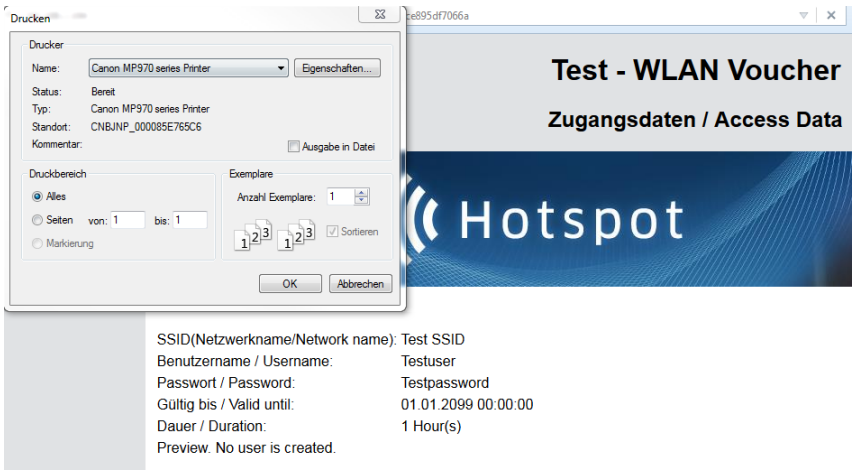


Select a template to display from the list.

The selected template is displayed in the same browser window. Use the "Back" function of your browser to return to WEBconfig.

Some templates contain JavaScript code. This code is executed when the template is invoked. For example, the "Voucher page" template contains code that starts a printout when the page is displayed.

This page contains test data. However, no user is created at this point. This allows you to test the template and print it out.



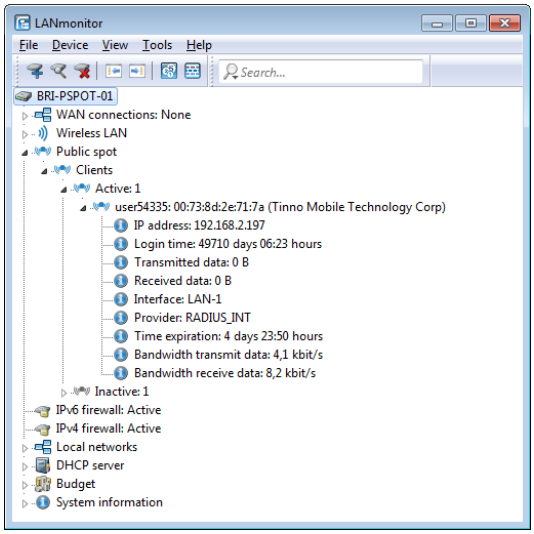
If a template does not exist or cannot be found, an error message is displayed by WEBconfig.

14.2.6 Viewing Public Spot clients

LANmonitor can optionally display detailed information about the clients associated with the Public Spot.

1. Open the menu item **Public Spot** > **Clients**.

2. Double-click on **Active** to display the active clients, or on **Inactive** to display inactive clients.
3. Double-click on a client to retrieve detailed information about it.



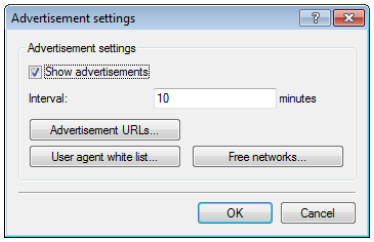
14.2.7 Displaying advertising to Public Spot users

You can optionally display advertising to Public Spot users at configurable time intervals. The Public Spot shows the advertisement in the normal browser window of the user and not using a pop-up, since all modern browsers normally block pop-ups. In the Public Spot station table, a client can have one of three states:

- Authenticated: The client is logged on and can surf in Internet.
- Unauthenticated: The client is not logged on and cannot surf in Internet.
- Advertisement: The next time a client calls a URL, it is redirected to an advertisement URL.

You have the option to exclude certain networks and user agents from the display of advertisements by means of a whitelist.

1. In the device configuration, select the menu branch **Public Spot** > **Server** and click on **Advertisement settings**.
2. Enable the **Show advertisements** checkbox.



You can now change the interval between advertisement displays, and also other settings.

3. Under **Interval** you specify the time in minutes after which the Public Spot reroutes a user to an advertisement URL. With an interval of `0` forwarding occurs directly after login.
4. Click on **Advertisement URLs** to add an advertisement URL. If you add multiple URLs, the Public Spot displays them in sequence after the specified interval.
5. Optional: Click on **User agent white list** to add user agents, which the Public Spot excludes from the display of advertisements.
6. Optional: Click on **Free networks** to add networks, which the Public Spot excludes from the display of advertisements. This can be used in various ways, for example to enter the automatic search URLs used by the browser, e.g. `*.google.com`. Typically, a browser sends keyboard input at the address bar to a search engine; by setting the exception, the advertisement page does not responding to this.

Login-free networks are generally ad-free networks. There is no need to explicitly include these networks into the whitelist.

7. Close all dialog windows by clicking on **OK**.

Public Spot users will be redirected to an advertisement URL after the specified time interval unless they are using a whitelisted user agent or they are located in a free network.

The timing of the advertisements refers to the session time of the active Public Spot clients. If a client stop sending data for a certain time, then the interval before the Public Spot displays advertising again will be delayed by this time.

14.3 Access to the Public Spot

14.3.1 Requirements for logging in

- Device with network adapter
- Operating systems supporting the TCP/IP protocol (automatic IP-address retrieval by DHCP active)
- Web browser (supporting JavaScript and Frames)
- Direct Internet access (use of proxy deactivated)
- WLAN access information (network name, encryption information)
- Valid user data (user identifier and password)

Information for WLAN access

A maximum of two pieces of information are required to access the WLAN:

- **The network name of the WLAN (SSID)**

  If the Public Spot's base stations are configured for operation as a closed network, the user must know the exact name of the wireless LAN, its SSID.

- **WLAN encryption**

  Although it is possible to provide guest access via encrypted connections using, for example, WPA, Public Spots are not generally operated with WLAN encryption. Protection is provided in this case using authentication with a username and password. Data security when transmitting data on the Public Spot must be provided by the end user (e.g., using a VPN client).

Information for LAN access

If the IP addresses on your network are automatically assigned (for example, via DHCP), your users only need:

- a LAN socket that connects to the Public Spot.
- a LAN cable to connect their LAN adapter to the LAN socket.

Information for authentication

The user needs to have the following information to hand when logging in:

- User identifier
- Password
- MAC address

  If you set the authentication mode for a Public Spot at the base station to "MAC+User+Password", you, as the operator, must know the MAC addresses of the end devices employed by your users. An end device automatically and continuously transmits its MAC address when communicating with a base station. The user does not have to

manually enter this information when logging in, but instead it is communicated just once to the operator before attempting to login.

14.3.2 Logging in to the Public Spot

1. Log in to the WLAN of the Public Spot (for WLAN connections) or connect to the network using an Ethernet cable (for LAN connections).
   The different types of mobile devices and WLAN adapters offer various ways of entering the settings required for accessing the WLAN. Many devices require the network name (SSID) of the WLAN to be entered into the configuration program for the WLAN adapter. Some other products also provide an overview of all base stations in the vicinity, from which the user simply chooses the one they want to use.

   Depending on the configuration, the user receives the necessary settings for the LAN-adapter connection either automatically from the network or a connected DHCP server, or from the network administrator.

2. Start your Web browser.

   As soon as the Web browser attempts to access any Internet site, the Public Spot automatically intervenes and presents the login page. The login page, or the login form displayed within it, appear differently depending on which firmware version you are using and which login mode you have selected. In the following, we assume a login with a voucher (or by user name and password).

Figure 18: Login page for large screens

3. Enter the complete **user ID** and **password** in the corresponding fields and confirm your entries with **Login**.

   To login, you should use a Web browser with JavaScript support enabled to ensure that session status information can be displayed in a popup window.

   If the login to the Public Spot is successful, an additional window pops up with the main information about the current session. This window is also used for the login. This window should be left open throughout the session (e.g., it can be minimized).

   If the login fails, an error page opens with a request to return to the login page and to repeat the authentication. The form takes over a portion of the previously entered data as an aid to the user, e.g. in case of typos.

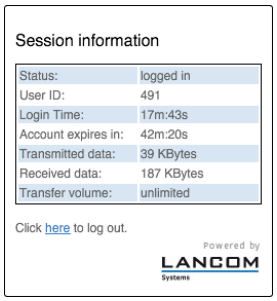
14.3.3 Session information

The window with session information is automatically updated at regular intervals. Along with the status and current user ID, the information displayed includes the connection time and the volume of transferred data.

If the session-information window is not open, you can open it by entering the following in the address line in the browser:

```
http://<IP address of the Public Spot>/authen/status
```

Alternatively, you can open the session page with the short URL `http://logout`.



14.3.4 Logging out of the Public Spot

The session information window can be used to logout from the Public Spot. Click on **here** in the bottom line of text in the window.

If the session-information window is not open, you can enter the following into the address line in the browser:

`http://<IP address of the Public Spot>/authen/logout`

Alternatively, you can open the session page with the short URL `http://logout` to logout from the Public Spot.

The operator can set up the Public Spot to automatically logoff users if they cannot be reached for 60 seconds. In case of doubt, please ask the Public Spot operator if automatic logoff (*Station monitoring*) is activated.

14.3.5 Advice and help

The following sections present solutions to the most common problems that may occur when operating a Public Spot.

The Public Spot login page is not displayed

- The Internet access must be set up so that it is directed via the network adapter and not via a dial-up networking connection. To check this, take a look at the connection settings for your Web browser. If you use Microsoft Internet Explorer, you must disable the dial-up configurations in **Tools** > **Internet Options** > **Connections**entered there.
- Internet access must be direct, i.e. without going via a proxy server. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, you can disable the use of a proxy server in the menu **Tools** > **Internet Options** > **Connections** > **LAN-Settings...**.
- If you are making the connection with a WLAN adapter: Ensure that your network adapter can in fact find the Public Spot. Your WLAN adapter gives you the option of searching for an access point.
- If you are making the connection with a WLAN adapter: Check if your network adapter has all of the necessary settings to access the Public Spot network:
  - You probably have to enter the network name for the WLAN.
  - When working with an encrypted Public Spots, you are also required to enter the corresponding WPA or WEP key.
- Check that your network adapter is set up for automatic retrieval of an IP address (DHCP). Your device should not have a fixed IP address.

If your network adapter is set up with a fixed IP address, adjusting it for automatic retrieval by DHCP may cause important configuration information to be lost. Ensure that you note all of the values listed in the network settings (IP address, standard gateway, DNS server, etc.).

Login not working

- Ensure that you enter the user data correctly and in full. Ensure that you use the correct capitalization for all entries.
- Is the CAPS-LOCK key activated on your device? This causes the capitalization to be reversed. Deactivate the CAPS-LOCK key and repeat the entry of your login data.

- The Public Spot operator may be checking more than just the user ID and password, but also the MAC address (physical address) of your network adapter as well. In this case, ensure that the Public Spot operator is informed of your correct MAC address.

It is no longer possible to login

If the Public Spot breaks off communications after a number of login attempts have failed, you should deactivate your WLAN adapter for at least 60 seconds (or your entire device) or disconnect the LAN adapter from the network, and then try again.

The session information window is not being displayed

To display the session-information window, enter the following line into the address line of your Web browser:

`http://<IP address of the Public Spot>/authen/status`

The Public Spot operator can supply you with the `<Public Spot's IP address>` upon request.

The Public Spot requests a new login for no reason (WLAN)

When moving into the signal coverage area of another access point (roaming), it is necessary to login again. If you are located in the overlap area between two access points, you may even experience a change of connection between the two access points at regular intervals. The task of the roaming secret is to allow Public Spot sessions to be passed between access points without the user having to login again.

- LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Users** > **Roaming Secret**

14.4 Tutorials for setting up and using Public Spots

The following tutorials describe examples of how the Public Spot option can be implemented.

14.4.1 Virtualization and guest access via WLAN controller with VLAN

Many companies wish to offer Internet access to their visitors via WLAN. In larger installations the required settings apply to multiple access points, and these can be programmed centrally in the WLAN controller.

Targets

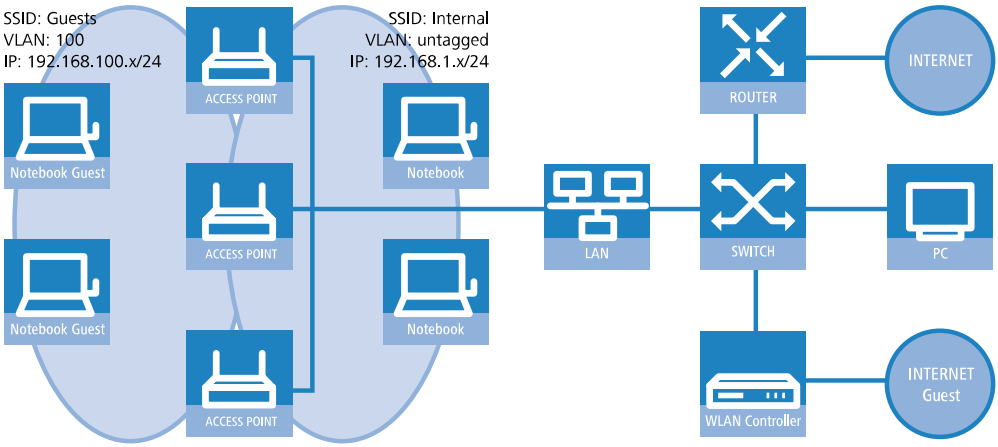
- Wireless LAN infrastructure available to internal employees and guests
- Shared physical components (cables, switches, access points)
- Separation of networks with VLAN and ARF
- Break-out of data streams to certain target networks:
  - Guests: Internet only
  - Internal employees: Internet, all local devices and services
- Guests login to the WLAN with a Web form.
- Internal employees use WLAN encryption for authentication.

Establish

- Management of the access points is handled by the WLC.
- The WLC serves as the DHCP server for the WLAN clients in the guest network.
- The guest network is provided with Internet access via the WLC (e.g. separate DSL access or Internet access via the company DMZ).
- The wired infrastructure is based on managed VLAN-capable switches:

- Access point VLAN management is handled by the WLC.
- The VLAN management of the switches is handled separately by the switch configuration.

- The access points operate within the internal VLANs.

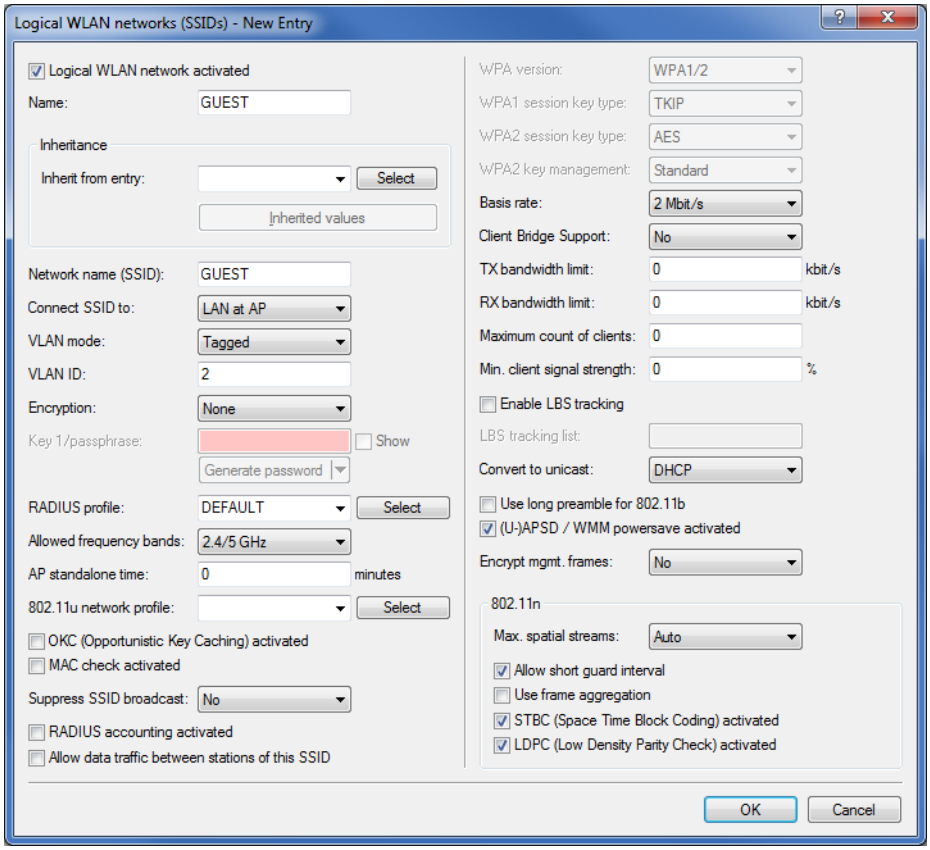


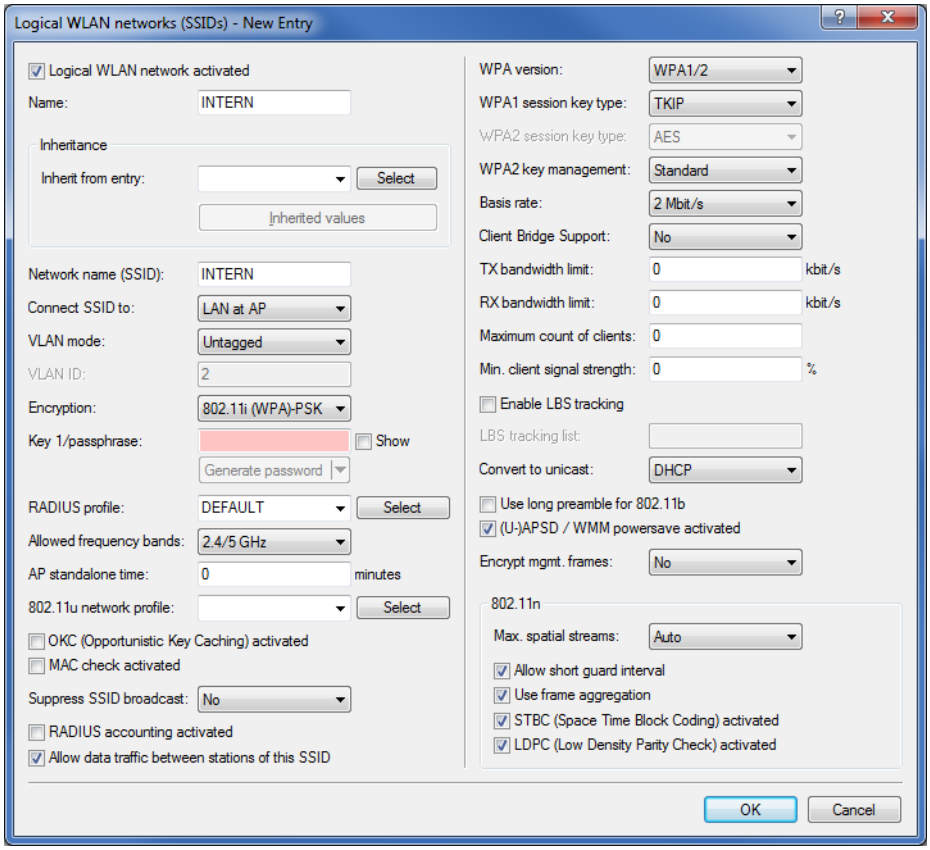
Wireless LAN configuration of the WLAN controllers

During the configuration of the WLAN, the necessary WLAN networks are defined and, along with the physical WLAN settings, are assigned to the access points managed by the controller.

1. Create a logical WLAN for guests and one for the internal employees:
   - The WLAN with the SSID `GUESTS` uses the VLAN ID `100` (VLAN operating mode **Tagged**) and uses **no** encryption.
   - The WLAN with the SSID `INTERNAL` receives no VLAN ID (VLAN operating mode **untagged**, i.e. packets are transferred in the Ethernet without a VLAN tag) and uses WPA encryption, e.g. **802 11i (WPA)-PSK**.

› LANconfig: **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)**

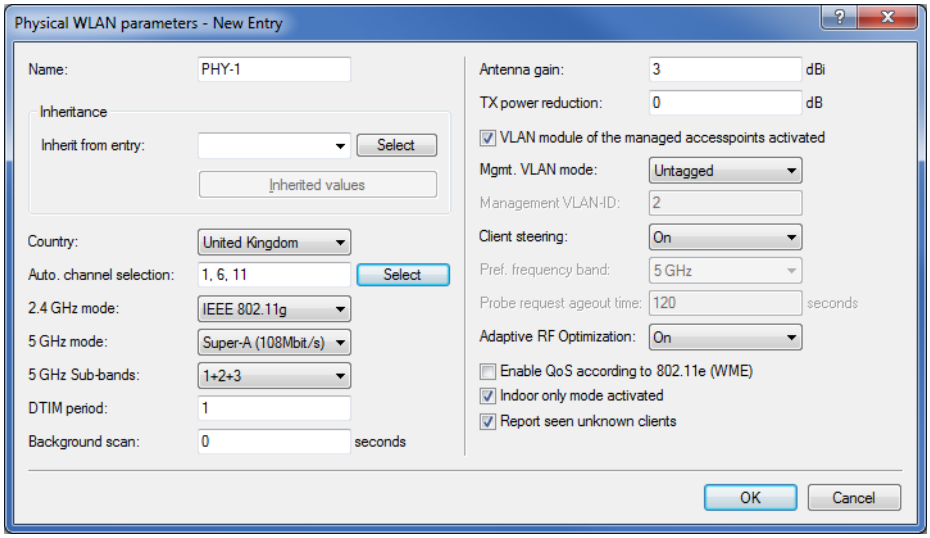




If you set the **VLAN mode** to **untagged**, LANconfig will gray-out the **VLAN ID** input field in the add/edit dialog shown above. However, the corresponding table **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)** still displays the assigned VLAN as a value in the grayed-out box. This entry is only of internal significance, as the acceptable range is between 2 and 4094. Ultimately it is the VLAN operating mode which is decisive: If this is set to **untagged**, then a VLAN ID is not transmitted under any circumstances.

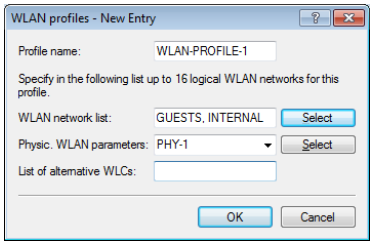
2. Create a set of physical parameters for the access points.
The management VLAN ID is set to `1`, which serves to activate the VLAN function (but without a separate management VLAN for the device; the management data traffic is transmitted untagged).

   > LANconfig: **WLAN-Controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters**



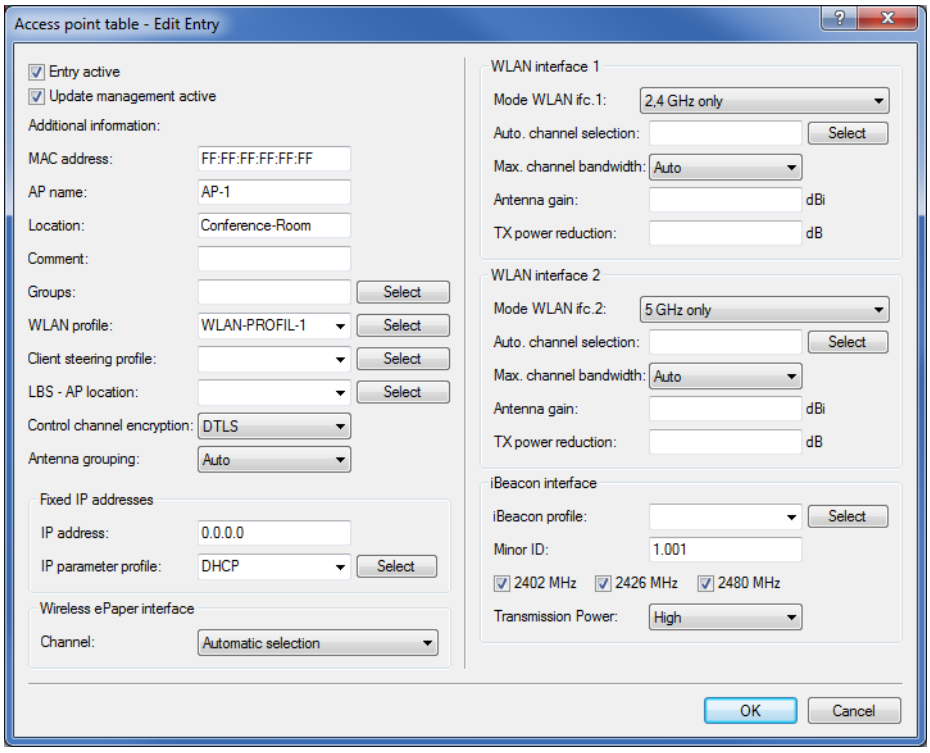
3. Create a WLAN profile that you can assign to the access points.
   The two logical WLAN networks and the set of physical parameters defined earlier are collected into this WLAN profile.

   › LANconfig: **WLAN-Controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN-Profiles**



4. Assign this WLAN profile to the access points managed by the controller.
   Do this by entering each access point with its MAC address into the access point table. Alternatively you can use the **Default** button to create a default profile, which applies to all access points.

   › LANconfig: **WLAN controller** > **AP configuration** > **Access point table**



Configuring the switch (LANCOM GS-2326P)

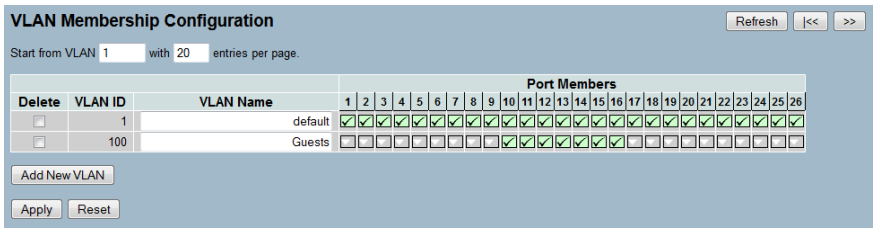
In this section we describe the configuration of the switch using the LANCOM GS-2326P as an example.

1. Under **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **VLAN-Membership**, create an additional VLAN group for the guest network.

   To differentiate between the VLANs in the switch, two groups are used. The internal network for the employees is mapped to the group `default`, and that for the guests is mapped to the group `guests`.

   › The VLAN group for the internal employees uses the default VLAN ID `1`. This VLAN ID used for internal administration applies on all ports and is operated untagged, i.e. all untagged incoming data packets are given the VLAN ID 1 for internal routing, and this is removed again from outgoing data packets (see also "PVID" in the next step).

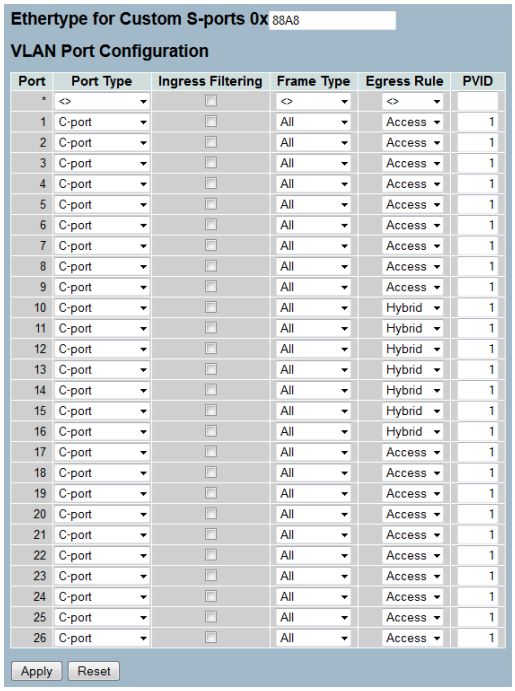
› The VLAN group for the guests uses the VLAN ID `100`, which you entered earlier when configuring the WLAN in the controller. This ID applies only to the ports which the WLAN controller and the access points are connected to (in this example: Port 10 to 16, green checkmarks for **Port members**). The switch does not remove tags from outgoing data packets. i.e. all tagged incoming packets with VLAN ID 100 retain this tag and are routed only to the ports that are members of the corresponding group.



2. Under **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **Ports** set the **Port Type** for all ports to **C-port**. See the documentation about your switch for details about this setting.
3. Configure the **Egress rule** for each port.

   › All ports except port 10 to 16 are given the **Access** rule. As a result, these ports forward only tagged packets and all others are dropped.

   › The ports 10 to 16 are given the rule **Hybrid**. As a result, these ports forward both untagged and tagged packets.



Ensure that the **PVID** (port VLAN ID) for each port is set to a value of `1`. The PVID is the VLAN ID that a port assigns to incoming data packets which do not already have a VLAN tag; Therefore, the PVID corresponds to the VLAN ID of the `default` group.

4. OPTIONAL: If you wish to allow access to the guest network via Ethernet, go to **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **Ports** and, for example, set the **PVID** to `100` for ports 17 to 20 and, under **Configuration** > **VLAN** > **VLAN-Membership**, assign these ports to the group `Guests`. All untagged incoming data packets arriving at these ports are given VLAN ID 100.

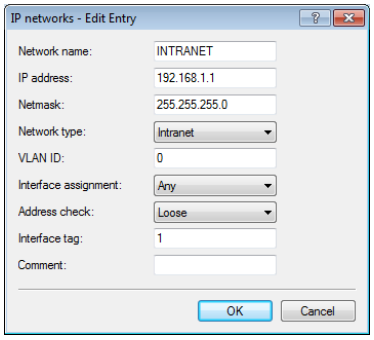
Note that these data packets can only leave the switch via the ports of the guest network.

Configuring the IP networks in the WLAN controller

To separate the data streams on layer 3, two different IP networks are employed (ARF – Advanced Routing and Forwarding).

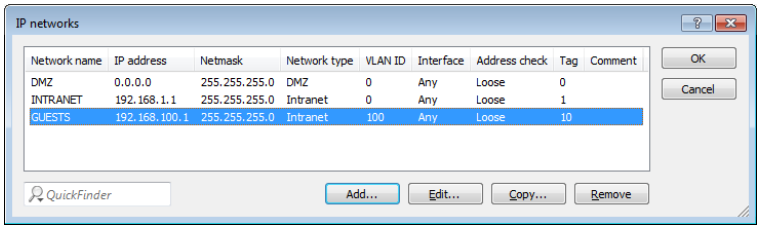
1. For the internal network, set the **INTRANET** to the address `192.168.1.1`.
   This IP network uses the **VLAN ID** `0`. This assigns all untagged data packets to this network (the VLAN module in the controller itself must be activated for this). The **interface tag** `1` is used for the subsequent break-out of data in the virtual router.

   › LANconfig: **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**



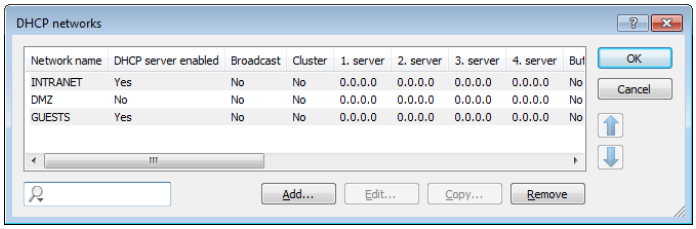
2. For guests, create a new IP network with the address `192.168.100.1`.
   This network uses the **VLAN ID** `100`. In this way, all data packets with this ID are assigned to the guest network. Here, too, the **interface tag** `10` is used later by the virtual router.

   › LANconfig: **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**

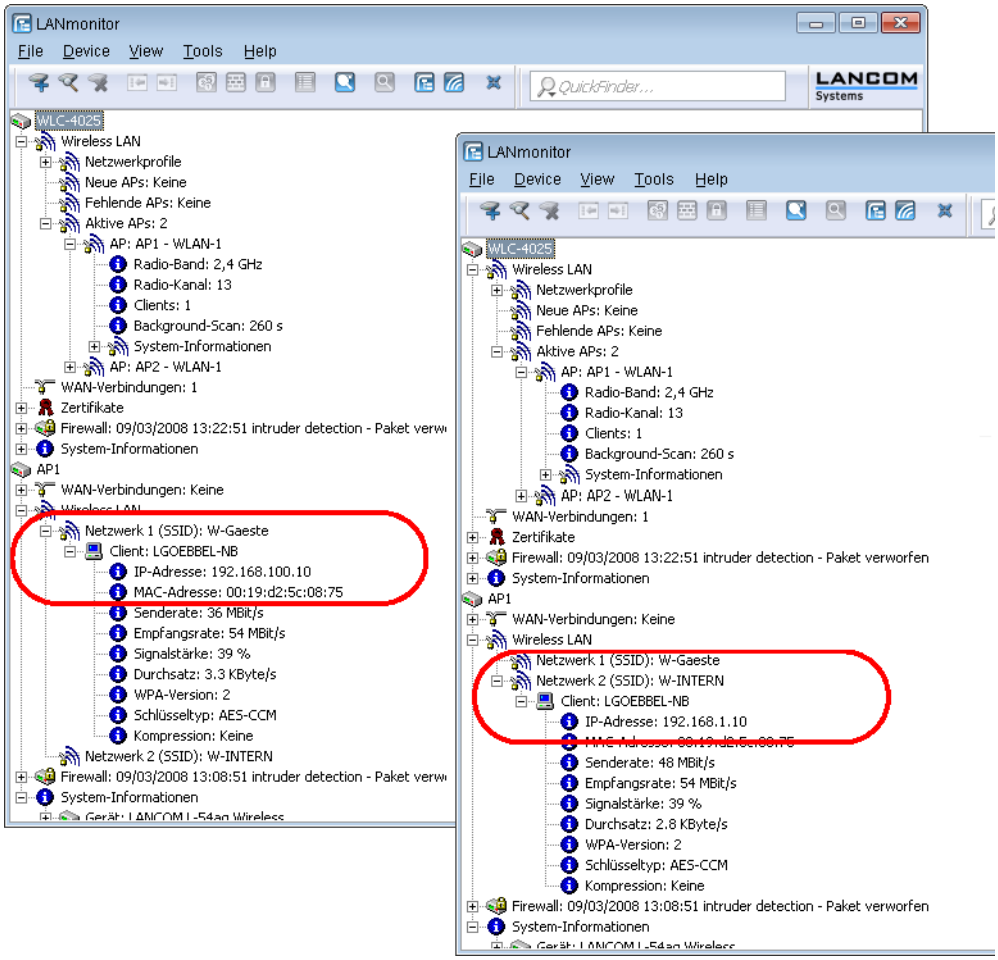


3. Enable the DHCP server for both IP networks.

   › LANconfig: **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**



With these settings, the WLAN clients of the internal employees and guests are assigned to the appropriate networks.

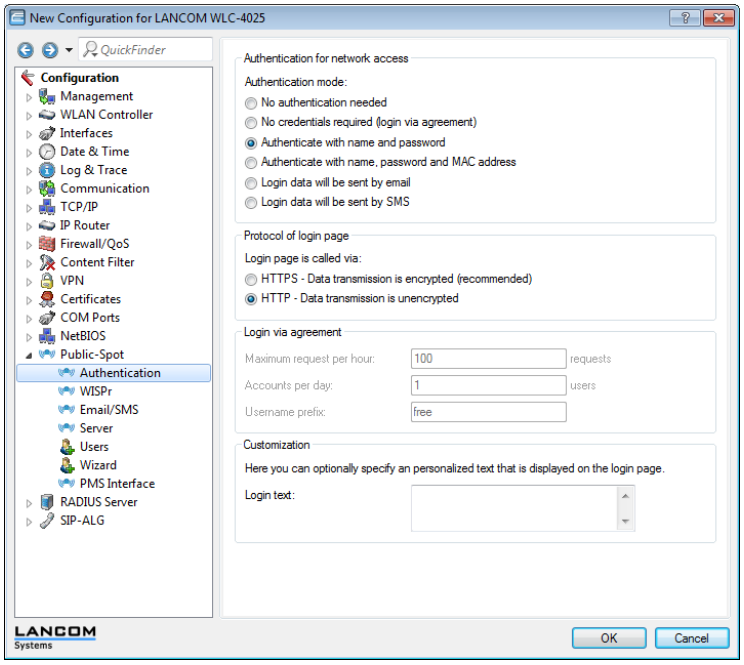


Configuring Public Spot access accounts

The Public Spot allows you to provide a strictly controlled point of access to your wireless LAN. Authentication is performed by requesting user information via a web interface. If necessary, you can can set a time limit for the access.

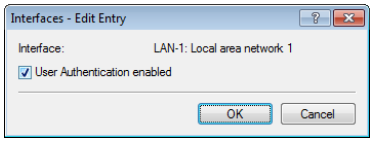
1. You should activate authentication for network access by name and password.

› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Authentication** > **Authentication for network access**



2. Activate user authentication for the controller's interface that is connected to the switch.

› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operation settings** > **Interfaces**

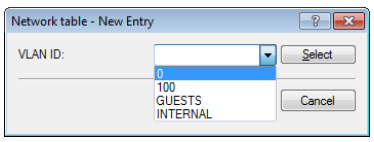


3. Restrict access to the Public Spot.

   You restrict use of the Public Spot to data packets from this virtual LAN by entering the VLAN ID of "100" for the guest network into VLAN table. Other data packets from other VLANs will be forwarded to the Public Spot without a login. Note that access to WEBconfig via the Public Spot interface is restricted to the authentication pages only (see *Limit configuration access*).

   If the interface is not restricted to the VLAN ID, the controller will no longer be reachable at the specified physical Ethernet port!

› LANconfig: **Public Spot** > **Server** > **VLAN table**



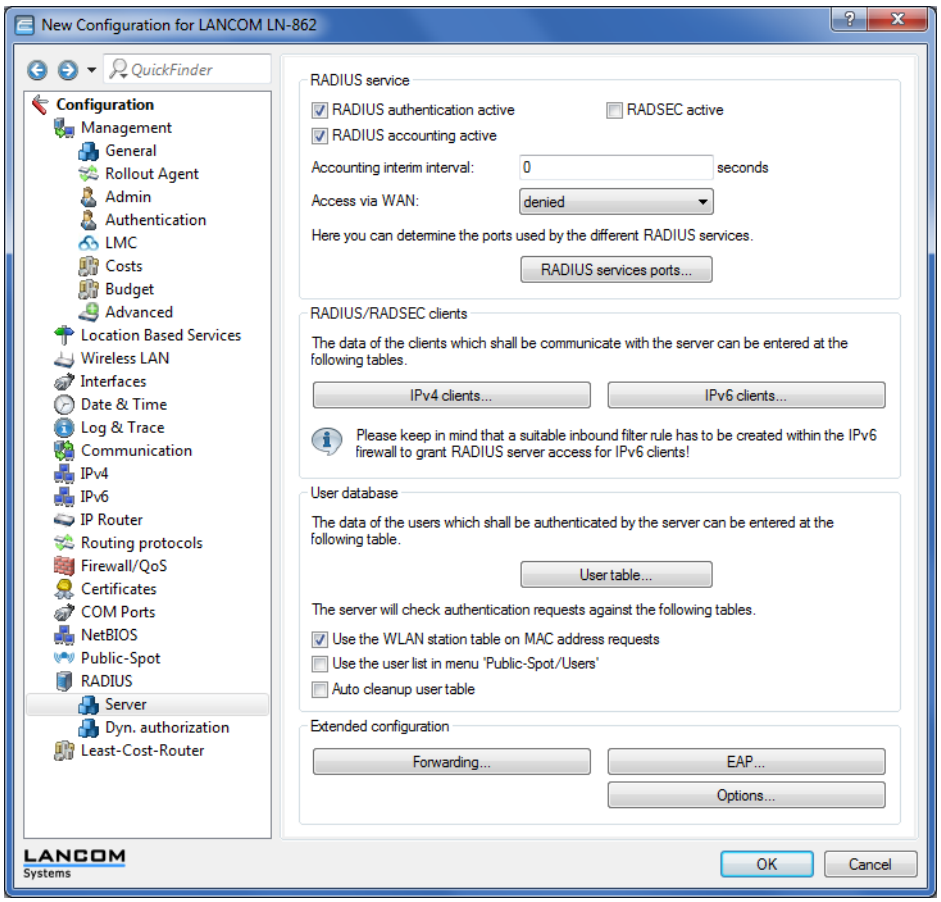
4. Enable the option to clean up the user table so that your device automatically deletes entries that are no longer needed.

› LANconfig: **RADIUS** > **Server** > **User table** > **Auto cleanup user table**

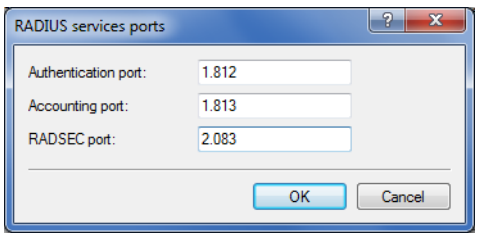
Configuring the internal RADIUS server for Public Spot operation

The Wizard stores the Public Spot access accounts in the user database of the internal RADIUS server. In order to use these Public Spot access accounts, the internal RADIUS server has been preconfigured with default values. You can inspect this setup in **LANconfig** as follows:

1. Navigate to **RADIUS** > **Server** > **RADIUS service**.
2. Ensure that checkmarks have been set for **RADIUS authentication active** and **RADIUS accounting active**.



3. Click the button **RADIUS services ports**.



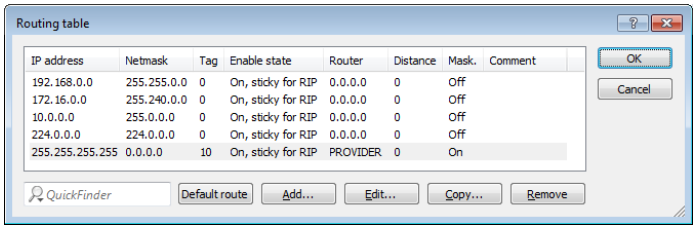
The default settings are available here for inspection.

Configuring Internet access for the guest network

1. In order to provide Internet access for guest network users, there is a wizard to set up access to a provider network.
2. Limit access to the provider network.
   In order for this access to be available to users of the guest network only, set the routing tag "10" for the corresponding route. This ensures that only data packets from the IP network "GUEST" with the interface tag "10" are transmitted

to the provider's network. The different routing tag values ensure that data cannot be routed between the guest network and the internal network.

› LANconfig: **IP router** > **Routing** > **Routing table**



3. Optional: If necessary, use **Device** > **Configuration Management** > **Upload certificate or file** in LANconfig to upload an HTML template and an image as a template to the device for output of the voucher.
The image can be a GIF, JPEG or PNG file of max. 64 KB in size.

14.4.2 Virtualization and guest access via WLAN controller without VLAN

Overlay network: Separating networks for access points without using VLAN

In many cases, networks in a shared physical infrastructure are separated by using VLANs. However, this method assumes that the switches operated in the network are VLAN-capable and that these are configured for VLAN operations. Consequently, the administrator has to rollout the VLAN configuration for the whole network.

WLCs enable you to separate the networks while minimizing the use of VLANs. The APs use a CAPWAP data tunnel to direct the payload from the WLAN clients straight to the WLC, which then assigns the data to the corresponding VLANs. In this situation, VLAN configuration is only required for the WLC and a single, central switch. All of the other switches in this example work without a VLAN configuration.

With this configuration, you reduce the VLAN to the core of the network structure (illustrated with a blue background). What's more, only 3 of the switch ports in use require a VLAN configuration.

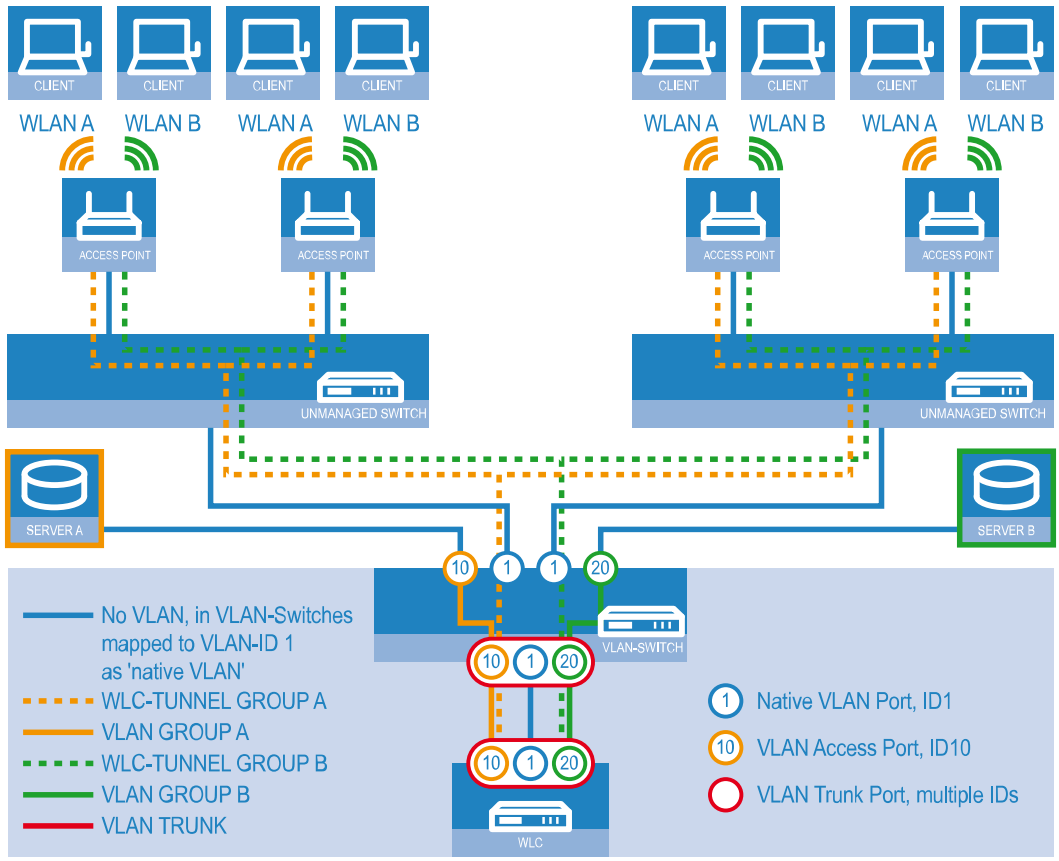


Figure 19: Example application: Overlay network

The diagram shows a sample application with the following components:

- The network consists of two segments, each with its own (not necessarily VLAN-capable) switch.
- Each segment contains several APs, each of which is connected to one of the switches.
- Each AP provides two SSIDs for the WLAN clients in two different user groups, shown in the diagram in green and orange.
- Each user group has access to its own dedicated server that is separated from other user group. The servers can only be accessed via the corresponding VLANs, i.e. through the access ports configured on the switch.
- A single WLC manages all of the APs in the network
- A central, VLAN-capable switch connects the switches in each segment, the servers for each group, and the WLC.

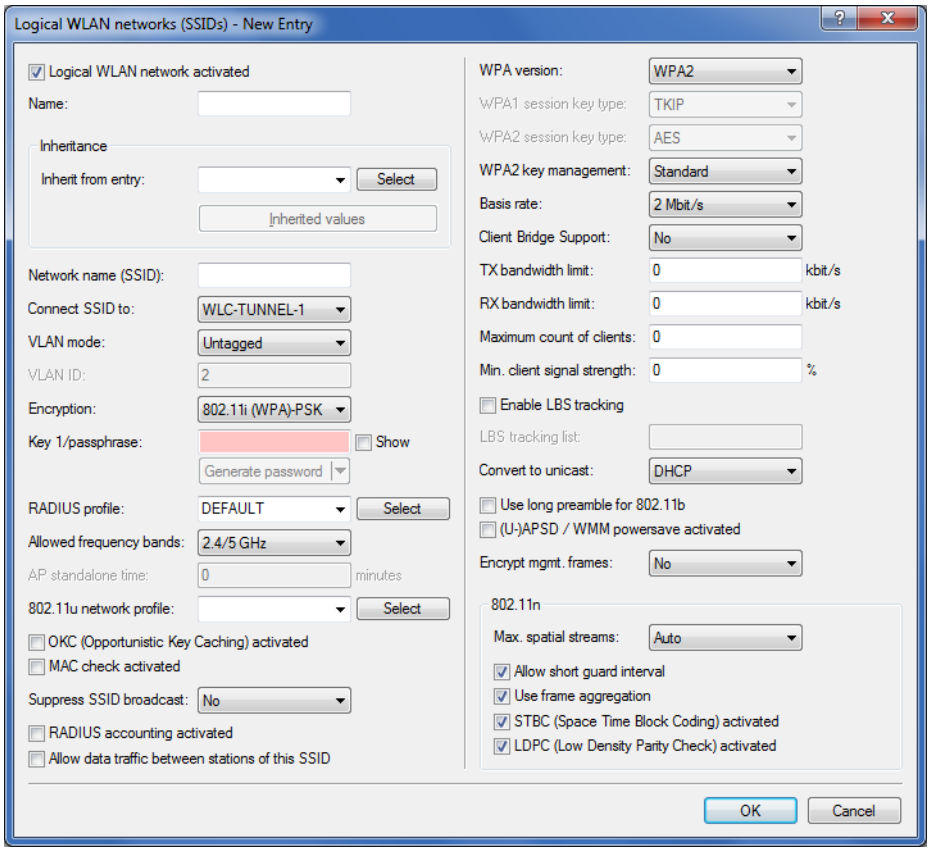
The aim of the configuration: A WLAN client that associates with an SSID is to have access to its "own" server, regardless of which AP is being used and regardless of the segment in which the client is located.

The following description assumes a working basic configuration of the WLC. The configuration of the VLAN switch is not part of this description.

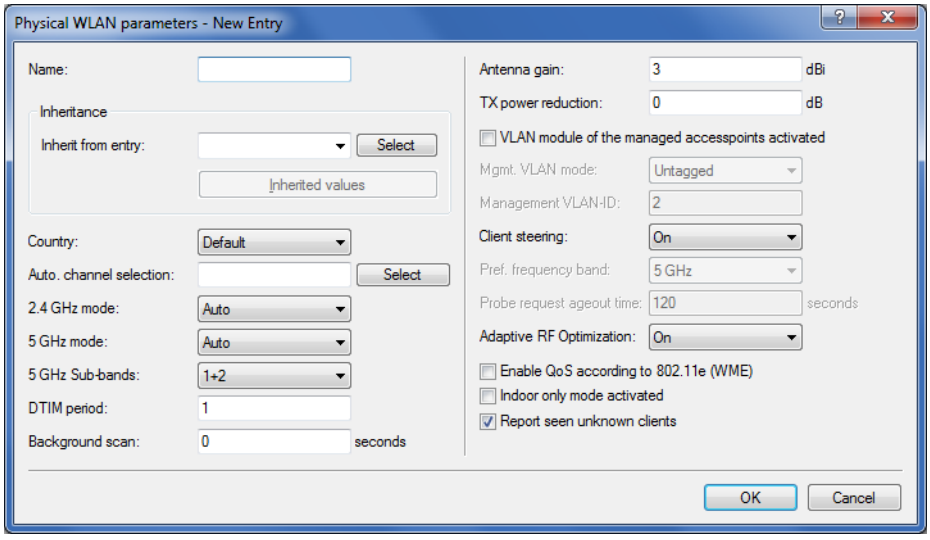
Configuring the WLAN settings

1. For each SSID, create an entry in the list of logical networks, each with a suitable name and the corresponding SSID. Connect the SSID to a WLC tunnel, for example the first SSID to "WLC-TUNNEL-1" and the second to "WLC-TUNNEL-2 '. Set the VLAN mode to 'tagged', set the VLAN ID '10' for the first logical network and the VLAN ID '20' for the

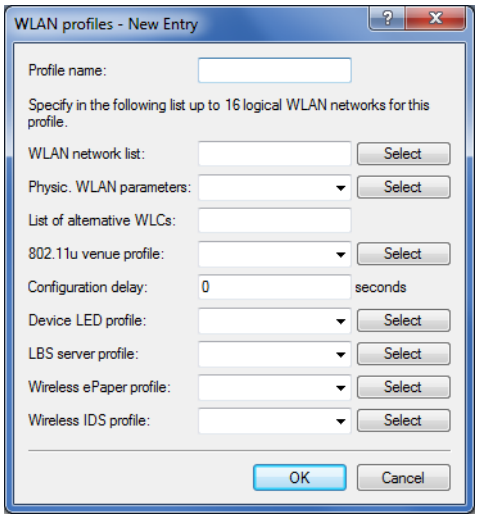
second logical network. In LANconfig you find these settings under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)**.



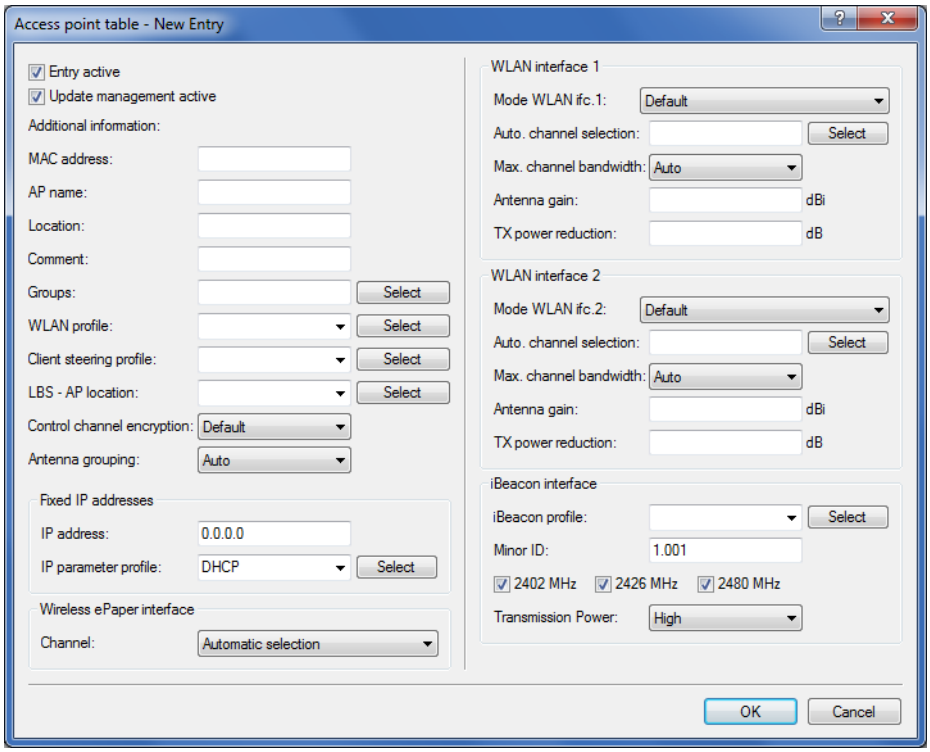
2. Create an entry in the list of physical WLAN parameters with the appropriate settings for your APs, such as the country 'Europe' with the channels 1, 6 and 11 in 802.11b/g/n and 802.11a/n in mixed mode. For this profile in the physical WLAN parameters, enable the option to turn on the VLAN module on the APs. Set the operating mode for the management VLAN in the APs to 'Untagged'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters**.



3. Create a WLAN profile and give it a suitable name. Then assign the logical WLAN networks and the physical WLAN parameters created previously to this WLAN profile. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**.

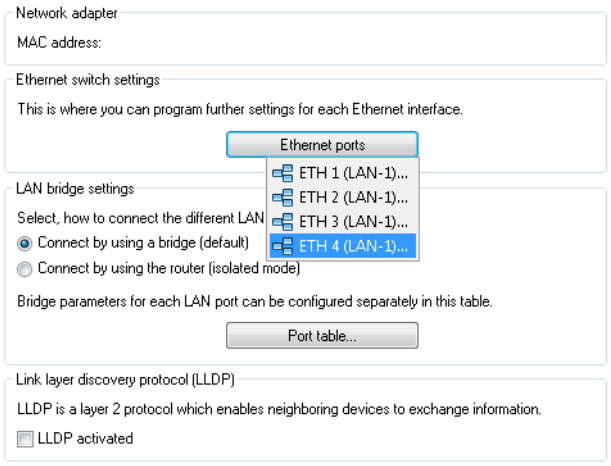


4. For each managed AP, create an entry in the AP table with a suitable name and the associated MAC address. Assign the previously created WLAN profile to this AP. In LANconfig you find these settings under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **AP config.** > **Access point table**.

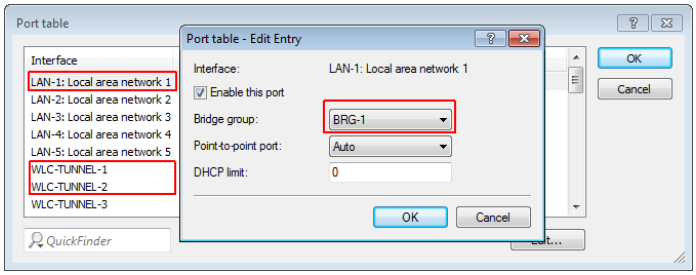


Configuring the interfaces on the WLC

5. Assign a separate logical LAN interface, e.g. 'LAN-1', to each physical Ethernet port. Make sure that the other Ethernet ports are not assigned to the same LAN interface. In LANconfig you find these settings under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Ethernet ports**.

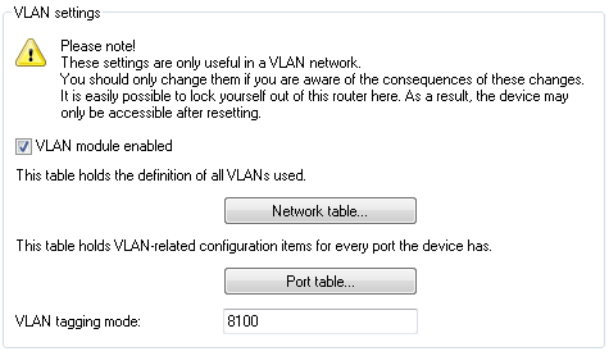


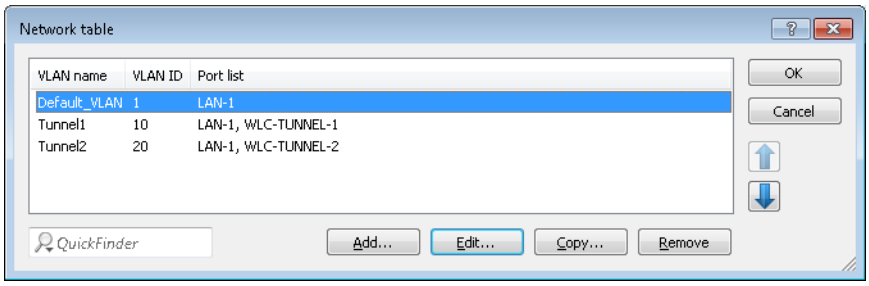
6. Assign the logical LAN interface 'LAN-1' and the WLC tunnels 'WLC-tunnel-1' and 'WLC-tunnel-2' to the bridge-group 'BRG-1'. Make sure that the other LAN ports are not assigned to the same bridge group. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**.



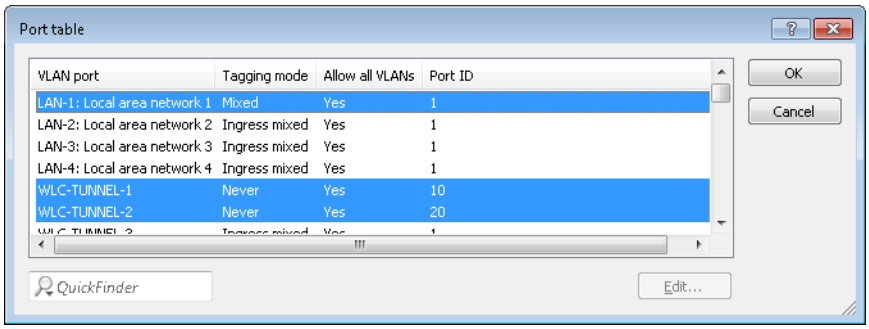
By default, the LAN interfaces and WLC tunnels do not belong to a bridge group. By assigning the LAN interface 'LAN-1' and the two WLC tunnels 'WLC-Tunnel-1' and 'WLC-Tunnel-2' to the bridge group 'BRG-1', the device transmits all data packets between LAN-1 and the WLC tunnels via the bridge.

7. Activate the VLAN module of the WLC under **Interfaces** > **VLAN** and, under **VLAN table**, assign the LAN port you selected above (LAN 1) and also the corresponding WLC tunnel to the desired VLAN.





8. Under **Interfaces** > **VLAN** > **Port table**, set the Tagging mode of the tunnel interface and the LAN interface, and set the corresponding port VLAN ID.



Depending on how the switch is configured, set the Tagging mode of the LAN interface to 'Mixed' or 'Always'.

In most cases the tunnel interfaces are operated with the mode 'Never', because packets here (from the WLAN) always arrive untagged and the WLC marks them with the port VLAN ID

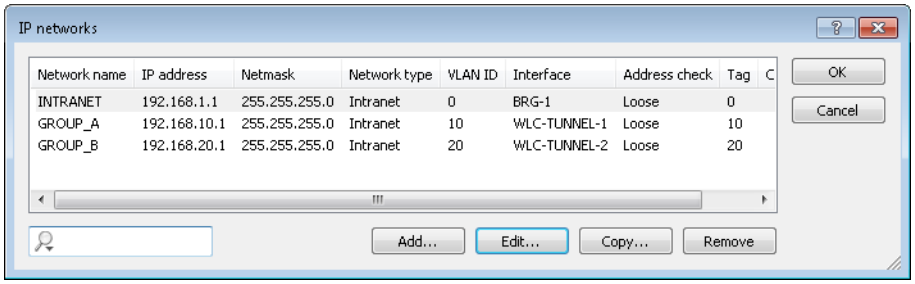
When you activate the VLAN module, please observe that the ARF networks configured on the WLC must be given a VLAN ID. In the VLAN configuration outlined above, you need to set the VLAN ID for the IP network to '1' in order for the WLC to reach the network without a VLAN tag.

A similar configuration is achieved by making the access point set a VLAN tag for packets that are to be sent via the tunnel, in which case the VLAN module of the WLC is not used.

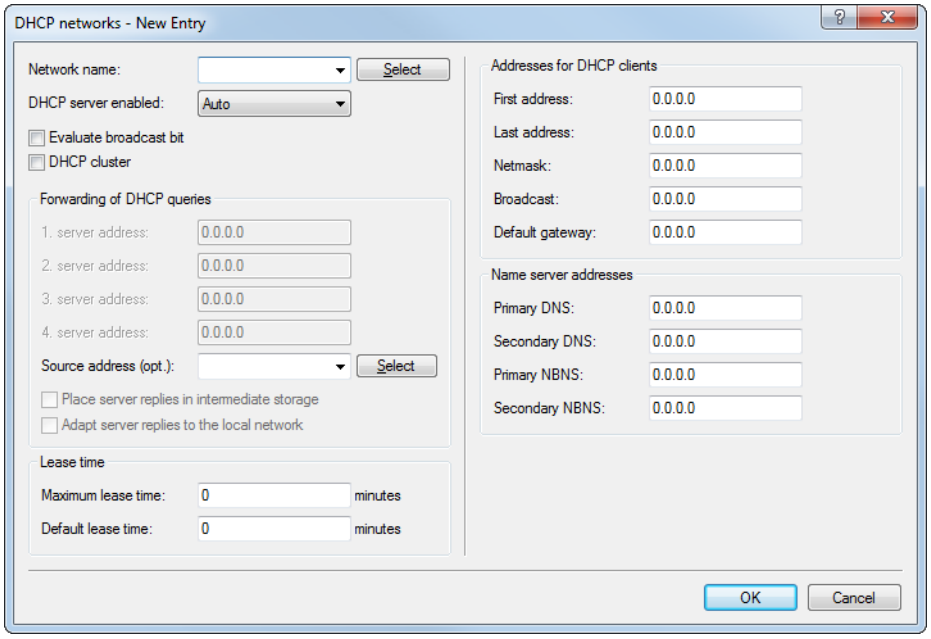
However, this bridging of the various WLC tunnels with one another causes broadcasts to be redirected into all of the tunnels; with a certain number of tunnels/SSIDs and APs, this can lead to load problems on the network and on the WLC. The VLAN module configuration presented here prevents this.

9. In addition you configure the IP settings for the networks that are separated on layer 2 under **IPv4** > **General** > **IP networks**.

To prevent the device from connecting these networks via layer 3, a separation must also be configured on layer 3, for example by using a port tag or by means of the firewall.



10. The WLC optionally acts as a DHCP server for the APs. To set this up, activate the DHCP server for the 'INTRANET'. In LANconfig you find these settings under **IPv4** > **DHCPv4** > **DHCP networks**.



WLAN controller with Public Spot

This scenario is based on the first scenario (overlay network) and enhances it to include specific settings for user authentication.

The configuration of a Public Spot can be greatly simplified if the payload data sent from the WLAN to the WLC is routed through a WLC tunnel. A Public Spot can, for example, provide guests with Internet access in parallel with, but separated from, an internal wireless LAN.

In this example, the employees of a company have access to a private WLAN (SSID), while the guests use a Public Spot to access the Internet. In all areas of the building, the APs provide two SSIDs, 'COMPANY' and 'GUESTS'.

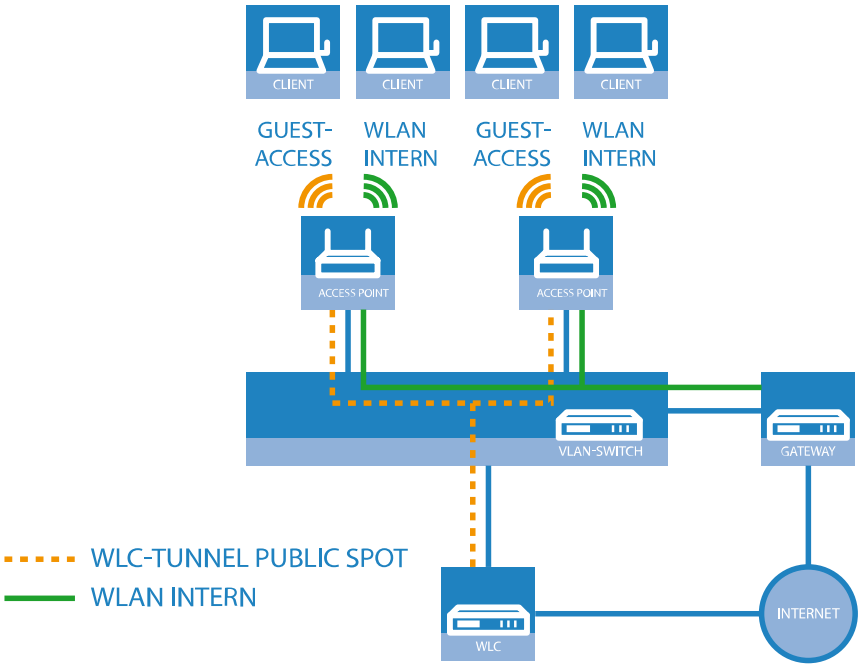
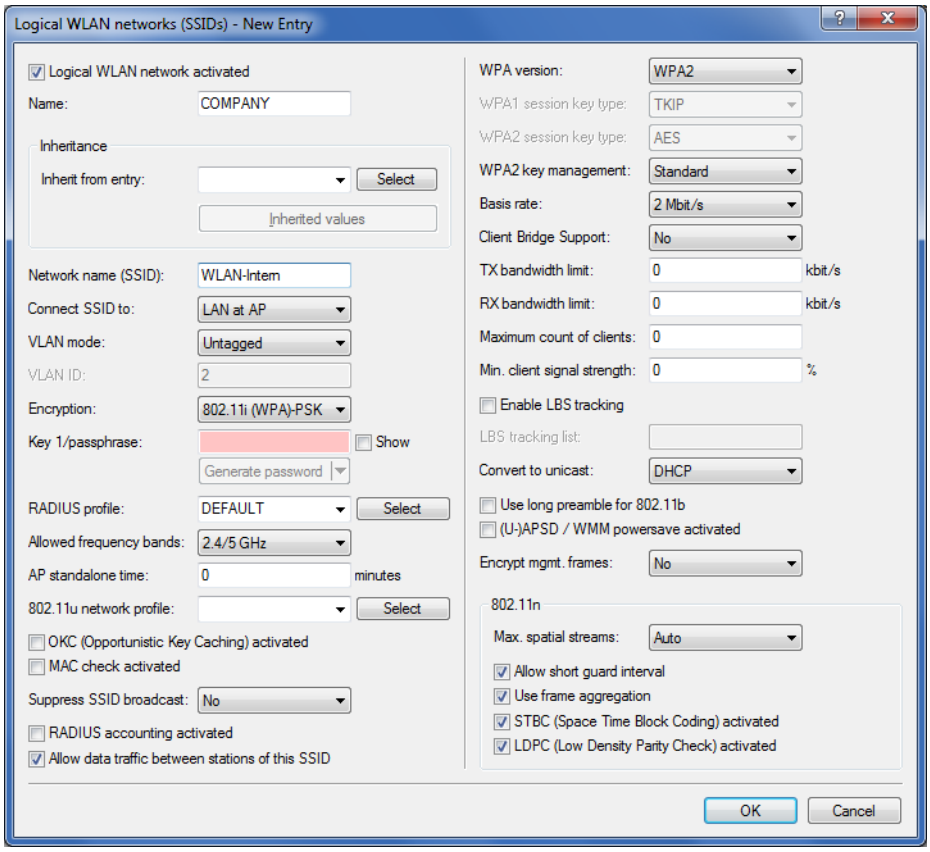


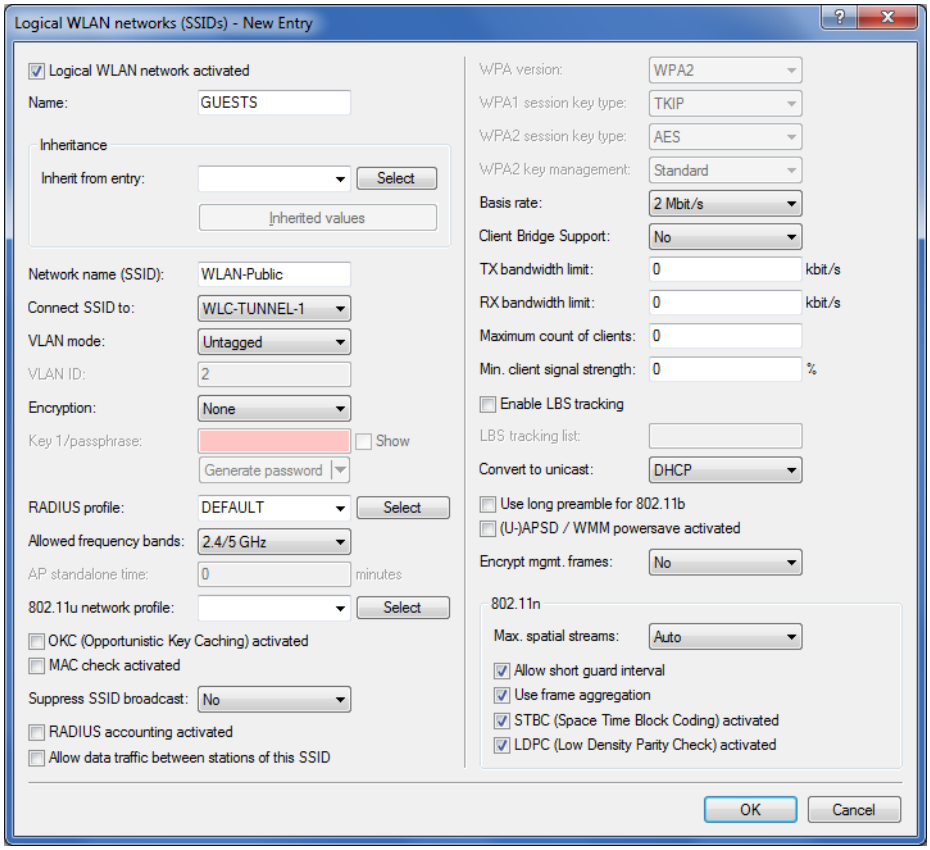
Figure 20: Example application: WLAN controller with Public Spot

The aim of the configuration: A WLAN client that associates with the internal SSID should have access to all internal resources and the Internet via the central gateway. The APs break-out the payload data from the internal clients locally and pass it on directly to the LAN. The guests' WLAN clients associate with the Public Spot. The APs send the payload data from the guest clients through a WLC tunnel directly to the WLC, which uses a separate WAN interface for Internet access.

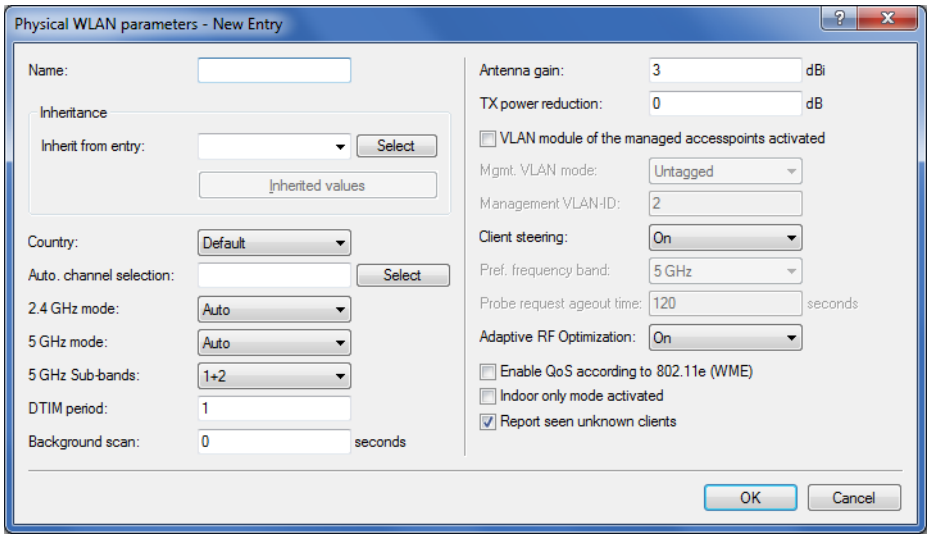
1. The internal WLAN and the guest WLAN each require an entry to be created in the list of logical networks, each with a suitable name and the corresponding SSID. Link the SSID for internal use with the 'LAN at AP', and the SSID for guests with (for example) 'WLC-TUNNEL-1'. Disable encryption for the guest network SSID so that the guests' WLAN

clients can associate with the Public Spot. You should also prevent inter-station traffic for this SSID. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Logical WLAN networks (SSIDs)**.

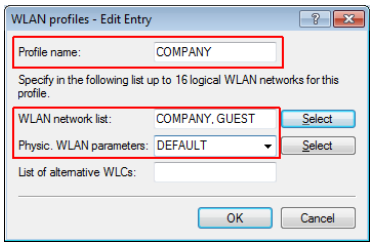




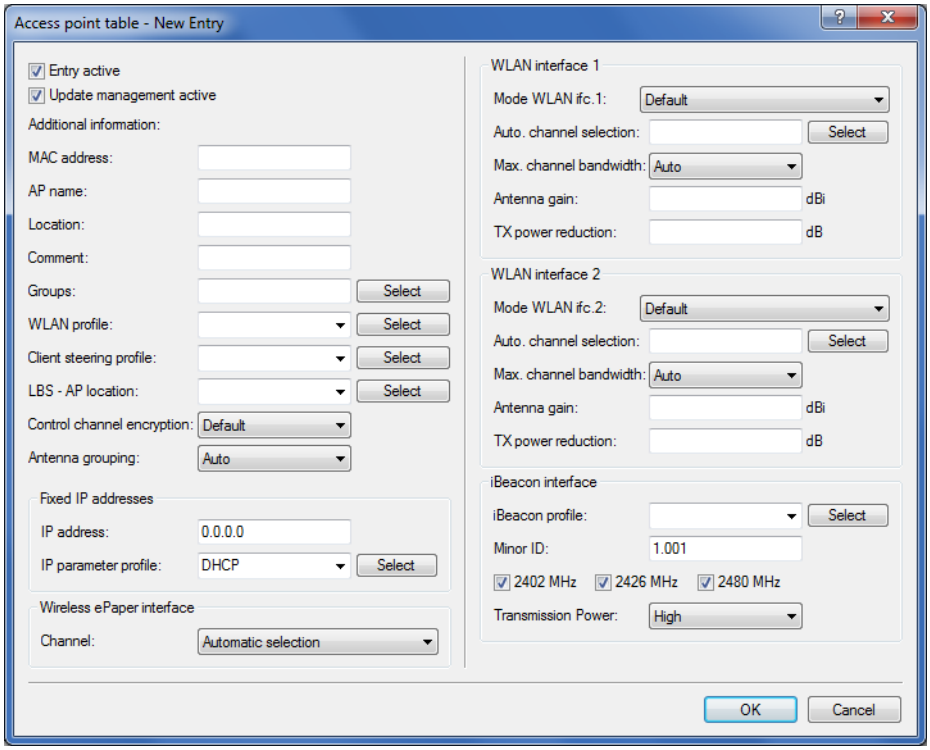
2. Create an entry in the list of physical WLAN parameters with the appropriate settings for your APs, such as the country 'Europe' with the channels 1, 6 and 11 in 802.11b/g/n and 802.11a/n in mixed mode. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **Physical WLAN parameters**.



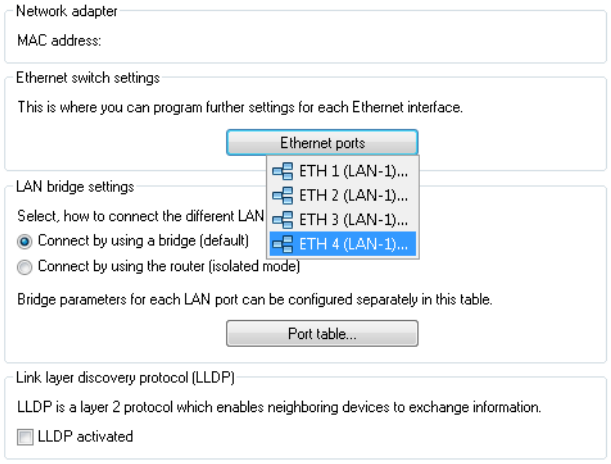
3. Create a WLAN profile and give it a suitable name. Then assign the logical WLAN networks and the physical WLAN parameters created previously to this WLAN profile. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **Profiles** > **WLAN profiles**.



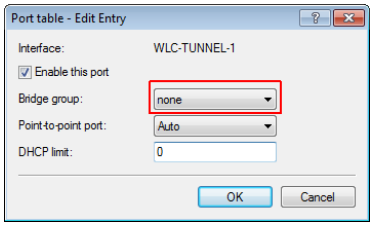
4. For each managed AP, create an entry in the AP table with a suitable name and the associated MAC address. Assign the previously created WLAN profile to this AP. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **WLAN Controller** > **AP config.** > **Access point table**.



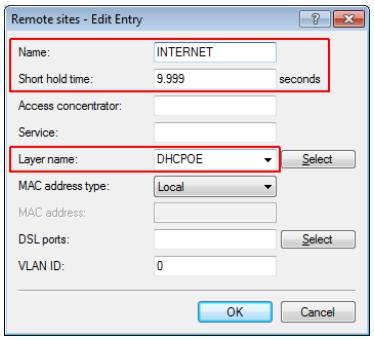
5. Assign a separate logical LAN interface, e.g. 'LAN-1', to each physical Ethernet port. Set the 4th Ethernet port to the logical LAN interface 'DSL-1'. The WLC then uses this LAN interface for the guest network Internet access. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Ethernet ports**.



6. Verify that the logical LAN interface 'WLC-tunnel-1' is not allocated to a bridge group. This ensures that the other LAN interfaces do not transmit any data to the Public Spot. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**.

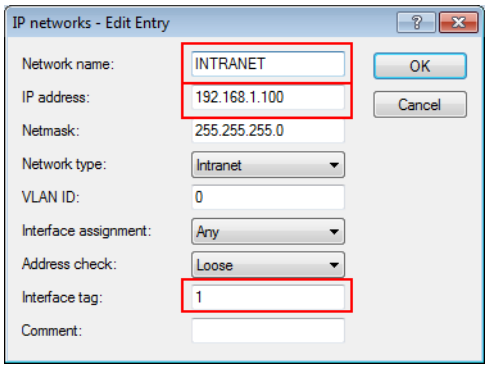


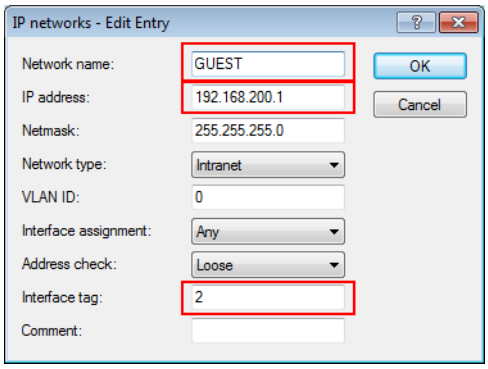
7. For the guest Internet access, create an entry in the list of DSL remote sites with the hold time '9999' and the pre-defined layer 'DHCPOE '. This example assumes that Internet access is provided by a router with DHCP server. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Communications** > **Remote sites** > **Remote sites**.



8. For internal users, create the IP network 'INTRANET' with (for example) the IP address '192.168.1.100' and the interface tag '1'. For the guest access, create the IP network 'GUEST-ACCESS' with (for example) the IP address of

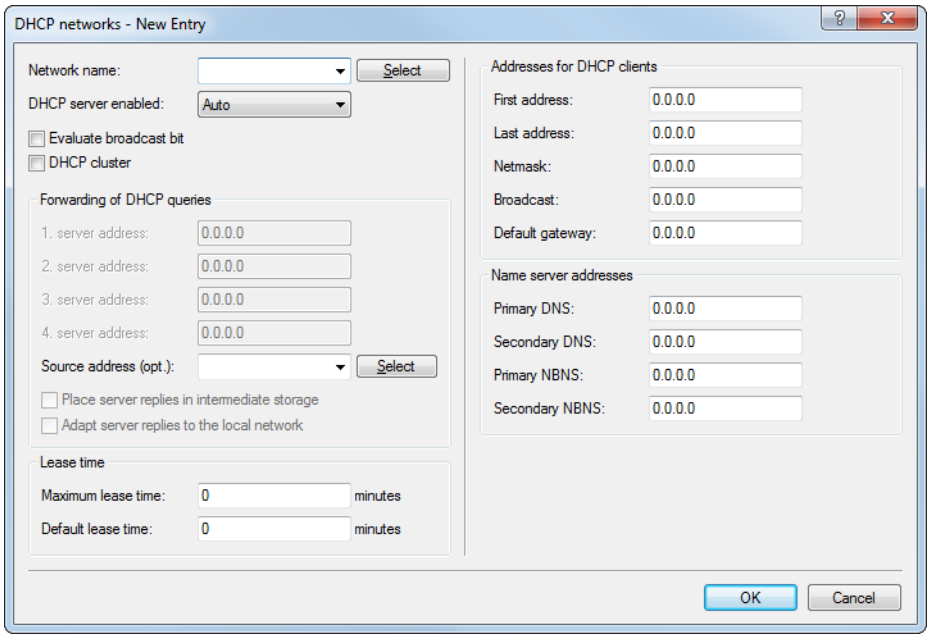
'192.168.200.1' and the interface tag '2'. The virtual router in the WLC uses the interface tags to separate the routes for the two networks. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **TCP/IP** > **General** > **IP networks**.



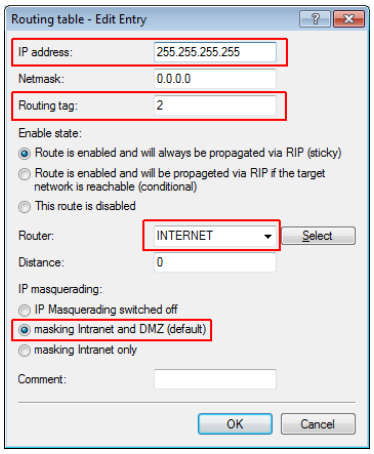


9. The WLC is able to act as a DHCP server for APs and the associated WLAN clients. To set this up, activate the DHCP server for the 'INTRANET' and the 'GUEST-ACCESS'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **TCP/IP** > **DHCP** > **DHCP networks**.

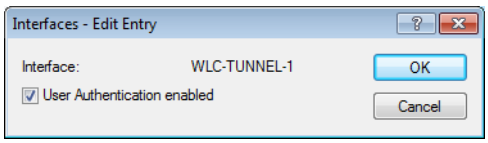
Activation of the DHCP server is obligatory for the guest network and optional for the internal network. There are other ways of realizing a DHCP server for the internal network.



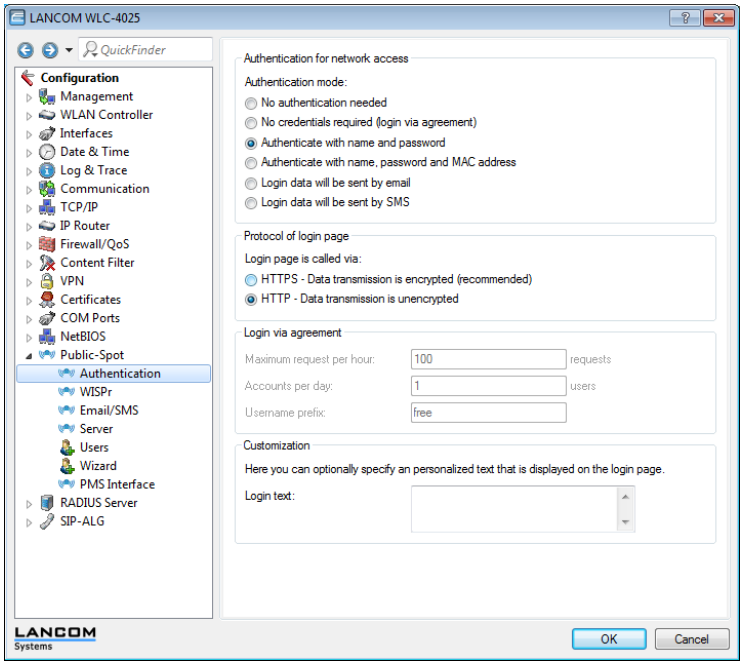
10. Create a new default route in the routing table to direct the data from the guest network to the Internet connection used by the WLC. Select the routing tag '2' and the router 'Internet'. Also activate the option 'Masking intranet and DMZ (default)'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **IP router** > **Routing** > **Routing table**.



11. Activate the Public Spot user authentication for the logical LAN interface 'WLC-Tunnel-1'. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Operational settings** > **Interfaces**.



12. The final step is to enable authentication via the Public Spot for the WLC. In LANconfig you find this setting under **Configuration** > **Public Spot** > **Authentication**.



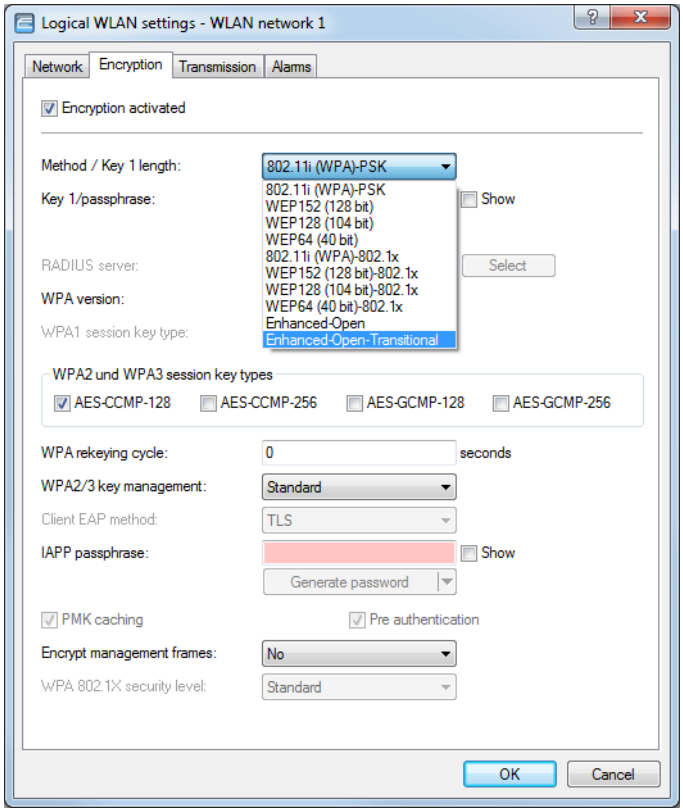
In addition to configuring the WLC, you must also configure the Public Spot either to use the internal user list or to use a RADIUS server, according to your needs.

14.4.3 Setting up a secure hotspot with Enhanced Open

Enhanced Open for the first time provides a way to offer a secure, yet easy-to-use hotspot.

Enhanced Open has been combined with the LANCOM Public Spot option.

The WLAN to be used for the hotspot is set up in the usual way with the exception that the encryption method is set to **Enhanced Open Transitional**:



Not only is entering a key not required, it is not even possible: A client enabled for Enhanced Open establishes an encrypted connection to the access point without any key having to be entered. To the user, it is just like using an unencrypted, open WLAN: There is no need to enter any previously communicated key as with WPA2-PSK.

The Transitional mode allows an SSID to be used concurrently by clients that support Enhanced Open as well as by clients that do not yet support Enhanced Open. For the latter clients, no encryption is used at all and the SSID works like an open, unencrypted SSID. Once Enhanced Open has become more widespread, you can switch from Transitional mode to regular Enhanced Open mode.

After this, you can proceed as usual with the configuration of the Public Spot module. Since the Public Spot module is independent of the encryption settings of the WLAN interfaces, all of the functions of the Public Spot module can be used without restriction in conjunction with Enhanced Open.

In summary, Enhanced Open is ideal for hotspot operation as it provides a higher level of security than the open hotspots used in the past. The optional Transitional mode ensures that even clients that do not yet support Enhanced Open can be connected in a way that is transparent to the user.

14.4.4 Setting up an external RADIUS server for user administration

Some applications user data is not stored on the device, but on an external, centralized RADIUS server. In this case, the Public Spot must communicate with the external RADIUS server to check the user data.

Please note that specific functions (such as the Public Spot wizards in WEBconfig) are not available to you if you use an external RADIUS server for user administration!

The following instructions assume that you know the IP address of a functional RADIUS server in the network.

The following configuration steps are used to set up a Public Spot that will be used with an external RADIUS server:

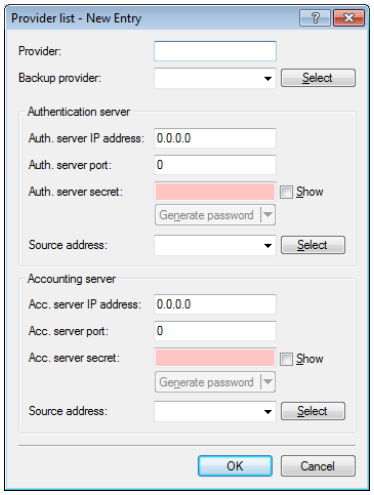
1. Follow the steps in the section *Manual Installation*.

   Among other things, the exact time on the device is necessary for the proper control of time-limited access.

   If authentication with an additional check of the physical address (MAC address) is enabled, the Public Spot transmits the MAC address of the end device to the RADIUS server. In this manner the Public Spot does not see whether the MAC address was actually checked or not. For MAC address checks to work without problem, the RADIUS server must be configured accordingly.

2. Enter the settings for the RADIUS server.

   When configuring a Public Spot, user registration data can be forwarded to one or more RADIUS servers. You configure these servers in LANconfig under **Public Spot** > **Users** > **Users and RADIUS servers** > **RADIUS server**. The registration data that individual RADIUS servers require from the clients is not important to the device that provides the Public Spot, since this data is transparently passed on to the RADIUS server.



   IP addresses specified here must be static. The Public Spot must be able to contact the specified destination addresses. For IP addresses outside of your own network, a router that has contact to the destination network must be specified as a gateway in the DHCP settings for the Public Spot. You have to define this gateway as the default route in the routing table.

   In order for the RADIUS server to record the connection data, the information on the accounting server must be specified in full. As an alternative to using a RADIUS accounting server, the connection information from the Public Spot can also be output by the SYSLOG function.

3. That's it!

   Your Public Spot is now ready for operation. All users with a valid account on the RADIUS server can use the Web interface to login to the Public Spot.

14.4.5 Internal and external RADIUS servers combined

Some companies use an external RADIUS server to authenticate users with IEEE801.1x. For applications with a WLAN controller and multiple access points, the access points initially address the WLAN controller as their RADIUS server. You define how the RADIUS requests are forwarded to the external RADIUS server on the WLAN controller.

The settings described below are only necessary if you are operating an external RADIUS server on your device in addition to the Public Spot in the external RADIUS server.

A Public Spot providing guest-access accounts requires the following settings:

- Authentication requests from internal employees are to be forwarded to an external RADIUS server.
- The authentication requests for Public Spot access accounts are to be handled by the internal RADIUS server.

Realm-tagging for RADIUS forwarding

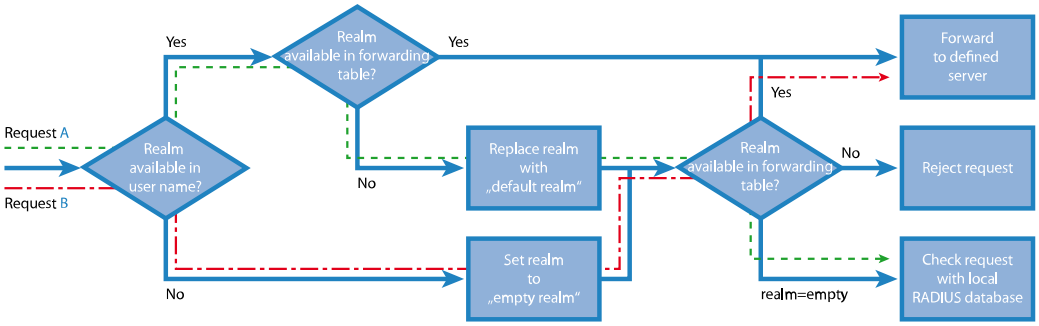
Authentication requests from the two user groups are to be handled separately. The WLAN controller uses what are known as "realms" to differentiate between these two groups. The purpose of realms is to address domains within which user accounts are valid. The WLAN controller can transmit the realms with authentication requests to the RADIUS server. Alternatively, the RADIUS server can change the realms in the user names for the purpose of RADIUS forwarding:

- The value defined for "Standard realm" replaces an existing realm of an incoming request if no forwarding is defined for that existing realm.
- The value defined under "Empty realm" is **only** used by the RADIUS server if the incoming user name **still does not** have a realm.

An entry in the forwarding table causes all authentication requests with a certain realm to be forwarded to a RADIUS server. If no matching entry exists in the forwarding table, the request is refused.

If the WLAN controller checks the realm and finds that it is empty, it **always** checks the authentication request with the internal RADIUS database.

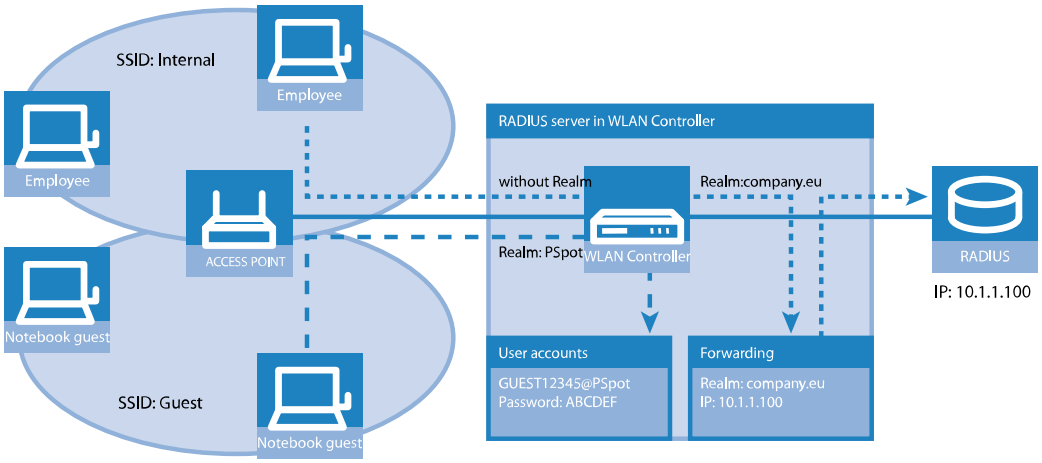
The following flow diagram illustrates the method used by the RADIUS server to process realms:



Using different realm tags allows different RADIUS servers to be targeted with requests. The way in which the device's RADIUS server makes decisions for the two requests is shown in the diagram:

1. Because the user names for guest access accounts are generated automatically, they are suffixed with an appropriate realm, such as "PSpot". Because the forwarding table does not contain this entry and the standard realm is empty, the WLAN controller forwards all authentication requests with this realm to the internal RADIUS server.
2. To limit the amount of work required for the configuration, internal users are listed without a realm. The RADIUS server in the device can automatically replace an empty realm with another realm in order to identify internal users. In this example, the empty realm is replaced by the domain of the company "company.eu". The information specified

in the forwarding table allows all authentication requests with this realm to be forwarded to the external RADIUS server.

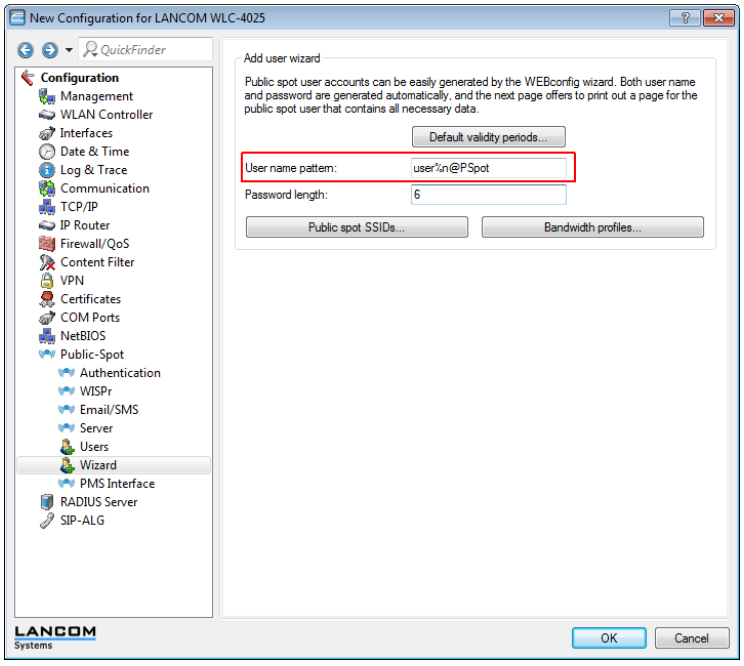


Configuring RADIUS forwarding

The following configuration steps allow you to specify the different manners in which internal users and guests are processed.

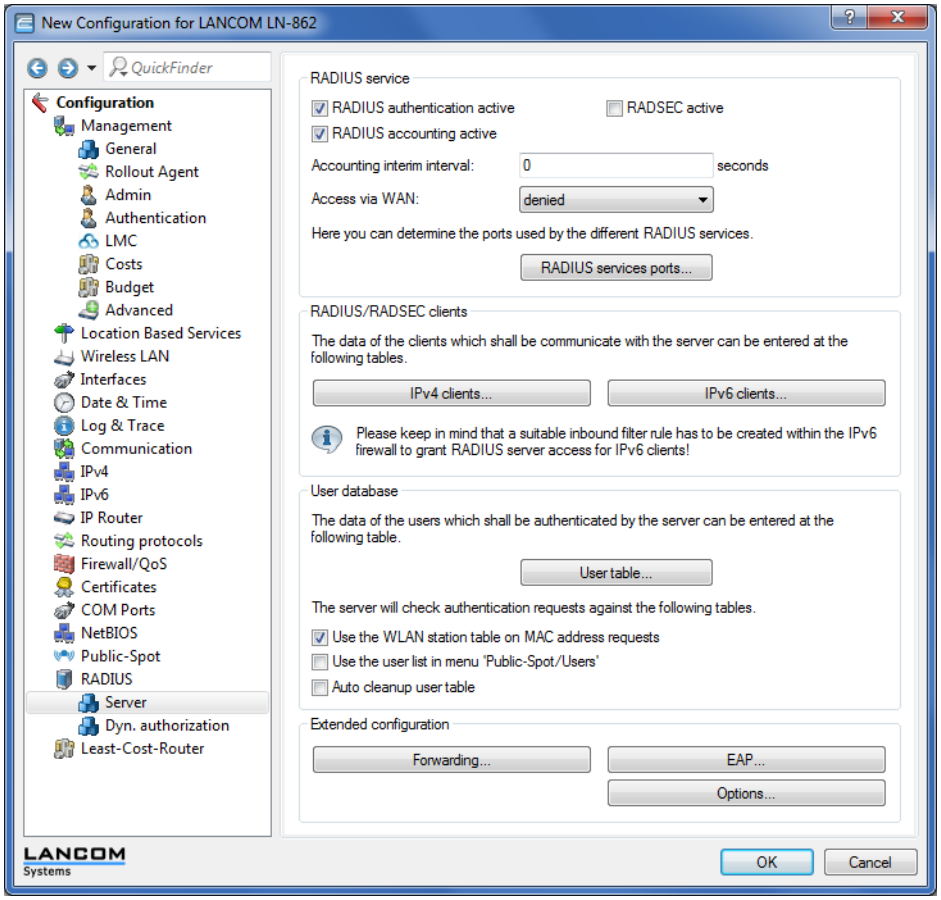
1. In the Public Spot, adapt the pattern of user names such that a unique realm can be suffixed.
   For example, if the pattern is "user%n@PSpot", the Public Spot generates usernames with the format "user12345@PSpot".

   > **LANconfig: Public-Spot** > **Wizard** > **Add user wizard**



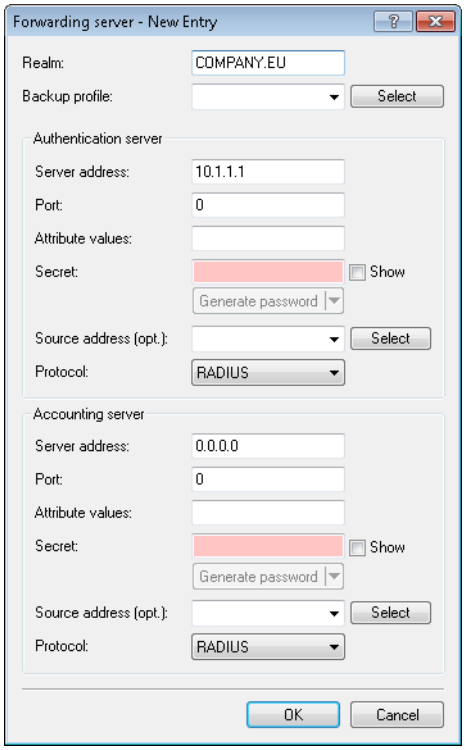
2. In the WLAN controller's RADIUS server, define an "empty realm" (e.g., "COMPANY.EU").
   This realm is attached to all user names which request authentication from the WLAN controller and which do not already have a realm. In this application, the internal users have no realm defined. In order to prevent the WLAN controller's RADIUS server from attaching a realm, you must leave the "Default realm" field blank.

> **LANconfig: RADIUS > Server > Extended configuration > Forwarding > RADIUS forwarding > Forwarding server**



3. In order for the WLAN controller to forward authentication requests from internal users to the external RADIUS server, suitable entries must be made in the forwarding settings.

All incoming RADIUS requests which have the realm "COMPANY.EU" will be forwarded to the specified IP address.



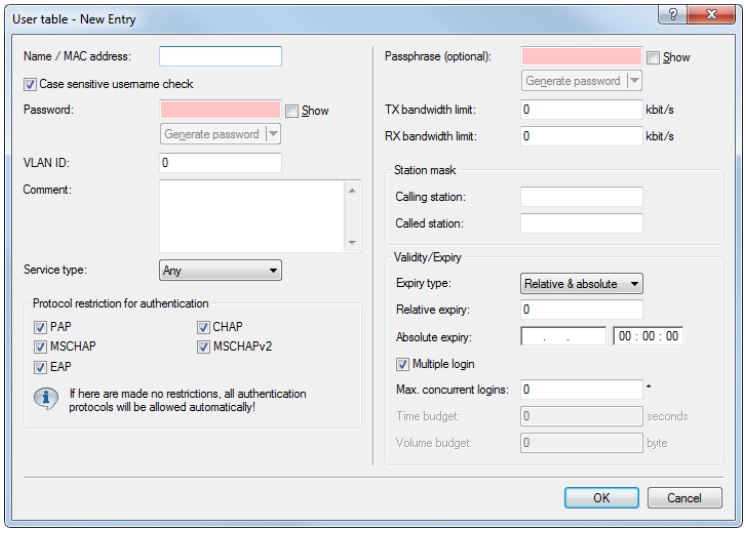
4. Authentication requests from Public Spot users have the realm "@PSpot" and are received by the WLAN Controller. With no forwarding defined for this realm, the usernames are automatically checked with the internal RADIUS database. Because the Public Spot access accounts created with the Wizard are stored in this database, these requests can be authenticated as required.

14.4.6 Checking WLAN clients with RADIUS (MAC filter)

To use RADIUS to only authenticate specific WLAN clients and grant them WLAN access based on their MAC address, an external RADIUS server can be used, as can the internal RADIUS user database of the WLAN controller.

Enter the MAC addresses in the RADIUS database using LANconfig, and enable all authentication methods. For **Name/MAC address** and **Password** select the corresponding MAC address in the format "AABBCC-DDEEFF".

> LANconfig: **RADIUS** > **server** > **User database** > **User table**



14.4.7 Setting up an external SYSLOG server

Depending on the use case, storage of the usage data is required for the operation of a Public Spot. This data can be stored to a SYSLOG server, for example. Some SYSLOG servers are available as free software.

To save user data from a Public Spot by means of SYSLOG, the external SYSLOG server has to be configured in the respective Public Spot. Once this is done, messages are sent for logging to the SYSLOG server whenever Public Spot user accounts are created or deleted, and at the beginning and end of Public Spot sessions. The message issued at the end of a session—with the source "Login" and the priority "Information"—also includes information on the transferred data volumes and the IP address used.

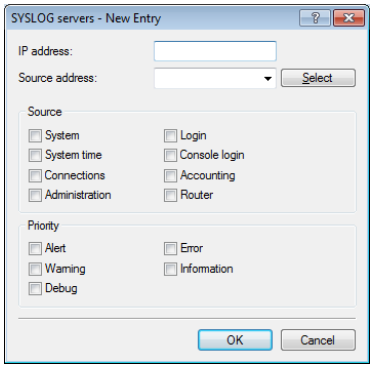
Further information on the configuration of SYSLOG is available in the section *The SYSLOG module*. You can find legal information about this topic in the LANCOM techpaper "Public Spot" which is available at *www.lancom-systems.com*.

Configuring an external SYSLOG server

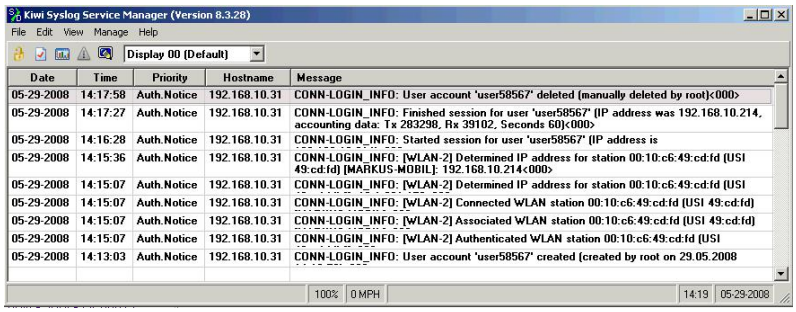
Your device is capable of logging the creation and deletion of Public Spot users, as well as their login and logout activities. You can also transfer this internally stored information to an external SYSLOG server. The following steps show you how you can set up logging with a program installed on an external SYSLOG server (in this example, "Kiwi").

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for your device.
2. Change to the dialog **Log & Trace** > **General** and open the table **SYSLOG servers**.

3. Add a new entry. Specify the **IP address** of the computer where the SYSLOG client is installed (e.g., `192.168.10.237`), and enter the **Source** (`Login`, `Accounting`) and the **Priority** (`Information`).



4. Close the dialog and store the configuration on your device.
5. Start the analysis program on your SYSLOG server (e.g., "Kiwi"). As soon as the program has started, it logs the creation and deletion of Public Spot accounts and also the user logins and logouts.



14.5 XML interface

In order to be able to cover a wide range of Public Spot scenarios, the default authentication method of name and password is not sufficient by itself. Access and accounting models based on social media, credit cards and other methods often require additional access data, which the Public Spot in this form would be unable to manage.

The implemented XML interface connects the Public Spot and an external gateway. It directs the user data only to the gateway that handles the authentication and accounting, and it only sends information about the duration and limits of the user access to the Public Spot.

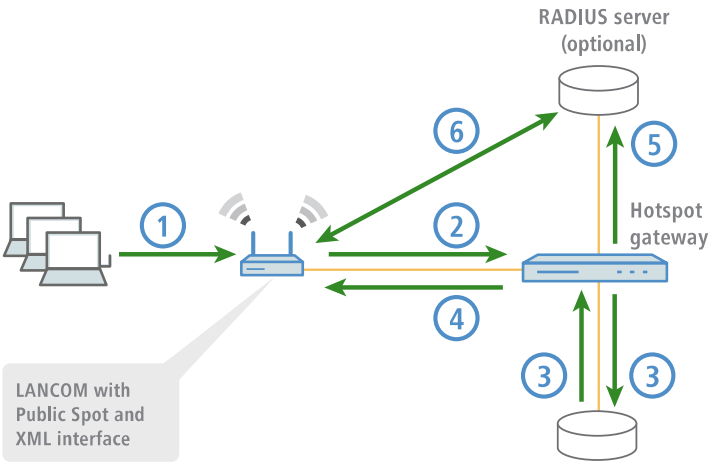
In this case, the Public Spot only performs the following tasks:

- Forward the user requests
- Restrict unauthorized access attempts
- Accept gateway commands to start and stop a session
- Accounting for sessions, if applicable

Since it is not realistic to implement all existing, and at times very specific scenarios with the associated gateway commands on the Public Spot, the XML interface was designed to be flexible and multi-purpose.

14.5.1 Feature

The communication between the XML interface and external gateway is processed as follows:



1. The user connects to the Public Spot's WLAN and sends an HTTP request to the Public Spot.
2. The Public Spot forwards the login procedure's HTTP request to the external hotspot gateway. The external hotspot gateway is located either in a freely accessible network provided by the Public Spot, or its address is included in the list of free hosts.

   The Public Spot forwards the MAC address of the requesting Public Spot client to the external gateway. To implement this, navigate to **Public-Spot-Module** > **Page-Table**, set the **Type** to "Redirect" and suffix the **URL** with the parameter `?myvar=%m`.

   Example: `http://192.168.1.1/?myvar=%m`

   In this case, `myvar` is a freely selectable variable. The variable `%m` is vital here, as the Public Spot replaces this with the client's MAC address when forwarding the request.

Table 35: Variables

Variable	Meaning
%s	SSID name
%v	Source VLAN
%i	Interface (applies to LAN, WLAN, WLC-tunnel)
%t	Routing tag
%m	MAC address of the client
%c	MAC address of the Public Spot gateway
%r	Remote IP (client)
%p	Local IP (Public Spot gateway)
%o	Original URL called by the client
%n	Device name of the Public Spot gateway
%e	Serial number of the Public Spot gateway
%l	Host name of the Public Spot gateway
%0-9	Inserts a single number between 0 and 9
%%	Inserts a single percent character

3. The hotspot gateway checks the user's credentials and, if applicable, it can contact further systems to charging to credit card, for example.
4. The hotspot gateway sends an XML file with the user data to the Public Spot's XML interface. The external hotspot gateway contacts the device with the Public Spot XML interface using the URL `http://<Device-URL>/xmlauth`.

   The Public Spot's XML interface analyses this file and initiates the corresponding actions. In the case of a login request, the XML interface inserts the user and the corresponding MAC address into the list of logged-in Public Spot users. In the case of a logout request, the XML interface removes the user from this list again. At the same time, the XML interface confirms the request by sending a corresponding XML file to the hotspot gateway.

   In order for the Public Spot to be able to process the instructions in the XML file, a special administrator must be set up on the device who has the function right "Public-Spot -XML-interface". This hotspot gateway logs in to the Public Spot with this admin account.

   While the user is logged in to the Public Spot, the XML interface and hotspot gateway can exchange status information about the current session in the form of XML files.

   If the user has exhausted his online quota, the hotspot gateway will send a stop command to the XML interface, and then the Public Spot locks further access for that user. The XML interface also confirms that the login is blocked by sending the corresponding XML file to the hotspot gateway.
5. If the additional use of a RADIUS server is enabled, the hotspot gateway authenticates a user at a RADIUS server.
6. The Public Spot sends relevant data to the RADIUS server throughout the session, for example to facilitate the accounting of the Public Spot usage. By default, the Public Spot uses its internal RADIUS server for this. If necessary, you can configure the device running the Public Spot to use an external RADIUS server.

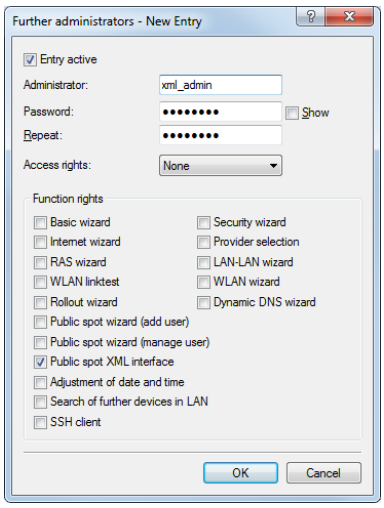
Communications between the Public Spot and a hotspot gateway with the use of XML is not standardized. Configure the hotspot gateway according to the instructions in the *Commands* section in order for the Public Spot and hotspot gateway exchange the XML messages in the required form. XML messages are exchanged invisibly without a graphical user interface. You can use tools such as *cURL* to test the exchange of messages.

14.5.2 Setting up the XML interface

The following section describes how to set up the XML interface.

1. Using **Management** > **Admin** > **Further administrators** you create a new administrator with the function right **Public Spot XML interface**.

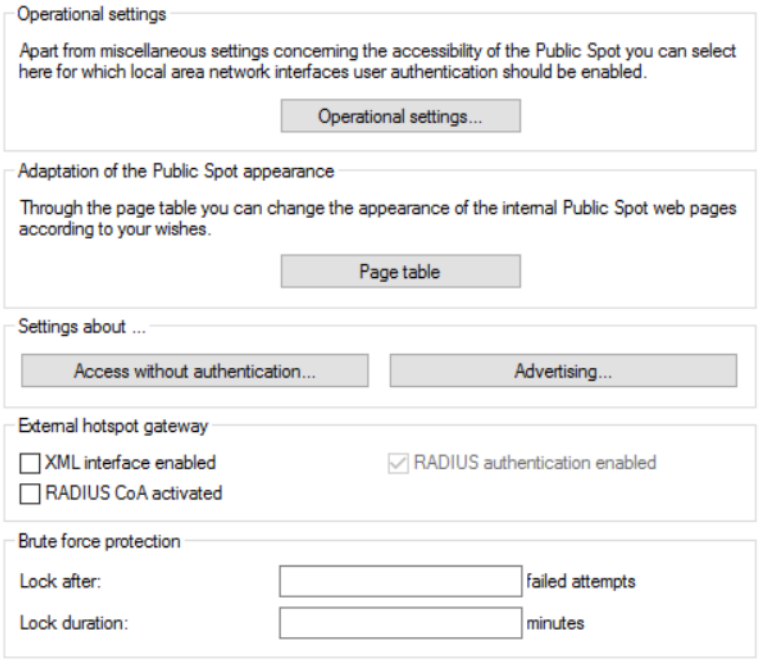
   This is the administrator account that the (external) gateway uses to send its XML requests to the Public Spot XML interface.



The new administrator should not have any further Public Spot function rights, since they represent a potential security risk in combination with the XML interface (e.g., if the communication between XML sender and device is unencrypted).

2. You enable the XML interface in **Public Spot** > **Server** in the section **External hotspot gateway** and RADIUS authentication.

   Incoming XML requests are forwarded by the Public Spot either to the internal RADIUS server or, if an external RADIUS server is used via a realm, to the external RADIUS server



3. In the section **Allow access without authentication** click on the button **Free Networks** and add a new network. Enter the **Name/IP address** of the login page. In **Netmask** enter `255.255.255.255`.

   When defined as a free network, the user has direct access to the login page of the gateway without having to login to the Public Spot first.

4. Configure the gateway so that it sends the user's session data to the Public Spot XML interface as an XML file. For questions about configuring the gateway, please refer to the applicable service provider.

14.5.3 Analyzing the XML interface using cURL

The following section describes the analysis of the XML interface with the open-source software cURL.

Client for URL, or cURL, is a command line application use for transferring files on a network without the use of a Web browser or FTP client. "cURL" is a component of many Linux distributions and is also available for other operating systems.

To analyze the XML interface using cURL, you need an administrator account with the function right "Public Spot XML interface" for the Public Spot.

1. First download cURL and install or unpack it.
2. Start cURL with the console command `curl -X POST -H "Content-Type:text/xml" -d @filename http://user:pass@myhost/xmlauth/`.

   The parameters have the following meaning:

filename

Path and name of the local XML file, e.g. the login request from the *examples*.

user

Username with the function right titled "Public Spot XML interface". The XML feature does not work without this authentication.

pass

User password.

myhost

IP address or DNS name of the device with the Public Spot XML interface

3. With Telnet you can use the command `trace # XML-Interface-PbSpot` to activate a trace that verifies whether XML requests were successful or error messages were received.

14.5.4 Commands

The XML interface can process three types of requests and responses:

- Login
- Logout
- Status

An XML file can contain several requests or answers.

Login

If the external gateway sends a "Login" request in an XML file, the Public Spot activates online access for the corresponding user. A "Login" request contains the attribute `COMMAND="RADIUS_LOGIN"`.

If the Public Spot does not use a RADIUS server, a "login" request prompts it to store the user and the associated MAC address directly in the internal Status table. As a result, the user is immediately authenticated in future, and there is no need to display a login page for entering the username and password.

When you operate a RADIUS server, a 'login' request can only be successfully processed if the login data of the corresponding user already exists on the RADIUS server.

The Web API in the Public Spot provides you with a convenient tool for creating new Public Spot users on the device's internal RADIUS server.

The XML interface can process the following XML elements in the **login request**:

`SUB_USER_NAME`

User name

`SUB_PASSWORD`

User password

`SUB_MAC_ADDR`

MAC address of the user device. Possible formats include:

- 00164115208c
- 00:16:41:15:20:8c
- 00-16-41-15-20-8c

VLAN_ID (optional)

Custom VLAN ID assigned by the device to the Public Spot user upon login. After authentication by the RADIUS server, the individual VLAN ID overwrites a global VLAN ID that a user would otherwise obtain from the XML interface.

The value 0 disables use of a VLAN.

SOURCE_VLAN (optional, only in conjunction with authentication by RADIUS server)

The VLAN ID of the network from which a Public Spot user attempts to login (source VLAN). The Public Spot forwards the source VLAN in its access request to the internal or external RADIUS server. The Public Spot uses the RADIUS attribute 81 (**tunnel-private-group-ID**) together with the RADIUS attributes 64 (**tunnel-type**) and 65 (**tunnel-medium-type**). The RADIUS server uses the source VLAN to decide whether to accept or decline the access request from the Public Spot.

If the RADIUS server accepts the request, it returns the access-accept to the Public Spot along with the above-mentioned RADIUS attributes. The Public Spot then saves the source VLAN for the client and its station list and allows the user to access the Public Spot network.

Use the source VLAN in conjunction with the setup parameter *2.24.47*. This prevents Public Spot users in VLAN-separated Public Spot networks/SSIDs from authenticating once at the RADIUS server and then accessing all of the managed Public Spot networks/SSIDs.

The SOURCE_VLAN should not be confused with the VLAN_ID. The VLAN_ID is not sent to the RADIUS server. However, the Public Spot uses it to assign a VLAN ID provided by the gateway to a successfully authenticated user.

PROVIDER (occasionally required)

Name of the RADIUS server used by the Public Spot for user authentication and accounting. If you do not specify a RADIUS server, the Public Spot uses the server configured globally for the module.

This XML element is mandatory if you

- have configured multiple RADIUS servers for the Public Spot module.
- want to use the XML interface without RADIUS authentication but with RADIUS accounting.

Specifying this XML element is otherwise optional.

The referenced RADIUS server must be present in the configuration.

TXRATELIMIT (optional)

Maximum bandwidth (in kbps) provided to the Public Spot user for the uplink.

RXRATELIMIT (optional)

Maximum bandwidth (in kbps) provided to the Public Spot user for the downlink.

SECONDSEXPIRE (optional)

The maximum online time for a user account in seconds. The user can use this duration of access time until a relative or absolute expiry time (if set) is reached.

The value 0 switches off the monitoring of the time budget.

TRAFFICEXPIRE (optional)

Maximum data volume for a user account in bytes. The user can use this data volume until a relative or absolute expiry time (if set) is reached.

The maximum data volume for a user account. The user can use this data volume until a relative or absolute expiry time (if set) is reached.

The following entries are allowed:

- `k` or `K`: Specified in kilobytes (kB), e.g. `<TRAFFICEXPIRE>1000k</TRAFFICEXPIRE>`.
- `m` or `M`: Specified in megabytes (MB), e.g. `<TRAFFICEXPIRE>100m</TRAFFICEXPIRE>`.
- `g` or `G`: Specified in gigabytes (GB), e.g. `<TRAFFICEXPIRE>1g</TRAFFICEXPIRE>`.

Without a unit, the specification corresponds to a value in bytes (B).

The value `0` switches off the monitoring of the data volume.

The XML interface then sends the gateway a "Login" response, which can contain the following XML elements:

SUB_USER_NAME

User name

SUB_STATUS

The current user status. The following values are possible:

- `RADIUS_LOGIN_ACCEPT`: Login successful
- `RADIUS_LOGIN_REJECT`: Login rejected

SUB_MAC_ADDR

MAC address of the user device. Possible formats include:

- 00164115208c
- 00:16:41:15:20:8c
- 00-16-41-15-20-8c

PROVIDER

Name of the RADIUS server to be used for this user.

Some examples of XML files are given below:

Login request

The external gateway sends the data for the start of a session to the Public Spot:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
  <ACCESS_CUBE COMMAND="RADIUS_LOGIN">
    <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
    <SUB_PASSWORD>5juchb</SUB_PASSWORD>
    <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00164115208c</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
    <PROVIDER>DEFAULT</PROVIDER>
  </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

The Public Spot enables 'user2350' in the internal Status table.

Login response:

The XML interface sends a confirmation about the start of a session to the external gateway:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" ?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
 <ACCESS_CUBE ID="WLC_PM" IP="192.168.100.2" COMMAND="USER_STATUS">
    <SUB_STATUS>RADIUS_LOGIN_ACCEPT</SUB_STATUS>
    <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00:16:41:15:20:8b</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
    <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
    <TXRATELIMIT>0</TXRATELIMIT>
```

```
    <RXRATELIMIT>0</RXRATELIMIT>
    <SECONDSEXPIRE>0</SECONDSEXPIRE>
    <TRAFFICEXPIRE>0</TRAFFICEXPIRE>
    <ACCOUNTCYCLE>0</ACCOUNTCYCLE>
    <IDLETIMEOUT>0</IDLETIMEOUT>
    </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

CoA

If a Public Spot user has to authenticate only and no further changes are required throughout the login, then the parameter `RADIUS_LOGIN` will meet your needs. On the other hand, if you need to change the attributes of an ongoing session for a Public Spot user, you have the option of using `RADIUS_CoA`. To implement a change, your external hotspot gateway sends a `RADIUS-CoA-Request` to the Public Spot, which directly transfers the changes in it to the **Station table** under **Status** > **Public-Spot**.

One application for CoA messages is the automatic throttling of bandwidth: If a Public Spot user has consumed his/her volume budget, an external hotspot gateway is able to throttle the user's bandwidth by evaluating the accounting data and sending a CoA message to the Public Spot.

The XML messages for negotiations between the hotspot gateway and the Public Spot appear as follows:

RADIUS-CoA-Request

The external gateway sends the data with the session change to the Public Spot. The Public Spot then changes the session data in the station table for the authenticated user 'user2350'.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
  <ACCESS_CUBE COMMAND="RADIUS_COA_REQUEST">
    <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
    <SUB_PASSWORD>5juchb</SUB_PASSWORD>
    <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00164115208c</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
    <TXRATELIMIT>100</TXRATELIMIT>
    <RXRATELIMIT>100</RXRATELIMIT>
    <SECONDSEXPIRE>3600</SECONDSEXPIRE>
    <TRAFFICEXPIRE>10000000</TRAFFICEXPIRE>
  </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

In the example above, the user is assigned a session duration of 3,600 seconds, a transferable data volume of 10,000,000 bytes, and a transmit and receive bandwidth of 100 kbps.

RADIUS-CoA-Response:

The XML interface sens a confirmation to the external hotspot gateway that the session data was changed:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" ?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
 <ACCESS_CUBE ID="WLC_PM" IP="192.168.100.2" COMMAND="USER_STATUS">
    <SUB_STATUS>RADIUS_COA_ACCEPT</SUB_STATUS>
    <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00:16:41:15:20:8b</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
    <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
    <TXRATELIMIT>100</TXRATELIMIT>
    <RXRATELIMIT>100</RXRATELIMIT>
    <SECONDSEXPIRE>3600</SECONDSEXPIRE>
    <TRAFFICEXPIRE>10000000</TRAFFICEXPIRE>
    <ACCOUNTCYCLE>0</ACCOUNTCYCLE>
    <IDLETIMEOUT>0</IDLETIMEOUT>
    </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

In case of throttling, the change to the user session always affects the quota that is still available to the user. For instance, if the user was logged on for one hour already, then a change of the time quota to six hours means that just five hours remain. If the time quota is less than the time the user is already logged on, the Public Spot logs out the user and sends a logout message to the hotspot gateway.

Logout

If the external gateway sends a "Logout" request in an XML file, the Public Spot blocks the corresponding user's online access. A "Logout" request contains the attribute `COMMAND="RADIUS_LOGOUT"`.

The XML interface can process the following XML elements for a request:

`SUB_USER_NAME`

User name

If the device receives this request and the Public Spot module discovers that this user is online with the corresponding MAC, then the Public Spot logs out this user.

`SUB_MAC_ADDR`

MAC address of the user device. Possible formats include:

- 00164115208c
- 00:16:41:15:20:8c
- 00-16-41-15-20-8c

`TERMINATION_CAUSE`

Reason for the user to log off

The XML interface then sends the gateway a "Logout" response, which can contain the following XML elements:

`SUB_USER_NAME`

User name

`SUB_STATUS`

The current user status. The following values are possible:

- `RADIUS_LOGOUT_DONE`: Logout successful
- `RADIUS_LOGOUT_REJECT`: Logout rejected

`SUB_MAC_ADDR`

MAC address of the user device. Possible formats include:

- 00164115208c
- 00:16:41:15:20:8c
- 00-16-41-15-20-8c

`TERMINATION_CAUSE`

Reason for blocking access

Some examples of XML files are given below:

Logout request

The external gateway sends the command for ending a session to the Public Spot:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
  <ACCESS_CUBE COMMAND="RADIUS_LOGOUT">
```

```
    <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
    <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00164115208c</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
    <TERMINATION_CAUSE>Check-Out</TERMINATION_CAUSE>
  </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

Logout response:

The XML interface sends a confirmation about the end of a session to the external gateway:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" ?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
   <ACCESS_CUBE ID="WLC_PM" IP="192.168.100.2" COMMAND="USER_STATUS">
     <SUB_STATUS>RADIUS_LOGOUT_DONE</SUB_STATUS>
     <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00:16:41:15:20:8b</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
     <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
     <TERMINATION_CAUSE>User logout request</TERMINATION_CAUSE>
    </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

Status

The external gateway queries the current status of a user from the Public Spot with a "Status" request. A "Status" request contains the attribute `COMMAND="RADIUS_Status"`.

The XML interface can process the following XML elements for a request:

`SUB_USER_NAME`

User name

`SUB_MAC_ADDR`

MAC address of the user device. Possible formats include:

- 00164115208c
- 00:16:41:15:20:8c
- 00-16-41-15-20-8c

The XML interface then sends the gateway a "Status" response, which can contain the following XML elements:

`SUB_USER_NAME`

User name

`SUB_MAC_ADDR`

MAC address of the user device. Possible formats include:

- 00164115208c
- 00:16:41:15:20:8c
- 00-16-41-15-20-8c

`SUB_STATUS`

The current user status. The following values are possible:

- `RADIUS_STATUS_DONE`: Status request successful
- `RADIUS_STATUS_REJECT`: Status request rejected, e.g. unknown user or MAC address

`SESSION_TXBYTES`

Current sent data volume

SESSION_RXBYTES

Current received data volume

SESSION_TXPACKETS

Number of data packets sent so far

SESSION_RXPACKETS

Number of data packets received so far

SESSION_STATE

Current status of the session

SESSION_ACTUAL_TIME

Current time

Some examples of XML files are given below:

Status request

The external gateway sends the command for a status request to the Public Spot:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
  <ACCESS_CUBE COMMAND="RADIUS_STATUS">
    <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
    <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00164115208c</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
  </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

Status response:

The XML interface sends a status message to the external gateway:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" ?>
<PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
   <ACCESS_CUBE ID="WLC_PM" IP="192.168.100.2" COMMAND="USER_STATUS">
     <SUB_STATUS>RADIUS_STATUS_DONE</SUB_STATUS>
     <SUB_MAC_ADDR>00:16:41:15:20:8b</SUB_MAC_ADDR>
     <SUB_USER_NAME>user2350</SUB_USER_NAME>
     <SESSION_ID>2</SESSION_ID>
     <SESSION_TXBYTES>0</SESSION_TXBYTES>
     <SESSION_RXBYTES>0</SESSION_RXBYTES>
     <SESSION_TXPACKETS>0</SESSION_TXPACKETS>
     <SESSION_RXPACKETS>0</SESSION_RXPACKETS>
     <SESSION_STATE>Authenticated</SESSION_STATE>
     <SESSION_ACTUAL_TIME>0</SESSION_ACTUAL_TIME>
   </ACCESS_CUBE>
</PUBLICSPOTXMLINTERFACE>
```

14.6 Appendix

14.6.1 Commonly transmitted RADIUS attributes

The RADIUS client module was implemented on the basis of RFCs no. 2865 and no. 2866.

These specifications define various attributes, some of which are an absolute necessity and some of which are optional. The following overview shows which attributes are transmitted/processed in messages between RADIUS servers and base stations.

Messages to and from the authentication server

Transferred attributes

As previously mentioned, your device transmits far more than just the username and password in a RADIUS request. RADIUS servers might choose to completely ignore these additional attributes, or only use a subset of these attributes. Many of these attributes are used for access to the server using dial-in, and are defined as standard attributes in the RADIUS RFCs. However, some important information for hotspot operation can not be represented with standard attributes. These additional attributes are manufacturer-specific with the manufacturer code 2356 (LANCOM Systems GmbH).

Table 36: Overview of the RADIUS attributes transmitted by the device to the authentication server

ID :	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
1	User name	The name entered by the user.	
2	User-Password	The password entered by the user.	
4	NAS-IP-Address	IP address of your device	<IPv4 address of the device>
6	Service-Type	Type of service that the user requested. The value “1” stands for Login.	
8	Framed-IP-Address	Specifies the IP address that is assigned to the client.	<IP address of the client>
30	Called-Station-Id	MAC address of your device	<nn:nn:nn:nn:nn:nn>
31	Calling-Station-Id	MAC address of the client The address is given byte-wise in hexadecimal notation with separators.	<nn:nn:nn:nn:nn:nn>
32	NAS identifier	Name of your device, if configured.	<Device-Name>
61	NAS-Port-Type	Type of physical port over which a user had requested authentication.	› **ID 19** denotes clients from WLAN. › **ID 15** denotes clients from Ethernet.
87	NAS-Port-Id	Description of the interface over which the client is connected to your device. This may be a physical and a logical interface. Consider that more than one client may be connected to one interface at a time, so that, unlike dial-in servers, port numbers are not unique for clients.	For example › LAN-1 › WLAN-1-5 › WLC-TUNNEL-27

Processed attributes

Your device evaluates the authentication response of a RADIUS server for attributes that it may possibly process further. Most attributes however only have a meaning if the authentication response was positive, so that they influence the subsequent session:

Table 37: Overview of the supported RADIUS attributes

ID :	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
18	Reply-Message	An arbitrary string from the RADIUS server that may transport either a login failure reason or a user welcome message. This message may be integrated into user-defined start or error pages via the `SEVERMSG` element.	
25	Class	An arbitrary octet string that may contain data provided by the authentication/accounting backend. Whenever the device sends RADIUS accounting requests, they will contain this attribute as-is. Within an authentication response, this attribute can occur multiple times in order, for example, to transmit a string that is longer than 255 bytes. The device processes all occurrences in accounting requests in the order they appeared in the authentication response.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 1 LCS-Traffic-Limit	Defines the data volume in bytes after which the device automatically ends the session. This value is useful for volume-limited accounts. If this attribute is missing in the authentication response, it is assumed that no volume limit applies. A traffic limit of 0 is interpreted as an account which is principally valid, however with a used-up volume budget. The device does not start a session in this case.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 3 LCS-Redirection-URL	This can contain any URL that is offered as an additional link on the start page. This can be the start page of the user or a page with additional information about the user account.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 5 LCS-Account-End	Defines an absolute point in time (measured in seconds since January 1, 1970 0:00:00) after which the account becomes invalid. If this attribute is missing, an unlimited account is assumed. The device does not start a session if its internal clock has not been set, or the given point in time is in the past.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 7 LCS-Public-Spot-Username	Contains the name of a Public Spot user for auto-login. Auto-login refers to the table of MAC authenticated users who are automatically assigned usernames by the server.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 8 LCS-TxRateLimit	Defines the maximum downstream rate in kbps. This restriction may be combined with the corresponding Public Spot function.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 9 LCS-RxRateLimit	Defines the maximum upstream rate in kbps. This restriction may be combined with the corresponding Public Spot function.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 13 LCS-Advertisement-URL	Specifies a comma-separated list of advertisement URLs.	
26	Vendor 2356, Id 14 LCS-Advertisement-Interval	Specifies the interval in minutes after which the Public Spot reroutes a user to an advertisement URL. With an interval of 0 forwarding occurs directly after login.	
27	Session-Timeout	Defines an optional maximum duration of the session, measured in seconds. If this attribute is missing in the response, an unlimited account is assumed. A Session timeout of zero seconds is interpreted as an account which is principally valid, however with a used-up time budget. The device does not start a session in this case.	
28	Idle timeout	Defines a time period in seconds after which the device will terminate the session if no packets were received from the	

ID :	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
		client. This value may possibly overwrite the idle timeout that is defined locally under **Public Spot** > **Server** > **Idle timeout**.	
64	Tunnel-Type	Defines the tunneling protocol which will be used for the session.	
65	Tunnel-Medium-Type	Defines the transport medium over which the tunneled session will be established.	
81	Tunnel-Private-Group-ID	Defines the group ID if the session is tunneled.	
85	Acct-Interim-Interval	Defines the amount of time between subsequent RADIUS accounting updates. This value is only evaluated if the RADIUS client does not have a local accounting interval defined, i.e. if you have not set an **Accounting update cycle** for the Public Spot module.	

Note that the LCS-Account-End and Session-Timeout attributes are mutually exclusive, and it therefore does not make sense to include both in the response. If both attributes are included in a response, the attribute that appears as the last one in the attribute list will define the session's time limit.

Messages to/from the accounting server

Transferred attributes

The set of RADIUS attributes transmitted to a RADIUS server in an accounting request is similar to the set of attributes transmitted in an authentication request. However, additional attributes specific to accounting will be added. The following attributes are present in all RADIUS accounting requests:

Overview of the RADIUS attributes transmitted by the device to the accounting server

1

User name

Name of the account that was used for authentication.

4

NAS-IP-Address

IP address of your device

8

Framed-IP-Address

IP address that was assigned to the client

25

Class

All class attributes that the RADIUS authentication server sent in its authentication response.

30

Called-Station-Id

MAC address of your device

31

Calling-Station-Id

MAC address of the client The address is given byte-wise in hexadecimal notation with separators (nn:nn:nn:nn:nn:nn).

32

NAS identifier

Name of your device, if configured.

40

Acct-Status-Type

Request type which signals the start or stop of accounting, or an interim update. Please refer to the section *Request types* for further information.

44

Acct-Session-Id

A series of characters that uniquely identify the client. It consists of the MAC address of the network adapter, the login timestamp (measured in seconds since January 1, 1970 0:00:00), and the session counter that your device manages locally.

61

NAS-Port-Type

Type of physical port over which a user had requested authentication.

- **ID 19** denotes clients from WLAN
- **ID 15** denotes clients from Ethernet

87

NAS-Port-Id

Description of the interface over which the client is connected to your device. This can be a physical as well as a logical interface, such as `LAN-1`, `WLAN-1-5` or `WLC-TUNNEL-27`.

Consider that more than one client may be connected to one interface at a time, so that, unlike dial-in servers, port numbers are not unique for clients.

In the case of an accounting stop request or an interim update, the request contains the following additional attribute:

42

Acct-Input-Octets

The sum of all data bytes received from the client in this session, modulo 2^{32}.

43

Acct-Output-Octets

The sum of all data bytes sent to the client in this session, modulo 2^{32}.

46

Acct-Session-Time

The total duration of the client's session in seconds.

If the session was ended due to an idle timeout, this value is reduced by the idle time.

47

Acct-Input-Packets

The number of data packets that your device received from the client during the session.

48

Acct-Output-Packets

The number of data packets that your device sent to the client during the session.

49

Acct-Terminate-Cause

The reason for termination or the end of the accounting session. This is sent if **Acct-Status-Type** has the value `Start` or `Stop`.

52

Acct-Input-Gigawords

The upper 32 bits of the sum of all data bytes received from the client during this session.

53

Acct-Output-Gigawords

The upper 32 bits of the sum of all data bytes sent to the client during this session.

55

Event-Timestamp

The elapsed time since this accounting request was submitted by the device, measured in seconds since January 1, 1970 0:00:00. This attribute is only present if your device's real time clock contains a valid value.

Note that the RADIUS accounting only starts accounting after a client successfully logs in, i.e. the time needed for authentication is not recorded. Using *Traffic-Limit-Option* you can limit the data traffic during the authentication phase. The final accounting stop request also contains the termination cause attribute (49). An overview of these attributes can be found in the LANCOM "Public Spot: Implementation Guide", available from *www.lancom-systems.com*.

Processed attributes

Your device currently does not process any attributes in responses sent by a RADIUS accounting server.

14.6.2 RADIUS attributes transmitted via WISPr

If you enable WISPr and you use an external RADIUS server, the Public Spot transmits the attributes (access request):

- **Location ID**
- **Location name**
- **Logoff URL**

These attributes are subset of the values configured in the previous section. The provider or roaming broker can use them to identify the location of the client for accounting purposes. Vendor Specific Attributes (VSA) are used with the IANA Private Enterprise Number (PEN) 14122.

The Public Spot processes the attributes (access accept) from an external RADIUS server:

- **Redirection URL**: URL to which a client should be redirected after login. This function is not supported by all smart clients.
- **Bandwidth max up**: Maximum uplink bandwidth available to the client.
- **Bandwidth max down**: Maximum downlink bandwidth available to the client.
- **Session terminate time**: Time when the client should be automatically de-authenticated. According to ISO 8601, the format is `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ssTZD`. If "TZD" is not entered, the client is de-authenticated according to the local time on the Public Spot.
- **Session terminate end of day**: The value of this attribute can be either 0 or 1. It indicates whether the client is de-authenticated on the Public Spot at the end of the accounting day.

For accounting purposes, the Public Spot uses the following attributes:

- **Location ID**
- **Location name**

14.6.3 Expert settings for the PMS interface

In addition to the settings that LANconfig provides for the PMS interface, you have the possibility of configuring additional parameters in the setup menu. On one hand, these parameters encompass values that the device needs for internal synchronization with your PMS system, and that are normally not modified. On the other hand, you also find extended settings in the setup menu that you can use to increase the performance scope of the PMS interface, for example, by offering free access to an otherwise charged Public Spot access for your guests with VIP status.

The following pages offer you an overview of all parameters for the PMS interface that are not configured over LANconfig.

Accounting

In this menu you configure the transfer of accounting information from your device to your PMS.

SNMP ID:

2.64.10

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface**

Cleanup-Accounting-Table-Period

Using this entry you configure the interval that the device uses to clean up expired sessions from the internal accounting table in the status menu.

SNMP ID:

2.64.10.3

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Accounting**

Possible values:

0 … 4294967295 Seconds

Default:

60

Special values:

0

The value 0 disables the automatic cleanup.

Save-to-Flashrom-Period

Using this entry you configure the interval that the device uses to store collected accounting information to the internal flash ROM.

Please note that frequent writing operations to this memory will reduce the lifetime of your device.

SNMP ID:

2.64.10.2

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Accounting**

Possible values:

0 … 4294967295 Seconds

Default:

15

Special values:

0

The value `0` deactivates the function.

Update-Accounting-Table-Period

Using this entry you configure the interval that the device uses to update the internal accounting table in the status menu.

SNMP ID:

2.64.10.4

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Accounting**

Possible values:

0 … 4294967295 Seconds

Default:

15

Special values:

0

If the value is 0, the update is disabled and the status table does not display any values.

Login form

In this menu you make specific settings for the PMS for the login/portal pages which are displayed to your guests in case of unauthorized access attempts on the hotspot.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface**

Free-VIP-Status

In this table, you locally manage the VIP categories from your PMS.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11.6

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Login-Form**

Status

Enter the VIP category from your PMS for the members that you want to provide with free Internet access.

For example, if you set up three VIP statuses (VIP1, VIP2, VIP3) for your PMS server, but you only want to offer hotel guests in category VIP2 free Internet access, enter the corresponding ID here.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11.6.1

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Login-Form** > **Free-VIP-Status**

Possible values:

Max. 20 characters from `[A-Z][a-z][0-9]#@{|}~!$%&'()*+-,/:;<=>?[\]^_. ``

Default:

empty

Fidelio-Free-Additional-check

Select the additional ID that a hotel guest uses – in addition to their username and room number – to authenticate on the Public Spot if you offer free Internet access. If you select `No-Check`, the device does not check for an additional ID.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11.3

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Login-Form**

Possible values:

None
Reservation number
Arrival date
Departure date
First name
Profile number

Default:

None

Fidelio-Free-VIP-Additional-check

Select the additional ID used by a VIP – in addition to their username and room number – to authenticate on the Public Spot if you offer your VIPs free Internet access. If you select `No-Check`, the device does not check for an additional ID.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11.5

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Login-Form**

Possible values:

None
Reservation number
Arrival date
Departure date
First name
Profile number

Default:

None

Fidelio-Charge-Additional-check

Select the additional ID used by a hotel guest – in addition to their username and room number – to authenticate on the Public Spot if you offer fee-based Internet access. If you select `No-Check`, the device does not check for an additional ID.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11.4

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Login-Form**

Possible values:

None
Reservation number
Arrival date
Departure date
First name
Profile number

Default:

Reservation number

PMS-Login-Form

Choose the login page to be displayed by the portal page for your PMS interface.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11.2

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Login-Form**

Possible values:

Free-of-charge

Choose this option if you offer your hotel guests free Internet access. Your hotel guests will still be required to authenticate on the hotspot on the portal page with their username, room number and, if required, an additional ID in order to prevent access to the Internet by unauthorized users.

charge

Choose this option if you offer your hotel guests fee-based Internet access. Your hotel guests will be required to authenticate at the hotspot on the portal page with their username and room number, and also to select a rate.

free-VIP

Select this setting, if you want to offer your otherwise fee-based Internet access free of charge to VIPs. Although your VIPs see the login screen for fee-based access, they will not be billed any fees.

Default:

Free-of-charge

PublicSpot-Login-Form

Enable or disable whether the portal page displays the Public Spot's own login screen. If you disable this setting, Public Spot users that use a combination of username and password as credentials (e.g., predefined or users with vouchers) can no longer login to the device.

SNMP ID:

2.64.11.1

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface** > **Login-Form**

Possible values:

No
Yes

Default:

No

Guest-name-case-sensitive

Enable or disable whether the device checks the last name for capitalization (case sensitively) against the name of the guest in the PMS database during login. If this setting is enabled, the guest's Public Spot access is rejected if the spelling and capitalization of his name does not match that transferred by the hotel.

SNMP ID:

2.64.12

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface**

Possible values:

No
Yes

Default:

Yes

Separator

Using this entry you configure the separator that your PMS uses to transfer data records to an API. The Micros Fidelio specification, e.g., uses the pipe symbol by default (| , hex 7C).

You should not change this value if at all possible. An incorrect separator can lead to your PMS being unable to read the transmitted data records, and the PMS interface not working!

SNMP ID:

2.64.6

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface**

Possible values:

Max. 1 characters from `[A-Z][a-z][0-9]#@{|}~!$%&'()*+-,/:;<=>?[\]^_. ``

Default:

|

Charset

Choose the character used by the PMS to transmit your guests' surnames to the device.

SNMP ID:

2.64.7

Telnet path:

Setup > **PMS-Interface**

Possible values:

CP850
W1252

Default:

CP850

15 Voice over IP – VoIP

15.1 Introduction

Voice over IP (VoIP) stands for voice communication in computer networks based on the Internet protocol (IP). The core idea is to provide the functions of traditional telephony via cost-effective and wide-spread networking structures such as the Internet. VoIP itself is not a standard, rather it is a collective term for the various technologies (equipment, protocols, voice encoding, etc.) which make voice communications in IP networks possible.

A variety of terminology is used to describe telephony over a network (LAN or Internet). The terms "Voice over IP" or "IP telephony" are used as synonyms, although in actual fact they have different meanings.

- Strictly speaking, "Voice over IP" is merely a term for the technology of transmitting calls across data networks in real-time using the IP protocol (Internet protocol). The term is also used when the technology is implemented only in the provider's core networks, in what is known as the backbone
- The term "IP telephony" is used when the VoIP technology is also used in the terminal equipment, so that the call subscriber uses the IP network for telephony.
- "Internet telephony" is also used to describe telephony using VoIP over the Internet in general.

In the following, "Voice over IP" is usually used even to refer to IP telephony in accordance with general custom.

There are four basic types of terminal equipment that can be used for VoIP telephony:

- With software running on the PC, known as a "softphone".
- With an IP or VoIP telephone that is connected directly to the local network.
- With a conventional telephone that is connected to the local network by an adapter (analog telephone adapter, ATA).
- Via a VoIP gateway that converts telephone calls from telephones (analog and ISDN) to VoIP and can then communicate between the two "telephone worlds" like a PBX.

There is a basic difference between a VoIP connection being established between two pieces of terminal equipment that are connected directly to the data network (PC or IP telephone) and the situation where a subscriber in the land-line or mobile telephone network requires the translation of the signaling, numbers and voice data. To differentiate the various connection variants, a device in the LAN has become known as a "PC", and a device in the land-line network has become known as a "phone".

PC-to-PC communication

With this application, the terminal equipment has to be integrated directly into the user's LAN. Examples are a PC, an IP telephone or a telephone that is connected to the LAN using an ATA.

Different software solutions are available for the PC, known as "softphones". Note that some of these programs can only communicate with users of the same software and not with softphones from other manufacturers. Communication is usually free of charge within the Internet. A current example is Skype, which uses its own protocol.

PC-to-phone and phone-to-PC communication

In this case, the call data has to be transmitted from the Internet to the landline network, usually using what are known as VoIP gateways. In general, these gateways are provided by providers and are subject to a fee.

VoIP routers offer another option that can switch VoIP calls to an ISDN line. Examples are different LANCOM VoIP router types with a SIP gateway and ISDN interfaces. When the calls are transferred to the landline network, the usual telephone operator fees are charged.

So that the subscriber can even be called on a PC, he or she needs a VoIP telephone number that is usually provided by a provider.

VoIP providers usually only provide individual numbers and not complete number ranges with a switchboard number and extension numbers. This is why the numbers that are provided by public providers are not attractive to many business customers. When the LANCOM VoIP router is used with a SIP gateway, previously-used numbers can be maintained; the functions of VoIP telephony can also be used.

15.2 VoIP implementation in LANCOM VoIP routers

The main task of the VoIP implementation in the LANCOM VoIP router is to connect telephone calls from different local interfaces (LAN, WLAN, ISDN) to the WAN connections that can be accessed by the router. This enables switching between the local interfaces (local call) and also the WAN interfaces.

The basis for the implementation and switching is the SIP protocol. The calls over all interfaces are converted into SIP by the interface translator (this mainly concerns the ISDN interfaces).

The ISDN-ISDN bridge function is a special case that is activated when ISDN protocols cannot be mapped in SIP, which is why a bit-transparent connection is created between an ISDN-TE (external ISDN connection) and an ISDN-NT (internal ISDN connection).

Furthermore, the bit-transparent connection is usually used for calls between multiple local ISDN interfaces to achieve the highest possible compatibility and quality.

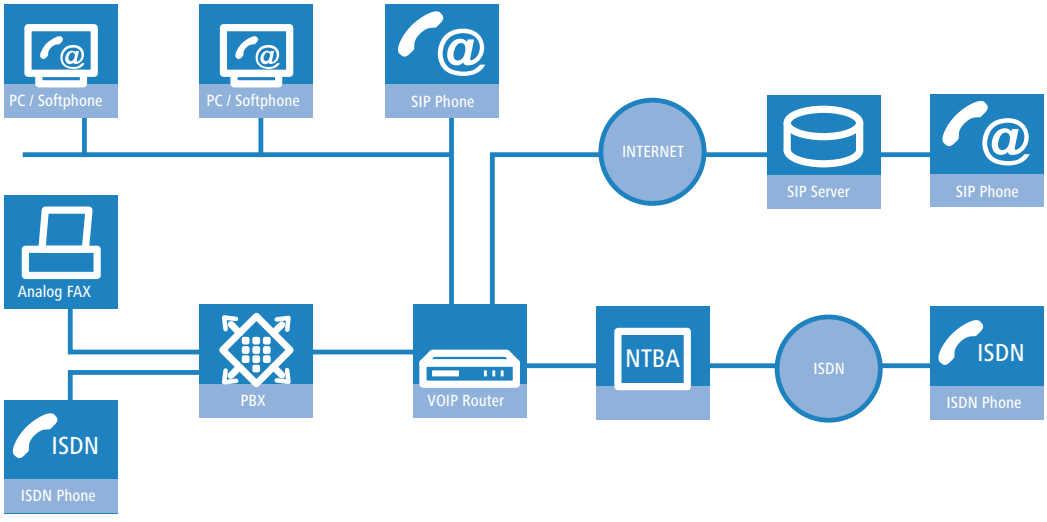
15.2.1 Example applications

Voice over IP solutions offer advantages for a broad spectrum of applications, starting with small companies and extending to large corporations with extensive networks of subsidiaries. In the following section, we will demonstrate a number of examples.

Detailed information about the configuration is available in the chapter 'Configuration of VoIP functions'.

Supplementing existing ISDN PBXs

VoIP functions can be conveniently added in to existing telephone structures by using a LANCOM VoIP router. The LANCOM VoIP router is simply connected between the public ISDN connection (e.g. ISDN NTBA) and the ISDN PBX.



Telephone calls over the PBX and its ISDN telephones remain possible just as before; the telephones remain available under the familiar telephone numbers. This application additionally offers the following options:

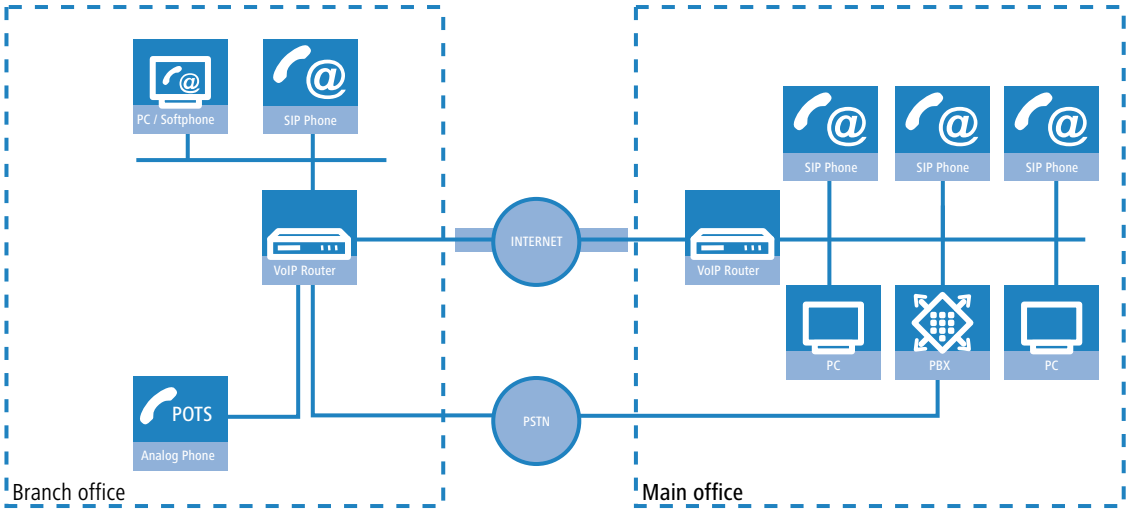
- In addition to the ISDN telephones, VoIP telephones or VoIP softphones can be included in the telephone infrastructure. VoIP subscribers in the internal LAN are also able to call external ISDN subscribers.
- The ISDN telephones continue to function, and additionally they can call all of the internal VoIP telephones and softphones in the LAN.
- Calls to external SIP subscribers who use the same Internet provider are often available at no cost.
- With the appropriate connection to a public SIP provider, any other SIP subscriber worldwide can be called, irrespective of the provider network. As an alternative to a direct ISDN connection, ISDN network subscribers can also be reached over a diversion via the SIP provider. The costs depend on the provider's particular tariff models. Often, long-distance and overseas calls via a SIP provider are significantly cheaper than the traditional telephone connection.

In this constellation, the LANCOM VoIP router takes over the switching of the calls. The device can be individually configured, for example, to use the access codes to decide upon the switching of a call either via the ISDN interface, or via the Internet as a VoIP call.

Connecting subsidiaries or home offices to the headquarters

Many subsidiaries or home offices already have a connection to the network at headquarters over VPN. These connections are normally limited to conventional data transmission. By using VoIP, internal company calls can be made for free over the existing VPN connection and—thanks to the VPN encryption—these calls are secured against eavesdropping.

With a LANCOM VoIP router located in the branch or home office, the two worlds of POTS and VoIP telephony can be united in a single telephone: A VoIP telephone or an existing ISDN telephone can be used for free telephone calls via VPN to the headquarters, or to make standard calls via ISDN.



The advantages of a telephone connection to headquarters:

- The configuration of telephone functions can be carried out centrally in the VoIP PBX at headquarters.
- Subscribers at their branch or home offices connect with the central PBX.
- Calls within the company network are free.
- Outgoing calls are automatically directed to the best line for cost optimization.

VoIP for companies through SIP trunking

One of the biggest hurdles for companies that fully migrate to VoIP is to maintain the existing telephone numbers. Normal provider SIP accounts come with a telephone number for the transition to the landline telephone network, but generally these numbers are selected from a pool of numbers available to the provider. However, for companies with a large

number of telephone subscribers and numbers, it is of decisive importance that existing telephone and extension numbers are maintained after migrating to VoIP.

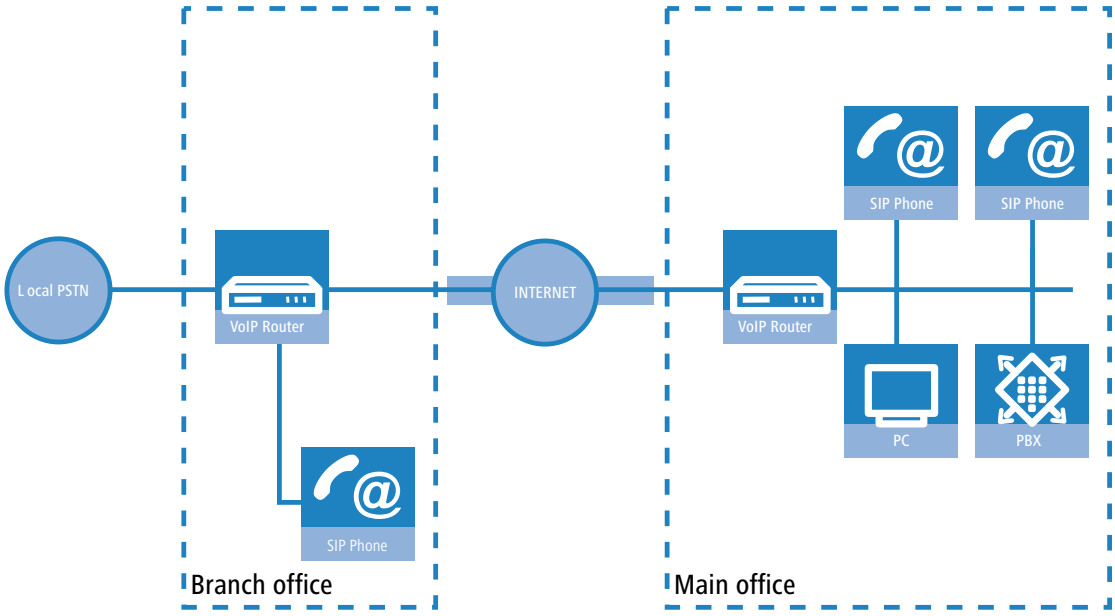
With the SIP trunking function, entire ranges of telephone numbers made up of external numbers and their associated extensions can be mapped by LANCOM VoIP routers over a single connection to a SIP provider, assuming that the provider also supports Direct Dialing In (DDI) and can provide multiple connections simultaneously. Generally speaking, SIP providers that offer SIP trunking can acquire the existing telephone numbers from the former telecoms provider.

Integrating local ISDN connections with remote SIP gateway

Companies with nation-wide and internationally distributed sites are often interconnected with VPN already. A LANCOM VoIP router can be used not only to connect the SIP and ISDN telephones at a branch office to the SIP-PBX at headquarters; it can also integrate local ISDN networks into corporate communications with help of the "SIP Gateway" function.

The SIP gateway is active for outgoing and incoming calls.

- A company headquarters in New York can, for example, use a LANCOM VoIP router with SIP gateway located at the Los Angeles branch office to telephone with customers and suppliers located in Los Angeles at local rates ("local break-out").
- For improved availability to customers located abroad, the New York headquarters can, for example, use a LANCOM VoIP router with SIP gateway located at their sales office in Italy. Customers can then reach support or service numbers via a standard national telephone number. Calls from the local ISDN network are received and directed within the company network to the appropriate employee. Call routing can be used which identifies the customer's calling number and automatically selects the appropriate connection to be used for forwarding the call.

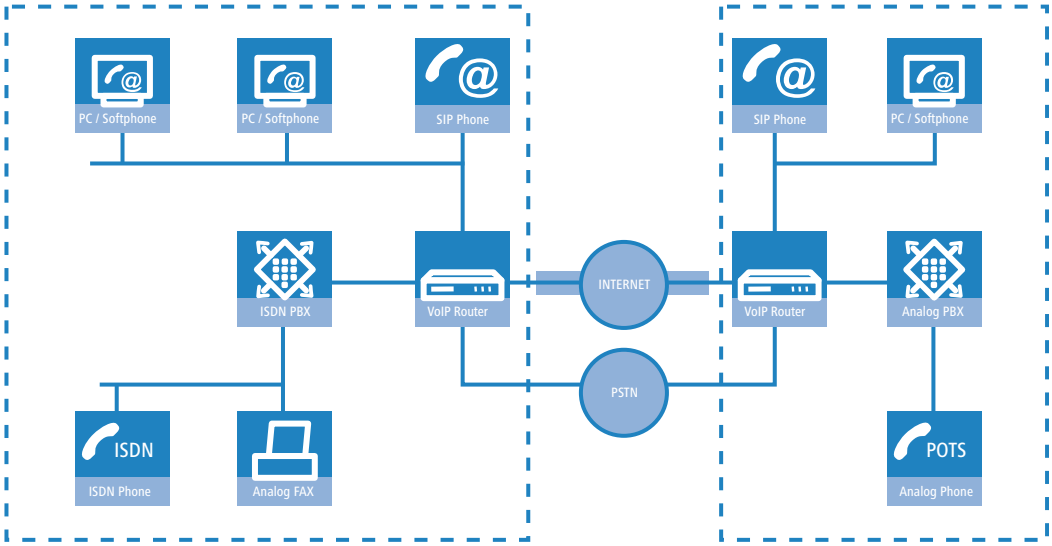


Advantages of the SIP gateway:

- The local ISDN connection at any site is available for use by any of the offices throughout the entire company.
- National and international long-distance calls can be mapped to local or regional calls, so saving costs.
- Automatic routing of incoming calls to the appropriate employee.

Connecting sites without a SIP PBX

Companies with widely dispersed offices and without their own SIP PBX can also take advantage of VoIP site-to-site connectivity. In this "Peer-to-Peer" scenario, a LANCOM VoIP router has been implemented at two locations.



Along with data transfer via VPN, it is also possible to use VoIP functions between the two locations.

The advantages of peer-to-peer site connectivity

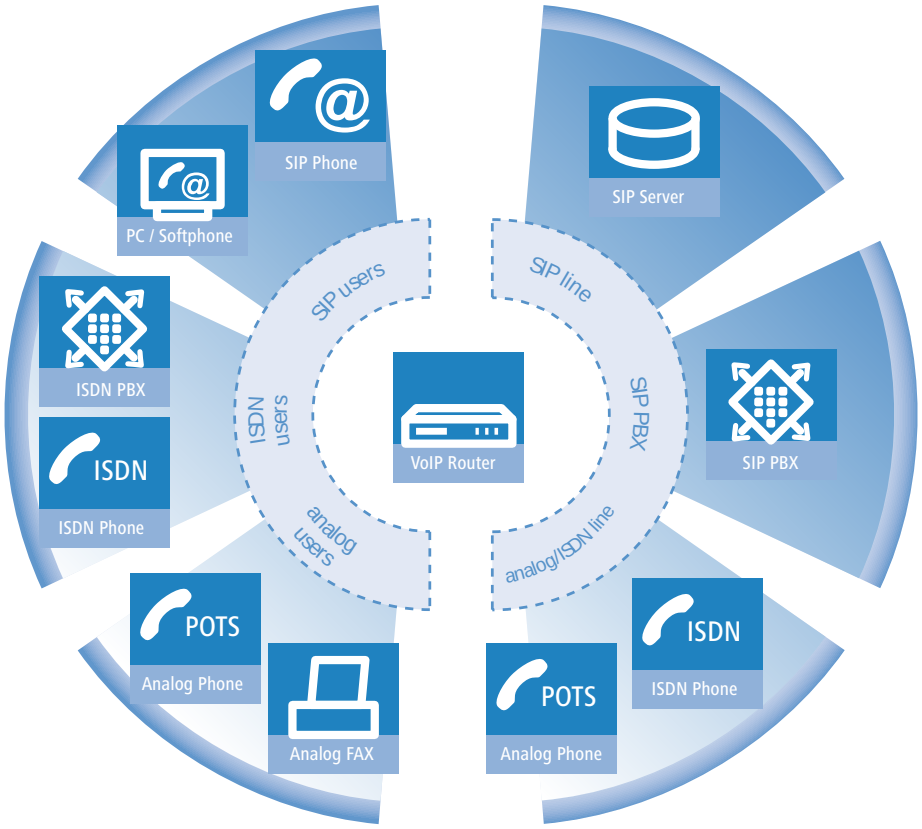
- ISDN PBXs at different locations can form a common internal telephone network.
- A SIP PBX is not necessary.
- Calls within the company network are at no charge.
- Outgoing calls are automatically directed to the best line for cost optimization.
- Incoming calls can be switched directly to the appropriate employee at a different location.

15.2.2 The central position of the LANCOM VoIP router

LANCOM VoIP routers take up a central position in the switching of telephone calls between internal and external subscribers over the different channels of communication. Depending on the model and equipment, the devices interconnect the following communication participants and channels into a common telephone infrastructure.

1. Internal VoIP terminal devices connected to LAN, WLAN and DMZ, such as SIP telephones and SIP softphones
2. The internal ISDN infrastructure with ISDN PBX and ISDN telephones
3. Analog terminal devices, internally connected either into the ISDN network via a PBX with a/b ports, or alternatively into the VoIP network over an ATA (Analog Telephone Adapter).
4. External SIP providers and all of the external subscribers attainable through them
5. Upstream SIP PBXs with all of the internal and external subscribers reachable through them

6. The external ISDN world via ISDN NTBA or upstream ISDN PBX, and all of the external subscribers available via the land-line network



Users and lines

Telephony subscribers in internal areas can take part in voice communications and, in the LANCOM VoIP environment, are referred to as "users". The LANCOM differentiates between:

ISDN users

A maximum of 40 terminal devices connected over the ISDN network, including ISDN and analog devices connected to an upstream ISDN PBX.

When connecting downstream PBXs to point-to-point lines, the number of possible ISDN subscribers is determined by the length of the extension number (DDI). In this case, all of the telephones and terminal equipment connected to the PBX can be mapped with a single ISDN user entry.

SIP users

A maximum of 40 (with the LANCOM VoIP +10 option) SIP terminal devices connected over LAN and WLAN and analog devices connected with an ATA.

The external paths of communication available to the users are known as "lines". The LANCOM knows the following lines:

ISDN

A connection to an ISDN NTBA over the TE interface. The NT interface can additionally be used to connect ISDN terminal devices directly or via a downstream ISDN PBX.

SIP lines

A maximum of 55 lines (with VoIP +10 option) are possible. There are three different types of SIP line:

- A "Single account" line acts like a normal SIP account with a single telephone number. The internal users can all make use this account for making SIP calls, although only one call can be conducted at a time.

Depending on the provider services, these lines can be used to reach subscribers in the provider networks, subscribers in other SIP networks (partner networks), or even land-line subscribers. Your own availability at your own telephone number or even solely with a SIP name over the Internet also differs from provider to provider.

- A "trunk" line acts like an extended SIP account with a main external telephone number and multiple extension numbers. Internal users use this account in parallel and several calls can be made simultaneously (until the maximum available bandwidth is exhausted).
- As a "SIP gateway" line, the LANCOM VoIP router provides a remote SIP PBX with a transition to the local ISDN network. The SIP gateway is registered at the SIP PBX with a single number, although several calls can be conducted at once (until the maximum available bandwidth is exhausted). The connection between the SIP PBX and the LANCOM VoIP router is normally established over a VPN connection.

SIP PBX systems

Maximum 4 connections to upstream SIP PBXs. These lines are generally connections to large PBXs in the network at headquarters which can be reached via a VPN connection.

The precise number of users and lines available varies between models and software options.

15.3 Call switching: Call routing

All calls between internal subscribers and subscribers who can be reached over external lines are handled as SIP calls by the LANCOM—even if the connection is between two ISDN subscribers.

The call router in the LANCOM VoIP router handles the switching of the calls. The switching relies mainly on the information in two tables:

- For telephone numbers arriving at the call router, rules in the call-routing table are able to alter these numbers if needed and can decide which line to use for a call.
- The table for the locally registered user provides information about which terminal device is available at which internal telephone number.

The bandwidth reservation, QoS settings and firewall settings that are necessary for reliable transmission of voice data are carried out automatically by the LANCOM.

- When establishing a connection, the LANCOM checks (under consideration of the permitted codecs) the maximum bandwidth that will be required.
  - This bandwidth is then automatically reserved by the QoS module upon initiation of the connection.
  - If negotiation shows that the maximum bandwidth is not available, the connection will not be made.
  - If negotiations between the terminal devices can agree upon a codec with lower bandwidth requirements, then the reserved bandwidth will be reduced accordingly.
- All packets from ISDN users are given a DiffServ marking by the LANCOM (with SIP users, the QoS marking is usually handled by the telephones or softphones):
  - SIP packets for signaling are marked as CS1.
  - RTP packets are marked as EF.
- The ports required for the transmissions are activated automatically.

15.3.1 SIP proxy and SIP gateway

The tasks involved in switching calls between the different lines of SIP and ISDN subscribers are handled by two functions in the LANCOM VoIP router.

SIP proxy

A SIP proxy handles the switching between callers.

SIP gateway

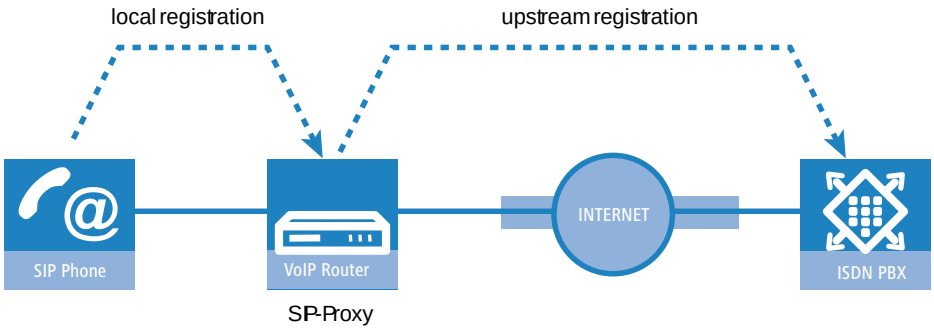
The SIP gateway handles the conversion between IP-based telephony that uses the SIP protocol and other (telephone) networks, for example the ISDN network.

15.3.2 User registration at the SIP proxy

A LANCOM VoIP router represents the central exchange for SIP calls between different subscribers wanting to communicate over different types of line. The tasks of switching in the LANCOM are handled by the SIP proxy. A telephone signals the SIP proxy that it needs to establish a connection, and the SIP proxy uses certain rules to decide which line is to be used for the connection. Conversely, incoming calls are assigned to a certain terminal device by the SIP proxy according to its rules.

For terminal devices to be able to take part in this switching, they must be registered with the SIP proxy. Where the registration is limited to call switching by the LANCOM, we refer to "local registration".

If other exchanges are involved, e.g. an SIP PBX at another location, then we refer to an upstream registration. In this case, the LANCOM accepts the request for registration and forwards it upstream. In this instance, the LANCOM is described as "transparent proxy".



The great advantage with this two-stage registration comes to bear in the backup event: If the connection to an upstream SIP PBX is not available, the SIP proxy can handle the user who is registered upstream as a local user and can then direct the calls over alternative lines.

Registering at the LANCOM VoIP router (local registration)

For local registration at the LANCOM, the user just has to send a valid VoIP domain to the SIP proxy and has to be registered as a SIP user. Valid domains include the internal VoIP domains of the LANCOM VoIP router and all of the domains entered for a SIP line.

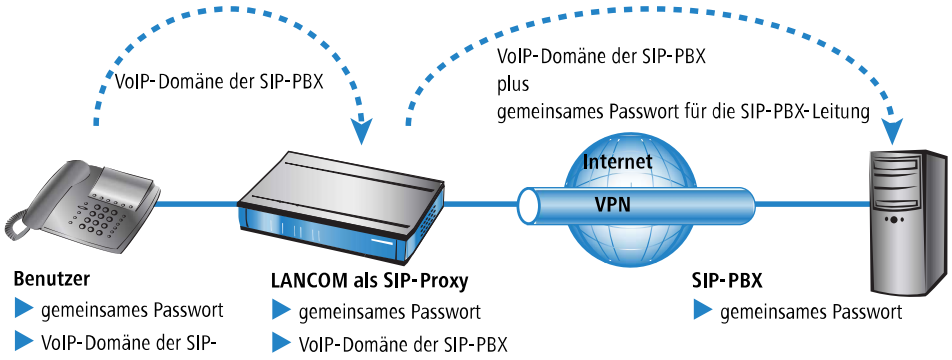
- For SIP terminal devices in the LAN (SIP telephone or SIP softphone), the domain is entered in the configuration.
- The domain cannot be entered into ISDN terminal equipment; instead, ISDN users have to be registered in the LANCOM configuration with a corresponding entry as an ISDN user.
- To prevent unknown subscribers from registering, authentication at the SIP proxy can be set as a prerequisite to local registration (local authentication). In this case, an entry as a SIP or ISDN user with corresponding password in the LANCOM VoIP router configuration is essential.

Automatic registration without entering a password is restricted to the SIP users in the LAN. SIP users in the WAN require an appropriate user entry and authentication by password.

Registration at an upstream SIP PBX (upstream registration)

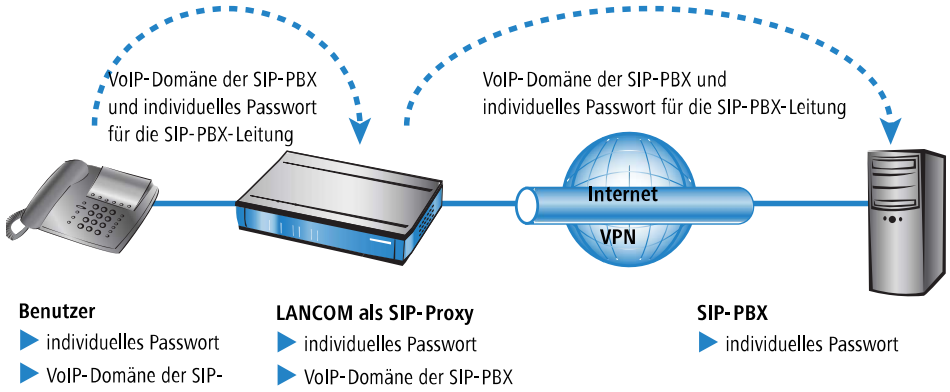
Generally, authentication by user and password is always required for registration at a SIP PBX. There are two possible ways of transmitting the authentication data to the SIP PBX:

- All SIP and ISDN users at the LANCOM VoIP router end use the same shared access information. In this case, only the VoIP domain for the SIP PBX and the appropriate user ID are entered into the SIP terminal device. For ISDN users, the VoIP domain of the SIP PBX is entered into the LANCOM as an ISDN user. The SIP proxy recognizes the request for registration at the upstream SIP PBX if the domain communicated from the client agrees with a domain entered for the SIP PBX line. The proxy then forwards the registration data together with the shared password to the SIP PBX.



- If SIP or ISDN users at the LANCOM VoIP router are entered into the SIP PBX with different passwords, then the users have to enter their individual passwords upon registration. Consequently, each SIP or ISDN user has an entry in the

LANCOM with the individual passwords, which are also entered into the SIP terminal devices. Users with shared and individual passwords can be managed in parallel.



Particular aspects for ISDN users

Integrating ISDN terminal equipment into the LANCOM VoIP environment and the necessary steps for configuration depend upon the application at hand and, if applicable, upon the options available with a PBX. The main questions to be answered by the user are as follows:

- Can ISDN terminal devices telephone internally with SIP users?
- Are ISDN terminal devices available externally over SIP lines?
- Can ISDN terminal devices telephone externally over SIP lines?

If ISDN terminal equipment can be reached over an ISDN TE interface on the LANCOM, it is described as "upstream". From the perspective of the LANCOM, the ISDN terminal devices are on an external line. This ISDN terminal equipment is normally not classified as being for local users, and so no entries for ISDN users are necessary.

ISDN terminal equipment at an upstream ISDN PBX...

- can make internal calls to SIP users if the corresponding telephone numbers are configured as internal MSNs in the ISDN PBX.
- can receive internal calls from SIP users if the internal MSNs of the ISDN equipment are output to the ISDN line by the call-routing table, for example over a standard route.
- can only make calls over SIP lines if the PBX is able to output certain call numbers over its internal ISDN bus. Otherwise, all calls not matching with its internal MSNs would be forwarded by the ISDN PBX to the public telephone network.
- can only receive calls from an upstream SIP PBX if entered into the LANCOM as an ISDN user and registered as such with the SIP PBX.

If ISDN terminal equipment can be reached over an ISDN NT interface on the LANCOM, it is described as "downstream". For the LANCOM, this is then a local subscriber that can be reached via the list of registered users. As ISDN terminal devices cannot send domain information to register at the LANCOM, this must be entered as an ISDN user so that it can be made known to the VoIP system.

ISDN terminal equipment at a downstream ISDN PBX...

- can make internal calls to SIP users by entering the character for an outside line as required by the PBX and then dialing the SIP user's internal number. The PBX then forwards the call to the SIP user's internal number—without the outside-line access code—over its external ISDN bus to the LANCOM.
- can receive internal calls from SIP users as long as the entry for the ISDN user contains the correct assignment of the internal number to the appropriate MSN. The LANCOM takes a call to the ISDN user's internal number, translates it to the MSN, and outputs it to the allocated ISDN bus. The PBX receives the MSN as if it were an external call and forwards it to the corresponding ISDN terminal equipment.
- can conduct incoming and outgoing calls over SIP and ISDN just like SIP users. Again, the outside-line code may be necessary for outgoing calls.

Dynamic ISDN users at point-to-point connections

When connecting downstream PBXs to a point-to-point interface of the LANCOM VoIP router, the number of possible ISDN terminal devices is only limited by the length of the extension number. With three-figure extension numbers, almost 1000 terminal devices can be connected, all of which can be managed as ISDN users in the LANCOM VoIP router. Through an ISDN user entry with a # character as a placeholder for the telephone numbers, all ISDN terminal devices with their respective extension numbers can be set up as dynamic ISDN users.

User entries that use # characters to map user groups cannot be used for registration at an upstream PBX. This registration always demands a specific entry for the individual ISDN user.

15.3.3 Number translation at network transitions

LANCOM VoIP routers switch calls between different telephone networks, e.g. the ISDN network, various SIP provider networks, and the internal telephone network. These networks generally have different ranges of numbers or even completely different conventions for addressing subscribers. Whereas the traditional land-line network uses numerical characters with country code and area access codes, the world of SIP allows alphanumerical names along with domain information.

The transition between these zones must guarantee the correct translation of "telephone numbers" so that the intended subscriber can be reached.

Depending on the application at hand, both the called and the calling numbers have to be modified in such a way that a call can be returned to the original caller.

Call number translation at the transition to outside lines is primarily implemented by mapping entries in the ISDN and SIP lines and by rules in the call-routing table.

15.3.4 The Call Manager

The Call Manager has the central task of allocating the calls waiting to be switched to a certain line or to a certain user. The Call Manager makes this allocation by using the call-routing table and the list of registered users. The calls are switched in the following steps:

- Processing of called numbers (Called Party ID)

  First of all there is a check to see whether a numeric or alphanumeric number is available. Typical dialing separators such as "()-/" and <blank> are removed. A leading "+" is left in place. In this case, the number is still treated as a numeric number. If the check reveals any other alphanumerical character, the number is treated as alphanumeric and remains unchanged.

- Resolving the call in the call routing table

  After processing the Called Party ID, the call is passed over to the call-routing table. Entries in the call-routing table consist of sets of conditions and instructions. The entries—with the exception of the default routes—are searched through and the first one that satisfies **all** of the conditions is executed.

- Resolution of the call with tables of local subscribers

  If no entry is found in the call-routing table, then the Call Manager searches through the list of local subscribers. Call routing considers all of the users known to the call router (registered SIP users, configured ISDN users). If an entry is found that agrees with the called number and that has the matching destination domain, then the call is delivered to the corresponding subscriber.

  If there is no local subscriber with matching number and destination domain, then the following cycle searches for an agreement between the number of the local subscriber and the called number; the destination domain is ignored.

- Resolution of the call with default entries in the call-routing table

  If the preceding cycles referring to the call-routing table and lists of local subscribers remain unsuccessful, then the waiting call is checked once again with the call-routing table. This pass only takes the default routes into account, however. The numbers and destination domains entered into the default routes are ignored. Only the source filters are processed, assuming that the default route has these filters.

Specific examples of call-routing procedures can be found in the configuration examples described.

15.3.5 Telephony with LANCOM VoIP routers

Using the LANCOM VoIP router opens up a variety of new possibilities for making telephone calls. Depending on the constellation of terminal equipment implemented (e.g. SIP or ISDN telephones, SIP or ISDN PBX systems) and depending on the configuration for call routing in the LANCOM VoIP router, certain information is critical for understanding the establishment of connections.

Automatic outside line access

Using the LANCOM VoIP router and the enhancement with VoIP functionality within your telephone structure is designed to support the users' telephone behavior with the greatest possible convenience. One of the core aspects of this is the use of "spontaneous" or "automatic" outside line access, a feature that is familiar to users of standard PBX systems.

- Most PBX systems are configured in such a way that the telephone subscribers must dial a "0" before the desired telephone number in order to gain access to an outside line - that is, to carry out a telephone conversation via a public telephone network.

  Without the "0" prefix, the number dialed is considered to be an internal number from another extension line on the private PBX.

- If "automatic outside line access" is set up, all numbers dialed are directed over the public telephone network. In this case, internal telephone calls to other extensions are not possible or only possible when a special symbol is dialed before the number.

When the telephone structure is extended with a LANCOM VoIP router, a variety of new possibilities become available for connecting telephone terminal equipment. This includes the existing analog or ISDN telephones (where necessary, connected to the respective PBX) or VoIP terminal equipment such as SIP telephones or PCs with VoIP software.

As a new and central building block in the telephone structure, the LANCOM VoIP router assumes many of the PBX tasks for the terminal equipment connected to it. As such, you can also set up the automatic outside line access for the terminal equipment connected to the LANCOM VoIP router directly for the ISDN or SIP subscriber groups, thereby adapting it to existing telephone behavior.

- When automatic outside line access is turned off, subscribers must dial a "0" before the desired number in order to carry out a telephone conversation via a public telephone network.

  All calls without a "0" preceding the number will be treated as calls to internal extensions within the private telephone network.

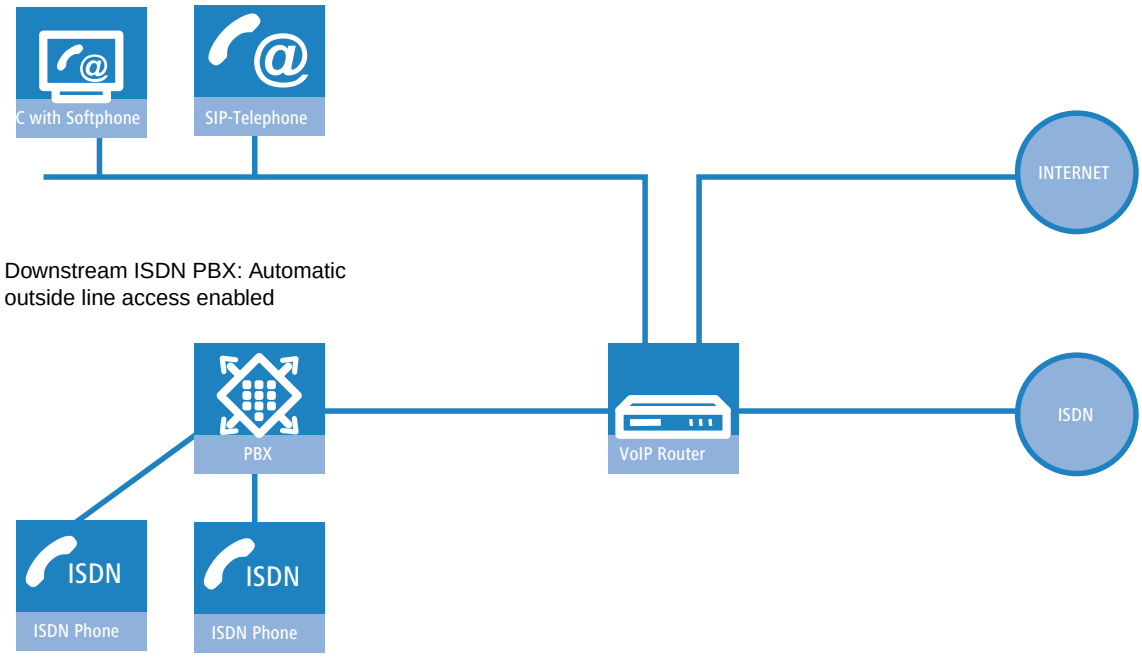
- If automatic outside line access is turned on, all numbers dialed will be directed over a public telephone network.

  For telephone calls to internal extensions, a special symbol or a specific number combination must be dialed before the number. With the default settings, when automatic outside line access is enabled, a star * is activated as the identification symbol for an internal number. This setting can be adjusted to match the character that you are familiar with.

  If you operate the LANCOM VoIP router on the extension line of a PBX, we recommend that you configure outside line access for the router in the same way as for the PBX so that the behavior remains unchanged from the user's perspective.

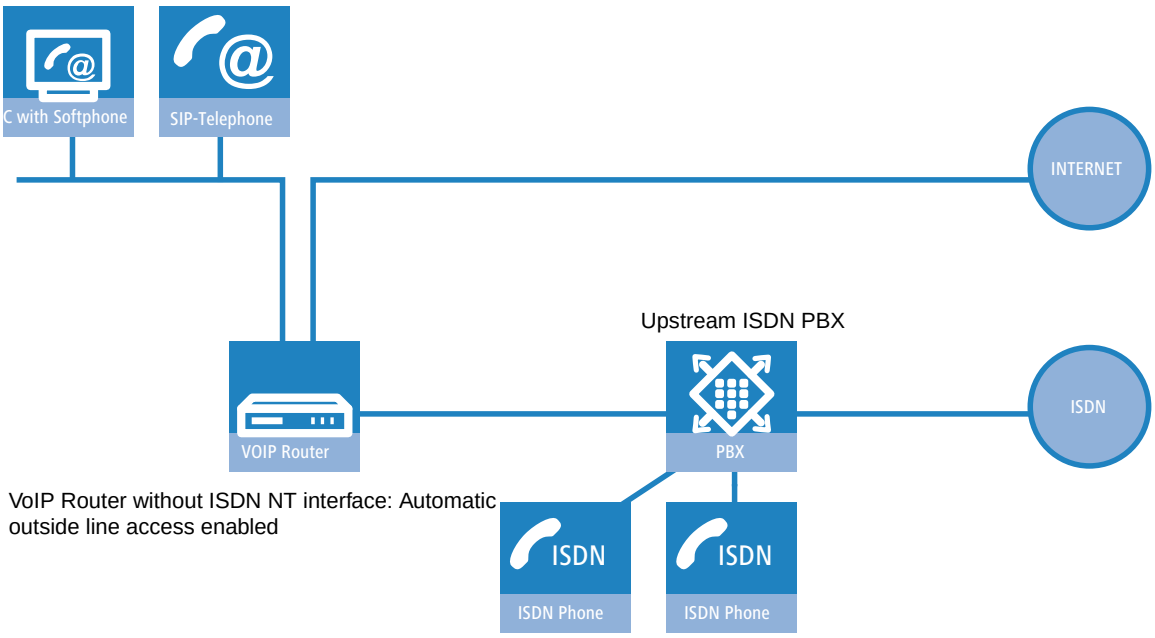
Example of a downstream PBX

A LANCOM VoIP router is switched between the ISDN outside line and the existing ISDN PBX. In the PBX, automatic outside line access is enabled, the call router settings for the LANCOM VoIP router decide whether or not a "0" must be dialed for outside line access for the connected ISDN and SIP subscribers.



Example of an upstream PBX

A LANCOM VoIP router is connected to an ISDN PBX extension line. In the LANCOM VoIP router, automatic outside line access is enabled, and the settings for the upstream PBX decide whether or not a "0" must be dialed for outside line access for the connected ISDN and SIP subscribers.



Dialing different number ranges

When dialing other parties, the following number ranges are available for use:

- Internal numbers are comparable to the extension numbers for traditional PBX systems. Subscribers can reach one another directly using these internal numbers without having to go through a public telephone network.

  The internal numbers must be unique for all subscribers within the private telephone network, this also includes any other PBX systems that may be connected!

  The internal subscribers can be reached by simply dialing the internal number without a "0" preceding it.

  Depending on the settings for automatic outside line access, a special preceding dialing signal may be required.

- Via **local telephone numbers** you can reach external parties who are in the same local telephone network as the LANCOM VoIP router, i.e. users with the same area code as the public line for the LANCOM VoIP router.

  In decentralized locations that extend beyond city or state boundaries, the physical location of the device is decisive, even if a central PBX is located at a different location. Therefore, for a LANCOM VoIP router in London, all telephone subscribers in the local telephone network for London can be reached using local numbers, even if a SIP PBX connected via VPN can be reached in Manchester.

  Depending on the settings for automatic outside line access, a "0" prefix may be required.

- The **national and international numbers** behave in the same way as local numbers; here, the physical location of the devices is decisive for the assignment of corresponding access codes. Therefore, a LANCOM VoIP router in Austria belongs to the national telephone network in Austria, even if there is a VPN connection to the SIP PBX at the headquarters in Germany.

Depending on the settings for automatic outside line access, a "0" prefix may be required.

Service numbers

Certain service numbers (emergency numbers, toll-free or expensive premium lines) can be subjected to special treatment by the call router.

- For example, this ensures that emergency numbers for the police or fire department are always reached, even if the subscribers do not dial the correct preceding dialing signal for outside line access.

  With the default settings, the emergency numbers "110" and "112" are configured in such a way that they can be dialed correctly with or without the preceding "0".

- For toll-free numbers such as "0800", a direct connection via ISDN is usually selected in order to use the toll-free land-line to land-line connection.

Dialing via specific lines

The LANCOM VoIP router allows additional phone lines to be used for voice communication as a supplement to your existing ISDN exchange lines. These new lines may be to a SIP PBX connected via VPN, or to a public SIP provider on the Internet. Each time a connection is established, the call router uses pre-determined rules to decide which of the existing lines is to be used for the call.

As an alternative to the automatic selection by the call router, you can direct individual calls to a certain line, for example when you want to call a party purposely via ISDN and not via the SIP PBX at the headquarters. For this purpose, the call router assigns specific code numbers to existing lines, such as "98" for ISDN or "97" for a SIP provider. The targeted call via this line is then initiated with the corresponding identifier:

- The call with "020 123456" is assigned to a corresponding line by the call router, e.g. via the SIP PBX at the headquarters.
- However, the call with "98 020 123456" is made directly via the ISDN connection by the call router.

15.3.6 Hold call, swap call, transfer call

LANCOM VoIP routers support various services which are familiar to users of the ISDN network:

- With **call hold** the user can place an active call into a wait state. In this state the user can make a call to another person, for example.
- With **swap call**, the user can switch to and fro between two connections. The user is only connected with one caller at a time, while the other caller is put on hold.
- With **transfer call** the user switches an active call over to another call which is on hold. The two callers are then connected and the user is no longer involved in the call.

The services call hold, swap call and transfer call are available to all local SIP, ISDN and analog users, and also to subscribers at an upstream SIP PBX; however, they can only be initiated by a SIP user.

15.3.7 Transmission of DTMF tones

ISDN telephone networks introduced the possibility of transmitting information about which button was pushed on the telephone using DTMF tones (Dual Tone Multiple Frequency). With the help of DTMF tones, the telephone user can communicate with voice mailboxes and computer telephony systems, for example.

In VoIP applications, special mechanisms are required to assume the DTMF tone function. If, for example, during a telephone call, a button is pressed on a VoIP telephone or a VoIP softphone, this should trigger the same action as a call with an ISDN telephone.

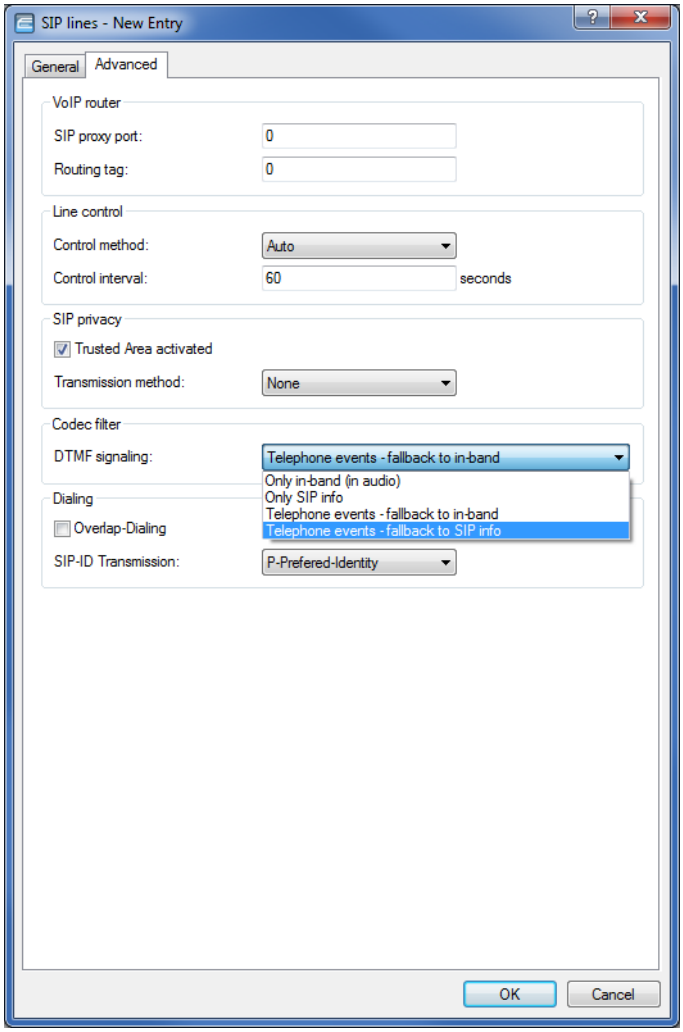
Generally, DTMF tones are transmitted in VoIP applications in one of two ways:

- In-band describes the transmission of the DTMF tones in the same data stream in which the voice data are transferred. However, this procedure is relatively unreliable because the DTMF tones in the IP datastream can easily be mistaken for voice data, particularly when using compression codecs.
- Out-of-band describes the transmission of the DTMF tones in a stream that runs parallel to the actual voice data. Two standards are generally used for out-of-band transmission:
  - SIP INFO (RFC 2976)
  - RFC 2833 (RTP Payload for DTMF Digits)

  Both variants can encapsulate information into the signaling data stream depending, for example, on the buttons pressed, their tone frequency, and the length of time the button was pressed. In addition, events that should be transmitted with DTMF tones can also be transmitted in cleartext in the SIP data.

Configuring DTMF signaling

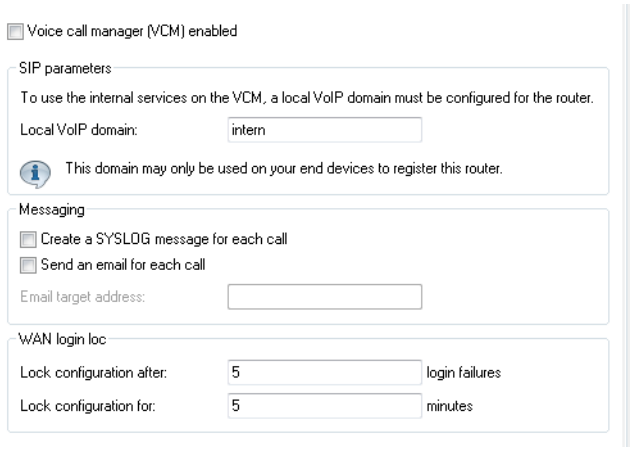
When configuring the DTMF signaling, you specify which variant is used for the transmission of the DTMF tones under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** > **SIP lines**:



15.4 Configuring the VoIP parameters

15.4.1 General settings

To configure the settings for the general VoIP parameters, navigate to **Voice Call Manager** > **General**.



Voice Call Manager (VCM) enabled

Enables or disables the Voice Call Manager.

Local VoIP domain

Name of the domain in which the connected telephones and the LANCOM Wireless router are operated.

- Terminal devices working in the same domain register as local subscribers at the LANCOM Wireless router and make use of the SIP proxy.
- Terminal devices working with the other domain of an active SIP PBX line register themselves as subscribers at an upstream PBX.

Create a SYSLOG message for each call

Each time a call is made with the LANCOM VoIP router a SYSLOG message is created.

Please consider that you can only use this feature with the proper SYSLOG settings.

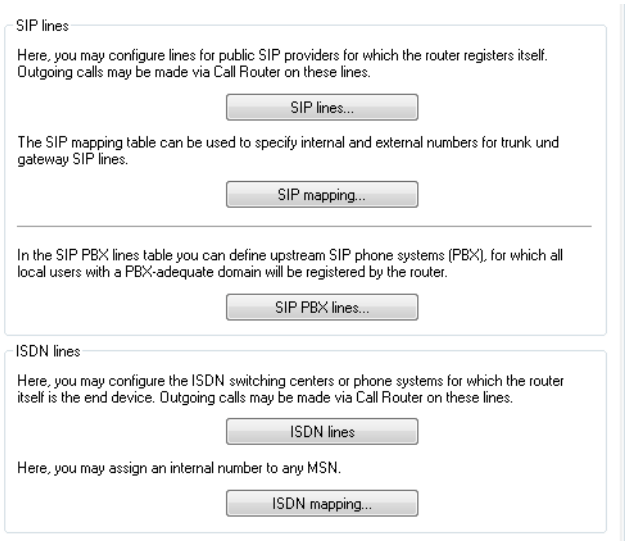
Send an e-mail for each call

Each time a call is made with the LANCOM VoIP router an e-mail is sent to the defined address.

Please consider that you can only use this feature if you have set up the appropriate SMTP account.

15.4.2 Line configuration

The parameters for the lines are configured under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines**.

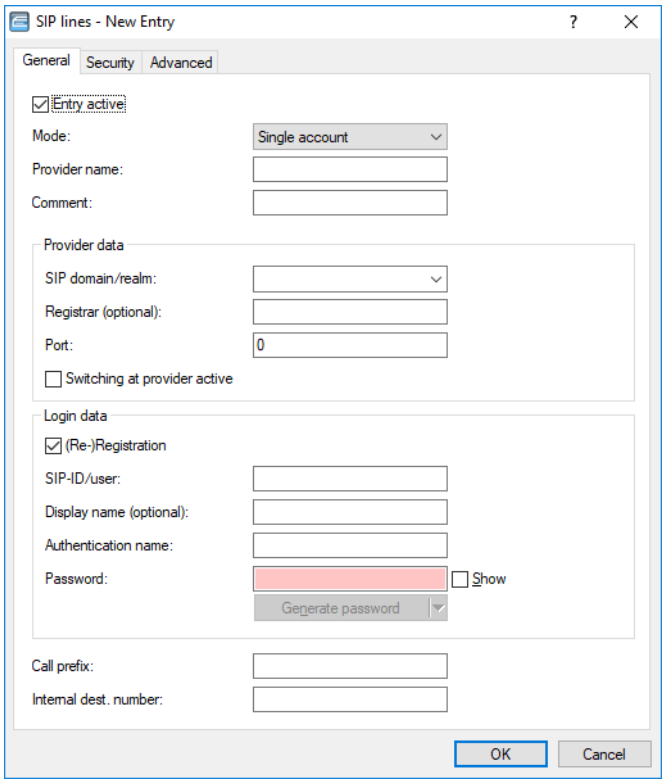


SIP lines

The device uses these lines to register with other SIP remote stations (usually SIP providers or remote gateways at SIP PBXs). The connection is made either over the Internet or a VPN tunnel.

The settings are configured under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** by clicking the button **SIP lines**.

The **General** tab contains the following configuration options:



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Mode

This selection specifies the operating mode of the SIP line. Possible values are:

Single account

Externally, the line behaves like a typical SIP account with a single public number. The number is registered with the service provider, the registration is refreshed at regular intervals (if (re-)registration has been activated for this SIP provider line). For outgoing calls, the calling-line number is replaced (masked) by the registered number. Incoming calls are sent to the configured internal destination number. The maximum number of simultaneous connections is either set by the provider or it depends on the available bandwidth and the codecs being used.

Trunk

Externally, the line acts like an extended SIP account with a main external telephone number and multiple extension numbers. The SIP ID is registered as the main switchboard number with the service provider and the registration is refreshed at regular intervals (if (re-)registration has been activated for this SIP provider line). For outgoing calls, the switchboard number acts as a prefix placed in front of each calling number (sender; SIP: "From:"). For incoming calls, the prefix is removed from the destination number (SIP: "To:"). The remaining digits are used as the internal extension number. In case of error (prefix not found, destination equals prefix) the call is forwarded to the internal destination number as configured. The maximum number of connections at any one time is limited only by the available bandwidth and possibly by the provider.

Gateway

Externally the line behaves like a typical SIP account with a single public number, the SIP ID. The number (SIP ID) is registered with the service provider and the registration is refreshed at regular intervals (if (re-)registration has been activated for this SIP provider line). For outgoing calls, the calling-line number (sender) is replaced (masked) by the registered number (SIP ID in SIP: "From:") and sent in a separate field (SIP: "Contact:"). For incoming calls the dialed number (destination) is not modified. The maximum number of connections at any one time is limited only by the available bandwidth and possibly by the provider.

Link

Externally, the line behaves like a typical SIP account with a single public number (SIP ID). The number is registered with the service provider, the registration is refreshed at regular intervals (if (re-)registration has been activated for this SIP provider line). For outgoing calls, the calling-line number (sender; SIP: "From:") is not modified. For incoming calls, the dialed number (destination; SIP: "To:") is not modified. The maximum number of connections at any one time is limited only by the available bandwidth and possibly by the provider.

Table for number translation:

Single account	SIP number incoming to the line	SIP number sent from the line
Outgoing call	"From:"	The number registered at the provider (User ID)
Incoming call	"To:"	User ID

Trunk	SIP number incoming to the line	SIP number sent from the line
Outgoing call	"From:"	Switchboard number (User-ID) + "From:"
Incoming call	Switchboard number (User-ID) + "To:"	"To:" as internal extension

Gateway	SIP number incoming to the line	SIP number sent from the line
Outgoing call	"From:"	The number registered at the provider (User ID)

Gateway	SIP number incoming to the line	SIP number sent from the line
	"From:"	"Contact:"
Incoming call	"To:"	"To:"

Link	SIP number incoming to the line	SIP number sent from the line
Outgoing call	"From:"	"From:"
Incoming call	"To:"	"To:"

Name

The name of the line: This may not be the same as another line (SIP provider, ISDN or SIP PBX) configured on the device.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

SIP domain/realm

SIP domain/realm of the upstream device. Provided the remote device supports DNS service records for SIP, this setting is sufficient to determine the proxy, outbound proxy, port and registrar automatically. This is generally the case for typical SIP provider services.

Registrar

The SIP registrar is the point at the SIP provider that accepts the login with the authentication data for this account.

This field can remain empty unless the SIP provider specifies otherwise. The registrar is then determined by sending DNS SRV requests to the configured SIP domain/realm (this is often not the case for SIP services in a corporate network/VPN, i.e. the value must be explicitly set).

Outbound proxy

The SIP provider's outbound proxy accepts all SIP-call signaling that originates from the device for the duration of the connection.

This field can remain empty unless the SIP provider specifies otherwise. In this case, the outbound proxy is identical to the registrar. This is a typical configuration for SIP-provider offerings.

Port

This is the remote port used to communicate with the provider.

Switching at provider active

Call switching (transfer call) between two remote subscribers can be handled by the device itself (media proxy) or it can be passed on to the exchange at the provider if both subscribers can be reached on this SIP provider line. The advantage of this is that the LANCOM VoIP router no longer requires the bandwidth. Otherwise, the media proxy in the device switches the media flows, such as when connecting two SIP provider lines.

Switching at the provider will only work if both connections are routed via the same provider line.

An overview of the main SIP providers supporting this function is available in the Support area of our Internet site.

(Re-) registration

This activates the (repeated) registration of the SIP provider line. Registration can also be used for line monitoring.

To use (re-) registration, set the line monitoring method on the **Advanced** tab to "Register" or "Automatic". The device renews its registration after the monitoring interval expires. If the provider's SIP registrar suggests a different interval, the devices uses this value automatically.

SIP-ID/user

Telephone number of the SIP account or name of the user (SIP URI).

For a SIP trunking account, the switchboard number is entered here. For incoming calls, any numerals after the switchboard number are interpreted as extension numbers (DDI) and these are passed to the call router. For outgoing calls, DDI numbers received from the call router are combined with the switchboard number. This access data is used to register the line (single account, trunk, link, gateway), but not the individual local users with their individual registration details. If individual users (SIP, ISDN, analog) are to register with an upstream device using the data stored either there or on the terminal device, then a SIP-PBX line should be set up.

Display name

Name for display on the telephone being called.

Normally this value should not be set as incoming calls have a display name set by the SIP provider, and outgoing calls are set with the local client or call source (which may be overwritten by the user settings for display name, if applicable). This settings is often used to transmit additional information (such as the original calling number when calls are forwarded) that may be useful for the person called. In the case of single-line SIP accounts, some providers require an entry that is identical to the display name defined in the registration details, or the SIP ID (e.g. T-Online). This access data is used to register the line (single account, trunk, link, gateway), but not the individual local users with their individual registration details. If individual users (SIP, ISDN, analog) are to register with an upstream device using the data stored either there or on the terminal device, then a SIP-PBX line should be set up.

Authentication name

Name for authentication to the upstream SIP device (provider/SIP PBX).

This access data is used to register the line (single account, trunk, link, gateway), but not the individual local users with their individual registration details. If individual users (SIP, ISDN, analog) are to register with an upstream device using the data stored either there or on the terminal device, then a SIP-PBX line should be set up.

Password

The password for authentication at the SIP registrar and SIP proxy at the provider. For lines without (re-)registration, the password may be omitted under certain circumstances.

This access data is used to register the line (single account, trunk, link, gateway), but not the individual local users with their individual registration details. If individual users (SIP, ISDN, analog) are to register with an upstream device using the data stored either there or on the terminal device, then a SIP-PBX line should be set up.

Call prefix

The device places a call-prefix number in front of the caller number (CLI; SIP "From:") for all incoming calls on this SIP line. This generates unique telephone numbers for return calls.

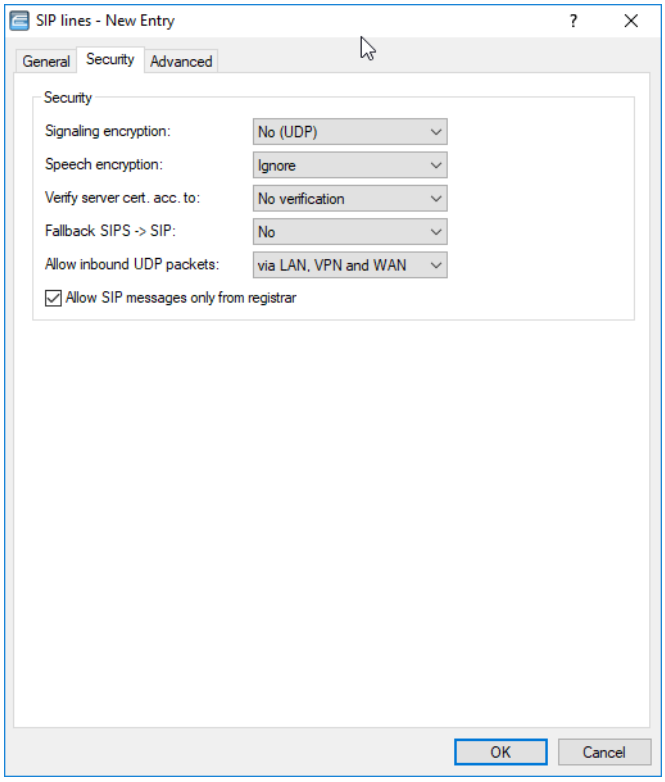
For example; you add a number here, which the call router analyzes (and subsequently removes) to select the line to be used for the return call.

Internal destination number

The effect of this field depends upon the mode set for the line:

- If the line is set to "Single account" mode, all incoming calls on this line with this number as the destination (SIP: "To:") are transferred to the call router.
- If the mode is set to "Trunk", the destination number is determined by removing the trunk's switchboard number. If an error occurs, the call will be supplemented with the number entered in this field (SIP: "To:") are transferred to the call router.
- If mode is set to "Gateway" or "Link" the value entered in this field has no effect.

The **Security** tab contains the following configuration options:



Signaling encryption

This setting determines the protocol used for signaling encryption (SIP/SIPS) for communications with the provider.

Signaling encryption	
UDP	All SIP packets are transmitted connectionless. Most providers support this setting.
TCP	All SIP packets are transmitted connection-oriented. The device establishes a TCP connection to the provider and maintains it for as long as it stays registered. Specialized providers, such as the providers of SIP trunks, support or force this setting.
TLS	Transmission is the same as with TCP, but all of the SIP packets are encrypted all the way to the provider.

Speech encryption

This setting determines if and how the speech data (RTP/SRTP) is encrypted when communicating with the provider.

Speech encryption

Reject	Encryption is not available for outgoing calls. Incoming calls with an encryption proposal are rejected. The speech channel is not encrypted.
Ignore	Encryption is not available for outgoing calls. Incoming calls with an encryption proposal are accepted. The speech channel is not encrypted.
Prefer	Encryption is offered for outgoing calls. Incoming calls without an encryption proposal are accepted. The speech channel is only encrypted if the remote peer also supports encryption.
Force	Encryption is offered for outgoing calls. Incoming calls without an encryption proposal are rejected. The speech channel is either encrypted or is not established.

If you require the encrypted transmission of speech data, the signaling must also use an encrypted channel. Please note that the use of SRTP is no guarantee of end-to-end encryption.

Verify server cert. acc. to:

With this setting, you specify whether the certificate of the SIP server is verified against certain Certificate Authorities (CAs). CA certificates from globally recognized certificate chains are updated with LCOS updates. They can also be manually updated by truststore updates.

Server certificate

No verification	The server certificate is not verified. All valid server certificates are accepted, whichever CA they were signed by. This setting is useful for accepting self-signed certificates.
All trusted CAs	The server certificate is verified against all CAs known to the device. These include all CAs that LCOS "knows" to be trusted and also those from the VoIP server certificate slots 1 to 3. The encrypted connection is only established if one of these certificates is validated successfully.
VoIP cert. slot 1	A check is made to see whether the server certificate was signed by the CA whose certificate was uploaded to slot 1 of the VoIP certificates.
VoIP cert. slot 2	A check is made to see whether the server certificate was signed by the CA whose certificate was uploaded to slot 2 of the VoIP certificates.
VoIP cert. slot 3	A check is made to see whether the server certificate was signed by the CA whose certificate was uploaded to slot 3 of the VoIP certificates.
Telekom-Shared-Business-CA4	With this setting, the device only accepts server certificates signed by the Telekom Shared Business CA4 CA. Use this setting for SIP trunk connections from Deutsche Telekom.

Fallback SIPS > SIP

No

No fallback to an unencrypted connection is performed. If it is not possible to establish an encrypted connection to the VoIP provider, the line remains unregistered.

UDP

As a rule, encrypted SIP connections are made with the TCP protocol and unencrypted connections are made with the UDP protocol. This setting switches directly to an unencrypted UDP connection if the encrypted TCP connection cannot be established.

Complete

If an encrypted TCP connection with the configured TLS version cannot be established, then attempts are made to establish an unencrypted TCP connection, and finally a UDP connection in order to register the VoIP line.

This setting provides the best compatibility, but may lead to a longer registration time.

Allow inbound UDP packets

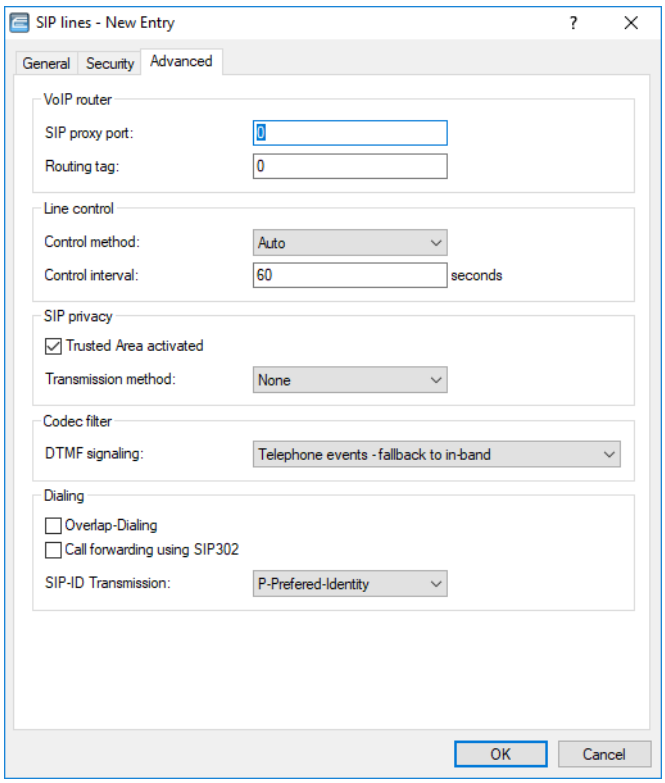
If the provider line uses UDP to communicate with the registrar, it receives UDP packets on the desired local port. With this setting you specify the network context in which a UDP packet is accepted. The device only accepts a packet from the WAN / VPN / LAN if you have activated the corresponding setting. Otherwise the packet is dropped.

Allow SIP messages only from registrar (strict mode)

Enable this mode if the device is to accept incoming SIP messages only from addresses that belong to the selected domain or the selected registrar (DNS).

Please bear in mind that a high degree of compatibility is only assured if this feature is disabled. Incoming calls signaled by the VoIP provider are not switched through to the internal subscribers if the associated server/IP addresses do not match the registrar or the outbound proxy.

On the tab **Advanced** you configure the SIP proxy, the line monitoring, and the calling line identification restriction.



SIP proxy port

This is the local port used by the SIP-proxy device to communicate with the remote station.

By default "0" is set here. The port is dynamically selected from the pool of available port numbers. You can also specify of a port in the range of "1" to "65535".

Routing tag

This routing tag selects a certain route in the routing table for connections to this SIP server.

Control method

Specifies the line monitoring method. Line monitoring checks if a SIP provider line is available. The Call Router can make use of the monitoring status to initiate a change to a backup line. The monitoring method sets the way in which the status is checked. Possible values are:

Automatic

The method is set automatically (default).

Deactivated

No monitoring. The line is reported as available when the option (re)registration is disabled. Otherwise it will be considered to be available only after a successful registration. This setting does not allow the actual line availability to be monitored.

Register

Monitoring by means of register requests during the registration process. This setting also requires **(Re-)registration** to be activated for this line.

Options

Monitoring via Options Requests. This involves regular polling of the remote station. Depending on the response the line is considered to be available or unavailable. This setting is well suited, for example, for lines without registration.

Monitoring interval

The monitoring interval in seconds. This value affects the line monitoring with option request. The monitoring interval must be set to at least 60 seconds. This defines the time period that passes before the monitoring method is used again.

Trusted area activated

Specifies the remote station on this line (provider) as "Trusted Area". In this trusted area, the caller ID is not concealed from the caller, even if this is requested by the settings on the line (CLIR) or in the device. In the event of a connection over a trusted line, the Caller ID is first transmitted in accordance with the selected privacy policy and is only removed in the final exchange before the remote subscriber. This means, for example, that Caller ID can be used for billing purposes within the trusted area. This function is interesting for providers using a VoIP router to extend their own managed networks all the way to the connection for the VoIP equipment.

Please note that not all providers support this function.

Transmission method

Specifies the method used for transmitting the caller ID in the separate SIP-header field. Possible values are:

None

The default setting, so no transmission takes place.

RFC3325

Transmission according to "P-Preferred-Id/P-Asserted-Id".

IETF-Draft-Sip-Privacy-04

Transmission according to "IETF-Draft-Sip-Privacy-04" by means of RPID (Remote Party ID).

DTMF signaling

Depending on the requirements, it may not be sufficient to transmit “inband” DTMF tones if a SIP receiver cannot recognize these. In this case, it is possible to configure an alternative method of DTMF transmission for All-IP connections.

Only in-band (in audio)

The tones are transmitted as DTMF tones (G.711) in the RTP (voice) stream.

Only SIP info

The DTMF tones are transmitted “out-of-band” as a SIP-info message with the parameters `Signal` and `Duration` (as per RFC 2976). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

Telephone events – fallback to in-band (default)

The DTMF tones are transmitted as specially marked events within the RTP stream (as per RFC 4733). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

If the call-initialization SDP message does not include `telephone-event` signaling, negotiations fallback to inband transfer as per G.711.

Telephone events – fallback to SIP info

The DTMF tones are transmitted as specially marked events within the RTP stream (as per RFC 4733). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

If the call-initialization SDP message does not include `telephone-event` signaling, negotiations fallback to transfer as per SIP-Info message.

Overlap dialing

Overlap dialing significantly reduces the waiting time between the number being dialed and the call being established.

With overlap dialing disabled, your LANCOM device uses an overlap timer. The factory setting for this is 6 seconds. If the timer expires without you dialing any further numbers, the number entered so far is considered to be complete and the call is established.

With overlap dialing enabled on the line, the portions of the dialed number are already sent to the All-IP provider.

If the All-IP provider responds with "484 number incomplete", the Voice Call Manager collects any additional dialed digits and sends them to the exchange again.

In this way, calls are established as quickly as possible without the 6 second delay, as you are accustomed to from your ISDN connection.

However, since this functionality is not supported by all SIP providers, overlap dialing has to be configured for each individual SIP line.

Call forwarding using SIP 302

Activates call forwarding via SIP 302 at the SIP provider. See also *Call forwarding (call deflection / partial rerouting) at the SIP trunk (SIP 302)* on page 1323.

SIP-ID transmission

The SIP protocol has various options for transmitting a line's number and identifier to the SIP trunk provider. It may be necessary to adjust the transmission of the information to the VoIP provider.

The **SIP-ID transmission** switch allows you to configure the structure of the SIP packet and specify the field used for SIP ID transmission.

Possible values:

P-Preferred Identity (DEFAULT)

The SIP ID of the connection is transmitted in the P-Preferred-Identity field.

The source identifier transmitted to the called number is entered into the FROM field of the SIP packet.

FROM

The SIP ID of the connection is transmitted in the FROM field.

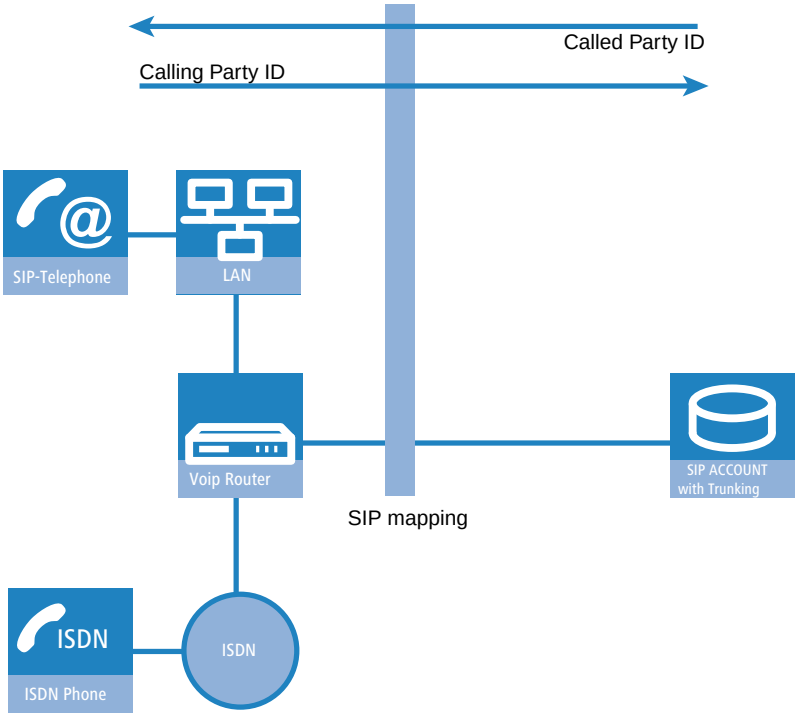
The source identifier transmitted to the called number is entered into the P-Preferred-Identity field of the SIP packet.

SIP mapping

The entries made under SIP mapping establish a series of rules for number translation to SIP lines in the trunk or gateway mode.

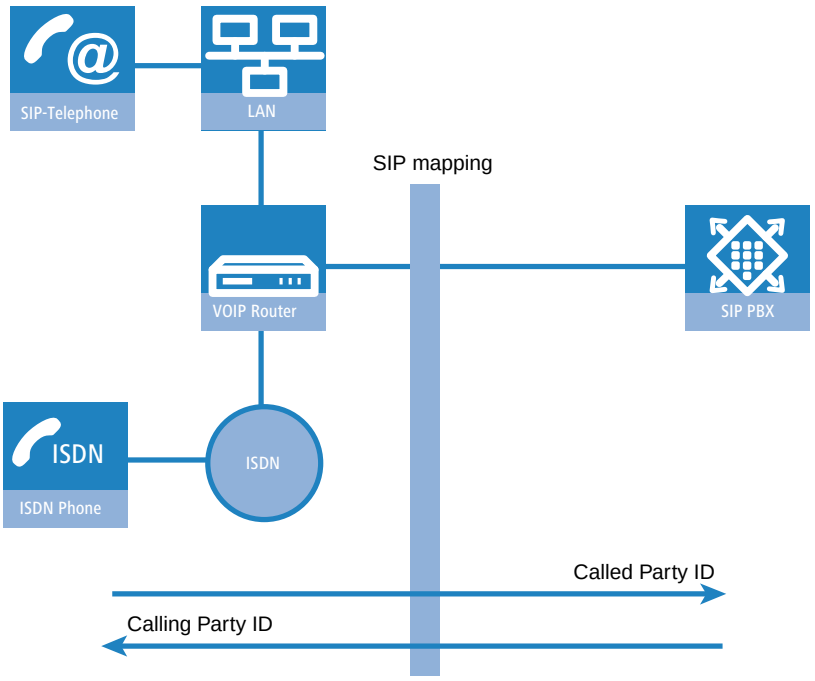
- A SIP line in trunk mode is used for mediating between internal numbers and the range of telephone numbers offered by a SIP account.
  - For incoming calls, the destination number (called party ID) is modified. The internal number is used if the called party ID matches with the external telephone number.
  - For outgoing calls, the calling party ID is modified. The external number is used if the calling party ID matches with the internal telephone number.

For SIP mapping on trunk lines, only the extension (DDI) is mapped. The extension is interpreted as those numerals which follow the switchboard number (SIP ID or SIP line).

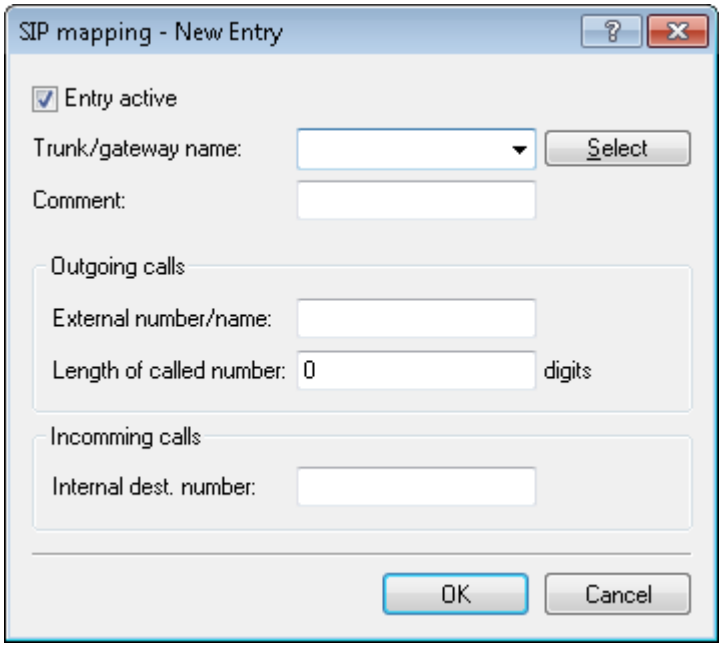


- For a SIP line in gateway mode, the telephone number plan of the upstream SIP PBX is adapted to the internal numbers in the call router.
  - For incoming calls (from the SIP line), the calling party ID is modified. The internal number is used if the calling party ID matches with the external telephone number.
  - For outgoing calls (to the upstream PBX), the destination number (called party ID) is modified. The external number is used if the called party ID matches with the internal telephone number.

For SIP mapping to gateway lines, the full telephone number is mapped. Depending on the configuration, the call number arriving at the ISDN interface can be subjected to further mapping (ISDN mapping).



SIP mapping is configured under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** by clicking the button **SIP mapping**.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Trunk/gateway name

Name of the line which is the destination of the call number mapping.

Comment

Comment about this rule.

External number / name

Call number within the range of those used by the SIP trunk account or upstream SIP PBX.

Length of called number

This value defines the number of numerals required for a called number to be regarded as complete. It only applies to SIP gateway lines with entries that end in a # symbol.

For an outgoing call, the external called number generated from this entry is automatically regarded as complete according to the defined number of numerals, and then forwarded. This process speeds up the dialing process. Alternatively, the called number is regarded as complete when:

- The user concludes the dialed number with a # symbol, or
- a precisely matching entry was found in the SIP mapping table without a # symbol, or
- the wait time expires.

By setting the length of called number to '0' you deactivate the premature dialing of the called number based on its length.

Internal destination number

Telephone number in the range of the VoIP router.

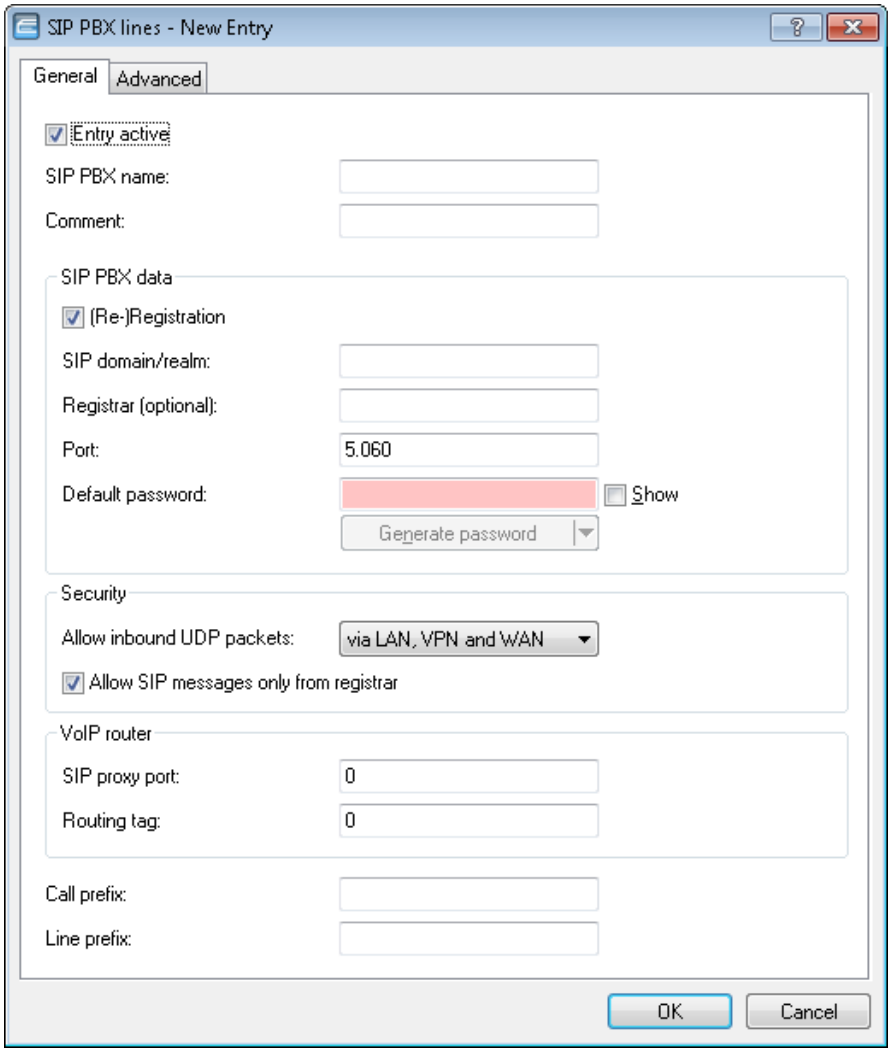
Using the # symbol as a placeholder allows blocks of numbers to be captured by one rule.

SIP PBX lines

These lines are used by the device to connect to upstream SIP PBXs. Connections are usually directed via VPN.

The settings are configured under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** by clicking the button **SIP PBX lines**.

The **General** tab contains the following configuration options:



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

SIP PBX name

Name of the line. This may not be the same as any other line (ISDN or SIP provider, or SIP PBX) configured on the device.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

(Re-) registration

This activates the (repeated) registration of the SIP PBX line. With (re-)registration activated, it is also possible to operate line monitoring.

To use (re-) registration, set the line monitoring method on the **Advanced** tab to "Register". The device renews its registration after the monitoring interval expires. If the SIP registrar of the SIP PBX suggests a different interval, the devices uses this value automatically.

SIP domain/realm

SIP domain/realm of the upstream SIP PBX.

Registrar (optional):

The SIP registrar is the point that accepts the login with the configured authentication data for this account in the SIP PBX.

Outbound proxy (optional)

Port

Port of the upstream SIP PBX to which the device sends the SIP packets.

Make sure that you activate this port in the firewall in order for the connection to work.

Default password

Shared password for registering with the SIP PBX. This password is required under the following circumstances:

- When SIP subscribers should be able to register at the PBX even without their own SIP credentials in the SIP user table of the device;
- When SIP users are able to register at the device without a password (no local authentication) but have access to the upstream SIP PBX by means of the shared password. In this case, the domain of SIP users must match the domain of SIP PBX line.

Allow inbound UDP packets

If the provider line uses UDP to communicate with the registrar, it receives UDP packets on the desired local port. With this setting you specify the network context in which a UDP packet is accepted. The device only accepts a packet from the WAN / VPN / LAN if you have activated the corresponding setting. Otherwise the packet is dropped.

Allow SIP messages only from registrar

Enable this checkbox if you want to receive SIP messages only through the registrar.

SIP proxy port

This is the local port used by the device proxy to communicate with the upstream SIP PBX. If this is set to "0", the device expects packets from the SIP PBX to arrive at the local SIP UDP server port (5060).

Packet assignment is made faster by configuring a fixed, unique local port and entering this as the destination port in the SIP PBX.

Routing tag

Routing tag for selecting a certain route in the routing table for connections to this SIP PBX.

Call prefix

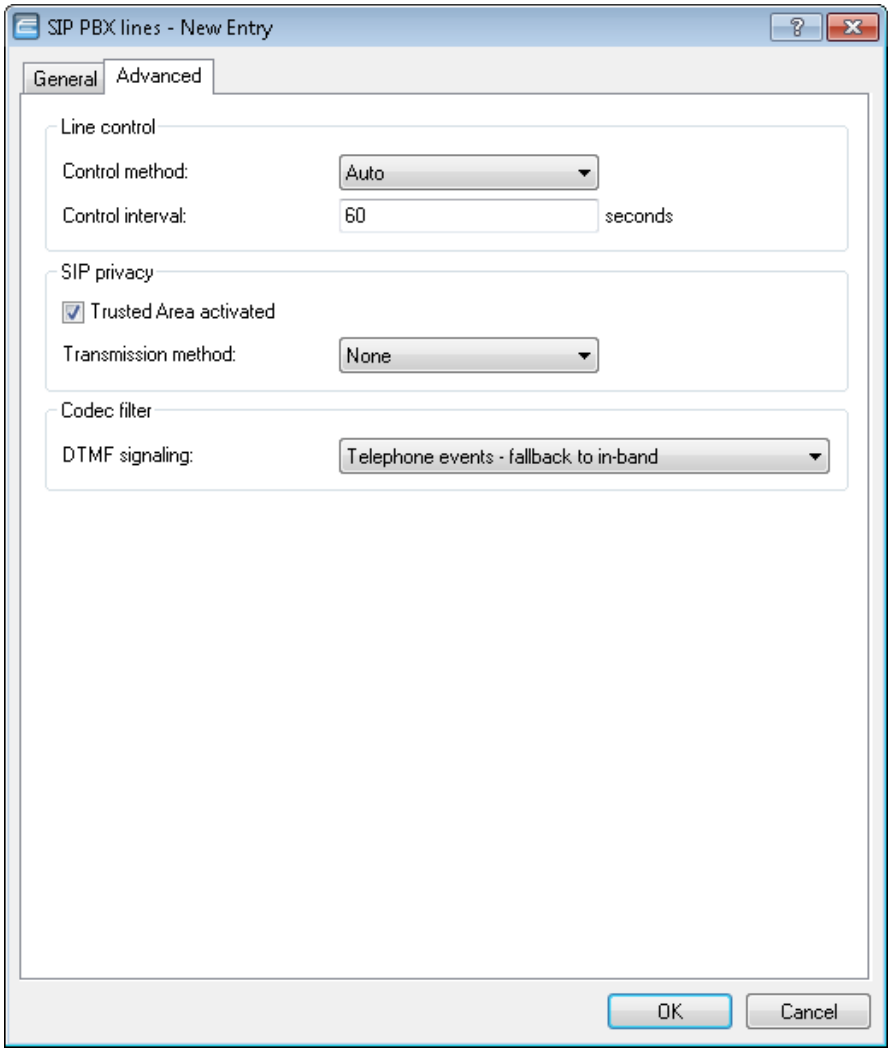
The device places a call-prefix number in front of the caller number (CLI; SIP "From:") for all incoming calls on this SIP PBX line. This generates unique telephone numbers for return calls.

For example; you add a number here, which the call router analyzes (and subsequently removes) to select the line to be used for the return call.

Line prefix

For outgoing calls on this line, the device inserts this prefix in front of the calling number in order to create a complete telephone number that is valid for this line. For incoming calls, the device removes this prefix, if applicable.

On the tab **Advanced** you configure the line monitoring, as well as the calling line identification restriction.



Control method

Specifies the line monitoring method. Line monitoring checks if a SIP PBX line is available. The Call Router can make use of the monitoring status to initiate a change to a backup line. The monitoring method sets the way in which the status is checked. Possible values are:

Automatic

The method is set automatically.

Deactivated

No monitoring. The line is always reported as being available. This setting does not allow the actual line availability to be monitored.

Register

Monitoring by means of register requests during the registration process. This setting also requires **(Re-)registration** to be activated for this line.

Options

Monitoring via Options Requests. This involves regular polling of the remote station. Depending on the response the line is considered to be available or unavailable. This setting is well suited for e.g. lines without registration.

Monitoring interval

The monitoring interval in seconds. This value affects the line monitoring with option request. The monitoring interval must be set to at least 60 seconds. This defines the time period that passes before the monitoring method is used again.

Trusted area activated

Specifies the remote station on this line (provider) as "Trusted Area". In this trusted area, the caller ID is not concealed from the caller, even if this is requested by the settings on the line (CLIR) or in the device. In the event of a connection over a trusted line, the Caller ID is first transmitted in accordance with the selected privacy policy and is only removed in the final exchange before the remote subscriber. This means, for example, that Caller ID can be used for billing purposes within the trusted area. This function is interesting for providers using a VoIP router to extend their own managed networks all the way to the connection for the VoIP equipment.

Please note that not all providers support this function.

Transmission method

Specifies the method used for transmitting the caller ID in the separate SIP-header field. Possible values are:

None

The default setting, so no transmission takes place.

RFC3325

Transmission according to "P-Preferred-Id/P-Asserted-Id".

IETF-Draft-Sip-Privacy-04

Transmission according to "IETF-Draft-Sip-Privacy-04" by means of RPID (Remote Party ID).

DTMF signaling

Depending on the requirements, it may not be sufficient to transmit “inband” DTMF tones if a SIP receiver cannot recognize these. In this case, it is possible to configure an alternative method of DTMF transmission for All-IP connections.

Only in-band (in audio)

The tones are transmitted as DTMF tones (G.711) in the RTP (voice) stream.

Only SIP info

The DTMF tones are transmitted “out-of-band” as a SIP-info message with the parameters `Signal` and `Duration` (as per RFC 2976). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

Telephone events - fallback to in-band (default)

The DTMF tones are transmitted as specially marked events within the RTP stream (as per RFC 4733). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

If the call-initialization SDP message does not include `telephone-event` signaling, negotiations fallback to inband transfer as per G.711.

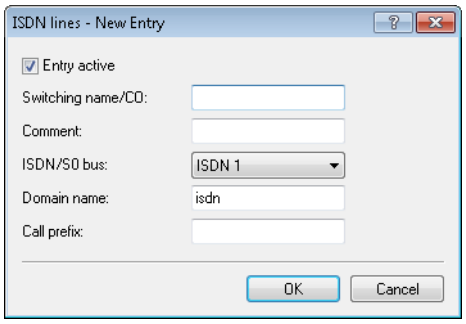
Telephone events - fallback to SIP info

The DTMF tones are transmitted as specially marked events within the RTP stream (as per RFC 4733). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

If the call-initialization SDP message does not include `telephone-event` signaling, negotiations fallback to transfer as per SIP-Info message.

ISDN lines

The ISDN lines are configured under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** by clicking the button **ISDN lines**.



Entry active

Enables or disables the ISDN line.

Switching name/CO

Name of the line. May not be identical to another line that is configured in the device.

Comment

Comment on the line

ISDN/S0 bus

ISDN interface(s) with which the device is connected to the ISDN network. The line entered here are usually configured as ISDN-TE.

Domain name

Domain of the "SIP world" used by the device to manage calls from and to the ISDN line.

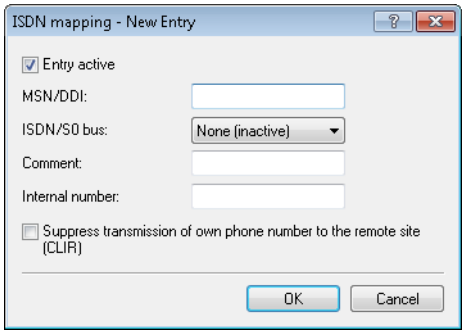
Call prefix

The device places a call-prefix number in front of the caller number (CLI; SIP "From:") for all incoming calls on this ISDN line. This generates unique telephone numbers for return calls.

For example; you add a number here, which the call router analyzes (and subsequently removes) to select the line to be used for the return call.

ISDN mapping

With ISDN mapping, you assign external ISDN telephone numbers (MSN or DDI) to the telephone numbers that are used internally. To do this navigate to **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** and click the button **ISDN mapping**.



Entry active

Enables or disables the external telephone number.

MSN/DDI

This line's external telephone number in the ISDN network.

The device forwards incoming calls for this MSN to the internal number configured below. For outgoing calls, the device replaces its own number with the MSN configured here.

- MSN: Number of the telephone line
- DDI (Direct Dialing in): Telephone extension number if the connection is configured as a point-to-point line.

By using the # character as a placeholder, you can use a single entry to address entire groups of numbers, e.g. when using extension numbers

ISDN/S0 bus

ISDN interface(s) used for connecting terminal devices to the device. These line have to be configured as ISDN-NT.

Comment

Comment on the external telephone number.

Internal Number

Internal telephone number of the ISDN telephone or name of the user (SIP URL).

For incoming calls, this is the SIP name or internal telephone number of the telephone to which the call from this interface is switched with the corresponding MSN/DDI. For outgoing calls, the SIP name is replaced by the MSN/DDI of the corresponding entry.

By using the # character as a placeholder, you can use a single entry to address entire groups of numbers, e.g. when using extension numbers.

Hide your telephone number from the person being called (CLIR)

When enabled, the device does not reveal your telephone number to the called party.

15.4.3 Configuration of users

Local users are the terminal devices that are connected to the VoIP device. Users are categorized as follows:

SIP users

Users who are connected to the LAN by means of SIP. For the configuration of the user, it is unimportant if the LAN is accessed locally or via VPN (via the Internet). Along with SIP phones, you have also the option of setting up a SIP PBX as a user (internal SIP trunk connection).

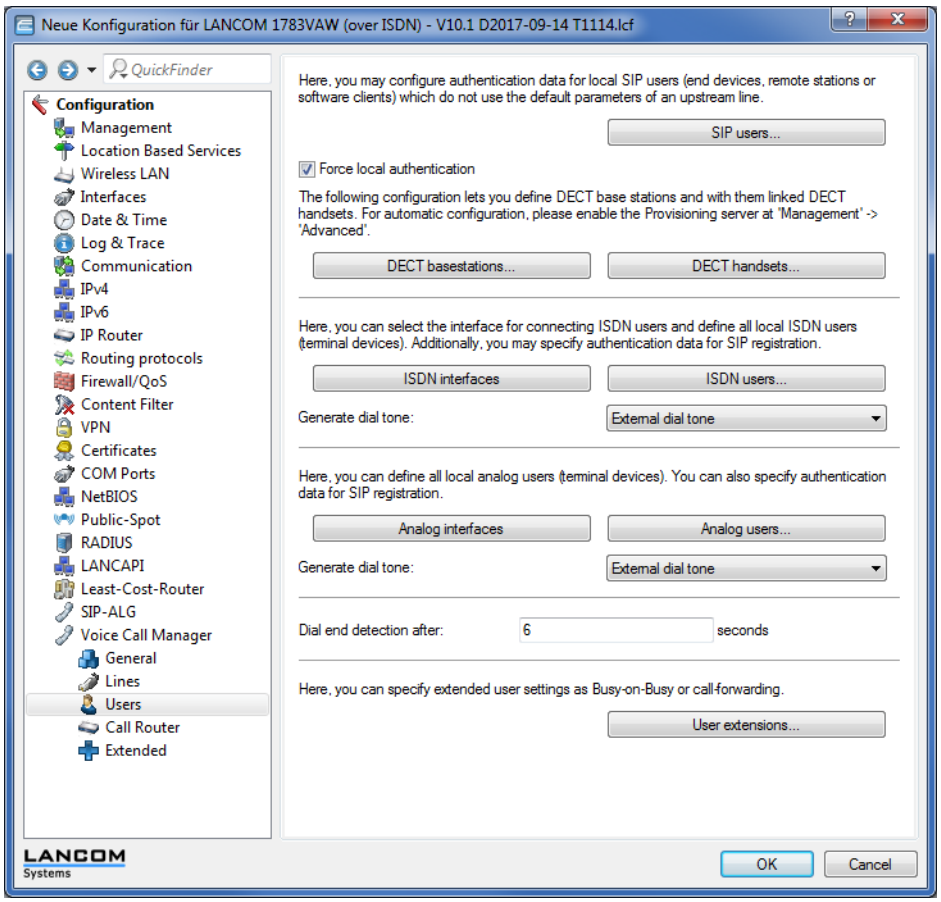
ISDN users

Users who are connected by ISDN. These users use the SIP gateway to telephone using the VoIP function.

Analog users

Users who are connected via analog interfaces. These users use the SIP gateway to telephone using the VoIP function.

Users are configured with LANconfig under **Voice Call Manager** > **Users**.



SIP users

The SIP proxy usually accepts a registration from all SIP users who register themselves with a valid domain and are known to the system as a SIP user. If under **Voice Call Manager** > **Users** in the section **SIP users** you enable the option **Force local authentication**, the only subscribers who can register at the SIP proxy are those stored in a user table with the appropriate access data.

Automatic registration without entering a password is restricted to the SIP users in the LAN. SIP users from the WAN, as well as ISDN and analog users, are required to authenticate themselves by using the password in their corresponding user entry.

The button **SIP users** opens the dialog for configuring the authentication data of the SIP users (terminal equipment, remote stations or software clients) that do not use the default parameters of an upstream SIP PBX line.

Depending on the model you can create different numbers of SIP users, whereby identical names or identical numbers are not permitted.

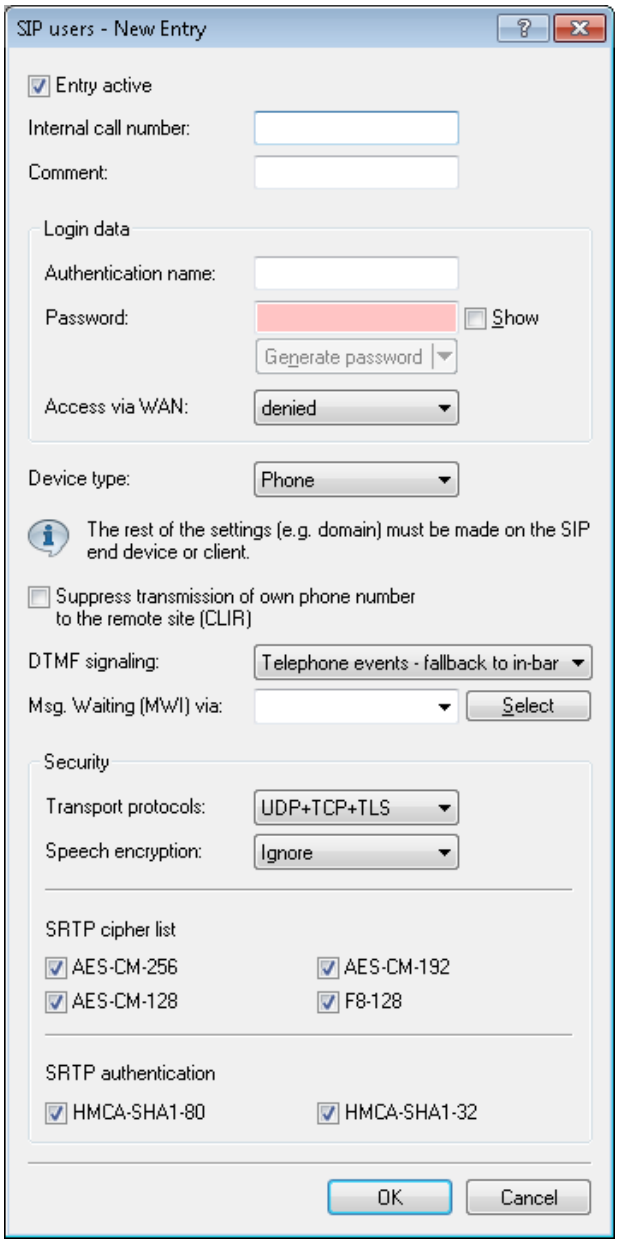


Figure 21: Adding a new entry to the SIP user table

The domain that is used by the SIP subscriber is usually configured in the terminal equipment itself.

Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Internal telephone number

- Telephone number of the SIP phone
- Name of the user (SIP URI)

- Switchboard number of the SIP PBX, followed by a #. Your SIP PBX must be in the same network as your device, either locally or connected via VPN (internal SIP trunk connection).

Comment

Comment about this SIP user.

Authentication name

Name for authentication at the SIP proxy, and also to any upstream SIP PBX when the user's domain is the same as the domain of a SIP PBX line. This name is required if registration is mandatory (e.g. when logging in to an upstream SIP PBX or when **Force local authentication** is set for local users).

Password

Password for authentication to the SIP proxy, and also to any upstream SIP PBX, when the user's domain is the same as the domain of a SIP PBX line. It is possible for users to log in to the local SIP proxy without authentication (**Force local authentication** is deactivated for SIP users) and where applicable to an upstream SIP PBX using a shared password (**Standard password** on the SIP PBX line).

Access from WAN

Permission for SIP users to authenticate via a WAN connection. Possible values are:

- Denied (default)
- Only via VPN

Device type

Specify what type of device is used by the SIP user.

Hide your telephone number from the person being called

Switches the transmission of the calling-line identifier on/off.

DTMF signaling

Depending on the requirements, it may not be sufficient to transmit "inband" DTMF tones if a SIP receiver cannot recognize these. In this case, it is possible to configure an alternative method of DTMF transmission for All-IP connections.

Only in-band (in audio)

The tones are transmitted as DTMF tones (G.711) in the RTP (voice) stream.

Only SIP info

The DTMF tones are transmitted "out-of-band" as a SIP-info message with the parameters `Signal` and `Duration` (as per RFC 2976). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

Telephone events - fallback to in-band (default)

The DTMF tones are transmitted as specially marked events within the RTP stream (as per RFC 4733). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

If the call-initialization SDP message does not include `telephone-event` signaling, negotiations fallback to inband transfer as per G.711.

Telephone events - fallback to SIP info

The DTMF tones are transmitted as specially marked events within the RTP stream (as per RFC 4733). There is no parallel transmission of G.711 tones.

If the call-initialization SDP message does not include `telephone-event` signaling, negotiations fallback to transfer as per SIP-Info message.

Msg. Waiting (MWI) via

The presence of voice messages left on your provider's online mailbox are signaled by notifications on the device. Signaling occurs in different ways depending on the terminal type. Select the line for which this function should be enabled from the list of configured SIP lines under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** > **SIP users**.

Notification only occurs if the provider supports this function.

Transport protocols

Select a protocol used by this user to communicate with the local SIP server. If the appropriate protocol is not selected, SIP requests from this user will be rejected with a SIP error response (SIP/406). This ensures that no users are able to register with a protocol that has not been allowed here.

UDP

All SIP packets to this SIP user are transmitted via connectionless UDP. Most SIP users support this setting.

TCP

All SIP packets to this SIP user are transmitted via connection-oriented TCP. The TCP connection is maintained for the duration of the registration.

TLS

All SIP packets to this SIP user are transmitted connection-oriented. Also, all SIP packets are encrypted.

Speech encryption

Use this entry to specify the protocol used to transmit the voice data (RTP/SRTP) of a call to the local SIP server.

Reject

There is no encryption proposal for calls by this user. Calls by this user with an encryption proposal are rejected. The voice channel is never encrypted.

Ignore

There is no encryption proposal for calls by this user. However, calls from this user with an encryption proposal are accepted. However, the voice channel is never encrypted.

Prefer

Calls by this user cause an encryption proposal. Calls from this user without an encryption proposal are also accepted. The voice channel is only encrypted if the user supports encryption.

Force

Calls by this user cause an encryption proposal. Calls by this user without a corresponding encryption proposal are ignored. The speech channel is either encrypted or is not established.

If you require the encrypted transmission of voice data, the signaling must also use an encrypted channel. Otherwise an attack on the unsecured signaling could potentially expose the key for the voice data. Please be aware that your provider may decrypt your voice data and re-transmit it newly encrypted or even unencrypted. The use of SRTP is no guarantee of end-to-end encryption.

SRTP cipher list

Here you specify the encryption method used for communication with the user. Select one or more of the following methods:

AES-CM-256

Encryption is performed using AES256. The key length is 256 bits.

AES-CM-128

Encryption is performed using AES128. The key length is 128 bits.

AES-CM-192

Encryption is performed using AES192. The key length is 192 bits.

F8-128

Encryption is performed using F8-128. The key length is 128 bits.

SRTP authentication

With this setting you restrict the amount of (proposed or accepted) SRTP suites that are negotiated with the corresponding user. If you do not select one or more of the ciphers shown below for encrypting the SRTP packets, the device will never propose the corresponding SRTP suite(s) and they are never selected. In this way you can force the best possible encryption.

HMAC-SHA1-80

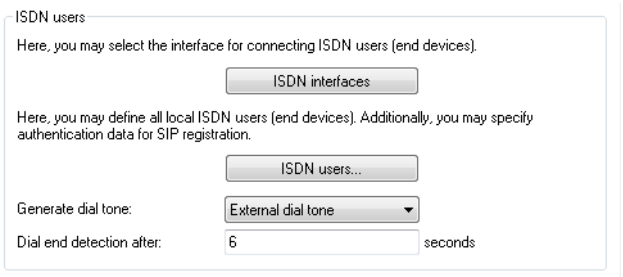
SIP-user authentication is performed with the hash algorithm HMAC-SHA1-80. The hash length is 80 bits.

HMAC-SHA1-32

SIP-user authentication is performed with the hash algorithm HMAC-SHA1-32. The hash length is 32 bits.

General settings for all ISDN users

Under **Voice Call Manager** > **Users** you configure the general settings for all ISDN users in the section **ISDN users**.



Generate dial tone

The dial tone determines the noise an ISDN user hears after lifting up the receiver. The "internal dial tone" is the same as the tone that a user hears at a PBX without spontaneous outside-line access (three short tones followed by a pause). The "external dial tone" is thus the same as the tone that indicates an external line when the receiver is lifted (constant tone without any interruptions). If necessary, adapt the dial tone for the users with spontaneous outside-line access to simulate the behavior of a standard outside line.

End dial detection after

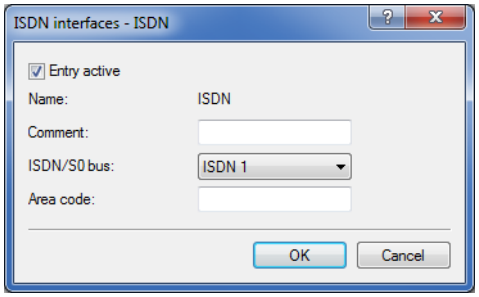
During dialing, this is the time in seconds taken by the device to wait for further digits, after which it takes a number to be complete and sends it to SIP.

If the entry is '0', ISDN users need to suffix the number with the '#' character.

The '#' sign also services to shorten the delay configured here.

ISDN interfaces

Click on the **ISDN interfaces** button to adjust the global settings for the interfaces used by the ISDN users. An ISDN T interface (external) or even an ISDN TE interface (internal) can be configured. The latter is the case if users of an upstream PBX are to be managed as local users.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Name

Interface to which the ISDN subscribers are connected.

Comment

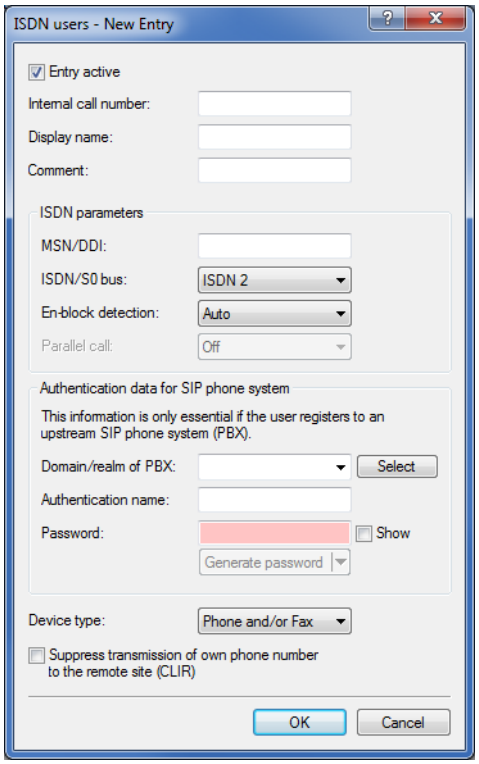
Comment on this entry.

ISDN/S0 bus

Interfaces for the ISDN users to establish a connection.

ISDN users

The ISDN user settings are configured by clicking on the button **ISDN users**.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Internal telephone number

Internal number of the ISDN telephone or name of the user (SIP URI).

By using the # character as a placeholder, you can use a single entry to address entire groups of numbers, e.g. when using extension numbers at a point-to-point connection.

User entries that use # characters to map user groups cannot be used for registration at an upstream PBX. This registration always demands a specific entry for the individual ISDN user.

Display name

Name for display on the telephone being called.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

MSN/DDI

Internal MSN that is used for this user on the internal ISDN bus.

- MSN: Number of the telephone connection if it is a point-to-multipoint connection.
- DDI (Direct Dialing in): Telephone extension number if the connection is configured as a point-to-point line.

By using the # character as a placeholder, you can use a single entry to address entire groups of numbers, e.g. when using extension numbers at a point-to-point connection.

User entries that use # characters to map user groups cannot be used for registration at an upstream PBX. This registration always demands a specific entry for the individual ISDN user.

ISDN/S0 bus

ISDN interface for the users to establish a connection.

En-bloc detection

With en-bloc dialing the device automatically detects that the dialed number is complete. A result of this is that the device places a call if it recognizes a group of digits as a contiguous block (e.g. for speed dialing). However, redialing is not an option.

Parallel call

If you use this feature, signaling occurs on all selected both ISDN lines. The call is accepted at the first telephone to pick up the call.

Domain/realm of PBX

Domain of an upstream SIP PBX when the ISDN user is to be logged in as a SIP user. The domain must be configured for a SIP PBX line in order for upstream login to be performed.

Authentication name

Name for authentication at any upstream SIP PBX when the user's domain is the same as the domain of a SIP PBX line.

Password

Password for authentication as a SIP user at any upstream SIP PBX when the user's domain is the same as the domain of a SIP PBX line. It is possible for ISDN users to log in to an upstream SIP PBX using a shared password (**Standard password** on the SIP PBX line).

Device type

Type of device connected.

Hide your telephone number from the person being called (CLIR)

Switches the transmission of the calling-line identifier on/off.

General settings for all analog users

LANconfig: **Voice Call Manager** > **Users**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **Voice-Call-Manager** > **General**

Generate dial tone

The dial tone determines the noise an analog user hears after lifting up the receiver. The "internal dial tone" is the same as the tone that a user hears at a PBX without spontaneous outside-line access (three short tones followed by a pause). The "external dial tone" is thus the same as the tone that indicates an external line when the receiver is lifted (constant tone without any interruptions). If necessary, adapt the dial tone for the users with spontaneous outside-line access to simulate the behavior of a standard outside line.

Analog interfaces

The internal analog interfaces (a/b ports) require configuration if they are to be used by local users (connection of terminal equipment).

LANconfig: **Voice Call Manager** > **Users** > **Analog interfaces**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **Voice-Call-Manager** > **Users** > **Interfaces**

Interface

An internal interface to which the analog subscribers are connected.

Entry active

Interface is active / not active.

Analog users

LANconfig: **Voice Call Manager** > **Users** > **Analog Users**

WEBconfig: **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **Voice-Call-Manager** > **Users** > **Analog Users**

Number/Name

Internal number of the analog telephone or name of the user (SIP URI).

Auth-name

Name for authentication at any upstream SIP PBX when the user's domain is the same as the domain of a SIP PBX line.

Display name

Name for display on the telephone being called.

Secret

Password for authentication as a SIP user to any upstream SIP PBX when the analog user's domain is the same as the domain of a SIP PBX line. It is possible for ISDN users to log in to an upstream SIP PBX using a shared password ("Standard password" on the SIP PBX line).

Ifc

Analog interface that should be used to establish the connection.

CLIR

Switches the transmission of the calling-line identifier on/off.

Metering pulse

The metering pulse is used in analog telephone networks to inform callers of the costs of their calls. With appropriate terminal equipment (e.g. telephone with charge display), the metering pulse is filtered out from the overall signal and this information is converted to display the call charge.

This option allows the metering pulse to be passed on to the analog user/equipment. It is possible for charge information from the ISDN telephone network to be transferred to an ISDN line and converted into an analog metering pulse.

Domain

Domain of an upstream SIP PBX when the analog user is to be logged in as a SIP user. The domain must be configured for a SIP PBX line in order for upstream login to be performed.

Device type

Type of device connected.

The type determines whether an analog connection should be converted into SIP T.38, where applicable. Selecting "Fax" or "Telephone/Fax" activates fax signal recognition that could result in an impairment of the connection quality for telephones. Therefore please select the corresponding type of device connected in order to ensure optimum quality.

Active

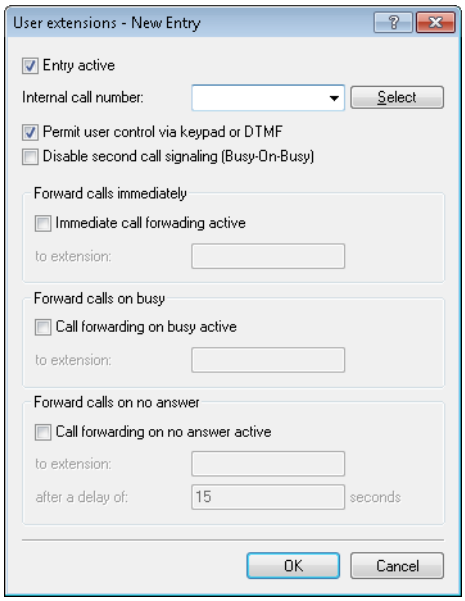
Activates or deactivates the entry.

Comment

Comment on this entry.

Extended user settings

Advanced user settings such as call waiting or call forwarding are configured here by clicking on the button **User extensions**.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Internal telephone number

The call forwarding applies to this telephone number or SIP-ID.

Call forwarding can be set up for all local users (SIP, ISDN or analog).

Enabling user control via keypad or DTMF

This activates or deactivates the option for users to configure their settings via the telephone.

Busy on busy

Prevents a second call from being connected to a terminal device, irrespective of whether "CW" (call-waiting indication) is active on the device or not; i.e. there is no "call waiting" signal. The second caller hears an engaged tone. This also applies where an internal telephone number supports multiple logins and just one of the possible terminal devices is already in use.

Call-forwarding unconditional (CFU)

Activates or deactivates the immediate forwarding of calls (CFU).

to extension

Destination for immediate unconditional call forwarding.

Forward calls on busy

Activates or deactivates call forwarding on "busy".

to extension

Destination for call forwarding on "busy".

Forward calls on no reply

Activates or deactivates the delayed forwarding of call (after waiting for no reply).

to number

Destination for call forwarding no reply.

After a delay of

Wait time for call forwarding on no reply. After this time period the call is forwarded to the destination number if the subscriber does not pick up the phone.

15.5 Call Manager Configuration

The Call Manager manages and connects the various subscribers and lines described above with one another. The Call Manager's main task is to determine the correct target subscriber for each call and to select a suitable line for this subscriber. To fulfill this task, the Call Manager mainly uses two table areas:

- The Call Routing table
- The tables of local subscribers

As the Call Manager usually switches between internal and external telephone networks with different number ranges, the Call Manager often has to modify the numbers that are dialed. This is known as number translation.

In the world of VoIP telephony it is possible to call numbers and names, such as "anyone@company.com". Although the following description refers to telephone numbers, this also includes telephone names unless specified otherwise.

The procedure known from internal extension lines is used, whereby connections to external subscribers start with a preceding '0'. The Call Manager processes calls to and from all registered subscribers and lines.

15.5.1 Process of call routing

The calls are switched in the following steps:

- Processing the calling number (Calling Party ID)

  First of all there is a check to see whether a numeric or alphanumeric number is available. Typical dialing separators such as "()-/" and <blank> are removed. A leading "+" is left in place. In this case, the number is still treated as a numeric number. If the check reveals any other alphanumerical character, the number is treated as alphanumeric and remains unchanged.

- Resolving the call in the call routing table

  After processing the Called Party ID, the call is passed over to the call-routing table. Entries in the call-routing table consist of sets of conditions and instructions. The entries are searched through and the first one that satisfies **all** of the conditions is executed.

- Resolution of the call with tables of local subscribers

  If no entry is found in the call-routing table, then the Call Manager searches through the list of local subscribers. If an entry is found here matching the number that is called, and that also has the appropriate destination domain, then the call is delivered to the corresponding subscriber.

  If no local subscriber is found for whom the number and destination domain match, another pass is made where it suffices for the telephone number of the local subscriber to match the called number; the destination domain is not considered.

- Resolution of the call with default entries in the call-routing table

  If the previous passes through the call routing table and the lists with the local subscribers were unsuccessful, the call is checked again in the call routing table. This pass only takes the default routes into account, however. It does not include the numbers and destination domains that were entered in the default routes. Only the source filters are processed, assuming that the default route has these filters.

  The procedure described here only considers the call numbers as processed by the Call Router. Mapping to the ISDN or SIP line can also alter the number.

15.5.2 Handling the calling party ID

The configuration options for the call router offer numerous options for manipulating the telephone numbers that are used to establish the connection. The call router usually connects different "telephone worlds" (internal and external, SIP and ISDN) that use completely different telephone number ranges. In order for the subscribers to communicate successfully with one another, the telephone numbers at the interfaces need to be configured in such a way that, on the one hand, the required subscriber is reached via the correct line and, on the other hand, a return call can be placed successfully (automatically upon "busy", if need be). To enable this return call, the calling number (calling party ID) has to be modified **after** processing by the Call Manager and directly before it is delivered to the relevant subscriber.

Handling outgoing calls

The telephone numbers of outgoing calls are translated depending on the line that is used:

SIP lines

The treatment of the calling-party ID on SIP lines depends upon the line's operating mode:

- Individual account: In the case of an outgoing call over a SIP line, the calling party ID is converted to the number that was entered for the SIP line (SIP ID).
- Trunk and gateway: Please observe the information in section SIP mapping.

SIP PBX lines

In the case of an outgoing call over a SIP PBX line, the subscriber is registered at the upstream SIP PBX and is part of the telephone number range there. This is why the calling party ID—which represents the internal telephone number or "extension" of the subscriber in this case—is passed unchanged to the SIP PBX line.

ISDN lines

In the case of an outgoing call over an ISDN point-to-multipoint connection, the calling party ID is converted to the MSN that is entered for the subscriber (or the internal telephone number) in the ISDN mapping table.

If this does not contain an entry for the number that is currently calling, no calling party ID is sent. Similarly, no calling party ID is sent if CLIR (Calling Line Identifier Restriction) is activated.

Handling incoming calls

The telephone numbers of incoming calls are translated differently depending on the SIP or ISDN subscriber criteria and whether automatic outside line access is active or not.

The calling party ID is changed depending on the following parameters:

- The prefix ("call prefix" or "Cln-Prefix") that is stored for the **line** (default: <blank>).
- The prefix for internal connections with destination ISDN users ("internal ISDN prefix" or "Intern-Cln-Prefix" - default: '99').
- The prefix for internal connections with destination SIP users ("internal SIP prefix" or "Intern-Cln-Prefix" - default: '99').
- The prefix for external connections with destination ISDN users ("external ISDN prefix" or "Extern-Cln-Prefix" - default: <blank>).
- The prefix for external connections with destination SIP users ("external SIP prefix" or "Extern-Cln-Prefix" - default: <blank>).

The activation of automatic outside line access is taken into account by configuring the prefixes appropriately:

- If automatic outside line access is activated, the internal prefixes are typically set to the dial character that is used to reach the internal subscriber, usually '99' or '*'.
- Without automatic outside line access, the external prefixes are typically set to '0'.

The calling party ID is only supplemented if the incoming call has a calling party ID. If the calling party ID is blank, no prefix is attached.

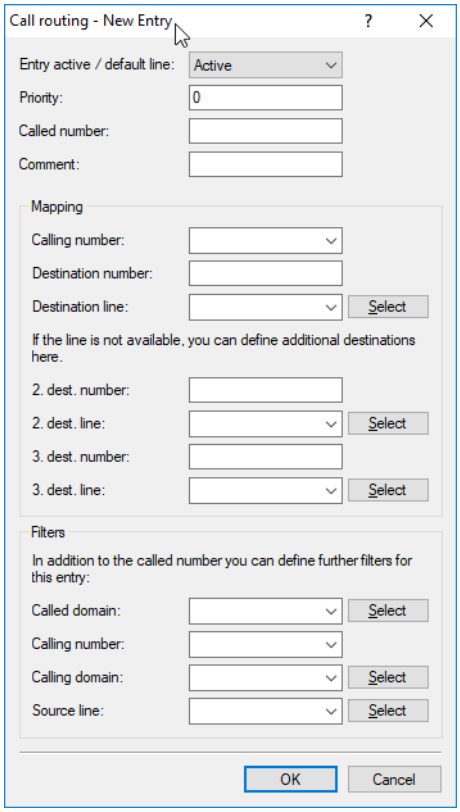
It is modified as follows:

- With internal connections, the internal subscriber prefix (SIP or ISDN) is placed in front of the calling party ID.
- With external connections, depending on the (line) call prefix, the following decision is made:
  - (Line) call prefix blank: The external subscriber prefix (SIP or ISDN) is placed in front of the calling party ID.
  - (Line) call prefix not blank: The internal subscriber prefix (SIP or ISDN) and the (line) call prefix is placed in front the calling party ID.

A call is regarded as external if it comes from a "line". If this line is a SIP PBX line, then the call is only external if the incoming calling party ID is preceded by a '0'.

15.5.3 Call-routing table parameters

You configure the call-routing table entries in the LANconfig under **Voice Call Manager** > **Call router** by clicking on the button **Call routing**.



An entry in the call routing table consists of:

- Conditions that have to be met so that the entry is "considered" appropriate. These include:
  - Information about which subscriber is to be called; called number/name (Called Party ID), called domain (if applicable).
  - Information about the calling subscriber; calling number/name, calling domain, source line through which the call reaches the LANCOM VoIP router.
- Instructions regarding the procedure for the call:
  - How is the telephone number translated and modified for further processing?
  - Which line should be used to place the call (destination line)?
  - Which backup lines should be used if the destination line is not available?

The entries are searched row by row; the first suitable entry is performed. For this reason the special entries should be configured first of all, followed by the general entries.

If an entry is found in the call routing table with the destination line "RESTART", then the entire pass starts again with the new, translated called party ID. The entry for the source line (calling line) is deleted for the next pass.

Both the call routing table and the local subscriber table may contain and process alphanumeric names where this makes sense.

Active entry/default line

The routing entry can be activated, deactivated, or marked as a default entry. All calls that can be resolved using the first passes but not using the call routing table or local subscriber table are then automatically

resolved using these default entries. You can use any destination name and destination domain; only any source filters that you have set will be processed.

Priority

The Call Manager sorts all entries with the same priority automatically, so that the table can be processed through logically from top to bottom. With some entries, however, the sequence of the entries has to be specified (for the telephone number translation, for example). The entries with the highest priority are automatically sorted to the top.

Called number

The called party name or destination telephone number (without domain information) that is called.

The # character is used as a placeholder for any character strings. All characters in front of the '#' are removed, the remaining characters are used in the "Number/name" field instead of the # character to further establish the connection.

Example: The call routing table contains entry '00049#' as the called number/name and '00#' as the number/name. For all calls with a preceding '0' for outside-line access and the complete dialing code for Germany, only the leading '0' for the outside-line access and the leading '0' for the local area dialing code are retained as the number/name; the country ID is removed. So '00049 2405 123456' becomes '0 02405 123456'.

Independently of this, an alphanumeric number can also be specified.

Comment

Comment on the current routing entry

Calling number

If the calling number is to be replaced by another number in the call route, the desired number must be entered in this field. If the special value "EMPTY" is selected and the filter field **Calling number** is filled with any character (e.g. wildcard #) at the same time, a number suppression for outgoing calls can be configured for the call route.

Destination number

This telephone number is used to continue with establishing the connection. If no connection can be established using this telephone number and the corresponding line, then the backup telephone numbers with their associated lines are used

At least one of the fields **Destination number**, **2nd dest. number** or **3rd dest. number** must have content. They are evaluated in this sequence. A blank field is skipped.

Destination line

The connection is established using the destination line. Normal destination lines can be:

- ISDN
- All defined SIP lines.

The following special functions can be entered as a destination line:

- REJECT highlights a blocked telephone number.

  This value also allows you to *prohibit control characters on SIP lines*.

- USER forwards the call to local SIP or ISDN subscribers.
- RESTART begins a new pass through the call-routing table with the previously formed **Destination number**. The former **Source line** is deleted.

This field has to be completed, otherwise the entry is not used.

2nd Destination number, 3rd Destination number

This telephone number is called if nothing is entered in **Destination number** or the corresponding "line" is not available. If the 2nd destination number and the corresponding 2nd destination line are not available, then the 3rd destination number and the corresponding 3rd destination line will be used instead.

Called domain

This entry filters the called domain, the "Called Party Domain". The call router entry is only considered to match if the Called Party Domain for the call matches the domain that is entered here. If nothing is specified, any destination domain is accepted.

The following can be entered as called domains:

- ISDN
- The internal VoIP domains of the LANCOM VoIP router.
- All domains entered for the SIP and SIP-PBX lines.

Calling number

This entry filters the calling number/name, the "calling party ID". It is specified as an internal number or as a national or international telephone number. The domain is not specified. No '0' or other character for a line ID is prefixed; the ID is used as if it comes from the line or from internal telephone calls.

The call router entry is only evaluated as matching if the Calling Party ID for the call matches the number that is entered here. After '#', any characters can be accepted. If nothing is specified here, any Calling Party ID is accepted.

The following special functions can be entered as a calling number:

- EMPTY can be used for Calling Party IDs that are not specified.

Calling domain

This entry filters the "calling domain". The call router entry is only considered to match if the Calling Domain for the call matches the domain that is entered here. If nothing is specified, each calling domain is accepted.

The following can be entered as calling domains:

- ISDN
- The internal VoIP domains of the LANCOM VoIP router.
- All domains entered for the SIP and SIP-PBX lines.

SIP telephones usually have several line keys, for which different domains can be configured. With this filter, telephone calls are handled depending on the selection that is made using different line keys.

Source line

This entry filters the source line. The call router entry is only considered to match if the source line for the call matches the line that is entered here. If nothing is specified, any calling line is accepted.

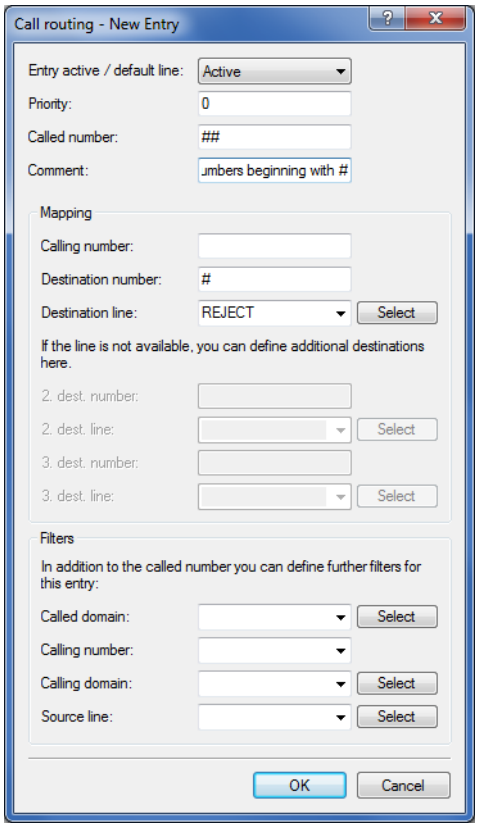
The following can be entered as the source line:

- USER.ISDN for calls from a local ISDN subscriber
- USER.SIP for calls from a local SIP subscriber
- USER # for calls from a local subscriber in general
- All ISDN, SIP and SIP-PBX lines that are entered.

Prohibit control characters on SIP lines

This prevents the dialing of control characters. Control codes can, for example, be used to configure call forwarding. You can prevent this for any particular lines or persons. For example, proceed as follows to reject the character '#':

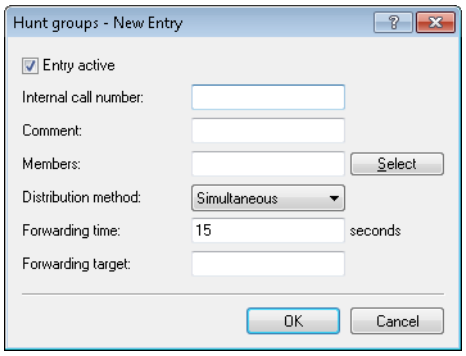
1. Under **Called number:** enter ##.
2. Under **Destination number:** enter #.
3. For the **Destination line** select REJECT.
4. Enter a **Comment:**, e.g. "No numbers beginning with #".



5. Confirm your settings by clicking the **OK** button.

Group call functions

You configure the call-routing table entries in LANconfig under **Voice Call Manager** > **Call router** by clicking on the button **Call routing**.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates the entry.

Internal telephone number

The hunt group is available under this telephone number or SIP-ID (max. 64 alphanumerical characters).

The names of hunt groups may not coincide with the names of users (SIP, ISDN, analog).

Comment

Comment about this entry (64 characters)

Members

Comma-separated list of the members of the hunt group. Members can be users, hunt groups or external telephone numbers, and so there is no limit on scaling.

- Possible members: Users, hunt groups, external telephone numbers
- Possible values: Maximum 128 alphanumerical characters.

A hunt group may not contain itself or any parents in the hierarchical system—recursion through member entries is not possible. However, loops to parents in the structure may result from the "forwarding target".

Call distribution

Sets the type of call distribution:

- Simultaneous: The call is signaled to all group members at once. If a member picks up the call within the call-forwarding time, the call is no longer signaled to other group members. If nobody accepts the call within the forwarding time, then the call is switched to its forwarding destination.
- Sequential: The call is directed to one member of the group after the other. If a group member does not accept the call within the forwarding time, then the call is switched to the next member of the group. If nobody in the group accepts the call within the forwarding time, then the call is switched to its forwarding destination.

Forwarding time

If an incoming call is not picked up by a group member within the forwarding time, then the call is forwarded according to the distribution method selected:

- In the case of simultaneous call distribution, the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination.
- In case of sequential call distribution, the call is forwarded to the next group member in line. If the group member is the last one in the sequence, then the call is redirected to its forwarding destination.
- Possible values: Max. 255 seconds.
- Default: 0 seconds
- Significant values: 0 seconds. The call is forwarded immediately to the forwarding destination (temporarily jumps a hunt group in a hierarchy).

If all members of the group are busy or unavailable, then the call is redirected to the forwarding destination without waiting for the forwarding-time to expire.

Forwarding destination

If none of the group members accepts the call within the forwarding time, then the call is switched to the forwarding destination entered here. Forwarding destinations can be users, hunt groups or external telephone numbers. Only one forwarding destination can be entered.

- Possible destinations: Users, hunt groups, external telephone numbers
- Possible values: Maximum 64 alphanumerical characters.

If no forwarding destination is defined, then the call is rejected as soon as the member list has been worked through, or if all members are busy or unavailable.

The forwarding destination only becomes active once the group's forwarding time has expired or if no members are available. Here, too, redirection to a higher level of the hunt-group structure is possible, unlike with the "Members" entry.

15.5.4 Signaling parallel calls in the ISDN

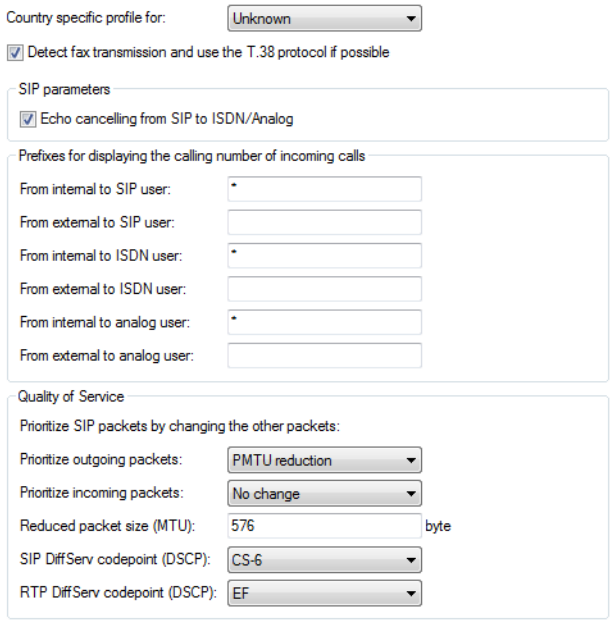
LANCOM business VoIP routers are able to make parallel calls. If you use this feature, signaling occurs on both ISDN lines (ISDN 1 & ISDN 2). The call is accepted at the first telephone to pick up the call.

To enable parallel calls, navigate to **Voice call Manager** > **Users** > **ISDN users**.

In the **ISDN parameters** section and under **ISDN/S0 bus**, select the option “ISDN 1 & ISDN 2” and then set the item **Parallel call** to “On”.

15.5.5 Extended settings

To configure the advanced settings for the VoIP Call Manager, navigate to **Voice Call Manager** > **Extended**.



Country specific profile for

This allows you to select a profile for a specific country, which provides the default input values.

Echo canceling from SIP to ISDN

Activates the echo canceling of remote echoes. With an echo that is too strong, subscribers can hear their own voices after a short delay. Activating this option reduces the ISDN echo at the SIP ISDN gateway.

Prefix from internal to SIP user

If an incoming **internal** call is directed to a SIP user, this prefix is added to the calling party ID, if available.

A call is regarded as external if it comes from a "line". If this line is a SIP PBX line, then the call is only external if the incoming calling party ID is preceded by a '0'. All other calls are regarded as internal.

Prefix from external to SIP user

If an incoming **external** call is directed to a SIP user, this prefix is added to the calling party ID, if available.

Prefix from internal to ISDN user

If an incoming **internal** call is directed to an ISDN user, this prefix is added to the calling party ID, if available. If a line prefix is defined, this is placed in front of the whole of the called number.

Prefix from external to ISDN user

If an incoming **external** call is directed to an ISDN user, this prefix is added to the calling party ID, if available. If a line prefix is defined, this is placed in front of the whole of the called number.

Prefix from internal to analog user

This prefix is added to the calling party ID, if available, for an incoming, **internal** call if the call is directed to a analog user. If a line prefix is defined, this is placed in front of the whole of the called number.

Prefix from external to analog user

If an incoming **external** call is directed to an analog user, this prefix is added to the calling party ID, if available. If a line prefix is defined, this is placed in front of the whole of the called number.

Prefer outgoing packets

For all SIP calls, sufficient bandwidth through the firewall is reserved as required by the audio codec being used (provided sufficient bandwidth is available). To control the firewall, you can configure how the remaining data packets that do not belong to the SIP data stream are handled. The following values are possible:

- PMTU reduction

  The subscribers of the data connection are informed that they should only send data packets up to a certain length (Path Maximum Transmission Unit, PMTU).

- Fragmentation

  The LANCOM wireless router reduces the data packets by fragmenting them to the required length.

- No change

  The length of the data packets is not changed by the VoIP operation.

For more information, see the description of PMTU and fragmenting with regard to quality of service.

Prefer incoming packets

Similar to the outgoing data packets, you configure how non-VoIP data packets are handled when bandwidth is reserved for SIP data. The following values are possible:

- PMTU reduction

  The subscribers of the data connection are informed that they should only send data packets up to a certain length (Path Maximum Transmission Unit, PMTU).

- No change

  The length of the data packets is not changed by the VoIP operation.

Reduced packet size

This parameter specifies the packet size that should be used for PMTU adjustment or fragmentation while the SIP data have priority.

SIP-DiffServ-CodePoint (DSCP), RTP-DiffServ-CodePoint (DSCP)

The Voice Call Manager marks SIP and RTP packets with DiffServ CodePoints (DSCP), which enables other hardware to recognize and prioritize these packets.

By default, SIP packets (call signaling) are marked with 'CS-1' and RTP packets (voice data stream) are marked with 'EF'. Here you have option to change this behavior. With the setting 'DSCP BE' or 'CS-0' the packets are sent unmarked. Further information on the DiffServ-CodePoints is available in the Reference Manual in the section *Quality of Service*.

The option 'CS-1' for SIP DSCP is actually outdated now, but it is the default value to ensure backwards compatibility. Common values for modern VoIP installations are 'CS-3', 'AF-31' or 'AF-41'. We recommend using 'CS-3', one of the most widespread settings on the market for use with SIP DSCP.

15.6 Telephony (PBX) functions in LANCOM VoIP routers

A LANCOM VoIP router provides telephony functions for small companies and company branch offices:

- Telephony functions such as call hold, swap, transfer or redirect
- Hunt group function with flexible call distribution and cascading of hunt groups
- Multiple logins to use various telephones under one telephone number

Please note that the extent to which features such as connect call and automatic call forwarding (redirection) are supported by SIP providers can differ greatly. It is impossible to guarantee that this function will work properly with all combinations of SIP devices and SIP providers.

15.6.1 Transfer and forward call

The integration of SIP telephones and VoIP routers into existing telephone structures means that we have to take a fresh look at familiar functions such as forwarding calls. Call forwarding means that a call that has already been placed (routed) is redirected to a new destination either spontaneously by the user (connect call) or by automatic call forwarding set up in advance. SIP-based VoIP telephony uses processes which are fundamentally different to previous technologies. For example, ISDN and analog terminal devices require a telephone exchange that usually has to continue to manage the connection after forwarding. SIP telephones can forward calls without any need of a telephone exchange: The devices make a connection over the shortest possible route and the call router stops its management function immediately after the connection has been established. The SIP exchange is also able to handle signaling over SIP and the actual data transfer over RTP in different ways.

Due to the differences arising from the various types of terminal device, the easiest way to understand call forwarding in a LANCOM VoIP router is to consider different scenarios and to explain the terminology.

Active and passive forwarding

When looking at the technical details, it is important to consider the end from which call forwarding is initiated. "Local" users are all SIP, ISDN or analog users who can be reached by the LANCOM VoIP router in their own LAN. "External" users are those accessible via a line (SIP account, SIP trunk, SIP PBX, ISDN or analog).

- Active: A local subscriber initiates call forwarding.
- Passive: An external subscriber initiates call forwarding

Call forwarding with and without consulting

A subscriber forwarding a call can either directly hand over an active call to a third subscriber (unattended call forwarding), or a separate call can be made to the third subscriber to communicate the call and then hand it over (attended call forwarding).

LANCOM VoIP routers support unattended call transfer only via the SIP protocol.

Charges for calls when forwarding to external users

The forwarding of a call from an external caller to a third party who is also external carries the risk that charges will arise for the ongoing call, even though the initiating subscriber has ended the call.

How the LANCOM VoIP router handles call forwarding

Irrespective of which terminal devices are involved in the call forwarding, a LANCOM VoIP router can handle a variety of tasks:

Passthrough

Both subscribers in the call forwarding are at the same end of the connection, e.g. transfer from a local to a local subscriber.

Delegate

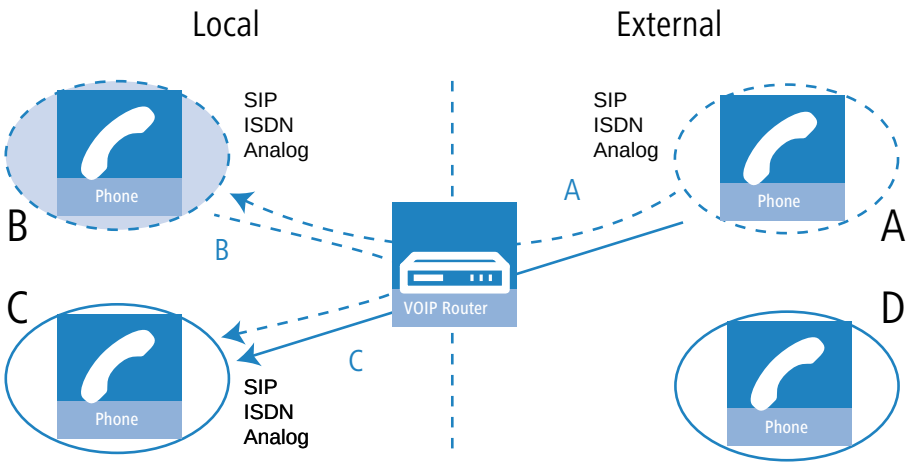
The call forwarding is not handled by the LANCOM VoIP router itself but by an upstream exchange, e.g. in a VoIP PBX that is accessible via a PBX line.

Switching

The LANCOM VoIP router handles the signaling and the data transfer between subscribers.

Active forwarding to local users

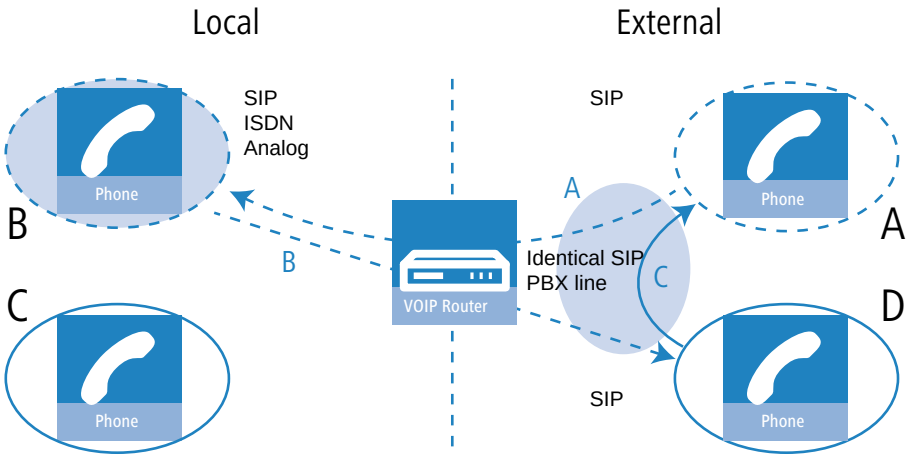
1. An external user **A** makes a call to an internal user **B** (SIP, ISDN or analog).
2. **B** makes a further call to local user **C**. These two users can reach each other directly, so the LANCOM VoIP router only handles the signaling by means of SIP; the data transfer via RTP takes the shortest possible route.
3. Local user **B** initiates the call forwarding (attended/with flash) to **C**.
4. The LANCOM VoIP router manages the call forwarding.



In case of SIP at the external subscriber, this requires that Transfer in SIP (re-invites) is fully supported.

Active forwarding to external SIP users

1. An external SIP user **A** makes a call to an internal user **B** (SIP, ISDN or analog).
2. **B** makes an additional call to an external user **D**.
3. If both external users **A** and **D** can be reached via the same SIP line, the LANCOM VoIP router delegates the administration of the call forwarding to the upstream provider.



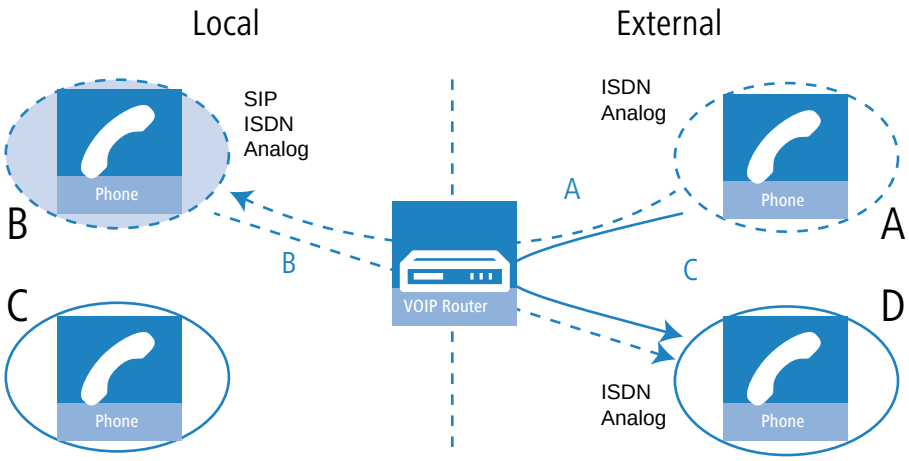
Requires that the VoIP PBX fully supports Transfers in SIP (re-invites).

Active forwarding to external ISDN users

In some cases upstream exchanges do not support the delegation of call forwarding to external ISDN users, often due to the unclear situation about who carries the call charges. For this reason, call forwarding between external subscribers is always handled by the LANCOM VoIP router.

1. An external subscriber **A** (external SIP, ISDN) makes a call to an internal user **B** (SIP, ISDN).
2. **B** makes a further call to an external subscriber **D** (ISDN or analog).
3. The local user **B** then forwards the call (with consultation) to **A**.
4. If both external users **A** and **D** use different protocols (SIP, ISDN), the LANCOM VoIP router assumes responsibility for managing and converting the data.

5. If both external users **A** and **D** use SIP, the LANCOM VoIP router is unable to forward the call.

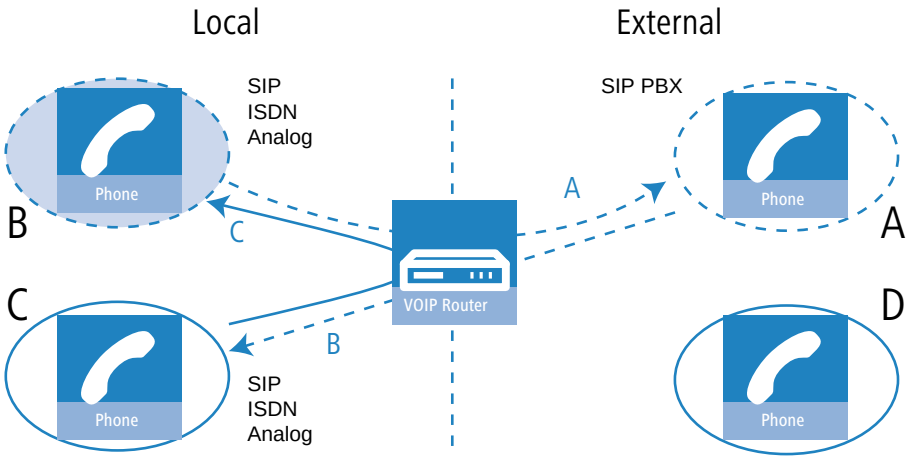


Requires that the VoIP PBX fully supports Transfers in SIP (re-invites).

Passive forwarding between local users

1. An internal user **B** (SIP, ISDN or analog) calls an external user **A** (at a SIP PBX line).
2. **A** makes an additional call to a local user **C**.
3. The external user **A** then forwards the call to **C**.

4. The LANCOM VoIP router manages the call forwarding. If the connected subscribers **B** and **C** are internal users, the LANCOM VoIP router only checks the SIP data for signaling and enables the RTP data transfer over the shortest direct path between the SIP users.

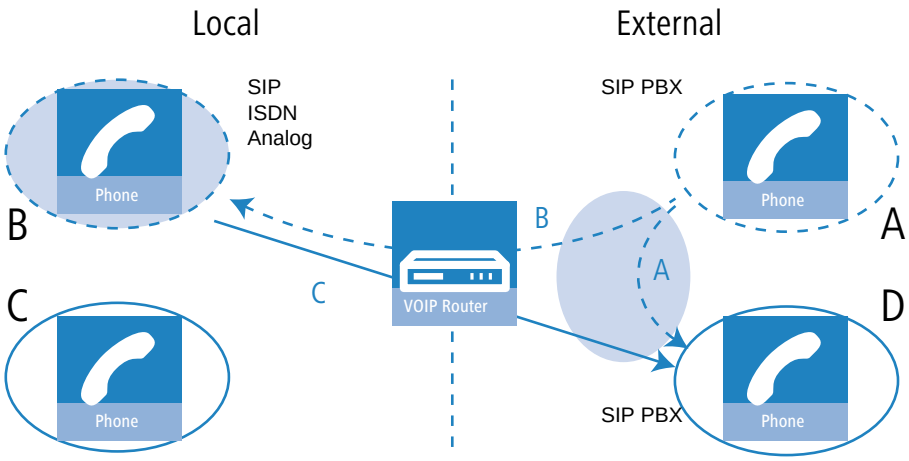


Requires that the VoIP PBX fully supports Transfers in SIP (re-invites).

Passive forwarding from local to external users

1. An external user **A** (at a SIP PBX line) makes a call to an internal user **B** (SIP, ISDN or analog).
2. **A** makes an additional call to an external user **D** (who is also a subscriber to the same SIP PBX line as **A**).
3. The external user **A** then initiates a connect from **B** to **D**. The LANCOM VoIP router needs to establish a connection to **D** for this.

The LANCOM VoIP router can only establish this connection if **D** can be reached via the same SIP-PBX line as **A**, i.e. if external call forwarding is permitted.



Requires that the VoIP PBX fully supports Transfers in SIP (re-invites).

15.6.2 Spontaneous call management by the user

Functions for spontaneous call management

Calls can be managed on an individual basis and the LANCOM VoIP router supports the services known from the ISDN network:

- With call hold the user can place an active call into a wait state. In this state the user can make a call to another person, for example.
- Establishing an additional call while a call is on hold is referred to as consulting. This call can be ended again and the conversation with the call on hold continued.
- With swap call, the user can switch to and fro between two connections. The user is only connected with one caller at a time, while the other caller is put on hold.

- With call swap the user switches an active call over to another call which is on hold. The two callers are then connected and the user is no longer involved in the call. A subscriber forwarding a call can either directly hand over an active call to a third subscriber (unattended call transfer), or a separate call can be made to a third subscriber to communicate the call and then forward it (attended call transfer).

Using spontaneous call management with various telephones

SIP telephones and SIP softphones generally feature special keys or menu entries to manage calls. Different terms may be used depending on the model or software program, but the functions are as follows:

- CALL HOLD: Places an active call into a wait mode or swaps between two active calls. On ISDN and analog telephones this function is often referred to as the F-key/Flash/Call hold. Flash function (F key).
- HANG UP: End the current call.
- SWAP: Swap between two active calls (depending on the ISDN telephone, this may be initiated by a display-menu entry, a special key, or the "F" key).
- TRANSFER: Initiates the call forwarding (can be triggered by "hanging-up" with an active call and a call on hold)*.

These functions can be used to manage calls as follows:

Holding/consulting and continuing with calls	SIP	ISDN	Analog
To place a call on hold, press the Flash/Call hold key (or 'F' on analog phones).	CALL HOLD	HOLD or F	R
The caller can no longer hear you and you can initiate a second call by dialing a telephone number (consulting).			
To continue with a call which is on hold, press the Flash/Call hold key again (or 'F 2').	CALL HOLD	HOLD or F	F 2
If the consultation call has not yet been picked up, you can stop the consulting by hanging up the handset on a SIP or ISDN telephone*.	HANG UP	HANG UP	HANG UP
You can stop the consultation call with the appropriate menu function of the telephone (e.g. 'Cancel') or 'F 1' (analog).*			

Swap	SIP	ISDN	Analog
To open a second line during a call, first press the Flash/Call hold key (or 'F' on analog phones).	CALL HOLD	HOLD or F	R
The other caller can no longer hear you.			
Dial the number for the second caller while the first call is on hold.	123456789	123456789	123456789
If you cannot reach the second caller, you can return to the call which is on hold by pressing the hold key (or 'F' on analog telephones).			
As soon as two simultaneous connections are open, you can use the hold key (or swap key for ISDN phones, 'R' and '2' for analog phones) to swap to-and-fro between the two connections.	CALL HOLD	SWAP	F 2
You will be connected to one of the other callers; the other caller is placed on hold.			
To end an active call, hang up the handset on SIP or ISDN telephones, and on analog phones press 'R 1'.	CANCEL or HANG UP*	CANCEL or HANG UP*	F 1
The call which is on hold is not automatically reactivated, but it will be signaled (ringing phone) for a period of 15 seconds.			

Call forwarding, consult	SIP	ISDN	Analog
To open a second line during a call, first press the Flash/Call hold key (or 'F' on analog phones).	CALL HOLD	HOLD or F	R
The other caller can no longer hear you.			
Dial the number for the second caller while the first call is on hold.	123456789	123456789	123456789

Call forwarding, consult	SIP	ISDN	Analog
If you cannot reach the second caller, you can return to the call which is on hold by pressing the hold key.			
As soon as you have established two simultaneous connections you can connect the two callers with the connect key (or 'F' and '4' on analog phones) or by hanging up the handset.* Optionally you can switch between the two lines as often as you like before transferring the call. Call transfer always connects the active call and the call on hold.	TRANSFER or HANG UP*	TRANSFER or HANG UP*	R 4 or HANG UP
You have no more active calls. You can either hang up or make a new call.	HANG UP 123456789	HANG UP 123456789	HANG UP 123456789

Call transfer, blind	SIP	ISDN	Analog
To open a second line during a call, first press the Flash/Call hold key (or 'F' on analog phones). The other caller can no longer hear you.	CALL HOLD	CALL HOLD	HOLD or F
Dial the number for the second caller while the first call is on hold.	123456789	123456789	123456789
Press the connect key (or 'F' and '4' on analog phones) or hang-up the handset before the second connection has been established.* The two callers will now be connected "in the background".	TRANSFER or HANG UP*	TRANSFER or HANG UP*	R 4 or HANG UP
You have no more active calls. You can either hang up or make a new call.	HANG UP 123456789	HANG UP 123456789	HANG UP 123456789

(*) In some cases, SIP or ISDN telephones can be configured so that hanging-up the handset either causes the consultation or active call to terminate, or a call forwarding is triggered ("Transfer").

15.6.3 Configure permanent call forwarding

Along with spontaneous call transfers as controlled by a subscriber during a call, it is often useful to set up a permanent call forwarding ("redirect calls"). For example, a call should be forwarded when a line is busy, if there is no answer within a certain period, or in case of absence (e.g. vacation).

There are two possibilities for configuring permanent call forwarding.

- Via the telephone or terminal device itself with the aid of control characters
- In the configuration of the LANCOM VoIP router by means of the management tools (LANconfig, WEBconfig or telnet)

If permanent call forwarding is activated by both methods, then the behavior of the call forwarding follows the last respective action.

Triggering call forwarding

The following events can be used as a trigger or condition of the permanently configured call transfers:

- CFU, call-forwarding unconditional
- CFB, call forwarding on busy
- Delayed call forwarding, CFNR (call forwarding no reply); CFNA (call forwarding no answer)
- No call transfer

All types of call forwarding can be used in parallel with your own destination telephone numbers. If multiple call-forwarding conditions are active, the following priority applies:

1. CFU
2. CFB
3. CFNR

If call forwarding on busy is activated and a corresponding destination number has been defined, for example, then the call will be forwarded to this number before using the number set for call forwarding on no reply.

If the incoming call has already been forwarded from another telephone number, then forwarding will not take place again, so as to avoid endless call-forwarding loops.

Configuring user settings with the telephone with character strings

For the configuration of user settings with the telephone, the various technologies (SIP, ISDN, analog) each offer specific possibilities. With ISDN telephones, call forwarding can be controlled by the functional protocol in the ISDN signaling or via so-called keypads (character stings). For analog telephones the same character strings are transferred by DTMF. The SIP protocol provides another option with its REFER method that is supported by most SIP phones and SIP softphones. However, call forwarding can only be controlled by the terminal device. To enable a uniform behavior for users in mixed infrastructures, the LANCOM VoIP router offers an further variant of call forwarding for SIP phones. This is presented here in comparison with ISDN and analog telephones.

Immediate call forwarding	SIP	ISDN	Analog
Switch on and define destination for call forwarding	*21*TargetNo#	*21*TargetNo#	*21*TargetNo#
Switch off	#21#	#21#	#21#
Switch off temporarily, maintain call-forwarding destination	#22#	#22#	#22#
Switch on again, maintain defined call-forwarding destination	*22#	*22#	*22#

Call forwarding on busy	SIP	ISDN	Analog
Switch on and define destination for call forwarding	*67*TargetNo#	*67*TargetNo#	*67*TargetNo#
Switch off	#67#	#67#	#67#

Call-forwarding on no reply	SIP	ISDN	Analog
Switch on and define destination for call forwarding	*61*TargetNo#	*61*TargetNo#	*61*TargetNo#
Switch off	#61#	#61#	#61#

Please note the following when using character stings to configure call forwarding:

Some ISDN telephones feature special keys or menu entries to configure call forwarding, and these can be used as an alternative to the listed character strings. Refer to the documentation from the corresponding manufacturers.

15.6.4 Call forwarding (call deflection / partial rerouting) at the SIP trunk (SIP 302)

LANCOM routers operating the Voice Call Manager can initiate call forwarding on SIP Trunk connections by forwarding the information sent by the PBX to the SIP trunk provider. If this is an ISDN terminal, the partial rerouting (PR) is converted into a “SIP 302 Moved Temporarily” before being transmitted to the provider.

In the SIP lines table, the external call forwarding is configured for each individual SIP trunk line under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** > **SIP lines** > **Advanced** by enabling the option **Call forwarding using SIP 302**. With call forwarding enabled, a call-forwarding option initiated from a telephone (ISDN / SIP) is switched directly at the exchange, unless the telephone is part of a call number group or the user is registered multiple times on the LANCOM router.

If the telephone is an ISDN terminal, the partial rerouting is converted by means of the service feature SIP 302 before being transmitted to the provider. The terminal must transmit the telephone number to which incoming calls are to be forwarded in a format which can be processed by the provider. For example, it is not possible to specify line prefixes that would otherwise be removed by the Voice Call Manager during a normal call.

If the forwarding destination set on the terminal is an internal telephone number, the call forwarding is performed by the Voice Call Manager directly, in which case you have to use the prefix used for internal calls (e.g. **).

15.6.5 Fax via T.38 – Fax over IP (FoIP)

The migration of telephone infrastructure towards VoIP has also increased the demand for fax devices to communicate over VoIP. Even in the age of e-mail, fax transmissions continue to be highly important in legal respects as legally binding documents such as contracts and invoices can be far more easily handled by fax than with the alternative of e-mails with digital signature. The integration of fax devices into VoIP infrastructure can be implemented in two ways:

- Fax messages are transmitted via landline just like a conventional fax.
- The transmission takes place over an Internet connection. Options for this are as follows:
  - The fax signals are transmitted like voice data over a VoIP connection, referred to as "fax over VoIP". Fax transmission should only make use of the G.711 codec, as other codecs are inferior at converting the fax tones designed for analog networks into digital VoIP data. Due to the highly sensitive nature of fax connections, this method can only be used with high-quality connections, whereby the transmission speed is sub-optimal.
  - For example, with the "store-and-forward" principle (ITU-T.37), fax messages are passed from the fax machine to a gateway that stores and converts the fax document. In a second step the fax is transmitted to the destination for conversion back into a fax format. Alternatively fax messages can be sent by e-mail (fax-to-mail and mail-to-fax). Solutions of this type may not meet the legal requirements mentioned above, due to the fact that there is no direct connection between transmitter and receiver.
  - With "real-time routing" of fax messages, on the other hand, a direct connection is established between the two fax machines and all data is transferred in real time. The fax machines are connected virtually over the Internet. Communication between the two fax machines follows the ITU-T.38 standard for converting standard fax signals. This variant is also known as Fax over IP (FoIP). The fax messages are not transferred as acoustic signals via VoIP, but rather in a special protocol, that embeds the signals in UDP/TCP packets.

To enable fax transmissions with T.38, the fax machines themselves either have to support the T.38 standard or they must be interconnected over the Internet via fax gateways. LANCOM VoIP routers support the T.38 standard and are thus suitable for operation as fax gateways in VoIP infrastructure.

The fax machines are connected to the LANCOM VoIP routers by means of a suitable interface. The fax gateway in the LANCOM VoIP router handles the conversion of the signals for transmission and reception of fax messages:

- Conversion of T.38 fax data to G.711/T.30
- Conversion of G.711/T.30 fax data to T.38
- Passthrough of G.711/T.30 fax data
- Passthrough of T.38 fax data

If the device type "fax" or "telephone/fax" is selected in the user settings of the ISDN or analog user, the LANCOM Business VoIP router automatically recognizes a fax for transmission and it attempts to transmit via F.38/FoIP. If the remote site does not support this method, the LANCOM VoIP router automatically uses the fax over VoIP-version using G.711 compression.

Successful transmission of fax via FoIP requires that the VoIP infrastructure also supports the T.38 standard. For example, where a public SIP provider is involved, this provider also has to offer T.38 support.

15.6.6 Hunt groups with call distribution

Introduction

Calls are normally intended for an individual or their telephone number. Occasionally it is not important to speak to a particular individual, but to anybody in a certain department or with a certain function. In this case, telephone infrastructure collects multiple users into hunt groups where they can all be reached under a single shared telephone number. The group call function can then follow certain rules to distribute or forward incoming calls to the call group.

Call distribution

A hunt group consists of two or more users, or even other hunt groups, as potential destinations for an incoming call. Hunt groups are comparable to local users and have their own number and, as such, they can be used as a destination number in the call router.

Incoming calls can be distributed by a variety of methods, allowing different scenarios to be realized.

- Calls are signaled to all group members at the same time (simultaneous)
- Calls are signaled to one member of the group after the other, in a set order (sequential)

Along with the members of the hunt group and distribution method, also to be defined are a call-forwarding time and and call-forwarding destination, all of which control the call-distribution procedure. The forwarding time determines the time period during which the dialed user can answer a signaled call. The forwarding destination defines where the call is to be forwarded to (user, group, internal or external call number) for the case that none of the group members picks up the call within the forwarding time—if no forwarding destination is defined, then the call is rejected.

Cascading of hunt groups

The defined hunt groups can themselves be members of a higher-level hunt group, just as hunt groups can be entered as the forwarding destination for a higher-level hunt group. These options enable the establishment of a cascaded hunt-group structure which can form highly complex scenarios by using a multitude of branches. These branches represent the hunt groups and the end points are the users themselves. The following rules apply to structures of this type:

- If a hunt group is used as a member, then this lower-level hunting group causes a new "branch" in the structure to open up when that member receives a call.
- When a lower-level hunt group opens, certain parameters that have been defined, e.g. forwarding time, etc., apply.
- This branch from the lower-level group only remains open for as long as the member in the upper-level hunt group is being signaled according to the settings. If the next member in the upper-level hunt group is reached, then the entire branch along with all of its other sub-branches is closed. The system does not wait until all possible combinations along the branch have been tried out. It is thus possible that there are members defined in a lower-level hunt group who cannot be reached because of settings in the upper-level groups.
- If a member of a hunt group picks up the call, all open branches are closed and all attempts to reach forwarding destinations are stopped.
- If a call remains unanswered after signaling all of the members of an (upper or lower-level) hunt group, then the call is passed on the the call-forwarding destination. This means that any call-forwarding times which may be running in the upper-level hunt groups are ended. In this case the call "jumps" out of the hunt-group structure and is given a new destination.

Example: The following hunt groups have been defined:

Group call number	Comment	Members	Forwarding method	Forwarding time	Forwarding destination
100	Entire company	200, 300, 400	Simultaneous	10	Ext. Dialup remote
200	Service Dept.	201 to 209	Simultaneous	10	100
300	Marketing Dept.	301 to 309	Sequential	10	200
400	Sales Dept.	409	Sequential	15	100
410	Sales Europe group	411, 412, 413, 414, 415	Sequential	10	400
420	Sales America group	421, 422, 410	Sequential	30	400
430	Sales Asia group	431, 432, 410	Sequential	30	400

Each department or group has users who use the final digits in the telephone number, i.e. 411 to 419 for the Sales Europe staff and 409 for the Sales team secretary. Only the group call numbers are communicated externally because all staff members tend to travel frequently on business. The purpose of the hunt-group structure is to connect each customer with a competent staff member in the shortest possible time.

An incoming call directed to the telephone number 420 for a Sales America team member is handled as follows:

1. The call is signaled to the users 421 and 422 in this group for 30 seconds each. If there is no answer, then the hunt group 410 is activated for 30 seconds—a member of the Sales Europe team should take care of the customer if no Sales America team members are available.
2. In the Sales Europe team, calls are distributed to each number for 10 seconds. The hunt group has five members, but with a forwarding time of just 10 seconds, not all of the users can be signaled: The branch is only opened for a maximum of 30 seconds by the upper-level group, in this case 420. This is a way of limiting the maximum waiting time for a customer. If the first three signaled members of the lower-level group 410 do not answer, then the call jumps back to the upper-level hunt group 420.
3. There is still nobody available in the upper-level hunt group 420, and so the call is directed to the call-forwarding destination 400.
4. Hunt group 400 directs the call to the team secretary 409. If here nobody answers for 15 seconds then the call-forwarding destination 100 is used, which addresses the entire company.
5. Hunt group 100 calls all of the numbers in the hunt groups 200, 300 and 400 simultaneously. If even then nobody answers within 10 seconds, then the hunt group forwards the call to an external telephone number, for example a 24/7 call center.

15.6.7 Multiple logins (multi login)

For subscribers using multiple terminal devices, e.g. a softphone on PC and a "normal" telephone on the desktop, multiple SIP, ISDN or analog phones all using the same internal telephone number can log on to the LANCOM VoIP router. Multi-login telephones behave like a single user in a hunt group with 'simultaneous' call distribution:

1. Incoming calls are signaled **simultaneously at all** telephones with this internal number.
2. As soon as a call is picked up at one of the telephones, signaling at the other devices stops.
3. Other incoming calls are signaled at all telephones. If one of the telephones is 'busy', then the entire multi-login group is taken to be 'busy'.
4. Outgoing calls can be made from every telephone without limitation.
5. For a multi-login group only one call forwarding setting (call redirection) can be configured. This applies to all telephones and can be set from any telephone.

To use multi-login, multiple telephones can be set to have the same internal telephone number.

15.7 VoIP media proxy – Optimized management for SIP connections

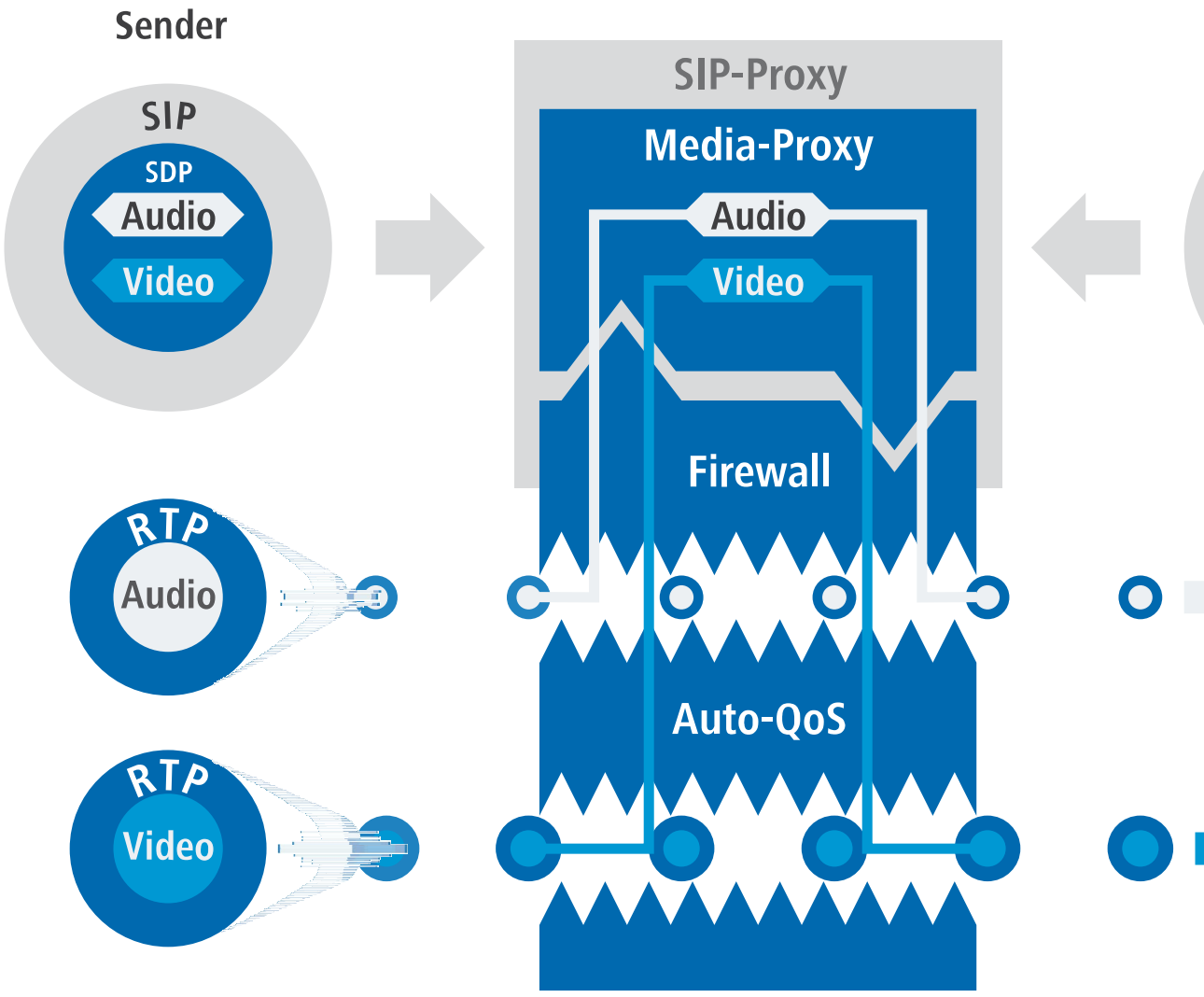
When transferring or forwarding calls between remote subscribers over different SIP lines, the SIP proxy in the LANCOM VoIP router attempts to connect the two callers by means of a REFER or a Re-INVITE. The two external subscribers are not always able to reach one another directly and so the connection may fail. This is because the SIP providers do not make the necessary adaptations, e.g. translation of the destination IP addresses. To improve performance in these situations, the SIP proxy in the LANCOM VoIP routers has been additionally equipped with a media proxy.

The media proxy helps to transfer and forward calls between subscribers who are reachable over different types of telephone line (e.g. SIP PBX line and SIP provider line). The media streams, generally RTP connections, remain unchanged. The media proxy changes the ports and IP addresses in the data packets and it adapts special media end points to the corresponding destination networks (ARF networks, interface and IP address).

Multiple media streams in one SIP connection

The SIP protocol can negotiate multiple data streams in a session, e.g.separate media streams for audio and video. Each stream is handled separately. A data stream initially terminates at the media proxy and continues from the "other side". This provides the data stream with end points at the LAN and WAN sides of the media proxy.

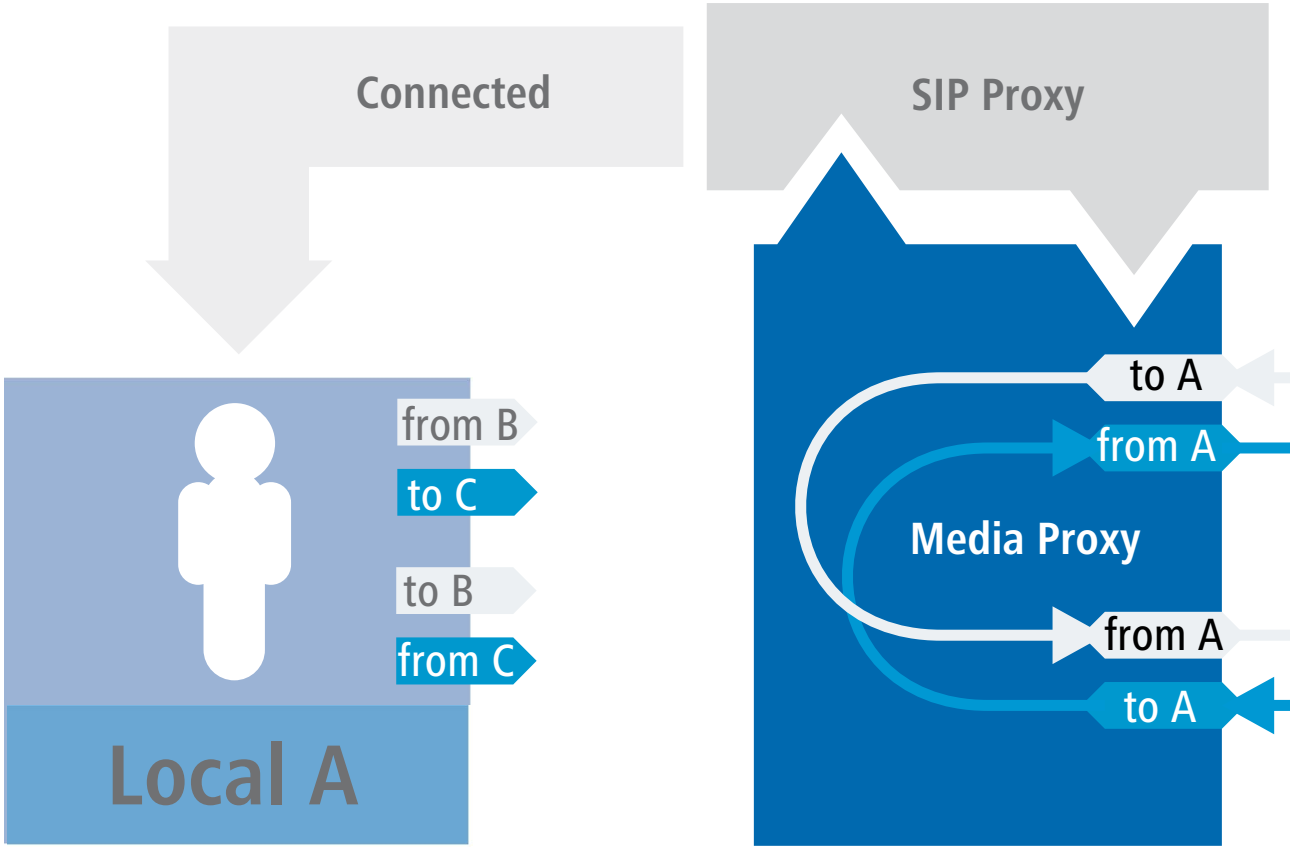
All of the connection information in the direction of the SIP provider can be maintained and all of the necessary changes to IP addresses, ports, etc., are handled by the media proxy.



The data streams are all fed through the firewall individually, which enables a differentiated control of the QoS settings, among other things.

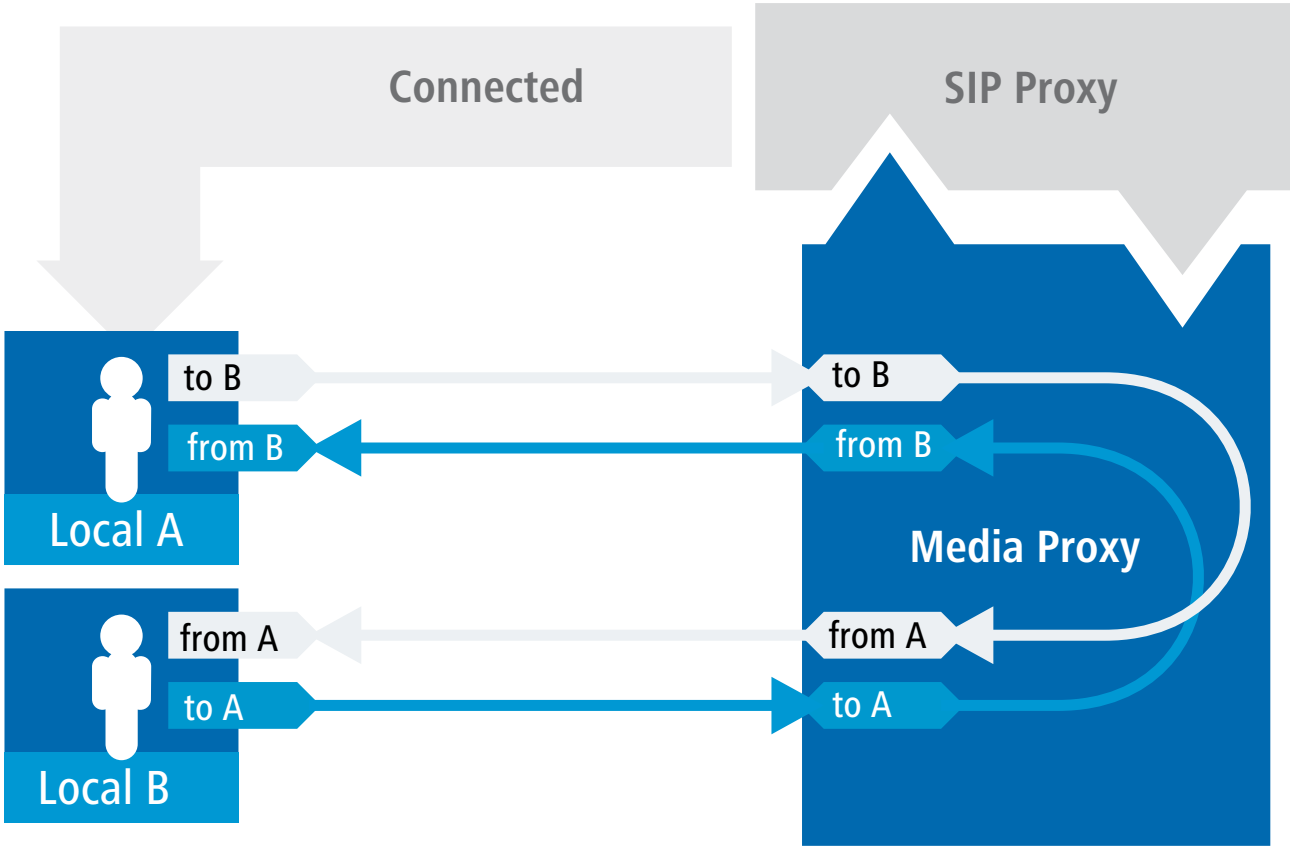
Connection management by the media proxy enables all subscribers to be connected to one another, whatever type of line they are using. This makes it possible to connect between SIP, ISDN and analog subscribers, something that a pure

SIP connection is not capable of. Furthermore, the monitoring of individual media streams in the firewall allows certain types of application to be permitted or prevented depending on the connection's end point.



Management of media streams in case of an upstream SIP PBX

Even for two subscribers in the same network behind the LANCOM VoIP router, when connected to an upstream SIP PBX the media proxy generates data streams with separate media end points on the LAN side and on the WAN side (towards the SIP PBX).



In this case it is not necessary to pass the media streams through the upstream PBX, so the SIP signaling helps the LANCOM VoIP router to make a new decision about the path to be taken by the connection data. Using the end points in the media proxy the data streams can be connected directly, making a diversion via the SIP PBX unnecessary.

This decision is also made again in the media proxy if a local and an external subscriber are connected in such a way that, ultimately, two local subscribers are connected to one another. The media proxy re-assigns the end points when making the connection, so enabling the direct transmission of the data streams between the local participants.

Managing the media streams in the firewall

The media streams are monitored in the firewall as a matter of principle. A firewall rule is generated for each media stream (audio, video). This rule opens a connection for the corresponding IP addresses and ports for each side (LAN-WAN) and carries out a translation according to the IP-port relationships as specified by the media proxy.

Automatic QoS rules for media streams

The QoS mechanism in the firewall reserves the maximum possible amount of connection bandwidth as agreed during the SDP negotiation (SDP, Session Description Protocol) and the packets are prioritized accordingly.

Handling subscribers using different codecs

When connecting different subscribers, the situation can arise where the codecs available to the subscribers do not match together—there are no common codecs due to the SDP negotiation.

The following situations are to be observed here:

- Connections with different media streams, e.g. a video-telephone call (audio + video) and a traditional telephone call (audio only): This connection will be rejected with the message "Codec mismatch".

- Similar media types (audio-audio, video-video) with codecs that do not match: This connection will be rejected with the message "Codec mismatch".

The media proxy can only connect different subscribers if the media type and the codec type match.

15.8 SIP-ID as switchboard number with trunk lines

Until now, SIP trunk lines were given the SIP ID as the switchboard number and modified to suit the telephone number. However, this method is not supported by all trunk-line providers. For this reason you use the SIP mapping table—just like the ISDN mapping—to explicitly define the way that telephone numbers are processed.

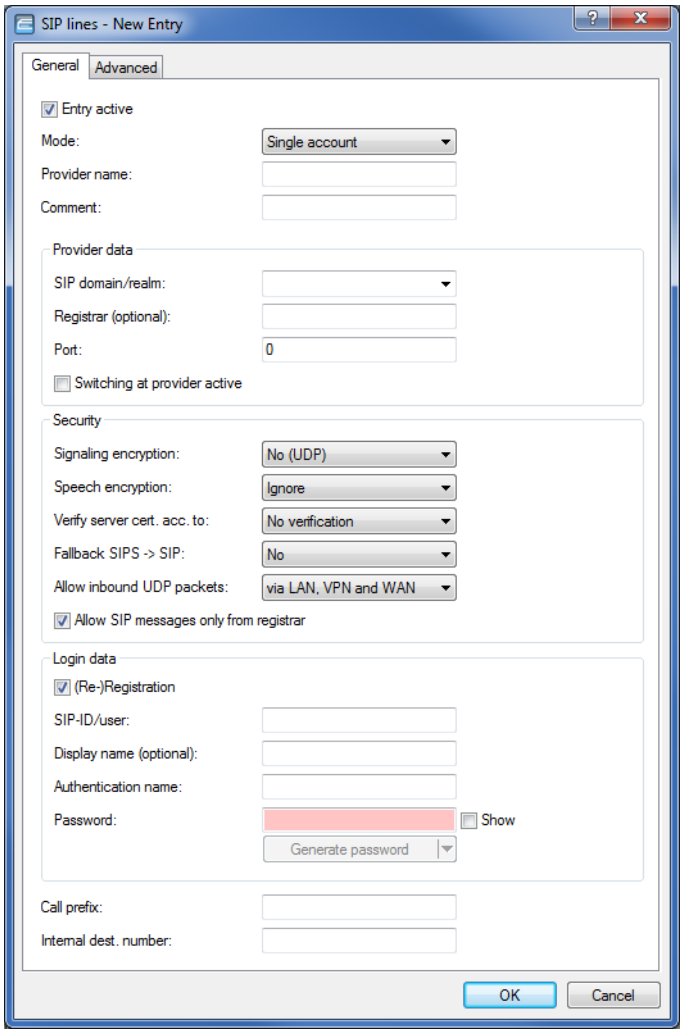
Example: With `0123456789# -> #` the extension numbers of the trunk are mapped 1:1 to the internal telephone numbers.

15.9 Switching at the SIP provider

When switching external SIP connections, the Call Router in the LANCOM VoIP router generally manages the connection for the full duration of the call. This means that the Call Router retains control over a call even when two external subscribers have been connected to one another and the local subscriber on the LANCOM VoIP router side has ended the call. In this case, the LANCOM VoIP router continues to take up bandwidth for connecting the two external subscribers.

If the connections to the two external subscribers both run via the same SIP provider, an alternative is to transfer the call switching to the provider so that the LANCOM VoIP router stops taking up the bandwidth.

You enable the switching at the SIP provider in the LANconfig under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** by clicking on **SIP lines** and enabling the option **Switching at provider active** on the **General** tab.



Switching at provider active

Call switching (transfer call) between two remote subscribers can be handled by the device itself (media proxy) or it can be passed on to the exchange at the provider if both subscribers can be reached on this SIP provider line. The advantage of this is that the LANCOM VoIP router no longer requires the bandwidth. Otherwise, the media proxy in the LANCOM switches the media flows, such as when connecting two SIP provider lines.

Switching at the provider will only work if both connections are routed via the same provider line.

An overview of the main SIP providers supporting this function is available in the Support area of our Internet site.

15.10 SIP ALG

SIP is increasingly becoming established as the basis for modern real-time communication in IP networks. Unified Communications (UC) and collaboration, IP telephony, video streaming, camera surveillance, intercoms, paging systems, and audio recordings increasingly rely upon SIP and RTP for switching and transmission.

The NAT (Network Address Translation) typically carried out by the access router at the edge of the LAN presents a barrier to SIP communications. This is because of the addresses transmitted during SIP signaling and also because of the dynamically negotiated media sessions and the UDP-based RTP connections that depend upon them.

Restrictive firewall configurations prevent communications even where client/server-side mechanisms such as STUN, ICE and TURN are used to overcome NAT.

The SIP ALG (Application Layer Gateway) for LCOS detects SIP connections and the RTP-based media streams that they depend upon and transforms these in line with the NAT rules in the access router.

Also, the SIP ALG monitors the bandwidths of the SIP connections and so provides QoS.

15.10.1 SIP ALG: Properties

The SIP-ALG for LCOS has the following features:

- **No local registration**: The SIP proxy does not provide registration for SIP endpoints. Instead, it mediates the registrations directly to the approved SIP domains.

  This means that it is impossible to set up a line backup over alternative voice lines (analog, ISDN).

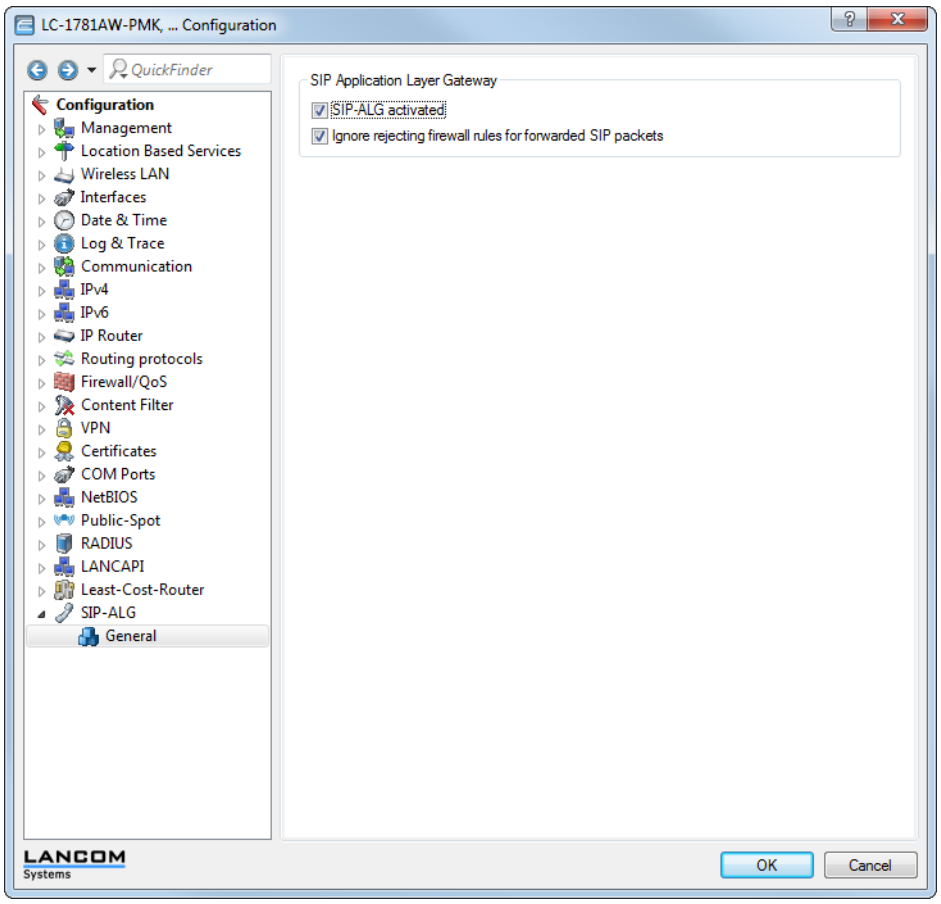
- **Transparency for SIP extensions**: The SIP ALG also transmits unknown, non-standard header elements to enable the SIP messages to be communicated between terminal devices and SIP PBXs.

  The SIP ALG determines an unambiguous destination for every SIP message. Forking (communication between multiple devices of the same identity) is handled upstream. The SIP-ALG merely provides transparent forwarding of these data packets.

15.10.2 SIP ALG: Configuration

The following sections provide explanations for the configuration of the SIP ALG.

The SIP ALG is disabled in the default settings.



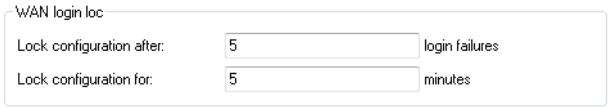
SIP ALG: Configuration by LANconfig

1. Start LANconfig.
   LANconfig now automatically searches the local network for devices. As soon as LANconfig has completed its search, it presents a list of all the devices it found, if possible with a brief description, the IP address and the status.
2. Double-click on the entry for the device on which the SIP ALG is to be configured.
   LANconfig opens the Configuration Wizard and displays the current configuration of the device.
3. In the Configuration Wizard, switch to the menu **SIP-ALG** > **General**.
4. If necessary, highlight the option **SIP ALG activated**.
   This option is already enabled in the default setting.
5. Close the configuration by clicking on **OK**.

15.11 Restricting or preventing SIP registration over WAN

To restrict or prevent the SIP registration at the Voice Call Manager over a WAN connection, navigate to **Voice Call Manager** > **Users** and click the button **SIP users**. The SIP users configuration dialog features a parameter that controls this. You can enable access via VPN, or prohibit it completely.

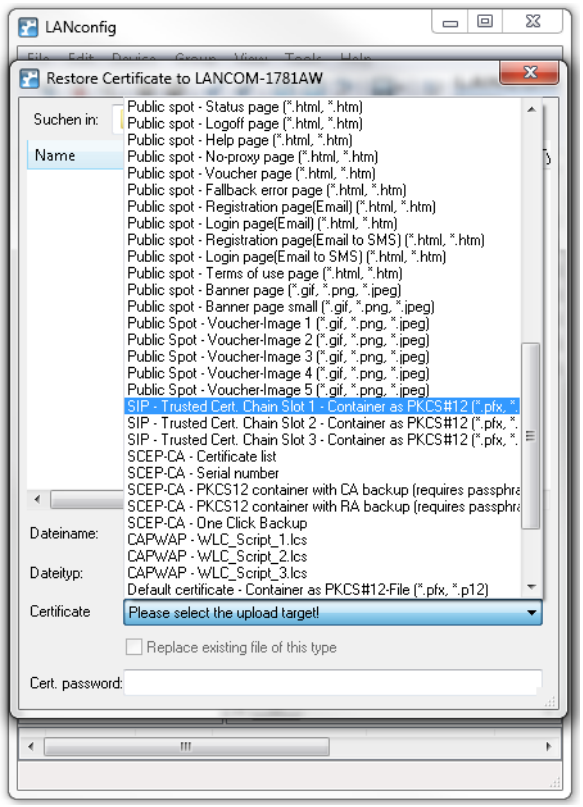
Additional security for the registration is provided by a count of the number of times that a SIP user authenticates incorrectly. Once the counter reaches a threshold value, the device locks the SIP user's account for a certain time. During this period the SIP user cannot log on to the Voice Call Manager. You set the threshold value and the locking time under **Voice Call Manager** > **General** in the section **WAN login lock**.



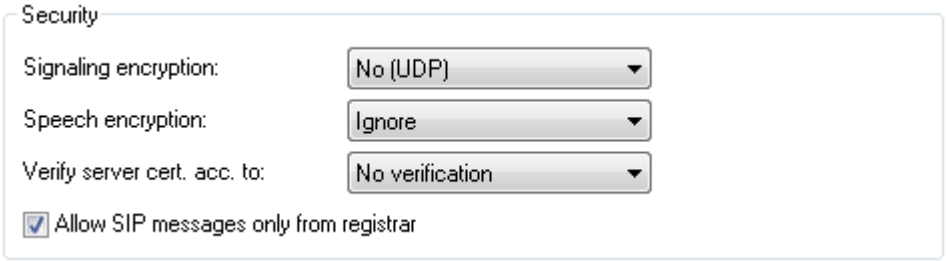
15.12 Certificates for encrypted telephony

You have the option to download certificates for encrypted telephony onto your device and to check whether the existing certificate used by the SIP server to establish a TLS connection should be classified as trustworthy and accepted.

Download the required SIP certificate to your device with LANconfig by navigating to **Configuration management** > **Upload certificate or file** .



In the LANconfig dialog under **Voice Call Manager** > **Lines** > **SIP lines**, select how the SIP certificate is to be checked in the "Security" section:



Verify server cert. acc. to:

With this setting, you specify whether the certificate of the SIP server is verified against certain Certificate Authorities (CAs). CA certificates from globally recognized certificate chains are updated with LCOS updates. They can also be manually updated by truststore updates.

Server certificate	
No verification	The server certificate is not verified. All valid server certificates are accepted, whichever CA they were signed by. This setting is useful for accepting self-signed certificates.

Server certificate

All trusted CAs	The server certificate is verified against all CAs known to the device. These include all CAs that LCOS "knows" to be trusted and also those from the VoIP server certificate slots 1 to 3. The encrypted connection is only established if one of these certificates is validated successfully.
VoIP cert. slot 1	A check is made to see whether the server certificate was signed by the CA whose certificate was uploaded to slot 1 of the VoIP certificates.
VoIP cert. slot 2	A check is made to see whether the server certificate was signed by the CA whose certificate was uploaded to slot 2 of the VoIP certificates.
VoIP cert. slot 3	A check is made to see whether the server certificate was signed by the CA whose certificate was uploaded to slot 3 of the VoIP certificates.
Telekom-Shared-Business-CA4	With this setting, the device only accepts server certificates signed by the Telekom Shared Business CA4 CA. Use this setting for SIP trunk connections from Deutsche Telekom.

15.13 Handling canonical telephone numbers

Canonical telephone numbers (familiar from mobile phones and starting with +) were formerly automatically reformatted into standard telephone numbers. + was converted to `00`.

In WEBconfig under **LCOS menu tree** > **Setup** > **Voice-Call-Manager** > **Convert-Canonicals** you can deactivate automatic conversion by setting **no**, in which case the canonical numbers are processed by the call-routing table. This allows you to specify your own lines for canonical numbers, for example.

15.14 Processing Destination Domains

As the VoIP implementation in the LANCOM VoIP router handles all calls as SIP calls, telephone numbers and SIP subscribers contain domain information. Furthermore, SIP numbers can also contain alphanumeric characters.

The SIP domains are used in LCOS as follows:

- When SIP subscribers register at upstream PBXs or at the LANCOM VoIP router itself.
- When SIP subscribers establish a connection.

LCOS supports the following defined domains:

- ISDN for the ISDN interfaces
- All domains that are entered for the lines

15.14.1 Registration at upstream exchanges

Local SIP subscribers can only register using the domains that are known. The subscribers authenticate themselves at the local LANCOM VoIP router with their user name and password. This excludes domains that correspond to an upstream SIP PBX. These registrations are authenticated at the upstream SIP PBX.

If a subscriber tries to register with an unknown domain, then this may be accepted as a local registration.

15.14.2 Switching internal calls

For internal connections, internal numbers are generally assigned unambiguously. However, SIP telephones, for example, can register with several "lines", such as '1011@provider.com' and '1011@isdn.com', so that a line can be assigned specifically to the required connection.

With internal switching, an attempt is made to find a subscriber whose number and domain match. Only if this was not successful is the call placed using the destination number only. The domain remains unchanged.

For example, calls that are incoming via ISDN (from calling pty id@isdn) are switched to subscriber 1011 (to 1011@isdn). The call to the SIP telephone is displayed on the ISDN line key. If there is no such subscriber with such a domain, then the call is delivered to the first known subscriber '1011'.

15.15 Configuring the ISDN interfaces

LANCOM VoIP routers are equipped with multiple ISDN interfaces, which can be used either to connect the device to an ISDN exchange line or to ISDN terminal equipment.

ISDN-TE interface ("external ISDN line")

An ISDN interface in TE mode for connection to the ISDN bus of an upstream ISDN PBX or to an ISDN NTBA. This ISDN interface can be used for backup connections over ISDN or as a dial-in interface for remote sites.

ISDN-NT interface ("internal ISDN line")

With its ISDN interface in NT mode, the LANCOM VoIP router itself provides an internal ISDN bus. This ISDN interface can be used to connect ISDN PBXs or ISDN telephones.

Ex-factory each ISDN interface is set to TE mode. A cross-over adapter (shipped with the All-IP option) converts it to an NT port. With LANCOM business VoIP routers, this function is controlled via LCOS.

- Multiple TE interfaces provide, for example, up to four B channels as a backup or for dial-in.
- With multiple NT interfaces, for example, a downstream ISDN PBX provides up to eight B channels.

Depending on the combination of ISDN interfaces in TE and NT mode, you need to set up the bus termination, and the appropriate protocol needs to be set in the software. The setting for the protocol allows for the type of ISDN connection to be used (point-to-multipoint or point-to-point).

15.15.1 Point-to-multipoint and point-to-point connections

LANCOM VoIP routers support point-to-multipoint and point-to-point connections:

- Point-to-multipoint connection (point-to-multipoint): Up to 8 ISDN terminal devices can be connected to this type of connection. Terminal equipment can include ISDN telephones and ISDN PBXs, which can be used for connecting yet more equipment. As an alternative, a LANCOM VoIP router can be connected to a point-to-multipoint connection.
- Point-to-multipoint connection (point-to-multipoint): This type of device is suitable for the connection of one ISDN device only, generally an ISDN PBX. As an alternative, a LANCOM VoIP router can be connected to a point-to-point connection.

To connect a LANCOM VoIP router, the interface is set up for the type of line at hand.

Equipment connected to an ISDN connection can be addressed in two ways:

- The devices are addressed with a multiple subscriber number (MSN) that is linked to the ISDN connection and cannot be influenced.

- Terminal devices are addressed via a Direct Dialing In-Number (DDI). However, only the switchboard number is associated with the telephone line; the extension numbers that address the individual terminal devices can be chosen at will and are merely suffixes to the switchboard number. The switchboard number, extension and area selection code (not including the leading zero) can be at the most 11 characters long.

The terms "point-to-multipoint connection" and "point-to-point connection" are used in many countries to describe the technical implementation of point-to-multipoint with MSN and point-to-point with DDI. Other countries may use different types of connection and other combinations of protocol and call-number type, or even different names. Please refer to your telephone network operator for the technical specifications of your ISDN connection.

15.15.2 Bus termination

The configuration of the bus termination is either done in the software or, as is the case with the All-IP option, by using the supplied cross-over adapter.

Bus termination is obligatory with an ISDN interface in NT mode.

Bus termination is generally deactivated for ISDN interfaces in TE mode. If the LANCOM VoIP router is the last device at a longer ISDN bus and this itself is not terminated, it may be advantageous to activate the bus termination for an ISDN interface in TE mode.

15.15.3 Protocol settings

In LANconfig, parameters for the ISDN interfaces are entered in the configuration section 'Interfaces' under 'WAN'. In WEBconfig, Telnet or an SSH client you find the settings for the ISDN interface parameters under `Setup/Interfaces/WAN`.

Select the protocol for each ISDN interface according to its application and the ISDN connection type: Point-to-multipoint and point-to-point connections can be used in various combinations with a LANCOM VoIP router. The following options are available:

- **Automatic** for automatic selection of the operating mode (only in TE mode)
- **DSS1 TE (Euro ISDN)** for connection to a point-to-multipoint ISDN bus.
- **DSS1 TE point-to-point** for connection to a point-to-point ISDN bus.
- **1TR6 TE (German ISDN)** for connection an ISDN bus which uses this protocol (in Germany only).
- **DSS1 NT (Euro ISDN)** to provide point-to-multipoint ISDN interfaces
- **DSS1 NT reverse** to provide point-to-multipoint interfaces while maintaining the ISDN timing of the connected ISDN line.
- **DSS1 NT (point-to-point)** to provide point-to-point ISDN interfaces
- **DSS1 NT point-to-point reverse** to provide point-to-point interfaces while maintaining the ISDN timing of the connected ISDN line.
- **DSS1 timing** to maintain the ISDN timing of the connected ISDN line.
- **Off**

If an ISDN device is attached to an ISDN interface that is set to auto and is not recognized properly, set the required protocol manually.

15.15.4 ISDN connection timing

To ensure trouble-free transmission, all of the components in the ISDN system (LANCOM VoIP routers, upstream and downstream ISDN PBXs and ISDN terminal devices) have to use the same ISDN timing. In the LANCOM VoIP router, an ISDN interface in TE mode can take on the timing of the ISDN line. The TE interface enables the device itself to behave like a terminal device. In NT mode, the LANCOM VoIP router can pass on the on this timing over the ISDN interfaces to

any connected terminal equipment or downstream ISDN PBXs. The NT interface enables the device itself to behave like an exchange.

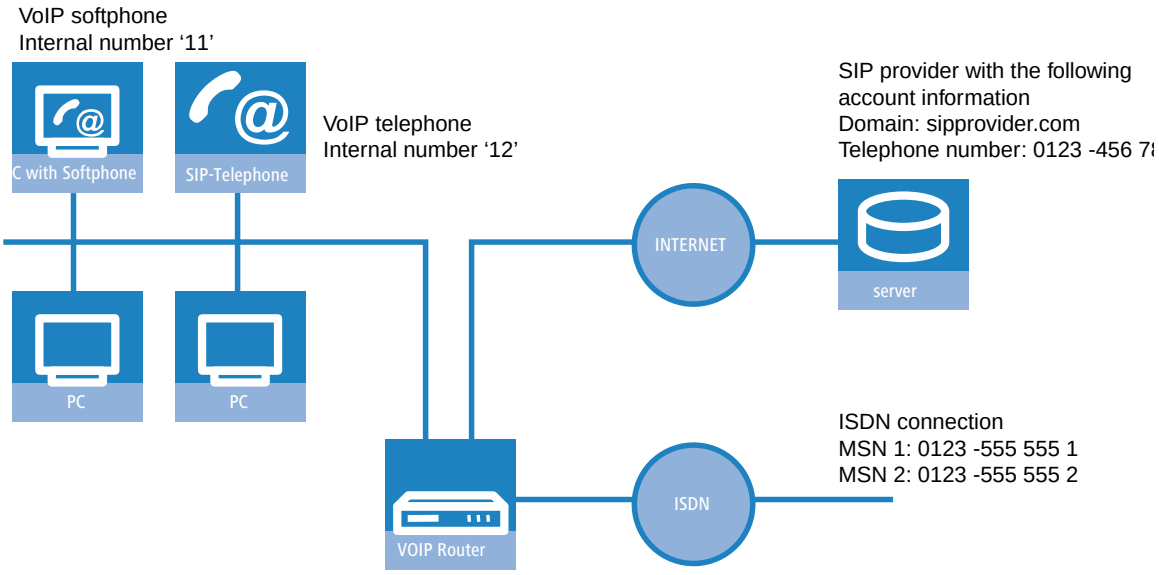
A number of ISDN interface settings are available for specifying the ISDN interface which is to supply the ISDN timing to the LANCOM VoIP router, which in turn passes on the timing to the devices at the NT interfaces.

- **Automatic**: If no interface has been manually selected for the timing, the device automatically searches for a TE interface to supply the timing. To ensure that the timing is synchronous, the TE connectors constantly try to keep the connection activated. This ensures that the timing continues to be supplied even if one of multiple TE lines should be shut off. If none of the TE connectors supply a timing, then the timing system runs "freely" and uses the internal timing of the LANCOM VoIP router.
- **DSS1 timing**: This setting takes on the ISDN timing from this connection, and this is used by the LANCOM VoIP router and further devices connected over the NT interface. In this way, the timing can be switched through in parallel to an existing ISDN PBX at a point-to-point connection. Apart from passing on the ISDN timing, the interface is not active.
- **DSS1 NT reverse** or **DSS1 NT point-to-point reverse**: When all ISDN interfaces are operated in NT mode, the timing system runs "freely" because there is no TE interface to take on the ISDN timing. If in this case the ISDN connections are connected, for example, to an ISDN PBX which is being supplied with ISDN timing from another source, then interference to the transmission may arise because the timing of the LANCOM VoIP router is not synchronous to that of the PBX. In such cases, the reverse setting allows the ISDN timing to be taken from an NT-mode interface, so ensuring that the LANCOM VoIP router runs synchronously with the overall system.

15.16 Configuration examples

15.16.1 VoIP telephony in stand-alone operation

This example shows how to configure a LANCOM which is used as a central device for Internet connectivity and VoIP telephony at a new site.



Objective

- Internal telephony with SIP telephones and SIP softphones.
- Access to internal terminal equipment via the MSNs.
- External telephony via the SIP provider with backup over ISDN.

- Calls to emergency and service numbers via ISDN.

Requirements

- LANCOM connected to the LAN and WAN, an ISDN TE interface is linked to the ISDN NTBA. The Internet connection has been set up.
- A dialing plan with a unique internal telephone number for all terminal equipment to be connected, here, for example, the number `11` for the VoIP softphone and the number `12` for the VoIP telephone.
- A SIP provider account.

Using the information during configuration

The following table provides a summary of the information required for configuration and where it can be entered. SIP terminal equipment parameters can be entered using the SIP telephone keypad, the corresponding configuration software, or the softphone configuration menu.

	LANCOM	SIP terminal equipment	ISDN PBX	ISDN terminal equipment
Internal VoIP domain	✔	✔		
Internal numbers	✔	✔	✔	✔
External SIP telephone number	✔			
SIP account access data	✔			
External ISDN telephone numbers (MSNs)			✔	
Country and local area code	✔			

Configuring the device

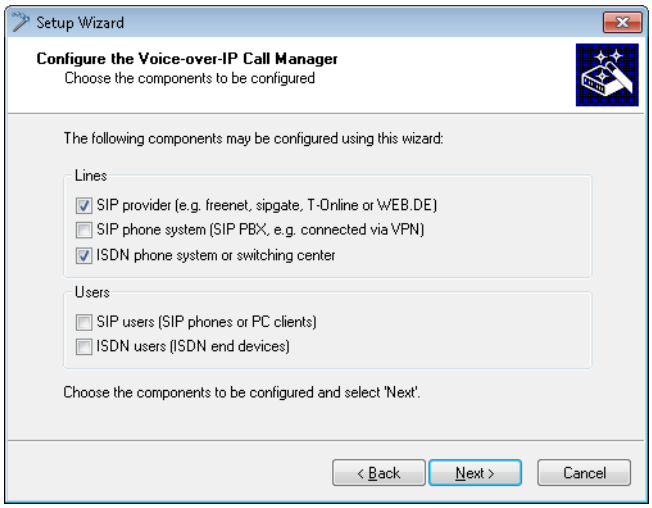
The following steps are required to configure the device:

- Set up the line to the SIP provider
- Enable the ISDN interface, and assign MSNs to the internal numbers

In this example, it is not necessary to configure SIP users: The SIP users are authenticated at the LANCOM with the settings created in the terminal equipment (softphone and VoIP telephone).

Configuring the device in detail:

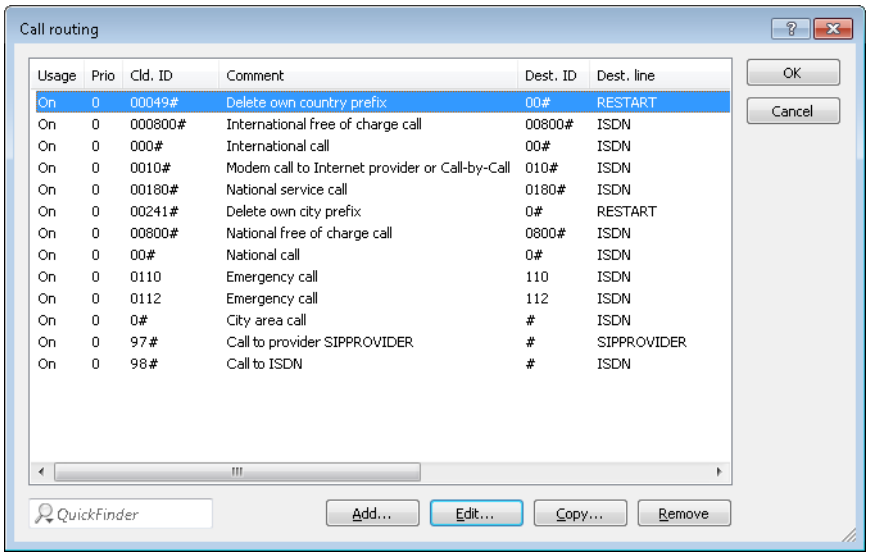
1. Under LANconfig, start the setup wizard for configuring the Voice Call Manager. Enable the options **SIP provider** and **ISDN phone system**.



2. Enter a unique domain for the local VoIP domain which describes the local VoIP area for the site (e.g. `mycompany.internal`.)
3. Configure the line to the SIP provider, for example with the name `SIPPROVIDER` with the following values:
   - Internal default number: All calls arriving from the SIP provider are forwarded to this internal number. Enter an internal number from your dialing plan here, e.g. `11`.
   - SIP domain/realm: You received this domain from your SIP provider; it is usually entered in the format `sipdomain.tld` without the part that designates any specific server.
   - Registrar (FQDN / IP) (optional):
   - Outbound proxy (optional):
   - SIP-ID / user: Enter the SIP number with local area code here, providing that the SIP provider does not require any other information.
   - Display name (optional): The display name is only required if the SIP provider verifies this during registration. If you enter a display name here, then this name will be displayed at the remote site. If the field remains empty, then the display name for the corresponding internal user is transmitted.
   - Authentication name (optional): Special authentication names are not supported by all SIP providers. In many cases, the authentication name is the same as the SIP ID or the user name. Complete this field only if your SIP provider has issued you a special authentication name.
   - Password: Enter the password for SIP access here.

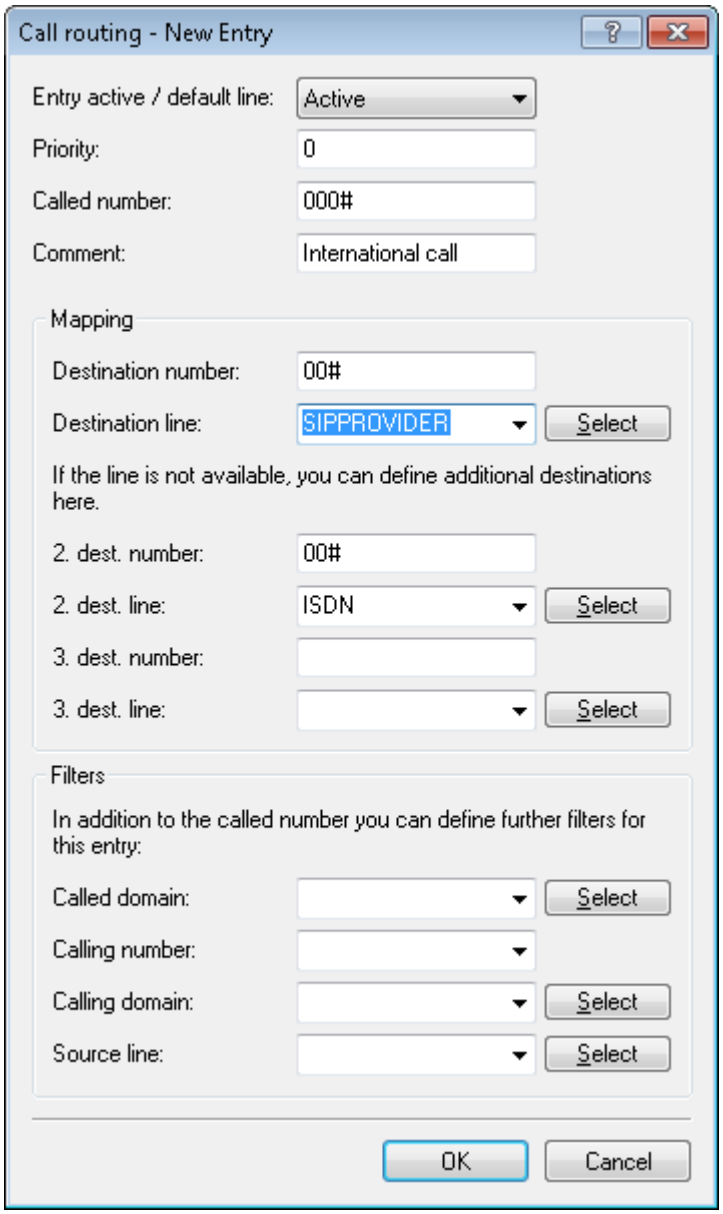
   This description applies to a "user-defined configuration". If you select a special SIP provider from the list, then some of the parameters will be preconfigured automatically.
4. Configure an ISDN line for VoIP telephony use. For every MSN on your ISDN connection, make an assignment to an internal number within your telephone number plan during ISDN mapping.
   - MSN 1 `555 555 1` / internal phone number `11`
   - MSN 2 `555 555 2` / internal phone number `12`
5. Enter the local and national area code for the device's location. Using this information, the Voice Call Manager can decide whether or not outgoing calls are local calls, national or international long distance calls.

6. Based upon the entries made so far, LANconfig creates a suggestion for the call routing table which you can adapt to fit your requirements as follows:



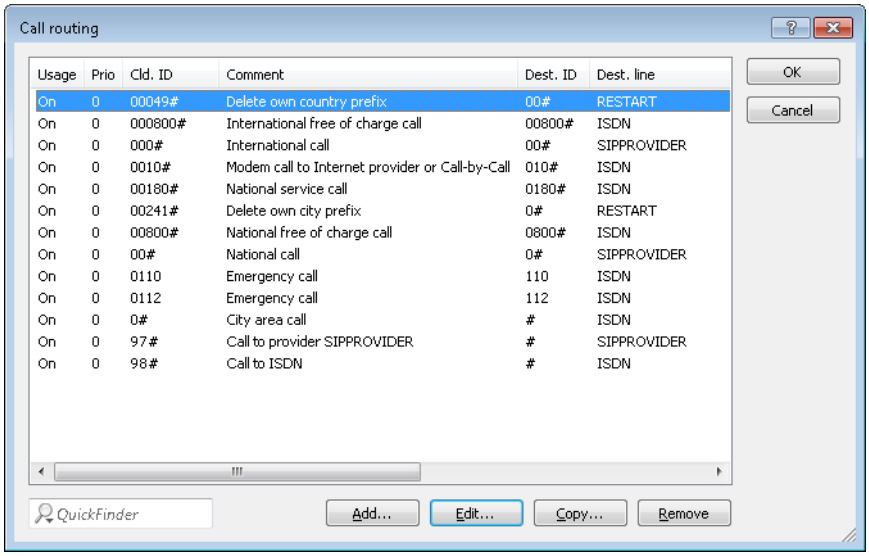
The # sign is a placeholder for any character string. The entry `0#` is therefore suitable for all numbers dialed that have at least one `0` preceding them.

This suggested call routing table would place all external calls over the ISDN line. The SIP line is set up as a backup for international and national long distance calls and local calls that are not in the list of special or emergency numbers.



In order to channel calls to special destinations, such as international and national long distance calls, over the SIP provider, double-click on the corresponding entry in the table and switch the line used from `ISDN` to `SIPPROVIDER`.

Don't forget to switch the backup line from `SIP` to `ISDN`, if necessary! After being adapted for international and national long distance, the call routing table should appear as follows:



Configuring the VoIP terminal equipment

Enter the registration information for the first SIP user in the softphone.

Call routing procedure for outgoing calls

On outgoing calls, the Call Manager first searches the call routing table from top to bottom. If the Call Router cannot find a matching entry there, it uses the list of registered users:

	User	Dials	Correct call route	Correct user	Mapping, number in use	Destination line
1	VoIP telephone	`11`	None	VoIP softphone	`11`	Internal
2	VoIP telephone	`0 555 555`	**3** `0#`		`0241#: 0241 555 555`	ISDN
3	VoIP telephone	`0 0123 666 666`	**3** `00#`		`0#: 0123 666 666`	SIP provider

1. The Call Manager cannot find an entry that corresponds to `11` in the call routing table. Now it searches the list of registered users and finds the internal SIP user there.

   Call routing uses not just the users configured in the LANCOM, but all of the users that are actually authorized with the call router. This allows SIP users to authenticate with the call router even if they are not entered in the LANCOM. The entry of the internal VoIP domain on the LANCOM is sufficient for authentication, assuming that local authentication is not required.

2. The entry **3** in the call routing table shown above matches the dialed number. The call router removes the `0` outside-line access prefix, adds the area code for the local telephone network and makes the call to `0241 555 555` via the ISDN line.

   The area code for the local telephone network is added on because calls via SIP providers usually require the area code to be dialed.

3. The entry in the call routing table is suitable in this case. The call router removes the `0` prefix for access to the outside line and completes the call to `0123 555 555` via the SIP line. If the SIP line is not available, then the call is made over the ISDN line.

Call routing procedure for incoming calls

For incoming calls, the telephone network exchange removes the prefix from the number dialed (destination number). Therefore, the LANCOM only receives the number itself, which may be treated differently depending on the source:

- Numbers from the ISDN network are translated with the ISDN mapping table to the internal number which is entered for the receiving MSN.
- Calls from a SIP network are mapped to the internal destination number entered for the corresponding SIP line.

With the altered number, the Call Manager begins to search the call routing table from top to bottom. If the Call Router cannot find a matching entry there, the call is forwarded directly to the internal number:

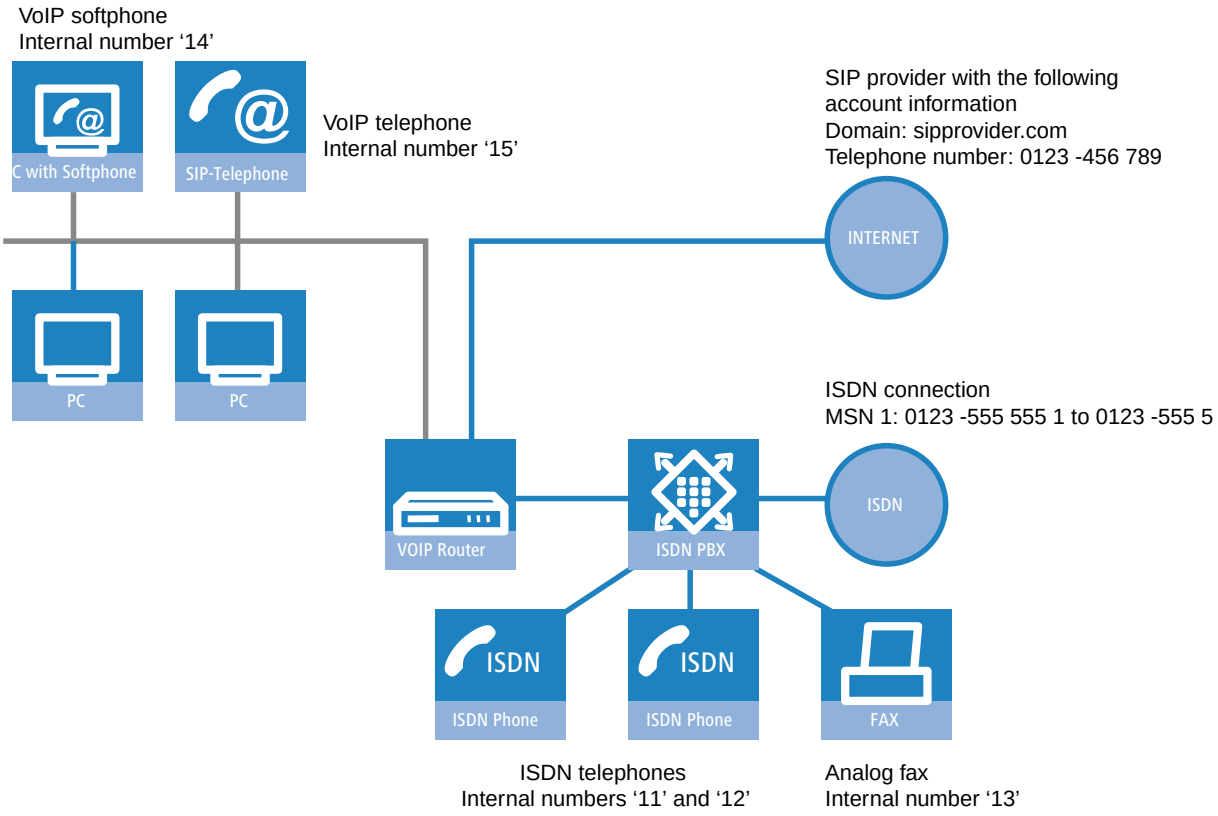
	Remote site dials	Call router receives	Assigned via	Number in use	Correct call route	Destination line
1	`0 123 456 789`	`456 789`	internal destination number for SIP line	`11`	None	Internal
2	`0 123 555 555 1`	`555 555 1`	ISDN mapping	`11`	None	Internal
3	`0 123 555 555 2`	`555 555 2`	ISDN mapping	`12`	None	Internal

15.16.2 Using VoIP telephony to enhance the upstream ISDN PBX

This example shows how to configure a LANCOM when an upstream ISDN PBX is enhanced with the VoIP telephony capability. Until now, the MSNs `11` to `13` for the ISDN connection have been used for two ISDN telephones and one analog fax.

The PBX is configured so that subscribers dial `0` to access an outside line.

The LANCOM is operated on an ISDN PBX extension line.



Objective

- Internal telephony with ISDN and SIP telephones and SIP softphones.
- External telephony with VoIP terminal equipment via the SIP provider with backup over ISDN.
- External telephony with ISDN terminal equipment in the PBX. Depending on the functionality of the ISDN PBX, ISDN terminal equipment can also use the SIP lines in the LANCOM VoIP router.
- Accessing internal terminal equipment (ISDN and SIP) via the MSNs.
- Calls to emergency and service numbers via ISDN.

Requirements

- LANCOM connected to the LAN and WAN; an ISDN TE interface is linked to the extension interface on the ISDN PBX. The Internet connection has been set up.
- A dialing plan with a unique internal telephone number for each piece of terminal equipment to be connected. In general, the numbers used are predetermined by the PBX, which often only allows certain number ranges.
- A SIP provider account.

Using the information during configuration

Dialing plans with ISDN PBX systems: When crossing from the ISDN network to the internal subscribers, the ISDN PBX converts the external MSNs to internal MSNs. When operating a LANCOM VoIP router at the extension interface of the ISDN PBX, the internal MSNs of the PBX are translated to the internal numbers of the VoIP range. For reasons of clarity, we recommend using congruent internal MSNs/numbers for terminal equipment for all connections.

The following table provides a summary of the information required for configuration and where it can be entered. SIP terminal equipment parameters can be entered using the SIP telephone keypad, the corresponding configuration software, or the softphone configuration menu.

	LANCOM	SIP terminal equipment	ISDN PBX	ISDN terminal equipment
Internal VoIP domain	✔	✔		
Internal numbers	✔	✔	✔	✔
External SIP telephone number	✔			
SIP account access data	✔			
External ISDN telephone numbers (MSNs)			✔	
Country and local area code	✔			

Configuring the device

The following steps are required to configure the LANCOM:

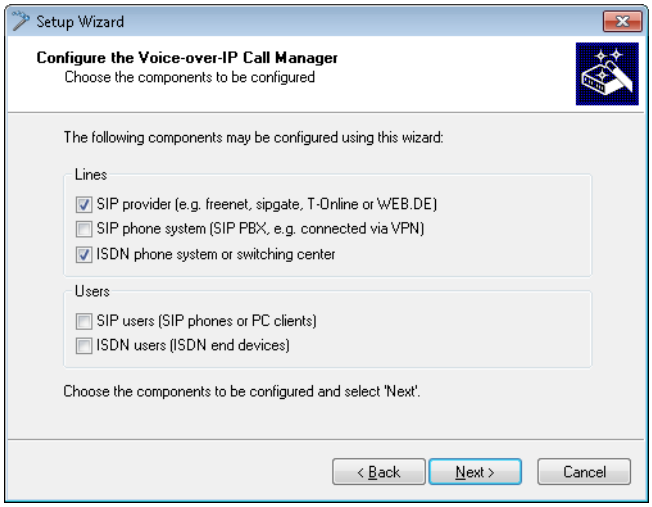
- Set up the line to the SIP provider
- Enable the ISDN interface and the mapping of internal MSNs in the PBX to the internal numbers of the LANCOM VoIP router
- Adapt the call-routing table

In this example, it is not necessary to configure SIP or ISDN users:

- The SIP users are registered at the LANCOM with the settings in the terminal equipment (softphone and VoIP telephone).
  - The ISDN devices can be reached via a corresponding entry in the call routing table.

Configuring the LANCOM in detail:

1. Under LANconfig, start the setup wizard for configuring the Voice Call Manager. Enable the options **SIP provider** and **ISDN phone system or switching center**.



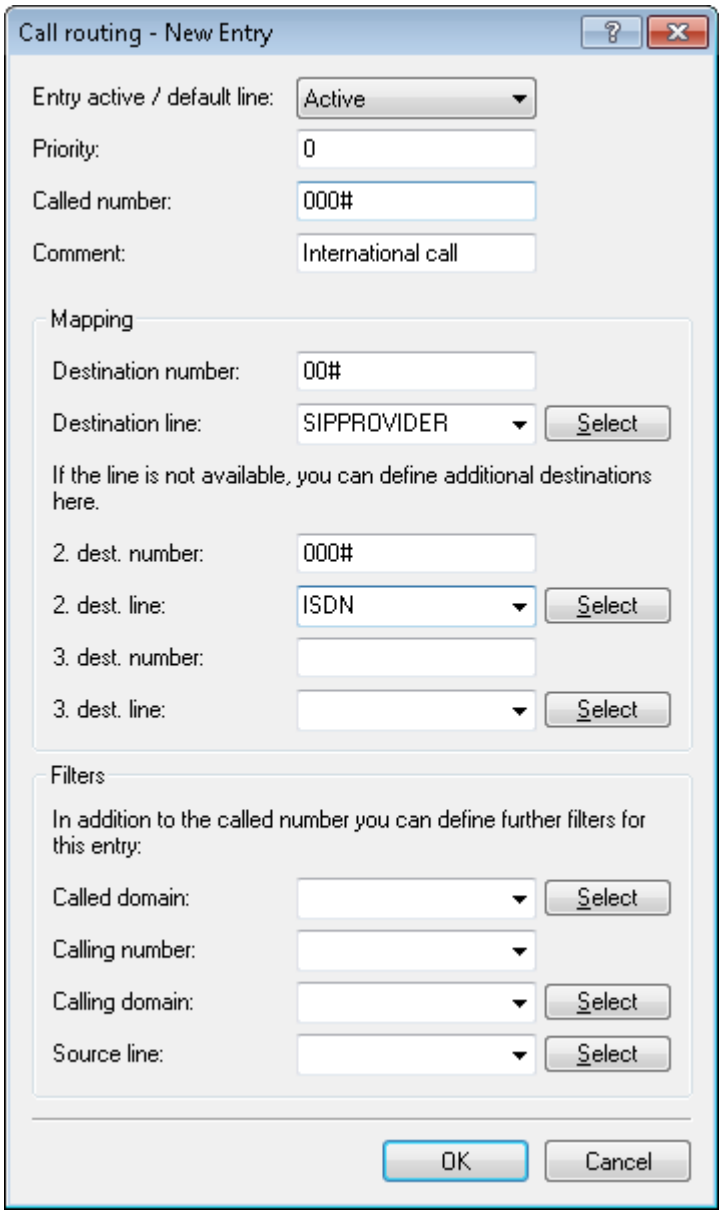
2. Configure the device as described in the preceding examples:

   Unique local VoIP domains

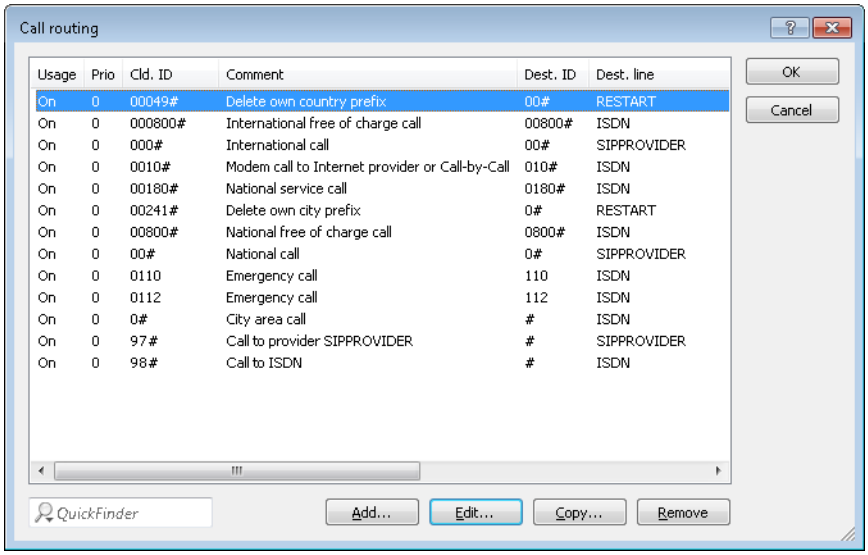
   A line to a SIP provider

   ISDN line

3. Adapt the suggested call routing table in order to direct calls to service numbers automatically over the SIP provider's line. The following example shows the entry for international calls.



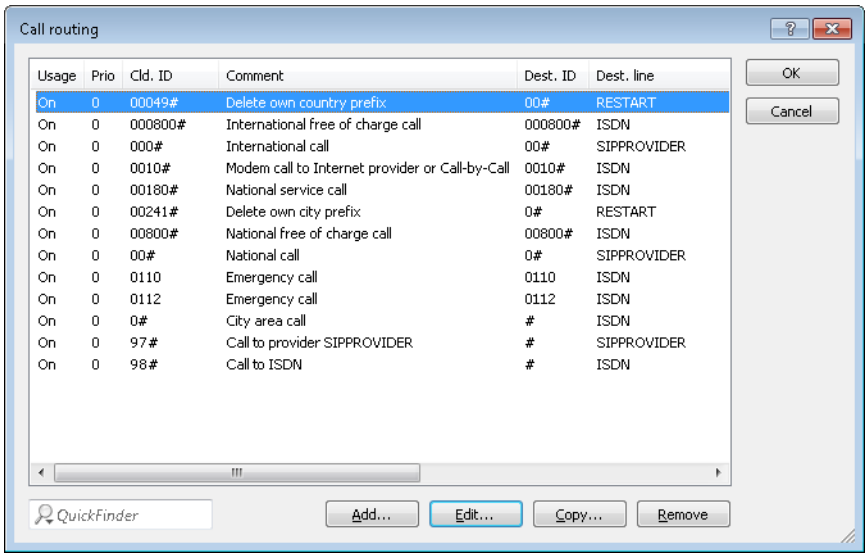
1. After adaptation, the call routing table appears as follows:



The leading `0` is removed from the number for long distance calls, and the call is made via the SIP provider.

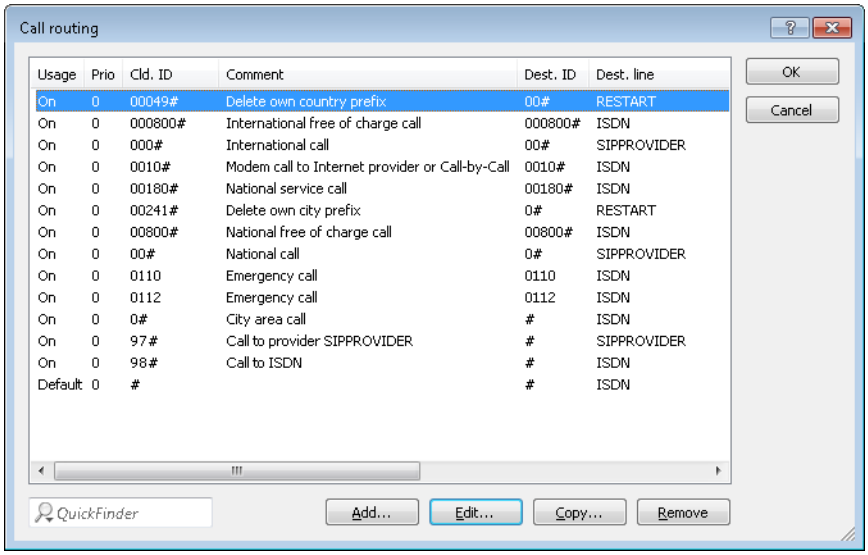
2. For ISDN calls, however, the `0` should not be removed from the destination number because the upstream ISDN PBX requires the `0` to access an outside line. Therefore, adapt the destination number for all entries with the destination line 'ISDN'.

   After adaptation, the call routing table appears as follows:



3. In order to allow the ISDN subscribers to be contacted internally by the VoIP users, a default route is also set up which directs all calls that have not yet been resolved to the ISDN line without changing the numbers.

After adaptation, the call routing table appears as follows:



This call routing table is only valid for PBX systems where the subscribers dial `0` to access an outside line. If the PBX uses another mechanism for accessing an outside line, then the table must be adapted accordingly.

Configuring the VoIP terminal equipment

The VoIP terminal equipment is configured as described in the preceding examples with internal VoIP domains and internal numbers for the local site.

Configuring the ISDN PBX

When configuring the PBX, external MSNs are assigned to internal MSNs. For every VoIP terminal device, a free internal MSN is linked to an external MSN.

External and internal calls from ISDN terminal devices into VoIP telephony

First, the ISDN terminal devices forward the desired destination number to the ISDN PBX when the call is being established. If the number is an internal number/MSN, then the PBX directs the call to the internal ISDN bus. The SIP terminal equipment connected to the LANCOM can only be reached by an internal call if the PBX knows the internal number for the VoIP user.

If your PBX is able to direct external numbers to the internal ISDN bus, then the ISDN terminal devices can also use the lines configured in the LANCOM, such as the SIP provider line, for outgoing external calls.

Configuring the ISDN terminal equipment

Configuring the ISDN terminal equipment is generally limited to entering the internal MSN used in the PBX.

Call routing procedure for outgoing calls

	User	Dials	Correct call route	Correct user	Mapping, number in use	Destination line
1	VoIP telephone	`14`	None	VoIP softphone	`14`	Internal
2	VoIP telephone	`11`	**3** # (default)		`#:11`	ISDN
3	ISDN telephone	`14`	**1.** PBX	VoIP softphone	`14`	Internal

	User	Dials	Correct call route	Correct user	Mapping, number in use	Destination line
4	VoIP telephone	0 555 555	**2** 0#		00241#: 0 555 555	ISDN
5	ISDN telephone	0 555 555	**1.** PBX		555 555	ISDN exchange
6	VoIP telephone	0 0123 666 666	**1** 00#		0#: 0123 666 666	SIP provider

1. Internal call between two VoIP terminal devices.
2. Internal call from VoIP to ISDN. In the first pass (without the default routes) the number 11 does not match any of the routes. Similarly, no matching entry is found in the list of authenticated users. In the second pass, the default route finds # (entry **3** in the call routing table shown above) and directs the call **unchanged** to the ISDN line. The PBX receives the call on its internal ISDN bus, recognizes the called number as an internal MSN, and again forwards the call to the internal ISDN bus that the respective ISDN terminal device is connected to.
3. Internal call from ISDN to VoIP. The ISDN PBX recognizes the destination number 14 as an internal MSN and directs the call to the corresponding internal ISDN bus. The Call Router receives the call to 14, does not find a matching entry in the call routing table but does find an entry in the list of authenticated users.
4. External call from the VoIP into the local telephone network. The entry **2** in the call routing table shown above matches the dialed number. The Call Router completes the area code for the local telephone network and sends the call out to the ISDN line. Only now does the SIP PBX removes the 0 outside-line access prefix and makes the call to 0241 555 555 via the ISDN exchange line.
5. External call from ISDN into the local telephone network. The ISDN PBX recognizes the destination number as an external destination, removes the 0 outside-line access prefix and completes the call to 555 555 via the ISDN exchange line.
6. External call from VoIP into the national telephone network. The entry **2** in the call routing table is suitable in this case. The call router removes the 0 prefix for access to the outside line and completes the call to 0123 555 555 via the SIP line. If the SIP line is not available, then the call is made over the ISDN line. In this case, the 0 is retained in the destination number in order to gain access to an outside line through the PBX.

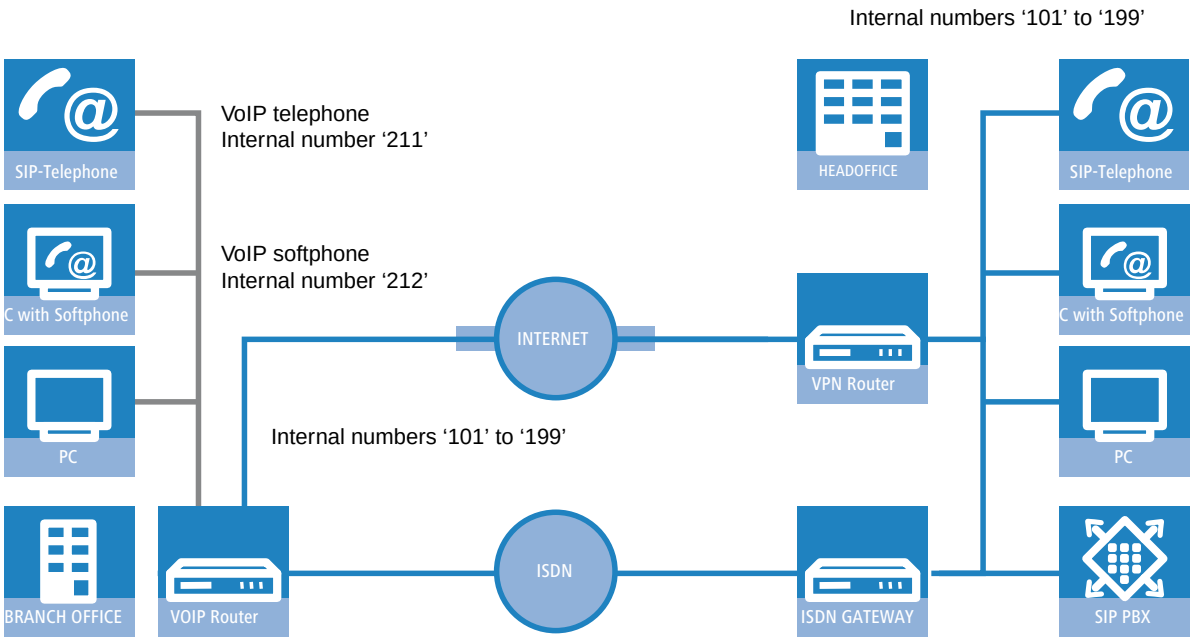
Call routing procedure for incoming calls

	Remote site dials	Call router receives	Assigned via	Number in use	Correct call route	Destination line
1	0 123 456 789	456 789	internal destination number for SIP line	11	None	ISDN
2	0 123 555 555 1		ISDN PBX	11		Internal
3	0 123 555 555 4	14	**1.** ISDN PBX **2.** List of local users	14	None	Internal

1. The incoming call for the SIP line number is directed to the Call Router along with the internal destination number that has been configured. The Call Router cannot find a matching entry in the call routing table, but it can find a registered user with the matching internal number. Since the user is an ISDN user, the Call Router directs the call to the ISDN line. The PBX receives the number 11 and can determine this call to be an internal call for the connected ISDN telephone.
2. The incoming calls to the MSNs for the connected ISDN terminal equipment can be assigned directly by the PBX itself, the Call Router is not involved here.
3. The PBX directs incoming calls to the MSNs for the connected VoIP terminal equipment to the internal ISDN bus with the internal MSN. The Call Router receives these calls as if they were internal calls and forwards them to the appropriate user since no corresponding entry can be found in the call routing table here either.

15.16.3 Connecting to an upstream SIP PBX

In this example, a branch office network will be connected to the headquarters network over VPN. In addition to data transfer, the telephone structure in the branch office is also connected to the central SIP PBX. A LANCOM VoIP router is used in the branch office network and a LANCOM VPN router acts as the VPN end point at the headquarters. The telephony subscribers at the headquarters receive internal extensions in the number range `101` to `199`; for each of the branch offices, a 10-digit block from the 200 range is reserved - in this example, `211` to `219`.



Objective

- Internal telephony between all locations.
- External telephony from the branch office via the SIP PBX at the headquarters with backup over ISDN.
- Calls from the branch office into the local telephone network via ISDN.
- Calls to emergency and service numbers via ISDN.

Requirements

- LANCOM connected to the LAN and WAN, an ISDN TE interface is linked to the ISDN NTBA.
- The Internet connection has been set up by means of a VPN tunnel, as has the network connection between the two locations. All terminal devices can contact one another with the IP addresses used.
- A dialing plan with a unique internal telephone number for each piece of terminal equipment to be connected.
- A SIP provider account.

Configuring the device

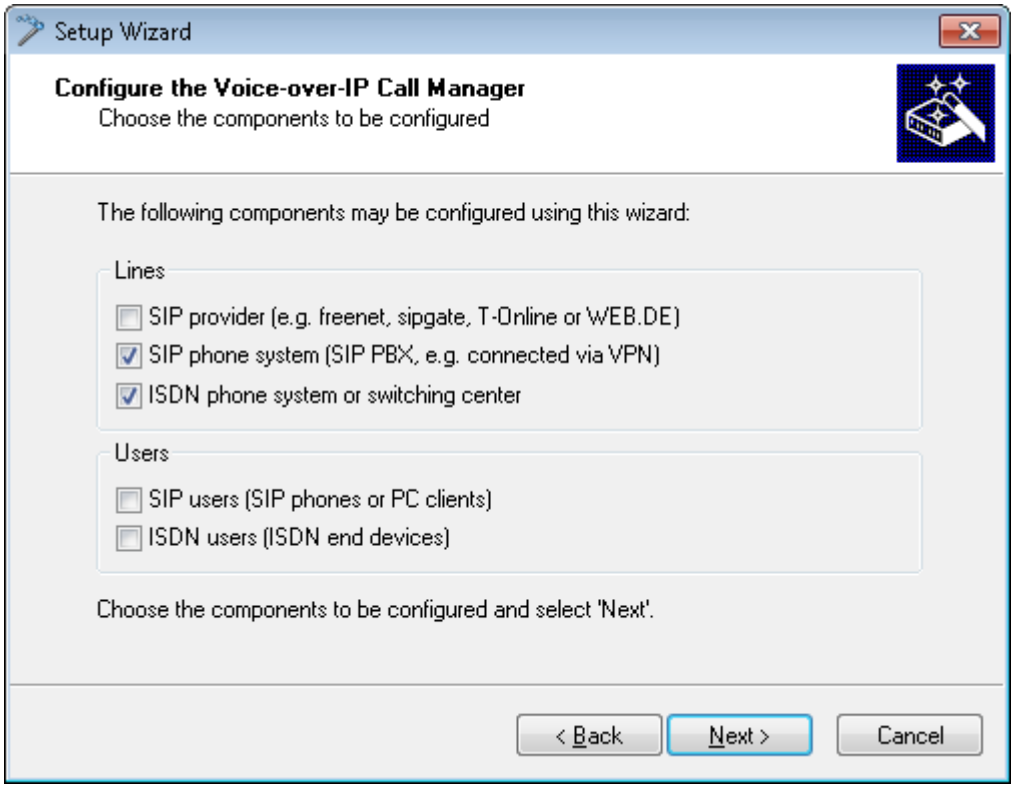
The following table provides a summary of the information required for configuration and where it can be entered. Basically, all that is needed is a SIP PBX line for each location that is correspondingly setup at the remote location

	LANCOM, branch	SIP phone, branch	SIP PBX, headquarters
Internal VoIP domain	`mycompany.BRANCH01`	`mycompany.HQ`	`mycompany.HQ`
Internal SIP subscriber numbers at the branch office		✔	✔
External ISDN telephone numbers (MSNs)	✔		

	LANCOM, branch	SIP phone, branch	SIP PBX, headquarters
Country and local area code	✔		
SIP PBX line	HQ		
SIP PBX domain	`mycompany.HQ`		
SIP PBX registration password	✔		✔
Call route	1. Called number `2#` 2. Destination line `LOCATION_B` 3. Destination number `2#`		

Configuring the LANCOM in detail:

1. Under LANconfig, start the setup wizard for configuring the Voice Call Manager. Enable the options **SIP provider** and **ISDN phone system**.



2. Configure the device as described in the preceding examples:
   - ISDN line with MSN mapping
   - Area and country code for each location
3. Enter a unique domain for the local VoIP domain which describes the local VoIP area for the branch office, e.g. `mycompany.BRANCH01` for the first branch.
4. Configure the line to the SIP PBX with the following values:
   - SIP PBX line name: A unique name for the line to the SIP PBX, for example `HQ` for "Headquarters".
   - PBX SIP domain/realm: Internal VoIP domain of the SIP PBX, e.g. `mycompany.HQ`.
   - Registrar (FQDN or IP) (optional): SIP PBX address in the headquarters network, in the event that the device cannot be identified via DNS resolution of the VoIP domain (PBX SIP domain/realm).

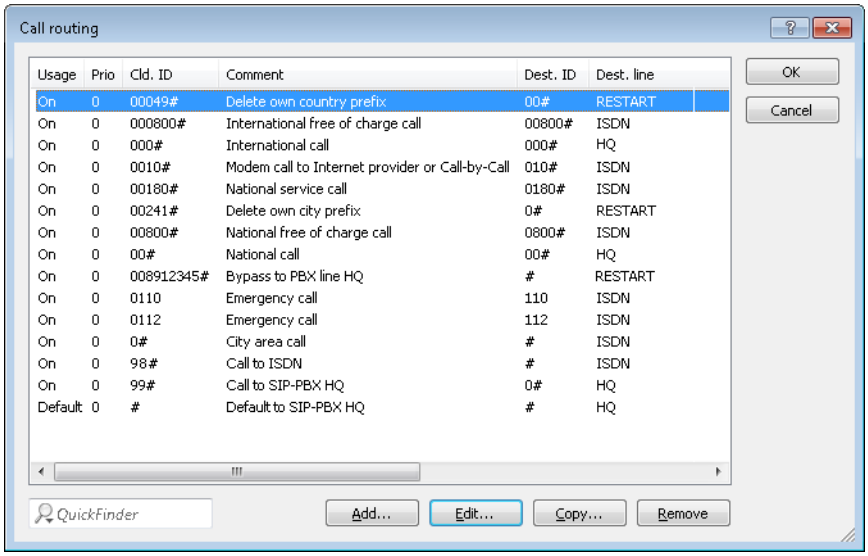
Use the IP address of the SIP PBX from the private IP address range at the headquarters as accessed via VPN.

- Outbound proxy (optional): It is generally not necessary to designate the outbound proxy. You only need to enter a server designation here if the SIP PBX requires the corresponding addresses.
- Shared PBX password: This password is used by all SIP users when registering at the SIP PBX. If registration with a shared password is not desired, then an individual password can be used for each SIP user. In this case, each of the SIP users are configured with their own password in the LANCOM.
- Public PBX number: Here, enter the phone number where the SIP PBX can be reached from the public telephone network, e.g. from where the LANCOM is located. The number is entered with the **necessary** prefixes, but without an extension number. For example, if the SIP PBX is located in London and the LANCOM is in Birmingham, then the public PBX number is `020 12345`.

5. The call routing table suggested by the setup wizard automatically allows international and national long distance calls to be made via the SIP PBX at the headquarters.

   In addition, a **default route** is used to direct calls from the LANCOM VoIP users to internal SIP PBX numbers via the corresponding SIP PBX line.

   This special entry is only used during the second pass in the call routing table, after the first pass found no corresponding entry for "normal" routes and if no matching internal number was found in the list of local users.



Configuring the VoIP terminal equipment

The VoIP terminal equipment is configured as described in the preceding examples, although in this case the SIP PBX VoIP domain and the internal numbers configured in the SIP PBX are used.

Automatic SIP user authentication at the LANCOM and the SIP PBX.

Using the SIP PBX domain with VoIP terminal equipment registers the user in two ways:

- Since authentication uses a valid domain defined in the LANCOM, terminal devices are registered as "local users".
- Since this domain does not correspond to the LANCOM's own VoIP domain, a simultaneous attempt is made to authenticate at the upstream SIP PBX. If the password used corresponds to the password stored in the SIP PBX for this user, then the registration on the SIP PBX will be successful.

Configuring the SIP PBX

In the SIP PBX, all users from the branch office network are entered with their own internal number. For this purpose, either the shared password is entered or a separate password is assigned for each user.

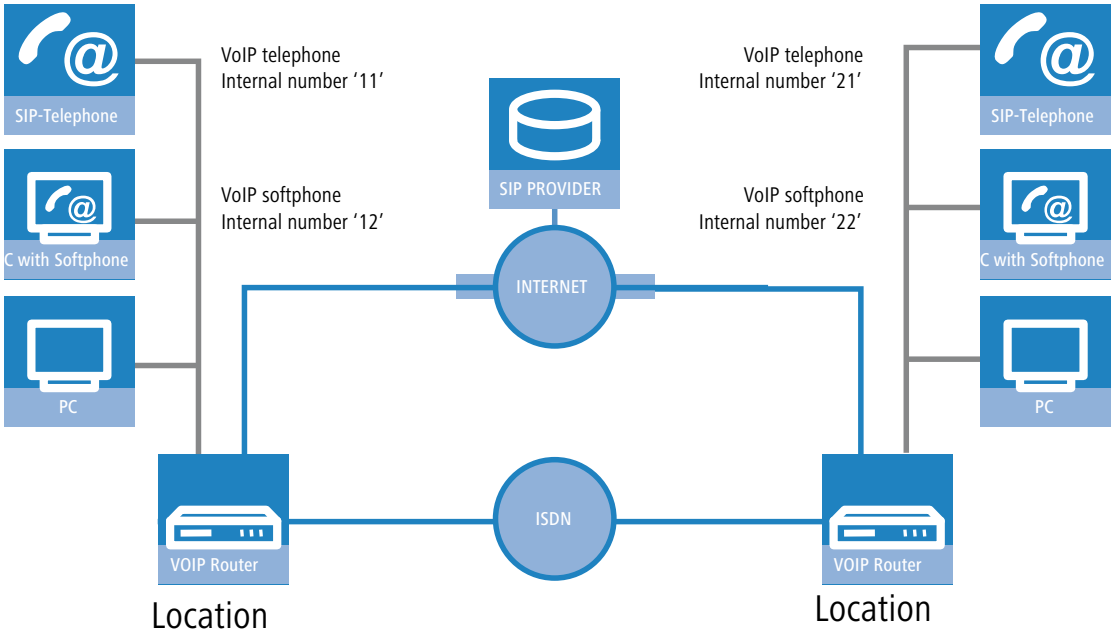
Call routing procedure for outgoing calls

	User	Dials	Correct call route	Correct user	Mapping, number in use	Destination line
1	VoIP phone, branch	212	None	VoIP softphone	212	Internal
2	VoIP phone, branch	199	**4** #	SIP subscribers at the headquarters	#: 199	SIP-PBX
3	VoIP phone, branch	0 555 555	**3** 0#		0241#: 0241 555 555	ISDN
4	VoIP phone, branch	0 0123 666 666	**2** 00#		00#: 0123 666 666	SIP-PBX

1. Internal call between two VoIP terminal devices at the branch office. The dialed number 212 does not match any of the routes listed in the call routing table. Therefore, the call router searches the local user list, finds the correct entry there and can forward the call internally.
2. Internal call between a VoIP terminal device at the branch office and the internal subscriber 199 at the headquarters. The dialed number 199 does not match any of the routes listed in the call routing table during the first pass. Similarly, no matching entry can be found in the local user list. In the second pass through the call routing table, the default routes are considered too. The route with the called number # (**4**) corresponds to all calls which could not be assigned earlier. The call to 199 is therefore conducted over the SIP PBX line.
3. External call from the branch office into the local telephone network. The dialed number 0 555 555 matches the route 0# (**3**) in the call routing table. The call router removes the 0 outside-line access prefix, adds the area code for the local telephone network and makes the call to 0241 555 555 via the ISDN line.
4. External call from the branch office into a national telephone network. The dialed number 0 555 555 matches the route 00# (**2**) in the call routing table. The call router directs the call to the SIP PBX line **unchanged**. Only now does the SIP PBX remove the 0 outside-line access prefix and directs the call to 0123 555 555 via the ISDN exchange line.

15.16.4 VoIP connectivity between sites without a SIP PBX

Companies with widely dispersed offices and without their own SIP PBX can also take advantage of VoIP site-to-site connectivity. In this "Peer-to-Peer" scenario, a LANCOM VoIP router has been implemented at two locations.



Objective

- Internal telephony at and between both locations.
- External telephony via the SIP provider with backup over ISDN.
- Calls to emergency and service numbers via ISDN.

Requirements

- LANCOM connected to the LAN and WAN, an ISDN TE interface is linked to the ISDN NTBA.
- The Internet connection has been set up by means of a VPN tunnel, as has the network connection between the two locations. All terminal devices can contact one another with the IP addresses used.
- A dialing plan with a unique internal telephone number for each piece of terminal equipment to be connected. For each site, a separate number range is used; in this example, the internal numbers for location A begin with a `1` and the internal numbers for location B begin with a `2`.
- Each site has a SIP provider account.

Configuring the device

The following table provides a summary of the information required for configuration and where it can be entered. Basically, all that is needed is a SIP PBX line for each location that is correspondingly setup at the remote location

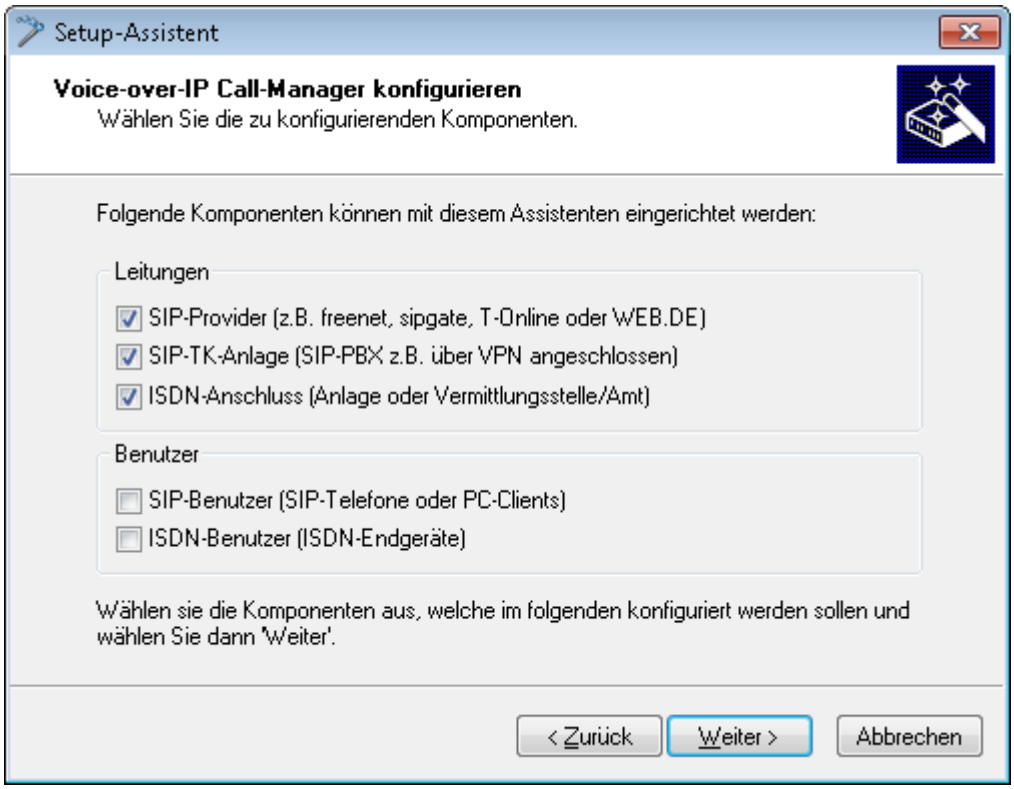
	LANCOM, site A	SIP phones, site A	LANCOM, site B	SIP phones, site B
Internal VoIP domain	`location_A.internal`	`location_A.internal`	`location_B.internal`	`location_B.internal`
Internal numbers		`10` to `19`		`20` to `29`
External SIP telephone number	✔		✔	
SIP account access data	✔		✔	

	LANCOM, site A	SIP phones, site A	LANCOM, site B	SIP phones, site B
External ISDN telephone numbers (MSNs)	✔		✔	
Country and local area code	✔		✔	
SIP PBX line	LOCATION_B		LOCATION_A	
SIP PBX domain	location_B.internal		location_A.internal	
Call route	1. Called number 2# 2. Destination line LOCATION_B 3. Destination number 2#		1. Called number 1# 2. Destination line LOCATION_A 3. Destination number 1#	

Although SIP PBX lines are the subject of the configuration presented here, you can still use this function even without a PBX.

Configuring the LANCOM in detail:

1. Under LANconfig, start the setup wizard for configuring the Voice Call Manager. Enable the options **SIP provider**, **SIP phone system** and **ISDN phone system**.



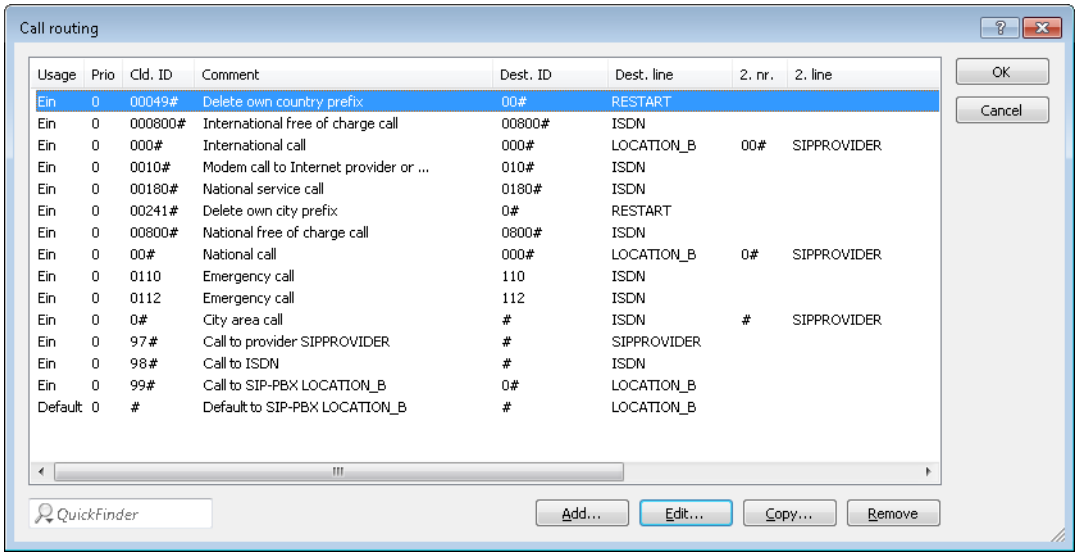
2. Configure the device as described in the preceding examples:
   - A line to a SIP provider
   - ISDN line with MSN mapping
   - Area and country code for each location

3. Enter a unique domain for the local VoIP domain which describes the local VoIP area for the site. Both sites use **different** VoIP domains, e.g. `location_A.internal` and `location_B.internal`.
4. Configure the line to the SIP PBX with the following values:
   - SIP PBX line name: Unique name for the line to the remote site.
   - PBX SIP domain/realm: Internal VoIP domain of the remote site.
   - Registrar (FQDN or IP): Address for the LANCOM at the remote site, in the event that the device cannot be identified via DNS resolution of the VoIP domain (PBX SIP domain/realm).

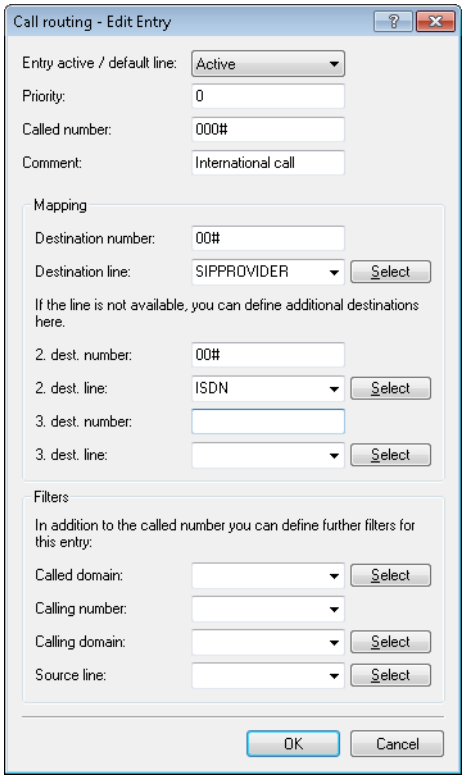
     Use the private IP address that can be reached via VPN for the LANCOM here, not the public IP.

   - Leave the field for the shared password empty when registering to the SIP PBX.
   - Leave the field for the public PBX number empty.
5. The call routing table suggested by the setup wizard automatically allows international and national long distance calls to be made via the remote site's line, local calls are routed via ISDN.

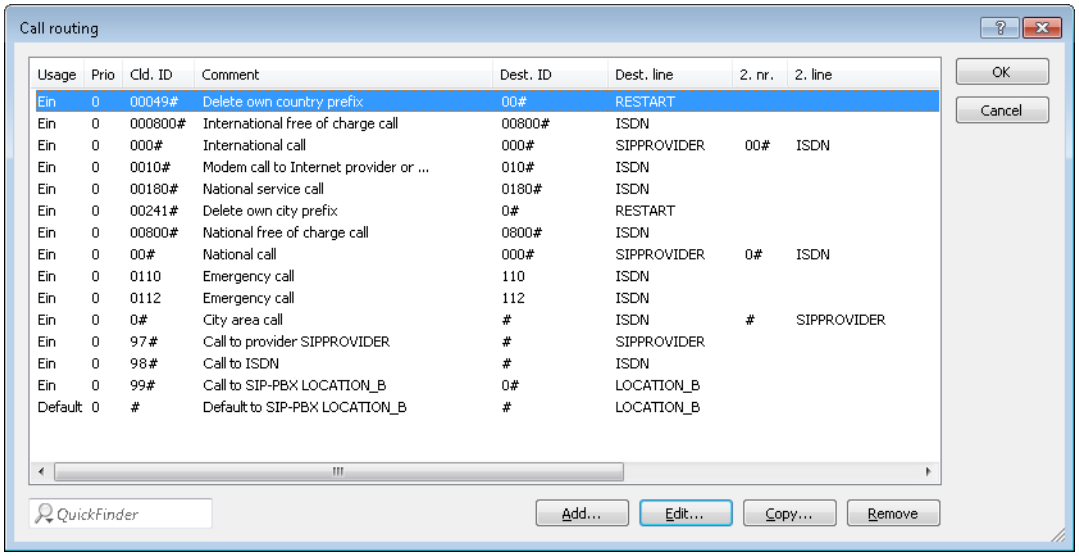
   In addition, a **default route** directs all numbers which cannot be resolved to the remote site's line.



6. Adapt the suggested call routing table in order to make international and national long distance calls via the SIP provider line with backup over ISDN. When doing so, please observe that the `0` preceding the number needs to be removed.



After adaptation for international and national long distance calls, the call routing table appears as follows:



7. In this state, all calls that cannot be resolved by the call routing table and which do not have a corresponding entry in the local user list are automatically forwarded to the remote site.

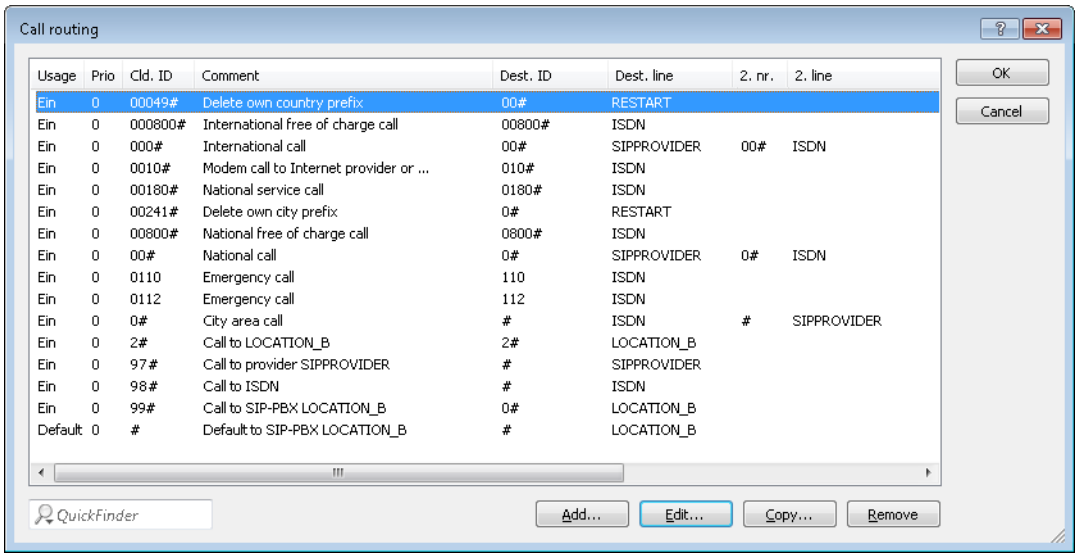
   If this is not desired, for example where more than two sites are connected in this way, an additional entry can be used to detect the internal calls to a particular site. To achieve this, make a new entry (for the number range `20` to `29` at site B) in the call routing table with the following values:

   - Called number / name: e.g. `2#` for all numbers that begin with a 2.

- Number / name: The called number is used unchanged as a destination number, e.g. in this case `2#`.
- Line: Enter the SIP PBX line for the remote location here, i.e. `LOCATION_B`.

In doing so, the default route is adjusted so that all numbers which cannot be resolved are transmitted via ISDN.

After adaptation, the call routing table appears as follows:



This entry for `LOCATION_B` is placed well down toward the end of the call routing table so as not to affect the more general rules. However, for interaction with the other routes, verify that only the internal numbers for the remote site are directed to the respective line.

Configuring the VoIP terminal equipment

The VoIP terminal equipment is configured as described in the preceding examples with internal VoIP domains and internal numbers for the local site.

Call routing procedure for outgoing calls

For this application, most calls take place as described in the preceding examples. Internal calls between locations are resolved as follows:

	User	Dials	Correct call route	Correct user	Mapping, number in use	Destination line
1	VoIP telephone location A	`21`	`2#`	none	`21`	`LOCATION_B`

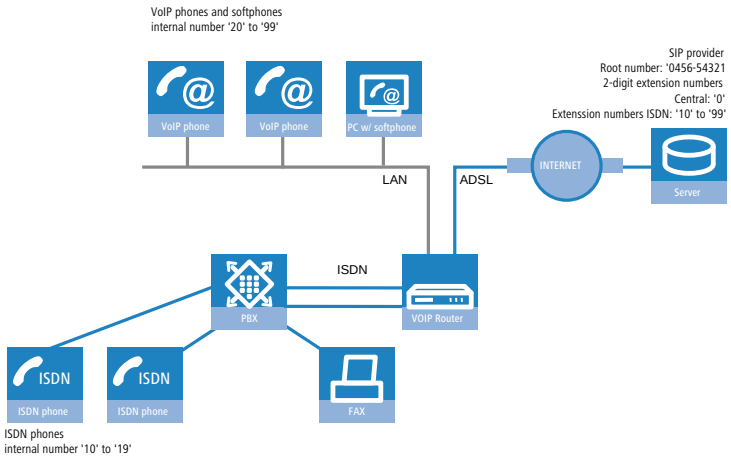
1. Internal call between two VoIP terminal devices at locations A and B. The dialed number `21` matches the route **5** `2#` in the call routing table. The call router sends the call out over the line to the remote SIP PBX without changing the number.

15.16.5 SIP trunking

In telecommunications jargon, trunking is the process by which several lines or connections are combined into one shared line. In the world of VoIP, SIP providers are increasingly offering products which provide the ability to make several calls simultaneously using a single account. Together with the possibility of being able to contact SIP participants via a shared switchboard number with individual extensions (DDIs), these types of accounts are also becoming attractive for business customers.

There are two possible options when using a SIP account with trunking:

- The customer retains his previous ISDN connection, along with any corresponding telephone numbers from the telephone company, and sets up an additional account having a separate number range with a SIP provider.
- The customer ports the numbers used thus far from the telephone company to the SIP provider and from then on uses the same numbers using SIP.



In this example we will take a look at a company planning to add a SIP trunking account with up to 10 extension numbers. The ISDN terminal devices with point-to-point line extensions used thus far can be retained. All new employees are to be issued with a SIP telephone with an extension via the SIP account.

Unique extensions are used since staff members have to be able to call one another internally. In order to migrate smoothly towards SIP, all ISDN terminal devices are to be contactable using their extension number in **parallel** with the switchboard number of the SIP account. An ISDN telephone should respond to calls to `0456-54321 12`.

Outgoing calls should be directed via the SIP account.

Objectives in implementing the LANCOM VoIP router

- Connection of additional SIP terminal devices
- Internal calls between ISDN and SIP terminal devices.
- Low-cost calls by using a shared SIP account.

Requirements

- LANCOM connected to the LAN and WAN (via DSL/ADSL), ISDN NT interface(s) are connected to an ISDN PBX.
- The Internet connection has been set up. All terminal devices can contact one another with the IP addresses used.
- A dialing plan with a unique internal telephone number for each piece of terminal equipment to be connected.

Configuring the device

This is how the LANCOM is configured for operation at a point-to-point line:

1. When configuring SIP clients, all you need to enter are the internal VoIP domain of the LANCOM VoIP router and the associated internal phone number. The extension numbers previously used for the ISDN terminal devices remain unallocated.
2. A SIP provider line is created for the SIP account. The 'Trunk' option is selected as the mode for this line.
3. Routing of calls is governed by the call routing table. When using the Wizards available with LANconfig, the call routing table is preconfigured such that all out-going calls from ISDN and SIP devices are made using the SIP trunk account.

Process of call routing

In this example, call routing benefits from the unique internal telephone numbers.

- For incoming calls, the only information passed to the LANCOM VoIP router is the DDI. Since the DDI and internal numbers are the same in this example, an extension number can be used to put through calls to locally registered SIP users or to dynamic ISDN users.

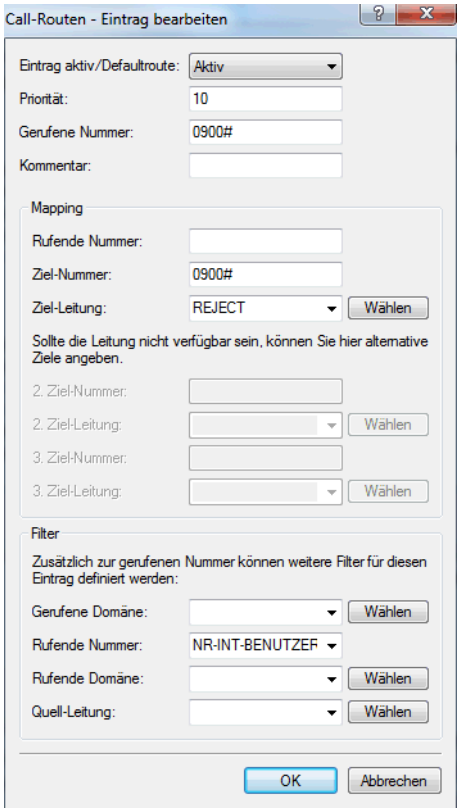
  If the reported DDIs cannot or should not be used directly as internal numbers, the ISDN and SIP mapping tables are used to set up the necessary telephone number translations.

- In the default setting after using the Wizards, SIP is taken to be the normal destination line (with the exception of local calls and special numbers). Local calls, for example, may be switched to SIP by changing an entry in the call routing table.

In this case, the SIP number is displayed at the subscribers on the other side of the connection, even if the call originates from an ISDN terminal device.

15.16.6 Block outgoing calls to service numbers

You have the option to block certain call numbers (e.g. charged hotlines such as 0900) with the following call route:

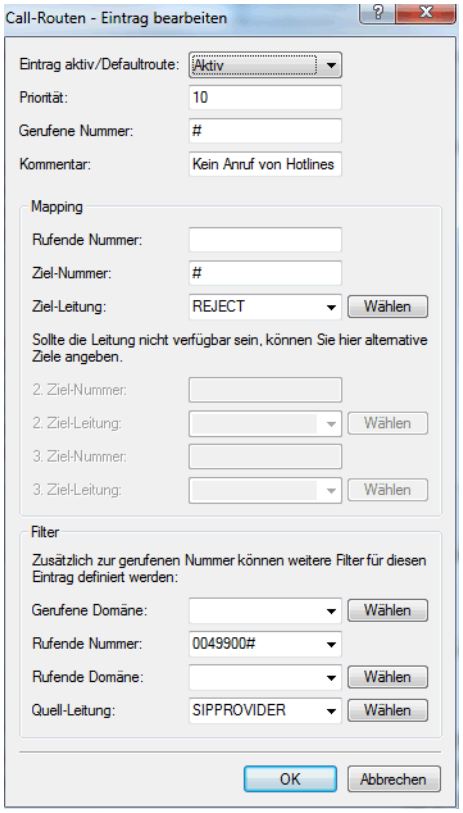


For the calling number, specify a registered client to restrict the rule to those calls made by the corresponding user.

By setting the source line to "User.#", "User.ISDN", "User.SIP" or "User.Analog", you have the option of restricting the rule to the corresponding subscriber, irrespective of the telephone number they are using.

15.16.7 Rejecting incoming calls

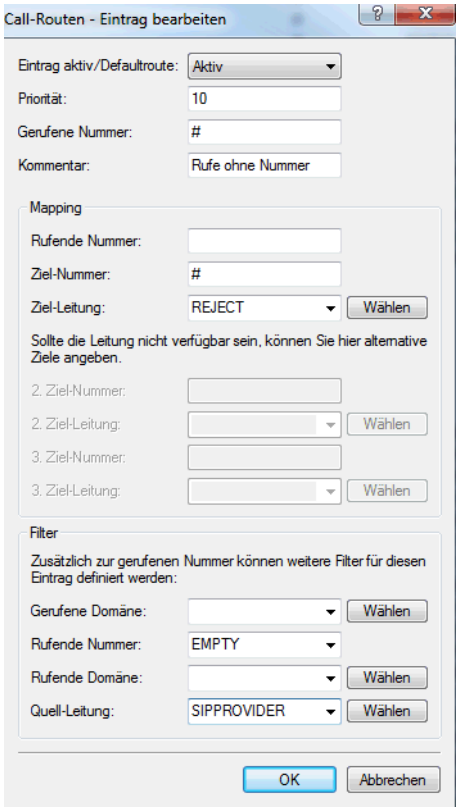
Incoming calls from charged hotlines (0900), for example, can be rejected with the following call route:



Select a source line, e.g. a registered SIP line, to restrict the rule to calls that are signaled via this line.

15.16.8 Reject calls without a calling number

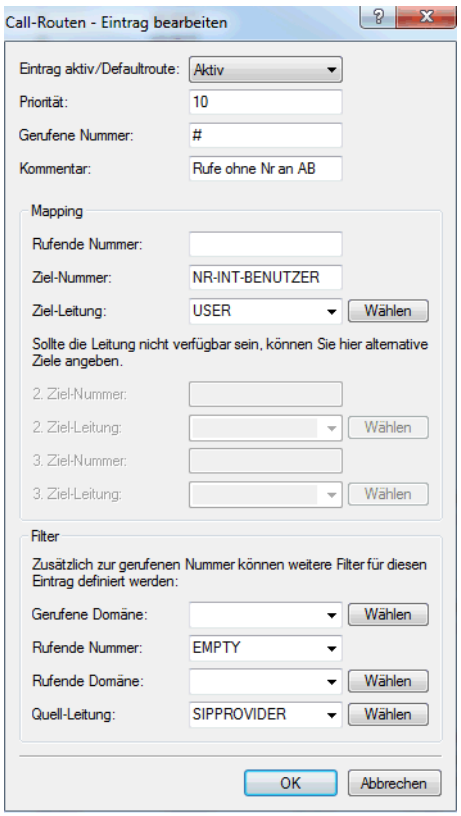
Set the following call route to reject incoming calls that do not contain a calling number:



Select a source line, e.g. a registered SIP line, to restrict the rule to calls that are signaled via this line.

15.16.9 Forwarding calls without a calling number

Set the following call route to redirect incoming calls that do not contain a calling number, e.g. to an answering machine:



Select a source line, e.g. a registered SIP line, to restrict the rule to calls that are signaled via this line.

15.17 Diagnosis of VoiP connections

15.17.1 SIP traces

Trace output can be used to check the internal processes in LANCOM devices during or after configuration. With a SIP trace, all of the SIP information is displayed that is exchanged between a LANCOM VoIP router and a SIP provider or a upstream SIP telephone system The SIP trace is activated with the following command:

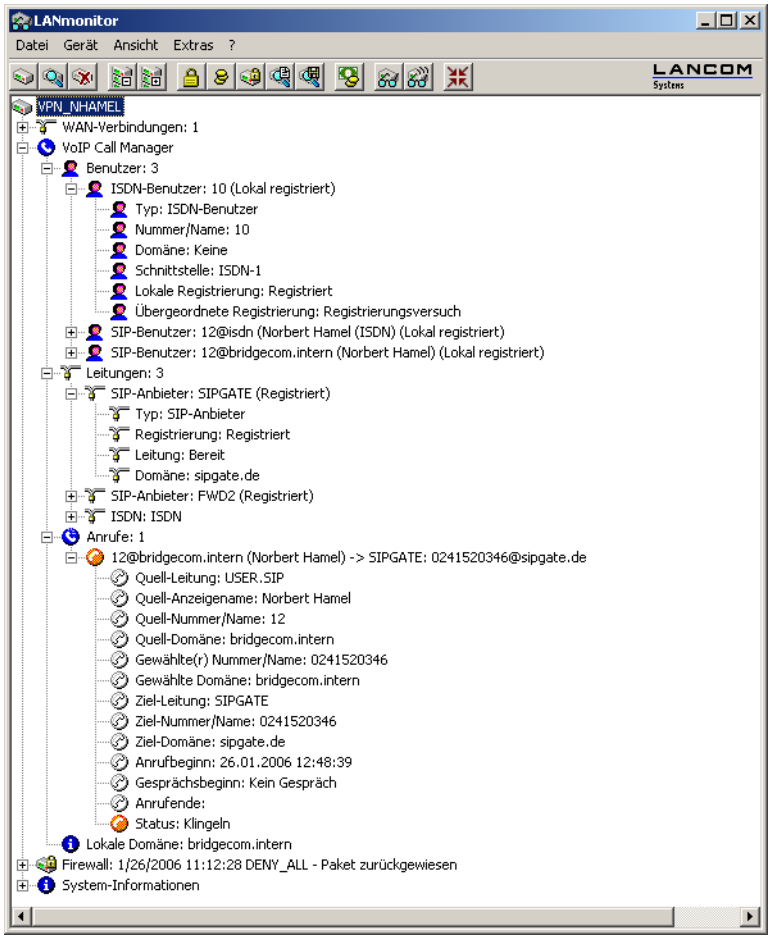
```
trace + sip-packet
```

15.17.2 Connection diagnosis with LANmonitor

LANmonitor displays a wealth of information about calls switched in the LANCOM:

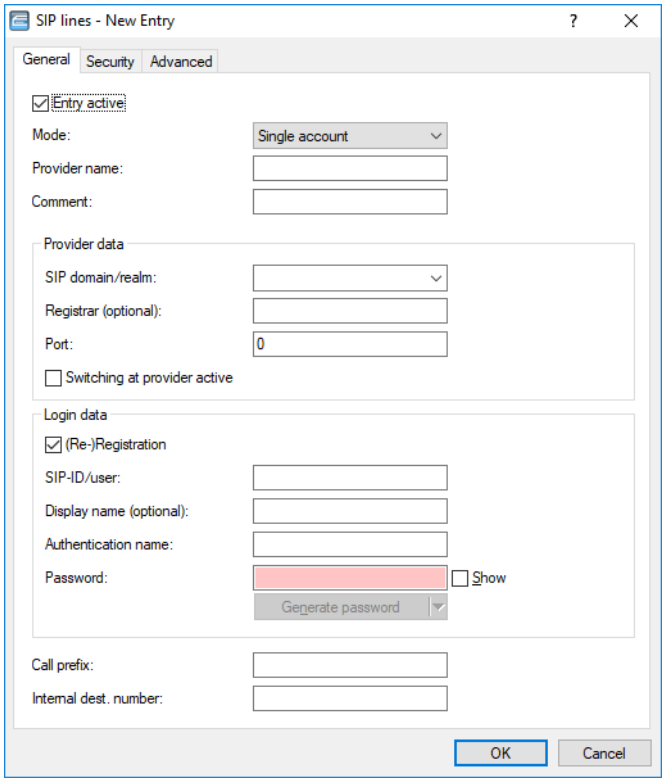
- Information about the registered users.
- Information about the lines available.
- Information about current calls, including the translation of telephone numbers and domains by the Call Manager.

› Information about the fixed and automatic QoS bandwidth reservations and settings.



15.18 VoSIP support in the Voice Call Manager

LCOS supports Voice over Secure IP (VoSIP). This function enables you to encrypt the signaling and voice data. From LCOS version 9.20, you can use VoSIP on all LANCOM business VoIP routers.



Signaling encryption

This setting determines the protocol used for signaling encryption (SIP/SIPS) for communications with the provider.

Signaling encryption	
UDP	All SIP packets are transmitted connectionless. Most providers support this setting.
TCP	All SIP packets are transmitted connection-oriented. The device establishes a TCP connection to the provider and maintains it for as long as it stays registered. Specialized providers, such as the providers of SIP trunks, support or force this setting.
TLS	Transmission is the same as with TCP, but all of the SIP packets are encrypted all the way to the provider.

Speech encryption

This setting determines if and how the speech data (RTP/SRTP) is encrypted when communicating with the provider.

Speech encryption	
Reject	Encryption is not available for outgoing calls. Incoming calls with an encryption proposal are rejected. The speech channel is not encrypted.

Speech encryption	
Ignore	Encryption is not available for outgoing calls. Incoming calls with an encryption proposal are accepted. The speech channel is not encrypted.
Prefer	Encryption is offered for outgoing calls. Incoming calls without an encryption proposal are accepted. The speech channel is only encrypted if the remote peer also supports encryption.
Force	Encryption is offered for outgoing calls. Incoming calls without an encryption proposal are rejected. The speech channel is either encrypted or is not established.

If you require the encrypted transmission of speech data, the signaling must also use an encrypted channel. Please note that the use of SRTP is no guarantee of end-to-end encryption.

15.19 Auto provisioning LANCOM DECT 510 IP

LCOS facilitates the automatic installation and configuration of the base station with up to 6 DECT handsets. When connected to a LANCOM router, the LANCOM DECT 510 IP makes it easy to register the handsets and to assign them individual phone numbers.

The LANCOM DECT 510 IP base station can be configured via WEBconfig. This is not strictly required. If provisioning is enabled, your router configures the base station automatically. To enable the provisioning on your router, navigate to the LANconfig menu **Management** > **General** > **Advanced** > **Enable the provisioning server** and set the value to **Yes**. At the console, you set the corresponding parameters under **Setup** > **Provisioning-Server** > **Operating** (SNMP-ID 2.103.1).

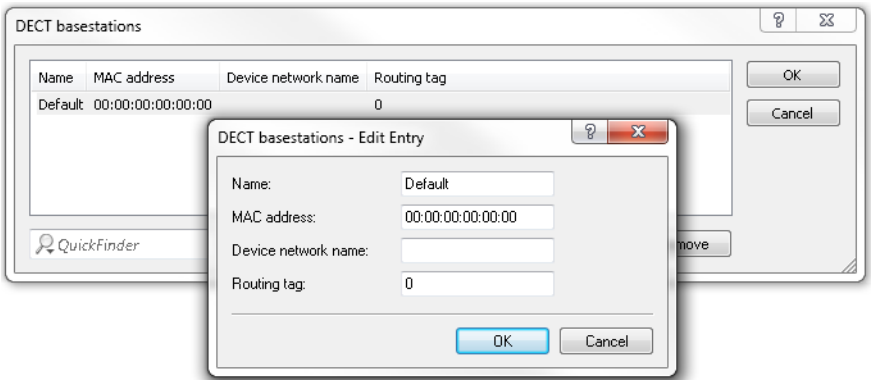
For the automatic configuration of the LANCOM DECT 510 IP, the base station needs to be connected to the router and the handsets registered with the base station.

You also have the option to configure the base station by means of the All-IP Wizard. Simply follow the instructions provided by the Wizard.

15.19.1 Configuring DECT base stations and handsets with LANconfig

To configure the DECT base station in LANconfig, go to **Voice Call Manager** > **Users** > **DECT base stations** and add a new entry to the table.

If auto-provisioning is to apply for all of the LANCOM DECT 510 IPs, or if they should all be configured the same, there is no need for any further entries in this table. The default entry takes care of everything.



Name

Specify a unique name for this base station here.

MAC address

Enter the MAC address of the base station.

If you wish to permit communications with any MAC address, enter `00:00:00:00:00:00` (default).

Network name

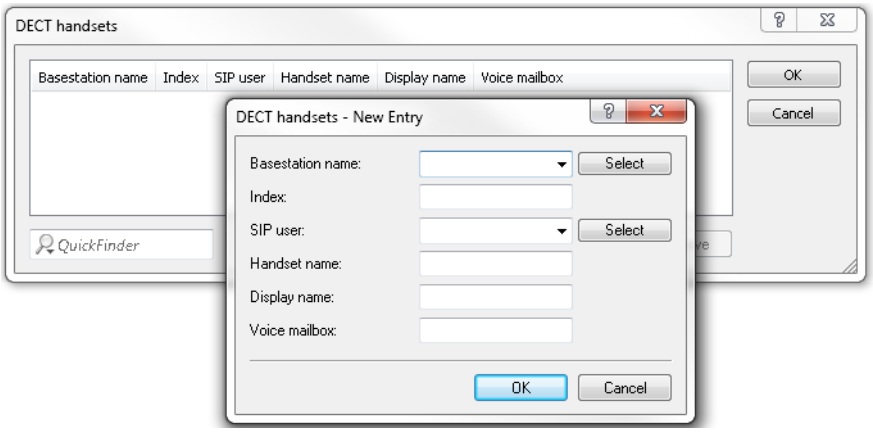
Here you optionally specify a network name that is displayed with the base station in the network.

Routing tag

The interface tag allows you to restrict the auto-provisioning of LANCOM DECT base stations to a specific network. This is particularly useful if your network contains IP addresses that are open to the public (e.g. via a Public Spot or DMZ). This restriction prevents SIP access credentials for the DECT base station from being unintentionally transmitted to third-party devices.

If you wish to use this service for all networks, enter the routing tag "0" here.

To configure the DECT handsets in LANconfig, go to **Voice Call Manager** > **Users** > **DECT handsets** and add a new entry to the table.



Base station name

Here you select the base station where the corresponding handset is registered.

Index

Enter here the number of the corresponding handset (e.g. "0" for handset 1, "1" for handset 2, etc.).

SIP user

Select the phone number of the handset here.

Handset name

Here you set the name to be shown in the display of the handset.

Display name

Here you set the name to be sent to a caller.

Voice mailbox

Enter the phone number of your voice mailbox here. This phone number is dialed by pressing and holding the button "1" on the handset.

16 Interface bundling with LACP

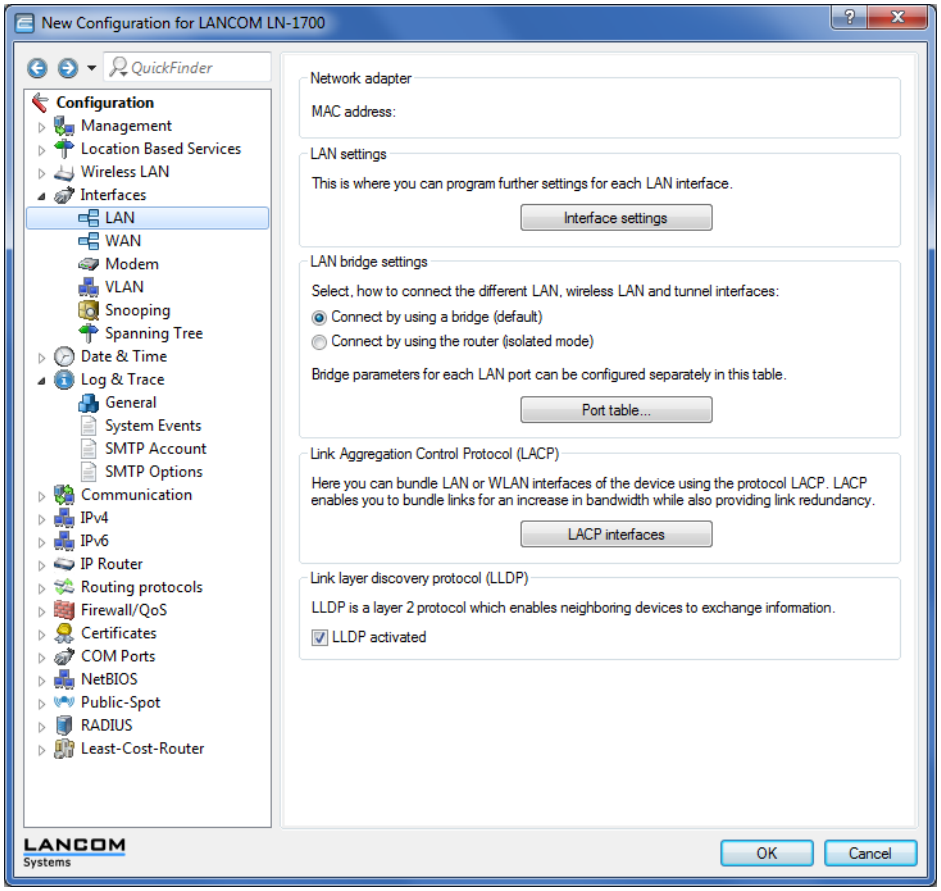
Significant improvements in terms of failover reliability and performance come with support for the standard LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol). LACP allows you to bundle GB ports into a virtual link. Physical GB connections can be combined to form a single logical connection, which greatly increases the speed of data transmission and makes optimal use of the available bandwidth.

For example, 11ac Wave 2 (4x4 MIMO) achieves a data throughput greater than 1 Gbps net per access point.

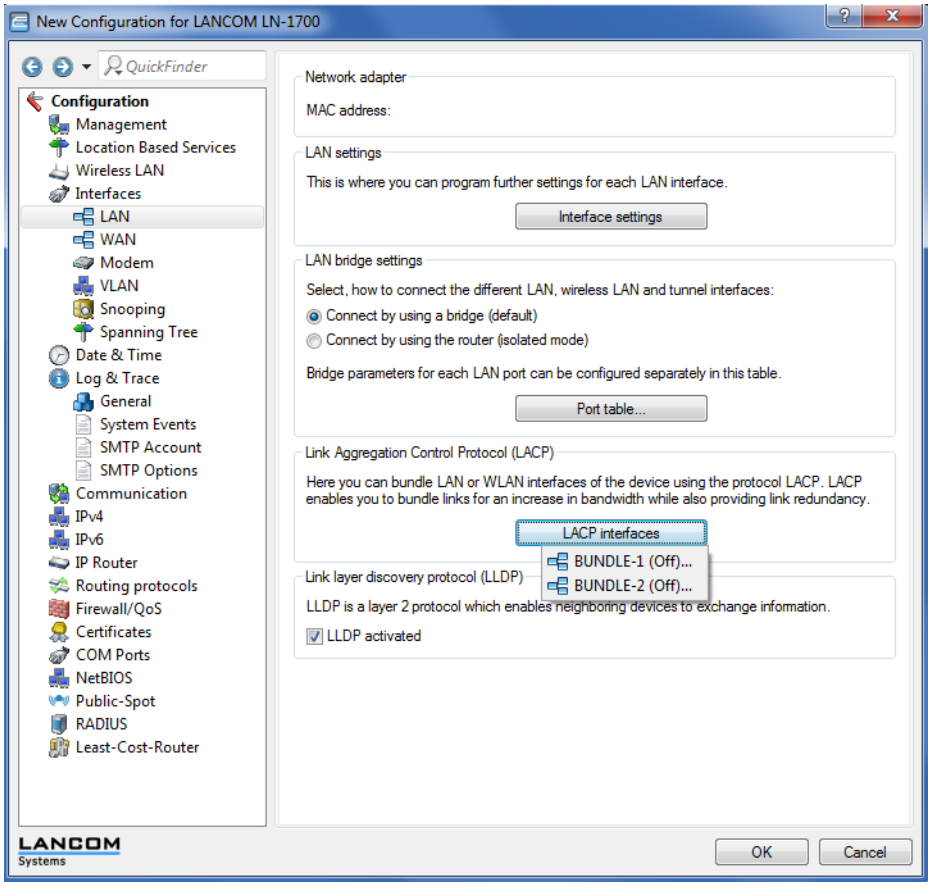
Along with a real performance gain in the network, LACP is also an ideal redundancy option because, even if a physical connection fails, data traffic is still transmitted on the other line.

16.1 Configuring the LACP interfaces

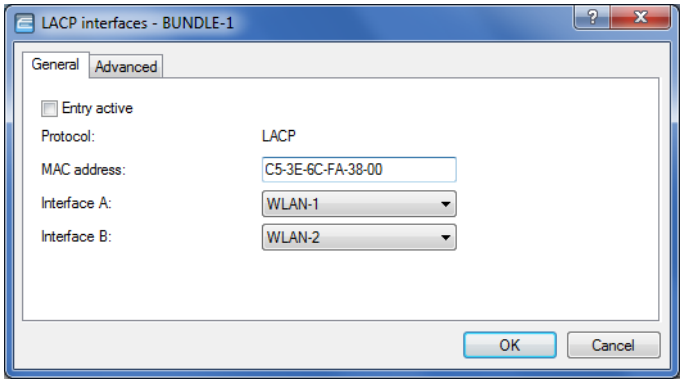
In LANconfig, you configure LACP interfaces under **Interfaces** > **LAN** in the section **Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)**.



1. Click the button **LACP interfaces** to access the list of available bundles.



2. Choose a bundle.



3. Enter the MAC address of the device into the input field **MAC address**.

> The MAC address is used to identify the LACP partner within the LAG. If this is left empty or set to 0, the LAN MAC address of the device is set automatically. The MAC address does not necessarily have to belong to an interface of the bundle. In case of a reset of the configuration, the system-wide MAC address is entered here as the default.

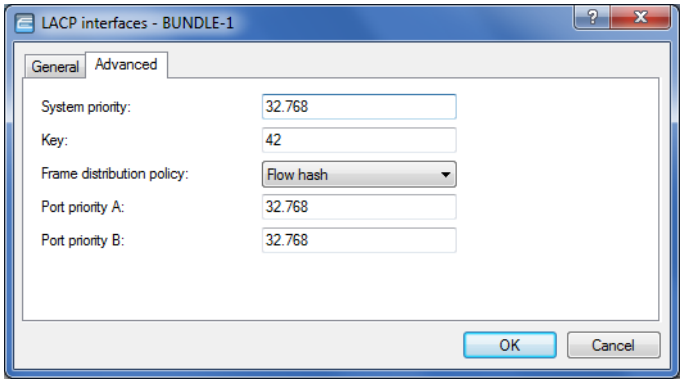
4. Select the first interface from the selection menu **Interface A**.
5. Select the second interface from the selection menu **Interface B**.
6. Activate the bundle by checking the checkbox **Entry active**.

> The remaining steps are optional.

The default settings are suitable for most common applications.

Further customizations to the configuration should only be performed by an experienced network technician.

7. Further configuration options are available on the **Advanced** tab.



8. In the **System priority** input field, enter a multiple of 4,096. The default value is 32,768.
9. Enter a value for the **Key**.

The key is a number from 1 to 54 and is used to identify the bundle.

10. Select an entry from the drop-down menu **Frame distribution policy**. The default setting for most scenarios is Flow hash.
11. In the **Port priority A** input field, enter a multiple of 4,096. The default value is 32,768.
12. In the **Port priority B** input field, enter a multiple of 4,096. The default value is 32,768.

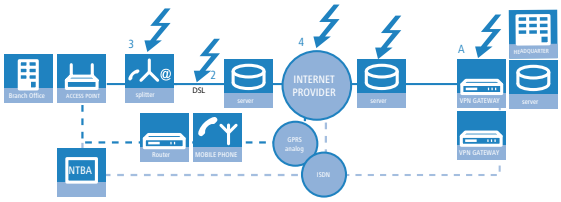
17 High availability – backup solutions

17.1 High availability for networks

Networked cooperation between several offices or even between continents has become an everyday part of modern business. The paths of communication between headquarters, subsidiaries and field workers increasingly rely upon public infrastructures. VPN has become established as the de facto standard for cost-effective and secure enterprise communications over the Internet.

However, many important elements in these network structures remain susceptible to failure which could have severe consequences for business operations:

- The remote Internet gateway **A** itself can fail.
- The physical lines for the connection to the Internet or to a remote network can fail:
  - The Internet-access cable between the site and the provider **2** could fail; after damage from construction work, for example.
  - The DSL connection **3** may fail, while the ISDN connection remains functional.
- The provider's network **4** may be disturbed or even fail.



Internet routers and access points from LANCOM offer a range of security and backup functions that can be used for the protection of your network from disturbance.

17.1.1 How is a network-connection disturbance detected?

The first stage in protecting a network connection from the effects of a disturbance is to detect the disturbance itself. The following methods are available to check the connections:

- Check the PPP connection to the provider with PPP LCP echo monitoring.
- Check if remote stations can be contacted via name or IP address with ICMP polling (ping from end to end).
- Check the tunnel end points with "dead peer detection" (DPD).

PPP LCP echo monitoring

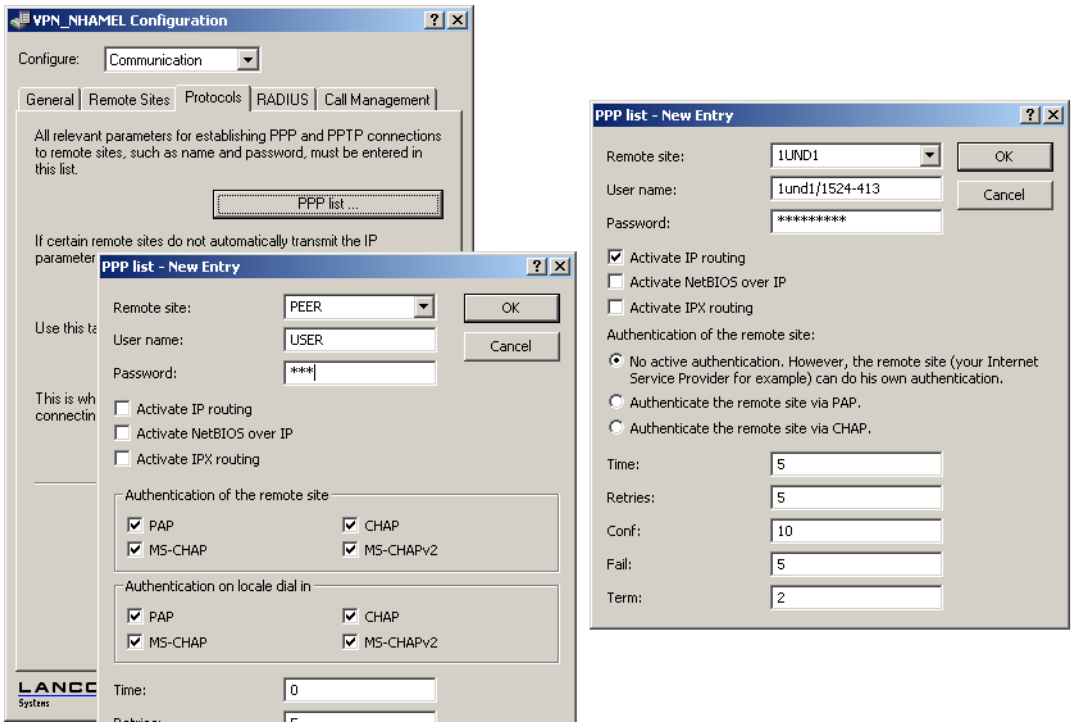
The method checks the PPP connection to a certain remote site with regular LCP requests. This method is typically used to check the connection to the Internet provider. LCP requests are directly sent to the access server.

In the PPP list, a time interval for the transmission of LCP requests to the remote site is defined for this connection. Further, for the event that LCP replies are missed, the number of retries before the transmission of a new LCP request is defined. Should the transmitter not receive any reply to the retries, the line is considered to have failed.

- **Time:** The time entered into the PPP list must be multiplied by the factor 10 to arrive at the actual interval between two LCP requests. Entering the time as "5" means that an LCP request will be prompted every 50 seconds.
- **Retries:** If no reply to an LCP request is received then the remote site will be checked in shorter intervals. The device then tries to reach the remote site once a second. The number of retries defines how many times these attempts are

repeated. Entering "5" under retries means that the LCP request will be repeated 5 times before the connection is considered to have failed.

PPP LCP monitoring only checks the PPP connection path as far as the Internet provider.



LANconfig: Communication / Protocols / PPP list

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WAN E PPP list

ICMP polling

Similar to LCP monitoring, ICMP polling transmits regular requests to a remote site. Ping commands are transmitted and the answers to them are monitored. Unlike LCP monitoring, the target site for ICMP pings can be freely defined. Pinging a router in a remote network thus provides monitoring for the entire connection and not just the section to the Internet provider.

A ping interval is defined for the remote site in the polling table. Further, for the event that replies are missed, the number of retries before the transmission of a new LCP request is defined. Should the transmitter not receive any reply to the retries, the target for the ping requests is classified as unavailable.

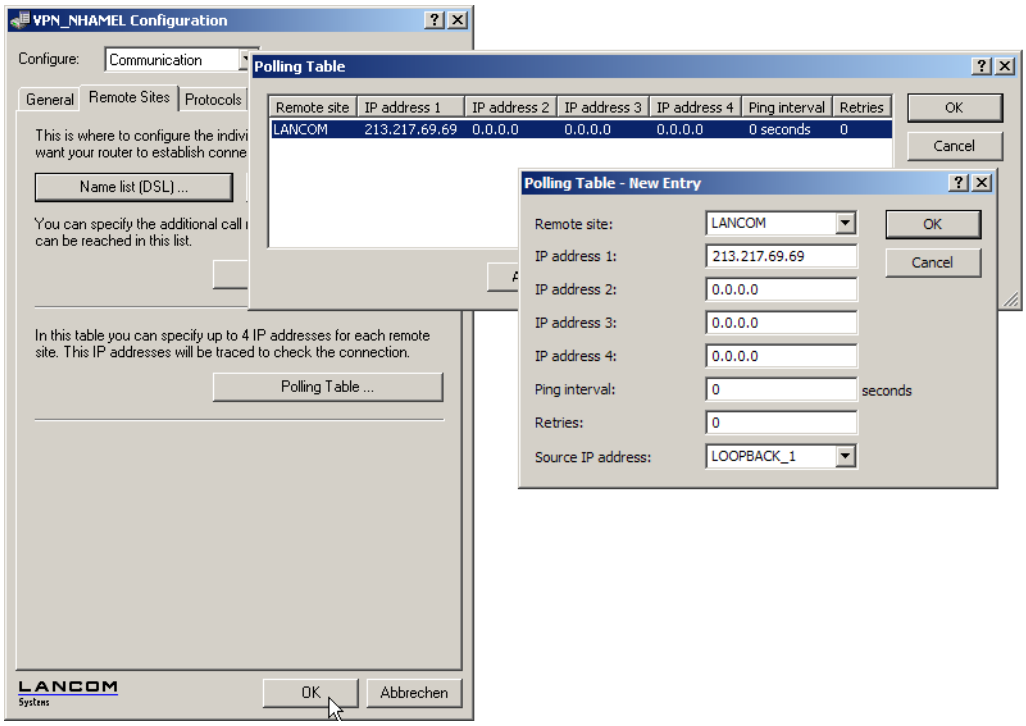
Up to four different IP addresses can be entered for each remote site that will be checked in the remote network in parallel. Only if all of the IP addresses are unavailable is the connection considered to have failed.

With the ICMP polling, an entire connection can be monitored from end to end.

- **Name of the remote site**
- **IP address 1-4:** IP addresses for targeting with ICMP requests to check the remote site.

  If no IP address is entered for a remote site that can be checked with a ping, then the IP address of the DNS server that was determined during the PPP negotiation will be checked instead.
- **Ping interval:** The time entered into the polling table defines the time interval between ping requests. If the value "0" is entered, then the standard value of 30 seconds applies.

- **Retries:** If no reply to a ping is received, then the remote site will be checked in shorter intervals. The device then tried to reach the remote site once a second. The number of retries defines how many times these attempts are repeated. If the value "0" is entered, then the standard value of 5 retries applies.



LANconfig: Communication / Remote sites E Polling table

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WAN E Polling table

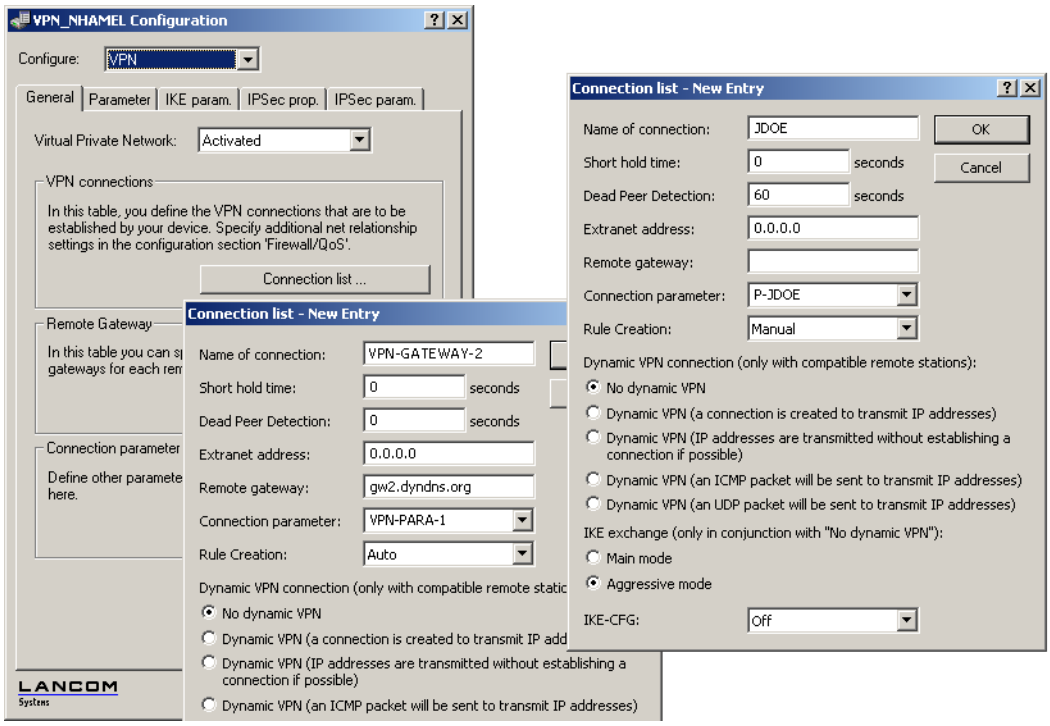
Dead peer detection (DPD)

This method of connection monitoring is used when VPN clients dial-in to a VPN gateway. This is designed to ensure that a client is logged out if there is an interruption to the VPN connection, for example when the Internet connection is interrupted briefly. If the line were not to be monitored, then the VPN gateway would continue to list the client as logged-in. This would prevent the client from logging in again.

For the same reason, without line monitoring a user with the same "identity" (user name) would be prevented from dialling in because the associated user would still be in the list for the logged-in client.

With dead peer detection, the gateway and client regularly exchange "keep alive" packets. If no replies are received, the gateway will log out the client so that this identity can be registered anew once the VPN connection has been re-established. The DPD time for VPN clients is typically set to 60 seconds.

The dead peer detection is set up with LANconfig in the configuration area 'VPN' on the 'General' tab in the 'Connection list'.



LANconfig: VPN / General / Connection list

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / VPN E VPN-Peers

17.1.2 High-availability of lines – backup connections

If there is a disturbance to the connection with the Internet provider or to a remote network, a backup line can act as a temporary replacement for the normal data line. This requires the existence of a second physical connection which can be used to contact the remote site. Examples of backup lines are typically:

- An ISDN line as a backup for DSL Internet access
- An ISDN line as a backup for VPN network coupling
- A modem connection (GSM or analog) as a backup for DSL or ISDN lines and VPN connections

Configuration of the backup connection

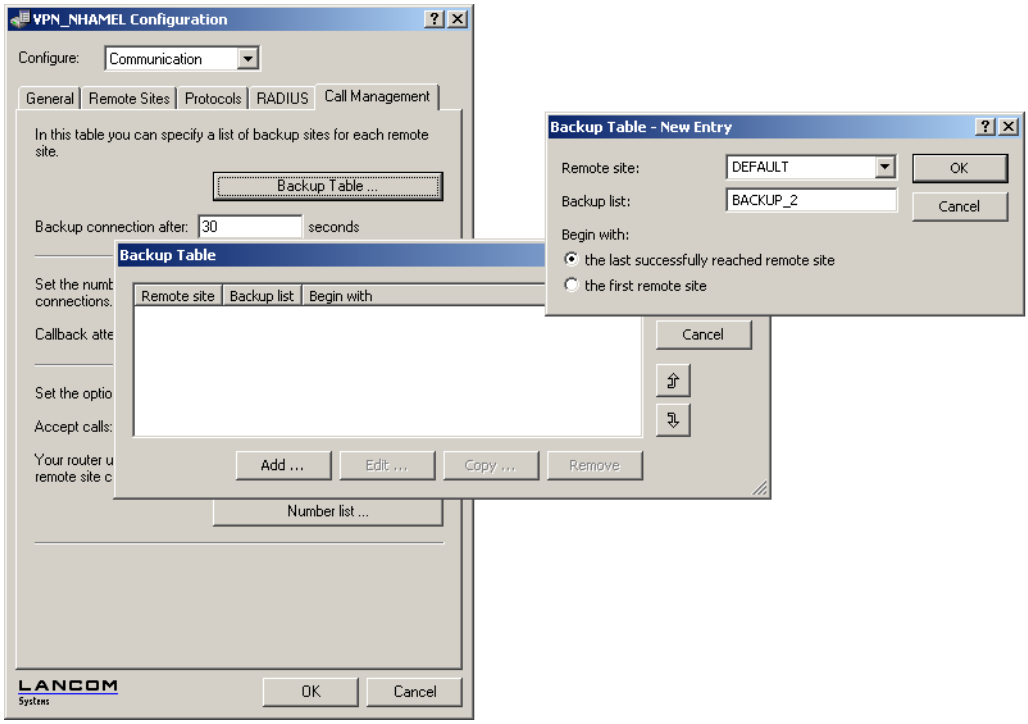
The following steps are necessary to define a backup connection:

1. The backup connection requires the appropriate WAN interface to be set up so that the remote site can be reached via this alternative route. If, for example, the ISDN line is to serve as the backup connection, then the remote site is set up as an ISDN remote site (along with the necessary entries in the communications layers and in the PPP list).
2. If the connection to the remote site cannot be checked with LCP requests, the monitoring of the connection should be initiated with an entry in the polling table.
3. Assignment of the new backup connection to the remote site which is to be backed up. This entry is made in the backup table. Dedicated entries in the routing table are not required for a backup connection. The backup connection automatically takes over the source and target networks from the remote site that routes the data under normal operating conditions.

   A remote site can be assigned with multiple backup lines in the backup table. In the backup case, the system decides which backup line is to be used first:

   - The last remote site that was reached successfully

- The first remote site in the list



LANconfig: Communication / Call management / Backup table

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WAN E Backup table

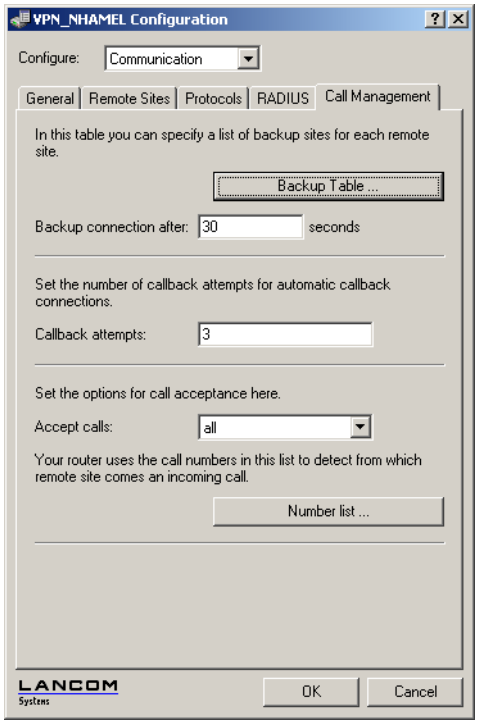
Triggering the backup connection

The backup is triggered when the monitoring mechanisms defined for the standard connection (LCP or ICMP polling) detect that contact to the remote site has been lost.

The backup connection will be established if:

- The backup delay time has expired and
- either
  - a data packet is to be transferred or
  - a hold time of 9999 seconds has been defined for the backup connection.

The backup delay time is set with LANconfig in the configuration area 'Communication' on the 'Call management' tab or alternatively with Telnet under `/Setup/WAN-Modul/Backup-delay-seconds`.



Return to the standard connection

The router constantly tries to establish the standard connection while the backup connection is active. As soon as the standard connection has been established, the backup connection is terminated and the line monitoring with LCP or ICMP polling is resumed.

Only keep-alive connections return automatically!

The standard connection will only be automatically re-established after a backup event if the hold time for the connection is configured properly:

- A hold time of "0" means that the connection will not be actively terminated. If the connection is interrupted, it will not be automatically established again. Only when communication is required of the connection will it be established.
- A hold time of "9999" means that the connection is permanently kept open. If it is interrupted, then the connection will be actively opened up again. This behavior is known as **keep alive**.

Set the hold time to "9999" for connections to the Internet provider (in the corresponding peer list) and backed-up VPN connections (in the VPN connection list) to ensure that the connection is automatically re-established and resumes data transfer after interruption.

17.1.3 High-availability of gateways – redundant gateways with VPN load balancing

Another cause of failure apart from the connection to the provider or to another network may lie with the local gateway. Severe effects can result from the failure of a central VPN gateway that is used, for example, to connect the networks of multiple remote locations with the central network at headquarters.

To ensure that the headquarters remains in contact, multiple VPN endpoints (generally identically configured VPN gateways operated in parallel) can be installed. Should line polling (with dead-peer detection, ICMP line polling) indicate a failure, then a variety of strategies (e.g. the random selection of one of the available gateways) can be used to enable communication to a different VPN end point. At the central headquarters, the new router and the local default gateway are propagated by dynamic routing (RIP V2).

To avoid the situation where the additional VPN gateways remain unused, intelligent load balancing ensures that all of the devices share the load of incoming and outgoing connections also under normal operating conditions.

More information about redundant gateways and load balancing is available under .

17.1.4 High-availability of the Internet access – Multi-PPPoE

The third of the different basic sources of failures is the case where the gateways and connections are in order but the provider's own network is down. Such cases are handled by setting up multiple PPoE connections at the physical interface of a single device (Multi-PPPoE).

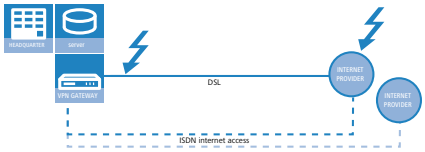
To define these backup solutions as alternative Internet accesses you can use, for example, the Setup Wizard to set up two Internet access accounts one after another. The standard Internet access for normal operations should be set up last. Consequently, the entries in the routing table will be associated with the appropriate remote site.

Additionally, an entry is made in the backup table that defines the alternative Internet access account as the backup to the remote site at the standard provider.

More information about the definition of multiple PPPoE connections is available under *High-availability of the Internet access – Multi-PPPoE* on page 1380.

17.1.5 Example applications

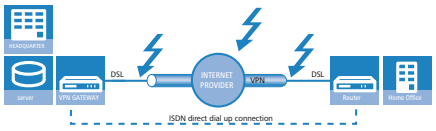
Backup DSL Internet access with ISDN internet access



In this simple backup scenario, Internet access is realized via a DSL connection. An ISDN connection is defined as a backup in case of failure of the DSL Internet access.

This backup solution can be quickly and easily set up with the help of the LANconfig Setup Wizard, for example. A further degree of security is available by defining another Internet provider in addition to the standard provider. This solution caters for the contingency where the provider's network fails and the problem is not caused by the DSL connection.

Backup dynamic VPN network coupling with an ISDN direct dial up connection



In the case that a branch office is connected to the headquarters via a VPN connection, the Internet-based VPN connection can be backed up by a direct ISDN dial-in connection. Should the Internet connection fail at either of the two routers, the data transmission is transferred to the ISDN link.

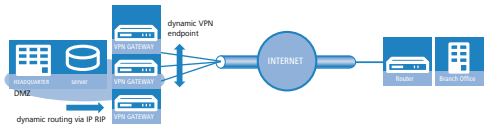
In this scenario we are assuming a fully configured VPN connection between the two networks.

- A LAN-LAN coupling via ISDN is additionally set up between the two networks. Do **not** use the Setup Wizard to set up this network coupling! The Wizard would change the entries in the routing table and would thus upset the function of the VPN network connection. Set up the ISDN network coupling in both routers manually— with the appropriate entries for the remote sites in the peer list, the PPP list and with the necessary telephone numbers and access identifiers.
- In the gateway at the headquarters, create an entry in the backup table that acts to backup the VPN remote site via a directly dialled ISDN remote site.

- Further, the router at the headquarters requires an entry for the monitoring of a remote device in the network at the branch office: Typically in the form of the LAN IP address at the remote VPN gateway. This entry ensures that the router at the headquarters can react immediately to a failure of the VPN connection.

Should there be a failure in the connection between the headquarters and branch office (on the way to the Internet provider or at the provider itself) then the ISDN connection takes over the data transfer independent of the Internet.

Redundant VPN gateways



In decentralized company structures that rely on VPN for networking the various locations, the availability of the central VPN gateway is of particular significance. The company-wide communications only remain reliable as long as these central dial-in nodes are working properly.

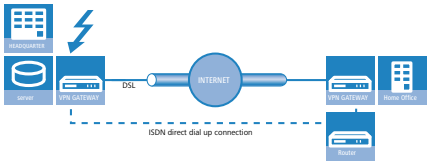
With the option of configuring several "remote gateway" addresses as "dynamic VPN endpoints" for a VPN connection, LANCOM VPN gateways offer a high level of availability by using redundant devices. This involves multiple gateways at the headquarters being set up with identical VPN configurations. On location at the satellite sites, all of these available gateways are entered as possible remote stations for the VPN connection. If one of the gateways is unavailable, the remote router automatically redirects the request to one of the other routers.

To ensure that the computers in the LAN at the headquarters know which VPN gateway it to be used to reach a particular satellite station, the outband router currently connected to the remote site is propagated via RIPv2 to the network at the headquarters.

A powerful mechanism for load balancing between the VPN gateways at the headquarters is attained with the configuration of the satellite stations to select the remote site for VPN connection on a random basis ("VPN load balancing").

Further information to redundant gateways and "VPN Load Balancing" can be found in .

Backup a VPN gateway with an ISDN gateway and RIP



Going a step further, the VPN gateways themselves can be backed up in case of failure. This case assumes the existence of a VPN connection between two gateways. In the event that one of the two VPN devices should fail, an ISDN connection is to take over the data transfer; in this case via a direct dial-in connection.

Regarding the configuration of this solution, we again assume a functional VPN coupling of the two networks. The following additional steps are required:

- A standard ISDN network coupling that routes the same subnets as the VPN connection is set up between the two ISDN routers. In the routing table, however, a distance is entered that is at least 1 higher than the corresponding route in the VPN gateway.
- The local RIP (RIP V2) has to be activated in all routers so that the VPN and ISDN routers can exchange information about the routes with the remote sites. The higher distance of the route via the ISDN gateway is, under normal circumstances, the poorer route.
- It is not necessary to define a backup connection in this case as a different device should take over the data transmission.

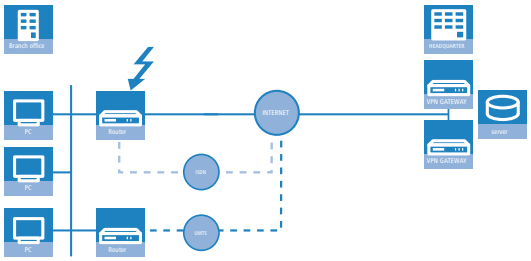
If there is a disturbance in the connection between the VPN devices, the value for the distance of the corresponding routes changes automatically: A route which is not available is marked with a distance of 16. Consequently, the route entered into the ISDN router automatically becomes the "better" solution and all data packets will be re-routed over the ISDN connection. As soon as the VPN connection is re-established, the distance changes to a value below that of the ISDN connection and the backup will be terminated as intended.

17.2 Backup Solutions and Load Balancing with VRRP

17.2.1 Introduction

For businesses in particular, the high availability of data connections presents an essential requirement of the network components. LANCOM Systems devices provide various mechanisms for securing data transfer as a backup solution:

- Various WAN interfaces (DSL, ISDN, UMTS) enable data transfer over a second physical medium if the primary WAN interface is disturbed or fails.
- In order to provide protection from failure of an Internet provider's network, different Internet access accounts can be configured with Multi-PPoE.
- Two or more VPN gateways in a network can share the VPN tunnels required, thus keeping data traffic alive even in cases of temporary failure of a VPN end point.
- VRRP can now also be used to implement a sophisticated backup system for protection against router hardware failure. Two or more routers are installed in a network, one of which can replace the other in case of device failure.
- In addition to normal VRRP, LANCOM devices can link the backup event triggering function to the availability of a data connection. With this additional feature, LANCOM devices with more than one WAN interface (e.g. DSL and ISDN interface) can be implemented flexibly in backup solutions. The backup event is triggered for example, when the default route is no longer available via the DSL interface. The device's ISDN interface can take its place further along in the backup chain should the the backup router also fail.



17.2.2 Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol

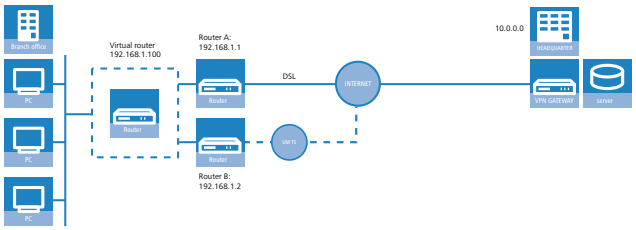
VRRP – Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol – enables multiple physical routers to appear as a single "virtual" router. Of the existing physical routers, one is always the "master". The master is the only router that establishes a data connection to the Internet, for example, and transfers data. The other routers only play a role when the master fails (e.g. due to a hardware defect or because its Internet connection is no longer available). Using the VRRP protocol, which is described in RFC 3768, they negotiate which device should assume the role of master. The new master completely takes over the tasks that were carried out by the previous master.

Virtual and physical routers

Dynamic routing protocols such as RIP adapt the entries in dynamic routing tables when, for example, a route is no longer available. When using VRRP, hosts in the LAN can use a static routing table even though the gateway IP address may change, for example, when a device fails due to a defect and another device takes over its functions. VRRP uses "virtual routers" in the routing tables so that the network users always find the right gateway nevertheless. A virtual router is broadcasted in the network with the IP address '192.168.1.100' in the same way as a "normal" router would

be and takes over the function of a gateway to certain remote stations. The actual work of data transfer is carried out by the physical routers behind the virtual router.

- Under normal operating conditions, for example, router A with the IP address '192.168.1.1' establishes the connection to the Internet.
- If router A fails, then router B with the IP address '192.168.1.2' takes over the functions of router A. The network clients do not notice this change; for them, the "virtual" router '192.168.1.100' is still the gateway.



Routing table

IP address	Net mask	Router
10.0.0.0	255.255.0.0	Virtual router

From a more technical standpoint, a router in a network requires a unique MAC address in addition to an IP address. Therefore, when defining a virtual router, a virtual MAC address is defined simultaneously which the virtual router reacts to. The virtual MAC address is formed as '00-00-54-00-01-xx', whereby 'xx' stands for the unique router ID.

In order to determine which physical router reacts to the combination of virtual IP and MAC address, priorities are used for the physical routers. For this purpose, every physical router is assigned a priority. The router with the highest priority takes over the functions of the virtual router as master and thus reacts to the virtual IP and MAC addresses. If two physical routers have the same priority, then the router with the "higher" physical IP address is considered to be the master.

All physical routers report their availability on a regular basis so that, should the current master fail, the router with the next highest priority can take over the routing function at the end of this interval at the latest. If a device determines that it cannot complete the tasks required, it can actively log off before the end of the interval thereby triggering the transfer of the master role to the router with the next priority.

The major advantage of virtual routers is that they enable very flexible scenarios with backup and load balancing functions which remain virtually undetected by the LAN. Clients in the local network randomly select a DHCP server from those available and retrieve the required address information from this server.

Address assignment via DHCP with more than one DHCP server in the LAN

Several DHCP servers can be operated parallel to each other in a LAN without disrupting one another's functionality. Upon establishing a network connection, the DHCP clients request an IP address selecting one of the available DHCP servers. The DHCP server receiving the request checks to determine whether the address requested is available or already in use within the LAN before assigning the address. This check prevents address conflicts even when several DHCP servers are in use.

For the clients, it is irrelevant which physical router subsequently establishes the data connection. Similarly, the LAN clients do not notice when a router or WAN interface fails due to the fact that, in this case, another router steps in and is available under the same virtual addresses as before.

Device, connection or remote station backup

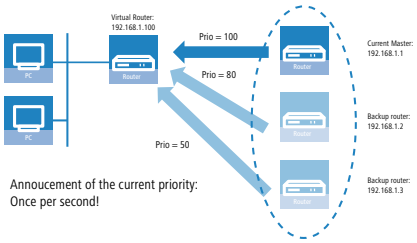
A device can disconnect itself from the VRRP group, an option which indicates that the possibilities offered by VRRP are not restricted only to the failure of a device.

VRRP only provides one backup mechanism which safeguards against device failure. In practice, however, the failure of a physical data transfer medium (e.g. DSL, ISDN or UMTS) or the unavailability of a remote station prevent the router from completing its tasks as planned. For this reason, the LANCOM-specific enhancements to VRRP also offer the ability

to define the availability of a remote station as a trigger for the backup event—regardless of whether the data connection is denied due to device, connection or remote station problems.

For the definition of a virtual router, the IP address by which it can be accessed, its priority and its logical router ID are required as a minimum. The router ID serves to ensure that the regular messages from the physical routers can be assigned to the respective virtual routers.

- The router ID can assume a value between 1 and 255. The router ID also reveals the router's virtual MAC address as 00:00:5E:00:01:router ID. The router ID 0 is not permitted.
- The IP address for the virtual router can be chosen freely, however, it must obviously be within the local network. If the virtual router's address is the same as the physical router's address, then the physical router is the "main master" of the system. The main master automatically has the highest priority, that is, when it signals that it is ready for operation, it immediately becomes the active master.
- The priority can assume a value between 1 and 254. The values 0 and 255 have special meanings: With the priority '0', the virtual router is not active, with '255', this virtual router is the main master.

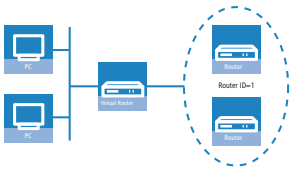


Router ID defines "standby groups"

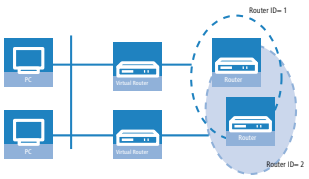
The physical routers can be assigned to the virtual routers with the router ID that is determined when defining the virtual router. All devices in which virtual routers are set up with the same router ID form a "standby group" in which the devices can act as replacements for one another. There are three different examples of standby groups:

- In a simple backup scenario, two or more routers form **one** standby group. A virtual router with the same router ID and the same virtual IP address is configured in both physical routers

.

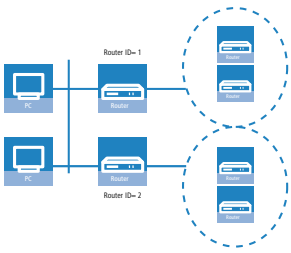


- In order to perform load balancing, the same number of virtual routers with differing IDs and IPs are defined as there are physical routers planned for the VRRP group. For example, two devices would each belong to **two** standby groups



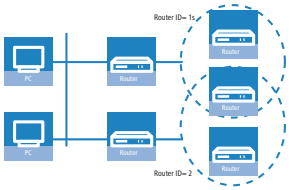
- It is also possible to create more complex combinations with many devices. For example, two devices can form their own standby group with router ID 1 and two other devices can form another group with the ID 2

.



- Depending on the requirements, it is also possible to selectively assign certain devices to a single group while other devices remain members of all groups

.



The Priority System

With the analysis of the priorities, VRRP controls the order in which the physical routers take over the function of the master in a VRRP group. VRRP only considers the failure of an entire device to be a trigger for the backup event.

Since numerous LANCOM devices have more than one WAN interface, the VRRP application in LCOS takes not only the failure of a device but also interruptions to the data connection or the unavailability of a remote station as triggers for the backup event. In order to enable the backup behavior of the LANCOM devices and the formation of backup chains, every virtual LANCOM router is assigned two priorities: a main and a backup priority.

- The main priority is used (propagated into the network) as long as the device is in normal operating condition (i.e. the remote station for the standard connection is still available).
- The backup priority is propagated when the device is in backup mode (i.e. the backup delay has expired and the connection could not be reestablished).
- If '0' is set as the backup priority, the router will not send any signals until the end of the backup event, i.e. the device is not available to the VRRP router group when the remote station is not available.

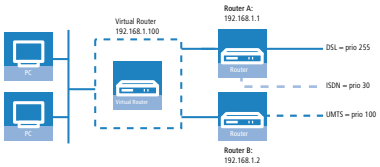
Since VRRP only knows "priorities" and does not differentiate between main or backup priority, it simply analyzes the priority that is currently being propagated by the device. The device with the currently highest priority is considered to be master.

Normally, priorities are configured so that the main priorities of the devices in a VRRP group are larger than the backup priorities used. However this is a general rule and not a requirement. The main priority of router A can be smaller than the backup priority of another router B. In this case, the backup connection of device B is used **before** the standard connection of router A in the backup chain.

The assignment of priorities to the various WAN interfaces can be determined from the configuration of the backup connections in the backup table (under LANconfig in the configuration area 'Communication' on the 'Call management' tab).

- The main priority refers to the interface on which the standard connection is configured.

- The backup priority refers to the interface on which the backup connection is configured.



VRRP list router A:

Main prio:	Backup prio:	Remote site
255	30	INTERNET DSL

Backup list router A:

Remote site	Backup list
INTERNET DSL	INTERNET ISDN

VRRP list router B:

Main prio:	Backup prio:	Remote site
100	0	INTERNET UMTS

A master that has been activated due to the priority status will now attempt to establish a connection if this has been configured as a keep alive connection. If the connection is set up as a normal connection with a hold time, then it will not be established until the next packet is transmitted. If this connection fails, thereby triggering the backup event, then the router will also log off and then propagate itself with its backup priority.

Backup chains

The use of two priorities enables the formation of flexible backup chains by which each physical router does not merely take a single place within the chain but takes a place for every physical WAN interface:

- The first physical router, the main router in the network, has a DSL and an ISDN interface for example, the second router (backup router) has a DSL and a UMTS interface.
- The first router receives the main priority '255'. Consequently, it will become the main router with the value '50' as its backup priority.
- The second router receives the main priority '150' and the value '100' as its backup priority.

Under normal operating conditions, data traffic is processed by the DSL interface on the first router. If the router or this interface fails, the second router attempts (due to the next highest main priority) to establish the connection via its own DSL interface. If this does not succeed, then both devices will propagate their backup priority. Since the second router has the higher backup priority, the connection is established using its UMTS interface. Only when this interface is also unable to establish a connection will the ISDN interface on the first router (with the lower backup priority) be used.

Only keep alive connections return automatically!

The standard connection will only be automatically reestablished after a backup event if the hold time for the connection is configured properly:

- A hold time of "0" means that the connection will not be actively terminated. If the connection is terminated or interrupted due to interference, it will not be automatically established again. The connection will only be reestablished when communication is required of it.
- A hold time of "9999" means that the connection is permanently held open. If it is interrupted, then the connection will be actively opened up again. This behavior is known as **keep alive**.

Set the hold time to "9999" for connections to the Internet provider (in the corresponding name list) and backed-up VPN connections (in the VPN connection list) to ensure that the connection is automatically reestablished and resumes data transfer after interruption.

Return to the VRRP group

After an adjustable amount of time (reconnect delay), a router that has logged off attempts to establish its main or backup connection again without propagating its priority first. If the main connection was successfully established, the backup event is terminated and the router returns to propagating its main priority. If only the backup connection was established, then the router falls back into the normal backup event and begins propagating its backup priority again.

As soon as a device can reestablish its main connection, the router begins propagating with its main priority again and becomes the master:

- Devices that are in backup mode with a lower main priority than the active master can also leave backup mode and propagate their main priority due to the fact that their backup connection is not required in this state.
- Devices that are in backup mode with a higher main priority than the active master can remain in backup mode as long as they are not able to establish their higher-prioritized main connection.
- Devices that have completely logged out of the VRRP group due to the unavailability of a VRRP remote site over the backup connection return to the normal backup mode.

Connection establishment

In order to allow coordinated connection establishment and prevent standby routers from attempting to establish connections, connections from a router are only established when this router:

- is the master **or**
- it is in backup mode and its main connection is configured with a keep alive **or**
- it has completely logged off and the timer for the renewed connection attempt (reconnect delay) expires

This simple rule allows the main connection to be configured as a keep alive connection even in standby routers. It also makes it possible only to use connections with hold time even in the main router.

Connections are always established when all virtual routers connected to the remote site have switched to standby mode. This either happens because another router propagates a higher priority or a LAN connection is lost.

17.2.3 Application scenarios

VRRP is normally employed for two different uses:

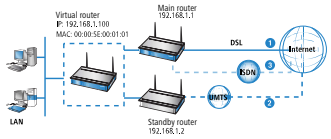
- In the simple backup case with two routers, one device under normal operation establishes the connection to the Internet. The second device is only operated in wait mode as a "standby device" and takes over the function of the main router should it fail.
- In the second case, two or more devices function parallel to each other as routers in the same network and distribute the incoming data connections using static load balancing. If one of these devices fails, the other router in the group can take over the failed device's functions.

Backup solution with VRRP

Possibly the most important application of VRRP is the provision of backup connections in which one or more routers serve as backup for the main router. These routers can use different physical media for the Internet connection, such as DSL in the main router and UMTS or ISDN in the backup routers. A normal backup chain thus resembles the following:

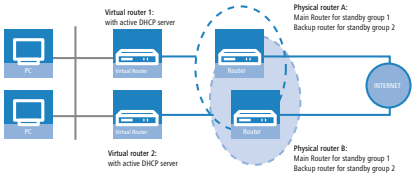
- If the DSL connection fails , the UMTS router takes over the function.
- If the UMTS connection fails , the ISDN router takes over the function.

Since almost all LANCOM devices with a DSL interface also have an ISDN interface, the main router can also take over ISDN backup functions at the end of the backup chain—as long as the hardware does not fail completely.



Load Balancing

With load balancing, several routers exist which can accomplish the same tasks. These routers are pronounced to be the default gateway and evenly distributed among the computers in the LAN using the DHCP server active in every router (see also). If one of the routers fails, then another can take over its functions providing both routers work with VRRP. On every router, as many virtual routers are defined as there are actual routers. The computers in the LAN are assigned one of the virtual routers as a gateway. Using the virtual router priorities, it is now defined in which order the other routers take over when a master fails. It is also possible to establish a backup chain using the main and backup priority here.



Example application: Secure Internet access via two DSL/ISDN combination routers

Two load-balancing default gateways that provide security for one another are to be the basis for operating the LAN at two DSL lines. On average, 50% of the LAN stations log in to router 1 and 50% to router 2. The failure of a router or the non-availability of a DSL connection is compensated for by the other router, which the takes over the full load.

Under normal operational circumstances, each router handles on average 50% of users in the LAN (prio 250 for the DSL connection). Should a router or DSL connection fail, then the load is distributed to the other router (prio 100 for the DSL connection of the backup router). If both DSL connections fail, then the traffic is directed over the ISDN connections (each with backup prio 50, ISDN connections not illustrated).

Notes for the configuration of the virtual router

Router A		Router B	
	DHCP= On (10.1.1.x)		DHCP= On (10.1.1.x)
Router ID = 1	Router IP = 10.1.1.1	Router ID=1	Router IP=10.1.1.1
	Prio = 250		Prio = 100
	Backup prio=50		Backup prio=50
	Remote station = DSL-INTERNET		Remote station = DSL-INTERNET
	Comment: Main router for group 1		Comment: Backup router for group 1
Router ID = 2	Router IP = 10.1.1.2	Router ID=2	Router IP=10.1.1.2
	Prio = 100		Prio = 250
	Backup prio=50		Backup prio=50
	Remote station = DSL-INTERNET		Remote station = DSL-INTERNET
	Comment: Backup router for group 2		Comment: Main router for group 2

17.2.4 Interaction with internal services

When using VRRP virtual routers with virtual IP and MAC addresses are used which, in turn, influences the internal services of LANCOM devices. They must behave differently depending on whether a virtual router or a physical router is addressed. Depending on the service or protocol used, the answers to address requests must be changed or completely denied.

ARP

The most important protocol when dealing with virtual routers is ARP (Address Resolution Protocol), which provides the ability to match logical addresses such as IP addresses to hardware addresses such as MAC addresses. The use of virtual and physical IP and MAC addresses means that the router's reaction to ARP requests is of great importance:

- An ARP request to the virtual router's address may only be answered when the LANCOM is the master. This request must be answered with the corresponding virtual MAC address. All other requests must be ignored.
- ARP requests that list a virtual router's address as the sender address must be ignored.
- When using proxy ARP, an ARP request must be checked in order to determine if a virtual router is associated with the remote station through which the requested address can be reached. If so, then the request may only be answered when the LANCOM is the master. This also applies to virtual remote stations (i.e. PPTP or VPN) when they use a remote station that is associated with a virtual router as a physical connection.
- ARP requests sent by the LANCOM itself are always sent with the real sender address, as long as this is not the address of a virtual router. In this event, the virtual MAC address must be entered in the ARP request.

ICMP

When using ICMP, echo requests and replies should be differentiated from error messages. For the error messages, ICMP redirect will require and additional inspection.

- An ICMP echo request directed to the virtual router's address may only be answered by the LANCOM when it is the master.
- ICMP redirects may also be sent from virtual routers but the address of the router to which the packet was sent must be entered as the sender address. This is to be determined from the packet's target MAC address.
- If the LANCOM is addressed via its physical MAC address and the target of the packet is linked to a virtual router, the address of which is connected to the receiving interface, then an ICMP redirect is returned and the sender receives the address of the virtual router.
- For all other error messages, it does not matter whether the virtual router's address or the real address is used as the sender address. To simplify matters, the real address is always used.

With the implementation of VRRP in LANCOM, the previous option 'local routing' in the IP Router menu has been replaced with 'Send ICMP redirects'. If this option is enabled, ICMP redirects are sent, if the option is disabled, the packets are always forwarded.

DHCP

- Gateway address

  Although the computers in the LAN can use ICMP redirects to learn which router is the correct virtual router, it is still advisable to designate the correct router as gateway directly during the DHCP negotiation. This allows the assigning gateway address to be determined as follows:

  - If a gateway is explicitly defined for the interface in the DHCP module, then only this will be assigned.
  - If no explicit gateway is set, then the default route is looked up in the routing table. If the default route exists and is connected to a virtual router which is directly linked to the interface through which the DHCP request is received, then the virtual router's address is assigned as gateway.
  - If other remote sites are linked to virtual routers, then these will not be assigned via DHCP since there can only be one default gateway. A host can only learn the corresponding routers via ICMP redirects.
  - Otherwise, the address corresponding to the address pool or interface (intranet or DMZ) will be assigned.

If more than one virtual router is connected by the default route, then the address of the router with the highest priority will be assigned. This allows for automatic load balancing through the selection of the DHCP server by the respective client. The DHCP server is to be activated on all routers involved in load balancing. All routers then define many virtual routers, each with different priorities. If the client randomly selects a DHCP server from those that answer, then it will also be randomly assigned a virtual router.

Example with two routers

LANCOM A defines the following virtual routers:

Router ID	Virt. address	Prio	B Prio	Peer
1	10.0.0.1	100	50	INTERNET
2	10.0.0.2	60	50	INTERNET

and, correspondingly LANCOM B:

Router ID	Virt. address	Prio	B Prio	Peer
1	10.0.0.1	60	30	INTERNET
2	10.0.0.2	100	30	INTERNET

Depending on whether it chooses LANCOM A or LANCOM B, a DHCP client will now be assigned 10.0.0.1 or 10.0.0.2 as gateway and is initially distributed on both LANCOM devices.

Using this example, it becomes clear how load balancing can be combined with backup. If LANCOM A falls into backup mode, then LANCOM B will become the master for all clients. If LANCOM B fails, then LANCOM A will become the master for all clients and will attempt to establish its backup. If this fails, then it is LANCOM B's turn again (this signals the end of the backup chain).

- Further addresses

  If the DHCP server is to assign explicit addresses for certain services which the LANCOM provides, such as DNS and NBNS server, then either the configured addresses or the real addresses are assigned to the respective interfaces. Assigning a virtual router violates the RFC which prohibits a virtual router from offering other services (a device may only react to a virtual address when it is also the "owner" of this address, i.e. when the address is also the real interface address. At the same time, this means that DNS and NBNS must receive special treatment.

DNS server

Since the RFC prohibits a virtual router from offering additional services when the physical router is not the "owner" of the virtual IP address, the LANCOM DNS server requires special treatment. The LANCOM offers two options.

- The solution which conforms to the RFC works in the DNS forwarder. If an external IP address is entered as primary or secondary DNS server, then forwarding to the responsible virtual router functions automatically using the ICMP redirect treatment since the packet is simply forwarded to the virtual router.

  However, if no address is entered and no connection has been made to the remote station to which the packet should be forwarded, then the DNS forwarder checks to see if a virtual router is connected to the remote station.

  - If this is the case and the LANCOM is also the master for one of the virtual routers, then the connection is established and the packet is forwarded to the DNS server assigned to this connection.
  - If the LANCOM is not the master for all connected routers, then the packet is forwarded to the master of the first connected router.

  This procedure only works when all routers behave in accordance with the RFC and use port forwarding. If all of the routers involved are LANCOM devices, then this requirement is fulfilled.

- With the second option, a virtual router reacts to DNS requests itself.

- In order to enable this behavior, the option 'Internal Services' must be enabled. The LANCOM accepts the requests to the internal services (here, for example, DNS) via the virtual addresses as if it had been addressed through one of the physical addresses.
- In the default setting (Off) the LANCOM behaves in accordance with the RFC and drops the corresponding packets.
- The default setting is 'On'.

If a virtual router is connected to the default route when using the internal services, then this will be assigned by the LANCOM DHCP server as the DNS server. If more than one virtual router is connected by the default route, then the router with the highest priority will be assigned (as is the case with gateway addresses).

This option can only guarantee trouble-free operation if all of the routers involved are LANCOM devices.

NBNS/NetBIOS proxy

Since a NetBIOS proxy does not forward packets, the question of the virtual or physical addresses responded to is of no significance here. However, it is important that all routers and backup routers in the VRRP group can store the same host, group and server addresses learned from the remote site in their own database and propagate these upon connection establishment. This is the only method of ensuring that an NBNS request can be answered in every case.

Since the NetBIOS proxy propagates all host, group and server addresses learned from the remote site, it need only be ensured that this information is also recorded by the backup routers in their databases. Under normal circumstances, however, this is prevented by the route verification.

Since the transfer of addresses is usually prevented by the route verification, the addresses are only accepted in VRRP operation when **all** of the following requirements are fulfilled:

- There is a WAN route to the propagated address.
- The corresponding remote site is connected to a virtual router.
- The corresponding address is propagated by the master of this virtual router.
- The switch 'Internal Services' is activated.

Only when all of these requirements are fulfilled, will the respective address be accepted in the database. This ensures that the individual router databases remain consistent and all addresses are immediately recognized when a backup router becomes master.

The position of the 'Internal Services' switch influences the NetBIOS proxy.

- When it is enabled, the NetBIOS proxy accepts NBNS requests that are directed to virtual routers.
- If a virtual router is also connected to the default route, then this will be assigned by the LANCOM DHCP server as the NBNS server.
- If more than one virtual router is connected by the default route, then the router with the highest priority will be assigned (as is the case with gateway addresses).

RIP

The use of VRRP has a particularly strong influence on RIP, through which information on the accessible routes and the corresponding routers is propagated.

- On the one hand, routers must be made known in the network to remote stations which can be reached through a virtual router.
- On the other hand, the routes that are propagated by the virtual routers themselves must be ignored.
- Ultimately, the propagated information is dependent upon the interface which it is to be passed on to.

The announcement of routing information via RIP is governed by the following rules:

- Routes are propagated on all virtual and physical interfaces and every virtual router counts as its own virtual interface.
- If routes are currently being propagated on a physical interface (LAN/DMZ) and a route that must be propagated is connected to a virtual router, then two cases must be differentiated:

- When the virtual router is active on the interface, i.e. its address is in the address range of the respective interface, then the route will not be propagated.
- If the virtual router on the interface is not active, then the route will be propagated normally, i.e. the physical interface address will be propagated as the best route.

- If routes are propagated on a virtual router, then only the routes that are connected to this virtual router may be propagated.
- If routes are propagated on a WAN interface, then all routes are propagated.
- Upon receiving a RIP packet, the sender address of the RIP packet must be taken into consideration. The routes contained in the packet must be ignored when they are propagated by a virtual router known by the LANCOM device.
- If the LANCOM cannot establish a connection to the remote site because all channels are occupied, then RIP propagates the routes accessible through this remote site as "unavailable".
  - In addition, the VRRP module is notified in this case so that it can log off of the router connected to this remote site allowing a new master to be determined.
  - Similarly, VRRP receives notification when the connection is can be re-established in order to allow the virtual router to propagate with its main or backup priority again.

NTP

When the 'Internal Services' switch is enabled, then the LANCOM also accepts (S)NTP requests that are directed to virtual routers since the exact address of the time source is not relevant for an NTP client.

Other services

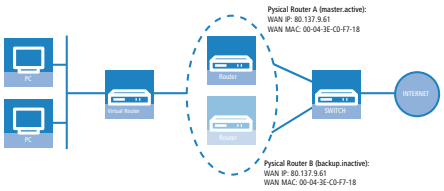
The LANCOM only processes other services when it is addressed via its physical address.

17.2.5 VRRP in the WAN

The description of VRRP is only in regard to the LAN portion of data networks and leaves the regulation of the WAN portion to dynamic routing protocols such as RIP. In order to enable WAN failover all the same, LANCOM VRRP provides two alternatives.

Same IP and MAC addresses

The first possibility entails assigning all of the routers in the VRRP group on the WAN side the same MAC and the same IP address. The routers are then connected to a commonly used DSL line, for example by a switch. In order to avoid address conflicts, only one router may actually react to these addresses on its WAN side, which is achieved through the use of VRRP.



- Due to the fact that the LANCOM terminates its WAN connection when the last virtual router switches to backup mode, this requirement is definitely fulfilled when a total of only one virtual router has been defined.
- In the backup scenario, the necessary requirement is also fulfilled because the main connection is guaranteed to have been terminated or else the backup router would not have become master.

Routing protocols

In the load balancing scenario, however, there are two different WAN connections online simultaneously, which is why the use of the same MAC and IP address is not possible here. In this case, a routing protocol such as RIP, OSPF or BGP must be used as a second option.

In order to accelerate the switch using RIP, which is rather slow, a LANCOM propagates to all networks that it is no longer available before the connection is established, thereby ensuring a quick change of routing priorities.

17.2.6 Configuration

In order to configure failover or load balancing with VRRP, the following parameters can be set:

- **Activation**: The switch 'VRRP activate' enables the VRRP module to be switched on or off (default = off).
- **VRRP list**: In the VRRP list, up to 16 virtual routers can be defined. This table has the following fields:
  - **Router ID**: Unique ID for the virtual router. Values between 1 and 255 are possible. The router ID is used to consolidate several physical routers into a single virtual router or a standby group.
  - **Router IP**: IP address for the virtual router.

    All routers on which the virtual router is set up must assign this router the same IP address.

  - **Main priority**: The main priority of the virtual router with regard to routers with several interfaces refers to the main interface, i.e. with routers with DSL and ISDN support to the DSL interface. Values between 0 and 255 are permitted. The values 0 and 255 have special meanings:

  '0' turns the virtual router off.

  - '255' is only accepted when the virtual router address is identical to the address of the interface that is connected to the router. In other cases, the priority is automatically lowered.
  - **Backup priority**: The backup priority of the virtual router refers to the interface for which a backup connection is configured, i.e. with routers with DSL and ISDN support to the ISDN interface. Here again, values between 0 and 255 are permitted. The values 0 and 255 also have special meanings here:

  0 disables the virtual router in the backup event. Checks are conducted regularly in order to determine whether or not the standard connection can be reestablished. The inspection interval is defined in the reconnect delay.

  '255' is only accepted when the virtual router address is identical to the address of the interface that is connected to the router. In other cases, the priority is automatically lowered.

  When the backup connection cannot be established in backup mode, then the virtual router logs off completely and attempts to reestablish the standard or backup connection in intervals defined by the reconnect delay.

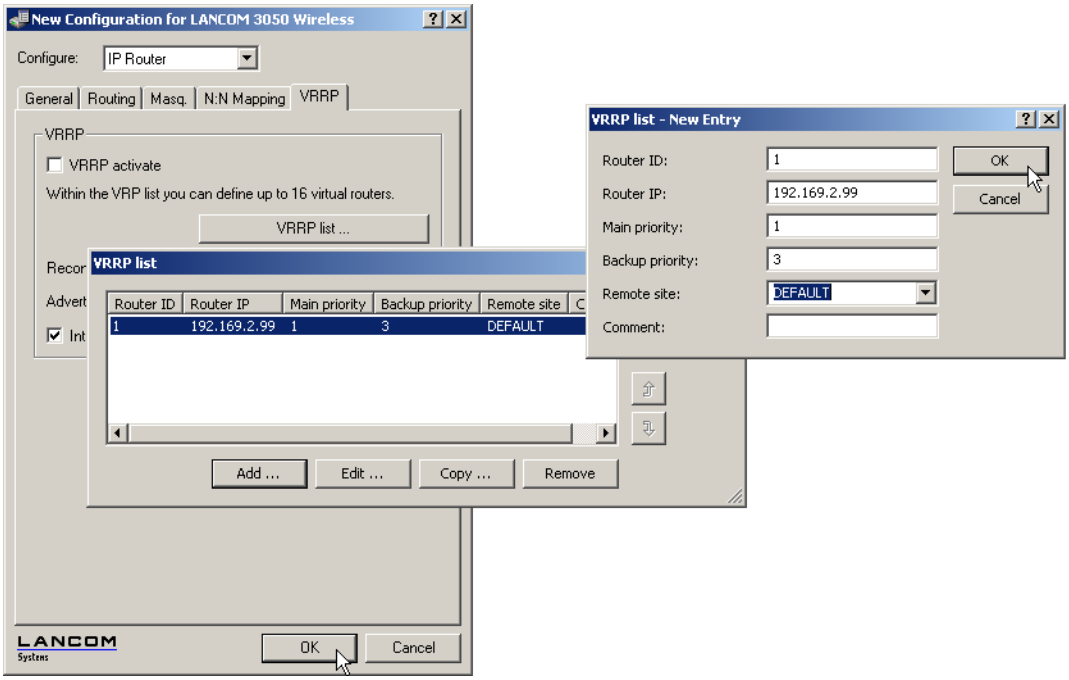
  - **Remote site**: Name of the remote station that controls the virtual router behavior. The remote site can also be assigned to other virtual routers.

    Entering the remote site is optional. Linking the backup requirement to a remote site allows the use of the LANCOM-specific enhancement to VRRP not only to secure against device failure (VRRP standard) but also against interface failure or disruption at a remote site.

  - **Comment**: 64 character-long commentary describing the virtual router.
- **Reconnect delay**: The reconnect delay time shows after how many minutes a virtual router that has logged off attempts to reestablish its standard connection. The router remains logged off during this connection attempt. It is only broadcasted with its main or backup priority after the connection has been established successfully. The default value is 30 minutes.
- **Advert. interval**: The advertising interval shows how many seconds until a virtual router is propagated again. The default value is 1 second.

  With a propagation time of 1 second, the routers in the VRRP group can change quickly when a device or interface fails. An interruption of this type will usually remain undetected due to the fact that the TCP connection is not interrupted. Other routing protocols require up to 5 minutes or longer in order to conduct the transfer to a backup router.
- **Internal services**: The Internal services check box controls how the device should behave when it is addressed via a virtual router address.

- In the 'On' position, the LANCOM reacts to certain services exactly as if it had been addressed via its actual address. Naturally, this only occurs when the device itself is the master of the virtual router. The behavior of the DHCP server changes simultaneously.
- The default setting 'Off' results in behavior in accordance with the RFC, meaning means that the corresponding packets are silently dropped.
- The default setting is 'On'.

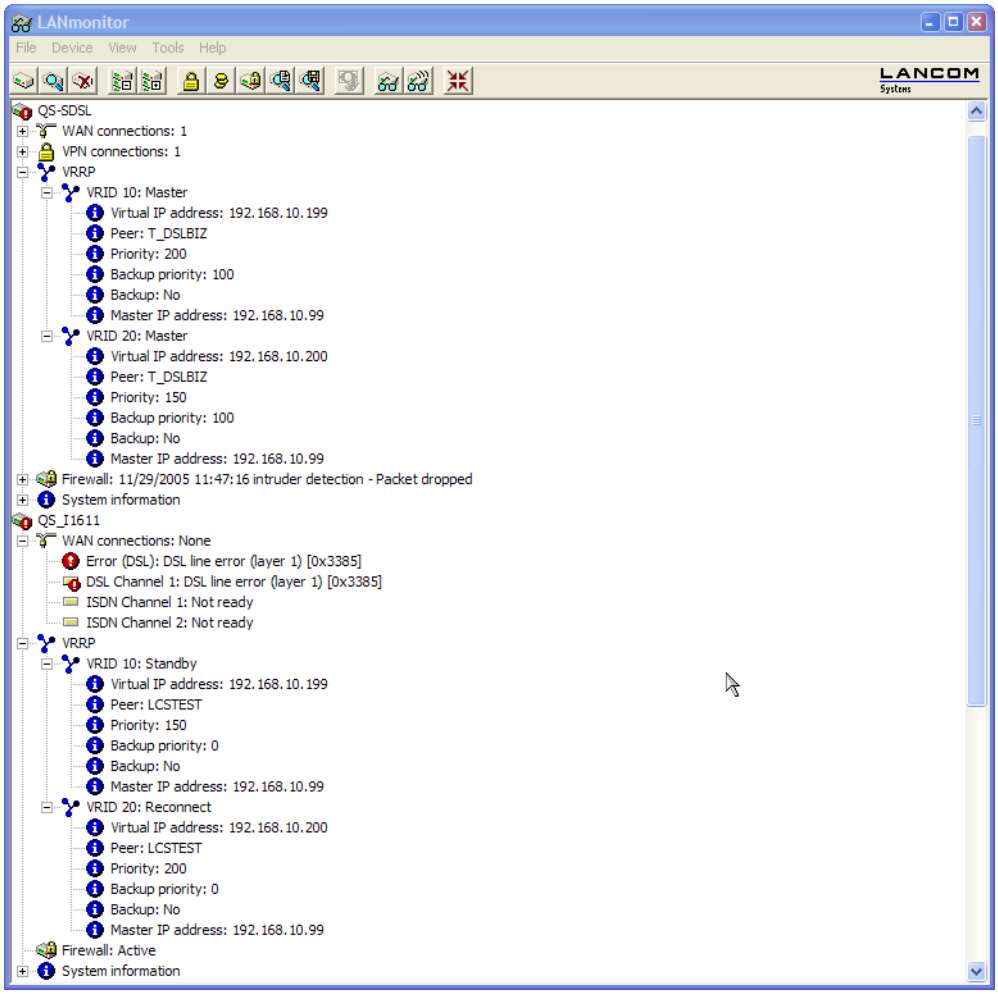


LANconfig: IP router / VRRP

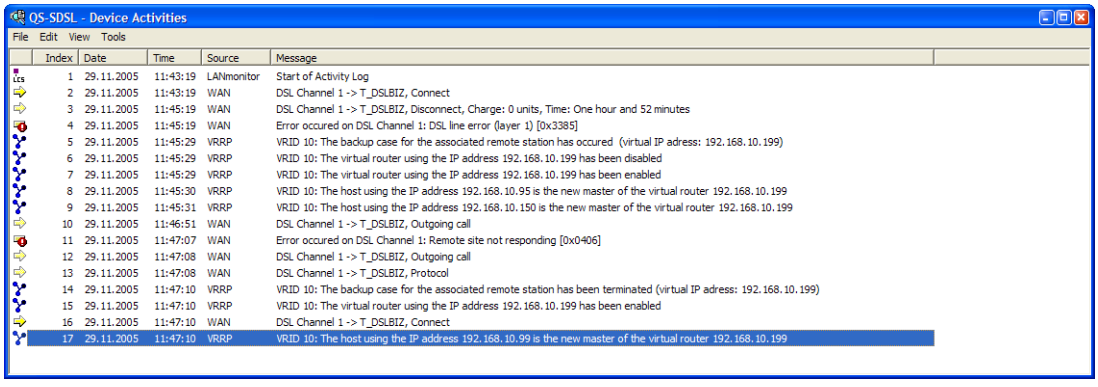
WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / IP router / VRRP

17.2.7 Status Information

The current status of the devices in the VRRP group is showed in LANmonitor as long as the VRRP module is activated:



In the device activity log, VRRP events can be viewed in chronological order.



Status information on VRRP can be found in the IP router's status menu and offers the following entries:

- The values Rx and Tx count the VRRP packets received or sent, respectively.
- Error counts all fatal protocol errors that are logged.
- Drop counts all VRRP packets that are dropped, e.g. when a serious error occurred.

In the Virtual Router table, all active virtual routers are listed with their current status. This table has the following fields:

- **Router ID**: Unique ID for the virtual router.
- **Virt. address**: IP address for the virtual router.
- **Prio**: Main priority for the virtual router.
- **B-Prio**: Backup priority for the virtual router.
- **Remote site**: Name of the remote station that controls the virtual router behavior.
- **State**: State of the virtual router. The following states are possible:
  - Init: The router is currently being set up.
  - Listen: The router is currently learning which device is the master.
  - Standby: The router is the standby router.
  - Master: The router is the master.
  - Down: The router is deactivated.
  - Reconnect: The reconnect timer is running and the router is currently not propagating itself.
- **Backup**: Shows if the remote station (peer) is in backup or not. If the remote station is in backup, then the device will propagate its backup priority, otherwise it will propagate its main priority.
- **Master**: Shows which of the physical routers is currently the master.

The MAC list table displays the MAC addresses for the virtual routers that are currently masters. This table has the following fields:

- **Virt. address**: IP address for the virtual router.
- **MAC address**: MAC address for the virtual router.
- **Router ID**: Unique ID for the virtual router.

17.3 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.10

17.3.1 High availability clustering

As of LCOS version 9.10, all devices in a defined group take on any changes to the configuration of any device within this group.

As of LCOS version 9.10, the LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option and the LANCOM VPN High Availability Clustering XL option enable you to collect several devices to a cluster. This applies to the LANCOM WLAN controllers (LANCOM WLC-4025+ and LANCOM WLC-4100) and LANCOM central-site VPN gateways (LANCOM 7100+ VPN and LANCOM 9100+ VPN). This options provides highly convenient central management in combination with configuration synchronization (Config Sync) between all of the clustered devices. In WLAN controller-based installations you additionally benefit from automatic load balancing, intelligent high-availability scenarios, and the issuing of cluster certificates.

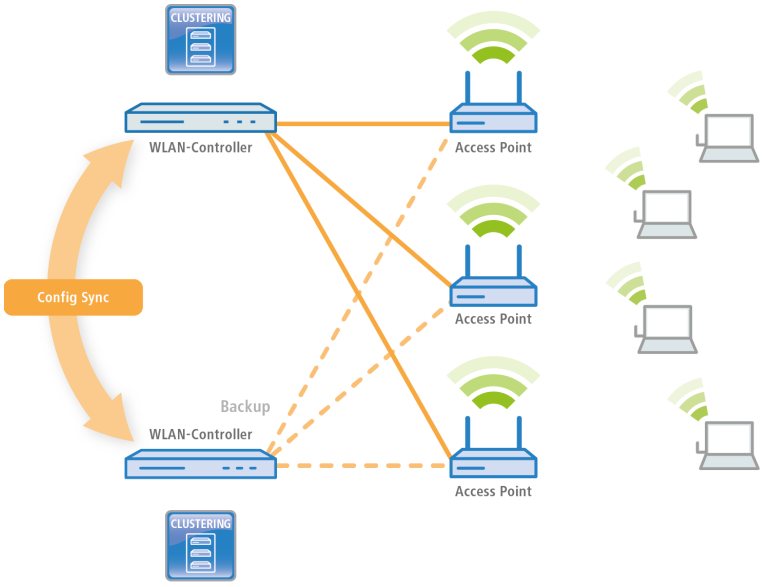
Automatic configuration synchronization (Config Sync) with the LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option

Example application, WLAN controllers:

WLAN infrastructures have become an integral part of modern corporate networks. In the age of the "all wireless office", the increasing demands on the availability of a WLAN solution make it essential to have a reliable backup and high-availability solution. In WLAN infrastructures with a single WLAN controller, any failures or maintenance downtimes (such as a firmware update) of the WLC until now caused the APs connected to it to switch to standalone operation. Consequently, the APs in standalone mode were no longer able to access the features that are provided centrally by the WLC such as a Public Spot, IEEE 802.1X authentication, or Layer-3 tunnels.

In order to avoid this and to maintain the full operation of all WLAN capabilities even if a WLC should be temporarily unavailable, one or more redundant or backup WLCs should be employed. In the backup event, the APs automatically switch from the temporarily unavailable WLC to a backup WLC. The backup WLC has the same configuration (e.g. AP table or WLAN profiles) as required by the primary WLC of the APs. The initial setup of the WLCs and any subsequent configuration changes must be carried out separately and identically on each device—an enormous effort for the administrator. Manual maintenance of the configurations between multiple identical devices could lead to outdated or non-synchronous configurations on the backup WLCs, which in the case of a backup event could lead to a critical state for the entire WLAN infrastructure. The resulting troubleshooting usually turns out to be a real challenge. The users of the WLAN clients experience a loss of productivity, which could have major consequences company-wide.

New with the LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option: This software option allows multiple WLCs to be grouped into a highly-available cluster. In this way, configuration changes, features and enhancements made on one WLC are automatically transferred between the other WLCs in the cluster, without having to make manual changes on each individual device. Common parameters in a cluster (e.g. WLAN profiles, AP tables, or Public Spot settings) remain synchronized, individual parameters (such as the IP address of the WLC) are not exchanged.



The LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option offers greatly simplified administration and huge time savings because you only need to configure one WLC in the cluster. The WLC then transfers the changes to the other cluster devices automatically. In the case of maintenance downtime (e.g. for a firmware update) or even the failure of a WLC, the APs automatically connect to another WLC which, thanks to Config Sync, already has the identical configuration without any intervention by the administrator. The result is a convenient way to high availability.

The prerequisites for a device to be a valid member of a cluster are:

- The LANCOM WLC High Availability Clustering XL option (as of LCOS version 9.10) must be available.
- IP communications must be available to all other devices, e.g. via LAN, WAN, or VPN.
- It must be in the list of group members that is stored in each device.
- A valid certificate must be available
- It needs to authenticate itself by certificate as a member of the cluster.

Automatic configuration synchronization (Config Sync) with the LANCOM VPN High Availability Clustering XL option

Example application, VPN:

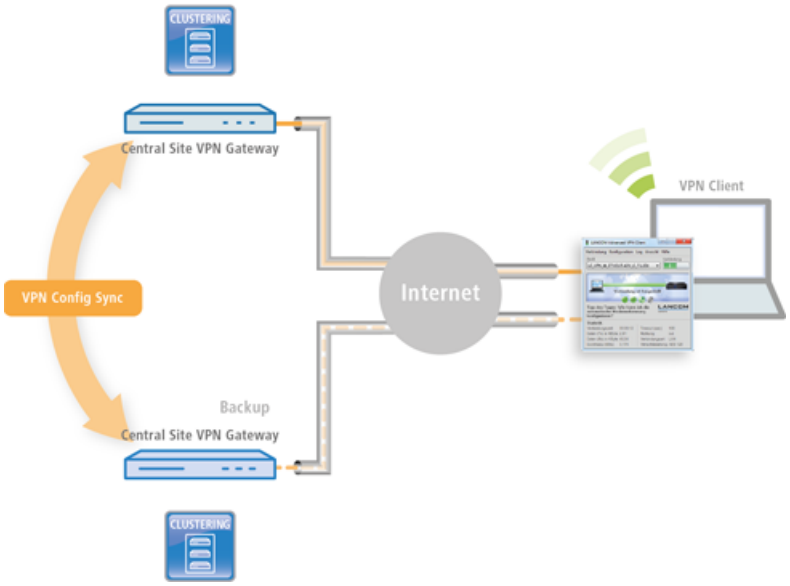
VPN infrastructures have been a part of corporate networks for a long time now. The demands on the availability of VPN gateways have increased sharply in recent years. Whereas VPN solutions in professional scenarios were mainly temporary in the past, e.g. for sales representatives with VPN clients, these days home or branch offices are often permanently

linked to the main office via a VPN tunnel. They support voice services (VoIP), database applications, or file services, for example. With increasing dependence on VoIP services or critical business applications, the need for reliable backup and high-availability of the VPN solution has increased.

In order for VPN services in larger-scale critical network infrastructures to remain highly available, it is advisable that you operate one or more backup VPN gateways in addition to the primary VPN gateway. In this case, the failure or downtime of a central-site VPN gateway causes another device to operate as a backup. The VPN connection is automatically established via the accessible backup central-site VPN gateway.

For this purpose the backup central-site VPN gateway needs to have the same configuration as the primary central-site VPN gateway. In particular VPN user data and the firewall configuration must be present on both devices in order for a user to be authenticated and the services to be provided correctly. This requires a manual setup of each individual device—in other words, a huge amount of work for the administrator.

New with the LANCOM VPN High Availability Clustering XL option: This option allows multiple central-site VPN gateways to be grouped into a cluster. In this way, configuration changes, features and enhancements made on one central-site VPN gateway are automatically transferred between the cluster devices, without having to make manual changes on each individual device. Common parameters in a cluster (e.g. VPN user database, firewall) remain synchronized, individual parameters (such as the IP address) are not exchanged.



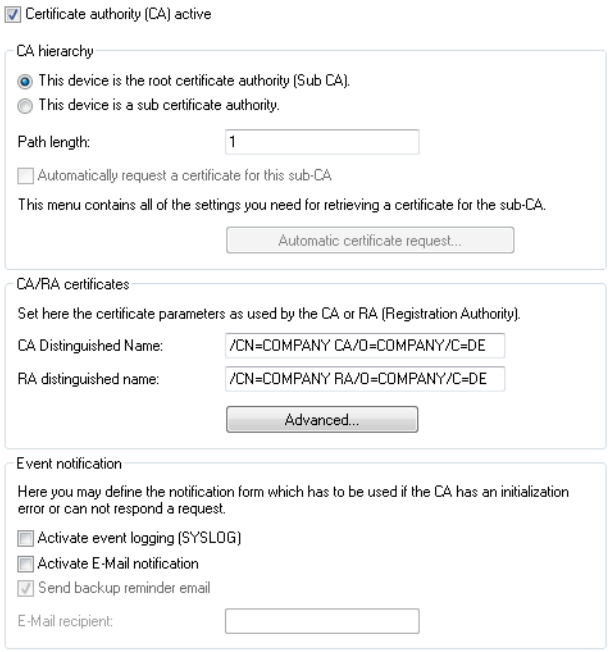
The prerequisites for a device to be a valid member of a cluster are:

- The LANCOM VPN High Availability Clustering XL option (as of LCOS version 9.10) must be available.
- IP communications must be available to all other devices, e.g. via LAN, WAN, or VPN.
- It must be in the list of group members that is stored in each device.
- A valid certificate must be available
- It needs to authenticate itself by certificate as a member of the cluster.

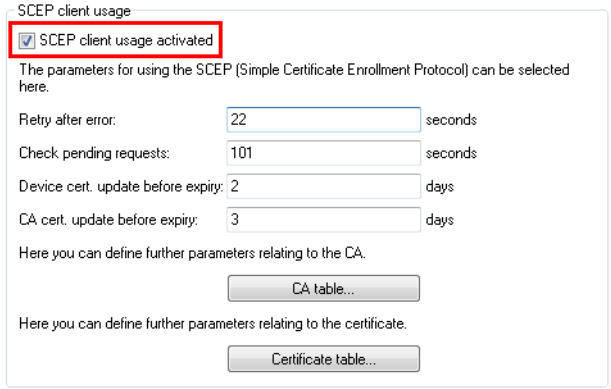
Setting up configuration synchronization

In order for configuration synchronization to function, all of the devices to be configured need to have valid certificates. In the interests of easy certificate distribution, you first need to configure a SCEP-CA on one of the devices.

1. To do this it is necessary to enable the SCEP server under **Certificates** > **SCEP CA**. If you set up the configuration synchronization on a WLC, it is most likely that the SCEP server is already active.



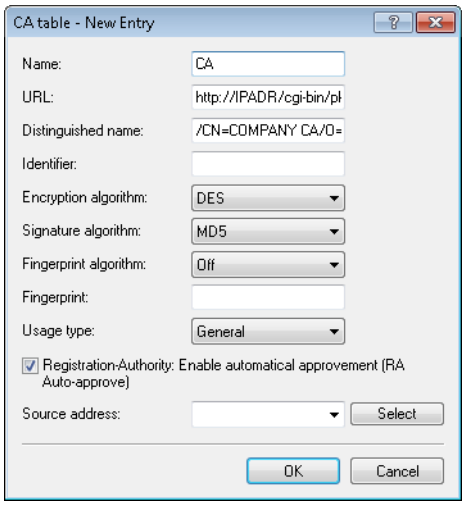
2. Then you enable the SCEP client on any device that is to work with configuration synchronization (including the SCEP CA device) under **Certificates** > **SCEP client**. If you set up the configuration synchronization on a WLC, it is most likely that the SCEP client is already active.



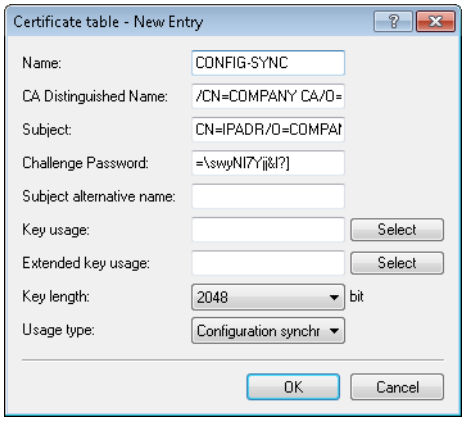
3. Add a new entry for the SCEP server to the **CA table**.

   The values for the CA table match the settings of the SCEP server from step 1 and are thus the same for all stations. For the URL you enter `http://IPADR/cgi-bin/pkiclient.exe`, replacing `IPADR` with the IP address of the device configured as SCEP-CA.

If you set up the configuration synchronization on a WLC, a corresponding entry for the WLC operation will already be available. This entry can also be used to obtain a certificate for configuration synchronization, and in this case there is no need to make any changes to the CA table.



4. The **Certificate table** in the SCEP client needs a new entry for the retrieval of a configuration synchronization certificate. The **CA distinguished name** is the one you used when you created the CA table entry.

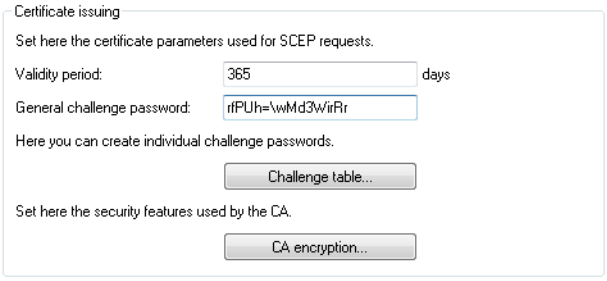


As the subject, enter each device's own IP address (e.g. `/CN=IPADR /O=COMPANY/C=DE`), replacing `IPADR` with the IP address of the device configured as SCEP-CA.

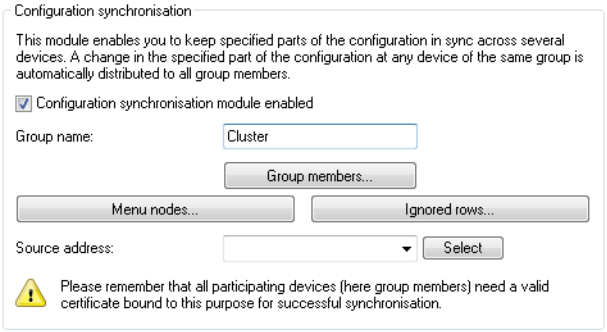
In order for the configuration synchronization to function, it is absolutely necessary for the IP address of the device to be included in the certificate's subject.

Set the **Usage type** to "Configuration synchronization". Also, adjust the **Key length** to "2048 bits". Set a **Name** of your choice for the table entry.

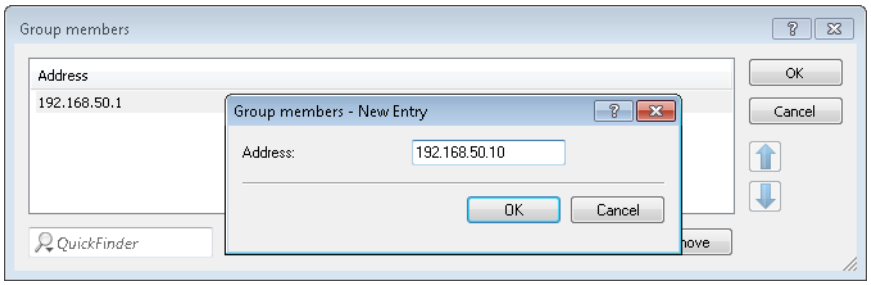
The challenge password of the device configured as SCEP CA is located in its configuration under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** > **General challenge password**.



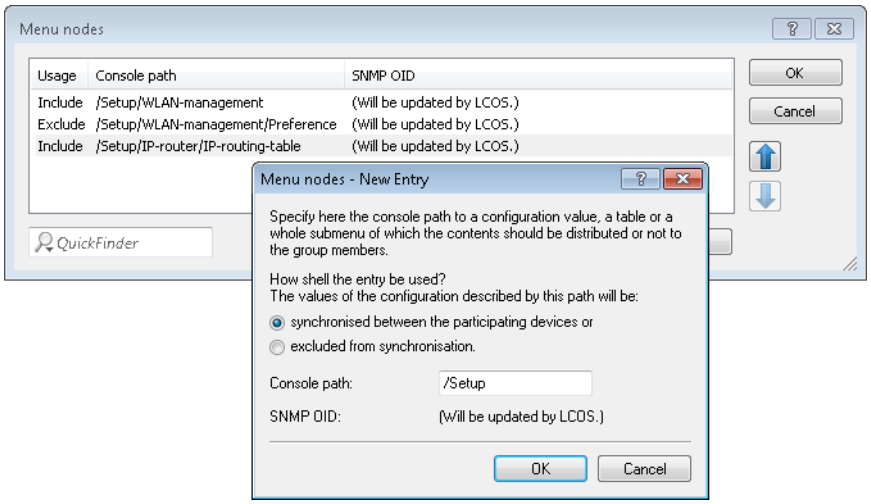
5. This concludes the set up of the SCEP CA and the SCEP client for the retrieval of configuration synchronization certificates. At this time you can write the configuration back to the device in order to retrieve the certificates.
6. Now activate the configuration synchronization under **Management** > **Synchronization** with the option **Configuration synchronization module enabled**. Under **Cluster name** you can also set a name that appears in the LANconfig device list.



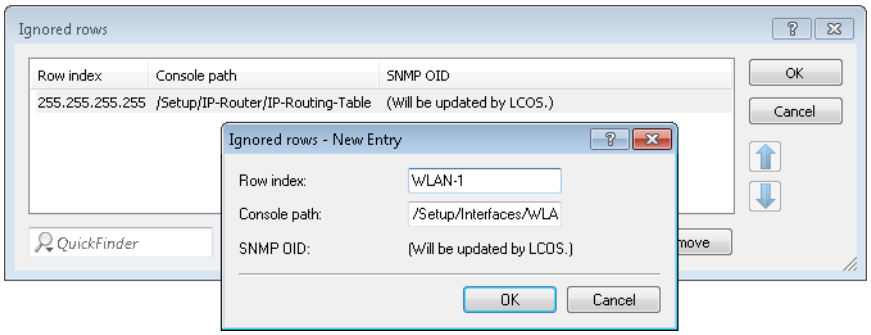
7. Under **Cluster members**, enter the IP addresses of **all** of the devices that are to be members of the cluster.



8. Under **Menu nodes** you specify the menus you want to synchronize. If you wish to explicitly exclude menu nodes from the synchronization, set the **Usage** to "excluded from synchronization".



Under "Ignored rows" you can optionally specify the rows of a table that should be excluded from synchronization. Example: The default route on VPN gateways, which should be different for each gateway. The rest of the routing table can be synchronized by making an entry in the **Menu nodes**.



9. The set up of configuration synchronization is now concluded for this device. You can write the configuration back to the device.
10. Perform steps 2 through 9 on the other devices that belong to the cluster. When configuring each SCEP client, point to the SCEP CA of the first device, as indicated above.
11. Now start the cluster on the device that should initially distribute its configuration to the other cluster members. To do this in LANconfig, select the appropriate entry from the device list and, in the context menu, click **[Start cluster...]**.
12. The cluster is now in operation. You can check the state of the cluster in WEBconfig under **Status** > **Config** > **Sync** > **Status**. Now, configuration changes made on any cluster member are synchronized to the other members.

Please note the following requirements:

- The correct time must be set on all of the involved devices (certificate checks).
- The IP address of each device must appear in the subject of its own certificate.
- To menu trees for synchronization must be the same on both devices (which is not always the case with different firmware versions or device options).
- If any changes are made to the configuration of the configuration synchronization (menu nodes, etc.) after the cluster was started already, then the cluster must be restarted.

1-Click WLC High Availability Clustering Wizard

With the 1-Click WLC High Availability Clustering Wizard, you can use LANconfig to simultaneously configure multiple WLCs under the following conditions:

- All of the WLCs have the WLC High Availability Clustering XL option enabled.
- At least one WLC is fully configured. This is the case if it is already managing APs.
- At least one WLC has a basic configuration (at least the name and IP address are set).

In case of doubt, you should start the Basic Settings Wizard on the corresponding WLC.

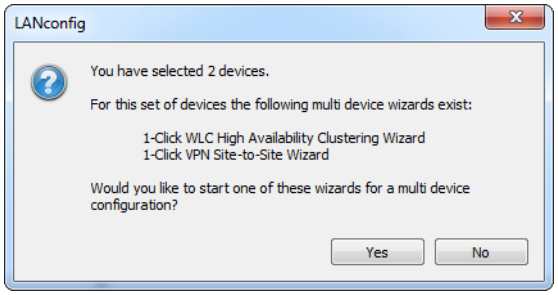
All WLCs in the cluster have the same rights.

1. In the device list, select the two WLCs that you want to configure together.

   There are two ways to start the WLC Clustering Wizard:

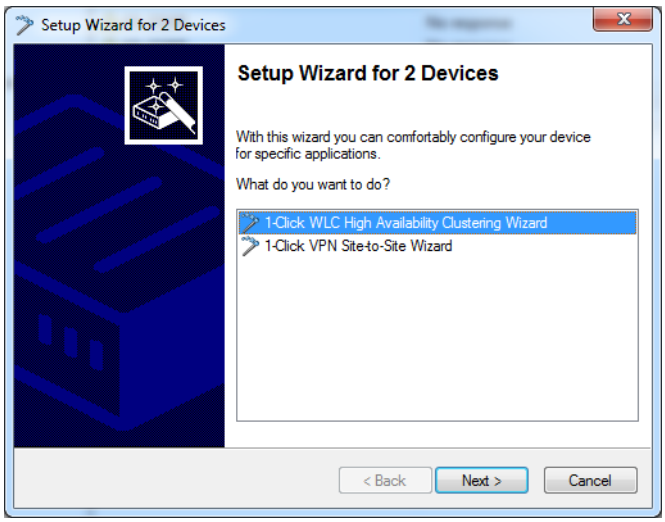
   - In the device list, drag & drop the unconfigured WLC onto the configured WLC.
   - Select the two WLCs in the device list and, after a right-click, select the item **Setup Wizard** from the context menu.

   LANconfig then displays the following message:

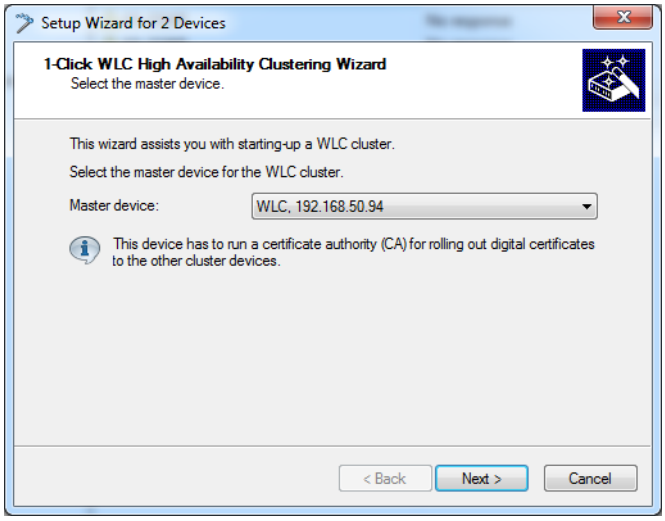


   Start the Setup Wizard by clicking on **Yes** The Setup Wizard starts with the selection dialog for the multiple-devices Wizard.

2. Select the "1-Click WLC High Availability Clustering Wizard" and then click **Next**.



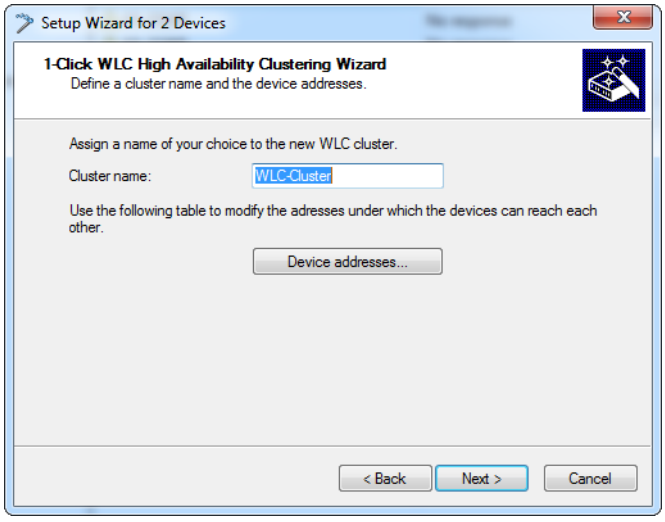
3. Select the master device, and then click **Next**



The master device is the preconfigured WLC. After you finish, the Setup Wizard transfers its configuration to all of the other selected WLCs.

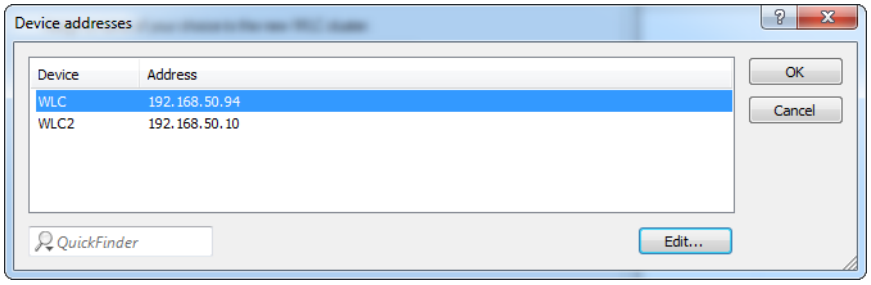
This query does not appear if you transfer the configuration to another WLC via drag & drop. In this case, the Setup Wizard automatically takes the "dragged" WLC to be the master device.

4. Assign a cluster name and click **Device addresses**.



The Setup Wizard suggests a cluster name, although you can change this if you so wish.

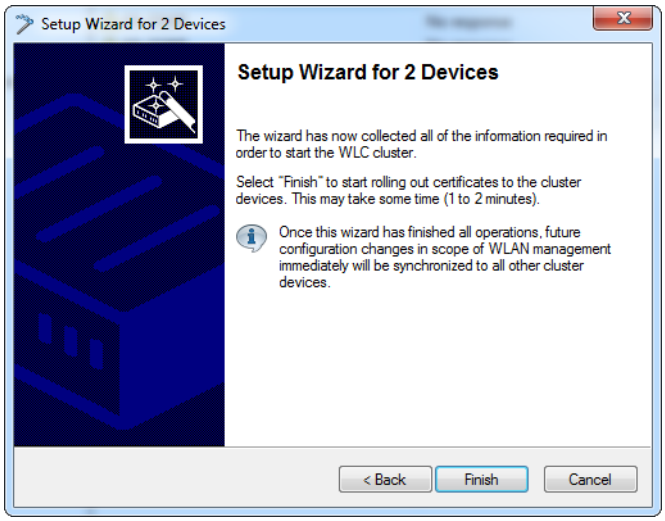
5. Enter the device addresses of all of the WLCs in the cluster.



By default, the Setup Wizard enters the devices that LANconfig is able to reach. Make any necessary changes, for example by entering devices that are accessible via VPN.

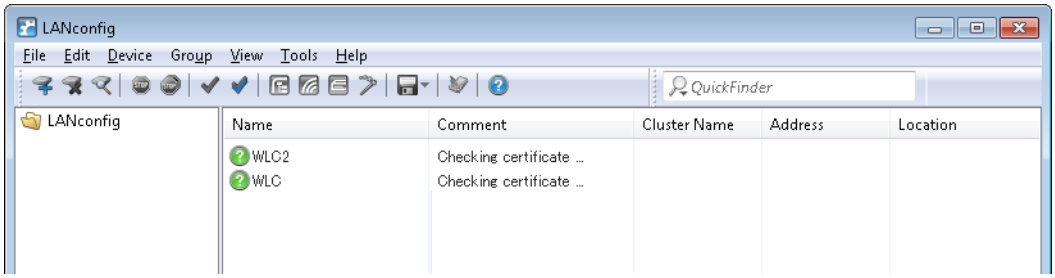
Click **OK**, and then click **Next**.

6. Click **Finish** to complete the Setup Wizard.



The Setup Wizard now loads the configuration of the master device to the selected WLCs.

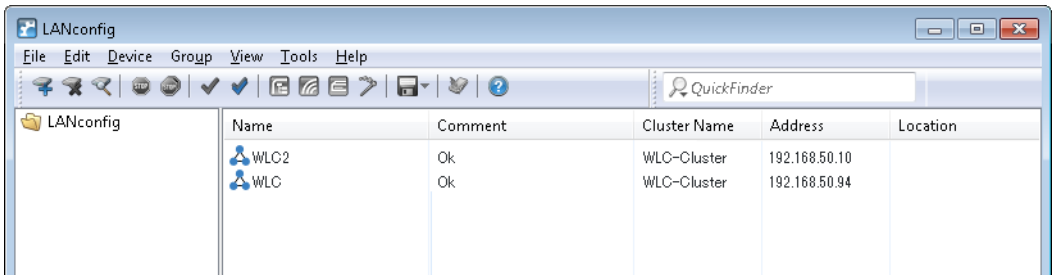
7. The device list displays the WLCs as follows:



The Setup Wizard has configured the SCEP client on all WLCs so that they can fetch a Config Sync. LANconfig now waits until the certificates are available for all of the WLCs.

Creation of the certificates may take up to one minute.

8. Once the certificates are available for all of the WLCs, LANconfig displays the status "OK" for these WLCs along with the cluster icon and the configured name of the cluster.



From now on, Config Sync configures the complete path **Setup** > **WLAN management** between all of the participating cluster members. Config Sync immediately synchronizes any configuration changes on any of the WLCs to all of the other WLCs in the cluster.

The master unit operates a master-CA, while all of the other WLCs operate a sub-CA of this master-CA. APs which connect to a WLC other than the master WLC will receive a valid certificate from it, if required.

18 User Authentication

18.1 RADIUS

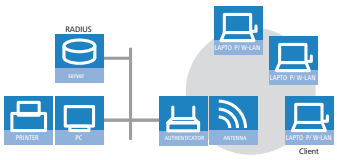
RADIUS stands for "Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service“ and is referred to as a "triple-A" protocol. The three "A"s stand for

- Authentication
- Authorization
- Accounting (billing)

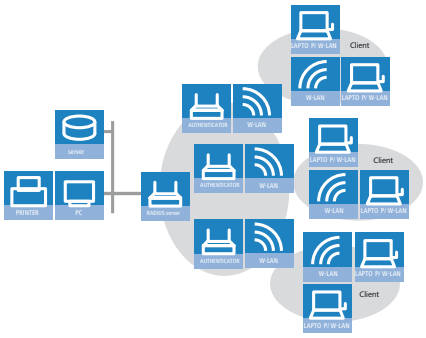
This protocol allow you to grant users access to a network, to assign them certain rights and to track their actions. Where necessary, the RADIUS server can also be used in the billing of user services such as WLAN hot spots. For every action performed by the user, the RADIUS server can run an authorization procedure releasing or blocking access to network resources on a per user basis.

3 different devices are required for RADIUS to work.

- Client: This is a device (PC, notebook etc.) from which the user wishes to dial in to the network.
- Authenticator: A network component positioned between network and client and which forwards on the authorization. This task can be performed by an LANCOM Access Point for example. The authenticator is referred to as the Network Access Server (NAS).



- Authentication server: RADIUS server on which user data is configured. This is usually located within the same network for which it issues access authorizations. It is accessible to the client via the authenticator. Some scenarios may also allow the use of a LANCOM access point for this task.



The authenticator has no initial information on the clients wanting to register. This is all stored in a database on the RADIUS server. The registration information the RADIUS server needs for the authentication process is stored in the database there and can vary from network to network. The authenticator has just the one task, that of transferring the information between the client and the RADIUS server.

Access to a RADIUS server can be configured in several ways:

- Using PPP when dialing into a network
- Via WLAN

- Via a public spot for users who register using a browser (see
- Via the 802.1x protocol

18.1.1 Extensions to the RADIUS server

New authentication method

Up to version 6.30 the LCOS RADIUS server supported PAP as an authentication method only, i.e. the RADIUS client (henceforth referred to as the NAS, Network Access Server) passed on the user name and password and the server responded with an access accept or access reject. This is just one of a range of authentication methods which can be processed by RADIUS. With LCOS version the RADIUS server in the LANCOM supports additional methods of authentication:

- PAP: The NAS passes the user name and password. The RADIUS server searches its data sets for an entry matching the user name, compares the password, and responds with a RADIUS accept or RADIUS reject.
- CHAP: The NAS passes the user name, the CHAP challenge and characteristics of the password (but not the password itself). The RADIUS server searches its data sets for an entry matching the user name; it uses the associated password and the CHAP challenge from the NAS to compute the CHAP response. If this computed response and the answer sent by the client via the NAS correspond, then the RADIUS server sends a RADIUS accept; otherwise it sends a RADIUS reject.
- MS-CHAP: The NAS passes the user name, the MS-CHAP challenge and the MS-CHAP password characteristics. The method continues in the same way as CHAP, although the responses are computed with the MS-CHAP algorithm (RFC 2433).
- MS-CHAPv2: The NAS passes the user name, the MS-CHAP challenge and the MS-CHAPv2 response. The method continues in the same way as CHAP and MS-CHAP, although the responses are computed with the MS-CHAPv2 algorithm (RFC 2759). Furthermore the RADIUS server transmits an MS-CHAPv2 confirmation once the authentication was successful. This confirmation contains the server's response to the client's challenge, so enabling a mutual authentication.
- EAP: The NAS passes the user name and an EAP message. Unlike the methods outlined above, EAP is not stateless, i.e. in addition to sending an access accept or access reject, the RADIUS server issues its own challenge before authentication is completed. EAP itself is a modular authentication protocol that accommodates various methods of authentication.

EAP authentication

EAP is not a specific authentication mechanism, it is more like a framework for various authentication methods. The LCOS RADIUS server supports a range of EAP methods:

- EAP/MD5, defined in RFC 2284. EAP/MD5 is a simple challenge/response protocol. It does not cater for mutual authentication nor does it offer a dynamic key such as those required for 802.1x authentication in wireless networks (WLANs). Thus it is only used for the authentication of non-wireless clients or as a tunneled method as a part of TTLS.
- EAP/MSCHAPv2, defined in draft-kamath-pppext-eap-mschapv2-01.txt. As opposed to EAD/MD5, EAP/MSCHAPv2 does supports mutual authentication but does not support dynamic keys, making it just as prone to dictionary attacks as EAP/MD5. This method is usually used within PEAP tunnels.
- EAP/TLS, defined in RFC2716. The use of EAP/TLS requires the use of a root certificate, a device certificate and a private key in the device. EAP/TLS provides outstanding security and the dynamic keys necessary for wireless connections; its implementation is complex, however, because each individual client requires a certificate and a private key.

  Please note that the TLS implementation in LCOS does not support certificate chains or certificate revocation lists (CRLs).

- EAP/TTLS, defined in draft-ietf-pppext-eap-ttls-05.txt. TTLS is based on TLS; it does not make use of client certificates and it utilizes the existing TLS tunnel to authenticate the client. The LCOS RADIUS server supports the following TTLS methods:
  - PAP
  - CHAP

- MSCHAP
- MSCHAPv2
- EAP, preferably EAP/MD5

- EAP/PEAPv0, defined in draft-kamath-pppext-peapv0-00.txt. Similar to TTLS, PEAP is based on TLS and works with an EAP negotiation inside the TLS tunnel.

Please note that although PEAP enables the use of any authentication method, the LCOS RADIUS server only supports MSCHAPv2 for tunneling.

At this time, authentication methods cannot be suppressed. The EAP supplicant and the RADIUS server negotiate the EAP method with the standard EAP mechanism. Clients requesting a non-EAP method will be rejected by the RADIUS server.

RADIUS forwarding

In the case of multi-layer EAP protocols such as TTLS or PEAP, the actual "internal" authentication can be carried out by a separate RADIUS server. Thus an existing RADIUS server can continue to be operated to provide user tables, even though it is not EAP(/TLS) capable itself. In this situation the TLS/TTLS/PEAP tunnel is managed from the LCOS RADIUS server.

The configuration of multi-layer protocols of this type is an element of a general method for the forwarding of RADIUS requests, whereby a LCOS RADIUS server can also be used as a RADIUS proxy. The concept of "realms" is the basis for request forwarding and the proxy function. A realm is a character string which defines the validity of a range of user accounts. Once defined, the realm is a suffix to the user name separated by an @ character as follows:

```
user@realm
```

The realm can be seen as a pointer to the RADIUS server where the user account is managed. The realm is removed from the string prior to the search of the RADIUS server's user table. Realms allow entire networks which are mutually trustworthy to work with common RADIUS servers located in partner networks, and to authenticate users who move between these networks. The LCOS RADIUS server stores any connected RADIUS servers along with their associated realms in a forwarding table. The realm is searched for in this table in connection with the communicated user name. If no entry is found, the request is answered with an access reject. An empty realm is treated as a local request, i.e. the LCOS RADIUS server searches its own user tables and generates its response accordingly.

To support the processing of realms the LCOS RADIUS server uses two special realms:

- Default realm: This realm is used where a realm is communicated for which no specific forwarding server has been defined. Importantly, a corresponding entry for the default realm itself must be present in the forwarding table.
- Empty realm: This realm is used when **no** realm is communicated, but the user name only.

In the default state the forwarding table has no entries, i.e. the default and empty realms are empty. This means that all requests are treated as local requests and any realms which are communicated are ignored. To operate the LCOS RADIUS server purely as a forwarding server or RADIUS proxy, the default and empty realms must be set to a value that corresponds with a server defined in the forwarding table.

Please note that the forwarding of RADIUS requests does not alter the user name. No realm is added, changed or removed. The next server may not be the last one in the forwarding chain, and the realm information may be required by that server to ensure that forwarding is carried out correctly. Only the active RADIUS server which processes the request resolves the realm from the user name, and only then is a search made of the table containing the user accounts. Accordingly the LCOS RADIUS server resolves the realm from the user name for processing requests locally.

The processing of tunneled EAP requests using TTLS and PEAP makes use of a special EAP tunnel server, which is also in the form of a realm. Here you select a realm that will not conflict with other realms. If no EAP tunnel server is defined then the LCOS RADIUS server forwards the request to itself, meaning that both the internal and the external EAP authentications are handled by the LCOS RADIUS server itself.

RADIUS server parameters

For the configuration of the RADIUS server, the clients which are permitted to access the RADIUS server are defined (including password), as is the UDP port which the clients can use to communicate with the RADIUS server. The authentication port applies globally for all clients.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Radius / Server

Global settings for the RADIUS server

- Authentication port [default: 0]

  Specify here the port used by the authenticators to communicate with the RADIUS server in the LANCOM access point. Port '1812' is normally used.

  - Port '0' disables the RADIUS server.

- Default realm

  This realm is used if the user name is supplied with an **unknown** realm that is not in the list of forwarding servers.

- Empty realm

  This realm is used when the user name supplied does **not contain** a realm.

RADIUS clients

The client table can contain up to 16 clients that can communicate with the RADIUS server.

- IP address

  Enter the IP address of the client that may communicate with the RADIUS server in the LANCOM access point.

- Secret

  Password required by the client for access to the RADIUS server in the LANCOM access point.

  In addition to the configuration of the RADIUS server, the user information source must also be defined .

RADIUS user

Up to 64 users can be entered into the user table, and these can be authenticated by the RADIUS server without reference to other databases. This user table is used for local requests to the RADIUS server, i.e. for requests with user name but no realm.

- User name

  User name.

- Password

  User password.

- Limit auth. methods

  This option allows you to place limitations on the authentication methods permitted for the user.

  - Values: PAP, CHAP, MSCHAP, MSCHAPv2, EAP, All
  - Default: All

Forwarding server

The table of forwarding servers contains up to 16 realms with the associated forwarding destinations.

- Realm

Character string identifying the forwarding destination.

- IP address

  IP address of the RADIUS server to which the request is to be forwarded.

- Port

  Open port for communications with the forwarding server.

- Secret

  Password required for accessing the forwarding server.

- Backup

  Alternative forwarding server in case the first forwarding server is not available.

EAP options for the RADIUS server

- EAP tunnel server

  This realm refers to the entry in the table of the forwarding server that is to be used for tunneled TTLS or PEAP requests.

- TLS check username

  TLS authenticates the client via certificate only. If this option is activated, the RADIUS server additionally checks if the username in the certificate is contained in the RADIUS user table.

Addition(s) to LCOS 7.80

XAUTH with external RADIUS servers

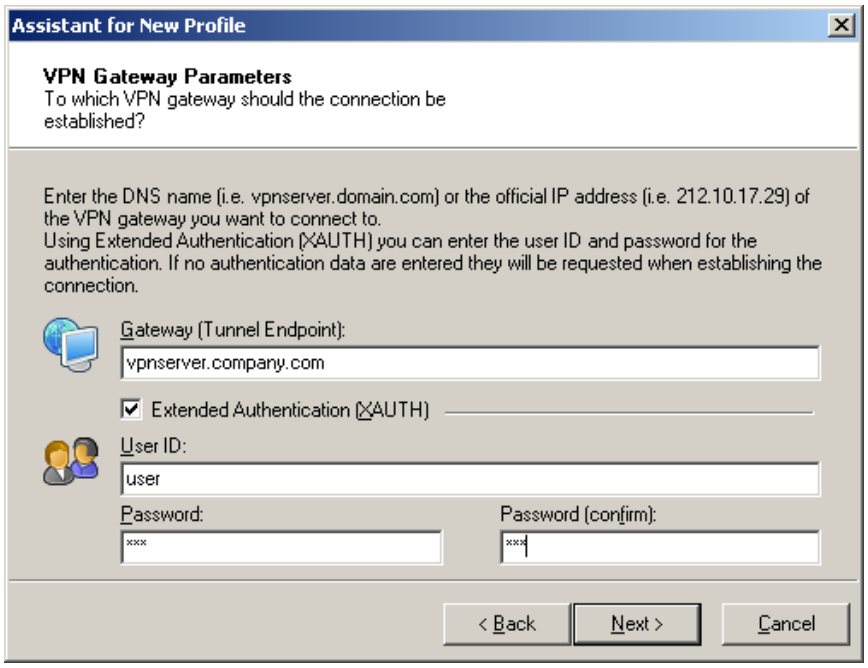
As of LCOS version 7.60, LANCOM devices can identify and authenticate remote stations with the Extended Authentication Protocol (XAUTH). Authentication referred to the user data in the PPP list.

As of LCOS version 7.80, XAUTH authentication can also be handled by an (external) RADIUS server. For example, this allows reference to existing RAS user data on the RADIUS server, assuming that RADIUS-authenticated dial-in via PPP has been set up for VPN with XAUTH.

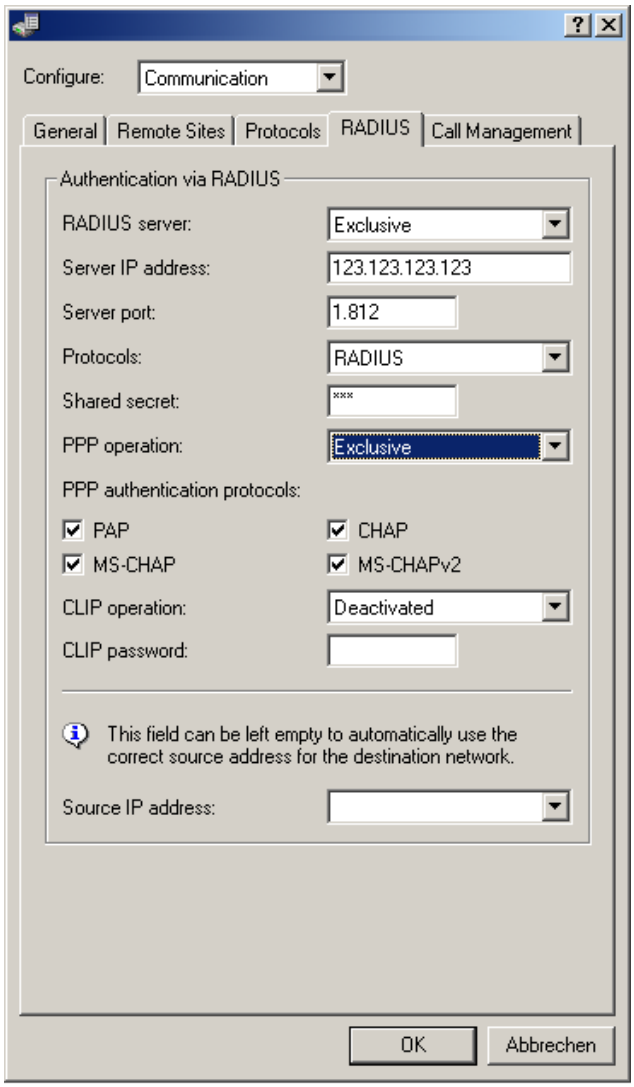
To supplement VPN dial-in with XAUTH for authentication, please proceed as follows:

1. Set up a VPN dial-in account, for example with the LANconfig Setup Wizard.

2. Activate XAUTH in the VPN client at the station which is to dial in. The user name and password are the same as those stored on the RADIUS server.



1. Activate the authentication of dial-in remote stations via the XAUTH protocol on an external RADIUS server. In LANconfig, access the configuration area **Communication** and the **RADIUS** tab to activate the "Exclusive" operating mode for the RADIUS server. With this setting, all incoming XAUTH requests are authenticated by the RADIUS server.



1. You should also specify the IP address, the port, and the key for the external RADIUS server.
2. Also set PPP operation to "Exclusive" so that incoming XAUTH requests are authenticated by the RADIUS server only.

Addition(s) to LCOS 8.80

LCS WPA passphrase in the RADIUS server's user table

As of LCOS version 8.80, of the RADIUS server's user table additionally contains the associated WPA passphrase of the registered user. This enables a device which is connected to the LAN to operate as a central RADIUS server and use the benefits of LEPS (LANCOM Enhanced Passphrase Security).

Configuration

The configuration of LEPS merely involves the assignment of an individual passphrase to the MAC address of each client that is approved for the WLAN. To this end, the MAC filter is set to positive, i. e. the data from clients entered here will be transmitted.

The passphrases should consist of a random string at least 32 characters long.

The client-specific passphrase is stored in the RADIUS server's user table. This enables a device which is connected to the LAN to operate as a central RADIUS server and use the benefits of LEPS.

Addition(s) to LCOS 8.82

Input length for RADIUS forwarding destinations

As of LCOS version 8.82, realms can be up to 64 characters long, in order to use roaming providers with long realms.

Bandwidth allocation by RADIUS

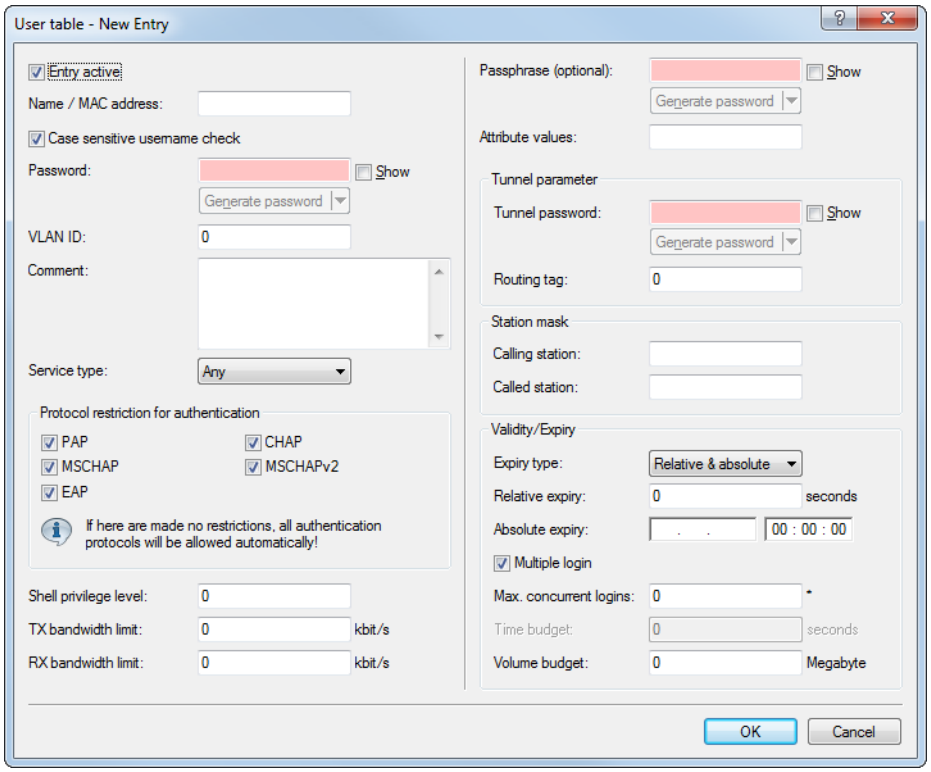
As of LCOS version 8.82, the LANCOM RADIUS server can assign each registered client a bandwidth limitation regardless of the interface used. Up until now, that was only possible for Public Spot scenarios if the Public Spot gateway and the associated WLAN interface were both enabled on the same device.

Extensions to the RADIUS server

RADIUS users

The RADIUS user database is used to enter the user accounts that the RADIUS server can authenticate without any further databases. This database uses the RADIUS server for local requests, also for requests with usernames without a realm.

Please note that the number of users the database can accommodate depends on the model. The maximum possible number of user accounts can be found in the product description of your device. For devices without a limit, we recommend an upper limit of max. 2,500 users.



Entry active

Using this option, you specifically enable or disable an individual RADIUS user account. This makes it possible to disable individual accounts temporarily without deleting the entire account, for example.

Name / MAC address

Enter the name or MAC address of the user

The MAC address is used in combination with the passphrase for LEPS-MAC authentication.

Cast-sensitive user name check

When enabled, the RADIUS server distinguishes between uppercase and lowercase. “User12345” and “user12345” are therefore two different users.

Password

User password.

VLAN-ID

ID of the logical subnet.

Comment

Additional information about the user.

Service type

The service type is a special attribute of the RADIUS protocol, which the NAS (Network Access Server) transmits with the authentication request. The request will only receive a positive response if the requested service type fits the service type of the user account. Possible values are:

- `Any`: The service type can be any type.
- `Framed`: For checking WLAN MAC addresses via RADIUS or IEEE 802.1X.
- `Login`: For Public Spot authentications.
- `Authentication only`: For RADIUS authentication of dialup peers via PPP.

Please note that, depending on the device, the number of entries can be limited with the service type `Any` or `Login`. If your device is able to manage a total of 64 Public Spot users, for example, the LANconfig rejects any after 64. User account with the service type `Any`/`Login` requires the creation of additional user accounts with these service types.

Protocol restriction for authentication

This option limits the selection of authentication methods allowed for the user. Possible values are:

- `PAP`
- `CHAP`
- `MSCHAP`
- `MSCHAPv2`
- `EAP`

Shell privilege level

Vendor-specific RADIUS attribute to communicate the privilege level of the user in a RADIUS-Accept (default: 0).

TX bandwidth limit

Bandwidth limitation for sending data.

RX bandwidth limit

Bandwidth limitation for receiving data

The bandwidth limitation for sending and receiving applies regardless of the interface used (LAN and WLAN).

Passphrase

WPA passphrase assigned to the registered user.

Attribute values

Along with the user-management attributes supported by the LANCOM RADIUS server, there is a vast array of vendor-specific attributes (VSAs). These attributes can be freely configured for RADIUS users as a comma-separated list of attributes and values in the form <Attribute_1>=<Value_1>,<Attribute_2>=<Value_2> ...

Calling station

This mask limits the validity of the entry to certain IDs transmitted by the calling station (WLAN client). When authenticating via 802.1X the calling station's MAC address is transmitted in ASCII format (capital letters only) with a hyphen separating pairs of characters (for example, "00-10-A4-23-19-C0").

Called station

This mask limits the validity of the entry to specified IDs as transmitted by the called station (BSSID and SSID of the access point). When authenticating via 802.1X the called station's MAC address (BSSID) is transmitted in ASCII format (capital letters only) with a hyphen separating pairs of characters. The SSID is appended using a colon as a separator (e.g., "00-10-A4-23-19-C0:AP1").

Expiry type

This option specifies the type of the validity period of the user account. Possible values are:

- `Relative & absolute:`
- `Relative`
- `Absolute`
- `Never`

Relative expiry

Validity period in seconds from the initial successful login.

Absolute expiry

Validity period in hours, minutes and seconds from a certain date.

Multiple login

Activates the option for the client to register more than once

Maximum number

Maximum number of concurrent logins by the client

Time budget

Specifies the time in seconds available to the client if **Multiple login** is not enabled.

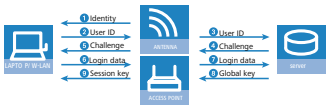
Volume budget

Specifies the data volume available to the client.

18.1.2 How RADIUS works

The authentication process of a client using the authenticator on a RADIUS server can vary in complexity and is implementation dependent. In a simplified application, the client sends its registration data to the RADIUS server via the authenticator and receives back either an "Accept“ or a "Reject“.

In more complicated applications, the RADIUS server can request additional registration data using what is known as a "Challenge“. The handshake sequence looks something like this:

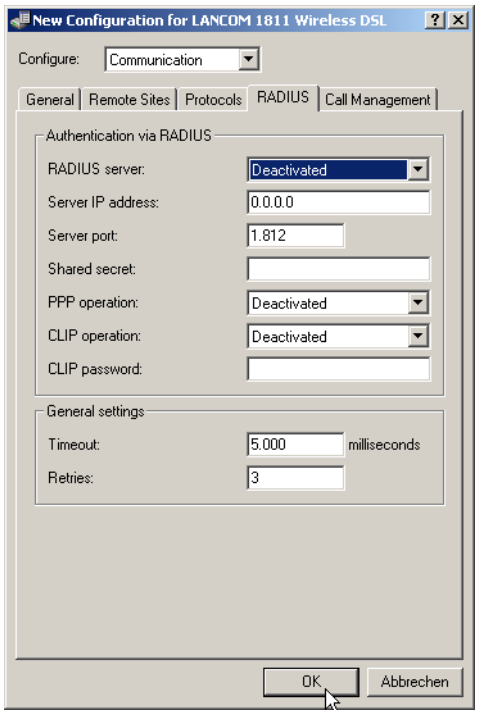


18.1.3 Configuration of RADIUS as authenticator or NAS

The RADIUS protocol is supported by LANCOM devices in a range of different applications. For each of these cases there is a specific set of parameters which may be configured independently of other applications. There are also general parameters which need to be configured for each of these applications. Not all devices support all applications.

General settings

General settings apply to all RADIUS applications. Default values have been selected such that they need not usually be changed.



LANconfig: Communication / RADIUS

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / RADIUS module

› Timeout [default: 5.000]

This value specifies how many milliseconds should elapse before retrying RADIUS authentication.

With PPP authentication using RADIUS, please note that the device dialing accepts the RADIUS timeout configured here.

> Retries [default: 3]

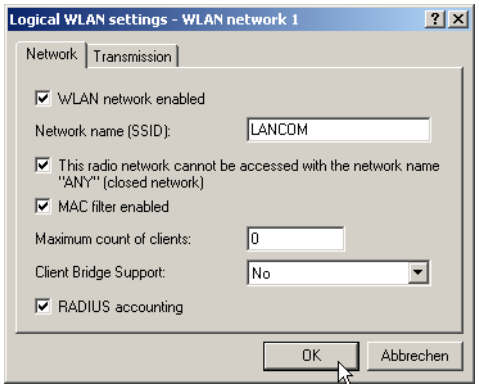
This value specifies how many authentication attempts are made in total before a Reject is issued.

RADIUS accounting

Accounting for a logical WLAN network can be enabled from a RADIUS server by enabling the "RADIUS Accounting" option in the logical WLAN settings for the network.

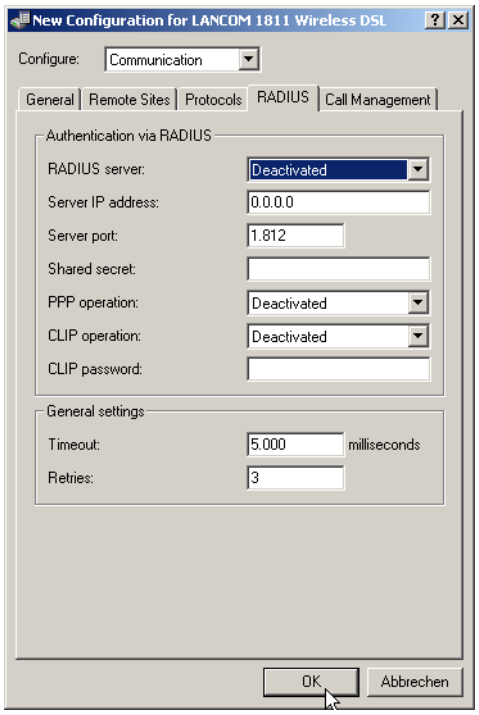
LANconfig: Interfaces / Wireless LAN / Logical WLAN settings

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / RADIUS module



Dial-in using PPP and RADIUS

When dialing-in using the PPP protocol (Point-to-Point protocol), RADIUS can be used to check client access authorizations. A client can dial-in to the network from anywhere. The resulting data transmission between client and authenticator is encrypted.



LANconfig: Communication / RADIUS

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WAN / RADIUS

- Radius server [default: disabled]

  When authenticating using RADIUS, the user administration and authentication tasks are passed on to a RADIUS server.

  - Disabled: The functionality of RADIUS is disabled and no requests are forwarded to the RADIUS server.
  - Enabled: The functionality of RADIUS is enabled and requests may be forwarded to the configured RADIUS server. Depending on the setting, other sources may be used for the authentication process (e.g. PPP list).
  - Exclusive: RADIUS functionality is enabled and the authentication process is run exclusively by RADIUS.

  The appropriate RADIUS server must be configured to use the functionality of RADIUS. All user data, such as user name and password, is entered on the RADIUS server.

- Server IP address

  Specify here the IP address of your RADIUS server from which users are managed centrally.

- Server port [default: 1.812]

  Specify here the port used for communication to your RADIUS server.

- Key (shared secret)

  Specify here the key to be used for coding data. The key must also be configured on the RADIUS server.

- PPP mode [default: disabled]

  A RADIUS server may be used for the authentication process when dialing-in using PPP.

  - Disabled: PPP clients are not authenticated using RADIUS. They are checked **exclusively** using the PPP list.
  - Enabled: RADIUS authentication for PPP clients is enabled. User data supplied by clients is **first** checked using the PPP list. If no matching entry is found in the PPP list, the client is checked by the RADIUS server. Authentication is successful if the PPP list check**or** RADIUS server check returns as positive.
  - Exclusive: RADIUS authentication for PPP clients is enabled. User data supplied by clients is checked **exclusively** by the RADIUS server. In this mode, it is just the advanced settings of the PPP list for the user which are interpreted (e.g. check for PAP/CHAP – or the allowed protocols IP, IPX and/or NetBIOS).

- CLIP mode [default: disabled]

  A RADIUS server may be used for control of a return call when dialing-in using PPP.

  - Disabled: The return call function is not controlled by RADIUS. **Only** those entries in the name list are used.
  - Enabled: The RADIUS function for the return call is enabled. Telephone numbers reported by clients are **first** checked using the name list. If no matching entry is found in the name list, the telephone number is checked by the RADIUS server. If the name list check **or** RADIUS server check returns as positive, a return call can be established.

    If the telephone number communicated is in the name list, but no return call is active there, RADIUS ceases checking.

  - Exclusive: The RADIUS function for the return call is enabled. User data reported by clients is checked **exclusively** by the RADIUS server.

  In order to use the return call control from RADIUS, a user must be set up on the RADIUS server for each telephone number to be authenticated. The user name corresponds to the telephone number and the user password is the CLIP password specified here.

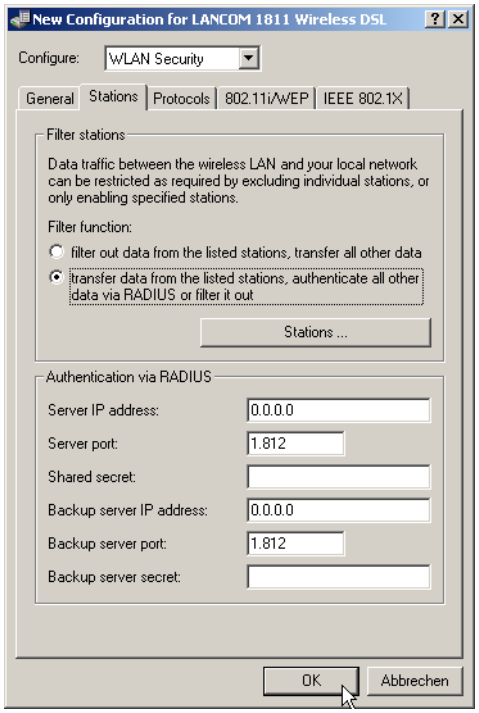
- CLIP password

  Password for return call control.

The generic values for retry and timeout must also be configured . They are under PPP on the same page as PPP parameters.

Dial-in using WLAN and RADIUS

When using a RADIUS server for the authentication of WLAN clients, the RADIUS server uses the MAC address to check client authorizations.



LANconfig: WLAN Security / Stations

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WLAN / RADIUS access check

To use the RADIUS functionality for WLAN clients, the option "Transfer data from the listed stations, authenticate all others via RADIUS or filter them out" must be selected for the "Filter stations" parameter.

- Server IP address

  Specify here the IP address of your RADIUS server from which users are managed centrally.

- Server port [default: 1.812]

  Specify here the port used for communication to your RADIUS server.

- Key (shared secret)

  Specify here the key to be used for coding data. The key must also be configured on the RADIUS server.

- Backup server IP address [default: 1.812]

  Specify here the IP address of your backup RADIUS server from which users are managed centrally.

- Backup server port

  Specify here the port used for communication to your backup RADIUS server.

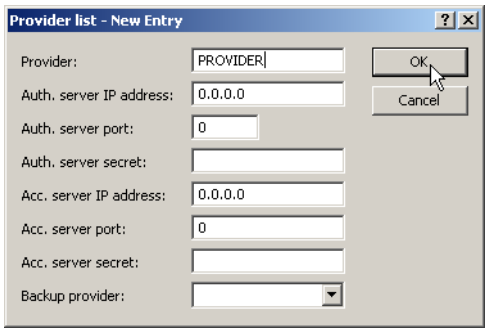
- Backup key

  Specify here the key to be used for coding data. The key must also be configured on the backup RADIUS server.

The generic values for retry and timeout must also be configured.

Dial-in using a public spot and RADIUS

When configuring a public spot (enable using software option for the LANCOM access points), user registration data can be forwarded to one or more RADIUS servers. These are configured in the provider list. The registration data individual RADIUS servers require from the clients is not important to the LANCOM access point since this data is passed on transparently to the RADIUS server.



LANconfig: Public Spot / Public Spot Users/ Provider list

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WLAN / RADIUS accounting

- Provider

  Name of the provider for whom the RADIUS server is defined.

- Auth. server IP address

  The IP address of the RADIUS server for this provider.

- Auth. server port

  The port over which the LANCOM access point can communicate with the RADIUS server for this provider.

- Auth. server secret

  Key (shared secret) for access to the RADIUS server of the provider. The key must also be configured on the appropriate RADIUS server.

- Acc. Server IP address

  IP address of the Accounting server for accesses to the public spot.

- Acc. server port

  The port over which the LANCOM access point can communicate with the accounting server.

- Acc server secret

  Key (shared secret) for access to the Accounting server. The key must also be configured on the Accounting server.

- Backup provider

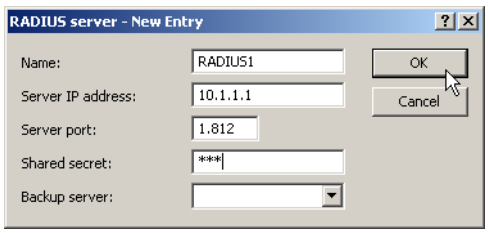
  The name of a different provider can be selected as the backup from the current table. Using these types of entries, backup chains linking several RADIUS servers can be easily configured.

The generic values for retry and timeout must also be configured.

Dial-in using 802.1x and RADIUS

WLAN clients can use the 802.1x protocol for network registration. The LANCOM access point can use this protocol to forward the registration to the RADIUS server. The MAC address is used for user identification.

Please refer to for further information on the 802.1 x protocol.



LANconfig: WLAN Security E IEEE 802.1X / RADIUS server

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / IEEE802.1x / Radius server

- Name

  In this table, each RADIUS server needs a unique name. The name 'DEFAULT' is reserved for all WLAN networks that use an authentication process in line with IEEE 802.1x and that have not specified their own RADIUS server.

  By using the name defined in the 'Key 1/passphrase' field, each WLAN network using authentication in line with IEEE 802.1x can be assigned its own RADIUS server.

- Server IP address

  Specify here the IP address of your RADIUS server from which users are managed centrally.

- Server port

  Specify here the port used for communication to your RADIUS server.

- Key (shared secret)

  Specify here the key to be used for coding data. The key must also be configured on the RADIUS server.

- Backup server

  Name of the backup server from the list of RADIUS servers configured so far.

  The generic values for retry and timeout must also be configured.

  WLAN clients must be entered as follows on the RADIUS server:

  The user name is the MAC address in the format AABBCC-DDEEFF. The password for all users is identical to the key (shared secret) for the RADIUS server.

18.1.4 Configuring RADIUS as server

In addition to its function as RADIUS authenticator or NAS, an LANCOM access point can also operate as a RADIUS server. When in this mode, information in the device on users authorized to register is made available to other access points in Authenticator mode.

RADIUS server parameters

When configuring the RADIUS server, a definition is needed of which authenticator can access the RADIUS server, the password required for this access, and the open port that is to be used to communicate with the RADIUS server. The authentication port applies globally for all authenticators.

LANconfig: WLAN security / RADIUS

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Radius / Server

- Authentication port [default: 0]

Specify here the port used by the authenticators to communicate with the RADIUS server in the LANCOM access point. Port '1812' is normally used.

Port '0' disables the RADIUS server.

In addition to the port, 16 authenticators that are allowed to communicate with the RADIUS server may be entered here. Entries are made in the corresponding table and with the following parameters:

- IP address

  IP address of the authenticator which may communicate with the RADIUS server in the LANCOM access point.

- Secret

  Password required by the authenticator for access to the RADIUS server in the LANCOM access point.

In addition to the configuration of the RADIUS server, the client information source must also be defined .

WLAN access list as a basis for RADIUS information

512 WLAN clients, all able to register with the LANCOM access point, may be entered in the access list. When operating in RADIUS server mode, this list can also be used to check on RADIUS clients wanting to register at other access points. In an installation having several access points, client access authorizations can be maintained centrally.

LANconfig: WLAN security / RADIUS

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WLAN / RADIUS access check

- Provide server database [default: yes]

  This parameter specifies whether the WLAN access list is to be used as an information source for the RADIUS server in the LANCOM access point.

  The WLAN access list contains the user name in the form of the MAC address and the password ('WPA passphrase'). In addition to this access data, the access list provides information such as bandwidth restriction and association to a specific VLAN.

- Recheck cycle [default: 0]

  Once a WLAN client is logged on after authentication by RADIUS, it remains active until it logs off itself or is logged off by the RADIUS server. By specifying a recheck cycle [minutes], the RADIUS server can regularly check whether the WLAN clients logged in are still in the access list. If a WLAN client is removed from the access list, it remains logged in to the WLAN up to the point when the recheck cycle runs again.

A recheck cycle of '0' disables regular checking. WLAN clients remain logged in until they log themselves out.

18.1.5 Addition(s) to LCOS 7.70

Restarting RADIUS accounting

The accounting function in the LANCOM can be used to check the budgets of associated wireless LAN clients, among other things. Wireless Internet Service Providers (WISPs) use this option as a part of their accounting procedure. Accounting periods generally switch at the end of the month. A suitable action will cause the accounting session to be restarted at this time. Existing WLAN connections remain intact. A cron job can be used to automate a restart.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / WLAN E RADIUS accounting

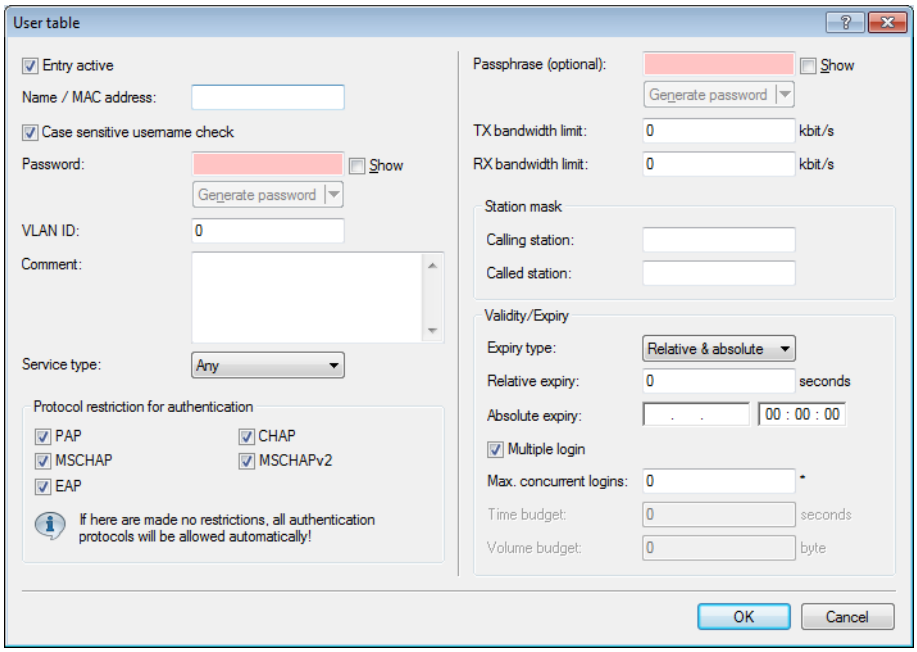
- Restart accounting

  Terminates all current accounting sessions and opens new accounting sessions on the RADIUS server.

18.1.6 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.84

Targeted (de)activation of RADIUS user accounts

As of LCOS 8.84, you have the option to enable or disable individual RADIUS user accounts. In LANconfig, this is done under **RADIUS server** > **General** > **User table** using the option **Entry active**. In this way, you can temporarily disable individual user accounts without deleting the account entirely.



Login to the LCOS administration interface via RADIUS

As of LCOS version 8.84, logging in to the administration interface can now be controlled via RADIUS as well as TACACS+.

Login to the LCOS administration interface via RADIUS

Currently there are three ways to login to the LANCOM administration interface:

- internal: The LANCOM handles the user management itself by means of user login name, password, and the assignment of access and function rights.
- TACACS+: User management is handled by a TACACS+ server in the network.
- RADIUS: User management is handled by a RADIUS server in the network.

The user can login with RADIUS over the following connections:

- Telnet
- SSH
- WEBconfig
- TFTP
- Outband

A RADIUS authentication over SNMP is currently not supported.

A RADIUS authentication via LL2M (LANCOM Layer 2 Management protocol) is not supported as LL2M requires plain-text access to the password stored in the LANCOM.

The RADIUS server handles user management with regard to authentication, authorization and accounting (triple-A protocol), which greatly simplifies the management of admin accounts in large network installations with multiple routers.

Authentication via a RADIUS server is conducted as follows:

1. On login, the LANCOM sends the user credentials to the RADIUS server in the network. The necessary server data are in stored in the LANCOM.
2. The server checks the credentials for their validity.
3. If the credentials are invalid, it sends the LANCOM a corresponding message and the LANCOM aborts the login process with an error message.
4. If the credentials are valid, the server informs the LANCOM that the user has permission of access, and also sends information on the access rights and function rights, so that the user has access only to the corresponding functions and directories.
5. If the user's sessions are budgeted by the RADIUS server (accounting section), the LANCOM stores the session data such as start, end, user name, authentication mode and, if available, the port used.

Enhancements to LANconfig

Login to the LCOS administration interface via RADIUS

Currently, users can login to the administration interface of the device by using RADIUS, TACACS+, or the internal user management of the device.

With RADIUS, this is possible over the following connections:

- Telnet
- SSH
- WEBconfig
- TFTP
- Outband

A RADIUS authentication over SNMP is currently not supported.

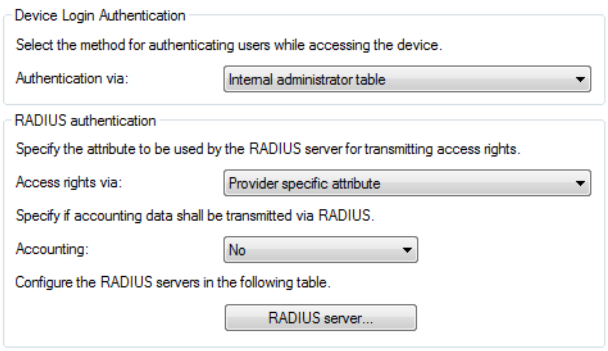
A RADIUS authentication via LL2M (LANCOM Layer 2 Management protocol) is not supported as LL2M requires plain-text access to the password stored in the LANCOM.

The RADIUS server handles user management with regard to authentication, authorization and accounting (triple-A protocol), which greatly simplifies the management of admin accounts in large network installations with multiple routers.

Authentication via a RADIUS server is conducted as follows:

1. On login, the LANCOM sends the user credentials to the RADIUS server in the network. The necessary server data are in stored in the LANCOM.
2. The server checks the credentials for their validity.
3. If the credentials are invalid, it sends the LANCOM a corresponding message and the LANCOM aborts the login process with an error message.
4. If the credentials are valid, the server informs the LANCOM that the user has permission of access, and also sends information on the access rights and function rights, so that the user has access only to the corresponding functions and directories.
5. If the user's sessions are budgeted by the RADIUS server (accounting section), the LANCOM stores the session data such as start, end, user name, authentication mode and, if available, the port used.

In the LANconfig, you can set the authentication method under **Management** > **Authentication**.



In the section **Device login authentication**, you choose the method for users to authenticate when accessing the LANCOM administration interface:

- Internal administrator table: The LANCOM handles the user management itself by means of user login name, password, and the assignment of access and function rights.
- RADIUS: User management is handled by a RADIUS server in the network.
- TACACS+: User management is handled by a TACACS+ server in the network.

In the the **RADIUS authentication** section, you enter the necessary RADIUS server data and additional administrative data.

Access rights via

The authorization of the user is stored in the RADIUS server. When a request arrives, the RADIUS server sends the access- and function rights to the LANCOM along with the login data, which then logs in the user with the appropriate privileges.

Access and function rights are usually defined in the RADIUS management privilege level (attribute 136), and the LANCOM simply maps these values to its internal access and function rights. However, some RADIUS servers use this attribute differently, or they may use different, vendor-specific attributes for the authorization. In this situation, the LANCOM is also able to evaluate provider-specific authorizations. Possible values are:

- Provider-specific attribute: The LANCOM processes the provider-specific attribute (default).
- Management privilege level attribute: The LANCOM processes the RADIUS server's management privilege level attribute.

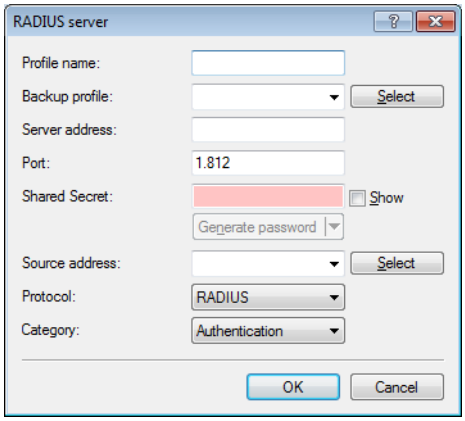
Accounting

Here, you specify whether the LANCOM should record the user's session. Possible values are:

- No: The LANCOM does not record any session data (default).
- Yes: The LANCOM records the session data (start, end, user name, authentication mode, port).

RADIUS server

This table is used to define the RADIUS server settings.



- **Profile name**: Enter a name for the RADIUS server here.
- **Backup profile**: Enter the name of the alternate RADIUS server to which the LANCOM forwards its requests if the first RADIUS server is unavailable.

  The backup server requires an additional entry in the Server table.

- **Server address**: Enter the IPv4 address of the RADIUS server here.
- **Port**: Enter the port used by the RADIUS server to communicate with the LANCOM (default: 1812).
- **Shared secret**: Enter the password for accessing the RADIUS server here, and repeat the entry in the second input field.
- **Source address**: This is where you can configure an optional sender address to be used by the LANCOM instead of the one that would normally be automatically selected for this target address.
- **Protocol**: Enter the protocol used by the RADIUS server to communicate with the LANCOM. Possible values are:
  - RADIUS (default)
  - RADSEC
- **Category**: Set the category for the RADIUS server. Possible values are:
  - Deactivated
  - Authentication (default)
  - Accounting
  - Authentication & accounting

Separate RADIUS accounting server for each SSID

As of LCOS 8.84 you can assign a separate RADIUS accounting server to each logical WLAN interface.

18.1.7 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.00

Dual-Stack Lite (DS-Lite)

Dual-Stack Lite, abbreviated DS-Lite, is used so that Internet providers can supply their customers with access to IPv4 servers over an IPv6 connection. That is necessary, for example, if an Internet provider is forced to supply its customer with an IPv6 address due to the limited availability of IPv4 addresses. In contrast to the other three IPv6 tunnel methods "6in4", "6rd" and "6to4", DS-Lite is also used to transmit IPv4 packets on an IPv6 connection (IPv4 viaIPv6 tunnel).

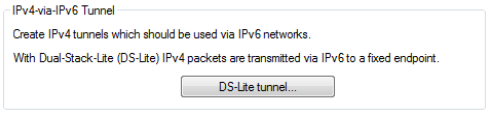
For this, the router packages the IPv4 packets in an IPv4-in-IPv6 tunnel and transmits them unmasked to the provider, who then performs a NAT with one of their own remaining IPv4 addresses.

To define a DS-Lite tunnel, all the router needs is the IPv6 address of the tunnel endpoint and the routing tag with which it can reach this address.

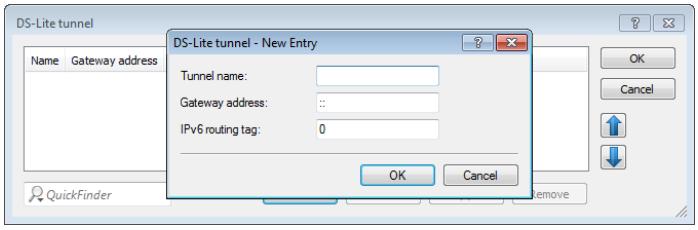
By default, the router uses the IPv4 address of the corresponding internal network, e.g., from "INTRANET". If you would like to define a different IP address instead (e.g., 192.0.0.2), it must be entered in the IP parameter list along with the remote site name of the DS-Lite tunnel.

Entering an IPv4 DNS server is not recommended for a DS-Lite tunnel, since its entries would unnecessarily fill the NAT table of the Internet provider.

You set up a DS-Lite tunnel in LANconfig via **IPv4** > **Tunnel** by clicking on **DS-Lite tunnel**.



Then click on the **Add** button and enter the designation of the tunnel, the IPv6 address of the gateway, and the routing tag.



Name of the tunnel

This entry determines the name of the IPv4-over-IPv6 tunnel.

Gateway address

This entry defines the address of the DS-Lite gateway, the so-called Address Family Transition Router (AFTR).

The following values are possible:

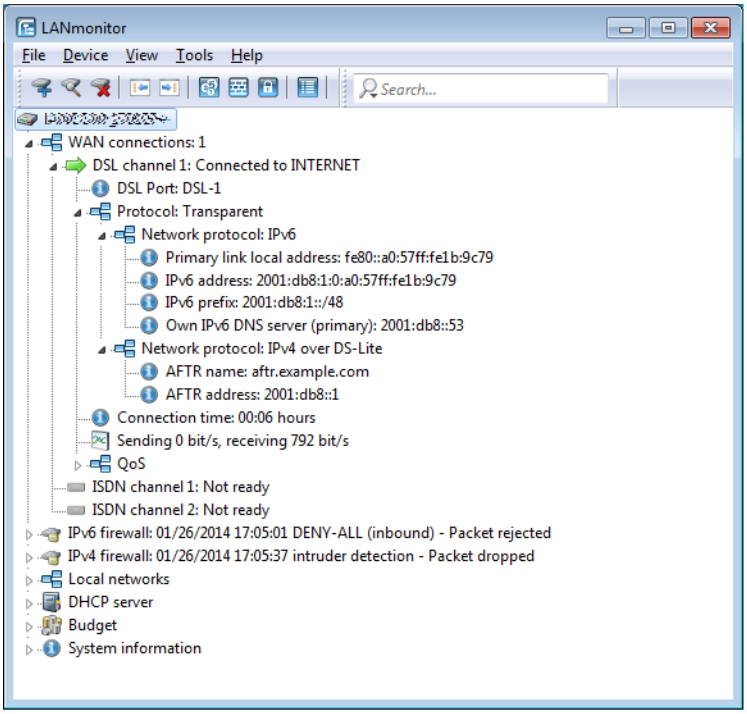
- One IPv6 address (e.g. 2001:db8::1)
- An FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) that can be resolved by DNS, e.g., aftr.example.com
- The IPv6 unspecified address "::" determines that the device should retrieve the address of the AFTRs via DHCPv6 (factory setting).
- An empty field behaves the same as the entry "::".

IPv6 routing tag

The routing tag uniquely specifies the route to the DS-Lite gateway.

With DS-Lite, since the NAT is performed by the provider, the function of many applications depends on the settings of the NAT provider (e.g., SIP, H.323, IRC or IPSec). PPTP does not work via DS-Lite at all. If the provider does not operate port forwarding, the IPv4 server services do not function.

The status table and the number of current DS-Lite connections can be shown using LANmonitor:



IPv6 support for RAS services

As of firmware version 9.00, RAS remote stations are able to login via IPv6. The configuration is done in LANconfig under **IPv6** > **General** and the setup of prefix pools under **IPv6** > **Router advertisement**.

RAS interfaces

There are basically two ways to manage the configuration of RAS remote stations:

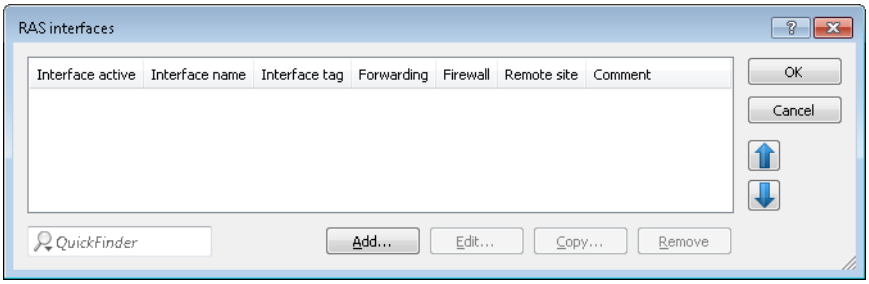
The user data or the configurations are locally stored on the device.

The advantage of this alternative is that a RADIUS server is not necessary, which reduces the management and cost of the network infrastructure.

The user data or the configurations are stored on an external RADIUS server.

The advantage of this alternative is the centralized user management for extensive distributed network scenarios.

For RAS access via IPv6, you must also set up the corresponding **RAS interface**.



Entries in the **RAS interfaces** table have the following meaning:

- **Interface active**: Enable or disable this interface here.
- **Interface name**: Here you define the name of the RAS interface that the IPv6 remote sites use for access.
- **Interface tag**: The interface tag that you enter here is a value that uniquely identifies the network. All packets received by this device on this network will be internally marked with this tag. The interface tag enables the routes which are valid for this network to be separated even without explicit firewall rules.
- **Forwarding**: Enables or disables the forwarding of data packets to other interfaces.
- **Firewall**: If the global firewall is enabled for IPv6 interfaces, you can disable the firewall for each interface individually here. To globally enable the firewall for all interfaces, navigate to **Firewall/QoS** > **General** and check the option **IPv6 firewall/QoS enabled**.

  If you disable the global firewall, the firewall of an individual interface is also disabled. This applies even if you have enabled this option.
- **Remote site**: Specify the remote site or a list of remote sites for RAS dial-in users.

  The following values are possible:

  - A single remote station from the tables under **Setup** > **WAN** > **PPTP-Peers**, **Setup** > **WAN** > **L2TP-Peers** or **Setup** > **PPPoE-Server** > **Name-list**.
  - The wildcard "*" makes the interface valid for all PPTP, PPPoE and L2TP peers.
  - The "*" wildcard as a suffix or prefix of the peer, such as "COMPANY*" or "*TUNNEL" .

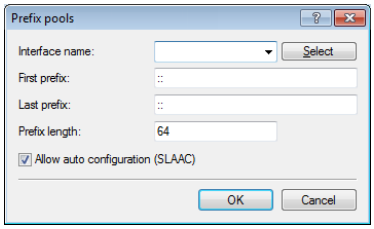
  Using the wildcards you can create several peers for IPv6 RAS services based on so-called template interfaces These template interfaces can be used as normal interfaces for IPv6 services such as DHCPv6 server or router advertisements. For example, using these, a group of RAS interfaces can be provided from an IPv6 prefix pool.
- **Comment**: Enter a descriptive comment for this entry.

Information on RADIUS attributes for IPv6 RAS services can be found under *RADIUS attribute extensions for IPv6 RAS services* on page 1431.

If RAS clients are to be delegated to an IPv6 DNS server or are to receive their prefixes by prefix delegation, you must create a corresponding entry in the table **DHCPv6 networks** under **IPv6** > **DHCPv6**.

If you wish to authenticate a user by PPP list, you navigate to **Communication** > **Protocols** > **PPP list** and enable the option **Activate IPv6 routing** for that user.

Prefix pools



This table contains the pools of prefixes which RAS users receive when they connect remotely via IPv6. The following settings are possible:

Interface name

Specifies the name of the RAS interface that is valid for this prefix pool.

First prefix

Specifies the first prefix in the pool that is assigned to remote users by the router advertisement, e.g., "2001:db8::". Each user is assigned precisely one /64 prefix from the pool.

Last prefix

Specifies the last prefix in the pool that is assigned to remote users by the router advertisement, e.g. '2001:db9:FFFF::'. Each user is assigned precisely one /64 prefix from the pool.

Prefix length

Specifies the length of the prefix that the remote user is assigned by the router advertisement here. The size of the dial-in pool depends directly on the first and last prefix. Each user is assigned precisely one /64 prefix from the pool.

In order for a client to be able to form an IPv6 address from the auto-configuration prefix, the prefix length must always be 64 bits.

SLAAC

Specifies whether the prefix can be used for a stateless address auto-configuration (SLAAC).

RADIUS attribute extensions for IPv6 RAS services

The RADIUS client can request RADIUS attributes, such as the "Framed-IP-Address", from an external RADIUS server and provide these, for example, to a PPPoE server in order to authenticate them at PPPoE, PPTP or L2TP servers. The device accepts the following attributes in access-accept messages:

96

Framed-Interface-ID

This attribute conveys the IPv6 interface identifier that should be configured for the user in the IPv6CP.

97

Framed-IPv6-Prefix

Prefix, which is sent to the user via router advertisements.

99

Framed-IPv6-Route

This attribute conveys the route to be used for this user. The device supplements the IPv6 routing table with this route and the next hop to this user.

100

Framed-IPv6-Pool

This indicates the IPv6 pool from which a prefix is to be taken for the user. The IPv6 pool is referenced by its name and must be present under **IPv6** > **Router advertisement** > **Prefix pools**.

123

Delegated-IPv6-Prefix

Prefix, which is sent to the user via DHCPv6 prefix delegation.

The newly available RADIUS attributes are implemented according to RFCs 3162 and 4818. An example for a PPP user `test` with IPv6 in the FreeRADIUS is as follows:

```
test Cleartext-Password := "1234"
 Service-Type = Framed-User,
 Framed-Protocol = PPP,
 Framed-IPv6-Prefix = "fec0:1:2400:1::/64",
 Delegated-IPv6-Prefix = "fec0:1:2400:1100::/56",
 Framed-IP-Address = 172.16.3.33,
```

The user "test" in a dual-stack PPP session receives the IPv4 address 172.16.3.33, the prefix fec0:1:2400:1::/64 via router advertisement, and the prefix fec0:1:2400:1100::/56 via DHCPv6 prefix delegation.

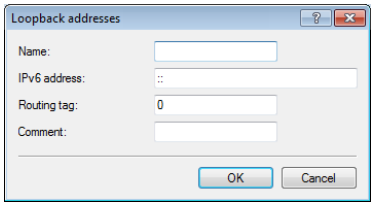
Loopback addresses for IPv6

As of LCOS 9.00, you can use IPv6 loopback addresses as the sender address for ping commands at the command line.

Parameters	Meaning
-6 <Loopback-Interface>	Sets an IPv6 loopback interface as the sender address.

Loopback addresses

IPv6 loopback addresses can be specified in the **Loopback addresses** table. The device sees each of these addresses as its own address, which is also available if a physical interface is disabled, for example.



Entries in the **Loopback addresses** table have the following meaning:

- **Name**: Enter a unique name for this loopback address.
- **IPv6 address**: Enter a valid IPv6 address here.
- **Routing tag**: Here you specify the routing tag of the network that the loopback address belongs to. Only packets with this routing tag will reach this address.
- **Comment**: You have the option to enter a comment here.

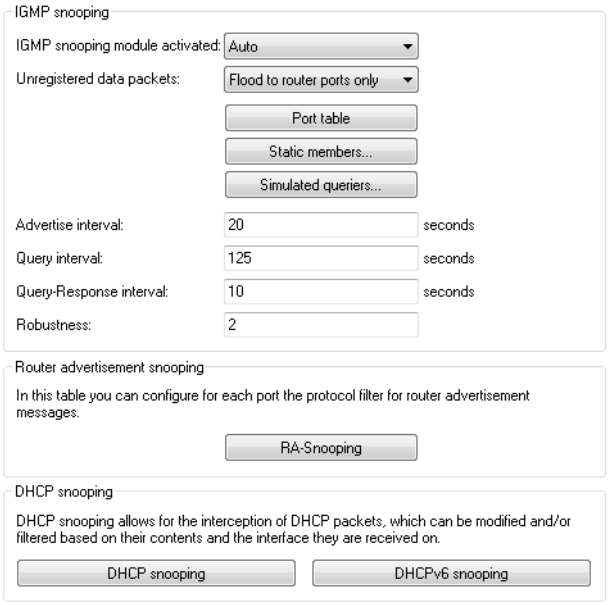
Lightweight DHCPv6 relay agent (LDRA)

Unlike a DHCPv6 relay agent, which has the full IPv6 features (such as ICMPv6) and can route data packets on the network (layer 3), a lightweight DHCPv6 relay agent as per RFC 6221 enables only the creation and forwarding of relay-agent information between DHCPv6 clients and DHCPv6 servers (layer 2).

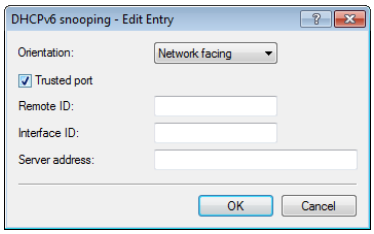
In contrast to DHCPv4 snooping, the LDRA does not simply append the DHCPv6 packets with information about the relay agent: Instead, it packs the message from the client into a separate option, prepends its own relay-agent header and then forwards this DCHPv6 packet with its supplementary information to the DHCPv6 server (relay forward message).

The DHCPv6 server evaluates this data packet and sends a similarly packaged response to the relay agent. This then extracts the message and sends it to the requesting client (relay-reply message).

In LANconfig you can set up DHCPv6 snooping for each interface under **Interfaces** > **Snooping** and a click on **DHCPv6 snooping**.



After selecting the appropriate interface, you can set the following:



Orientation

This is where you enable or disable DHCPv6 snooping. The following options are possible:

- **Network facing**: The LDRA uses this interface to communicate with a DHCPv6 server.
- **Client facing**: The LDRA uses this interface to communicate with DHCPv6 clients connected to the network.

The default setting **Network facing** disables the LDRA.

Trusted port

With this option enabled, the LDRA forwards DHCP requests from clients and also DHCP responses from DHCP servers. If this interface is classified as not trusted, the LDRA discards DHCPv6 requests to this interface. Similarly, the LDRA does not forward DHCPv6 responses with the wrong interface ID to the client.

Remote ID

According to RFC 4649, the remote ID uniquely identifies the client making a DHCPv6 request.

Interface ID

The interface ID uniquely identifies the interface used by a client to make a DHCPv6 request.

Server address

You can set the IPv6 address of a DHCPv6 server here.

Leave this field blank if you want to receive responses from all DHCPv6 servers on the network. Otherwise the LDRA reacts only to DHCPv6 responses from the server you have specified. In this case, the LDRA discards responses from other DHCPv6 servers.

You can use the following variables for **Remote ID** and **Interface ID**:

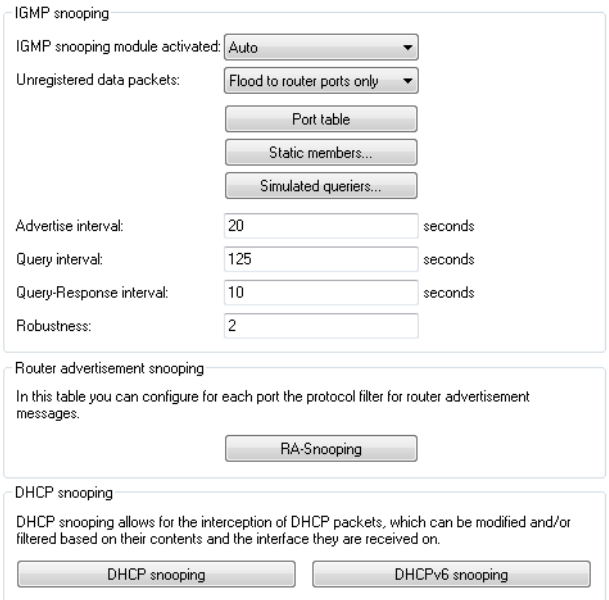
- `%%`: Inserts a percent sign.
- `%c`: Inserts the MAC address of the interface where the relay agent received the DHCP request. If a WLAN-SSID is involved, then this is the corresponding BSSID.
- `%i`: Inserts the name of the interface where the relay agent received the DHCP request.
- `%n`: Inserts the name of the DHCP relay agent as specified under **Setup** > **Name**.
- `%v`: Inserts the VLAN ID of the DHCP request packet. This VLAN ID is sourced either from the VLAN header of the DHCP packet or from the VLAN ID mapping for this interface.
- `%p`: Inserts the name of the Ethernet interface that received the DHCP packet. This variable is useful for devices featuring an Ethernet switch or Ethernet mapper, because they can map multiple physical interfaces to a single logical interface. For other devices, `%p` and `%i` are identical.
- `%s`: Inserts the WLAN SSID if the DHCP packet originates from a WLAN client. For other clients, this variable contains an empty string.
- `%e`: Inserts the serial number of the relay agent, to be found for example under **Management** > **General**.

Router advertisement snooping

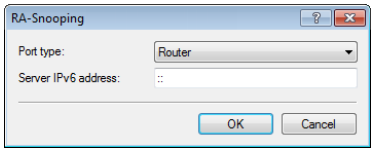
In an IPv6 network, router advertisements are sent by routers, either periodically or upon request, to present themselves as a gateway for networked clients. As with DHCPv4, attackers can use this mechanism to deliver a fake network configuration to the requesting clients.

With RA snooping, the device mediates router advertisements from routers only, and not from clients. By specifying the address of a router, the router advertisements can be restricted to one specific router as the broadcaster.

In LANconfig you can set up RA snooping for each interface under **Interfaces** > **Snooping** and a click on **RA snooping**.



After selecting the appropriate interface, you can set the following:



Port type

Specify the preferred interface type here. The following options are possible:

- **Router**: The device mediates all of the RAs arriving at this interface (default).
- **Client**: The device discards all of the RAs arriving at this interface.

Router-Address

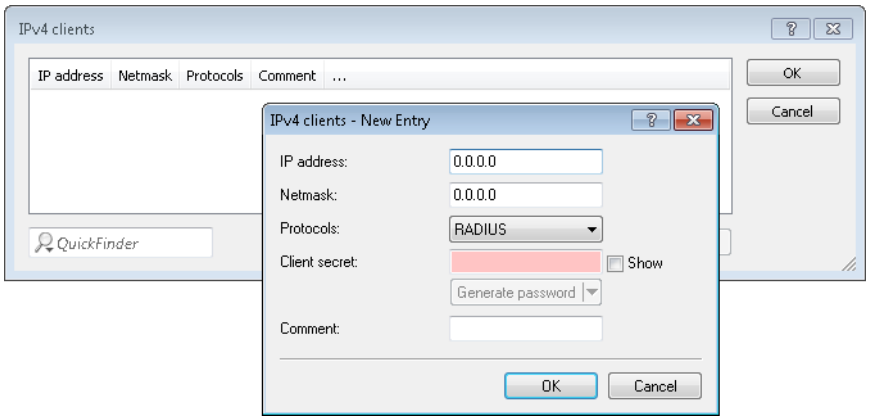
If you have selected the interface type **Router**, enter an optional router address here. If you specify a router address, the device will only mediate RAs from that router.

With the interface type **Client** selected, the device ignores this input field.

18.1.8 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.10

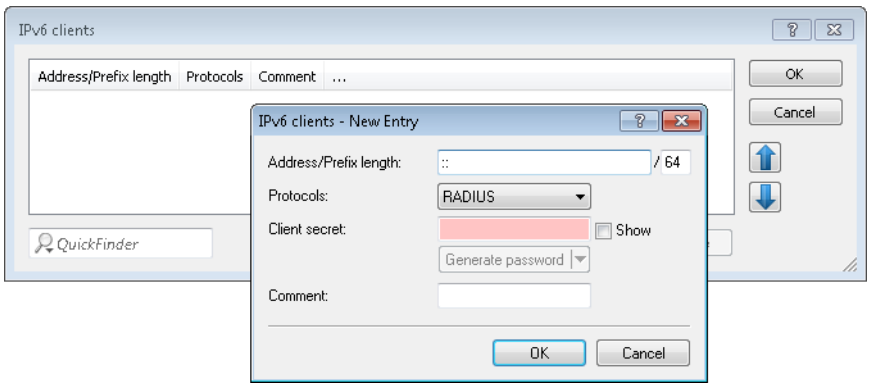
Comment field for RADIUS clients

As of LCOS version 9.10 it is possible to store a comment for each RADIUS client (IPv4 and IPv6) in the RADIUS table.



Comment

Comment on this entry.



Comment

Comment on this entry.

More attributes for RADIUS requests

As of LCOS version 9.10 the device supports additional RADIUS attributes for the Public Spot, see chapter *Public Spot*.

Table 38: The device transmits the following attributes in the access request:

ID	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
1	User name	The name entered by the user.	Used with 802.1X WLAN, PPPoE server, L2TP, PPTP, VPN
2	User-Password	The password entered by the user.	Used with 802.1X WLAN, PPPoE server, L2TP, PPTP, VPN
4	NAS-IP-Address	Specifies the IPv4 address of the device requesting access for a user.	<IPv4 address of the device>
6	Service-Type	Specifies the type of service that the device requests or expects as a response.	> Authenticate-Only > Framed
7	Framed-Protocol	Specifies the protocol to be used.	PPP
30	Called-Station-Id	Specifies the identifier of the called station (e.g. the VPN server).	> Server IP address (for VPN connections via PPTP or L2TP) > Service name (for PPPoE) > BSSID:SSID (for WLAN) > MAC address of the device (for Public Spot)
31	Calling-Station-Id	Specifies the identifier of the calling station (e.g. the VPN client).	> Client IP address (for VPN connections via PPTP or L2TP) > Client MAC address (for PPPoE, WLAN and Public Spot)
32	NAS identifier	Specifies the name of the device being managed by the RADIUS server.	<Device-Name>
61	NAS-Port-Type	Specifies the physical port through which the device authenticates the user.	> Virtual (for VPN connections via PPTP or L2TP) > Ethernet (with PPPoE) > Wireless 802.11 (for WLAN)
95	NAS-IPv6-Address	Specifies the IPv6 address of the device requesting access for a user.	<IPv6-address of the device>
64	Tunnel-Type	Defines the tunneling protocol which will be used for the session.	> 13 (VLAN; for Public Spot)
65	Tunnel-Medium-Type	Defines the transport medium over which the tunneled session will be established.	> 6 (802; for Public Spot)
81	Tunnel-Private-Group-ID	Defines the group ID if the session is tunneled.	> 1-4096 (for Public Spot)

ID	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
177	Mobility-Domain-ID	Identifies the mobility domain where the client is located.	
181	WLAN-HESSID	Contains the HESSID of the 802.11u SSID.	
182	WLAN-Venue-Info	Contains information about the category of the site.	This is configured under **Wireless-LAN** > **802.11u** > **Venue information**.
183	WLAN-Venue-Language	Contains information about the language of the site.	This is configured under **Wireless-LAN** > **802.11u** > **Venue information**.
184	WLAN-Venue-Name	Contains the name of the site (venue name).	This is configured under **Wireless-LAN** > **802.11u** > **Venue information**.
186	WLAN-Pairwise-Cipher	Contains information about the pairwise key used by the client and AP.	
187	WLAN-Group-Cipher	Contains information about the group key used by the client and AP.	
188	WLAN-AKM-Suite	Contains information about the access management (authentication and key management) between the client and AP.	
189	WLAN-Group-Mgmt-Cipher	Contains information about the group management key/cipher used to secure a connection via RSNA (robust security network association) between an AP and mobile client.	
190	WLAN-RF-Band	Contains information about the frequency band used by the client.	

The following vendor-specific RADIUS attributes use the IANA Private Enterprise Number "3561" of the Broadband Forum. The remaining entries are LANCOM-specific attributes!

Table 39: Overview of all supported manufacturer-specific RADIUS attributes in the access request

ID	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
1	ADSL-Agent-Circuit-Id, Vendor 3561	Specifies the interface of the device being managed by the RADIUS server. Only transmitted if agent-relay info is included in the PPPoED packet (see *PPPoE snooping*).	<Device interface>
2	ADSL-Agent-Remote-Id, Vendor 3561	Specifies the identifier of the device being managed by the RADIUS server. Only transmitted if agent-relay info is included in the PPPoED packet (see *PPPoE snooping*).	<Device identifier>
16	LCS-Orig-NAS-Identifier, Vendor 2356	NAS-identifier of the original access point in WLC mode.	<Device-Name>
17	LCS-Orig-NAS-IP-Address, Vendor 2356	NAS IP address of the original access point in WLC mode.	<IPv4 address of the device>
18	LCS-Orig-NAS-IPv6-Address, Vendor 2356	NAS IPv6 address of the original access point in WLC mode.	<IPv6-address of the device>

RADIUS attributes

The RADIUS client can request RADIUS attributes, such as the "Framed-IP-Address", from an external RADIUS server and provide these, for example, to a PPPoE server in order to authenticate them at PPPoE, PPTP or L2TP servers.

For more information about RADIUS attributes, see the following technical documents:

- *RFC 2865*
- *RFC 3162*
- *RFC 4679*
- *RFC 4818*
- *RFC 7268*

The device transmits the following attributes in access request messages:

Table 40: Overview of the supported RADIUS attributes

ID	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
1	User name	The name entered by the user.	Used with 802.1X WLAN, PPPoE server, L2TP, PPTP, VPN
2	User-Password	The password entered by the user.	Used with 802.1X WLAN, PPPoE server, L2TP, PPTP, VPN
4	NAS-IP-Address	Specifies the IPv4 address of the device requesting access for a user.	<IPv4 address of the device>
6	Service-Type	Specifies the type of service that the device requests or expects as a response.	- Authenticate-Only - Framed
7	Framed-Protocol	Specifies the protocol to be used.	PPP
8	Framed-IP-Address	Specifies the IP address that is assigned to the client.	<IP address of the client>
26	Vendor 2356(LCS) ID 2	MAC address of the client if authentication using the MAC address is enabled. In contrast to the Calling-Station-Id, this value is transmitted as a 6-byte binary string. This attribute only exists for the login mode **Authenticate with name, password and MAC address**.	<MAC address of the client>
30	Called-Station-Id	Specifies the identifier of the called station (e.g. the VPN server).	- Server IP address (for VPN connections via PPTP or L2TP) - Service name (for PPPoE) - BSSID:SSID (for WLAN) - MAC address of the device (for Public Spot)
31	Calling-Station-Id	Specifies the identifier of the calling station (e.g. the VPN client).	- Client IP address (for VPN connections via PPTP or L2TP) - Client MAC address (for PPPoE, WLAN and Public Spot)
32	NAS identifier	Specifies the name of the device being managed by the RADIUS server.	<Device-Name>
61	NAS-Port-Type	Specifies the physical port through which the device authenticates the user.	- Virtual (for VPN connections via PPTP or L2TP) - Ethernet (with PPPoE) - Wireless 802.11 (for WLAN)
64	Tunnel-Type	Defines the tunneling protocol which will be used for the session.	- 13 (VLAN; for Public Spot)

ID	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
65	Tunnel-Medium-Type	Defines the transport medium over which the tunneled session will be established.	> 6 (802; for Public Spot)
81	Tunnel-Private-Group-ID	Defines the group ID if the session is tunneled.	> 1-4096 (for Public Spot)
87	NAS-Port-Id	Description of the interface over which the client is connected to your device. This may be a physical and a logical interface.	For example > LAN-1 > WLAN-1-5 > WLC-TUNNEL-27
95	NAS-IPv6-Address	Specifies the IPv6 address of the device requesting access for a user.	<IPv6-address of the device>
96	Framed-Interface-ID	This attribute conveys the IPv6 interface identifier that should be configured for the user in the IPv6CP.	
97	Framed-IPv6-Prefix	Prefix, which is sent to the user via router advertisements.	
99	Framed-IPv6-Route	This attribute conveys the route to be used for this user. The device supplements the IPv6 routing table with this route and the next hop to this user.	
100	Framed-IPv6-Pool	This indicates the IPv6 pool from which a prefix is to be taken for the user. The IPv6 pool is referenced by its name and must be present under **IPv6** > **Router advertisement** > **Prefix pools**.	
177	Mobility-Domain-ID	Identifies the mobility domain where the client is located.	
181	WLAN-HESSID	Contains the HESSID of the 802.11u SSID.	
182	WLAN-Venue-Info	Contains information about the category of the site.	This is configured under **Wireless-LAN** > **802.11u** > **Venue information**.
183	WLAN-Venue-Language	Contains information about the language of the site.	This is configured under **Wireless-LAN** > **802.11u** > **Venue information**.
184	WLAN-Venue-Name	Contains the name of the site (venue name).	This is configured under **Wireless-LAN** > **802.11u** > **Venue information**.
186	WLAN-Pairwise-Cipher	Contains information about the pairwise key used by the client and AP.	
187	WLAN-Group-Cipher	Contains information about the group key used by the client and AP.	
188	WLAN-AKM-Suite	Contains information about the access management (authentication and key management) between the client and AP.	
189	WLAN-Group-Mgmt-Cipher	Contains information about the group management key/cipher used to secure a connection via RSNA (robust security network association) between an AP and mobile client.	
190	WLAN-RF-Band	Contains information about the frequency band used by the client.	

An example for a PPP user `test` with IPv6 in the FreeRADIUS is as follows:

```
test Cleartext-Password := "1234"
     Service-Type = Framed-User,
     Framed-Protocol = PPP,
     Framed-IPv6-Prefix = "fec0:1:2400:1::/64",
```

```
    Delegated-IPv6-Prefix = "fec0:1:2400:1100::/56",
    Framed-IP-Address = 172.16.3.33,
```

The user `test` in a dual-stack PPP session receives the IPv4 address `172.16.3.33`, the prefix `fec0:1:2400:1::/64` via router advertisement, and the prefix `fec0:1:2400:1100::/56` via DHCPv6 prefix delegation.

The following vendor-specific RADIUS attributes use the IANA Private Enterprise Number "3561" of the Broadband Forum. The remaining entries are LANCOM-specific attributes!

Table 41: Overview of all supported manufacturer-specific RADIUS attributes in the access request

ID	Name	Meaning	Possible values in LCOS
1	ADSL-Agent-Circuit-Id, Vendor 3561	Specifies the interface of the device being managed by the RADIUS server. Only transmitted if agent-relay info is included in the PPPoED packet (see *PPPoE snooping*).	<Device interface>
2	ADSL-Agent-Remote-Id, Vendor 3561	Specifies the identifier of the device being managed by the RADIUS server. Only transmitted if agent-relay info is included in the PPPoED packet (see *PPPoE snooping*).	<Device identifier>
16	LCS-Orig-NAS-Identifier, Vendor 2356	NAS-identifier of the original access point in WLC mode.	<Device-Name>
17	LCS-Orig-NAS-IP-Address, Vendor 2356	NAS IP address of the original access point in WLC mode.	<IPv4 address of the device>
18	LCS-Orig-NAS-IPv6-Address, Vendor 2356	NAS IPv6 address of the original access point in WLC mode.	<IPv6-address of the device>

Accounting status types "Accounting On" and "Accounting Off"

As of LCOS version 9.10, devices that use RADIUS for WLAN and Public Spots now also process the RADIUS accounting status types "Accounting-On" and "Accounting-Off".

Accounting status types "Accounting On" and "Accounting Off"

The RADIUS server and an AP exchange status information, such as the start, end, or update of client sessions at the AP. These data packets are characterized by the behavior of the logged-in clients.

With the status types "Accounting-On" and "Accounting-Off", the AP informs the RADIUS server about its general ability to perform RADIUS accounting:

Accounting-On

When the device switches to an operating state where it can exchange accounting information with a RADIUS server, it sends an "Accounting-On".

Accounting-Off

When the device switches to an operating state where it cannot exchange accounting information with a RADIUS server, it sends an "Accounting-Off".

The following conditions trigger the transmission of an "Accounting-On" or "Accounting-Off":

- The device activates or deactivates a physical WLAN interface with the appropriate SSID.

  Deactivation can also be the result of overheating, loss of connection or incorrect link detection.

- The WLAN interface switches into a non-AP mode (i.e. neither managed nor stand-alone-AP) or back.
- In P2P mode, the device switches into "exclusive" mode, which disables all SSIDs.
- The device activates or deactivates an SSID.

› The device activates or deactivates the RADIUS accounting for an SSID.

Larger volume budgets in the RADIUS server and Public Spot

As of LCOS version 9.10, the RADIUS server is capable of managing volume budgets in excess of 4GByte.

The RADIUS server now interprets existing volume budgets as a value in MBytes (previously in bytes). By updating to LCOS version 9.10, the device converts existing values and rounds them up to full MBytes. For example, the entry "1000000" (byte) converts to "1" (MByte).

This extension affects the Public Spot module. The specification of the volume budget via the Public Spot web API can also include a unit:

`volumebudget`

Volume budget

The following entries are allowed:

› `k` or `K`: Specified in kilobytes (kB), e.g. `volumebudget=1000k`.
› `m` or `M`: Specified in megabytes (MB), e.g. `volumebudget=1000m`.
› `g` or `G`: Specified in gigabytes (GB), e.g. `volumebudget=1g`.

Without a unit, the specification corresponds to a value in bytes (B).

If this parameter is omitted completely, the wizard uses the default value.

This extension affects the XML interface. The specification of the volume budget at the login request and the login response can also include a unit:

`TRAFFICEXPIRE`

The maximum data volume for a user account. The user can use this data volume until a relative or absolute expiry time (if set) is reached.

The following entries are allowed:

› `k` or `K`: Specified in kilobytes (kB), e.g. `<TRAFFICEXPIRE>1000k</TRAFFICEXPIRE>`.
› `m` or `M`: Specified in megabytes (MB), e.g. `<TRAFFICEXPIRE>100m</TRAFFICEXPIRE>`.
› `g` or `G`: Specified in gigabytes (GB), e.g. `<TRAFFICEXPIRE>1g</TRAFFICEXPIRE>`.

Without a unit, the specification corresponds to a value in bytes (B).

RADIUS server: Realm discovery for computer authentication

As of LCOS version 9.10, the RADIUS server additionally determines the realm of a RADIUS request from a computer authentication.

The device considers the parts of a user name that follow to be the realm:

`user@company.com`

`company.com` is the realm and is separated from the name of the user by an @ character.

`company\user`

`company` is the realm and is separated from the name of the user by a backslash ("\"). This form of authentication is used for a Windows login, for example.

`host/user.company.com`

If the user name starts with the string `host/` and the rest of the name contains at least one dot/period, the device considers everything after the first dot to be the realm (in this case `company.com`).

RADIUS client: Additional source ports for requests when necessary

As of LCOS version 9.10, the RADIUS client opens additional source ports for access requests if necessary.

Additional source ports for access requests

The RADIUS client uses a source port (UDP listener) for negotiating access requests with the RADIUS server. This port allows the simultaneous negotiation of up to 256 IDs. If a client is processing a large number of requests at the same time and the RADIUS server is far away, it is possible for all 256 access requests to be open at the same time, causing the RADIUS client to be unable to handle any further requests. This can happen, for example, in extensive Eduroam environments.

In this case, the RADIUS client opens the next highest source port to enable the access request negotiation for additional IDs. This is automatic and is not configurable.

User-defined RADIUS attributes

As of LCOS version 9.10 the RADIUS attributes are configurable.

RADIUS attributes configurable

LCOS allows the configuration of the RADIUS attributes used to communicate with a RADIUS server (for authentication and accounting).

The attributes are specified by means of a semicolon-separated list of attribute numbers or names (as per *RFC 2865*, *RFC 3162*, *RFC 4679*, *RFC 4818*, *RFC 7268*) and a corresponding value in the form `<Attribute_1>=<Value_1>;<Attribute_2>=<Value_2>`.

As the number of characters is limited, the name can abbreviated. The abbreviation must be unique, however. Examples:

- `NAS-Port=1234` is not allowed, because the attribute is not unique (`NAS-Port`, `NAS-Port-Id` or `NAS-Port-Type`).
- `NAS-Id=ABCD` is allowed, because the attribute is unique (`NAS-Identifier`).

Attribute values can be used to specify names or RFC-compliant numbers. For the device , the specifications `Service-Type=Framed` and `Service-Type=2` are identical.

Specifying a value in quotation marks (`"<Value>"`) allows you to specify special characters such as spaces, semicolons or equals signs. The quotation mark requires a leading backslash (`\"`), as does the backslash itself (`\\`).

The following variables are permitted as values:

`%n`

Device name

`%e`

Serial number of the device

`%%`

Percent sign

`%{name}`

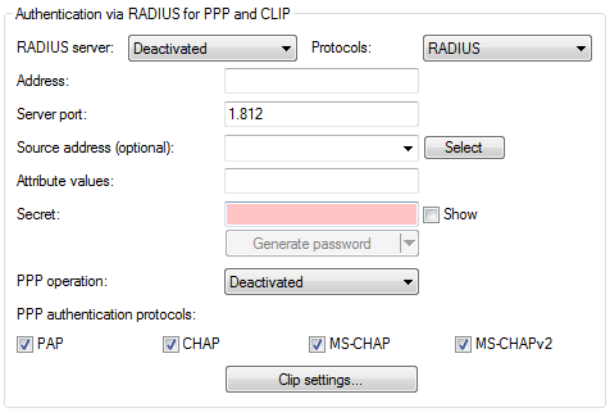
Original name of the attribute as transferred by the RADIUS application. This allows attributes to be set with the original RADIUS attributes, for example: `Called-Station-Id=%{NAS-Identifier}` sets the attribute `Called-Station-Id` to the value with the attribute `NAS-Identifier`.

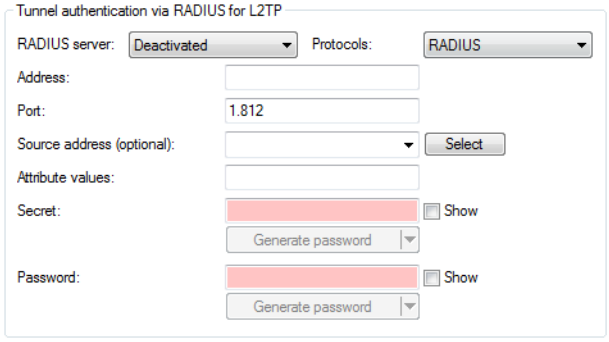
18.1.9 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.20

User-definable attributes in the RADIUS client

As of LCOS version 9.20, LANconfig provides the option to independently configure all of the RADIUS attributes for the communications with RADIUS servers.

In LANconfig, you configure the attributes under **Communication** > **RADIUS** in the sections **Authentication via RADIUS for PPP and clip** and **Tunnel authentication via RADIUS for L2TP**.





Attribute values

LCOS facilitates the configuration of the RADIUS attributes used to communicate with a RADIUS server (for authentication and accounting).

The attributes are specified in a semicolon-separated list of attribute numbers or names along with a corresponding value in the form `<Attribute_1>=<Value_1>;<Attribute_2>=<Value_2>`.

As the number of characters is limited, the name can abbreviated. The abbreviation must be unique, however. Examples:

- `NAS-Port=1234` is not allowed, because the attribute is not unique (`NAS-Port`, `NAS-Port-Id` or `NAS-Port-Type`).
- `NAS-Id=ABCD` is allowed, because the attribute is unique (`NAS-Identifier`).

Attribute values can be used to specify names or RFC-compliant numbers. For the device , the specifications `Service-Type=Framed` and `Service-Type=2` are identical.

Specifying a value in quotation marks (`"<Value>"`) allows you to specify special characters such as spaces, semicolons or equals signs. The quotation mark requires a leading backslash (`\"`), as does the backslash itself (`\\`).

The following variables are permitted as values:

%n

Device name

%e

Serial number of the device

%%

Percent sign

%{name}

Original name of the attribute as transferred by the RADIUS application. This allows attributes to be set with the original RADIUS attributes, for example: `Called-Station-Id=%{NAS-Identifier}` sets the attribute `Called-Station-Id` to the value with the attribute `NAS-Identifier`.

Automatic clean-up of access information on the RADIUS server

As of LCOS version 9.20, the function "Auto-Cleanup-Accounting-Totals" is enabled by default.

Vendor-specific RADIUS attribute "LCS-Routing-Tag"

As of LCOS version 9.20, the RADIUS client supports the vendor-specific RADIUS attribute "LCS-Routing-Tag" for PPTP, L2TP, and PPPoE.

18.1.10 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.24

Dynamic authorization by RADIUS CoA (Change of Authorization)

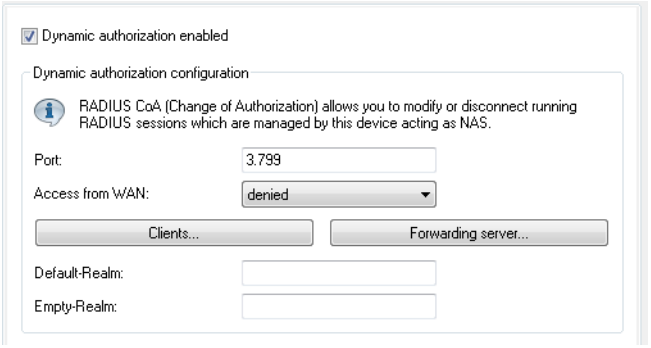
As of LCOS version 9.24, it is possible to use CoA messages to modify current RADIUS sessions.

If you operate an external hotspot server, it is possible to change the attributes of Public Spot sessions after the user has authenticated. This is achieved with dynamic authorization by means of RADIUS CoA (Change of Authorization). See also the section "Dynamic authorization by RADIUS CoA (Change of Authorization)" in the RADIUS chapter.

In LCOS version 9.24, this function is implemented for the Public Spot only.

Configuring dynamic authorization with LANconfig

In order to configure dynamic authorization (CoA) with LANconfig, navigate to **RADIUS** > **Dyn. Authorization**.



Dynamic authorization enabled

Activate or deactivate dynamic authorization here.

Port

Contains the default port where CoA messages are received.

Access from WAN

This entry specifies whether messages are accepted from the WAN, via VPN only, or prohibited.

Clients

Enter all of the CoA clients here that are permitted to send messages to the NAS.

Forwarding server

To forward CoA messages, the forwarding servers are specified here.

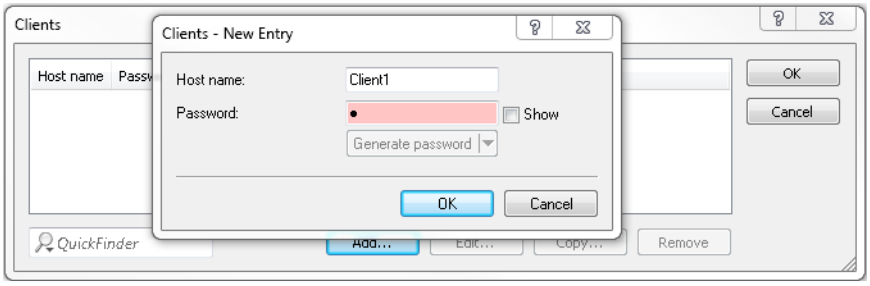
Default realm

This realm is used if the supplied username uses an unknown realm that is not in the list of forwarding servers.

Empty realm

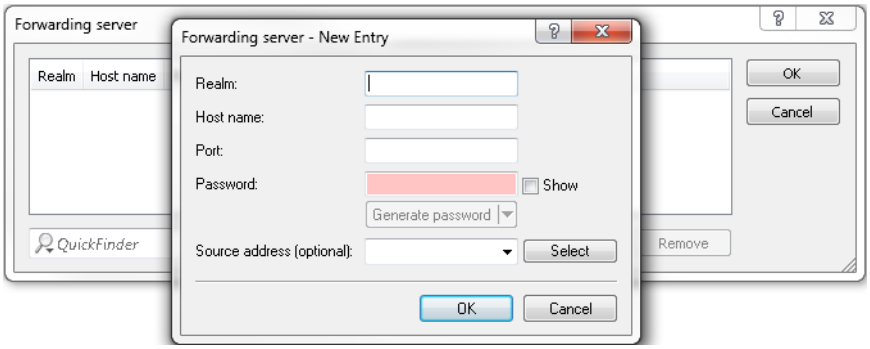
This realm is used when the specified username does not contain a realm.

To add CoA clients for dynamic authorization, click the button **Clients** and add a new entry to the table.



Enter a host name for the client and set a password for the client to access the NAS.

To add new forwarding servers for dynamic authorization, click the button **Forwarding server** and add a new entry to the table.



Realm

Here you enter the realm used by the RADIUS server to identify the forwarding destination.

If applicable, enter any existing forwarding servers that are specified under **RADIUS** > **Server** > **Forwarding** > **Forwarding server**.

Host name

Specify the host name of the forwarding server.

Port

Specify the server port used to forward the requests.

Password

Set a password that is required by the client to access the RADIUS server.

Source address (optional)

Optionally, specify a source address.

18.1.11 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.0

Support of tunnel-password and LCS-routing-tag attributes

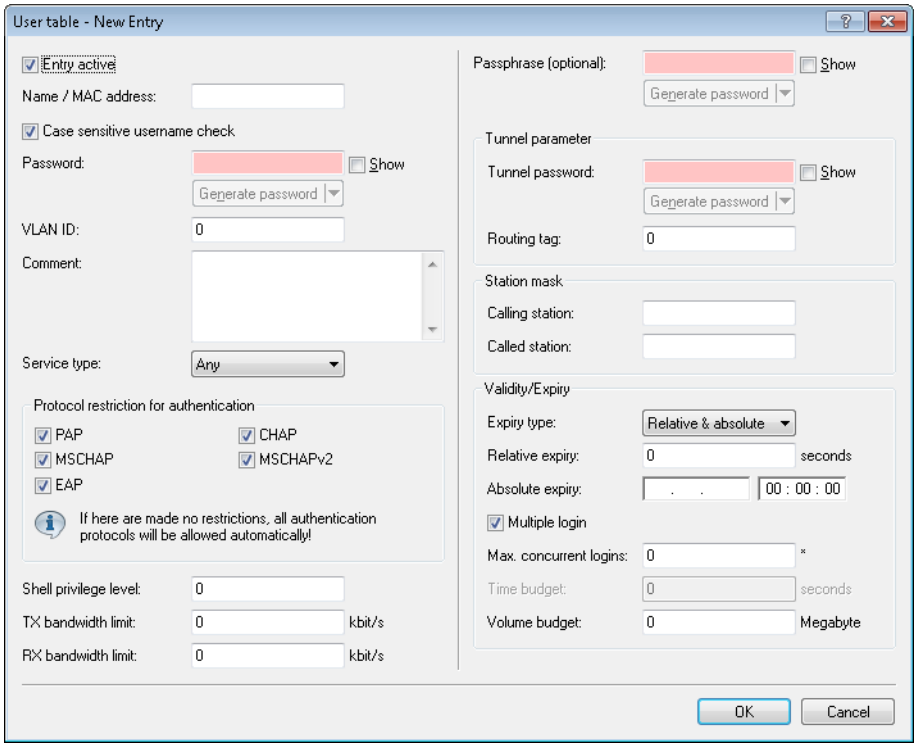
As of LCOS version 10.0, LANCOM RADIUS servers support the attributes "Tunnel-Password" and "LCS-Routing-Tag", which you can specify for each user account.

This helps an organization to store user data on a central RADIUS server and to minimize the effort required for the configuration of VPN scenarios.

Using LANconfig to configure Tunnel-Password and Routing-Tag attributes

In LANconfig, specify the attributes of "Tunnel-Password" and "Routing-Tag" under **RADIUS** > **Server** > **User table**.

Add a new entry to the table or edit an existing entry.



In the "Tunnel parameter" section, set values for the corresponding attributes:

Tunnel-Password

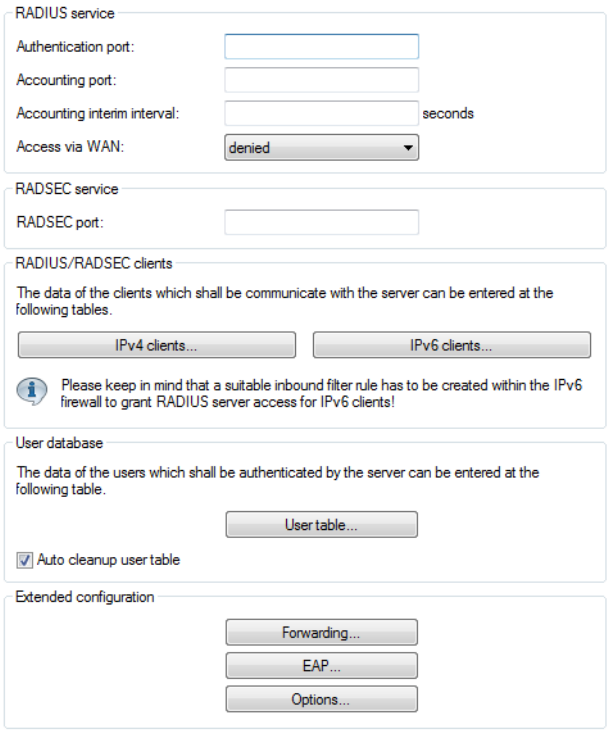
Here you enter the password used by the corresponding user to authenticate for a VPN connection via IKEv2 or L2TP.

Routing tag

Specify the routing tag to be used for the connection.

Restricting WAN access to the RADIUS server

As of version 10.0, LCOS allows the restriction of access from the IPv4 network.



WAN access to the RADIUS server

Here you specify how the RADIUS server can be accessed from the WAN.

Applies only to traffic from the IPv4 network. Traffic from the IPv6 network is controlled by the integrated firewall. By default, the IPv6 firewall prohibits access to the RADIUS server from the WAN.

18.1.12 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.20

Importing and exporting RADIUS user data by CSV file

The internal RADIUS server is basically a user database. Here we describe an easy way to import and export the user entries. This is particularly relevant for Public Spots, where users are generated in large numbers by an external system. For LEPS-MAC, too, this is an easy way to import the data. The format used for the data exchange is csv (comma separated values), whereby a semicolon serves as the default separator of the individual data fields.

Exporting RADIUS user data by CSV file

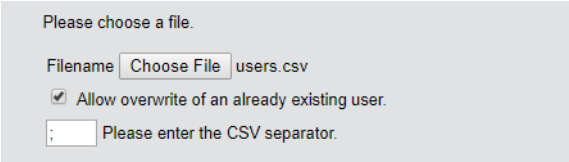
To export the user data of the RADIUS server via WEBconfig, proceed as follows.

Click on **Extras** > **Export RADIUS users**.
The user data is downloaded as the file `users.csv`. The semicolon is the separator; the first row contains the identifiers of the database fields.

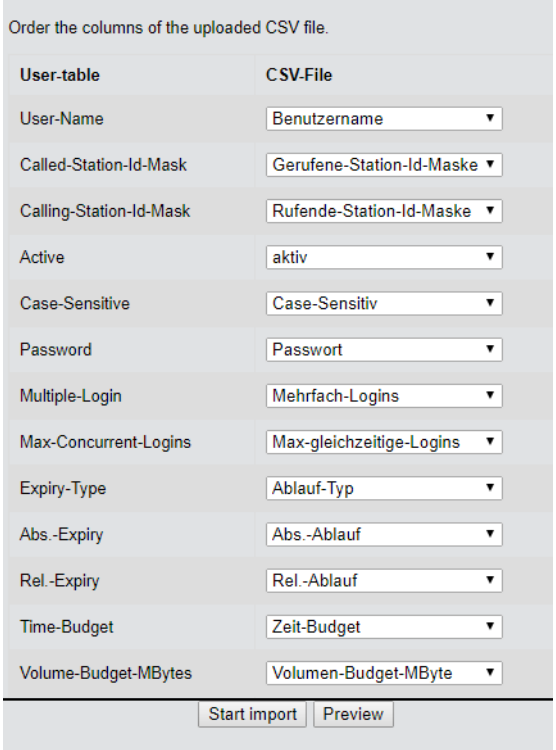
Importing RADIUS user data by CSV file

To import the user data of the RADIUS server via WEBconfig, proceed as follows.

1. Generate a file with the required header for the user data by performing an export of the user data as described in *Exporting RADIUS user data by CSV file* on page 1447.
2. Create a CSV import file with a header containing the correct database field identifiers determined in the previous step. The import file does not have to contain all the columns.
3. Navigate to the menu item **Extras** > **Import RADIUS users**.
4. Use **Choose file** to select the CSV file to be imported.
5. Enter the CSV separator. By default this is already preset to ";".



6. Start the upload.
7. Now check that the columns detected in the CSV file are correctly aligned with the supported columns. You can adjust the alignment in this dialog. No adjustment should be necessary if you used the column names from the previously exported CSV file.



8. Click **Start import** to complete the process and accept the user data.

18.2 RADSEC

RADIUS has become established as the standard for server-based authentication, authorization and billing. RADIUS is now being used for applications outside of its original design purpose, for example in combination with EAP/802.1x, and a number of deficits have become apparent:

- RADIUS operates via UDP and thus offers no native procedure for packet-loss detection. Although this is no problem in a LAN environment, it is becoming increasingly important over WAN connections or on the Internet.
- RADIUS is equipped only with simple procedures for authentication by means of a "shared secret" and a low level of confidentiality.

RADSEC is an alternative protocol that transmits RADIUS packets through a TLS-encrypted tunnel. TLS is based on TCP, thus providing a proven mechanism for monitoring packet loss. Furthermore, TLS is highly secure and it features a method of mutual authentication by means of X.509 certificates.

18.2.1 Configuring RADSEC for the client

LANCOM as a RADIUS client

To function as a RADIUS client, a LANCOM is set up to use RADIUS via UDP or RADSEC via TCP with TLS. Additionally the port to be used has to be set. 1812 for authentication with RADIUS, 1813 for billing with RADIUS and 2083 for RADSEC.

These settings are made at all locations where a LANCOM is configured as a RADIUS client.

WEBconfig: **Setup** / **WAN** / **RADIUS**

WEBconfig: **Setup** / **WLAN** / **RADIUS-access-check**

WEBconfig: **Setup** / **WLAN** / **RADIUS-accounting**

WEBconfig: **Setup** / **Public-spot-module** / **Provider-table**

WEBconfig: **Setup** / **IEEE802.1x** / **RADIUS-server**

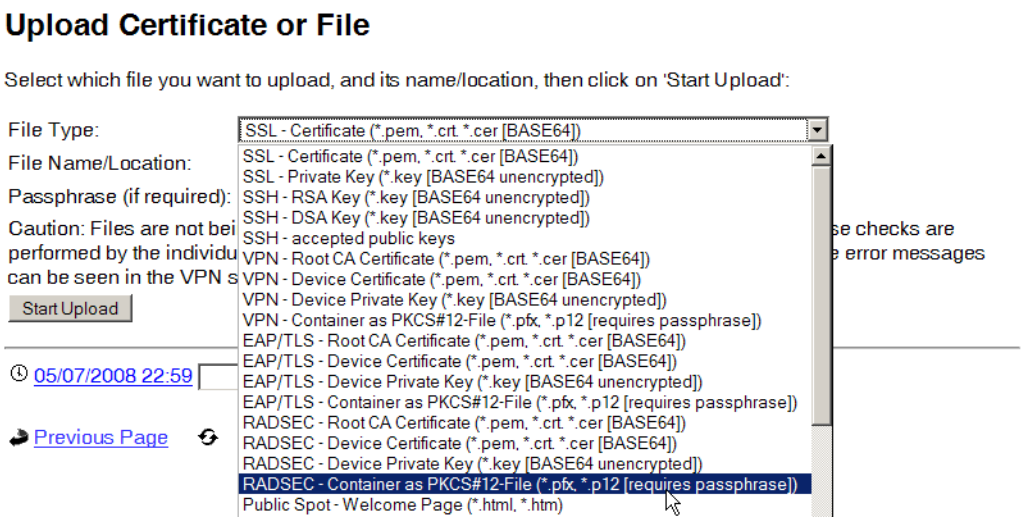
LANCOM as a RADIUS server

If a LANCOM operates as a RADIUS server, the RADSEC port for receiving logins can be set up. In addition to that, the protocol to be used (RADIUS, RADSEC or all) can be set for each of the RADIUS clients in the client list. This allows, for example, RADIUS to be used for LAN-based clients and the more robust RADSEC via TCP to be used for registrations arriving over the Internet.

18.2.2 Certificates for RADSEC

Separate X.509 certificates are required for TLS encryption of the RADSEC connection. The individual certificates (root certificate, devices certificate and private key) can be uploaded to the device individually or as a PKCS#12 container.

WEBconfig: **Upload certificate or file**



18.3 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.12

18.3.1 Availability monitoring for external RADIUS servers

Use this feature to monitor whether a RADIUS server is available. RADIUS requests are sent at regular intervals to check whether the RADIUS service is functional.

Monitoring can be performed as follows:

- By sending status server requests (DEFAULT). These are specifically used to check the availability of RADIUS services. However, they are not supported by all RADIUS servers (a positive example is FreeRADIUS).
- By sending access requests ("dummy requests"). Only use this method if the server does not support status server requests.

You can create supervision profiles under **Setup** > **RADIUS** > **Supervision-Servers** > **Profiles**. These include the method use to monitor the availability test, the interval (in seconds) after which each check is performed, and the attributes to be attached to an access request (there must be at least one user name for the dummy request; status server requests do not require any additional attributes). The DEFAULT profile contains the following:

```
root@LCS_L452_Office:/Setup/RADIUS/Supervision-Servers/Profiles/DEFAULT
> ls -a
[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][2.25.21.1.1][column][7.68.69.70.65.85.76.84]

[  1] Name              INFO:       DEFAULT
[  2] Type              VALUE:      Status-Server
[  3] Attributes        VALUE:
[  4] Request-Interval  VALUE:      60
```

The following is an example profile for the use of access requests:

```
root@LCS_L452_Office:/Setup/RADIUS/Supervision-Servers/Profiles/DUMMY
> ls -a
[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][2.25.21.1.1][column][5.68.85.77.77.89]

[  1] Name              INFO:       DUMMY
[  2] Type              VALUE:      Dummy-Request
[  3] Attributes        VALUE:      User-name=dummyuser
[  4] Request-Interval  VALUE:      60
```

Here you see that the user name has been set as an attribute. Make sure you the user name is not known to the RADIUS server: This prevents a regular logon to the RADIUS server. The "pseudo-login" attempts by the monitoring system are taken to be failed logins.

You can now reference a profile contained in this table. This is possible for the RADIUS server used for 802.1X. The following is an example entry in the appropriate table:

```
root@LCS_L452_Office:/Setup/IEEE802.1x/RADIUS-Server/FREERADIUS
> ls -a
[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][2.30.3.1][column][10.70.82.69.69.82.65.68.73.85.83]

[  1] Name              INFO:       FREERADIUS
[  8] Host-Name         VALUE:      192.168.1.2
[  3] Port              VALUE:      1812
[  4] Secret            VALUE:      *
[  6] Loopback-Addr.    VALUE:
[  7] Protocol          VALUE:      RADIUS
[  9] Attribute-Values  VALUE:
[ 10] Sup.-Profile      VALUE:      DEFAULT
[  5] Backup            VALUE:
```

The RADIUS server specified here is monitored using the supervision profile "DEFAULT". If an entry for "Sup.-Profile" does not match with a supervision profile, the DEFAULT profile is used automatically. If "Sup.-Profile" is empty, no monitoring is performed.

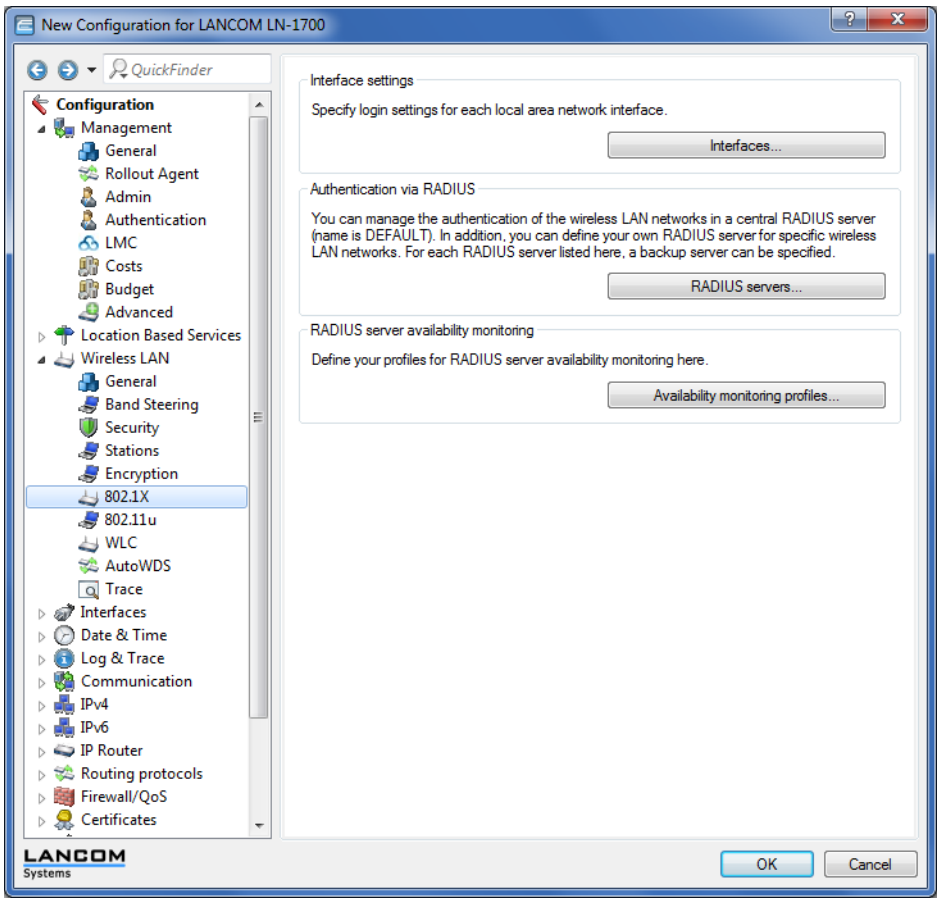
The monitored RADIUS servers and their status can be viewed in the following table:

```
root@LCS_L452_Office:/Status/TCP-IP/RADIUS-Supervision-Servers/Servers
> ls -a
[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][1.9.14.1]

Index      Server-Hostname        Port  Loopback-Address  Protocol  State
[1]        [2]                    [3]    [4]              [5]        [6]
===========-------------------------------------------------------------------
1          192.168.1.2            1812                    RADIUS      Up
2          192.168.1.254          1812                    RADIUS      Timeout
```

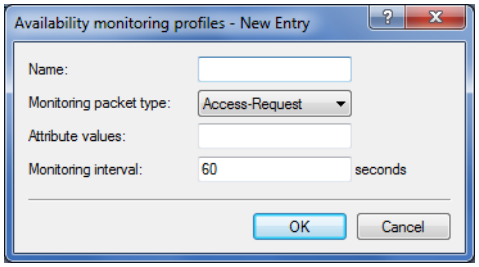
The statistic table is also available under the following path: **Status** > **SLA-Monitor** > **RADIUS** > **Servers**.

Availability monitoring profiles in LANconfig

Navigate to **Wireless LAN** > **802.1X** > **RADIUS server availability monitoring**.



The table **Availability monitoring profiles** provides the following configuration options:



Name

Contains the name of the availability monitoring profile.

Monitoring packet type

Your choices are as follows:

Access request (default)

Only use this type if the server does not support status server requests.

Status server

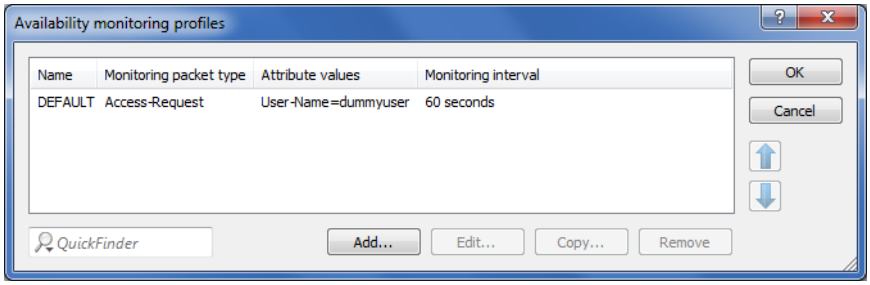
This type is specifically for the availability monitoring of RADIUS services, but it is not supported by all RADIUS servers.

Attribute values

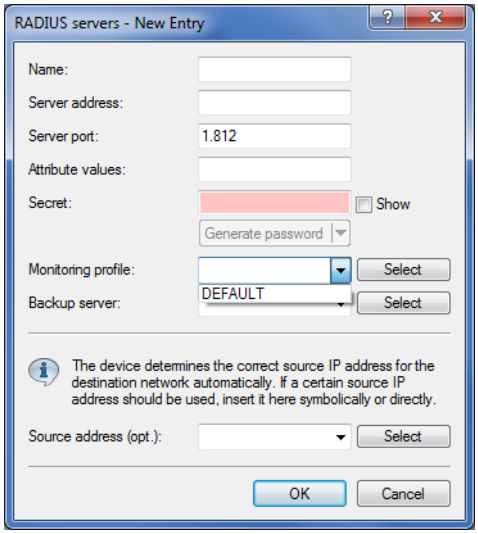
An attribute is only required for access requests. It is not required for status server requests.

Monitoring Interval

The monitoring interval in seconds (default: 60)



The new availability monitoring profile (in this case: DEFAULT) is now also available for use in the **RADIUS server** table:



19 More services

An LANCOM offers a number of services for the PCs in the LAN. These are central functions that can be used by workstation computers. They are in particular:

- Automatic address administration with DHCP
- Name management of computers and networks with DNS
- Logging of network traffic with SYSLOG
- Recording of charges
- Office communications functions with LANCAPI
- Time server

19.1 Automatic IP address administration with DHCP

New in LCOS 7.60:

- BOOTP: Assignment of fixed IP addresses or boot images to specific workstations depending on the IP network (ARF)

19.1.1 Introduction

DHCP server

All devices in a local area network require a unique IP address in order for a TCP/IP network to function smoothly. They also require the addresses of DNS and NBNS servers and also of a standard gateway that can route data packets to addresses not located on the local network.

In a small network it is still possible to enter these addresses on all the computers in the network "by hand". However, in a large network with many workstations this soon becomes an unmanageable task. This is where the use of DHCP (dynamic host configuration protocol) comes in. A DHCP server in a TCP/IP-based LAN can use this protocol to assign the required addresses to the individual workstations dynamically.

LANCOM devices have an integrated DHCP server that can assume the task of assigning IP addresses. This process involves communicating the following parameters to the workstations:

- IP address
- Network mask
- Broadcast address
- Standard gateway
- DNS server
- NBNS server
- Lease (validity period) of the assigned parameters

The DHCP server either takes the IP addresses from a freely defined address pool or determines the addresses independently based on its own IP address. A completely unconfigured device in DHCP auto-mode can even specify IP addresses for itself and for network devices autonomously. Therefore in the most basic scenario you only need to connect a new out-of-the-box device to a network without a DHCP server and switch it on. The DHCP server will then manage all further address assignment in the LAN by itself in cooperation with LANconfig using a Wizard.

DHCP settings can be different for each network. It is possible to define several IP networks in the LANCOM devices in conjunction with advanced routing and forwarding (ARF). DHCP settings therefore apply to a particular IP network, with the exception of a few general settings.

DHCP relay

If another DHCP server is located in the LAN, the device can obtain the address information it requires from the other DHCP server if it is in DHCP client mode.

The LANCOM can also operate as a DHCP relay agent and as a DHCP relay server.

- As a DHCP relay agent the LANCOM forwards DHCP requests to another DHCP server.
- As a DHCP relay server the LANCOM processes DHCP requests forwarded from DHCP relay agents.

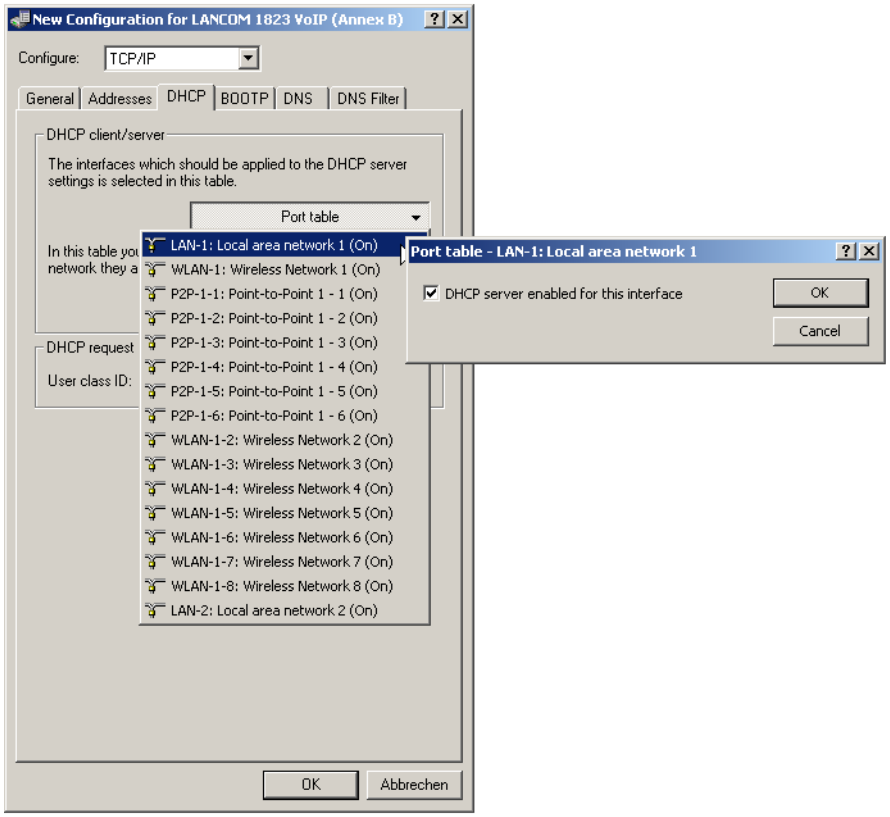
BOOTP

The bootstrap protocol (BOOTP) can be used to send a certain IP address and other parameters to a workstation when it boots up. Workstations without hard drives can use BOOTP to load a boot image, i.e. a complete operating system, from a boot server.

19.1.2 Configuring DHCP parametersLANconfig

Activating/deactivating a DHCP server for specific logical interfaces

The DHCP server can be activated or deactivated separately for each logical interface (e. g. LAN-1, WLAN-1, P2P-1-1 etc.). To do this, select the appropriate logical interface from the port list and switch the DHCP server on or off for this interface. You can find the parameters for activating the ports in LANconfig in the configuration area "TCP/IP" on the "DHCP" tab.



Configuring DHCP networks

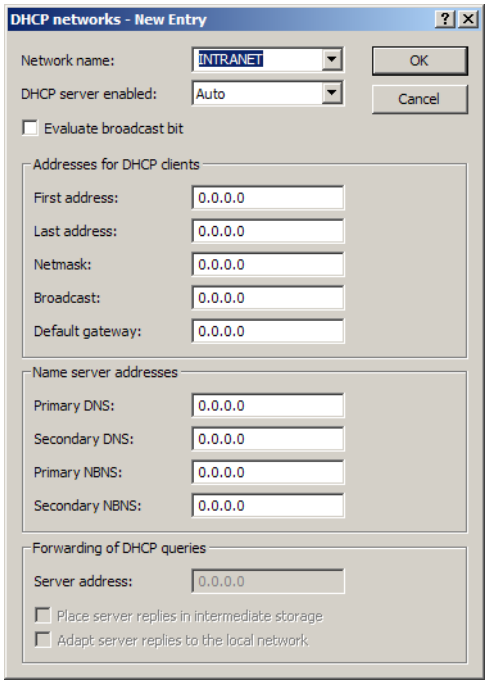
The appropriate DHCP settings can be specified separately for any IP network defined in the device. You can find the parameters for defining DHCP networks in LANconfig in the configuration area "TCP/IP" on the "DHCP" tab.

When configuring DHCP networks, the addresses are defined that can be assigned to the DHCP clients (address pool). When a client is activated in the network and requests an IP address via DHCP, the device with an activated DHCP server will offer to issue an address. This address is selected from the pool of valid IP addresses. A computer which received an IP address in the past requests this address again and, assuming the DHCP server has not assigned this number to another computer in the meantime, it will attempt to issue this address again.

The DHCP server also checks the LAN to confirm that the selected address is free. Once the address is confirmed as unique, it is assigned to the requesting computer.

The device factory settings include the IP networks 'Intranet' and 'DMZ', although there are no settings for IP addresses and netmasks. The device is in a special operating mode. It then uses the IP address '172.23.56.254' and the address pool '172.23.56.x' for assigning IP addresses to the network.

Multiple networks on one interface: With the configuration of IP and DHCP networks, multiple networks with different DHCP settings can be active at a logical interface. In this case, the DHCP settings for the first suitable network are applied. A prioritization of networks may be necessary here.



> Selecting the IP network

Select the IP network which the subsequent DHCP settings should apply to. You can find the parameters for defining DHCP networks in LANconfig in the configuration area "TCP/IP" on the "General" tab.

> Enabling the DHCP server

The DHCP server can be configured to run in the following modes:

> 'Yes': DHCP server is permanently switched on. When this value is entered the server configuration (validity of the address pool) is checked.

  > If the configuration is correct then the device starts operating as a DHCP server in the network.
  > Errors in the configuration (e.g. invalid pool limits) will cause the DHCP server to be disabled.

    Only use this setting if you are certain that no other DHCP server is active in the LAN.

  > 'No': DHCP server is permanently switched off.
  > 'Auto': With this setting, the device regularly searches the local network for other DHCP servers. The LAN-Rx/Tx LED flashes briefly when this search is in progress.

- If another DHCP server is discovered the device switches its own DHCP server off. If the LANCOM Router is not configured with an IP address, then it switches into DHCP client mode and queries the LAN DHCP server for an IP address. This prevents unconfigured devices introduced to the network from assigning addresses unintentionally.
- If no other DHCP server is discovered the device switches its own DHCP server on. If another DHCP server is activated later, then the DHCP server in the LANCOM Router will be disabled.

- 'Client mode': The DHCP server is disabled, the device behaves as a DHCP client and obtains its address from another DHCP server in the LAN.

Only use this setting if you are certain that another DHCP server is in the LAN and actively assigning IP addresses.

- 'Queries forwarded': The DHCP server is active and receives requests from DHCP clients in the LAN. The device does not respond to requests itself, but forwards them to a central DHCP server in a different network segment.

The DHCP statistics show whether the DHCP server is enabled or not.

The default setting for this parameter is 'Auto'.

- Assigning IP addresses

The DHCP server must first know which IP addresses it can use to assign before it can actually assign them to workstations in the network There are three different methods for selecting possible addresses:

- An IP address can be taken from the defined address pool (First address: to Last address:). Any address can be entered provided it is valid for the IP network segment.
- If '0.0.0.0' is entered, the DHCP server determines the relevant first and last addresses itself using the settings for the IP network (network address and netmask).
- The device will be in a special operating mode if no IP network has yet been defined. It then uses the IP address '172.23.56.254' and the address pool '172.23.56.x' for assigning IP addresses to the network.

When a client is activated in the network and requests an IP address via DHCP, the device with an activated DHCP server will offer to assign an address. This address is selected from the pool of valid IP addresses. A computer which received an IP address in the past requests this address again and, assuming the DHCP server has not assigned this number to another computer in the meantime, it will attempt to issue this address again.

The DHCP server also checks the LAN to confirm that the selected address is free. Once the address is confirmed as unique, it is assigned to the requesting computer.

- Assigning the netmask

The netmask is assigned in a similar way to assigning addresses. If a netmask has been entered in the DHCP settings, it will be used when assignment is made. Otherwise the IP network's netmask will be used.

- Assigning the broadcast address

As a rule, broadcast packets in a local network have an address which results from the valid IP addresses and the netmask. In special cases (e.g. when using subnets for a selection of workstations) it may be necessary to use a different broadcast address. In this case the broadcast address to be used is entered in the DHCP settings.

We recommend that only experienced network specialists change the pre-setting for the broadcast address. Errors in the configuration here can lead to costly connections being established!

- Assigning the standard gateway

As standard, the LANCOM issues its own IP address as the gateway address to computers making requests. If necessary, the IP address of another gateway can be transmitted if a corresponding address is entered here.

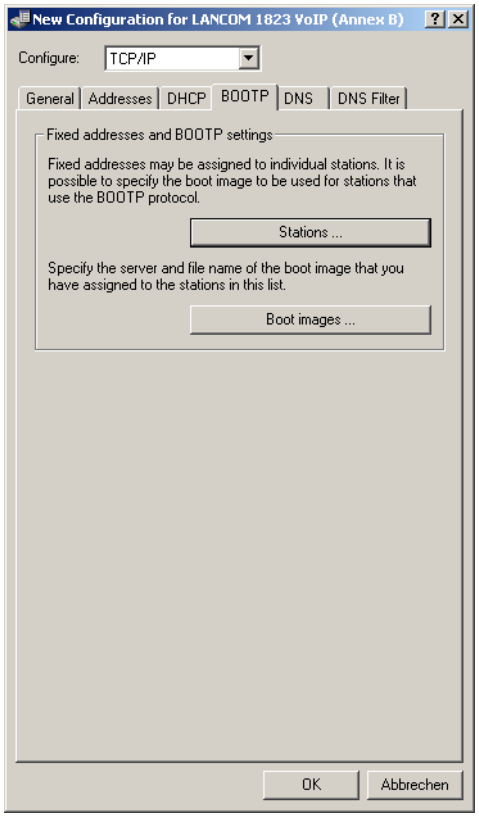
- Assigning DNS and NBNS servers

IP address of the DNS and NBNS name servers to which DNS and NBNS requests should be forwarded.

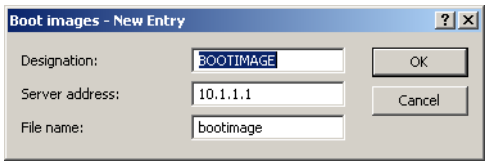
If no server is defined in the relevant fields, the router will forward its own IP network address as DNS or NBNS address if the DNS server has been enabled for the network in question. If the DNS server is not active for this network, then the IP address in the global TCP/IP settings is communicated as the DNS server.

Configuring the assignment of fixed IP addresses to specific clients

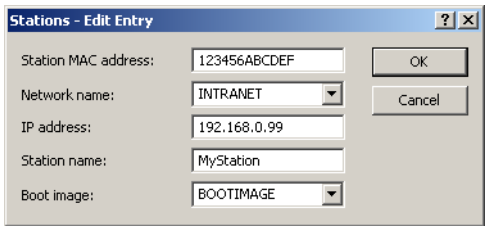
You can find the parameters for configuring BOOTP in LANconfig in the configuration area "TCP/IP" on the "BOOTP" tab.



Optionally: You can define a boot image in the list of boot images that you wish to assign to a client.



Enter the MAC address of the client that you wish to assign a fixed IP address to in the list of stations. You may also select a boot image that is to be assigned to this client. If this address assignment is only to be used if the client is in a particular IP network, enter the appropriate IP network.



19.1.3 Configuring DHCP parameters with telnet or WEBconfig

General DHCP settings

- User class identifier

  The DHCP client in the LANCOM can insert additional information in the DHCP request sent, which simplify request recognition within the network. The vendor class identifier (DHCP option 60) shows the device type, e.g. 'LANCOM L-54ag'. The vendor class ID is always transmitted. The user class ID (DHCP option 77) specifies a user-defined string. The user class ID is only transmitted when the user has configured a value.

- Default lease minutes

  When a client requests an address without asking for a specific lease, the address will be assigned the value set here as lease.

- Max. lease minutes

  When a client requests an IP address from a DHCP server, it can also ask for a lease for the address. This values governs the maximum length of lease that the client may request.

Alias list

The alias list defines the names for the boot images that are used to reference the images in the hosts table.

- Image alias

  Enter any name you wish for this boot image. This name is used when you assign a boot image to a particular client in the station list.

- Image server

  Enter the IP address of the server that provides the boot image.

- Image file

  Enter the name of the file on the server containing the boot image.

DHCP table

The DHCP table provides an overview of the IP addresses used in the IP networks. The DHCP table is purely a status table where no parameters can be configured.

- IP address

  IP address used by the client.

- MAC address

  The client's MAC address.

- Timeout

  Period of validity (lease) for the address assignment in minutes.

- Client name

  Name of the client, if it was possible to determine this.

- Type

  The 'Type' field indicates how the address was assigned. This field may contain the following values:

  - New: The client made the request for the first time. The DHCP checks that the address to be assigned to the client is unique.
  - Unknown: When the server checked if the address was unique, it was found that the address had already been assigned to another client. Unfortunately, the DHCP doe not have any possibility of obtaining further information about this client.

- Stat: A client has informed the DHCP server that it has a fixed IP address. This address may not be used for any other clients in the network.
- Dyn.: The DHCP server has assigned an address to the client.

- LAN Ifc

  Logical interface connecting the client to the device.

- Ethernet port

  Physical interface connecting the client to the device.

- VLAN ID

  The VLAN ID used by the client.

- Network name

  Name of the IP network where the client is located.

Hosts table

The bootstrap protocol (BOOTP) can be used to communicate a certain IP address and other parameters to a workstation when it boots up. For this, the workstation's MAC address is entered into the hosts table.

- MAC address

  Enter the MAC address of the workstation to which an IP address is to be assigned.

  Possible values:

- Network name

  Enter the name of a configured IP network here. Only if a requesting client is located in this IP network will it be assigned the relevant IP address defined for the MAC address.

  If the requesting client is located in an IP network for which there is no corresponding entry in the hosts table, the client will be assigned an IP address from the address pool of the appropriate IP network.

- IP address

  Enter the client IP address that is to be assigned to the client.

- Client name

  Enter the name that is to be used to identify the client. If the client does not communicate its name, the device will use the name entered here..

- Image alias

  If the client uses the BOOTP protocol, you can select a boot image that the client should use to load its operating system from.

  You must enter the server providing the boot image and the name of the file on the server in the boot image table.

Network list

DHCP settings for the IP networks are defined in this table.

- Network name

  The name of the network which the DHCP server settings apply to.

- DHCP server enabled

  DHCP server operating mode in this network. Depending on the operating mode, the DHCP server can enable or disable itself. You can see whether the DHCP server is enabled from the DHCP statistics.

Possible values:

- No: DHCP server is permanently switched off.
- Automatic: With this setting, the device regularly searches the local network for other DHCP servers. The LAN-Rx/Tx LED flashes briefly when this search is in progress.

If another DHCP server is discovered the device switches its own DHCP server off. If the LANCOM Router is not configured with an IP address, then it switches into DHCP client mode and queries the LAN DHCP server for an IP address. This prevents unconfigured devices introduced to the network from assigning addresses unintentionally.

If no other DHCP server is discovered the device switches its own DHCP server on. If another DHCP server is activated later, then the DHCP server in the LANCOM Router will be disabled.

- 'Yes': DHCP server is permanently switched on. When this value is entered the server configuration (validity of the address pool) is checked.

If the configuration is correct then the device starts operating as a DHCP server in the network.

Errors in the configuration (e.g. invalid pool limits) will cause the DHCP server to be deactivated.

- 'Client mode': The DHCP server is disabled, the device behaves as a DHCP client and obtains its address from another DHCP server in the LAN.
- 'Relay requests': The DHCP server is active and receives requests from DHCP clients in the LAN. The device does not respond to requests, but forwards them to a central DHCP server elsewhere in the network (DHCP relay agent mode).

Default:

- Automatic

Only use the setting "Yes" if you are certain that no other DHCP server is active in the LAN.

Only use the "client mode" setting if you are certain that another DHCP server is in the LAN and actively assigning IP addresses.

- Broadcast bit check

  This setting decides whether the broadcast bit from clients is to be checked. If the bit is not checked then all DHCP messages are sent as broadcasts.

- Start address

  The first IP address in the pool available to the clients. If no address is entered here the DHCP takes the first available IP address from the network (as determined by network address and netmask).

- End address

  The last IP address in the pool available to the clients. If no address is entered here the DHCP takes the last available IP address from the network (as determined by network address and netmask).

- Network mask

  Corresponding netmask for the address pool available to the clients. If no address is entered here the DHCP server uses the netmask from the corresponding network.

- Broadcast

  As a rule, broadcast packets in a local network have an address which results from the valid IP addresses and the netmask. In special cases (e.g. when using subnets for a selection of workstations) it may be necessary to use a different broadcast address. In this case the broadcast address is entered into the DHCP module.

  We recommend that only experienced network specialists change the pre-setting for the broadcast address. Errors in the configuration here can lead to costly connections being established!

- Standard gateway

As standard, the LANCOM issues its own IP address as the gateway address to computers making requests. If necessary, the IP address of another gateway can be transmitted if a corresponding address is entered here.

- DNS default

  IP address of the DNS name server for the forwarding of DNS requests.

- DNS backup

  IP address of the backup DNS name server for the forwarding of DNS requests, in the event that the first name server fails.

- NBNS default

  IP address of the NetBIOS name server for the forwarding of NetBIOS requests.

- NBNS backup

  IP address of the backup NBNS name server for the forwarding of NBNS requests, in the event that the first name server fails.

- Server address

  This is where the IP address for the superordinate DHCP server is entered when the mode 'Relay requests' is selected.

- Caching of server responses

  This option allows the responses from the superordinate DHCP server to be stored in the LANCOM Router. Subsequent requests can then be answered by the LANCOM Router itself. This option is useful if the superordinate DHCP server can only be reached via a connection which incurs costs.

- Adapting server responses to the local network

  This option allows the responses from the superordinate DHCP server to be adapted to the local network. When activated, the LANCOM adapts the responses from the superordinate DHCP server by replacing the following entries with its own address (or locally configured addresses):

  - Gateway
  - Network mask
  - Broadcast address
  - DNS server
  - NBNS server
  - Server ID

  This option is worthwhile if the superordinate DHCP server does not permit the separate configuration for DHCP clients in another network.

Port table

The port table is where the DHCP server is enabled for the appropriate logical interface of the device.

- Path: Setup/DHCP/Ports

- Port

  Select the logical interface for which the DHCP server should be enabled or disabled.

- Enable DHCP

  Enables or disables the DHCP server for the selected logical interface.

Additional options

DHCP options can be used to send additional configuration parameters to the clients. The vendor class ID (DHCP option 60) shows e. g. the type of device. This table allows additional options for DHCP operations to be defined.

- Option number

Number of the option that should be sent to the DHCP client. The option number describes the transmitted information. For example "17" (root path) is the path to a boot image that a PC without its own hard disk uses to obtains its operating system via BOOTP. You can find a complete list of all DHCP options in RFC 2132 – "DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions" of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

- Network name

  Name of the IP network where this DHCP option is to be used.

- Option value

  This field defines the contents of the DHCP option. For the option "17", for example, the path is entered for a boot image that a PC without its own hard disk uses to obtains its operating system via BOOTP.

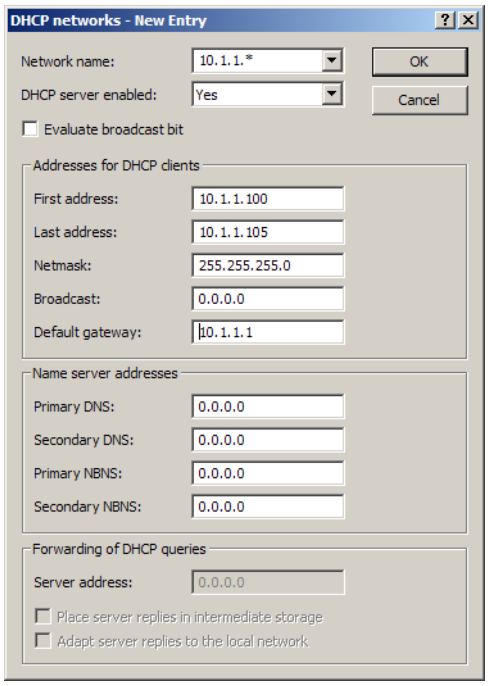
The maximum possible length value depends on the selected option number. RFC 2132 lists the maximum length allowed for each option.

19.1.4 DHCP relay server

A LANCOM is not limited to forwarding DHCP requests to superordinate DHCP servers; it can also function as a central DHCP server (DHCP relay server).

In order for a LANCOM to be provided as a DHCP relay server to other networks, the relay agent IP address (GI address) is entered as the network name in the table of IP networks.

If the same network is being used by several relay agents (e.g. multiple access points are forwarding requests to a central DHCP server) then the GI address can also be abbreviated with a "*". If for example clients in the remote network '10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0' are to be assigned with addresses and several relay agents are available in this network, all of which use the LANCOM as superordinate DHCP server, then the assignment of IP addresses and standard gateway to the clients can take place as follows:



To operate as DHCP relay server, it is imperative that the address pool and the netmask are given.

DNS resolution of names learned via DHCP

The DNS server considers the interface tags when resolving names learned via DHCP, i.e. the only names to be resolved are those which were learned from a network with the same interface tag as the requesting computer. If the request

arrives from an untagged network, then all names are resolved, including those that were learned via tagged networks. Similarly, all names that were learned from untagged networks are visible for tagged networks.

Names learned from relay agents are handled as though they were learned from an untagged network, i.e. these names are visible to all networks.

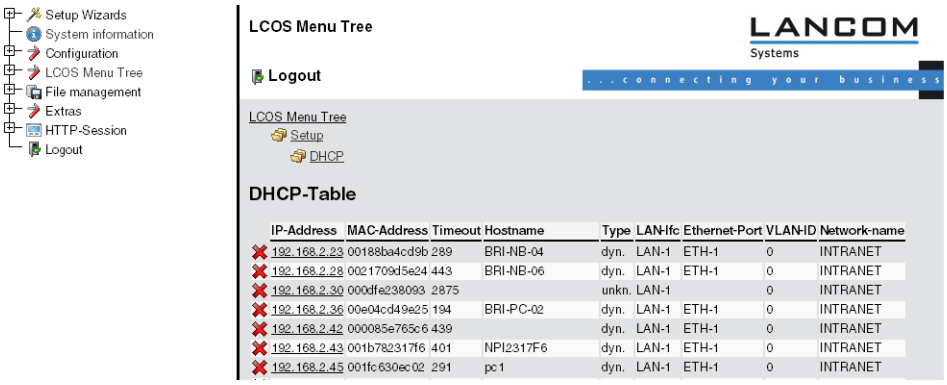
19.1.5 Configuring clients

It is standard in a Windows network environment for nearly all settings to be configured in such a way that required parameters can be requested via DHCP. You can check your Windows settings by clicking on **Start** / **Settings** / **Control Panel** E **Network**. Select the entry for **TCP/IP** on your network adapter and open **Properties**. You can now see on the various tabs whether there are special entries for e.g. the IP address or the standard gateway. If you wish to have all the values assigned by the DHCP server, just delete the corresponding entries.

If a client is to use a different parameter from the one assigned (e.g. for a standard gateway), this parameter must be configured at the workstation itself. The client will then ignore the corresponding parameter(s) in those assigned by the DHCP server.. Under Windows this can be effected for example via the properties of the network environment. Click on **Start** / **Settings** / **Control Panel** / **Network**. Select the entry for 'TCP/IP' on your network adapter and open **Properties**. You can now enter the desired values on the various tabs.

19.1.6 Checking IP addresses in the LAN

You can view a summary of the LAN IP addresses in the DHCP table (WEBconfig: Setup/DHCP/DHCP Table). It shows the assigned and used IP address, the MAC address, the lease, the client's name (if available) as well as the type of address assignment.



IP-Address	MAC-Address	Timeout	Hostname	Type	LAN-Ifc	Ethernet-Port	VLAN-ID	Network-name
192.168.2.23	00188ba4cd9b	289	BRI-NB-04	dyn.	LAN-1	ETH-1	0	INTRANET
192.168.2.28	0021709d5e24	443	BRI-NB-06	dyn.	LAN-1	ETH-1	0	INTRANET
192.168.2.30	000dfe238093	2875		unkn.	LAN-1		0	INTRANET
192.168.2.36	00e04cd49e25	194	BRI-PC-02	dyn.	LAN-1	ETH-1	0	INTRANET
192.168.2.42	000085e765c6	439		dyn.	LAN-1	ETH-1	0	INTRANET
192.168.2.43	001b782317f6	401	NPI2317F6	dyn.	LAN-1	ETH-1	0	INTRANET
192.168.2.45	001fc630ec02	291	pc1	dyn.	LAN-1	ETH-1	0	INTRANET

19.1.7 Addition(s) to LCOS 7.80

DHCP cluster

Introduction

If multiple DHCP servers are active in a network, the stations "divide" themselves equally between them. However, the DNS server in LANCOM devices can only properly resolve the name of the station which was assigned the address information by the DHCP server. In order for the DNS server to be able to resolve the names of other DHCP servers, these can be operated in a cluster. In this operating mode, the DHCP server monitors all DHCP negotiations in the network. It additionally supplements its table with the stations which are registered at the other DHCP servers in the cluster.

Configuration

A DHCP server's operation in the cluster can be activated or deactivated for each individual ARF network with the associated DHCP settings.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / DHCP / Network list

- Cluster

  This setting defines whether the DHCP server for this ARF network is to be operated separately or in the cluster.

  Possible values:

  - Yes: With cluster mode activated, the DHCP server monitors all of the ongoing DHCP negotiations in the network, and it additionally supplements its table with the stations which are registered at the other DHCP servers in the cluster. These stations are flagged as "cache" in the DHCP table.
  - No: The DHCP server manages information only for the stations connected to it.

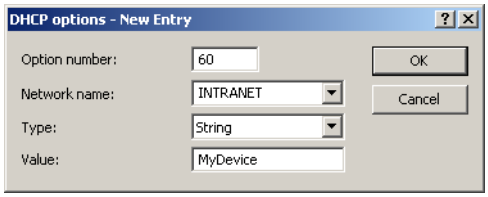
  Default:

  - No

  If the lease time for the information supplied by DHCP expires, the station requests a renewal from the DHCP server which supplied the original information. If the original DHCP server does not respond, the station then emits its rebinding request as a broadcast to all available DHCP servers. DHCP servers in a cluster ignore renew requests, which forces a rebinding. The resulting broadcast is used by all of the DHCP servers to update their entries for the station. The only DHCP server to answer the rebind request is the one with which the station was originally registered. If a station repeats its rebind request, the all DHCP servers in the cluster assume that the original DHCP server is no longer active in the cluster, and they respond to the request. The responses received by the station will have the same IP address, but the gateway and DNS server addresses may differ. From these responses, the station selects a new DHCP server to connect with, and it updates its gateway and DNS server (and other relevant parameters) accordingly.

DHCP options with LANconfig

DHCP options can be used to send additional configuration parameters to the clients. The vendor class ID (DHCP option 60) shows e. g. the type of device. This table allows additional options for DHCP operations to be defined.



LANconfig: TCP/IP / DHCP / DHCP-Options

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / DHCP / Additional options

- Option number

  Number of the option that should be sent to the DHCP client. The option number describes the transmitted information. For example "17" (root path) is the path to a boot image that a PC without its own hard disk uses to obtain its operating system via BOOTP.

  Possible values:

  - Maximum 3 characters.

  Default:

  - Blank

  You can find a list of all DHCP options in RFC 2132 – "DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions" of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

- Network name

  Name of the IP network where this DHCP option is to be used.

  Possible values:

- Selection from the list of IP networks defined in the device; max. 16 characters

Default:

- Blank

- Type

Entry type. This value depends on the respective option. For option "35" according to RFC 1232, e.g. the ARP cache time is defined as follows:

```
ARP cache timeout option

This option specifies the timeout in seconds for ARP cache entries.

The time is specified as a 32-bit unsigned integer.

The code for this option is 35, and its length is 4.

Code Len Time

+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

| 35 | 4 | t1 | t2 | t3 | t4 |

+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

This description tells you that this the type "32-bit integer" is used for this option.

Possible values:

- String, Integer8, Integer16, Integer32, IP address

Default:

- String

You can find out the type of the option either from the corresponding RFC or from the manufacturer's documentation of their DHCP options.

- Value

This field defines the contents of the DHCP option.

IP addresses are specified with the usual notation for IPv4 addresses, e.g. as "123.123.123.100", integer types are entered as normal decimal numbers, and strings as simple text.

Multiple values in a single field are separated with commas, e.g. "123.123.123.100, 123.123.123.200".

Possible values:

- Maximum 128 characters.

Default:

- Blank

You can find out the possible length of the option value either from the corresponding RFC or from the manufacturer's documentation of their DHCP options.

19.1.8 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.00

Alternative DHCP server for forwarding

Introduction

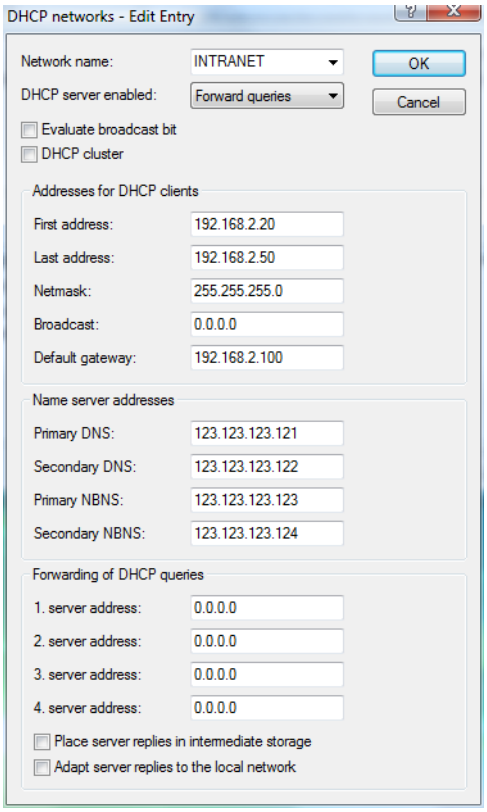
The DHCP server offers various operating modes. In the forwarding mode, the device acts in the local network like a DHCP relay and forwards requests to one of more pre-defined DHCP servers. This setting facilitates the operation of central DHCP servers in another network.

All DHCP messages sent by DHCP clients as a broadcast are forwarded to all predefined DHCP servers. The client selects the first server to answer and sends all subsequent messages as unicasts directly to that server. If the selected server becomes unavailable, the client once again transmits broadcast messages and selects another DHCP server.

Configuration

To configure the DHCP server for forwarding, refer to the following menus:

- LANconfig: TCP/IP / DHCP / DHCP networks
- WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / DHCP / Network list



- 1st server address

  This is where the IP address for the upstream DHCP server is entered when the mode 'Relay requests' is selected.

  Possible values:

  - IP address or the broadcast address of the network in which the server is located. The broadcast address is the highest address in an IP network. All packets sent to this address are received by all hosts.

  Default:

  - 0.0.0.0

19.1.9 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.80

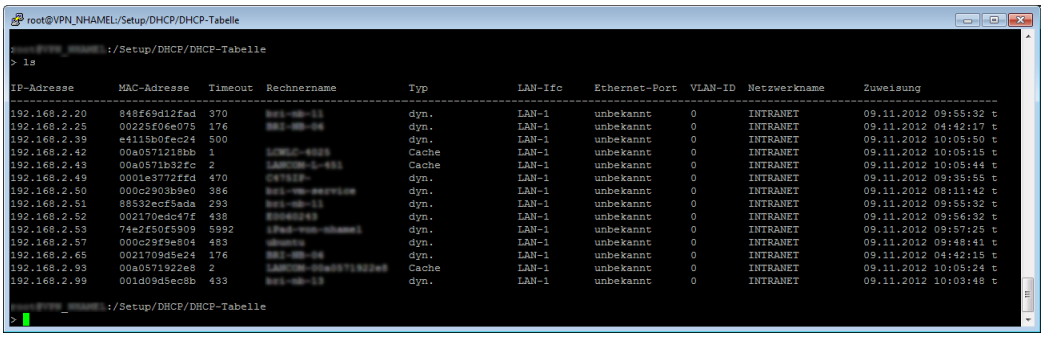
Displaying status information from the DHCP server

The status table of the DHCP server shows the following information about the devices that to which the DHCP server has assigned IP addresses:

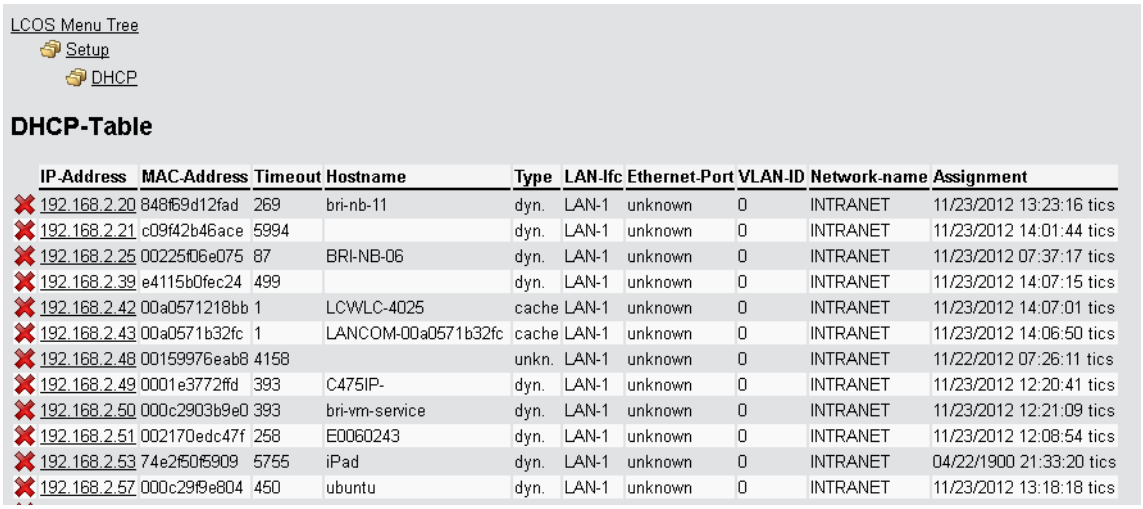
- IP address, which the DHCP server has assigned to the network device
- MAC address of the network device
- Timeout, remaining validity period in minutes
- Computer name
- Type of address assignment, dynamic or from cache
- LAN-Ifc, logical interface over which the DHCP server assigned the IP address to the network device
- Ethernet port, physical interface over which the DHCP server assigned the IP address to the network device
- VLAN ID of the network
- Network name
- Assignment, date and time when the DHCP server assigned the IP address to the network device

You can find the status information for the DHCP server at the following locations:

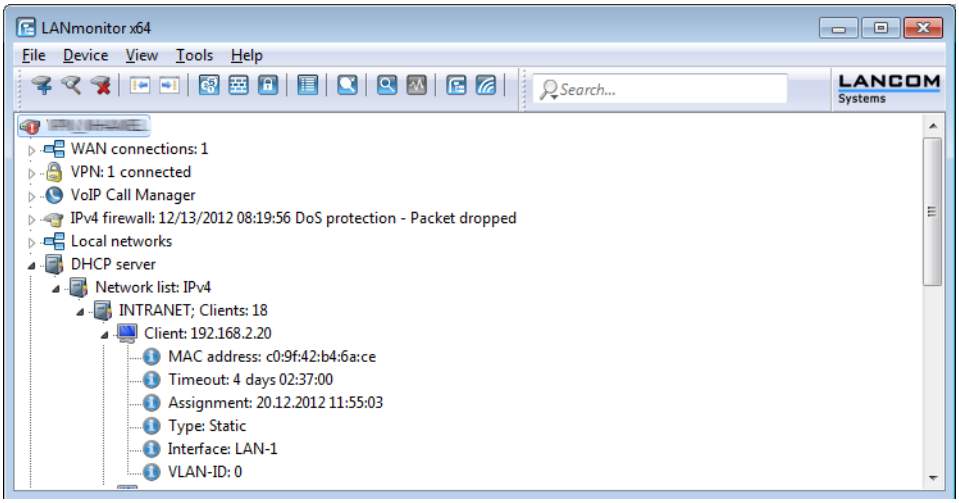
- Telnet: /Setup/DHCP/DHCP-Table



- WEBconfig: /Setup/DHCP/DHCP-Table



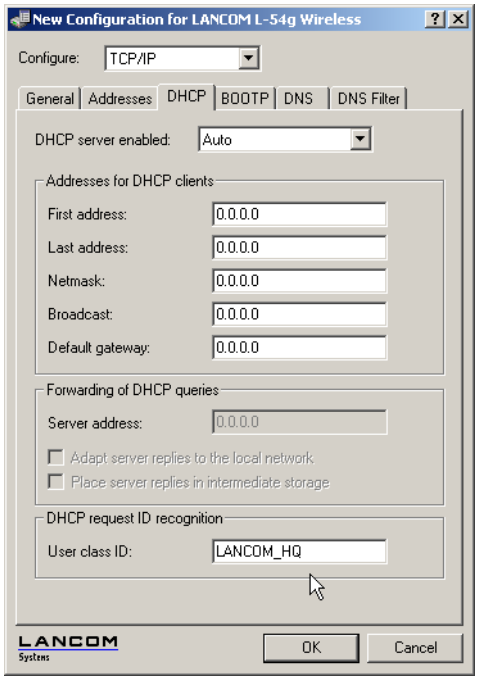
- LANmonitor: Broken down by network name under DHCP-server > Network list



19.2 Vendor Class and User Class Identifier

The DHCP client in LANCOM can insert additional information in the DHCP request sent, which simplify request recognition within the network.

- The vendor class identifier (DHCP option 60) shows the device type, e.g. 'LANCOM L-54'. The vendor class ID is always transmitted.
- The user class identifier (DHCP option 77) displays a user-defined string, which can be entered under `Setup/DHCP` or in LANconfig in the configuration area under 'TCP/IP' on the 'DHCP' tab in the 'User Class ID' field (default: empty). The user class ID is only transmitted when the user has configured a value.



19.3 DNS

The domain name service (DNS) is responsible in TCP/IP networks for associating computer names and/or network (domains) and IP addresses. This service is required for Internet communications, to return the correct IP address for a request such as 'www.lancom.de' for example. However, it's also useful to be able to clearly associate IP addresses to computer names within a local network or in a LAN interconnection.

19.3.1 What does a DNS server do?

The names used in DNS server requests are made up of several parts: one part consists of the actual name of the host or service to be addressed; another part specifies the domain. Specifying the domain is optional within a local network. These names could thus be 'www.domain.com' or 'ftp.domain.com', for example.

If there is no DNS server in the local network, all locally unknown names will be searched for using the default route. By using a DNS server, it's possible to immediately go to the correct remote station for all of the names with known IP addresses. In principle, the DNS server can be a separate computer in the network. However, the following reasons speak for locating the DNS server directly in the LANCOM:

- LANCOM can automatically distribute IP addresses for the computers in the local network when in DHCP server mode. In other words, the DHCP server already knows the names and IP addresses of all of the computers in its own network that were assigned IP addresses via DHCP. With the dynamic address assignments of a DHCP server, an external DNS server might have difficulties in keeping the associations between the names and IP addresses current.
- When routing Microsoft Networks via NetBIOS, the LANCOM also knows the computer names and IP addresses in the other connected NetBIOS networks. In addition, computers with fixed IP addresses can also enter themselves in the NetBIOS table and thus be known by their names and addresses.
- The DNS server in the LANCOM can also be used as an extremely convenient filter mechanism. Requests for domains can be prohibited throughout the LAN, for subnetworks, or even for individual computers—simply by specifying the domain name.

How does the DNS server react to the request?

When processing requests for specific names, the DNS server takes advantage of all of the information available to it:

- First, the DNS server checks whether access to the name is not prohibited by the filter list. If that is the case, an error message is returned to the requesting computer stating that access to the address has been denied.
- Next, it searches in its own static DNS table for suitable entries.
- If the address cannot be found in the DNS table, it searches the dynamic DHCP table. The use of DHCP information can be disabled if required.
- If no information on the name can be located in the previous tables, the DNS server then searches the lists of the NetBIOS module. The use of the NetBIOS information can also be disabled if necessary.
- Finally, the DNS server checks whether the request to another DNS server is to be forwarded to another DNS server via a WAN interface (special DNS forwarding via the DNS destination table).

If the requested name cannot be found in any of the information sources available to it, the DNS server sends the request to another server—that of the Internet provider, for example—using the general DNS forwarding mechanism, or returns an error message to the requesting computer.

19.3.2 DNS forwarding

If it cannot serve the request from its own DNS tables, the DNS server forwards the request to other DNS servers. This process is called DNS forwarding.

Here a distinction is made between

- special DNS forwarding Requests for certain name areas are forwarded to certain DNS servers.
- general DNS forwarding All other names not specified in detail are forwarded to the “higher- level” DNS server.

Special DNS forwarding

With “special DNS forwarding” name areas can be defined for the resolution of which specified DNS server are addressed.

A typical application for special DNS forwarding results for a home workstation: The user wants to be able to connect to the company intranet and directly to the Internet at the same time. The requests sent into the intranet must be routed to the company DNS server, and all other requests to the DNS server of the provider.

General DNS forwarding

All DNS requests that cannot be resolved in another way are forwarded to a DNS server. This DNS server is determined according to the following rules:

- Initially the router checks whether a DNS server has been entered in its own settings. If it is successful there, it obtains the desired information from this server. Up to two higher-level DNS servers can be specified.

LANconfig: TCP/IP / Addresses / Primary DNS / Secondary DNS

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / TCP-IP / DNS-default / DNS-backup

- If no DNS server is entered in the router, it will attempt to reach a DNS server over a PPP connection (e.g. from the Internet provider) to get the IP address assigned to the name from there. This can only succeed if the address of a DNS server is sent to the router during PPP negotiation.
- The default route is established and the DNS server searched for there if no connection exists.

This procedure does not require you to have any knowledge of the DNS server address. Entering the Intranet address of your router as the DNS server for the workstation computers is sufficient to enable you obtain the name assignment. This procedure also automatically updates the address of the DNS server. Your local network always receives the most current information even if, for example, the provider sending the address changes the name of his DNS server or you change to another provider.

19.3.3 Setting up the DNS server

The settings for the DNS server are contained in the following menu or list:

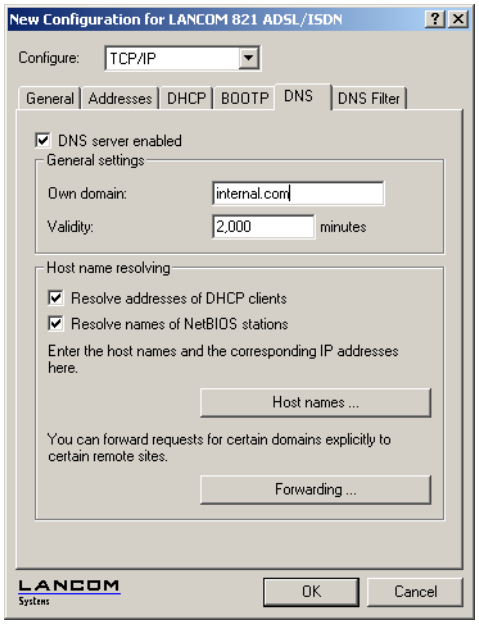
LANconfig:TCP/IP / DNS

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / DNS

Proceed as follows to set the DNS server:

1. Switch the DNS server on.
2. Enter the domain in which the DNS server is located. The DNS server uses this domain to determine whether the requested name is located in the LAN. Entering the domain is optional.

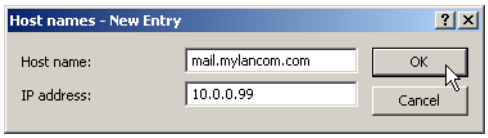
3. Specify whether information from the DHCP server and the NetBIOS module should be used.



1. The main task of the DNS server is to distinguish requests for names in the Internet from those for other remote stations. Therefore, enter all computers in the Host names table,

   - for which you know the name and IP address,
   - that are not located in your own LAN,
   - that are not on the Internet and
   - that are accessible via the router.

   For example, if would like to access the mail server at your headquarters (name: mail.yourdomain.com, IP: 10.0.0.99) via the router from a branch office, enter:



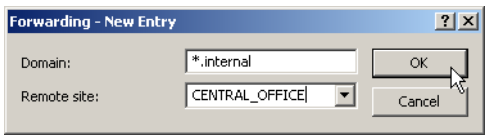
   Stating the domain is optional but recommended.

   When you now start your mail program, it will probably automatically look for the server 'mail.yourdomain.com'. The DNS server thereupon returns the IP address '10.0.0.99'. The mail program will then look for that IP address. With the proper entries in the IP routing table and peer list, a connection is automatically established to the network in the headquarters, and finally to the mail server.

2. To resolve entire name areas of another DNS server, add a forwarding entry consisting of a name area and remote station:

   When entering the name areas, the wildcards '?' (for individual characters) and '*' (for multiple characters) may be used.

   To reroute all domains with the ending '.intern' to a DNS server in the LAN of the remote station 'COMPANY', create the following entry:



The DNS server may either be specified by the remote site name (for automatic setting via PPP), or by an explicit IP address of the according name server.

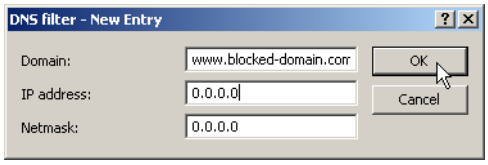
19.3.4 URL blocking

1. Finally, one can restrict access to certain names or domains with the filter list.

   To block the domain (in this case the web server) 'www.offlimits.com' for all computers in the LAN, the following commands and entries are required:

   LANconfig: TCP/IP / DNS Filter / DNS filter... / Add

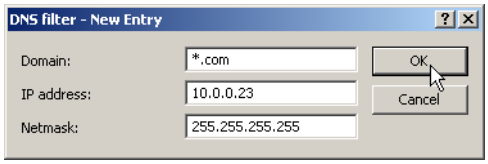
   WEBconfig: … / Filter-list / Add



   The index '001' in the console command can be selected as desired and is used only for clarity.

When entering the domains, the wildcards '?' (represents exactly one character) and '*' (for any number of characters) are permitted.

To only block the access of a certain computer (e.g. with IP 10.0.0.123) to COM domains, enter the following values:



In the console mode the command is:

```
set 002 *.com 10.0.0.123 255.255.255.255
```

The hit list in the DNS statistics contains the 64 most frequently requested names and provides a good basis for setting up the filter list.

If your LAN uses subnetting, you can also apply filters to individual departments by carefully selecting the IP addresses and subnet masks. The IP address '0.0.0.0' stands for all computers in the network, and the subnet mask '0.0.0.0' for all networks.

19.3.5 Dynamic DNS

Systems with dynamic IP addresses become accessible over the WAN - for example over the Internet - via so-called Dynamic DNS service providers, e.g. www.dynDNS.org.

Thereby a LANCOM becomes available under a certain DNS-resolvable name (FQDN -'fully qualified Domain Name', for example "http://MyLANCOM.dynDNS.org").

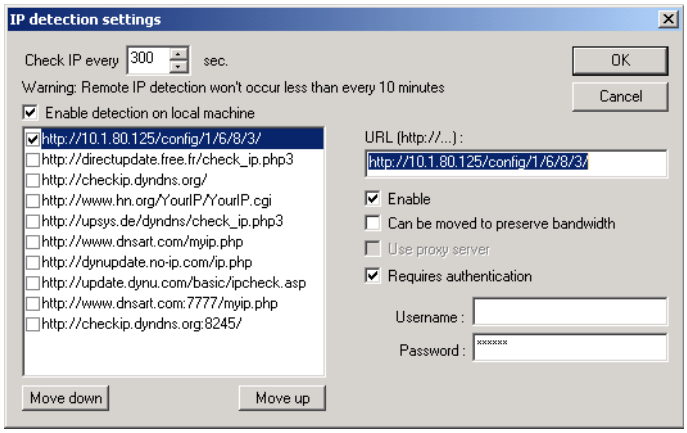
The advantage is obvious: If you want to accomplish e.g. remote maintenance for a remote site without ISDN available (e.g. over WEBconfig/HTTPS), or to connect with the LANCOM VPN Client to a branch office with dynamic IP address, then you just need to know the appropriate Dynamic DNS name.

How to deposit the current IP address at the Dynamic DNS server?

All Dynamic DNS provider support a set of client programs, which can determine the current assigned WAN IP address of a LANCOM via different methods , and transfer this address - in case of a change - to their respective Dynamic DNS server .

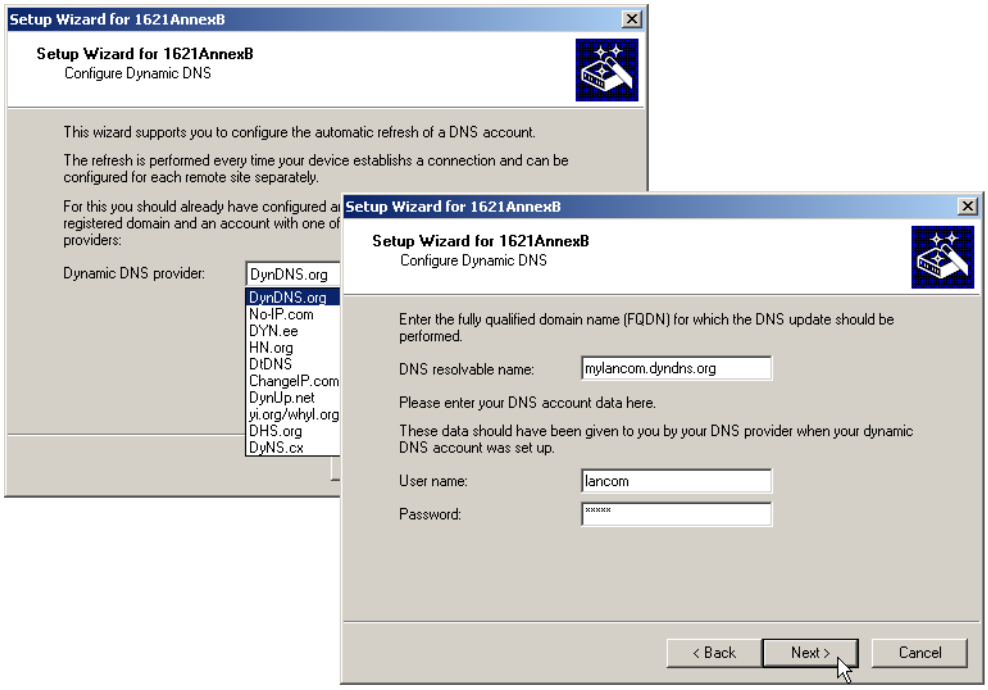
The current WAN IP address of a LANCOM can be picked under the following address:

```
http://<address of LANCOM>/config/1/6/8/3/
```



Alternatively the LANCOM can directly transmit the present WAN IP to the DynDNS provider.

The required settings can be changed comfortably with the Setup Wizard:



19.3.6 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.82

DNS forwarding configurable per ARF context

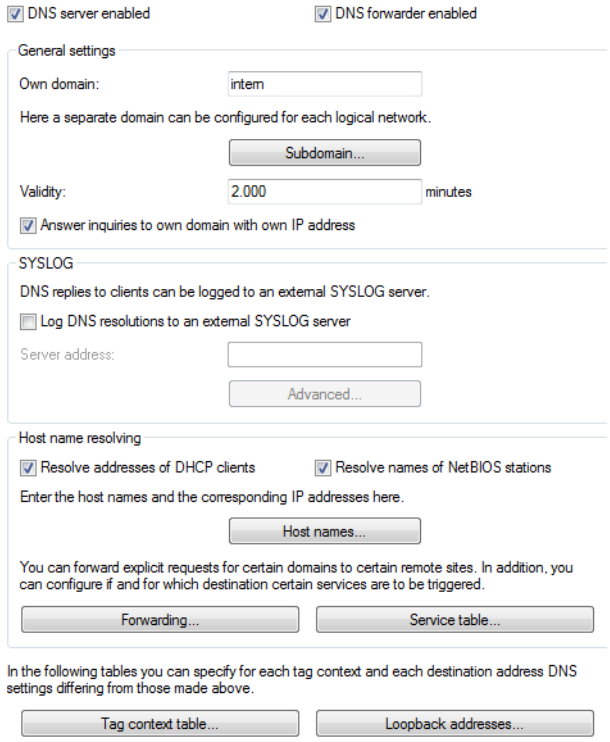
As of LCOS version 8.82 multiple independent forwarding definitions (especially general wildcard definitions with "*") are possible for DNS forwarding by identifying them with unique routing tags. Depending on the routing context of the requesting client, the router considers only the forwarding entries that are identified accordingly and the general entries marked with "0".

Advanced Routing and Forwarding (ARF)

Routing tags for DNS forwarding

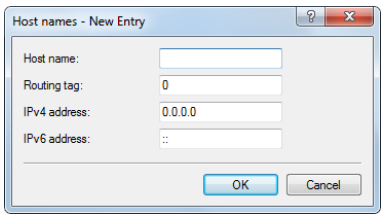
With DNS forwarding, it is possible to set up multiple forwarding definitions (especially general wildcard definitions with "*") that are independent of one another by marking them with unique routing tags. Depending on the routing context

of the requesting client, the router considers only those forwarding entries that are correspondingly tagged and any general entries that are marked with “0”.



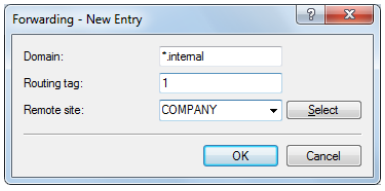
Station name

The item **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Host names** is used to define the tag context and IP number used by the device to resolve the station names.



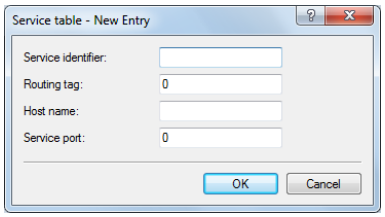
DNS destinations

The item **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Forwarding** is used to set the routing tags for the forwarding rules, so ensuring they only apply when the correct routing tags are used.



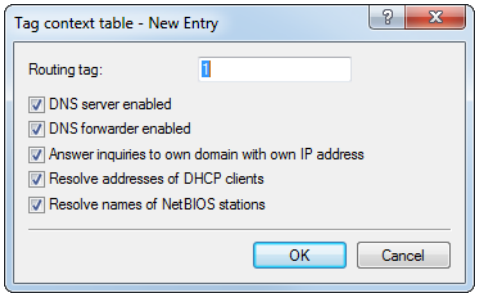
Service table

The item **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Service table** is used to assign routing tags to the services, so ensuring that they are only available when the correct routing tags are used.



Tag context table

In LANconfig under **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Tag context table**, tag contexts can be defined which override the global settings of the DNS server for specific interface and routing tags (routing context):



If an entry for a tag context exists, then only the DNS settings in this table apply for this context. However, if there is no entry in this table, then the global settings of the DNS server apply.

The following options are possible for each tag context:

Routing tag

Unique interface or routing tag in the range of 1 to 65535, the subsequent settings will override the global settings of the DNS server.

DNS server enabled

Enables the DNS server of the device.

DNS forwarder enabled

Enables DNS forwarders for this device.

Answer inquiries to own domain with own IP address

If enabled, DNS requests relating to the router's own domain will be answered with the router's IP address.

Resolve addresses of DHCP clients

Enables resolution of station names that have requested an IP address through DHCP.

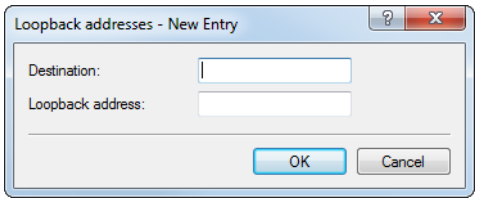
Resolve names of NetBIOS stations

Enables resolution of station names that are known to the NetBIOS router.

Loopback addresses

LANconfig allows loopback addresses to be specified for every remote site under **IPv4** > **DNS** > **Loopback addresses**. Consequently, there is an adjustable sender address for DNS forwarding. Each loopback address consists of exactly one

remote site and loopback address. Since only one remote site can be entered per loopback address, two entries are required here if the DNS Destinations have been configured with two remote sites for one domain.



The following options are possible for each loopback address:

Destination

The remote site for a loopback address. This is either an interface name, an IPv4 or IPv6 address. A routing tag can be added after an "@". The remote site must also be in the DNS Destinations table.

Source address

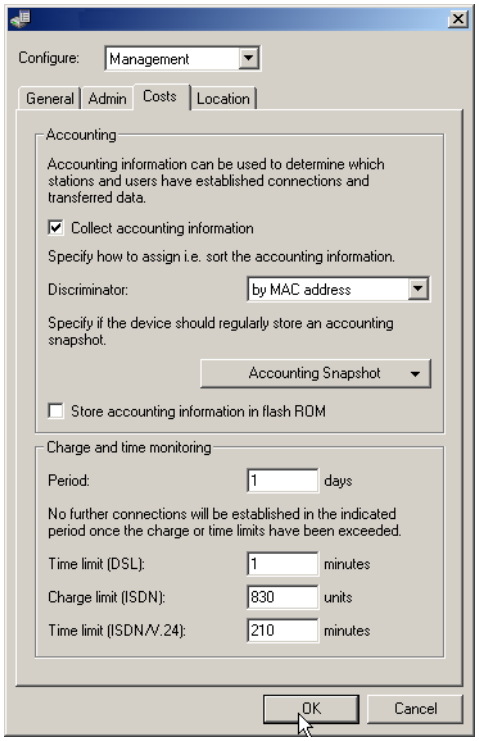
The loopback address for a specific remote site. This is either an interface name, an IPv4 or IPv6 address or a known loopback address.

19.4 Accounting

Information on connections between clients in the local network and various remote stations is saved in the accounting table with entries for the connection time and the transferred data volume. Using accounting snapshots, accounting data can be regularly saved at specific times for later evaluation.

19.4.1 Configuring accounting

When configuring accounting, the general parameters must be defined:



LANconfig: Management / Costs

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Accounting

- Collect accounting information
  - Turn accounting on or off.
- Store accounting information in flash ROM
  - Turn accounting data in flash memory on or off. Accounting data saved to flash will not be lost in the event of a power outage.
- Discriminator

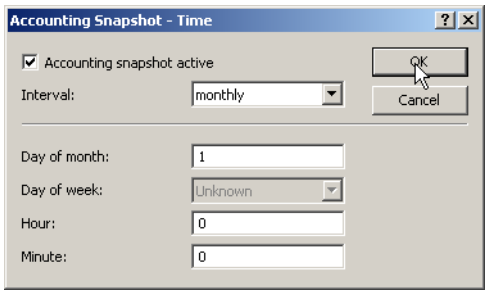
  Selection of the feature according to which the accounting data are to be gathered:
  - MAC address: The data are collected according to the client's MAC address.
  - IP address: The data are collected according to the client's IP address.

  When varying IP addresses are in use, e.g. when using a DHCP server, the option 'IP address' can lead to inaccurate accounting data. In this case, it may not be possible to accurately assign the data to users. Conversely, with this setting, data can be separated from clients that are behind another router and therefore appear with the same MAC address as the router in the accounting list.
- Sort according to

  Select here whether the data should be sorted in the accounting table according to connection times or data volume.

19.4.2 Snapshot configuration

When configuring the snapshot, the interval is set in which the accounting data are temporarily saved into a snapshot:



LANconfig: Management / Costs / Accounting Snapshot

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Accounting / Time snapshot

The snapshot function can only be used when the device is set with the correct system time.

- Accounting snapshot active
  - Turn intermediate storage of accounting data on or off.
- Interval
  - Daily, weekly or monthly
- Day of month

  The day of the month on which caching will take place: Only relevant if the interval is 'monthly'.
- Day of week

  The weekday on which caching will take place. Only relevant if the interval is 'weekly'.

- Hour

  The hour on which caching will take place:

  - '0' to '23'

- Minute

  The minute in which caching will take place:

  - '0' to '59'

19.5 Call charge management

The capability of the router to automatically establish connections to all desired remote sites and to close them again when no longer required provides users with extremely convenient access, e.g. to the Internet. However, quite substantial costs may be incurred by data transfer over paid lines if the router is not configured properly (e.g. in the filter configuration) or by excessive use of the communications opportunities (e.g. extended surfing in the Internet).

To reduce these costs, the software provides various options:

- The available online minutes can be restricted to a specific period.
- For ISDN connections, a limit on time or charges can be set for a particular period.

19.5.1 Connection limits for DSL and cable modem

Even though a DSL or cable modem connection behaves like a leased line, which is always online, depending on the provider connection charges can be accounted by the time.

In this section all connections over a ethernet WAN port of the LANCOM, e. g. cable modem connection, will be referred as DSL connection.

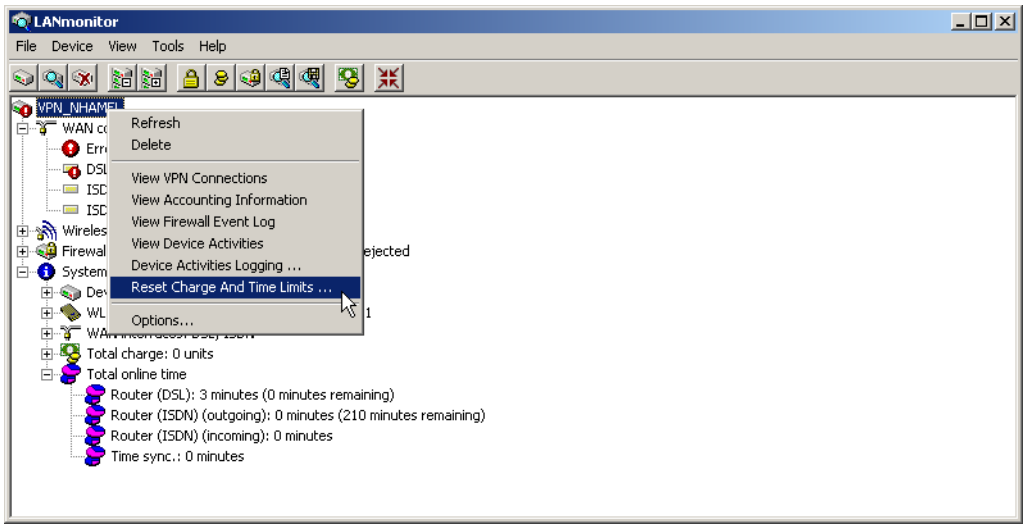
To limit the costs, the maximal connection duration can be controlled with time, by arranging a time limit for DSL connections for a period of time. By default the DSL connections can only be used for a maximum of 600 minutes in six days.

If the limit is reached, all DSL connections are automatically terminated. As soon as the current period has passed the time count is reset and the connection enabled. The administrator can of course reset the time count and enable the connection beforehand.

If the connection has a charge limit and a short hold of '0' or '9999' seconds, the charge control is switched off and the connection is kept even if the limit is exceeded.

If in an exceptional case you would like to extend the online budget, e.g. to download a large file from the internet, you do not necessarily have to change the time limit. In this case you can manually reset the limit.

Click with the right mouse button on the error in LANmonitor and select in the menu the entry 'Reset Charge And Time Limit'



If you cannot see the system information in LANmonitor, activate the view with **View** / **Show Details** / **System Information**.

In WEBconfig and in the console the commands to activate the additional time limit are as follows:

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Charges / Activate-additional-budget

The additional time limit is activated for the current period, in the following period normal time limit is set.

19.5.2 Charge-based ISDN connection limits

If charge information is sent to an ISDN connection, the resulting connection charges can be limited quite easily. For example, in its default state, a maximum of 830 charge units may be used in six days. The router will not permit the establishment of any further connections once this limit has been reached.

The best way to use the router's call charge monitoring function is if you have “call charge information enabled **during** the connection” to the ISDN network (i.e. AOCD). If necessary, subscribe to this facility from your telecommunications carrier. Charge monitoring with the “Charge information **after** connection” feature is also possible in principle, but in this case continuous connections may not be detected!

19.5.3 Time dependent ISDN connection limit

However, this mechanism of ISDN connection monitoring will not work if the ISDN connection does not provide charge information. That may be the case, for example, if the provision of charge information was not requested for the connection, or if the telecommunications provider generally does not supply this information.

To reduce the costs of ISDN connections even if no call charge information is available, maximum connection lengths based on time can be regulated. This requires setting up a time budget for a specified period. In the router's default state, for example, connections may only be established for a maximum of 210 minutes within six days.

When the limit of a budget is reached, all open connections that were initiated by the router itself will be shut down automatically.The budgets will not be reset to permit the establishment of connections until the current period has elapsed. Needless to say, the administrator can reset the budgets at any time if required!

The charge and time monitoring of the router functions can be disabled by entering a budget of 0 units or 0 minutes.

Only the router functions are protected by the charge and time monitoring functions! Connections via LANCAPI are not affected.

19.5.4 Settings in the charge module

LANconfig: Management / Costs

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Charges

In the charges module, the online time can be monitored and used to control call establishment.

- Day(s)/Period

  The duration of the monitoring period in days can be specified here.

- Budget units, Online minutes budget

  The maximum number of ISDN units or online minutes in a monitoring period

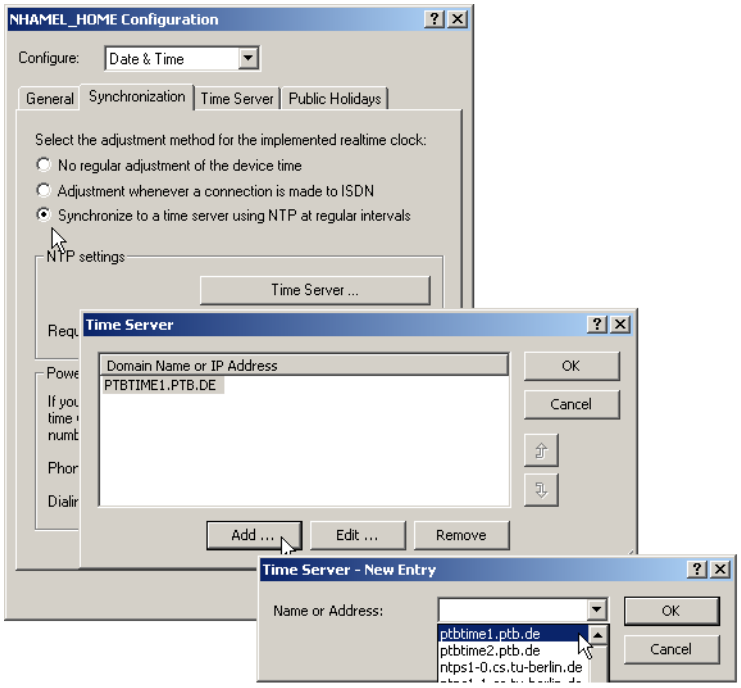
> The current charge and connect-time information is retained when rebooting (e.g. when installing new firmware) is not lost until the unit is switched off. All the time references here are in minutes.

19.6 Time server for the local net

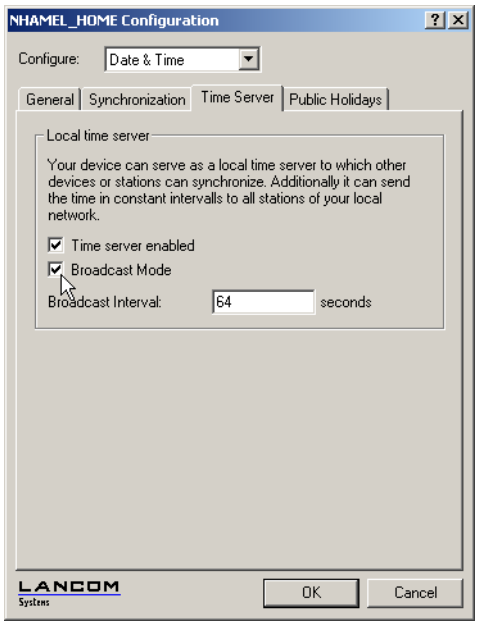
LANCOM routers can apply exact information of time either over ISDN or over public time servers on the internet (NTP-Server with 'Open Access' policy). The LANCOM can then provide the detected time for all stations in the local network.

19.6.1 Configuration of the time server under LANconfig

To provide the current time in the local network your LANCOM has to regularly apply the time from a time server. For this so called real time clock click in the configuration area 'Date & time' on the tab 'Synchronization'. Under 'NTP settings' open the list of time servers by clicking on the button **Time Server ...**. With the button **Add...** you can extend the list.



With these settings only the LANCOM applies the time from public time servers. To provide the real time for the remaining device enable the local time server under the tab 'Time Server'. Furthermore activate the broadcast mode and enter the broadcast interval.



19.6.2 Configuration of the time server with WEBconfig or Telnet

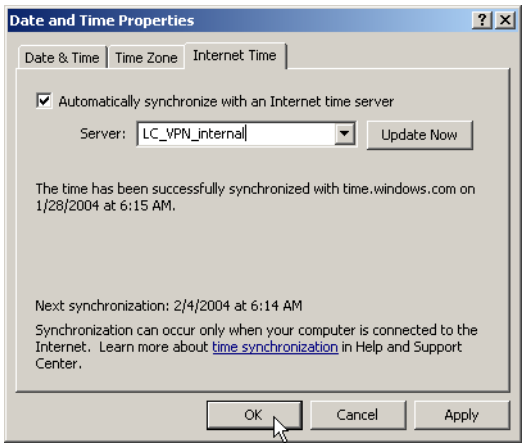
When configuring with WEBconfig or Telnet you can find the required parameters in the following areas:

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / NTP

19.6.3 Configuring the NTP clients

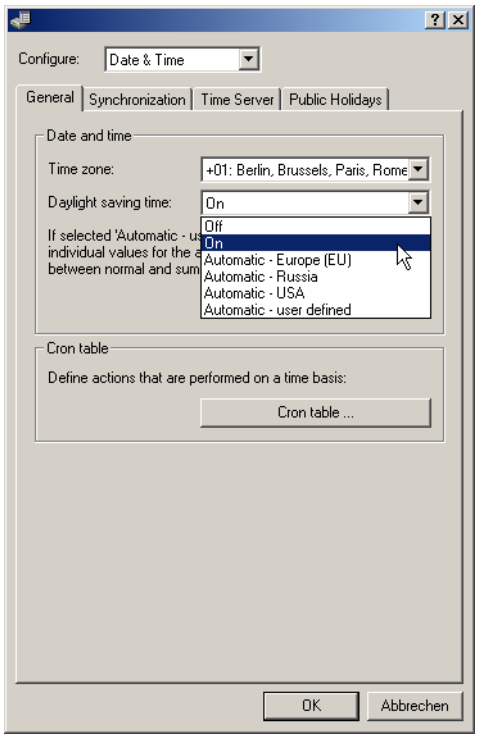
The NTP clients must be configured so that they use the time information from the LANCOM. Not all operating systems provide an integrated NTP client: Windows XP does so, for other Windows operating systems a separate NTP client is required, Linux distributions have to be installed with NTP.

The settings of date and time in a XP system can be opened with a double click on the time at the bottom left, where you can select the server for synchronization.



> **Configuring daylight-saving time change according to UTC**

LANCOM devices work internally with the coordinated world time (UTC). For protocol displays and time-related settings (e.g. cron jobs), the local time is taken as calculated from the defined time zone. To take local daylight-saving time into account, settings can be configured according to requirements.



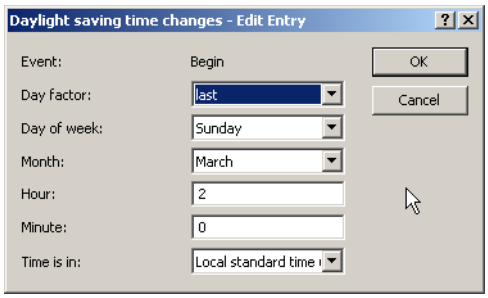
LANconfig: Date & time / General

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Time / Daylight-saving time

- Daylight-saving time
  - Off: The system time will not be adjusted to daylight-saving time.
  - On: As long as this option is enabled, one hour is added statically to the current system time (comprised of UTC and time zone).
  - Automatic (EU, USA, Russia): In this setting, the daylight-saving time change is performed automatically in conformance with the time zone of the device's location.
  - Automatic (user-defined): If the device is located in an area that is not listed here, then the daylight-saving time change options can be manually defined by the user.

User-defined daylight-saving time change

User-defined values can be set for the beginning and the end of the automatic daylight-saving time change.



LANconfig:Date & time / General / Daylight-saving time

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Time / DST clock changes

- Index
  - First, second, third, fourth, last, second to last, third to last, fourth to last: The time change will take place on this recurring day of the month.
- Day of week
  - Monday to Sunday: The day on which the change will take place.
- Month
  - January to December: The month on which the change will take place.
- Hour
  - 0 to 23: The hour in which the change will take place.
- Minute
  - 0 to 59: The minute in which the change will take place.
- Time type
  - Local standard time or UTC: Defines the time zone the data refers to.

In the last hour of daylight-saving time or the first hour that follows in standard time, it is possible for time entries to be ambiguous. If the time is acquired via ISDN or set manually during this time, then it is always assumed that the time entry is in daylight-saving time.

19.7 Scheduled Events

19.7.1 Regular Execution of Commands

This feature is intended to allow the device to execute predefined commands in a telnet-like environment, at times defined by the user. The functionality is equivalent to the UNIX cron service. Subject of execution can be any LANCOM command line command. Therefore, the full feature set of all LANCOM devices can be controlled by this facility.

Application examples:

- scheduled connection

  Many leased lines disconnect automatically after 24 hours of continuous operation. This enforced disconnection can have some unwanted side-effects for example if it happens to an unsuitable time during the day, because e.g. the VPN tunnel is disconnected and the IP address of the LANCOM is changed. To control the disconnecting time a manual disconnection can be set e.g. at midnight, so it can not happen at an unsuitable time.

  As a second example devices with a distributed network with only dynamic IP addresses can build up a connection at a certain time to a VPN gateway, so that data can be transferred safely. This way a protected access is even possible without an ISDN connection.

- time-dependant firewall or QoS rules

  The firewall and QoS rules are at first temporally constant. But it can be useful to make variable settings for different daytimes or weekdays. At e. g. off-hours or weekends different priorities for guaranteed bandwidths can be set than at business hours.

- regular firmware or configuration updates

  Time-controlled rules do not only provide the settings of particular values, it is even possible to switch to a whole different configuration. This possibility allows you to pool a whole string of settings and change them all at once

with one command. Therefore changing the configuration of the device with completely different values at the weekend and switching back on monday mornings can be done with just one command.

Additionally the regular update of the newest firmware from one single source is adjustable.

- Email messages

  With the time-controlled rules you have the option that the LANCOM informs the administrator by email not only about specific firewall events, but even to set times. The email can e.g. inform about building up an internet connection successfully after an enforced disconnection or after booting the device because of a restart.

- time-dependant interfaces

  The time dependant use of interfaces for a set duration is also provided by the time-controlled rules. Therewith e.g. a WLAN interface can permit the wireless access to the network only at certain times.

- Deleting certain tables

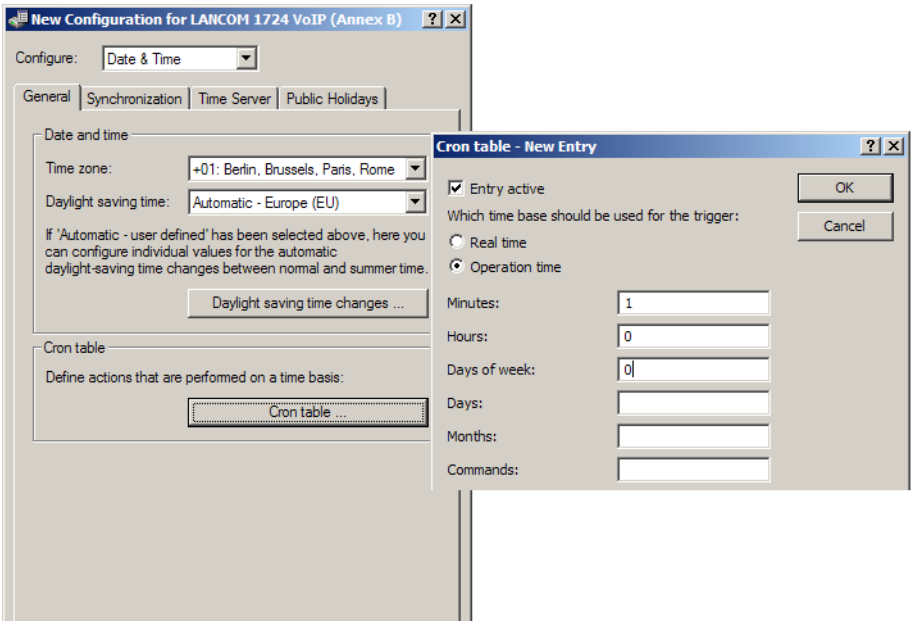
  It can be useful to delete the content of some tables in LCOS regularly. If your internet access for example has a monthly limited transfer volume, you can delete your accounting table monthly to have a survey of the present transferred data volume.

19.7.2 CRON jobs with time delay

CRON jobs are used to carry out recurring tasks on a LANCOM automatically at certain times. If the installation features a large number of active devices, all of which are subjected to the same CRON job at the same time (e.g. updating a configuration by script), unpleasant side effects can result if, for example, all devices try to establish a VPN connection at once. To avoid these effects, the CRON jobs can be set with a random delay time between 0 and 59 minutes.

19.7.3 Configuring the CRON job

The following parameters are available in the LANCOM for configuring CRON jobs:



LANconfig: Date & time / General / CRON table

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Config / CRON table

- Entry active

  Activates or deactivates the entry.

  - Default: Active

- Time base

  The 'Time base' field determines whether time control is based on real time or on the device's operating time.

  - Real time: These rules evaluate all time/date information.
  - Operation time: These rules only evaluate the minutes and hours since the last time the device was started.
  - Default: Real time

- Minutes
- Hours
- Week days
- Month days
- Months

  The values 'minutes' to 'months' define the times when a command is to be executed. With no value entered, it is not included in the controlling. For each parameter, a comma-separated list of values can be entered, or alternatively a range of minimum and maximum values.

  The syntax of the 'Week day' field corresponds with the usual CRON interpretation:

  - 0: Sunday
  - 1: Monday
  - 2: Tuesday
  - 3: Wednesday
  - 4: Thursday
  - 5: Friday
  - 6: Saturday

- Command

  The command to be executed or a comma-separated list of commands. **Any** LANCOM command-line function can be executed.

- Owner

  An administrator defined in the device can be designated as owner of the CRON job. If an owner is defined, then the CRON job commands will be executed with the rights of the owner.

  - Default: root

- Variation

  This parameter specifies the maximum delay in minutes for the start of the CRON job after the set start time. The actual delay time is determined randomly and lies between 0 and the time entered here.

  - Default: 0
  - Values: 0 to 65535 seconds.
  - Particular values: With the variation set to zero the CRON job will be executed at the set time.

Real-time based rules can only be executed if the device has a time from a relevant source, e.g. via NTP.

Examples:

time base	min.	hours	w.-days	m.-days	months	command
real time	0	4	0-6	1-31	1-12	do /oth/man/disconnect internet
real time	59	3	0-6	1-31	1-12	mailto:admin@mylancom.de?subject=disconnection?body=Manual disconnection of the internet connection
real time	0	0		1		do /setup/accounting/delete
real time	0	18	1,2,3,4,5			do /oth/man/connect HEADQUARTER

- The first entry cuts the connection to the internet provider every morning at 4 am (forced disconnection).
- The second entry sends an information mail every morning at 3:59 am (directly before the forced disconnection) to the admin.
- The third entry deletes on the first of every month the accounting table.
- The fourth entry builds up a connection to the headquarter every week day at 6 pm.

Time based rules are performed with an exactness of one minute. Please keep in mind, that the language of the used commands should be the same as the language of the console, otherwise the commands of the time automatic can not be considered. The default language is english, but can be changed.

19.8 PPPoE Servers

19.8.1 Introduction

In accordance with the widespread availability of DSL, PPPoE clients have now been widely integrated into all operating systems. These can be used to "log on to the network" as well as to manage access rights to services such as the Internet, e-mail or remote stations.

PPPoE can only be used on a network segment.

As it is what is known as a "Layer 2" technology, PPPoE can only be used within a network segment, i.e. it cannot be used across IP subnets. The PPPoE connection cannot be established across network segment limits, such as via a router.

After a user logs on to the LAN (e.g. username: 'Purchasing', password: 'secret') using a specified PPPoE logon, further rights can be regulated via the firewall. This enters the PPPoE user name as a 'remote station' in the firewall. With a deny all rule, and a PPPoE rule in the following format, user Anyone can be permitted to use the Internet with Web and FTP:

- Source: Anyone
- Target: All stations

Services: WWW, FTP

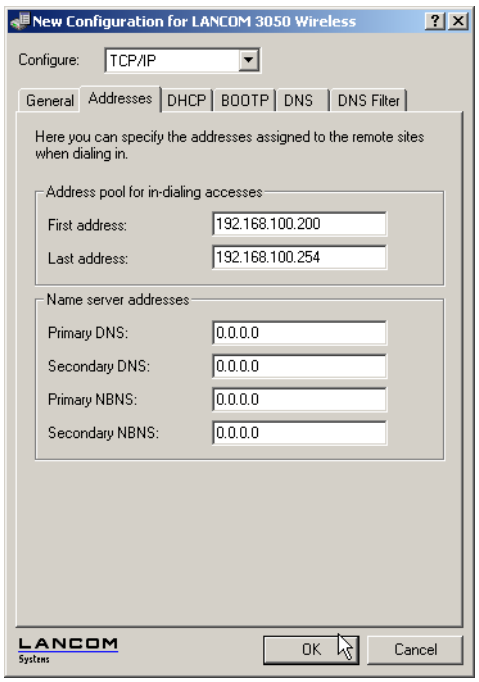
19.8.2 Example application

All employees in the 'Purchasing' department must first authenticate themselves to the LANCOM using PPoE (IP routing, PAP check) in order to access the Internet.

Constraint: The LANCOM can be accessed directly by the users in the LAN as a router, firewall and gateway, i.e. there are no other routers in between them.

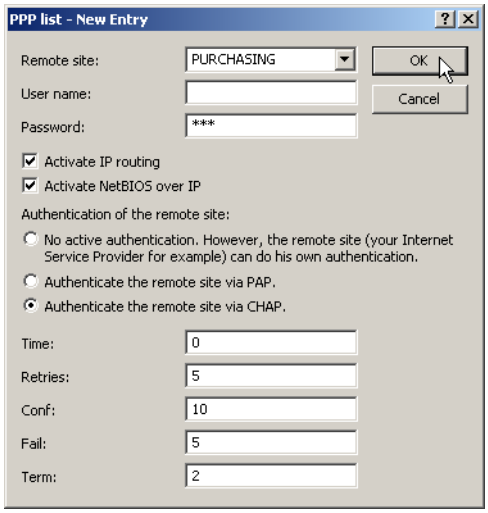
The computers in Purchasing are assigned with an IP address from a certain address range (e.g. 192.168.100.200 to 192.168.100.254) from the list of addresses for dial-in connections (LANconfig/ TCP/IP / Addresses).

The LANCOM itself is in a different IP address range!

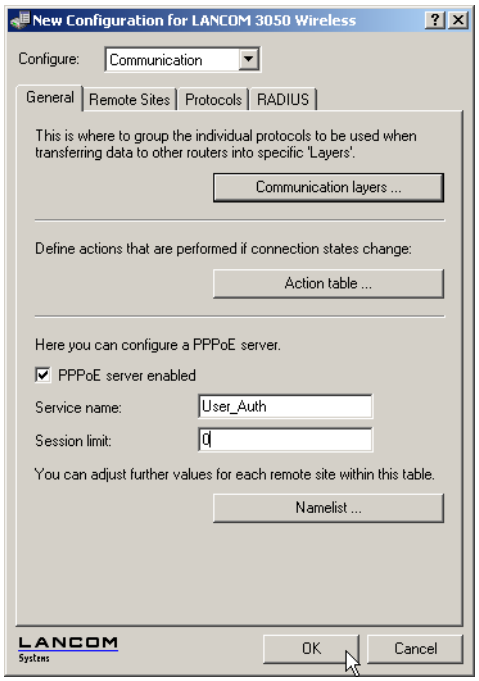


To prevent users from bypassing the authentication, a DENY ALL rule is defined in the firewall to stop local connections from being established.

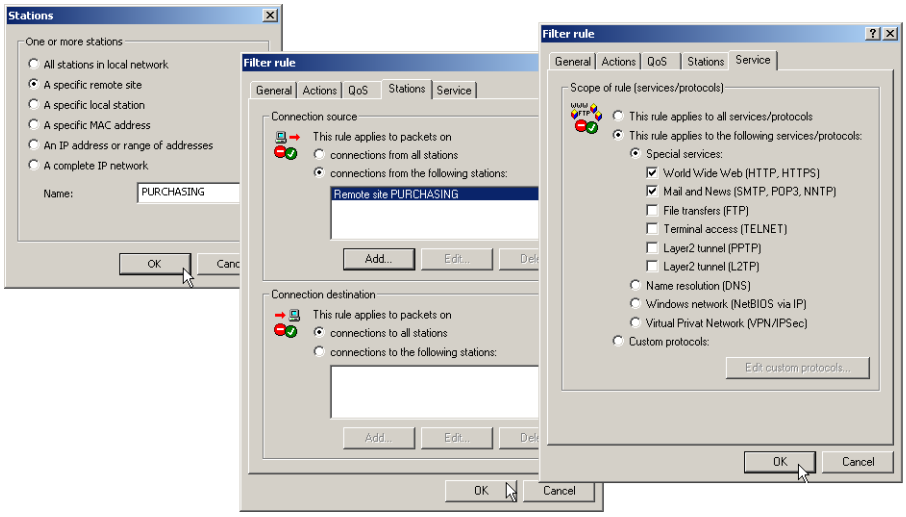
The user 'Purchasing' is then entered into the PPP list (LANconfig / Communication / Protocols) without a user name but with a password which is to be used by all staff members in the department, and authentication (encrypted) is set up as CHAP. Both IP routing and NetBIOS (Windows Networking) are to be activated for this PPP user:



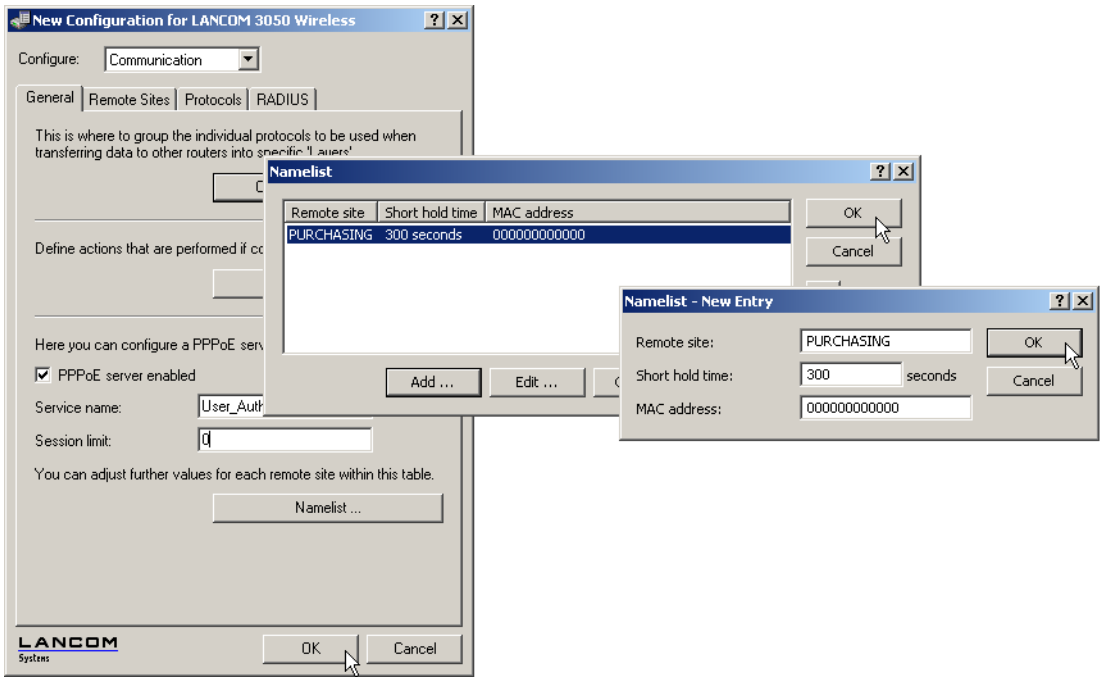
Along with the activation of the PPPoE server (LANconfig / Communication / General), further limitations (e.g. permissible MAC addresses) can also be defined in the PPPoE server. The example uses the existing entry 'DEFAULT' with the MAC address '00.00.00.00.00.00', thereby permitting all MAC addresses.



The firewall (LANconfig / Firewall/QoS / Rules) can be used to control which services are available to the employees in Purchasing (e.g. release of HTTP and EMAIL only).



19.8.3 Configuration



LANconfig: Communication / General

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / PPPoE server

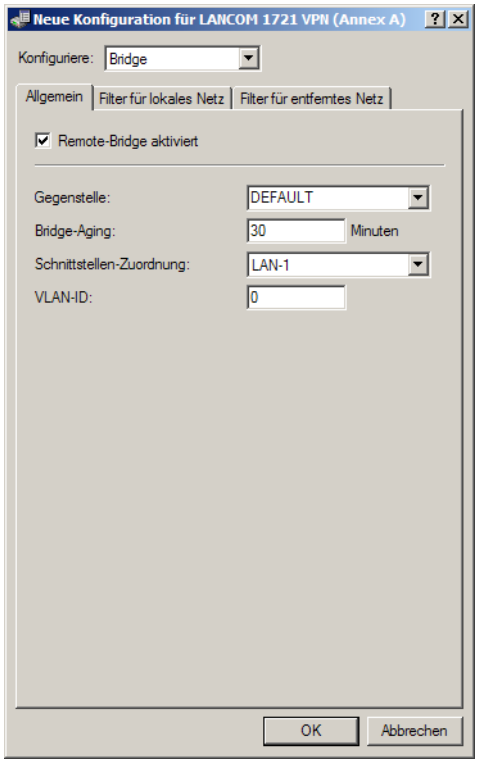
- **Operating**: The 'Operating' button switches the server on or off. The default value is 'Off'.
- **Service**: The name of the service offered is entered under 'Service'. This enables a PPPoE client to select a certain PPPoE server that is entered for the client.
- **Session limit**: The 'Session limit' specifies how often a client can be logged on simultaneously with the same MAC address. Once the limit has been reached, the server no longer responds to the client queries that are received. Default value is '1', maximum value '99'. A Session limit of '0' stands for an unlimited number of sessions.
- **Name list**: Different parameters (such as shorthold time and MAC address) can be assigned to users in the name list:

  A MAC address of '000000000000' means that the user may log on with any MAC address. If a MAC address is entered, then the PPP negotiation is terminated if the user logs on from a different MAC address. The user's shorthold time is set after the logon. If no entry exists, then the time belonging to user 'DEFAULT' is used.

  In addition to this table, an entry has to be made in the PPP table in which the password, the rights (IP, IPX,NetBIOS) and other PPP parameters (LCP polling) are entered. The user can therefore also be authenticated using a RADIUS server.

19.9 Remote bridge

The remote bridge links two remotely networks, as they would be linked physical. The two networks are completely independently from the used network protocols.



LANconfig: Bridge / General

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Bridge

- Remote station

  Name of the remote station, which is linked with the remote bridg.

- Bridge-Aging

  Duration after a once learned MAC address will be deleted.

- Interface allocation

  Logical interface, which the remote bridge is assigned to.

  For the interface allocation are no WLANs possible, because the WAN bridge exists only in devices without WLAN. Therefore the interface allocation “any” is not possible.

- VLAN-ID

  ID of the VLAN, on which the remote bridge is active.

19.10 Operating printers at the USB connector of the LANCOM

With the USB port of various LANCOM models, printers can be connected up and made available to the entire network. The LANCOM provides a print server to manage the printing jobs from the network. Supported protocols are RawIP and LPR/LPD.

Parallel print jobs arriving from different stations are saved on the respective computer. The print server in the LANCOM processes the waiting jobs one after the other.

19.10.1 Configuring the printer server in the LANCOM

When configuring the USB port for the connection of a printer, the first thing is to define the ports which will receive the print jobs as transported by the various protocols.

Printer table

The printer table contains the settings for the connected printer.

WEBconfig: Expert-Configuration / Setup / Printer / Printer

Normally there will be no need to adjust the printer settings. With the default settings, the print server works with RawIP and LPR/LPD and reacts to the standard ports as suggested by Windows when the printer connection is being configured. If printer operation does not work with these settings, the printing parameters can be adjusted.

- **Printer** [Default: *]

  Printer name.

- RawIP-Port [Default: 9100]

  This port can be used to accept print jobs over RawIP.

  RawIP is used by Windows as standard and is recommended for operating printers at a USB port.

- LDP-Port [Default: 515]

  This port can be used to accept print jobs over LDP.

  The protocol and port options entered here must agree with the settings for the printer connection in the corresponding computer's operating system.

- **Active** [Default: No]
  - Yes: The print server is active.
  - No: The print server is not active.
- **Bidirectional** [Default: No]
  - Yes: The LANCOM transmits the printer's status information at regular intervals to the connected computers.
  - No: The LANCOM does not transmit and status information.

Access list:

Up to 16 networks that have access to the configured printer can be entered into the access list.

LANconfig: Printer / General / Access list

WEBconfig: Expert-Configuration / Setup / Printer / Access-List

- **IP address**

IP address of the network with clients requiring access to the printer.

> **Net mask**

Netmask of the permitted networks.

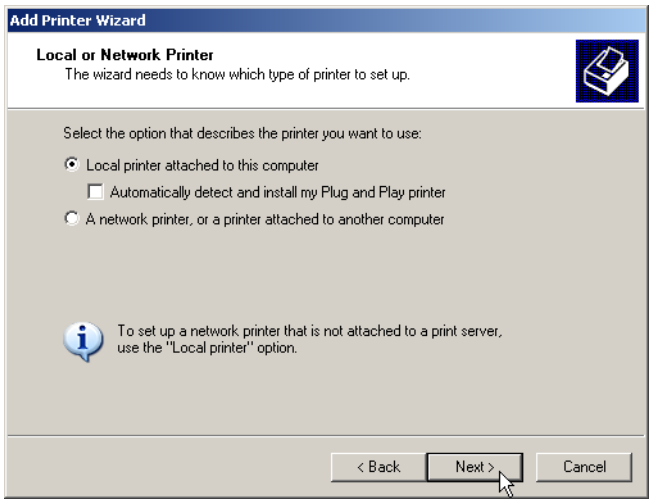
If the access list is empty, any computer with any IP address can use the printer at the LANCOM's USB port.

For reasons of security, access from the WAN to the printer at the USB port of the LANCOM is not permitted.

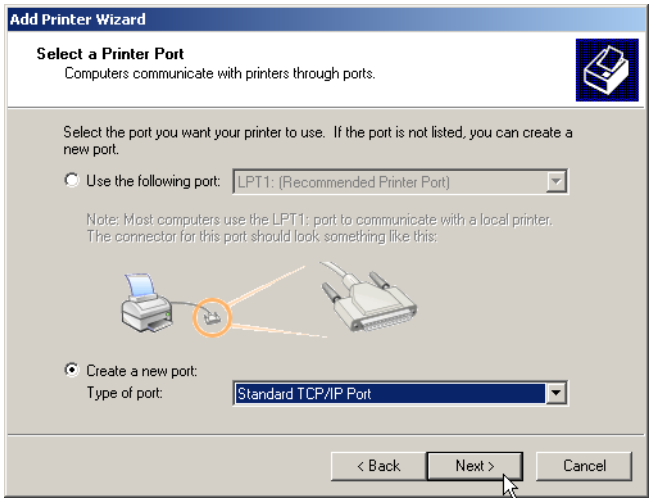
19.10.2 Printer configuration at the computer

To use the printer at the USB port over the network, the printer drivers on the computers have to be connected with a corresponding printer connection. The following is a description of the setup under Windows XP; the configuration under Windows 2000 is similar. Controlling printers via TCP/IP ports with older version of Windows is rather unsatisfactory.

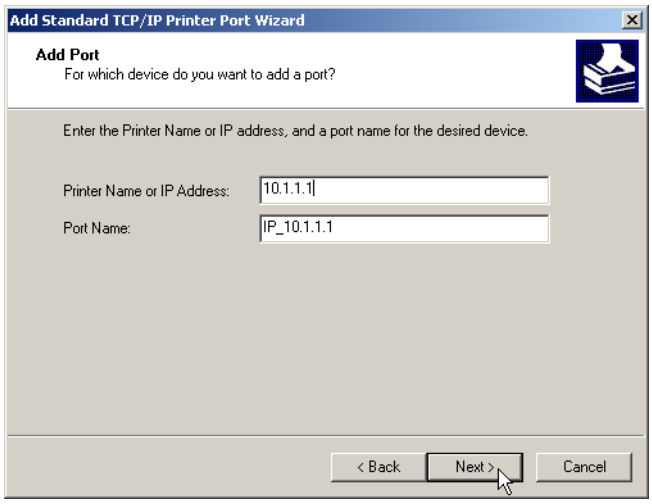
1. In the Control Panel, open the dialog for the configuration of a new printer and start the Wizard to add a new printer.
2. Select the option for a local printer and deactivate Plug&Play.



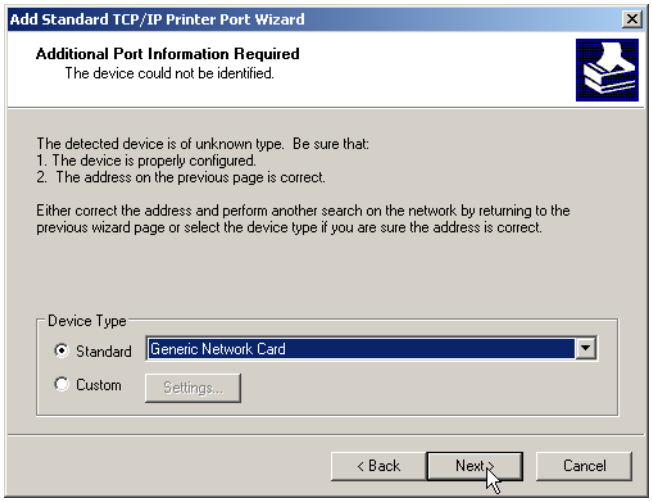
1. Select the option to add a new printer port.



1. Enter the IP address of the LANCOM as the IP address of the printer port. The name for the printer port will automatically be filled out with 'IP_<IP address of the LANCOM>'.

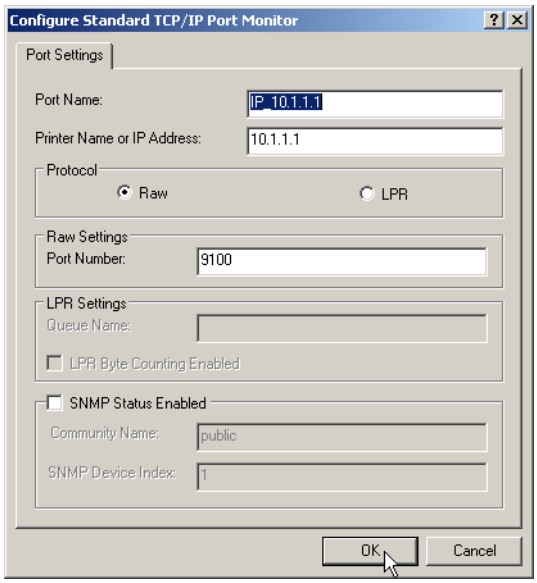


1. As the device type, select the option 'Standard' for a 'Generic Network Card'. If you wish to keep the standard settings (recommended), press on **Next** to proceed to the next dialog.



1. Alternatively, you can select 'Custom' and press on the **Settings** button to open an additional dialog. In this dialog, you can select the protocol to be used for transmitting the print jobs to the printer at the USB port of the LANCOM

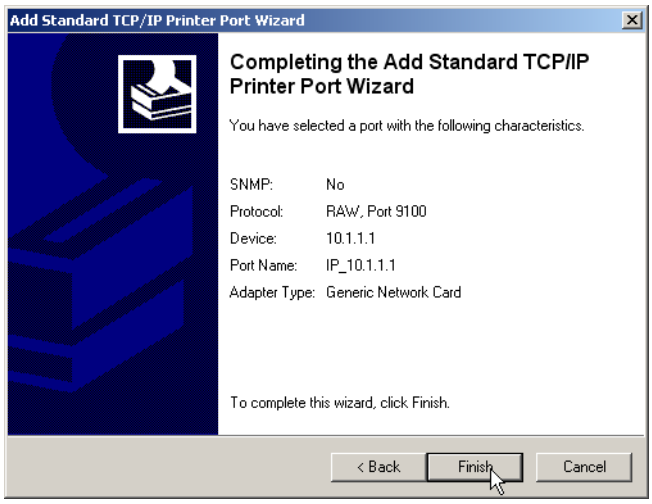
('Raw' for RawIP or 'LPR').. The port to be used can be entered here too (for RawIP only). For LPR, port '515' is always used as standard.



The protocol and port options entered here must agree with the settings for the printer in the LANCOM configuration.

The dialog for selecting the protocol and port can also be accesses via the Control Panel by opening the Printer Properties and accessing the 'Ports' tab.

1. Once the settings have been made, the printer port is set up. The Wizard now goes on with the selection of the printer driver.



Further information about the installation of a printer driver is available in the documentation for the printer.

19.11 Addition(s) to LCOS 7.70

19.11.1 IGMP snooping

Introduction

All LANCOM devices with wireless LAN interfaces feature a "LAN bridge", a software entity for transferring data between the Ethernet ports and the WLAN interface(s). In many ways the LAN bridge works like a switch. The core task of a switch, as opposed to a hub, is to forward packets precisely to the port which the relevant user is connected to. Based on the incoming data packets, the switch automatically creates a table listing the senders' MAC addresses and their ports.

If the table contains the destination address for an incoming packet, the switch forwards the packet to the corresponding port. If the destination address is not in the table, the switch forwards the packet to all ports. This means that a switch can only deliver a packet precisely if the destination address appeared earlier in a packet arriving at a certain port from the sender's address. However, broadcast or multicast packets can never be entered as a sender address into a packet, and so these packets end up being "flooded" to all ports.

This may be the correct action for broadcasts which are supposed to reach all available receivers, but this may not be the case for multicasts. Multicasts are generally aimed at a certain group of receivers within a network, but not all of them:

- For example, video streams are frequently transmitted as multicasts, but not all of the network stations are intended to receive that stream.
- Various applications in the medical field rely on multicasts to send data to certain terminal devices, but this data should not be available to all stations.

A LAN bridge in the LANCOM will have ports to which no multicast recipients are connected. This "unnecessary" transmission of multicasts to ports without any receivers is not an error, but it can compromise overall performance.

- Many stations are unable to reject the unwanted multicasts in their hardware. Instead, the packets are forwarded to higher protocol layers, which leads to an increase in CPU load.
- WLANs are particularly susceptible to bandwidth restrictions due to multicasts if none of the associated WLAN clients want to receive the multicast.

The TCP/IP protocol suite defines a protocol called IGMP that allows network stations to register their desire to receive certain IP multicasts to their router. Stations carry out a multicast registration with their router to subscribe to certain multicast groups which deliver the relevant packets. IGMP makes use of Join messages and Leave messages to register and de-register respectively.

Information about which multicast groups a station can or should join are available from other protocols than IGMP.

As a layer-3 protocol, IGMP only performs multicast guiding/routing for whole IP subnets. However, network devices such as bridges, switches or WLAN access points only forward the packets on layer 2, meaning that IGMP itself does not help in any way to further guide multicast traffic through this substructure. For this reason, the bridges use the multicast registrations between stations and routers to receive additional information for targeting the distribution of multicasts. IP multicasts only need to be forwarded to an interface where a router is located that is capable of multicast routing and therefore of forwarding multicasts to other IP subnets. This method is called IGMP snooping. The bridges, which normally use the MAC on layer 2 for packet forwarding, thus additionally use the layer 3 information in the IP multicast packets.

For more detailed description of the functions of IGMP snooping in LCOS, we have to differentiate between two important terms:

- A port is "member" of a multicast group if at least one station connected to it wishes to receive the packets for a certain multicast address. Multicast registration can be dynamic via IGMP snooping or configured manually.

- A port is a "router port" if it is connected to a router that is capable of multicast routing and therefore of forwarding multicasts to other IP subnets.
- A multicast group is "unregistered" if none of the interfaces attached to the bridge is a member of this multicast group.

IGMP snooping operation

Whenever a packet is received, the bridge initially determines whether it is a unicast, broadcast, or multicast packet. For broadcast and unicast packets, the bridge operates in the usual way, i.e. it floods to all ports or sends to a specific port based on the MAC table entry for the receiver.

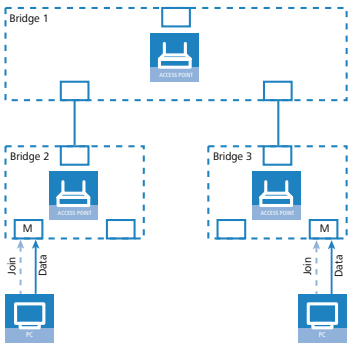
Two types of IP multicast packet are differentiated (whereby packets which are truncated or contain an invalid checksum are discarded entirely):

- IGMP messages are handled in different ways depending on their content:
  - A Join message results in the incoming port becoming member of the respective multicast group. This message is forwarded to router ports only.
  - Similarly, a Leave message results in the incoming port being removed from the multicast group's member list. This message is also forwarded to router ports only.
  - An incoming IGMP query results in the port being marked as a router port. These messages are flooded to all interfaces.
  - All other messages are flooded to all interfaces—no ports experience a change of state.
  - If an IP multicast packet does not contain an IGMP message, the IP destination address is examined. Packets for the destination address "224.0.0.x" are flooded to all ports because this is a "reserved" range. For all other packets the destination address is looked up in the IGMP membership table:
  - If the address is found, the packet is forwarded according to the membership stored in the table.
  - If the address is not found, the packet may either be discarded, flooded to all ports, or forwarded exclusively to all router ports (depending on the configuration).

  In either case, packets are forwarded to all router ports.

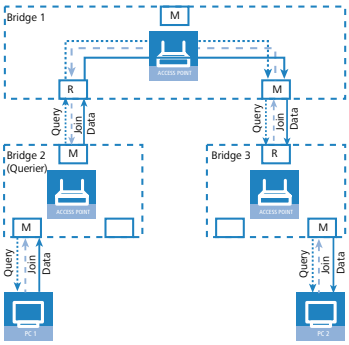
IGMP snooping through multiple bridges

As described, IGMP snooping only forwards incoming Join or Leave messages via router ports. In a structure with multiple bridges, initially none of the ports are router ports or members of a multicast group. If a station connected to the bridge registers with a multicast group, the port automatically becomes a member of this group. However, none of the ports are router ports at this phase, so the Join messages are not forwarded anywhere. Other bridges thus receive no information about the port's membership with the multicast group.



Consequently, bridges must have router ports in order for membership information to be propagated. Since the ports of a bridge only become router ports in the case of IGMP queries, one of the multicast-capable routers in the network must take over the task of distributing the necessary IGMP queries throughout the network. This router is referred to as the IGMP querier. If the network does not contain a multicast router, the LANCOM access points are capable of simulating a querier. To avoid parallel queries arriving from various queriers, a querier will deactivate itself if it discovers another querier with a lower IP number. The distribution of IGMP information by the querier can be explained with the following example:

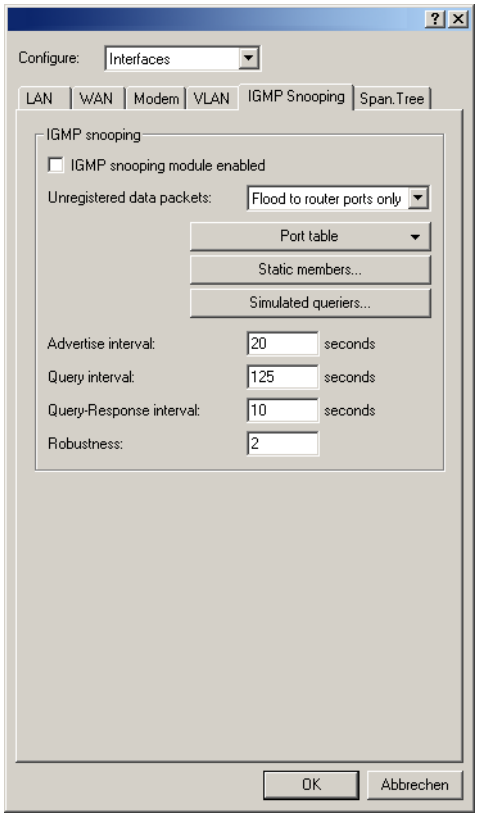
1. The querier (Bridge 2 in this example) regularly sends out IGMP queries on all ports of bridge 2 (dotted lines). The next bridge (Bridge 1) receives the query on a port which is then marked as a router port (R). PC 1 responds to this query with a Join message for all multicast groups (light dashed lines) that it wishes to join. The port connecting PC 1 to Bridge 2 then becomes a member of the multicasting group(s).
2. In addition to this, Bridge 1 sends the queries on all other ports to the bridges and stations lower down in the structure. In Bridge 3 the port receiving the query becomes a router port (R).
3. The station (PC 2) connected to bridge 3 responds to this query with a Join message for all registered multicast groups. The port connecting PC 2 to Bridge 3 then becomes a member of the multicasting group(s).
4. Bridge 3 forwards this Join message to Bridge 1 over the router port. The receiving port on Bridge 1 thus also takes on membership of the multicast groups that PC 2 has registered for.
5. In the final step, Bridge 1 forwards the Join message from PC 2 via the router port to Bridge 2, where the receiving port also takes on membership of PC 2's multicast groups.



If PC 1 now transmits a multicast for which PC 2 has registered, all of the bridges (2, 1 and then 3) forward the packets to PC 2 via the member port.

Configuration

General settings



LANconfig: Interfaces / IGMP snooping

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / LAN bridge / IGMP snooping

> Operating

Activates or deactivates IGMP snooping in the device and all of the defined querier instances. Without IGMP snooping the bridge functions like a simple switch and forwards all multicasts to all ports.

Possible values:

> Yes, No

Default:

> No

If this function is deactivated, all IP multicast packets are sent on all ports. If the device operating state changes, the IGMP snooping function is completely reset, i.e. all dynamically learned values are lost (membership, router-port states).

> Query interval

Interval in seconds in which a multicast-capable router (or a simulated querier) sends IGMP queries to the multicast address 224.0.0.1, so prompting the stations to transmit return messages about multicast group memberships. These regular queries influence the time in which memberships age, expire, and are then deleted.

> After the startup phase, the querier sends IGMP queries in this interval.
> A querier returns to the querier status after a time equal to "Robustness*Query-Interval+(Query-Response-Interval/2)".

- A port loses its router-port status after a time equal to "Robustness*Query-Interval+(Query-Response-Interval/2)".

Possible values:

- 10-figure number greater than 0.

Default:

- 125

The query interval must be greater than the query response interval.

- Query response interval

Interval in seconds influencing the timing between IGMP queries and router-port aging and/or memberships.

Interval in seconds in which a multicast-capable router (or a simulated querier) expects to receive responses to its IGMP queries. These regular queries influence the time in which memberships age, expire, and are then deleted.

Possible values:

- 10-figure number greater than 0.

Default:

- 10

The query response interval must be less than the query interval.

- Robustness

This value defined the robustness of the IGMP protocol. This option tolerates packet losses of IGMP queries with respect to Join messages.

Possible values:

- 10-figure number greater than 0.

Default:

- 2

- Advertise interval

The interval in seconds in which devices send packets advertising themselves as multicast routers. This information makes it quicker for other IGMP-snooping devices to find which of their ports are to operate as router ports. When activating its ports, a switch (for example) can query for multicast routers, and the router can respond to this query with an advertisement of this type. Under some circumstances this method can be much quicker than the alternative IGMP queries.

Possible values:

- 4 to 180 seconds.

Default:

- 20

- Unregistered data packet handling

This setting defines the handling of multicast data packets with a destination address outside the 224.0.0.x range and for which neither static memberships were defined nor were dynamic memberships learned.

Possible values:

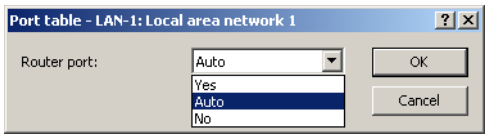
- Router ports only: Sends these packets to all router ports.
- Flood: Sends these packets to all ports.
- Discard: Drops these packets.

Default:

- Router ports only

Port settings

This table defines the port-related settings for IGMP snooping.



LANconfig: Interfaces / IGMP snooping / Port table

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / LAN bridge / IGMP snooping / Port settings

- Port

  The port for which the settings apply.

  Possible values:

  - Selects a port from the list of those available in the device.

  Default:

  - N/A

- Router port

  This option defines the port's behavior.

  Possible values:

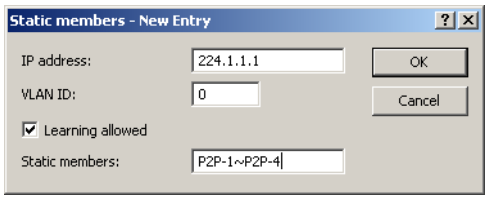
  - Yes: This port will always work as a router port, irrespective of IGMP queries or router messages received at this port.
  - No: This port will never work as a router port, irrespective of IGMP queries or router messages received at this port.
  - Auto: This port will work as a router port if IGMP queries or router messages are received. The port loses this status if no packets are received for the duration of "Robustness*Query-Interval+(Query-Response-Interval/2)".

  Default:

  - Auto

Static members

This table enables members to be defined manually, for example if they cannot or should not be learned automatically.



LANconfig: Interfaces / IGMP snooping / Static members

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / LAN bridge / IGMP snooping / Static members

- Address

  The IP address of the manually defined multicast group.

Possible values:

- Valid IP multicast address.

Default:

- Blank

- VLAN ID

  The VLAN ID which is to support this static member. Each IP multicast address can have multiple entries with different VLAN IDs.

  Possible values:

  - 0 to 4096.

  Default:

  - 0

  Special values:

  - If "0" is selected as VLAN, the IGMP queries are sent without a VLAN tag. For this reason, this value only makes sense when VLAN is deactivated in general.

- Allow learning

  This option activates the automatic learning of memberships in this multicast group. If automatic learning is deactivated, packets can only be sent via the ports which have been manually defined for the multicast group.

  Possible values:

  - Yes, No.

  Default:

  - Yes

- Static members

  These ports will always be the destination for packets with the corresponding IP multicast address, irrespective of any Join messages received.

  Possible values:

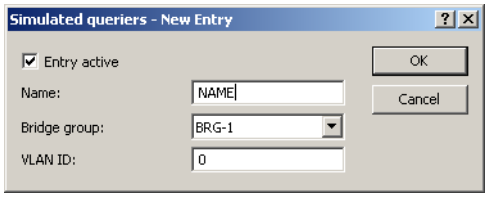
  - Comma-separated list of the desired ports, max. 215 alphanumerical characters.

  Default:

  - Blank

Simulated queriers

This table contains all of the simulated queriers defined in the device. These units are employed if IGMP functions are required but there is no multicast router in the network. The querier can be limited to certain bridge groups or VLANs by defining multiple independent queriers to support the corresponding VLAN IDs.



LANconfig: Interfaces / IGMP snooping / Simulated queriers

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / LAN bridge / IGMP snooping / Simulated queriers

- Name

  Name of the querier instance

  Possible values:

  - 8 alphanumerical characters.

  Default:

  - Blank

- Operating

  Activates or deactivates the querier instance

  Possible values:

  - Yes, No.

  Default:

  - No

- Bridge group

  Limits the querier instance to a certain bridge group.

  Possible values:

  - Select from the list of available bridge groups.

  Default:

  - none

  Special values:

  - If bridge group is set to "none", the IGMP queries will the sent via all bridge groups.

- VLAN ID

  Limits the querier instance to a certain VLAN.

  Possible values:

  - 0 to 4096.

  Default:

  - 0

  Special values:

  - If "0" is selected as VLAN, the IGMP queries are sent without a VLAN tag. For this reason, this value only makes sense when VLAN is deactivated in general.

IGMP status

General statistics

Status messages for IGMP snooping are to be found under the following paths:

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Status / LAN bridge statistics / IGMP snooping

- Operating

  Indicates whether IGMP snooping is activated or deactivated.

- IPv4 packets

Shows the number of IPv4 multicast packets received at all ports, whether they were IGMP packets or not.

- Data packets

  Shows the number of intact IPv4 multicast packets received at all ports and which were not IGMP packets.

- Control packets

  Shows the number of intact IGMP packets received at all ports.

- Bad packets

  Shows the number of damaged data or IGMP packets received at all ports. Possible causes for damage to packets may be IP checksum errors or truncated packets.

  For performance reasons, IP checksums are evaluated for IGMP packets only and not for the data portion of multicast packets. This is why packets with a faulty checksum in the TCP/UDP or IP header are not detected. These packets are counted as data packets.

- Deleted values

  This action deletes all statistical entries.

Port status

This table shows all port-related statistics.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Status / LAN bridge / IGMP snooping / Port status

- Router port

  Shows whether the port is currently in use as a router port or not, irrespective of whether this status was configured statically or learned dynamically.

- IPv4 packets

  Shows the number of IPv4 multicast packets received at this port, whether they were IGMP packets or not.

- Data packets

  Shows the number of intact IPv4 multicast packets received at this port and which were not IGMP packets.

- Control packets

  Shows the number of intact IGMP packets received at this port.

- Bad packets

  Shows the number of damaged data or IGMP packets received at this port. Possible causes for damage to packets may be IP checksum errors or truncated packets.

  For performance reasons, IP checksums are evaluated for IGMP packets only and not for the data portion of multicast packets. This is why packets with a faulty checksum in the TCP/UDP or IP header are not detected. These packets are counted as data packets.

Groups

This table displays all the the multicast group memberships known to the device, irrespective of whether they were configured statically or learned dynamically. If both static and dynamic memberships exist for a multicast group, these are shown in separate entries.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Status / LAN bridge / IGMP snooping / Groups

- Address

  Shows the group's IP multicast address.

- VLAN ID

  Shows the VLAN ID that this entry applies to.

- Allow learning

  Shows whether new memberships for this group can be learned dynamically or not.

- Static members

  Shows the list of statically defined members for this group.

- Dynamic members

  Shows the list of dynamically learned members for this group.

Simulated queriers

This table shows the status of all defined and active IGMP querier instances.

- Name

  Shows the name of the multicast group.

- Bridge group

  Shows the bridge group that this entry applies to.

- VLAN ID

  Shows the VLAN that this entry applies to.

- Status

  Shows the current status of the entry.

  - Initial: The querier instance has just started and is sending IGMP queries in short intervals (four-times faster than the query interval defined).
  - Querier: The querier instance considers itself to be the active querier and is sending IGMP queries in the defined query interval.
  - Non-Querier: Another querier instance with a lower IP address has been detected, and the instance listed here is not sending any IGMP queries.

19.11.2 TACACS+

Introduction

Tacacs+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System) is a protocol for authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA). It thus provides access to the network for certain authorized users only, it regulates the rights of those users, and it is a logging mechanism to keep track of user actions. TACACS+ is an alternative to other AAA protocols such as RADIUS.

TACACS+ must be used in order to meet with PCI compliance (Payment Card Industry).

Modern networks with their numerous types of service and network components present a massive challenge in terms of controlling access rights for the user. In large installations in particular, the overhead would be enormous to keep user data consistent on all devices or for all services. For this reason, user data should be managed on a central server.

As a simple example, a user wishes to register at a router and sends the corresponding login details (user ID) to it. In this case the router functions as a Network Access Server (NAS): It does not check the user data itself; rather, the data is forwarded to the central AAA server, which responds by checking the data and answering with an accept or a reject.

The advanced TACACS+ functions include, among others, the option of requesting user to change their passwords after logging in for the first time, or if the password has expired. The corresponding messages are sent from the NAS to the user.

Please note that LANconfig cannot process all of the messages in the extended login dialog. Should LANconfig reject a login attempt at a LANCOM even if the correct data is entered, please use an alternative method of configuration (such as WEBconfig or telnet).

TACACS+ is an alternative AAA server to the widespread RADIUS servers. The following table shows some of the major differences between RADIUS and TACACS+:

TACACS+	RADIUS
Connection-orientated data transfer via TCP	Connectionless data transfer via UDP
Fully encrypted data transfer	Password only encrypted, other content remains unencrypted
Complete separation of authentication, authorization and accounting possible	Authentication and authorization combined

- TCP-based communication with TACACS+ is more reliable than RADIUS. Communications between the NAS and AAA server are confirmed, so the NAS is always informed if the AAA server is unavailable.
- TACACS+ encrypts not only the password like RADIUS but the entire payload data (except for the TACACS+ header). This assures the confidentiality of information such as user names or the permitted services. TACACS+ encryption works with a one-time pad based on MD5 hashes.
- The separation of the three AAA functions enables TACACS+ to operate with multiple servers. Whereas RADIUS always combines authentication and authorization, TACACS+ allows these to be separated. In this way, for example, TACACS+ servers can be employed for authentication only, in that only the users are managed but not the permissible commands.

Please note: Even though TACACS+ is used to centrally manage user accounts on an AAA server, you should ensure that you set a secure password for root access to the LANCOM. If no root password is set, access to the device configuration can be blocked for security reasons if no connection is available to the TACACS+ server. In this case, the device may have to be reset to its factory settings in order to regain access to the configuration.

Configuring the TACACS+ parameters

The parameters for configuring TACACS+ are to be found under the following paths:

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / TACACS+

- Accounting

  Activates accounting via TACACS+ server. If TACACS+ accounting is activated, all accounting data is transmitted via TACACS+ protocol to the configured TACACS+ server.

  Possible values:

  - Activated, deactivated

  Default

  - Deactivated

  TACACS+ accounting will only activate if the defined TACACS+ server is available.

- Authentication

  Activates authentication via TACACS+ server. If TACACS+ authentication is activated, all authentication data is transmitted via TACACS+ protocol to the configured TACACS+ server.

  Possible values:

  - Activated, deactivated

  Default

- Deactivated

> TACACS+ authentication will only activate if the defined TACACS+ server is available. Fallback to local users is only possible if a root password has been set for the LANCOM. The fallback to local users must be deactivated for devices without a root password. Otherwise a failure of the network connection (TACACS+ server unavailable) would make the LANCOM accessible without a password.

- Authorization

  Activates authorization via TACACS+ server. If TACACS+ authorization is activated, all authorization data is transmitted via TACACS+ protocol to the configured TACACS+ server.

  Possible values:

  - Activated, deactivated

  Default

  - Deactivated

  > TACACS+ authorization will only activate if the defined TACACS+ server is available. If TACACS+ authorization is activated, the TACACS+ server will be queried for authorization each time a user enters a command. Data traffic during configuration will increase correspondingly. Also, the user rights must be defined in the TACACS+ server.

- Fallback to local users

  Should the defined TACACS+ server be unavailable, it is possible to fallback to local user accounts on the LANCOM. This allows for access to the device even if the TACACS+ connection should fail, e.g. when deactivating the usage of TACACS+ or for correcting the configuration.

  Possible values:

  - Allowed, prohibited

  Default

  - Allowed

  > The fallback to local user accounts presents a security risk if no root password is set for the LANCOM. For this reason, TACACS+ authentication with fallback to local user accounts can only be activated if a root password has been set. If no root password is set, access to the device configuration can be blocked for security reasons if no connection is available to the TACACS+ server. In this case, the device may have to be reset to its factory settings in order to regain access to the configuration.

- Shared secret

  The password for encrypting the communications between NAS and TACACS+ servers.

  Possible values:

  - 31 alphanumerical characters

  Default

  - Blank

  > The password must be entered identically into the LANCOM and the TACACS+ server. We recommend that you do not operate TACACS+ without encryption.

- SNMP-GET requests accounting

  Numerous network management tools use SNMP for requesting information from network devices. LANmonitor also uses SNMP to access the LANCOM devices to display information about current connections, etc., or to execute actions such as disconnecting a connection. SNMP can be used to configure devices. For this reason TACACS+ requires authentication for SNMP access requests. Since LANmonitor regularly queries these values, a large number of

unnecessary TACACS+ connections would be established. If authentication, authorization and accounting by TACACS+ are activated, then each request would initiate three sessions with the TACACS+ server.

This parameter allows the regulation of the behavior of LANCOM devices with regard to SNMP access in order to reduce the number of TACACS+ sessions required for accounting. Authentication via the TACACS+ server remains necessary if authentication for TACACS+ is activated generally.

Entering a read-only community under LCOS menu tree / Setup / SNMP enables authentication by TACACS+ to be deactivated for LANmonitor. The read-only community defined here is then entered into LANmonitor as a user name.

Possible values:

- only_for_SETUP_tree: With this setting, accounting via TACACS+ server is only required for SNMP access via the setup branch of LCOS.
- All: With this setting, accounting by TACACS+ server will be carried out for every SNMP access. In case of regular request for status information, for example, the load on the TACACS+ server will increase significantly.
- None: With this setting, accounting by TACACS+ server will not be carried out for SNMP accesses.

Default:

- only_for_SETUP_tree

- SNMP-GET requests authorization

  This parameter allows the regulation of the behavior of LANCOM devices with regard to SNMP access in order to reduce the number of TACACS+ sessions required for authorization. Authentication via the TACACS+ server remains necessary if authentication for TACACS+ is activated generally.

  Possible values:

  - only_for_SETUP_tree: With this setting, authorization via TACACS+ server is only required for SNMP access via the setup branch of LCOS.
  - All: With this setting, authorization by TACACS+ server will be carried out for every SNMP access. In case of regular request for status information, for example, the load on the TACACS+ server will increase significantly.
  - None: With this setting, authorization by TACACS+ server will not be carried out for SNMP accesses.

  Default:

  - only_for_SETUP_tree

- Encryption

  Activates or deactivates the encryption of communications between NAS and TACACS+ servers.

  Possible values:

  - Activated, deactivated

  Default

  - Activated

  We recommend that you do not operate TACACS+ without encryption. If encryption is activated here, the password for encryption entered here must match with the password on the TACACS+ server.

Configuring the TACACS+ server

Two servers can be defined to work with TACACS+ functions. One server acts as a backup in case the other one fails. When logging in via telnet or WEBconfig, the user can select the server to be used.

The parameters for configuring the TACACS+ server are to be found under the following paths:

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / TACACS+ / Server

- Server address

  Address of the TACACS+ server to which requests for authentication, authorization and accounting are to be forwarded.

  Possible values:

  - Valid DNS resolvable name or valid IP address.

  Default

  - Blank

- Loopback address

  Optionally you can configure a loopback address here.

  - Possible values:
  - Name of the IP networks whose addresses are to be used
  - "INT" for the address of the first intranet.
  - "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ.
  - LB0 to LBF for the 16 loopback addresses
  - Any valid IP address

  Default

  - Blank

- Compatibility mode

  TACACS+ servers are available as open-source or commercial versions, each of which works with different messages. The compatibility mode enables the processing of messages from free TACACS+ servers.

  Possible values:

  - Activated, deactivated

  Default

  - Deactivated

Login to the TACACS+ server

Once TACACS+ has been activated for authentication and/or authorization, all logins to the device are redirected to the TACACS+ server. The remaining login procedure differs according to the access method.

TACACS+ login via LANconfig

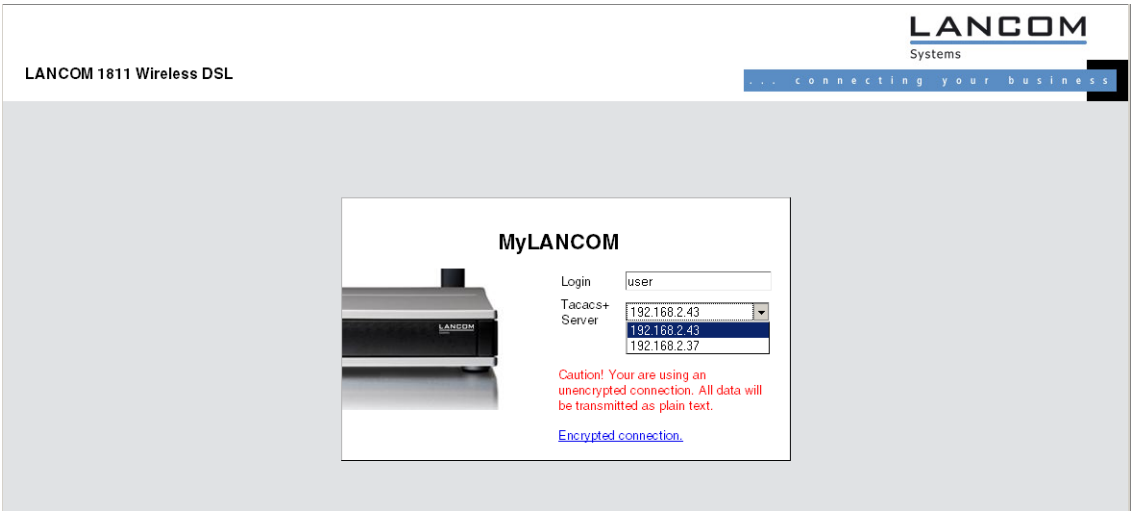
Using LANconfig to login to a device with activated TACACS+ authentication is only possible with the user named "root". Correspondingly, the user "root" must be configured on the TACACS+ server. To login via LANconfig, enter the password as configured for the user "root" on the TACACS+ server.

Once authenticated by TACACS+, "root" is the only user automatically assigned with full supervisor rights, and thus able to edit the configuration without having to change privilege level. When authorization is in use, the TACACS+ server decides whether this is allowed or not.

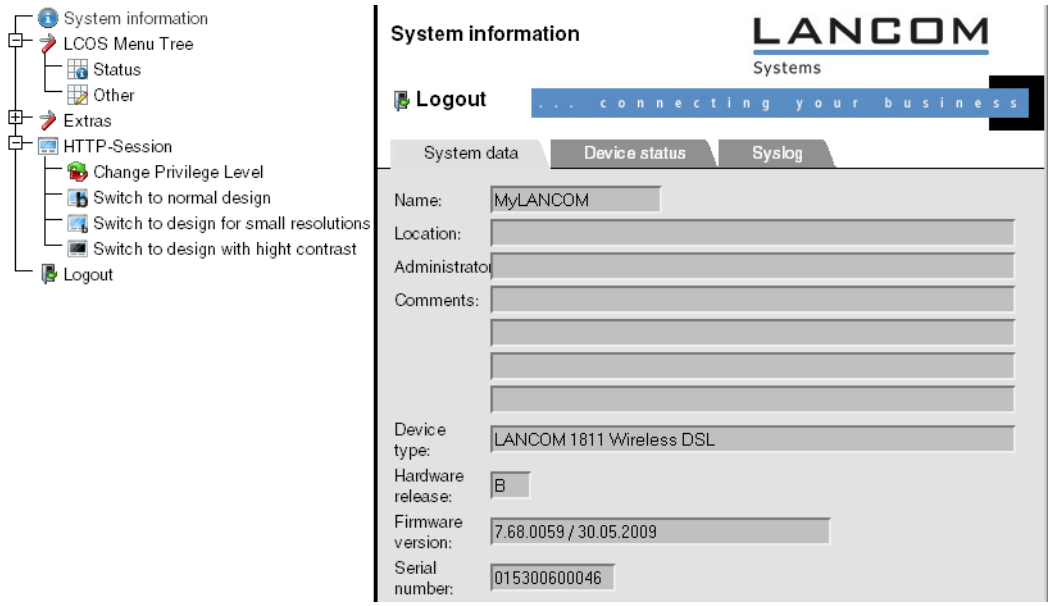
If authorization is activated for the device as well as authentication, the TACACS+ server must permit the commands "readconfig" and "writeconfig" for the user "root" in order for the user to read the configuration from the device and to upload any changes.

TACACS+ login via WEBconfig

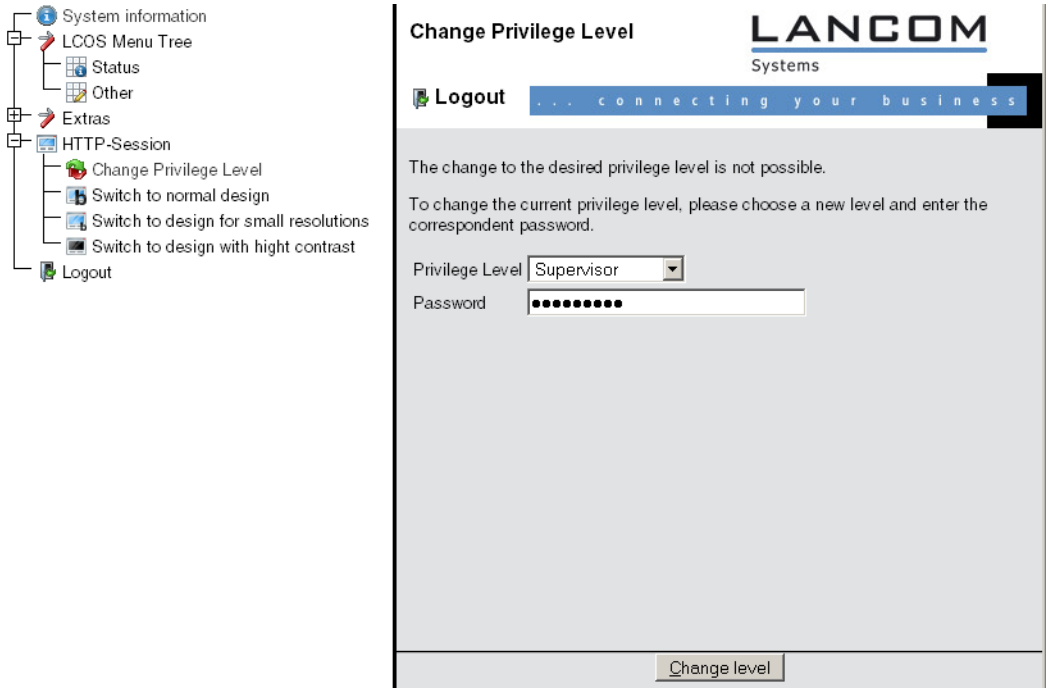
Using WEBconfig to login to a device with activated TACACS+ authentication is possible for any user configured on the TACACS+ server. When logging in with WEBconfig, enter the user name configured on the TACACS+ server and select the server which is to carry out authentication.



The corresponding password is requested in the following dialog. After logging in, the user initially sees a reduced WEBconfig user interface. If authorization is not being used, all WEBconfig users (except for the user "root") initially have read rights only.



To gain further rights, click on the link **Change privilege level** on the left of the screen.



In this dialog you select the required user rights and enter the corresponding password.

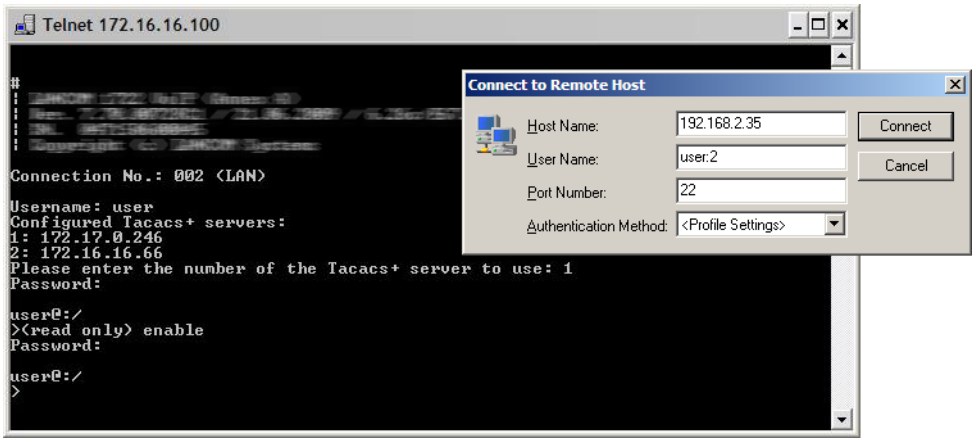
The passwords for individual user rights are configured as "enable" passwords in the TACACS+ server.

If authorization is activated for the device as well as authentication, the TACACS+ server must permit the required commands for each user in order for the user to read and edit the device configuration.

TACACS+ login with telnet or SSH

Using tenet or SSH to login to a device with activated TACACS+ authentication is possible for any user configured on the TACACS+ server.

When logging in with telnet, enter the user name configured on the TACACS+ server and select the server which is to carry out authentication. When logging in with SSH, enter the user name followed by a colon and then the server name, i.e. "user:1" or "user:2".



After login, all users initially have read-rights only (except for the user "root").

To gain further rights, enter the command `enable` and enter the password. Rights will be assigned according to configuration for that password. The parameters for the enable command are the numbers 1-15. 1 is the lowest level, 15 the highest. If no parameter is entered, 15 is taken automatically.

The passwords for individual user rights are configured as "enable" passwords in the TACACS+ server.

If authorization is activated for the device as well as authentication, the TACACS+ server must permit the required commands for each user in order for the user to read and edit the device configuration.

Assigning rights under TACACS+

TACACS+ uses privilege levels to separate users into different groups. For the local authorization of users via the "enable" command under telnet/SSH or via privilege levels under WEBconfig, the various administrator rights of LCOS are mapped to the TACACS+ privilege levels:

TACACS+ level	LCOS administrator rights
0	No rights
1	Read only
3	Read-write
5	Read-only limited admin
7	Read-write limited admin
9	Read-only admin
11	Read-write admin
15	Supervisor (root)

Authorizing functions

If authorization is activated for the device as well as authentication, the TACACS+ server must permit the corresponding functions for the user. Enter the required values into the user configuration on the TACACS+ server.

LANconfig

Command	Arguments	Remark
readconfig	none	Read out the entire configuration
writeconfig	none	Write the entire configuration

WEBconfig

Command	Arguments	Remark
delRow	SNMP-ID of the table	Delete row
addRow	SNMP-ID of the table	Add row
editRow	SNMP-ID of the table	Edit row
modifyItem	SNMP-ID of the menu item	Edit a menu item
viewTable	SNMP-ID of the table	View table
viewRow	SNMP-ID of the row	View row
setValue	SNMP-ID of the menu item	Set value of a menu item
listmenu	SNMP-ID of the menu	List sub menu
action	SNMP-ID of the action	Execute an action

Command	Arguments	Remark
reboot	none	Restart device
$URL	none	Display a certain URL

When working with WEBconfig, all URLs sent to the TACACS+ server during configuration must be enabled. For example, the URL "config2" under WEBconfig provides access to the configuration branch of the LCOS menu tree. Additionally, the individual parameters which the user may edit must also be enabled. You can view the URLs sent by WEBconfig to the TACACS+ server with the trace "trace+ tacacs".

Telnet/SSH

Command	Arguments	Remark
dir	SNMP-ID of the directory	View directory content
list	SNMP-ID of the directory	View directory content
ls	SNMP-ID of the directory	View directory content
llong	SNMP-ID of the directory	View directory content
del	SNMP-ID of the table	Delete row
delete	SNMP-ID of the table	Delete row
rm	SNMP-ID of the table	Delete row
cd	SNMP-ID of the target directory	Change directory
add	SNMP-ID of the table	Add row
tab	SNMP-ID of the table	Changes the order of the columns for adding values
do	SNMP-ID of the action	Execute action
show	Parameter name	View information
trace	Parameter name	Execute trace
time	Parameter name	Time
feature	Parameter name	Add function
repeat	Parameter name	Repeat the command
readmib	none	Read-out SNMP-MIB
readconfig	none	Read out the entire configuration
readstatus	none	Read-out status menu
writefiash	none	Update firmware
activateimage	Parameter name	Activate another firmware image
ping	Parameter name	Start ping
wakeup	Parameter name	Sends wakeup packet
linktest	Parameter name	WLAN link test
writeconfig	none	Write the entire configuration
ll2mdetect	none	Start LL2M detection
ll2mexec	Parameter name	Execute LL2M command
scp	Parameter name	Secure copy
rcp	Parameter name	Secure copy

Command	Arguments	Remark
readscript	Parameter name	Read-out script
beginscript	none	Start script
endscript	none	Stop script
flash	Parameter name	Activate/deactivate flash mode

For telnet access, all of the parameters that the user may edit must be enabled. You can view the values sent by telnet to the TACACS+ server with the trace "trace+ tacacs".

SNMP

Command	Arguments	Remark
get	SNMP-ID of the menu item	Read-out value
set	SNMP-ID of the menu item	Set value

Addition(s) to LCOS 7.80

Bypassing TACACS+

Introduction

TACACS+ enables every change to a network-device configuration to be subject to special authorization. TACACS+ accounting enables each of these steps to be logged. TACACS+ is a requirement for systems used in electronic payment (PCI compliance).

Strict monitoring of this type leads to an increase in traffic to and from the TACACS+ server(s). In large-scale scenarios, the TACACS+ communications caused when using scripts for centralized configuration changes or if CRON commands are run regularly could lead to an overload of the TACACS+ server.

Configuration

To avoid overloading the TACACS+ server when carrying out automatic configuration changes, it is possible to exclude CRON, action tables and scripts from the authorization and accounting by TACACS+.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / TACACS+

- Bypass-Tacacs-for-CRON/scripts/action-table

  You can activate or deactivate the bypassing of TACACS+ authorization and TACACS+ accounting for various actions.

  Possible values:

  - Activated, deactivated.

  Default:

  - Disabled.

  Please observe that this option influences the TACACS+ function for the entire system. Be sure that you restrict the use of CRON, the action tables, and scripts only to an absolutely trustworthy circle of administrators!

Addition(s) to LCOS 9.10

TACACS+ extension for the passwd command

As of LCOS version 9.10, a user password can additionally be changed using the console command `passwd` even with TACACS+ authentication enabled.

Table 42: Overview of all commands available at the command line

Command	Description
`setpass|passwd [-u <User>][-n <new> <old>]`	Changes the password of the current user account. In order to change the password without a subsequent input prompt, use the option switch `-n` while entering the new and old password. In order to change the password of the local user account when authentication by TACACS+ is enabled, use the option switch `-u` with the name of the corresponding user. If the local user does not exist or the user name is missing, the command aborts. The user must also have supervisor rights, or authorization by TACACS must be enabled.

19.12 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.00

19.12.1 Basic HTTP file server for LCOS 8.0

Introduction

The HTTP server integrated into the LCOS uses the HTTP protocol to connect to an external storage medium, so providing a basic data server.

This function is supported by all LANCOM devices with a USB connector.

Praparing the USB storage medium

The following describes how to set up a USB medium for operating with a LANCOM device:

- File system: Format the USB medium with the FAT16 or FAT32 file system.
- Base directory: Create the directory `public_html` on the USB medium. The LCOS HTTP server only accesses the files and subdirectories in this directory. All other files on the USB medium are ignored.
- USB connection: Connect the mass storage device to the USB connector on the LANCOM.

Determine the mount point of the USB medium in the LCOS

When a USB medium is connected to a LANCOM device, a mount point is created automatically for the LCOS's internal management of the medium. This mount point always remains the same for a certain USB medium, even after rebooting or restarting. Different media are each allocated their own unique mount point.

The mount point must be known in order to access the files on the USB medium. The mount points for USB media are shown in the status table:

- WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / File system / Volumes

The status table displays all of the volumes discovered by the device.

- `MiniFs` is the flash file system integrated into most devices.
- `BlkDev-n` are descriptors for the known USB media. If there is just one USB mass storage device connected, it is named `BlkDev-1` and is mounted under /usb.

Accessing the files on a USB medium

Use the following URL to access the files on the USB medium by using the HTTP server in the LCOS:

- `http://<IP address of device>/filesrv/<mount point>/<file name>`

  If, for example, the file is named `coupon.jpeg` and it is stored in the base directory `\public_html` of the only USB medium, then you can access it with the following link:

  `http://<IP address of device>/filesrv/usb/coupon.jpeg`

Files can be accessed with HTTPS as well as HTTP.

Supported content type

The HTTP server in the LCOS uses the file extension to determine the MIME content type required to display the content correctly in a browser. The following extensions are currently recognized and will be translated into the correct MIME content type:

- .htm and .html for HTML files
- .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .png, .bmp, .pcx for images in the corresponding format
- .ico for icon files
- .pdf for Adobe Acrobat PDF files
- .css for cascading style sheet files

Directory structure

The directory `public_html` can contain sub-directories. The LCOS HTTP server observes certain rules for accessing the directories:

- If a file named 'index.html' exists in the sub-directory, then this is sent to the HTTP client, or else:
- If a file named 'index.htm' exists in the sub-directory, then this is sent to the HTTP client, or else:
- The file server simply displays a list of the files and sub-directories in the main directory.

19.12.2 SSH client

Introduction

In addition to an SSL server for the secure and authenticated dialing-in to LANCOM devices, LCOS also features an SSH client. This SSH client enables SSH connections to be established from a LANCOM device to a remote server, such as another LANCOM device or a Unix server. This function is highly useful if it is impossible to connect directly to a remote device, but by using an indirect connection via the LANCOM device that can be accessed from both subnets instead.

The SSH client can be started with simple commands at the command line interface, similar to the OpenSSH client on a Linux or Unix system.

CLI arguments for the SSH client

The SSH connection to a remote system is initiated with the following command:

- `ssh [-?] [-h] [-b loopback-address] [-p port] [-C] [-j interval] [user@]host [command]`
  - `-?`, `-h`: Display a brief help text about the available arguments
  - `-b`: Specifies the loopback address to be used. This option is important in the context of ARF.
  - `-p`: Specifies the port to be used. If the port is not specified here, the default is TCP port 22.
  - `command`: The SSH client either starts an interactive shell on the remote system or it can execute a single command. If no command is entered, the interactive shell starts.
  - `user`: User name for logging in to the remote system. If you do not explicitly enter a user name here, then the user name for your current local session is used for logging in at the LCOS CLI.
  - `-C`: If this option is specified, the SSH client uses the zlib algorithm to attempt to negotiate a method for data compression with the remote system. If the remote system does not support compression, then the data is transmitted uncompressed. The use of compression is generally worthwhile only for slow connections (e.g. ISDN). With fast connections, the performance loss from the additional overhead due to compression tends to be greater than the gain from reduced data amounts.
  - `-j interval`: If the connection to the remote system is routed via a NAT router or a firewall, it may be worthwhile to leave the connection running permanently. With an interactive SSH session, data is not transferred at all at certain phases, which can lead to disconnection because of timeouts. In such cases the SSH client can regularly transmit keep-alive packets. These are irrelevant to the remote station, but they inform the gateway that the connection is still being used. This argument specifies the interval in seconds for transmitting keep-alive packets. The keep-alive packets are only transmitted when the SSH client is not sending other data to the remote system.

Public keys for authentication

Authentication with SSH works with public keys sent from the remote system. If an SSH client needs to connect to an SSH server, the server sends the public key to the client, which then looks for that key in its files. The following situations can occur here:

- The SSH client finds the key in its list of known server keys, and the key is allocated to the corresponding host name or IP address. The SSH connection can be established without further activity from the user.
- The SSH client does **not** find the key in its list of known server keys, and also no other key of the same type (RSA or DSS) for the corresponding host name or IP address. The SSH client assumes that this is the first connection to the server. It shows its public key and the associated fingerprint. The user can verify the key using a copy from another source, and can then decide whether the server should be stored in the list of known SSH servers. If the user declines this verification, the SSH connection is broken immediately.
- The SSH client finds a key for the corresponding host name or IP address, but this is different from the key currently in use. Both keys are displayed, but the SSH connection will be terminated because the SSH client suspects a man-in-the-middle attack. If the public key on the remote system was recently changed, then the administrator has to delete the outdated entry from the list of known servers.

After successfully verifying the server key, the administrator can enter the password for accessing the remote system. The password cannot be entered directly at the command line.

SSH connections are usually closed at the server, e.g. by entering "Exit" in the shell. Sometimes it may be necessary to close the SSH connection with the client, e.g. if the application on the server has problems. The SSH client in the LCOS uses the same character string as OpenSSH to close the connection, i.e. tilde - dot.

If the LCOS CLI session itself was opened with an OpenSSH client, you must use the string tilde – tilde – dot; otherwise the wrong connection will be closed.

Creating SSH keys

SSH authentication works with two different procedures:

- Interactive with password entry by keyboard
- By exchanging public keys

Keys have to be created for each individual as there are no predefined standard keys. For this reason, LANCOM devices with their factory settings only support authentication by password.

Keys are generated by entering the command `sshkeygen` at the command line on the device that the administrator want to run the SSH client on. The following syntax applies:

- `sshkeygen [-?] [-h] [-t dsa|rsa] [-b bits] [-f output-file]`
  - `-?`, `-h`: Display a brief help text about the available arguments
  - `-t`: This argument sets the key type.

    SSH supports two types of key:

    RSA keys are most widely used and have a length between 512 and 16384 bits. If possible you should work with keys of 1024 to 2048 bits in length.

    DSS keys follow the standard set down by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) and are typically used in environments which are required to comply with the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS). DSS keys are always 1024 bits long, but they are slower to process than a corresponding RSA key.

    An RSA type key will be generated if no key type is specified.
  - `-b`: This argument sets the length of the RSA key in bits.

    If no length is specified, the default value is 1024 bits.
  - `-f`: Name for the output file of the key.

    After generating the key, the public part must be transmitted to the remote system. The public part of the key can be displayed with the following command:
- `show ssh idkeys`

This command generates output similar to the following:

```
Configured Client-Side SSH Host Keys For User 'root':

ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABEQAAAQEA2
```

8BtnFFInAi8I5B1aOwq5g2YfwIX2O/vMX+9SLZ

AJVAhFnhdOG4wjTpLVuaQRNlITpBESPaWPLqoA

```
...
```

wd0T0nkuNQ== root@sshctest

Even though the output is divided into a number of lines, it is a single key consisting of three parts:

- The first part shows the key type (ssh-rsa or ssh-dss).
- The second part is the binary output of the key itself, coded as Base64.
- The third part contains the host name and is intended for entering comments.

This file can be edited with a convenient function in WEBconfig (WEBconfig / Extras / Edit list of allowed SSH public keys). Copy the first and second parts and replace the third part with a list of users to limit the use of this key to a selection of LCOS administrators.

Editing the files

During operations, the SSH client uses various files which may require manual editing.

The list of known SSH servers

The SSH client uses the list of known SSH servers to store the corresponding key. This file is changed each time a connection is established to an SSH server for the first time and the administrator accepts the key displayed for the remote system.

Each key is stored to a line in this file and contains three fields:

- The name or IP address of the remote system as entered into the SSH command when establishing the connection.
- The key type, i.e. ssh-rsa or ssh-dss.
- The binary output of the key itself, coded as Base64.

Once an administrator has accepted the public key of an SSH server, this key applies to all LCOS administrators; there is no differentiation at user level.

The files ssh_id_rsa and ssh_id_dsa

These files contain the keys generated with the `sshkeygen` command, i.e. the keys for authenticating the remote SSH server in PEM format. The keys for all LCOS administrators are stored in a central file. This is accessible to root administrators only, although not for the uploading or downloading of files or certificates.

The ID files have the following structure, which defines the use of a key for a certain LCOS administrator:

```
*** User xyz

Key

*** End
```

Priorities for SSH authentication

SSH authentication follows a strict order of priorities:

- The first method always attempts to authenticate by means of public key, unless the remote system does not support this method or the current LCOS administrator does not possess a public key.
- The second method is the interactive authentication by keyboard where public-key authentication is unavailable or when the remote system has rejected the public key of the current LCOS administrator. Depending on the application, interactive authentication may consist of exchanging a number of messages between the SSH client and SSH server. In the simplest case, the password just has to be entered one time.

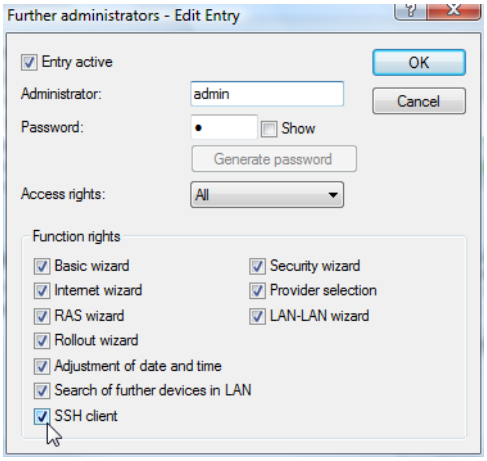
Rights for operating the SSH client

Rights to work with the SSH client can be allocated on an individual basis to each administrator of LANCOM devices.

The rights for the administrators are to be found in the following menu:

- LANconfig: Management / Admin / Additional administrators

> WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Config / Admins



19.12.3 LANCOM Content Filter

Introduction

The LANCOM Content Filter enables you to filter certain content from your network, so preventing access to Internet pages with content that is illegal or offensive. It also enables you to stop private surfing on specific sites during working hours. This not only increases staff productivity and network security but also ensures that the full bandwidth is available exclusively for your business activities.

The LANCOM Content Filter is an intelligent content filter that works dynamically. It contacts a rating server that evaluates Internet sites reliably and accurately in accordance with the categories that you select.

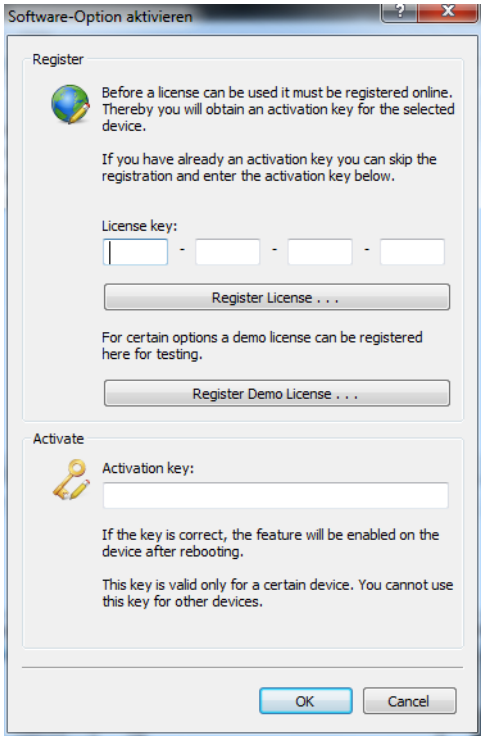
The LANCOM Content Filter operates by checking the IP addresses behind the URLs that are entered. For any given domain it is possible to differentiate according to the path, meaning that specific areas of a URL may be rated differently.

It is not possible for users to avoid the LANCOM Content Filter website rating simply by entering the website's IP address into their browsers. The LANCOM Content Filter checks only unencrypted websites via HTTP.

The LANCOM Content Filter license you purchase is valid for a certain number of users and for a specific period (for one or three years). You will be informed of the expiry of your license in good time. The number of current users is monitored in the device, with the users being identified by their IP address. You can configure what should happen when the number of licensed users is exceeded: Access can either be denied or an unchecked connection can be made.

Your can test the LANCOM Content Filter on all router modells, which generally support this function, by activating a demo license that is valid for 30-days. Demo licenses are generated directly with LANconfig. Click on the device with the right-hand mouse key and select the context menu entry **Activate software option**. In the dialog that

follows, click on the button **Demo license**. You will automatically be connected to the website for the LANCOM registration server. Simply select the required demo license and you can register your device.



All settings relating to categories are stored in category profiles. You select from predefined main and sub-categories in the LANCOM Content Filter: 58 categories are divided into 14 subject groups such as “Pornography, Nudity", "Shopping" or "Illegal Activities". You can activate or deactivate each of the categories in these groups. Sub-categories for “Pornography/Nudity” are, for example, “Pornography/Erotic/Sex” and “Swimwear/Lingerie”.

When configuring these categories, administrators have an additional option of activating an override. When the override option is active, users may still access the forbidden site for a particular period of time by clicking on a corresponding button, but the administrator will be notified of this by e-mail, syslog, or SNMP trap.

The category profile, whitelist and blacklist can be used to create a content filter profile that you can assign to particular users by means of the firewall. For example you can create a profile called “Employees_department_A” and assign this to all of the computers in that department.

When you install the LANCOM Content Filter, basic default settings are created automatically. These only need to be activated for the initial start. You can subsequently customize the behavior of the LANCOM Content Filter to match your own requirements.

Requirements for using the LANCOM Content Filter

The following requirements must be met before you can use the LANCOM Content Filter:

1. The LANCOM Content Filter option has been activated.
2. The firewall must be activated and an appropriate firewall rule must select the content filter profile.
3. The content filter profile must specify a category profile and if desired a whitelist and or blacklist for each part of the day. A content filter profile can consist of several different entries to provide different levels of protection during different parts of the day.

   › If a certain part of the day is not covered by an entry, access to websites will go unchecked for this period.

If the content filter profile is subsequently renamed, the firewall must also be modified.

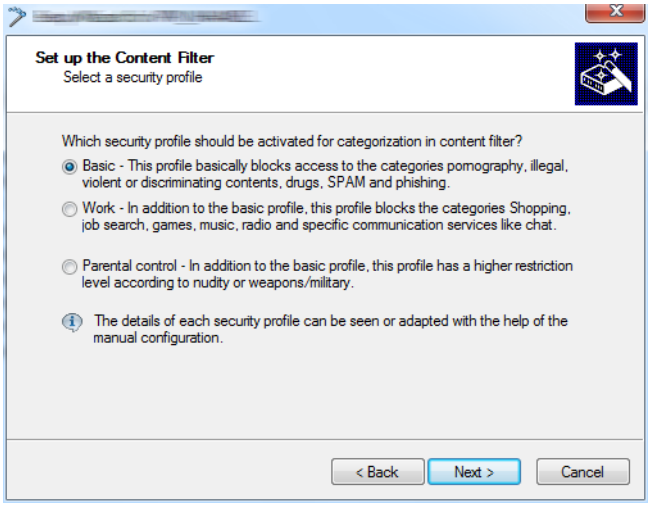
Quick start

After installing the LANCOM Content Filter, all the settings have been made to get it up and running quickly.

The operation of the LANCOM Content Filter may be restricted by your country's data protection regulations or by company guidelines. Please check any regulations that may apply before putting the system into operation.

You activate the LANCOM Content Filter by:

1. Start the Setup Wizard for the device.
2. Select the Setup Wizard for configuring the Content Filter.



1. Select one of the pre-defined security profiles (basic, work, parental control):

   - Basic profile: This profile mainly blocks access to the categories pornography, illegal, violent or discriminatory content, drugs, SPAM and phishing
   - Work profile: In addition to the settings for the basic profile, this profile also blocks the categories shopping, job search, gaming, music, radio and certain communications services such as chat.
   - Parental-control profile: In addition to the settings for the basic profile, this profile also blocks nudity and weapons/military.

   Should the firewall be deactivated, the Wizard will switch the firewall on. The Wizard then checks if the firewall rule is set correctly for the content filter and, if necessary, will take corrective measures. After activating the Content Filter with the steps outlined above, all stations in the network are being filtered according to the settings of the selected content-filter profile and the as-yet empty blacklist and whitelist. You can adapt these settings for your purposes, if necessary.

   Detailed information about manually configuring the content filter is available in the content filter manual available as a PDF on the CD or as a download from www.lancom.eu.

Standard settings in the LANCOM Content Filter

The following elements have been created in the default configuration of the LANCOM Content Filter:

- A firewall rule
- Three firewall action objects
- Three content filter profiles
- Two timeframes
- A blacklist
- A whitelist
- Three category profiles

Firewall rule

The preset firewall rule is named CONTENT-FILTER and uses the action object CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC.

The firewall rule is not created automatically if the LANCOM Content Filter is installed on a device that has been configured already. The rule must be added manually. This firewall rule must include one of the action objects that are pre-defined for the Content Filter.

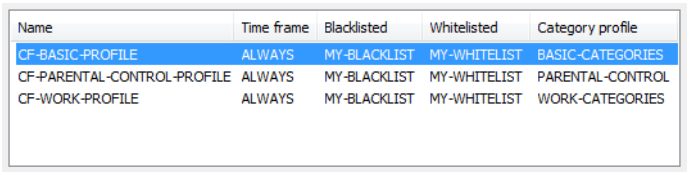
Firewall action objects

There are three firewall action objects: CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC, CONTENT-FILTER-WORK and CONTENT-FILTER-PARENTAL-CONTROL. These action objects work with the corresponding content-filter profiles.

Content filter profiles

There are three content filter profiles. All content-filter profiles use the timeframe ALWAYS, the blacklist MY-BLACKLIST and the whitelist MY-WHITELIST. Each content-filter profile uses one of the predefined category profiles:

- CF-BASIC-PROFILE: This content-filter profile features a low level of restrictions and works with the category profile BASIC-CATEGORIES.
- CF-PARENTAL-CONTROL-PROFILE: This content-filter profile protects minors (e.g. trainees) from unsuitable Internet content, and it works with the category profile PARENTAL-CONTROL.
- CF-WORK-PROFILE: This content-filter profile is intended for companies wishing to place restrictions on categories such as Job Search or Chat. It works with the category profile WORK-CATEGORIES.



Name	Time frame	Blacklisted	Whitelisted	Category profile
CF-BASIC-PROFILE	ALWAYS	MY-BLACKLIST	MY-WHITELIST	BASIC-CATEGORIES
CF-PARENTAL-CONTROL-PROFILE	ALWAYS	MY-BLACKLIST	MY-WHITELIST	PARENTAL-CONTROL
CF-WORK-PROFILE	ALWAYS	MY-BLACKLIST	MY-WHITELIST	WORK-CATEGORIES

Timeframe

There are two predefined timeframes:

- ALWAYS: 00.00-23.59 hrs
- NEVER: 00.00-0.00 hrs

Blacklist

The preset blacklist is named "MY-BLACKLIST" and it is empty. Here you can optionally enter URLs which are to be forbidden.

Whitelist

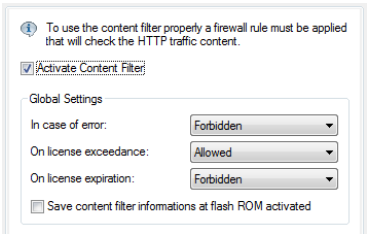
The preset whitelist is named "MY-WHITELIST" and it is empty. Here you can optionally enter URLs which are to be allowed.

Category profiles

There are three category profiles: BASIC-CATEGORIES, WORK-CATEGORIES and PARENTAL-CONTROL. The category profile specifies the categories which are to be allowed and forbidden, and for which one an override can be activated.

General settings

Global settings for the LANCOM Content Filter are made here:



LANconfig: Content-Filter / General

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Global-Settings

- Operating

  This is where you can activate the LANCOM Content Filter.

- Action-on-Error:

  This is where you can determine what should happen when an error occurs. For example, if the rating server cannot be contacted, this settings either allows the user to surf without restrictions or access to the entire web is blocked.

  Possible values:

  - Block, Pass

  Default:

  - Block

- Action-on-License-Exceedance:

  This is where you can determine what should happen when the licensed number of users is exceeded. Users are identified by their IP address. The system keeps count of the IP addresses that connect via the LANCOM Content Filter. When the eleventh user establishes a connection with a 10-user license, no further checking is performed by the LANCOM Content Filter. Depending on this setting, the unlicensed user can either surf the web without restrictions, or access to the entire web is blocked.

  Possible values:

  - Block, Pass

  Default:

  - Block

  The users of the content filter are automatically removed from the user list when no connection has been made from the IP address concerned via the content filter for 24 hours.

- Action-on-License-Expiration:

  The license to use the LANCOM Content Filter is valid for a certain period. You will be reminded of the license expiry date 30 days, one week and one day before it actually expires (at the e-mail address configured in LANconfig: Log & Trace / General).

  This is where you can specify what should happen when the license expires (i.e. block everything or allow everything through). After the license used expires, this setting either allows the user to surf the web without restrictions, or access to the entire web is blocked.

  Possible values:

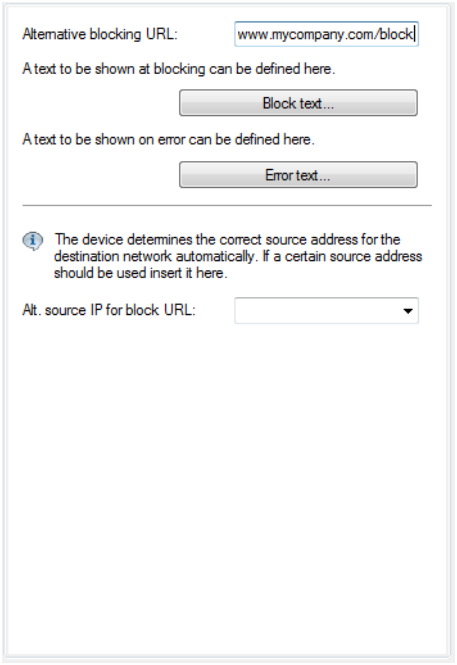
  - Block, Pass

  Default:

- Block

Settings for blocking

You adjust the website-blocking settings here:



LANconfig: Content-Filter / Blocking

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Global-Settings

- URL-To-Show-On-Blocking:

  This is where you can enter the address of an alternative URL. If access is blocked, the URL entered here will be displayed instead of the requested website. You can use this external HTML page to display your company's corporate design, for example, or to perform functions such as JavaScript routines, etc. You can also use the same HTML tags here as in blocking text. If you do not make any entry here, the default page stored in the device will be displayed..

  Possible values:

  - Valid URL address

  Default:

  - Blank

- Loopback-To-Use-On-Blocking:

  This is where you can configure an optional sender address to be used instead of the one that would normally be automatically selected for this target address. If you have configured loopback addresses you can specify them here as sender address.

  Possible values:

  - Name of the IP networks whose address should be used
  - "INT" for the address of the first intranet
  - "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ (caution: If there is an interface called "DMZ", its address will be taken in this case)
  - LB0 ... LBF for the 16 loopback addresses
  - GUEST

- Any IP address in the form x.x.x.x

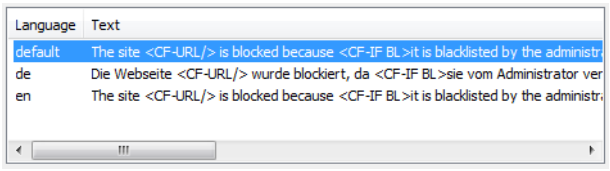
Default:

- Blank

The sender address specified here is used unmasked for every remote station.

Block-Text

This is where you can define text to be displayed when blocking occurs. Different blocking texts can be defined for different languages. The display of blocking text is controlled by the language setting transmitted by the browser (user agent).



- Language

  Entering the appropriate country code here ensures that users receive all messages in their browser's preset language. If the country code set in the browser is found here, the matching text will be displayed.

  You can add any other language.

  Examples of the country code:

  - de-DE: German-Germany
  - de-CH: German-Switzerland
  - de-AT: German-Austria
  - en-GB: English-Great Britain
  - en-US: English-USA

  The country code must match the browser language setting exactly, e,g, "de-DE" must be entered for German ("de" on its own is not sufficient). If the country code set in the browser is not found in this table, or if the text stored under that country code is deleted, the predefined default text ("default") will be used. You can modify the default text.

  Possible values:

  - 10 alphanumerical characters

  Default:

  - Blank

- Text

  Enter the text that you wish to use as blocking text for this language.

  Possible values:

  - 254 alphanumerical characters

  Default:

  - Blank

  Special values:

You can also use special tags for blocking text if you wish to display different pages depending on the reason why the website was blocked (e.g. forbidden category or entry in the blacklist).

The following tags can be used as tag values:

- <CF-URL/> for a forbidden URL
- <CF-CATEGORIES/> for the list of categories why the website was blocked
- <CF-PROFILE/> for the profile name
- <CF-OVERRIDEURL/> for the URL used to activate the URL (this can be integrated in a simple <a> tag or in a button)
- <CF-LINK/> adds a link for activating the override
- <CF-BUTTON/> for a button for activating the override

You can use a tag with attributes to display or hide parts of the HTML document: <CF-IF att1 att2> ... </CF-IF>.

Possible attributes are:

- BLACKLIST: If the site was blocked because it is in the profile blacklist
- CATEGORY: If the site was blocked due to one of its categories
- ERR: If an error has occurred.

Since there are separate text tables for the blocking page and the error page, this tag only makes sense if you have configured an alternative URL to show on blocking.

- OVERRIDEOK: If users have been allowed an override (in this case, the page should display an appropriate button)

If several attributes are defined in one tag, the section will be displayed if at least one of these conditions is met. All tags and attributes can be abbreviated to the first two letters (e.g. CF-CA or CF-IF BL). This is necessary as the blocking text may only contain a maximum of 254 characters.

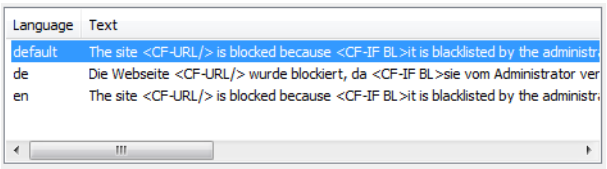
- Example:

<CF-URL/> is blocked because it matches the categories <CF-CA/>.
Your content profile is <CF-PR/>.
<CF-IF OVERRIDEOK>
<CF-BU/></CF-IF>

The tags described here can also be used in external HTML pages (alternative URLs to show on blocking).

Error-Text

This is where you can define text to be displayed when an error occurs.



- Language

  Entering the appropriate country code here ensures that users receive all messages in their browser's preset language. If the country code set in the browser is found here, the matching text will be displayed.

  You can add any other language.

  Examples of the country code:

  - de-DE: German-Germany
  - de-CH: German-Switzerland
  - de-AT: German-Austria
  - en-GB: English-Great Britain
  - en-US: English-USA

The country code must match the browser language setting exactly, e,g, "de-DE" must be entered for German ("de" on its own is not sufficient). If the country code set in the browser is not found in this table, or if the text stored under that country code is deleted, the predefined default text ("default") will be used. You can modify the default text.

Possible values:

- 10 alphanumerical characters

Default:

- Blank

- Text

  Enter the text that you wish to use as error text for this language.

  Possible values:

  - 254 alphanumerical characters

  Default:

  - Blank

  Special values:

  You can also use HTML tags for the error text.

  The following empty element tags can be used as tag values:

  - <CF-URL/> for a forbidden URL
  - <CF-PROFILE/> for the profile name
  - <CF-ERROR/> for the error message
  - Example:

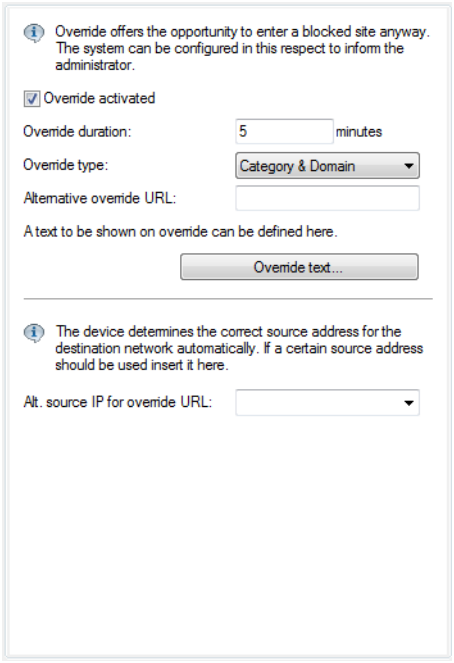
  <CF-URL/> is blocked because an error has occurred:
<CF-ERROR/>

Override settings

The override function allows a website to be accessed even though it is classified as forbidden. The user must click on the override button to confirm that the forbidden page should be opened. You can configure this feature so that the administrator is notified when the override button is clicked (LANconfig: Content-Filter / Global-Settings).

If the override type "Category" has been activated, clicking on the override button makes **all** of the categories for that URL accessible to the user The next blocking page to be displayed has just one category explaining why access to the URL was blocked. After clicking on the override button, all of the allowed categories are displayed. If the override type "Domain" has been activated, then the entire domain can be accessed.

The settings for the override function are to be found here:



LANconfig: Content-Filter / Override

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Global-Settings

- Override-Active

  This is where you can activate the override function and make further related settings.

- Override-Duration

  The override duration can be restricted here. When the period expires, any attempt to access the same domain and/or category will be blocked again. Clicking on the override button once more allows the website to be accessed again for the duration of the override and, depending on the settings, the administrator will be notified once more.

  Possible values:

  - 1-1440 (minutes)

  Default:

  - 5 (minutes)

- Override-Type:

  This is where you can set the type of override. It can be allowed for the domain, for the category of website to be blocked, or for both.

  Possible values:

  - Category: For the duration of the override, all URLs are allowed that fall under the affected categories (as well as those which would already have been allowed even without the override).
  - Domain: For the duration of the override all URLs in this domain are allowed, irrespective of the categories they belong to.
  - Category-and-Domain: For the duration of the override, all URLs are allowed that belong to this domain and also to the allowed categories. This is the highest restriction.

  Default:

  - Category-and-Domain

- URL-To-Show-On-Override:

  This is where you can enter the address of an alternative URL. In the event of an override, the URL entered here will be displayed instead of the usual website. You can use this external HTML page to display your company's corporate design, for example, or to perform functions such as JavaScript routines, etc. You can also use the same tags here as in the override text. If you do not make any entry here, the default page stored in the device will be displayed..

  Possible values:

  - Valid URL address

  Default:

  - Blank

- Loopback-To-Use-On-Override:

  - This is where you can configure an optional sender address to be used instead of the one that would normally be automatically selected for this target address. If you have configured loopback addresses you can specify them here as sender address.

  Possible values:

  - Name of the IP networks whose address should be used
  - "INT" for the address of the first intranet
  - "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ (caution: If there is an interface called "DMZ", its address will be taken in this case)
  - LB0 ... LBF for the 16 loopback addresses
  - GUEST
  - Any IP address in the form x.x.x.x

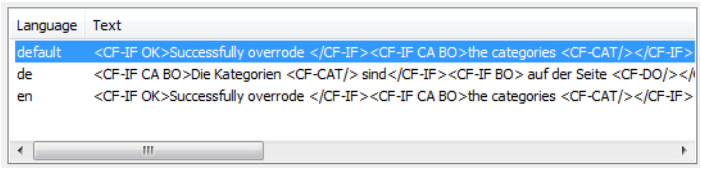
  Default:

  - Blank

  The sender address specified here is used unmasked for every remote station.

Override text

This is where you can define text that is displayed to users confirming an override.



- Language

  Entering the appropriate country code here ensures that users receive all messages in their browser's preset language. If the country code set in the browser is found here, the matching text will be displayed.

  You can add any other language.

  Examples of the country code:

  - de-DE: German-Germany
  - de-CH: German-Switzerland
  - de-AT: German-Austria
  - en-GB: English-Great Britain
  - en-US: English-USA

The country code must match the browser language setting exactly, e,g, "de-DE" must be entered for German ("de" on its own is not sufficient). If the country code set in the browser is not found in this table, or if the text stored under that country code is deleted, the predefined default text ("default") will be used. You can modify the default text.

Possible values:

- 10 alphanumerical characters

Default:

- Blank

- Text

Enter the text that you wish to use as override text for this language.

Possible values:

- 254 alphanumerical characters

Default:

- Blank

Special values:

You can also use HTML tags for blocking text if you wish to display different pages depending on the reason why the website was blocked (e.g. forbidden category or entry in the blacklist).

The following tags can be used as tag values:

- <CF-URL/> for the originally forbidden URL that is now allowed
- <CF-CATEGORIES/> for the list of categories that have now been allowed as a result of the override (except if domain override is specified).
- <CF-BUTTON/> displays an override button that forwards the browser to the original URL.
- <CF-BUTTON/> displays an override link that forwards the browser to the original URL.
- <CF-HOST/> or <CF-DOMAIN/> displays the host or the domain for the allowed URL. The tags are of equal value and their use is optional.
- <CF-ERROR/> generates an error message in the event that the override fails.
- <CF-DURATION/> displays the override duration in minutes.

You can use a tag with attributes to display or hide parts of the HTML document: <CF-IF att1 att2> ... </CF-IF>.

Attributes can be:

- CATEGORY when the override type is "Category" and the override was successful
- DOMAIN when the override type is "Domain" and the override was successful
- BOTH when the override type is "Category-and-Domain" and the override was successful
- ERROR when the override fails
- OK if either CATEGORY or DOMAIN or BOTH are applicable

If several attributes are defined in one tag, the section should be displayed if at least one of these conditions is met. All tags and attributes can be abbreviated to the first two letters (e.g. CF-CA or CF-IF BL). This is necessary as the blocking text may only contain a maximum of 254 characters.

- Example:

<CF-IF CA BO>Categories <CF-CAT/> are </CF-IF><CF-IF BO> in domain <CF-DO/></CF-IF><CF-IF DO>. Access to domain <CF-DO/> is allowed for </CF-IF><CF-IF OK> für <CF-DU/> minutes.
<CF-LI/></CF-IF><CF-IF ERR>Override error :
<CF-ERR/></CF-IF>

Profiles in the LANCOM Content Filter

This is where you can create content filter profiles that are used to check websites for prohibited content. A content filter profile always has a name and, for various time periods, it activates the desired category profile and, optionally, a blacklist and a whitelist.

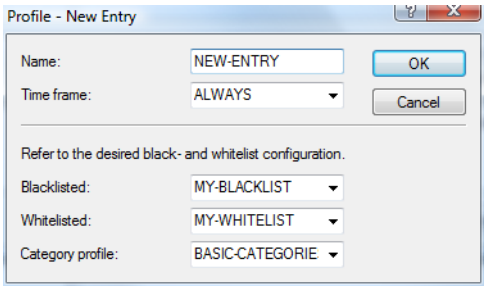
In order to provide different configurations for the various timeframes, several content-filter profile entries are created with the same name. The content filter profile is thus made up of the sum of all entries with the same name.

The firewall refers to this content-filter profile.

Please note that you must make corresponding settings in the firewall in order to use the profiles in the LANCOM Content Filter.

Profiles

The settings for the profiles are to be found here:



LANconfig: Content-Filter / Profiles / Profiles

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Profiles / Profiles

- Name

  The profile name that the firewall references must be specified here.

  Possible values:

  - Name of a profile

  Default:

  - Blank

- Timeframe

  Select the timeframe for this category profile and, optionally, the blacklist and the whitelist. The timeframes “ALWAYS” and “NEVER” are predefined. You can configure other timeframes under:

  LANconfig: Date/Time / General / Timeframe

  WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Time / Timeframe

  One profile may have several lines with different timeframes.

  Possible values:

  - Always
  - Never
  - Name of a timeframe profile

  Default:

  - Blank

If timeframes overlap when multiple entries are used for a content filter profile, all pages contained in one of the active entries will be blocked for that period of time. If a period remains undefined when several entries are used for a content filter profile, access to all websites is unchecked for this period.

- Blacklist

  Name of the blacklist profile that is to apply for this content filter profile during the period in question. A new name can be entered, or an existing name can be selected from the blacklist table.

  Possible values:

  - Name of a blacklist profile
  - New name

  Default:

  - Blank

- Whitelist

  Name of the whitelist profile that is to apply for this content filter profile during the period in question. A new name can be entered, or an existing name can be selected from the whitelist table.

  Possible values:

  - Name of a whitelist profile
  - New name

  Default:

  - Blank

- Category-Profile

  Name of the category profile that is to apply for this content filter profile during the period in question. A new name can be entered, or an existing name can be selected from the category table.

  Possible values:

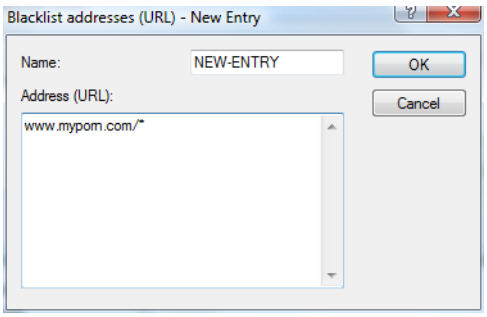
  - Name of a category profile
  - New name

  Default:

  - Blank

Blacklist addresses (URL)

This is where you can configure websites which are to be blocked.



LANconfig: Content-Filter / Profiles / Blacklist addresses (URL)

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Profiles / Blacklists

- Name

  Enter the name of the blacklist for referencing from the content-filter profile.

  Possible values:

  - Blacklist name

  Default:

  - Blank

- Address (URL)

  Access to the URLs entered here will be forbidden by the blacklist.

  Possible values:

  - Valid URL address

  The following wildcard characters may be used:

  - * for any combination of more than one character (e.g. www.lancom.* encompasses the websites www.lancom.de, www.lancom.eu, www.lancom.es, etc.)
  - ? for any single character (e.g. encompasses www.lancom.e* the websites www.lancom.eu and www.lancom.es)

  Please enter the URL **without** the leading http://. Please note that in the case of many URLs a forward slash is automatically added as a suffix to the URL, e.g. www.mycompany.de/ . For this reason it is advisable to enter the URL as: www.mycompany.de* .

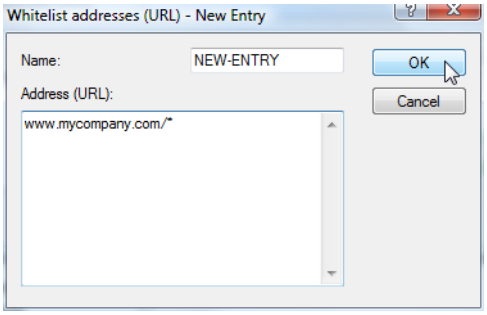
  Individual URLs are separated by a blank.

  Default:

  - Blank

Whitelist addresses (URL)

This is where you can configure websites to which access is to be allowed.



LANconfig: Content-Filter / Profiles / Whitelist addresses (URL)

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Profiles / Whitelists

- Name

  Enter the name of the whitelist for referencing from the content-filter profile.

  Possible values:

  - Name of a whitelist

  Default:

  - Blank

- Addresses (URL)

  This is where you can configure websites which are to be checked locally and then accepted.

  Possible values:

  - Valid URL address

  The following wildcard characters may be used:

  - * for any combination of more than one character (e.g. www.lancom.* encompasses the websites www.lancom.de, www.lancom.en, www.lancom.es, etc.)
  - ? for any single character (e.g. encompasses www.lancom.e* the websites www.lancom.en and www.lancom.es)

  Please enter the URL **without** the leading http://. Please note that in the case of many URLs a forward slash is automatically added as a suffix to the URL, e.g. www.mycompany.de/ . For this reason it is advisable to enter the URL as: www.mycompany.de* .

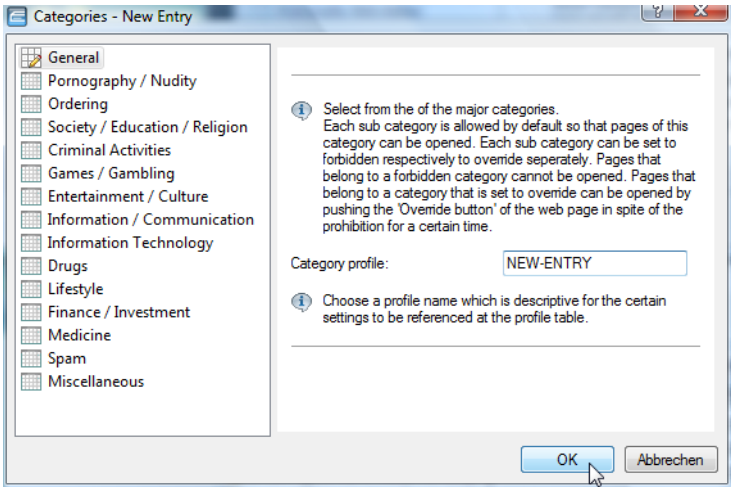
  Individual URLs are separated by a blank.

  Default:

  - Blank

Category-Profiles

Here you create a category profile and determine which categories or groups should be used to rate websites for each category profile. You can allow or forbid the individual categories or activate the override function for each group.



LANconfig: Content-Filter / Profiles / Categories

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Profiles / Category-Profiles

- Category profile

  The name of the category profile for referencing from the content-filter profile is entered here.

  Possible values:

  - Name of a category profile

  Default:

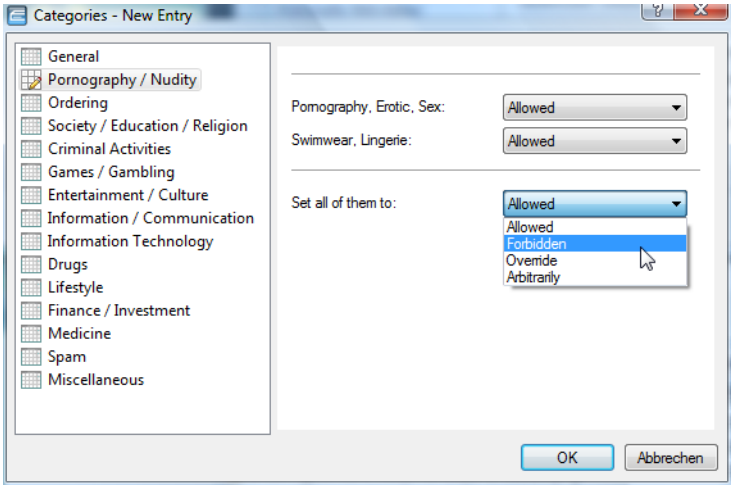
  - Blank

- Category settings

For each main category and the associated sub-categories, it is possible to define whether the URLs are to be allowed, forbidden or allowed with override only.

The following main categories can be configured:

- Pornography/Nudity
- Shopping
- Society/Education/Religion
- Illegal Activities
- Games/Gaming
- Entertainment/Culture
- Information/Communication
- Information Technology
- Drugs
- Lifestyle
- Finance/Investment
- Medicine
- Spam
- Miscellaneous



The category profile must subsequently be assigned to a content-filter profile (together with a timeframe) to become active.

Possible values:

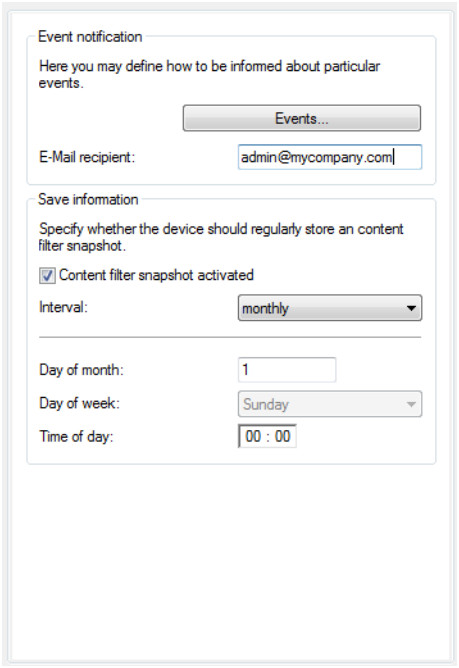
- Allowed, forbidden, override

Default:

- Allowed

Options with the LANCOM Content Filter

This is where you can determine whether you wish to be notified of events and where LANCOM Content Filter information is to be stored.



LANconfig: Content-Filter / Options

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Global-Settings

› Events:

This is where you define how you wish to receive notification of specific events. Notification can be made by e-mail, SNMP or SYSLOG. You can specify that messages for different events should be output in different ways.

Error:

› For SYSLOG: Source “System”, priority “Alarm”.
› Default: SNMP notification

License expiration:

› For SYSLOG: Source “Admin”, priority “Alarm”.
› Default: SNMP notification

License exceeded:

› For SYSLOG: Source “Admin”, priority “Alarm”.
› Default: SNMP notification

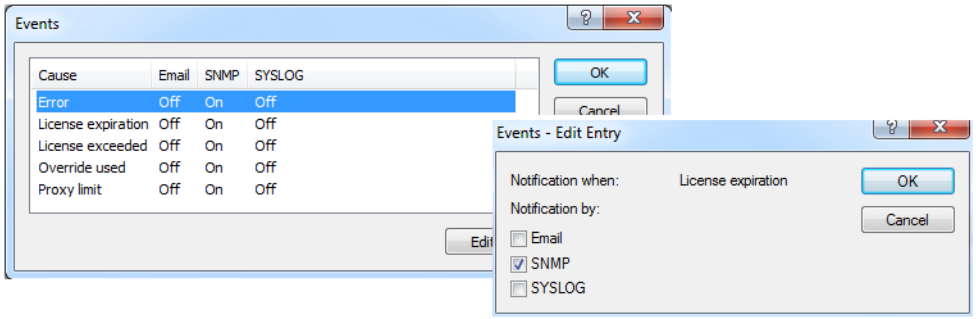
Override applied:

› For SYSLOG: Source “Router”, priority “Alarm”.
› Default: SNMP notification

Proxy Limit:

› For SYSLOG: Source “Admin”, priority “Info”.

- Default: SNMP notification



- E-mail recipient:

  An SMTP client must be defined if you wish to use the e-mail notification function. You can use the client in the device, or another client of your choice.

  No e-mail will be sent if no e-mail recipient is defined.

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Global-Settings / Snapshot

- Content-Filter-Snapshot

  This is where you can activate the content filter snapshot and determine when and how often it should be taken. The snapshot copies the category statistics table to the last snapshot table, overwriting the old contents of the snapshot table. The category statistics values are then reset to 0.

- Interval

  Here you decide whether the snapshot should be taken monthly, weekly or daily.

  Possible values:

  - Monthly
  - Weekly
  - Daily

  Default:

  - Monthly

- Day of month:

  For monthly snapshots, set the day of the month when the snapshot should be taken.

  Possible values:

  - Max. 2 characters

  Default:

  - 1

  It is advisable to select a number between 1 and 28 in order to ensure that it occurs every month.

- Weekday:

  For weekly snapshots, set the day of the week when the snapshot should be taken.

  Possible values:

  - Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday

  Default:

- Monday

- Time:

  If you require a daily snapshot, then enter here the time of day for the snapshot in hours and minutes.

  Possible values:

  - Maximum 5 characters, format HH:MM

  Default:

  - 00:00

Additional settings for the LANCOM Content Filter

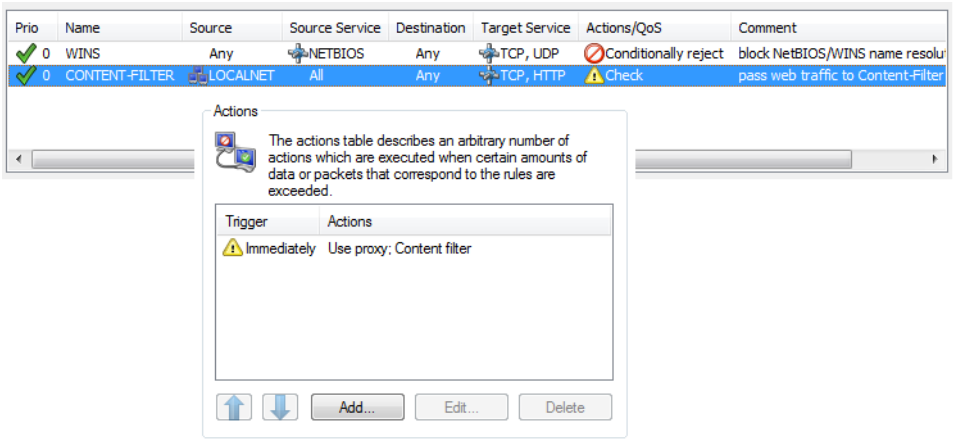
Firewall settings for the content filter

The firewall must be activated in order for the LANCOM Content Filter to function. You can activate the firewall under:

LANconfig: Firewall/QoS / General

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / IP-Router / Firewall

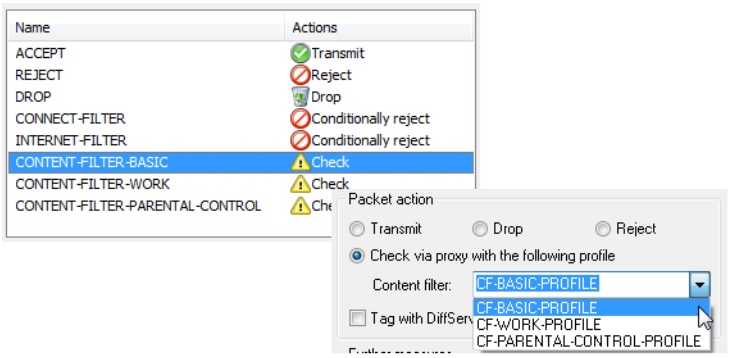
In the default configuration, you will find the firewall rule CONTENT-FILTER that refers to the action object CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC:



The firewall rule should be limited to the target service "http" so that only outgoing HTTP connections are examined. Without this restriction all packets will be checked by the content filter, which could lead to a loss of system performance.

A content-filter related firewall rule must contain a special action object that uses packet actions to check the data according to a content-filter profile. In the default configuration you will find the action objects CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC,

CONTENT-FILTER-WORK and CONTENT-FILTER-PARENTAL-CONTROL, each of which refer to their corresponding content-filter profile:

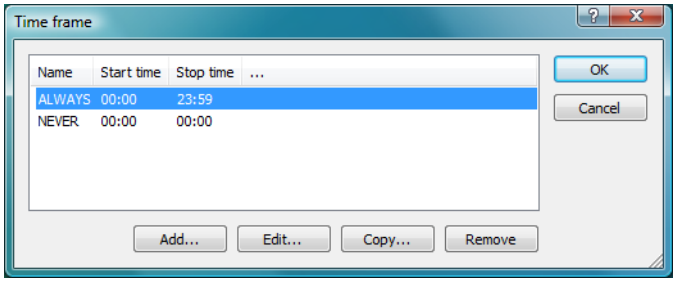


Example: When a web page is accessed, the data packets pass through the firewall and are processed by the rule CONTENT-FILTER. The action object CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC checks the data packets using the content-filter profile CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC.

Timeframe

Timeframes are used to define the periods when the content-filter profiles are valid. One profile may have several lines with different timeframes. Different lines in a timeframe should complement each other, i.e. if you specify WORKTIME you will probably wish to specify a timeframe called FREETIME to cover the time outside of working hours.

The timeframes “ALWAYS” and “NEVER” are predefined. You can configure other timeframes under:



LANconfig: Date/Time / General / Timeframe

WEBconfig: LCOS menu tree / Setup / Time / Timeframe

- Name

  Enter the name of the timeframe for referencing from the content-filter profile.

  Possible values:

  - Name of a timeframe

  Default:

  - Blank

- Start

  Here you set the start time (time of day) when the selected profile becomes valid.

  Possible values:

  - Maximum 5 characters, format HH:MM

  Default:

  - 00:00

- Stop

  Here you set the stop time (time of day) when the selected profile ceases to be valid.

  Possible values:

  - Maximum 5 characters, format HH:MM

  Default:

  - 23:59

- Weekdays

  Here you select the weekday on which the timeframe is to be valid.

  Possible values:

  - Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday

  Default:

  - Activated for Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday

  You can form a time schedule with the same name but with different times extending over several lines:

Name	Start time	Stop time	...
ALWAYS	00:00	23:59	
LEISURE	00:00	07:00	
LEISURE	12:01	13:00	
LEISURE	17:01	23:59	
NEVER	00:00	00:00	

Addition(s) to LCOS 8.50

Content filter for HTTPS pages

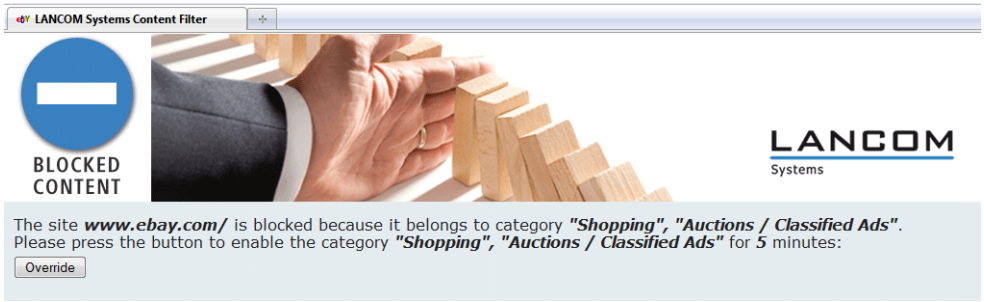
The first version content filter supported only HTTP pages, whereas LCOS 8.50 now also supports HTTPS pages.

By default the content filter uses the firewall rule 'CONTENT-FILTER'. When the content filter option is activated on a device with LCOS 8.50 or newer, the rule refers to the target 'WEB', which monitors outbound HTTP and HTTPS connections on ports 80 and 443.

If you enabled the content filter option on a device with an LCOS version oder than 8.50, the firewall rule only uses HTTP port 80 as the target. If this is the case, then you can reset the target of the firewall rule to 'WEB' so that outgoing HTTPS connections are also checked with the content filter.

One-click override

The override function allows a website to be accessed even though it is classified as forbidden.With this feature enabled, the content filter informs the user why the page was blocked and also provides the option of unlocking the category for the set period of time.



In case of an override, the content filter displays the relevant entry from the block-text table and directly below this, the text from the override-text table together with the 'Override' button. When the user clicks this button the content filter forwards the user to the requested page, if possible. If it is not possible to forward the user to the requested page, the content filter displays an error page.

In the LCOS versions earlier than version 8.50, the block texts, override texts and and error texts and associated attributes were used slightly differently than in the LCOS versions 8.50 and newer.

When updating to LCOS 8.50, you should check the texts in the different tables and adjust them if necessary.

Depending on the application, the arguments relating to HTTP requests are transmitted in different ways according to the requested URL. In most cases, the browser sends a GET request with the arguments in the URL (e.g. a search term). In the case of an override, the content filter is able to forward GET requests as all the required information is included in the URL. However, in some cases the browser sends POST requests, for example for file uploads where the data to be transmitted is in the header of the request. In this case, the information that should be forwarded in case of an override is not contained in the URL. The content filter can only successfully forward post requests in case of an override if JavaScript has been enabled in the user's browser. Browsers based on the HTML rendering library 'WebKit' do not support the override of post requests with JavaScript.

Content filters operating on a system without JavaScript activated or with WebKit browsers display an error page after clicking on the 'Override' button. These users can then click the button for reloading the web page and forwarding will then succeed.

The following sections show the changes made to the content filter menu system.

URL to show on error

This is where you can enter an alternative URL. In the event of an error, the URL entered here will be displayed instead of the usual web site. You can use this external HTML page to display your company's corporate design, for example, or to perform functions such as JavaScript routines, etc. You can also use the same tags here as used in the override text. If you do not make any entry here, the default page stored in the device will be displayed..

Telnet path: /Setup/UTM/Content-Filter/Global-Settings

Possible values:

- Valid URL address

Default: Blank

Loopback to use on error

This is where you can configure an optional sender address for the error URL to be used instead of the one that would normally be automatically selected for this target address. If you have configured loopback addresses, you can specify them here as sender address.

Telnet path: /Setup/UTM/Content-Filter/Global-Settings

English description: Loopback-To-Use-On-Override

Possible values:

- Name of the IP networks whose address should be used
- "INT" for the address of the first intranet
- "DMZ" for the address of the first DMZ (Note: If there is an interface named "DMZ", its address will be taken).
- LB0 ... LBF for the 16 loopback addresses
- GUEST
- Any IP address in the form x.x.x.x

Default: Blank

The sender address specified here is used unmasked for every remote station.

Text

Enter the text that you wish to use as blocking text for this language.

Telnet path: /Setup/UTM/Content-Filter/Global-Settings/Block-Text

Possible values:

- 254 alphanumerical characters

Default:

Blank

Special values:

You can also use special tags for blocking text if you wish to display different pages depending on the reason why the web site was blocked (e.g. forbidden category or entry in the blacklist).

The following tags can be used as tag values:

- <CF-URL/> for the forbidden URL
- <CF-HOST/> or <CF-DOMAIN/> displays the host or the domain for the allowed URL. The tags are of equal value and their use is optional.
- <CF-CATEGORIES/> for the list of categories why the web site was blocked
- <CF-PROFILE/> for the profile name
- <CF-DURATION/> displays the override duration in minutes.
- <CF-OVERRIDEURL/> for the URL used to activate the URL (this can be integrated in a simple <a> tag or in a button)
- <CF-LINK/> adds a link for activating the override
- <CF-BUTTON/> for a button for activating the override

You can use a tag with attributes to display or hide parts of the HTML document: <CF-IF att1 att2> ... </CF-IF>.

Possible attributes are:

- BLACKLIST: If the site was blocked because it is in the profile blacklist
- FORBIDDEN: If the site was blocked due to one of its categories
- CATEGORY: When the override type is "Category" and the override was successful
- ERR: If an error has occurred.

Since there are separate text tables for the blocking page and the error page, this tag only makes sense if you have configured an alternative URL to show on blocking.

- OVERRIDEOK: If users have been allowed an override (in this case, the page should display an appropriate button)

If several attributes are defined in one tag, the section will be displayed if at least one of these conditions is met. All tags and attributes can be abbreviated to the first two letters (e.g. CF-CA or CF-IF BL). This is necessary as the blocking text may only contain a maximum of 254 characters.

Example:

- <CF-URL/> is blocked because it matches the categories <CF-CA/>. Your content profile is <CF-PR/>. <CF-IF OVERRIDEOK> <CF-BU/></CF-IF>

The tags described here can also be used in external HTML pages (alternative URLs to show on blocking).

Text

Enter the text that you wish to use as error text for this language.

Telnet path: /Setup/UTM/Content-Filter/Global-Settings/Error-Text

Possible values:

254 alphanumerical characters

Default:

Blank

Special values:

You can also use HTML tags for the error text.

The following empty element tags can be used as tag values:

- <CF-URL/> for the forbidden URL
- <CF-HOST/> or <CF-DOMAIN/> displays the host or the domain for the forbidden URL. The tags are of equal value and their use is optional.
- <CF-DURATION/> displays the override duration in minutes.
- <CF-PROFILE/> for the profile name
- <CF-ERROR/> for the error message

You can use a tag with attributes to display or hide parts of the HTML document: <CF-IF att1 att2> ... </CF-IF>.

Possible attributes are:

- CHECKERROR: The error occurred while checking the URL
- OVERRIDEERROR: The error occurred while approving an override

Example:

<CF-URL/> is blocked because an error has occurred: <CF-ERROR/>

<CF-URL>: Blocked URL <CF-HOST> or <CF-DOMAIN>: Host part of the blocked URL <CF-PROFILE>: User content-filter profile <CF-DURATION>: Override time in minutes <CF-ERROR>: Error message <CF-IF> to </CF-IF>: Conditional evaluation of the following parameters with the logical OR: CHECKERROR: The error occurred while checking the URL (as earlier) OVERRIDE ERROR: The error occurred while approving an override

Text

Enter the text that you wish to use as override text for this language.

Telnet path: /Setup/UTM/Content-Filter/Global-Settings/Override-Text

Possible values:

- 254 alphanumerical characters

Default:

Blank

Special values:

You can also use HTML tags for blocking text if you wish to display different pages depending on the reason why the web site was blocked (e.g. forbidden category or entry in the blacklist).

The following tags can be used as tag values:

- <CF-URL/> for the originally forbidden URL that is now allowed
- <CF-CATEGORIES/> for the list of categories that have now been allowed as a result of the override (except if domain override is specified).
- <CF-BUTTON/> displays an override button that forwards the browser to the original URL.
- <CF-BUTTON/> displays an override link that forwards the browser to the original URL.
- <CF-HOST/> or <CF-DOMAIN/> displays the host or the domain for the allowed URL. The tags are of equal value and their use is optional.

- <CF-ERROR/> generates an error message in the event that the override fails.
- <CF-DURATION/> displays the override duration in minutes.

You can use a tag with attributes to display or hide parts of the HTML document: <CF-IF att1 att2> ... </CF-IF>.

Attributes can be:

- BLACKLIST: If the site was blocked because it is in the profile blacklist
- FORBIDDEN: If the site was blocked due to one of its categories
- CATEGORY: When the override type is "Category" and the override was successful
- DOMAIN: When the override type is "Domain" and the override was successful
- BOTH: When the override type is "Category-and-Domain" and the override was successful
- ERROR: When the override fails
- OK: When either CATEGORY or DOMAIN or BOTH are applicable

If several attributes are defined in one tag, the section should be displayed if at least one of these conditions is met. All tags and attributes can be abbreviated to the first two letters (e.g. CF-CA or CF-IF BL). This is necessary as the blocking text may only contain a maximum of 254 characters.

Example:

<CF-IF CA BO>The categories <CF-CAT/> are</CF-IF><CF-IF BO> in the domain <CF-DO/></CF-IF><CF-IF DO>The domain <CF-DO/> is</CF-IF><CF-IF OK> released for <CF-DU/> minutes. <CF-LI/></CF-IF><CF-IF ERR>Override error: <CF-ERR/></CF-IF>

Addition(s) to LCOS 8.80

Concurrent user model in the content filter

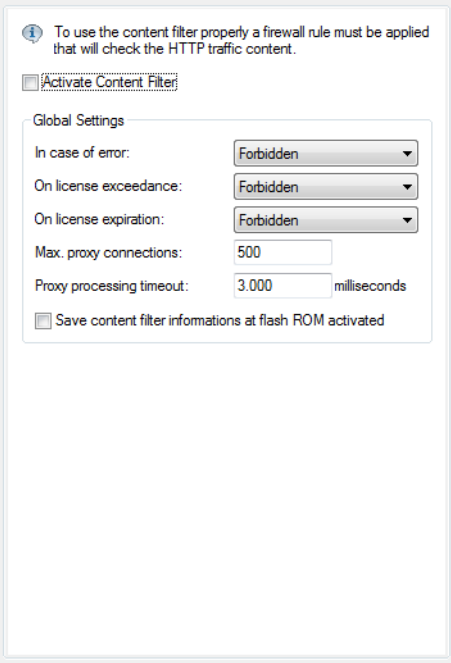
As of LCOS 8.80, the content filter supports a true concurrent user model. This model licenses the number of **concurrent** users of the content filter. In contrast to this, the previous "per-user model" licenses the number of all **potential** users.

Until now, the content filter retained a user in its internal user list for 24 hours. After using the content filter for the first time within a 24-hour period, the user is permanently listed and thus licensed.

As of LCOS 8.80, the content filter only maintains a user in its internal user list for 5 minutes. This change makes it possible for a changing selection of users to use the content filter. Your license now checks only the actual number of concurrent users (within the 5-minute period).

General settings

Global settings for the LANCOM Content Filter are made here:



LANconfig: Content Filter / General

WEBconfig: LCOS Menu Tree / Setup / UTM / Content-Filter / Global-Settings

- Operating

  This is where you can activate the LANCOM Content Filter.

- Action-on-Error:

  This is where you can determine what should happen when an error occurs. For example, if the rating server cannot be contacted, this setting either allows the user to surf without restrictions or access to the web is blocked entirely.

  Possible values:

  - Block, Pass

  Default:

  - Block

- Action on license exceedance:

  This is where you can determine what should happen when the licensed number of users is exceeded. Users are identified by their IP address. The system keeps count of the IP addresses that connect via the LANCOM Content Filter. When the eleventh user establishes a connection with a 10-user license, no further checking is performed by the LANCOM Content Filter. Depending on this setting, the unlicensed user can either surf the web without restrictions, or access to the web is blocked entirely.

  Possible values:

  - Block, Pass

  Default:

  - Block

The users of the content filter are automatically removed from the user list when no connection has been made from the IP address concerned via the content filter for 5 minutes.

- Action-on-License-Expiration:

  The license to use the LANCOM Content Filter is valid for a certain period. You will be reminded of the license expiry date 30 days, one week and one day before it actually expires (at the e-mail address configured in LANconfig: Log & Trace / General).

  This is where you can specify what should happen when the license expires (i.e. block everything or allow everything through). After the license expires, this setting either allows the user to surf the web without restrictions, or access to the web is blocked entirely.

  Possible values:

  - Block, Pass

  Default:

  - Block

In order for the reminder to be sent to the specified e-mail address, you must configure the SMTP account.

- Max. proxy connections

  This setting is for the maximum allowable number of simultaneous proxy connections. This limits the load that can be placed on the system. A notification is sent if this number should be exceeded. You can set the type of notification under **Content filter** > **Options** > **Events**.

  Possible values:

  - 0 to 999999 connections

  Default:

  - Depends on device

- Proxy processing timeout

  Specifies the maximum time in milliseconds that the proxy can take for processing. A timeout error page is displayed if this time is exceeded.

  Possible values:

  - 0 to 999999 milliseconds

  Default:

  - 3000 milliseconds

  Special values:

  - The value 0 sets no time limit. Values less than 100 milliseconds make no sense.

- Save content filter information to flash ROM activated

  If you enable this option, you can additionally save the content filter information to the flash ROM memory of the device.

  Default:

  - Deactivated

New content filter category, Command/Control Server

As of LCOS 8.80, the content filter supports the new Web filter category Command and Control Server ("C&C server" for short). C&C servers monitor and control bots in a botnet.

Introduction

The LANCOM Content Filter enables you to filter certain content from your network, so preventing access to Internet pages with content that is illegal or offensive. It also enables you to stop private surfing on specific sites during working hours. This not only increases staff productivity and network security but also ensures that the full bandwidth is available exclusively for your business activities.

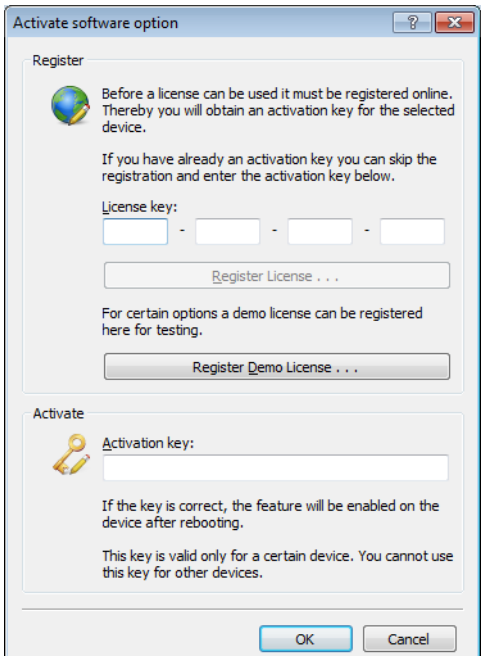
The LANCOM Content Filter is an intelligent content filter that works dynamically. It contacts a rating server that evaluates Internet sites reliably and accurately in accordance with the categories that you select.

The LANCOM Content Filter operates by checking the IP addresses behind the URLs that are entered. For any given domain it is possible to differentiate according to the path, meaning that specific areas of a URL may be rated differently.

It is not possible for users to avoid the LANCOM Content Filter website rating simply by entering the website's IP address into their browsers. The LANCOM Content Filter checks unencrypted (HTTP) and also encrypted Web pages (HTTPS).

The LANCOM Content Filter license you purchase is valid for a certain number of users and for a specific period (for one or three years). You will be informed of the expiry of your license in good time. The number of current users is monitored in the device, with the users being identified by their IP address. You can configure what should happen when the number of licensed users is exceeded: Access can either be denied or an unchecked connection can be made.

You can test the LANCOM Content Filter on any router that supports this function. All you have to do is to activate a 30-day demo license for each device. Demo licenses are generated directly with LANconfig. Click on the device with the right-hand mouse key and select the context menu entry **Activate Software Option**. In the dialog that follows, click on the button **Register demo license**. You will automatically be connected to the website for the LANCOM registration server. Simply select the required demo license and you can register your device.



All settings relating to categories are stored in category profiles. You select from predefined main and sub-categories in the LANCOM Content Filter: 59 categories are divided into 14 subject groups such as “Pornography, Nudity", "Shopping" or "Illegal Activities". You can activate or deactivate each of the categories that these groups contain. Sub-categories for “Pornography/Nudity” are, for example, “Pornography/Erotic/Sex” and “Swimwear/Lingerie”.

When configuring these categories, administrators have an additional option of activating an override. When the override option is active, users may still access the forbidden site for a particular period of time by clicking on a corresponding button, but the administrator will be notified of this by e-mail, SYSLOG, or SNMP trap.

The category profile, whitelist and blacklist can be used to create a content filter profile that you can assign to particular users by means of the firewall. For example you can create a profile called “Employees_department_A” and assign this to all of the computers in that department.

When you install the LANCOM Content Filter, basic default settings are created automatically. These only need to be activated for the initial start. You can subsequently customize the behavior of the LANCOM Content Filter to match your own requirements.

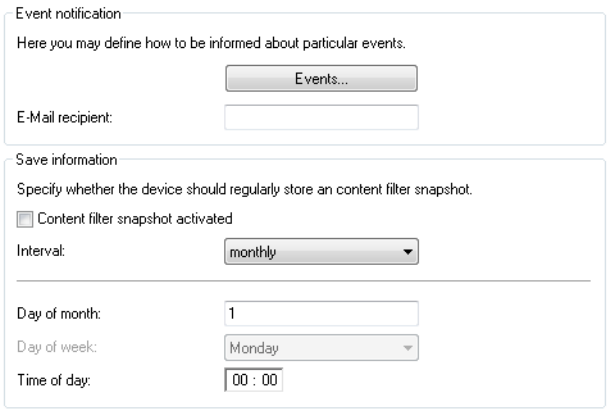
Addition(s) to LCOS 9.10

E-mail notification from the Content Filter

As of LCOS version 9.10, it is possible to send e-mail notifications about the causes of content-filter events, either immediately or daily depending on the cause.

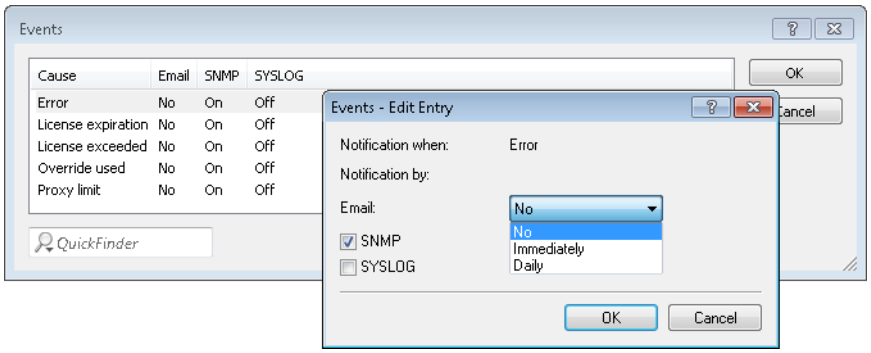
Options for the LANCOM Content Filter

Under **Content Filter** > **Options** you determine whether you wish to be notified of events and where LANCOM Content Filter information is to be stored.



Events

This is where you define how you wish to receive notification of specific events. Notification can be made by e-mail, SNMP or SYSLOG. For different event types you can specify whether messages should be output and, if so, how many.



E-mail

Here, you specify if and how e-mail notification takes place:

No

No e-mail notification is issued for this event.

Immediately

Notification occurs when the event occurs.

Daily

The notification occurs once per day.

Notifications can be sent for the following events:

Error

For SYSLOG: Source “System”, priority “Alert”.

Default: SNMP notification

License expiry

For SYSLOG: Source “Admin”, priority “Alert”.

Default: SNMP notification

License exceeded

For SYSLOG: Source “Admin”, priority “Alert”.

Default: SNMP notification

Override applied

For SYSLOG: Source “Router”, priority “Alert”.

Default: SNMP notification

Proxy limit

For SYSLOG: Source “Router”, priority “Info”.

Default: SNMP notification

E-mail recipient

An SMTP client must be defined if you wish to use the e-mail notification function. You can use the client in the device, or another client of your choice.

No e-mail will be sent if no e-mail recipient is specified.

Content Filter snapshot

This is where you can activate the content filter snapshot and determine when and how often it should be taken. The snapshot copies the category statistics table to the last snapshot table, overwriting the old contents of the snapshot table. The category statistics values are then reset to 0.

Interval

Here you decide whether the snapshot should be taken monthly, weekly or daily.

Possible values:

- monthly, weekly, daily
- Default: monthly

Day of month

For monthly snapshots, set the day of the month when the snapshot should be taken. Possible values:

- Max. 2 characters
- Default:1

It is advisable to select a number between 1 and 28 in order to ensure that it occurs every month.

Day of week

For weekly snapshots, set the day of the week when the snapshot should be taken. Possible values:

- Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
- Default: Monday

Time of day:

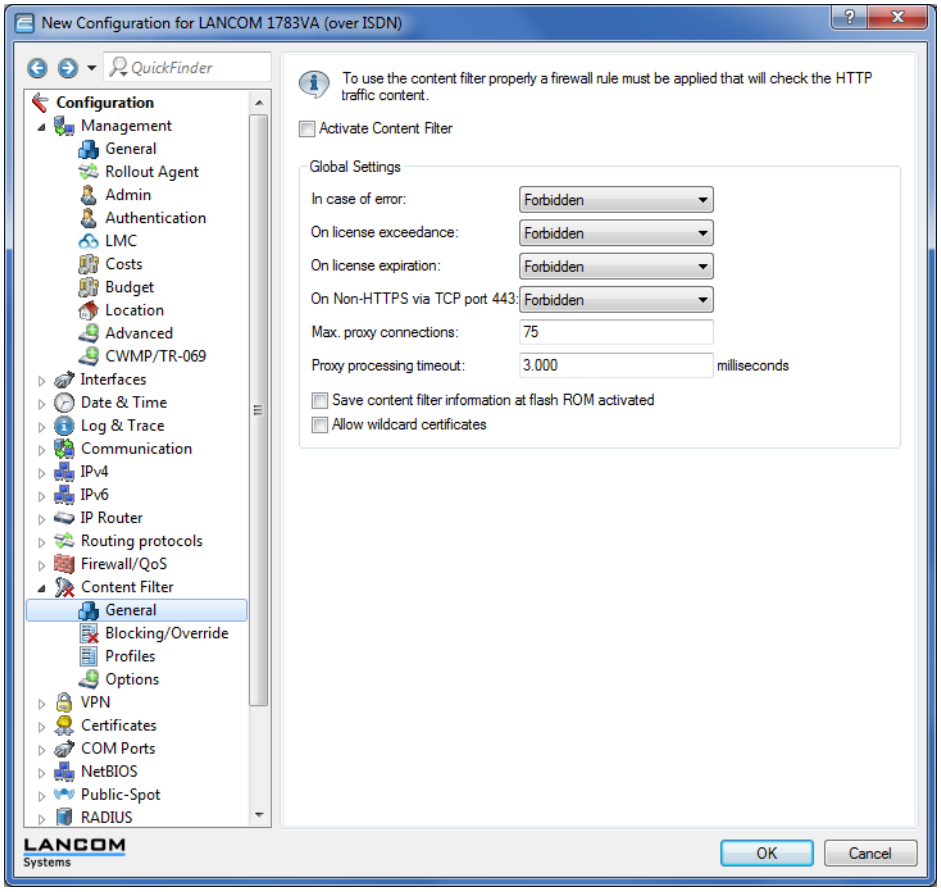
If you require a daily snapshot, then enter here the time of day for the snapshot in hours and minutes. Possible values:

- Maximum 5 characters, format HH:MM
- Default: 00:00

Addition(s) to LCOS 10.12

Unknown traffic via port 443

You can also permit non-HTTPS connections over port 443. Use the following selection window in **LANconfig** for this purpose:



For non-HTTPS traffic over port 443

Forbidden

Prevents non-HTTPS traffic over port 443

Allowed

Permits non-HTTPS traffic over port 443

By default the TCP port 443 is reserved exclusively for HTTPS connections.

Some applications that do not use HTTPS still use TCP port 443. In this case, you can also open TCP port 443 for non-HTTPS connections.

If you permit non-HTTPS connections over port 443, the traffic is not further classified and is open for any connection. By default, non-HTTPS connections over port 443 are not permitted.

IPv6 support

IPv6 data traffic is checked and filtered exactly like IPv4 traffic. Like IPv4, the configuration takes place in the firewall. In the IPv6 firewall, you can define actions that forward data traffic to the content filter for checking:

```
root@Router_PP:/Setup/IPv6/Firewall/Actions/CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC
> ls -a
[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][2.70.5.7.1][column][20.67.79.78.84.69.78.84.45.70.73.76.84.69.82.45.66.65.83.73.67]

[  1] Name              INFO:    CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC
[  2] Limit             VALUE:   0
[  3] Unit              VALUE:   packets
[  4] Time              VALUE:   absolute
[  5] Context           VALUE:   session
[  6] Flags             VALUE:   none
[  7] Action            VALUE:   check
[ 10] Content-Filter    VALUE:   CF-BASIC-PROFILE
[ 11] DiffServ          VALUE:   No
[ 12] DSCP-value        VALUE:   0
[ 13] Conditions        VALUE:
[ 14] Trigger-actions   VALUE:
```

The action **check** is important in the context of the content-filter profile specified under **Content-Filter**. The profile is created as usual in the content-filter configuration.

By default, the following action objects are already created in the IPv6 firewall:

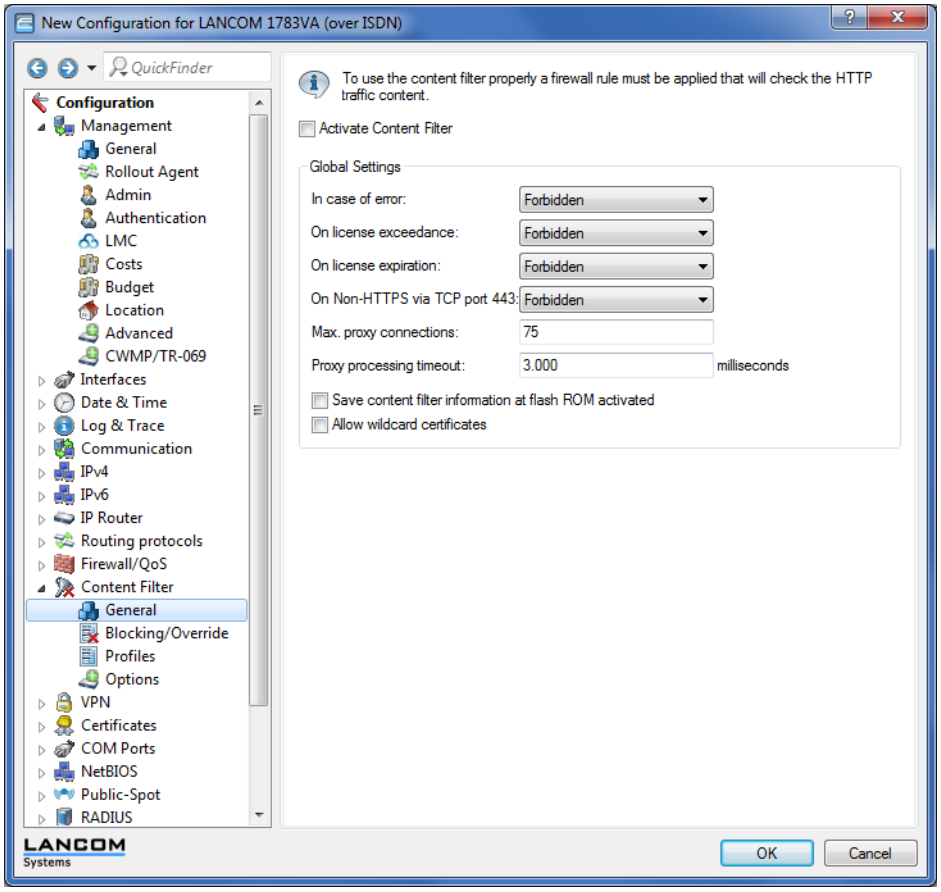
```
root@Router_PP:/Setup/IPv6/Firewall/Actions
> ls -a

[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][2.70.5.7]
Name                             Limit   Unit        Time      Context    Flags    Action
Content-Filter
[1]                              [2]     [3]         [4]       [5]        [6]     [7]
[10]
CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC                0     packets    absolute    session    none    check
CF-BASIC-PROFILE
CONTENT-FILTER-PARENTIAL-CONTROL 0      packets    absolute    session    none    check
CF-PARENTIAL-CONTROL-PROFILE
CONTENT-FILTER-WORK                 0     packets    absolute    session    none    check
CF-WORK-PROFILE
```

In the Forwarding-Rules table, the following rule is stored by default. It is disabled and can be activated by the user:

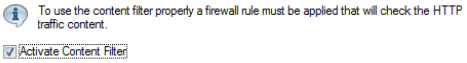
```
root@Router_PP:/Setup/IPv6/Firewall/Forwarding-Rules
> ls -a

[1.3.6.1.4.1.2356.11][2.70.5.2]
Name              Action           Services Source-Stations Destination-Stations Flags
   Comment
[1]                 [5]              [7]       [8]               [9]              [2]
     [10]
CONTENT-FILTER CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC  ANY     ANYHOST           ANYHOST        deactivated
  pass web traffic to...
...
  Content-Filter
```

Configuration by LANconfig

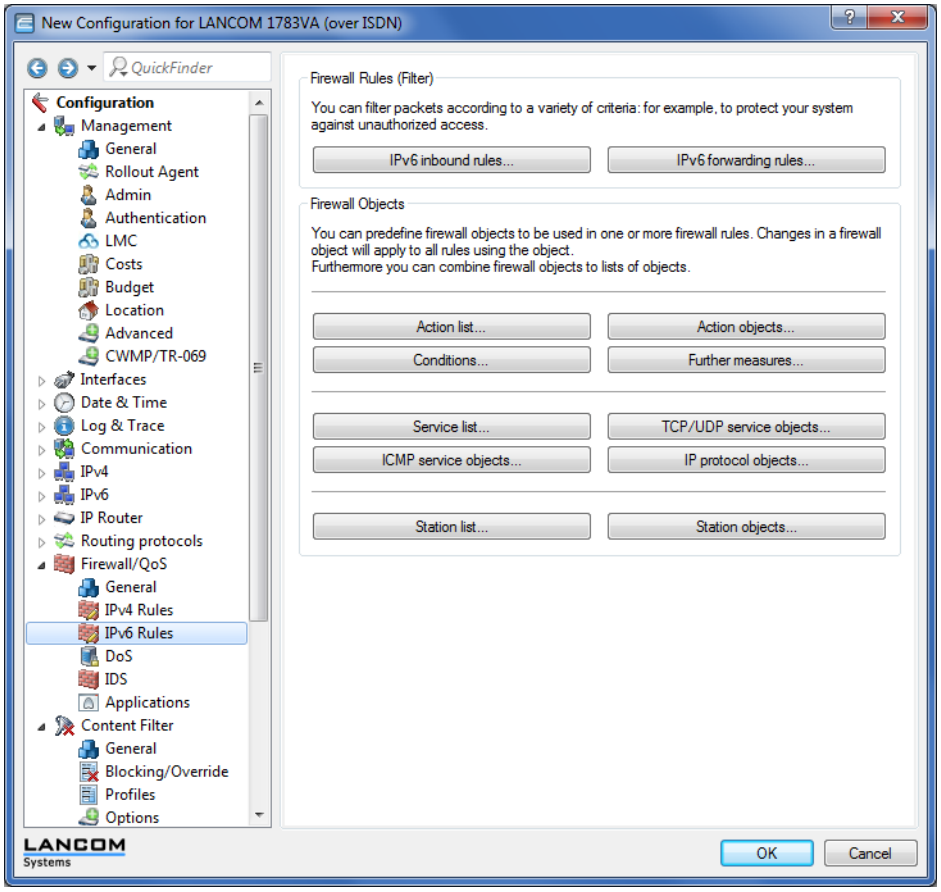
Navigate to **Content-Filter** > **General**



and enable the Content Filter using the drop-down box **Activate Content Filter**.

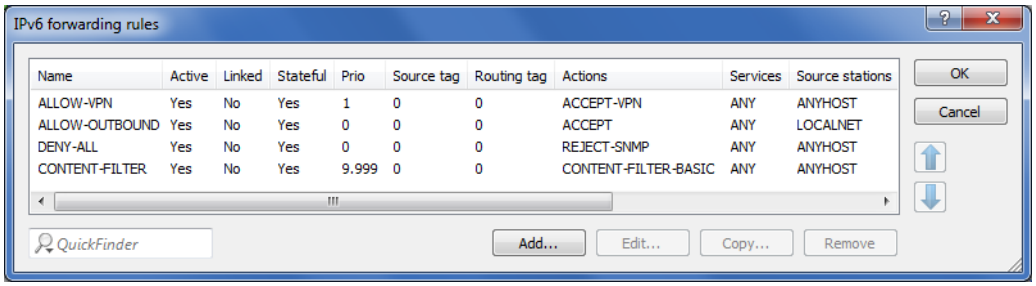


Now navigate to **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules**.

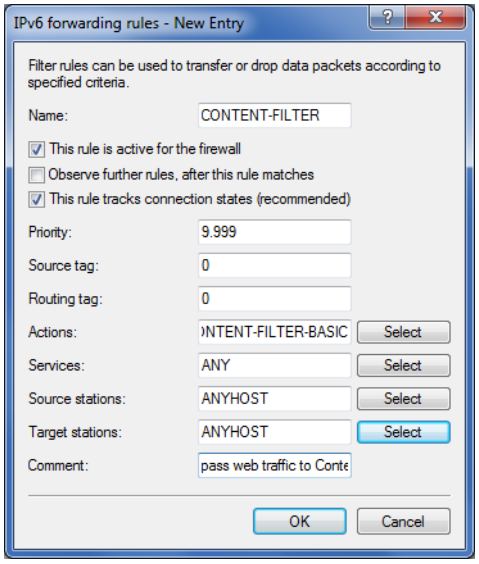


IPv6 forwarding rules

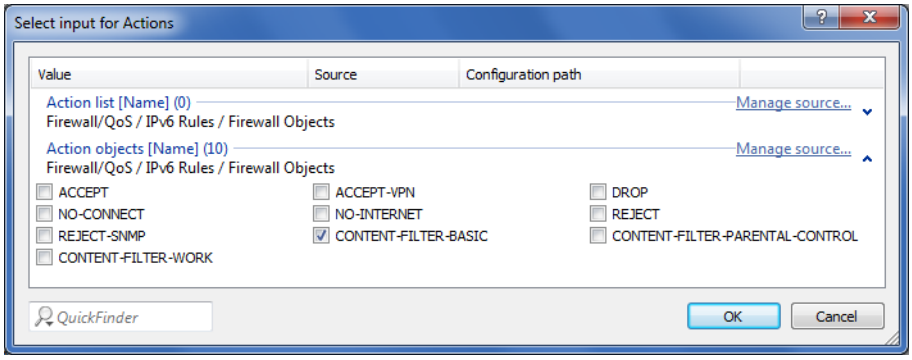
Forwarding rules are specified under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** > **Firewall rules (filter)** in the menu **IPv6 forwarding rules**:



By default the profile **CONTENT-FILTER** is created with the following settings:



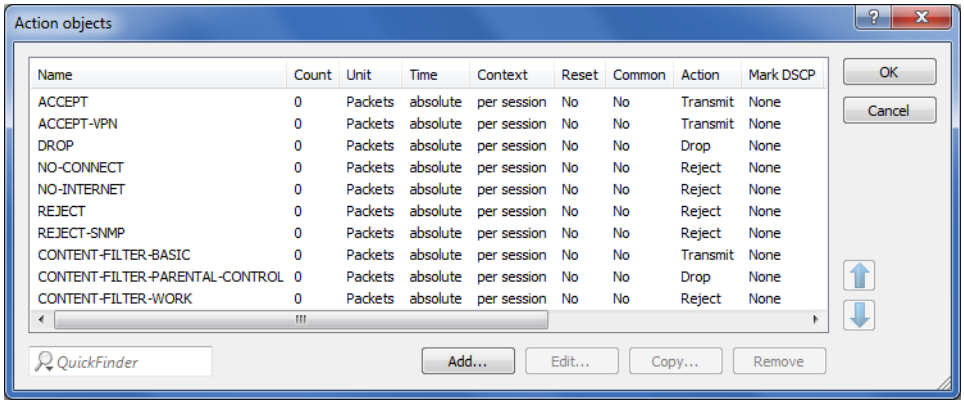
In the **Actions** selection list, you see the default content-filter profiles **CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC**. **CONTENT-FILTER-PARENTAL-CONTROL** and **CONTENT-FILTER-WORK**:



IPv6 action objects

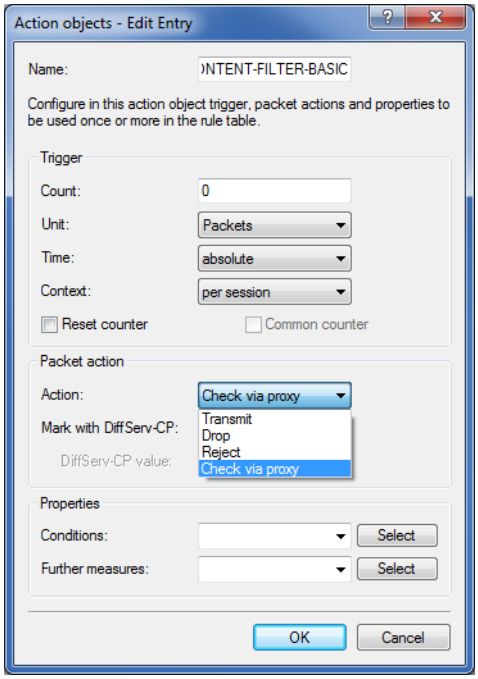
You define the required firewall objects under **Firewall/QoS** > **IPv6 rules** > **Firewall objects**

in the menu **Action objects**:



By default, the content filter profiles **CONTENT-FILTER-BASIC**, **CONTENT-FILTER-PARENTAL CONTROL** and **CONTENT FILTER WORK** have already been created as action objects.

If you edit one of these three entries, the field **Packet action** presents your content-filter profile options:



Options:

Check via proxy (default)

The proxy decides whether the packet is transmitted or not.

Transmit

The packet is transmitted normally.

Drop

The packet is dropped silently.

Reject

The packet is rejected and the recipient is sent a corresponding message via ICMPv6.

19.13 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.50

19.13.1 Bandwidth restriction of the LAN interfaces

Introduction

For a device with an integrated WLAN module, you can specify a bandwidth limit for individual LAN ports. The table of LAN interfaces contains the parameters necessary to configure bandwidth restrictions.

19.14 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.80

19.14.1 LLDP

The Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) provides a simple and reliable way to exchange information between neighboring devices on the network and for determining the topology of networks. LLDP provides discovery functions to identify individual devices and entire network structures using the procedures defined in the IEEE 802.1AB standard. Since the protocol works on Layer 2 (security level) of the OSI layer model and it is, therefore, used for physically addressing devices, its functionality is not limited to logical networks such as IP networks. In principle, LLDP covers all physically accessible devices on the network.

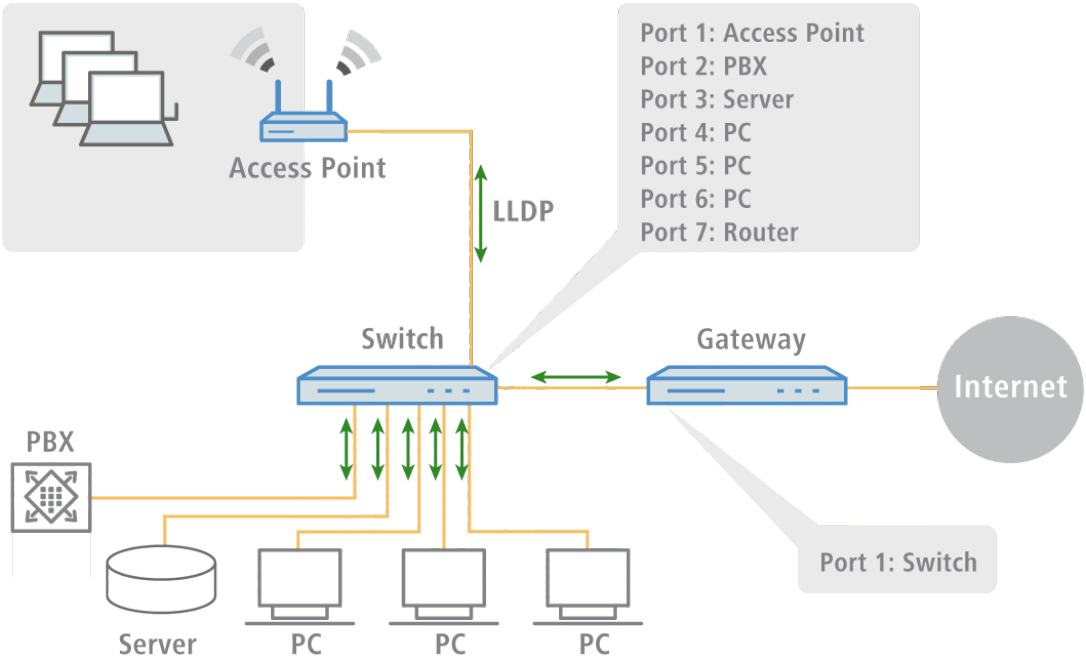
In particular, the vendor-independent LLDP protocol offers many advantages in complex networks:

- It enables the automatic detection of components attached to a network such as routers, switches, and WLAN access points.
- It simplifies the integration of a wide range of different devices, which support the LLDP standard, into an existing network: Using central network management software, and automatic testing and diagnostic processes, the time required for setup, operation and maintenance of a network is reduced.
- The information sent by the individual devices provides an overview of the topology (i.e., structure and arrangement) of the entire network. Central management software provides the administrator with a virtual image of the network, which is automatically updated when there are changes in the topology.
- With the help of management software, the administrator can also easily monitor and manage complex networks. Using this software, he can determine which components and devices are interconnected and can easily locate any faults.
- LLDP can reduce the costs of buying, building or restructuring a network, since companies are no longer dependent on specific manufacturers because of this open standard. Individual network components can be selected based on which one is best for your implementation. This was previously not possible when proprietary protocols were in use.

How it works

LLDP works on a simple principle: The so-called LLDP agent runs on all devices with LLDP support. On the one hand, this software component sends information to all interfaces of the device at regular intervals. This is done using either Unicast or Multicast, depending on the destination addresses, which you can configure as required. On the other hand,

the LLDP agent is continuously receiving information from neighboring devices. The transmission and reception of the respective data packets is handled independently from each other.



The data packets being sent and received contain information such as the name and the description of the device, the ID and description of ports, the IP address or MAC address of the device, the specific capabilities of the device (e.g., in terms of switching and routing), VLAN identifiers and vendor-specific details. In this case, LLDP defines basic information that a data packet must always include, as well as optional additional information.

The individual devices store the information received locally in a data structure, the so-called MIB (Management Information Base). An MIB therefore contains data from its own LLDP agent and of the detected, direct neighbor agent.

The information exchange provides a continuing identification of the devices within the network, because the devices normally send packets cyclically (i.e. in configurable intervals). Furthermore, the devices also inform their network neighbors when changes occur on the device or in its network connection.

For the actual device identification process it is crucial that each connection point in the topology is clearly identified as a "Media Service Access Point" (MSAP). An MSAP is composed of a device ID (Chassis ID) and a port identification (Port ID). The unique identification or assignment of devices is therefore based on the fact that each MSAP in the monitored network topology may occur only once.

The Administrator can query and capture the data reported by the devices via a central network management software on his computer, where the query of the individual MIBs is performed using the SNMP protocol. The management software thus documents the entire topology of the network and allows automatic display of this topology along with a graphic representation of the current diagnostic data.

Structure of LLDP messages

Information is exchanged using specific units of data known as LLDP Data Units (LLDPDU). These data unit consists of TLVs (Type-Length-Values), and each TLV field corresponds to a certain type and has a certain length.

In accordance with the LLDP standard IEEE 802.1AB three TLVs are mandatory at the beginning of an LLDPU in the following order:

- Type 1 = Chassis ID
- Type 2 = Chassis ID
- Type 3 = Time to live

Following these mandatory TLVs, an LLDPDU can include additional, optional TLVs:

- Type 4 = Port description
- Type 5 = System name
- Type 6 = System description
- Type 7 = System capabilities
- Type 8 = Management address

At the end of an LLDPDU the following TLV is mandatory:

- Type 0 = End of LLDPDU

Tabular overview of the TLVs

TLV	Usage	Name	Example	Function
Type 1	Mandatory	Chassis ID	0018.2fa6.b28c	Identifies the device
Type 2	Mandatory	Port ID	Fi-0/12	Identifies the port
Type 3	Mandatory	Time to live	60 sec	Signals to the receiving device how long the received information should remain valid
Type 4	Optional	Port description	GigabitEthernet0/12	Displays details about the port such as the hardware version
Type 5	Optional	System name	PN-I/O 3	Displays the name given to the device by the administrator
Type 6	Optional	System description	LCOS software, version 8.9.1 SE	Displays details about the device such as the version of the networking software
Type 7	Optional	System capabilities	Router	Displays the primary function and capabilities of the device.
Type 8	Optional	Management address	192,168.0.1	Shows the IP or MAC address of the device
Type 0	Mandatory	End of LLDPDU	----------	Signals the end of the data unit

Supported operating systems

In principle, LLDP works on all popular systems, provided that LLDP agents or an appropriate software for evaluation of the LLDP packages is available. For Linux there are various open source projects, such as "LLDPD", "Open-LLDP" (with hyphen) or "ladvd", which deploy an LLDP agent.

The project "OpenLLDP" aims to achieve a further dissemination and acceptance of the LLDP protocol (802.1AB). The software supports the transmission and reception of LLDP messages on the Linux, Mac OS X, FreeBSD, and NetBSD platforms. Currently, however, this development seems to be stalled.

Microsoft Windows Vista and Windows 7 contain a proprietary protocol called LLTD (Link Layer Topology Discovery), which is essentially the same functionality as LLDP. On Windows XP, the LLTD component can be installed later as a patch. However, the patch is limited compared to the features implemented in Vista and Windows 7 because the "LLTD Responder" only reports IPv4 addresses, and not IPv6 addresses.

If you want to install LLDP on Windows systems, you can use a shareware called "haneWIN LLDP Agent". Using this, LLDP works on all Windows systems as of Windows 2000, i.e., on both 32-bit and 64-bit systems.

The most widely used free software for evaluation and analysis is Wireshark. The basic version of Wireshark is free of charge and now well-established as a standard. The software supports a wide variety of operating systems and can read and evaluate a wide variety of protocols (including LLDP). However, the focus of the basic version of Wireshark is the analysis of problems within the network. If you need more features (such as the visualization of network traffic in the form of colored graphs), you can purchase add-on modules.

19.15 Addition(s) to LCOS 8.84

19.15.1 Sending and receiving SMS text messages

If your device has a 3G/4G WWAN module, is capable of sending and receiving text messages via the Short Message Service (SMS).

In this case the SMS function is mainly used as a messaging and function-enhancing interface for the internal LCOS modules, but also for external instances such as routers, management solutions, accounting systems, and so on. You as a user also have the option to send SMS text messages using the corresponding *function in LANmonitor* or the `smssend` command at the command prompt. LANmonitor also provides you with convenient functions for *managing* sent and received messages.

The sending and receiving of SMS text messages must also be included in the SIM card's contract.

Receiving SMS text messages

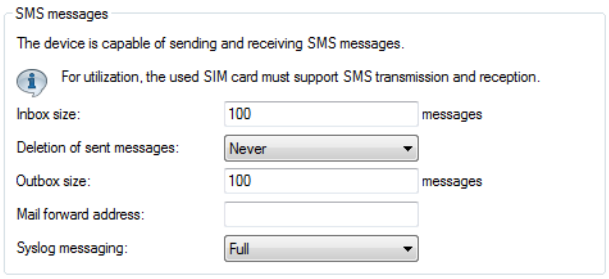
Your device uses the ETSI standard TS 127.005 to receive and request these SMS text messages, to store them and, if required, to log the receipt of an SMS to the SYSLOG. The entry in the SYSLOG counts as a "notice" to inform you about any important messages, such as a notification from an external instance, for example. An instance might be the accounting system of your provider:

If you connect to the Internet via a 3G/4G WWAN module and the contract with your Internet provider includes a volume limit, then depending on the contract your provider will throttle or stop data transfer once this volume limit has been reached. In countries with the appropriate legislation, this also applies when a charging limit for data roaming has been reached. Before the data transfer is throttled or stopped, many providers send an SMS text message informing the customer that the volume limit has been reached. With the corresponding notification settings in the SYSLOG and/or via e-mail, the device can immediately inform you about the reception of the SMS, so that you can respond promptly.

Basic configuration of the SMS module

The following steps show you the basic configuration of the SMS module in a 3G/4G WWAN-enabled device.

1. Start LANconfig and open the configuration dialog for the device.
2. Navigate to the menu item **Log & trace** > **SMS messages**.



3. Under **Inbox size** you set the maximum number of text messages stored in the device inbox.
   If the preset number is exceeded, the oldest message will be deleted. In this case there is **no** SYSLOG entry. The value `0` disables the limit, i.e. an unlimited number of messages will be stored.
4. The item **Deletion of sent messages** decides how the device handles sent text messages.
   - **Immediately**: Sent messages are not saved.
   - **Never**: Sent messages are saved permanently.
5. Under **Outbox size** you set the maximum number of text messages stored in the device outbox.

If the preset number is exceeded, the oldest message will be deleted. In this case there is **no** SYSLOG entry. The value 0 disables the limit, i.e. an unlimited number of messages will be stored.

6. Under **Syslog messaging** you specify if and how the arrival of text messages is logged to the SYSLOG.
   - **No:** Incoming text messages are not logged to SYSLOG.
   - **Only sender/no content**: The arrival of a text message is recorded to the SYSLOG together with the sender's phone number.
   - **Full**: The arrival of a text message is recorded to the SYSLOG together with the sender's phone number and the message in full.
7. Optional: Under **Mail forwarding address** you specify the e-mail address to which the device is to forward the incoming SMS text messages.

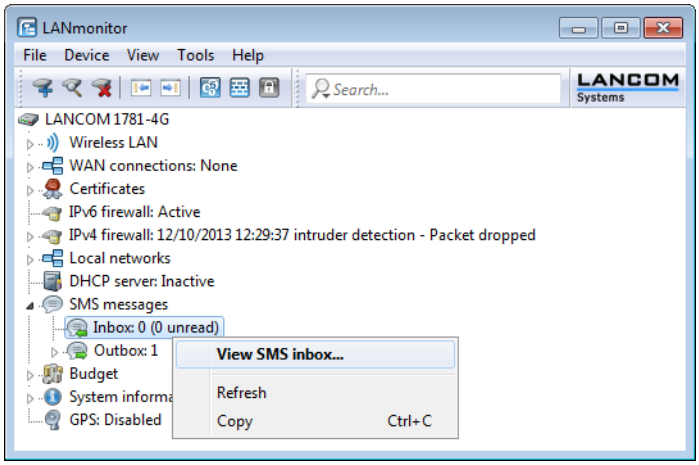
   E-mail routing will only work if a valid SMTP account is configured in the device.
8. Now write the configuration back to the device.

That's it! This concludes the basic configuration of the SMS module.

Managing SMS text messages with LANmonitor

The following section explains shows how you can use LANmonitor to read and delete text messages sent or received by a 3G/4G WWAN-enabled device.

1. Start LANmonitor and navigate to the menu tree of the respective device under **SMS messages** > **Inbox** or **Outbox**. If there are already text messages on the device, LANmonitor displays the last five received messages under **Inbox** and the last five sent messages under **Outbox**.
2. Open the context menu on the entry and choose **Show SMS inbox** or **Show SMS outbox**.



LANmonitor then displays a window listing all of the sent and received text messages and their status. In the **Inbox** you have the option to delete single or multiple selected messages, or to mark them as read/unread; the Status shows whether they have been read or not (**New** or **Read**). In the **Outbox**, the messages can only be deleted; the Status shows their send status (**Sent** or **Unsent**).

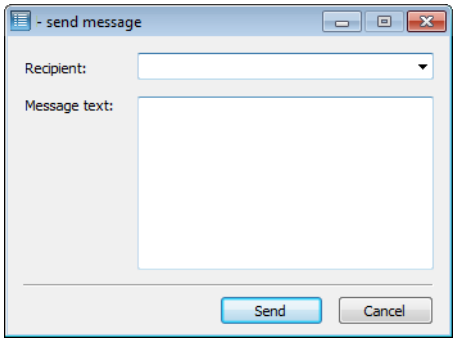
You can manage these messages by using the context menu. To delete all messages in the inbox or outbox, go to the menu bar under **Messages** and select the appropriate action.

You can easily toggle between the inbox and outbox by selecting **View** from the menu bar and selecting the desired option.

Sending SMS text messages with LANmonitor

The following section explains how you can use LANmonitor to send SMS text messages via a 3G/4G WWAN-enabled device.

1. Start LANmonitor and navigate to the menu tree of the respective device under **SMS messages**.
2. Open the context menu on the entry and select **Send message**.
3. In the Editor window that opens, enter the phone number of the recipient and the message content to be sent. The number of characters is limited to one SMS text message (max. 160 characters). For an overview of available characters, see the section *Character set for sending SMS* on page 1565.



4. Click **Send** to send the message via the internal SMS module.

URL placeholder for sending SMS text messages

You have the option of addressing the SMS module as an interface by means of a URL. By integrating predefined placeholders (parameters) into the URL, you can use the device to send SMS text messages by means of an HTTP(S) call. This makes LANCOM cellular routers ideal for use as an SMS gateway.

SMS transmission is suitable for installations with a maximum throughput of 10 SMS per minute.

You use your access credentials to authenticate at the device; just how these are Integrated into the URL is determined by your browser's requirements. The typical notation is `Username:Password@Host`.

Depending on the use case (for example, SMS gateway), we recommended that you create an administrator without access rights (**None**) and with just one function right, **Send SMS**.

Not all Web browsers support the transmission of credentials via the URL. This includes current versions of the Microsoft Internet Explorer, among others. In this case you should use another browser to send SMS via the URL.

The URL call uses the syntax:

```
(http|https)://<User>:<Password>@<Host>/sms/?<Param1>=<Value1>&…&oldauth
```

The parameter `oldauth` is **vital**, otherwise none of the available browsers will send the access credentials to the device. In addition, the following placeholders are defined:

`DestinationAddress`

Phone number to which the device should send the SMS. The same conventions apply as for normal telephone calls. Specify the parameters as follows:

```
&DestinationAddress=01511234567
&DestinationAddress=00491511234567
```

`Content`

Content of the text message. The number of characters is limited to one SMS text message (max. 160 characters). For an overview of available characters, see the section *Character set for sending SMS* on page 1565.

Spaces and other special characters to be included into an SMS must be sent to the device in the URL-encoded form. For example, spaces are encoded with `%20` and full stops with `%2E`. Specify the parameters as follows:

```
&Content=This%20is%20a%20message%2E
```

Learn more about this topic on the Internet under the keyword "URL encoding" and also at *www.w3schools.com*.

Some browsers perform the URL encoding automatically. Despite this, we recommend that you encode the content yourself to ensure that all of the characters are converted correctly.

Character set for sending SMS

An SMS can contain a maximum of 160 characters (each of 7 bits = 1,120 bits). These are made up of the GSM basic character set (total of 128 characters) as well as selected characters from the extended GSM character set. Although the extended character set allows the use of some additional characters, these take up twice the space and correspondingly reduce the maximum number of characters that the SMS can contain. Characters not implemented in the SMS module are ignored by the device.

The following characters are defined in the **GSM basic character set**:

@	Δ	SP	0	¡	P	¿	p
£	_	!	1	A	Q	a	q
$	Φ	¨	2	B	R	b	r
¥	Γ	#	3	C	S	c	s
è	Λ	¤	4	D	T	d	t
é	Ω	%	5	E	U	e	u
ù	Π	&	6	F	V	f	v
ì	Ψ	’	7	G	W	g	w
ò	Σ	(	8	H	X	h	x
Ç	Θ	)	9	I	Y	i	y
LF	Ξ	*	:	J	Z	j	z
Ø	ESC	+	;	K	Ä	k	ä
ø	Æ	,	<	L	Ö	l	ö
CR	æ	-	=	M	Ñ	m	ñ
Å	ß	.	>	N	Ü	n	ü

The following characters are implemented from the **extended GSM character set**:

`{|}[]~^\€`

Enhancements to command-line commands

SMS send command

As of LCOS 8.84, you can manually send SMS text messages with the command-line entry `smssend`, assuming that your device has a 3G/4G WWAN module.

Table 43: Overview of all commands available at the command line

Command	Description
smssend [-s <SMSC-Number>] (-d <Destination>) (-t <Text>)	Available only on devices with 3G/4G WWAN module: Sends a text message to the destination number entered. › `-s <SMSC-Number>`: Alternative SMSC phone number (optional). If you omit this part of the command, the device uses the phone number stored on the USIM card or that configured under SNMP ID 2.83. › `-d <Destination>`: Destination phone number › `-t <Text>`: Contents of the message with <=160 characters For an overview of available characters, see the section *Character set for sending SMS* on page 1565. Special characters must be in UTF8 encoded form.

Legend

› Characters and brackets:

› Objects, in this case dynamic or situation-dependent, are in angle brackets.
› Round brackets group command components, for a better overview.
› Vertical lines (pipes) separate alternative inputs.
› Square brackets describe optional switches.

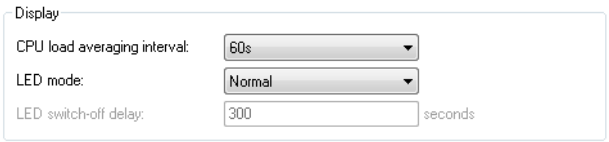
It follows that all command components that are not in square brackets are necessary information.

19.16 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.00

19.16.1 Deactivating device LEDs – boot-persistent

To operate an access point as unobtrusively as possible, you can disable the operating and status LEDs on the device. Even after restarting the device, the LEDs stay switched off. You can set up the device so that the LEDs light up briefly for a certain time after a restart, before the device disables them. This is useful for access points that are managed by WLAN controllers, for example to monitor the establishment of the connection to a WLAN controller.

You can set the operating mode of the LEDs in the **Display** section under **Management** > **Advanced**.



The selection list **LED mode** has three options to choose from:

Normal

The LEDs are always enabled, also after rebooting the device.

All off

The LEDs are all off. Even after restarting the device, the LEDs remain off.

Timed off

After a reboot, the LEDs are enabled for a certain period of time and are then turned off. This is useful for the LEDs to indicate critical errors during the restart process.

The **Timed off** option uses the setting in the field **LED switch-off delay** in seconds to control the time before the LEDs are disabled after a restart.

The "LED-Test" function is available despite the LEDs being disabled.

If you change this value and save it within the previously set time, you should restart the timer.

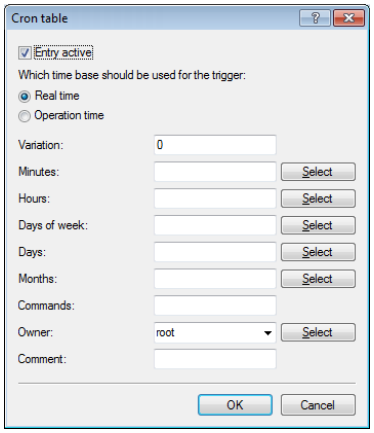
19.16.2 Comment box for CRON jobs

As of LCOS9.00 you can add comments to CRON job entries.

Configuring the scheduler

The following tutorial shows you how to create a new CRON job and which parameters are available to you.

1. In LANconfig, open the configuration for your device.
2. Open the **Cron table** in the dialog **Date & Time** > **General** and click **Add...** to create a new CRON job.



3. Enter a time base.
   The time base determines whether LCOS performs the timing of future actions based on the real time or the uptime of the device. With the setting **Real time**, the system evaluates time and dates. With the setting **Operating time**, the system evaluates only the minutes and hours since the device was last started.
4. The value for **Variation** specifies the maximum delay in minutes for the start of the CRON job after the specified start time.
   The device determines the actual delay time at random. It lies between 0 and the time entered here. With the variation set to zero the CRON job will be executed at the specified time.

   Rules based on real-time can only be executed if the device has a time from a valid source, e.g. via NTP.

5. Enter the minute(s), hour(s), day(s) of the week, day(s) of the month and the month(s) when your device should execute the specified command.
   If you do not enter a value, your device ignores the corresponding value. For each parameter you can optionally specify a comma-separated list of values or a range of values (in the form of `<Min.>-<Max.>`).

   The syntax of the field **Days of week** corresponds to the usual CRON interpretation:

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
0	1	2	3	4	5	6

The day-of-the-week field is also significant for rules relating to the operating time. This is useful for actions that you perform only once when you start the device (i.e., with zero days uptime). In this way you can match the day of the week to the days of operating time, for example.

6. Under **Commands** you enter the command or a comma-separated list of commands.
   Any command-line function can be executed.
7. Specify the **Owner** of the CRON job.
   An owner is able to select an administrator defined in the device. If an owner is specified, then the CRON job commands will be executed with the rights of the owner.
8. A brief description of the CRON job can be entered in the **Comment** field.
9. Click **OK** to save the entry. You then write the configuration back to the device.

Other configuration examples:

Time base	At least	Hr.	W. days	M. days	Months	Command
Real time	0	4	0-6	1-31	1-12	do /so/man/disconnect internet
Real time	59	3	0-6	1-31	1-12	mailto:admin@example.com?subject=Forced-disconnect?body=Manual Internet discconnect
Real time	0	0		1		do /setup/accounting/delete
Real time	0	18	1,2,3,4,5			do /so/man/connect MAINOFFICE

- The first entry disconnects from the ISP every morning at 04:00h (forced disconnect).
- The second entry sends a brief e-mail to the admin each morning at 03:59h, just before the forced disconnect.
- The third entry deletes the accounting table on the 1st day of each month.
- The fourth entry establishes a connection to the main office each weekday at 18:00h.

The device executes scheduled rules with an accuracy of one minute. Please ensure that the language you use to enter commands matches with that set for the console, otherwise scheduler commands will be ignored.

19.16.3 LANCAPI disabled by default

As of LCOS9.00 LANCAPI is disabled for the individual interfaces by default.

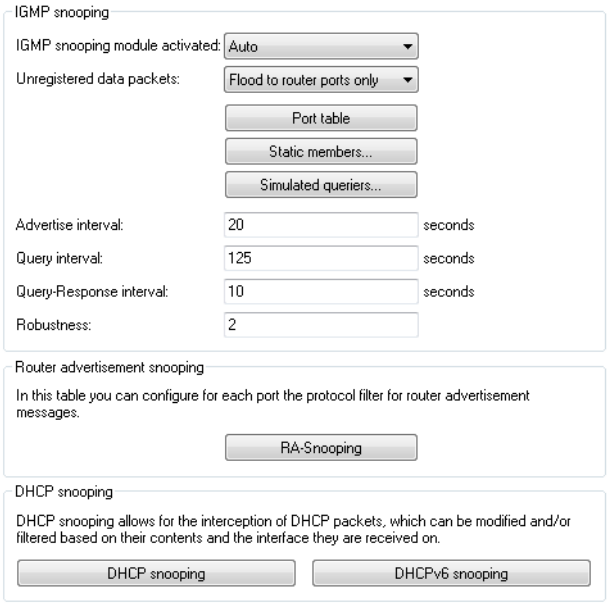
19.16.4 DHCP snooping and DHCP option 82

In its original form, DHCP has no safeguards to protect from attacks on the assignment of the network configuration. For example, if a client sends a 'DHCP discover' packet on the network in order to retrieve a valid network configuration from a DHCP server, an attacker can send the client fake 'DHCP offer' packets and trick it into using a false default gateway (DHCP spoofing).

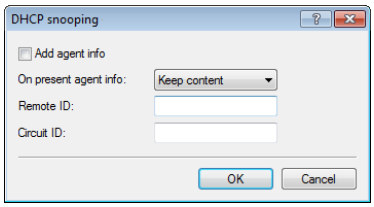
With DHCP snooping, the devices that receive and redirect DHCP packets are able to analyze and change these data packets, and to filter them by certain criteria. Additionally inserted information about the origin of the DHCP packets improves a DHCP server's capacity to manage extensive networks. Further, as this additional information is missing from the attacker's DHCP packets, they can no longer be used to interfere with the DHCP negotiations between DHCP servers, DHCP relay agents and the DHCP clients.

The access point supports DHCP snooping on layer 2. This enables it, for example, to add information (such as the SSID) to the DHCP packets received from the client on the WLAN before forwarding them to the LAN. The access point then adds the DHCP relay agent information option (option 82) according to RFC 3046.

In LANconfig you can set up DHCP snooping for each interface under **Interfaces** > **Snooping** and a click on **DHCP snooping**.



After selecting the appropriate interface, you can set the following:



Add agent info

Here you decide whether the DHCP relay agent appends incoming DHCP packets with the DHCP option "relay agent info" (option 82), or modifies an existing entry, before forwarding the request to a DHCP server.

The "relay agent info" is composed of values for the **Remote ID** and the **Circuit ID**.

On present agent info

Here you set how the DHCP relay agent handles the "relay agent info" in incoming DHCP packets. The following settings are possible:

- Keep content: In this setting, the DHCP relay agent forwards a DHCP packet and any existing "relay agent info" unchanged to the DHCP server.
- Replace content: In this setting, the DHCP relay agent replaces any existing "relay agent info" with the values specified in the fields **Remote ID** and **Circuit ID**.
- Drop packet: In this setting, the DHCP relay agent deletes any DHCP packet containing "relay agent info".

Remote ID

The remote ID is a sub-option of the "Relay agent info" option. It uniquely identifies the client making a DHCP request.

Circuit ID

The circuit ID is a sub-option of the "Relay agent info" option. It uniquely identifies the interface used by the client to make a DHCP request.

You can use the following variables for **Remote ID** and **Circuit ID**:

- `%%`: Inserts a percent sign.
- `%c`: Inserts the MAC address of the interface where the relay agent received the DHCP request. If a WLAN-SSID is involved, then this is the corresponding BSSID.
- `%i`: Inserts the name of the interface where the relay agent received the DHCP request.
- `%n`: Inserts the name of the DHCP relay agent as specified under **Setup** > **Name**.
- `%v`: Inserts the VLAN ID of the DHCP request packet. This VLAN ID is sourced either from the VLAN header of the DHCP packet or from the VLAN ID mapping for this interface.
- `%p`: Inserts the name of the Ethernet interface that received the DHCP packet. This variable is useful for devices featuring an Ethernet switch or Ethernet mapper, because they can map multiple physical interfaces to a single logical interface. For other devices, `%p` and `%i` are identical.
- `%s`: Inserts the WLAN SSID if the DHCP packet originates from a WLAN client. For other clients, this variable contains an empty string.
- `%e`: Inserts the serial number of the relay agent, to be found for example under **Status** > **Hardware-Info** > **Serial number**.

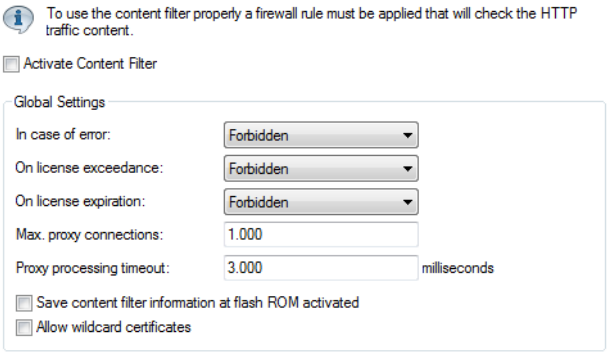
19.16.5 Enabling LLDP with LANconfig

As of LCOS 9.00, LLDP can also be enabled via LANconfig.

In LANconfig, LLDP is enabled under **Interfaces** > **LAN**.

19.16.6 Wildcard certificates in the LANCOM Content Filter

As of LCOS 9.00 you have the possibility of using wildcard certificates in the LANCOM Content Filter.



Allow wildcard certificates

With this feature enabled, Web sites with wildcard certificates (consisting of CN entries such as `*.mydomain.com`) are verified using the main domain (`mydomain.com`). Verification is evaluated in this sequence:

- Server name check in the “Client Hello” (depends on the browser used)
- Check of the CN in the SSL certificate that you received
- Entries with wildcards are ignored
- If the CN cannot be verified, the field “Alternative Name”is evaluated.
- DNS reverse lookup of the associated IP address and verification of the host name obtained

- If wildcards are included in the certificate, the main domain is checked instead (corresponds to the above function)
- Verification of the IP address

19.17 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.10

19.17.1 Smart certificates

As of LCOS version 9.10 you have the option to use a LANCOM router to create and issue digital certificates.

Furthermore, LANmonitor as of LCOS version 9.10 displays an overview of active and revoked certificates.

Table 44: Overview of function rights

Description: [1]LANconfig, [2]Setup menu	Hex notation in the console	Rights description
1. CA-Web-Interface Wizard **2.** CA-Web-Interface	0x1000000	Creates profiles for the CA web interface

Using smart certificates

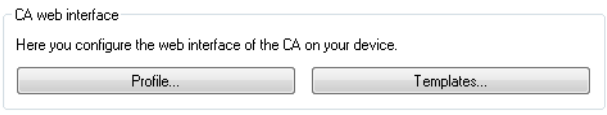
The configuration of the SCEP client for the generation and distribution of certificates can quickly become a complex and laborious task in extensive network infrastructures. This work required for this task can be reduced with the help of predefined, selectable profiles and access via a web interface.

A LANCOM router enables you to create and issue highly secure certificates. It is easy to manage the certificates via the WEBconfig interface of the corresponding device. An external CA is no longer required, which is particularly advantageous for small-scale infrastructures.

Using the Certificate Wizard from LANCOM, even users without certificate know-how can create certificates in just a few steps.

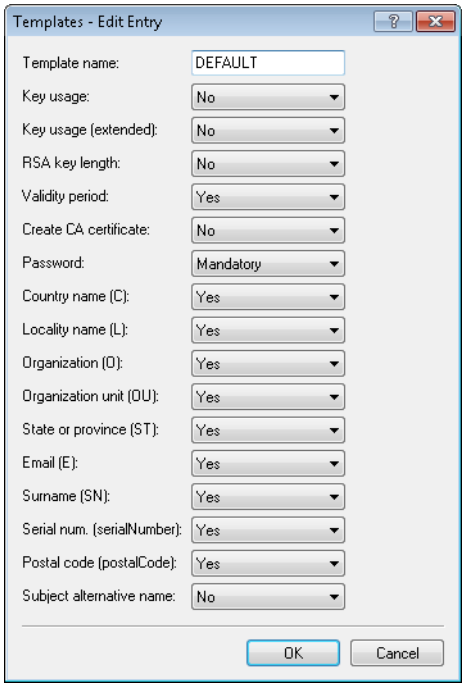
The devices administrator creates the profile as a collection of certificate properties. It contains the configuration of the certificate and also a unique certificate ID. From this point on, all you need to do to create and distribute a certificate is to select one of the profiles.

Profiles can also be managed in LANconfig under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** in the section **CA web interface**.



Creating templates for certificate profiles

In LANconfig, profiles are created under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** > **Templates**.



A “DEFAULT” a template is already available.

The administrators specifies which of the profile properties are mandatory and which are to be edited by the user. The following options are available:

- No: The field is invisible, the value entered is considered to be a default value.
- Fixed: The field is visible, but cannot be changed by the user.
- Yes: The field is visible and can be changed by the user.
- Mandatory: The field is visible, the user must enter a value.

These permissions apply to the following profile and ID fields:

Profile fields

- Key usage
- Key usage (extended)
- RSA key length
- Validity period
- Create CA certificate
- Password

Identifier

- Country code (C)
- Locality name (L)
- Organization (O)
- Organization unit (OU)
- State or province (ST)
- E-mail (E)
- Surname (SN)

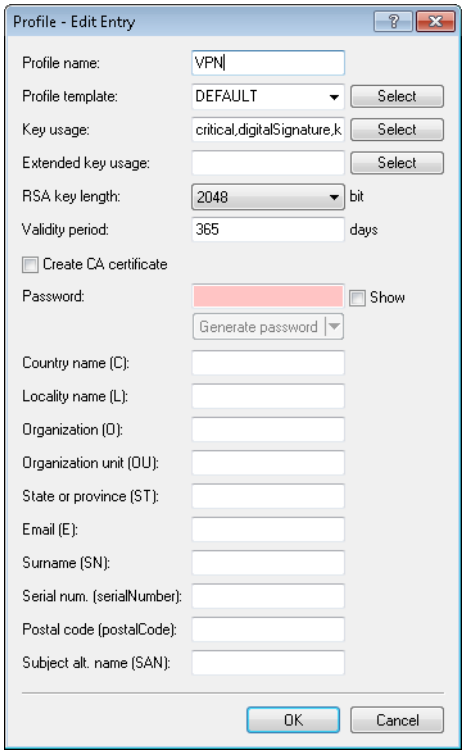
- Serial no. (serialNumber)
- Postal code (postalCode)
- Subject alt. name

If the Templates table is empty, the user can only see the input fields for the profile name, the common name (CN), and the password. The other profile fields retain the default values as set by the device administrator.

Creating a profile in LANconfig

The user needs the appropriate access rights to create, select, modify and assign profiles.

In LANconfig, profiles are created under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** > **Profile**.



By default three profiles are already available for common application scenarios.

Profile name

The unique name of the profile.

Profile template

Select a suitable profile template here, if applicable.

The profile template specifies which certificate information is mandatory and which can be changed. Templates are created under **Certificates** > **Certificate handling** > **Templates**.

Key usage

Specifies for which application the profile is to be used. The following usages are available using the **Select** button:

Table 45: The available key usages

Value	Meaning
critical	This restriction requires the extended key usage to be considered. If the extension is not supported, the certificate is rejected as invalid.
digitalSignature	Is this option is used, the public key is used for digital signatures.
nonRepudiation	With this option set, the key is used for digital signatures of a non-repudiation service, i.e. one with a rather long-term character such as notary public service.
keyEncipherment	If this option is set, the key is used for encrypting other keys or security information. It is possible to restrict the use of **encipher only** and **decipher only**.
dataEncipherment	If this option is set, the key is used for encrypting user data (but not other keys).
keyAgreement	If this option is used, the "Diffie-Hellman" algorithm is used for key agreement.
keyCertSign	If this option is set, the key is applied to certificates for signature verification. This is useful for CA certificates, for example.
cRLSign	If this option is set, the key is applied to CRLs for signature verification. This is useful for CA certificates, for example.
encipherOnly	This is only useful with the Diffie-Hellman keyAgreement.
decipherOnly	This is only useful with the Diffie-Hellman keyAgreement.

Multiple comma-separated entries can be selected.

Ext. key usage

Specifies the extended application for which the profile is to be used. The following usages are available using the **Select** button:

Table 46: Extended usages

Value	Meaning
critical	
serverAuth	SSL/TLS Web server authentication
clientAuth	SSL/TLS Web client authentication
codeSigning	Signing of program code
emailProtection	E-mail protection (S/MIME)
timeStamping	Furnishing data with reliable time stamps
msCodeInd	Microsoft Individual Code Signing (authenticode)
msCodeCom	Microsoft Commercial Code Signing (authenticode)
msCTLSign	Microsoft Trust List Signing
msSGC	Microsoft Server Gated Crypto
msEFS	Microsoft Encrypted File System
nsSGC	Netscape Server Gated Crypto

Multiple comma-separated entries can be selected.

RSA key length

Sets the length of the key.

Validity period

Specifies the duration, in days, for which the key is valid. After this period, the key becomes invalid unless the user renews it.

Create CA certificate

Indicates whether this is a CA certificate.

Password

Password to protect the PKCS12 certificate file.

The following input creates a certificate ID. The following options are available:

Country code (C)

Enter the country identifier (e.g. "DE" for Germany).

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `C=` (**C**ountry).

Locality name (L)

Enter the name of the locality.

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `L=` (**L**ocality).

Organization (O)

Specify the organization that issues the certificate.

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `O=` (**O**rganization).

Organization unit (OU)

Specify the unit within the organization that issues the certificate.

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `OU=` (**O**rganization **U**nit).

State or province (ST)

Enter the State or province.

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `ST=` (**ST**ate).

E-mail (E)

Enter an e-mail address:

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `emailAddress=`.

Surname (SN)

Enter a surname.

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `SN=` (**S**ur**N**ame).

Serial no. (serialNumber)

Enter a serial number.

This entry appears in the certificate under `serialNumber=`.

Postal code (postalCode)

Enter the location post code.

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `postalCode=`.

Subject alt. name (SAN)

The "Subject Alternative Name" (SAN) links additional data with this certificate. The following data are allowed:

- E-mail addresses
- IPv4 or IPv6 addresses
- URIs
- DNS names
- Directory names
- Any names

This entry appears in the subject or issuer of the certificate under `subjectAltName=` (e.g. `subjectAltName=IP:192.168.7.1`).

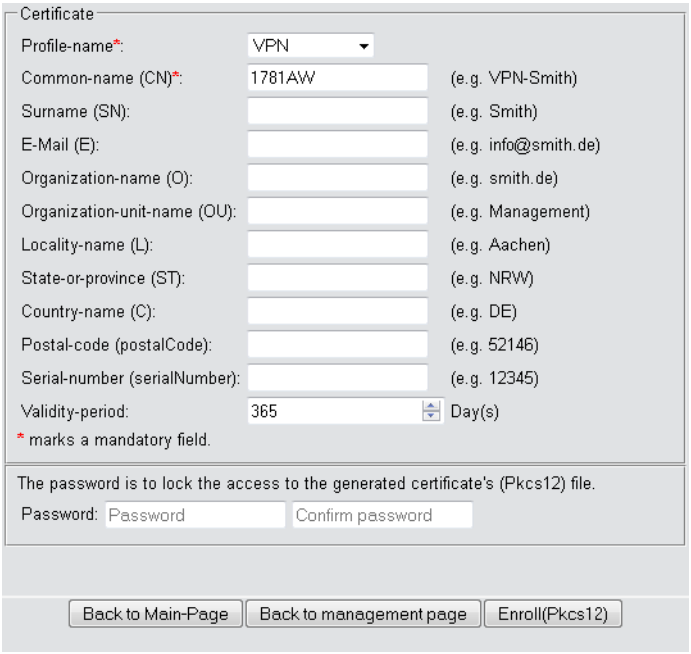
The certificate issuer assigns the general name "CN". The "CN" is required as a minimum.

Certificate creation with WEBconfig

You need the appropriate access rights to select, modify and assign profiles.

To create your certificates, navigate to the WEBconfig of the LANCOM device.

1. To create a certificate using the web interface, navigate to the view **Setup Wizards** > **Manage certificates** and select **Create new certificate**.



2. From the **Profile name** drop-down menu, select the profile to be used as the basis for the certificate.

   Empty templates only contain fields with the selection "No". If the user selects a profile based on an empty template, the input mask displays only the common name. The other profile fields retain the default values as set by the device administrator.

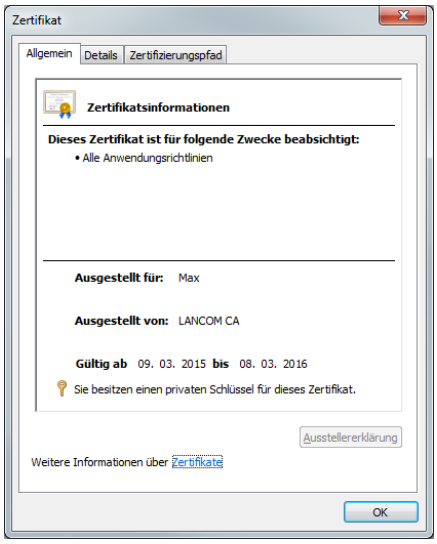
3. Fill out the **common name (CN)** field. Set a validity period for the certificate and give it a secure password (PIN). The other fields such as **Email** and **Organization name** are optional information. However, under certain circumstance this information can help to find the certificate recipient if there are problems with the certificate.

The following characters are allowed in the password: [A-Z][a-z][0-9]#@{|}~!$%&'()*+-,/:;<=>?[\]^_.`

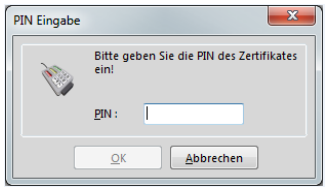
4. To complete of the changes, click the **Enroll (PKCS12)** button. In the following dialog box, you can set the name and location of the file.

The newly created certificates appear in the certificate status table under **Status** > **Certificates** > **SCEP-CA** > **Certificates**.

5. Issue the newly enrolled certificate to the recipient together with the access password set in step 3.



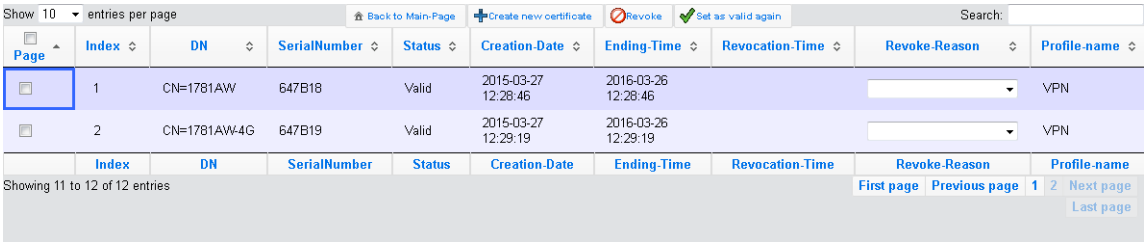
6. The recipient is now able to use a secure VPN dial-in. For the dial-in to succeed, the user must enter the password (PIN) set in step 3.



Certificate management with WEBconfig

You need the appropriate permissions to be able to manage the certificates.

To manage a certificate via the web interface, navigate to the view **Setup Wizards** > **Manage certificates**. This gives you an overview of the enrolled certificates, which you can revoke if necessary.



The column headers have the following meanings:

Page

This column is used to mark the entry.

Index

Displays the sequential index of the entry.

Name

Displays the name the certificate.

Serial number

Contains the serial number of the certificate.

Status

Displays the current status of the certificate. Possible values are:

- V: Valid
- R: Revoked
- P: Pending

Creation date

Displays the date of the certificate's creation (date, time).

Ending time

Indicates the date and time of (regular) certificate expiry.

Revocation time

Indicates the date and time of (premature) certificate revocation.

Revoke reason

Indicates the cause of the premature revocation. The selection is made via a drop-down selection list.

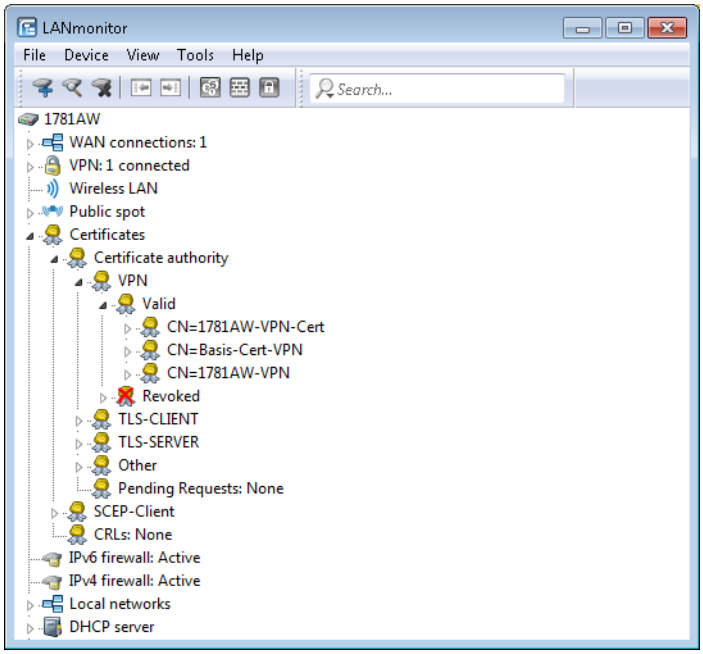
To revoke a certificate, select it in the **Page** column, in the **Revoke reason** column you select why you are revoking the certificate, and then click the **Revoke** button.

The column entries for **Status**, **Revocation time** and **Revoke reason** change accordingly.

To reverse a revocation, highlight the certificate again in the first column and click **Set as valid again**.

Managing certificates in LANmonitor

LANmonitor displays the active and revoked certificates, as well as the certificate requests from the SCEP clients.



To revoke a certificate, right-click on the corresponding certificate and select **Revoke certificate** from the context menu.

An overview of all revoked certificates is located in the **Revoked** section.

Certificate requests from SCEP clients can be seen in the **Pending requests** section. Right-click on the corresponding request and select either **Reject** or **Accept** in the context menu.

Creating certificates via URL-API

A special API can greatly simplify the creation of certificates for a complex and extensive network infrastructure.

For example, you can use a script to automate the process by sending a call to a URL with parameters attached. The following parameters are possible:

- `a`: Specifies the profile name.
- `b`: Specifies the common name.
- `c`: Specifies the surname.
- `d`: Specifies the email.
- `e`: Specifies the organization.
- `f`: Specifies the organization unit.
- `g`: Specifies the locality.
- `h`: Specifies the State or province.
- `i`: Specifies the country.
- `j`: Specifies the postal code.
- `k`: Specifies the serial number.
- `l`: Specifies the subject alternative name.
- `m`: Specifies the key usage.
- `n`: Specifies the extended key usage.
- `o`: Specifies the key length
- `p`: Specifies the validity period in days.
- `q`: Specifies the password for the PKCS12 file.

- `r`: Indicates whether this is a CA certificate.
  - 1: CA certificate
  - 0: No CA certificate

The Wizard only processes the parameters set with the appropriate permissions in the presets table.

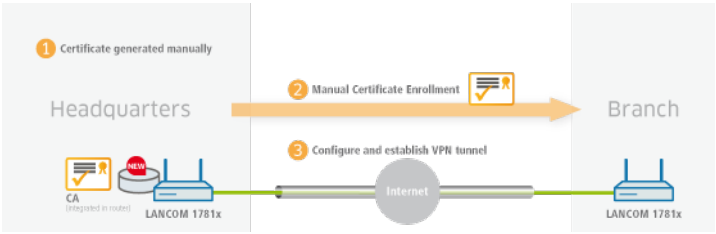
The call to the URL with the appropriate parameters looks like this:

```
192.168.10.74/scepwiz/a=VPN&b=iPhone&q=company
```

Tutorials

Setting up a CA and creating and using certificates for a VPN connection

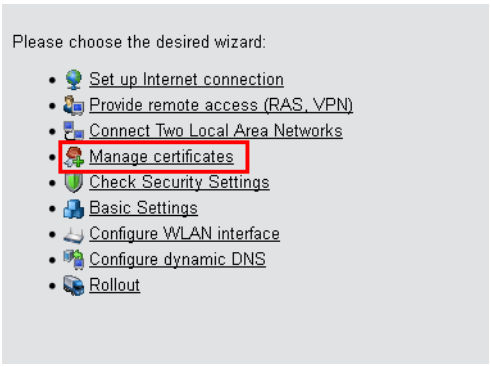
This tutorial describes how you enable a CA (certificate authority) on a LANCOM router and how the CA helps you to create and use new certificates for a VPN connection between two LANCOM routers (manual certificate distribution).



All devices need to be set with a valid date and time.

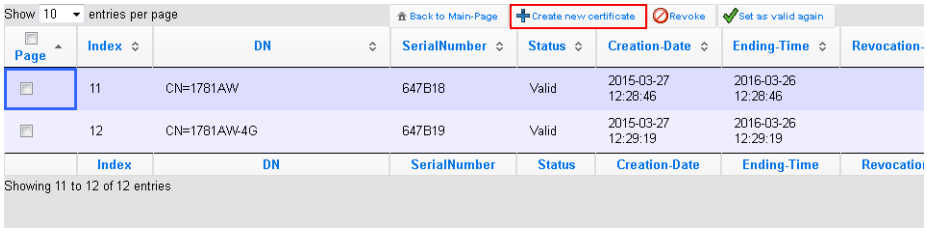
1. You enable the certificate authority in LANconfig and you set the device as the root CA. You will find these settings under **Certificates** > **Cert. authority (CA)**.

2. You are now able to create CA certificates for the VPN endpoints that will later provide the connection.
   a) The Setup Wizard **Manage certificates** helps you to create certificates easily and conveniently.



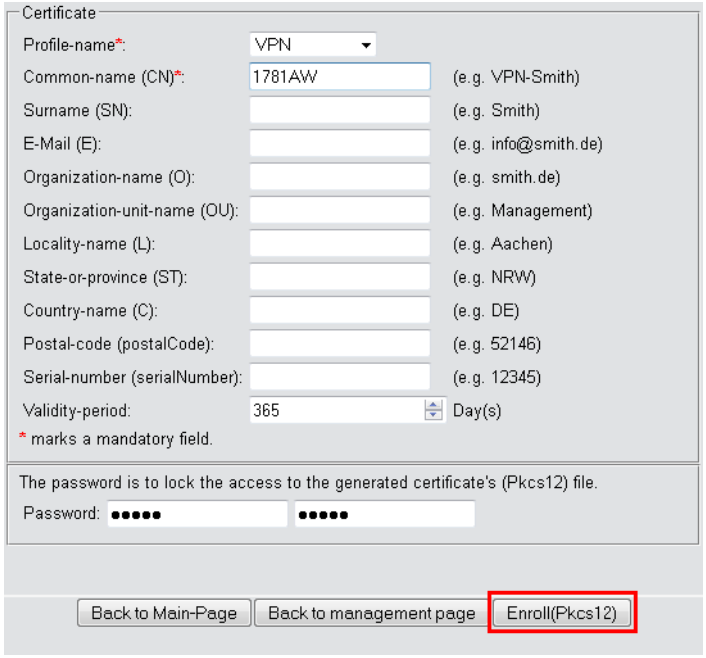
b) The first page of the Wizard is an overview of all certificates previously issued by the CA.

The certificate of the CA itself is not displayed here.



With the **Create new certificate** button you start the process that generates a new certificate.

c) Under the entry to **Enroll certificates**, you have the option to configure the profile, the official name of the certificate (common name or CN), and other information that is useful for identifying the certificate. Set the validity period of the certificate and the password for the Pkcs12 file that contains the new certificate, the corresponding private key, and the certificate of the CA.



Once you have entered all the necessary information, you create the certificate by clicking the button **Enroll (Pkcs12)**. The dialog for saving the Pkcs12 file appears automatically once the certificate has been created on the device. This process can take several seconds.

d) In the **Save the Pkcs12 file** window, choose the location and name of the Pkcs12 file. By default, the file is named according to the following format:
`pkcs12<YYYY_MM_DD-hh_mm_ss>.p12`

YYYY: Year

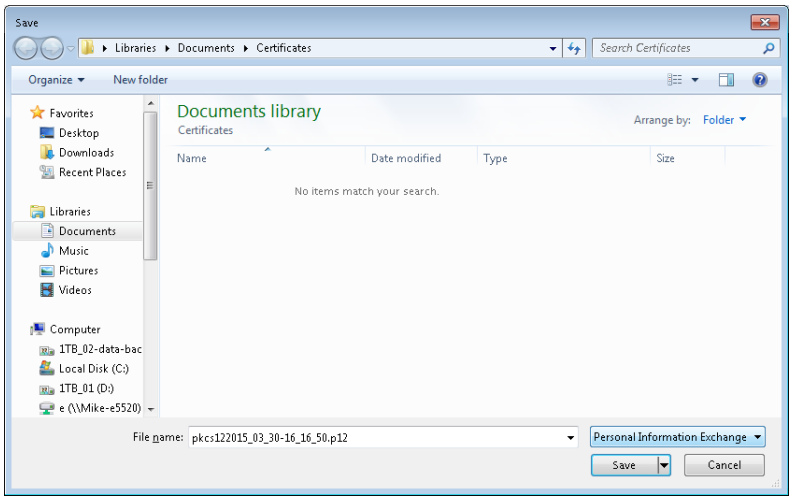
MM: Month

DD: Day

hh: Hour

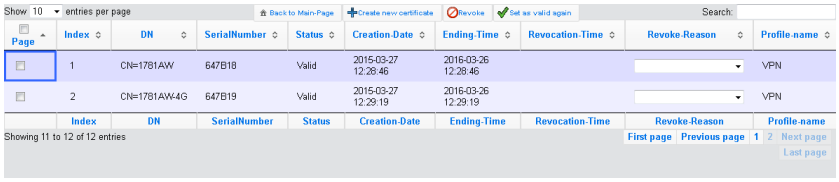
mm: Minute

ss: Second



As shown by the example, the file can have any name.

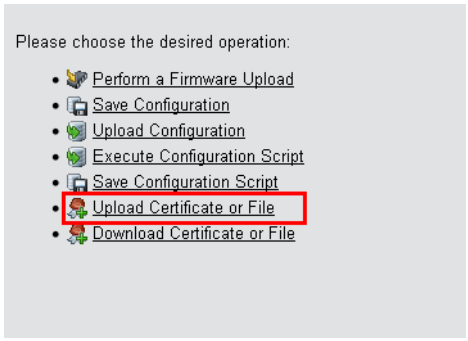
e) Use the same method to create further certificates.



Overview page with two created certificates.

3. In order to use the certificates for a VPN connection, you need to upload them to the devices.

a) Uploading to the corresponding VPN endpoints is easy to do with WEBconfig under **File management** > **Upload certificate or file**.



b) **Upload certificate or file**

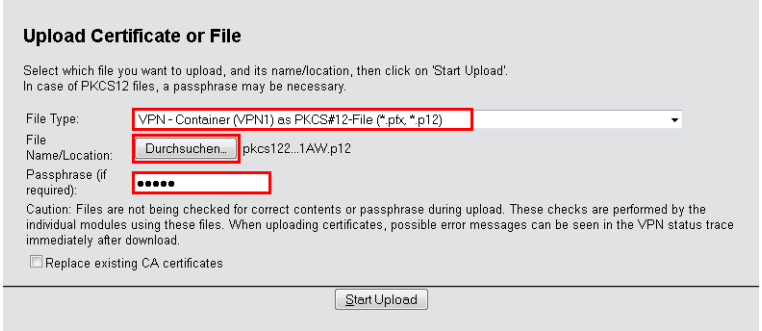
First, select the file type and where to save it. For VPN connections, please choose an unused VPN container.

As long as no certificates were set up for VPN, all of the VPN containers are unused.

In the next step you select the Pkcs12 file that contains the certificate that you want to use for this VPN endpoint.

Enter the password that you have set for the file in step 2.c.

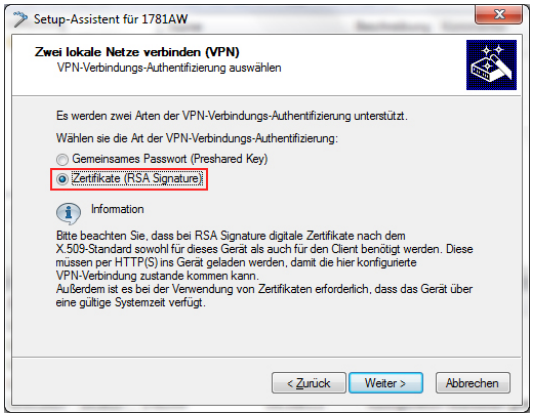
Finally, start the upload.



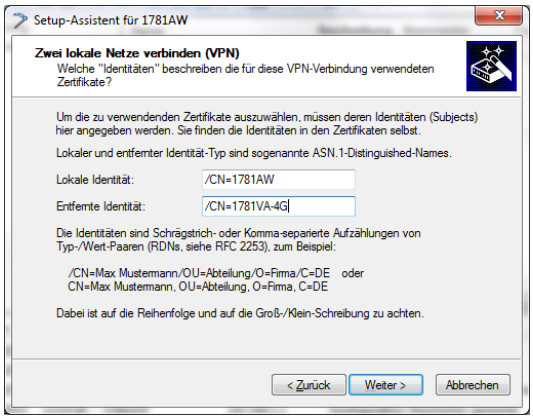
This process is required for all VPN endpoints. Please bear in mind that each VPN endpoint needs a certificate of its own.

4. Establish a VPN connection between two VPN endpoints. This is carried out via the Setup Wizard **Connect two local area networks (VPN)**.

   a) In the Setup Wizard, set the VPN connection authentication to **Certificates (RSA signature)**.



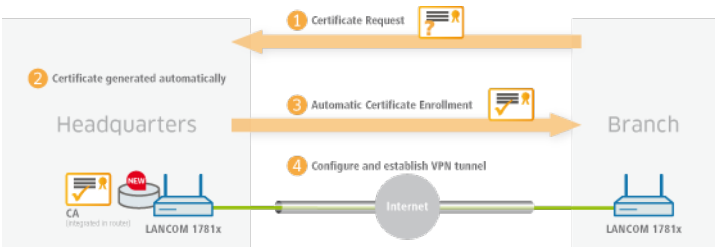
   b) In the **Local and remote identity** window, specify the "ASN.1-Distinguished-Name". This is the official name of the certificate plus any additional information that you entered in step 2.c. You can see this additional information in the overview of certificates (step 2.e) in the "Name" column. For the **Local identity**, enter the information for the certificate on the local machine. The item **Remote identity** contains the certificate information of the other VPN endpoint.



   c) Continue to run the Wizard. You repeat this process for the other VPN endpoint of this VPN connection.

Setting up a CA and creating and using certificates for a VPN connection with certificate rollout via SCEP

This tutorial describes how you enable a CA (certificate authority) on a LANCOM router and how the CA helps you to create and use new certificates for a VPN connection between two LANCOM routers (certificate distribution via SCEP).



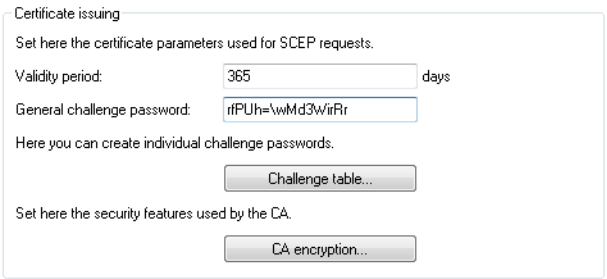
We only explain the menu items that are important for the successful conclusion of the tutorial.

All devices must be set with the correct date and time and the certificate authority must be accessible via "HTTPS".

1. You enable the certificate authority in WEBconfig or LANconfig and you set the device as the root CA. You will find these settings under **Certificates** > **Cert. authority (CA)**.

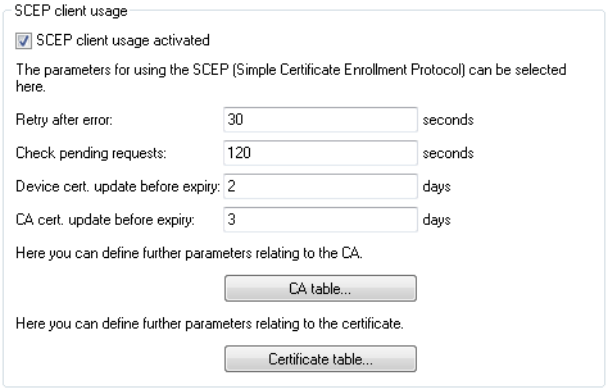
2. SCEP clients can automatically obtain certificates by SCEP (simple certificate enrollment protocol). A necessary step for this is for you to set a general challenge password in the root CA. Set a password at **Certificates** > **Certificate handling**.

   If you write the configuration back to the device after enabling the CA, the CA automatically generates a general challenge password.

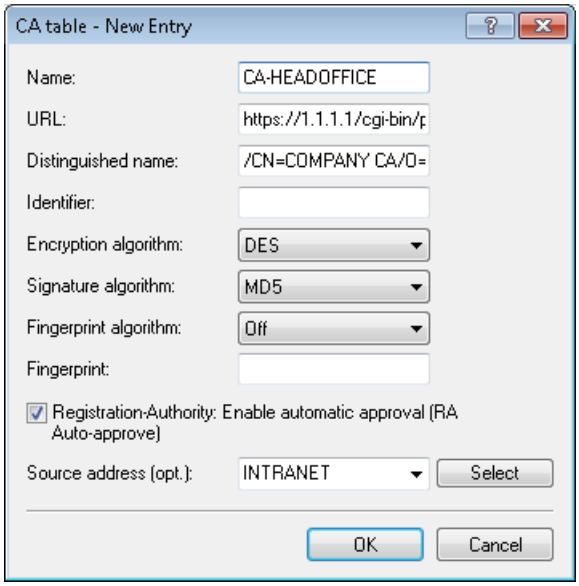


You are now able to create CA certificates for the VPN endpoints that will later provide the connection.

3. In order for the VPN endpoints to obtain their certificates via SCEP, the SCEP client must be configured on each of them. This setting is located under **Certificates** > **SCEP client**.



a) Specify the further information about the certificate authority under **Certificates** > **SCEP client** > **CA table**. This table contains information about the CA from which a certificate is to be obtained.



Name

The name can be freely selected and used to identify this device.

URL

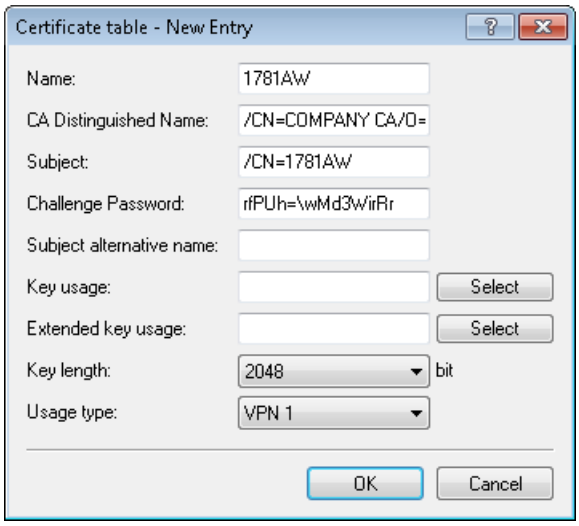
The URL is always constructed in the same way: `https://<IP address>/cgi-bin/pkiclient.exe`. Replace `<IP address>` with the IPv4 address where the CA is accessible from the WAN.

If the VPN endpoint is also the CA, you need to enter the loopback address here.

Distinguished name

The distinguished name of the CA (see screenshot in step 1).

b) The additional information about the certificate that the CA is to issue to this device is specified under **Certificates** > **SCEP client** > **Certificate table**.



Name

The name can be freely selected and used to identify this device.

CA Distinguished Name

The CA distinguished name (see screenshot in step 1).

Subject

The desired distinguished name of the certificate. In this example, only the common name is used.

Challenge password

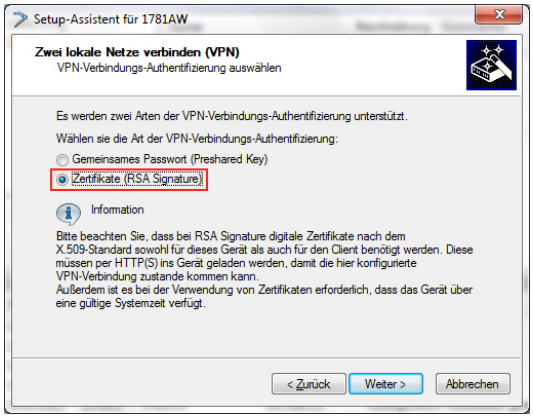
The general challenge password set on the certificate authority (see step 2).

Usage type

The location where this certificate is to be stored. In this example "VPN 1".

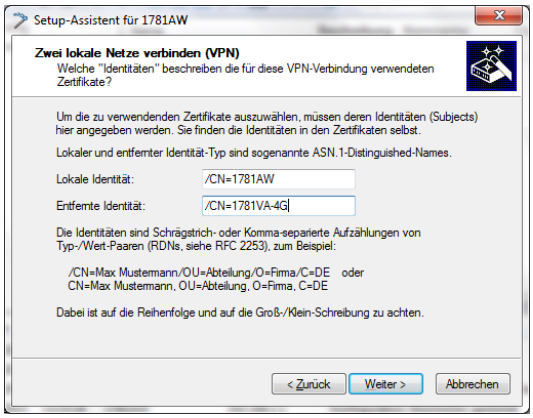
4. Once you have set up a SCEP client on each of the VPN endpoints, you can establish a VPN connection between two VPN endpoints. This is carried out via the Setup Wizard **Connect two local area networks (VPN)**.

a) In the Setup Wizard, set the VPN connection authentication to **Certificates (RSA signature)**.



b) In the **Local and remote identity** window, specify the "ASN.1-Distinguished-Name". This is the official name of the certificate plus any additional information that you entered under "Subject" in step 3.b. For the **Local**

identity, enter the information for the certificate on the local machine. The item **Remote identity** contains the certificate information of the other VPN endpoint.



c) Continue to run the Wizard. You repeat this process for the other VPN endpoint of this VPN connection.

19.17.2 ISDN

19.17.3 Prefer perfect forward secrecy (PFS) for connections

As of LCOS version 9.10 it is possible to enter a PFS encryption method (cipher suite) irrespective of whether the client has a different setting.

19.17.4 Input field for DHCP options extended to 251 characters

As of LCOS version 9.10, it is possible to enter 251 characters when specifying DHCP options.

19.18 Addition(s) to LCOS 9.20

19.18.1 DHCP snooping: New variable for LAN MAC address

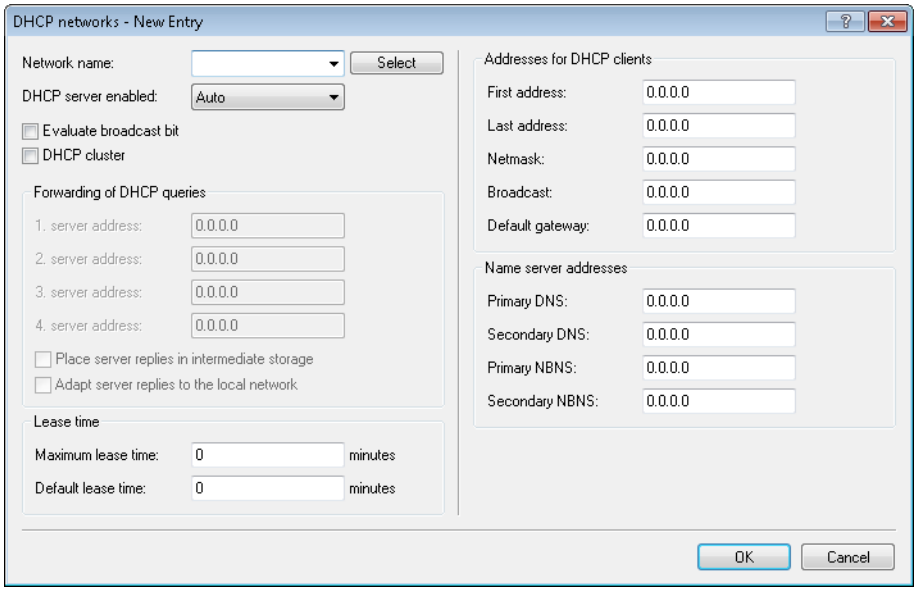
As of LCOS version 9.20, a dedicated variable is available for the LAN MAC address. This MAC address applies system-wide and also appears in the SysInfo and in LANconfig.

- `%r`: Inserts the interface-independent (i.e. valid throughout the system) MAC address of the device that received the DHCP request.

19.18.2 DHCP lease time per network

As of LCOS version 9.20 it is possible to give each DHCP network its own lease time.

Carry out the configuration in LANconfig under **IPv4** > **DHCPv4** and click on **DHCP networks**.



Lease time of address assignments

In addition to the global default lease time configured under **IPv4** > **DHCPv4**, it is possible to configure a lease time specifically for this DHCP network only.

Maximum lease time

Here you specify the maximum lease time that a client may request.

Default lease time

If a client requests IP-address data without specifying any particular lease time, the lease time set here is assigned to it.

19.18.3 DHCP lease RADIUS accounting

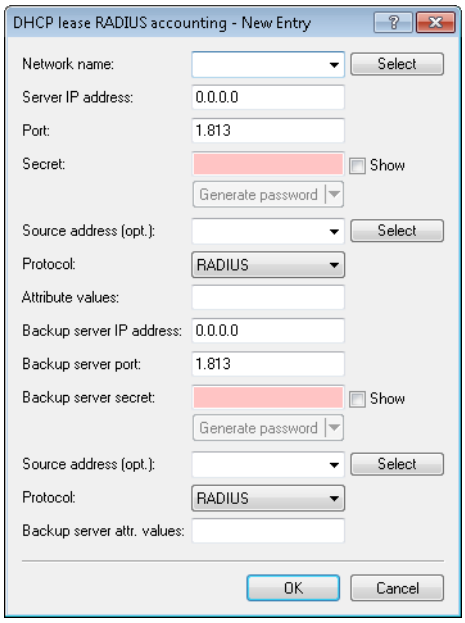
As of LCOS version 9.20, LCOS supports DHCP RADIUS accounting.

DHCP lease RADIUS accounting

If RADIUS accounting is enabled and the DHCP server assigns an IP address to a DHCP client, the server sends a `RADIUS accounting start` to the relevant accounting server (or the backup RADIUS server). If the DHCP lease expires because no extension was requested, the DHCP server sends a `RADIUS accounting stop`. In between these two events, the DHCP server regularly sends the RADIUS server a `RADIUS accounting interim update` in a configurable interval.

To enable or disable RADIUS accounting for the DHCP server, go to **IPv4** > **DHCPv4** and click on the option **Activate DHCP lease RADIUS accounting**.

The input box **Accounting interim interval** configures the interval for the RADIUS interim updates. You configure the RADIUS accounting server and the corresponding backup server by clicking on **DHCP lease RADIUS accounting**.



Network name

Select here the name of the network for which RADIUS accounting messages are to be sent.

Server IP address

Enter the IP address or the DNS name of the RADIUS server (IPv4 or IPv6).

Port

Enter the TCP port used by the RADIUS server to receive accounting information. That is usually the port "1813".

Key

Enter the key (shared secret) for access to the RADIUS accounting server here. Ensure that this key is consistent with that in the accounting server.

Source address (optional)

By default, the RADIUS server sends its replies back to the IP address of your device without having to enter it here. By entering an optional alternative loopback address, you change the source address and route used by the device to connect to the RADIUS server. This can be useful, for example, when the server is available over different paths and it should use a specific path for its reply message.

Protocol

Use this entry to specify the protocol used by the DHCP server to communicate with the RADIUS accounting server.

Attribute values

LCOS facilitates the configuration of the RADIUS attributes used to communicate with a RADIUS server (for authentication and accounting).

The attributes are specified in a semicolon-separated list of attribute numbers or names along with a corresponding value in the form `<Attribute_1>=<Value_1>;<Attribute_2>=<Value_2>`.

As the number of characters is limited, the name can abbreviated. The abbreviation must be unique, however. Examples:

- `NAS-Port=1234` is not allowed, because the attribute is not unique (`NAS-Port`, `NAS-Port-Id` or `NAS-Port-Type`).
- `NAS-Id=ABCD` is allowed, because the attribute is unique (`NAS-Identifier`).

Attribute values can be used to specify names or RFC-compliant numbers. For the device , the specifications `Service-Type=Framed` and `Service-Type=2` are identical.

Specifying a value in quotation marks (`"<Value>"`) allows you to specify special characters such as spaces, semicolons or equals signs. The quotation mark requires a leading backslash (`\"`), as does the backslash itself (`\\`).

The following variables are permitted as values:

`%n`

Device name

`%e`

Serial number of the device

`%%`

Percent sign

`%{name}`

Original name of the attribute as transferred by the RADIUS application. This allows attributes to be set with the original RADIUS attributes, for example: `Called-Station-Id=%{NAS-Identifier}` sets the attribute `Called-Station-Id` to the value with the attribute `NAS-Identifier`.

Backup server IP address

Enter the IP address or the DNS name of the backup RADIUS server.

Backup server port

Enter the TCP port used by the backup RADIUS server to receive accounting information. That is usually the port “1813”.

Backup server secret

Enter the key (shared secret) for access to the backup RADIUS accounting server here. Ensure that this key is consistent with that in the accounting server.

Source address (optional)

Here you optionally specify an alternative source address that the DHCP server transfers to the backup RADIUS server.

Protocol

Use this entry to specify the protocol that the DHCP server uses for the RADIUS accounting server.

Backup server attr. values

Here you specify any additional attribute values for the RADIUS communication with the backup server.

19.18.4 SNMPv3 support

With version 9.20, LCOS now supports SNMPv3 to provide the following versions of SNMP:

- SNMPv1
- SNMPv2c
- SNMPv3

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) enables devices on a network to be monitored and configured from a central instance. Since the initial release of SNMPv1 in 1988, it has continued to evolve with the versions SNMPv2 and SNMPv3 to meet the needs of increasingly complex network infrastructures and the demands for user-friendliness, security and flexibility.

The protocol SNMP (simple network management protocol) meets the highest standards for convenient management and monitoring of a network. It allows for the early detection of problems and errors on a network and offers support in eliminating them. The simple network management protocol allows a central instance to monitor and configure the devices on a network from, and it regulates the communication between the monitored devices and the monitoring station. This means that parameters such as the status of the device, CPU utilization, the temperature of a device, its connection status, errors, and others can be monitored and analyzed with LANmonitor or LSM. The administrator benefits from active support with network management and is helped to detect problems at an early stage. The latest SNMPv3 version of the protocol, in contrast to the previous versions SNMPv1 and SNMPv2, now enables encrypted data communication between the network and its management system, which provides a crucial security factor. By offering different user accounts for authentication, the integrated user administration provides optimal control over access to the configurations. You have precise control over the rights to the different levels of access that administrators receive, and the network is optimally protected.

SNMP components

The typical SNMP architecture consists of three components:

SNMP manager

The SNMP manager sends SNMP requests to the SNMP agent and evaluates the SNMP responses from it. LANconfig and LANmonitor, both part of LANtools, are SNMP managers of this type. LANCOM devices comply with the standards SNMPv1, SNMPv2, and SNMPv3, so it is possible to use an alternative SNMP administration and management software.

SNMP agent

The SNMP agent is a module that is active on the managed device. When it receives a request from the SNMP manager, it retrieves the requested status data from the MIB in the device and returns this information to the SNMP manager as an "SNMP response". Depending on the configuration, an SNMP agent that detects certain changes of state in the managed device can independently act to send an "SNMP trap" to the SNMP manager. It is also possible to send a notification to the device administrator by means of a SYSLOG message or an e-mail.

Managed device

The status of this device is stored in its Management Information Base (MIB). When requested by the SNMP agent, the device reads out this information and returns it to the SNMP agent.

By default, SNMP requests and SNMP responses are exchanged between the SNMP manager and SNMP agent by the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) on port 161. SNMP traps are transmitted with the UDP via port 162 by default.

SNMP versions

The differences between the various versions of SNMP can be summarized as follows:

SNMPv1

Version 1 was launched in 1988 and has long been regarded as the de facto standard for network management. In SNMPv1, the SNMP manager authenticates at the SNMP agent by means of a community string, which must be identical on both components. The security of this is very limited, as the community strings are transmitted in cleartext. The increase in demands for secure network communication necessitated a revision of version 1.

SNMPv2

After 1993, the main improvements in version 2 were to its user-friendliness. Numerous intermediate steps and the repeated rejection of concepts eventually led to the version SNMPv2c. This version allows large amounts of data to be requested via a `GetBulkRequest` command and also the communication between SNMP managers. However, the exchange of the community strings was still as cleartext as with version 1.

SNMPv3

From 1999, version 3 finally met the by then much-needed security requirements. Among other things, the communication was encrypted and the communication partners first had to authenticate and authorize themselves. Also, the structure of SNMP became more modular so that improvements, for example in encryption technologies, can be incorporated into SNMPv3, without having to completely redesign the standard.

LCOS supports the following SNMP versions:

- SNMPv1
- SNMPv2c
- SNMPv3

SNMPv3 basics

The SNMP protocol structure has changed significantly with version 3. SNMPv3 is now divided into a number of modules with clearly defined interfaces that communicate with one another. The three main elements in SNMPv3 are "Message Processing and Dispatch (MPD)", "User-based Security Model (USM)" and "View-based Access Control Mechanism (VACM)".

MPD

The MPD module is responsible for the processing and dispatch of inbound and outbound SNMP messages.

USM

The USM module manages security features that ensure the authentication of the users and the encryption and integrity of the data. SNMPv3 introduced the principle of the "security model", so that the SNMP configuration in LCOS primarily uses the security model "SNMPv3". However, for compatibility reasons it may be necessary to also take the versions SNMPv2c or even SNMPv1 into account, and to select these as the "security model" accordingly.

VACM

VACM ensures that the sender of an SNMP request is entitled to receive the requested information. The associated access permissions are found in the following settings and parameters:

SNMPv3-Views

"SNMPv3-Views" collect together the content, status messages, and actions of the Management Information Base (MIB) that are permitted to receive or execute an SNMP request. These views can be single values, but also complete paths of the MIB. This content is specified by the OIDs of the MIB entries.

In this way, a successfully authenticated sender of an SNMP request only has access to that data specified in the applicable SNMPv3 views.

SNMPv3-Groups

"SNMPv3-Groups" collect users with the same permissions into a specific group.

Security-Levels

"Security levels" relate to the exchange of SNMP messages. The following levels can be selected:

NoAuth-NoPriv

The SNMP request is valid without the use of specific authentication methods. Authentication merely requires the user to belong to an SNMP community (for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c) or to specify a valid user name (for SNMPv3). Data transfer is not encrypted.

Auth-NoPriv

SNMP requests are only processed following authentication by means of the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithm, but data transfer is not encrypted.

Auth-Priv

SNMP requests are only processed following authentication by means of the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithm, and data transfer is encrypted by the DES or AES algorithm.

Context

"Context" is used to distinguish the various SNMP entities.

Setting up SNMP with LANconfig

In LANconfig you configure SNMP under **Management** > **Admin** in the section **SNMP** and by clicking on **SNMP settings**.

Protocol versions

Here you enable the SNMP versions supported by the device for SNMP requests and SNMP traps.

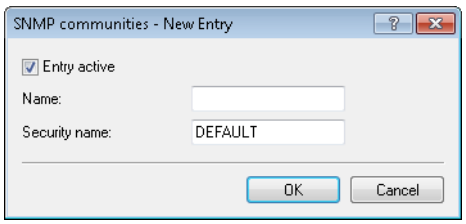
SNMPv3 access settings for administrators

Enable this option if registered administrators should also have access via SNMPv3.

SNMP communities

SNMP agents and SNMP managers belong to SNMP communities. These communities collect certain SNMP hosts into groups, in part so that it is easier to manage them. On the other hand, SNMP communities offer a certain degree of security because an SNMP agent only accepts SNMP requests from participants in a community that it knows.

This configuration is relevant for the SNMP versions v1 and v2c only.



The SNMP community `public` is set up by default, and this provides unrestricted SNMP read access.

Entry active

Activates or deactivates this SNMP community.

Name

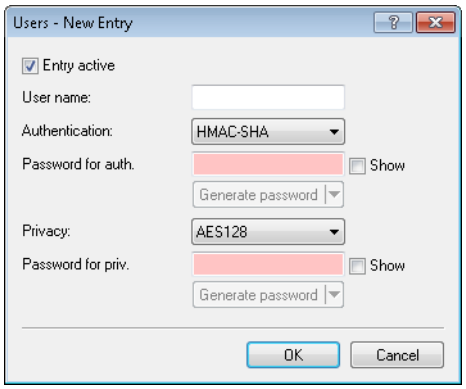
Enter a descriptive name for this SNMP community.

Security-Name

Here you enter the name for the access policy that specifies the access rights for all community members.

Users

Individual users can be granted access to the device in addition to the administrators registered on it. Here you configure the authentication and encryption settings for these users when operating SNMPv3.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this user.

User name

Enter a descriptive name for this user.

Authentication

Specify the method that the user is required to use to authenticate at the SNMP agent. The following options are available:

None

Authentication of the user is not necessary.

HMAC-MD5

Authentication is performed using the hash algorithm HMAC-MD5-96 (hash length 128 bits).

HMAC-SHA (default)

Authentication is performed using the hash algorithm HMAC-SHA-96 (hash length 160 bits).

Password for auth.

Enter the user password necessary for authentication here and repeat it in the box below.

Encryption

Specify which encryption method is used for encrypted communication with the user. The following options are available:

None

Communication is not encrypted.

DES

Encryption is performed with DES (key length 56 bits).

AES128 (default)

Encryption is performed with AES128 (key length 128 bits)

AES192

Encryption is performed with AES192 (key length 192 bits)

AES256

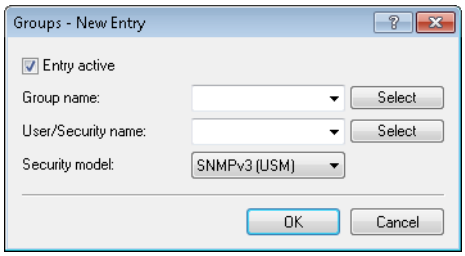
Encryption is performed with AES256 (key length 256 bits)

Password for priv.

Enter the user password required by the encryption here and repeat it in the box below.

Groups

By configuring SNMP groups, it is easy to manage and assign the authentication and access rights of multiple users. By default, the configuration is set up for SNMP access via LANmonitor.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this group.

Group name

Enter a descriptive name for this group. You will use this name when you go on to configure the access rights.

User/security name

Here you select a security name you assigned to an SNMP community. It is also possible to specify the name of an existing configured user.

Security model

SNMPv3 introduced the principle of the "security model", so that the SNMP configuration in LCOS primarily uses the security model "SNMPv3". However, for compatibility reasons it may be necessary to also take the versions SNMPv2c or even SNMPv1 into account, and to select these as the "security model" accordingly. Select one of the following entries accordingly:

SNMPv1

Data is transmitted by SNMPv1. Users are authenticated by the community string in the SNMP message only. Communication is not encrypted. This corresponds to the security level "NoAuthNoPriv".

SNMPv2

Data is transmitted by SNMPv2c. Users are authenticated by the community string in the SNMP message only. Communication is not encrypted. This corresponds to the security level "NoAuthNoPriv".

SNMPv3 (USM)

Data is transmitted by SNMPv3. Users can authenticate and communicate according to the following security levels:

NoAuthNoPriv

The authentication is performed by the specification and evaluation of the user name only. Data communication is not encrypted.

AuthNoPriv

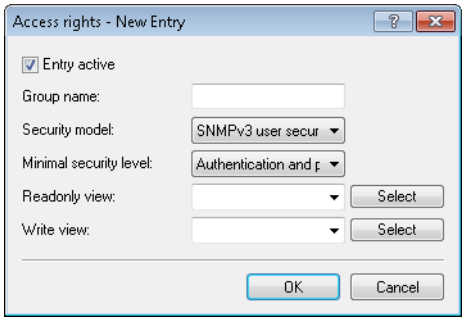
The authentication is performed with the hash algorithm HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA. Data communication is not encrypted.

AuthPriv

The authentication is performed with the hash algorithm HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA. Data communication is encrypted by DES or AES algorithms.

Access rights

This table brings together the different configurations for access rights, security models, and views.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this entry.

Group name

Here you select the name of a group that is to receive these assess rights.

Security model

Activate the appropriate security model here.

Minimal security level

Specify the minimum security level for access and data transfer.

Read-only view

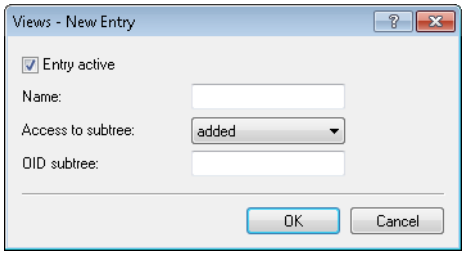
Set the view of the MIB entries for which this group is to receive read rights.

Write view

Set the view of the MIB entries for which this group is to receive write rights.

Views

Here you collect the different values or even entire branches of the device MIB, which each user is entitled to view or change in keeping with the corresponding access rights.



Entry active

Activates or deactivates this view.

Name

Give the view a descriptive name here.

Access to subtree

Here you decide whether the OID subtrees specified in the following are “added” or “removed” from the view.

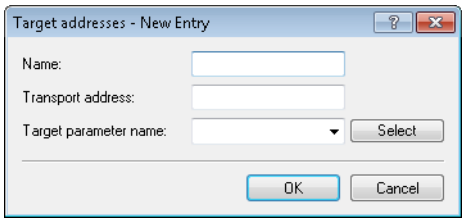
OID subtree

Use a comma-separated list of the relevant OIDs to decide which values and actions from the MIB are included in this view.

The OIDs are taken from the device MIB, which you can download with WEBconfig under **Extras** > **Get Device SNMP MIB**.

Target addresses

The list of target addresses is used to configure the addresses of the recipients to whom the SNMP agent sends the SNMP traps.



Name

Give the entry a descriptive name here.

Transport address

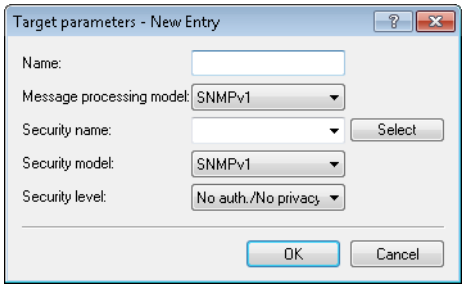
Configure the address of the recipient here.

Target parameter name

Here you select the desired entry from the list of recipient parameters.

Target parameter name

In this table you configure how the SNMP agent handles the SNMP traps that it sends to the recipient.



Name

Give the entry a descriptive name here.

Message processing model

Here you specify the protocol for which the SNMP agent structures the message.

Security-Name

Here you select a security name you assigned to an SNMP community. It is also possible to specify the name of an existing configured user.

Security model

Activate the appropriate security model here.

Security level

Set the security level that applies for the recipient to receive the SNMP trap.

No authentication/No privacy

The SNMP request is valid without the use of specific authentication methods. Authentication merely requires the user to belong to an SNMP community (for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c) or to specify a valid user name (for SNMPv3). Data transfer is not encrypted.

Authentication/No privacy

SNMP requests are only processed following authentication by means of the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithm, but data transfer is not encrypted.

Authentication and privacy

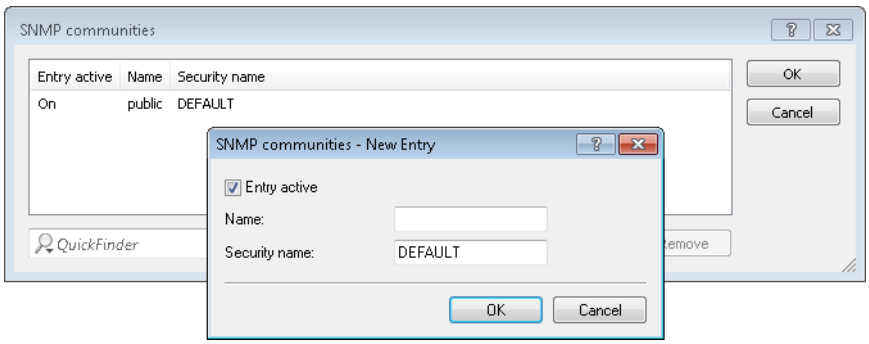
SNMP requests are only processed following authentication by means of the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithm, and data transfer is encrypted by the DES or AES algorithm.

Configuring SNMP read-only access

Administrators of networks with SNMP management systems can precisely control the access rights to various access levels. SNMP of the versions v1 and v2 do this by encoding the access credentials as part of a "community". Authentication is optionally handled

- by the `public` community (unlimited SNMP read access),
- by a master password (limited SNMP read access), or
- a combination of user name and password, separated by a colon (limited SNMP read access)

. By default, your device answers all SNMP requests that it receives from LANmonitor or another SNMP management system with the community `public`. Because this represents a potential security risk, especially with external access, LANconfig gives you the option define your own communities under **Management** > **Admin** and clicking **SNMP settings** and **SNMP communities**.



For SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c, you force the entry of login data for SNMP read-only access by disabling the `public` community in the list of the SNMP communities. This setting only allows information about the state of the device, current connections, reports, etc., to be read out via SNMP after the user authenticates at the device. Authorization can be conducted either with the administrator-account access credentials or an access account created for the individual SNMP community.

Disabling the community `public` has no effect on accessing for other communities created here. An individual SNMP read-only community always provides an alternative access path that is not tied to an administrator account.

SNMP write access is reserved exclusively for administrators with the appropriate permissions.

For more information about SNMP, see the chapter *Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*

19.18.5 Logging DNS queries with SYSLOG

As of LCOS version 9.20, the DNS server on the device sends DNS responses to the clients and also as SYSLOG messages to a SYSLOG server.

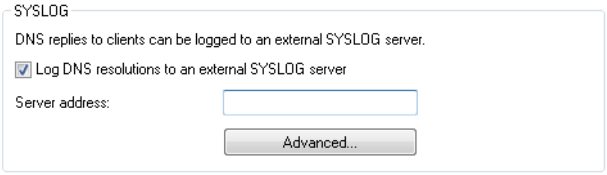
With the move to LCOS version 9.20, LCOS converts existing table entries into the new form. In case you downdate to an earlier LCOS version, any changes you make with LCOS version 9.20 will be lost (e.g. entries for IP addresses). As long as the device configuration remains unchanged since you updated to LCOS version 9.20, it is possible to downdate to an earlier LCOS version without losing data.

Logging DNS queries with SYSLOG

In order to document the requests from the clients to the DNS server in the device, this option allows the server to additionally send its responses to clients as SYSLOG messages to a SYSLOG server on a continual basis.

Please be aware that recording DNS requests must be performed in accordance with the applicable data privacy regulations in your country.

In LANconfig, you configure the documentation of DNS requests under **IPv4** > **DNS** in the section **SYSLOG**.



Log the DNS resolutions on an external SYSLOG server

This option enables or disables (default setting) the sending of SYSLOG messages in the case of DNS requests.

This switch is independent of the global switch in the SYSLOG module under **Log & Trace** > **General** > **SYSLOG**. Thus, if you enable this option to log DNS requests, the DNS server sends the corresponding SYSLOG messages to a SYSLOG server even if the global SYSLOG module is disabled.

Each DNS resolution (`ANSWER` record or `ADDITIONAL` record) generates a SYSLOG message with the following structure `PACKET_INFO: DNS for IP-Address, TID {Hostname}: Resource-Record`.

The parameters have the following meanings:

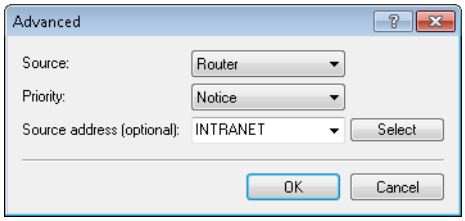
- The `TID` (transaction ID) contains a 4-character hexadecimal code.
- The `{host name}` is only part of the message if the DNS server cannot resolve it without a DNS request (as in the firewall log, as well).
- The `resource record` consists of three parts: The request, the type or class, and the IP resolution (for example `www.mydomain.com STD A resolved to 193.99.144.32`)

Server address

Enter the address of the SYSLOG server. You can enter an IPv4/IPv6 address or a DNS name.

The use of the IP addresses `127.0.0.1` and `::1` to force the use of an external server is not permitted.

To configure the SYSLOG message, click on **Advanced**.



Source

Here you select which source is entered in the SYSLOG messages.

Priority

Here you select the source that is entered in the SYSLOG messages.

Source address (optional)

Here you can optionally specify another address (name or IP) used by your device to identify itself to the SYSLOG server as the sender. By default, your device sends its IP address from the corresponding ARF context, without you having to enter it here. By entering an optional loopback address you change the source address and route that your device uses to contact the remote site. This can be useful, for example, if your device is available over different paths and the remote site should use a specific path for its reply message.

If the source address set here is a loopback address, this will be used **unmasked** even on masked remote clients.

For more information on SYSLOG and the available settings, see the section *The SYSLOG module*.

19.19 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.0

19.19.1 LANCOM Management Cloud (LMC)

As of LCOS version 10.0, it is possible to integrate LANCOM devices into the "LANCOM Management Cloud".

The LANCOM Management Cloud is the world's first hyper-integrated management system for the intelligent organization, optimization and control of your entire network architecture. State-of-the-art software-defined networking technology drastically simplifies the provision of integrated networks, so that the manual configuration of individual devices has become a thing of the past.

You have the option of connecting to the public LANCOM Management Cloud (public cloud) or to set up a privately hosted LANCOM Management Cloud (private cloud).

Basics of the LANCOM Management Cloud

The LANCOM Management Cloud (LMC) is capable of managing any size of "software-defined" networks. The LMC handles the configuration of all of the network components to minimize the amount of work involved in monitoring and configuration.

Further information about the LANCOM Management Cloud is available from *https://www.lancom-systems.com/cloud*.

If you wish to use the LANCOM Management Cloud for the configuration and monitoring of your device, the device needs to be paired with the LMC.

Pairing devices with the LANCOM Management Cloud

This chapter describes the different ways of pairing LANCOM devices with the LMC. Existing devices are paired in a different way than Cloud-ready devices.

Cloud-ready devices are LANCOM devices that the manufacturer has already equipped with LCOS version 10.0 or higher (LANCOM switches: Switch OS 3.30) and that have a PIN for pairing with the LMC.

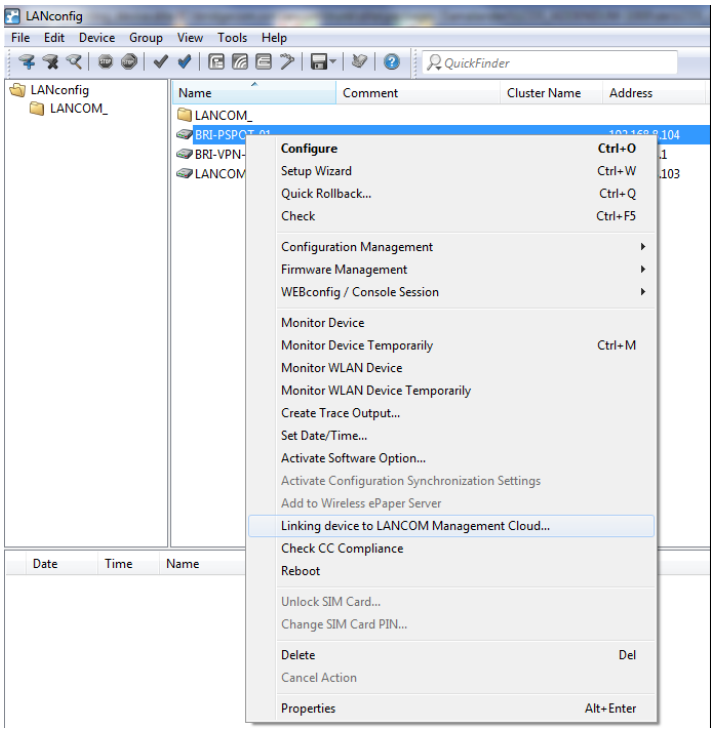
Existing devices are LANCOM devices that have been updated from an older LCOS version to version 10.0 (LANCOM switches: Switch OS 3.30) or higher, which readies them for management by the LMC.

If you have a Cloud-ready device, no pairing is required. All you have to do in this case is to add your device to your account in the LANCOM Management Cloud and enter the serial number and PIN. If you wish, you can alternatively perform a pairing for Cloud-ready devices as well.

If you wish to link an existing device with the LANCOM Management Cloud, you need to conduct the pairing separately, as described below.

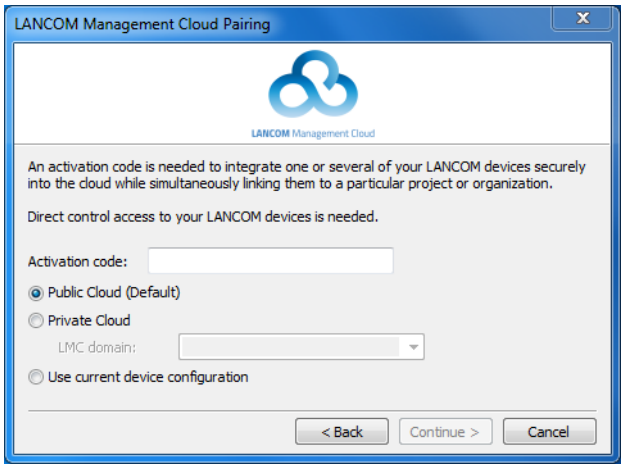
Pairing existing devices via LANconfig

1. In the first step, you need to generate an activation code in the LANCOM Management Cloud.
2. Click on the corresponding LANCOM device with the right-hand mouse button.
3. In the context menu, select the entry **Linking device to LANCOM Management Cloud**.



4. Follow the Wizard's instructions to enter the activation code.
   Three options are available:
   - Public Cloud (default): You use the LANCOM Cloud.
   - Private Cloud: You use your own Cloud.

› Use the settings currently stored in the device: A public or private cloud is used depending on the existing configuration in the device.



Pairing existing devices via the command line

To conduct pairing from the command line, enter the command `startlmc`.

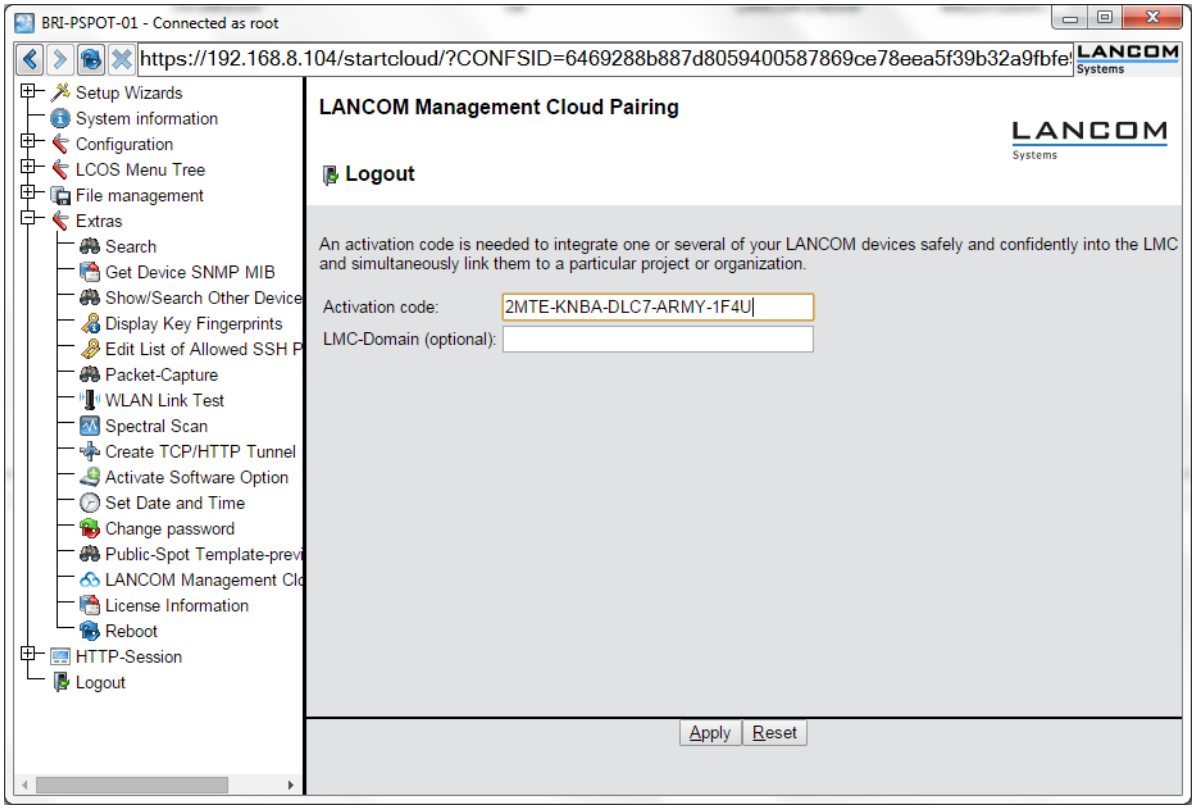
1. Launch a command line utility.
2. Enter the pairing command using the activation code as a parameter, e.g. `startlmc 2MTE-KNBA-DLC7-LPIZ-ARMY-1F4U`.

An on-screen message will inform you if the pairing process has started successfully, or you will see an error message.

Pairing existing devices via WEBconfig

1. Start WEBconfig.

2. Under **Extras** > **LANCOM Management Cloud Pairing** you enter your activation code.



3. Click on the **Send** button.

Delivery of the LMC domain by the LCOS DHCP server

As of LCOS version 10.0, LCOS devices that automatically receive their IP address from the DHCP server now additionally receive a DHCP option 43 in their DHCP packets.

The DHCP server enriches its DHCP packets with the DHCP option 43 (vendor specific option) to distribute this information to requesting clients on the network. This includes the domain name, which is required for the device to operate with the LANCOM Management Cloud (LMC). In this way, a LANCOM device is able to communicate directly with a private LMC installation without having to be configured first.

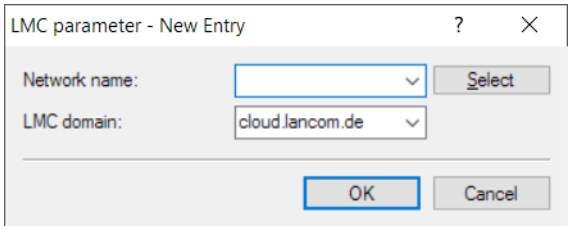
If you operate a LCOS as a DHCP server, you enter the necessary LMC URLs into the configuration in cleartext. The DHCP server in LCOS adds the URLs to the DHCP option 43 and delivers them in the response packets sent to requesting LCOS devices. To do this, the DHCP server evaluates DHCP option 60 (vendor class identifier) in the DHCP requests from the clients. A DHCP option 43 configured in this way takes precedence over a DHCP option 43 that was manually configured in the DHCP options table on the DHCP server.

The vendor class identifier in the request must contain `LANCOM`. If a device from a different manufacturer sends a request to the LCOS-internal DHCP server, the response packet does not offer DHCP option 43.

Using LANconfig to configure DHCP option 43 to deliver the LMC domain

Configuration

In LANconfig, the LMC domain for the individual networks is configured under **IPv4** > **DHCPv4** > **LMC parameter**.



Network name

Here you specify the network to which the device delivers the LMC domain via DHCP option 43.

LMC domain

Enter the domain name for the LANCOM Management Cloud here.

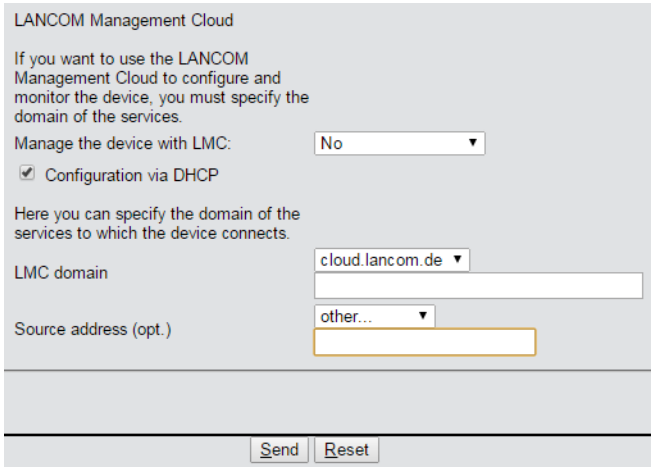
By default, the domain is set to the public LMC for the first connection. If you wish to manage your device with your own Management Cloud (private cloud or on-premises installation), please enter your LMC domain.

Manual upfront configuration of your device for management by the LANCOM Management Cloud

You specify:

- Whether your device is to be managed by the LMC.
- Whether the LMC domain is to be retrieved from a DHCP server.
- Which domain your device connects to.
- The source address (optional).

1. Navigate to **Management** > **LMC**.



2. Select one of the three options under **Manage the device with LMC:**
   - **No**: The device does not connect to the LMC.
   - **Yes:** The LMC manages the device. (Default for devices without a WLAN interface)
   - **Only without WLC**: Devices within a network managed by a WLC do not connect to the LANCOM Management Cloud. (Default for devices with a WLAN interface)

3. To obtain the LMC domain from a DHCP server, place a check mark in **Configuration via DHCP**.

   In order for the DHCP server to provide the LMC domain, the DHCP server requires sub-option 18 of the DHCP option 43 to be set to the LMC domain. For more information about the configuration of LMC parameters, see the section *Delivery of the LMC domain by the LCOS DHCP server* on page 1604.

4. Under **LMC domain** you set the domain of the LANCOM Management Cloud that the device should connect to.
5. Enter an optional **Source address (opt.)** to be used instead of the one otherwise automatically selected for the source address. If you have configured a loopback address, you can specify it here as the source address.

19.20 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.12

19.20.1 Coordinated channel selection for Wireless ePaper

As of LCOS version 10.12, the Wireless ePaper feature offers coordinated channel selection.

This is particularly useful if you operate multiple Wireless ePaper access points at a site.

Each AP requires its own ePaper channel, so collisions or multiple assignments need to be avoided.

For this reason, ePaper APs automatically discover neighboring ePaper APs within a broadcast domain by means of a TCP-based protocol that is transmitted in a multicast group. One of these APs is automatically set as the master AP. The remaining APs become slave APs. If the master AP fails, one of the slave APs is automatically designated as the new master AP.

Each slave AP regularly sends an assessment of its current ePaper channel to the master AP. Based on the assessments from all the slaves, the master decides whether or not a slave needs to change channel.

Each ePaper AP assesses all of the ePaper channels. This takes into account the locally used WLAN channel (which the ePaper channel should not overlap) and whether the ePaper channel is a preferred channel.

Preferred channels are: 3, 5, 8, 9 and 10.

Based on the channel assessments received, the ePaper channels are optimized as follows:

The master AP selects the best of the free channels and assigns it to the ePaper AP with the lowest ePaper AP ID (the master also assigns a channel to itself). This is performed successively for all of the ePaper APs.

Channels are only switched if the evaluation of the competing channel is better by a certain, configurable threshold. This avoids unnecessary channel changes.

If the network contains one or more ePaper APs with a statically assigned ePaper channel, the master can still perform a coordinated channel selection. If this is enabled on an AP with a static channel, the master performing the channel allocation will consider this channel to be already assigned and will not assign it to any other AP.

The status menu of the Wireless ePaper feature has been supplemented with a peer table. This lists the APs involved in channel coordination.

The peer table contains the ePaper AP ID, the role of the AP (slave or master), the channel assessment, and the assigned ePaper channel.

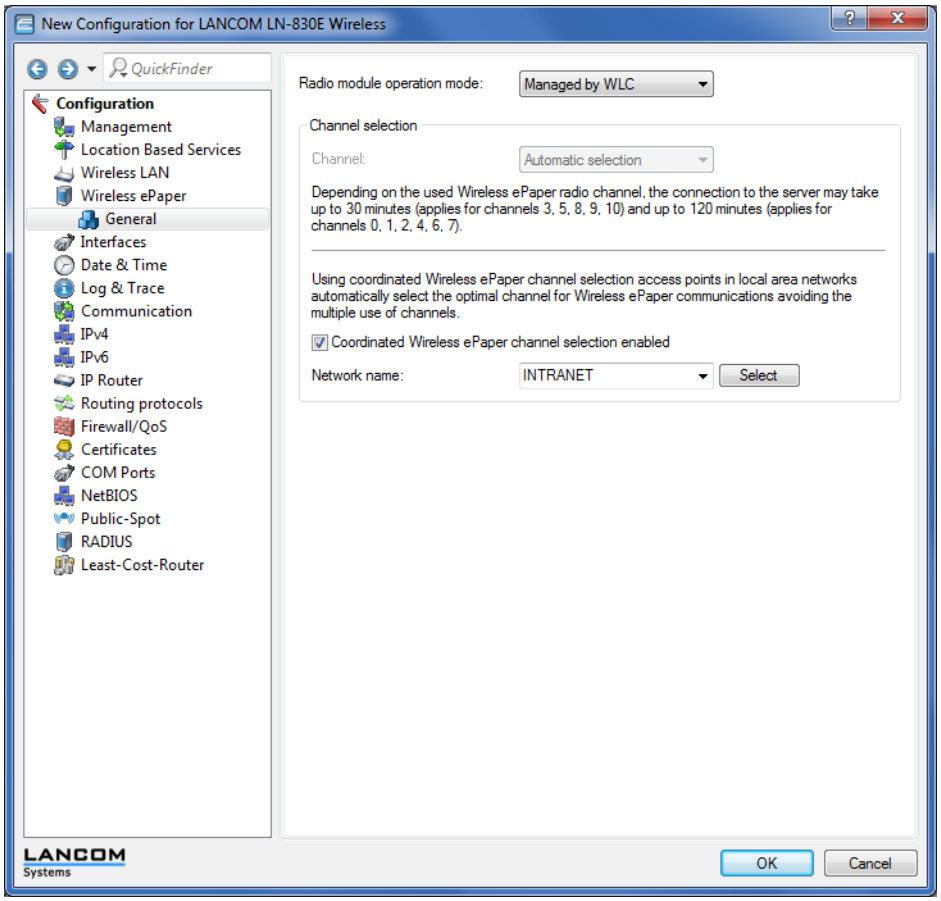
The channel assessment is shown as a list of the ePaper channels 0 to 10 followed by the assessment value. The value range is 0 to 255, a higher value being a better rating.

```
root@LN-830E PM:/Status/Wireless-ePaper
> ls -a Channel-Coordination/Peer-Table/

ID    State    IP-Address    Rtg-Tag  Connected  Assessment  Assignment
===============-------------------------------------------------------------
66122  SLAVE  172.16.26.7      1        Yes       0:108|1:096|2:073|3:196
```

```
66123   MASTER 172.16.26.6      1         No                    3
66124   SLAVE  172.16.26.8      1         Yes       0:127|1:127|2:127:3:255
```

Activation and configuration in LANconfig

You activate and configure the feature under **Wireless ePaper** > **General**.



1. Activate the coordinated channel selection using the check box **Coordinated Wireless ePaper channel selection enabled**.

   If coordinated channel selection is not activated, the parameter **Network name** is grayed out.

2. Select the network to be used for the access points to communicate with one another from the **Network name** selection list.
3. Confirm your settings by clicking the **OK** button.

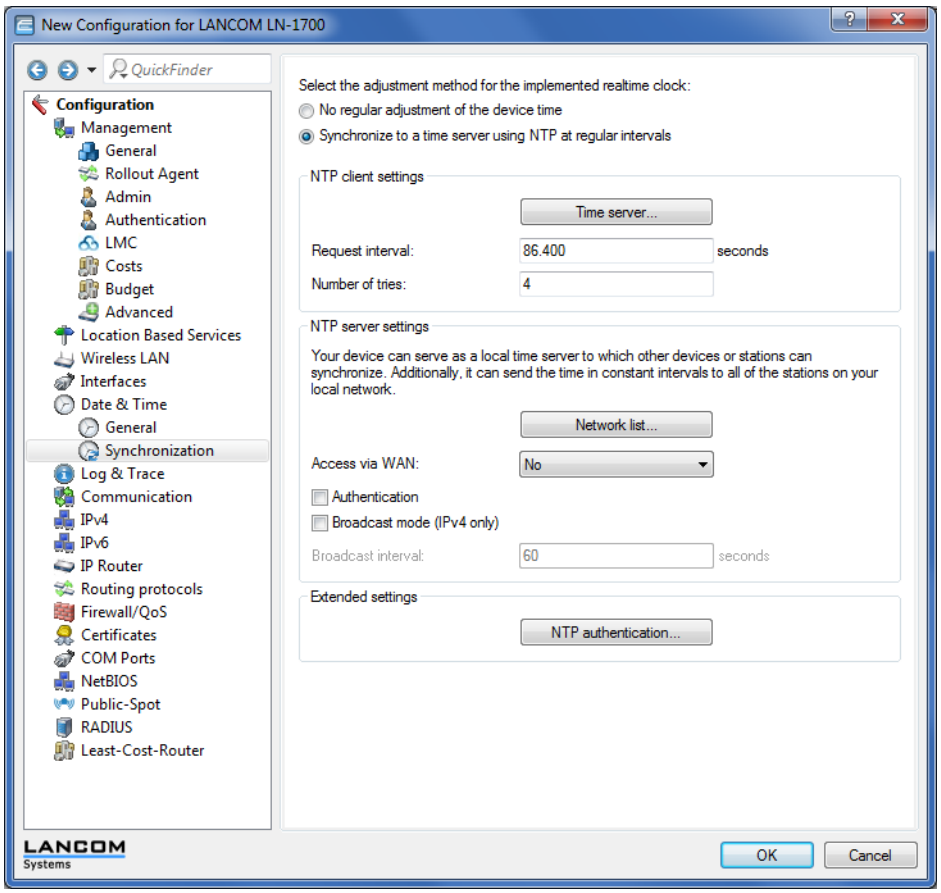
19.20.2 Time server for the local network

Additional features are available as of LCOS version 10.12:

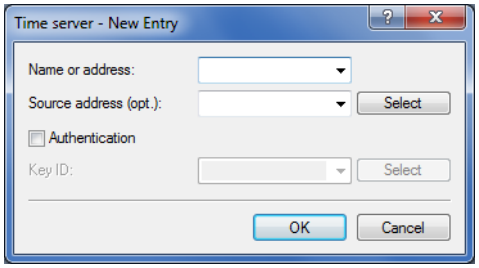
- The NTP server can be activated for each ARF network.
- NTP servers and NTP clients support MD5 authentication.
- Access to the NTP server from the WAN can be enabled or disabled.

Configuration by LANconfig

You configure the new features under **Date & Time** > **Synchronization**.



In the section **NTP client settings**, the **Time server** menu contains two additional parameters.



Authentication

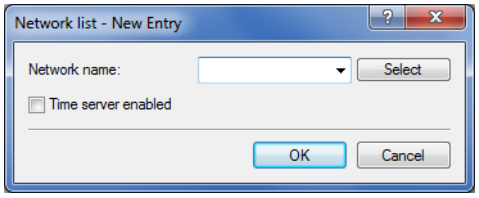
Enables or disables MD5 authentication by the client.

Key-ID

Identifies the key used by the client for MD5 authentication.

New in the section **NTP server settings**:

You can configure the list of networks to which your device forwards the current time under **Network list**.



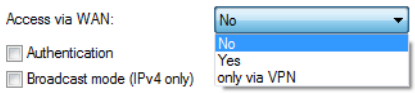
Network name

Specifies the name of the network.

Time server enabled

Determines whether the time server function of your device is activated for the selected network.

WAN access is configured with the selection list **Access via WAN**.



Options:

No

Access to the NTP server from the WAN is disabled.

Yes

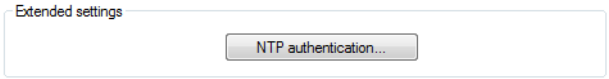
Access from the WAN to the NTP server is possible via unmasked connections, but is in principle not possible with WAN masked connections.

Only via VPN

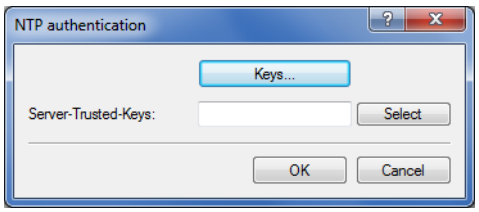
VPN access to the NTP server is enabled.

MD5 authentication support is enabled with **Authentication**.

New section **Extended settings**:

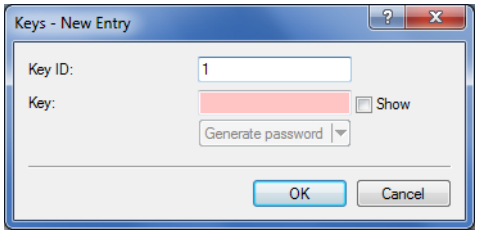


Configure the list of server trusted keys under **NTP authentication**.



The available keys are listed under **Server trusted keys** and are set with the **Select** button.

Keys are edited or added under **Keys**.



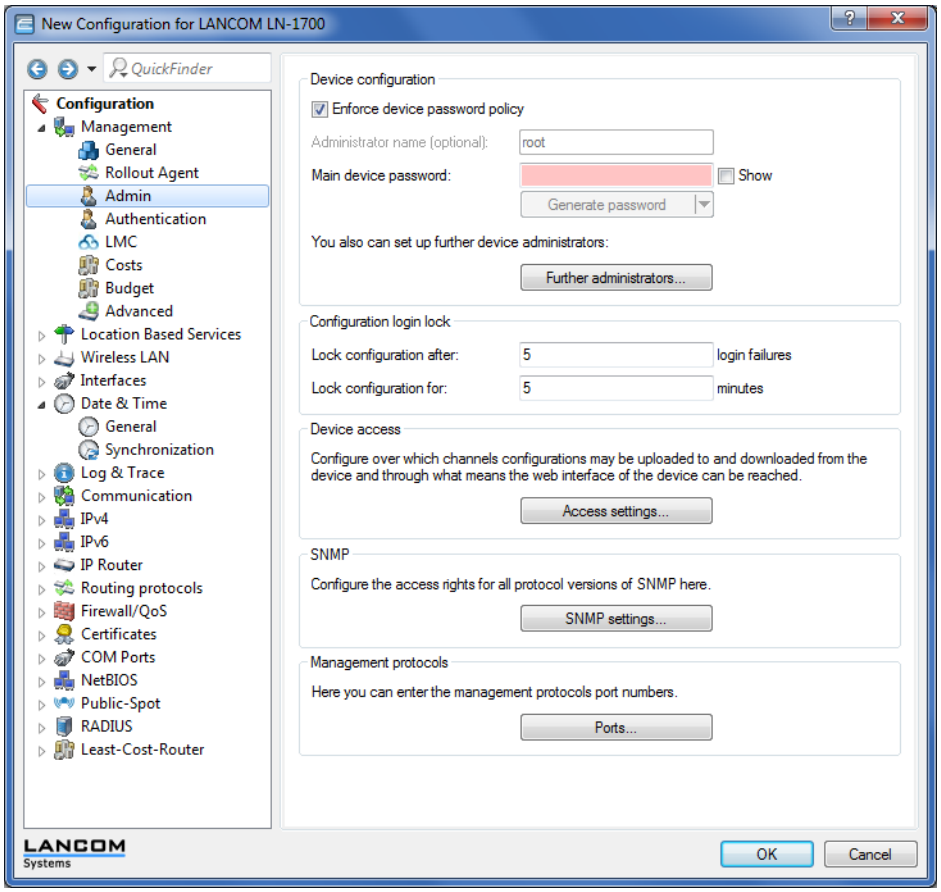
19.20.3 Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)

As of LCOS version 10.12, SNMPv3 users can make use of additional authentication algorithms.

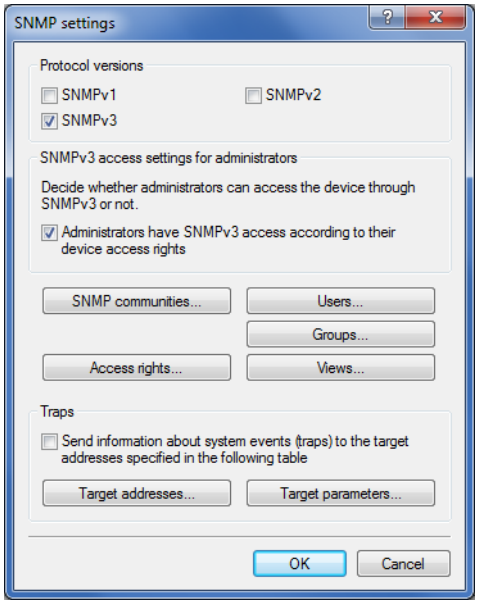
This means a further improvement to security.

Setting up SNMP with LANconfig

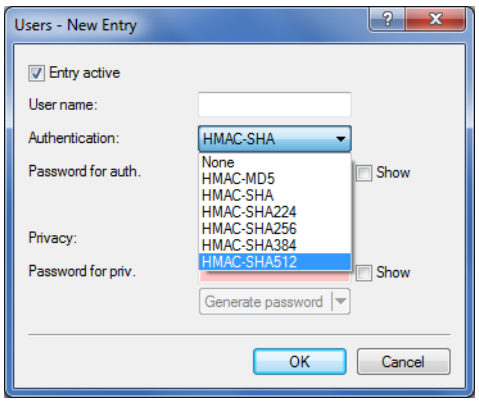
You configure the new features under **Management** > **Admin** > **SNMP**



in the menu **SNMP settings**.



The **Users** menu contains the **Authentication** selection list.



The new authentication algorithms:

HMAC-SHA224

Authentication is performed using the hash algorithm HMAC-SHA-224 (hash length 224 bits).

HMAC-SHA256

Authentication is performed using the hash algorithm HMAC-SHA-256 (hash length 256 bits).

HMAC-SHA384

Authentication is performed using the hash algorithm HMAC-SHA-384 (hash length 384 bits).

HMAC-SHA512

Authentication is performed using the hash algorithm HMAC-SHA-512 (hash length 512 bits).

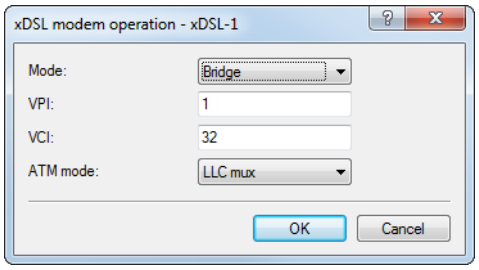
19.21 Addition(s) to LCOS 10.20

19.21.1 ADSL/VDSL modem operation (bridge mode)

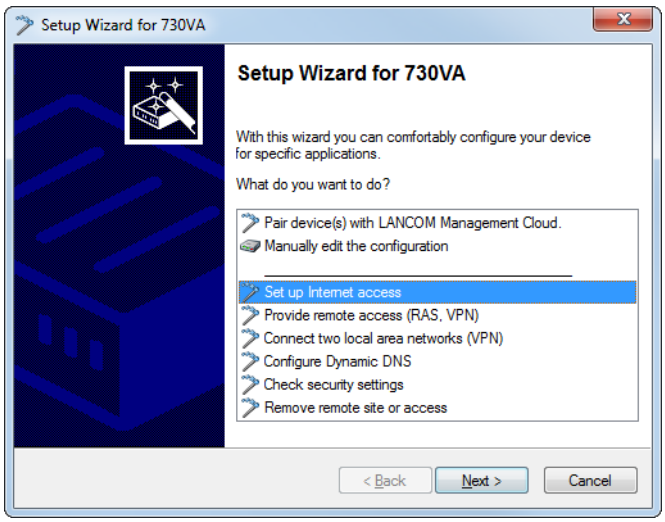
With the ongoing migration of ISDN connections to All-IP, the ISDN connections available at sites are being converted into additional DSL connections. In order to provide this new bandwidth to the whole of the network, the router needs to be connected to the new DSL line. If the DSL connection of the gateway is already in use, a LANCOM VDSL router can be connected upstream as a pure DSL modem. The access and VoIP data continue to be stored in the main gateway. This allows additional DSL connections to be transparently integrated into the existing scenario.

The configuration is conducted as follows:

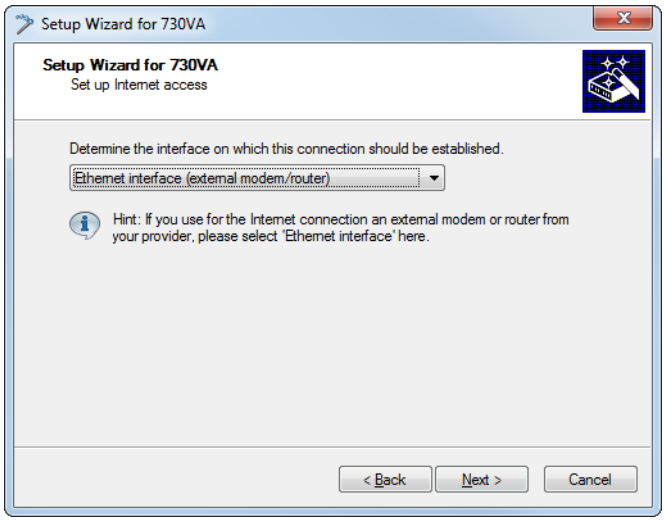
1. Connect the LANCOM router, which is to operate as a modem, to the VDSL port.
2. Connect the main gateway to the LANCOM modem by means of an Ethernet cable.
3. Under **Interfaces** > **LAN** > **Port table**, assign the LAN interface and the xDSL interface to an unused bridge group.
4. Under **Interfaces** > **WAN** > **Interface settings** > **xDSL modem operation**, set the VDSL port to bridge mode. In the case of ADSL, you need to correct the ATM parameters (Deutsche Telekom: VPI 1, VCI 32, ATM mode LLC-Mux).



5. Deactivate the DHCP server under **IPv4** > **DHCPv4** > **DHCP networks**.
6. Give the router an intranet IP address from an unused range (for example, 192.168.3.254).
7. Set up the Internet connection on the main gateway using the setup wizard:
   a. Select your device in LANconfig and start the setup wizard “Set up Internet access”.



b. Follow the instructions in the setup wizard and select the option that best suits your needs. When you reach the step to set the "Interface for this connection", select the option **Ethernet Interface (external modem/router)**.



If the LANCOM modem's sync status is to be queried from the network, then go to **Communication** > **Remote sites** > **Remote sites (DSL)** and create a remote site named "Management" with a short hold time of "9999" seconds, layer name "IPOE", and DSL port "1".

In the IP parameter list under **Communication** > **Protocols**, select the remote site "Management" and give it an IP address from the unused range (e.g. 192.168.3.1/24). Now in the table **IP router** > **Routing** > **IPv4 routing table** add an entry 192.168.3.0/24 to the "Management" remote site with IP masquerading switched off. The modem can now be accessed and queried at the IP address 192.168.3.254.

20 Appendix

20.1 CRON syntax

A CRON job consists of six fields:

```
minute    hour    day of month    month    day of week    command
```

The asterisk '*' serves as a placeholder for all permitted characters.

Here are some examples of performing regular restarts with the use of CRON:

Every day at 13:30h:

```
30          13          *           *           *          restart
```

Every day 30 minutes past each hour:

```
30          *           *           *           *          restart
```

Every 30 minutes every day:

```
*/30        *           *           *           *          restart
```

Every Saturday at 20:15h:

```
15          20          *           *           6          restart
```

Sundays is selected either with '0' or '7'.

At 00:00h on the first day of the month

```
0           0           1           *           *          restart
```